Judicial Council of California

455 Golden Gate Avenue · San Francisco, California 94102-3688
courts.ca.gov/policy-administration/invitations-comment

INVITATION TO COMMENT

SP26-09

Facilities: Draft *California Trial Court Facilities Standards, 2026 Edition*

Invitation to Comment Details

Proposed Rules, Forms, Standards, or Statutes
Update to the *California Trial Court Facilities Standards, 2023 Edition*

Proposed by
Court Facilities Advisory Committee
Hon. Brad R. Hill, Chair
Hon. Eric J. Wersching, Vice-Chair

Action Requested
Review and Submit Comments by September 15, 2026, to cfac@jud.ca.gov

Proposed Effective Date
December 17, 2026

Contact
Chris Magnusson, Supervisor, 415-865-4041
chris.magnusson@jud.ca.gov

(This proposal has not been approved by the Judicial Council and is not intended to represent the views of the council. It is circulated for comment purposes only.)

Executive Summary and Origin

The Court Facilities Advisory Committee (CFAC) seeks public comment on the draft *California Trial Court Facilities Standards, 2026 Edition,* which reflects various code and best management practice changes over time and is a proposed update to the Judicial Council's 2023 edition.

The Proposal

At its public meeting on August 31, 2026, the CFAC approved the draft *California Trial Court Facilities Standards, 2026 Edition* (see Attachment A) for public comment. The draft 2026 edition is a proposed update to the 2023 edition (see Link A). For reference, a redline version of the draft 2026 edition has been provided (see Attachment B), and a summary of the key aspects

of the proposed update can be found in the CFAC's August 2026 meeting materials under tab 5A (see Link B).

Following the public comment period, next steps would involve (a) the CFAC reviewing a final draft before recommending it to the Judicial Council and (b) that final version considered for adoption by Judicial Council. The current schedule for the 2026 edition estimates adoption by end of 2026, and should the Judicial Council adopt it in December 2026, it would become effective for implementation on December 17, 2026.

Attachments and Links

1. Attachment A: Draft *California Trial Court Facilities Standards, 2026 Edition*
2. Attachment B: Redline Version of the Draft *California Trial Court Facilities Standards, 2026 Edition*
3. Link A: *California Trial Court Facilities Standards, 2023 Edition*
4. Link B: Materials, Court Facilities Advisory Committee Meeting, August 31, 2026

Attachment A

DRAFT

CALIFORNIA TRIAL COURT FACILITIES STANDARDS

2026 Edition

DRAFT

Judicial Council *of* California

CALIFORNIA TRIAL COURT FACILITIES STANDARDS

2026 Edition

Published by the Judicial Council of California
Facilities Services
455 Golden Gate Avenue
San Francisco, CA 94102-3688

Copyright © 2026 by Judicial Council of California. All rights reserved.

Except as permitted under the Copyright Act of 1976 and as otherwise expressly provided herein, no part of this publication may be reproduced in any form or by any means, electronic, online, or mechanical, including the use of information storage and retrieval systems, without permission from the copyright holder.

TABLE OF CONTENTS

Preface vii

DIVISION ONE: DESIGN CRITERIA

PAGE

1 GENERAL PRINCIPLES

1.A Regulatory Framework 1.2
1.B Functional Usefulness, Physical Durability, and Maintainability 1.3
1.C Accessibility 1.4
1.D Design Principles 1.5
1.E Sustainable Design 1.7

2 COURTHOUSE ORGANIZATION

2.A Program Stacking and Zoning 2.2
2.B Space Standards 2.5
2.C Area and Volume Definitions 2.6
2.D Occupancy and Exiting Calculations 2.9
2.E Court Floor Plan for Occupancy and Exiting Analysis 2.11

3 SITE DESIGN

3.A Objectives 3.2
3.B Parking 3.2
3.C Site and Building Security 3.5
3.D Integration of Building and Site 3.5

4 COURTHOUSE SECURITY

4.A Objectives 4.2
4.B Design, Technology, and Operations 4.2
4.C Factors Affecting Security Levels 4.3
4.D Risk Assessment Procedures 4.4
4.E Physical Security Planning Criteria 4.4
4.F Structural Systems 4.13
4.G Mechanical, Electrical, and Fire Protection Systems 4.15
4.H Electronic Security Planning Criteria 4.16
4.I Electronic Security Systems 4.20
4.J Bullet-Resistant Glazing and Panels 4.23

5 COURT SET

5.A Objectives 5.2
5.B Courtroom 5.3
5.C Courtroom Accessibility 5.5
5.D Courtroom Components 5.6
5.E Courtroom Support Spaces 5.15

PAGE

6 JURY FACILITIES AND COURT ADMINISTRATION

6.A Jury Facilities Objectives 6.2
6.B Jury Assembly Spaces 6.2
6.C Objectives of the Clerk's Office 6.5
6.D Clerk's Office Spaces 6.5
6.E Court Executive Officer's Area 6.8

7 SPECIAL SERVICES

7.A Objectives 7.2
7.B Family Law Facilitators and Services for Self-Represented Litigants 7.2
7.C Family Court Services 7.3
7.D Child Waiting Room (Optional) 7.6
7.E Alternative Dispute Resolution 7.6
7.F Multipurpose Rooms and Offices 7.7
7.G Lactation Rooms 7.8

8 IN-CUSTODY DEFENDANT RECEIVING, HOLDING, AND TRANSPORT

8.A Objectives 8.2
8.B Planning Criteria 8.2
8.C Functional Overview 8.3
8.D Program Components 8.5
8.E Technical Criteria 8.14
8.F Electronic Detention Control System 8.28

9 PUBLIC SPACES

9.A Objectives 9.2
9.B Primary Building Entrance 9.2
9.C Public Lobby 9.2
9.D Courtroom Public Waiting Areas 9.5

10 BUILDING SUPPORT SERVICES

10.A Janitor Closets 10.2
10.B Loading Dock 10.2
10.C News Media Functions 10.3
10.D Mailroom 10.3
10.E Maintenance Shops and Office 10.3
10.F Storage 10.3
10.G Mechanical Equipment Enclosures 10.4
10.H Fire Alarm and Emergency Communication System Control Room 10.4

DIVISION TWO: TECHNICAL CRITERIA

PAGE

11 ARCHITECTURAL CRITERIA

11.A Objectives 11.2
11.B Architectural Criteria 11.2
11.C Building Elements: Exterior Construction 11.2
11.D Building Elements: Interior Construction 11.9
11.E Signage 11.18

12 STRUCTURAL CRITERIA

12.A Objectives 12.2
12.B Structural Systems 12.2
12.C Criteria for Service Loads 12.3
12.D Criteria for Rare Loads 12.4
12.E Life Cycle Cost Analysis 12.6
12.F Quality Assurance 12.7
12.G Fire-Resistive Ratings of Structural Elements 12.8

13 MECHANICAL CRITERIA

13.A Objectives 13.2
13.B HVAC Criteria 13.3
13.C Humidification and Water Treatment 13.11
13.D Mechanical Requirements for Specific Spaces 13.12
13.E Plumbing and Piping Systems Criteria 13.13
13.F Insulation 13.17
13.G Thermometers and Gauges 13.18

14 BUILDING MANAGEMENT SYSTEM CRITERIA

14.A Objectives 14.2
14.B Building Management System 14.2
14.C Level of Integration 14.4
14.D Energy Conservation Design 14.4
14.E Design Features 14.6
14.F Commissioning 14.6

15 ELECTRICAL CRITERIA

15.A Objectives 15.2
15.B Electrical Criteria 15.2
15.C Emergency and Standby Power Systems 15.10

PAGE

16 LIGHTING CRITERIA

16.A Objectives 16.2
16.B Lighting Criteria 16.2
16.C Lighting Strategies 16.6
16.D Lighting Controls 16.9
16.E Lighting Commissioning 16.11

17 NETWORK AND COMMUNICATION SYSTEMS

17.A General Overview 17.2
17.B Minimum Point of Entry (MPOE) 17.4
17.C Distribution Pathways 17.11
17.D Backbone Connectivity 17.14
17.E Horizontal Connectivity 17.15
17.F Administration and Verification 17.19
17.G Network Architecture 17.20
17.H Distributed Antenna System 17.24

18 AUDIOVISUAL SYSTEMS

18.A Audiovisual Design 18.2
18.B Audiovisual Criteria 18.2
18.C Technical Infrastructure 18.3
18.D Audiovisual System Descriptions 18.3
18.E Description of Courthouse Spaces 18.9
18.F Audiovisual System Commissioning 18.15

19 ACOUSTICAL CRITERIA

19.A Objectives 19.2
19.B Acoustical Criteria 19.2
19.C Best Practices 19.8

20 FIRE PROTECTION CRITERIA

20.A Objectives 20.2
20.B Fire Protection Criteria 20.2
20.C Fire Alarm System Objectives 20.8
20.D Fire Alarm System Criteria 20.9

REQUIRED TOOLS

PAGE

TOOL 1: LIFE CYCLE COST ANALYSIS
T1.A Purpose T1.2
T1.B Principles T1.3
T1.C Performing LCCA T1.15

TOOL 2: CATALOG OF COURTROOM LAYOUTS FOR CALIFORNIA TRIAL COURTS
T2.A Courtroom Layout Overview T2.2
T2.B Multipurpose Courtroom Templates T2.4
T2.C Courtroom Design Examples T2.29
T2.D Holding Core Templates T2.45

TOOL 3: INTEGRATED NETWORK ARCHITECTURE

TOOL 4: GRAPHICAL USER INTERFACE TEMPLATE
T4.A Introduction T4.2
T4.B Page Descriptions T4.2

TOOL 5: IN-CUSTODY INTERVIEW ROOM GUIDELINES
T5.A Acoustic Study T5.2
T5.B Observations and Measurement Results T5.3
T5.C Requirements T5.3
T5.D Speech Privacy T5.5
T5.E Sound Isolation T5.5
T5.F As-Built Dimensioned Drawing T5.6
T5.G Selective Performance Requirements for Interview Rooms Specification T5.6

TOOL 6: BUILDING MANAGEMENT SYSTEM GUIDELINES
T6.A General Requirements T6.2
T6.B General Pneumatic Control Requirements T6.5
T6.C General Design Requirements T6.6
T6.D System Requirements T6.8
T6.E Control Guidelines for Single-Zone Rooftop Units T6.9
T6.F Data Normalization Requirements T6.11

PAGE

TOOL 7: SMALL COURTHOUSE GUIDELINES
T7.A Purpose and Intent T7.2
T7.B Context T7.3
T7.C Programming Principles T7.4
T7.D Design Principles T7.6
T7.E Courthouse Prototypes T7.8
T7.F Construction and Delivery T7.10

TOOL 8: SECURITY SYSTEM GUIDELINES
T8.A General T8.2
T8.B Access Control System T8.11
T8.C Duress System T8.17
T8.D Alarm System T8.19
T8.E Video T8.19
T8.F Intercom T8.24
T8.G Detention T8.24
T8.H Licensing T8.29
T8.I Cable, Conduit, and Termination T8.29
T8.J Servers and Workstations T8.30
T8.K Coordination T8.30
T8.L Acceptance Testing T8.34
T8.M Attachments T8.37

APPENDIXES

APPENDIX 1: CODES AND STANDARDS C.1

APPENDIX 2: LIST OF ABBREVIATIONS L.1

APPENDIX 3: INDEX X.1

APPENDIX 4: ACKNOWLEDGMENTS A.1

The Judicial Council of California has full responsibility, jurisdiction, control, and authority over trial court facilities and shall adopt appropriate facilities standards under Government Code section 70391. The Judicial Council is served by its staff administrative organization, of which the Facilities Services office has the responsibility under Government Code section 70391 and rules 10.180 and 10.181 of the California Rules of Court to prepare and present to the Judicial Council recommendations for policies, procedures, and standards for ensuring that the courts have adequate and sufficient facilities.

The Judicial Council is responsible for the design, construction, and management of court facilities and has determined that it is prudent to develop standards that reflect the best practices and successful solutions for the basic components of the trial court building. On adoption by the Judicial Council of the standards in *California Trial Court Facilities Standards* (hereafter the *Facilities Standards* or *CTCFS*), Facilities Services staff, in accordance with rule 10.180 of the California Rules of Court, will apply the standards for design and construction of court facilities.

This edition supersedes the *Facilities Standards* adopted by the Judicial Council effective April 2006, the amendment to the 2006 *Facilities Standards* effective March 2010, the 2011 draft update to the *Facilities Standards* (not officially adopted), the 2020 edition effective November 2020, and the 2023 edition effective September 2024.

This 2026 edition is an expansion of the earlier *Facilities Standards*; it has been developed using input from a variety of sources, including comments from knowledgeable judges, court administrators, court facility planners, and facility operations technicians; insight from experienced architects, engineers, and building code officials; and reference sources such as federal and other state court facility standards. Lessons learned from the design and construction of recent court buildings in California, using the 2011, 2020, and 2023 editions, have been identified and incorporated in this 2026 edition.

This *Facilities Standards* edition shall be used with professional care as stated in the service agreements between the Judicial Council and consultants retained for specific projects and in conjunction with applicable code and project requirements as the basis of design for new court facilities in California. For each court construction or major renovation project, the Judicial Council staff and the affected court will establish an advisory group in accordance with rule 10.184(d) of the California Rules of Court; the advisory group will assist the Judicial Council staff with implementing the facilities standards for that specific project.

The *Facilities Standards* will promote buildings that are functional, durable, maintainable, and efficient and that provide long-term value to the public, the judicial branch, courthouse occupants, the community in which they reside, and court users and taxpayers of California. This *Facilities Standards* edition attempts to maximize value to the State of California by balancing the aesthetic, functional, and security requirements of courthouse design with the budget realities of initial construction costs and the long-term life cycle costs of owning and operating institutional buildings.

Judicial Council of California
Facilities Services

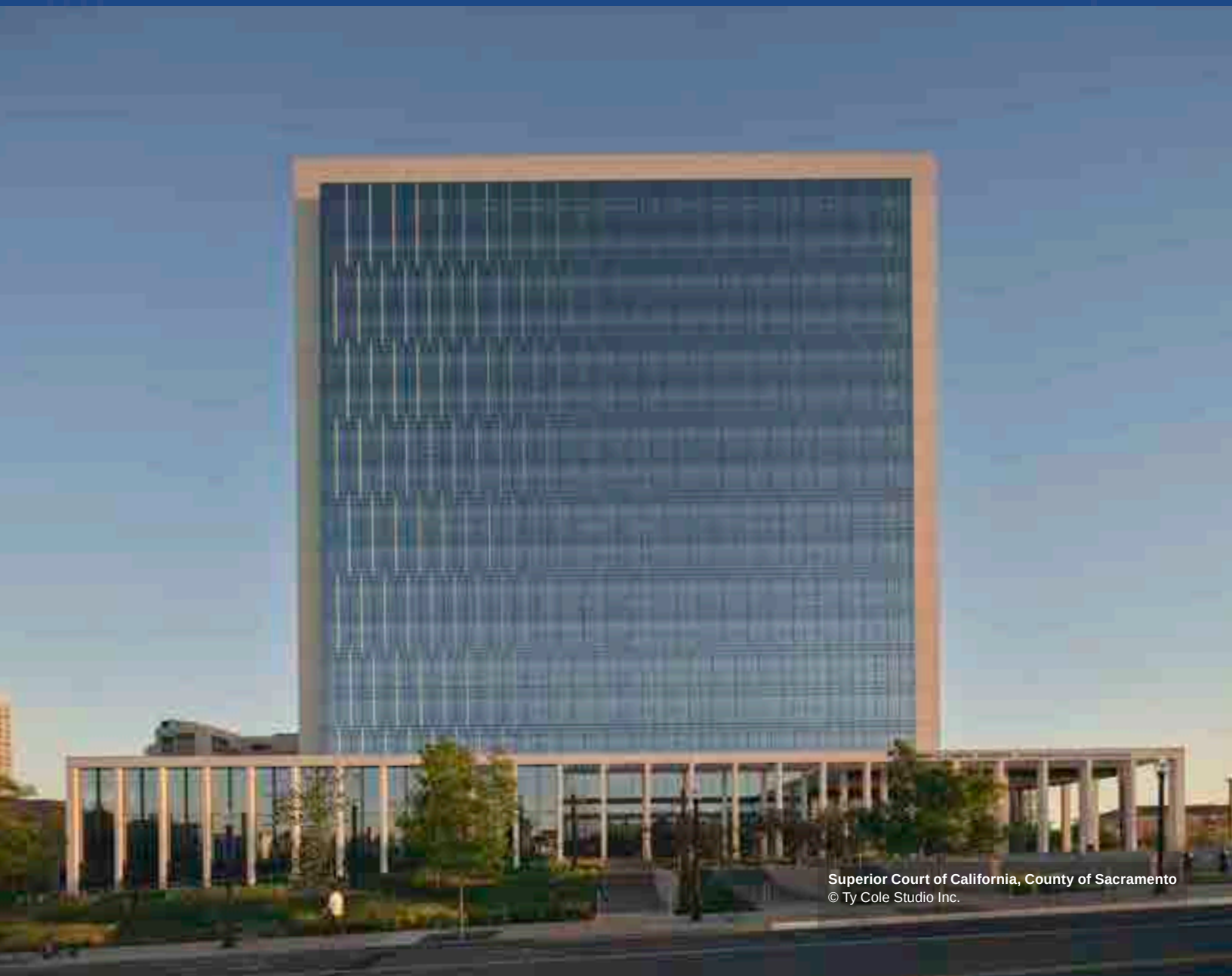
DIVISION ONE: DESIGN CRITERIA

1 General Principles
2 Courthouse Organization
3 Site Design
4 Courthouse Security
5 Court Set
6 Jury Facilities and Court Administration
7 Special Services
8 In-Custody Defendant Receiving, Holding, and Transport
9 Public Spaces
10 Building Support Services

DIVISION ONE: DESIGN CRITERIA

1 GENERAL PRINCIPLES

SECTION	TOPIC	PAGE
1.A	Regulatory Framework	1.2
1.B	Functional Usefulness, Physical Durability, and Maintainability	1.3
1.C	Accessibility	1.4
1.D	Design Principles	1.5
1.E	Sustainable Design	1.7



Superior Court of California, County of Sacramento
© Ty Cole Studio Inc.

Important References

California Green Building Standards Code (CALGreen), California Code of Regulations, title 24, part 11 (current version)

California Energy Design Assistance Program (CEDA), an energy efficiency program

American Society of Heating, Refrigerating and Air-Conditioning Engineers (ASHRAE), an international organization for advancing heating, ventilation, air-conditioning, and refrigeration

Leadership in Energy and Environmental Design (LEED), a registered trademark of the U.S. Green Building Council and a voluntary program in which buildings obtain Silver, Gold, or Platinum certification based on the number of points achieved through the LEED rating system, where each level represents a more sustainable building

The most recent version of applicable code requirements shall be used during design. For more information, see Appendix 1, Codes and Standards.

"Universal Design is the design of products and environments to be usable by all people, to the greatest extent possible, without the need for adaptation or specialized design."

Ronald L. Mace, FAIA
(1941–1998)

California Trial Court Facilities Standards defines the minimum space and the functional, technical, and security requirements for the design of new court facilities in the state of California. The *Facilities Standards* reflects best practices and successful solutions as the basis for design and construction of functional, durable, maintainable, efficient, and secure contemporary court facilities.

The *Facilities Standards* provides the criteria to be used by designers (including but not limited to design and construction teams, planners, architects, engineers, contractors, design builders, and construction managers), the judiciary, court administrators, and facility planners. It provides the Judicial Council's required planning, design, and technical criteria. The Basis of Design for new projects shall comply with the *Facilities Standards* while allowing flexibility for the designer to deliver the best value to the Judicial Council. In case of any discrepancy between the Basis of Design and *Facilities Standards,* the *Facilities Standards* shall govern the decision.

Each courthouse project entails many variables that influence design decisions, including size, calendar type, location, climate, geography, and site context. The *Facilities Standards* provides a basic understanding of the programmatic, design, and operational concerns common to court facilities, and it illustrates how standards may reasonably be applied to meet the needs of individual projects. The specific solutions may vary by project; therefore, the diagrams shown are representational and do not describe the only acceptable solutions. Variations have been indicated in some cases, but designers have flexibility to propose solutions that are appropriate to specific project requirements.

The facilities standards in this document represent minimum planning and design expectations; they do not exempt designers from meeting the standard of care for their profession.

This document is intended primarily for new court building projects. However, many of the design criteria and performance standards may be applicable to substantial court renovation projects or building system upgrades in existing court buildings, buildings shared with other related justice agencies, leased facilities, and tenant improvements. For projects subject to the *Facilities Standards*, the most recent updated version of *Facilities Standards* at the time of creation of criteria documents or schematic design documents shall govern.

1.A REGULATORY FRAMEWORK

Judicial Council projects are subject to the jurisdiction of multiple enforcement entities, or authorities having jurisdiction (AHJs). The Judicial Council's building official is the primary point of contact for permittees working on Judicial Council projects. The building official administers the Judicial Council's code compliance program, including conducting plan review, issuance of building permits, and conducting construction inspections; managing and facilitating plan review and inspections by other regulatory agencies when necessary or appropriate; verifying the commissioning of new facilities; maintaining inspection records; and managing structural, mechanical, and smoke control system peer reviews.

Throughout design and construction, the building official cooperates with and acts as the liaison with external AHJs. The Office of the State Fire Marshal (OSFM) has authority for the enforcement of all fire and panic safety, also sometimes referred to as fire and life safety, provisions of the California Building Standards Administrative Code and other regulations of the State Fire Marshal. The California Division of the State Architect (DSA) is responsible for ensuring compliance with accessibility requirements. The Board of State and Community Corrections (BSCC) is responsible for ensuring that all correctional facilities, including detention facilities located within courts, are safe and secure. Occasionally, other AHJs will be involved with regulatory enforcement and permitting for certain projects.

Peer reviews and plan reviews during the design phases shall be led by the Judicial Council's building official to confirm compliance with *Facilities Standards*, title 24, and other codes and standards applicable to Judicial Council projects. After plan review is completed with all AHJs, the building official shall issue the building permit. Conformance to the *Facilities Standard*s, as part of contract documents, is required to be followed throughout design and construction. Exceptions to *Facilities Standards* are not permissible. Any exception, if unavoidable, shall be requested from the Judicial Council's building official for consideration and potential approval.

At the conclusion of projects, the Judicial Council's building official shall ensure that construction inspections are complete; final sign-offs are received from the inspector of record, special inspectors, and external AHJs; certificate of occupancy is approved by the Office of the State Fire Marshal; and the building commissioning is complete. The building official shall then issue the Certificate of Completion to close the project.

1.B FUNCTIONAL USEFULNESS, PHYSICAL DURABILITY, AND MAINTAINABILITY

1. Design Team Guidelines

California court facilities shall be functional, durable, and easy to maintain. The design team shall:

- Select value-driven solutions benefiting the Judicial Council and the taxpayers for the entire life cycle of the building;
- Define a clear approach to space planning, space use, and the integration of building systems to positively impact occupants and maximize efficiency;
- Provide easily accessible, operable, and maintainable building systems, products, and materials; and
- Provide long-term value by balancing initial construction costs with projected life cycle operational costs.

To achieve value and limit total ownership costs, architects, engineers, and designers shall develop building components and assemblies that function effectively for the durations (target functional lifetimes) outlined in tool 1, Life Cycle Cost Analysis.

2. Life Cycle Cost Analysis

Selection of major building components, materials, and systems must consider long-term costs for operations and maintenance. Life cycle cost analysis (LCCA) shall be used to evaluate the total cost of ownership for design alternatives over the useful life of components or systems in a court facility. The Judicial Council will consider life cycle cost analysis, along with other project-specific factors, in determining acceptability of design alternatives.

a. Whole-building life cycle assessment should be conducted, including operating energy, showing that the building project achieves the code-required percentage improvement for at least four impacts—including climate change, stratospheric ozone depletion, photochemical oxidants (smog), and water conservation—when compared to a reference building of similar size, function, complexity, and operating energy performance and that it meets current California Energy Code requirements, at a minimum.

b. Life cycle assessments shall be compliant with International Organization for Standardization (ISO) 14044.

DIVISION ONE: DESIGN CRITERIA

1 GENERAL PRINCIPLES
1.A Regulatory Framework
1.B Functional Usefulness, Physical Durability, and Maintainability
1.C Accessibility
1.D Design Principles
1.E Sustainable Design

2 Courthouse Organization
3 Site Design
4 Courthouse Security
5 Court Set
6 Jury Facilities and Court Administration
7 Special Services
8 In-Custody Defendant Receiving, Holding, and Transport
9 Public Spaces
10 Building Support Services

Universal Key Goals

- Comply with sustainable initiatives.
- Plan and design for flexibility.
- Use natural strategies.
- Improve energy efficiency.
- Perform building commissioning.
- Promote healthy environments.

California court facilities shall be designed to provide long-term value by balancing initial construction costs with projected life cycle operational costs.

LCCA = life cycle cost analysis

FEMP = Federal Energy Management Program

c. LCCA shall be applied over a 30-year life cycle for design alternatives. The target functional lifetimes for components and systems are outlined in required tool 1, Life Cycle Cost Analysis.

d. LCCA shall be prepared using the building LCCA program available from the Federal Energy Management Program (FEMP), or similar tools accepted by the Judicial Council, or the LCCA tool provided for use by the council.

e. Energy consumption costs shall be calculated from annual energy usage reports generated by compliance software and relevant utility time-of-use rate schedules for the local energy utilities.

f. The discount, inflation, and escalation rates shall be determined as described in the Judicial Council LCCA procedure.

g. Unless otherwise directed, a 5 percent real discount rate shall be used for all studies.

h. Selection of structural systems, building components, and materials should consider long-term capital cost impacts of estimated losses resulting from expected earthquakes and other rare and damaging events.

i. In certain projects, to be determined by the Judicial Council, the LCCA should be based on known and established methods and techniques, including simulations, to estimate probable losses—resulting from seismic events—at various confidence levels for individual event scenarios or over a considered time frame. In complicated scenarios, a formal risk analysis should be undertaken.

j. Table 1.1 lists the building components, materials, or systems that may be subject to LCCA, depending on the size or scale of a particular court facility.

1.C ACCESSIBILITY

Accessibility is an integral component of civic building planning and design. As an essential element of the justice system, courthouses must be easily accessible to the public. Because of their distinctive spaces and functions, court buildings often present unique access challenges for persons with disabilities or limited English-language proficiency.

1. Universal Design

Because most people experience changing physical abilities over a lifetime and benefit from barrier-free design, the design team shall use the principles of Universal Design with the goal of providing equal access to court facilities and making the built environment usable by as many people as possible, regardless of age, ability, or condition. The principles of Universal Design are:

- *Equitable Use*: The design is useful and marketable to people with diverse abilities.
- *Flexibility in Use*: The design accommodates a wide range of individual preferences and abilities.
- *Simple and Intuitive Use*: Use of the design is easy to understand, regardless of the user's experience, knowledge, language skills, or current concentration level.
- *Perceptible Information*: The design communicates necessary information effectively to the user, regardless of ambient conditions or the user's sensory abilities.
- *Tolerance for Error*: The design minimizes hazards and the adverse consequences of accidental or unintended actions.

- *Low Physical Effort*: The design can be used efficiently and comfortably and with a minimum of fatigue.
- *Size and Space for Approach and Use*: Appropriate size and space are provided for approach, reach, manipulation, and use, regardless of the user's body size, posture, or mobility.

(Center for Universal Design, *The Principles of Universal Design* (North Carolina State University, 1997).)

2. Application

Universal Design principles shall be incorporated into all court buildings. Courthouses shall be designed in accordance with California Building Code, chapter 11B, which sets the baseline standards of equal facilitation for public buildings, in addition to applicable federal regulations. Compliance with chapter 11B incorporates the Americans with Disabilities Act of 1990 (ADA) guidelines.

1.D DESIGN PRINCIPLES

1. Building Orientation and Wayfinding

Many court facility users, especially first-time visitors and people with hearing or visual impairment, are unfamiliar with the public functions and spaces in the courthouse and require assistance in determining where they need to go. Clear circulation, wayfinding visual cues, signage, and graphics are important design elements that will minimize confusion and enhance the visitor's experience when using the courts.

Architects shall provide clear and identifiable pedestrian paths of travel to the main entrance of the courthouse and through internal corridor and site circulation systems, enabling the public to easily understand the facility's organization. They shall provide a coordinated series of visual cues, placed in strategic locations, to allow visual orientation to key functional public areas, including courtrooms, the clerk's office, self-help centers, and the jury assembly room.

Views to the outdoors and of architectural elements, windows, doors, landscaping, color, texture, and scale are among the design opportunities that can be applied when developing a wayfinding program. Other visual strategies that enhance orientation include stylized door types, door surrounds, and interior glazing, in addition to standardized, multilingual signage. These elements encourage building users to rely on intuitive decisions rather than signage only when navigating the building. Other wayfinding strategies include:

- Locating the entries of high-volume public use spaces so that they can be seen directly from the public entry lobby, or if locations of high-volume spaces cannot be seen from the lobby, providing visual clues immediately on entering the building;
- Providing weapons screening that is integral to the design of the lobby, including path-of-travel and queuing considerations;
- Providing vertical circulation (public stairs and/or elevators) directly adjacent to, or clearly visible from, the public lobby;
- Providing clear, concise, and attractive graphics, signage, and visual elements so that visitors can locate their destinations without asking security personnel or courthouse staff for assistance; and
- Planning and locating public toilet rooms, waiting areas, courtrooms, and public areas in the same areas on each floor to enhance orientation.

DIVISION ONE: DESIGN CRITERIA

1 GENERAL PRINCIPLES
1.A Regulatory Framework
1.B Functional Usefulness, Physical Durability, and Maintainability
1.C Accessibility
1.D Design Principles
1.E Sustainable Design
2 Courthouse Organization
3 Site Design
4 Courthouse Security
5 Court Set
6 Jury Facilities and Court Administration
7 Special Services
8 In-Custody Defendant Receiving, Holding, and Transport
9 Public Spaces
10 Building Support Services

2. Small, Medium, Large, and Extra-Large Courthouses

The *Facilities Standards* provides guidance about appropriate systems or components for small or low-rise (1 to 4 courtrooms), medium or low- to mid-rise (5 to 16 courtrooms), large or high-rise (up to 200′ tall, 17 to 40 courtrooms), or extra-large or super-high-rise (greater than 200′ tall, more than 40 courtrooms) court buildings. Design responses to programmatic needs will vary depending on the court facility size, type, and location.

For example, a small rural courthouse requires a different architectural scale, exterior cladding, room size, and building system than those required for a large urban courthouse. Design solutions should be consistent and appropriate for the court type, size, location, context, project complexity, and community the court serves. See tool 7, Small Courthouse Guidelines, for detailed requirements.

3. Flexibility and Growth

California court facility space needs change over time.

a. Court facilities shall be planned for flexibility and, to the extent feasible, to accommodate growth without increasing the authorized gross square footage. Examples of programmed flexibility include standard courtroom sizes with capacity for juries or special case types and standard structural modules with adequate dimension and capacity to be converted to courtroom space.

b. Floor-to-floor heights, location of vertical and horizontal circulation elements, and column bay dimensions shall allow for conversion of office space into courtrooms. This approach will permit expansion of the judiciary within buildings containing infrastructure elements such as central holding, secure elevators, and electronic security systems.

c. Building infrastructure and raceway shall allow for a reasonable amount of future expansion consistent with the project program and funding.

4. Design Excellence

The *Facilities Standards* requires implementation of design excellence principles outlined by the Judicial Council's Facilities Services office in its *Project Procedure DBA-11: Quality Management Plan.* To promote accountability and consistency and focus on results for all projects, Facilities Services developed success factors that are measurable: scope, budget, schedule, quality, customer satisfaction, and team satisfaction.

The success factors are measured based on the quality of the court building that is being designed and constructed because the building transcends the completion of the project. Following are the elements that are evaluated in measuring quality and finalizing a quality score during each stage of design:

a. Reflection of the dignity of the law and the stability of the judicial system.

b. Responsiveness to local context, geography, climate, and setting.

c. Reflection of the importance of the activities within the courthouse, with adequate spaces that are planned and designed to be adaptable to change.

d. Consideration of the economics of operation and maintenance, including controlling long-term ownership costs.

e. A sustainable, healthy, safe, and accessible environment.

f. Technical excellence in building systems.

1.E SUSTAINABLE DESIGN

The objectives, design criteria, and performance goals outlined below provide the basis for the planning and design of sustainable trial court buildings in California.

1. Objectives

a. Architects and engineers shall focus on proven design approaches and building elements that improve court facilities for building occupants and result in cost-effective, climate-appropriate, sustainable buildings.

b. All new courthouse projects shall be designed and constructed in accordance with the current versions of the California Green Building Standards Code (CALGreen) (Cal. Code Regs., tit. 24, pt. 11) and the California Energy Code (Cal. Code Regs., tit. 24, pt. 6). Design teams shall incorporate sustainable design strategies that reduce energy and water use, improve indoor environmental quality, and minimize life cycle environmental impacts.

c. Implementation of CALGreen Tier 1 Nonresidential Voluntary Measures will depend on a positive net present value result of the Tier 1 LCCA design options or Judicial Council LCCA procedure-based design against a code-compliant design.

d. Additionally, all new courthouse projects shall be designed to receive, at a minimum, the Leadership in Energy and Environmental Design (LEED) Silver rating without an increase in the authorized project budget or long-term operating costs.

2. Design Criteria and Performance Goals

2.1 Compliance Requirements and Goals

The following design criteria and performance goals are universally applicable to all court buildings and shall provide a direct benefit to building occupants and reduce ownership costs.

a. Plan and design for flexibility to anticipate future changes and enhance building longevity. Use modular planning and flexible building infrastructure for heating, ventilation, and air-conditioning (HVAC); power; water; security; and communication systems.

b. Conserve water. Install building-level water submeters to allow for the management of water use during occupancy, including the detection of leaks. Use low-flow plumbing fixtures that meet current California regulations, install water-efficient appliances, eliminate any designs with single-pass cooling, and optimize cooling tower operations through the use of pH conductivity controllers for minimizing cooling tower blowdown. Where feasible, request a connection to the local water utility nonpotable (purple pipe) water main for use in irrigation and evaporative cooling systems. Use energy-efficient HVAC equipment. Meet the applicable statewide and regional requirements of the State Water Resources Control Board.

c. Use natural strategies to protect and restore water resources. Limit disruption to existing vegetated areas. To purify runoff and promote groundwater recharge, use natural stormwater treatment systems such as bioretention and bioswales with native and climate-appropriate plants, as geographically appropriate.

DIVISION ONE: DESIGN CRITERIA

1 GENERAL PRINCIPLES
1.A Regulatory Framework
1.B Functional Usefulness, Physical Durability, and Maintainability
1.C Accessibility
1.D Design Principles
1.E Sustainable Design
2 Courthouse Organization
3 Site Design
4 Courthouse Security
5 Court Set
6 Jury Facilities and Court Administration
7 Special Services
8 In-Custody Defendant Receiving, Holding, and Transport
9 Public Spaces
10 Building Support Services

d. Design new courthouse facilities to meet the defined site Energy Use Intensity (EUI)[1] targets established by the Judicial Council for each building size category and California Building Climate Zone (refer to Table 1.1). Onsite renewable generation is not included in the site EUI targets.

All projects, regardless of code compliance pathway, shall demonstrate through whole-building energy simulation that the proposed design achieves compliance with the target EUI range provided below.

Energy modeling shall begin early in design, consistent with American Society of Heating, Refrigerating and Air-Conditioning Engineers (ASHRAE) Standard 209, and shall be refined at each major design phase to evaluate alternatives and optimize the building's performance.

The project's EUI target, modeling approach, and compliance documentation shall be included in the Basis of Design report and reviewed at each design phase by the Judicial Council.

Conduct building fundamental and enhanced commissioning to verify that all systems perform as designed and modeled in accordance with the current Building Energy Efficiency Standards section 120.8, CALGreen Chapter 5, and LEED criteria. Monitoring-based commissioning shall be performed on a case-by-case basis.

Table 1.1 establishes target EUI ranges for courthouse facilities of different size categories in California Building Climate Zones 1 through 16. Size categories are defined in section 1.D2 above.

Table 1.1 EUI Targets[1] by Climate Zone and Building Size

Size	EUI by Climate Zone[2]															
	1	2	3	4	5	6	7	8	9	10	11	12	13	14	15	16
Small (1–4 courtrooms)	51	44	36	41	38	32	33	34	33	39	46	45	43	45	47	53
Medium (5–16 courtrooms)	52	48	39	44	39	38	31	38	38	43	50	48	47	48	50	58
Large (17–40 courtrooms)	51	46	37	42	38	37	30	35	35	40	47	45	44	46	47	56
Extra Large (>40 courtrooms)	Same as Large Courthouses. However, Criteria Phase will reconfirm the EUI target and establish the final EUI target based on a Net Present Value (NPV) analysis on a case-by-case basis.															

Water-Cooled Chiller (WCC) Energy Conservation Measure (ECM): Water-cooled chiller plants are required for medium and large courthouse projects in Climate Zones 8, 10, 11, 12, 13, 14, and 15. Where limited water resources, poor water quality, or fully electric plant configurations make water-cooled systems demonstrably undesirable, baseline EUIs in the table are applicable. As part of the site-specific assessment, consult local water agencies for data on water supply, water quality, and sanitary sewer capacity to determine the feasibility of water-cooled systems. Ensure compliance with local water regulations and statewide and regional requirements of the State Water Resources Control Board. Consider projected drought risks due to climate change, referencing the California Department of Water Resources Climate Change Program for guidance.

[1]Table values are targets for annual weather-normalized site energy use in kilo British thermal units (kBtu)/gross floor area (SF).

[2]California building climate zone, as defined by the California Energy Commission. Refer to Climate Zone tool, maps, and information supporting the California Energy Code.

[1] Per ASHRAE Standard 100, energy use intensity (EUI) is "an expression of building energy use per year in terms of net energy divided by gross floor area." The EUI is calculated as annual net energy use in kilo British thermal units (kBtu) per gross floor area in square feet. Net energy is defined as "the sum of the metered energy entering the building minus metered energy leaving the building." Onsite renewable energy is not included in the calculation if it is used within the building.

e. Promote occupant health and well-being in the indoor environment. Provide a connection to natural daylight, optimal lighting and acoustics, and good indoor air quality. Coordinate daylighting with high-efficiency electric lighting and programmable controls. Develop systems and detailing that maintain thermal comfort and prevent microbial contamination.

f. Evaluate and plan for occupant thermal comfort conditions based on future climatic conditions for the project location using Cal-Adapt or an equivalent climate change scenario tool for the facility's lifetime.

g. Create construction indoor air quality (IAQ) management plan, perform building flush-out, and conduct IAQ testing as outlined in the requirements for LEED Indoor Environmental Quality (EQ) Credit: Enhanced Air Quality and EQ Credit: Air Quality Testing and Monitoring.

h. Plan to use materials for which Environmental Product Declarations (EPDs) are available. Use locally sourced materials when possible. Do not specify or install building materials included in the International Living Future Institute's Living Building Challenge Red List.

i. Plan for recycling of materials during construction, demolition, and occupancy. Develop specifications for construction recycling; require contractors to develop a construction waste management plan that identifies waste minimization and recycling strategies. The construction project shall, at minimum, meet the mandatory waste diversion rates specified in CALGreen at the time of project permitting.

j. Provide collection bins for public refuse, recyclables, and organic materials on each floor and in outdoor spaces as well as a staging area for materials collection.

2.2 Best Practices

The following design criteria and performance goals shall be applied as best practices:

a. Use sustainable building materials. Evaluate the life cycle environmental impacts such as embodied carbon, resource efficiency, and performance of building materials. Seek out nontoxic materials with no or low levels of volatile organic compounds (VOCs) from local, renewable, and sustainably acquired resources that minimize waste and pollution from manufacturing, installation, and maintenance. Do not use tropical hardwoods. Do not use materials with hazardous components such as asbestos, lead, and PCBs.

b. Use native and climate-appropriate drought-tolerant plants and trees. Reduce maintenance and irrigation requirements by using native plant species. Explore opportunities to provide habitat for wildlife, including protection and promotion of pollinator habitat, and restore degraded site areas. Turf and invasive species are not permitted.

c. Seek opportunities to redevelop existing sites. Develop links to public transit, and create strategies for integrating active transportation and mixed-use communities.

d. Install HVAC, refrigeration, and fire suppression equipment that does not contain the ozone-depleting gases regulated by the Montreal Protocol, specifically chlorofluorocarbons (CFCs) or halons. If possible, use natural

refrigerants. Otherwise, specify refrigerants with low global warming potential (GWP) for use in HVAC, refrigeration, and fire suppression systems, as defined in the Regulation for the Management of High Global Warming Potential Refrigerants for Stationary Sources, California Air Resources Board: (1) any refrigerant with a global warming potential value lower than 150, or (2) any refrigerant that is not an ozone-depleting substance (Cal. Code Regs., tit. 17, § 95382). For systems with a full charge greater than or equal to 2,000 pounds of a high-GWP refrigerant, the design shall incorporate an automatic leak detection system. The leak detection system must alert building maintenance staff, or a service company responsible for maintaining the relevant equipment, if a leak is detected.

3. Participation in Energy Savings Programs

The Judicial Council requires pursuing participation in construction incentive programs that are or may become available. These programs may be sponsored by investor-owned utilities; local, state, or federal government; community choice aggregators; or other entities. Participation promotes energy efficiency and environmental awareness and provides a guide for sound energy usage and cost decisions. Programs such as California Energy Design Assistance (CEDA) address energy efficiency in new construction and renovation projects and are funded by utility customers through the public purpose program surcharge applied to gas and electric services. Some services offered under programs such as these include design assistance, energy efficiency analysis, life cycle cost analysis, and financial incentives for the facility owner and design team.

a. As long as CEDA or an equivalent applicable program is funded by the local utility, California Public Utility Commission, or California Energy Commission for participation, all new California court projects shall participate in the program and evaluate energy efficiency measures.

b. For CEDA and other energy savings programs, a court project must analyze energy efficiency measures using the "whole building approach" and life cycle cost analysis to determine the financial feasibility of incorporating these measures into a court building.

Table 1.2 Typical Components to Be Considered in a Life Cycle Cost Analysis

COMPONENT	TYPICAL ALTERNATIVES TO BE ANALYZED
Predesign	
	Impacts of new acquisition, leasing, and/or public-private partnerships
	Renovation, upgrade, or revitalization of an existing facility
	Use of other state facilities
General Life Cycle Cost Issues for All Components	
	Element/component service and replacement life
	Maintenance and maintainability
	Direct and indirect energy impacts
Site and Program	
	Building shape and orientation on the planned site (including impact on adjacent buildings)
	Alternative site(s)
	Seismic, environmental, and community issues
Architecture	
Substructure	
	Foundations—water infiltration, special seismic features
	Slab on grade—special loads, vibration isolation
	Basement excavation—use of import/export materials
	Basement and retaining walls—water infiltration
Superstructure	
	Floor construction—seismic impacts, floor displacement, noise isolation, security
	Roof construction—seismic impacts
	Stair construction—long-term maintainability, safety
Wall construction	
	Increased insulation levels, insulation placement, etc.
	Wall R-value
	Wall façade material
	Mass (passive solar thermal storage)
	Building airtightness value scfm/ft²
	Daylighting
	Building envelope (exterior enclosure) type
Fenestration	
	Type, amount, and location/orientation of glass
	Window assemblies U factor
	Window solar heat gain coefficient
	Indoor/outdoor shading devices
	Daylighting

Table 1.2 continues on next page

Table 1.2 Typical Components to Be Considered in a Life Cycle Cost Analysis *continued*

COMPONENT	TYPICAL ALTERNATIVES TO BE ANALYZED
Architecture *(continued)*	
Interior space plan	
	Space arrangement and circulation
	Demising walls and partitions
	Finishes and colors
	Ceiling and plenum heights
Roof construction	
	Increased insulation levels, type of insulation
	Roof membrane type and color
	Roof R-value
	Daylighting
Conveyances	
	Selection of elevators and dumbwaiters
	Escalators
Secondary HVAC systems	
	System types and zoning
	Operating plans, economizer cycle(s), and optimization
	Heat recovery (exhaust air, internal source, etc.)
	Controls
Primary HVAC systems	
	System types and energy sources
	Pumping/piping configuration
	Heat recovery (waterside economizer cycle, etc.)
	Thermal storage (electrical demand shifting)
	Controls
Plumbing	
	Domestic hot water generation (method and energy source)
	Water source—municipal, well, or harvested
Electrical	
Lighting and communications	
	System selection
	Artificial lighting levels, methods, and control
	Daylighting
	Photovoltaic sources
	Communications and data management
Power	
	Voltage selection (building and large equipment)
	Transformers (quantity, locations, efficiencies)
	Onsite renewable energy systems type and system rating
	Emergency power system type and fuel source (diesel generator and battery energy storage system base options)

HVAC = heating, ventilation, and air-conditioning.

DIVISION ONE: DESIGN CRITERIA

2 COURTHOUSE ORGANIZATION

SECTION	TOPIC	PAGE
2.A	Program Stacking and Zoning	2.2
2.B	Space Standards	2.5
2.C	Area and Volume Definitions	2.6
2.D	Occupancy and Exiting Calculations	2.9
2.E	Court Floor Plan for Occupancy and Exiting Analysis	2.11



Superior Court of California, County of Sonoma
Santa Rosa, CA
© Tim Griffith

The general organizational principles for courthouse functions are described in this chapter. Site and program constraints of each project will determine the optimum organization or configuration of a specific court facility.

Three Distinct Circulation Systems

- Public
- Detention
- Private

Any courthouse program must include adequate courtroom space to serve all the public needs that arise in the administration of justice. Courtrooms provide flexible, efficient, and functional space, which, to be sufficient, generally should be planned as one courtroom for every judicial position equivalent (JPE).

2.A PROGRAM STACKING AND ZONING

The courthouse program outlines the sizes and adjacencies required for courthouse organization. Courthouse organization is segregated both horizontally and vertically. The horizontal zoning and vertical stacking of spaces are determined based on the program and design review comments during the predesign phase. In courthouses with in-custody defendants, functionality and efficiency should be optimized by providing courtrooms in multiples of two, sharing one court floor holding area, and a security elevator to the central in-custody defendant holding area. Courthouses require three separate and distinct zones of public, private, and detention circulation. Figure 2.1 indicates the vertical relationships of the three-part circulation system in a multilevel courthouse. The exact locations of these circulation systems may vary depending on the location of departments and uses within the building.

1. Layout of Large Facilities

a. High-volume public spaces and services should be conveniently accessible to the public entrances, minimizing elevator load and public penetration into the courthouse. They are typically located on the lower floors of court facilities, directly adjacent to the public lobby. These lower-floor functions typically include the clerks' offices, jury services and the jury assembly room, child waiting rooms, records, a public grab-and-go cafeteria, self-help centers, alternative dispute resolution centers, and other frequently visited public areas, in addition to high-volume courtrooms (e.g., arraignments, felony dispositions, and high-profile cases). Clerks' offices shall be located on lower floors for functional efficiency and adjacency to public and semipublic functions.

b. Providing exterior clerk/public transaction windows on the ground level to eliminate unnecessary public entry into the courthouse to pay traffic citations should be considered.

c. If high-volume functions are located on the second floor, a connecting set of stairs—in addition to public elevators—shall be provided from the main public lobby to access these areas. Functions requiring less public contact or quieter surroundings—including courtrooms, court administration, and judges' chambers—shall be located on the upper floors.

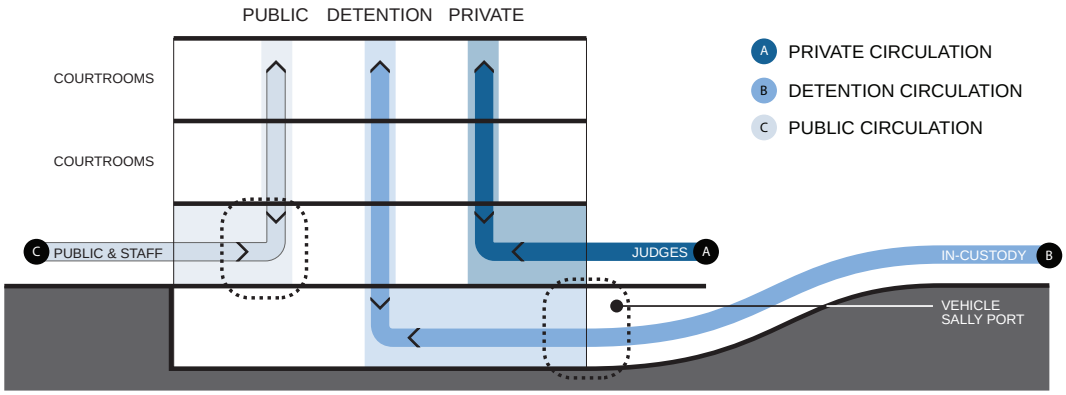


Figure 2.1 Cross-Section Showing Three-Part Circulation System

d. Functions requiring higher levels of security and control—including law enforcement waiting, in-custody receiving and holding, and security command centers—should be located on or below the ground-level floors to minimize the transport of in-custody defendants within the courthouse and the security risk associated with this transport. Operational adjacencies shall be considered in the program stacking so that elevator travel times are as efficient as possible (e.g., arraignment courts typically include a steady flow of in-custody defendants, so they should be located on a lower floor closer to the central holding area)..

2. Layout of Small Facilities

a. High-volume public spaces and services are located directly adjacent to the public lobby; courtroom and high-security functions are located in more remote, quieter locations.

b. Facilities that courts do not currently anticipate using as criminal courthouses may require only two dedicated circulation zones, public and private, because in-custody cases are not frequently processed in these facilities.

c. Controlling unauthorized movement from a public zone to a private zone is a security requirement. Each circulation zone shall be separated from the others by access control systems or sally ports monitored from a central security operations center and entry authorization protocols as part of security operations, as described in chapter 4, Courthouse Security. The three zones of horizontal and vertical circulation shall intersect only in controlled areas, including courtrooms, sally ports, and central holding. Figure 2.2 illustrates the three circulation systems.

d. For court facilities in which juvenile delinquency cases are adjudicated, the detention circulation for juveniles must be separated from adult detention circulation in a manner consistent with the requirements of state law. For additional requirements, refer to chapter 8, In-Custody Defendant Receiving, Holding, and Transport.

e. See tool 7, Small Courthouse Guidelines, for detailed requirements for small facilities.

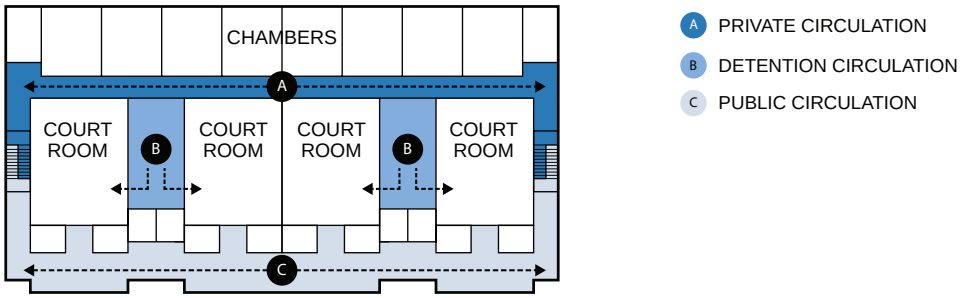


Figure 2.2 Three Circulation Zones

3. Public Circulation System

a. Design the public circulation system to provide access from the public point of entry to the controlled access points of the private and detention areas of the courthouse. A corridor circulation system should link the public lobby to all public parts of a court building. The overall building organization must be easily understood and defined by this circulation system.

b. Introduce natural light into public and restricted corridors where possible.

DIVISION ONE: DESIGN CRITERIA
1 General Principles
2 COURTHOUSE ORGANIZATION
2.A Program Stacking and Zoning
2.B Space Standards
2.C Area and Volume Definitions
2.D Occupancy and Exiting Calculations
2.E Court Floor Plan for Occupancy and Existing Analysis
3 Site Design
4 Courthouse Security
5 Court Set
6 Jury Facilities and Court Administration
7 Special Services
8 In-Custody Defendant Receiving, Holding, and Transport
9 Public Spaces
10 Building Support Services

c. Simplify building orientation and wayfinding to and from all public spaces and courtrooms.

d. Ensure that all areas that have a public service counter or require access by the general public are accessible from the public circulation system. These areas include the courtrooms, public counter areas, jury assembly room, mediation and alternative dispute resolution centers, self-help centers, administrative offices, public waiting areas, food service or vending areas, children's waiting area, public restrooms, public elevators, and other public reception areas.

e. Ensure that all participants and visitors to the building shall pass through security screening at the main building entry. In buildings in which justice partners also occupy space in the courthouse building, their employees are to be screened but may have a separate passing lane with key card access.

f. Design the public circulation system to include the public waiting areas immediately adjacent to courtrooms and attorney conference rooms. Size the public circulation corridors appropriately to allow for adequate waiting areas by providing benches or other breakout areas for conversation and waiting.

g. Consider locating the public circulation system on the perimeter of the court floors, thereby providing windows that allow natural light in and promote a sense of the transparency of the judicial process to the outside public. This approach implies a single-loaded public corridor with courtrooms on one side of the corridor only, but some courthouses may benefit from a double-loaded corridor approach with courtrooms on both sides of the public corridor, thereby resulting in a more efficient component gross square footage ratio of circulation to program area.

4. Private Circulation System

The private circulation corridors provide access to court staff, judicial officers, escorted jurors, and security personnel. Justice partners and the public do not have access to the private circulation system. These corridors and vertical circulation systems connect courtrooms, chambers, support space, jury deliberation rooms, and authorized staff parking areas. Building service functions—including storage, staging and loading areas, security staff offices, and other support areas—are located within the private circulation zone.

a. The private circulation system cannot be bisected by the public circulation system.

b. In most courthouses, the emergency egress stair for private circulation should be separate from the egress stair for public circulation, but occasionally the public and private egress may be combined as long as security measures prohibit reentry to the floors. If dedicated egress stairs are provided for the private circulation system, intercommunicating connecting stairs may be used between staff areas on other floors. For the staff located closer to the egress stairs, the building's required emergency egress stair system can be used as an intercommunicating stair between floors. Analyze the security, fire exiting, and smoke control system requirements before implementing this option.

5. Detention Circulation System

a. Design the detention circulation system to provide access between the secure in-custody entrance (sally port), central holding and intake areas, secure attorney-client interview rooms, courtroom holding areas, and courtrooms. The design of these areas shall prohibit unauthorized access by the public and escape by persons in custody.

b. Separate the detention circulation system for in-custody defendants from the public and private circulation zones. Court holding facilities must have, for in-custody defendants, a secure path of travel that is separate from paths used by the public.

c. Minimize turns, alcoves, and other potential hiding places in detention circulation corridors, elevators, and stairwells; detention circulation areas are to be monitored with video cameras supervised by the court security staff.

d. Provide direct exiting to the outside per code requirements for California Building Code Institutional occupancy classification for in-custody holding (I occupancy) for central holding, located in the basement or on the ground floor. Upper-floor detention circulation does not necessarily require its own independent means of emergency egress, assuming in-custody defendants are escorted and/or supervised during emergency exiting. Both the central holding and the holding core between courtrooms shall be constructed for I-3 occupancy with rated separation from other occupancy classifications. See tool 2, Catalog of Courtroom Layouts for California Trial Courts, for holding core templates.

e. Do not provide exiting through the vehicle sally port. When the required number of exits is provided for the I-3 holding areas, each required exit shall be separated by one-third of the overall diagonal of the I-3 holding area, provided the area is fully sprinklered. None of the required exits of the I-3 holding area shall have to pass through the vehicle sally port area to reach an exit to the exterior.

2.B SPACE STANDARDS

1. Space Standards

The standards for the size of typical functional areas in California court facilities are listed in table 2.1. A selection of sample layouts is provided in figures 2.3–2.5.

2. Ceiling Heights

Table 2.2 lists the ceiling height requirements for functional areas of court facilities. All ceiling heights are measured to the face of ceiling finish. In courtrooms and public lobbies, heights will vary and may be lower or higher than the nominal height. Atriums are not permitted; lobby ceiling height shall follow the range listed in table 2.1. Courtroom minimum ceiling heights shall be coordinated with floor-to-floor heights as well as mechanical and structural components. No value engineering shall be allowed through reduction of ceiling heights due to the acoustical and room performance requirements.

Table 2.2 Minimum to Maximum Range for Ceiling Heights

SPACE	HEIGHT
Courtroom	12′–13′
Chambers	9′–10′
Public lobby	15′–30′
Open plan	9′–10′
Private offices	9′–10′
Clerk's public spaces	9′–10′
Jury assembly room	10′–12′
Jury deliberation room	8′–10′
Public corridors	9′–12′
Private corridors	8′–9′
Ancillary spaces	8′–10′
Detention corridors	10′
Holding cells	10′

DIVISION ONE: DESIGN CRITERIA

1 General Principles

2 COURTHOUSE ORGANIZATION

2.A Program Stacking and Zoning

2.B Space Standards

2.C Area and Volume Definitions

2.D Occupancy and Exiting Calculations

2.E Court Floor Plan for Occupancy and Existing Analysis

3 Site Design

4 Courthouse Security

5 Court Set

6 Jury Facilities and Court Administration

7 Special Services

8 In-Custody Defendant Receiving, Holding, and Transport

9 Public Spaces

10 Building Support Services

Computation of CGSF

CGSF = NSF × (1.15 to 1.30)

Exterior Gross Area = CGSF × (1.30 to 1.40)

3. Corridor Widths

The following minimum and maximum corridor widths apply:

- Public corridors: 8′–12′ clear.
- Private corridors: 6′, depending on code requirements for occupancy loading
- Detention corridors: Minimum 6′–8′ in most areas where in-custody defendants are transported and 8′ in central holding areas where two detainees may be escorted in opposite directions, to minimize the risk of contact or conflict.

2.C AREA AND VOLUME DEFINITIONS

This section defines terms used in the planning and measurement of court building size and volume and the ratios resulting from the implementation of these standards.

Any public spaces that extend above the first story shall be limited to 35′ maximum height to the bottom of ceiling and shall not exceed 5 percent of the ground floor area for buildings with fewer than 10 courtrooms and 8 percent for buildings with 10 or more courtrooms.

1. Net Square Feet

The amount of space required for or assignable to a specific employee classification or function, exclusive of interior walls or internal circulation, is the net area, expressed in net square feet (NSF). The *Facilities Standards* includes space standards that are described in NSF. For example, a courtroom of 1,650 NSF describes the courtroom floor area measured to the face of finishes, excluding the thickness of demising walls. However, space required for ramping outside the courtroom (e.g., ramps up to the judge's door in the private corridor) should also be included in the courtroom NSF; otherwise, the space required for the widened corridor to accommodate the ramp would have to be accounted for in the component gross square feet (see section 2.C.2, Component Gross Square Feet, below).

Functional areas to be included in the assignable NSF include but are not limited to court floor public waiting areas, weapons screening stations and the public queuing aisles serving them, server and telecommunications equipment rooms, courtroom technology closets, public entry lobby vestibules, courtroom vestibules, court floor holding, public waiting areas for all public service counters, self-help public access computer stations, elevator equipment rooms, mechanical and electrical equipment rooms, fire command center, security operations centers, enclosed parking spaces, vehicle sally ports, and enclosed receiving and recycling areas.

2. Component Gross Square Feet (CGSF)

The area required by a department or component to function within a court facility is the component area, expressed in component gross square feet (CGSF). In predesign the CGSF is calculated by multiplying a department's or component's total NSF by a factor to approximate the area needed for circulation, partitions, and structural members and columns within the space. Circulation factors vary depending on the type and size of the spaces in a component.

3. Exterior Gross Area

The gross area of California court buildings shall be measured in accordance with Building Owners and Managers Association's (BOMA) 2018 *Gross Areas: Standard Methods of Measurement*. Gross Area 1 (Leasing Method) shall be used to calculate exterior gross area computed in accordance with the BOMA 2018 standards. Gross Area 4 (Construction

Method) shall also be computed and provided for additional building analysis. These measurement methodologies are included within internal procedures to be used for designing and reports to the Judicial Council.

Courthouses require a relatively high grossing factor because of the multiple levels of circulation, assembly spaces, and public waiting areas. For predesign purposes, building gross square feet is typically 1.3 to 1.4 times the CGSF.

Figure 2.6 illustrates the relationships between NSF, CGSF, and exterior gross area.

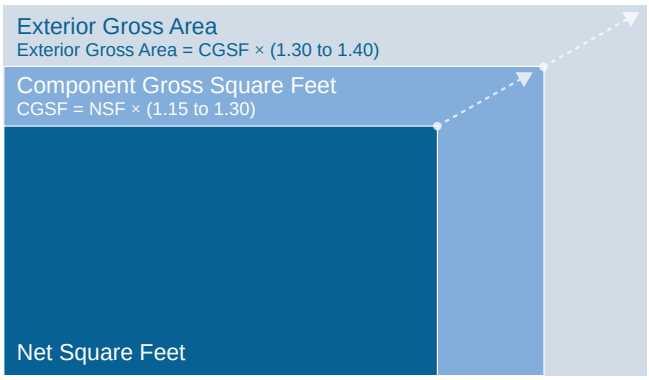


Figure 2.6 Courthouse Grossing Factors

4. Ratio of Total Building Area to Total Number of Courtrooms

a. The application of the space standards and the planning factors should result in a range of 9,000 to 13,000 exterior gross area per courtroom. During conceptual planning, a parametric modeling tool may be used to establish a typical exterior gross area associated with a conceptual building program. This tool can identify the anticipated square footage for a facility based on facility characteristics such as jury assembly, central holding areas, and self-help centers. The basis range of 9,000 to 13,000 exterior gross area for each courtroom can be further developed and refined through use of the parametric model.

b. In general, courts that include a relatively large ratio of office departments to court sets, a unique program, or other specialized functions may have a larger-than-average exterior gross area per courtroom. Conversely, court facilities that are used part-time, have no in-custody holding capacity, or have no jury facilities may have less than the average exterior gross area per courtroom. As the number of courtrooms increases, the overall efficiency (by this measure) of the building should increase and result in a total exterior gross area that is lower than the average exterior gross area per courtroom.

c. For a one-courtroom courthouse project, annual case filings shall be considered and may warrant a reduction in the total size of the proposed new courthouse. The sizes of some functional areas should be reduced, and the development of multifunctional spaces should be maximized. For example, for a court handling a low annual caseload and number of jury trials, jury assembly could be held in a multipurpose room functioning as a conference room and jury deliberation room. Similarly, the jury seats in the courtroom may be used for seating in-custody defendants during arraignment. See section 2.C.7 for general guidance on the layout of a one-courtroom courthouse.

5. Relative Building Volume Ratios

The relative building volume ratio for California court facilities shall be in the range of 14 to 16 when total building gross area is divided by total interior building volume and expressed

DIVISION ONE: DESIGN CRITERIA
1 General Principles
2 COURTHOUSE ORGANIZATION
2.A Program Stacking and Zoning
2.B Space Standards
2.C Area and Volume Definitions
2.D Occupancy and Exiting Calculations
2.E Court Floor Plan for Occupancy and Existing Analysis
3 Site Design
4 Courthouse Security
5 Court Set
6 Jury Facilities and Court Administration
7 Special Services
8 In-Custody Defendant Receiving, Holding, and Transport
9 Public Spaces
10 Building Support Services

as a resultant. Court facilities typically require a higher volume ratio than office buildings to accommodate the higher ceilings of courtrooms and large assembly areas.

6. Predesign Planning Factors for Mechanical and Electrical Equipment Spaces

Mechanical and electrical equipment spaces are considered functional areas that are included in the assignable NSF.

a. For planning purposes, mechanical spaces may be estimated to require 5 to 10 percent of the total estimated building gross. Mechanical rooms must provide adequate access for maintenance and repair. The mechanical engineer of record shall provide cut sheets of proposed equipment for a closer estimate of size and appropriate working clearances. From predesign through the design development phases, estimate additional space of 10 percent of total room for future growth as well as accommodating the proposed equipment.

b. Electrical spaces will require an additional 2 to 6 percent of the total estimated building gross. Electrical rooms must provide code-required clearances around all equipment. Electrical rooms and data rooms must be stacked in multistory buildings. Provide cut sheets of equipment for basis of design and estimation of room size. Provide an additional 10 percent for future growth or change in equipment sizes.

7. Part-Time Satellite Court Facility

The *Facilities Standards* contemplates construction of small, medium, large, and extra-large full-time court facilities. In some jurisdictions, however, small population centers that are remote to the county seat, either because of travel distance or seasonal weather-related travel obstructions, are determined by the court and the Judicial Council to require a court presence. In such circumstances, the Judicial Council may elect to construct a part-time satellite court facility to ensure meaningful access to court services. Such facilities may be used to process some but not all case types in circumstances where the resulting case volume requires less than full-time courtroom services.

The Judicial Council recognizes there are circumstances in which a public need exists for part-time, single-department satellite court facilities and also recognizes there must be proportionality between the significant construction costs associated with court facilities and the projected volume of cases in, and frequency of public visits to, such facilities.

When developing plans for a part-time court facility, the Judicial Council's Facilities Services office and the design professionals engaged for that purpose shall consider the case types for which the court will conduct proceedings and the anticipated frequency and volume of public visits. The Facilities Services office and the design professionals will then propose a facility design that may vary from these facilities standards with respect to design elements, including without limitation the size and configuration of the courtroom; the size or presence of ancillary rooms including clerks' offices, judicial chambers, restrooms, and multipurpose rooms; the size and configuration of the public entrance, public lobby, and courtroom public waiting areas; and the provision of public parking.

Alternative means of construction, including prefabricated and modular construction, may be considered in the design process. The designs for such court facilities must comply with all applicable codes and regulations more particularly stated in the *Facilities Standards.*

8. Part-Time Specialty Court Facility

In several jurisdictions, courts maintain part-time facilities for handling specialty case types, for instance juvenile delinquency proceedings, in addition to their full-time multipurpose court facilities.

The policy announced in section 2.C.7 regarding remote single-courtroom satellite facilities, enabling variation from these facilities standards, may be similarly applied to the design and construction of such specialty facilities for the same reasons, while meeting all applicable codes and regulations stated in the *Facilities Standards.*

2.D OCCUPANCY AND EXITING CALCULATIONS

The purpose of this section is to standardize the application of occupancy and exiting calculations for the courtrooms and adjacent areas in the design of new courthouse facilities.

1. General Method of Calculation for Occupant Load

Designers shall verify that the building exiting adequately accommodates the actual number of occupants. The occupant load factor (OLF) for each building area will be determined in accordance with the current adopted edition of the California Building Code (Cal. Code Regs., tit. 24, pt. 2 (CBC)) unless indicated otherwise in this document.

2. Graphic Depiction of Occupant Load on Code Diagrams

Use color tones and hatches on code diagrams on life-safety sheets to depict different occupancy classifications and areas.

3. Graphic Depiction of Fire and Smoke Areas

Use color-toned areas and hatches on the smoke control diagrams produced by the fire protection engineer on the design team.

4. Graphic Depiction of Rated Walls on Code Diagrams

Use different colored line types, excluding red, to distinguish between walls of varying fire-resistive ratings. Rated walls shall be shown on main architectural floor plans, smoke control diagrams, life-safety floor plans, HVAC floor plans, plumbing floor plans, electrical floor plans, fire alarm plans, and sprinkler plans.

5. Graphic Depiction of Exiting and Path of Travel

Plans shall clearly show path of travel (POT) and means of egress from all areas and show direction of travel within all egress systems (e.g., directional arrows within stairways, exit signage on fire-life-safety drawings, areas of refuge, and exit passageways). Fire-life-safety drawings shall clearly show POT to the public right-of-way and the accumulative occupant load along the POT. This information is needed to ensure that the width of the POT is adequate for the occupant load shown (see CBC, § 1004.2.1).

6. Occupant Loads in Courtrooms

Three occupant load values shall be used in courtrooms. The public seating area load shall be based on either number of fixed seats or by one person for each 18″ length of bench. The occupant load of wheelchair spaces and the associated companion seat shall be based on one occupant for each wheelchair space and one occupant for the associated companion seat provided in accordance with California Building Code section 1108.2.3. The jury box shall be calculated separately and based on the number of fixed and movable chairs in the jury box. The occupant load of the remaining courtroom well (minus area of jury box and the judge's bench) shall be calculated using an OLF of 40 sf/person net.

DIVISION ONE: DESIGN CRITERIA

1 General Principles

2 COURTHOUSE ORGANIZATION

2.A Program Stacking and Zoning

2.B Space Standards

2.C Area and Volume Definitions

2.D Occupancy and Exiting Calculations

2.E Court Floor Plan for Occupancy and Existing Analysis

3 Site Design

4 Courthouse Security

5 Court Set

6 Jury Facilities and Court Administration

7 Special Services

8 In-Custody Defendant Receiving, Holding, and Transport

9 Public Spaces

10 Building Support Services

7. Occupant Load in Attorney-Client Conference Rooms

These spaces shall be classified as meeting/conference rooms. The OLF shall be calculated as unconcentrated assembly at 15 sf/person net. Conference rooms with occupant loads of less than 50 may be classified as a Group B occupancy.

8. Occupant Load in Public Corridor

The occupant loads in the circulation area of the public corridor shall be calculated using an OLF of 40 sf/person net (considered as part of "courtroom" base building use). In addition, the occupant load of the seating area shall be calculated by counting the total number of fixed seating or one seat for each 18″ length of bench. Eighteen inches in front of the seating shall be excluded from the corridor load calculation, including in public corridors on the main entry level.

9. Occupant Load in Restrooms

Public and staff restrooms shall be included in the gross area calculation with an OLF of 150 sf/person.

10. Public Lobby and Elevator Lobby Transition Space

Public lobbies and elevator lobbies are transition spaces and shall have no calculated occupant load. Per chapter 2 of the California Building Code, a lobby is an area not defined as a waiting room at the entrance of a building through which persons must pass. Therefore, the lobby and the elevator lobby must have no other use (i.e., no benches or chairs).

11. Occupant Load in Restricted Corridor

Occupant loads in the restricted corridor shall be calculated with an OLF of 150 sf/person, using the business use occupancy gross calculation.

12. Rated Corridors

Any room or space, in accordance with the provisions for assembly occupancies, that exceeds 100 persons (such as a courtroom) shall have access to at least one 1-hour fire-resistive corridor system.

Group A occupancy courtrooms with an occupant load between 100 and 300 shall have no fewer than one of the required means of egress exit through one of the following:

a. Directly to an exit.

b. Egress through a lobby that is not used to access the other required exit.

c. To a one hour–rated corridor to an exit.

d. Continuous through a one hour–rated lobby to an exit.

The exit shall meet the definition and requirements of an exit in accordance with chapter 10, section 1022, of the California Building Code.

Penetrations into fire-rated wall assemblies shall be coordinated and protected.

Dead-end corridors are limited to 20′ when serving occupants of Group A occupancies.

13. Occupant Load in Jury Deliberation Rooms

Occupant loads for rooms designed exclusively for jury deliberation shall be assigned an occupant load of 14, which accounts for 12 jurors plus 2 alternates, or by using the unconcentrated assembly at 15 sf/person net, whichever method results in the greater

occupant load. Deviation from this occupant load will require approval by the building official under California Building Code section 1004.5.

14. Occupant Load in Queuing and Waiting Areas (Business Offices and Transaction Counters)

The occupant load for queuing and waiting areas shall be calculated using an OLF of 5 sf/person net (assembly without fixed seats, or standing space).

15. Occupant Load in Courtroom Holding Cells

The OLF for courtroom holding cells shall be calculated at one person per 18″ of fixed seating in cells plus one person for bailiff in each holding core.

16. Occupant Load in Judges' Chambers and Judges' Restrooms

Judges' chambers, which include judges' restrooms and robing areas, shall be calculated at an OLF of 150 sf/person gross (these spaces shall be classified as Group B occupancy).

17. Stair Width Measurement

Stairs shall be measured in accordance with figure 11.1 in chapter 11, Architectural Criteria, from inside stringer to inside stringer.

Design stairwell clearances with tolerance. Include fireproofing thickness for any elements that protrude into the stairwells. Avoid beams and braces penetrating in the stairwells. Provide sufficient headroom clearances in stairwells.

18. Cumulative Loading Calculations

Along the path of travel through intervening rooms and spaces, the occupant load of each space shall be cumulative in accordance with the provisions of California Building Code section 1004.2, Cumulative occupant loads.

2.E COURT FLOOR PLAN FOR OCCUPANCY AND EXITING ANALYSIS

The floor plan in figure 2.7 shows a typical courtroom floor on an upper level; it is not intended to represent the requirements of the ground floor. The plan accounts for the more restrictive code requirements of high-rise buildings. Table 2.3 shows the associated occupant load factors and other requirements. Per California Building Code section 403.1, a high-rise building is one that has occupied floors located more than 75′ above the lowest level of fire department vehicle access. In some instances, these Judicial Council requirements exceed code minimums. The floor plan in figure 2.7 and the associated table 2.3 are included for illustrative purposes because the square footage of various spaces will vary from project to project. The intent of the figure and table is to illustrate the requirements specified below.

The floor plan focuses primarily on exit analysis requirements. The floor plan is diagrammatic and not intended to limit design creativity or specify exact locations or organization of spaces. Low-rise courthouses have greater flexibility relative to the location of the elevator cores and stairs, but the configuration as shown in the floor plan of those elements is recommended for high-rise buildings. The requirements for each project are distinct, and therefore each project will have a different floor plan. However, in the interest of communicating Judicial Council requirements, the plan provides the following direction:

DIVISION ONE: DESIGN CRITERIA
1 General Principles
2 COURTHOUSE ORGANIZATION
2.A Program Stacking and Zoning
2.B Space Standards
2.C Area and Volume Definitions
2.D Occupancy and Exiting Calculations
2.E Court Floor Plan for Occupancy and Existing Analysis
3 Site Design
4 Courthouse Security
5 Court Set
6 Jury Facilities and Court Administration
7 Special Services
8 In-Custody Defendant Receiving, Holding, and Transport
9 Public Spaces
10 Building Support Services

1. Building Code Analysis

Every project shall have a building code analysis on the cover sheet to outline the following:

- Occupancy classifications in the building;
- Building height and area;
- Number of stories;
- Separated or not separated;
- Type of construction; and
- Fire protection systems present.

2. Room Name and Number

Each occupied space shall be labeled with a room name and number.

3. Occupancy Groups

The occupancy group for each zone shall be indicated on the plan (generally A-3 for lobbies and courtrooms, B for office areas, and I-3 for locked inmate areas).

4. Occupancy Load

a. An Occupant Load Table shall be included for every occupied floor level and will show the following:
   - Room number;
   - Room name;
   - Area;
   - Function (as defined by CBC, table 1004.5);
   - Occupant load factor (OLF as defined by CBC, table 1004.5, or per supplemental Judicial Council requirements listed herewith);
   - Net/gross area requirements (as required by CBC, table 1004.5);
   - Number of fixed seats (as required by CBC, § 1004.6);
   - Occupant load based on dividing area by OLF and/or by determining the number of fixed seats; and
   - Details that might clarify how the occupant load was calculated.

b. The exit load from each room shall be shown at each exit door and aligned with the occupant load values shown in the Occupant Load Table.

c. Where occupants egress from one or more rooms, or through other spaces, the design occupant load shall be the combined occupant load of interconnected accessory or intervening spaces.

d. Design of egress path capacity shall be based on the cumulative portion of occupant loads of all rooms, areas, or spaces to that point along the path of egress travel.

e. Occupant loads at each exit stair or exterior exit shall be indicated.

f. A 20 percent contingency shall be added to each occupant load discharging to exit stairs or exterior exits; a calculation at each exit stair or exterior exit shall include the following:

- Occupant load;
- Contingency (20 percent of the occupant load);
- Design load factor (the occupant load + contingency);
- Egress capacity factor (typically 0.2″, per CBC, § 1005);
- Calculated stairway width (design load factor × egress capacity factor);
- Minimum stair width (per CBC, § 1005.3.1, and 44″ minimum when serving a design occupant load > 50); and
- Actual stair width (as measured between stringers).

5. Means of Egress Sizing

a. In courthouses equipped throughout with an automatic sprinkler system installed in accordance with California Building Code section 903.3.1.1 or 903.3.1.2 and an emergency voice/alarm communications system in accordance with section 907.5.2.2, the egress capacity factor shall be 0.2″ for stairways and 0.15″ for door openings and other egress components. Deviations from these requirements will require approval by the building official under California Building Code section 1005.3.1, exception 1, and section 1005.3.2, exception 1.

b. The width requirements of each door shall be shown either with a calculation for each door or a note clarifying how many occupants each standard-sized door can accommodate.

c. The courtroom entry door that opens into the public corridor shall be rated. The second door between the courtroom vestibule and the courtroom shall neither be rated nor equipped with panic hardware or latch mechanism that disrupts the court proceedings.

d. Won-Doors are not permitted. Magnetically held swing fire doors shall be used where required by title 24.

e. Staff circulation, including egress stairs, shall be separated from public circulation with card access control to maintain separation of public and secure circulation zones.

6. Passive Fire Protection Assemblies

a. Plans shall clearly indicate the type of fire-rated assembly: firewall, fire barrier, fire partition, smoke barrier, or smoke partition.

b. The public lobby and the secure staff corridor shall be constructed as a corridor and protected by a one-hour fire partition at minimum.

c. Shaft enclosures, including stair shafts, shall have a fire resistance rating of no less than the floor assembly penetrated. One-hour shafts, including stair shafts, serving less than four stories of Type I construction are not permitted.

d. Penetrations into any interior or exterior stairway are prohibited unless specifically for the stair exit system to function or for fire protection and suppression.

e. Elevators shall be enclosed in shafts providing two-hour fire barrier construction and openings protected with either a smoke curtain or an elevator lobby meeting the same requirements (refer to the CBC for exceptions for stairs and elevators connecting only two floors). The drywall is to have two layers of impact resistance and fire rating. No exceptions shall be permitted for high-rise construction.

DIVISION ONE: DESIGN CRITERIA
1 General Principles
2 COURTHOUSE ORGANIZATION
2.A Program Stacking and Zoning
2.B Space Standards
2.C Area and Volume Definitions
2.D Occupancy and Exiting Calculations
2.E Court Floor Plan for Occupancy and Existing Analysis
3 Site Design
4 Courthouse Security
5 Court Set
6 Jury Facilities and Court Administration
7 Special Services
8 In-Custody Defendant Receiving, Holding, and Transport
9 Public Spaces
10 Building Support Services

7. Exit Access

a. Exit access travel distances from the most remote spaces on each floor to the nearest stairwells or exits shall be demonstrated on plans.

b. Common paths of travel shall be demonstrated on plans.

8. Safe Dispersal Areas

a. Where exits discharge into an enclosed area, a safe dispersal area shall be provided. The safe dispersal area shall comply with the California Building Code minimum size requirements.

b. Where exits serving in-custody and other occupants of the building discharge into an enclosed area, the in-custody occupants shall have a designated safe dispersal area. A safe dispersal area shall not accommodate in-custody occupants with other occupants of the building.

c. When more than one safe dispersal area is provided, each area shall clearly indicate which occupants of the building it serves.

9. High-Rise Buildings

a. For high-rise buildings, each stairwell shall be accessed via a vestibule as required by California Building Code section 909.20.1.

b. For high-rise buildings over 420′ in building height, an additional stairway shall be provided per California Building Code section 403.5.2.

c. Exit travel distances from the most remote spaces on each floor to the nearest stairwells or exits shall be demonstrated.

d. For high-rise buildings, the fire service elevator and stair shall be indicated. The fire service stair must have access to the roof and discharge directly to the exterior (may discharge through an uninterrupted exit passageway).

e. For high-rise buildings, a dedicated fire command center is required and shall be separated from the rest of the building by a minimum one hour–rated fire barrier.

f. The floor plan is not intended to show the following:

   a. The structural system

   b. Fire-resistive requirements for building components:

      i. Primary structural frame

      ii. Bearing walls

      iii. Nonbearing partitions

      iv. Floor construction

      v. Roof construction

      vi. Shaft construction

   c. Exterior openings;

   d. Protection of exterior walls and openings;

   e. Requirements of local jurisdictions;

f. Mechanical, plumbing, and electrical systems and infrastructure or actual sizes of rooms;

g. Ground-floor requirements;

h. Basement-level requirements;

i. Roof-level requirements; or

j. Non–court floor requirements.

DIVISION ONE: DESIGN CRITERIA

1 General Principles

2 COURTHOUSE ORGANIZATION

2.A Program Stacking and Zoning

2.B Space Standards

2.C Area and Volume Definitions

2.D Occupancy and Exiting Calculations

2.E Court Floor Plan for Occupancy and Existing Analysis

3 Site Design

4 Courthouse Security

5 Court Set

6 Jury Facilities and Court Administration

7 Special Services

8 In-Custody Defendant Receiving, Holding, and Transport

9 Public Spaces

10 Building Support Services

Table 2.1 Space Standards

DESCRIPTION	SIZE (NSF)
Court Set	
Multipurpose courtroom	1,600–2,050*
Large courtroom	2,000–2,500
Arraignment courtroom	1,800–2,300
Chambers (incl. private toilet)	400
Staff/reception/wait 1 person	100–140
Staff/reception/wait 2 person	140–200
Copy/workroom/supply area	80–100
Court reporter's workstation	48–64
Research attorney work area	80–150
Staff toilet room	60
Jury deliberation room (including toilet)	400
Attorney interview room	per catalog
Entry vestibule	64
Law enforcement waiting room	100
Courtroom exhibit/evidence storage	50
Jury Assembly Facilities	
Entry queuing area	10%–25% of jury call†
Reception/registration	0–300
Jury assembly room	12–20/juror
Forms counter	3%–10% of jury call†
Coffee and snack area	115
Staff workstation	48

DESCRIPTION	SIZE (NSF)
Court Administration	
Public counter queuing	14/person
Records viewing	24/person
Training rooms	
Large	1,100–1,600
Medium	800
Small	550
IS workroom and storage	150–300
Active records storage	per program
Inactive records storage	per program
Staff break area	per program
Lactation room	50
Private Office	
CEO	240–300
Large	150–200
Medium	120–150
Standard	100
Mediator	120–150
Workstation	
Large	64
Standard	48
Counter workstation	40–48
Conference Room	
Large (16–20 people)	420
Medium (8–12 people)	280
Small (4–6 people)	140

Table 2.2 continues on next page

Table 2.1 Space Standards *continued*

DESCRIPTION	SIZE (NSF)
Family Law Facility / Self-Help Center	
Waiting	14/person
Reception/sign-in	40–60
Orientation room	150–200
Workshop	375–400
Mediation room	120–150
Child waiting	120 + 20/child
Security station	50–80
Equipment storage	100
Alternative Dispute Resolution	
Reception/waiting	14/person
Mediation/arbitration rooms	200–400
Caucus room	100
Related Justice Agency Spaces	
Multipurpose rooms	*
Attorney convenience center	150–300
Volunteer workstation	48
Volunteer coordinator	100
In-Custody Defendant Receiving, Holding, and Transport	
Vehicle sally port	Size per bus dimensions*
Pedestrian sally port	50–100
Detention control room	100–250
Central holding cells	per holding metric†
Attorney interview room	per catalog
Courtroom holding core	per catalog‡
Storage rooms	40–100

DESCRIPTION	SIZE (NSF)
Public Areas	
Public queuing area	14/person
Security screening station	250
Information kiosk or counter	48
Courtroom public waiting	220 ea.
Public toilet rooms	*
Public transaction counter	40–60/station
Building Support Services	
Janitor closet	40
Loading dock	*
Trash and recycling area	*
Media area	100–120
Mailroom	150–300
Staff toilet with shower	80
Furniture/equipment storage	*
Telecommunications equipment room	150 min.
Telecommunications room	90 per 120,000 SF served
Electrical room	*
Electrical closet	*
Security operations center	150–400
Security equipment closet	100 min.

Note: For small courthouses, the areas should be scaled down, and some may not be required.

CEO = court executive officer.

IS = Information Systems.

* Per programmatic, technology, equipment, or code requirements.

† Sizes determined by the Court Facilities Advisory Committee's metric approved in December 2013.

‡ Courtroom holding cores are determined by the layouts in tool 2, Catalog of Courtroom Layouts for California Trial Courts.

DIVISION ONE: DESIGN CRITERIA

1 General Principles

2 COURTHOUSE ORGANIZATION

2.A Program Stacking and Zoning

2.B Space Standards

2.C Area and Volume Definitions

2.D Occupancy and Exiting Calculations

2.E Court Floor Plan for Occupancy and Existing Analysis

3 Site Design

4 Courthouse Security

5 Court Set

6 Jury Facilities and Court Administration

7 Special Services

8 In-Custody Defendant Receiving, Holding, and Transport

9 Public Spaces

10 Building Support Services

Space standards illustrations are diagrammatic; project-specific furniture and equipment requirements should take precedence.

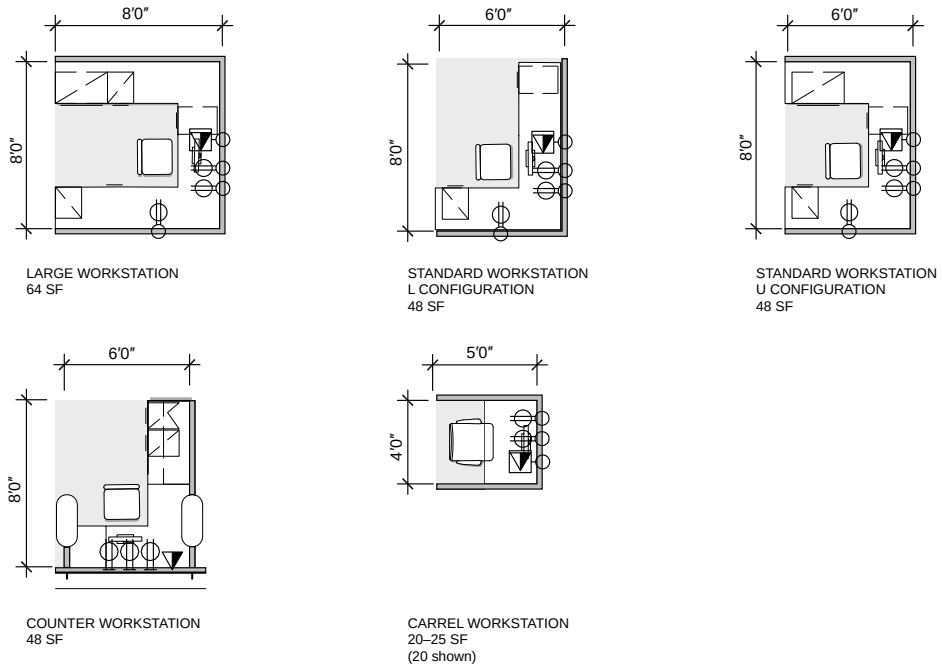


Figure 2.3 Open Plan Workstations

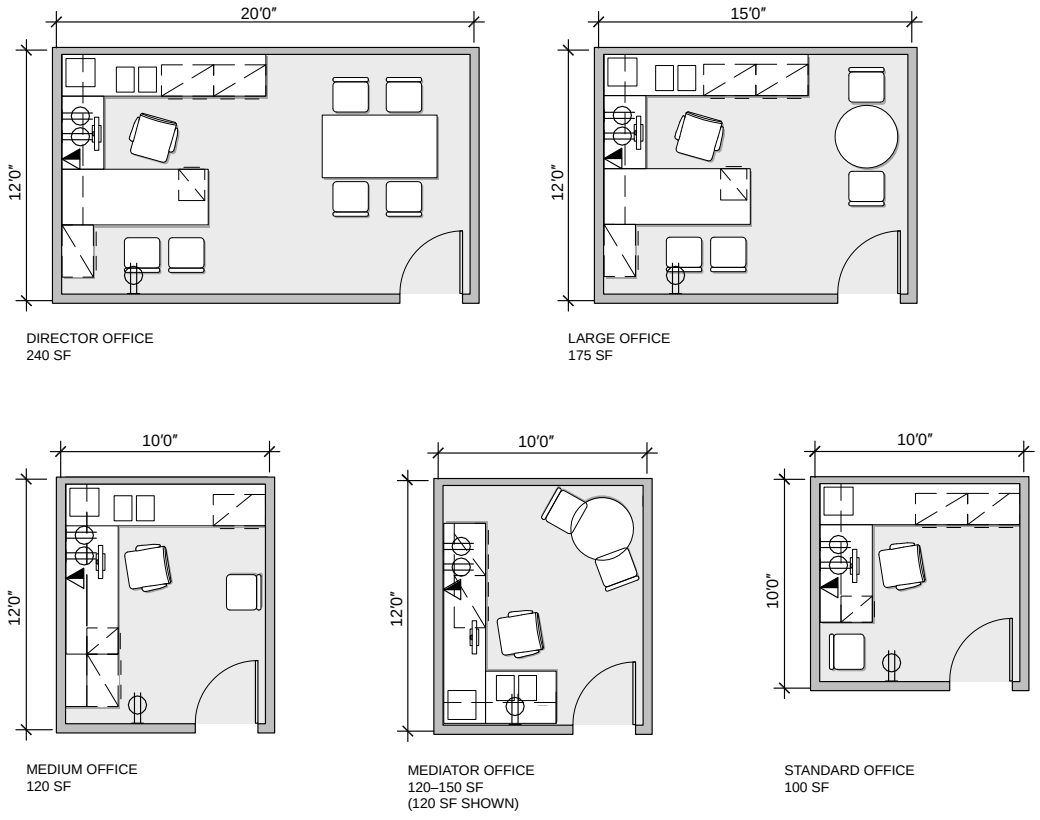


Figure 2.4 Offices

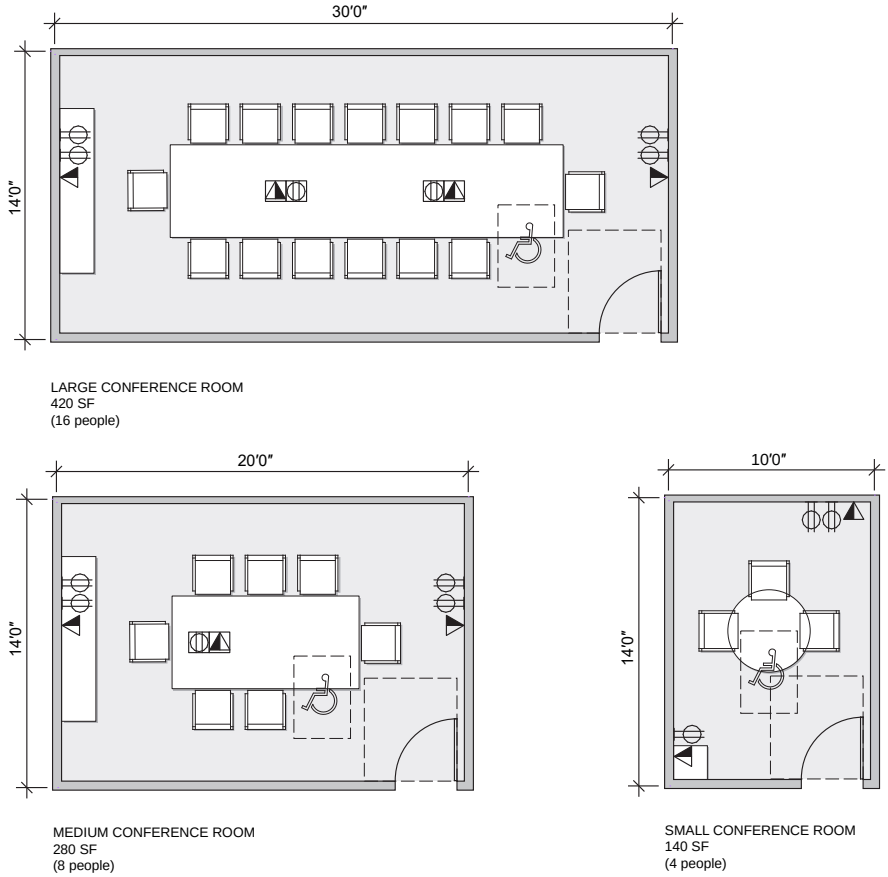


Figure 2.5 Conference Rooms

DIVISION ONE: DESIGN CRITERIA

1 General Principles

2 COURTHOUSE ORGANIZATION

2.A Program Stacking and Zoning

2.B Space Standards

2.C Area and Volume Definitions

2.D Occupancy and Exiting Calculations

2.E Court Floor Plan for Occupancy and Existing Analysis

3 Site Design

4 Courthouse Security

5 Court Set

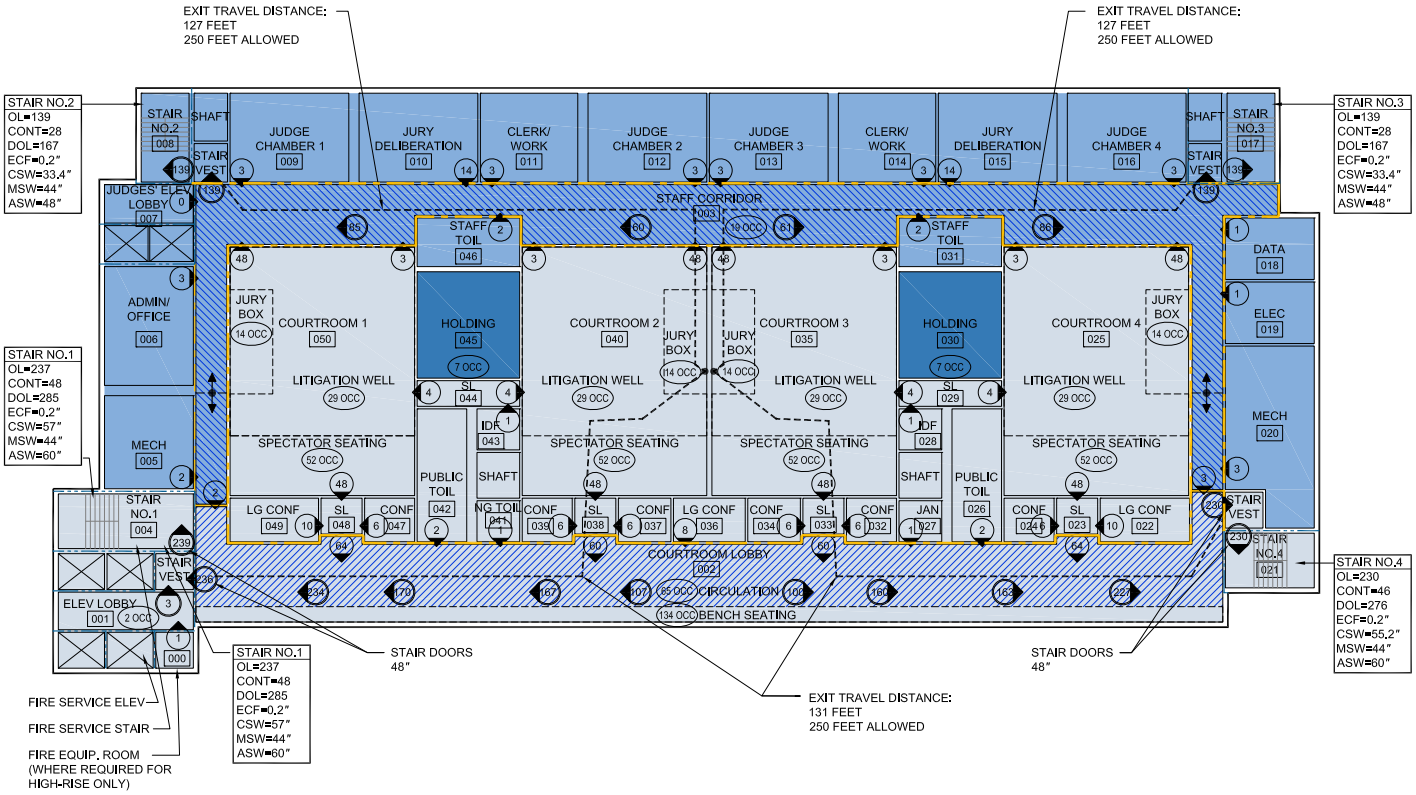
6 Jury Facilities and Court Administration

7 Special Services

8 In-Custody Defendant Receiving, Holding, and Transport

9 Public Spaces

10 Building Support Services



ABBREVIATIONS

OL	**OCCUPANT LOAD** AS CALCULATED PER SECTION 1004
CONT	**CONTINGENCY** (20% ADDED TO ARRIVE AT DESIGN LOAD OCCUPANCY)
DOL	**DESIGN OCCUPANCY LOAD** (120% OF OCCUPANT LOAD)
ECF	**EGRESS CAPACITY FACTOR*** PER SECTION 1005
CSW	**CALCULATED STAIRWAY WIDTH** PER 1005.3.1 (44 INCH MIN. REQ'D WHEN SERVING 50 OR MORE PER 1011.2)
MSW	**MINIMUM STAIR WIDTH** PER 1005.3.2 (44 INCH MIN. WHEN SERVING 50 OR MORE PER 1018.2 AND 1020.2)
ASW	**ACTUAL STAIR WIDTH** CLEAR DIMENSION BETWEEN STRINGERS
SL	**SOUND LOCK**
JAN	**JANITOR**
NG TOIL	**NONGENDER TOILET**
OCC	**OCCUPANTS**
CONF	**CONFERENCE**
LG CONF	**LARGE CONFERENCE**
MECH	**MECHANICAL**
ELEC	**ELECTRICAL**
ELEV LOBBY	**ELEVATOR LOBBY**

*FOR A-3 OCCUPANCIES THE EGRESS CAPACITY FACTOR IS:
- STAIRWAYS: 0.2 INCH PER 1005.3.1 EXCEPTION 1 WHEN BUILDING IS EQUIPPED WITH AN AUTOMATIC SPRINKLER SYSTEM AND AN EMERGENCY VOICE/ALARM COMMUNICATION SYSTEM
- OTHER EGRESS COMPONENTS (AISLES AND DOORWAYS): 0.15 INCH PER 1005.3.2 EXCEPTION 1 WHEN BUILDING IS EQUIPPED WITH AN AUTOMATIC SPRINKLER SYSTEM AND AN EMERGENCY VOICE/ALARM COMMUNICATION SYSTEM

DOOR SIZING

USING THE CALCULATIONS ABOVE FOR DOORWAYS (OTHER EGRESS COMPONENTS):
- EXIT STAIRS AND DOORS INTO THOSE STAIRS SHOULD BE DESIGNED WITH A 20% CONTINGENCY.
- A 36" DOOR (WHICH PROVIDES 32" CLEAR OPENING) CAN ACCOMMODATE 213 OCCUPANTS. (32"/0.15"=213.3)
- A 42" DOOR (WHICH PROVIDES 38" CLEAR OPENING) CAN ACCOMMODATE 253 OCCUPANTS. (38"/0.15"=253.3)
- A 48" DOOR (WHICH PROVIDES 44" CLEAR OPENING) CAN ACCOMMODATE 293 OCCUPANTS. (44"/0.15"=293.3)
- ALL DOORS SERVING FEWER THAN 200 OCCUPANTS ARE 36 INCHES WIDTH.
- ALL DOORS SERVING 200 TO 250 OCCUPANTS ARE 42 INCHES IN WIDTH.
- ALL DOORS SERVING 250 TO 290 OCCUPANTS ARE 48 INCHES IN WIDTH.
- NO EXIT SERVES MORE THAN 290 OCCUPANTS; ADDITIONAL EXITS SHOULD BE PROVIDED.
- DOORS SWINGS SHALL NOT REDUCE THE REQUIRED WIDTH OF CORRIDORS OR STAIRS BY MORE THAN 50%.

LEGEND

- 50 EXIT LOAD
- 160 ACCUMULATIVE EXIT LOAD
- 93 OCC ROOM OCCUPANCY FOR ROOMS/ SUITES WITH MORE THAN ONE EXIT
- A-3 OCCUPANCY
- B OCCUPANCY
- I-3 OCCUPANCY
- RATED CORRIDOR IN THE A-3 OCCUPANCY
- RATED CORRIDOR IN THE B OCCUPANCY
- 1-HOUR FIRE PARTITION
- 2-HOUR FIRE BARRIER

Figure 2.7 Court Floor Plan for Occupancy and Exiting Analysis

Table 2.3 Occupant Load Factors and Other Requirements

ROOM NUMBER	ROOM NAME	AREA	FUNCTION	OCCUPANT LOAD FACTOR	NET/ GROSS	NUMBER OF SEATS	OCCUPANT LOAD	DETAILS
000	FIRE EQUIPMENT ROOM	50	ACCESSORY/STOR/MECH	300	GROSS		1	
001	ELEV LOBBY	281	-	150	GROSS		0	PER JCC REQUIREMENTS
002	**COURTROOM LOBBY**							
002A	LOBBY SEATING	600	FIXED SEATING (200' BENCH)	NA		134	134	18" PER OCCUPANT
002B	LOBBY CIRCULATION	2,573	CIRCULATION/SEATING	40	NET		65	PER JCC REQUIREMENTS
003	STAFF (RESTRICTED) CORRIDOR	2,730	CIRCULATION/B OCC. GROSS	150	GROSS		19	PER JCC REQUIREMENTS
004	STAIR NO.1	225	-	NA			0	CIRCULATION/NOT OCCUPIED
005	MECH	315	ACCESSORY/STOR/MECH	300	GROSS		2	
006	ADMIN/OFFICE	402	BUSINESS	150	GROSS		3	
007	ELEV LOBBY	136	-	150	GROSS		0	PER JCC REQUIREMENTS
008	STAIR NO.2	162	-	NA			0	CIRCULATION/NOT OCCUPIED
009	JUDGE CHAMBER 1	402	BUSINESS	150	GROSS		3	PER JCC REQUIREMENTS
010	JURY DELIBERATION	277	FIXED SEATING	NA			14	
011	CLERK/WORK	329	BUSINESS	150	GROSS		3	PER JCC REQUIREMENTS
012	JUDGE CHAMBER 2	402	BUSINESS	150	GROSS		3	PER JCC REQUIREMENTS
013	JUDGE CHAMBER 3	402	BUSINESS	150	GROSS		3	PER JCC REQUIREMENTS
014	CLERK/WORK	329	BUSINESS	150	GROSS		3	PER JCC REQUIREMENTS
015	JURY DELIBERATION	277	FIXED SEATING	NA			14	
016	JUDGE CHAMBER 4	402	BUSINESS	150	GROSS		3	PER JCC REQUIREMENTS
017	STAIR NO.3	162	-	NA			0	CIRCULATION/NOT OCCUPIED
018	DATA	208	ACCESSORY/STOR/MECH	300	GROSS		1	
019	ELEC	208	ACCESSORY/STOR/MECH	300	GROSS		1	
020	MECH	615	ACCESSORY/STOR/MECH	300	GROSS		3	
021	STAIR NO.4	162	-	NA			0	CIRCULATION/NOT OCCUPIED
022	LG CONF	148	ASSEMBLY W/TABLES/CHAIRS	15	NET		10	
023	S.L. (SOUND LOCK)	56	-	NA			0	CIRCULATION/NOT OCCUPIED
024	CONF	83	ASSEMBLY W/TABLES/CHAIRS	15	NET		6	
025	**COURTROOM 4**							
025A	LITIGATION WELL	1,160	COURTROOMS-W/O FIX SEATS	40	NET		29	PER JCC REQUIREMENTS
025B	JURY BOX	169	FIXED SEATING			14	14	PER JCC REQUIREMENTS
025C	SPECTATOR SEATING	420	FIXED SEATING			52	52	PER JCC REQUIREMENTS
026	PUBLIC TOILET	250	-	150	GROSS		2	
027	JAN	67	ACCESSORY/STOR/MECH	300	GROSS		1	
028	IDF	67	ACCESSORY/STOR/MECH	300	GROSS		1	
029	S.L. (SOUND LOCK)	100	-	NA			0	CIRCULATION/NOT OCCUPIED
030	HOLDING	415	FIXED SEATING	NA		6	7	+1 FOR ADA
031	STAFF TOIL	160	-	150	GROSS		2	
032	CONF	83	ASSEMBLY W/TABLES/CHAIRS	15	NET		6	
033	S.L. (SOUND LOCK)	56	-	NA			0	CIRCULATION/NOT OCCUPIED
034	CONF	87	ASSEMBLY W/TABLES/CHAIRS	15	NET		6	
035	**COURTROOM 3**							
035A	LITIGATION WELL	1,160	COURTROOMS-W/O FIX SEATS	40			29	PER JCC REQUIREMENTS
035B	JURY BOX	169	FIXED SEATING		NET	14	14	PER JCC REQUIREMENTS
035C	SPECTATOR SEATING	420	FIXED SEATING			52	52	PER JCC REQUIREMENTS
036	LG CONF	119	ASSEMBLY W/TABLES/CHAIRS	15	NET		8	
037	CONF	87	ASSEMBLY W/TABLES/CHAIRS	15	NET		6	
038	S.L. (SOUND LOCK)	56	-	NA			0	CIRCULATION/NOT OCCUPIED
039	CONF	83	ASSEMBLY W/TABLES/CHAIRS	15	NET		6	
040	**COURTROOM 2**							
040A	LITIGATION WELL	1,160	COURTROOMS-W/O FIX SEATS	40	NET		29	PER JCC REQUIREMENTS
040B	JURY BOX	169	FIXED SEATING			14	14	PER JCC REQUIREMENTS
040C	SPECTATOR SEATING	420	FIXED SEATING			52	52	PER JCC REQUIREMENTS
041	N.G. TOIL (NON GENDER)	67	-	150	GROSS		1	
042	PUBLIC TOILET	250	-	150	GROSS		2	
043	IDF	67	ACCESSORY/STOR/MECH	300	GROSS		1	
044	S.L. (SOUND LOCK)	100	-	NA			0	CIRCULATION/NOT OCCUPIED
045	HOLDING	415	FIXED SEATING	NA		6	7	+1 FOR ADA
046	STAFF TOIL	160	-	150	GROSS		2	
047	CONF	83	ASSEMBLY W/TABLES/CHAIRS	15	NET		6	
048	S.L. (SOUND LOCK)	56	-	NA			0	
049	LG CONF	147	ASSEMBLY W/TABLES/CHAIRS	15	NET		10	
050	**COURTROOM 1**							
050A	LITIGATION WELL	1,160	COURTROOMS-W/O FIX SEATS	40	NET		29	PER JCC REQUIREMENTS
050B	JURY BOX	169	FIXED SEATING			14	14	PER JCC REQUIREMENTS
050C	SPECTATOR SEATING	420	FIXED SEATING			52	52	PER JCC REQUIREMENTS
TOTAL							**745**	

ADA = Americans with Disabilities Act.
JCC = Judicial Council of California.
NA = not applicable.

3

DIVISION ONE: DESIGN CRITERIA

SITE DESIGN

SECTION	TOPIC	PAGE
3.A	Objectives	3.2
3.B	Parking	3.2
3.C	Site and Building Security	3.5
3.D	Integration of Building and Site	3.5



Superior Court of California, County of Glenn
Willows, CA
© Drew Kelly Photography

Courthouse site design shall:

- Provide a safe yet accessible environment;
- Use site design to engage and reinforce the architectural design principles; and
- Provide secure public parking and appropriate loading areas, as determined by the program.

3.A OBJECTIVES

The selection of a site affects the building design, the building's users, and the surrounding area. To provide the courts with the best-located and most thoughtfully sited facilities, the project team must consider the following:

- Initial and life cycle costs, including site development and site purchase, which should include features that have ongoing maintenance costs (e.g., landscaping and irrigation).
- Convenience and access to public transportation, major roads, and parking. This consideration may predetermine the location in areas with existing infrastructure and transit systems.
- Utility infrastructure.
- Proximity to existing and planned justice agencies and detention facilities.
- Visibility and dignity of the location for an important civic building.
- Community and regional context. Local community groups' points of view must be considered in the design process. The siting of the court facility should take into consideration and ideally improve the existing context by complying with local restrictions and planning mandates such as compatibility with neighboring land use and view corridors.
- Effect on the environment. Selection of sites requiring reclamation and cleanup, or sites with historic buildings, may reduce environmental impact and serve as successful examples of reuse.
- Site orientation. Sites with a longer east-west axis are preferred, within plus or minus 15 degrees of geographical east-west, to allow a longer south-facing façade for optimal solar orientation.

The selection of an appropriate and successful site will serve the best interests of the courts, building users, and the community. The Judicial Council's Administrative Director has the final authority for approving a site for acquisition.

3.B PARKING

The transportation contexts in which trial court facilities will be designed and built vary greatly throughout the state and have changed over time. Certain communities limit the amount of parking to shift people into public transit; some communities are not served by public transit. Parking in surface lots or structures requires large amounts of land and funds for capital construction, operation, and maintenance. The public may equate convenient access to the justice system with easy access to inexpensive parking. Therefore, parking demands and solutions must be carefully considered for each new or expanded court building.

1. Public Parking

Study access to and availability of adjacent public parking for staff, visitors, and jurors before determining how to provide parking for each new or expanded court building. Study public transit service to the site, as parking demand may be correspondingly reduced. Consider shared parking agreements with adjacent property owners to use existing parking with demand times that might be different from those of the trial court. In areas where the public typically expects to pay for parking, it is consistent to expect visitors, jurors, and staff to pay prevailing rates for parking in adjacent public or privately operated parking lots and structures.

If public parking is provided, calculate parking requirements as 2.34 spaces per 1,000 building gross square feet, which is a metric that the Court Facilities Advisory Committee approved in July 2013 for planning onsite parking for use by the public, jurors, and court staff. Application of this metric does not preclude site-specific parking studies from being conducted or consideration of factors to reduce or increase onsite parking requirements, such as the following:

- The size and location of the courthouse, number of courtrooms, and types of matters to be heard.
- Public transit availability and expected public transit use. Staff parking demands can be reduced through traffic management plans, such as carpooling and public transportation programs.
- The average number of attorneys, visitors, and jurors expected daily and the expected length of stay for each type of parking user.
- Availability of parking within a three- to five-minute walk from the facility.
- The number of employees at the facility and existing employment agreements regarding provision of parking.
- The average number of official vehicles expected daily at the site.

Demand for parking spaces at court facilities is not well documented by empirical studies. Limited data gathered by Facilities Services staff indicates a parking demand for all courthouse users except judicial officers ranging from two to four spaces per 1,000 gross building square feet. There is no single standard for parking. The characteristics of individual court projects such as geographic location, number of courtrooms and court calendars, number of employees, proximity to downtown and transit systems, shared parking with other departments, and land uses—as well as users' perspectives of existing parking supply or transit—all affect parking demand.

Transportation demand management (TDM) measures can be effective in reducing parking demand if applied to the three components of parking demand: jurors, visitors, and employees. TDM measures may differ for each group. An integrated parking management strategy using more than one TDM measure can reduce parking demand by 20 to 40 percent and improve convenience for those who use the parking.

2. Secure Parking

a. Secure parking shall be provided adjacent to or within the courthouse for each judicial officer, the court executive officer, and a small number of staff who may require secure parking (see figure 3.1). If secure parking is provided beneath the courthouse, separate



Figure 3.1 Secure Parking, Vista Courthouse, San Diego County

DIVISION ONE: DESIGN CRITERIA

1 General Principles
2 Courthouse Organization
3 SITE DESIGN
3.A Objectives
3.B Parking
3.C Site and Building Security
3.D Integration of Building and Site
3 Site Design
4 Courthouse Security
5 Court Set
6 Jury Facilities and Court Administration
7 Special Services
8 In-Custody Defendant Receiving, Holding, and Transport
9 Public Spaces
10 Building Support Services

private elevator access from the secure parking area to private court spaces shall be provided. Other requirements for vehicular access to security areas are provided in chapter 4, Courthouse Security.

b. On-grade parking spaces, except for accessible spaces, shall be minimum 8′6″ × 18′ or the minimum required per CBC, whichever is greater. On-grade parking shall range from 280 to 300 gross square feet (GSF) per space, assuming a 24′ drive aisle for double-loaded 90-degree layouts and some stormwater pollution prevention plan elements (see figure 3.2). Parking space depth dimensions beyond the minimum 8′6″ × 18′ can overhang a planting area by up to 1′6″. Angled parking space layouts are also acceptable if designed efficiently.

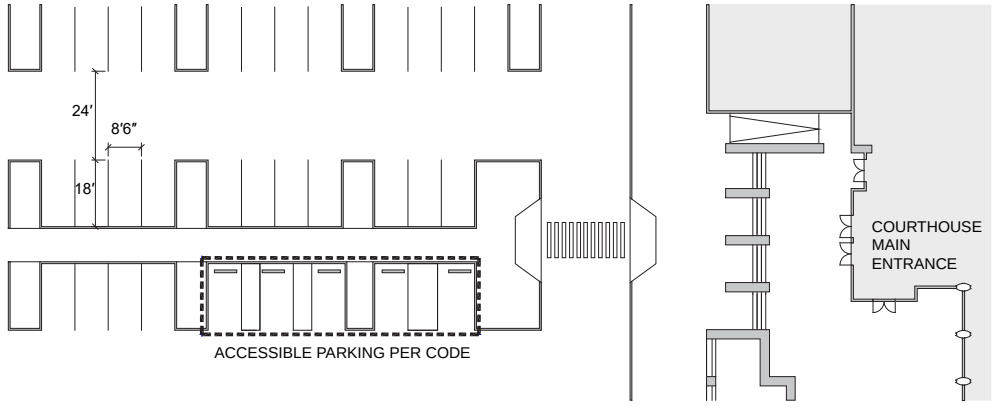


Figure 3.2 Parking Layout Showing Location of Accessible Spaces

c. Following are guidelines for structured parking space efficiencies:

- A 27′6″ × 64′ bay should range from 350 to 375 GSF/space.
- A 30′ × 64′ bay should range from 375 to 400 GSF/space.
- A 36′ × 30′ bay should range from 350 to 360 GSF/space.

d. The size of structural bay spacing, type of structure, column sizes, and location of columns in relation to the front or back of the parking space shall be considered.

3. Accessible Parking

Provide accessible parking spaces in the quantities required by code relative to the overall size of the parking lot and located adjacent (or as close as possible) to the building entry. Some project sites include no provision for public parking and are not immediately adjacent to existing public parking facilities with accessible parking spaces. For those sites, Facilities Services shall initiate a dialogue with the local government entity having jurisdiction over the adjoining public streets with the goal of developing accessible parking spaces on a public street adjoining the project and as close as possible to the building entry.

4. Loading Zones

Provide a loading zone for delivery vehicles that do not need to use the loading dock, or where a loading dock is not provided.

5. Solar Panels on Canopies

For projects that include solar panels, locate them on canopies in parking lots, or on the building's rooftop if space is available. Design the canopies to hold the weight of the panels

and for sturdy structural longevity. Provide adequate electrical connections to the building's main power. The canopies shall be tall enough for the fire lane clearance required by title 24 and the local fire department. The canopies shall be durable and last for the life of the overall courthouse facility. Necessary warranties shall be provided. Any onsite work and offsite fabrication shall be inspected by Judicial Council inspectors.

6. Electric Vehicle Charging Stations

Electric vehicle (EV) charging stations shall be provided as required by California Code of Regulations, title 24, in parking areas. Projects shall provide equitable distribution of EV charging stations among all parking areas provided. For public and semipublic charging stations, equipment shall incorporate antitheft and antivandalism features including cut-resistant charging cables with internal alarm wires, secure cable management systems, and tamper-resistant hardware. Charging stations must incorporate a mechanism for receiving payment for use, to be coordinated per the project-specific site requirements.

New projects shall provide infrastructure and facilities for EV charging stations, EV-capable spaces, and EV-ready spaces as outlined in title 24.

3.C SITE AND BUILDING SECURITY

Balancing security and openness is an essential site design principle. A building can provide a safe working environment without becoming a fortress isolated from the community. For specific security measures, see chapter 4, Courthouse Security.

3.D INTEGRATION OF BUILDING AND SITE

The following planning criteria shall apply to site design.

1. Sustainable Locations

Consideration should be taken of the environmental impact of siting decisions when making new facility investments; those concerns should be balanced with cost and security.

a. Consider site-specific, long-term climate change impacts such as drought, flood, wind, and wildfire risks.

b. Prioritize sites that offer robust transportation options—including walking, biking, and transit—to minimize the combined greenhouse gas emissions of the building and associated commuter and visitor transportation emissions over the project's life.

c. Leverage existing infrastructure, and align, where possible, with local and regional planning goals.

d. Protect natural, historic, and cultural resources.

2. Orientation

a. Consider airflow and microclimate when siting buildings:

- For instance, in hot climates, maintain airflow around buildings to reduce interior temperatures.
- Avoid creating enclosed areas, which can block airflow.
- Orient the buildings along an east-west axis for longer north- and south-facing façades.

DIVISION ONE: DESIGN CRITERIA

1 General Principles
2 Courthouse Organization
3 SITE DESIGN
3.A Objectives
3.B Parking
3.C Site and Building Security
3.D Integration of Building and Site
3 Site Design
4 Courthouse Security
5 Court Set
6 Jury Facilities and Court Administration
7 Special Services
8 In-Custody Defendant Receiving, Holding, and Transport
9 Public Spaces
10 Building Support Services

Scale and function of landscape materials shall be appropriate to the region, site climate, neighborhood context, security, and functional requirements of a California courthouse.

- Maximize solar orientation for outdoor seating and to cool the buildings. In hot climates, position the building on the site to minimize the solar exposure on façades enclosing permanently occupied space.
- Consider orientation for purposes relating to daylighting, glare, solar gain, and passive solar heating.

b. Orient main entrances of new buildings toward pedestrian areas to facilitate safe and barrier-free access.

c. Orient buildings to take advantage of views; conversely, for new buildings, do not block major view corridors. Orientation for views should not compromise optimal solar orientation.

d. Create spaces for programmed outdoor use, scaled for the intended activity. Locate outdoor sitting and service areas away from building air intake units to minimize the intake of smoke and exhaust fumes.

3. Massing

Building shape, size, and scale contribute to a facility's architectural and visual character. To convey human scale and not overwhelm court users, massing and scale of all-new construction shall be considered during planning and design.

a. Building height and coverage may respect local zoning regulations, although such regulations do not strictly apply to state buildings.

b. Detail of architectural elements of large buildings should maintain a sense of scale and sensitivity to the neighborhood context. Consider the visual and environmental effects that new and existing structures will have on the neighborhood and on existing buildings located in the sphere of influence caused by shading or reflectance, changes in airflow, and views to and from existing buildings.

4. Pedestrian Access

Access to and from the courthouse must be safe, convenient, and consistent with Universal Design principles.

5. Building Entrances

a. Provide a single building entrance for visitors, staff, and the public to facilitate cost-effective security operations (see figure 3.3). For large courthouse projects, the Court Facilities Advisory Committee may approve the addition of a second entrance, if warranted.

b. Provide a separate entrance for judges and bench officers. See chapter 4, Courthouse Security, for specific security requirements.

c. Provide two flagpoles prominently located near the public entrance and of a height scaled in accordance with

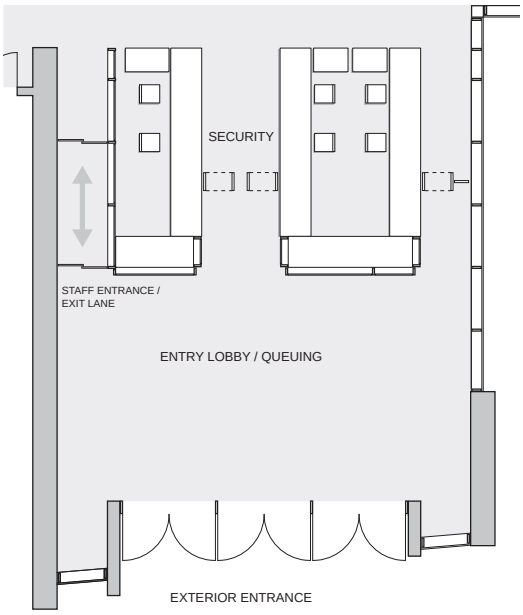


Figure 3.3 Illustration of a Single-Entrance Lobby for the Courthouse Building

the building position such that the flags unfurled on these poles will not interfere with the surveillance camera coverage or landscape trees. Provide one pole each for the State of California flag and the U.S. flag.

6. Site Utilities

a. Design the location and visibility of utilities to minimize impact on the landscape.

b. For service areas and above-grade utilities, including backflow preventers, standpipes, gas docks, and emergency generators:

- Ensure that locations accommodate long-term maintenance requirements and minimize conflicts with landscape design;
- Locate enclosures away from primary entries, or if not possible, cluster components and screen from entries and primary pedestrian paths using appropriate lighting, materials, and planting material; and
- Consider maintenance access and serviceability requirements for site-located equipment (e.g., consider access for fuel delivery trucks when locating emergency generators on the site).

c. For underground utilities, including electrical substations, manholes, controlled environment vaults, and steam service:

- If possible, consolidate under roads, walks, and plazas to minimize impact on the landscape;
- Locate surface hatches, utility covers, ventilation, and access elements within paved areas, but if planted areas are the only option, integrate into shrub and ground cover plantings to conceal appearance; and
- Conceal vault covers in modular paving areas.

7. Landscape Design

Provide a related group of landscape materials to promote continuity throughout the site. The following landscape design standards apply.

a. Configure landscape elements per Crime Prevention Through Environmental Design strategies. See chapter 4, Courthouse Security.

b. Provide visual focus for the public entry and the path to it with appropriate planting scale and plant placement.

c. Define outdoor spaces consistently and with appropriate scale and function throughout the premises.

d. Design landscaping features so as not to compromise video and staff surveillance of the building or create hiding places.

e. Avoid use of landscaping that abuts the building surface to prevent water leakage. Provide adequate moisture control along the foundation walls. For sloped sites, use appropriately sized and weighted landscape cover to prevent mulch runoff. The landscape cover selected by the design team shall remain in place during any typical weather event.

f. Provide adequate details for termination of the downspouts to avoid erosion of the landscaping below. Providing a minimum height of downspout termination is not acceptable; maximum height shall be considered.

DIVISION ONE: DESIGN CRITERIA

1 General Principles
2 Courthouse Organization
3 SITE DESIGN
3.A Objectives
3.B Parking
3.C Site and Building Security
3.D Integration of Building and Site
3 Site Design
4 Courthouse Security
5 Court Set
6 Jury Facilities and Court Administration
7 Special Services
8 In-Custody Defendant Receiving, Holding, and Transport
9 Public Spaces
10 Building Support Services

g. Green walls, planters on the roof, underground landscaped plazas, and green roofs are prohibited because of maintenance concerns. Water features and fountains are also not permitted.

h. Integrate green building and Leadership in Energy and Environmental Design (LEED) principles, when possible, in landscape and building design.

i. Use landscaping and building configuration to shade and provide sound, sun, and wind buffering for outdoor spaces and pedestrian areas. Provide shading on southern and western building elevations.

j. Consider surface parking lot shading in areas not already designed to incorporate solar carport systems, with a minimum of one canopy shade tree for every 10 parking spaces.

k. Consider using light-colored pavement (i.e., cool pavement), which has high solar reflectance (high albedo), to mitigate heat island effect.

l. Respect sustainable performance goals described in chapter 1.E, Sustainable Design, to reduce maintenance and irrigation requirements by giving preference to regionally appropriate plant species and using natural strategies to protect and restore water resources. If available, a nonpotable water connection with the local water utility system should be evaluated for use in landscape irrigation.

m. Use natural strategies to protect and restore water resources. Limit disruption to existing vegetated areas. To purify runoff and promote groundwater recharge, use natural stormwater treatment systems such as bioretention or bioswales with indigenous or climate-appropriate plants.

n. Design landscape elements to prevent unsightly damage by vandalism, birds, trash, transients, or skateboarders, where necessary.

o. Consider the maintenance requirements of tree and planting selections (i.e., pruning and seasonal cleanup requirements of selected vegetation species). Consider appropriateness of location for certain plant species relative to the site's climate and solar exposure. Select indigenous plants whenever possible. Consider the location of specific species within the site boundaries (e.g., tree species selected for parking lots should provide shade but not drop excessive debris on parked cars). Trees shall be planted at least 6' away from building exterior envelope to prevent damage to the structure from tree roots. All trees within 8' of the building shall include a root barrier.

p. Take into consideration the abundance of smokers at courthouses when selecting planting, drip irrigation systems, and mulch material. Dry mulch and certain plant types and grasses near walkways are vulnerable to fires from tossed cigarettes. Provide cigarette urns (secured to concrete pad or walk) at key areas of public access and gathering. Locate the cigarette urns at least 25' away from the building.

DIVISION ONE: DESIGN CRITERIA

4 COURTHOUSE SECURITY

SECTION	TOPIC	PAGE
4.A	Objectives	4.2
4.B	Design, Technology, and Operations	4.2
4.C	Factors Affecting Security Levels	4.3
4.D	Risk Assessment Procedures	4.4
4.E	Physical Security Planning Criteria	4.4
4.F	Structural Systems	4.13
4.G	Mechanical, Electrical, and Fire Protection Systems	4.15
4.H	Electronic Security Planning Criteria	4.16
4.I	Electronic Security Systems	4.20
4.J	Bullet-Resistant Glazing and Panels	4.23



Superior Court of California, County of Riverside
Menifee, CA
© Fotoworks/Benny Chan

"Courthouses must be a safe harbor to which members of the public come to resolve disputes that often are volatile. Once courthouses themselves are perceived as dangerous, the integrity and efficacy of the entire judicial process are in jeopardy."

Ronald M. George
Former Chief Justice
of California

For security relating to in-custody defendants, see chapter 8, In-Custody Defendant Receiving, Holding, and Transport.

For detailed system requirements, see tool 8, Security System Guidelines.

For electronic system infrastructure, see chapter 15, Electrical Criteria, and chapter 17, Network and Communication Systems.

Courthouse security planning must ensure a safe and secure environment for all users of the court and must protect the functions and assets of California court facilities. Balancing security, accessibility, and comfort in civic buildings presents myriad challenges. Security planning and design must anticipate terrorist events, chemical and biological attack, natural disasters, emergencies, power outages, crime, and workplace violence. It is of paramount importance that building systems be designed and maintained to protect public health and life safety. The design should provide direct egress routes for rapid and safe evacuation of building occupants to the outside. These guidelines represent best practices to maximize public security and personal safety. The security planning process is most effective when integrated into the courthouse design at an early stage. Terminology related to building level of protection and component damage levels is defined in *U.S. Army Corps of Engineers Protective Design Center Technical Report* PDC-TR 06-08 Rev. 1 and incorporated herein as referenced below.

4.A OBJECTIVES

Courthouse security planning and design shall be based on a site-specific risk assessment and will:

- Provide a safe and secure environment for all building occupants;
- Maintain continuous operations until building inhabitants can evacuate to a safer area;
- Provide security and confidentiality of critical information;
- Enable security and court personnel to maintain control during normal and disrupted operations; and
- Be responsive to the risk assessment.

4.B DESIGN, TECHNOLOGY, AND OPERATIONS

1. Approach

A comprehensive court facility security design approach integrates design, technology, and operations, including policies, procedures, and personnel. The most effective security approach is achieved when these three elements are coordinated during early project phases.

a. Design comprises architectural elements and engineering systems, including space planning, adjacencies, user group zoning, and passive physical protection; doors, locks, and site perimeter barriers; exterior lighting and egress and circulation system; and all building systems relating to building evacuation.

b. Technology includes electronic security systems and equipment, such as weapons screening, automated access controls, alarm monitoring, duress alarms, remote door and gate controls, and video surveillance.

c. Operations refers to policies and procedures for the court facility, security program management, security staffing, and employee training.

2. Elements

This chapter addresses design and technology planning criteria. When developing a facility security design approach, the project team must understand the essential role of operations and staffing levels because they are directly related to the ability to provide a safe environment and they affect annual operating costs and budgets. As figure 4.1 illustrates, architectural elements, electronic systems, and security staff and procedures are the significant elements of a security plan.

a. Security planning must consider and reflect security staffing levels at each facility. The project team shall develop a comprehensive plan with court administration and courthouse security personnel to understand operating policies, procedures, and projected security staffing levels (refer to chapter 8 regarding the sheriff's Operational Program Statement related to in-custody movement and detention).

b. Technology and electronic systems shall be coordinated with architectural and engineering systems and with building operations.

c. The Operational Program Statement, together with the risk assessment measures and the security and detention space program, is a key element of a comprehensive security approach, which shall be prepared for each new court building project—ideally in the program verification or predesign phase.

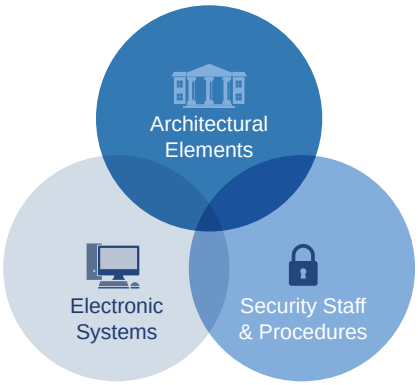


Figure 4.1 Security Plan Elements

4.C FACTORS AFFECTING SECURITY LEVELS

New court facilities vary in size, complexity, types of cases handled, threats, and geographic location. Court facilities may, in some instances, be colocated with other public or private uses. Security design may be influenced by:

- Size of court operation: Loss of use or destruction of a facility would have a significant impact on the courts and the community.
- Types of cases: Juvenile and family courts have a high risk of confrontation, assault, and violent behavior. Criminal courts require security measures to ensure safe handling of individuals in detention.
- Threats: History of incidents or threats may be interpreted as a site-specific increased risk factor. Intelligence from local police, the sheriff, the California Highway Patrol, and the Federal Bureau of Investigation shall also be considered.
- Location: Adjacent facilities, such as federal and public buildings, symbolic targets, and landmarks, may pose a threat to a court facility. High-crime neighborhoods, as identified by crime risk survey data, may result in increased security risks. Measures may be required to mitigate substandard site characteristics such as lack of building setback distances, limited parking arrangements, and sightlines from adjacent buildings or landscapes into chamber windows.

1. Courthouse Risks

The project team will provide appropriate security design elements and countermeasures to mitigate potential risk and damage under the findings and recommendations of the risk assessment conducted by the Judicial Council's Emergency Planning and Security Coordination unit. Refer to section 4.D, Risk Assessment Procedures. Per the National Center for State Courts, security risks for new courthouses include:

DIVISION ONE: DESIGN CRITERIA
1 General Principles
2 Courthouse Organization
3 Site Design
4 COURTHOUSE SECURITY
4.A Objectives
4.B Design, Technology, and Operations
4.C Factors Affecting Security Levels
4.D Risk Assessment Procedures
4.E Physical Security Planning Criteria
4.F Structural Systems
4.G Mechanical, Electrical, and Fire Protection Systems
4.H Electronic Security Planning Criteria
4.I Electronic Security Systems
4.J Bullet-Resistant Glazing and Panels
5 Court Set
6 Jury Facilities and Court Administration
7 Special Services
8 In-Custody Defendant Receiving, Holding, and Transport
9 Public Spaces
10 Building Support Services

CPTED = Crime Prevention Through Environmental Design

Basic CPTED Strategies

- Natural surveillance
- Natural and constructed access control
- Territoriality

- Violent or assaultive behavior directed against staff, judicial officers, the public, or detainees;
- Damage to physical facilities and theft of property, including money;
- Disruption of court activities; and
- Compromise of court process, including evidence, court records, jury sequester, and due process.

2. Capability to Increase Security

The facility must be designed to accommodate changes in security requirements. For example, if a high-profile or celebrity case is assigned to a court located in a small county, security needs may temporarily increase to levels higher than normally encountered.

National, regional, and local conditions and threat levels may also affect security requirements. Examples of increased security during heightened threat and alert levels include escalating screening capacity in the lobby and increasing building setback distances between building and vehicles to protect against vehicular threats.

4.D RISK ASSESSMENT PROCEDURES

1. The Emergency Planning and Security Coordination unit shall conduct a risk assessment for each project.
2. The risk assessment shall identify potential threats and vulnerabilities, consider the likelihood and potential consequences of an event occurring, and recommend mitigation measures.
3. The risk assessment report shall be reviewed by the Court Facilities Advisory Committee in predesign phase.
4. The assessment shall be used as the reference document for project-specific solutions prepared by the architects and engineers, such as environmental deterrents, blast-resistant requirements, and electronic monitoring and control measures, including video surveillance.

Table 4.1 lists mandatory requirements and those determined by the project-specific risk assessment. Table 4.2, as well as the principles and security measures described in this chapter, shall set the scope of electronic security design elements for the site and the court building.

4.E PHYSICAL SECURITY PLANNING CRITERIA

Security planning best practices for trial court buildings are described in this section. These practices provide the minimum physical security elements indicated or as modified and required by the project-specific risk assessment.

1. Crime Prevention Through Environmental Design

Permanent, effective, and visually appealing security planning solutions are the basis of Crime Prevention Through Environmental Design (CPTED). CPTED principles reinforce the ability of design and the built environment to minimize crime and the fear of crime and to improve the quality of life. There are three basic CPTED strategies:

- Natural surveillance: The placement of physical features, activities, and people to maximize visibility—for example, proper placement of windows overlooking sidewalks and parking lots and use of transparent vestibules at building entrances to divert persons

to reception areas—can decrease the likelihood of crime in the surrounding areas of the courthouse. This strategy can be supplemented with the use of security and police patrols and the application of closed-circuit television.

- Natural and constructed access control: Natural access control focuses on providing guided access through use of properly located entrances, exits, fencing, landscaping, sidewalks and roadways, signage, and lighting. This guidance helps deter access to a crime target and creates a perception of risk to a perpetrator.
- Territoriality: The use of physical attributes that express ownership—such as fencing, pavement treatments, signage, and landscaping—promotes a perception that these areas are controlled. In an area that is physically designed to protect designated space, people are more likely to challenge intruders or report suspicious activity, and the design itself causes intruders to stand out.

Designers must comply with the findings and recommendations of the risk assessment and accommodate their impact on the operational design criteria. They must apply CPTED principles in site and building master plans and in the early phases of architectural and landscape design.

2. Concentric Circles of Protection

The concept of concentric circles of protection is based on varying levels of protection originating at the site perimeter, building envelope, lobby areas, and interior specialty controlled areas, with the levels becoming increasingly more stringent as one proceeds through each level to reach the most critical areas. This concept establishes "intervention zones" between security levels; these zones provide an opportunity for control, detection, evaluation, and response to undesired activity or to intruders or other unauthorized individuals. Where possible, the facility design should establish distinct separation of areas with differing levels of security.

3. Site Selection and Design

Vehicular and adjacency threats may be a major concern at court facilities and must be considered during site selection and site design. The site must have a minimum 25′ setback between unscreened vehicle threats and buildings, unless otherwise determined by the risk assessment. Setback is the distance maintained between a structure or asset and the potential location of the explosive threat. Increasing setback distance greatly improves protection for the building and occupants because blast pressure and impulse quickly decay as a function of distance. See figures 4.2 and 4.3.

By way of illustration, improvised explosive devices weigh approximately 100 pounds per cubic foot. It is reasonable to assume that 10 to 50 pounds may be transported in a hand-carried package, 50 pounds may be surreptitiously concealed within a vehicle, and 100 to 500 pounds (or more) may be transported within a vehicle. Although these magnitudes may be significantly less than the weights of explosive that may be transported by the largest vehicles accessible to the site, they correspond to the reasonable levels of blast load intensity (based on site standoff distances) that normal building materials and any feasible upgrades to the building construction can reasonably be expected to withstand.

The setback distance is measured from the face of the building structure, enclosure, or both to the location of the nearest parked vehicle for the passive vehicle threat and to the location of the antiram perimeter for the moving vehicle threat (see 4.E.5, Site Security). Increased setback may also reduce the cost of blast hardening as required. Every foot of setback distance is critical.

DIVISION ONE: DESIGN CRITERIA

1 General Principles
2 Courthouse Organization
3 Site Design
4 COURTHOUSE SECURITY
4.A Objectives
4.B Design, Technology, and Operations
4.C Factors Affecting Security Levels
4.D Risk Assessment Procedures
4.E Physical Security Planning Criteria
4.F Structural Systems
4.G Mechanical, Electrical, and Fire Protection Systems
4.H Electronic Security Planning Criteria
4.I Electronic Security Systems
4.J Bullet-Resistant Glazing and Panels
5 Court Set
6 Jury Facilities and Court Administration
7 Special Services
8 In-Custody Defendant Receiving, Holding, and Transport
9 Public Spaces
10 Building Support Services

High-risk areas are those into which unscreened packages or vehicles may be brought.

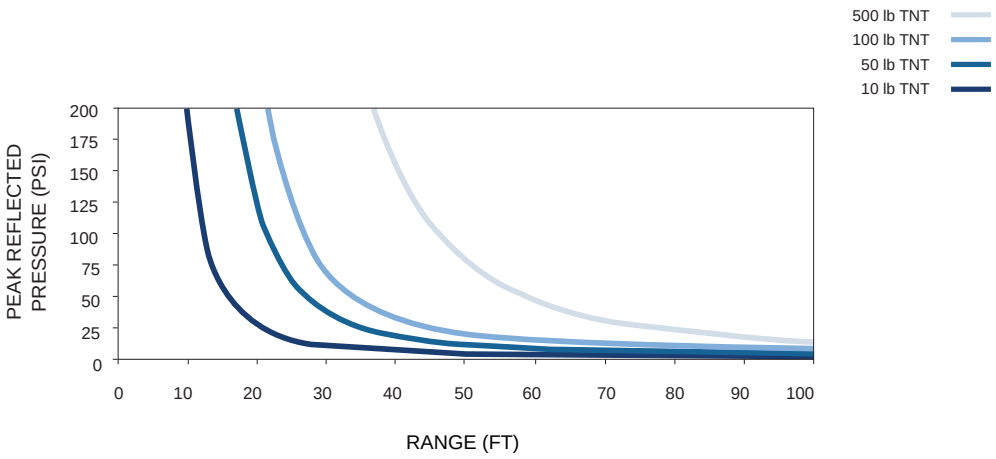
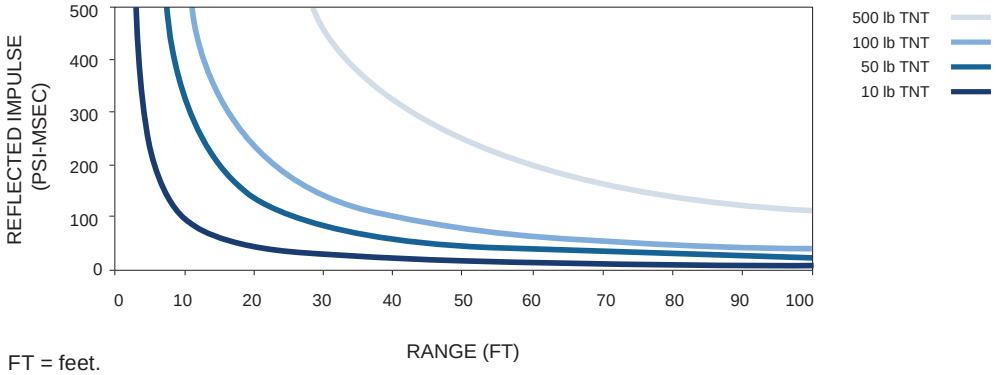


Figure 4.2 Peak Pressure Decay With Distance



FT = feet.

msec = millisecond.

psi = pounds per square inch.

Figure 4.3 Impulse Decay With Distance

Site the building so street configurations do not create a straight, head-on approach to the facility and adjacent facilities and so that functions do not pose significant risks or threats. Certain site configurations will require vehicle barriers (described under 4.E.5, Site Security).

4. Parking Security

a. Do not site public parking within or beneath the courthouse.

b. Provide a minimum 25′ setback of public parking from the courthouse, unless otherwise determined by the risk assessment.

c. If secure parking is provided in surface lots, provide a fence, visually screen, and separate these areas from public circulation pathways and parking.

d. For secure parking in surface lots not contiguous with the court building, provide a continuous path of travel to the secure entry to the courthouse. This exterior walkway is considered a part of the court building private circulation system (see chapter 2, Courthouse Organization). The secure parking area and path of travel shall be screened from view by the public or in-custody defendants.

e. Install a screen fence or wall in all secure parking surface lots and paths of travel that will deter scaling and climbing. Fence or wall shall be angled on top and a minimum of 8′ tall as modified by site conditions (e.g., adjacent slope, nearby equipment) or the project risk assessment.

f. Place all onsite (unsecured) parking as far from the building as possible. Reduce or eliminate adjacencies between occupied or critical areas and spaces accessible to screened or unscreened vehicles.

g. Minimize and control the number of vehicular access points into secure parking areas and sally ports.

h. Provide operable barriers at entries of exterior secure and service parking areas adjacent to the courthouse as well as interior secure parking areas.

i. Colocate loading dock and parking garage entries.

j. Provide a minimum 6″ of nonstructural architectural finish around all columns in or adjacent to interior secure parking.

k. If a screened vehicle threat is specified by the risk assessment, harden interior walls around interior secure parking areas where a 25′ distance to critical or occupied space is not provided. Heavy damage to these interior enclosure walls is acceptable if adjacent occupied or critical space is protected and the walls are not load bearing. If these interior enclosure walls are load bearing, they shall be limited to superficial damage unless a high-fidelity analysis can demonstrate sufficient service load carrying capacity following a blast event. Harden interior columns in or adjacent to interior secure parking and the floor above and below interior secure parking to resist loading up to and including the specified explosive where the spaces above or below are occupied or contain critical equipment. Interior secure parking areas should be considered to include sally ports.

5. Site Security

a. Employ CPTED principles.

b. Place any trash receptacles or public mailboxes outside the building setback distance.

c. Illuminate site perimeters, walkways, and drives.

d. Ensure that trees at partial or full projected growth do not impede lighting and security cameras throughout the site.

e. Restrict heights of landscaping to maintain natural surveillance. As a goal, avoid landscaping that will allow for concealment of packages 12″ tall within the building setback distance.

f. Protect utilities (gas, power, telephone) at entrance to the site through burial or concrete encasement.

g. Employ physical barriers to maintain setback distances, enhance perceived protection, and create a perception of the courthouse as a hard target. The risk assessment will specify either a passive (stationary) or moving vehicle threat as well as the location of each, if not uniform. For a moving vehicle threat, the level of antiram resistance will be determined by the risk assessment. Threat definition and barrier selection shall be based on ASTM Standard F2656. A passive vehicle threat may be deterred using curbs, no-parking signs, striping, and the like. A moving vehicle threat must be stopped at the minimum required setback distance using an antiram barrier. The designers must select

DIVISION ONE: DESIGN CRITERIA
1 General Principles
2 Courthouse Organization
3 Site Design
4 COURTHOUSE SECURITY
4.A Objectives
4.B Design, Technology, and Operations
4.C Factors Affecting Security Levels
4.D Risk Assessment Procedures
4.E Physical Security Planning Criteria
4.F Structural Systems
4.G Mechanical, Electrical, and Fire Protection Systems
4.H Electronic Security Planning Criteria
4.I Electronic Security Systems
4.J Bullet-Resistant Glazing and Panels
5 Court Set
6 Jury Facilities and Court Administration
7 Special Services
8 In-Custody Defendant Receiving, Holding, and Transport
9 Public Spaces
10 Building Support Services

a barrier system around the entire protected perimeter that will stop the identified vehicular threat. Consider traffic pattern and flow relative to the site configuration. The moving vehicle threat should minimally be considered opposite pedestrian building entrances and at vehicle entrances to loading docks, sally ports, and underground parking.

h. Design barrier systems consisting of landscaping elements, fixed outdoor furniture, grade changes, planters, walls, bollards, or other antiram designs that provide the required antiram resistance and are integrated into the site or building architecture but shall not be an impediment to visual surveillance by law enforcement.

6. Building Layout

The building plan shall minimize vulnerabilities through appropriate space planning and adjacencies.

a. Locate lobbies and delivery areas outside the main building footprint or in an exterior bay, when possible, and away from densely occupied spaces and critical facilities.

b. Provide one shared staff and public entrance point to reduce weapons-screening operational requirements. Provide a secure path from the judges' secure parking area to judges' chambers.

c. Provide natural or constructed surveillance for building access points.

d. Protect buildings from vehicular threats. Public parking is not allowed within or directly adjacent to the building.

e. Separate high-risk areas—including an unscreened lobby, loading docks, mailrooms, vehicle sally ports, and secure parking garages—from occupied spaces, critical utilities, and building systems needed to ensure rapid and safe building evacuation, including electrical, mechanical, and fire protection equipment. Do not place critical utilities at exterior walls or within 25′ of high-risk areas. Do not locate occupied areas within 25′ of high-risk areas.

f. Locate emergency generators at least 50′ from the primary electrical source.

g. Colocate the loading dock and mailroom toward the building exterior.

h. Locate all emergency egress away from high-risk areas. Provide redundant emergency egress exits, but do not cluster routes.

i. Stack critical areas and supporting utilities.

j. Provide ductile materials in emergency egress pathways to minimize debris.

7. Courtrooms, Judge's Chambers, and Jury Deliberation Rooms

a. For courtrooms, provide bullet-resistant panels within the podium and bench for judge, court security officer (CSO), clerk, and witness stand (see 4.J, Bullet-Resistant Glazing and Panels).

b. Minimize windows with direct line of sight from public areas, circulation zones, and parking garages to prevent observation of activities, threat exposure, or communication with courtroom occupants.

c. Where exterior windows are provided, provide ballistic glazing as determined by the risk assessment (see section 4.J).

8. Public Transaction Counters

Outdoor or unsecured public transaction counters shall be provided with bullet-resistant wall panels, transaction glazing, and pass-through drawers (see section 4.J).

9. Lobby and Waiting Areas

a. Place unsecured lobby areas outside the main building footprint or in an exterior bay so that a blast will not damage the building frame or critical court functional areas.

b. Eliminate trash and mail receptacles or other areas of concealment in the unscreened lobby areas.

c. Optimize throughput with the level of staffing to be provided. Staffing level for screening is a primary consideration in lobby screening design.

d. Design lobby, queuing area, screening lanes, and exit lanes to accommodate direct visual surveillance by staff and security officers. Optimally, an exit lane should be located adjacent to a regularly staffed (incoming) screening lane.

e. Design lobby for increased levels of security; this design may include additional screening areas or restriction of openings into secure areas.

f. Provide physical barriers and indirect circulation between unsecure and secure space to minimize cross contamination of screened and unscreened persons and the introduction of harmful agents or weapons.

g. Provide a minimum 6″ nonstructural architectural finish around all columns in or adjacent to the loading dock and mailroom.

h. If explosive screening is provided and a hand-carried satchel threat is specified by the risk assessment, harden interior walls around the lobby screening area as well as the adjacent lobby or other space into which blast pressures may propagate. Heavy damage to these interior enclosure walls is acceptable as long as adjacent occupied or critical space is protected and the walls are not load bearing. If these interior enclosure walls are load bearing, they shall be limited to superficial damage unless a high-fidelity analysis can demonstrate sufficient service load–carrying capacity following a blast event. The lobby is considered transient and is not required to be protected from the prescreening area. Harden the interior columns in or adjacent to the prescreening area and the floor above and below the unsecured lobby areas to resist loading up to and including the specified satchel explosive threat located at the lobby floor level where the spaces above or below are occupied or contain critical equipment.

10. Evidence and Exhibit Storage Rooms

a. Locate evidence and exhibit storage rooms in private circulation areas.

b. Design rooms to have full-height partitions and hard ceilings and be secured using keyed locks.

c. Include dual-authentication card readers with personal identification numbers (PINs) and video surveillance at room entry doors.

11. Loading Dock and Mailroom

a. Control access to loading dock area by means of operable barriers at entries.

b. Where feasible, place loading docks and the mailroom in the exterior bay, and provide a means for venting gas pressures that may result from an internal detonation. If not possible, alternatives should be considered, such as screening incoming packages and

DIVISION ONE: DESIGN CRITERIA

1 General Principles
2 Courthouse Organization
3 Site Design
4 COURTHOUSE SECURITY
4.A Objectives
4.B Design, Technology, and Operations
4.C Factors Affecting Security Levels
4.D Risk Assessment Procedures
4.E Physical Security Planning Criteria
4.F Structural Systems
4.G Mechanical, Electrical, and Fire Protection Systems
4.H Electronic Security Planning Criteria
4.I Electronic Security Systems
4.J Bullet-Resistant Glazing and Panels
5 Court Set
6 Jury Facilities and Court Administration
7 Special Services
8 In-Custody Defendant Receiving, Holding, and Transport
9 Public Spaces
10 Building Support Services

Lobby Considerations

- Limit adjacencies between the unsecured portions of lobby and court offices or jury assembly spaces.
- Consider potential for mail and package deliveries to be brought in through the lobby in smaller courthouses.

Minimum Prescriptive Design Requirements

- Debris-mitigating materials
- Ductile systems
- Standoff to critical building elements
- Forced entry protection
- Bullet resistance

Performance-Based Design Requirements

- Apply when specified by risk assessment.
- Use blast-resistant façade.
- Harden critical building elements.
- Protect occupied space and critical systems from high-risk areas.

mailing via the lobby or at a remote facility. Locate critical and occupied space at least 25′ away from the loading dock and mailroom.

c. Provide a minimum 6″ architectural cover around all columns in or adjacent to the loading dock, shipping/receiving area, and mailroom.

d. If explosive screening is provided and a package threat is specified by the risk assessment, harden interior walls around the loading dock, shipping and receiving areas, and mailroom, where a 25′ distance to critical or occupied space is not provided. Heavy damage to these interior enclosure walls is acceptable as long as adjacent occupied or critical space is protected and the walls are not load bearing. If these interior enclosure walls are load bearing, they shall be limited to superficial damage unless a high-fidelity analysis can demonstrate sufficient service loadcarrying capacity following a blast event. Harden interior columns in or adjacent to the loading dock, shipping and receiving areas, and mailroom and the floors above and below them to resist loading up to and including a satchel explosive at the floor level or on the dock where the spaces above or below are occupied or contain critical equipment.

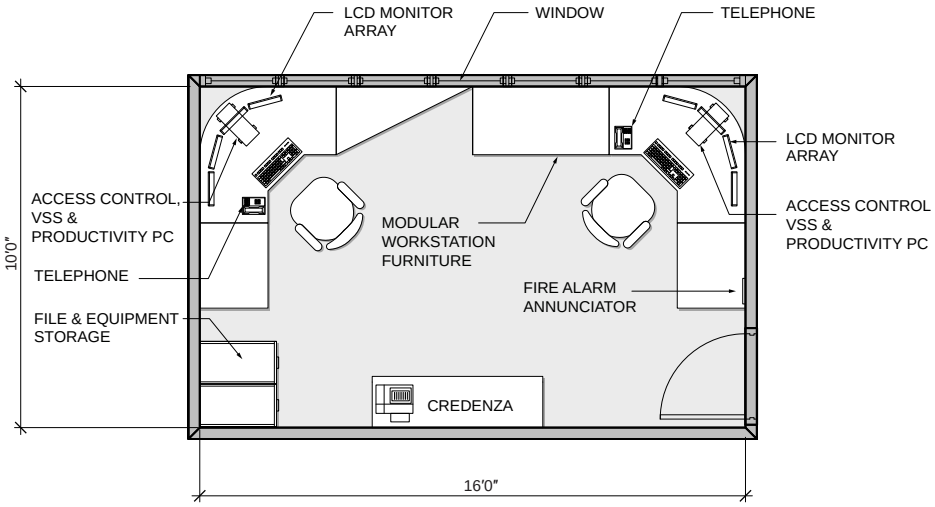
12. Building Security Operations Center

a. Locate the security operations center (SOC) to allow visual monitoring of the entrance screening area with a direct line of sight and monitoring and operation of electronic security systems. See figure 4.4. This space is not required in small court facilities.

b. Keep fire command centers, required with high-rise life-safety systems, separate from the security operations center.

c. If the SOC has a window overlooking the main entrance, weapons screening, and/or entrance queuing, install ballistic glazing as determined by the risk assessment (see section 4.J). Glazing must use mirror tint or other means of obscuring vision into the SOC.

d. Provide bullet-resistant paneling for the walls.



LCD = liquid crystal display.

PC = personal computer.

VSS = video surveillance system.

Figure 4.4 Plan of Security Operations Center

13. Building Envelope

a. The exterior building envelope shall be designed to minimize vulnerabilities and protect occupants from flying debris entering the building in the event of an external blast. The minimum prescriptive requirements, as described in section 4.E.13.1, must be provided on all projects.

b. The risk assessment will specify whether a performance-based design approach is also required, in which case an unscreened exterior vehicle threat may be specified. If a performance-based approach to building hardening is required, the exterior façade systems constituting the building envelope shall resist loading up to and including the actual blast loads on the façade calculated for the specified unscreened exterior vehicle threat, up to a maximum air-blast design load of 4 psi peak pressure and 28 psi-msec impulse.

c. Negative-phase blast loading effects shall be considered when rebound is a design consideration under blast loading. Negative-phase blast loading shall be determined assuming the charge size defined in the project-specific risk assessment and the analytical methods defined in United Facilities Criteria (UFC) 3-340-02.

13.1 Minimum Prescriptive Requirements

a. Glass: Laminate the innermost pane of all exterior glass. Alternatively, the glass makeup (i.e., both inner and outer lights of insulated glass unit) may be panes of monolithic fully tempered glass. If monolithic fully tempered glass is to be used in lieu of laminated glass, then the only requirement is that the entire makeup be composed of fully tempered glass.

b. Windows: Do not install operable windows.

c. Doors: Lock and monitor all unscreened perimeter doors.

d. Fenestration: Limit building envelope fenestration at critical areas such as courtrooms, chambers, and jury deliberation rooms, especially at the first level.

e. Building exterior: Minimize blast effects by using convex shapes (toward exterior) and limited reentrant corners.

f. Bullet-resistant glazing: Provide bullet-resistant exterior glazing in judicial chambers and courtrooms to the extent required by the risk assessment and available line of sight from surrounding street and nearby buildings. See section 4.J.

g. Openings security: Provide forced entry protection at the first floor. Forced entry rating shall satisfy ASTM Standards F588 for windows, F476 for swinging doors, and F842 for sliding doors, as specified by the risk assessment, including required resistance grade.

h. Walls: Use ductile systems that will minimize flying debris entering occupied spaces.

13.2 Performance Requirements

a. Glass: Design exterior glass to achieve a blast hazard rating of Low as defined by ASTM Standard F1642 in response to the specified blast loading. See table 4.3 for rebound response requirements. Ideally, the glass pane shall be as weak as possible so as not to transmit additional load to the frames, mullions, and anchorage. Structural silicone sealant shall be used along the exterior perimeter of the pane to adhere the glass to the frame.

DIVISION ONE: DESIGN CRITERIA

1 General Principles
2 Courthouse Organization
3 Site Design
4 COURTHOUSE SECURITY
4.A Objectives
4.B Design, Technology, and Operations
4.C Factors Affecting Security Levels
4.D Risk Assessment Procedures
4.E Physical Security Planning Criteria
4.F Structural Systems
4.G Mechanical, Electrical, and Fire Protection Systems
4.H Electronic Security Planning Criteria
4.I Electronic Security Systems
4.J Bullet-Resistant Glazing and Panels
5 Court Set
6 Jury Facilities and Court Administration
7 Special Services
8 In-Custody Defendant Receiving, Holding, and Transport
9 Public Spaces
10 Building Support Services

Protective Structural Design

- Prescriptive threat-independent approach
- Redundant and ductile structural systems
- Resistance for disproportionate and progressive collapse
- Ductile detailing and failure modes

Courtroom doors

Refer to Litigation Area under 5.D, Courtroom Components, for a discussion of security measures.

Table 4.3 Summary of Building Envelope Performance Requirements

Element	Performance Requirement	Design for Rebound?
Glass	Blast hazard rating of Low, as defined by ASTM F1642*	Only if required by project-specific requirements.
Window mullions, frames, and anchorage	Rotation of mullion ends shall be a maximum of 3 degrees (L/40 maximum deflection)*	Yes
Doors and door anchorage	Performance requirement for doors to be determined on a project-specific basis*,†	‡
Nonglazed façade systems	Transfer reaction forces back to the building structure without failure*, §	§

* See section 4.E.13.2 for other requirements.

† Performance objectives may vary by door type and desired level of protection.

‡ Doors exhibiting Category III performance or worse as defined in ASTM F2247 shall be designed for rebound only if required by project-specific requirements. Doors exhibiting Category II performance or better as defined in ASTM F2247 shall be designed for rebound.

§ Parallels can be drawn between glazed and nonglazed façade systems: A low level of protection should be provided for glass/paneling, and a medium level of protection should be provided for the supporting framing system. Rebound should be considered in the design of the supporting framing system and anchorage; rebound of the glass/paneling should be considered only if required by project specifications.

b. Window mullions, frames, and anchorage: Design frames and anchorage to resist the calculated blast load intensity. Provide calculations or explosive testing results of identical systems to demonstrate that the façade components can resist the specified tributary blast loads without failure, including the dismemberment or premature ejection of the glass panels. The allowable rotation of mullion ends in response to the specified blast loading shall be a maximum of 3 degrees (L/40 maximum deflection). Design components using allowable stresses equal to the average expected dynamic yield strength of their respective materials; average strength factor (ASF) and dynamic increase factor (DIF) values defined in the most recent version of ASCE 59 may be used to transform minimum specified strengths to average expected dynamic strengths. Aluminum or steel mullions are preferred. Typically, curtain wall systems, including unitized systems, can be modified with deeper or thicker sections than generally used. A clear load path must be provided from the glass to the primary structure.

c. Consider blast protection early in design for proper layout of architectural features. Clearly define the areas to be provided with no-spall versus low-spall glass. Low-spall glass shall be used for areas that are not required to meet UL 752. Contractor shall provide instructions for proper cleaning of no-spall and low-spall glass as well as demarcation to prevent the use of inappropriate cleaning products on ballistic and bullet-resistant glazing.

d. Doors: Design the operable door portion that is exposed to an explosive threat to consist of heavy-gauge (14 gauge or greater) metal and debris-mitigating materials (e.g., laminated glass adhered with structural silicone). The stationary frame shall be designed to develop the tributary blast load reaction forces for the design blast load. Calculations or explosive testing results of identical systems shall demonstrate that the frame components are capable of resisting the specified tributary blast loads without failure.

e. Nonglazed façade systems: Design components using ductile materials to withstand the specified blast load and transfer reaction forces back to the building structure without failure. Refer to PDC-TR 06-08, Rev. 1 (Jan. 7, 2008), for appropriate response limits.

4.F STRUCTURAL SYSTEMS

1. Protective Structural Design

Protective structural design enables building occupants to evacuate the building safely and rapidly during an emergency, especially if part of the building is subject to a blast or otherwise damaged or destroyed. The goal is to avoid progressive collapse by designing a structure that will not collapse if one or more structural members are damaged, fail, or are destroyed. This threat-independent approach is intended to ensure redundant structural design.

a. If the risk assessment specifies an exterior vehicle explosive threat or a hand-carried package threat (and associated magnitudes), the structural members that may be exposed to blast loading must also be designed to provide the specified performance for loading up to both (1) the blast load defined by the project-specific risk assessment and (2) the blast load defined within this guidance document (see section 4.E.13.b).

b. Primary structural members that may be exposed to blast loading shall be designed to resist their tributary loads either by remaining elastic or through the formation of a ductile failure mechanism. If the member is designed to remain elastic under the specified blast load, the capacity of nonductile modes shall include a 1.5 factor of safety for the calculated force / moment demands. Redundant load paths shall be provided where the governing limit state is still found to be nonductile. Secondary structural members may sustain a localized breach in response to near-contact detonations; however, the extent of damage shall be limited to the structural bay in proximity to the event and shall not precipitate a disproportionate collapse.

c. Negative-phase blast loading effects shall be considered when rebound is a design consideration under blast loading. Negative-phase blast loading shall be determined assuming the charge size defined in the project-specific risk assessment and the analytical methods defined in UFC 3-340-02.

2. Guidelines for Improved Structural Performance

The following general guidelines shall be followed to improve structural performance in the event of an explosion.

a. Avoid overhangs with occupied space above.

b. Provide structural redundancy and alternative load paths to mitigate the potential for catastrophic failure stemming from blast loads.

c. Minimize horizontal and vertical structural irregularities.

DIVISION ONE: DESIGN CRITERIA

1 General Principles
2 Courthouse Organization
3 Site Design
4 COURTHOUSE SECURITY
4.A Objectives
4.B Design, Technology, and Operations
4.C Factors Affecting Security Levels
4.D Risk Assessment Procedures
4.E Physical Security Planning Criteria
4.F Structural Systems
4.G Mechanical, Electrical, and Fire Protection Systems
4.H Electronic Security Planning Criteria
4.I Electronic Security Systems
4.J Bullet-Resistant Glazing and Panels
5 Court Set
6 Jury Facilities and Court Administration
7 Special Services
8 In-Custody Defendant Receiving, Holding, and Transport
9 Public Spaces
10 Building Support Services

d. Prevent a single point of failure of the building structure by avoiding large transfer girders or locating them away from areas that may be exposed to blast loading.

e. Select a ductile structural system. Preferred structural systems include moment frame steel structures, steel frames with shear walls, braced steel frames, and reinforced concrete beam and slab systems with ductile detailing.

f. Design structures greater than two stories tall to resist progressive collapse using the alternate-path method, which requires the structure to withstand the threat-independent removal of any first-floor exterior column, one at a time, or one bay width of exterior load-bearing walls, one at a time, without precipitating a disproportionate extent of damage. Give consideration to ductile moment-resisting frame lateral systems at the exterior of the building. Ensure that alternate-path analysis methods for demonstrating a structure's resistance to progressive collapse conform to UFC 4-023-03, Design of Buildings to Resist Progressive Collapse. Remove columns spaced closer than 30 percent of the largest bay dimension in the same alternate-path analysis.

g. Assess structural members that may be exposed to blast loading for both direct blast loading and the effects of rebound as specified in table 4.2. Performance requirements shall conform to a medium level of protection as described in PDC-TR 06-08 Rev. 1, Single Degree of Freedom Structural Response Limits for Antiterrorism Design, unless noted otherwise in table 4.4.

Table 4.4 Summary of Structural System Performance Requirements

Component *	Component Damage Limit†	Design for Rebound?
Primary structural component (e.g., load-bearing walls, columns, girders)	Superficial	Yes‡
Secondary structural component (e.g., non-load-bearing masonry walls)	Moderate	Yes‡
Nonstructural component (e.g., partitions, furniture, equipment, light fixtures)	Moderate	Only if required by project specifications§
Non-load-bearing interior enclosure walls	Heavy	Only if required by project specifications‖

* Component descriptions can be found in table 2-3 of PDC-TR 06-08 Rev. 1.

† The *CTCFS* generally requires that the performance of structural members conform to a medium level of protection (see section 4.F.2.g). For this level of protection, PDC-TR 06-08 Rev. 1 assigns a superficial damage limit to primary structural components and a moderate damage limit to secondary and nonstructural components. The use of a heavy damage limit for non-load-bearing interior enclosure walls is permitted by this guidance document in select instances, as described in sections 4.E.4., 4.E.9.h, and 4.E.11.d.

‡ The *CTCFS* generally requires that structural members subject to blast loads are evaluated for the effects of rebound (see section 4.F.2.g).

§ Although the damage limit is set to moderate to minimize hazards to occupants and follows the guidance of PDC-TR 06-08 Rev. 1, assessment for rebound is required only if necessary per project-specific guidelines because most nonstructural components are generally symmetric and symmetrically anchored.

|| Heavy damage corresponds with a low level of protection. Since non-load-bearing interior enclosure walls are treated as sacrificial within this guidance document, the design for rebound is required only if necessary per project-specific guidelines.

h. Design and detail all flexural elements, their connections, and their splices such that no brittle failure mode limits the capacity of the section. Unless the element is designed to remain elastic in response to blast loading, ductile failure modes shall be the governing failure mode for flexural elements and their connections and splices. If the elements are designed to resist the blast loads elastically, the design of nonductile modes shall include a 1.5 factor of safety on the calculated forces or moment demand on the member.

i. Design primary structural member connections to ensure the capacity of the connection is governed by a ductile failure mode. This requirement can be met by including a 1.5 factor of safety on the design of nonductile modes and ensuring that a ductile failure mode is found to be the governing limit state.

j. Harden floor systems separating high-risk areas and occupied court areas to withstand the effects of the specified explosive, as per the risk assessment, located within an adjacent structural bay. Design floor slabs for upward forces (direct blast loading for slabs above high-risk areas and rebound loading for slabs below high-risk areas). The floor slab reinforcement in both the top and bottom mat shall be continuous and symmetric.

k. Design structural columns in high-risk areas to resist the specified explosive, as per the risk assessment, located 3′ away.

l. Design wall elements that may be exposed to blast loading as one-way systems that span from floor to floor, and do not attach them to columns.

m. Fully grout and reinforce concrete masonry unit (CMU) walls that may be exposed to blast loading, with connections designed to allow full development of capacity at the supports.

4.G MECHANICAL, ELECTRICAL, AND FIRE PROTECTION SYSTEMS

Mechanical, electrical, and fire protection systems are critical security elements that must remain functional until all building occupants are able to evacuate safely and completely during an emergency.

Critical systems include fire protection, air-handling systems to evacuate smoke and positively pressurize egress stairs and vestibules, emergency communication systems, emergency lighting (especially at means of egress), and emergency power to ensure that these systems are functional in the event of a power outage.

1. Locate critical utilities as far as possible from high-risk areas. Do not install utilities within 25′ of public parking areas, an unscreened lobby, loading docks, or mailrooms. Stack critical areas and their supporting utilities.

2. Locate power supply transformers and emergency generators away from high-risk areas—below grade, where possible—for best protection. If exterior transformers are required, locate them in an enclosure or fenced area with security locks, emergency lighting, and

DIVISION ONE: DESIGN CRITERIA

1 General Principles
2 Courthouse Organization
3 Site Design
4 COURTHOUSE SECURITY
4.A Objectives
4.B Design, Technology, and Operations
4.C Factors Affecting Security Levels
4.D Risk Assessment Procedures
4.E Physical Security Planning Criteria
4.F Structural Systems
4.G Mechanical, Electrical, and Fire Protection Systems
4.H Electronic Security Planning Criteria
4.I Electronic Security Systems
4.J Bullet-Resistant Glazing and Panels
5 Court Set
6 Jury Facilities and Court Administration
7 Special Services
8 In-Custody Defendant Receiving, Holding, and Transport
9 Public Spaces
10 Building Support Services

Refer to table 4.4 for security requirements by area and space type and the Judicial Council's *Security Systems Design Criteria Guide* for specific information regarding security system requirements.

Electronic security systems shall be coordinated with building systems and reflect the evolving needs of the facility.

alarms. Locate properly vented emergency generators at least 50′ from the primary electrical source. Buildings should not intake exhaust fumes from generators. If emergency generators are located adjacent to high-risk areas, harden the intermediate floor and wall systems.

3. Avoid routing critical utilities next to parking areas. If this cannot be avoided, encase them in concrete.
4. To mitigate a chemical or biological attack within the building, locate air intakes at least 48′ above grade or as high as practical. If air intakes are placed on the roof, secure all roof access points.
5. Protect critical utilities, including service entrances.
6. Locate main and backup systems as far apart from each other as possible, a minimum of 50′.
7. If required by the risk assessment, isolate the mailroom heating, ventilation, and air-conditioning (HVAC) zone to prevent circulation into the main building. Provide a system to purge mailroom in case of biochemical contamination.
8. Evaluate required redundancy of critical systems. Refer to the individual sections for evaluation requirements. Where redundancy is provided for security purposes, place backup systems and distribution as far from primary systems as possible.
9. Ensure adequate HVAC for heating load in detention control during unoccupied building mode.

4.H ELECTRONIC SECURITY PLANNING CRITERIA

Best practices for electronic security planning are described in this section. Table 4.4 lists the electronic security elements that are mandatory for all court buildings and those that may be required or modified by the project-specific risk assessment.

Detailed product requirements and information are contained in the Judicial Council's *Security Systems Design Criteria Guide*, which is shared with the design team at the start of a new courthouse project.

1. Site Security

a. Use vehicle entry and exit gates and gate barrier arms at secure driveway entrances and exits.

b. Provide video surveillance of all secure driveway areas and general coverage of public circulation areas. Coordinate with landscape design to ensure that camera sightlines are unobstructed. Refer to chapter 3, Site Design.

c. At secure driveway entry vehicle gates, provide pedestals that accommodate the vehicle heights anticipated. Pedestal heads must support a card reader and, where applicable, camera and intercom station. Where in-custody transport vehicles share use of the secure driveway, pedestal heads must also support a detention intercom substation.

d. In addition to pedestal-mounted card readers, provide a long-range reader at the secure vehicle gate entry lane to allow operation of the entry gate by judges and other designated personnel from within the safety of their vehicles using a windshield-mount access card signal booster or similar device.

e. Provide alarm monitoring and video surveillance of pedestrian gates.

f. At secure parking entries and exits, provide video surveillance, hands-free telephones, and card access control of vehicle gates and gate barrier arms.

2. Building Envelope

a. Provide video surveillance of building exterior.

b. Provide video surveillance, door position monitoring, and local alarm sounders at all operable building entry and exit points.

c. Control after-hours access through designated perimeter doors with card readers. Provide, at perimeter doors, the minimum number of card readers that will facilitate operations.

d. Provide intrusion alarms to monitor perimeter doors and sensitive areas after hours as required by the risk assessment.

e. Early in the design process, take a holistic approach to determine the optimal locations of the video cameras for maximum coverage by the fewest possible number of devices.

3. Lobby, Circulation, and Waiting Areas

a. Provide video surveillance, duress alarms, magnetometer, and package weapons scanners at screening lanes.

b. Provide barrier turnstiles at exit lanes in line with the screening lanes to restrict access to the secure area from the exit lane, while maintaining throughput to satisfy exiting requirements.

c. Provide video surveillance of lobby, circulation, and waiting areas.

d. Provide alarm monitoring, local alarms, and video surveillance at doors separating not-secure from secure, public from private, public from detention, and private from detention spaces. Provide card readers at designated security separation doors only where needed to facilitate operations.

e. Provide video surveillance, alarm monitoring, and local alarm sounders for doors that are used strictly for emergency egress purposes and that separate areas with differing security levels.

4. Private Circulation and Waiting Areas

a. Provide alarm monitoring, local alarms, and video surveillance at doors separating public from private and private from detention spaces. Provide card readers at designated security separation doors only where needed to facilitate operations.

b. Provide video surveillance, alarm monitoring, and local alarm sounders for emergency egress doors separating areas with differing security levels.

c. Design exiting to always be from a higher security area to a lower security area. The public should not exit through a private corridor, except in cases of emergency.

5. Courtrooms

a. Provide silent duress alarm buttons for judge, CSO, and clerk positions.

b. Provide security cameras in the courtroom, covering the well area, public seating, and, where applicable, door-to-court holding.

c. Control the public entry door into the courtroom using a card reader with integral keypad. Presentation of a card at the reader will momentarily unlock the doors to provide access to authorized persons when court is not in session. Each use of a card at the reader will activate the courtroom entry door to unlock the door while court is in session or lock the door to secure the courtroom when not in session. Refer to 5.D, Courtroom Components, for more information on courtroom doors.

DIVISION ONE: DESIGN CRITERIA

1 General Principles
2 Courthouse Organization
3 Site Design
4 COURTHOUSE SECURITY
4.A Objectives
4.B Design, Technology, and Operations
4.C Factors Affecting Security Levels
4.D Risk Assessment Procedures
4.E Physical Security Planning Criteria
4.F Structural Systems
4.G Mechanical, Electrical, and Fire Protection Systems
4.H Electronic Security Planning Criteria
4.I Electronic Security Systems
4.J Bullet-Resistant Glazing and Panels
5 Court Set
6 Jury Facilities and Court Administration
7 Special Services
8 In-Custody Defendant Receiving, Holding, and Transport
9 Public Spaces
10 Building Support Services

d. Card readers shall be installed on the door from the courtroom to the private corridor behind the witness stand and jury box, as well as on the door behind the judge's bench. These doors shall have a fire alarm device that sounds when the door is opened. The card reader's sole function is to silence the alarm, not to restrict free egress. Card readers may also be installed in the secure corridor on doors leading to the courtroom on a case-by-case basis, subject to court request and Judicial Council approval.

6. Chambers

a. Provide silent duress alarm buttons at the judges' desks.

b. Provide secure access at judges' chamber doors to limit entry to authorized personnel.

7. Jury Deliberation Rooms

Provide wall-mounted silent duress alarm buttons in jury deliberation rooms. Locate duress buttons in a readily accessible area, situated to minimize inadvertent activation.

8. Public Transaction Counters

a. Provide a duress alarm button for each public transaction counter position.

b. Provide overall video surveillance of the public queuing and walk-up areas. If cameras are located behind the transaction counters, they should capture images of customers only, not staff.

c. Provide an active full-duplex audio communication system at outdoor and unsecured public transaction counters. The communication system must have an on/off switch allowing staff to enable or disable communications.

9. Family Court Services Mediator Offices

Provide silent duress alarm buttons in mediator offices and video surveillance outside offices in the adjacent corridors.

10. Child Waiting Areas

a. Provide silent duress alarm buttons and video surveillance inside child waiting areas. Camera coverage should include interior and exterior corridors by the child waiting area door in addition to the main child waiting area.

b. Consider a door intercom, remote door release, and local alarm annunciation system at child waiting areas with doors and interior circulation that are out of view of the staffed position. Local alarm annunciation must notify staff that a child has entered an out-of-view area or that someone has entered the child waiting area without permission. The staff person shall have the ability to arm and disarm local alarm annunciation as needed.

11. Current Case File Storage Areas

a. Provide silent duress alarm buttons at staffed positions in public records viewing areas.

b. Where public records rooms are not staffed, provide remote door release from secure staffed positions that are within view of the door.

c. Provide video surveillance of all public viewing areas to create a record of files in custody of the public.

12. Evidence and Exhibit Storage Rooms

a. Limit access to authorized personnel via card access control at the door. Provide two-factor authentication (card plus PIN) access control for entry into the evidence storage room using a card reader with integral keypad to prevent lost or stolen access cards from being used by unauthorized persons to enter evidence storage.

b. Provide video surveillance and recording of all who enter and exit the evidence storage room.

13. Loading Dock, Receiving, and Mailroom

a. Use card readers at key operational doors to facilitate loading dock and mailroom operations.

b. Provide video surveillance of loading dock and receiving areas, and monitor doors for intrusion.

c. Provide video surveillance and silent duress alarm button in the mailroom. Provide telephone outside receiving door to facilitate communication with delivery drivers when loading dock and mailroom are closed.

d. Where required by the risk assessment, provide package weapons scanner in the mailroom. Where a package weapons scanner is not required by the risk assessment and not provided, all incoming packages delivered shall go through lobby security screening or another package-screening process consistent with the court security operations plan.

14. Security Operations Center

a. The building SOC may duplicate functions of or combine functions with the detention/holding control room. Chapter 8, In-Custody Defendant Receiving, Holding, and Transport, describes systems that may require backup operation in the SOC and provides information about detention and holding control rooms.

b. Detention cameras monitored outside the detention area must not be viewable by the public at any time.

c. Modular workstation furniture in the SOC that is ergonomic and does not obstruct visibility of the lobby and screening area shall be provided.

d. Fire control centers, required with high-rise life-safety systems, shall remain separate from the security operations center. Locate a fire alarm annunciator in the SOC to provide security personnel with immediate fire alarm event information that affects security of the facility. Refer to chapter 20, Fire Protection Criteria, for specific fire alarm system criteria.

15. Security Equipment Location

a. Locate electronic security headend equipment—including computers, storage, interface equipment, and the like—in the building main distribution frame (MDF) room.

b. Locate monitoring and control computers, monitors, annunciators, and related equipment in the security operations center or other designated area if an SOC is not required.

c. House security headend equipment in MDF or intermediate distribution frame (IDF) rooms in enclosed and lockable equipment racks and/or wall cabinets. Coordinate ample rack and wall space plus 25 percent future security equipment capacity. Coordinate rack and wall space requirements with the design of the MDF and IDF rooms. Refer to chapter 17, Network and Communication Systems, for specific telecommunications criteria.

DIVISION ONE: DESIGN CRITERIA

1 General Principles
2 Courthouse Organization
3 Site Design
4 COURTHOUSE SECURITY
4.A Objectives
4.B Design, Technology, and Operations
4.C Factors Affecting Security Levels
4.D Risk Assessment Procedures
4.E Physical Security Planning Criteria
4.F Structural Systems
4.G Mechanical, Electrical, and Fire Protection Systems
4.H Electronic Security Planning Criteria
4.I Electronic Security Systems
4.J Bullet-Resistant Glazing and Panels
5 Court Set
6 Jury Facilities and Court Administration
7 Special Services
8 In-Custody Defendant Receiving, Holding, and Transport
9 Public Spaces
10 Building Support Services

Security Electrical Systems

- Card access control
- Video surveillance
- Duress alarm
- Intrusion detection
- Turnstiles
- Weapons screening
- Secure driveway and parking controls
- Cable routing

d. Design electronic security system headend equipment to be network based and provided with network connectivity and an uninterruptible power source.

e. Point-to-point wiring is permitted in MDF and IDF rooms and from MDF or IDF rooms to field devices located on the same floor.

f. Design communication between floors over the court network using a virtual local area network. Point-to-point wiring between floors is not permitted.

g. Detail detention equipment, monitors, and equipment arms for organized and efficient layout.

4.I ELECTRONIC SECURITY SYSTEMS

Security systems shall be integrated and communicate with each other via the court's local area network. Security electronics systems shall include the features described below. For additional details, refer to the latest draft of the Judicial Council Emergency Planning and Security Coordination unit's *Security Systems Design Criteria Guide.*

1. Card Access Control

The card access control system is the primary means of monitoring security events, controlling card access points, and logging and reporting activity.

a. Provide monitoring and control of the secure driveway vehicle gates and doors, vehicle gate barrier arms, building perimeter protection, and separation between public, private, detention, and other critical areas.

b. Design card access control measures to restrict access from a lower security area to a higher security area and where the measures will substantially benefit operations and minimize issuance of keys. Provide free egress in the reverse direction using a request-to-exit (REX) switch in the door hardware and a REX push button or motion sensor. Except where otherwise required by the type of door hardware, REX devices shall not unlock doors; they shall only bypass the door position sensors to allow egress without generating an alarm.

c. Monitor all doors, hatches, and other operable access points for forced entry when armed.

d. Monitor all card access control doors for forced door and propped door alarms.

e. Design monitoring and administration of the system via client computers located in the SOC.

f. Integrate the card access control system with the video surveillance system, duress alarm system, lobby exit lane turnstiles, and intrusion detection system to provide alarm monitoring and automated camera call-up of all events in view of a camera.

g. Coordinate security system plans with door schedule and hardware specifications for door position switches and card readers.

h. Confirm top or bottom orientation and voltage for door operators.

2. Video Surveillance

a. Provide an Internet Protocol (IP)–based video surveillance system using networked cameras, video servers, storage, and workstations. Coaxial cable is not acceptable, except in certain elevator applications. Refer to chapter 17, Network and Communication Systems, for network cable criteria.

b. Provide high-resolution color cameras throughout the facility and high-definition color cameras in each courtroom with digital video recording and storage for all cameras and 30 days of data retention. Exterior cameras must have day and night capability to provide a usable image in low-light conditions. The use of pan-tilt-zoom (PTZ) cameras shall be minimized or avoided altogether.

c. Provide a separate circuit breaker of fuse-protected output for any camera powered via Power over Ethernet (PoE) or by Class 2 camera power supplies.

d. Ensure that monitoring and control of the video surveillance system are at computer workstations located in the SOC and detention control room (DCR). Smaller facilities may combine the operations of the SOC and DCR.

e. Locate cameras at a height that would not require the use of a lift to service and that is also out of reach.

f. Integrate the video surveillance system with the card access control system, duress alarm system, detention control system, and vehicle gate control equipment to automatically call up cameras relevant to facility alarms, triggers, and system events requiring immediate assessment and response by security or law enforcement personnel. Refer to chapter 8, In-Custody Defendant Receiving, Holding, and Transport, for detention control system requirements.

g. Clarify security camera structural backing requirements. Coordinate camera locations with exterior wall assemblies. Confirm that all exterior penetrations are weatherproofed. Review camera orientation virtually with court security provider. Confirm stair devices with the Office of the State Fire Marshal. Installing cameras in security ceilings is not recommended.

3. Duress Alarm

a. Provide a wireless duress alarm system consisting of a controller, repeaters for larger facilities, and wireless duress buttons.

b. Design the duress alarm system to communicate using a variety of methods, including a designated law enforcement radio frequency and the audible announcement of the location of the alarm. Coordinate the methods, including the exact frequency to be used, with the security personnel who will be working in the building, including the sheriff, bailiff, and other law enforcement agencies. The identified frequency shall also be incorporated into the Emergency Responder Communication Enhancement System (ERCES).

c. Integrate the duress alarm system with the card access control and video surveillance systems via the court network to permit alarm notification and automatic camera call-up in the SOC or other designated security monitoring locations.

d. Incorporate a NEMA 3R wet-rated button for all exterior-mounted duress alarms, such as those located in sally ports.

4. Intrusion Detection

a. Where required by the risk assessment, provide intrusion detection at perimeter doors. Provide double-pole door position switches at doors being monitored by the access control and intrusion detection systems to isolate their inputs and minimize modifications to doors and frames.

DIVISION ONE: DESIGN CRITERIA

1 General Principles
2 Courthouse Organization
3 Site Design
4 COURTHOUSE SECURITY
4.A Objectives
4.B Design, Technology, and Operations
4.C Factors Affecting Security Levels
4.D Risk Assessment Procedures
4.E Physical Security Planning Criteria
4.F Structural Systems
4.G Mechanical, Electrical, and Fire Protection Systems
4.H Electronic Security Planning Criteria
4.I Electronic Security Systems
4.J Bullet-Resistant Glazing and Panels
5 Court Set
6 Jury Facilities and Court Administration
7 Special Services
8 In-Custody Defendant Receiving, Holding, and Transport
9 Public Spaces
10 Building Support Services

b. Locate arming stations at designated entry points. Keep the number of arm/disarm entry points to a minimum. Where the entry point is a public area, situate arming stations to minimize public access while remaining in plain sight of staff.

c. Provide a card reader at each arming station, and interface the card access system with the intrusion detection system to allow arming and disarming by access card.

5. Turnstiles

Monitor the lobby screening exit lane turnstiles for operational failures and attempts to enter the secure area via the exit lane. Operation of the lobby screening exit lane turnstiles by the security system is not required. Exit lanes shall have an 8′ tall glass wall for visual surveillance.

6. Weapons Screening

a. Provide X-ray scanners and Americans with Disabilities Act (ADA)–compliant magnetometers in the lobby to screen persons and belongings for weapons before entering secure space.

b. Design screening lanes to provide ample space for equipment, including current recommended spacing between magnetometers and X-ray scanners and between conveyers and tables, as well as clearance for ADA-compliant magnetometers.

7. Secure Driveway and Parking Controls

a. Provide vehicle gates and gate barrier arms at secure driveways and at secure parking entrances to restrict public access.

b. Provide vehicle gates and gate barrier arms at secure parking areas to restrict access from secure driveways.

c. Ensure that vehicles cannot become trapped between gates, overhead doors, and gate barrier arms under any circumstances.

8. Cable Routing

a. Route all security cabling in metallic conduit or raceway where cabling is run in walls and above hard ceilings. Above accessible ceilings, use cable tray where provided and J-hooks elsewhere. Any security cable in outdoor locations, including within underground conduit, shall include a water-blocking compound, and the jacket shall be outdoor rated for wet locations.

b. Provide back boxes suitable for all field devices and terminations.

c. Refer to chapter 15, Electrical Criteria, for specific conduit criteria.

d. Refer to chapter 17, Network and Communication Systems, for specific network cable requirements.

e. Do not install ceiling access doors in the detention cell ceilings.

4.J BULLET-RESISTANT GLAZING AND PANELS

1. Exterior Windows

Where risk assessment stipulates bullet resistance, provide the following:

- Glazing: Glass-clad polycarbonate assembly. See chapter 11, Architectural Criteria. Bullet-resistant glass in doors may be too heavy for a typical doorframe. Provide structural calculations for Judicial Council approval for door or window systems receiving bullet-resistant glass.
- Panel in opening above or below glass: Bullet-resistant starch-oil woven roving ballistic-grade fiberglass panels to match the ballistic rating of the glazing.
- Threat level: Underwriters Laboratories (UL) 752 Level 3, three shots or greater, as stipulated by risk assessment.

2. Clerk/Public Transaction Counter

a. For counter outside the building weapons screening, provide the following:

- Glazing: Glass-clad polycarbonate assembly (see chapter 11).
- Panel in opening above or below glass: Bullet-resistant starch-oil woven ballistic-grade fiberglass panels to match the ballistic rating of the glazing.
- Threat level: UL 752 Level 3, three shots and forced entry or greater, as stipulated by risk assessment.

b. For counter within the building weapons screening, provide the following:

- Laminated glass: Two glass layers with polyvinyl butyral (PVB) interlayer (thickness determined by calculation for glass size and supporting structure).
- No bullet-resistant panels.
- Not bullet or forced entry resistant.

3. Judge/Clerk/Witness Courtroom Bench

For judge's bench, witness box, and courtroom clerk's work area, provide the following:

- Behind finish material: Bullet-resistant starch-oil woven ballistic-grade fiberglass panels.
- Threat level: UL 752 Level 3, three shots or greater, as stipulated by risk assessment.

DIVISION ONE: DESIGN CRITERIA

1 General Principles
2 Courthouse Organization
3 Site Design
4 COURTHOUSE SECURITY
4.A Objectives
4.B Design, Technology, and Operations
4.C Factors Affecting Security Levels
4.D Risk Assessment Procedures
4.E Physical Security Planning Criteria
4.F Structural Systems
4.G Mechanical, Electrical, and Fire Protection Systems
4.H Electronic Security Planning Criteria
4.I Electronic Security Systems
4.J Bullet-Resistant Glazing and Panels
5 Court Set
6 Jury Facilities and Court Administration
7 Special Services
8 In-Custody Defendant Receiving, Holding, and Transport
9 Public Spaces
10 Building Support Services

Table 4.1 Notes

M: Compliance mandatory

RA: As determined by risk assessment

SR: Strongly recommended

Table 4.1 Security Standards

	COMPLIANCE
Site Selection	
Maximize setback distance to street or adjacent buildings.	M
Locate building to minimize adjacency and configuration risks.	M
Provide setback distance other than that defined in 4.E, Physical Security Planning Criteria.	RA
Parking Security	
Restrict public parking locations in proximity to court building to satisfy setback requirements.	M
Restrict and control secure parking locations within defended perimeter.	M
Colocate parking garage and loading dock entries.	RA
Provide minimum 6″ nonstructural architectural finish around interior columns in secure parking areas.	M
Provide video surveillance at parking entries and exits.	RA
Locate critical and occupied space at least 25′ away from secure parking, or harden enclosure for screened vehicle threat (charge weight to be specified by risk assessment).	RA
Harden interior structure in parking for screened vehicle threat (charge weight to be specified by risk assessment).	RA
Site Security	
Employ CPTED principles.	M
Place trash receptacles and mailboxes outside the setback distance.	M
Illuminate site perimeters, walkways, and drives.	M
Restrict height of landscaping.	M
Protect utilities (gas, power, telephone, etc.) at entrance to site.	M
Provide video surveillance of site.	M
Provide antiram barriers to enforce required building setback distance (moving vehicle threat). Risk assessment to indicate extent of antiram perimeter required and level of antiram resistance.	RA
Building Layout	
Provide only one public entrance.	M
Provide a secure path between judges' parking and chambers.	M
Separate high-risk areas from occupied spaces, critical systems, utilities, and egress.	M
Colocate loading dock and mailroom toward the building exterior.	M
Courtrooms	
Provide silent duress alarm buttons for judge, CSO, and clerk.	M
Provide bullet-resistant panels within podium/bench for judge, CSO (depending on makeup of CSO station), clerk, and witness stand.	M
Provide video surveillance.	M
Provide bullet-resistant panels and glazing to counters accessible outside secure areas.	M
Minimize vision through windows with the line of sight from exterior into courtroom.	M
Provide bullet-resistant glazing.	RA

Table 4.1 continues on next page

Table 4.1 Security Standards *continued*

	COMPLIANCE
Judges' Chambers	
Provide silent duress alarm buttons for judge and clerk.	M
Minimize vision through windows with the line of sight from exterior into chambers.	M
Provide bullet-resistant glazing up to height and/or story specified in risk assessment.	M
Jury Deliberation Room	
Provide silent duress alarm buttons.	M
Minimize windows with the line of sight into jury deliberation room.	M
Payment Counter	
Provide silent duress alarm buttons.	M
Provide video surveillance.	M
Provide two-way audio communications.	M
Provide bullet-resistant panels and glazing to counters accessible outside security screening.	M
Court Clerk Offices	
Provide silent duress alarm buttons in private corridor adjacent to chambers.	M
Executive/Administrative Offices	
Provide silent duress alarm buttons.	M
Family Court Services Mediator Offices	
Provide silent duress alarm buttons in offices.	M
Provide video surveillance outside offices in adjacent corridors.	M
Child Waiting Areas	
Provide silent duress alarm button at staffed position.	M
Provide video surveillance inside child waiting areas.	M
Provide video surveillance in corridor outside child waiting areas.	M
Lobby and Waiting Area	
Provide only one public entrance.	M
Eliminate potential areas of concealment in unscreened areas.	M
Provide duress alarms, magnetometer, and package weapons scanner at screening station.	M
Design lobby to accommodate direct visual surveillance by security.	M
Design lobby to allow increased levels of security.	M
Provide barriers between lobby and secure areas of building.	M
Physically isolate unscreened lobby area.	M
Provide video surveillance of lobby and secure public circulation areas of building.	M
Provide minimum 6″ nonstructural architectural finish around interior columns.	M
Harden interior structure in lobby for hand-carried satchel threat (charge weight to be specified by risk assessment).	RA
Harden lobby enclosure for hand-carried satchel threat (charge weight to be specified by risk assessment).	RA

Table 4.1 continues on next page

DIVISION ONE: DESIGN CRITERIA

1 General Principles
2 Courthouse Organization
3 Site Design
4 COURTHOUSE SECURITY
4.A Objectives
4.B Design, Technology, and Operations
4.C Factors Affecting Security Levels
4.D Risk Assessment Procedures
4.E Physical Security Planning Criteria
4.F Structural Systems
4.G Mechanical, Electrical, and Fire Protection Systems
4.H Electronic Security Planning Criteria
4.I Electronic Security Systems
4.J Bullet-Resistant Glazing and Panels
5 Court Set
6 Jury Facilities and Court Administration
7 Special Services
8 In-Custody Defendant Receiving, Holding, and Transport
9 Public Spaces
10 Building Support Services

Table 4.1 Notes

M: Compliance mandatory

RA: As determined by risk assessment

SR: Strongly recommended

Table 4.1 Security Standards *continued*

	COMPLIANCE
Current Case File Storage Areas	
Locate within private circulation.	M
Provide silent duress alarms at staffed positions.	M
Provide card reader.	M
Provide video surveillance.	M
Provide dual authentication card reader with PIN.	RA
Provide remote door unlock.	RA
Evidence and Exhibit Storage Rooms	
Locate evidence room within private circulation.	M
Provide dual-authentication card reader with PIN for evidence room.	M
Provide video surveillance of evidence room door.	M
Locate exhibit storage rooms within private circulation.	M
Provide hard ceilings in exhibit storage rooms and secure by lock and key.	M
Loading Dock and Mailroom	
Provide silent duress alarm button.	M
Provide video surveillance.	M
Provide space and driveway arrangement to permit manual screening of delivery trucks.	M
Provide minimum 6″ nonstructural architectural finish around interior columns.	M
Physically isolate the loading dock and provide a means for venting gas pressures.	RA
Locate critical and occupied space at least 25′ away from loading dock and mailroom, or harden enclosure for package threat (charge weight to be specified by risk assessment).	RA
Harden interior structure in loading dock and mailroom for package threat (charge weight to be specified by risk assessment).	RA
Provide package scanner in mailroom.	RA
Security Operations Center	
Use modular workstation furniture where an SOC is provided.	M
Provide SOC to operate and monitor electronic security systems.	RA
Duplicate functions of in-custody detention control room.	RA
Building Envelope	
Lock exterior doors after hours.	M
Limit windows at critical areas.	M
Provide laminated or tempered glass for debris mitigation.	M
Provide forced entry protection at the first floor (forced entry rating to be specified by risk assessment).	M
Provide video surveillance of building perimeter and all entrances.	M
Provide the minimum number of card readers at perimeter doors that will facilitate operations.	M
Monitor exterior doors and glass with an intrusion alarm system.	RA
Provide blast-, bullet-, or forced entry–resistant façade to meet performance requirements.	RA

Table 4.1 continues on next page

Table 4.1 Security Standards *continued*

	COMPLIANCE
Structural Systems	
Design structures greater than two stories tall to resist progressive collapse using the alternate path method.	M
Fully grout and reinforce exterior concrete masonry unit walls as well as those around high-risk areas with an identified explosive threat, with connections designed to allow full development of capacity at the supports.	M
Minimize floor-to-floor heights.	SR
Minimize column bay spacing.	SR
Avoid overhangs with occupied space above.	SR
Limit or avoid large transfer girders.	SR
Provide redundancy and alternative load paths.	SR
Use ductile structural systems.	SR
Design structural members to satisfy performance requirements if explosive threats are specified, and detail the connections to prevent brittle modes of failure.	RA
Harden floor and/or walls to resist specified threat in high-risk areas.	RA
Use circular columns with spiral reinforcing for concrete buildings; encase columns in concrete for steel buildings.	RA
Design structural columns to resist specified explosive threat located 3′ away.	RA
Use one-way wall elements spanning from floor to floor.	RA
Mechanical, Electrical, and Fire Protection Systems	
Locate critical utilities as far as possible from high-risk areas.	M
Locate emergency generators at least 50′ from the primary electrical source.	M
Avoid routing critical utilities next to parking areas.	M
Protect air intakes.	M
Protect critical utilities and service entrances.	M
Locate main and backup systems as far apart from each other as possible, a minimum of 50′.	RA
Isolate mailroom HVAC zone.	RA
Provide mailroom purging system.	RA
Provide redundancy of critical systems.	RA
Electronic Security Systems	
Provide access control between public, private, and detention areas.	M
Provide electronic building perimeter protection.	M
Provide recording of all cameras.	M
Provide monitoring of intrusions and duress alarms.	M
Integrate security subsystems for automated responses to system events.	M
Use court network infrastructure for security subsystems for intersystem communications and communications between MDF/IDF rooms.	M
Coordinate current and future infrastructure and control systems.	M

DIVISION ONE: DESIGN CRITERIA

1 General Principles
2 Courthouse Organization
3 Site Design
4 COURTHOUSE SECURITY
4.A Objectives
4.B Design, Technology, and Operations
4.C Factors Affecting Security Levels
4.D Risk Assessment Procedures
4.E Physical Security Planning Criteria
4.F Structural Systems
4.G Mechanical, Electrical, and Fire Protection Systems
4.H Electronic Security Planning Criteria
4.I Electronic Security Systems
4.J Bullet-Resistant Glazing and Panels
5 Court Set
6 Jury Facilities and Court Administration
7 Special Services
8 In-Custody Defendant Receiving, Holding, and Transport
9 Public Spaces
10 Building Support Services

Table 4.2 Notes

R: Required

R1: Required as applicable

D: Discretionary

Table 4.2 Electronic Security Standards by Space Type

	Card Access	Card + PIN Access	Card Access—Long Range	Door/Gate Position Monitoring	Local Alarm	Video Surveillance	X-Ray Screening	Magnetometer	Exit Control/Turnstile	Duress Alarm	Voice Communications at Door/Window	Vehicle Door/Gate	Gate Barrier Arms	Door Intrusion Detection	Glass Break Detection	Intrusion System Keypad	Security Monitoring and Control Workstation	Headend Equipment
Site																		
Secure driveway entrance	R		R	R		R					R	R	R					
Secure driveway						R												
Secure parking vehicle entrance	R		R	R		R						R	R					
In-custody driveway entrance	R		R	R		R					R	R	R					
In-custody driveway						R												
Parking driveway entrance						R												
Utility equipment and access						R												
Generator and fuel storage						R												
Building Perimeter																		
Main entrance doors	R			R	R1	R					P			R1	R1	R1		
Perimeter doors	R1			R	R1	R					R1			R1	R1	R1		
Emergency egress doors				R	R	R								R1	R1			
Operable windows, hatches, vents				R1		R1								R1	R1			
Secure parking area						R				R								
Secure parking building entrance	R					R				R				R1	R1	R1		
Exterior utility and MEP rooms				R		R								R1				
Loading dock	R1			R		R					R			R1				
Receiving	R			R		R	R1				R			R1				
Building exterior						R												

Table 4.2 continues on next page

Table 4.2 Electronic Security Standards by Space Type *continued*

	Card Access	Card + PIN Access	Card Access—Long Range	Door/Gate Position Monitoring	Local Alarm	Video Surveillance	X-Ray Screening	Magnetometer	Exit Control/Turnstile	Duress Alarm	Voice Communications at Door/Window	Vehicle Door/Gate	Gate Barrier Arms	Door Intrusion Detection	Glass Break Detection	Intrusion System Keypad	Security Monitoring and Control Workstation	Headend Equipment
Interior Public Circulation																		
Public queuing area						R												
Weapons screening station						R	R	R	R	R								
Information kiosk or counter						R				R								
Courtroom public waiting area						R												
Interior Private Circulation																		
Public to private area doors	R			R	R	R												
Court Set																		
Courtroom entry door		R		R		R												
Courtroom jury door	R1			R	R1													
Courtroom bench door	R1			R1	R1													
Courtroom well and spectator area						R												
Judge's bench										R								
Clerk's station										R								
Court security officer's station										R								
Courtroom holding door						R												

Table 4.2 continues on next page

DIVISION ONE: DESIGN CRITERIA

1 General Principles
2 Courthouse Organization
3 Site Design
4 COURTHOUSE SECURITY
4.A Objectives
4.B Design, Technology, and Operations
4.C Factors Affecting Security Levels
4.D Risk Assessment Procedures
4.E Physical Security Planning Criteria
4.F Structural Systems
4.G Mechanical, Electrical, and Fire Protection Systems
4.H Electronic Security Planning Criteria
4.I Electronic Security Systems
4.J Bullet-Resistant Glazing and Panels
5 Court Set
6 Jury Facilities and Court Administration
7 Special Services
8 In-Custody Defendant Receiving, Holding, and Transport
9 Public Spaces
10 Building Support Services

Table 4.2 Notes

R: Required

R1: Required as applicable

D: Discretionary

Table 4.2 Electronic Security Standards by Space Type *continued*

	Card Access	Card + PIN Access	Card Access—Long Range	Door/Gate Position Monitoring	Local Alarm	Video Surveillance	X-Ray Screening	Magnetometer	Exit Control/Turnstile	Duress Alarm	Voice Communications at Door/Window	Vehicle Door/Gate	Gate Barrier Arms	Door Intrusion Detection	Glass Break Detection	Intrusion System Keypad	Security Monitoring and Control Workstation	Headend Equipment
Court Support																		
Chambers	D			D						R								
Court reporter's room	D			D														
Jury deliberation room	D			D						R								
Entry vestibule		R		R		R												
Law enforcement waiting area																		
Courtroom exhibit storage	R			R														
Evidence storage		R		R	R	R												
Jury Assembly Facilities																		
Entry/queuing						R												
Reception/registration	R			R						R								
Jury assembly	R1			R1	R1	R												
Court Administration																		
Public counter queuing						R												
Public transaction counter										R	R							
Records viewing area	R1			R1		R				R1								
Training room																		
Active records storage	R			R														
Inactive records storage	R1			R1														

Table 4.2 continues on next page

Table 4.2 Electronic Security Standards by Space Type *continued*

	Card Access	Card + PIN Access	Card Access—Long Range	Door/Gate Position Monitoring	Local Alarm	Video Surveillance	X-Ray Screening	Magnetometer	Exit Control/Turnstile	Duress Alarm	Voice Communications at Door/Window	Vehicle Door/Gate	Gate Barrier Arms	Door Intrusion Detection	Glass Break Detection	Intrusion System Keypad	Security Monitoring and Control Workstation	Headend Equipment
Private Office																		
Executive/director										R1								
Mediator										R1								
Family Law / Self-Help Center																		
Waiting area						R												
Reception/sign-in						R												
Orientation room	R1			R1														
Workshop	R1			R1														
Mediation room										R								
Child waiting area	R			R		R				R								
Alternative Dispute Resolution																		
Reception/waiting area										R								
Mediation/arbitration rooms										R								
Related Justice Agency Spaces																		
Multipurpose rooms	R1			R1		R1												
Attorney convenience center	R1			R1		R1												

Table 4.2 continues on next page

DIVISION ONE: DESIGN CRITERIA

1 General Principles
2 Courthouse Organization
3 Site Design
4 COURTHOUSE SECURITY
4.A Objectives
4.B Design, Technology, and Operations
4.C Factors Affecting Security Levels
4.D Risk Assessment Procedures
4.E Physical Security Planning Criteria
4.F Structural Systems
4.G Mechanical, Electrical, and Fire Protection Systems
4.H Electronic Security Planning Criteria
4.I Electronic Security Systems
4.J Bullet-Resistant Glazing and Panels
5 Court Set
6 Jury Facilities and Court Administration
7 Special Services
8 In-Custody Defendant Receiving, Holding, and Transport
9 Public Spaces
10 Building Support Services

Table 4.2 Notes

R: Required

R1: Required as applicable

D: Discretionary

Table 4.2 Electronic Security Standards by Space Type *continued*

	Card Access	Card + PIN Access	Card Access—Long Range	Door/Gate Position Monitoring	Local Alarm	Video Surveillance	X-Ray Screening	Magnetometer	Exit Control/Turnstile	Duress Alarm	Voice Communications at Door/Window	Vehicle Door/Gate	Gate Barrier Arms	Door Intrusion Detection	Glass Break Detection	Intrusion System Keypad	Security Monitoring and Control Workstation	Headend Equipment
Building Support Services																		
Security operations center	R			R													R	
Loading dock	R			R		R												
Trash and recycling area						R												
Media area						R												
Mailroom						R	R1			R								
Maintenance shop	R			R														
Furniture/equipment storage	R1			R1														
Information systems workroom	R			R														
MDF and IDF rooms	R			R														R
Telecommunications storage room	R1			R1														
Telecommunications closet	R			R														
Electrical room	R1			R1														
Electrical closet	R1			R1														
Interior media space						R1												

DIVISION ONE: DESIGN CRITERIA

5 COURT SET

SECTION	TOPIC	PAGE
5.A	Objectives	5.2
5.B	Courtroom	5.3
5.C	Courtroom Accessibility	5.5
5.D	Courtroom Components	5.6
5.E	Courtroom Support Spaces	5.15



Superior Court of California, County of Shasta
Redding, CA
© Sean Airhart/NBBJ

The courtroom is the focal point of the judicial process, providing a formal setting for conducting the business of the court, and the primary place where judicial officers, court staff, attorneys, and litigants or defendants interact.

Refer to tool 2, Catalog of Courtroom Layouts for California Trial Courts, for application in the design of all fully or partially state-funded new courthouses to be used by the trial courts.

The courthouses are presumptively required to use templates for layouts of multipurpose courtrooms and holding core.

The examples are included as reference only, to be used in lieu of mockups.

A courtroom millwork finish mockup is required for medium and large projects before beginning casework manufacturing to ensure the quality requirements of finish materials are satisfied..

For technical requirements, refer to chapter 15, Electrical Criteria; chapter 17, Network and Communication Systems; and chapter 18, Audiovisual Systems.

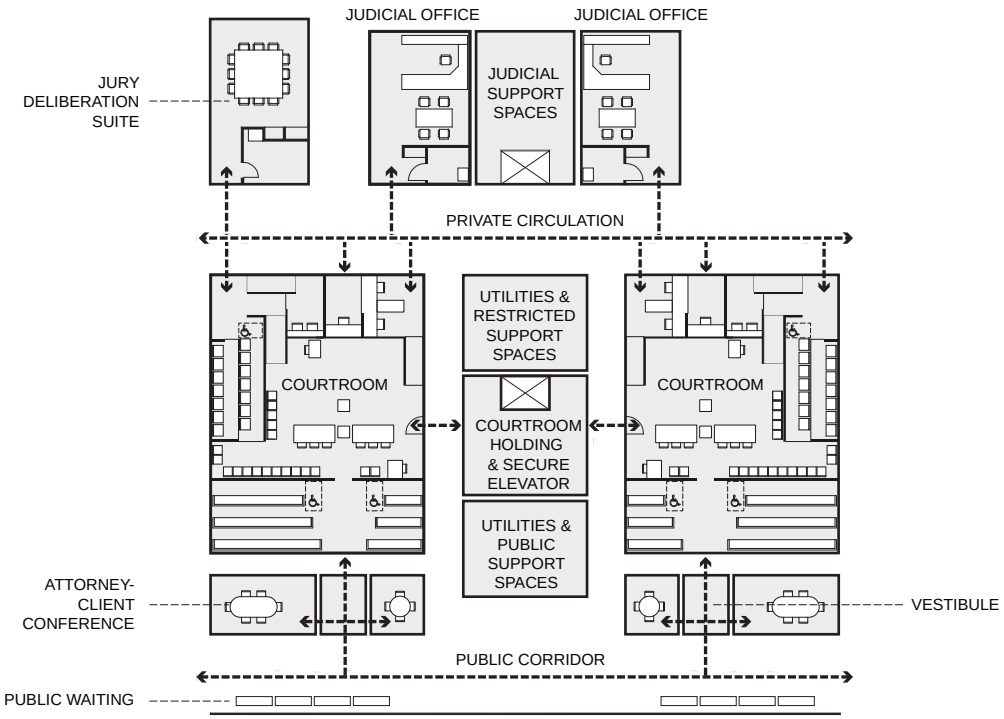
The court set includes courtrooms, judicial offices (subsequently referred to as chambers), chambers support space, jury deliberation rooms, witness waiting, attorney conference rooms, evidence storage, and equipment storage. A private corridor, with staff elevator and stairs, connects the chambers suites with staff offices and secure parking (see figure 5.1). Emergency egress for the private corridor should be separate from egress for the public corridor, but in some courthouses, the private population may egress into the public circulation and then use the public egress stair. In courthouses where separate stairs are provided, private area stairs may be unsecured to allow staff intercommunication between floors, whereas public stairs should always be secure, allowing egress only. Specific space requirements are developed during the programming phase, consistent with area requirements described in chapter 2, Courthouse Organization.

5.A OBJECTIVES

The courtroom accommodates the judicial officer (judge, commissioner, or hearing officer), court clerk, reporter, court security officer (CSO), attorneys, witnesses, jury, and spectators. Special-purpose courtrooms may include some variation of these participants.

The design of each courtroom shall:

- Ensure that the participants in any proceeding are able to see and hear the witness, jury, judicial officer, court clerk, court reporter, and attorneys.
- Protect witnesses and jurors from intimidation.
- Provide reasonable confidentiality for attorneys, defendants, litigants, and judicial officers.



Note: For illustration only. Refer to tool 2, Catalog of Courtroom Layouts for California Trial Courts, for courtroom template plans.

Figure 5.1 Illustration of Typical Courtroom Floor Organization

- Provide full accessibility for persons with disabilities to the witness stand, jury box, spectator areas, judge's bench, and clerk's station.
- Provide security and safe emergency egress.
- Provide ease of assistance in emergency situations.
- Provide spaces with sufficient flexibility to allow change in future court operations.
- Demonstrate and ensure adequate sightlines in courtrooms during the design phase with three-dimensional renderings and animation. Prepare reusable mockups to verify sightlines during construction phase (see section 5.C.2.d).

5.B COURTROOM

1. Basic Courtroom Types

The *Facilities Standards* recognizes two types of courtrooms, multipurpose and specialty.

1.1 Multipurpose Courtrooms

The multipurpose courtroom is the typical trial courtroom in California, capable of accommodating every kind of court proceeding. It is sized and configured to support a variety of proceedings in different case types, including the array of criminal and civil pretrial calendars and proceedings, jury trials, and court trials. The use of multipurpose courtrooms maximizes a court's capacity to accommodate its overall courtroom workload and adjust its processes and calendar design, which are necessary because subject matter caseloads change over time and changes in law place new demands on trial courts.

1.2 Specialty Courtrooms

Specially designed and sized courtrooms may be required in light of population size, caseload volumes, courthouse scale, and other considerations unique to a specific project. Specialty courtrooms can include multiple-jury courtrooms, high-volume criminal arraignment/pretrial courtrooms equipped with secure high-volume in-custody docks (located adjacent to court holding facilities), high-volume traffic courtrooms, juvenile delinquency and dependency courtrooms, and mental health courtrooms, among others. Specialty courtrooms are by their nature not as flexible as multipurpose courtrooms for use in a variety of different case types and proceedings. Accordingly, specialty courtrooms should be considered only when the multipurpose courtroom cannot effectively and safely be used.

2. Initial Design Considerations

Tool 2, Catalog of Courtroom Layouts for California Trial Courts, is a collection of approved templates of multipurpose courtrooms that were developed based on—and tested against—designs used in constructed courthouse projects. These templates offer optimal sightlines throughout the courtroom, the capability to accommodate multiparty cases, additional space for chairs in front of the gallery, sufficient work area for two clerks, sufficient space in the witness box for an interpreter, sufficient working space for the bench officer, ease of access to the jury box, inclusion of an array of courtroom security solutions, adequate size and proportion of all working areas, adequate gallery size, the most effective and efficient overall use of space including a rectangular footprint, the positioning of counsel tables to ensure privacy from juror chair sightlines, and the highest-quality approaches to the various design considerations articulated in the balance of this chapter.

DIVISION ONE: DESIGN CRITERIA

1 General Principles
2 Courthouse Organization
3 Site Design
4 Courthouse Security
5 COURT SET
5.A Objectives
5.B Courtroom
5.C Courtroom Accessibility
5.D Courtroom Components
5.E Courtroom Support Spaces
6 Jury Facilities and Court Administration
7 Special Services
8 In-Custody Defendant Receiving, Holding, and Transport
9 Public Spaces
10 Building Support Services

The proposed inclusion of multipurpose courtrooms for a new construction project that does not adopt approved templates from tool 2, Catalog of Courtroom Layouts for California Trial Courts, will be presumed to be unsupportable and—absent a showing that overcomes the presumption—will be disallowed.

Tool 2 also includes examples of courtroom floor plans of constructed California courthouses. The examples are similar to the template layouts and are included to enable design teams to compare design floor plans with built courtrooms and, if necessary, visit the courtrooms in lieu of constructing courtroom mockups. These floor plans include multipurpose and specialty courtroom designs.

The Catalog of Courtroom Layouts does not contain templates for specialty courtrooms. For the number of courtroom requirements in a project, the program team and court should clearly identify any specialty courtroom needs during the programming phase because later identification in the design process can lead to compromised solutions.

The proposed inclusion of multipurpose courtrooms for a new construction project that does not adopt approved templates from tool 2, Catalog of Courtroom Layouts for California Trial Courts, will be presumed to be unsupportable and—absent a showing that overcomes the presumption—will be disallowed. This presumption does not apply to part-time satellite and specialty court facilities described in chapter 2, sections 2.C.7 and 2.C.8.

3. Courtroom Entries

All courtrooms, regardless of whether in-custody proceedings occur there, require three distinct points of entry:

- Public—for spectators, attorneys, parties, witnesses, and press—through a vestibule from the public corridor.
- Private—for judicial officers, jurors, court personnel, and designated court participants—through two doorways from a private court staff corridor.
- Detention—for in-custody defendants, detention officers, and CSOs—through a controlled, secure entry near the CSO's station and defense attorney table from the detention (secure) circulation system.

4. Courtroom Adjacencies

a. Courtrooms shall be located adjacent to court floor holding cells (or area reserved for the future addition of secure holding cells). In some instances, multipurpose courtrooms are used initially only for civil proceedings and do not require access to court floor holding facilities. In the initial construction, however, provisions must be included for future construction of secure holding directly adjacent to the courtroom.

b. Courtrooms shall be located for easy access from judicial chambers. Judicial chambers and related support spaces shall be adjacent to the private corridor, providing judges and staff quick courtroom access.

c. Courtrooms may be assigned to an individual judge. Where courtrooms are not dedicated for use by one bench officer, chambers can be remote from the courtroom.

d. If chambers are colocated in an area remote from the courtrooms, such as on adjoining floors, a robing room and conference area may be necessary adjacent to the courtroom.

5. Corner Bench or Center Bench Layouts

California courtrooms may use either a corner bench or center bench configuration. Each offers different design and operational opportunities. Selection of either is a project decision, to be based on the following design and operational criteria

- Optimum sightlines among the judge, jury, attorneys, and witness;
- Ease of accommodating two courtroom clerks;

- Ability to move paper documents between clerk and judge;
- Sightlines to projected images;
- Full accessibility to the bench, other raised platforms, and areas of the courtroom;
- Dignity and formality;
- Accommodation of courtroom technology and computer equipment; and
- Space efficiency.

5.C COURTROOM ACCESSIBILITY

1. Floor Levels

Because floor levels of courtroom components vary, maintaining sightlines among all components while providing full accessibility shall be a priority.

a. The accessible path of travel to the judge's courtroom workspace (bench), courtroom clerk's workspace, witness box, and jury box must address the recommended "height above floor" specifications discussed in table 5.1. Separate paths of travel for persons with disabilities shall be avoided.

b. The judge's circulation path must never be in front of the bench.

Table 5.1 Court Component Information

ELEMENT OR WORKSTATION	FURNITURE/CASEWORK WIDTH	DEPTH	HEIGHT ABOVE FLOOR	NUMBER OF OCCUPANTS	AREA SF
Judge	6′–7′	24″ max.	+15″–18″	1	64–80
Courtroom clerk	10′	24″–27″	+0″–14″	1 or 2	75–85
CSO	4′	30″	+0″	1	25
Court reporter	4′	30″	+0″	1	25
Witness stand	6′		+0″–14″	1 or 2	33–43
Jury box	NA	NA	(Row 1) +0″–7″ (Row 2) 6″–14″	14	144
Counsel tables	7′–10′	3′–4′	+0″	3 ea.	90–110
Lectern	38″	2′	+0″	0	

Note:Heights of judge, clerk, and witness stand must be in strict relation—judge highest, clerk within 12″ of judge, and witness stand at least 6″ lower than judge. The number of litigants at the tables can be higher if size and configuration permit. This table provides general guidance for measurements. Refer to the templates in tool 2 for the width, depth, and height measurements per the selected template.

CSO = court security officer.
NA = not applicable.
SF = square feet.

2. Floor Level Changes

Level changes of floors can be achieved in a variety of ways.

a. Ramps, with handrails as required by code based on the slope of the ramp, are the preferred solution for providing universal access and operationally functional spaces. However, a long ramp may be required in the private corridor, or the private corridor

DIVISION ONE: DESIGN CRITERIA

1 General Principles
2 Courthouse Organization
3 Site Design
4 Courthouse Security
5 COURT SET
5.A Objectives
5.B Courtroom
5.C Courtroom Accessibility
5.D Courtroom Components
5.E Courtroom Support Spaces
6 Jury Facilities and Court Administration
7 Special Services
8 In-Custody Defendant Receiving, Holding, and Transport
9 Public Spaces
10 Building Support Services

may be constructed at an elevation above that of the primary courtroom floor elevation. A multipurpose courtroom litigation area may accommodate up to 18 people, along with exhibits and a court reporter. Ramps to the courtroom clerk, witness box, and first level of the jury box shall not create a hazard or encroach on the litigation area.

b. A two-stop lift to the judge's bench, with ramps to the witness area and the clerk at the courtroom floor level, is another approach. However, the Judicial Council does not allow motorized lifts because of operation and serviceability concerns, except in retrofit situations where space is too limited to accommodate ramps. The approach to use motorized lifts should be avoided in new construction.

c. A three-stop lift to the witness's and judge's level of the bench may be the only choice in retrofit situations where space is extremely limited, but lifts are the least preferred method because their use focuses attention on the person with disabilities, they may require staff assistance to function properly, and they require servicing and testing.

d. A courtroom millwork finish mockup is required for medium and large projects before casework manufacturing may begin to ensure that the quality requirements of finish materials are satisfied. The mockup materials shall be reused during the courthouse construction. For small projects, an in-place mockup may be considered.

5.D COURTROOM COMPONENTS

The following design criteria shall apply to courtroom components.

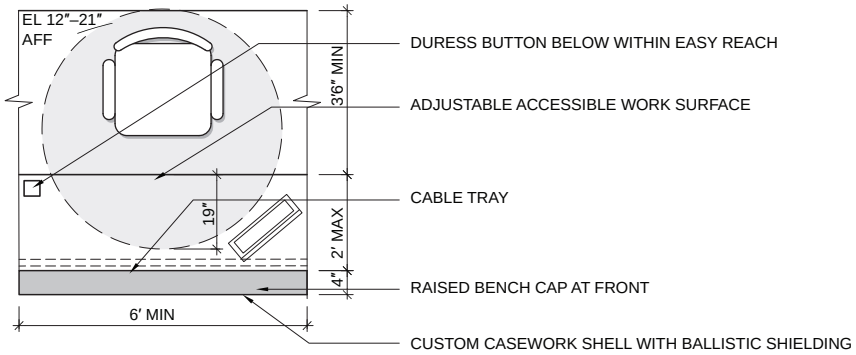
1. Judge's Bench

The size, location, height, area, and design of the bench reinforce the role of the judge as the administrator of justice and the principal controller of order in the courtroom. Design the bench to be the focal point of the courtroom without favoring any one party.

a. Design the bench size and height to be proportionate to the courtroom and to ensure an unobstructed view of and from the entire courtroom. Raise the bench so that the judge's eye level when the judge is seated is higher than that of any standing participant or spectator. The height of the barrier between the judge's bench and the well depends on the actual height of the judge's platform above the well. The attorney's view of the judge's desktop needs to be considered if the judge's platform height is lower as a result of ramping and accessibility issues.

b. Provide a work surface as required per the selected template in tool 2 with a 3″ high privacy screen in front. This area must be of sufficient size to keep paperwork and reference materials within reach and accommodate a computer monitor. The work surface at the judge's bench is not meant for sit-stand configuration but may be adjustable to be higher or lower than the standard work surface height for a comfortable seated position. If the work surface needs to be higher than the in-built 3″ privacy screen, a modesty panel may be attached to the table. Provide adequate bookshelves behind or under the bench. Provide an area for conferences between the judge and attorneys at the sidebar. (Sidebars are typically conducted on the side of the litigation area opposite the jury.) Provide built-in or movable undercounter storage drawers and cabinets (see figures 5.2 and 5.3).

c. Between the judge's area and the witness box, a fixed barrier of sufficient width and height to prevent a witness from reaching the judge while maintaining sightlines is required. The judge's exit route should be away from the witness.



AFF = above finished floor.
EL = elevation.
MIN = minimum.

Figure 5.2 Judge's Bench Plan

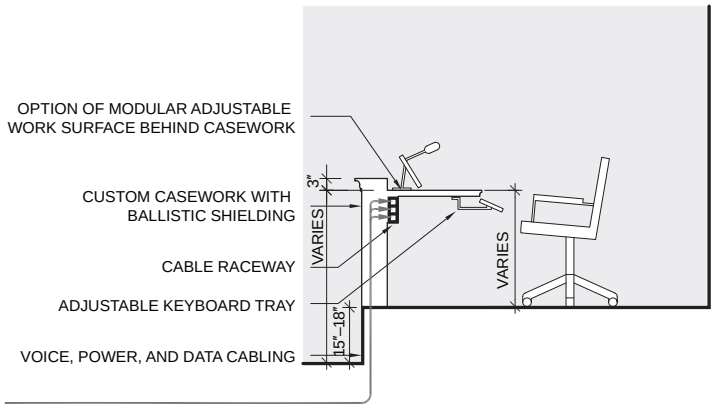


Figure 5.3 Judge's Bench Section

d. Provide a minimum of 3′6″ between the edge of the judge's desk and the wall behind. This space will accommodate a wheelchair or mobility device and allow the judge sufficient work area. Design the front and sides of the bench to facilitate transfer of documents and verbal communication between the judge, courtroom clerk, and court reporter.

e. Design the bench with a custom casework wall compatible with the courtroom design. Line the wall with bullet-resistant material that meets the criteria of Underwriters Laboratories' (UL) 752 Level 3. Provide accessible under-desktop cable raceways to accommodate voice, data, video, power, and courtroom technology cabling.

f. Consider an ergonomic adjustable desk system behind the casework shell in lieu of custom millwork. This component can be made from modular furniture, providing adjustable heights and angles of desktop.

g. Provide areas for computer equipment, a printer, storage, a telephone, and outlets for data transmission. The bench requires a microphone with a mute button and may include the courtroom audio controls. Provide holes and grommets in the work surface for wire management. Refer to chapter 16, Lighting Criteria, and chapter 18, Audiovisual Systems.

DIVISION ONE: DESIGN CRITERIA
1 General Principles
2 Courthouse Organization
3 Site Design
4 Courthouse Security
5 COURT SET
5.A Objectives
5.B Courtroom
5.C Courtroom Accessibility
5.D Courtroom Components
5.E Courtroom Support Spaces
6 Jury Facilities and Court Administration
7 Special Services
8 In-Custody Defendant Receiving, Holding, and Transport
9 Public Spaces
10 Building Support Services

The visual and physical relationships between the courtroom elements must be carefully planned to ensure a successful design.

2. Courtroom Clerk's Station

The courtroom clerk is responsible for maintaining a record of case actions and files and for receiving and labeling exhibits. The courtroom clerk must be close to the judge to transfer exhibit papers and files by hand and to communicate privately and must be accessible to counsel for marking and introducing documents. The height difference between the clerk's station floor and the judge's bench floor should not exceed 12″; the constant transfer of files creates an ergonomic problem with a greater difference. Consider a "pass-through" or other millwork solution to assist in paper passing (see figure 5.4). The clerk's station is located on the same side of the courtroom as the CSO and near a doorway to the private corridor. Access may be provided directly from clerk's station to courtroom well.

a. The clerk's workstation requires a work surface that is 120″ wide by 24″ to 27″ deep and must accommodate two clerks. An optional 8″ to 12″ deep shelf in front of the workstation may be added to provide a writing surface and additional screening of documents on the clerk's desk. The clerk's workstation requires substantial area for placement of files, forms, supplies, and other material (see figures 5.5 and 5.6). A telephone equipped with a flashing light rather than a ringer is recommended.

b. Because the clerk's station is the primary work area, design it like the judge's bench, compatible with the courtroom design. Provide a custom casework low front wall lined with bullet-resistant material that meets the criteria of UL 752 Level 3, similar to the judge's bench. Behind the paneling, consider using a modular furniture work surface with adjustable height to provide flexibility. Locate a wireless duress alarm button in a discreet location under the work surface. Because this work area is used for all office functions, such as typing and writing, this area must meet all requirements for ergonomic office workspaces.

c. The clerk's workstation must be cable ready for electronic equipment and requires multiple telephone, data, and electrical outlets and audio controls. Provide concealed, accessible raceways to incorporate voice, data, video, power, and audiovisual cabling.

d. The clerk's workstation must be designed with space for a printer and possibly a copier. Provide flexibility in terms of locating the printer; some clerks prefer the printer located adjacent to their work surfaces, whereas others prefer it located behind their workstations or immediately adjacent but not in the courtroom. Provide under-counter file drawers and cabinets for files and forms, and provide file storage behind the workstation. Maximizing the amount of surface area behind the workstation is desirable for stacking case files and other material.

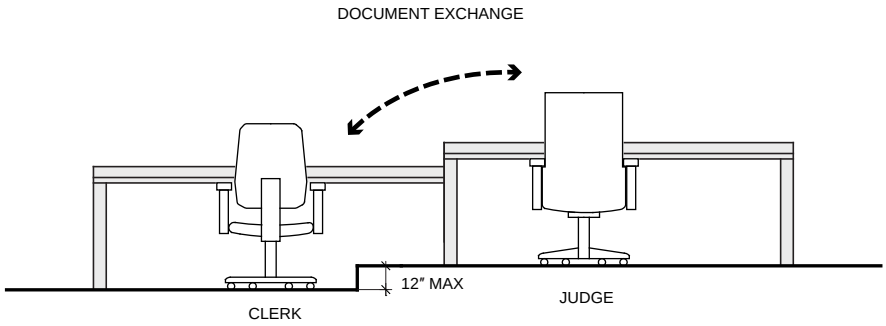


Figure 5.4 Bench and Clerk Elevation

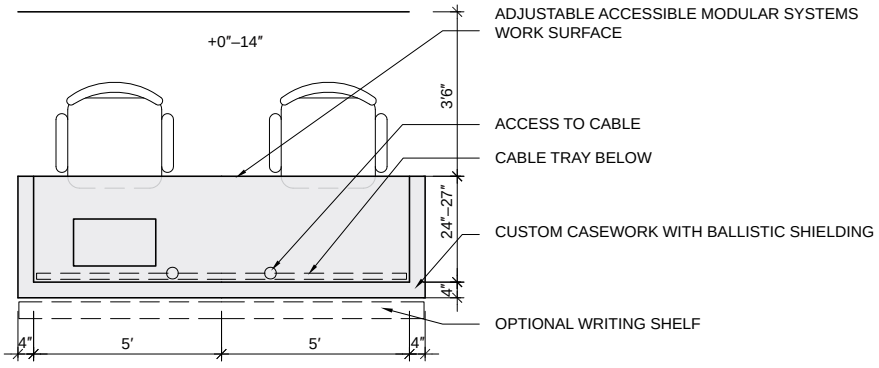


Figure 5.5 Clerk Station Plan

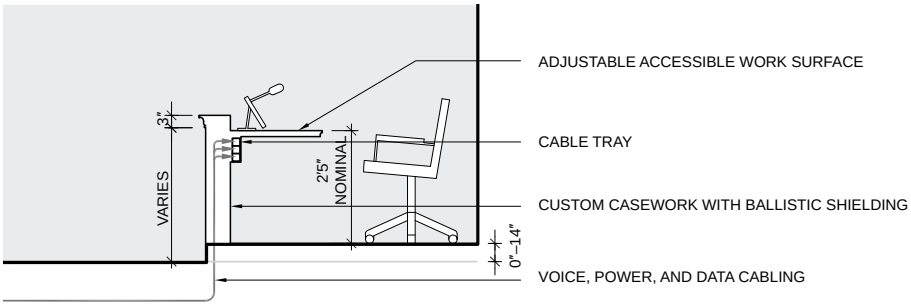


Figure 5.6 Clerk Station Section

3. Witness Box

a. The witness box shall be located between the judge and the jury and in such a way that the witness's face is clearly visible to the judge, jury, court clerks, court reporter, and counsel tables.

b. The witness box shall be designed to comfortably seat the witness and interpreter (if required) and to accommodate a wheelchair or mobility device. The witness chair shall be height adjustable and movable, except in certain buildings, where it shall be fixed (see figures 5.7 and 5.8).

c. The witness box shall be designed to maximize visibility between the jury and the witness.

d. The witness box shall accommodate many people throughout the day. Ramps are the most common and preferred means to provide wheelchair access to this area and a wheelchair turning circle to permit forward entry and exit.

e. Witness boxes typically have a work surface for reference material, and an expert witness may have a computer for use during testimony. Line the wall behind the paneling of the witness box with bullet-resistant material that meets the criteria of UL 752 Level 3, similar to the judge's bench.

DIVISION ONE: DESIGN CRITERIA
1 General Principles
2 Courthouse Organization
3 Site Design
4 Courthouse Security
5 COURT SET
5.A Objectives
5.B Courtroom
5.C Courtroom Accessibility
5.D Courtroom Components
5.E Courtroom Support Spaces
6 Jury Facilities and Court Administration
7 Special Services
8 In-Custody Defendant Receiving, Holding, and Transport
9 Public Spaces
10 Building Support Services

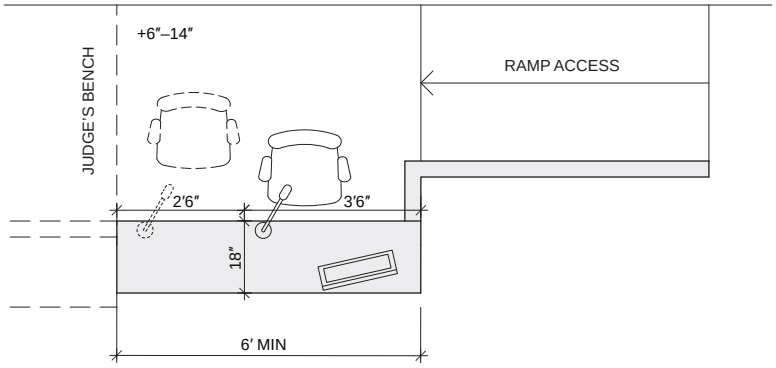


Figure 5.7 Witness Box Plan

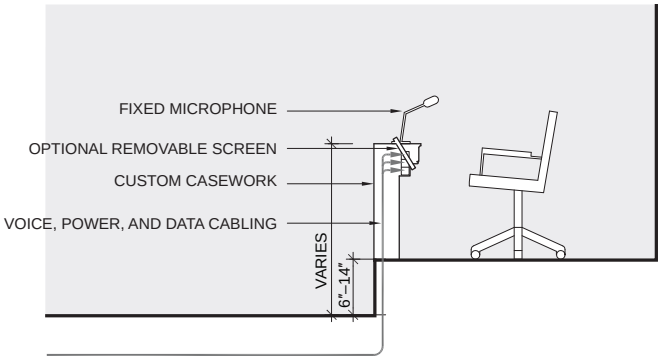


Figure 5.8 Witness Box Section

4. Court Reporter's Area

The court reporter provides verbatim recording of all court proceedings.

a. Locate the court reporter's area so that anything said by participants can be heard by the court reporter, and ensure sightlines to the judge, witness, and attorneys.

b. Provide a mobile (preferred) or stationary workstation that includes a work surface at least 24″ deep, with a lockable drawer for storage and a modesty panel.

c. Ensure that the workstation is cable ready for in-courtroom headphone audio output and computer-assisted real-time transcription. Provide concealed, accessible raceways to incorporate data, power, and audiovisual cabling.

5. Jury Box

a. Provide clear sightlines from each juror to the witness, attorneys, judge, courtroom clerk, and evidence displays. The jury box cannot extend past either the witness box or the attorneys' tables. Provide direct access into the jury box from the private corridor to the deliberation room so that the jury does not have to pass in front of the bench or litigant tables (see figures 5.9 and 5.10).

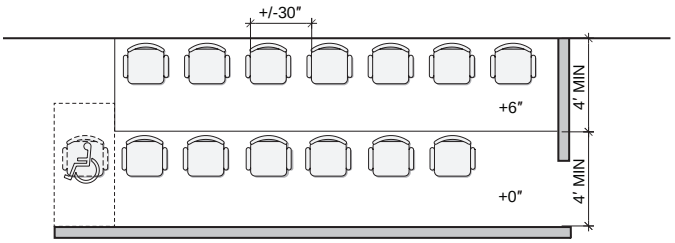


Figure 5.9 Jury Box Plan

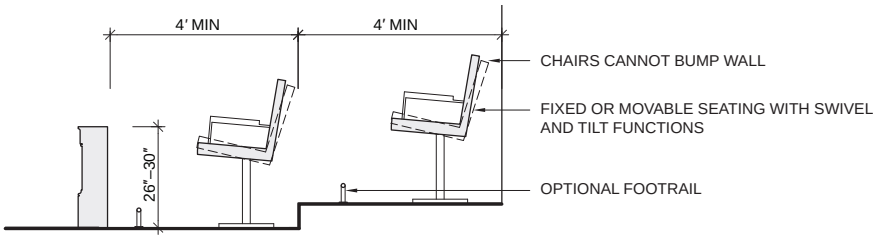


Figure 5.10 Jury Box Section

b. Design a two-tiered jury box sized to accommodate 14 people, including people with disabilities. The dimensions shall be approximately 8′ by 18′. The first row of jurors may be at floor level. When locating accessible seating space, provide sightlines equivalent to sightlines for other jury seating, and integrate the accessible position into the overall seating layout so that it is equal in its location and opportunity to the other seats.

c. Design the jury box to prevent communication between jurors and spectators and to guard against juror harassment. A space of 6′ between jurors and the spectator area railing is recommended. This area may be used to accommodate prospective jury members sitting on movable, stackable chairs while a jury is being impaneled. Where space is insufficient, provide a physical separation such as a transparent panel between the jury and spectator seating.

d. Provide comfortable, ergonomic jury chairs to accommodate people of all sizes. Chairs may be movable or fixed; however, fixed seating is recommended. The height should be adjustable from 16″ to 20″. Chairs must swivel and tilt and be spaced so that the arms do not collide and the chairs do not strike the rear wall. Provide sufficient aisle space in front of each row of seats for juror legroom. If required by the court, provide writing surfaces that are integral to the jury chairs. Provide a front modesty panel between 26″ and 33″ in height separating the jury box from the litigation area. Handrails may also be provided. The rear row of seating should be far enough away from the back wall to avoid scuff marks from chair backs or jurors' heads on the back wall. Provide a durable wall material behind the jury box.

e. Incorporate additional elements such as glass panels into high-security courtrooms, as needed, to secure the safety of the jury, spectators, staff, and court personnel and to ensure secure prisoner movement. Verify these requirements during the programming phase. In-custody defendants may not pass in front of the jury box on the way to and from the court floor holding area.

DIVISION ONE: DESIGN CRITERIA
1 General Principles
2 Courthouse Organization
3 Site Design
4 Courthouse Security
5 COURT SET
5.A Objectives
5.B Courtroom
5.C Courtroom Accessibility
5.D Courtroom Components
5.E Courtroom Support Spaces
6 Jury Facilities and Court Administration
7 Special Services
8 In-Custody Defendant Receiving, Holding, and Transport
9 Public Spaces
10 Building Support Services

6. Litigation Area

The litigation area, or well, provides space for primary participants in activities of the judicial proceeding. Size varies, depending on courtroom type, and components within the well vary by the type of proceeding.

a. Counsel tables: Counsel tables are to be located in the courtroom so that attorneys can be seen and heard by other attorneys, the judge, the witness, the courtroom clerk, the court reporter, and the jury. Provide at least two movable, accessible counsel tables with space for comfortable, ergonomic, movable chairs. The counsel tables shall have a table box for data, video, and power. Separate grommets in the tables shall be provided for the two microphones. Design the floor boxes with flexibility in mind, because the counsel tables are movable. Tables shall include a modesty panel to conceal defendant restraint devices. Provide a floor-attached U-bolt for the defense table. The table surface shall be scratch resistant. Provide an area behind the counsel tables and between the spectator area for a row of chairs along the railing for staff, paralegals, or other involved parties (see figures 5.11 and 5.12). If special counsel is required, particularly in juvenile and domestic cases, provide additional tables or seating at one of the counsel tables.

b. Lectern: A movable, height-adjustable, universally accessible lectern may be provided that may be shared between courtrooms and located within reasonable proximity to the counsel tables. The lectern shall be floor supported (not tabletop mounted). Provide a shelf and a gooseneck with a clip for a wireless microphone.

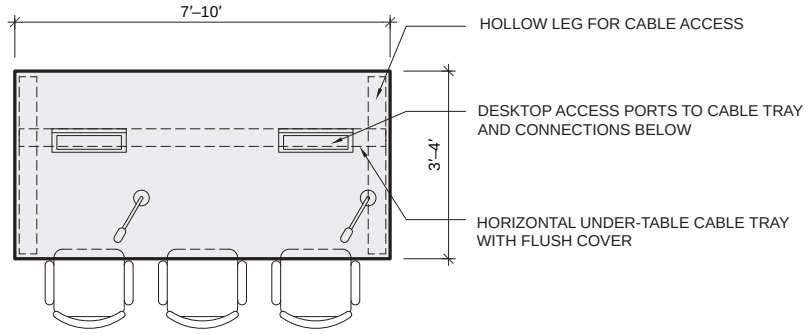


Figure 5.11 Counsel Table

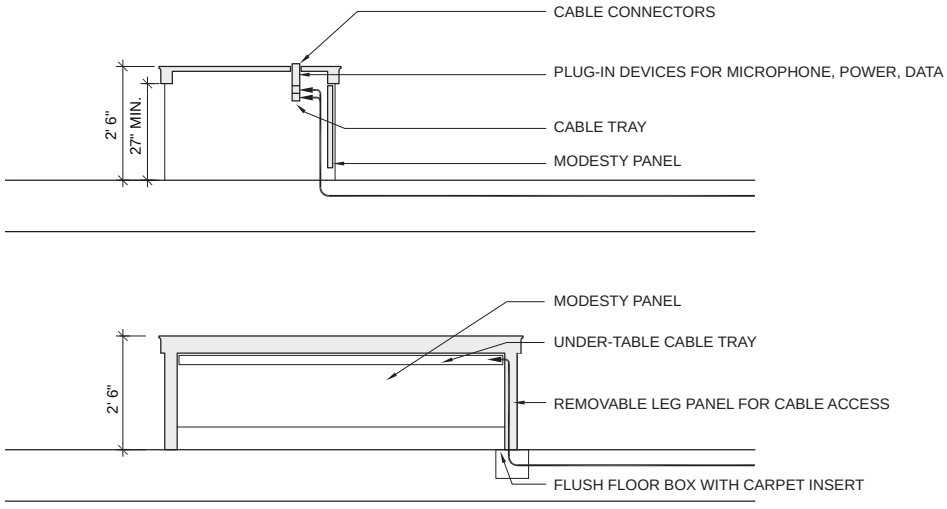


Figure 5.12 Counsel Table Section

c. Digital evidence presentation system placed between the two counsel tables: The system can be a cart shared between courtrooms or installed as a fixed shelf. It can contain a document camera and/or a Blu-ray player. Provide a recessed floor box with outlets for data, video, and power.

d. Egress: Emergency egress from the litigation area shall be provided out the front of the courtroom to the public corridor and out the rear of the courtroom to the restricted corridor. Courts may require controlled access on private corridor doors that still allows for emergency exiting. Delayed egress exit devices are not permitted. See chapter 4, section 4.H.5.d for additional requirements.

7. Exhibit Display Area

Provide space for exhibit display and a large ceiling-mounted projection screen or wall-mounted monitor in a location clearly visible to all court participants. (See chapter 18, Audiovisual Systems, for screen size standards.) Provide adequate clearance at the bottom of the screen when fully open to prevent head injuries for those walking by. Plan floor-level transition and steps to avoid a conflict with the projection screen.

8. Court Security Officer Station

Locate the CSO's station within the litigation area to the rear of the well and in front of the spectators' barrier. The CSO is typically located near the door to the in-custody holding area and requires easy and quick access to the defendant's table.

a. Provide the CSO station with a small work surface, modesty panel 36" tall above finish floor, and lockable desk suitable for storage of a service pistol and ammunition. A telephone equipped with a flashing light rather than a ringer is recommended. An electronic signaling system connecting the CSO's station and the jury deliberation room is required.

b. Incorporate bullet-resistant material into the paneling of the CSO station, and include a silent duress alarm system in the workstation design. Install impact-resistant gypboard behind the CSO's chair.

c. Provide an electronic signaling system connecting the CSO's station and the jury deliberation room.

9. Spectator Area and Litigation Area Separation

The spectator area shall be separated from the litigation area to control movement and reinforce the hierarchy of the participants within the courtroom. This separation element, commonly called the "rail," may be millwork or predesigned and manufactured and shall have a clear opening at least 44″ wide.

10. Spectator Area

A multipurpose courtroom has seating in the spectator area for the majority of the jury panel. The number of seats shall be planned to accommodate voir dire panels for jury selection through a combination of seats behind the rail, movable chairs inside the litigation area, and the jury box seating. See figures 5.20 and 5.21 at the end of this chapter.

a. Provide bench seating in lieu of individual theater-style seats because more people of various sizes can be accommodated and bench seating is low maintenance (see figure 5.13). Contour and proportion benches to provide comfortable seating; provide hardwood veneer and solid wood construction. Anchor benches to the floor, but make them removable for relocation. Individual theater-style seating systems are not permitted.

DIVISION ONE: DESIGN CRITERIA

1 General Principles
2 Courthouse Organization
3 Site Design
4 Courthouse Security
5 COURT SET
5.A Objectives
5.B Courtroom
5.C Courtroom Accessibility
5.D Courtroom Components
5.E Courtroom Support Spaces
6 Jury Facilities and Court Administration
7 Special Services
8 In-Custody Defendant Receiving, Holding, and Transport
9 Public Spaces
10 Building Support Services

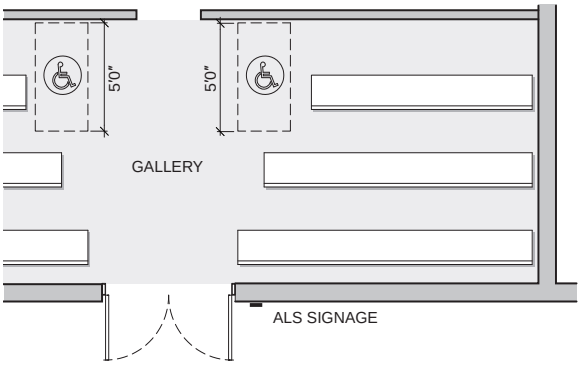
b. Wheelchair spaces, companion seating, and semiambulatory seating shall be provided in ratios required by law (see figures 5.13 and 5.14).

c. In multipurpose courtrooms, accessible seating can be located in one area. In large courtrooms that are wider than a typical multipurpose courtroom, accessible seating areas shall be provided in several locations to equalize sightline advantages. A wide central aisle allows flexibility for persons with disabilities.

d. A companion seat must be located adjacent to the wheelchair space. The wheelchair space must align with the companion seat (see figure 5.14).

e. Space in front of and behind the wheelchair space shall be provided such that the spectator using a wheelchair or mobility device can roll forward or backward to allow other spectators to exit a row. The wheelchair or mobility device cannot permanently block exit from an aisle.

f. Temporary seating, or a fold-down seat, may be placed in wheelchair spaces when not occupied, but this is not a preferred option because of the logistics of how the temporary seats are removed when the space is needed for a wheelchair.



ALS = assistive listening system.

Figure 5.13 Bench-Type Spectator Seating

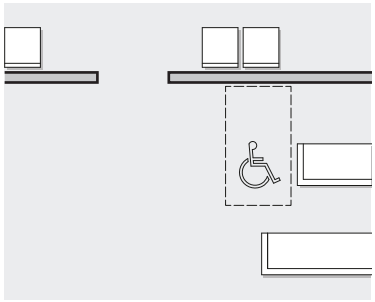


Figure 5.14 Companion Seating Adjacency

11. Sound Lock / Entry Vestibule

Provide a vestibule between the courtroom and the public circulation that will be a transition space and control noise. Place glass panels in the doors from the vestibule into the courtroom (doors from the public corridor into the vestibule are typically solid). The outside doors from the corridor to the vestibule shall be lockable for security. It is preferable not to have exit devices, latches, or astragals on the doors from the courtroom to the vestibule due to noise considerations. If the attorney-witness conference rooms are needed while the courtroom is dark or locked, the vestibule may be unlocked to provide access. Flexibility in the locking system may be provided on a project-by-project basis.

For high-profile cases, court security staff may provide additional security screening at the courtroom entrance. Consider providing electrical outlets close to the courtroom entries to allow supplemental screening equipment to be plugged in.

12. Exhibit Storage

Provide a secure room or closet for storage of exhibits. For security, install a card reader entry system, camera surveillance, and hard ceiling. This space shall be accessible directly from the courtroom or from the private corridor. Two locking systems for all exhibit storage are recommended to prevent a borrowed access card from allowing access. Wall construction around exhibit storage should be secure and continuous from slab to slab to prevent access from above the ceiling.

13. Evidence Storage

Posttrial evidence storage should be provided in a secure central location adjacent to clerks' secure offices. Refer to the requirements for records storage in chapter 6, Jury Facilities and Court Administration.

5.E COURTROOM SUPPORT SPACES

Jury deliberation rooms and other support spaces off the private corridor may in the future accommodate staff offices or functions different from those in the original program. Therefore, the configurations and fixtures in these spaces must be flexible.

The private corridor and courtroom support spaces may be at a higher floor elevation than the courtroom well to reduce the ramping requirements within the courtroom.

1. Chambers

Chambers are the personal office and conference areas in which the judges conduct legal research and case study and hold meetings with attorneys or judicial personnel.

d. Because each judge requires a quiet, distraction-free work environment in which to perform these tasks, separate chambers shall be provided for each judge.

e. Chambers shall be provided with durable furniture with scratch-resistant work surfaces. Provide holes and grommets in the work surfaces for cable management.

f. Depending on the number of judges in a facility, one or more additional chambers for use by judges who are not regularly assigned to the court may be provided.

g. The chambers shall be designed with a private restroom.

h. Adequate sound control between the chambers and the staff and reception areas shall be provided to reduce sound transmission during sensitive conference sessions.

i. Natural lighting shall be provided to the chambers (see figure 5.15).

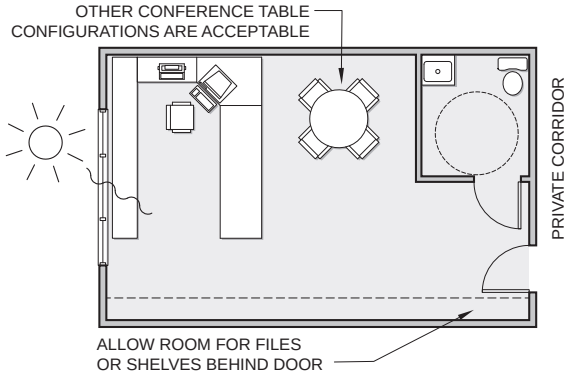


Figure 5.15 Judge's Chamber Plan

DIVISION ONE: DESIGN CRITERIA
1 General Principles
2 Courthouse Organization
3 Site Design
4 Courthouse Security
5 COURT SET
5.A Objectives
5.B Courtroom
5.C Courtroom Accessibility
5.D Courtroom Components
5.E Courtroom Support Spaces
6 Jury Facilities and Court Administration
7 Special Services
8 In-Custody Defendant Receiving, Holding, and Transport
9 Public Spaces
10 Building Support Services

j. Judicial chambers may be clustered for improved collaboration and to share support functions. If chambers are clustered, space may be conserved and costs reduced by providing a common restroom to be shared among judges and a separate shared restroom for staff (see figure 5.16).

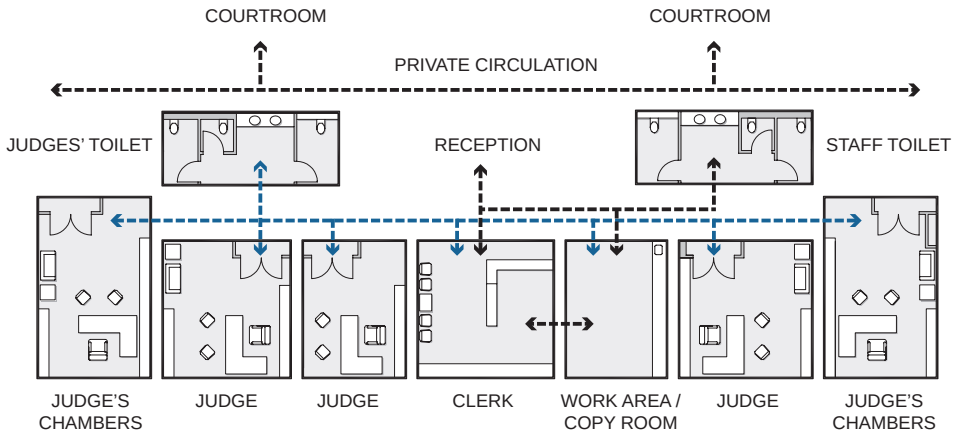


Figure 5.16 Clustered Chamber Layout

2. Support Staff Workstations, Reception, and Waiting Areas

The judicial office may be adjacent to and entered through an anteroom that contains space for floating courtroom clerks and support staff who perform clerical functions, receive and screen visitors, and maintain legal files for one or more judges. In some cases, this area may function as an unstaffed waiting area. The size of this area depends on related functional requirements.

3. Copy, Workroom, and Supply Area

Provide a copy, workroom, and supply area containing photocopy and fax machines to be accessible to judicial support staff, research attorneys, attorneys, and CSOs. A ratio of one copy workroom for every four to eight judges is required.

4. Court Reporter's Work Area

Court reporters transcribe court proceedings and review transcripts. Provide a separate court reporter's work area, grouping multiple court reporter workstations in a larger area. Locate the work area on the private corridor on the same floor as the courtrooms, on nearby courtroom floors, or on a court administration floor. Provide an area for locked transcript storage and general office supplies inside or adjacent to the court reporter's work area. Provide a shared counter space to assemble transcripts; provide cubicles with higher divider walls for regular work.

5. Conference Room

A conference room may be provided for judges as defined in the project program. This area may include bookshelves for reference materials. In small courts, this area may be combined with the jury deliberation function, provided that legal books are not accessible to jurors. A designated law library is not permitted.

6. Research Attorney Offices and Workstations

Space may be provided for research attorneys, who review case files and perform legal research for one or more judges.

7. Jury Deliberation Room

Provide jurors a private deliberation room that is free from distractions and outside interference, accessible from the private corridor (see figures 5.17–5.19).

a. Provide not more than one juror deliberation room for every two courtrooms, and consider one deliberation room for every three courtrooms. The ratio may be verified by a study during programming of the recent data on the number of jury deliberations at a particular court; however, more than one jury deliberation room per two courtrooms must be approved by the Judicial Council. For efficiency and flexibility, some jury rooms can be initially assigned to other courtroom support functions in the program but must be convertible to jury rooms without remodeling.

b. Design the jury deliberation room to accommodate a table allowing all jurors, including persons with disabilities, to participate equally without hierarchy. Round or square tables are preferred to long rectangular tables.

c. Design the jury deliberation room to comfortably accommodate 12 jurors and allow use of charts, mounted exhibits, and video monitors for evidence.

d. Provide one accessible toilet room positioned so that the door opens from a vestibule. Orient the toilet room door for sound attenuation and to provide reasonable privacy to the toilet room.

e. Provide a nonchilled water bottle filling station.

f. Provide space for coat storage, which can be either a coatrack or a built-in closet space.

g. Provide natural light for the room, but ensure that windows do not allow jurors to communicate with people outside the court facility.

h. Design jury deliberation rooms in a flexible manner so that they can easily be converted into chambers to accommodate assigned judges.

8. Attorney-Client Conference Rooms

Provide conference rooms for attorneys and clients and for use by witnesses.

a. Provide two attorney conference rooms for every courtroom. The ratio of conference rooms may be reduced. One room may be eliminated to add spectator seating.

b. Provide access to conference rooms from the public corridor if this is consistent with the court's security and operational procedures. Alternatively, conference rooms may be reached through the courtroom entry vestibule if access can be provided but controlled when the courtroom is not occupied.

c. In addition, provide a secure attorney-client interview room adjacent to courtroom holding. The court security officers shall have the ability to control both sides of the secure interview room from the courtroom. Refer to tool 5, In-Custody Interview Room Guidelines.

DIVISION ONE: DESIGN CRITERIA

1 General Principles
2 Courthouse Organization
3 Site Design
4 Courthouse Security
5 COURT SET
5.A Objectives
5.B Courtroom
5.C Courtroom Accessibility
5.D Courtroom Components
5.E Courtroom Support Spaces
6 Jury Facilities and Court Administration
7 Special Services
8 In-Custody Defendant Receiving, Holding, and Transport
9 Public Spaces
10 Building Support Services

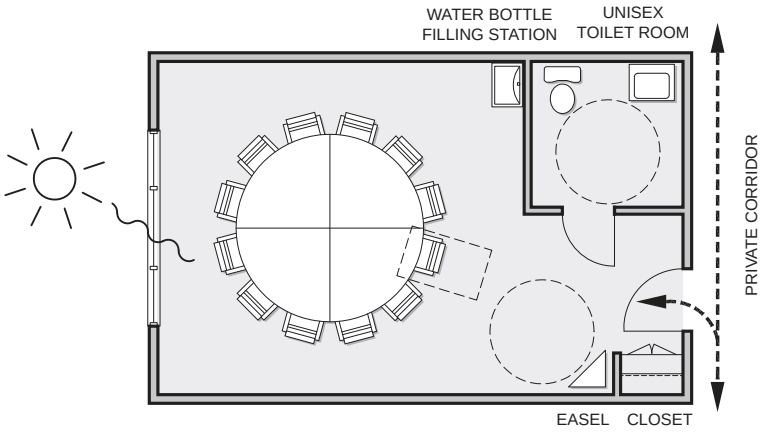


Figure 5.17 Jury Deliberation Room 400 SF

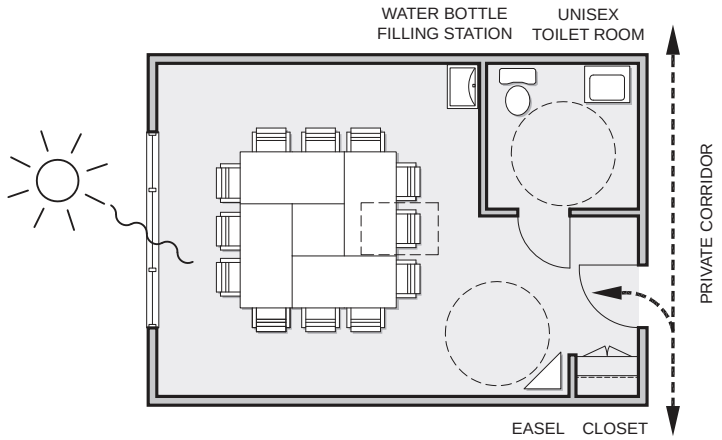


Figure 5.18 Jury Deliberation Room 345 SF

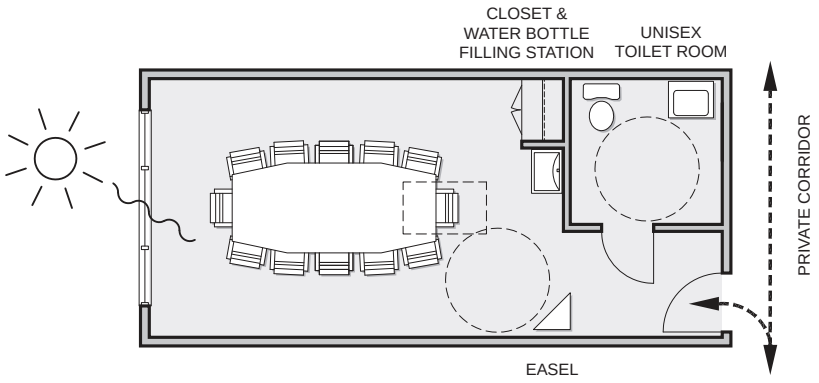


Figure 5.19 Jury Deliberation Room 300 SF

Page intentionally left blank

DIVISION ONE: DESIGN CRITERIA

1 General Principles
2 Courthouse Organization
3 Site Design
4 Courthouse Security

5 COURT SET
5.A Objectives
5.B Courtroom
5.C Courtroom Accessibility
5.D Courtroom Components
5.E Courtroom Support Spaces

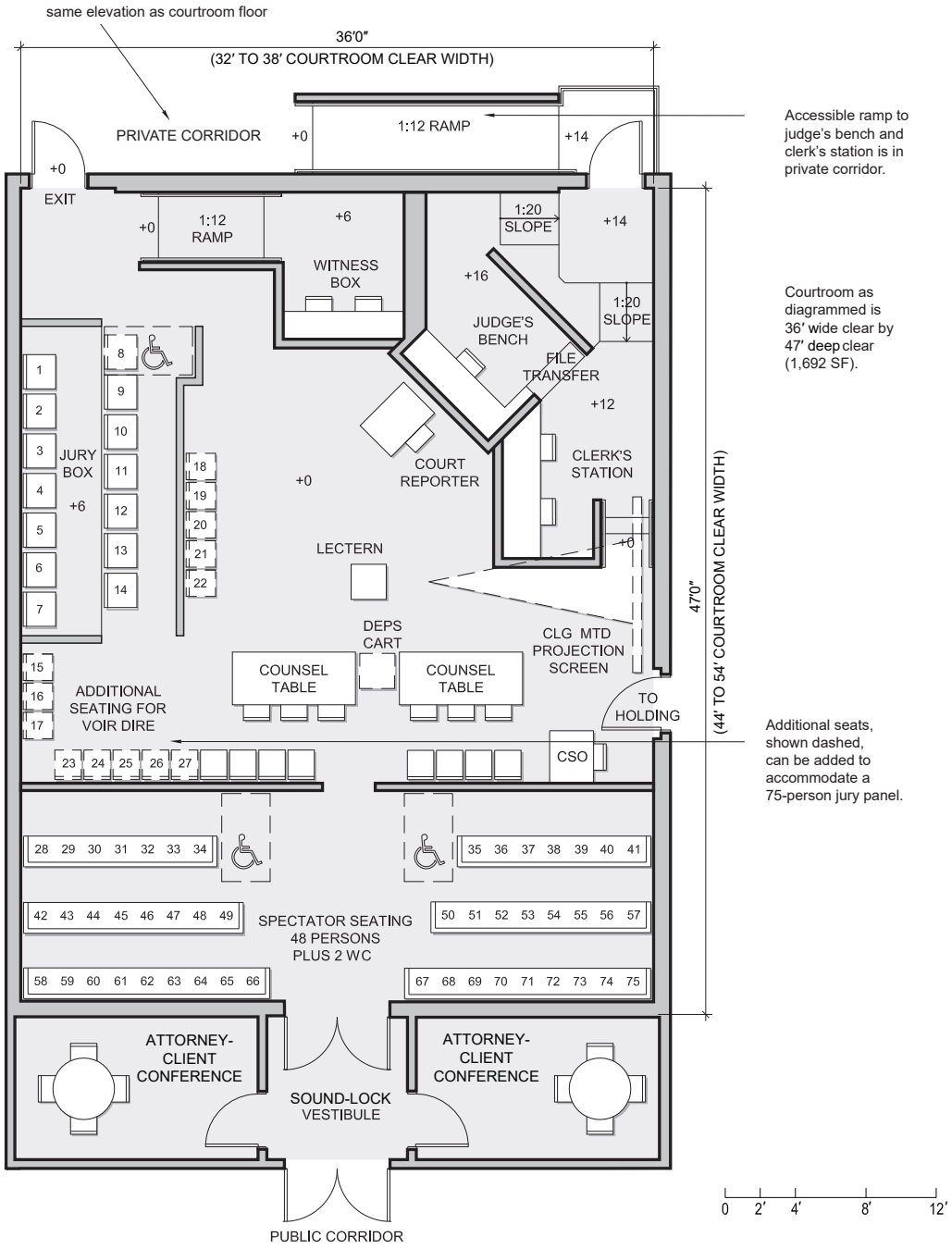
6 Jury Facilities and Court Administration
7 Special Services
8 In-Custody Defendant Receiving, Holding, and Transport
9 Public Spaces
10 Building Support Services

Figure 5.20 Variations

- Ramping requirements may be reduced for judge's bench and clerk's station if private corridor is at a higher floor elevation than the courtroom floor. However, the ramp shall remain in the corridor and not be added within the courtroom. Courtroom templates in tool 2 shall be strictly adhered to.
- If a court intends to use the jury box for in-custody seating, the jury box shall include a pony wall adjacent to the exit door leading to the private corridor to prevent someone from running out that door.
- See spectator seating layout shown in figures 5.22 and 5.23 for seating layout in large courtrooms.

Figure 5.21 Variations

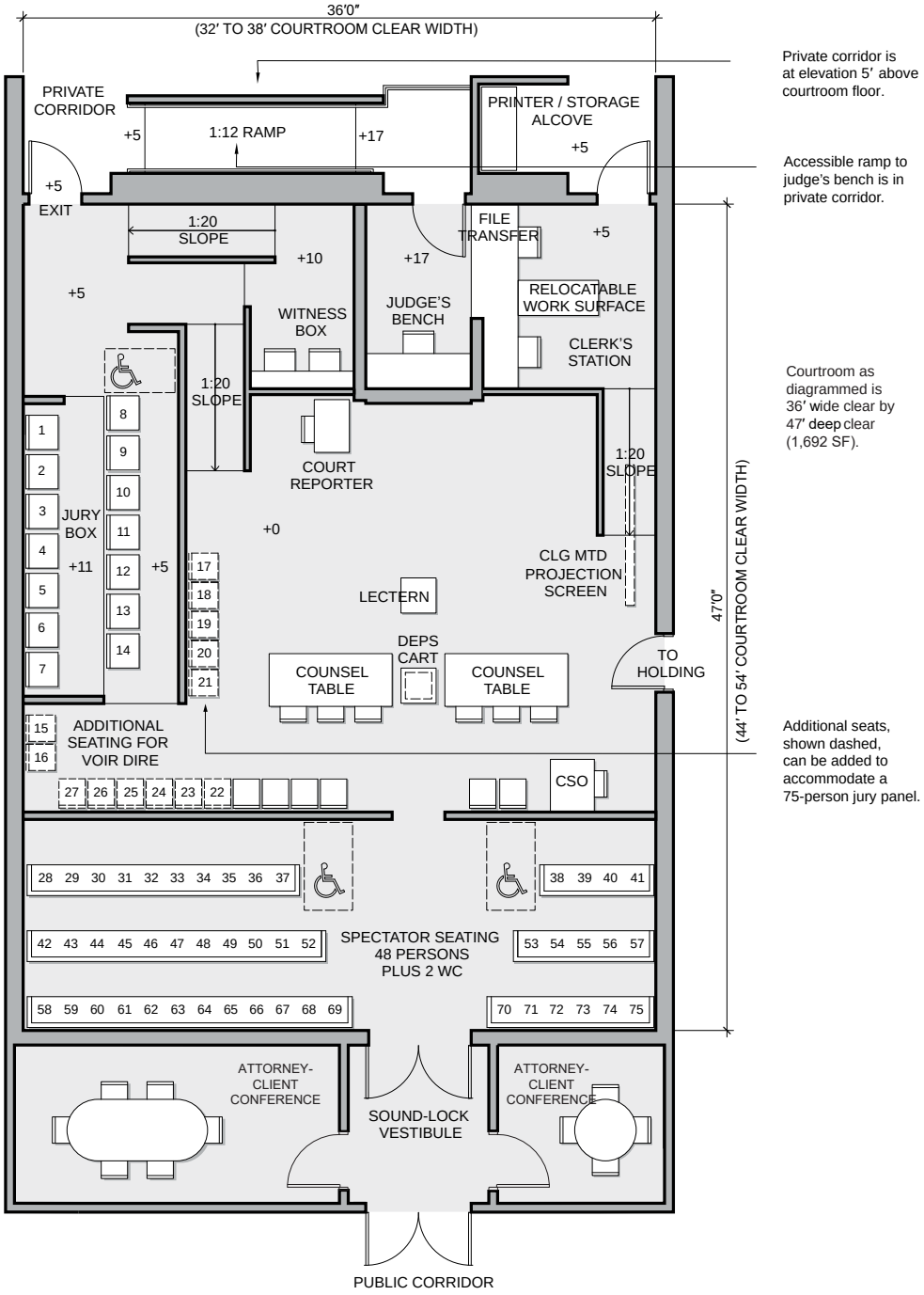
- Ramping requirements will increase for judge's bench and clerk's station if private corridor is at the same floor elevation as the courtroom floor.
- If a court intends to use the jury box for in-custody seating, the jury box shall include a pony wall adjacent to the exit door leading to the private corridor to prevent someone from running out that door.
- See spectator seating layout shown in figures 5.22 and 5.23 for seating layout in large courtrooms.



CLG MTD = ceiling mounted.
CSO = court security officer.
DEPS = digital evidence presentation system.
WC = wheelchairs.

Note: For illustration of courtroom components only. Refer to tool 2, Catalog of Courtroom Layouts for California Trial Courts, for courtroom template plans.

Figure 5.20 Multipurpose Courtroom (Corner Bench, Seating for Jury Panel)



CLG MTD = ceiling mounted.
CSO = court security officer.
DEPS = digital evidence presentation system.
WC = wheelchairs.
Note: For illustration of courtroom components only. Refer to tool 2, Catalog of Courtroom Layouts for California Trial Courts, courtroom template plans.

Figure 5.21 Multipurpose Courtroom (Central Bench—Asymmetrical)

DIVISION ONE: DESIGN CRITERIA

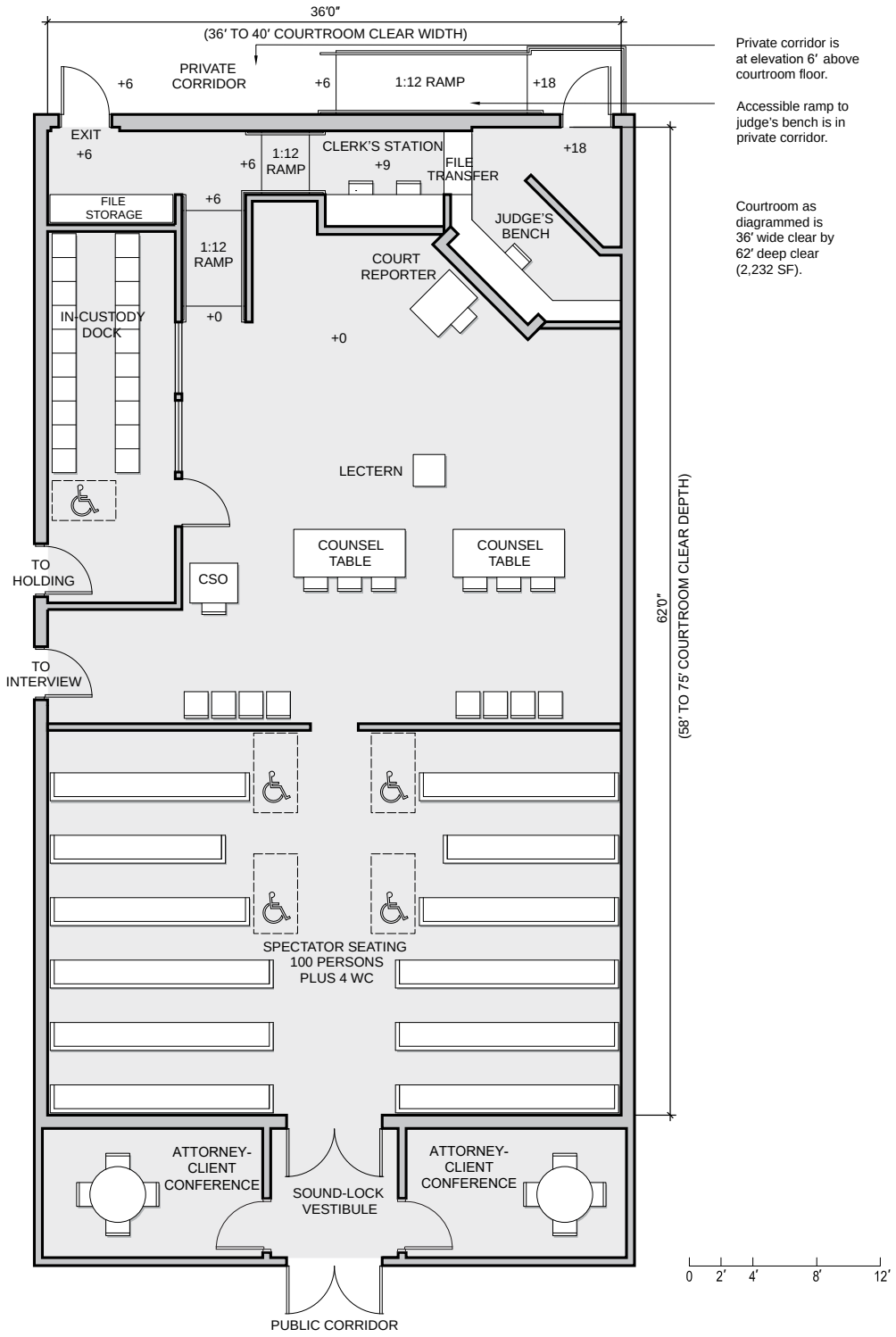
1 General Principles
2 Courthouse Organization
3 Site Design
4 Courthouse Security
5 COURT SET
5.A Objectives
5.B Courtroom
5.C Courtroom Accessibility
5.D Courtroom Components
5.E Courtroom Support Spaces
6 Jury Facilities and Court Administration
7 Special Services
8 In-Custody Defendant Receiving, Holding, and Transport
9 Public Spaces
10 Building Support Services

Figure 5.22 Variations

- Ramping requirements • Ramping requirements will increase for judge's bench and clerk's station if private corridor is at the same floor elevation as the courtroom floor.
- In-custody dock may alternatively be located outside of courtroom perimeter in holding area.

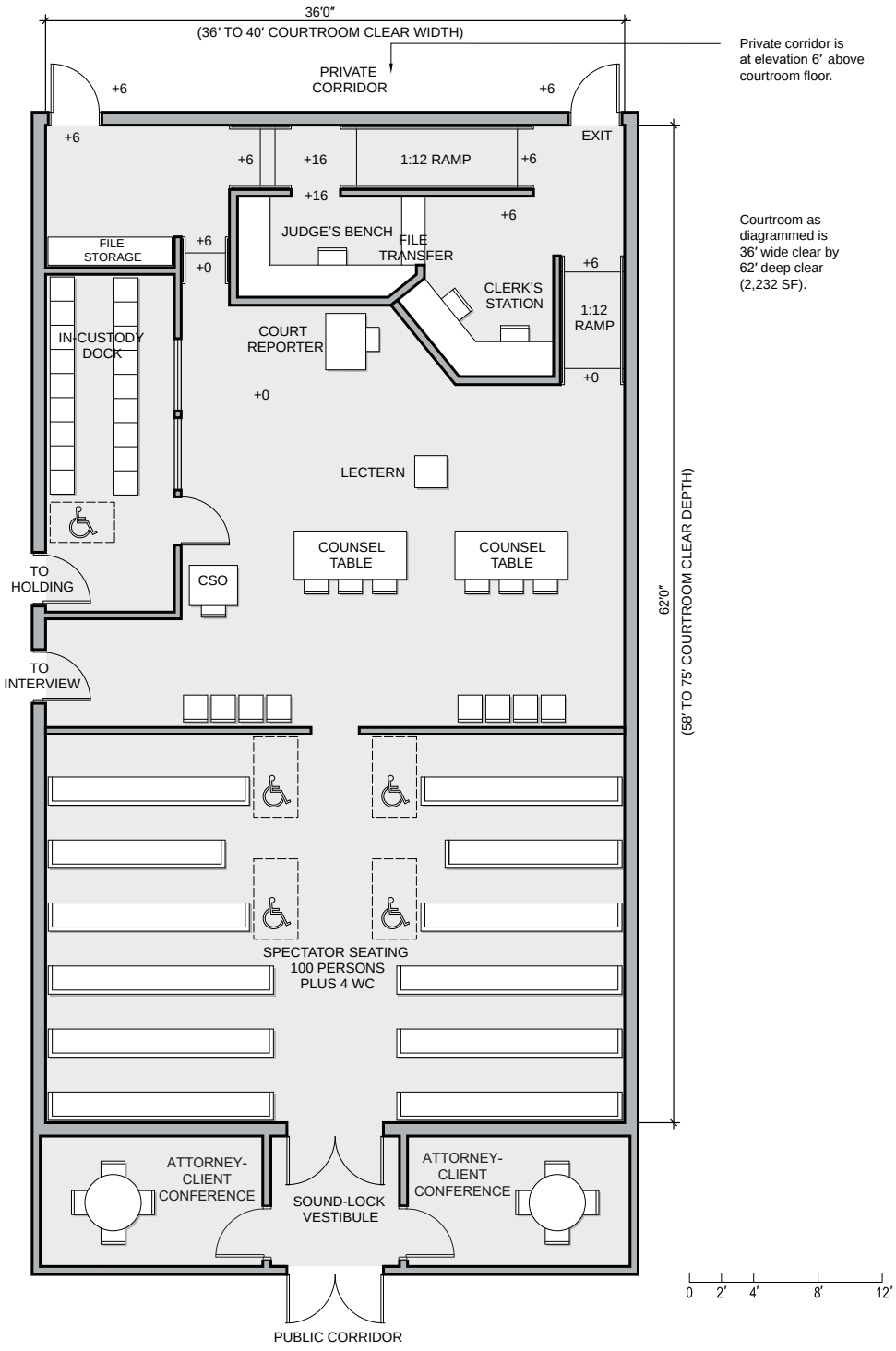
Figure 5.23 Variations

- Ramping requirements will increase for judge's bench and clerk's station if private corridor is at the same floor elevation as the courtroom floor.
- In-custody dock may alternatively be located outside of courtroom perimeter in holding area.



CSO = court security officer.
WC = wheelchairs.
Note: For illustration of courtroom components only.

Figure 5.22 Arraignment Courtroom (Corner Bench)



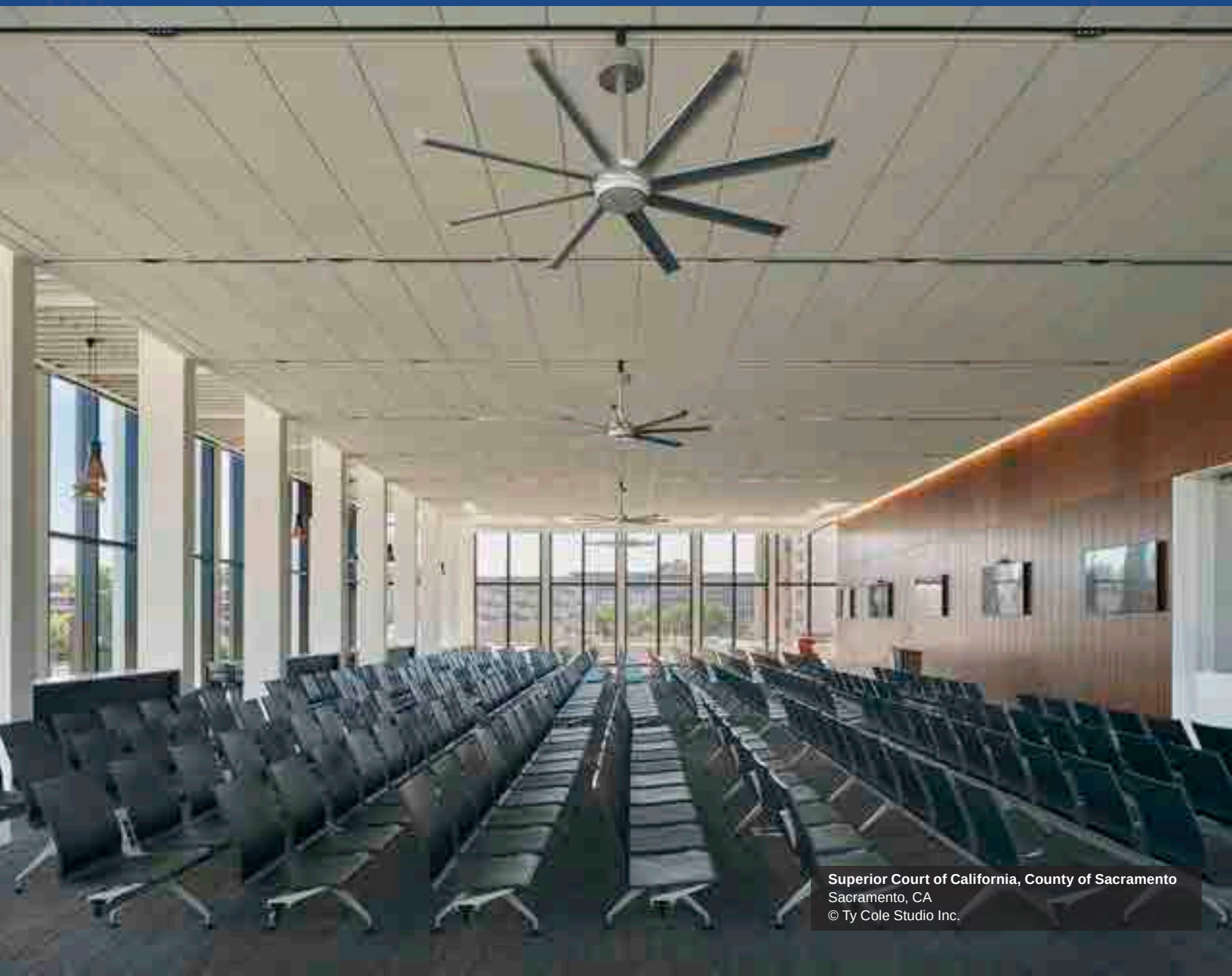
CSO = court security officer.
WC = wheelchairs.
Note: For illustration of courtroom components only.

Figure 5.23 Arraignment Courtroom (Central Bench)

DIVISION ONE: DESIGN CRITERIA

6 JURY FACILITIES AND COURT ADMINISTRATION

SECTION	TOPIC	PAGE
6.A	Jury Facilities Objectives	6.2
6.B	Jury Assembly Spaces	6.2
6.C	Objectives of the Clerk's Office	6.5
6.D	Clerk's Office Spaces	6.5
6.E	Court Executive Officer's Area	6.8



Superior Court of California, County of Sacramento
Sacramento, CA
© Ty Cole Studio Inc.

Jury Assembly Spaces

- Entry Queuing Area
- Reception, Check-In, and Registration
- Jury Assembly Room and Information Presentation Area
- Forms Counter
- Coffee and Snack Area
- Jury Staff Area
- Mail Center
- Call Center

6.A JURY FACILITIES OBJECTIVES

Jury duty is a public service obligation. For many citizens, jury duty is their only contact with the judicial system. The jury assembly area presents potential jurors with a physical symbol of the importance of their duty and orients them to the process of the courts.

1. Plan and design the jury assembly rooms to be comfortable, efficient, and safe.
2. Locate, size, and configure the spaces appropriately to facilitate use by potential jurors.
3. Ensure that all jury assembly areas can be monitored by jury staff.
4. Because technology and new operational models will continue to affect jury call and associated space needs, design jury assembly spaces to consider future changes, such as online jury summons processes, that will reduce or eliminate the need for such large spaces. Jury assembly rooms should be designed to allow for easy conversion to other uses.

6.B JURY ASSEMBLY SPACES

1. General Requirements

The jury assembly area is a high-volume public access function and should be located on the building's entry floor or lower floor.

a. All prospective and selected jurors must enter through a screening station. The entrance to the jury area must be easy to locate upon entering the courthouse and easily accessible from public corridors.

b. Jury staff must be able to control the entry into the jury assembly area.

c. Traffic to the jury assembly room shall not interfere with public circulation in the lobby, stairs, or elevators. Plan movement of jurors to minimize juror contact with attorneys and litigants and to preclude intimidation by or contact with the public.

d. The assembly area shall be protected from exterior viewing.

2. Components

The jury assembly area consists of several unique components, described below.

2.1. Entry Queuing Area

a. Prominently placed signage shall provide clear directions to the jury assembly area. Jurors arrive simultaneously, so queuing areas will be required for prospective jurors waiting to sign in.

b. The queuing area can be colocated within a lobby, waiting area, or building circulation. The queuing area should be within the jury assembly room to prevent contact with defendants, family members of defendants, or witnesses.

2.2 Reception, Check-In, and Registration

a. Configure the reception, check-in, and registration area to be immediately visible at the entry of the jury area. The size of this area will depend on the number of courtrooms and the peak volume of anticipated jurors expected at sign-in times. Self-check-in kiosks may be considered in this location.

b. Provide standard clerical support workstations (refer to table 2.2).

c. Provide counter space at the registration counter for jurors.

d. Provide at least six trauma kits in an easily accessible and recognizable container located next to an automated external defibrillator (AED) as required by Health and Safety Code section 19300.

2.3. Jury Assembly Room and Information Presentation Area

a. Provide sufficient seating for all prospective jurors. Provide movable grouped seating and lounge seating with power supply. The minimum number of seats will vary by the size and location of the facility. Provide wheelchair spaces, companion seating, and semiambulatory seating in ratios required by law.

b. Provide areas for reading, studying, working, and watching television. Provide work counters for a large volume of users with power connections for personal electronic devices (see figure 6.1).



Figure 6.1 Seating and Work Areas in Jury Assembly Room, Superior Court of Tulare County, Porterville

c. Design and construct jury assembly rooms in courthouses without dedicated training rooms to the same standards as training rooms, with full multimedia capabilities, so they can be used for training and other collaborative activities. This design includes the use of nonfixed, easily removable seating to allow for flexible room setups. These rooms should be designed to allow use for training sessions without disturbing jury services staff.

d. Locate restroom facilities within or close to the jury assembly room.

e. Provide a movable lectern for juror orientation and infrastructure for wireless or cell phone access.

f. At the information presentation area, provide for use of audiovisual equipment, computer data lines, and telecommunications systems to accommodate programs such as video orientation, automated jury management systems, and juror call-in programs. Provide glare control for video orientations. See chapter 17, Network and Communication Systems, and chapter 18, Audiovisual Systems, for technical requirements.

Outdoor areas may be provided if they are within the building's secure perimeter and jurors are prevented from public viewing or contact.

DIVISION ONE: DESIGN CRITERIA

1 General Principles
2 Courthouse Organization
3 Site Design
4 Courthouse Security
5 Court Set
6 JURY FACILITIES AND COURT ADMINISTRATION
6.A Jury Facilities Objectives
6.B Jury Assembly Spaces
6.C Objectives of the Clerk's Office
6.D Clerk's Office Spaces
6.E Court Executive Officer's Area
7 Special Services
8 In-Custody Defendant Receiving, Holding, and Transport
9 Public Spaces
10 Building Support Services

2.4 Forms Counter

Provide counters for filling out forms. A reasonable proportion of the counter space shall be designed for accessibility by people in wheelchairs.

2.5 Coffee and Snack Area

a. Provide space for a minimum of three or four vending machines, a table, chairs, and a space for water and coffee. Room size shall be proportionate to the number of people served; in larger facilities, the area may be increased commensurately.

b. Provide space for a vendor, if requested, in some facilities. This area is usually provided in a separate alcove to contain food-related mess and minimize noise impact on the assembly and work areas. Depending on other food service in the building, this vending area may need to be accessible to nonjurors.

2.6 Jury Staff Area

In cases where jury staff screen jurors, an adjoining space may be necessary for the jury coordinator or for staff consultation. In larger courthouses, space for additional support staff not located in the jury reception area may be required.

a. Size the support space area to be proportionate to the size of the court facility.

b. Locate the jury office so it is readily accessible to the reception counter.

c. Provide sufficient space for storage of jury records and files (see figure 6.2).

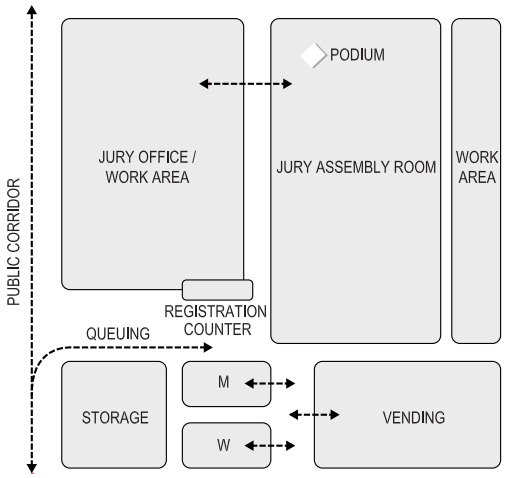


Figure 6.2 Jury Assembly Suite Adjacency Diagram

2.7 Mail Center

If required, provide a work area where staff can prepare juror summons, scan summons return information, and print checks. Most courts outsource summons preparation, printing, and mailing or centralize this function with other mail activities.

2.8 Call Center

Provide a work area where staff can answer telephone queries. Larger facilities often use call centers or interactive voice response.

6.C OBJECTIVES OF THE CLERK'S OFFICE

The trial court's administrative organization combines the traditional public and case management functions of the clerk with the financial and administrative services of a modern business. Clerk responsibilities include case filing and tracking, records administration, calendar management, collection of fines and fees, and sharing public information. Business services may include human resources, budget management, and information services activities; statistical reporting; and purchasing.

The number of court staff varies by jurisdiction. Variables influencing court staffing include the number of judicial officers, number and type of case filings, number of court locations, and extent to which business services are provided internally or are contracted with other entities.

a. Colocate functions of the clerk's office (CO), and provide convenient public access to areas with high public contact. These areas should be located on lower floors near the main entry and public elevators in a multistory building. Provide staff areas with easy access to the private circulation system. Connect the CO to private and public corridors, allowing controlled access to judicial officers, courtroom personnel, attorneys, and the general public.

b. Ensure that the appearance of the CO is consistent with the rest of the courthouse. The public side of the counter area must have durable finishes. The counters, workstations, and public viewing stations shall make use of modular furniture where appropriate to maximize complete ergonomic and expansion flexibility. The clerk's office shall be an open-office environment with modular furniture appropriate for a public agency.

c. Consider making rooms more flexible by providing telephone, data, and power outlets in areas that may be converted to workstations, offices, or conference areas. Electronic case management will affect future record storage areas that may be required, and these areas must be designed with flexibility in mind for conversion to other program needs.

d. Provide security to ensure the safety of the public, staff, records, and exhibits. Integrate security duress alarm notification systems into the courthouse security system. Consider security elements in the public service lobby. Incorporate glass and closed-circuit television cameras at the public counter area. At transaction windows that are not accessed through the public entry weapons screening station, provide bullet-resistant glass barrier systems and counter casework. Provide the evidence storage room and vault with locks and intrusion alarms, and locate it in an area that allows constant supervision. CO staff access shall be restricted by use of key cards or other devices.

6.D CLERK'S OFFICE SPACES

The clerk's office area consists of the following spaces. See figure 6.3 for a typical layout.

1. Public Counter and Counter Workstation

a. Design public service counters to encourage access to the judicial system while providing security for office personnel. Counters allow sufficient work area to transact case filing activities, and they separate private staff office areas from public areas. Design spaces to ensure efficient and secure acceptance, exchange, review, and reproduction of high volumes of public documents. Size the pass-through window to prevent physical intrusion.

b. Locate one or more universally accessible counters closest to the entrance. Such counters must have the ability to accommodate wheelchair users on each side. Two counter workstation design options are available:

DIVISION ONE: DESIGN CRITERIA

1 General Principles
2 Courthouse Organization
3 Site Design
4 Courthouse Security
5 Court Set

6 JURY FACILITIES AND COURT ADMINISTRATION
6.A Jury Facilities Objectives
6.B Jury Assembly Spaces
6.C Objectives of the Clerk's Office
6.D Clerk's Office Spaces
6.E Court Executive Officer's Area

7 Special Services
8 In-Custody Defendant Receiving, Holding, and Transport
9 Public Spaces
10 Building Support Services

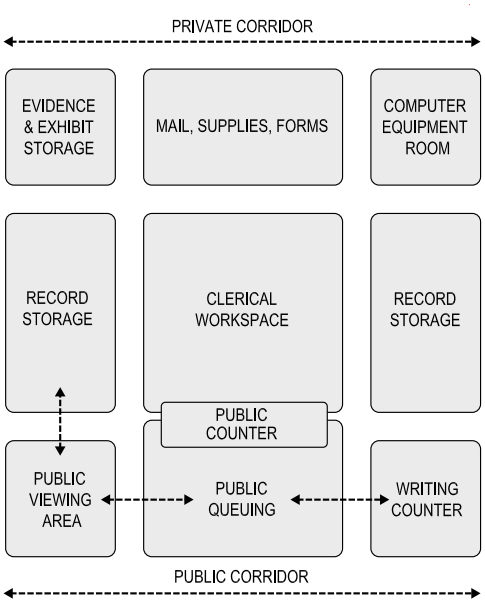


Figure 6.3 Clerk's Adjacency Diagram

- Option 1: Staff workstations shall be designed at an elevation above the public floor that allows for seated, eye-level interaction with customers standing at the counter (see figure 6.4). An accessible writing surface is required on the public side, with 12″–18″ depth. A raised solid barrier between openings should screen the view of computer and desktop items. The divider height is limited by reach distance. If a raised platform is provided, consider the ability of clerks to obtain records easily.
- Option 2: Staff and public sides shall be accessible at a seated level (see figure 6.5). Provide a single-height writing surface that meets accessible height and depth requirements. This height will accommodate people standing and people in wheelchairs. Sightlines and sound levels when speaking must be considered in this model. For longer transactions, movable seating may be provided for the public; the public may stand for short transactions.

c. Consider that staff assignments to counter workstations may be to permanent, rotating, or walk-up counters. A *permanent* counter means that counter station is the dedicated and only workspace for the assigned staff and needs to have all the support necessary for a clerk staff workstation. *Rotating* and *walk-up* counters require that counter staff have dedicated workstations elsewhere.

d. Design each counter position to include the counter, staff workspace on the private side, and a standing area on the public side.

e. Provide for confidentiality and privacy on the public side between windows.

f. Design workstations to accommodate communication and electronic equipment and storage space. Provide space for dual monitors on the desk. Configure and provide all counter stations with power and data to allow cash and credit card transactions. Include outlets for a credit card swipe machine, a printer, a cash drawer, and cameras. Locations shall facilitate communication and passage of documents between clerks and the public. Attach the credit card swipe machine to the public side of the counter.

g. Provide a silent duress alarm at each clerk counter position.

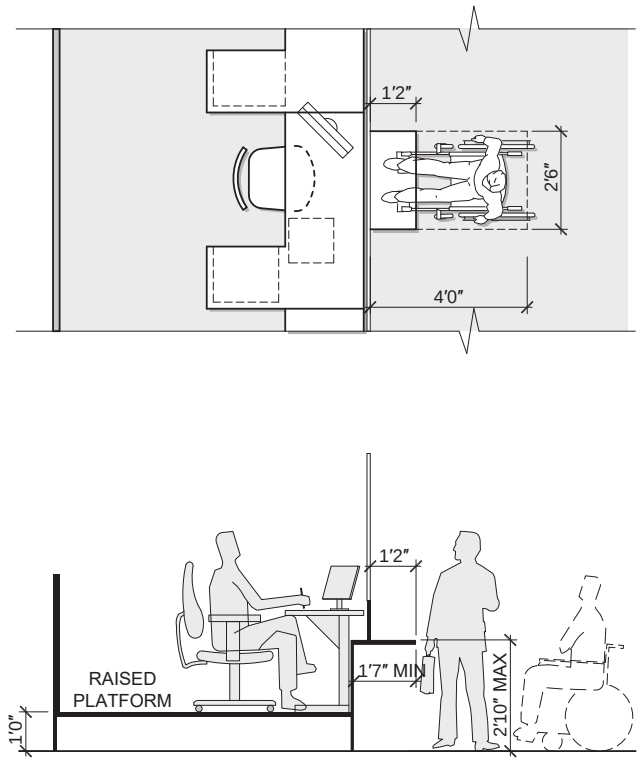


Figure 6.4 Transaction Height Counter

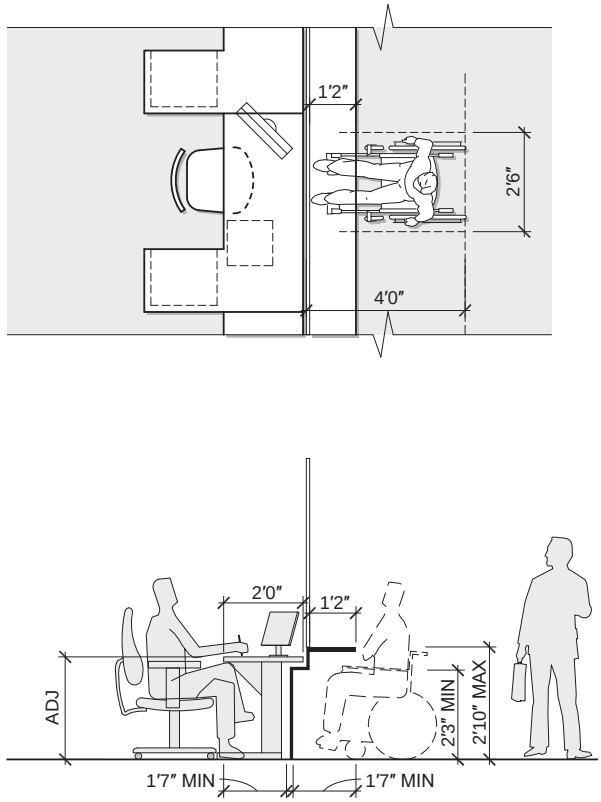


Figure 6.5 Universal Height Counter

DIVISION ONE:
DESIGN CRITERIA

1 General Principles
2 Courthouse Organization
3 Site Design
4 Courthouse Security
5 Court Set
6 JURY FACILITIES AND COURT ADMINISTRATION
6.A Jury Facilities Objectives
6.B Jury Assembly Spaces
6.C Objectives of the Clerk's Office
6.D Clerk's Office Spaces
6.E Court Executive Officer's Area
7 Special Services
8 In-Custody Defendant Receiving, Holding, and Transport
9 Public Spaces
10 Building Support Services

h. See chapter 16, Lighting Criteria, for lighting suggestions.

i. Provide permanent counter positions with a means of blocking the view from the public side when the staff member is off duty but still working in the position. Pull-down shades or movable screening devices are acceptable.

j. Provide security with glass barriers; this is the preferred method to create a layer of separation between staff and the public.

k. Provide voice transmission through 1-1/4″ vertical slots or grilles on either side of the window. Provide a pass-through tray.

l. Avoid amplified acoustic systems to prevent a loud lobby environment. The lobby shall be designed with acoustical finishes for sound absorption. An amplification system may be considered on a case-by-case basis depending on the acoustic quality of the space and ambient noise.

m. When a queuing area is provided in the public area outside the counter, allow 10′ minimum between the public entrance and the counter for the public queuing area. Provide additional space near the queuing area for a public writing counter for forms preparation. When a "take-a-number" system is in use, provide adequate seating for the waiting public.

n. Consider that some public counters may be located on the nonsecure side of the security screening station. If counters for fast transactions, such as traffic and attorney filing, are located in the public lobby queuing area or outside, they must be protected with a glass barrier and cameras. Outside counters must be located under an overhang for protection from wind, sun, and rain and shall have an exterior-grade vandal-proof credit card swipe machine on the public side of the counter.

o. Locate and design drop boxes for convenient public use. Locate drop boxes within the courthouse public spaces. Review location and design of all drop boxes regarding safety and security issues.

p. Provide a counter for information and payment transactions for the revenue and collections office.

2. Records Viewing

a. Provide an area adjacent to the public service counter for public viewing of records. This area must be secure and visible to staff at all times to prevent tampering with or theft of records. Record viewing sequence and operation should be clearly incorporated in the design.

b. Provide space for self-service duplication equipment in the public area on the request of the court. Establish a reasonable ratio of public computers to the number of counter stations.

6.E COURT EXECUTIVE OFFICER'S AREA

Office needs for the court executive officer's area include an office for the court executive officer (CEO), a reception area, offices for support staff to the CEO, a conference room close to the CEO office, workstations for staff, and space for files and office equipment. A separate restroom for the CEO is not required. The CEO area can be separate from the main clerk's office and is often located on an upper level in multilevel courthouses or adjacent to the presiding judge's chambers.

1. Offices and Workstations

a. Provide modular workstations and office furniture to enable complete ergonomic and expansion flexibility. Provide medium workstations with overhead storage. Low partitions, at a height of 42″, are encouraged for part of the enclosure to promote communication and visibility to the public counter area. Some stations can be combined into a shared work area and shared central small conference area.

b. See workstation size standards in table 2.2 of chapter 2, Courthouse Organization, and planning criteria below for each respective court division per its office area requirements.

c. Provide space for:

- Office equipment, files, storage, counters, and special work areas;
- Visitors, meetings, training, reception, and waiting areas; and
- Dedicated conference and meeting rooms, unless staff can share other meeting spaces.

2. Information Technology

Information technology (IT) administration functions include systems development, programming, information management, technical support, planning, and research operations. These functions are primarily nonpublic and require office and workstation environments. Larger jurisdictions maintain technical libraries, computer server equipment rooms, computer workrooms, and occasionally large mainframe computer operations.

a. Provide an IT workroom and storage space with a 32″ counter on two sides.

b. Provide a 14″ shelf 21″ above the counter. This casework shall be plastic laminate finish.

c. Above the counters, provide a continuous plugmold electrical unit. See chapter 17, Network and Communication Systems, for more information.

3. Purchasing

Office space needs for purchasing staff include small to large workstations for buyers or other support staff and a medium office for management. Consider a small conference space for meetings or negotiations with vendors.

4. Revenue and Collections

The revenue and collections office area requires standard workstations.

a. Provide a public reception area and counter space for information and payment transactions.

b. Provide counter workstation positions and space for files and office equipment.

c. Provide space for multiple file cabinets for records and files.

d. Consider providing separate storage with restricted access and a security camera for safety.

5. Human Resources

The human resources office area requires standard to large workstations.

a. Provide space for multiple file cabinets for records and files and a large conference room adjacent to the workstations.

DIVISION ONE: DESIGN CRITERIA

1 General Principles
2 Courthouse Organization
3 Site Design
4 Courthouse Security
5 Court Set
6 JURY FACILITIES AND COURT ADMINISTRATION
6.A Jury Facilities Objectives
6.B Jury Assembly Spaces
6.C Objectives of the Clerk's Office
6.D Clerk's Office Spaces
6.E Court Executive Officer's Area
7 Special Services
8 In-Custody Defendant Receiving, Holding, and Transport
9 Public Spaces
10 Building Support Services

b. Provide duress buttons at public counters and at any staff work area used for employee termination.

c. Provide acoustical separation of any public space and staff areas where confidential telephone and personnel conversations occur.

6. Records Storage

Some jurisdictions distinguish between active and inactive records for file storage purposes. *Active records* include open or regularly accessed files that are generally stored adjacent to the court clerk work areas. Active records are often maintained in indexed, open shelving units for easy access. *Inactive records* are often stored at a more remote location. Typically, three to four years of records are maintained onsite. A destruction program, if available, can help control growth of records storage.

a. The design shall take into account the extent to which the court has transitioned from paper files to electronic files, since this has a big impact on space needs. This analysis shall be done during the programming phase.

b. Records must be maintained, pulled on request, routed, and interfiled.

c. Space shall be provided for scanning documents for storage and to accommodate future records storage and retrieval technologies. Floors must be designed to accommodate file weight. Provide minimum aisle widths of 36″.

d. Chapter 16, Lighting Criteria, provides lighting suggestions.

e. Posttrial exhibit storage should be provided in a secure central location adjacent to secure clerks' offices.

7. Active Records Storage

a. Active records must be easily accessible from the clerk's office work areas and in a secure location. Functional requirements and policies of each courthouse will influence the location of the active file storage area; the ground floor is preferred because of structural load issues.

b. The functional and space requirements for active record storage shall be verified to provide sufficient space. Include adequate workspace adjacent to the file storage equipment.

c. High-density record storage is preferred for most active file storage because of the smaller footprint but cannot be used in departments requiring constant file retrieval. Motorized systems are preferred, but manual systems may be acceptable for infrequently accessed high-density files. Design with some fixed aisles so several aisles can stay open for staff access. Specify record storage seven shelves high.

d. A locking feature may be used to secure confidential files.

8. Inactive Records Storage

If inactive files are stored onsite, an adequate and accessible storage area must be provided. Spatial requirements will vary in accordance with the number of records and the length of file retention schedules.

a. Older inactive records should be stored offsite to economize on use of courthouse space.

b. Warehouse shelving is recommended for files that have been transferred to storage boxes.

c. The file storage medium shall be protected against deterioration or damage from flooding or moisture.

9. Conference and Training Rooms

a. Provide conference rooms that allow judges, court managers, and staff to gather regularly for bench meetings, education and training, and administrative meetings. The three conference room sizes listed in chapter 2, table 2.2, do not preclude larger conference rooms in large court buildings or combining of multiple rooms with folding walls.

b. Provide small conference rooms adjacent to workstation areas. Sharing of conference and training rooms between departments is encouraged.

c. Provide a training room located for easy accessibility by staff. Design the room for flexibility with multipurpose furniture and a projection screen to accommodate training, conferences, and other meetings. See chapter 16, Lighting Criteria, for lighting requirements and chapter 18, Audiovisual Systems, for audiovisual requirements.

d. Locate training rooms in private circulation areas. One entrance to a training room shall be accessible only by court personnel and judicial officers through a private corridor. A second entrance may be accessible via a public corridor.

e. To determine the size of a training room, use the following guidelines:

- Computer training layout: 35–40 square feet (SF) per person
- Hollow square layout: 30 SF per person
- Classroom-style layout: 20–22 SF per person
- Theater-style layout: 10–12 SF per person

f. In addition to the recommendations above, when allocating space for training rooms, take into consideration other factors, including:

- Availability of other training spaces in the area;
- Distance between other justice centers;
- Number of employees and judges in the area;
- Largest anticipated internal event, frequency of such events, and availability of space to accommodate these types of events;
- Average number of attendees for regularly offered training courses and meetings and frequency of these types of trainings and meetings;
- Anticipated demand for technical training; and
- Ratio of open office space to private offices to help determine the demand for private meeting spaces.

10. Mail Center

Provide an area for intake, sorting, and distribution of mail. See chapter 4, Courthouse Security, for main room physical security design standards. Large facilities may require an additional area for mechanical and electrical components to support heating, ventilation, and air-conditioning (HVAC) biofiltration systems.

11. Other Support Areas

Other support areas may include copy facilities, supply rooms, restrooms, and break areas.

DIVISION ONE: DESIGN CRITERIA

1 General Principles
2 Courthouse Organization
3 Site Design
4 Courthouse Security
5 Court Set
6 JURY FACILITIES AND COURT ADMINISTRATION
6.A Jury Facilities Objectives
6.B Jury Assembly Spaces
6.C Objectives of the Clerk's Office
6.D Clerk's Office Spaces
6.E Court Executive Officer's Area
7 Special Services
8 In-Custody Defendant Receiving, Holding, and Transport
9 Public Spaces
10 Building Support Services

a. Provide printer/copier areas to accommodate high-volume copying. They shall be ventilated to dissipate copier heat and fumes and located to minimize noise disruption of other work areas. Depending on the size of the court facility and workload, convenience copiers may be located throughout the building.

b. Provide an area with adequate shelving and work areas for storing office supplies.

c. Allocate space for employee restrooms. Consider current and projected future staff composition when determining the number of toilet fixtures. Additional restroom facilities for female employees may be required.

d. Provide a staff break room with a sink, disposal, and casework. The court and/or its employees shall provide appliances.

e. Provide an employee lactation room in close proximity to employee workstations as required by California and federal laws and the California Building Code. The lactation room shall include a sink, space for a refrigerator, and easily accessible power outlets. The number of lactation rooms in the building shall be based on the number of employees as outlined in California and federal law.

12. Equipment Storage

Provide a locked area for equipment storage, including computer equipment.

DIVISION ONE: DESIGN CRITERIA

7 SPECIAL SERVICES

SECTION	TOPIC	PAGE
7.A	Objectives	7.2
7.B	Family Law Facilitators and Services for Self-Represented Litigants	7.2
7.C	Family Court Services	7.3
7.D	Child Waiting Room (Optional)	7.6
7.E	Alternative Dispute Resolution	7.6
7.F	Multipurpose Rooms and Offices	7.7
7.G	Lactation Rooms	7.8



Superior Court of California, County of San Joaquin
Stockton, CA
© NBBJ

Family law facilitators guide litigants through the forms and procedures related to child support, spousal support, and maintenance of health insurance. They assist with cases involving the local child support agency, many of which are cases requiring reimbursement for public assistance. Many facilitators are involved in community outreach programs.

Facilitators provide mediation services in which they meet with both parents and help work out child support issues. Some courts have enlisted volunteer attorneys or provided additional funding that enables facilitators to assist self-represented litigants in other family law areas, including divorce, custody, and visitation.

Task Force on Self-Represented Litigants, highlights from *Statewide Action Plan for Serving Self-Represented Litigants.*

FCS = Family Court Services

ADR = alternative dispute resolution

Family law facilitators, self-help centers, Family Court Services (FCS), juvenile dependency mediation, and alternative dispute resolution (ADR) programs promote the effectiveness and efficiency of certain types of court cases. Through the use of these services, the litigant has better information, issues are settled more frequently, court appearances are minimized, and paperwork is reduced.

Related justice agencies (e.g., district attorney, public defender, probation, Child Protective Services) have significant business each day within the trial court. Temporary spaces for related justice agencies may be considered.

7.A OBJECTIVES

1. Design spaces for special services that are convenient to the public and located off the public corridor or public waiting. These areas must also have access to the private circulation system.
2. Ensure safety and security in the event of physical confrontation by means of duress alarms and sidelights at doors. Duress alarms shall be inconspicuous but convenient to the user. Facilitate future flexibility by providing these features in all spaces.

7.B FAMILY LAW FACILITATORS AND SERVICES FOR SELF-REPRESENTED LITIGANTS

Family law facilitator programs are a mandated service. Supervised by experienced family law attorneys, they provide self-help assistance to litigants. Most courts have expanded their family law facilitator activities to provide other self-help assistance in family law, and a growing number of courts provide self-help in other areas.

Family law facilitators and self-help centers provide assistance and practical information about court procedures for self-represented litigants using the court. Locate self-help centers near the clerks' offices, easily accessible from a public corridor. See figure 7.1.



Figure 7.1 Self-Help Center, the Robert M. Falasco Justice Center, Superior Court of Merced County, Los Banos

1. Reception, Waiting, and Triage Areas

a. Provide public waiting areas for users and children, with child waiting, reception counter, and triage areas. These areas experience an extremely high volume of usage. In large courts, seating should be available for 30 to 50 people.

b. Provide small tables that can be reconfigured for classes, filling out forms, or conferencing; computer terminals located against the wall; brochure racks; shelving; storage; video monitors; and a photocopier.

c. Provide staff workspace with file storage, work counters, and equipment. Public counters and reception areas may be integrated into the work areas.

d. Provide a duress alarm at counters.

2. Workshop Rooms

a. In jurisdictions with more than one family law facilitator, provide a workshop room. The room must accommodate reference materials, audiovisual equipment for workshops, and computers to allow litigants to complete forms. See chapter 16, Lighting Criteria; chapter 17, Network and Communication Systems; and chapter 18, Audiovisual Systems, for technical requirements.

b. In jurisdictions with at least one full-time facilitator, provide at least one conference room for services to be provided by volunteer attorneys, paralegals, and other staff supervised by the attorney facilitator or self-help center attorney's office.

c. Provide one private office per facilitator and staff attorney. If separate interview or conference rooms are not provided for mediation, the private offices should be large enough to accommodate up to five people for this purpose.

d. Provide a duress alarm in offices and at counters.

3. Small Courthouse Model

Provide one room designed so that one staff member can provide supervision and control.

4. Information Shared Outside Courtroom

Provide a brochure rack and video feed outside the family courtrooms to instruct users on courtroom procedures.

7.C FAMILY COURT SERVICES

1. Requirements

Courts are required to set contested child custody and visitation issues for mediation. Family Court Services provides mediation, which must include a mandatory orientation as well as a mandatory intake process that screens for, and informs staff about, any restraining orders, dependency petitions under Welfare and Institutions Code section 325 et seq., and other safety-related issues affecting any party or child named in the proceedings. Rule 5.215 of the California Rules of Court requires FCS to conduct differential domestic violence assessments; make reasonable efforts to ensure the safety of victims, children, and other parties when they are participating in services provided by FCS; and, consistent with Family Code sections 3113 and 3181, offer separate mediation sessions at separate times when there is a history of domestic violence, or when a protective order as defined in Family Code section 6218 is in effect, or if domestic violence is discovered while mediation or evaluation services are in process. A domestic violence support person may accompany a party

DIVISION ONE: DESIGN CRITERIA

1 General Principles
2 Courthouse Organization
3 Site Design
4 Courthouse Security
5 Court Set
6 Jury Facilities and Court Administration
7 SPECIAL SERVICES
7.A Objectives
7.B Family Law Facilitators and Services for Self-Represented Litigants
7.C Family Court Services
7.D Child Waiting Room (Optional)
7.E Alternative Dispute Resolution
7.F Multipurpose Rooms and Offices
7.G Lactation Rooms
8 In-Custody Defendant Receiving, Holding, and Transport
9 Public Spaces
10 Building Support Services

Each court should endeavor to provide a children's waiting room located in the courthouse for the use of minors under the age of 16 who are present on court premises as participants or who accompany persons who are participants in court proceedings. The waiting room should be supervised and open during normal court hours. If a court does not have sufficient space in the courthouse for a children's waiting room, the court should create the necessary space when court facilities are reorganized or remodeled or when new facilities are constructed.

California Standards of Judicial Administration, standard 10.24

protected by a restraining order to mediation and orientation. In child custody and visitation cases, FCS may also offer appropriate services as available, such as child custody evaluation, parent education, relevant education programs for children, booklets, DVDs, or referrals to community resources. FCS offices also commonly offer such services as stepparent adoption, conservatorship, and guardianship investigations.

The Family Court Services mediation area can generate considerable traffic flow. Locate FCS on a lower floor close to the main lobby or near elevators on an upper floor. Other civil mediation and arbitration services do not generate the same traffic load as FCS and may be located away from the main lobby. Parties using FCS often also use family law facilitator or self-help services; locating these services nearby would be helpful to the public. If possible, provide more than one exit from FCS to have alternative access for domestic violence victims who are participating in mediation.

2. Facilities

Family Court Services consists of the following areas:

- Mediator and evaluator offices
- Reception and waiting areas
- Orientation room
- Mediation room
- Conference and training room
- Children's waiting area
- Security station
- Equipment storage

For sizes, refer to table 2.2 in chapter 2, Courthouse Organization.

2.1 Mediator Offices

a. Provide a private office for each mediator that accommodates three additional people. If separate mediation/interview rooms are not provided for larger mediations, private offices shall accommodate up to six people.

b. Provide sidelights at office doors.

c. Provide acoustical treatment of office walls and doors.

d. Provide a duress alarm in each office because of the potential for physical confrontation.

2.2 Reception and Waiting Areas

a. Provide reception and waiting areas with seating sized for the court's needs.

b. Provide a vision panel at the suite entry door.

c. In large jurisdictions, provide a reception counter and sign-in area with a counter position.

d. Provide duress alarms in support staff areas and at counters.

e. Provide an area for copy and fax machines adjacent to clerical staff and mediators.

f. Provide space for FCS files and records adjacent to clerical staff.

g. Provide a reception area with sufficient space to accommodate mandatory screening, intake, and differential assessment. Private space should be available to allow for safe consultations with vulnerable parties, such as victims of violence.

h. If possible, provide separate waiting areas for different parties in mediation. One or two reception and waiting areas will serve several mediation offices. Separate FCS waiting areas should be available for domestic violence victims so they do not have to be in the same area as the alleged perpetrators.

2.3 Orientation Room

Provide an orientation room with seating for four to six people for orientation sessions before participation in mediation or other ADR services. This room can also be used for additional waiting and conferencing.

2.4 Mediation Room

a. Provide a mediation room. In some jurisdictions, a combination of large and small mediation rooms will accommodate large family groups and allow involvement of social workers and other staff. This room can also be used for interview purposes.

b. Provide acoustical treatment of office walls and doors because of the confidential and sometimes vocal exchanges associated with these discussions.

c. Provide a duress alarm.

d. Provide video cameras to allow remote observation of proceedings.

2.5 Conference and Training Room

In jurisdictions with more than eight FCS mediators, provide a conference and training room of a size proportionate to the number of mediators. The room must accommodate reference books and related materials needed by mediators to conduct their business. One room may be used for mediation, orientation, conferences, and training. See chapter 16, Lighting Criteria, and chapter 18, Audiovisual Systems, for audiovisual requirements. Provide a duress alarm.

2.6 Children's Waiting Area (Optional)

If no other children's waiting area is available or convenient, provide a separate children's waiting area near FCS to be used when children or their parents or guardians are involved in court proceedings. See figure 7.2 and refer to 7.D, Child Waiting Room (Optional), for standards for this area.

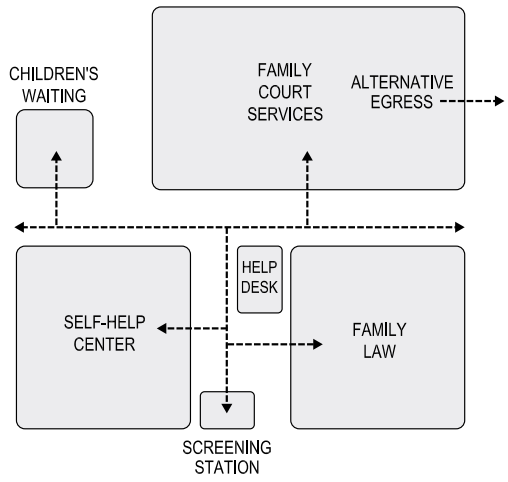


Figure 7.2 Special Services Adjacency Diagram

DIVISION ONE: DESIGN CRITERIA

1 General Principles
2 Courthouse Organization
3 Site Design
4 Courthouse Security
5 Court Set
6 Jury Facilities and Court Administration
7 SPECIAL SERVICES
7.A Objectives
7.B Family Law Facilitators and Services for Self-Represented Litigants
7.C Family Court Services
7.D Child Waiting Room (Optional)
7.E Alternative Dispute Resolution
7.F Multipurpose Rooms and Offices
7.G Lactation Rooms
8 In-Custody Defendant Receiving, Holding, and Transport
9 Public Spaces
10 Building Support Services

2.7 Security Station
Security provisions for the FCS area vary based on the size and location of the function. If remote from the court security staff, the FCS area may require a separate security post. If the security staff is stationed at FCS, provide a post with workstation and security equipment.

2.8 Equipment Storage
Provide an area near the mediation rooms for storage of equipment and furnishings, such as video monitors, used in mediation.

7.D CHILD WAITING ROOM (OPTIONAL)

Court facilities may provide a safe place for children to play—including a child waiting room—while their parents conduct their court business.

1. Provide an area of 120 net square feet (NSF) for two or three children, increasing the area by 15 NSF per child. The waiting area must be located near the security station but in a semiprivate corridor. Space needs will vary with court caseloads. Consider providing a separate area for adolescents.
2. Provide a check-in workstation with a duress alarm and a view of the entire room to allow supervision by one staff person; design must facilitate safe check-in and checkout of children. Include file storage for administrative records, forms, and brochures.
3. Design the space with no outside visual access or windows; the public shall not be able to look into the room.
4. Provide a controlled area for the children. Access doors shall be locked, with a remote buzzer operated from the check-in workstation.
5. Provide one or two restrooms, one with a changing table. Furniture, fixtures, and restroom fixtures should be specified and installed for elementary school–aged children.
6. Provide a second door into a secure corridor. Small facilities can use a multipurpose room.
7. Provide space for child-sized tables, chairs, couch, and floor games and storage space for toys and games. Create column-free open play spaces.
8. Provide space for information racks about community resources for service referrals and other resources (housing, health care, childcare, literacy, and education).
9. Provide a quiet room with a sink, locking cupboards, a refrigerator, and a microwave.
10. Provide wainscot protection on the walls.
11. Securely mount the storage units to prevent tipping over if children climb on them, or place them in areas not accessible to the children.

7.E ALTERNATIVE DISPUTE RESOLUTION

Alternative dispute resolution services are an increasingly important part of the judicial process. In the civil case context, ADR includes the traditional civil case settlement process involving a judicial officer, attorneys, and the litigants; mediation, involving a facilitator and the parties, sometimes without attorneys; and arbitration, involving an arbitrator, attorneys, and the litigants.

1. Mediation and Settlement Conferences

Civil case mediation and arbitration services may be provided privately and occur outside the court facility. Civil case settlement conferences often take place in a courtroom, jury

deliberation room, or conference area. Court-sponsored mediation, such as in small claims and unlawful detainer cases, may be provided in court facilities.

Provide space for civil case settlement conferences and mediation services within the court facility when required by the program. Requirements for these functions may vary considerably depending on anticipated volume of usage. In larger jurisdictions with formal ADR programs, consider multiple rooms of various sizes and capacities. For sizes, refer to table 2.2 in chapter 2. Space for these functions may include reception and waiting areas.

2. Reception and Waiting

If required by the program, provide an area with seating for six to eight people, where attorneys and litigants can be seated while waiting for a mediation room. This area can serve one to four mediation rooms and may be increased in size according to the number of additional mediation rooms required.

7.F MULTIPURPOSE ROOMS AND OFFICES

1. Guidelines

a. Provide multipurpose rooms to be assigned by the trial court to related justice agencies or others. The character and quantity of rooms shall be determined during programming.

b. Locate rooms adjacent to the public corridor, potentially with controlled access to the private circulation system; provide keypad locking so the superior court can reassign the use easily.

2. Examples of Room Use

Representative uses of multipurpose rooms include:

- Related justice agency drop-in offices: Rooms suitable for installation of modular workstations for staff to prepare and read court papers, make telephone calls, and conduct other court-related activities.
- Onsite drug testing suite: A toilet room used for drug testing adjacent to the courtroom, with an anteroom for supplies and sample storage.
- Attorney convenience center: A work and waiting area with power and data communications for laptop connections, similar to drop-in offices for related justice agencies.
- Multiagency and volunteer convenience center: Workstations for volunteers.
- Volunteer coordinator's office: In larger counties with comprehensive or centralized volunteer programs; may be located on a semiprivate corridor. Volunteers may also be located within specific court departments.
- Law enforcement waiting: A waiting area that must be located off public corridors near courtrooms and may be provided in criminal, traffic, and juvenile courts in which law enforcement officers may wait before court appearances and during court recesses. Access to the law enforcement waiting area must be secure and away from the public corridor. The waiting area must include space for a couch, chairs, lounge seating, and a table.
- Victim waiting: A waiting area located off public corridors near courtrooms, with chairs and a table. This room may be used for remote testimony to the courtroom. Provide power, lighting, and configuration to allow audiovisual equipment to obtain proper images for victim to testify remotely.

DIVISION ONE: DESIGN CRITERIA

1 General Principles
2 Courthouse Organization
3 Site Design
4 Courthouse Security
5 Court Set
6 Jury Facilities and Court Administration
7 SPECIAL SERVICES
7.A Objectives
7.B Family Law Facilitators and Services for Self-Represented Litigants
7.C Family Court Services
7.D Child Waiting Room (Optional)
7.E Alternative Dispute Resolution
7.F Multipurpose Rooms and Offices
7.G Lactation Rooms
8 In-Custody Defendant Receiving, Holding, and Transport
9 Public Spaces
10 Building Support Services

- Court interpreters convenience center: A waiting area located off public corridors near courtrooms. The convenience center requires a bullpen with adequate space for lockers, carrels, tables, manager's office, shared phones, secure storage, and a telecommunications device for the deaf (TDD).
- Blood draw / DNA swab room: A room at family court with a chair and locked cabinet.
- Fingerprinting: An area adjacent to criminal court, with a secure door. Provide a pass-through to the family law clerk's area. Provide a desk and a camera area to take headshot photos.
- Government attorneys conference room: A large conference room with computers and printers available to calculate child support and print out agreements. Local child support agencies often meet with litigants before and during the high volume of child support calendars to try to reach stipulations.
- Paralegal office: A drop-in center to assist families with child support issues, requiring room for a desk, file storage, and three or four guest chairs.
- Social services resource room: A room located near courtrooms so that litigants who are referred to social services can get immediate assistance for problems such as substance abuse.

7.G LACTATION ROOMS

Provide one lactation room for the public and one lactation room for court employees. Lactation rooms cannot be in a bathroom; they require their own dedicated space.

1. General Requirements

l. The lactation rooms shall be shielded from view and free from intrusion while in use.

m. The rooms shall include a sink with running water.

n. The space shall be safe, clean, and free of hazardous materials and contain a built-in shelf on which to place personal items. The room shall have space for a movable chair with adequate ADA accessibility clearances.

o. The room shall include electrical outlets to operate lactation equipment.

2. Public Lactation Room

a. The public lactation room is available to visitors of the court facility and shall be accessed from the public corridor.

b. The court shall have a policy in place for lactating mothers to reserve the room when needed. Signage outside the room shall include information on how to reserve the room.

c. The entry door shall include locks on both sides.

3. Employee Lactation Room

a. The employee lactation room is available to court employees and shall be accessed from the secure corridor.

b. The lactation room shall be located in close proximity to the work area of the majority of court employees.

c. The room shall include space and hookups for a refrigerator.

d. The entry door shall include locks on the inside.

8

DIVISION ONE: DESIGN CRITERIA

IN-CUSTODY DEFENDANT RECEIVING, HOLDING, AND TRANSPORT

SECTION	TOPIC	PAGE
8.A	Objectives	8.2
8.B	Planning Criteria	8.2
8.C	Functional Overview	8.3
8.D	Program Components	8.5
8.E	Technical Criteria	8.14
8.F	Electronic Detention Control System	8.28



Superior Court of California, County of Riverside
Menifee, CA
© Fotoworks/Benny Chan

Important Terms

Circulation: public, private, detention

Control rooms: For more information, see chapter 4, section 4.H.14, Security Operations Center, and chapter 8, section 8.D.4, Detention Control Room.

In-custody(ies): Persons in the custody of a correctional or detention institution

Detention and *holding* are used interchangeably in this chapter.

This chapter addresses the requirements for all in-custody areas. For detailed system requirements, see tool 8, Security System Guidelines.

The United States Constitution makes provision for defendants involved in criminal proceedings to confront the witnesses against them. Therefore, trial courthouse design and construction must provide accommodation for those defendants who are in custody. Criminal courts must have secure facilities to receive, hold, and transport in-custody defendants to and from the courtroom. In small court facilities, this requirement may amount to a few holding cells and a secure corridor to the courtrooms. In larger criminal court facilities, it may consist of a large receiving and detention facility. Similarly, civil, family, and juvenile court facilities must maintain safe and secure movement of in-custody defendants.

The information in this chapter provides each architectural and engineering team a perspective on how the in-custody receiving, holding, and transport functions integrate into the overall courthouse; a general description of the program components that pertain to these areas; and performance criteria for finishes, equipment, and security systems.

These standards are intended to supplement the requirements addressed in the regulations of the Board of State and Community Corrections, found in titles 15 and 24 of the California Code of Regulations. The design of all in-custody areas must adhere to requirements prescribed in titles 15 and 24 of the California Code of Regulations.

8.A OBJECTIVES

The objectives are to provide a safe and secure environment for the transport and accommodation of in-custody defendants while in the courthouse; maintain the safety and welfare of the judiciary, staff, and public visitors in the building; and prevent the infiltration of contraband.

The local sheriff, under contract with the superior court, manages all in-custody holding and transport areas and operates the security electronic systems relating to the in-custody holding, transport, and detention circulation areas within the courthouse.

- Every design solution must optimize operational and staffing efficiencies.
- Although these standards establish criteria for the in-custody holding area, during the design process, the sheriff must also provide an Operational Program Statement as required by the Board of State and Community Corrections (BSCC). The design and the Operational Program Statement are developed together and influence one another.
- All in-custody areas shall comply with detention standards subject to BSCC inspection and certification under California Code of Regulations title 15. The detention area design shall provide safety for in-custody defendants, sheriffs, and others and be consistent with the sheriff's Operational Program Statement.

8.B PLANNING CRITERIA

From a physical security standpoint, several basic rules of thumb apply to the design of secure holding and circulation areas:

- Maximize the direct line of sight, allowing the court security officer (CSO) to supervise in-custodies and minimize reliance on video surveillance cameras.
- In detention circulation areas and corridors, minimize protrusions that create blind spots.
- Organize functional components to avoid circulation "eddies." The in-custody holding areas are process driven. Designs must achieve a logical flow for managing the process, movement, and separation of in-custody defendants.

Local sheriffs will have protocols, or a classification system, for how they manage the separation of individuals in custody. Classification determines if it is appropriate to accommodate an individual in a group holding cell or if a single holding cell is required for the safety of the in-custody and those around the in-custody. The separation or isolation of an in-custody can be based on a number of factors, such as whether the in-custody is a danger to others or requires protection from others. Separate holding areas are typically preferred in maintaining the separation of male and female in-custodies.

1. Sight and Sound Separation

Under some circumstances, juveniles in custody must be present at court proceedings. Provisions must be made in the design of holding areas to maintain "sight and sound separation" between in-custody juveniles and in-custody adults. In-custody juveniles should not come into contact with in-custody adults as they enter, are held in, and circulate to and from the courtrooms during the course of normal operations. Together, the building plans and Operational Program Statement must demonstrate a good-faith effort to maintain the required separation through the course of foreseeable circumstances.

Several design features are inherent with accomplishing proper sight and sound separation.

a. Central holding must have separate areas for juveniles and adults. It is not enough to have separate cells accessed from the same corridor.

b. Access to adult and juvenile holding areas from the vehicular sally port should be separate. A single, centrally controlled pedestrian sally port does not violate this principle, but to circulate juveniles or adults through the other's holding area to reach their own is unacceptable.

c. In-custody elevators and shared detention corridors must be designed such that detention control can coordinate their use to reliably clear one group before use by another.

2. Acoustics Management

The acoustics of holding areas shall be managed appropriately.

a. For security and durability reasons, materials in the holding areas result in "hard" surfaces. Special care must be taken to manage the acoustics. Minimizing reverberation within in-custody holding and transport areas is essential in reducing stress among in-custody defendants and staff.

b. The design solution must prevent the transmission of sound from a central holding area into any adjacent departmental areas. Preventing the transmission of sound between courtroom holding areas and the courtroom is most critical. Acoustical requirements are defined in chapter 19, Acoustical Criteria.

8.C FUNCTIONAL OVERVIEW

The business of the courts includes motions, hearings, and trials involving in-custody defendants. Courthouses do not include provisions for booking in-custody defendants because this procedure typically occurs at a detention facility before transporting the defendant to the courthouse. Therefore, courthouses must provide safe and secure accommodations for receiving individuals coming from secure detention facilities, for holding them before their courtroom appearances, and for moving them to and from the courtroom itself. Courthouse detention facilities do not house in-custody defendants overnight; they are present in the courthouse only during the normal hours of operation for the court.

DIVISION ONE: DESIGN CRITERIA
1 General Principles
2 Courthouse Organization
3 Site Design
4 Courthouse Security
5 Court Set
6 Jury Facilities and Court Administration
7 Special Services
8 IN-CUSTODY DEFENDANT RECEIVING, HOLDING, AND TRANSPORT
8.A Objectives
8.B Planning Criteria
8.C Functional Overview
8.D Program Components
8.E Technical Criteria
8.F Electronic Detention Control System
9 Public Spaces
10 Building Support Services

Important Term

Sally port: A secure, controlled entryway.

Important Design Elements

The secure perimeter is a physical barrier that prevents the unauthorized and uncontrolled movement of persons, contraband, and weapons into or out of in-custody areas.

Space allocations for detention functions within the building include holding cells, both centrally located and on the courtroom floors, and a system of dedicated elevators and/or corridors contained within the secure perimeter of the in-custody holding and transport areas. Standards require that all court facilities provide a secure pathway for in-custody movement from the transport vehicle, through pedestrian sally ports, to holding areas and the courtroom—using dedicated circulation to avoid cross-circulation with judges, staff, and the public.

1. Defendant Arrival

All transport vehicles delivering in-custody defendants access the courthouse proper through a secure vehicle sally port. Individuals are escorted from the vehicle sally port into the facility through a pedestrian sally port. For in-custody defendants escorted on foot (e.g., from a colocated detention facility), the entrance includes a pedestrian sally port that provides direct, controlled access to the secure circulation on the courthouse side.

In-custody defendants proceed to the central holding area (directly from the pedestrian sally port or through secure circulation), where paper check, pat search, and/or staging may occur before they are placed in a holding cell.

2. Holding

a. Both individual and group holding cells shall be provided to allow for containment of various in-custody populations and for efficient grouping and movement to the designated holding cells located on the courtroom floors. The area must be configured to provide for required sight and sound separation of cells and related circulation paths.

b. The number, size, and configuration of holding cells will vary based on the type of courthouse and/or the scale. For example, small facilities (one to four courtrooms) may not need both central holding and courtroom holding cells because volume and physical proximity may allow for in-custody defendants to be moved directly from the sally port into courtroom holding cells. Large, multistory facilities, however, need a designated central holding area to manage the influx of what could be hundreds of in-custody defendants daily and to manage their movement from central holding to the courtroom holding cells distributed on the courtroom floors.

c. When court call approaches, in-custody defendants move from the central holding area to the courtroom holding cells located immediately adjacent to the courtrooms. Movement shall be via a secure, dedicated elevator and/or corridor, and defendants may or may not be escorted.

d. Larger facilities may have courtrooms that are dedicated to special dockets, such as arraignment, felony disposition, drug court, pretrial hearings, and family and civil court cases. In smaller courthouses, a single courtroom may be used for arraignment for part of the day and for trials or hearings the rest of the day. Although different courtroom types may present different courtroom holding needs, courtroom holding should be provided between each pair of courtrooms in a shared "core." The core space shall include individual holding cells, noncontact attorney-client interview rooms, sound-lock vestibules into each courtroom, and a dedicated secure elevator stop, if applicable.

e. If adjacent courtroom holding is not provided for courtrooms initially designated for civil cases (which typically do not require courtroom holding), the space should presumptively be configured (horizontally and vertically) so that holding could be added between a pair of these courtrooms if the designation changes.

f. For courts that have high-volume in-custody access and rapid case turnover, such as arraignment court, consider locating larger holding areas adjacent to the courtroom or locating the courtroom adjacent to central holding, thereby eliminating the intermediate

step of dedicated courtroom holding altogether. If not possible, locate these courtrooms as close as possible to the central holding area (e.g., in larger courthouses, locate arraignment courts on lower floors closer to basement-level central holding) to minimize the transport time and travel distance for the large numbers of in-custody defendants.

g. At the conclusion of the courtroom proceeding, in-custody defendants are returned to the central holding area to await transport back to the detention center. Based on local preference and demand, remand cells may be designated for individuals who came to court on the public side but have been remanded to jail as a result of the hearing.

8.D PROGRAM COMPONENTS

1. Secure Perimeter

The secure perimeter is a physical barrier between in-custody holding and transport areas and the building exterior and/or other nondetention departmental areas within the courthouse. The secure perimeter prevents the unauthorized and uncontrolled movement of persons, contraband, and weapons into and out of in-custody areas. An access control point (sally port) facilitates the movement of authorized persons between the secure and unsecure sides of the secure perimeter barrier. The secure perimeter barrier comprises maximum-security construction for partitions (full height, slab to slab), windows, doors, and floors; security bars at any vertical and/or horizontal penetrations 5″ or larger in any direction; and sally ports at all access points.

2. Vehicle Sally Port

Vehicular access to the courthouse proper is via an enclosed vehicle sally port. A "drive-through" vehicle sally port is preferred, but not all sites and building configurations will be able to accommodate one. The optimal configuration must be determined on a project-by-project basis. (See figure 8.1.)

a. In all cases, the vehicle sally port must be of secure construction and minimize views into and out of the vehicle sally port area.

b. The vehicle sally port must be designed with careful consideration of traffic flow and vehicle turning radii; backing maneuvers and three-point turns for large custody vehicles are to be avoided.

c. A secure access gate at the entry point, a second egress gate, and a personnel gate are required. The vehicle sally port gates shall be interlocking and able to be electronically monitored and controlled at the detention control room. The primary means of communication and coordination between an arriving in-custody transport vehicle and the detention control room is via radio; however, an audio call station/pedestal shall be provided for outside agency use. Include video monitoring at access and egress points. Access and egress gates and doors shall be detention grade and must be sized (width and height) to accommodate the largest transport vehicle expected (car, van, or bus).

d. The vehicle sally port must provide adequate space for the temporary parking of transport vehicles for the loading and unloading of in-custody defendants. The number and type of transport vehicles to be accommodated in the vehicle sally port will vary by project. For example, courthouses that are adjoined to the primary detention facility by tunnel or secure walkway would have considerably less vehicular transport and may require no more than a few parking spaces for sedans. In a major criminal court facility located remotely from the jail, the vehicle sally port may require parking for several large-capacity vehicles, vans, and cars.

DIVISION ONE: DESIGN CRITERIA

1 General Principles
2 Courthouse Organization
3 Site Design
4 Courthouse Security
5 Court Set
6 Jury Facilities and Court Administration
7 Special Services
8 IN-CUSTODY DEFENDANT RECEIVING, HOLDING, AND TRANSPORT
8.A Objectives
8.B Planning Criteria
8.C Functional Overview
8.D Program Components
8.E Technical Criteria
8.F Electronic Detention Control System
9 Public Spaces
10 Building Support Services

The functions of the detention control room and security operations center may be combined in small court facilities, depending on the Operational Program Statement provided by the local sheriff's department responsible for the security of both the holding areas and the overall courthouse.

When the functions of the detention control room and security operations center are combined, coordinate the detention control room requirements with the security operations center requirements prescribed in chapter 4, Courthouse Security.

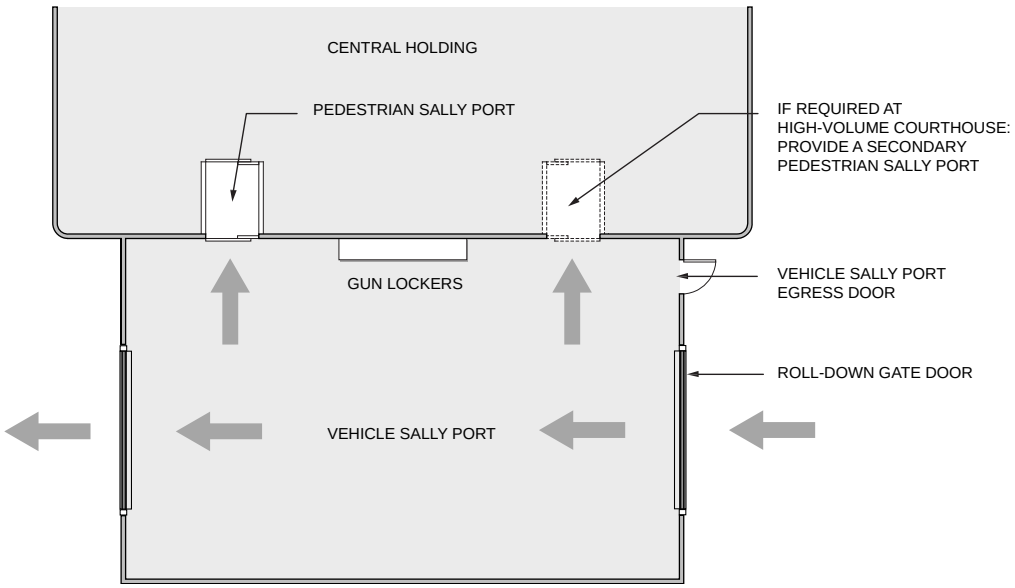


Figure 8.1 Vehicle Sally Port

e. The vehicle sally port requires a wall-mounted gun locker for securing transport staff weapons outside the secure perimeter. Such weapons lockers shall be equipped with individual compartments, each with an individual locker device.

f. Sight and sound separation of adult and juvenile in-custody defendants must be maintained at the point of reception in the vehicle sally port and into the building via the secure pedestrian sally port. This separation can be accomplished with a single pedestrian sally port. If required at a high-volume courthouse, provide a secondary pedestrian sally port dedicated to the movement of female and/or juvenile in-custodies.

3. Pedestrian Sally Port

In-custody defendants are off-loaded from the transport vehicle in the vehicle sally port and escorted into the secure area of the courthouse via a pedestrian sally port. A pedestrian sally port is also required at all points of entry or egress into and out of the secure perimeter of the in-custody holding and transport areas. The pedestrian sally port provides control of movement to and from adjoining areas and prevents infiltration to these areas by unauthorized persons—or escape of in-custody defendants.

a. The pedestrian sally port should have a minimum width of 8′ determined by the custody agency's standard operating procedures regarding the maximum number of in-custodies allowed in one movement.

b. The doors at each end of the pedestrian sally port are interlocked, meaning that one door must be in the locked position before the other can be opened. Provide metal or other durable, heavy-duty, heat-resistant roll-up doors for the enclosed sally ports. For open-air sally ports, sliding doors may be considered. The options for door types shall be reviewed with the Judicial Council early in design.

c. Pedestrian sally port doors are monitored and controlled by the detention control room staff. Provide a voice and video connection. Provide glazing to facilitate visual observation of the pedestrian sally port entry and within by the security staff.

d. Pedestrian sally ports must meet secure perimeter construction requirements.

4. Detention Control Room

The detention control room is responsible for all circulation in and out of the secure perimeter of the secure transport and holding areas, detention circulation corridors for moving in-custody defendants to and from courtroom holding areas, and elevators dedicated to in-custody movement. (See figure 8.2.) Detention control will control and monitor doors and locking devices, video surveillance systems, the duress alarm system, intercom and paging systems, lighting, and other functions dedicated to all in-custody secure holding and transport areas throughout the courthouse. Detention control has monitoring capabilities within the in-custody holding and transport areas for doors that are equipped with card access devices.

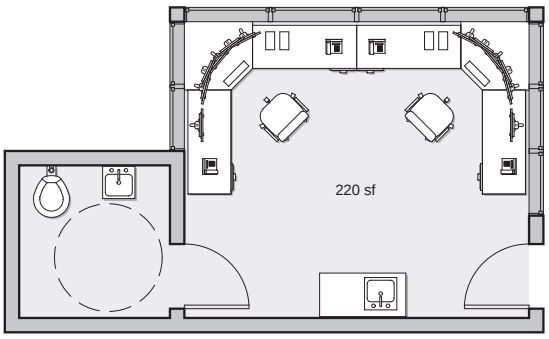


Figure 8.2 Detention Control Room

a. The system's main point of control shall be located at the detention control. In larger courthouse facilities, the secure holding areas will have a dedicated control room (detention control) located within central holding.

b. In courthouses with a segregated holding area for juvenile in-custodies, a separate control station may be required for the juvenile section because they are typically monitored and handled by probation officers, who are different personnel from the sheriff's department personnel who control the adult in-custody populations. This control station may be a desk with a control panel in the control room for probation officers to operate doors remotely within the juvenile area. In some cases, the local sheriff and probation departments may request that probation officers have a completely separate control room for the juvenile area.

c. A separate security operations center for managing overall courthouse building security will be located elsewhere in the building, typically adjacent to the primary screening area in the main building lobby. Refer to chapter 4, Courthouse Security.

d. Smaller courthouses may not warrant two separate control rooms. The goal of achieving staffing and operational efficiencies should be kept in mind. The functions of the detention control room and security operations center may be combined in small courthouses, depending on the Operational Program Statement provided by the local sheriff's department responsible for the security of both the holding areas and the overall courthouse. If a single central control room services the entire courthouse, the control room shall be located outside the secure perimeter of the in-custody holding areas. In such instances, the opening and closing of cell doors, operation of in-custody elevators, and other functions generally performed by the dedicated security personnel from the detention control room shall be managed from the single central control room.

DIVISION ONE: DESIGN CRITERIA

1 General Principles
2 Courthouse Organization
3 Site Design
4 Courthouse Security
5 Court Set
6 Jury Facilities and Court Administration
7 Special Services
8 IN-CUSTODY DEFENDANT RECEIVING, HOLDING, AND TRANSPORT
8.A Objectives
8.B Planning Criteria
8.C Functional Overview
8.D Program Components
8.E Technical Criteria
8.F Electronic Detention Control System
9 Public Spaces
10 Building Support Services

A sally port is required at any penetration allowing access in or out of the secure perimeter and shall be controlled by detention control.

e. Whether the detention control room is within the in-custody holding area secure perimeter or elsewhere in the courthouse, it shall be constructed with security-grade partitions extending to the underside of the structure above. Access to the detention control room shall be limited and controlled by the detention control room itself. The detention control room should be inaccessible to in-custody defendants at all times. It should be equipped with a pantry station and a toilet room and must be accessible to persons with disabilities.

f. When located within central holding, the control workstation within the detention control room shall be located so that the detention control officer has direct line of sight into holding areas and the main circulation areas within central holding. The line of sight must work from a seated position and be unobstructed by security equipment configurations.

g. The detention control room environment must reduce stress and fatigue, as well as enhance the staff member's efficiency. Sound-absorbing material must be used to reduce sound reverberation and harshness of noise inside the room. Lighting design must reduce glare and reflection, with provision of a dimmer switch to control the lighting levels.

h. The detention control room will be equipped with workstations that accommodate all equipment associated with monitor, control, and surveillance functions. The number of control workstations will be determined on a project-by-project basis. Control workstations should be flexible to accommodate the integration of future technologies and shall integrate wires and cabling within an enclosed, accessible housing. The use of modular or systems furniture is preferred. An ergonomic layout is very important. Monitors for video, productivity applications, and detention control should be uniform in size and mounted on articulating arms.

i. Only electronic devices related to the user interface layout are accommodated at control workstations. The programmable logic controller (PLC) equipment, servers, and supporting equipment must be located in a nearby technology closet or main distribution frame (MDF) or intermediate distribution frame (IDF) room; access to the technology closets shall be located outside the in-custody secure perimeter. An equipment room dedicated to housing the electronic detention control systems is not required.

5. Central Holding

In-custody defendants are detained in a secure central holding area pending transport to the courtroom floor. Both individual and group holding cells are provided in this area, allowing for separation of juveniles and separation by gender. Several factors influence the number of central holding cells required. Where the courthouse is connected to a jail, for example, in-custody defendants can be escorted to the court more frequently and in smaller groups. The number of vehicular court transports—morning and afternoon runs or once a day—can also reduce the amount of central holding space required, which is some of the costliest construction in the building. (See figures 8.3–8.5.)

a. Some staging may occur before placement in a holding cell, including a paperwork check and/or pat search. Provide a counter for completing paperwork and benches for in-custody defendants awaiting processing.

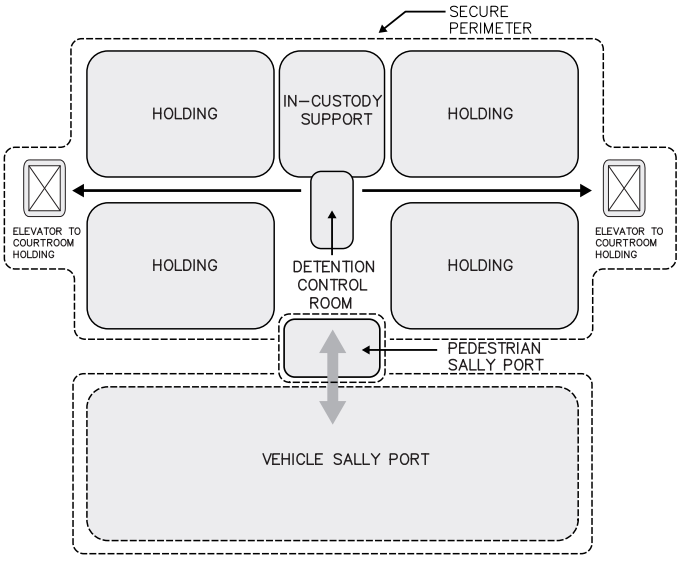


Figure 8.3 Central Holding

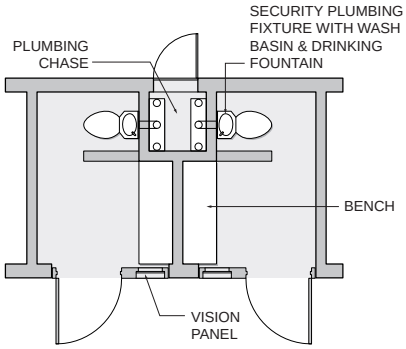


Figure 8.4 Single Holding Cells

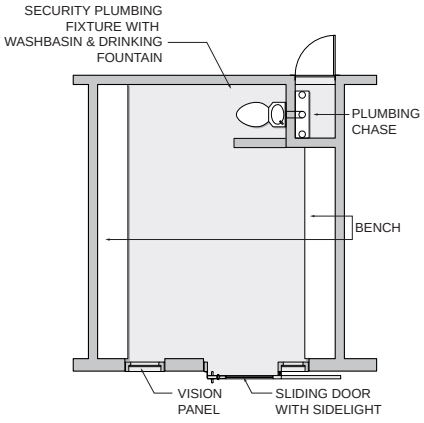


Figure 8.5 Group Holding Cell

b. Central holding is operational during daytime hours only, with no overnight use of the holding cells. Still, all cells must comply with the requirements of California Code of Regulations titles 15 and 24 for temporary holding facilities, as well as Prison Rape Elimination Act (PREA) standards to maintain privacy of in-custodies. Therefore, they must:

- Contain a minimum of 10 square feet (SF) of floor area per in-custody;
- Be limited to no more than 16 in-custodies;
- Be no smaller than 40 SF;
- Have a clear ceiling height of 8′ or more;
- Contain seating to accommodate all in-custodies;
- Contain a toilet, floor-mounted modesty panel, washbasin, and drinking fountain;
- Contain one-sided privacy film on the glass in the detention door, not to exceed 53″ above floor finish, if required by BSCC and if it does not affect the UL listing of the glass; and
- Be equipped with an audio monitoring system.

DIVISION ONE: DESIGN CRITERIA
1 General Principles
2 Courthouse Organization
3 Site Design
4 Courthouse Security
5 Court Set
6 Jury Facilities and Court Administration
7 Special Services
8 IN-CUSTODY DEFENDANT RECEIVING, HOLDING, AND TRANSPORT
8.A Objectives
8.B Planning Criteria
8.C Functional Overview
8.D Program Components
8.E Technical Criteria
8.F Electronic Detention Control System
9 Public Spaces
10 Building Support Services

The door inside the courtroom leading to the courtroom holding shall be designed to match the courtroom decor and is operated by the bailiff.

c. Although they are not required by regulation, some cells may be equipped with cameras at the request of the court, subject to Judicial Council review and approval.

d. Cells must be of secure construction. Fixtures and furnishings should be antiligature (suicide resistant). Accessible holding cells must be available in the central holding area. Provide a minimum of one for each area of separation: male, female, and juvenile. Confirm requirements for mirrors in detention cells, including the accessible cells.

e. Access to the central holding area is controlled by detention control room staff. Cell doors are controlled remotely by detention control room staff, with manual (key) fail override. If swinging doors are used instead of sliders, they must swing out to prevent the occupant's ability to barricade the door. Cells should be positioned to avoid blind spots and provide optimal sightlines for staff working in the area. Provide glazed cell fronts to maximize visibility.

f. BSCC requirements state that toilet areas shall allow modesty for in-custodies with staff being able to visually supervise. Toilets should be positioned in cells to allow for surveillance by staff while still providing modesty for the occupants. If supervision is supplemented by video surveillance in the cell area, cameras should be positioned or digitally obscured to allow for privacy of the toilet component.

g. Sight and sound separation between adults and juveniles in central holding requires separate areas. It is not enough to have separate cells accessed from the same corridor. Note that juvenile probation staff are, generally, responsible for the supervision of in-custody juveniles in central holding; some space for probation staff may be required in this area.

6. Detention Circulation and Elevators

a. All in-custody holding and circulation must be separated from public and private circulation paths and spaces. The areas associated with in-custody holding and circulation are contained within the secure perimeter. A sally port is required at any penetration allowing access in or out of the secure perimeter and shall be controlled by detention control.

b. In courthouses with multiple multistory court sets per floor and/or where central holding is not colocated on a court's floor, a dedicated detention circulation path is required to transport in-custody defendants from the central holding area to in-custody elevators serving the courtroom holding areas. Detention corridors shall be 6′–8′ wide (refer to chapter 2, Courthouse Organization) and shall minimize turns to facilitate direct line of sight and avoid blind spots created by protrusions. All secure circulation corridors on courtroom floors between courtrooms shall be built to detention-grade standards. The secure corridors in central holding shall have detention-grade floors and walls, but acoustical ceiling tiles or gypsum board ceilings are an acceptable alternative.

c. The detention control room monitors and controls access and movement of in-custody elevators. In-custody elevators must include video and intercom capabilities and be able to accommodate a gurney. The baseline standard shall be a 4,000-pound-capacity cab with a minimum clear inside dimension of 5′8″ × 7′1″.

7. Attorney-Client Interview Rooms

Attorney-client interview rooms provide the opportunity for counsel to consult privately with their in-custody clients. A "noncontact" visitation arrangement is required to prevent the exchange of contraband. Attorneys do not enter the secure perimeter of the in-custody holding areas. In-custody defendants enter the interview room from the secure side (within the secure perimeter), and attorneys enter from the public circulation or a courtroom. (See figure 8.6.)

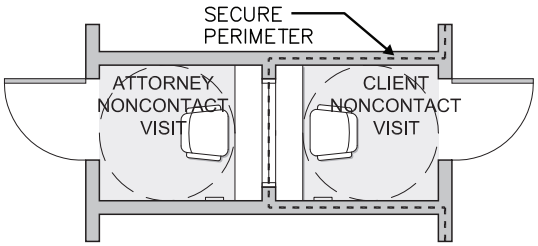


Figure 8.6 Attorney-Client Interview Rooms



Figure 8.7 Attorney-Client Interview Room Window

a. Both entries shall be separated and enclosed from adjacent spaces to promote confidentiality. The entry on the in-custody side shall have glazing to facilitate visual observation by the courtroom holding officer. The wall between the in-custody defendant and the attorney must meet secure perimeter construction requirements. The two parties view each other via a glazed opening per guidelines outlined in tool 5, In-Custody Interview Room Guidelines. (See figure 8.7.)

b. Communication shall be facilitated by passive design, without using handsets or amplification devices. Fixed writing surfaces may be provided upon court request. Pass-through windows are discouraged for security reasons. If provided upon court request and Judicial Council approval, they shall follow the requirements outlined in tool 5, In-Custody Interview Room Guidelines.

c. Attorney interview rooms shall be sized for wheelchair movement on both the attorney and in-custody sides. Provide not less than 70 square feet of floor space with no single dimension less than 6 feet. See title 15 regulations, title 19, and title 24, part 2, for additional room requirements. The in-custody side shall have a detention-grade movable plastic chair for the in-custody defendant. Fixed or swivel stools for in-custody defendants are not permitted. In-custody defendants are not expected to open and close doors themselves in holding areas that are staffed or have remotely controlled operators. Door handles and locks are not permitted on the interior side of the door.

d. Spaces should be treated to manage reverberation of sound within, as well as the transmission of sound to adjacent spaces, because conversations held in these rooms are confidential.

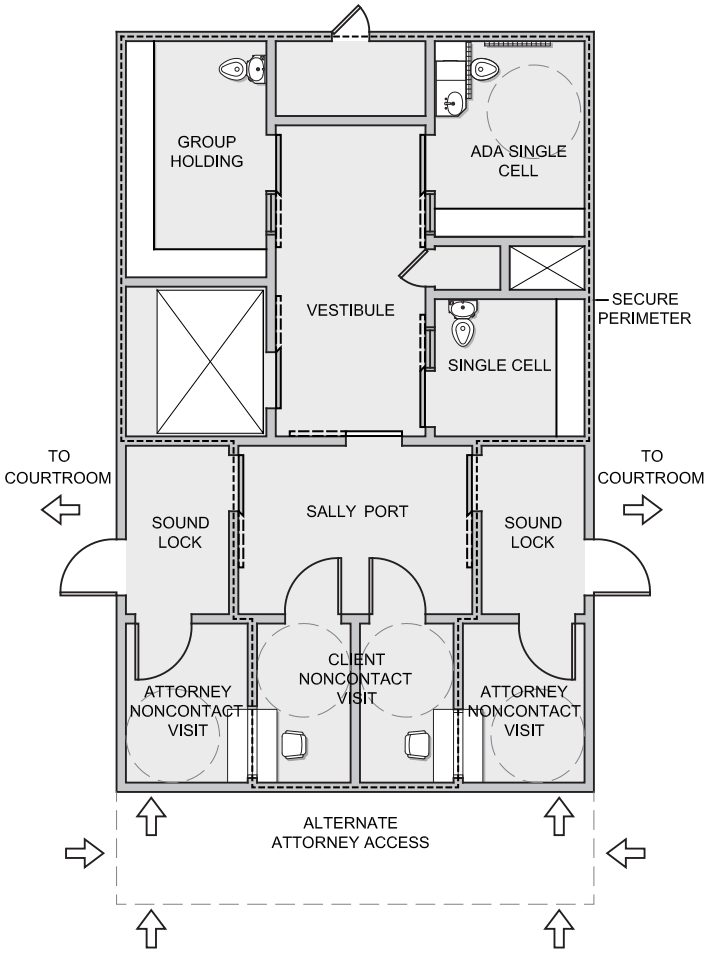
e. Because attorney-client interview rooms are adjacent to courtroom holding areas, in-custody access is from the courtroom holding circulation area, and attorney access is from public circulation or from the courtroom itself, provide a sound-lock vestibule or barriers to both sides for acoustical separation. Determining the location of attorney entrances is based on local court preferences and security staff efficiencies. (See figure 8.8.)

DIVISION ONE: DESIGN CRITERIA
1 General Principles
2 Courthouse Organization
3 Site Design
4 Courthouse Security
5 Court Set
6 Jury Facilities and Court Administration
7 Special Services
8 IN-CUSTODY DEFENDANT RECEIVING, HOLDING, AND TRANSPORT
8.A Objectives
8.B Planning Criteria
8.C Functional Overview
8.D Program Components
8.E Technical Criteria
8.F Electronic Detention Control System
9 Public Spaces
10 Building Support Services

Technical Criteria

- Construction/Finishes
- Detention Doors
- Detention Hollow Metal Frames
- Miscellaneous Detention Equipment
- Security Glazing
- Light Fixtures
- Plumbing Fixtures
- Sprinkler Heads
- Mechanical Grilles
- Security Sealants
- Tamperproof Metal Fasteners
- Detention Toilet Accessories
- Detention Door Signage

Where possible, cell plumbing fixtures shall not be located adjacent to courtroom partitions. The cell toilet fixture shall have secure plumbing readily serviceable by a technician from outside the cell.



ADA = Americans with Disabilities Act.

Figure 8.8 Courtroom Holding

f. In some instances, typically associated with larger courthouses, local users might request attorney-client interview rooms at the central holding area. This scenario necessitates provisions for public circulation (corridor and/or elevators) to extend to central holding, where attorneys would access attorney-client interview rooms from public circulation. The detention control room shall have direct line of sight to attorney-client interview rooms located within the central holding area.

g. See tool 5, In-Custody Interview Room Guidelines, for detailed requirements.

8. Courtroom Holding

a. Each courtroom shall have direct access to a courtroom holding core that includes a sound-lock vestibule, in-custody holding cells, and an attorney-client interview room. Courtrooms shall be paired, sharing a courtroom holding core.

b. A sound-lock vestibule acts as a sound buffer between the courtroom and the holding area and screens views from the courtroom into the holding area. In addition, the sound lock serves as a sally port for managing controlled movement between the two

areas. The door inside the courtroom leading to the courtroom holding shall be designed to match the courtroom decor and is operated by the bailiff. Therefore, it does not typically require detention-grade hardware. The inner door leading to the holding area is detention grade and may be operated from the detention control room or manually by the bailiff.

c. The courtroom holding cells shall:

- Contain a minimum of 10 SF of floor area per in-custody;
- Be limited to no more than 16 in-custodies;
- Be no smaller than 40 SF;
- Have a clear ceiling height of 8′ or more;
- Contain seating to accommodate all in-custodies;
- Contain a toilet, floor-mounted, modesty panel, washbasin, and drinking fountain;
- Contain one-sided privacy film on the glass in the detention door, not to exceed 53″ above floor finish, if required by BSCC and if it does not affect the UL listing of the glass; and
- Be equipped with an audio monitoring system.

d. Cells shall have glazed fronts to manage sound from within and maximize supervision of in-custody defendants by staff. The detention control room may operate cell doors remotely. Cell doors shall be equipped with a manual key override if they are operated from the control room. All cell doors must swing out (or be sliding) to prevent an in-custody defendant from barricading the door. Provide a minimum of one accessible cell per courtroom holding area. All holding cells have penal-grade plumbing fixtures.

e. In-custody defendants access the noncontact attorney-client interview room from within the courtroom holding circulation area. The design and arrangement of the courtroom holding cells and circulation areas shall facilitate supervision and avoid blind spots.

f. Measures shall be taken to manage sound reverberation within the courtroom holding core as well as prevent the transmission of sound between the courtroom holding core and the adjacent courtroom. Where possible, cell plumbing fixtures shall not be located adjacent to courtroom partitions.

9. Secure In-Custody Holding Support Areas

Several program components are essential to the daily operations of the in-custody holding and transport areas. While essential, they are not accessible to in-custody defendants.

a. Sheriff lockers: Confirm locker sizes and types with the sheriff for storage requirements. Confirm locking mechanisms for the sheriff lockers.

b. Armory: Provide an armory located within the in-custody secure perimeter for the secure storage of tactical defense equipment. The armory shall be constructed of security-grade partitions that extend to the underside of the structure above. Access is limited to authorized personnel only. The door to the armory shall have hardened door hardware to prevent kick-ins. The armory shall be equipped with monitoring and surveillance devices. Detention control is responsible for monitoring the security of the armory. The need for an armory and its location are dependent on the size of the court facility.

DIVISION ONE: DESIGN CRITERIA

1 General Principles
2 Courthouse Organization
3 Site Design
4 Courthouse Security
5 Court Set
6 Jury Facilities and Court Administration
7 Special Services
8 IN-CUSTODY DEFENDANT RECEIVING, HOLDING, AND TRANSPORT
8.A Objectives
8.B Planning Criteria
8.C Functional Overview
8.D Program Components
8.E Technical Criteria
8.F Electronic Detention Control System
9 Public Spaces
10 Building Support Services

c. Safety equipment storage: Provide a secure area for the storage of safety equipment such as fire extinguishers, self-contained breathing apparatus, wire and bar cutters, and emergency lights. The area should lock securely.

d. Lunch storage: Provide the ability to store lunches for in-custody defendants who are scheduled to spend a full day at the courthouse. Requirements and protocol for the types of lunches, the quantity of lunches, and how lunches are brought to the court facility are determined on a case-by-case basis. For the storage of in-custody meals, include space and hookups for refrigerated storage, and provide a sink and a general dry storage area. The quantity of storage required depends on the size of the court facility.

e. Staff break room: Locate the staff break room immediately outside the secure perimeter with other security functions. The break room does not require detention-grade finishes or equipment. It should accommodate storage and provide space for vending machines, a coffee machine, a refrigerator, and a table and chairs. The size of and need for a staff break room depend on the size of the court facility.

f. Janitor closet: Locate at least one securely lockable janitor closet within the secure perimeter in the central holding area. The janitor closet shall be equipped with a mop sink and sufficient storage for cleaning implements and supplies. Courtroom holding areas do not require a janitor closet.

g. Storage room: Provide one or more storage rooms to accommodate supplies and other materials. Court holding facilities are excluded from the California Building Code's storage space requirement for personal and institutional clothing because institutional clothing is issued at a different facility.

8.E TECHNICAL CRITERIA

1. General Information

The purpose of this section is to provide detailed description and technical design direction for the secure construction of the holding areas, including doors, frames, locks, wall construction, surface material finishes, equipment, and fixtures.

a. Each secure holding area with multiple rooms, whether central or adjacent to the courtroom, requires a secure perimeter of an approved system constructed to the underside of the structure, with a limited number of 8″ × 8″ or larger penetrations and equipped with security locks and vestibules.

b. All rooms must have a minimum clear ceiling height of 8′ to the underside of surface-mounted light fixtures or other elements. Higher ceilings are preferred when possible to allow the installation of sprinkler heads and smoke detectors farther from the in-custody defendant.

2. Construction and Finishes

2.1 Floor Construction

The floor construction at all areas within the security perimeter of the central and courtroom holding areas will be concrete. Also, to help prevent flooding of the holding areas, slope the floor to the floor drains.

2.2 Concrete Floor Finishes

a. A sealed concrete floor finish shall consist of a chemical hardener/sealer finish. This finish is used at non-in-custody traffic areas and areas that typically see a low volume of foot traffic. These areas include but are not limited to janitor closets, mechanical rooms, and storage rooms.

b. A polished concrete floor finish shall consist of a combination of diamond grinding and polishing using a chemical hardener and sealing agent to get the desired level of concrete finish. This finish is used in in-custody circulation areas where a high volume of in-custody traffic is expected. These areas include but are not limited to corridors, sally ports, and staging areas.

c. An epoxy resinous floor system shall consist of an elastomeric primer, two intermediate coats of clear mixed liquids with aggregate, and a final clear glazing coat. This finish is used at all in-custody cells and in-custody–attorney visiting areas. This finish can also be used at corridors, sally ports, and staging areas.

2.3 Wall Construction

a. Wall construction of 8″ concrete masonry units grouted solid with 3,000 pounds per square inch (psi) grout, including vertical and horizontal reinforcing to the underside of the structure, shall be used at all central, courtroom holding, and detention control room secure perimeter walls.

b. A wall system with 8″ or 6″ concrete masonry units grouted solid with 3,000 psi grout and vertical reinforcing to a height of 10′ above the finished floor and extended to the underside of the structure with 3-5/8″ 20-gauge metal studs at 16″ on center with secure metal lath and 5/8″ high-impact Type X gypsum board on both sides of the metal studs shall be used inside the security perimeter at walls that are required to extend to the underside of the structure, such as rated corridor walls.

c. A wall system with 8″ or 6″ concrete masonry units grouted solid with vertical reinforcing to a height determined by the designers and generally extended a minimum of 8″ above the finished ceiling shall be used inside the security perimeter at walls that are not required to extend to the underside of the structure, such as nonrated corridor walls. If these walls are part of the secure envelope, they must be tied into the secure ceiling.

d. Precast concrete wall panels with thicknesses based on the level of security can be used for walls both forming and inside the security perimeter.

e. A metal wall panel detention system has a typical panel thickness of 2″ with 10-gauge faceplates on each side and 10-gauge base, wall, and ceiling channels. Panels are also grouted solid with 3,000 psi grout. This wall system can be used at cell fronts, cell backs, and cell demising walls. Limitations would be height of panels and fire ratings over one hour.

f. Detention panels shall not be used for rated walls. Only use concrete masonry unit (CMU) for detention-rated walls. Develop or specify grouting installation procedures for CMU detention-rated walls. Do not locate equipment that requires access above detention cells.

2.4 Wall Finishes

a. A fiber-reinforced, epoxy, abrasion-resistant coating system consists of a surface preparation followed by a primer coat, body coat, and final coat. This finish system shall be used in all holding cells and in-custody–attorney interview rooms. This finish can also be used in circulation areas.

DIVISION ONE: DESIGN CRITERIA

1 General Principles
2 Courthouse Organization
3 Site Design
4 Courthouse Security
5 Court Set
6 Jury Facilities and Court Administration
7 Special Services
8 IN-CUSTODY DEFENDANT RECEIVING, HOLDING, AND TRANSPORT
8.A Objectives
8.B Planning Criteria
8.C Functional Overview
8.D Program Components
8.E Technical Criteria
8.F Electronic Detention Control System
9 Public Spaces
10 Building Support Services

b. An epoxy paint system is a low–volatile organic compound (VOC) product consisting of a block filler and two topcoats. This finish shall be used as an 8″ high base at all latex enamel-painted walls and can be used at all circulation walls.

c. A latex enamel paint system is a low-VOC product consisting of a block filler and two topcoats. This finish shall be used at all circulation areas and areas not accessible to in-custodies.

d. A stainless steel finish shall be used on all in-custody elevator cab walls.

2.5 Ceiling Construction

a. A system of precast concrete with all ceiling joints grouted solid is painted in the field and can be used at all areas except where acoustical ceilings are required.

b. An acoustical steel roof/floor deck consists of a cellular deck profile with a ribbed deck welded to an acoustical perforated bottom plate. The deck thickness is typically 1-1/2″ or 3″, with a lightweight concrete topping slab. Factory-installed sound-absorbing insulation is installed into the cells of the deck. This system comes with a primer and requires final painting in the field. This system shall be used at all holding cell and in-custody–attorney visiting areas.

c. An acoustical panel deck consisting of a one-piece galvannealed steel plate with 5/32″-diameter perforated holes is typically 14 gauge, with a heavy-duty steel frame. Antimicrobial and sound-deadening insulation is installed on top of the panels. The system comes with a durable powder coat finish and shall be used at all circulation areas.

d. Acoustical metal ceiling panels are used for the metal wall panel detention system. The typical panel thickness is 2″, with a perforated acoustical bottom plate and sound-absorbing insulation installed in the panels. This system comes with a primer and is painted in the field with two topcoats of a low-VOC latex enamel paint.

e. An acoustical ceiling tile of either 2′ × 2′ or 2′ × 4′ on a suspension grid with hanger wires comes with a factory finish and can be used in areas not accessible to in-custodies. This system can also be used in in-custody circulation areas where the ceiling height is greater than 10′ and hold-down clips are provided.

f. A system of 5/8″ high-impact gypsum board on a suspension grid with hanger wires is painted in the field and shall be used in areas not accessible to in-custodies, such as staff toilets and janitor closets.

g. Stainless steel is a factory finish and shall be used in in-custody elevators.

h. Exposed construction would have no finish and could be used in a mechanical or electrical room.

Table 8.1 Technical Matrix

	Single Holding Cell	Group Holding cell	Holding Control Room	In-Custody Circulation	In-Custody Sally Port	Pedestrian Sally Port	Vehicle Sally Port	Sally Port Staging	In-Custody Interview	Attorney Interview Room	In-Custody Search	Armory
Swing and Sliding Door Types												
Detention hollow metal flush door						•						•
Detention hollow metal flush door with cuff pass												
Detention hollow metal half-glass door			•					•	•	•		
Detention hollow metal half-glass door with cuff pass	•	•										
Detention hollow metal vision panel door				•	•		•					
Detention hollow metal vision panel door with view shutter											•	
Hollow Door Frame Types												
Controlled swing/slider door			•	•								
Controlled swing/slider door with sidelight	•	•			•	•	•	•				
Noncontrolled door											•	•
Noncontrolled door with sidelight									•	•		
Borrowed light frame									•	•		
Control room borrowed light frame			•									
Security Glazing Types												
Glass-clad polycarbonate glazing manufactured (requirements at 8.E.6.2, Security Glazing Types)					•				•	•	•	
Laminated polycarbonate glazing manufactured (requirements at 8.E.6.2, Security Glazing Types)	•	•		•			•	•				•
Glass-clad polycarbonate with tinting film for one-way vision			•									
Benches												
Detention benches (requirements at 8.E.4.2, Detention Benches)	•	•			•			•			•	
Detention Equipment												
Paper pass (requirements at 8.E.5.1, Detention Equipment Types)			•									
Gun locker (requirements at 8.E.5.1, Detention Equipment Types)												•
Pistol lockers					•	•	•	•				

DIVISION ONE: DESIGN CRITERIA

1 General Principles
2 Courthouse Organization
3 Site Design
4 Courthouse Security
5 Court Set
6 Jury Facilities and Court Administration
7 Special Services
8 IN-CUSTODY DEFENDANT RECEIVING, HOLDING, AND TRANSPORT
8.A Objectives
8.B Planning Criteria
8.C Functional Overview
8.D Program Components
8.E Technical Criteria
8.F Electronic Detention Control System
9 Public Spaces
10 Building Support Services

3. Detention Doors

3.1 Detention Swing Doors

See table 8.1 for locations and type.

a. Detention hollow metal doors shall be fabricated from 12-gauge galvannealed steel face sheets spot-welded to the internal core construction.

b. The top and bottom edges of the door shall be closed with a continuous closing channel. The vertical edges of the door shall be reinforced by a continuous steel channel, not less than 12 gauge, extending the full length of the door. Edge seams shall be continuously welded and finished till smooth such that no seams are visible. All metal doors shall have a flush top and bottom edge channel and shall be welded to the closing channel.

c. Cuff passes shall be provided at the edge of all cell doors and at the door on the in-custody side of attorney-client interview rooms.

d. The door finish shall match the wall finish on that side of the door.

e. All cell doors must swing out of all cells and attorney visiting rooms.

3.2 Detention Sliding Doors

See table 8.1 for locations and type.

a. Provide sliding detention door device assemblies, including locking device, receiver, overhead door hanger, bottom door guide, lock column, and enclosure as a complete assembly.

b. Provide cuff passes at the edge of all cell doors.

c. Match the door finish to the wall finish on that side of the door.

d. Detention swing and sliding door types include:

- Detention hollow metal flush door with or without cuff pass;
- Detention hollow metal half-glass door with or without cuff pass; and
- Detention hollow metal vision panel door with or without view shutter.

3.3 Cuff Passes in Detention Doors

a. Standard cuff pass opening shall be 16″ long × 5″ high with 10 Series lock and continuous hinge. Cuff pass shall be flush with the door.

b. Horizontal center line of cuff port shall be 35″ from finished floor. See figure 8.9 for center line height requirement for cuff pass.

c. Cuff pass shall be installed at the factory in the detention door and integral door frame.

d. The detention door shall have an integral glazed opening for visual surveillance. The glazing shall be single or double pane with two vertical panes, with the lower half including a tinted film for modesty screening if required by BSCC and if it does not affect the UL listing of the glass. See table 8.1 for glazing requirements. See figure 8.9 for glazed opening in the detention door.

e. Door type, configuration, glazing, and cuff pass design and placement shall be standardized to reduce costs associated with unique door designs for new courthouses and replacement doors. Off-the-shelf detention doors that meet these requirements are recommended.

f. Approval of the county sheriff and Judicial Council is required before making final selection of detention door with cuff pass during the design phase of the project.

g. Shop drawings of door and frame assembly with the cuff pass shall be submitted for Judicial Council approval.

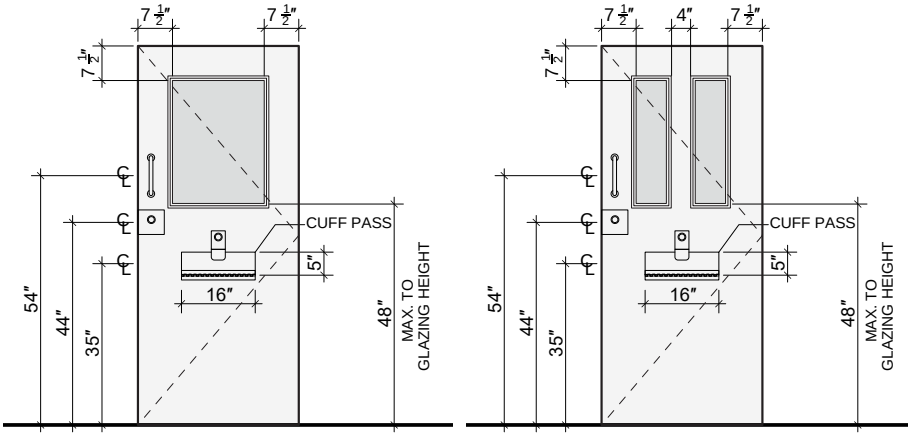


Figure 8.9 Glazed Opening and Center Line Height of Cuff Pass in Detention Door

3.4 Detention Electric Locks

a. For swinging cell doors, electrical operation, and maximum security:

- Lock is frame-mounted 115 volts of alternating current (VAC), continuous-duty solenoid operated;
- Bolt is retracted electrically by icon at the control panel and remains retracted until door is opened;
- Bolt is retracted manually by mogul key on outside and/or inside;
- Internal switches monitor status of bolt to show deadlocked and unlocked conditions;
- Galvanized case at exterior installations shall be provided; and
- A key cylinder extension for locks keyed both sides or keyed stop side shall be provided.

b. For circulation swing doors, motor operation, and maximum security:

- Lock is frame-mounted 115VAC, motor operated;
- Bolt is retracted electrically by icon at the control panel and remains retracted until door is opened;
- Bolt is retracted manually by mogul key on outside and/or inside;
- Internal switches monitor status of bolt to show deadlocked and unlocked conditions; and
- A key cylinder extension for locks keyed both sides or keyed stop side shall be provided.

DIVISION ONE: DESIGN CRITERIA

1 General Principles
2 Courthouse Organization
3 Site Design
4 Courthouse Security
5 Court Set
6 Jury Facilities and Court Administration
7 Special Services
8 IN-CUSTODY DEFENDANT RECEIVING, HOLDING, AND TRANSPORT
8.A Objectives
8.B Planning Criteria
8.C Functional Overview
8.D Program Components
8.E Technical Criteria
8.F Electronic Detention Control System
9 Public Spaces
10 Building Support Services

Where possible, cell plumbing fixtures shall not be located adjacent to courtroom partitions. The cell toilet fixture shall have secure plumbing readily serviceable by a technician from outside the cell.

3.5 Detention Mechanical Locks

a. For detention access panels and cuff passes—mechanical operation:

- Lock is a door-mounted deadbolt;
- Bolt is retracted manually by paracentric (lever tumbler; mogul pin tumbler) key on outside only;
- Door strike shall be provided; and
- Hollow metal lock mounting, escutcheon, and security screws shall be provided.

b. For swinging doors—mechanical operation:

- Lock is a door-mounted, paracentric key deadlocking latch bolt with three hardened steel pins;
- Bolt is retracted manually by paracentric key on outside and/or inside;
- Hollow metal lock mounting, escutcheon, and security screws shall be supplied;
- Door strike shall be provided; and
- Galvanized case and cylinder shields at exterior installations shall be provided.

3.6 Electromechanical Locking, Electromechanical Door Movement, and Sliding Door Device Assemblies

a. These assemblies are operated from a remote-control panel that activates electric motors to unlock sliding doors and motorized rack-and-pinion drive mechanisms to open and close doors. Doors lock in open position and deadlock when closed. Provide factory-wired cable harness with plug connectors for each motor unit.

b. Each door can be individually unlocked locally or from a remote panel—or unlocked from a remote panel with other doors as a group. In an emergency or if power fails, each door can be manually operated from a pilaster release adjacent to receiving jamb of each door operated by paracentric key; doors shall not relock in any position.

c. The electric key switch is operated by paracentric key and shall provide electric control of detention sliding door operation at door location, where indicated.

3.7 Detention Door Hardware

The hardware listed below is the minimum requirement for detention doors; additional hardware may be required. Coordinate hardware selection with the sheriff's office.

a. Detention hinges shall be cast stainless steel leaves with integral security studs, nonremovable stainless steel pins, stainless steel ball bearings, three knuckle with hospital tips.

b. Concealed door closers shall have full hydraulic, rack-and-pinion action with high-strength cast iron cylinder.

c. Concealed door position switches shall be a mortise installation overhead mounting with switch contacts housed in the doorframe and actuating magnet mortised into the top of the door.

d. Keeper switches shall be a mortise installation with limit-monitoring switch housed in the doorframe. All manual locks shall use keeper switches.

e. Push plates shall be 3/16″ thick stainless steel 32″ wide × 16″ high with 7/8″ lip projection at bottom. Attach with stainless steel security rivets.

f. Pull loops shall be cast bronze satin chrome plated with a dimension of 8-3/4″ long × 12″ clearance.

g. Pull flush shall be cast bronze satin chrome plated with a dimension of 4″ wide × 5″ high × 1″ deep.

h. Doorstops shall be black silicone rubber 2″ diameter, mounted on a 5/8″ × 2-1/2″ steel shank for permanent attachment in grout-filled masonry or concrete.

i. Door cuff passes shall be 16″ long × 5″ high with 10 Series lock and continuous hinge. Cuff passes shall be flush with the door face.

j. For cylinders, keys, and keying, the detention locks shall incorporate two separate keying systems: one for lever tumbler (paracentric) and one for pin tumbler (mogul cylinder) locks. Each keying system's keys shall be die-stamped for identification. For all individual key designations, three keys each shall be provided. For each master key designation, four keys each shall be provided.

4. Detention Hollow Metal Frames

a. Frames shall be fabricated from 12-gauge steel, with mitered corners continuously welded through head inside corner and miter-ground smooth.

b. The manufacturer shall provide all frames with approved jamb anchors, floor knees, plaster boxes, removable angle spreaders, and door silencers.

c. All frames are to be grouted solid with frame anchors tied to rebar. No glazing stops or fasteners are to be installed on the in-custody side of the frame. The frame finish is to match the wall finish on that side of the frame.

4.1 Detention Hollow Metal Frame Types

Detention hollow metal frame types include:

- Controlled swing/slider door with or without sidelight;
- Noncontrolled door with or without sidelight;
- Borrowed light frame; and
- Control room borrowed light frame.

4.2 Detention Benches

a. Detention benches shall be provided at all holding cells and other areas where detention seating may be required. All benches must meet ADA requirements for height and depth.

b. The metal bench can be part of the metal wall panel detention system and should be constructed to meet the wall panel requirements. The bench should come primed; final painting shall be done in the field.

c. The concrete top with masonry base shall be constructed out of a minimum 4″ thick concrete and minimum 6″ concrete masonry unit base grouted solid and reinforced. The concrete top shall be finished with sealer/hardener, and the finish of the masonry base shall match the wall finish surface.

DIVISION ONE: DESIGN CRITERIA
1 General Principles
2 Courthouse Organization
3 Site Design
4 Courthouse Security
5 Court Set
6 Jury Facilities and Court Administration
7 Special Services
8 IN-CUSTODY DEFENDANT RECEIVING, HOLDING, AND TRANSPORT
8.A Objectives
8.B Planning Criteria
8.C Functional Overview
8.D Program Components
8.E Technical Criteria
8.F Electronic Detention Control System
9 Public Spaces
10 Building Support Services

5. Miscellaneous Detention Equipment

5.1 Detention Equipment Types

a. Paper pass, if provided upon court request and Judicial Council approval at any location, shall be provided with a built-in bottom made from stainless steel. The size will be 16″ long × 10″ wide × 2″ high × 1-1/2″ deep. It shall have a factory finish.

b. Pistol lockers shall be made up of six compartment lockers with 3/16″ shell and doors. Compartments shall be lined with 1/8″ felt with swing-out compartment doors on continuous hinges. Provide each compartment with snap locks, each compartment individually keyed and master keyed. The unit comes primed and will require final painting in the field.

c. A gun locker with a 3/16″ shell and doors shall be provided in the armory and shall be capable of holding a minimum of six rifle-type weapons. The compartment shall have a felt lining and a secure door that is keyed. The unit comes primed or with a factory finish. Confirm gun locker location, size, and quantity, and provide details for backing and surrounding finish trim, if recessed.

5.2 Detention Access Panels

a. Install fire-rated detention access panels rated for 90 minutes. The frame shall be constructed out of 16-gauge, cold-rolled steel with 1″ wide surface-mounted trim. The door shall be constructed out of 14-gauge, cold-rolled steel with 2″ of fire-retardant insulation enclosed in sheet metal. Provide a continuous piano hinge and an automatic self-latching door closure. The panels come primed and will require a final field painting.

b. Install nonrated detention access panels with a 3″ × 2″ × 3/16″ steel angle frame and 1″ × 1″ × 1/8″ angle stops on three sides. Door construction is to be 3/16″ steel with 1-1/4″ flange on all four sides. Equip each panel with two hinges. The panels come primed and will require a final field painting.

c. Provide safety chain on swing-down, ceiling-type detention access panels.

d. Do not locate detention access panels in holding cells or other areas where in-custodies may be left alone.

6. Security Glazing

6.1 Security Glazing Locations

Locations for security glazing shall include:

- Detention doors;
- Detention glazed frame;
- Control room;
- Attorney-client interview; and
- Court dock area.

6.2 Security Glazing Types

a. See table 8.1 for locations and type. In the holding cells, an effort shall be made to provide laminated polycarbonate glazing. Based on supply chain availability, glass-clad polycarbonate glazing may be approved by the Judicial Council.

b. Glass-clad polycarbonate glazing shall be manufactured to comply with the following requirements (see table 8.1 for locations and type):

- Consisting of a layer of strengthened glass, a polycarbonate core, and a layer of strengthened glass.
- Bullet resistance: H. P. White TP 500 Level A, Weapon .38 Special (three shots).
- Forced entry resistance: H. P. White TP 500 Level II and ASTM F1915 Grade 2.
- Tinting film at control rooms.

c. Laminated polycarbonate glazing shall be manufactured to comply with the following requirements:

- Consisting of a polycarbonate mar-resistant outer layer, a polycarbonate core, and a polycarbonate mar-resistant outer layer.
- Bullet resistance: H. P. White TP 500 Level A, Weapon .38 Special (three shots).
- Forced entry resistance: H. P. White TP 500 Level I and ASTM F1915 Grade 2.

d. When contacting manufacturers, specify the required security and fire performance criteria as follows:

- Identify the required security performance using the applicable test standard, such as UL 752 ballistic level or ASTM forced entry resistance rating, and clearly state whether ballistic resistance, forced entry resistance, or both are required.
- Where fire-rated glazing is required, specify the required fire resistance duration and require that the glazing system be tested and listed as a complete fire-rated assembly, including glazing, framing, anchors, and interfaces, in accordance with the applicable fire test standard.
- For insulated glass units, identify minimum performance targets for R-value, U-value, solar heat gain coefficient, and visible light transmittance. These values shall be used by the design builder and fabricator to propose appropriate exterior lite makeup and airspace thicknesses that meet or exceed the stated performance requirements.
- Coordinate with the selected manufacturer to ensure compatibility with required thermal performance, framing systems, and testing criteria.
- ASTM standards quick guide:
  - ASTM F1233 tests security glazing systems for resistance to forced entry attacks with tools.
  - ASTM C 1172 specifies laminated architectural flat glass properties for safety and durability.
  - UL 752—ballistic resistance levels for glazing, panels, doors, and systems against specified firearms and ammunition.
  - NIJ 0108.01—ballistic standard originally for armor and ballistic materials, often used for glazing/vehicle protection classifications.

DIVISION ONE: DESIGN CRITERIA

1 General Principles
2 Courthouse Organization
3 Site Design
4 Courthouse Security
5 Court Set
6 Jury Facilities and Court Administration
7 Special Services
8 IN-CUSTODY DEFENDANT RECEIVING, HOLDING, AND TRANSPORT
8.A Objectives
8.B Planning Criteria
8.C Functional Overview
8.D Program Components
8.E Technical Criteria
8.F Electronic Detention Control System
9 Public Spaces
10 Building Support Services

- Follow all specified ballistic performance standards outlined in *CTCFS* for ballistic glazing. No manufacturer listed below is required or preapproved. Any product meeting the performance criteria may be used. References to manufacturers are illustrative only and do not constitute endorsement or exclusion. Contractor shall submit certified test data verifying compliance. Following are the security glazing manufacturers provided as a reference to support coordination of ballistic or forced entry glazing assemblies with the insulated glass performance requirements.
  - Isoclima produces advanced transparent glazing solutions engineered for safety, design, and performance in demanding settings. Its products include high-performance security and ballistic glass, laminated and forced entry–resistant glazing, and adaptive smart glass for privacy and solar control. It offers custom specialty laminated and architectural glass, plus vehicle armor and transparent systems for rail, marine, and aerospace applications. Its solutions are tailored for buildings, vehicles, and high-security environments. Its products meet ASTM F1233-21 for forced entry resistance, which tests how glazing resists physical attack by tools and delays unauthorized entry. Products are also tested to NIJ 0108.01 ballistic standards for bullet resistance. F1233 defines classes of forced entry resistance for security glazing systems.
  - Insulgard Corporation makes architectural security systems designed to protect buildings from ballistic attacks, forced entry, and severe weather impacts. Its line includes bullet-resistant windows, doors, framing, and counterline systems. It also produces forced entry–resistant glazing and impact-resistant (storm) doors and windows for tornado and hurricane shelter applications. Its products are tested and certified to industry safety standards. Products comply with ASTM F1233-08 forced entry testing, which evaluates resistance against tools and manual attacks aimed at breaking into glazing systems. Ballistic products are tested to UL 752 Levels 1-8 for gunfire resistance and also meet NIJ Levels II–IV for certain ballistic threats. F1233 applies to forced entry resistance of security glazing materials and systems.
  - Armortex manufactures a range of physical security products engineered to resist bullets, blasts, and forced entry for buildings and secure facilities. It produces lightweight, ballistic-grade fiberglass composite panels tested to UL standards. Its product line also includes bullet- and blast-resistant windows, doors, transaction equipment like deal trays and drawers, gun ports, speakers, package receivers, and aluminum storefront systems. Its solutions serve security needs in courts, banks, schools, and government facilities. Bullet-resistant glazing and framing products are designed to meet UL 752 Levels 1–10 ballistic standards, and UL 752 is the primary verified ballistic rating.
  - Total Security Solutions produces custom bullet-resistant security products including ballistic glass, bulletproof windows, and bulletproof doors tailored to specific threat levels. It fabricates bullet-resistant fiberglass panels, frames, and full barrier systems for secure environments. Accessories like currency trays, package

passers, and voice hardware are also offered to complete security installations. Its solutions are designed and manufactured to meet industry ballistic safety standards. TSS primarily tests products to UL 752 for ballistic resistance, which defines how resistant glazing, panels, and doors are to specified gunfire threats.

e. Manufacturer warranty:

- Provide manufacturer's written warranty for security glazing products including laminated glass, glass-clad polycarbonate, laminated polycarbonate, insulated units, and fire-rated glazing, where applicable. Warranty shall cover defects in materials and workmanship.
- Warranty period:
  - Five years from date of manufacture for laminated glass, glass-clad polycarbonate, laminated polycarbonate, and security glazing construction against delamination.
  - Five years from date of manufacture for coatings including pyrolytic, chemical vapor deposition (CVD), magnetron sputtered vacuum deposition (MSVD), silicone, or ceramic coatings against peeling, flaking, blistering, or deterioration beyond 1/8″ into the viewing area.
  - Five years from date of manufacture for insulated glass units against seal failure resulting in visible moisture intrusion or material obstruction of vision.
- Conformance warranty: Safety glazing shall comply at time of manufacture with applicable standards including ANSI Z97.1, CPSC 16 CFR 1201, and referenced ASTM standards as specified in this section.

7. Security Light Fixture Types

a. Maximum-security light fixtures can be either recessed or surface mounted with a 12-gauge, one-piece, seamless, doorless unit and a prismatic polycarbonate lens. Recessed fixtures must maintain the continuity of the security ceiling and not be removable. The light fixture comes with a factory finish. These light fixtures shall be located at all cells, all attorney interview rooms, and the court dock area.

b. Medium-security light fixtures can be either recessed or surface mounted with a 14-gauge, one-piece, seamless, doorless unit and a prismatic lens. Recessed fixtures must maintain the continuity of the security ceiling and not be removable. The light fixture comes with a factory finish. These light fixtures shall be located at all in-custody circulation areas and other areas where in-custodies have access.

c. Architectural-grade fixtures can be recessed or surface mounted and come with a factory finish. These light fixtures can be used in areas where in-custodies have no access, such as administration areas.

8. Security Plumbing Fixture Types

a. A standard rear wall–mounted, chase-accessible unit shall be installed at all in-custody areas where an accessible unit is not required. The unit shall be constructed out of a 14-gauge, type 304 stainless steel cabinet and toilet bowl. Include a toilet paper holder and a penal hemispherical bubbler. The unit comes with a factory finish. The unit shall also be provided with an electronic water usage controller to allow for control of the unit's solenoid to prevent vandalism or excessive flushing. The electronic water usage

DIVISION ONE: DESIGN CRITERIA
1 General Principles
2 Courthouse Organization
3 Site Design
4 Courthouse Security
5 Court Set
6 Jury Facilities and Court Administration
7 Special Services
8 IN-CUSTODY DEFENDANT RECEIVING, HOLDING, AND TRANSPORT
8.A Objectives
8.B Planning Criteria
8.C Functional Overview
8.D Program Components
8.E Technical Criteria
8.F Electronic Detention Control System
9 Public Spaces
10 Building Support Services

controller shall be inaccessible to the in-custody defendants and managed by the facility management staff. The cell toilet fixture shall have a secure plumbing chase inaccessible to in-custody defendants but readily serviceable by a technician from outside the cell.

b. An accessible rear wall–mounted, chase-accessible unit shall be installed at all in-custody areas where an accessible unit is required. The unit shall be constructed out of a 14-gauge, type 304 stainless steel cabinet and toilet bowl. Include a toilet paper holder, an antiflood device, a penal hemispherical bubbler, and a grab bar assembly. The unit comes with a factory finish. The cell toilet fixture shall have a secure plumbing chase inaccessible to in-custody defendants but readily serviceable by a technician from outside the cell.

c. Medium or large court buildings require a sewage grinder system for all waste lines that connect to detention toilet fixtures. This system is typically located outside the building perimeter.

d. Architectural-grade plumbing fixtures such as toilets and lavatories can be used in all areas where in-custodies have no access, such as administration areas. These fixtures come with a factory finish.

e. Floor drains shall be provided in all holding areas, with detention drain covers with small hole openings and fasteners. Detention-grade floor drains shall be provided outside the door of each group of two in-custody holding cells.

9. Security Sprinkler Head Types

a. Provide detention-grade, ceiling-mounted sprinkler heads in all areas accessible to in-custodies. Sprinkler heads must meet Compliance Services and Assessments LLC (CSA) standards for suicide prevention and be located a minimum of 8′ above the finish floor. The sprinkler heads come with a factory finish. Tyco RAVEN institutional sprinkler heads shall be the basis of design and pricing, with smooth underside and no protruding elements.

b. Provide nondetention sprinkler heads in all areas where in-custodies have no access, such as administration areas.

c. See chapter 20, Fire Protection Criteria, for sprinkler system and sprinkler head options.

10. Security Mechanical Grille Types

a. Use wall- and ceiling-mounted grilles in all areas accessible to in-custodies. Provide a risk-resistant grille with a nonvision core consisting of a 3/16″ faceplate with louvers, vertical mullions, sleeve, and four-sided mounting frame. The grilles come with a factory finish.

b. Provide nondetention grilles in all areas where in-custodies have no access, such as administration areas.

c. Provide detention duct bars at all openings larger than 5″ × 5″. Duct bars are to be tool-resistant 7/8″-diameter steel bars spaced so that no opening is bigger than 5″ in diameter.

d. Provide security bars at all openings and/or penetrations of secure perimeter envelope larger than 5″ × 5″. Security bars are to be tool-resistant 7/8″-diameter steel bars spaced so that no opening is bigger than 5″ in diameter.

11. Security Sealant Types

For more information on sealants, see table 8.2.

a. Security joints shall be sealed with a two-component, premium-grade, polyurethane-based elastomeric sealant.

b. Security epoxy resin gap filler (low-mod gel) shall be a two-component, 100 percent solid, moisture-tolerant, low-modulus, nonsag, paste-consistency epoxy resin binder.

Table 8.2 Sealant Matrix

LOCATIONS	ALL CELLS, INTERVIEW & CONTROL ROOMS	CORRIDORS & COURT DOCK AREAS	ADMIN, STAFF & COURTROOM AREAS
Detention hollow metal frames	SGF	SGF	SGF
Arch. door & window frames	SJS	SJS	LJS
Mech. grilles/diffusers	SGF	SJS	LJS
Water closets & lavatories	SGF	NA	LJS
Sprinkler heads/plumbing	SGF	SGF	NA
Security light fixtures	SGF	SJS	NA
Exposed conduit/raceways	SGF	SJS	NA
Switch/outlet	SGF	SJS	NA
In-custody duress plates	SGF	SJS	LJS
Misc. detention equip. (mirrors)	SGF	NA	NA
Interior wall systems at base	SGF	SGF	SGF
Wall & ceiling joint	SGF	SJS	NA
Intercom call stations	SGF	SJS	LJS

LJS = latex joint sealants. These are typical architectural sealants.
NA = not applicable.
SGF = security epoxy resin gap filler.
SJS = security joint sealant.

12. Tamperproof Metal Fasteners

a. Use Torx-head (star design with center pin) security fasteners. Finish shall match the item to be anchored.

b. Fabricate removable tamperproof fasteners to allow removal only by tools produced by the fastener manufacturer or another licensed fabricator specifically for individual tamperproof fastener design. Limit size and shape variations such that no more than six tools are required for each type of tamperproof fastener used on a project.

c. Provide tamperproof metal fasteners at all central and court holding areas where in-custodies have access.

13. Detention Toilet Accessories

a. Use grab bars with underslung plate to prevent suicides.

b. Provide a recessed toilet paper holder if it is not part of the toilet fixture.

c. Use a detention mirror with embedded mounting plate.

- Mirror frame dimension shall be 12-1/2″ × 16-1/2″, fabricated from 16-gauge mild steel. The 5/16″ × 1″ mirror frame is to be chrome plated. Mirror opening shall be 10-1/2″ × 14-1/2″, and mirror shall be made of 20-gauge stainless steel polished for high reflectivity.

DIVISION ONE: DESIGN CRITERIA

1 General Principles
2 Courthouse Organization
3 Site Design
4 Courthouse Security
5 Court Set
6 Jury Facilities and Court Administration
7 Special Services
8 IN-CUSTODY DEFENDANT RECEIVING, HOLDING, AND TRANSPORT
8.A Objectives
8.B Planning Criteria
8.C Functional Overview
8.D Program Components
8.E Technical Criteria
8.F Electronic Detention Control System
9 Public Spaces
10 Building Support Services

- Embedded mounting plate is to be constructed of 1/4″ plate steel with two 11-gauge, 3″ wide bent steel anchors with minimum 1″ bend. Embedded plate shall be drilled and tapped for security fasteners.
- For accessible mirrors, use either two mirrors or one longer mirror for both applications.

14. Detention Door Signage

a. Provide low- or no-VOC paint, exterior alkyd gloss enamel on interior and exterior ferrous surfaces.

b. Provide 6″ high numbers on the face of all controlled and monitored doors within the central and court-secure perimeters.

c. Provide 6″ high numbers on both sides of the face of all doors that are in circulation areas within the central and court-secure perimeters.

8.F ELECTRONIC DETENTION CONTROL SYSTEM

1. Overview

The electronic detention control system (DCS) consists of integrated electronic subsystems that provide holding area monitoring and control from a detention control room (DCR) and from alternative locations where designated in larger facilities, such as a security operations center (SOC). The DCS's electronic subsystems include programmable logic controls, video surveillance, intercom, and a distributed antenna system. The systems are designed to enhance manual processes and staff safety while maintaining a secure and protective environment for in-custody defendants awaiting trial. Refer to table 8.3.

2. Transport Driveway

a. For transport vehicles delivering in-custody defendants by accessing the vehicle sally port through a secure driveway, provide sliding or swinging gates and barrier arm gates to control secure driveway access and egress. Provide for remote control of gates from the DCR or from a card reader located at the secure driveway.

b. Provide sensors and programming used during vehicle gate entry and exit sequences to detect vehicles and prevent them from being stranded or trapped between vehicle control points. Sensors employed include in-ground vehicle detector loops, photoelectric beams, and leading-edge gate and barrier arm sensors.

3. Transport Driveway Entry

When a transport vehicle approaches the secure driveway, the driver communicates with the DCR either from the vehicle or from a pedestal-mounted intercom to request access. Alternatively, the driver may use a card reader for automated entry. A vehicle detection loop shall be provided to detect vehicles, enable the gate card reader, and call up adjacent surveillance cameras. Entrance gate card readers are otherwise deactivated. Vehicle pedestals shall be provided with single- and dual-height pedestal heads to accommodate a variety of vehicles, and vehicle types must be coordinated at each site to ensure that appropriate security pedestals are provided.

The DCR monitors secure driveway surveillance cameras and gate status and controls vehicle gates from a DCS touchscreen computer. When the DCR grants secure driveway access, the entrance gate and barrier arm open and the transport vehicle enters. The barrier arm and entrance gate close immediately after the transport vehicle has cleared its respective safety sensors and entered the secure driveway.

Table 8.3 Electronic Detention Control Requirements

	Locking—Local	Locking—Remote	Door Interlock	Cameras	Video Recording	Audio Monitoring	Audio Communication	Call Button	Monitoring and Control	Card Access	Card and PIN Access	Gate Control	Duress Buttons
Secure driveway				R	R		R			R		R	
Sally port—vehicle	R		R	R	R	R	R		R				R1
Sally port—egress door	R		R	R	R	R	R		R	R1			
Holding cell—group	R		D	P	R	R	R		R				
Holding cell—individual	R		D	P	R	R	R		R				
Courtroom holding vestibules	R		R	R	R	R	R		R				R1
Courtroom holding cells	R		R	R	R	R	R		R				
Interview rooms	R		D	D	R1			R	C				
In-custody elevator	R		R	R	R	R	R		R				
Stairwell	R		R1	R	R	R	R		R				
Corridor	R		R1	R	R	R	R		R				R1
Armory	R			R	R						R		
Holding control	R		R1						R	R			R1
Auxiliary control				M	M								
Remote holding control		R1							R	R			

C = control.
D = discretionary.
M = monitoring only.
P = partial requirement.
R = required.
R1 = required as applicable.

The surveillance cameras throughout the building exterior and interior shall be mounted at an out-of-reach height to prevent vandalism.

4. Transport Driveway Exit

When a transport vehicle approaches the secure driveway exit gate, it shall pass over a vehicle detector loop, which opens the gate. The barrier arm and vehicle gate shall close after the transport vehicle has cleared its respective safety sensors and exited the driveway. The DCR can remotely control the exit gate and barrier arm via the DCS.

5. Vehicle Sally Port

Vehicle sally port entry and exit sequences shall employ sensors and programming to detect vehicles and prevent them from being stranded or trapped between vehicle control points. Sensors employed shall include in-ground vehicle detector loops, photoelectric beams, and leading-edge door sensors.

6. Vehicle Sally Port Entry

a. The transport driver communicates with the DCR to request entry on approach to the vehicle sally port. An in-ground vehicle detection loop shall be located at the sally port

DIVISION ONE: DESIGN CRITERIA

1 General Principles
2 Courthouse Organization
3 Site Design
4 Courthouse Security
5 Court Set
6 Jury Facilities and Court Administration
7 Special Services
8 IN-CUSTODY DEFENDANT RECEIVING, HOLDING, AND TRANSPORT
8.A Objectives
8.B Planning Criteria
8.C Functional Overview
8.D Program Components
8.E Technical Criteria
8.F Electronic Detention Control System
9 Public Spaces
10 Building Support Services

entrance to detect vehicles and call up and display an entry surveillance camera in the DCR. The DCR operator may manually call up vehicle sally port cameras via the DCS.

b. The DCR monitors sally port surveillance cameras and doors and controls sally port doors from a touchscreen computer. When sally port access is requested, the DCR confirms whether sally port doors are secure. If sally port doors are secure, the sally port may be opened to allow transport vehicle access. If any sally port door is not secure, no other sally port door can be opened. The entry door may be closed after the transport vehicle has cleared the door safety sensors and entered the sally port. If a safety sensor is activated while the door is closing, the door shall stop and reverse to the open position, and the DCS shall generate an alarm. The door may be closed after safety sensors are cleared.

c. *Open*, *stop*, and *close* manual override door controls shall be provided in a locked and monitored enclosure at the sally port door. The *open* function opens the door, the *stop* function stops the door in its current position, and the *close* function closes the door.

7. Vehicle Sally Port Exit

The transport vehicle driver communicates with the DCR to request exit from the vehicle sally port.

a. The DCR monitors sally port surveillance cameras and doors and controls sally port doors from a touchscreen computer. When sally port exit is requested, the DCR confirms whether sally port doors are shown as secure on the DCS touchscreen computer. If sally port doors are secure, the sally port may be opened to allow transport vehicle exit. If any sally port door is not secure, no other sally port door can be opened. The exit door may be closed after the transport vehicle has cleared the door safety sensors and exited the sally port. If a safety sensor is activated while the door is closing, the door shall stop and reverse to the open position, and the DCS shall generate an alarm. The door may be closed after safety sensors are cleared.

b. *Open*, *stop*, and *close* manual override door controls shall be provided in a locked and monitored enclosure at the sally port door. The *open* function opens the door, the *stop* function stops the door in its current position, and the *close* function closes the door.

8. Pedestrian Sally Port

When sally port access is requested, the DCR operator confirms whether sally port doors are secure. If sally port doors are secure, the sally port may be opened to allow officer access. If any sally port door is not secure, no other sally port door can be opened. After the officer accesses the sally port, manual doors are closed by the officer, and motorized doors are closed via the DCS.

9. Central Holding Door Operation

Central holding door types include corridor doors and holding cell doors, either swinging or sliding, as defined in 8.E, Technical Criteria.

9.1 Door Operation Process

a. When an officer communicates with the DCR by intercom requesting central holding door access, a graphic of the door shall be automatically displayed on the DCS touchscreen display, and the door surveillance camera shall be automatically displayed on a video monitor.

b. When an officer communicates with the DCR by other means, the DCR operator selects the appropriate graphic map icon from the DCS touchscreen,

which shall display a graphic map of the door location on the touchscreen and the relevant surveillance camera feed on a video monitor.

c. The DCR monitors central holding surveillance cameras and doors and controls central holding doors from a DCS touchscreen computer. When central holding door access is requested, the door shall be able to be opened from the DCR to allow officer access to the corridor or holding cell. After the officer accesses the central holding door, manual doors are closed by the officer, and motorized doors are closed via the DCS.

9.2 Card Reader–Controlled Detention Doors (Card In/Out)

a. When the DCS is in night mode, central holding perimeter doors may be controlled by card readers to facilitate cleaning, maintenance, and inspection. Provide card reader control through an interface between the access control system and the DCS. In no case shall a card access control system be used for primary control of operation of in-custody detention areas.

b. In DCS day mode, the holding area perimeter door shall be locked and closed. In this mode, the DCS shall reject unlock signals from the access control system.

c. For DCS night mode, the entry and exit sequence of operation shall function as follows:

- Door is locked and closed.
- On a valid entry or exit card read, the access control system signals the DCS to unlock the door and bypass door and lock position sensor alarms.
- After the door unlocks and is opened, the DCS detects the *open* door status and releases the latch bolt to relock the door when closed.
- When the door is closed and locked, the DCS detects the *closed* door status and rearms door and lock position sensors.

10. Court Holding Vestibule

Court holding vestibule doors include the secure elevator door, cell doors, and courtroom sound-lock doors. Court holding vestibule doors are monitored and controlled from the DCS touchscreen computer.

a. When a CSO requests in-custody transport to a courtroom, the in-custody shall be transported to the court holding vestibule in the secure elevator.

b. When a CSO communicates by intercom, a graphic of the court holding vestibule shall be automatically displayed on the DCS touchscreen display, and a vestibule surveillance camera feed shall be automatically displayed on a video monitor.

c. When a CSO communicates by other means, the DCR operator selects an appropriate graphic from the DCS touchscreen, which shall display a graphic map of the vestibule on the touchscreen and a vestibule surveillance camera feed on a video monitor.

d. When the DCS confirms that all court holding vestibule doors are secure, the secure elevator door may be opened through the DCS touchscreen. If any holding vestibule door is not secure, the secure elevator door shall not be able to be opened from the DCS. When the DCR confirms that other court holding vestibule doors are secure, the cell door may be opened through the DCS touchscreen. If other holding vestibule doors are unsecured, the cell door may not be opened.

DIVISION ONE: DESIGN CRITERIA

1 General Principles
2 Courthouse Organization
3 Site Design
4 Courthouse Security
5 Court Set
6 Jury Facilities and Court Administration
7 Special Services
8 IN-CUSTODY DEFENDANT RECEIVING, HOLDING, AND TRANSPORT
8.A Objectives
8.B Planning Criteria
8.C Functional Overview
8.D Program Components
8.E Technical Criteria
8.F Electronic Detention Control System
9 Public Spaces
10 Building Support Services

e. When the DCR confirms that other court holding vestibule doors are secure, the courtroom sound-lock door may be opened from the DCS touchscreen display.

f. If other holding vestibule doors are unsecured, the courtroom sound-lock door may not be opened. After the officer accesses the court holding door, manual doors are closed by the officer, and motorized doors are closed via the DCS.

11. Secure Interview Rooms

Call buttons located in the holding area interview rooms provide notification to the DCR that an in-custody is ready to be escorted back to their cell. These doors are monitored and controlled as a central holding door. The CSO should have the ability to control both sides of the secure interview room at the courtroom.

12. Secure Circulation and Elevators

a. Secure elevators are controlled from DCS touchscreen computers. The DCS monitors elevator door and floor status and controls floor selection and door operation. The DCS touchscreen shall incorporate a virtual elevator return panel that displays elevator location and status and duplicates the elevator return panel controls in each cab.

b. When an officer communicates with the DCR by intercom requesting secure elevator access, a graphic map of the elevator floor and virtual return panel shall be automatically displayed on the DCS touchscreen computer, and the elevator surveillance camera feed shall be automatically displayed on a video monitor.

c. When an officer communicates with the DCR by other means, the DCR operator may select an appropriate graphic map from the DCS touchscreen computer, which shall display a graphic of the elevator floor and virtual return panel on the touchscreen and the elevator surveillance camera feed on a video monitor.

d. When the elevator is clear and secure, the DCR operator selects the requested floor. If the court holding vestibule is secure, the elevator door icon may be selected to open the door. If any court holding vestibule door is unsecured, the elevator door shall not be able to be opened. Secure elevator doors must not automatically open upon arrival to a floor.

e. When in-custody passengers enter the elevator, the DCR operator closes the elevator door and selects a destination floor from the DCS touchscreen computer. The touchscreen shall display the elevator location while in transit.

f. When the elevator arrives at the selected floor, the touchscreen and surveillance camera displays shall be automatically updated to view the selected floor.

g. If the court holding vestibule is secure, the elevator door icon may be selected to open the door. If any court holding vestibule door is unsecured, the elevator door shall not be able to be opened until secure. After all persons have exited, the elevator door is closed from the DCS.

13. Holding Control

13.1 DCS Workstations

a. Multiple DCS workstation positions shall be located at the DCR for redundancy. DCS workstation positions include a modular workstation desk, DCS touchscreen and video surveillance system computers, video surveillance system monitors, and an intercom master station.

b. The workstation positions must also support control room equipment required by other sections of the *CTCFS*.

13.2 Unified Control

a. DCS computers shall be capable of controlling all holding areas to eliminate operational conflicts between workstations.

b. DCS computers shall be capable of providing unified control when independent control is not required.

13.3 Independent Control

A DCS computer dedicated to juvenile holding shall be provided at facilities requiring independent juvenile holding area control. Provide a fully functional DCS touchscreen computer designated for juvenile holding that is capable of providing unified control, with operational control limited to the juvenile holding area.

13.4 Day and Night Mode

a. For day mode, when the DCS locks all holding area doors, limit holding area access to only through the DCS touchscreen control or with a key.

b. For night mode, provide an interface between the access control system and the DCS to control select central holding perimeter doors and holding area doors by card reader. The system shall allow DCS to unlock designated holding area interior doors to facilitate cleaning, maintenance, and inspection.

13.5 Detention Office Monitoring

Detention remote viewing stations may be required at holding area support offices to monitor holding area cameras. Detention office DCS computers do not provide holding area control.

13.6 Fail-Over Holding Control

a. Larger facilities may be required to provide additional fail-over DCS control stations at alternative locations, such as an SOC, to ensure holding area control redundancy and continuity if DCS operation is not possible from the DCR.

b. Fail-over equipment shall be located to maintain and ensure holding area privacy and in areas where public viewing of detention surveillance cameras is not possible.

14. Operational Descriptions and Installation Criteria

14.1 DCS Core Equipment

a. Provide core DCS equipment, including file server, central processing unit, touchscreen interfaced computers, PLCs, intercom exchange, intercom master stations and substations, and a distributed antenna system for two-way radio communication.

b. Provide DCS network communications that use a converged building Transmission Control Protocol (TCP) / Internet Protocol (IP) network including virtual local area networks to provide secure DCS communications.

c. Design the DCS to comprise the PLC and intercom servers, integrated with the court facility video surveillance system (VSS) headend equipment. Systems integration shall be via the court network and provide seamless monitoring, control, and operation of detention areas from the DCR and other designated locations.

d. Integrate the DCS with the video surveillance system to provide automated camera call-up and display based on DCS commands, intercom substation calls, and holding area alarms.

DIVISION ONE: DESIGN CRITERIA

1 General Principles
2 Courthouse Organization
3 Site Design
4 Courthouse Security
5 Court Set
6 Jury Facilities and Court Administration
7 Special Services
8 IN-CUSTODY DEFENDANT RECEIVING, HOLDING, AND TRANSPORT
8.A Objectives
8.B Planning Criteria
8.C Functional Overview
8.D Program Components
8.E Technical Criteria
8.F Electronic Detention Control System
9 Public Spaces
10 Building Support Services

e. Integrate the DCS with secure driveway gates and barrier gate arms to provide gate control from the DCR. The DCS gate position sensor alarms monitored by the card access control system shall be bypassed while the gates are under DCS control.

f. Rack-mount the DCS file server and intercom exchange server in an MDF or IDF room on the same floor as the DCR.

14.2 DCS Programmable Logic Controller

a. Provide standardized PLCs, which are the only acceptable means of providing DCS monitoring and control of detention doors. PLCs shall be tailored to each facility's size and unique requirements. PLCs interface with all DCS system inputs and outputs for operator control from DCS touchscreen computers.

b. For local PLCs, locate the central holding area PLC equipment outside the holding area perimeter. Locate the PLC server in a fully enclosed and locked equipment rack. Wall-mount local (central holding) PLCs, power supplies, interface cabinets, and network connections in the same room as the PLC and intercom servers.

c. For remote PLCs, wall-mount remote (i.e., court holding) PLCs, power supplies, interface cabinets, and network connections in an IDF room on the same level as the remote holding area they control.

d. For PLC inputs, include vehicle and pedestrian door position monitoring, latch bolt position monitoring, gate position and safety sensor monitoring, secure elevator floor status and door position monitoring, and inputs from interfaces to other systems.

e. For PLC outputs, include vehicle and pedestrian door control, secure elevator call and floor select control, secure elevator door control, vehicle gate control, and outputs to interfaces with other systems.

14.3 DCS Touchscreen Interface

Locate the DCS touchscreens on the workstation furniture monitor tree with the VSS monitors so that they are easily accessed from a seated or standing position.

14.4 DCS Door Monitoring

a. Provide holding area door latch monitor switches to confirm that doors are latched.

b. Provide holding area door position monitoring with triple-bias, high-security, detention-grade magnetic door position switches.

c. Provide commercial-grade, surface-mounted position switches to monitor vehicle door position.

d. Provide commercial-grade, surface-mounted position switches to monitor vehicle gate position.

e. Homerun door monitoring circuits from each door position switch to a PLC input via an interface termination cabinet in the same room as the PLC equipment. Door monitoring and lock status may share the same PLC input circuit.

14.5 DCS Lock Control

a. Provide PLC outputs that control DCS locks at sally ports, central holding, secure circulation, and courtroom holding areas.

b. PLC outputs switching 120VAC locks shall be National Electrical Code Class 1–rated electrically isolated relay circuits to protect PLC outputs and shall have individually fused disconnect terminal blocks to prevent a short circuit on one door lock from affecting any other doors on the same branch circuit.

c. Shield and isolate all connections to ensure a "finger-safe" maintenance environment.

14.6 DCS Video Surveillance System

a. The DCS video surveillance system shall include client computers, monitors, and cameras as an extension of the court facility VSS. Refer to chapter 4, Courthouse Security, for specific information regarding the court facility VSS.

b. Video surveillance monitoring shall be password protected to prevent unauthorized viewing and control of detention cameras. Authorized monitoring of detention cameras outside detention areas must not be observable by the public.

c. Cameras in common detention areas and secure elevators must be vandal resistant. Cameras in detention cells must be high-security detention type. Cameras must be installed in compliance with the requirements of this chapter. In all other respects, detention area cameras must be compatible and consistent with the building VSS design.

d. VSS client computers must be located in secure cabinets within the DCR modular workstation furniture. VSS monitors will be located on a monitor tree, oriented to allow easy viewing and minimize operator fatigue. Large-format monitors mounted on walls are also acceptable.

e. The VSS system must provide camera call-up at DCR touchscreen computers using a graphic icon for each camera.

14.7 DCS IP-Based Intercom System

a. The intercom system shall include a rack-mounted intercom exchange and modular expansion chassis equipment rack mounted in an MDF or IDF room on the same level as the DCR.

b. The intercom substations shall use Power over Ethernet network connections from MDF and IDF rooms to each intercom field device.

c. The intercom system shall provide call initiation from the DCS touchscreen computers, master stations, and substations for two-way voice communications between master stations and substations.

d. The intercom system shall provide monitoring of substations from DCS touchscreen computers and master stations.

e. The intercom system shall provide notification of call button activation at master stations and DCS touchscreen computers.

f. The intercom system shall provide annunciation of substation calls at DCR touchscreen displays with a graphic icon and audible notification. Intercom substation calls may be placed from the DCR touchscreen computer by selecting a graphic substation icon on the touchscreen.

g. The intercom system shall interface with VSS for automatic display of cameras viewing the calling substation each time a call is initiated from that substation.

DIVISION ONE: DESIGN CRITERIA
1 General Principles
2 Courthouse Organization
3 Site Design
4 Courthouse Security
5 Court Set
6 Jury Facilities and Court Administration
7 Special Services
8 IN-CUSTODY DEFENDANT RECEIVING, HOLDING, AND TRANSPORT
8.A Objectives
8.B Planning Criteria
8.C Functional Overview
8.D Program Components
8.E Technical Criteria
8.F Electronic Detention Control System
9 Public Spaces
10 Building Support Services

h. Sally port, central holding, secure circulation, and courtroom holding area intercom substations shall incorporate one-touch push-button operation, vandal-resistant construction, and integral tamper alarms.

i. Locating sally port, central holding, secure circulation, and courtroom holding area detention door intercom substations in the detention door frames is preferred.

j. Intercom master stations shall be located adjacent to DCR touchscreen monitors at DCR modular workstation furniture and incorporate an alphanumeric display and programmable push-button keypad.

14.8 DCS Workstations

a. Modular or systems furniture shall be provided at DCS workstation locations that are secure or located in a DCR. Workstation monitors shall be uniform in size and specification and located on a monitor tree.

b. Detention-grade furniture shall be provided at DCS workstation locations that are unsecured or located within a detention area. Equipment and desk accessories shall be minimal and securely attached to the furniture.

c. Project requirements should include early and periodic review of the detention furniture with BSCC. Moveable, temporary, or breakable furniture (e.g., plastic chairs) that can be tampered with, thrown, or broken for use as a weapon or provide a risk of ligature is subject to BSCC inspection and approval. Furniture mockup is recommended.

15. Infrastructure Wire and Cable

a. Protect DCS wire and cable in a metallic raceway, conduit, enclosed cable tray, or enclosed cable ladder where exposed, readily accessible, or inside walls. Plastic raceway is unacceptable.

b. All TCP/IP network cabling and connectivity shall be in accordance with chapter 17, Network and Communication Systems, and chapter 18, Audiovisual Systems.

c. Point-to-point cabling:

- Low-voltage power cabling shall be two-conductor, 18 American Wire Gauge (AWG), stranded and unshielded. Typical applications include 24-volt direct current lock power.
- Alarm point cabling will be one twisted pair, 18 AWG, stranded and unshielded. Typical applications include door contacts and latch monitoring.

d. VSS cameras:

- Interior IP camera cabling shall be in accordance with chapter 17, Network and Communication Systems, and chapter 18, Audiovisual Systems.
- Analog cameras shall use unshielded twisted pair (UTP) interfaces to transmit camera and control signals over a network cabling infrastructure.
- Secure elevator cameras shall use converters for IP cameras to transmit camera signals via coaxial or twisted pair within the traveler cable.
- Exterior camera signal cabling shall be fiber optic unless the routed distance is within the maximum length allowed in chapter 17, Network and Communication Systems, for copper cable.

16. Infrastructure Power

a. Normal power shall be provided for DCS components with a low-voltage power supply incorporating a battery backup power source.

b. For detailed uninterruptible power supply (UPS) requirements, see chapter 15, Electrical Criteria.

DIVISION ONE: DESIGN CRITERIA

1 General Principles
2 Courthouse Organization
3 Site Design
4 Courthouse Security
5 Court Set
6 Jury Facilities and Court Administration
7 Special Services
8 IN-CUSTODY DEFENDANT RECEIVING, HOLDING, AND TRANSPORT
8.A Objectives
8.B Planning Criteria
8.C Functional Overview
8.D Program Components
8.E Technical Criteria
8.F Electronic Detention Control System
9 Public Spaces
10 Building Support Services

DIVISION ONE: DESIGN CRITERIA

9 PUBLIC SPACES

SECTION	TOPIC	PAGE
9.A	Objectives	9.2
9.B	Primary Building Entrance	9.2
9.C	Public Lobby	9.2
9.D	Courtroom Public Waiting Areas	9.5



Superior Court of California, County of Imperial
El Centro, CA
© Jim Brady Architectural Photography

Public spaces provide courthouse visitors with a first impression of the justice system and the court facility.

Public Courthouse Spaces

- Primary building entrance
- Public lobby, including security station and information counter
- Courtroom public waiting areas

9.A OBJECTIVES

Planning and design of public spaces are critical to the successful operation of a courthouse. Public spaces should provide simple and clear movement of visitors and staff into and throughout the courthouse while limiting access to nonpublic zones. Public spaces should also provide an open and spacious experience for users—who are often under stress—and convey the importance and authority of the courts.

Strategically placed, clear, and legible graphics and signage—visible on entry—will provide first-time visitors with information about where to find various functions and how to get there. Wayfinding techniques shall provide visual cues about the location of important public spaces and services.

The court facility must maintain a safe and secure environment for all people and property. Court security includes active and passive measures encompassing design, technology, and operations (see chapter 4, Courthouse Security).

9.B PRIMARY BUILDING ENTRANCE

The front door of each court building has important symbolic and functional attributes. This main ceremonial entrance is the single point of entry for staff, visitors, and the public.

1. Provide a single primary entry with universal access.
2. Provide an attractive and user-friendly environment as a first impression to court visitors and staff.
3. Design the entrance to accommodate peak-hour lines of prospective jurors and courthouse visitors.
4. Because lines may extend out the entrance door, provide outside protection from inclement weather, including sun, wind, and rain. Some climates may require a vestibule (refer to chapter 11, Architectural Criteria).
5. Design building entries, including the main judges' and public and staff entries, to accommodate persons with disabilities in the same manner as the general public. Power-assist doors shall be provided. In addition, interior power-assist door(s) shall be provided in the path of travel leading up to the building elevators, where applicable. Entry doors shall meet the door closer requirements of applicable codes. Overhead closers with easy access shall be used for ease of maintenance so that the entire door system does not have to be removed for repairs and maintenance.
6. Provide delayed-action door closers for the same number of judges' chambers and judges' courtroom entries as the number of required ADA spaces in the judges' parking based on California Building Code section 11B-208.2. See chapter 11, section 11.D.1.10, for additional requirements for delayed-action closers. If, during design, it is determined that a court's bench officer(s) or staff have a known existing need related to accessible doors, upon Judicial Council approval, additional variations from *Facilities Standard*s may be considered.
7. Program main lobby entry doors to be controlled from the building security operations center (SOC).

9.C PUBLIC LOBBY

1. Lobby Requirements

The public lobby serves as the focal point for the building and provides visual orientation to the other areas through visual cues and signage (see figure 9.1).



Figure 9.1 Public Lobby, Superior Court of Siskiyou County, Yreka

a. Provide a public lobby sized for a queuing area sufficient to accommodate the volume of people entering the courthouse and weapons screening stations. Give attention to integrating the security screening stations into the lobby design to avoid the appearance of an intrusion or afterthought.

b. Provide security cameras throughout public areas, with special emphasis on weapons screening, to record the public entering the facility and receiving their belongings once they have gone through weapons screening.

c. Provide clear signage and graphics immediately upon arrival in the courthouse public lobby. Many courthouse visitors will require directions to courtrooms or hearing rooms.

d. Provide large, easily readable court calendar monitors. Areas where courtroom assignments are posted must be accessible without impeding the security screening process or blocking public circulation paths.

e. Provide climate and glare control for building management staff. Consider finish materials to control the glare throughout the space.

2. Security Screening Station

a. Building users and staff shall enter the facility through a public entry screening station (see figure 9.2). Screening of the public occurs in the building lobby. Provide one



Figure 9.2 Screening Station, Sutter County Superior Courthouse, Yuba City

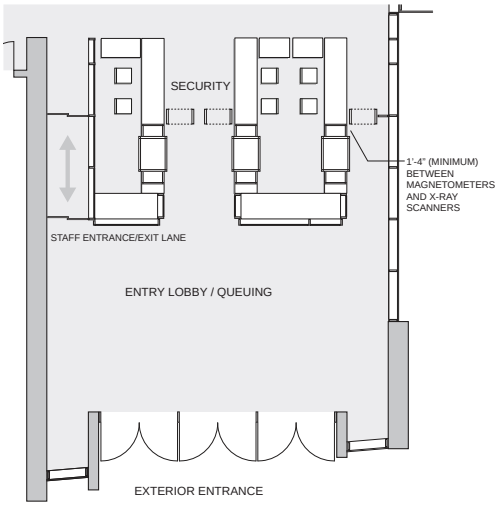


Figure 9.3 Screening Station Diagram

DIVISION ONE: DESIGN CRITERIA

1 General Principles
2 Courthouse Organization
3 Site Design
4 Courthouse Security
5 Court Set
6 Jury Facilities and Court Administration
7 Special Services
8 In-Custody Defendant Receiving, Holding, and Transport
9 PUBLIC SPACES
9.A Objectives
9.B Primary Building Entrance
9.C Public Lobby
9.D Courtroom Public Waiting Areas
10 Building Support Services

During the early planning and design phases, involve the sheriff's department or court security officers to ensure compliance and cooperation from planning through design and occupancy.

security screening station, or lane, for full-time operation (see figure 9.3). Provide additional lanes as required to operate during peak usage—in mornings and after lunch, for example, during high-volume jury return flow. The number of lanes is determined by a metric used by the Judicial Council planning team in conjunction with the court during the early design stage.

b. Screening stations shall include space for the following:

- An interior or covered area for queuing of the projected peak volume of people entering the building. Distance between the security screening station and the building entrance is recommended to be at least 20'.
- A magnetometer, or metal detector, through which visitors pass for detection of metal objects. The opening shall be 32″ clear to accommodate wheelchairs or mobility devices.
- An X-ray scanner for screening contents of visitor briefcases, handbags, and personal possessions, paired with sufficient project-specific roller-table assemblies for the input and output of packages. There shall be a minimum of 1′4″ distance between magnetometers and X-ray scanners.
- Where multiple screening lines are required, a ratio of one magnetometer per pair of package screening units (1:2), subject to confirmation with a project-specific security operations program.
- A table or counter for secondary inspection of scanned items.
- A magnetic wand inspection area.
- Security staff posts to assist individuals through the magnetometer screening and X-ray scanning. In multiportal screening areas, a third security post may be needed to oversee the screening process and assist security staff. Provide power, data, and voice communications to the security post.

c. Magnetometers, X-ray scanners, and other equipment shall not be affixed to built-in casework to allow for ease of equipment replacement when needed.

d. Screening area design shall be consistent with the court public spaces and project a positive first impression to court visitors. Do not make screening equipment the main focus of the space. Provide a casework screen for the scanning position, constructed of durable materials to withstand the stress of a high-traffic area and lined with nonricochet, bullet-resistant material that will absorb multiple firings of a large-caliber handgun.

e. The accessible path of travel shall include the lobby security screening area. Wheelchair users shall not travel a separate and nonequivalent path through the screening process area. Persons with disabilities shall pass through a magnetometer along with the general population. Space must be provided to allow bypass of the magnetometer for people with implanted medical devices that may be affected by magnetic fields.

f. In some cases, it may be necessary to provide gun lockers for law enforcement officers entering the facility, consistent with local security procedures.

g. Each security screening area shall allow visual observation of all public exits by security staff to ensure that individuals entering the building do not circumvent the screening process. Directionally sensitive motion-detection systems with audiovisual alarms or electronic turnstiles may be used to deter entry of individuals through the exit lanes.

h. Staff-only entrances or exits shall be located at a staffed security screening station only to avoid compromising overall building security and increasing security costs.

i. Tool 8, Security System Guidelines, provides additional requirements for security screening.

3. Information Counter (Where Required)

a. A clearly identified information display screen with an optional desk space shall be used to provide direction and basic information to individuals unfamiliar with the court facility or court system. The desk shall be provided if the court plans to have reception staff in the lobby (see figure 9.4). The information screen must be located in a highly visible place near the main entrance but beyond the screening area. Design the information area consistent with the public spaces. The screen shall display the courthouse map and court calendar.



Figure 9.4 Information Display Screens Beyond Information Desk, B. F. Sisk Courthouse, Fresno

b. The information area must be used in conjunction with directional signage to provide courthouse visitors information about location of services.

c. If a kiosk is used, it may be an automated system with touchscreen technology or a combination of automated signage with a staff member so that the kiosk still provides information if the staff member is not present. If the counter is staffed, provide adequate accessible workspace. Staff may be volunteers.

9.D COURTROOM PUBLIC WAITING AREAS

a. Public waiting areas shall include sufficient comfortable seating and be located near areas of highest public use, with easy access to restrooms and drinking fountains. The drinking fountains shall be combination units with nonchilled water for drinking and bottle filling and shall be ADA compliant. Provide natural light in waiting areas, if possible.

b. Corridors may be used as public waiting areas if they are wide enough to accommodate bench seating and if a vestibule with a sound lock is provided at courtroom entrances.

c. Waiting areas shall be proportional to the population served. Family law, arraignment, traffic, and juvenile courts require larger public waiting areas.

DIVISION ONE: DESIGN CRITERIA

1 General Principles
2 Courthouse Organization
3 Site Design
4 Courthouse Security
5 Court Set
6 Jury Facilities and Court Administration
7 Special Services
8 In-Custody Defendant Receiving, Holding, and Transport
9 PUBLIC SPACES
9.A Objectives
9.B Primary Building Entrance
9.C Public Lobby
9.D Courtroom Public Waiting Areas
10 Building Support Services

DIVISION ONE: DESIGN CRITERIA

10 BUILDING SUPPORT SERVICES

SECTION	TOPIC	PAGE
10.A	Janitor Closets	10.2
10.B	Loading Dock	10.2
10.C	News Media Functions	10.3
10.D	Mailroom	10.3
10.E	Maintenance Shops and Office	10.3
10.F	Storage	10.3
10.G	Mechanical Equipment Enclosures	10.4
10.H	Fire Alarm and Emergency Communication System Control Room	10.4



Superior Court of California, County of Shasta
Redding, CA
© Sean Airhart/NBBJ

Building support services ensure that necessary routine maintenance and operational functions occur on a daily basis within the court facility. Support services include deliveries, collection and removal of trash or recycling, and storage of fixtures and equipment.

The character and size of building support spaces shall be determined during programming and early design phases with input from the Facilities Services building operations staff.

10.A JANITOR CLOSETS

Provide janitor closets on each floor of the court building, except in small facilities or on floors with limited occupied spaces. Include a service sink, tool racks, watertight wall covering with high-impact resistance, and wall-mounted shelving. All janitor closets should be separately ventilated and exhausted and negatively pressurized to adjacent spaces. Access to janitor closets may be from within public restrooms, but this is not the preference.

In large facilities, provide a janitorial storage room for central inventory of supplies. Locate the room near staff locker rooms and the management office.

10.B LOADING DOCK

1. Large facilities require a raised loading dock to accommodate delivery, trash, and recycling trucks, as determined by the program. Some facilities may use an on-grade loading area equipped with a motorized platform dock lift. Large interstate trailer rigs need not be accommodated in the loading dock, but a staging area shall be provided so that all deliveries can be scanned or examined before entering the building.
2. The building location within the site circulation system shall allow easy delivery and efficient distribution of goods throughout the facility.
    - Locate the loading dock near the freight elevator but away from general office areas of the court.
    - Locate air intake ducts to avoid intake of fumes from idling trucks.
3. Access from the street shall be through a restricted vehicle circulation system. The driveway, loading dock, loading dock apron, and exterior staging areas must be within the security perimeter and fully enclosed by fencing.
4. Closed-circuit television shall be provided to monitor the driveway, loading dock, loading dock apron, and exterior staging area. Provide a telephone or other annunciation system at the gateway to the service driveway. If the gate is remotely operated, provide a manual backup system. Refer to chapter 4, Courthouse Security.
5. Office supplies can be delivered on an as-needed basis. Provide space for pallet delivery and storage near the loading dock.
6. One dedicated truck bay shall be located within a secure loading area for trash and recycling. This area will include collection and compaction bins and locked, covered roll-off containers
    - Include a covered area for temporary storage of delivered supplies, equipment, and recyclable materials.
    - Provide a file shredding area near the loading dock. If this process is contracted out, provide a secure area to store materials awaiting pickup.

10.C NEWS MEDIA FUNCTIONS

If requested by the court, the courthouse must accommodate the media, inside and outside the facility. For technical requirements, refer to chapter 17, Network and Communication Systems, and chapter 18, Audiovisual Systems.

1. Interior Media Area

If requested by the court, provide an interior space for use by news media personnel off a public corridor, not necessarily near the courtrooms, with appropriate power, data, and telecommunications support systems, including audio, video, or other feeds to the main distribution frame. The news media room may be multipurpose but must be available for the news media in courthouses, especially during high-profile cases.

2. Exterior Media Area

If requested by the court, designate an exterior area with parking for multiple satellite trucks. If possible, the area should face south for satellite exposure. The location can be beyond building security standoff. For urban areas where no parking can be designated for satellite trucks, provide an exterior connection box for video and audio accessibility on the south side of the building or at the loading dock.

10.D MAILROOM

Most facilities receive daily mail and packages through the public entry, where an X-ray machine may scan them. A large facility may require a dedicated room for receiving and opening mail, with X-ray package screening and biohazard control capabilities.

Locate the mailroom and mail-opening room near the central receiving or loading dock and a service or freight elevator, which will allow staff to easily transport mail to other parts of the building.

10.E MAINTENANCE SHOPS AND OFFICE

Provide an office for court-based maintenance staff. The office shall be sized to accommodate workstations for facilities management staff, Judicial Council facility operations staff, and service providers and also allow space for visitors. Provide furnishings for storing and reviewing building plans and for reference catalog shelving. Locate a staff restroom for easy access by maintenance staff. Locate the office in the basement or in a nonpublic location.

In large facilities, locate a maintenance shop on the ground floor near the freight elevator. Provide walls that minimize noise transmission. Include a break room for custodial workers.

10.F STORAGE

Provide a furniture storage area near the freight elevator. Provide a storage area for attic stock, including building supplies and materials such as carpet, air filters, and ceiling tiles. Locate this storage area adjacent to the maintenance shop and office.

DIVISION ONE: DESIGN CRITERIA

1 General Principles
2 Courthouse Organization
3 Site Design
4 Courthouse Security
5 Court Set
6 Jury Facilities and Court Administration
7 Special Services
8 In-Custody Defendant Receiving, Holding, and Transport
9 Public Spaces

10 BUILDING SUPPORT SERVICES
10.A Janitor Closets
10.B Loading Dock
10.C News Media Functions
10.D Mailroom
10.E Maintenance Shops and Office
10.F Storage
10.G Mechanical Equipment Enclosures
10.H Fire Alarm and Emergency Communication System Control Room

Refer to chapter 17, Network and Communication Systems, for information on telecommunications and server equipment rooms.

Refer to chapter 20, Fire Protection Criteria.

10.G MECHANICAL EQUIPMENT ENCLOSURES

1. Mechanical and electrical equipment outside of the nominal building envelope shall be protected from weather and environmental elements within an architectural equipment enclosure that allows suitable access for maintenance personnel. An evaluation shall be conducted for prevalent site elements such as wind, sand, and rain to determine enclosure requirements. An equipment enclosure on a building roof shall be integrated with the overall building design and comply with other sections of these standards. Enclosures in the form of penthouses are preferred but not required, depending on the size and type of equipment. If a penthouse is not provided, exterior-grade equipment and visual screens shall be provided.
2. An evaluation shall be conducted to determine the potential for the migration of *Legionella* between adjacent rooftop cooling towers and the cooling tower in the project. Cooling towers shall be enclosed if the evaluation deems it necessary.
3. Equipment enclosures on a building roof shall be accessible via a permanent dedicated industrial stair from the top occupied building floor to the roof. It is preferable but not required for the stair to terminate inside the equipment enclosure. The stair shall be wide enough to afford access for maintenance personnel carrying hand tools or small parts. Ladders shall not be employed to provide access to equipment enclosures.
4. Air-handling unit outside-air intakes, relief air, and exhaust air shall be ducted directly to the outside of the roof equipment enclosure. Toilet (or other product-conveying) exhaust fans should not be located within the roof equipment enclosure.
5. Emergency generator sets (see chapter 15.C, Emergency and Standby Power Systems) are generally exempt from the above enclosure standard if the equipment is in the building or vault. Equipment that needs to be located outside shall be screened but not enclosed, per above. That equipment includes:
    - Water backflow and detector check valves;
    - Irrigation controllers;
    - Utility company electrical transformers; and
    - Battery energy storage systems, if photovoltaic and energy management systems are included in the project.

10.H FIRE ALARM AND EMERGENCY COMMUNICATION SYSTEM CONTROL ROOM

Emergency communication system control equipment that is installed in non-high-rise buildings must be located within a room separated from the remainder of the building by not less than a one-hour fire resistance–rated fire barrier with one-hour fire resistance–rated opening protection. This room must be located after consultation with the authorities having jurisdiction (fire department) and approved by the Judicial Council. The room must be a minimum of 100 square feet, with a minimum dimension of 8′.

DIVISION TWO: TECHNICAL CRITERIA

11 Architectural Criteria
12 Structural Criteria
13 Mechanical Criteria
14 Building Management System Criteria
15 Electrical Criteria
16 Lighting Criteria
17 Network and Communication Systems
18 Audiovisual Systems
19 Acoustical Criteria
20 Fire Protection Criteria

DIVISION TWO: TECHNICAL CRITERIA

11 ARCHITECTURAL CRITERIA

SECTION	TOPIC	PAGE
11.A	Objectives	11.2
11.B	Architectural Criteria	11.2
11.C	Building Elements: Exterior Construction	11.2
11.D	Building Elements: Interior Construction	11.9
11.E	Signage	11.18



Superior Court of California, County of San Bernardino
San Bernardino, CA
© Skidmore, Owings & Merrill LLP

Courthouses are public buildings emblematic of our judicial system. As such, they should use architectural elements and materials that are dignified yet practical and durable enough to withstand sustained public use.

Architectural criteria provide performance standards for selected architectural components, building assemblies, and finishes.

11.A OBJECTIVES

The performance standards and criteria listed in this chapter provide functional solutions to objectives listed in chapter 1, General Principles: functional usefulness, physical durability, maintainability, accessibility, sustainability, and energy efficiency. Projects shall be designed to standard material sizes that are available off the shelf and easily replaceable. The material selection shall take into consideration the life cycle cost of replacement due to wear and tear or vandalism. Consideration shall be given to the mechanism for maintenance and replacement, such as avoiding the use of cranes to reach broken parts and components at high elevation.

11.B ARCHITECTURAL CRITERIA

California court facilities shall use practical and durable materials and finishes in all elements and exhibit consistency in the design and use of materials throughout. The performance of architectural elements shall be consistent with the functional lifetime defined in tool 1, Life Cycle Cost Analysis, and the selection of elements, systems, and materials shall be consistent with the construction budget and the imperative to control overall maintenance and operation costs of the building over its lifetime. Minimize variation in the number of materials used in a building.

11.C BUILDING ELEMENTS: EXTERIOR CONSTRUCTION

Design the exterior building envelope—including roofs, exterior walls, foundations, retaining walls, and door and window assemblies—to be weatherproof. Design to exclude leaks and other defects for all moisture protection systems, including exterior sealants, vapor barriers, underslab moisture barrier systems, exterior cladding systems, roofing, and waterproofing. Avoid excavating below grade for facilities that do not need a basement. Provide a durable, long-lasting, high-grade waterproofing system with enhanced testing and inspections. All window designs must anticipate water infiltration and condensation and provide means to direct water to the exterior and allow it to escape. Consider material thickness dimensions in exterior design and layouts.

1. Building Enclosure Commissioning (BECx)

a. The purpose of BECx shall be to ensure integrity of four critical barrier systems of the building envelope: water, thermal, vapor, and air. Do not use one barrier to serve for all four so that over time, a failure of one system will not compromise the others.

b. The project shall achieve air tightness to the extent required by the California Energy Code.

c. A commissioning authority or agent (CxA) shall be responsible for BECx plan development, thorough review of progressive design drawings and specifications, and review of building envelope value engineering efforts and shall participate in inspections and testing during the construction phase and one-year warranty review. Building enclosure commissioning and testing shall be provided by the same company.

d. Refer to Judicial Council Division One specifications provided to the selected design builder for the tests and inspections required for BECx.

2. Wind Analysis

The forces of wind and weather shall be considered in architectural design based on specific project site conditions. A pedestrian-level wind analysis may be required to determine wind effects on the court building and surrounding buildings, sidewalks, the plaza, and entrances and to determine the need for a main entry vestibule. The effects of wind should also be considered in the selection of entry door systems and hardware to ensure that doors will securely latch. The recommendations of a wind analysis shall be addressed by the architectural design. Snow and ice accumulation analysis may be required for court buildings in cold regions of the state. An air quality wind analysis may be required to determine the optimum location of air intakes and exhaust stacks, but in all cases, building exhausts should be located away from building entries and ventilation air intakes.

3. Exterior Building Walls

The exterior wall design shall present a consistent image, character, and permanence. Scoring, control joints, and other wall plane relief shall be considered and incorporated into the design. The building cladding system requires high-quality, durable components that can accommodate movement, are designed for low maintenance, and have a functional lifetime as defined in required tool 1, table T1.1. The use of antigraffiti coatings is encouraged at locations vulnerable to graffiti and where suitable for the substrate.

3.1 Moisture and Dampproofing

a. Provide an exterior envelope system, including roofing, that is a complete weather- and moisture-proof assembly and will prevent infiltration into the building's occupied or unoccupied areas.

   - Design the building exterior systems to prevent the introduction or long-term growth of mold or other pathogens that could adversely affect the indoor environmental quality or work environment.
   - Design exterior wall systems that provide two distinct lines of protection against water penetration and one line of protection against air infiltration.
   - Provide a complete moisture- and dampproofing system at all concrete slabs on grade, retaining walls, and other below-grade structures. No wooden elements shall be exposed to rain.

b. Specifications shall include a section for moisture mitigation before flooring installation, if required based on relative humidity (RH) testing. All new interior concrete substrates shall be tested per the current edition of the ASTM F2170 test method using in situ probes as a means of conducting relative humidity testing of the concrete slabs.

If the RH test results indicate a saturated slab condition, only a two-component, resin-based, membrane-forming moisture mitigation system that meets the full intent of the current edition of ASTM F3010 shall be allowed. The product requirements shall have a vapor permeance no greater than 0.1 grain per hour per square foot per inch of mercury (0.1 grain/hour/ft²/inch Hg) (perm) when the product is tested in accordance with ASTM E96 when applied at the recommended thickness designated by its manufacturer.

3.2 Barrier Walls and Drainage Plane Walls

The defining feature of a barrier wall is that protection from sun, water, and wind is provided at the single outermost surface of the wall, whereby the system that faces the environmental forces is the same system that repels water. By contrast, a drainage plane or cavity wall has the primary water-resistant weather line behind

the exterior surface system, which provides the environmental protection, and a secondary water barrier.

Traditional barrier walls rely on mass to absorb moisture and evaporate it slowly to the exterior and on physical shielding—such as roof overhangs, window setbacks, and drip edges—to protect vulnerable joints from weather exposure.

a. Contemporary surface barrier walls shall have the redundancy features of a drainage plane wall and shall not rely solely on the surface material or coatings and sealant joints to keep water at the exterior. Typical exterior materials include aluminum and glass curtain wall systems, ceramic tile, brick, precast concrete panels, concrete masonry units, composite metal panels, and cement plaster. Weather enclosure performance can be problematic with contemporary barrier walls designed with the exterior surface as the single water-resistant barrier because of their reliance on superior construction craftsmanship to maintain a consistently watertight surface. Because the consequences of leakage through the exterior of court buildings are unacceptable, surface barrier walls shall be designed with a second line of protection against water penetration (e.g., sheet flashing or other weather-resistive barrier (WRB)) behind the surface material so that exterior walls of new court buildings are in effect designed as drainage plane or cavity wall systems, regardless of the primary exterior surface material.

b. Drainage plane walls shall provide internal drainage by using separate surfaces, or planes, for water and environmental protection. The water protection layer, made up of a WRB and flashings inside the wall behind the exterior finish, provides an initial weather protection barrier. These walls recognize the inevitability of water entry past the outermost exterior surface. Components of a drainage plane wall shall include:

    - Exterior veneer and seals, which shed most water and protect the WRB from sun and excessive water exposure.
    - Air space that separates the inner and outer walls and provides a drainage pathway and drying of veneer anchors and weather barriers.
    - Sheet flashing or other WRB, which is a continuous membrane located behind the exterior surface veneer, with all joints and penetrations sealed against water infiltration. This membrane serves as the primary water-resistant weather line in a drainage plane wall system.
    - Flashings located at all openings and wall penetrations that are transverse to the WRB, extend beyond the veneer, slope to drain, or pan up at inboard edges.

3.3 Exterior Cladding Systems

Life cycle cost analysis shall be used to determine the cladding system for the exterior façade of a courthouse building. Precast concrete panels and curtain walls are generally acceptable cladding systems for high-rise buildings. For low-rise structures, cement plaster and tilt-up concrete are acceptable construction systems. The system selection shall be predicated on maintainability, durability, and efficiency.

Careful attention shall be paid to the design of the cladding system when cement plaster is used. Cement plaster exterior walls shall function as modified drainage plane walls. Conventional exterior Portland cement–based plaster cladding is an

allowable cladding system for a court building of one or two stories. Use of cement plaster cladding for buildings greater than two stories requires special considerations and Judicial Council approval.

A building clad with exterior plaster must be completely weather resistive before the installation of cement plaster. Completely weather-resistive barriers include all surfaces that are to be covered by plaster; all penetrations, such as windows and doors; and all terminations, such as parapets and the base of walls. Two-layer WRB for exterior plaster cladding is required. The choice of WRB material will depend on project conditions, including sheathing material.

3.4 Flashing

Concealed flashing systems that cannot be easily replaced shall be durable and made of stainless steel, copper, or other metal not subject to corrosion. Flashing systems consistent in material, detail, scale, and quality with the facility design shall be provided. If flashings are exposed, they shall be designed using noncorrosive materials that are consistent with the design intent. Flashing systems should be removable when installed adjacent to other systems requiring periodic inspection and/or replacement (e.g., flashing systems adjacent to roofing terminations). Designers shall coordinate with manufacturers to ensure overall system performance.

3.5 Expansion Joints

Develop the structure to limit movement and suit the requirements for expansion joints. Expansion joints should be designed to allow for all anticipated building movement, plus a safety factor of 25 percent, without resulting in any damage to the joint. Where required, design the expansion joints to be minimally visible and watertight. Joint cover assemblies shall meet all code requirements for impact, loading, and fire protection.

3.6 Windows and Doors

a. The best-proven institutional-grade window systems shall be provided. Glazed entry systems shall be constructed of finished aluminum or other metal systems. All glazing shall be insulated units for optimum thermal and acoustic performance, tinted or coated as required. Windows shall be fixed. Consider window size at areas reachable by the public. Ease of replacing damaged windows due to vandalism shall be taken into consideration. Use punched windows with modular pane sizes readily available off the shelf.

b. Architectural metal and glass curtain walls are a special class of drainage plane wall, with pathways, flashings, and sealants internal to the framing elements. Curtain walls shall be avoided, especially for low- to mid-rise projects. Architectural curtain walls may be designed as drainage plane walls, with internal seals, gutters, and drainage channels that function as the primary water penetration weather line. For this reason, the engineering, detailing, testing, and construction of glass and metal curtain walls for California court buildings shall follow the highest recommended industry practices.

c. Public entrances require doors that are easy to operate and securely latch in a variety of environmental conditions. Balanced swinging doors, power-assisted swinging doors, or power-activated sliding doors are appropriate for courthouse public entries. Certain site environmental conditions may require vestibules to address site environmental conditions and maintain interior comfort and cleanliness.

DIVISION TWO: TECHNICAL CRITERIA

11 ARCHITECTURAL CRITERIA
11.A Objectives
11.B Architectural Criteria
11.C Building Elements: Exterior Construction
11.D Building Elements: Interior Construction
11.E Signage
12 Structural Criteria
13 Mechanical Criteria
14 Building Management System Criteria
15 Electrical Criteria
16 Lighting Criteria
17 Network and Communication Systems
18 Audiovisual Systems
19 Acoustical Criteria
20 Fire Protection Criteria

d. Provide aluminum, stainless steel, or other approved metal institutional-grade door systems with matching frames for public entries. Painted aluminum frames and doors are not allowed for high-volume entrances. Provide flush-panel metal doors with welded steel, heavy-duty matching frames and institutional-quality hardware and finishes for service and staff doors and frames. Hardware on exterior doors shall be stainless steel.

3.7 Shading and Glare Control

Control glare and heat gain in interior spaces. The glazing in the public lobby shall be mitigated for temperature and glare control so that security screeners and any other staff can work and see monitors in comfort and security cameras can produce quality photographs. Consider exterior sunshades and window treatments to help mitigate the temperature and control glare.

3.8 Protection of Building Entrances

Protect building entries from exposure to weather. Provide exterior canopies, building recesses, or overhangs at all exterior entrances to protect doorways from exposure to rain and snow.

3.9 Exterior Stairs and Ramps

a. Often the entry levels of court facilities are raised above street level and require universal access via permanent stairways and ramps serving all courthouse users. Provide a system of guardrails and handrails, as required by code, of stainless steel, bronze, or other permanent material that has a design and finish consistent with the facility design. Steel with epoxy finish coating can be used for guardrails and handrails not subject to high-volume use.

b. Provide skate stoppers on ramps and benches to discourage skateboarding on the site. Identify exterior concrete items such as skate stoppers and shotcrete finishes, where appropriate, on the plans and specifications.

3.10 Walk-Off Mats and/or Grilles

Walk-off mat or grille systems are required to improve indoor air quality through the reduction of dirt and dust tracked into the building and maintenance of indoor floor coverings. Provide a system of exterior and interior walk-off mats and/or grilles flush with the floor surface directly in front of the main entry doors and immediately after entering the public lobby. Mats shall be removable, cleanable, and replaceable. Grilles shall be constructed from corrosion-resistant durable materials such as stainless steel, and the assemblies shall include a recessed catch basin with removable grilles to allow for cleaning. Minimum dimensions of walk-off mats and/or grilles shall be the width of the doorway and 10′ total in length in the direction of travel, which can be split between the interior and exterior sides of the doors. The design should follow the American National Standards Institute / National Floor Safety Institute B101.6 Standard Guide for Commercial Entrance Matting in Reducing Slips, Trips and Falls.

3.11 Exterior Flagpoles

Provide two flagpoles to accommodate a State of California flag and a U.S. flag near the courthouse public entrance. One pole must provide for two flags to be flown at the same time (the Prisoner of War flag is required to be flown on certain dates). The flagpoles shall be placed at a distance so that the flags do not touch during windy conditions.

So that the flag may be displayed at all times, it shall be properly illuminated during the hours of darkness. The design shall consider light pollution reduction strategies.

3.12 Dedication Plaque and/or Cornerstone

Provide a dedication plaque and/or cornerstone, with relevant project information and dates, that is permanently attached to the building. A cornerstone is appropriate for a prominent exterior location near the building entry, whereas a dedication plaque could be located either on the exterior or at a prominent interior location in the lobby or other public space.

4. Roofs

The roofing system and design shall take into account the project location's local climate and be optimized for function, durability, and ease of future maintenance.

4.1 Low-Slope Roofing System

a. The roof shall be weathertight and provided with a positive drainage that will effectively dispose of rainwater. The roof shall be insulated so that the heat transfer values from roof to occupied area comply with the California Building Code. Low-sloped roofs shall provide a minimum slope in accordance with the manufacturer's warranty for the specified roof system or the minimum required slope of 1/4″ per foot measured along the valleys, whichever is greater. Roof drainage slopes may be achieved by the elevations of the roof structure or with built-up fill material under the membrane.

b. The type of warranty coverage must be determined during the initial contract negotiation due to the cost and construction impact that may result from high prevalent wind speeds. The type of warranty shall cover a high quality of continuous-membrane roofing and flashing system with compatible components that will not permit the passage of liquid and will withstand—without failure—wind loads, building movement, flotation loads, thermally induced movement, and exposure to weather. The selected roofing system should have an ASTM E108 and a manufacturer's warranty for a minimum period of 30 years. Fully adhered ASTM D6754-10 single-ply roofing is an acceptable system for low-slope roofs.

c. The roof membrane will be replaced occasionally over the lifespan of the building. To facilitate reroofing, relatively large uninterrupted roof planes are preferred. Flashing assemblies at curbs and roofing terminations should be removable and reinstallable (e.g., a two-part system with removable reglet and counterflashing) to maintain the integrity of the overall building envelope weather line after a roofing replacement. Mechanical and electrical rooftop equipment and rooftop screens shall be designed to permit reroofing in the future. Curbs and equipment bases on roofs shall be a minimum of 8″ high to allow adequate space for roof membrane terminations and flashing systems.

d. Extreme low-odor, low–volatile organic compound, fluid-applied systems are encouraged for roof upgrades on existing facilities. A 20-year warranty is required for whichever system is chosen. If restoration is not possible, default to roof replacement. Fully adhered ASTM D6754 single-ply roofing is an acceptable system, in addition to the other types of thermoplastic single-ply roofing permitted by California Building Code section 1507.12.

e. Roof drains shall be recessed below the roof level to form a collection basin; roof drain bodies shall be a two-part cast iron type that allows the waterproof membrane to be clamped between drain body parts so that water infiltrating the roofing layers can drain into the system.

Balance the need for security with the need for openness, transparency, and natural light.

Provide a quality work environment that is conducive to and suitable for performing the required tasks of the building occupants.

f. Additional protection shall be provided at walking surfaces for rooftop service routes.

4.2 Rooftop Equipment

Provide an interior permanent dedicated industrial stair (not a ship's ladder) and access hatches to the roof of all court facilities with a roof slope of less than 3:12. This stairway can be an extension of the building exit stair system. Provide access to the roof via the freight elevator if the roof includes significant mechanical equipment that requires regular maintenance or the transport of heavy replacement parts. Maintenance worker safety shall be a prime design consideration in the development of roof access and roof parapets. The rooftop access shall be of sufficient size to allow the transport of required tools, small equipment, and materials. Rooftop access shall be drawn early in design for early installation.

4.3 Roof Access

Provide an interior permanent dedicated industrial stair (not a ship's ladder) and access hatches to the roof of all court facilities with a roof slope of less than 3:12. This stairway can be an extension of the building exit stair system. Provide access to the roof via the freight elevator, if the roof includes significant mechanical equipment that requires regular maintenance or the transport of heavy replacement parts. Maintenance worker safety shall be a prime design consideration in the development of roof access and roof parapets. The rooftop access shall be of sufficient size to allow the transport of required tools, small equipment, and materials. Rooftop access shall be drawn early in design for early installation.

4.4 Climate Zone 16 Snow Country Roofing Requirements

These enhanced requirements apply to all courthouse facilities located in California Climate Zone 16, encompassing high-elevation regions above 5,000 feet from the Oregon border through the Sierra Nevada to mountain areas in Southern California counties where ground snow loads exceed 75 pounds per square foot (psf).

4.5 Snow Retention Systems

a. Snow guards: Engineered snow retention systems shall be provided on all sloped roofs exceeding 3:12 pitch. Systems shall be designed per manufacturer's tested capacities for the calculated ground snow load.

b. Critical areas: Snow guards shall protect all elements of the means of egress, pedestrian walkways, paths of travel for access, adjacent lower roofs, adjacent structures, adjoining properties, and mechanical equipment. Guards shall extend a minimum of 2′ beyond protected areas.

5. Building Maintenance

All roofs that will have regular maintenance, or on which exterior maintenance equipment will operate, shall have around the entire perimeter parapets or guardrails that comply with the building code. All elevated areas without parapets or guardrails shall have safety anchorages (a secure point of attachment that complies with the California Building Code for lifelines, lanyards, or other fall protection deceleration devices) within 6′ of the edge. Exterior balconies are not permitted. Roofs with a slope greater than 3:12 shall have safety anchorage integrated into adjacent eaves or gable end walls to facilitate maintenance work.

5.1 Window Washing and Façade Access Equipment

a. Design the building exterior to accommodate safe and cost-effective exterior maintenance procedures. Building maintenance operations include but are not limited to window cleaning, caulking, metal polishing, reglazing, and general

maintenance on building surfaces. Buildings exceeding 130′ in height are required by code to have an in-place window-washing system permanently mounted on the building. Shorter buildings may have other options available for providing façade access from the ground. Both operational and equipment costs shall be considered in determining the most cost-effective system in accordance with the building's design and the frequency of the exterior maintenance schedule.

b. Provide features necessary for maintenance worker safety in accordance with occupational safety codes and regulations. Where necessary, provide required davits and sockets, tie-offs, guardrails, and relocatable, motorized platforms to reach the exterior on all building elevations. Provide a clear path around the base of the building at ground level for ground-rigged maintenance platforms that need to be rigged to or transferred between the roof-mounted davits. For low-rise buildings, provide a clear path at ground level for motorized articulated lifts to reach all exterior windows. California regulations applicable to façade access equipment can be found in California Code of Regulations, title 8, article 5 (Window Cleaning), section 3281 et seq., and article 6 (Powered Platforms and Equipment for Building Maintenance), section 3292 et seq.

5.2 Bird Roosting and Nesting Control

Design exterior façades and roof overhangs to inhibit bird roosting and nesting. Provide means of preventing bird roosting or nesting on horizontal surfaces greater than 6″ deep, especially in protected or covered areas such as the sally port. The design shall inhibit bird species known to nest in the underside of overhangs and soffits. Consider sloped surfaces to deter birds perching. Mechanical air intakes and rooftop equipment shall be designed to prevent bird nesting.

11.D BUILDING ELEMENTS: INTERIOR CONSTRUCTION

1. Interior Building

1.1 Daylighting

Provide natural light to all primary public waiting areas and the main lobby. Plan and design interior spaces to allow glare-free natural light at work areas wherever possible. Develop methods to share glare-free natural light through the use of interior glazing, sidelights, borrowed light, and light wells. Consider the solar orientation of the building, and provide methods of shading and glare control on façades with excessive solar exposure. In areas of excessive solar exposure that will not be mitigated by shading and glare control on the façade, provide window coverings. See section 11.D.1.13 below for window covering requirements.

1.2 Workplace Environment

Standards for lighting, acoustics, heating, ventilation, air-conditioning, and other building systems shall be applied to enhance the work environment and support a sustainable design objective. Design spaces to reduce energy and materials consumption.

1.3 Floor-to-Floor Heights

The standard floor-to-floor, or slab-to-slab, dimension for multistory courthouses shall be 14′ to 16′. Refer to chapter 2, section 2.C, Area and Volume Definitions, for requirements for relative building volume.

DIVISION TWO: TECHNICAL CRITERIA

11 ARCHITECTURAL CRITERIA
11.A Objectives
11.B Architectural Criteria
11.C Building Elements: Exterior Construction
11.D Building Elements: Interior Construction
11.E Signage
12 Structural Criteria
13 Mechanical Criteria
14 Building Management System Criteria
15 Electrical Criteria
16 Lighting Criteria
17 Network and Communication Systems
18 Audiovisual Systems
19 Acoustical Criteria
20 Fire Protection Criteria

Integrated Interior Design

The design professional shall select the size, color, style, and finishes of movable furniture and equipment and integrate and coordinate them with the other interior elements.

1.4 Plenum Spaces

a. Provide space above all finished ceiling areas for the heating, ventilation, and air-conditioning (HVAC) supply and return distribution; electrical distribution; mechanical equipment; fire sprinkler systems; voice, data, and low-voltage cables; and other devices. Size plenum spaces to allow for future modification of these systems.

b. Coordinate the size, access, and clearance requirements of systems located in plenum spaces with the depth of structural elements to allow required clearances for all systems to all parts of the building.

c. Provide access to all plenum spaces for servicing all components. Provide access to plenum spaces above courtrooms for maintenance of utilities and modification of cabling and outlets that serve the floor above.

1.5 Interior Partitions

a. Follow the minimum standard for steel studs in multilayered gypsum wallboard assemblies, which is 20 gauge, unless a lighter gauge is required for acoustical reasons.

b. Comply with the manufacturer's recommended criteria for deflection and span with interior pressure loading based on tested industry standards.

c. Provide fire- and smoke-rated interior partitions, where required, in accordance with accepted industry standard–tested assemblies and approved manufacturers' designs for assemblies satisfying the test criteria.

d. Provide a system of concealed, permanent, secure, and appropriately designed backing, supports, and anchorages for all handrails, wall-hung cabinets, court seals, and other surface-mounted fixtures, equipment, systems, and building specialties.

e. Provide corner guards, where required.

f. Refer to chapter 19, Acoustical Criteria, for additional partition requirements.

1.6 Ceilings

a. Ceilings shall be designed for optimal visual, lighting, and acoustic performance. Refer to chapter 16, Lighting Criteria, and chapter 19, Acoustical Criteria.

b. Custom ceilings are not permitted, nor are wood ceiling panel systems. Ceilings throughout the courthouse shall be of modular dimensions and specified off the shelf for easy replacement and maintenance.

c. Required technical features shall be integrated with the use of ceiling soffits, coffers, and materials to accommodate acoustic materials, lighting, sprinklers, speakers, cameras, projectors, and projection screens.

d. Ceilings of chambers, offices, and conference rooms shall be designed to integrate acoustic panels, lighting, and HVAC supply and return grilles.

1.7 Public and Private Toilet Rooms

a. To avoid flooding, slope drains in all toilet rooms to a drain with primer. Public toilet rooms are heavily used and require durable, washable, and easily maintained materials and finishes. Minimum finishes and features include:

- Coved ceramic tile floors;
- Glazed ceramic tile wall surfaces up to a minimum 4′ wainscot height (consider full-height tile on walls);
- Solid-surface countertops;
- Under-counter-mounted lavatories;
- Stainless steel or monolithic plastic floor-mounted and braced institutional-quality toilet stall dividers and doors and wall-hung urinal screens;
- Institutional-quality toilet fixtures and stainless steel toilet accessories;
- Wall-mounted mirrors behind the lavatory tops;
- A diaper-changing table in each restroom; and
- Semigloss-painted washable wall and ceiling surfaces.

Solid surface is an acceptable finish for countertops, but materials requiring a multitude of joints (e.g., ceramic tile) are not because of the ongoing maintenance implications of cleaning surfaces with joints. Dark-colored grout and caulking shall be used for ceramic tile floors and walls for maintainability.

b. Avoid combo units for the toilet seat cover, tissue, and receptacle because they may affect the Americans with Disabilities Act (ADA)–required grab bar clearance. Provide toilet accessories in a noncorrosive, durable material (such as stainless steel) that are readily serviceable and consistent with the building design.

c. For high-volume public restroom entries, consider the use of doorless vestibules with integrated sound and visual screening.

d. Provide one shower and changing area (for each gender) in a staff toilet room off the private corridor on the first floor or lower level of the building. The dressing area shall have wall-mounted hooks.

1.8 Elevators

a. Vertical transportation strategy depends on project requirements and design parameters. If the project contains more than one floor or level change, the building shall include vertical conveyance systems. Courthouses typically require three elevator systems: public, private (staff), and detention (in-custody defendants). Staff elevators shall have an average interval of less than 30 seconds (wait time of 18–20 seconds), public elevators shall have an average interval of less than 40 seconds (wait time of 24–26 seconds), and both elevator groups shall have a handling capacity of 15 percent of the building population to be served. All passenger elevators must meet the design requirements of the building code for access by persons with disabilities and emergency personnel. If high-volume areas are located at any other level than the first, provide extra capacity to move large numbers of people to and from that level.

b. If the project contains more than one floor or level change, a shared or dedicated elevator for staff, freight, and service is required for deliveries, staff vertical movement, trash transport, document transport, and building maintenance. Staff elevators can double as a freight or service elevator in smaller courthouses, but in larger court buildings, a dedicated service elevator is preferred, with its own vestibule on every floor. Provide at least one public and one staff building elevator large enough to accommodate a paramedic's

stretcher; this may be the service elevator in buildings with a dedicated service elevator. Use of an elevator for paramedic stretcher may be accomplished by changing the door mechanism of a regular elevator to open to one side instead of opening from the middle. Elevators for in-custody defendants may require an independent control system if their operation is remotely controlled from the central holding control room.

c. Hydraulic elevators are permitted for two- or three-story facilities, but traction elevators are preferred. Facilities that are four stories or taller shall have traction elevators.

d. Braille lettering and audio signals shall be provided at elevators and where required by code. Passenger elevator car interiors shall have durable and vandal-resistant finish materials consistent with the building design. Cab wall and ceiling panels shall be replaceable. One cab in the building shall have the capacity to accommodate extra-long deliveries such as rolls of carpet; this may be the service elevator cab. A typical car interior ceiling height is 9′ to 10′.

e. The following criteria shall be met by the design firm:

- Slope the elevator lobby floors away from the elevator doors toward a drain in the elevator lobby. Provide durable floor finish in the elevator lobby, carpet is not permitted. Provide drains in the elevator pits.
- Design and install elevator shafts such that screws outside do not project into the hoistway and the edges of slabs and other protrusions are flush with the walls the entire height of the hoistway. The elevator shaft shall have no ledges and be finished flush. No cants or screws are permitted.
- Confirm if 1″ mesh and ladders are required in elevator pits.
- Confirm if separation is required for in-custody elevators.
- Coordinate duress button with judges' elevators during design and construction.
- Include a picture frame in the elevator cab to hold a permit in the cab per state requirements.
- Do not run any foreign services (that do not serve the elevators) through the elevator machine room.
- Coordinate card access with elevator stops and interior, and define function and operation.
- Provide video monitoring of elevators cabs for emergency services as required by title 24. This system shall operate through the network and include battery backup for emergency.

1.9 Stairs

a. Convenience stairs shall be provided that encourage walking to other floors in support of the sustainable design objective by reducing demand on the elevator systems. Communicating stairs can be provided in both the public areas and the private circulation system. Where possible and appropriate, locate stairwells near elevators.

b. Required exit stairs shall be designed to encourage use by staff for normal circulation unless restricted by the California Building Code, with introduction of natural lighting when appropriate.

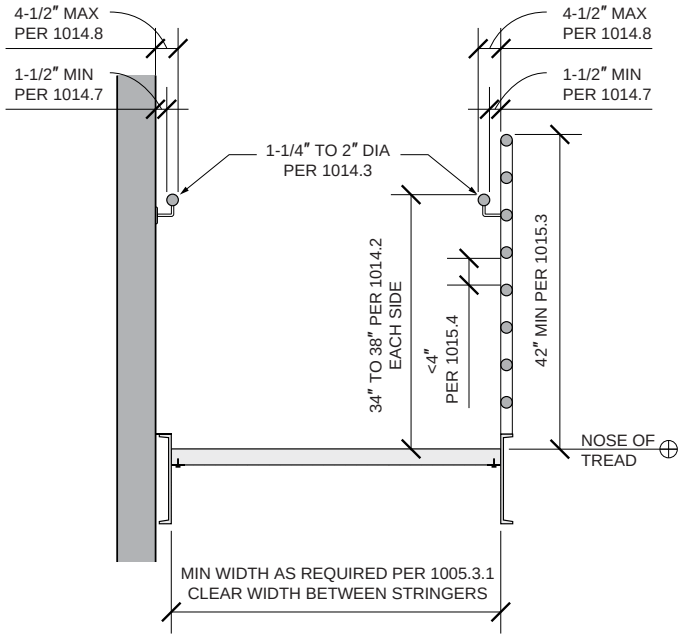
c. A public connecting stair shall be provided to access high-volume public uses (such as public counters and self-help center) on the second and third floors of courthouses, in addition to elevator access. Design and finish open stairways that connect public lobbies to the upper floors in harmony with materials used in the public lobby. Pre-engineered steel stair and railing systems are acceptable for exit and communicating stairs but not for high-volume public stairs. Stair treads and intermediate landings shall either be pan type and filled with concrete or terrazzo or have dimensional stone paving; channel or flat-plate stair stringers are acceptable. Provide architectural railings for communicating stairs; a manufacturer's standard railing system might be adaptable for this purpose.

d. All staircases shall meet the California Building Code requirements. The required egress width for stairways shall be measured as shown in figure 11.1. The minimum clearance height shall be 2″ greater than required by code to take into account the fireproofing thickness.

e. Security cameras in rated stairwells shall only be provided when approved by Judicial Council.

f. Only high-impact drywall is to be used in stairwells that use drywall.

g. No infrastructure or equipment shall penetrate the rated stairwell walls unless it has to be provided specifically for the safety and proper functioning of the stair.



DIA = diameter.
Note: Code citations refer to sections of chapter 10 of the California Building Code.

Figure 11.1 Egress Width Measurement Method

11 ARCHITECTURAL CRITERIA
11.A Objectives
11.B Architectural Criteria
11.C Building Elements: Exterior Construction
11.D Building Elements: Interior Construction
11.E Signage
12 Structural Criteria
13 Mechanical Criteria
14 Building Management System Criteria
15 Electrical Criteria
16 Lighting Criteria
17 Network and Communication Systems
18 Audiovisual Systems
19 Acoustical Criteria
20 Fire Protection Criteria

1.10 Doors, Frames, and Hardware

a. Provide one-piece, welded steel doorframes at permanent locations requiring oversized or heavy doors or having significant traffic, including courtrooms.

b. Provide prefinished aluminum doorframes in partitions subject to periodic remodeling. Tempered glass, full-height, 12″ to 18″ wide sidelights or glazed doors may be provided at private offices and conference rooms, except in judicial chambers, jury deliberation rooms, and offices that require privacy.

c. Provide flush solid-core doors for typical interior conditions, where allowed by fire codes. Door construction shall meet or exceed Architectural Woodwork Institute (AWI) premium grade for courtrooms; custom grade for chambers, courtroom entrances, and private offices; and paint grade for all other doors. Courtroom public entrances may have stile-and-rail doors with glass vision panels. Courtroom entry doors may have vision panels allowing a view into the courtroom, but the courtroom vestibule doors off the public corridor should be solid.

d. All hardware provided shall be institutional grade. Pins and hinges on all doors located on corridors, lobbies, and other public spaces shall be installed on the secure side of the door or shall be fixed. Latches and locksets shall be full mortised type; locks shall have removable key cylinders. Locks shall be grand mastered and master keyed. Provide multiple keys for every lock type. Certain locks off master shall be specified. Hardware specified for courtroom use shall be of the highest quality and selected for quiet, acoustically optimal operation. Selected doors require electric locksets or strikes and proximity-reader card-key locking systems. Provide heavy-duty, institutional-grade door closers in public areas, especially in high-traffic areas.

e. Floor-installed closers and pivot doors shall not be used. All doors and doorframes shall be supported by sturdy structured walls. Provide engineered framing details. No door or doorframe shall twist, move up, or distort due to use.

f. Delayed action closers, where provided per chapter 9, section 9.B.f, shall add a third speed range to the closing cycle or provide an equal operation mechanism. The feature shall become effective when the door is opened and released at any point beyond 70 percent. The amount of delay time shall be adjusted as necessary to accommodate users with mobility challenges or to accommodate heavy use and high traffic. To prevent damage, a high-pressure relief safety valve shall be included in the closer.

1.11 Courtroom Platforms

Raised platforms in courtrooms shall be of a construction method that does not require underfloor fire sprinklers. Platforms shall be of noncombustible construction in buildings of Types I and II construction. Handrails, if required at stairs and/or ramps, shall be discreet and integrated into courtroom design. Raised access floor systems may be considered in high-volume, large specialty courtrooms with broadcast capability based on performance analysis and budget availability, subject to Judicial Council approval.

1.12 Flooring

a. Subfloors: New and existing concrete subfloors must meet the requirements of ASTM F710, Standard Practice for Preparing Concrete Floors to Receive Resilient Flooring.

b. Carpet: Consistent with the expected functional lifetime, carpet shall be durable and low maintenance. Carpet must be eligible for recycling by the supplying mill or fiber producer to an existing operational third party–certified recycling center. Specify carpet appropriate to the traffic expected in the space. Broadloom carpet is not permitted. Carpet tiles should be a minimum standard size of 24″ square and a maximum of 36″ square.

The minimum specification basis of carpet and carpet tile design is as follows:

- Fiber/yarn: 100 percent Antron Lumena solution-dyed type 6,6 nylon.
- Construction: Tufted, level, or multilevel loop pile, cut and loop, or tip shear, as long as product passes a minimum Texture Appearance Retention Rating (TARR) of 4 out of 5.
- Pile weight: Minimum 16 ounces per square yard.

If ambient noise is a concern, consider a cushion-backed carpet tile. When higher acoustical values are required in a space, specify carpet that will adequately perform a dual role of a floor covering and a versatile acoustic aid. Products must meet the Carpet and Rug Institute standards for indoor air quality. Carpet on ramps or courtroom platforms shall meet wheelchair access requirements.

c. Impervious flooring: Public corridors and lobbies that carry significant foot traffic and provide major circulation pathways throughout the building shall have extremely durable, slip-resistant materials that require low maintenance. Life cycle cost analysis shall be used to determine material options, such as terrazzo and manufactured tile. Carpet shall not be used in elevator lobby.

d. Horizontal embedded conduits in slabs on metal deck are not permitted.

e. Hydronic mechanical rooms shall not be located over water damage–sensitive areas such as intermediate distribution frame (IDF) or main distribution frame (MDF) rooms. If it is unavoidable:

- Make the floor and base cove and all penetrations through them watertight;
- Add floor drains to prevent any significant water depth; and
- Prevent any pooling of water on the floor.

1.13 Window Coverings

a. Provide window coverings appropriate for visual screening and glare control in work areas and courtrooms. Courtrooms with skylights, windows, or borrowed light require window coverings to prevent glare and visual distractions and allow light control during audiovisual presentations.

b. Consider the method of operation for window coverings in terms of its appropriateness for the function of a space. Manually operated shades may be provided for private offices and open office work areas but not public corridors or lobbies. In public areas, motorized shades are permitted. Synchronized motorized shades are not permitted. The controls for the shades shall be at ADA accessible height and secured such that only authorized personnel may operate them.

c. Consider the exterior image of the building when selecting the color and materials of window coverings to provide an image consistent with interior and exterior design intent.

Table 11.1 Notes

* Arraignment courts may have a combination of carpet and hard surface flooring. Hard surface flooring might be appropriate under spectator bench seating.

† Painting and gypsum board are appropriate above the wainscot level in corridors and in combination with other materials in courtrooms. Painted gypsum board is standard above tile in toilet room walls.

Signage

Grouping too many signs in one place (e.g., at entries, in lobbies, and in corridors) is unsightly, may confuse first-time visitors, and may decrease the dignity of the facility.

Maintain brief, clear, and polite messages in signage.

2. Modular Furniture and Workstations

Modular systems furniture (MSF) is composed of freestanding partition panels, worktops, files, components, and integrated circuitry and access raceways for provision of electrical power, voice, and data cabling. The building shall be designed to allow for flexible rearrangement of MSF and connection to building systems. The electrical, telecommunications, and data systems and their capacities shall be designed to ensure compatibility with MSF design requirements.

2.1 High-Density Files

Where required, provide a mobile high-density filing system. Locate the system on the ground floor or an adequately reinforced floor structure near the public office clerk's counter. Coordinate high-density filing systems with building structure for distribution of gravity loads and seismic bracing requirements as a function of the height and configuration of the system. Specify fixed rows for every six movable rows or as determined by the Judicial Council to allow access to multiple rows of files. Provide a locking feature for confidential files. Specify seven shelf–high cars. The filing system shall be accessible to persons with disabilities and coordinated with structural slab depressions so that the base of the filing system is flush with adjacent finished floor elevation. Use of a motorized system may be acceptable for infrequently accessed files.

2.2 State Seal

Provide the official seal of the State of California in each courtroom, in metal or composite material, with a minimum size of 32″ in diameter. Choose the material to avoid glare on the seal. The appearance and location must reflect the dignity of the court.

2.3 Flagpoles

Provide two flagpoles and holders in each courtroom to accommodate a State of California flag and a U.S. flag. Flagpoles may be wall or floor mounted. Their location shall not interfere with bench accessibility.

3. Interior Finishes and Materials

The *Facilities Standards* specifies four levels of interior architectural finishes corresponding to a component's target functional lifetime, required use, architectural importance, durability requirements, and surrounding interior context. Brief descriptions of example interior finish levels are provided below for reference; however, the designers shall propose finishes for each project. See table 11.1 for suggested finishes for the four levels.

- Level I interior finishes: Specified for building components with long functional lifetimes and high aesthetic importance. Level I finishes have quality, long-term durability, ease of maintenance and cleanability, and ability to sustain aesthetic appeal over a long period.
- Level II interior finishes: Specified for high-volume public service areas with midrange functional lifetimes and increased architectural importance. Level II finishes offer midrange durability yet require regular maintenance and refurbishment, such as occasional repainting.
- Level III interior finishes: Specified for building components with midrange functional lifetimes and moderate architectural importance. These finishes require regular repair, maintenance, and refurbishment, such as repainting.
- Level IV finishes: Specified for building components that may have long functional lifetimes. These are typically utility or support areas that have relatively low architectural importance. Level IV finishes are durable and maintainable.

Table 11.1 Finish Matrix

	FLOOR						WALLS						CEILING					METAL	
	Premium carpet	Manufactured tile or terrazzo	Midgrade carpet	Ceramic tile	Vinyl composition tile (VCT)/ linoleum	Sealed concrete	Paneling (wood veneer)	Premium acoustic wall panels	Ceramic tile	Painted gypsum board	Premium base (metal)	Rubber base	Architectural soffits	Premium acoustic panels	Midgrade acoustic panels	Painted gypsum board	Exposed structure	Premium clear-coated metal	Painted metal or stainless steel
Level I																			
Courtroom*†	•		•				•	•	•	•	•		•	•		•		•	•
Public lobby		•					•	•		•	•		•	•	•	•		•	•
Public corridor		•		•			•			•	•		•	•	•	•		•	•
Public restroom†				•					•	•	•	•				•			•
Level II																			
Jury assembly room			•							•	•	•	•	•	•	•			•
Clerk's public counter		•	•							•		•	•	•	•	•			•
Self-help center		•	•							•		•	•	•	•	•			•
Child waiting area			•	•	•					•	•	•	•	•	•	•			•
Level III																			
Judicial officer private office	•		•							•	•		•	•					•
Staff office/workstation			•							•		•			•				•
Jury deliberation room			•							•		•			•				•
Conference room			•							•		•	•	•					•
Employee breakroom					•					•		•			•				•
Staff toilet				•	•				•	•					•				
Restricted corridor			•							•		•			•				•
Restricted communicating stair			•	•	•	•				•		•				•			•
Copy room					•					•		•			•				•
Level IV																			
Loading dock						•						•					•		
Emergency egress stair						•						•					•		
Mechanical rooms						•						•					•		
Telecom equipment room						•						•					•		
Storage					•	•				•		•				•	•		
Janitor closets					•	•						•					•		

4. Architectural Woodwork for Courtrooms

4.1 Veneer Panels and Casework

a. Hardwood veneer panels with solid hardwood trim and edge banding, with shop-applied stain, shall be provided and finished with three coats of transparent sealer per AWI premium-grade requirements. Wood from a certified sustainable source is preferred. A solid wood base to match courtroom panels or a metal base may be used in public spaces and chambers.

b. Courtroom built-in components may include the judge's bench; courtroom clerk's, court reporter's, and court security officer's stations; jury box; public bench seating; counsel tables, rails, and gates; and an accessible lectern. (Note that the bench seating, counsel tables, and lectern may be standard modular furniture customized to match the courtroom finish.) Modular furniture with a built-in pony wall may be permitted at the discretion of the Judicial Council.

c. All courtroom desktop work surfaces, whether modular or custom built, shall be wood or solid surface.

d. All veneer panels shall be positively attached to supporting elements. Adhesives or frictional resistance due to the effect of gravity are not considered positive attachments.

4.2 Cabinets and Casework

Provide (at a minimum) AWI premium-grade plastic laminate casework with ADA-compliant base cabinets and plastic laminate tops.

11.E SIGNAGE

Clear, legible, and strategically placed graphics and signage are essential design elements for a court facility. Signage directs visitors and staff to where they need to go and contributes to a positive experience in the courthouse by orienting users and minimizing confusion. Signage is particularly important in courthouses that house multiple court functions or a high volume of court users.

1. General Requirements

a. An integrated, complementary, and comprehensive signage program shall address both code-required signage (such as exit signs, exiting plans, and room numbers) and non-code required signage (building directories, notices). The graphics and signage programs shall be developed during early design stages to integrate signage with the design concept, functional program, and building circulation zones. Attractive, legible signs showing directions and information shall be incorporated into the design of all public areas. Locations for uniform static and dynamic signage should be considered in the early design stages and based on precedents such as completed, well-functioning court projects. Additionally, electronic displays of graphical information—especially information that changes frequently—offer an orderly and flexible solution for the changing needs of certain spaces.

b. All signage must meet the requirements of the Americans with Disabilities Act and the most recently adopted provisions of the California Building Code regarding accessibility. As appropriate for community needs, courthouse signage should be accessible in English and in other common languages (e.g., Spanish) to direct persons who come to court and are limited English proficient (LEP). The Judicial Council requires various wayfinding strategies for both static and electronic signage to assist LEP users. Employ National Center for State Courts requirements and best practices

from around the state in courthouse design and the use of signage and wayfinding strategies to enhance access for LEP court users. Incorporate language access considerations in courthouse design and the use of technology to augment the court's ability to provide information in multiple languages. An ongoing language access signage and technology grant program is available to trial courts that are interested in obtaining funding to support their courthouse signage and/or technology initiatives.

c. Ideally, signs should use pictograms to establish consistency across all courts. English should be used for basic information and instructions, and prominent multilingual posting of public notices and informational court materials may be considered. A discussion should take place early on with the court and the Judicial Council team to determine if multilingual signs are appropriate.

d. All signage shall be designed and placed to discourage vandalism and thievery. Signs shall not be easily removable in public areas.

e. Rooms shall be numbered logically and consecutively to enable court users, including visually impaired persons, to make assumptions about where their destination is located. Public room numbers shall be sequential and predictable. Base courtroom labels on a predictable sequence, not the internal administrative department labels. For example, a second-floor courtroom shall be labeled Courtroom 200 or Room 200, not Division 200 or Department 4. Room numbering from floor to floor shall be consistent. Assign room numbers early in design and obtain the court's approval.

f. Room label signage shall be positioned at doorways, where court users, including sight-impaired persons, expect to find information. Locate signage of building management rooms, which are not accessible to the public, in different areas than accessibility signage. For example, locate electrical closet room numbers above the door rather than to the side.

g. Judges' chambers shall include signage with judges' names. The names on the signage shall be easily replaceable.

2. Signage Specifics

The following guidelines shall apply to signage and graphics in various locations within the building.

2.1 Building Entry

a. Clearly mark the courthouse entrance with signs indicating that all persons and articles entering the facility are subject to search, no weapons of any kind are allowed within the facility or on the grounds of the facility, and violators are subject to fine and arrest.

b. Restrict all other signage at entry to preserve a unified and attractive façade.

c. Include the State of California seal, court name, address, accessible symbol, and hours of operation among the signs at entry. If some functions, such as traffic payment windows, are located before the screening area, provide directional signage.

d. Match the dedication plaque to the style of the other signs at the building entry.

e. Maintain legibility of signs containing letters during the day and nighttime. Take into account any shadow patterns with changing light conditions.

2.2 Building Directory
Locate a building directory near the main public entrance. The directory shall contain a diagram listing all major building components. This directory shall be located in an area seen by the public after they have been screened and may be integrated into an information desk. Provide smaller directories at each elevator lobby with information about various occupancies on that floor. Provide a directory before security screening if there are functions located outside the screening area.

2.3 Court Calendar Postings
Provide digital monitors to display the court calendar in the public lobby after screening. Calendar information may also be displayed at courtroom entries. This display shall be uniform in appearance; postings shall be limited to the display area. Electronic calendars should be standard practice at entries and courtrooms.

2.4 Public Notice Boards
A consistent, controlled system of wall-mounted notice boards shall be used throughout the facility to allow public postings. All computer-generated signs, handwritten signs, and notices will be restricted to these areas. Provide public notice boards in consistent public locations to prevent staff from taping signs to walls. Design these places for temporary information to integrate architecturally with the overall interior space.

2.5 Courtroom Entry Signage
All signs outside courtroom doors shall be of uniform appearance and integrated with calendar information displays. The courtroom numbering system may be displayed at the top or side of the entry door and in the largest letter height possible. ADA requirements shall also be met. Architects and engineers shall consider displaying the names of the judges as part of the electronic display. All other signage will be posted in the electronic display below the judge's name, according to the needs of the court. Consideration should be given to creating a display panel that will allow paper inserts easily printed by the court. No signage shall appear on courtroom doors. The designer shall work with court representatives to minimize signage.

Examples of court-specific entry signage that could be displayed electronically include the following:

- "Calendar Postings"
- "Jurors and Witnesses Please Remain in Hallway Until Called"
- "Closed Hearing"
- "Turn off all electronics, including cell phones."

2.6 Courtroom Signage
Provide a consistent, controlled signage system within the courtroom to prevent individual postings by court personnel. The courtroom shall include the State of California seal, not the county seal, behind the judge's bench.

Examples of court-specific signage include the following:

- "No Communication With Inmates" (posted on the dock inside the courtroom facing the audience or in an area seen by the public after they are in audience seating);
- Jury seat numbering;

- Courtroom conduct; and
- Typical questions for jurors.

The Judicial Council's *Courthouse Naming Policy* (effective May 11, 2009; revised July 21, 2023) affects signage, including naming of court buildings. Regardless of whether an individual's name is used, the building identification sign shall include "Superior Court of California, County of [*county*]." The dedication plaque shall be added to the building after construction is complete. The year and date of dedication shall not be placed in the building signage in advance.

2.7 Other Signage Considerations

a. Provide a consistent, controlled system of other signs, such as restricted access warnings, directional signs, signs designating services for persons with disabilities, and procedural guides. If high-volume functions, such as the jury assembly room and the public counter, are not immediately visible from the entry lobby, clearly displayed graphics shall be prominently displayed to guide users to these areas.

b. Provide visible "No Smoking" signs to alert the public not to smoke within 20′ of an entrance.

c. Install wayfinding directional signs in the stairwells.

d. Ensure that any photographs or artwork displays in the courthouse meet all copyright law requirements.

DIVISION TWO: TECHNICAL CRITERIA

11 ARCHITECTURAL CRITERIA
11.A Objectives
11.B Architectural Criteria
11.C Building Elements: Exterior Construction
11.D Building Elements: Interior Construction
11.E Signage
12 Structural Criteria
13 Mechanical Criteria
14 Building Management System Criteria
15 Electrical Criteria
16 Lighting Criteria
17 Network and Communication Systems
18 Audiovisual Systems
19 Acoustical Criteria
20 Fire Protection Criteria

DIVISION TWO: TECHNICAL CRITERIA

12 STRUCTURAL CRITERIA

SECTION	TOPIC	PAGE
12.A	Objectives	12.2
12.B	Structural Systems	12.2
12.C	Criteria for Service Loads	12.3
12.D	Criteria for Rare Loads	12.4
12.E	Life Cycle Cost Analysis	12.6
12.F	Quality Assurance	12.7
12.G	Fire-Resistive Ratings of Structural Elements	12.8



Family Justice Center Courthouse, County of Santa Clara
San Jose, CA
© Zimmer Gunsal Frasca LLP

This chapter describes general and technical criteria for structural systems in new Judicial Council buildings.

Structural design goals for new trial court facilities shall reflect functional and programmatic needs, adaptability for future technology, and the ability to withstand potential structural damage and minimize disruption of building services and operations from disasters and rare events.

The Judicial Council shall determine the regional importance and any performance objectives above code expectations for all new facilities.

12.A OBJECTIVES

1. Strength and Serviceability

The structure shall have the strength to support the intended occupancies, including level floors of adequate flatness, stiffness, and vibration control from environmental and internal sources.

2. Adaptability

The structure shall be adaptable to changes of use and occupancy, allowing for the installation of new information technology or mechanical, electrical, or plumbing systems resulting from changing technology. Adaptability features include gravity systems that have capacity to accommodate most nonspecialized courthouse occupancies, enable local strengthening, and facilitate additional floor and wall penetrations.

3. Performance in Rare Events

Most Judicial Council facilities incorporate specialized features that will not allow relocation to alternative spaces without considerable preparation and alteration. Therefore, it is important to estimate the nature of damage that could be caused by rare but possible events such as high wind, fire, extreme snow and rain, flood, and seismic activity and the possibility the building will not be available for occupancy for an extended length of time.

Except as noted below, the "A" chapter amendments to the California Building Code by the Division of the State Architect—Structural Safety (DSA-SS) and the Department of Healthcare Access and Information (HCAI) do not apply to Judicial Council projects.

4. Prefabrication and Modular Technologies

Consider prioritizing prefabrication of structural elements and use of modular techniques to accelerate construction timelines and enhance project erection efficiency. This objective aims to optimize construction efficiency, minimize onsite labor requirements, and ensure timely project completion while upholding high quality standards.

12.B STRUCTURAL SYSTEMS

Design-build entities shall evaluate and select the proposed structural system using a formal choosing by advantage (CBA) methodology. The CBA analysis shall identify feasible structural alternatives and compare them based on clearly defined factors including but not limited to total life cycle cost, construction and inspection schedule impacts, constructability, and coordination with Office of the State Fire Marshal requirements. The analysis shall document the relative advantages of each alternative and demonstrate how the recommended system provides the greatest overall value to the project. Selection of the structural system shall not be based solely on initial construction cost but on the alternative that best supports project objectives related to cost certainty, schedule reliability, and regulatory approval.

There are no specific limitations on use of gravity- and lateral load–resisting structural systems other than as prescribed by the California Building Code (CBC). The structural engineer shall submit written documentation to the architect describing how the recommended gravity load and lateral load systems will respond to the performance objectives.

Structural components, systems, and methods of design not specifically recognized by the CBC are permitted under approved requests for alternative means of compliance. Criteria for such components or systems shall be reviewed by one or more peer reviewers acceptable to the Judicial Council and submitted to the council for approval in accordance with provisions established by the CBC.

12.C CRITERIA FOR SERVICE LOADS

The following criteria and performance goals shall apply to court facilities.

1. Gravity Loads

Court facilities shall be designed for the live loads established by the CBC. Live loads shall be based on the use and room occupancy of the building area under consideration and consider movable partitions in open office locations.

Superimposed dead loads shall include but are not limited to mechanical, electrical, plumbing, solar, and fire protection equipment and distribution systems; ceilings and suspended soffits; raised floors; ramps; platform assemblies; built-in partitions; finishes and cladding; and telecom, audiovisual, and fire alarm equipment and distribution systems.

2. High-Density Files

Areas that support high-density files shall be designed for a live load of 250 pounds per square foot.

3. Restrooms and Wet Rooms

Provide recessed slabs for restrooms and other wet rooms for floors at grade. For raised floor conditions, provide adequate slope or recessed beams to accommodate floor finish and sloped floor to the drain(s) in all restrooms and wet rooms.

4. Floor Vibration: Human Comfort

Floors shall be designed to limit acceleration by controlling floor vibration from footfall to achieve acceptable human comfort performance levels. The recommended criteria in table 12.1 are based on the dynamic response of floor systems to walking excitation. The acceleration limits are based on American Institute of Steel Construction (AISC) *Design Guide 11*. The floor system shall be considered satisfactory if the peak acceleration, a_p, due to walking excitation as a fraction of the acceleration of gravity, g, does not exceed the acceleration limit, a_0/g, for the appropriate room occupancies as shown in table 12.1.

5. Floor Vibration: Equipment

Vibration from equipment will be controlled locally by isolation under the direction of others, such as the mechanical engineer, acoustical consultant, or equipment supplier. The structural engineer shall confirm with the architect that the structure requires nothing special to minimize vibrations from sources other than footfall.

DIVISION TWO: TECHNICAL CRITERIA
11 Architectural Criteria
12 STRUCTURAL CRITERIA
12.A Objectives
12.B Structural Systems
12.C Criteria for Service Loads
12.D Criteria for Rare Loads
12.E Life Cycle Cost Analysis
12.F Quality Assurance
12.G Fire-Resistive Ratings of Structural Elements
13 Mechanical Criteria
14 Building Management System Criteria
15 Electrical Criteria
16 Lighting Criteria
17 Network and Communication Systems
18 Audiovisual Systems
19 Acoustical Criteria
20 Fire Protection Criteria

ASCE = American Society of Civil Engineers

NSC = nonstructural seismic coordinator

Table 12.1 Human Comfort Performance Levels

Floor Vibration Acceptance Criteria: AISC-Recommended Values of Parameters and a_0/g Limits

BUILDING OCCUPANCY	CONSTANT FORCE, P_0, IN LB.	DAMPING RATIO, β	ACCELERATION LIMIT, a_0/g x 100%	QUALITATIVE PERFORMANCE LEVEL
Typical use and occupancy	65	0.05	0.5	slightly perceptible
Courtroom	65	0.05	0.5	slightly perceptible
Jury assembly	65	0.05	0.5	slightly perceptible
Offices	65	0.05	0.5	slightly perceptible
General assembly	65	0.02	1.5	distinctly perceptible
Corridors	65	0.02	1.5	distinctly perceptible
Monumental stair	92	0.01	1.5	distinctly perceptible
Footbridge—indoor	92	0.01	1.5	distinctly perceptible
Footbridge—outdoor	92	0.01	5.0	strongly perceptible

Notes: Peak acceleration, a_p, due to walking excitation:

$$\frac{a_p}{g} = \frac{P_o \exp(-.35 f_n)}{\beta W}$$

P_0 = Constant force representing the excitation, pounds.

f_n = Fundamental natural frequency of a beam or joist panel, a girder panel, or a combined panel, as applicable, modal damping ratio, and effective weight supported by the beam or joist panel, girder panel, or combined panel, as applicable.

β = Modal damping ratio.

W = Effective weight supported by the beam or joist panel, girder panel, or combined panel, as applicable.

12.D CRITERIA FOR RARE LOADS

1. Earthquake

Seismic performance of all new Judicial Council facilities is intended to be higher than that of buildings designed in accordance with prescriptive code provisions. This performance will be achieved through design and quality assurance.

The Judicial Council may designate specific buildings to be designed for enhanced seismic performance. *Enhanced seismic performance* refers to controlling earthquake damage to a building to limit the expected loss of use of the building after an earthquake. Enhanced seismic performance is required for high-rise court buildings assigned to Seismic Design Category E.

2. Risk Category

The CBC requires all buildings and structures to be assigned to a risk category ranging from I (low hazard to human life, unoccupied structures) to IV (buildings and other structures that are deemed essential and must remain operational). Risk category is used to determine importance factors (as defined in the CBC) for amplifying loads and enhancing seismic responses; ensuring that ductile, lateral force-resisting systems are used in areas of high seismicity; and controlling building deformations in relation to buildings' and structures' uses and risk to human life and safety.

All new court facilities will be assigned to Risk Category III unless an alternative risk category is established for the project.

3. Seismic Design Category

All structures are assigned to a seismic design category based on mapped seismic acceleration parameters and risk category. Seismic design categories range from A (no seismic hazard) to F (extreme seismic hazard on essential services buildings). A seismic design category is used to ensure that the selected ductile structural systems are detailed for seismic activity–resistant design.

All new court facilities shall be assigned to Seismic Design Category D at a minimum, regardless of mapped or site-specific acceleration parameters.

4. Normal Seismic Performance: Structural Components

Normal structural seismic performance objectives must be met by thorough conformance with the principles and provisions of the CBC using either mapped seismic acceleration parameters or site-specific seismic ground motions.

5. Normal Seismic Performance: Nonstructural Components

a. Acceptable performance of nonstructural components and systems shall be achieved by implementing CBC requirements during the design and construction phases.

b. For nonstructural components, the design team is encouraged to specify preapproved standards such as:

- DSA Interpretation of Regulations (IR) 25-2 for metal suspension systems for lay-in panel ceilings;
- DSA IR 25-3 for suspended gypsum board ceilings; and
- OSHPD Preapproved Details, published by the California Department of Healthcare Access and Information (HCAI).

6. Enhanced Seismic Performance: Structural Components

a. Enhanced seismic performance requires a performance-based seismic design process such as that outlined in Federal Emergency Management Agency (FEMA) P-58. The structural engineer shall work jointly with the Judicial Council and other design professionals and stakeholders to identify desired building performance objectives at the outset of a project. Upon selection of performance objectives, designs must be developed and performance assessments completed for the proposed structural systems.

b. Analysis and design methods shall explicitly account for nonlinear behavior of the designated lateral force–resisting system's members and connectors using procedures such as the nonlinear static procedure or the nonlinear dynamic procedure stated in American Society of Civil Engineers' (ASCE) Standard 41 and/or FEMA P-58.

c. Seismically isolated systems and damping systems may be used to provide enhanced seismic performance.

d. The Judicial Council will review and approve the enhanced seismic performance design criteria and may appoint an independent peer review team to evaluate the proposed criteria and analysis methods.

7. Enhanced Seismic Performance: Nonstructural Components

When enhanced seismic performance is required by the Judicial Council, the amendments to the CBC by the DSA-SS that pertain to nonstructural components shall be adhered to. The design team is encouraged to use and specify preapproved standards.

DIVISION TWO: TECHNICAL CRITERIA

11 Architectural Criteria

12 STRUCTURAL CRITERIA
12.A Objectives
12.B Structural Systems
12.C Criteria for Service Loads
12.D Criteria for Rare Loads
12.E Life Cycle Cost Analysis
12.F Quality Assurance
12.G Fire-Resistive Ratings of Structural Elements

13 Mechanical Criteria
14 Building Management System Criteria
15 Electrical Criteria
16 Lighting Criteria
17 Network and Communication Systems
18 Audiovisual Systems
19 Acoustical Criteria
20 Fire Protection Criteria

Life cycle cost analysis (LCCA) is a useful indicator in evaluating total ownership cost of design alternatives over a facility's useful life of 25 years or more and identifies cost alternatives. See chapter 1, section 1.B, Functional Usefulness, Physical Durability, and Maintainability, for more information.

8. Nonstructural Seismic Coordinator

For all projects, the project's registered design professional in responsible charge shall act as the nonstructural seismic coordinator (NSC). The NSC shall establish and coordinate design criteria and performance specifications for nonstructural components during the design phase. In addition, the NSC shall identify equipment critical to continued building function and occupancy, as specified by the CBC and the Judicial Council, and help the Judicial Council determine requirements for prequalification of such equipment.

During the construction phase, the NSC shall coordinate delegated design teams and review deferred approval submittals before submission to the authority having jurisdiction. The NSC shall be the project architect, project structural engineer, or an independent registered design professional retained by the registered design professional in responsible charge.

9. Blast

See chapter 4, Courthouse Security, for blast criteria.

10. Wind

Wind design shall be in accordance with the CBC, unless otherwise specified by the Judicial Council. Because of enhanced performance objectives or siting conditions, the Judicial Council may select certain buildings for site-specific wind studies. Such an analysis will determine design parameters for the structural system, exterior cladding, roof systems, ornamentation, and pedestrian-level wind environment. Wind analysis and modeling shall be based on local climate, wind environment, and orientation of critical wind direction in compliance with the CBC.

11. Flood, Snow, and Rain

Parameters for design for flood, snow, and rain loading shall be in accordance with requirements of the local jurisdiction in which the court facility is to be constructed.

12.E LIFE CYCLE COST ANALYSIS

1. Objectives

Selection of building components, materials, and structural systems must take into account long-term capital cost impacts of estimated losses resulting from expected earthquakes and other rare and damaging events.

Loss estimates shall be evaluated using life cycle cost analysis (LCCA). The Judicial Council will consider analysis estimates in determining acceptability of design alternatives along with other factors. Refer to chapter 1, General Principles, for overall project life cycle cost analysis objectives and methodologies.

2. Methodologies and Standards

a. The LCCA methodology (refer to tool 1, Life Cycle Cost Analysis) should be able to synthesize hazards, fragilities, and consequences to provide measurable and useful estimates of capital losses and impacts due to business interruption. The LCCA should be able to estimate benefit-cost analysis and the total cost of ownership for design options and alternatives. The LCCA should be based on known and established methods and techniques, including simulations to estimate probable losses at various confidence levels for individual event scenarios or over a considered time frame.

b. Seismic risk assessments should be developed using tools that have been validated for intended use, with due consideration in the interpretation of results based on limitations of programs, methodologies, assumptions, and variables.

c. Selection of LCCA programs and tools shall be reviewed with the Judicial Council before implementation.

3. Seismic Hazard Risk Assessment

a. In estimating losses from expected earthquakes, the LCCA shall be based on probabilistic performance-based seismic hazard risk assessments. The LCCA should consider losses resulting from the following:

- Structural damage
- Nonstructural damage
- Damage to building contents
- Disruption of building functions (loss of use)
- Long-term environmental impacts

b. Estimates of the total cost of ownership and benefit-cost ratios may be used to provide relative comparisons of alternative options with respect to a baseline option. Project cost estimation should be used to establish the baseline option costs with respect to alternative option costs in evaluating design options in the LCCA. Comparative results should be used to evaluate overall cost impacts and architectural trade-offs resulting in consideration of various structural system configurations and options. These options may include comparisons such as normal versus enhanced seismic performance objectives, use of moment frames versus braced frames, impact of column size on floor plan and program, impact of beam depth on typical floor-to-floor height, and steel versus concrete construction alternatives. See chapter 1, section 1.B, Functional Usefulness, Physical Durability, and Maintainability, for more information on life cycle cost analysis.

4. Environmental Impacts

Sustainable design strategies (see chapter 1, section 1.E, Sustainable Design) shall also use life cycle cost analysis to assess relative environmental impacts of selected structural system options and alternatives. LCCA is a useful tool in determining lowest-cost structural system alternatives in the consideration and implementation of state-of-the-practice sustainable and environmental design principles. For structural systems, analysis is emphasized for *embodied energy*, or the life cycle of raw material extraction, transport, manufacture, assembly, installation, disassembly, and deconstruction and/or decomposition of the base building's materials.

12.F QUALITY ASSURANCE

1. The registered design professional in responsible charge shall prepare a statement of special inspection that complies with the provisions of the CBC. This statement shall be inclusive, covering all special inspections and tests—both structural and nonstructural—required for the project. A comprehensive list of special inspections and tests shall be included in the working drawings deliverable by the registered design professional.

DIVISION TWO: TECHNICAL CRITERIA
11 Architectural Criteria
12 STRUCTURAL CRITERIA
12.A Objectives
12.B Structural Systems
12.C Criteria for Service Loads
12.D Criteria for Rare Loads
12.E Life Cycle Cost Analysis
12.F Quality Assurance
12.G Fire-Resistive Ratings of Structural Elements
13 Mechanical Criteria
14 Building Management System Criteria
15 Electrical Criteria
16 Lighting Criteria
17 Network and Communication Systems
18 Audiovisual Systems
19 Acoustical Criteria
20 Fire Protection Criteria

2. Structural observation is required for all new court facilities. The registered design professional in responsible charge shall prepare a schedule identifying the phases of construction to be observed.

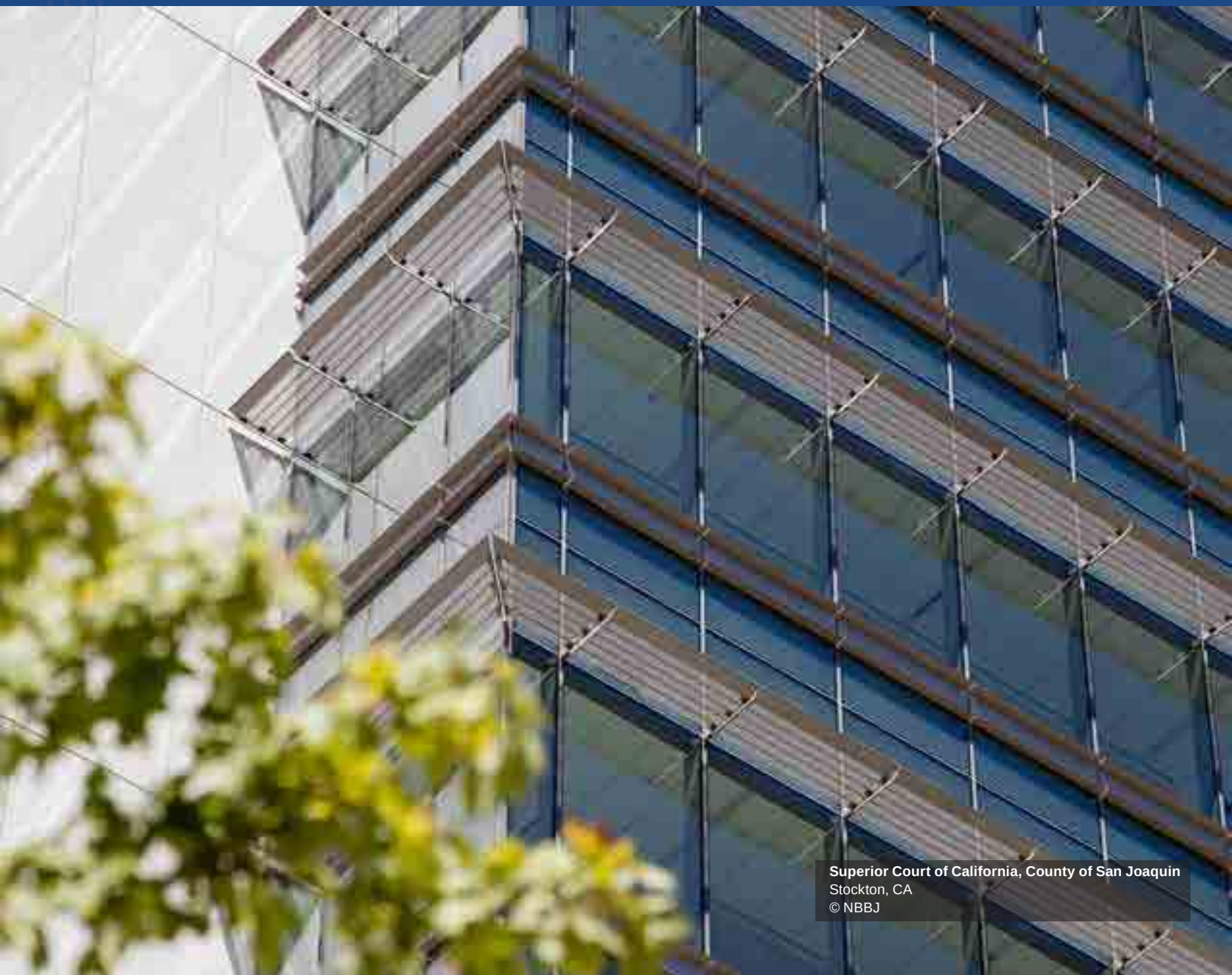
12.G FIRE-RESISTIVE RATINGS OF STRUCTURAL ELEMENTS

The architect, fire protection consultants, and structural engineer shall coordinate to clearly identify the fire-resistive ratings of all structural elements required to have a rating by the current California Building Code, volume 2, part 1, chapters 6 and 7.

DIVISION TWO: TECHNICAL CRITERIA

13 MECHANICAL CRITERIA

SECTION	TOPIC	PAGE
13.A	Objectives	13.2
13.B	HVAC Criteria	13.3
13.C	Humidification and Water Treatment	13.11
13.D	Mechanical Requirements for Specific Spaces	13.12
13.E	Plumbing and Piping Systems Criteria	13.13
13.F	Insulation	13.17
13.G	Thermometers and Gauges	13.18



Superior Court of California, County of San Joaquin
Stockton, CA
© NBBJ

This chapter identifies the program and criteria for heating, ventilation, and air-conditioning (HVAC), plumbing, and piping systems.

Maintainability and reliability are essential requirements of the Judicial Council for facility operations.

13.A OBJECTIVES

The conservation of energy and natural resources shall be weighed against the initial construction cost and future operating cost when incorporating the mechanical concepts into the design to ensure that the project's goals focus on the total life cycle operating costs of the facility. Design mechanical systems to meet building performance objectives, including sustainability and energy conservation, maintenance and reliability, and flexibility for changes.

1. Performance

The design solutions shall not sacrifice the basic needs of one program area to optimize another. Instead, the mechanical designs must optimize the program to ensure attainment of all critical performance goals.

2. Sustainability and Energy Conservation

The design of mechanical systems shall combine with other component designs to produce a building that meets the project's programmed sustainability and energy efficiency goals, as referenced in chapter 1, General Principles.

3. Maintenance and Reliability

Maintainability and reliability are essential requirements of the Judicial Council in facility operations. The design and installation of all mechanical equipment shall provide sufficient clearance to allow easy maintainability, including space for removal and replacement of filters in ceiling equipment, boilers, chillers, cooling towers, pumps, motors, building automation controllers, life-safety dampers, and air-handling equipment. Systems shall have reliability over the functional lifespans listed in tool 1, Life Cycle Cost Analysis.

Consider alternative locations for cooling tower and boiler at rooftop and ground level. Develop a maintenance, access, and replacement plan during the design phase for review and approval by the Judicial Council.

4. Flexibility for Change

Design systems to provide for the range of loads anticipated to support the use of all principal spaces in the court building.

5. Standby Capacity

Standby capacity is mandated for mechanical systems only in the case where it serves equipment identified as critical to the life-safety and communication systems in the building program. In those situations, the mechanical system shall be designed with N+1 redundancy, meaning one additional component beyond the minimum required capacity shall be provided to allow continued operation during a single equipment failure or maintenance event. Emergency power is not required unless specific project needs demand it.

6. Rational Analysis

A rational analysis shall be performed and a report prepared to establish minimum requirements for the design, installation, and acceptance testing of smoke control systems that are intended to provide a tenable environment for the evacuation or relocation of occupants. The report and associated design, complying with the California Building Code, shall be submitted with the construction documents to the authority having jurisdiction.

13.B HVAC CRITERIA

1. Indoor Design Conditions

See table 13.1 for requirements.

Interior design values shall be based on ambient conditions listed in the *2025 California Building Energy Efficiency Standards Reference* Appendix JA2.2 (California Design Location Data): Cooling design: 0.1 percent column; heating design: 0.2 percent column.

2. Temperature Control Zone

Target the interior temperature control zone size to avoid exceeding 1,500 gross square feet for open areas or a maximum of three enclosed offices. Corner offices shall be independent zones. Provide independent zones for each courtroom, chambers suite, jury deliberation room, entrance lobby, mailroom, staff lounge, conference room, child waiting area, and equipment rooms. Provide a zone map for review by the Judicial Council before any associated heating, ventilation, and air-conditioning (HVAC) design.

3. Air Distribution

3.1 System Requirements

a. Based on size and complexity of the building, air distribution systems may consist of air-handling units (AHUs), central direct expansion (DX) air conditioners, variable refrigerant flow (VRF) systems, or built-up central air-handling systems, with the decision based on the life cycle cost analysis (LCCA) and whole-building cost analysis.

b. AHUs provide flexible zone control through use of multiple smaller units. AHU casing construction details are included in table 13.2 at the end of this chapter. Central systems shall incorporate components similar in quality to those in table 13.2.

c. Systems shall be designed for turndown to ensure that short cycling during shoulder seasons does not occur.

d. Design air ventilation rates shall comply with the latest adopted version of ASHRAE Standard 62.1, Ventilation for Acceptable Indoor Air Quality, and California Code of Regulations, title 24. Thermal comfort conditions shall comply with the version of ASHRAE Standard 55, Thermal Environmental Conditions for Human Occupancy, referenced in the California code year in effect at the time of schematic design. Demand control ventilation using carbon dioxide (CO_2) sensors per occupancy zone shall be applied appropriately as defined by the building code occupancy classification per individual programmed space.

e. Demand ventilation controls shall maintain CO_2 concentrations less than or equal to 600 parts per million plus the outdoor air CO_2 concentration in all rooms that require CO_2 sensors by code.

f. If used, variable air volume (VAV) terminal boxes selected shall be pressure independent and certified to Air-Conditioning, Heating, and Refrigeration Institute's (AHRI) Standard 880. VAV terminal boxes and their associated building management system (BMS) controllers shall be located in an accessible manner for replacement and maintenance. VAV terminal boxes shall incorporate a Belimo or approved equal direct digital control actuator, including a five-year warranty.

DIVISION TWO: TECHNICAL CRITERIA

11 Architectural Criteria
12 Structural Criteria
13 MECHANICAL CRITERIA
13.A Objectives
13.B HVAC Criteria
13.C Humidification and Water Treatment
13.D Mechanical Requirements for Specific Spaces
13.E Plumbing and Piping Systems Criteria
13.F Insulation
13.G Thermometers and Gauges
14 Building Management System Criteria
15 Electrical Criteria
16 Lighting Criteria
17 Network and Communication Systems
18 Audiovisual Systems
19 Acoustical Criteria
20 Fire Protection Criteria

Important References

ASHRAE Standards 55, 62.1, and 90.1

EISA = Energy Independence and Security Act of 2007

NEC = National Electrical Code

NEMA = National Electrical Manufacturers Association

NFPA = National Fire Protection Association

SMACNA = Sheet Metal and Air Conditioning Contractors' National Association

Table 13.1 Indoor Design Conditions

ROOM TYPE	HEATING DESIGN TEMP. (°F)	COOLING DESIGN TEMP. (°F)	DESIGN OCCUPANT DENSITY	DESIGN POWER DENSITY
Lobby	72	75	per Cal. Mech. Code	W/SF
Conference rooms	72	75	per Cal. Mech. Code	2.0 W/SF
Offices	72	75	per Cal. Mech. Code	1.2 W/SF
Break rooms	72	75	per Cal. Mech. Code	1.5 W/SF
Waiting rooms	72	75	20 SF/person	1.5 W/SF
Public gallery/passage	72	75	50 SF/person	0.5 W/SF
Public toilet rooms*	72	75	indirect through exhaust makeup	0.5 W/SF
Holding cell/room*	72	75	per Cal. Mech. Code	0.5 W/SF
Transformer/ switchgear room	NA	95	NA (normally unoccupied)	project specific
IDF rooms	NA	75	NA (normally unoccupied)	project specific
MDF room	NA	75	NA (normally unoccupied)	project specific
UPS room	77	77	NA (normally unoccupied)	project specific
Janitor closets*	NA	75	indirect through exhaust makeup	NA
Copy rooms	72	75	indirect through exhaust makeup	project specific
Kitchens	72	75	per Cal. Mech. Code	2.5 W/SF
Coffee stations	72	75	per Cal. Mech. Code	1.5 W/SF
Storage (<150 SF)	NA	NA	NA	NA
Storage (≥150 SF)	NA	NA	150 SF/person	NA
Courtroom	72	75	per Cal. Mech. Code	0.5 W/SF
Jury services	72	75	20 SF/person	1.0 W/SF
Jury deliberation rooms	72	75	20 SF/person	2.0 W/SF
Judicial chambers	72	75	150 SF/person	1.2 W/SF

Notes:

This table lists initial suggested values only—actual values to be verified by design team. Suggestions do not override code requirements. Suggestions are intended for preliminary HVAC analysis only and may differ from those used by other design disciplines. Suggestions are independent of task lights and audiovisual loads.

*Once-through air only (no return air).

IDF = intermediate distribution frame.

MDF = main distribution frame

NA = not applicable.

UPS = uninterruptible power supply.

W/SF = watts per square foot.

g. All terminal ceiling diffusers or booted-plenum slot diffusers shall be specifically designed for VAV air distribution. Booted-plenum slots shall not exceed 5′ in length unless more than one source of supply is provided. Diffuser spacing selection shall be based on the predominant air volume range. Exhaust fans are not permitted above courtrooms. To meet the minimum required ceiling heights in courtrooms, the HVAC equipment shall be located so that there are no access panels in the courtroom and the space above the courtroom ceiling is predominantly free and clear from items needing access. Remote operators shall be provided on any balance dampers within the courtroom. Coordinate above-ceiling space with 3-D modeling prior to construction to ensure the required ceiling height is maintained.

h. Air Diffusion Performance Index values shall remain above the specified manufacturer's minimum. Diffusers shall be high-entrainment type (3:1 minimum) to maximize air velocity at low flow rates.

i. All motors that are operated with variable-speed drives shall be provided with inverter-duty motors with Class F insulation per the National Electrical Code (NEC) and the National Fire Protection Association (NFPA) and include motor shaft grounding assemblies.

j. Ductwork construction shall comply with Sheet Metal and Air Conditioning Contractors' National Association (SMACNA) duct construction standards and be installed per the SMACNA duct cleanliness standard for new construction. The ductwork shall meet the acoustical requirements outlined in table 13.3 per maximum allowable duct velocities.

Table 13.3 Maximum Allowable Duct Velocities

NOISE CRITERIA	MAXIMUM ALLOWABLE DUCT VELOCITY (FPM)	
	MAIN	BRANCH
20	1,000	500
25	1,000	800
30	1,300	1,100
35	1,500	1,200
40	1,800	1,400

fpm = feet per minute.

k. Leakage testing shall be in compliance with the California Mechanical Code. The engineer of record shall identify specific sections to be tested. A minimum of 10 percent of the total installed duct area (SF) shall be tested. Leakage testing shall be performed in accordance with the SMACNA *HVAC Air Duct Leakage Test Manual* on all ductwork associated with the smoke control system (if applicable). Use minimum SMACNA seal class A for all ductwork.

l. Ductwork shall be fabricated from galvanized steel, stainless steel, and/or aluminum sheet metal, depending on applications. Use low–volatile organic compound duct sealant with U.S. Environmental Protection Agency listings. A factory-made Underwriters Laboratories' (UL) Class 1–listed acoustical flex duct may be used for low-pressure ductwork connected to air devices and shall be installed in accordance with SMACNA HVAC Duct Construction Standards: Metal and Flexible.

DIVISION TWO: TECHNICAL CRITERIA
11 Architectural Criteria
12 Structural Criteria
13 MECHANICAL CRITERIA
13.A Objectives
13.B HVAC Criteria
13.C Humidification and Water Treatment
13.D Mechanical Requirements for Specific Spaces
13.E Plumbing and Piping Systems Criteria
13.F Insulation
13.G Thermometers and Gauges
14 Building Management System Criteria
15 Electrical Criteria
16 Lighting Criteria
17 Network and Communication Systems
18 Audiovisual Systems
19 Acoustical Criteria
20 Fire Protection Criteria

Important References

ASHRAE Handbook—Fundamentals

The climate zone at the project location, as assigned by the California Energy Commission's California Building Climate Zones, should be the basis for all calculations, as defined in the California Code of Regulations, title 24.

For information on life cycle cost analysis, see chapter 1, General Principles.

m. For plenum and ducted returns, no more than 1,000 cubic feet per minute (cfm) shall be collected at any one return grille. When deemed necessary, all plenums shall be sealed airtight with respect to the exterior wall and roof slab or ceiling deck to avoid creating negative air pressure in exterior wall cavities that would allow intrusion of untreated outdoor air. All ductwork shall be insulated per the California Energy Code.

n. Before building occupancy and after all interior finishes have been installed, new filtration media shall be installed and a building flush-out performed as outlined in the LEED Indoor Environmental Quality (EQ) credit: Indoor Air Quality Assessment. In addition, perform the air testing outlined in the credit and provide to the Judicial Council the results that satisfy the credit requirements.

o. All systems shall be tested and balanced by an Associated Air Balance Council (AABC)– or National Environmental Balancing Bureau (NEBB)–certified balance company.

3.2 Building Pressurization

Building pressurization shall meet the requirements of the latest version of *ASHRAE Handbook—Fundamentals*. Design the system to provide the required continuous positive pressure with respect to the outdoor environment. Principal spaces are to maintain positive pressure relative to circulation spaces; circulation spaces, building entrances, and public lobbies are to maintain positive pressure relative to the outdoors. Verification of required building pressurization shall be documented during the commissioning phase of building construction.

3.3 Air Intake and Exhaust

The placement, location, and quantity of outside air must comply with California Code of Regulations, title 24; ASHRAE Standard 62.1, Ventilation for Acceptable Indoor Air Quality; and the building security requirements. For security requirements, see chapter 4, Courthouse Security, and chapter 8, In-Custody Defendant Receiving, Holding, and Transport. The intake design shall minimize the entrainment of exhaust air. The outside air intake louvers shall be drainable stationary storm louver type following American National Standards Institute and Air Movement and Control Association (ANSI/AMCA) Standard 500-L. Inactive sections of intake and exhaust louvers shall be blanked off to eliminate outside air and particulate ingress into the building. Airflow stations shall be designed for and installed to directly measure the minimum required outside airflow into each air-handling unit (see section 13.G below). Furthermore, airflow station measurement and data shall be directly trended at the BMS front end for ongoing data analysis.

4. Internal Heat Gains

a. Refer to table 13.1 for target values unless noted otherwise.

b. Determine internal heat gains from all appliances (electrical, gas, or steam) by manufacturer-provided heat gain and usage schedules, if available; heat gains from office equipment shall be based on manufacturer-provided data, if available, or the latest edition of *ASHRAE Handbook—Fundamentals*.

c. Refer to electrical documents for the design lighting power density to be included in the associated HVAC load calculations.

5. Diversity

The designer should use diversity in sizing a system's peak capacities. The diversity factor shall be adjusted to the specific project. Diversity is defined as the concurrent zone peak loads compared to the sum of all peak building zone loads. Although the Judicial Council cannot suggest specific diversity criteria for the coincidence of weather (design cooling days), occupancy, court operation, judges' chambers, lighting, and other functions within the building, several general ideas are suggested.

a. Diversity at the AHU (system) level is appropriate and should be taken to prevent oversizing of systems.

b. This diversity should not be taken at the zone level.

c. Greater diversity should be considered at the central plant or with applications of district energy.

d. All lighting will not be assumed to be energized at the same time throughout the entire building. At least 10 percent of the lights can be assumed to be off on a system basis. Advanced lighting controls, detailed in chapter 16, Lighting Criteria, can generate even more significant savings.

e. Court operation and occupancy will vary significantly on a monthly and weekly basis. The impact of varied occupancy should be considered based on past courthouse occupancy and performance data and project team judgment. Occupancy data shall be leveraged to determine diversity for all applicable systems before HVAC system design.

f. Judicial chambers will likely be generally occupied, yet conference functions that support the chambers will generally share occupancy. An office occupant may also be a conference participant, so avoid double counting.

g. Simultaneous operation of all these individual diversified operations should also be considered (further combined diversity).

6. Air-Conditioning Cooling Systems

6.1 Chilled Water Systems

a. District-chilled water, if available, shall be used if it is determined to be economical and reliable through a life cycle cost analysis. In the LCCA, use high-efficiency chillers that do not exceed the minimum requirements of Table 110.2-D in the California Energy Code. Chiller refrigerant leak detection systems shall be connected to the BMS with remote alarms.

b. The cooling system shall consist of multiple units of each equipment type, and the total plant capacity shall be 120 percent of the building cooling design load. If systems are deemed to serve critical areas, the system design shall be based on an N+1 approach as described in section 13.A.5 above. Redundancy analysis shall be provided for review and approval by the Judicial Council for any proposed chilled water system that will use an ice storage system. The redundancy analysis shall demonstrate that the combined cooling capacity of the chiller and the ice storage system provides a minimum of 60 percent of the design load across multiple ice-charging cycles, assuming one chiller is nonoperational because of maintenance.

c. All chillers in a facility shall use the same nonproprietary refrigerant and avoid use of refrigerants that do not comply with California Air Resources Board initiatives and regulations. If the operating conditions dictate, propylene glycol may be used at the required concentrations to prevent freezing. When

DIVISION TWO: TECHNICAL CRITERIA
11 Architectural Criteria
12 Structural Criteria
13 MECHANICAL CRITERIA
13.A Objectives
13.B HVAC Criteria
13.C Humidification and Water Treatment
13.D Mechanical Requirements for Specific Spaces
13.E Plumbing and Piping Systems Criteria
13.F Insulation
13.G Thermometers and Gauges
14 Building Management System Criteria
15 Electrical Criteria
16 Lighting Criteria
17 Network and Communication Systems
18 Audiovisual Systems
19 Acoustical Criteria
20 Fire Protection Criteria

propylene glycol is used, include a leak detection system. Ethylene glycol shall not be used. Chillers shall be equipped with variable-frequency drives when deemed appropriate based on the California Energy Commission's California Building Climate Zones, as defined in California Code of Regulations, title 24. The design chilled water temperature difference (delta T) across the chillers' evaporators shall be at least 14 degrees Fahrenheit (°F). Variable-supply air set point control (see chapter 14, section 14.D.1) shall be applied to reduce loads and increase the efficiency of the chiller plant.

d. Chillers shall be equipped with flow switches to confirm adequate flow through the equipment and verify proper unit operation. Electronic flow switches shall be used instead of mechanical switches due to their increased reliability and lack of moving parts. Coordinate with the design team to ensure that end users are provided with an effective method to verify chiller operation.

e. All chillers shall be piped to a common chilled water header with provisions to sequence chillers online to match the load requirements. All required auxiliaries for the chiller systems shall be provided with expansion tanks, heat exchangers, water treatment, and air separators. When multiple chillers are used, automatic shutoff valves shall be provided for each chiller. Chiller condenser piping shall be equipped with recirculation and bypass control valves as needed to maintain incoming condenser water temperature within the chiller manufacturer's minimum requirement.

f. Multiple cell cooling towers and isolated basins are required. The number of cells and associated capacity shall match the number of chillers. Supply piping shall be connected to a manifold to allow for any combination of equipment use. Multiple towers shall have equalization piping between cell basins. Equalization piping shall include isolation valves between each cell. Supply and return lines for each cell shall be provided with automatic isolation valves. Provide a centrifugal separation filtration system in areas deemed subject to airborne debris. Cooling towers shall have ladders and platforms as required for inspections and replacement of components. Provide stainless steel basins to reduce life cycle cost based on local water quality.

g. Cooling tower sizing shall be on a life cycle basis, taking into consideration operational energy and water consumption rather than first cost. Cooling tower controls shall include a pH (acidity) and conductivity controller connected to the water treatment system by adding chemicals that regulate the pH in the system to prevent corrosion and scaling and facilitate water conservation through increased cycles of concentration. Flow meters connected to the BMS control system must be specified on makeup and blowdown water lines.

h. Pumps shall be of a centrifugal type and generally selected to operate at 1,750 revolutions per minute (rpm) maximum peak efficiency. Both partial and full load must fall on stable areas of the pump curve. The number of primary chilled water and condenser water pumps shall be equal to the number of chillers. The specified pump motors shall not overload throughout the entire range of the pump curve. The pump associated with each individual cooling tower and chiller group shall be arranged with piping, valves, and controls to allow for independent, parallel operation of each chiller cooling tower group.

i. All motors that are operated with variable-speed drives shall be inverter-duty motors with Class F insulation per NEC and NFPA and include motor shaft grounding assemblies.

j. Chilled water systems shall be submetered via British thermal unit (Btu) meters that report data back to the central BMS front end for ongoing data analysis. Real-time Btu data shall be exposed on the front end for use by building engineers.

6.2 Direct Expansion Systems

Direct expansion (DX) evaporators with condensing units are not allowed unless, in the schematic design phase, the chilled water system application does not have a favorable life cycle cost or the application requires a DX approach. The HVAC designer is required to first consider and rule out using chilled water concepts before specifying any high-efficiency DX refrigeration equipment. Water conservation efforts shall be incorporated into the LCCA when considering system alternatives.

6.3 Alternative Systems

Alternative solutions may be provided that meet the requirements and the associated energy goals of the current California Building Code. Neither active nor passive radiant chilled beams, panels, or sails are permitted.

7. Heating Systems

7.1 Requirements per Heating System

a. Water heating systems: Low-temperature water heating is the preferred system. Supply temperatures and the corresponding temperature drops for space-heating hot water systems must be set to best suit the equipment being served. The temperature drop for terminal unit heating coils shall be 30°F–40°F. Design water velocity in piping so as not to exceed 8′ per second, or design pressure friction loss in piping systems not to exceed 4′ of head loss per 100′ of pipe, whichever pipe size is larger, and not less than 4′ per second.

   Any gas boilers for hydronic water-heating applications shall be condensing type, with the working pressure and maximum temperature limitation stated, and installed in a dedicated mechanical room with all provisions made for chimney, flue stack, and combustion air. In general, three boilers each, sized for 40 percent of the full cold-start preheating load, shall be provided. For installations where the ASHRAE winter design is 34°F and above, a minimum of two equally sized units at 55 percent of the full cold-start preheating load shall be provided. The designer shall provide load calculations including safety factors used in final equipment selections.

   All boiler emissions shall comply with local air quality regulations. The products of combustion from fuel-fired appliances and equipment shall be terminated to the outside of the building through the use of chimneys. All boilers shall be piped to a common heating water header, with provisions to sequence boilers online to match the load requirements. All required auxiliaries for the boiler systems shall be provided with expansion tanks, heat exchangers, water treatment, and air separators. Variable-supply air set point control shall be applied to reduce loads and increase efficiency of the boiler plant. See chapter 14, Building Management System Criteria. Rooms housing combustion boilers or water heaters shall provide combustion air openings per California Mechanical Code, chapter 7, Combustion Air.

b. Radiant heating systems: Radiant heating systems are not permitted.

DIVISION TWO: TECHNICAL CRITERIA

11 Architectural Criteria
12 Structural Criteria
13 MECHANICAL CRITERIA
13.A Objectives
13.B HVAC Criteria
13.C Humidification and Water Treatment
13.D Mechanical Requirements for Specific Spaces
13.E Plumbing and Piping Systems Criteria
13.F Insulation
13.G Thermometers and Gauges
14 Building Management System Criteria
15 Electrical Criteria
16 Lighting Criteria
17 Network and Communication Systems
18 Audiovisual Systems
19 Acoustical Criteria
20 Fire Protection Criteria

Vibration and Acoustical Isolation

Refer to chapter 19, Acoustical Criteria, which shall govern in case of conflict. Refer to and incorporate the basic design techniques described in *ASHRAE Handbook—HVAC Applications.*

c. Fin-tube heating systems: When fin-tube radiation is used, the design shall incorporate individual zone thermostatic control capable of connecting to a self-contained microprocessor and an HVAC building control system.

d. Variable-volume reheat boxes: A variable air volume system with hot water reheat shall be used for zone applications. VAV shutoff boxes that incorporate zone occupancy per California Code of Regulations, title 24, may be used with air distribution systems to eliminate the need for reheat.

e. Variable volume with fan-powered boxes: Fan-powered boxes may have water-heating coils for maintaining temperature conditions in the space under partial load conditions.

f. Water coils for heating: All zones on the perimeter and top floor of the building shall contain water coils for heating.

g. Alternative systems: Other systems may be considered that meet current code and the energy goals of the California Building Code.

7.2 General Requirements

a. The Judicial Council requires low-temperature (condensing) hot water heating systems, with the lowest working pressure suitable for the system and a maximum temperature limitation of 160°F.

b. When steam is furnished to the building, it must be converted to hot water with a submetered heat exchanger in the mechanical room near the entrance into the building. Steam heating is discouraged inside the building, other than the conversion of steam to hot water in the mechanical room. The designer must investigate the use of district steam condensate for preheating domestic hot water.

c. Hot water and chilled water air systems must use a four-pipe main distribution system. Dual-temperature piping systems are not permitted.

8. Vibration and Acoustical Isolation

a. Mechanical room isolation: Acoustical isolation floors shall be considered for major mechanical rooms located in penthouses or at intermediate levels of mid-rise construction.

b. Shaft requirements: Mechanical shafts and chases shall be closed at top and bottom, as well as at the entrance to the mechanical room. Any piping and ductwork shall be isolated as it enters the shaft to prevent propagation of vibration to the building structure. All openings for ducts and piping must be sealed. Shafts dedicated to gas piping must be ventilated.

c. Isolators: Isolators shall be specified by type and deflection, not by isolation efficiency. Specifications shall be worded so that isolation performance becomes the responsibility of the equipment supplier.

d. Vibration control: Concrete inertia bases shall be delineated for reciprocating equipment and all pumps unless equipment is installed on slab on grade.

e. Ductwork: The design shall delineate the methods to reduce fan-generated noise immediately outside any mechanical room. The ductwork design shall appropriately address the airborne-generated equipment noise, equipment vibration, duct-borne fan noise, duct breakout noise, airflow-generated noise, and duct-borne crosstalk noise. All ductwork connections to equipment having motors or rotating components shall be made with aligned, double-coated, UL-labeled, flexible connectors at least 4.5″ long.

f. Piping hangers and isolation: The design shall analyze the need for isolation hangers for piping to address acoustical and expansion concerns. Piping hangers and supports shall be designed in accordance with the applicable codes.

g. Noise control in VAV systems: The system-generated sound levels at maximum flow must be carefully evaluated to ensure that acoustical performance conforms to project-specific targets. Inlet guide vanes shall be evaluated for noise in their most restricted position. Duct noise control shall be achieved by controlling air velocity using sound attenuators. Terminal units shall be selected so that design air volume is approximately three-quarters of the terminal box's maximum capacity. Volume dampers in terminal units shall be located at least 6″ from the closest diffuser, and the use of grille-mounted balance dampers shall be restricted except in applications with accessibility problems and only on approval of the Judicial Council.

h. VAV box sound attenuation: The VAV boxes and associated plenums shall incorporate acoustical liner. The attenuation materials shall be appropriately sealed and either covered with reinforced, aluminum-laminated foil liner or coated with water-based sealant tested and approved for air erosion per UL 181 or ASTM C1071. The materials shall not promote or support the growth of fungi or bacteria, in accordance with UL 181 and ASTM G21. All exposed edges shall be sealed with sealant approved per NFPA 90A.

13.C HUMIDIFICATION AND WATER TREATMENT

1. Humidifiers and Direct Evaporative Coolers

Courthouse spaces shall not be humidified. Direct evaporative coolers are not permitted because of maintenance and room moisture content concerns, unless approved by the Judicial Council. HVAC systems implementing an evaporative cooler to condition electrical rooms shall use only indirect units to eliminate the possibility of water carryover in the HVAC system, which can damage electrical equipment.

2. Relative Humidity Controls Criteria

a. Summer: Unless noted to the contrary in the project program, do not directly control inside relative humidity. Dehumidification is a by-product of the cooling process.

b. Winter: Do not add moisture to the airstream. When the program document indicates that humidification in the winter is required, the humidification equipment shall be sized to avoid condensation on inside surfaces, whether visible or concealed.

3. Water Treatment

a. A water treatment specialist must design the water treatment for closed and open hydronic systems with consideration of the operational and maintenance needs of all system equipment, including such components as boilers, chillers, cooling towers, other heat exchangers, pumps, and piping. The design must inhibit biological growth, address dissolved solids and scaling, and provide corrosion protection. A cost-benefit analysis shall be performed and evaluated with the Judicial Council to determine water treatment system alternatives and the use of water softeners to provide clean and safe potable water that will not negatively impact the approved infrastructure. If included, the water treatment system cannot be removed or value engineered later during construction. Before design of the water treatment system, confirm pH, free chlorine, alkalinity, total dissolved solids, iron content, soluble copper, aerobic plate, and industry standards for *Legionella* management with the Judicial Council.

DIVISION TWO: TECHNICAL CRITERIA
11 Architectural Criteria
12 Structural Criteria
13 MECHANICAL CRITERIA
13.A Objectives
13.B HVAC Criteria
13.C Humidification and Water Treatment
13.D Mechanical Requirements for Specific Spaces
13.E Plumbing and Piping Systems Criteria
13.F Insulation
13.G Thermometers and Gauges
14 Building Management System Criteria
15 Electrical Criteria
16 Lighting Criteria
17 Network and Communication Systems
18 Audiovisual Systems
19 Acoustical Criteria
20 Fire Protection Criteria

Configure mechanical rooms with clear circulation aisles and adequate access to all equipment. The mechanical rooms shall have adequate doorways or areaways and staging areas to permit the replacement and removal of equipment without the need to demolish walls or relocate other equipment.

b. As part of the water treatment plan, coupon racks or an equivalent electronic monitoring system for corrosion in condenser water loops, heating hot water loops, and the building main chilled water loop shall be specified. The type and manufacturer of the proposed coupon racks to be installed shall be approved by the Judicial Council. The minimum quantity of coupons and frequency of inspections shall be described in the water treatment plan. Molybdenum shall not be used in Judicial Council buildings.

c. At a minimum, two coupon racks shall be installed for each loop and used to monitor mild steel and copper.

d. The methods used to treat the system makeup water shall have prior success in existing facilities on the same municipal water supply and follow the guidelines outlined in *ASHRAE Handbook—HVAC Applications*. The use of nonchemical water treatment is not permitted.

13.D MECHANICAL REQUIREMENTS FOR SPECIFIC SPACES

1. General Requirements

a. For security equipment, see chapter 4, Courthouse Security. For telecommunications equipment rooms, see chapter 17, Network and Communication Systems.

b. Negatively pressurize holding areas with regard to adjacent spaces and exhaust directly outdoors. If a branch serves an I-3 area, then that branch shall not serve any adjacent area outside of the I-3 holding area.

c. Secure mechanical system diffusers and grilles in public and staff areas from tampering, particularly in areas that provide some degree of seclusion and privacy (restrooms, attorney-client visitation rooms, etc.). Maximum-security detention-type grilles, secured with tamperproof fasteners, must be provided at all areas accessible to prisoners.

d. If required by the risk assessment, provide mailrooms with once-through air that is 100 percent exhausted from the facility. Mailrooms shall be maintained under a negative-pressure condition relative to surrounding spaces.

e. Do not locate water lines directly above motor control centers, panels, or disconnect switches, as required by code. The mechanical rooms shall have sloped floors with floor drains in proximity to the equipment served.

f. Do not install water lines in the ceiling or overhead in electrical rooms, except for fire sprinkler piping protecting the room or chilled water and condenser water piping serving the dedicated cooling equipment in the room.

g. Do not install water lines in the ceiling or overhead in communication rooms. See chapter 20, section 20.B.11.

h. For elevator machine rooms, provide a dedicated cooling or ventilating system to maintain elevator machine room temperature as required by geographical location.

i. For emergency generator rooms, design the environmental systems to meet the requirements of NFPA 110 (Standard for Emergency and Standby Power Systems) and the combustion air requirements of the equipment to remove heat gain from equipment operation. The air supply and exhaust shall be located so that air does not get contaminated. Refer to chapter 15, Electrical Criteria, for generator requirements.

j. For UPS-designated battery rooms, design space to accommodate battery and exhaust requirements per code.

k. Design the entrances and exits at loading docks and service entrances to reduce infiltration and collection of outside debris. Loading docks must be maintained at negative pressure relative to the rest of the building. Enclosed vehicle sally ports shall be ventilated to prevent buildup of engine exhaust fumes and transferring of fumes into the building. Sally ports shall be equipped with ventilation fans controlled by a carbon monoxide detection and control system to automatically purge the sally port when unsafe levels of carbon monoxide are detected. The carbon monoxide sensors shall be uniformly located throughout the enclosed space and near each stairwell or exit. They shall be certified by the manufacturer to be accurate within 5 percent of measurement, factory calibrated to drift no more than 5 percent per year, and require calibration no more frequently than once a year.

l. Design janitor and housekeeping closets to maintain negative pressure in the rooms relative to the surrounding spaces.

m. Install a localized exhaust adjacent to reproduction machinery in all dedicated high-volume copy rooms, which shall be negative in pressure to the surrounding areas.

2. Criteria for Mechanical Spaces

Service access shall be provided for equipment per manufacturer's recommendations. Access doors or panels shall be readily operable and sized to allow full access. Access doors and panels in courtrooms must be positioned so as not to impede judicial proceedings. Make provisions for removing and replacing major equipment over the life of the building without damage to the structure. Provide adequate access to all devices with maintenance service requirements. Provide pathways for all major equipment that cannot be maintained from floor level. Coordinate layout of equipment prior to construction. Provide additional floor space for future growth of 10 percent.

Specifically regarding housekeeping pads, they shall be at least 6″ wider on all sides than the equipment they support and a minimum height of 3-1/2″ above the roof level or finished floor. The pad shall be of adequate height to trap and drain condensate from heat transfer coils to the condensate drain.

13.E PLUMBING AND PIPING SYSTEMS CRITERIA

1. Pump Systems and Hydronic Heating Water

a. Each terminal unit or coil shall be provided with isolation valves on both supply and return lines and a flow-indicating balance valve on the return line. Isolation valves shall be provided on all major pipe branches, such as at each floor level, building wing, or mechanical room. Each pumping system shall be provided with a standby pump and configured for automatic lead/standby operation.

b. Each boiler shall be provided with a control and piping arrangement that protects the boiler from thermal shock.

c. Hydronic hot water space heating pumps shall be selected to operate at 1,750 rpm maximum peak efficiency. Pumps with speeds greater than or equal to 3,500 rpm shall not be selected unless project noise criteria are proven to be met with them running at high speed.

d. Variable-volume pumping systems with greater than 5 pump horsepower (HP) shall be provided for all secondary piping systems.

DIVISION TWO: TECHNICAL CRITERIA
11 Architectural Criteria
12 Structural Criteria
13 MECHANICAL CRITERIA
13.A Objectives
13.B HVAC Criteria
13.C Humidification and Water Treatment
13.D Mechanical Requirements for Specific Spaces
13.E Plumbing and Piping Systems Criteria
13.F Insulation
13.G Thermometers and Gauges
14 Building Management System Criteria
15 Electrical Criteria
16 Lighting Criteria
17 Network and Communication Systems
18 Audiovisual Systems
19 Acoustical Criteria
20 Fire Protection Criteria

e. Air separators and vents must be provided on hot water systems to remove accumulated air within the system. Automatic bleed valves shall be used only in accessible spaces in mechanical rooms where they can be observed by maintenance personnel, and they must be piped directly to open drains.

f. Manual bleed valves shall be used at terminal units and coils. Likewise, system drains shall be provided at the main system low points of the heating system and each heating coil.

2. Piping Systems

All piping systems shall be designed and sized in accordance with *ASHRAE Handbook—Fundamentals* and *ASHRAE Handbook—HVAC Systems and Equipment*.

a. Materials acceptable for piping systems are black steel and copper.

b. Stainless steel is an acceptable material for domestic water lines 6″ and larger. Connection points where the stainless steel connects to piping or fittings composed of other metals shall have dielectric corrosion protection.

c. Press-connect fittings such as ProPress or the equivalent may be used as long as they meet all other applicable code and standards requirements. When using such fittings, they shall be installed per the manufacturer's instructions, including cutting and chamfering the pipe square and fully inserting it into the fitting before pressing occurs.

d. No polyvinyl chloride (PVC), cross-linked polyethylene (PEX), or other types of plastic pipe are permitted within the building.

e. Low-loss design principles shall be followed.

3. Piping Accessories

3.1 Isolation of Piping at Equipment

Isolation valves, shutoff valves, bypass circuits, flanges, and unions shall be provided as necessary for piping at equipment to facilitate equipment repair and replacement. Equipment requiring isolation includes boilers, chillers, pumps, coils, terminal units, and heat exchangers. Isolation valves shall be provided on all major pipe branches, such as at each floor level, building wing, or bank of fixtures.

3.2 Piping System and Equipment Identification

All pipes, valves, and equipment in mechanical rooms, shafts, ceilings, and other spaces accessible to maintenance personnel must be identified with color-coded bands and permanent tags indicating the system type and direction of flow for piping systems or type and number for equipment per ANSI color and labeling standards and the plumbing code. Gas piping and sprinkler lines must be identified as prescribed by the fire code.

4. Domestic Water Supply Systems

Water hammer arresters shall be provided per Plumbing Drainage Institute Standard PDI-WH-201 (Water Hammer Arrester) at every branch to multiple fixtures and on every floor for cold water. All plumbing fixtures and equipment that supply water pressure should be below the 80 psi maximum threshold per California Plumbing Code allowance (CPC, § 608.2), unless provided with a pressure-reducing device.

4.1 Cold Water Service

A pressurized piping distribution system shall incorporate a separate supply line from the tap in the existing outside water main to the equipment area inside the

building. The water meters furnished by the local department of public works shall meter water service inside the facility property boundaries. Incoming service shall have an approved backflow prevention device as required by code. The irrigation systems must be submetered for deduct billing of the sewer system.

The internal distribution system shall include equipment that is capable of maintaining adequate pressure and flow in all parts of the system in accordance with the plumbing code. A booster pumping system with minimum N+1 standby capacity shall be used if the water pressure is inadequate to provide sufficient pressure at the most remote and/or highest fixture. The water pressure at the fixture shall be in accordance with the plumbing code.

4.2 Hot Water Service

Heaters using natural gas, electricity, or steam as an energy source shall generate hot water. Selection shall be supported by an economic evaluation incorporating first cost, operating costs, and life cycle costs in conjunction with HVAC energy provisions. Domestic hot water supply shall be generated at 140°F and capable of providing tempered water to at least 121°F using a three-way mixing valve before supplying to all plumbing fixtures. Heat pump water heaters shall be used where possible to save energy. Circulation systems or temperature maintenance systems shall be included. Hot water shall be available at the farthest fixture from the heating source within 30 seconds of the time of operation. Where a hot water recirculation or electric resistance heat trace wire system is installed, the branch from the recirculating loop or electric resistance heat trace wire to the fixture should not exceed 25′ in length per the California Plumbing Code. The application of point-of-use instantaneous hot water generators is permitted for isolated or incidental use at terminal fixtures and single-accommodation toilet rooms.

5. Sanitary Waste and Vent Systems

5.1 Waste Pipe and Fittings

A complete sanitary collection system shall be provided for all plumbing fixtures, floor drains, and kitchen equipment designed in compliance with applicable codes and standards. Piping shall be cast iron soil pipe with hub and spigot or heavy-duty no-hub joints and fittings. Coordinate drain size with fire protection design (see chapter 20, Fire Protection Criteria) so full-flow drainage is provided. Gravity-drained waste piping shall slope at no less than 1/4″ per foot of run unless approved by the authority having jurisdiction because of site conditions.

5.2 Floor Drains

Floor drains shall be provided in all private and public toilet rooms except the detention cells, for which floor drains shall be provided outside each pair of detention cells. Floor drain strainers in secure areas shall have maximum 5/16″ opening sizes. Provide floor drains in mechanical equipment rooms, locations where condensate from equipment collects, locations where emergency showers or eyewashes drain to the floor, any wet rooms, and parking garages and ramps. Condensate piping shall be routed as required by the plumbing code. Refer to chapter 8, section 8.E.8, for more information regarding floor drains in holding areas. In general, floor drains shall have a cast iron body type with 6″ diameter stainless steel strainers for public toilets, kitchen areas, and other public areas. Provide vandal-proof fasteners for floor drains where there is public access. Equipment room areas shall require large-diameter cast iron strainers, and parking garages shall require large-diameter tractor grates.

DIVISION TWO: TECHNICAL CRITERIA

11 Architectural Criteria
12 Structural Criteria
13 MECHANICAL CRITERIA
13.A Objectives
13.B HVAC Criteria
13.C Humidification and Water Treatment
13.D Mechanical Requirements for Specific Spaces
13.E Plumbing and Piping Systems Criteria
13.F Insulation
13.G Thermometers and Gauges
14 Building Management System Criteria
15 Electrical Criteria
16 Lighting Criteria
17 Network and Communication Systems
18 Audiovisual Systems
19 Acoustical Criteria
20 Fire Protection Criteria

All insulation shall comply with fire and smoke hazard ratings indicated by ASTM Standard E84, the NFPA, and UL. Accessories such as adhesives, mastics, cements, and tapes shall have the same or better component ratings.

Drainage for ramps shall require either trench drains or roadway inlets when exposed to rainfall and connect only to the storm drainage system, unless otherwise required on a site-specific basis. Storm drainage and sanitary sewer drainage systems should be drained separately as required by the California Plumbing Code. An automatic trap primer system shall be provided for P traps, as required by the California Plumbing Code. Power for trap primers shall include a disconnect switch. Trap guards that are International Association of Plumbing and Mechanical Officials (IAPMO) listed per the plumbing code are also an acceptable means for trap protection.

5.3 Sanitary Waste Equipment

Specific drains in kitchen areas (not employee break rooms) shall discharge into a grease interceptor before connecting into the sanitary sewer in accordance with the requirements of the state health department and local authorities. Sinks with garbage disposals may not discharge into a grease interceptor. If a sink produces grease waste, it shall not have a garbage disposal. Floor drains or trench drains in garage locations are to discharge into sand oil interceptors, as required by the plumbing code.

5.4 Automatic Sewage Ejectors

Sewage ejectors shall be used only where gravity drainage is not possible. If sewage ejectors are required, only the lowest floors of the building shall be connected to them; fixtures on upper floors shall use gravity flow to the public sewer. Sewage ejectors shall be nonclog, screenless duplex pumps, with each discharge not less than 4″ in diameter. They shall be connected to the emergency power system, if available.

5.5 Rainwater Drainage System

Pipes and fittings shall be in compliance with local codes and sized based on local rainfall intensity. Roof drains shall be cast iron body type with high-dome grates and membrane-clamping rings that are manufactured as part of the assembly. Each roof drain shall have a separate overflow drain located adjacent to it. Overflow drains shall be the same drains as the roof drains except with a damming weir extension. Overflow drains shall route to discharge in an obvious location. Combination roof drain or overflow design is permissible per the California Plumbing Code for buildings that are three stories or taller.

5.6 Plumbing Fixtures

All plumbing fixtures and faucets shall be commercial grade and WaterSense labeled or equal. Provide automatic flush valves for urinals and water closets and automatic faucets in public toilet rooms. Sensors shall be self-powered hydroelectric type or have a minimum three-year battery operation life. For detention fixtures, see chapter 8, In-Custody Defendant Receiving, Holding, and Transport. Water closet carriers that are rated for 500 pounds shall be provided for all wall-mounted water closets. Floor-mounted carriers shall be provided for all wall-mounted urinals and lavatories. A hose bibb shall be provided in each multifixture restroom.

5.7 Leak Detection System

Provide leak detection and automatic water isolation capabilities for plumbing and hydronic systems based on available technology and overall cost-effectiveness. At a minimum, provide smart valves with integrated low-flow sensing at each building water service entrance. The system shall monitor incoming water flow through the BMS and compare flow conditions against programmed occupancy schedules.

Water flow detected outside of normal occupied periods shall initiate an alarm sequence. The system shall have the capability to automatically isolate the incoming water service upon detection of abnormal continuous flow conditions indicative of a potential leak.

5.8 Commissioning

Commissioning of all water systems shall be done per chapter 14, Building Management System Criteria.

6. Fuel Piping

6.1 Natural and Propane Gas Systems

a. Service entrance: Gas piping entering the building must be protected from accidental damage by vehicles, foundation settlement, or vibration. Where practical, the entrance shall be above grade and provided with a self-tightening swing joint before gas pipe enters the building. The provision of a seismic gas shutoff valve is not required for facilities that conform to the following provisions of the building and fire codes:

- The building structure has a one hour–rated classification.
- The building has an approved and operational fire sprinkler system.

b. Gas shall not be piped through confined spaces such as trenches or unventilated shafts. All spaces containing equipment such as gas-fired boilers, chillers, and generators shall be ventilated. Vertical shafts carrying gas piping shall be ventilated. Gas meters shall comply with local utility regulations.

6.2 Fuel Oil Systems

a. Aboveground fuel oil piping systems shall use at least schedule 40 black steel or black iron piping. Fittings shall be of the same grade as the pipe material. Valves shall be bronze, steel, or iron and may be screwed, welded, flanged, or grooved. Double-wall piping with a leak detection system shall be used for buried fuel piping. Duplex fuel oil pumps with basket strainers and exterior enclosures shall be used for pumping the oil to the fuel-burning equipment.

b. No underground fuel oil storage tanks shall be installed in a courthouse facility. Aboveground storage tanks shall be installed at ground level or higher whenever possible. The location of the storage tank's fuel delivery port shall provide a safe, protected location for fuel delivery vehicles to park and exit. The parking and work area for fuel deliveries shall have a concrete surface.

c. The fuel storage capacity of each generator system shall be determined by the emergency response plan requirements. Coordinate the fuel storage capacities with the requirements described in chapter 15, Electrical Criteria. The location of the generator system exhaust discharge shall be selected to minimize the potential of entrainment of exhaust fumes into the outside air intakes. Any additional external fuel tanks for the generator system shall be located adjacent to the generator in compliance with current and applicable fire code and UL listings for double-containment tanks.

13.F INSULATION

1. Piping Insulation

Insulation shall be provided on all piping systems in accordance with the California Energy Code or where condensation has the potential to form. Insulation that is subject to damage or

DIVISION TWO: TECHNICAL CRITERIA
11 Architectural Criteria
12 Structural Criteria
13 MECHANICAL CRITERIA
13.A Objectives
13.B HVAC Criteria
13.C Humidification and Water Treatment
13.D Mechanical Requirements for Specific Spaces
13.E Plumbing and Piping Systems Criteria
13.F Insulation
13.G Thermometers and Gauges
14 Building Management System Criteria
15 Electrical Criteria
16 Lighting Criteria
17 Network and Communication Systems
18 Audiovisual Systems
19 Acoustical Criteria
20 Fire Protection Criteria

Btu = British thermal unit

Cal/OSHA = Division of Occupational Safety and Health

CSA = Canadian Standards Association

dBA = decibels

EMT = electrical metallic tubing

EPDM = ethylene propylene diene monomer

fpm = feet per minute

SF/ft² = square feet

hr = hour

ID = inside diameter

MERV = minimum efficiency reporting value

TBD = to be determined

TEFC = totally enclosed, fan cooled

VFD = variable-frequency drive

VSD = variable-speed drive

WC = water column

reduction in thermal resistivity if wetted shall be enclosed with a vapor seal (such as a vapor barrier jacket).

Insulation assembly shall have zero permeability. All exposed piping up to 8′ above finished floor shall have PVC jacketing. All insulated piping exposed to the weather shall be protected with aluminum jacketing and sealed seams.

2. Duct Insulation

Insulation shall be provided on all duct systems in accordance with the California Energy Code. All duct insulation materials used as internal insulation exposed to the airstream shall be in accordance with UL 181 or ASTM C1071 erosion tests. The materials shall not promote or support the growth of fungi or bacteria. All exposed, externally insulated ductwork shall have sealed jacketing equal to Alumaguard. All concealed, externally insulated ductwork shall have foil face jacketing. Supply air duct insulation shall have a vapor barrier jacket. The insulation shall cover the duct system with a continuous, unbroken vapor seal. Insulation assembly shall have zero permeability.

All return air and exhaust air distribution systems shall be insulated if required by the California Energy Code. The insulation of return air and exhaust air distribution systems shall be evaluated for each project and each system to guard against condensation formation and heat gain or loss on a recirculating or heat recovery system and for acoustics.

3. Equipment Insulation

All equipment—including air-handling units, chilled and hot water pumps, and heat exchangers—must be insulated in accordance with the California Energy Code.

4. Thermal Pipe Insulation for Plumbing Systems

Insulate all sanitary sewer vents terminating through the roof, if outdoor conditions justify, to prevent condensation from forming. Include a vapor barrier jacket on this insulation. All horizontal storm water piping shall be insulated from the drain body to the first vertical drop, as required, to prevent condensation.

13.G THERMOMETERS AND GAUGES

Major mechanical equipment shall be provided with instrumentation that includes Instrument Society of America (ISA) data sheets and permanent test ports to verify critical parameters such as capacity, pressures, temperatures, and flow rates. Following are the general instrumentation requirements:

- Thermometers and pressure gauges are required on the suction and discharge of all pumps, chillers, boilers, heat exchangers, and cooling towers.
- To avoid pressure gauge tolerance errors, a single pressure gauge may be installed, with a valve to sense both supply and return conditions.
- Coils with flows of less than 10 gallons per minute shall have permanent provisions for use of portable instruments to check temperatures and pressures. Provide temperature gauges on coils equal to or greater than 10 gallons per minute.
- Differential static pressure gauge assemblies shall be placed across filters in air-handling units.

1. Airflow Measuring Devices

Airflow measuring grids are required for all outside air systems. Airflow measuring grids must be sized to give accurate readings at minimum flow.

2. Water Flow Measuring Devices

Manually read water flow devices shall be required for each chilled water refrigeration machine, hot water boiler, and pump, as well as connections to district energy plants. Individual water flow or energy-measuring devices shall be provided for chilled water lines serving computer rooms and chilled water and hot water lines to leased spaces and the central heating and chilled water system. These individual devices shall be capable of communicating with the BMS, and trending shall be enabled per chapter 14, Building Management System Criteria. Water flow and airflow measuring devices shall confirm or validate California Energy Code and ASHRAE Standard 90.1 requirements before occupancy.

Table 13.2 AHU Matrix (Airflow Ranges >5,000 to <60,000 cfm)

AHU COMPONENT ITEMS	MINIMUM REQUIREMENTS
Filters	ASHRAE 52.2, rigid or bag filters, MERV 13, low-pressure drop, rated at 500 fpm: 0.08″ WC clean, 1.0″ WC dirty, >150 grams minimum dirt-holding capacity
Prefilter frames	Front- or side-loading type, galvanized steel construction, incorporating closed-cell gasket edge with permanently attached 316 stainless steel hinged or locking clips that interlock with filter header, <5% bypass leakage at 2″ of static pressure
Filter media gaskets	Closed-cell neoprene or EPDM gasket, bonded to filter track header
Outside air makeup dampers	Low-leakage control dampers
Preheat coils (optional, TBD)	Copper tube / aluminum fins; >0.049″/0.0080″ >6 fins/inch; coastal locations to use copper fins
Preheat coil drain pan (optional, TBD)	Stainless steel 304, double sloped—no–standing water design, >1/4″/ft minimum slope, 16-gauge construction or approved equal
Steam humidifier section (optional, TBD)	Stainless steel 304 grid type (DriSteem, UltraSorb, or approved equal)
Supply and/or return fan systems	TBD by engineer
Supply fan motors: inverter duty motors	Motor shaft grounding protection; this requirement is to increase the service life of the motor-associated VFDs. EC motors are acceptable to meet the intent.
Supply fan type	Aluminum, steel, or composite airfoil type, AMCA certified—continuous welded scroll section, no bolts or screws protruding into the airstream
Fan wheel protection	Cal/OSHA General Industry Safety Orders, California Code of Regulations, title 8, article 41, section 3995 et seq.
Fan isolation (vertical/horizontal)	>2″ spring height with seismic-rated captive housing
Cooling coil tubes	Copper tubes ≥5/8″ diameter, 0.020″ min. tube wall
Cooling coil fins	Aluminum fins (min. 0.008″); coastal locations to use copper fins: maximum of 10 fins/inch
Coil casing	Stainless steel 304 construction
Coil access	Field cleanable and side access removable without cutting and welding

Table 13.2 continues on next page

DIVISION TWO: TECHNICAL CRITERIA
11 Architectural Criteria
12 Structural Criteria
13 MECHANICAL CRITERIA
13.A Objectives
13.B HVAC Criteria
13.C Humidification and Water Treatment
13.D Mechanical Requirements for Specific Spaces
13.E Plumbing and Piping Systems Criteria
13.F Insulation
13.G Thermometers and Gauges
14 Building Management System Criteria
15 Electrical Criteria
16 Lighting Criteria
17 Network and Communication Systems
18 Audiovisual Systems
19 Acoustical Criteria
20 Fire Protection Criteria

Table 13.2 AHU Matrix (Airflow Ranges >5,000 to <60,000 cfm) *continued*

AHU COMPONENT ITEMS	MINIMUM REQUIREMENTS
Cooling coil drain pan	Stainless steel 304, 18-gauge construction, double-sloped—no–standing water design, >1/5″/foot minimum slope, pan extends at >1″ downstream and >1″ upstream of the coil face sections or approved equal
AHU casing: double-walled construction, internal wall insulation, solid smooth interior, wipe-down, and cleanable surfaces	Aluminum or galvanized steel; manufacturer to provide calculations certifying that internal insulation meets or exceeds a 0.0769 Btu/hr/ft2/F; double-walled, thermal break construction with closed-cell polyurethane foam or mineral wool insulation and no exterior or interior caulked seams
AHU door access	Lockable doors
AHU door gaskets	Closed-cell neoprene or interlocking EPDM gaskets embedded along the entire door assembly
AHU flooring (1/8″ minimum thickness); design to prevent floor “oil canning” with 200-pound single-point load over 1 SF area	Aluminum with aluminum casing or galvanized steel with galvanized steel casing
AHU interior lighting	Interior light fixture, NEMA 3R housing with exterior-mounted control switch
Supply fan motors (TEFC) (1,200–1,800 rpm)	Label for inverter duty, high-efficiency, TEFC <2 HP; premium high-efficiency, TEFC >3 HP with sealed grease bearings. EC motors are acceptable to meet the intent.
Fan access for >20 HP motors	Overhead support beam to allow for the removal of motor and fan assemblies
AHU door access	Each section—double-gasket closed-cell neoprene
AHU under floor insulation	Equal to U-factor of walls
AHU minimum frame rail height	>3″ height, vertical flange-to-flange edges
AHU frame deflection	>1/240 of overall length
Cooling coil velocity (design)	<475 fpm
Filter face velocity (design)	<475 fpm
AHU casing leakage	≤1.5% of total design air flow
Smoke detector	UL/CSA-listed (low-velocity type 200–650 fpm)
AHU test ports	1/2″ ID port with threaded cap for each access door
AHU VSD inverter	Any of the following: Yaskawa, Danfoss, or ABB only with integral bypass assembly or approved equal
AHU drain pan void insulation	Expanded foam type or approved equal
AHU underfloor insulation	Compressed fiber or expanded foam type or approved equal
AHU bottom plate	TBD by engineer
Seismic design (California)	Zone TBD, C-factor >TBD
AHU airfoil dampers	Low-leakage type with shaft seals
AHU coil piping	Gasketed casing penetrations with identification labels
AHU cooling drain pan piping	Piped and sloped to exterior for connection

Table 13.2 continues on next page

Table 13.2 AHU Matrix (Airflow Ranges >5,000 to <60,000 cfm) *continued*

AHU COMPONENT ITEMS	MINIMUM REQUIREMENTS
AHU coil section drain piping	Floor drain capped and pipe and slope to exterior with thread cap
AHU sound criteria (at 1 meter)	<75 A-weighted dBA ±3
Electrical services	TBD, three phase; 120 volts, one phase
Electrical conduits	EMT or PVC
Electrical safety	Manual disconnect and emergency stop button per NEC
Electrical controls	Color-coded and numbered wiring between electrical components at designated interconnections for testing and factory commissioning (refer to chapter 14, Building Management System Criteria, for sample sensor list).
Warranty	18 months from date of shipment from factory; 12 months from startup; 8 months from completion of onsite acceptance testing
Factory cleaning and packaging for shipping	Surface wipe-down of interior, vacuum clean interior, provide protection of openings, exterior shrink-wrap for shipping, dedicated trucking to the job site

Notes:

AHU = air handling unit.

AMCA = Air Movement and Control Association International.

ASHRAE = American Society of Heating, Refigerating and Air-Conditioning Engineers.

Btu = British thermal unit.

Cal/OSHA = Division of Occupational Safety and Health.

cfm = cubic feet per minute

CSA = Canadian Standards Association.

dBA = decibels.

EC = electronically commutated.

EMT = electrical metallic tubing.

EPDM = ethylene propylene diene monomer.

fpm = feet per minute.

hr = hour.

ID = inside diameter.

MERV = minimum efficiency reporting value.

NEC = National Electrical Code.

NEMA = National Electrical Manufacturers Association.

PVC = polyvinyl chloride

SF/ft² = square feet.

TBD = to be determined.

TEFC = totally enclosed, fan cooled.

UL = Underwriters Laboratories.

VFD = variable-frequency drive.

VSD = variable-speed drive.

WC = water column.

DIVISION TWO: TECHNICAL CRITERIA

11 Architectural Criteria
12 Structural Criteria
13 MECHANICAL CRITERIA
13.A Objectives
13.B HVAC Criteria
13.C Humidification and Water Treatment
13.D Mechanical Requirements for Specific Spaces
13.E Plumbing and Piping Systems Criteria
13.F Insulation
13.G Thermometers and Gauges
14 Building Management System Criteria
15 Electrical Criteria
16 Lighting Criteria
17 Network and Communication Systems
18 Audiovisual Systems
19 Acoustical Criteria
20 Fire Protection Criteria

DIVISION TWO: TECHNICAL CRITERIA

14 BUILDING MANAGEMENT SYSTEM CRITERIA

SECTION	TOPIC	PAGE
14.A	Objectives	14.2
14.B	Building Management System	14.2
14.C	Level of Integration	14.4
14.D	Energy Conservation Design	14.4
14.E	Design Features	14.6
14.F	Commissioning	14.6



Superior Court of California, County of Imperial
El Centro, CA
© Jim Brady Architectural Photography

The criteria as outlined in this chapter shall be used in designing and selecting the building management system.

See chapter 17, Network and Communication Systems, for requirements to develop a technology program for each court building project.

The building management system device protocols and software will provide the following functions:

- Data collection;
- Data archiving;
- Data trending;
- Calendar scheduling;
- Programming and adjustment of system-functional set points;
- Automatic and manual control of addressable field devices;
- Access to building system flow diagrams with navigation using graphical user interface (GUI);
- Energy management monitoring and curtailment;
- Password reset; and
- Alarm-level notification.

14.A OBJECTIVES

This section identifies the criteria for systems that provide integrated control, monitoring, and communication of the heating, ventilation, and air-conditioning (HVAC) and plumbing systems within a court facility. The objectives of building automation are improved occupant comfort, efficient operation of building systems, reduction in energy consumption and operating costs, and improved life cycle of utilities.

The means and content of information to be reported remotely shall be discussed with the Judicial Council and the project team. For detailed Judicial Council requirements for the building management system (BMS), see tool 6, Building Management System Guidelines.

14.B BUILDING MANAGEMENT SYSTEM

1. General Requirements

a. The BMS shall be designed to automatically respond to local climatic conditions and energy efficiency opportunities by providing cost-effective energy conservation measures (ECMs) while ensuring set point control.

b. A new control system shall be nonproprietary for interoperability (meaning the ability of disparate control system devices to work together through the digital exchange of relevant information). The system will allow third-party protocol acceptance and processing of inputs from devices supplied by different vendors.

c. The BMS depends on local area support. Consult with the Judicial Council before determining the allowable manufacturers for each project site.

2. Minimum BMS Requirements

a. The facility local area network (LAN) and device level network shall be based on industry standard open platforms and use commonly available operation, management, and application software. All software packages and databases shall be licensed to the Judicial Council of California to allow unrestricted maintenance and operation of the BMS.

b. The BMS system shall use the LAN and building-provided network switches and infrastructure. All devices requiring a network connection shall be identified and added to the network port count matrix. A temporary network can be used to commission the system until the building network is active and connections can be transferred to the building infrastructure.

c. All communication products shall have a Building Automation and Control Network (BACnet) Testing Laboratories (BTL) mark certifying that the product was independently tested by a third-party testing facility and complies with conformance requirements.

d. Except for field-mounted instrumentation and devices, all BMS components shall be installed in field panels, also known as temperature control panels (TCPs). Panels and enclosures shall be located only within mechanical rooms or at approved locations.

e. The selection of normal or standby power supply facilities shall be based on project- and application-specific requirements. Coordinate with the electrical engineer to provide power supply sources of 120 volts of alternating current to all BMS field panel locations. In general, BMS panels monitoring designated building-critical alarm points shall be provided with standby power supplies. Where no standby power is available in the building, the tie-in panel shall be provided with a local uninterruptible power supply.

f. The BMS shall incorporate hardware and software resources sufficient to meet the functional requirements of the specifications.

g. BMS installation shall use standardized iconography as part of the graphical user interface (GUI). These graphical icons shall be based on the type of equipment, must be approved by the Judicial Council at the time of system design, and shall include the following, at a minimum:

- Equipment pictorial diagrams of network component devices to provide a single-line network diagram of equipment;
- Interactive, color-coordinated graphical status symbols;
- Component-level status notifications on demand;
- Execution of password-protected global and component-level commands;
- Multiple-level alarm notifications as defined by the user;
- Network component device fault detection and diagnosis system data and alarm collection;
- Energy and utility consumption data collection;
- Environmental data collection;
- Optional wireless communication of disparate and similar systems; and
- Optional seismic response data collection.

h. The BMS shall consist of a series of direct digital microprocessor controllers and have a central processing station, all interconnected by a high-speed LAN. The installation of a central processing station shall depend on building size, and this requirement shall be determined by the Judicial Council before the design proceeds.

i. The failure of a TCP shall not affect the operation of other operating TCPs. Where information in the failed TCP is used by other TCPs, the unavailability of the information shall be alarmed, and alternative control strategies shall be automatically initiated. All required logic programming and point database facilities associated with an individual system shall reside in the same TCP to which the system input/output points are terminated.

j. All nonproprietary energy management software and firmware shall be resident in field hardware and shall not depend on the operator's central control system terminal. Therefore, if the central control system fails, local control devices will continue to operate at the last control set point.

k. The building automation system (BAS) network shall consist of an independent Ethernet ring network topology support to provide a means for the Internet Protocol direct digital controllers (IP DDC) to continue to communicate, even if one controller or network segment within the ring network stops communicating. This scenario provides network reliability by mitigating a single point of failure in the IP/Ethernet network wiring. Refer to chapter 17, Network and Communication Systems, which discusses integrated network architecture to provide a common backbone platform for the integration of multiple systems. The control system design shall include a cabling network that complies with Telecommunications Industry Association's (TIA) 862, Structured Cabling Infrastructure Standard for Intelligent Building Systems. The LAN shall be Institute of Electrical and Electronics Engineers' (IEEE) 802.3 Standard for Ethernet over fiber or Category 6 cable with switches and routers that support 1000BASE-T gigabit Ethernet throughput.

DIVISION TWO: TECHNICAL CRITERIA
11 Architectural Criteria
12 Structural Criteria
13 Mechanical Criteria
14 BUILDING MANAGEMENT SYSTEM CRITERIA
14.A Objectives
14.B Building Management System
14.C Level of Integration
14.D Energy Conservation Design
14.E Design Features
14.F Commissioning
15 Electrical Criteria
16 Lighting Criteria
17 Network and Communication Systems
18 Audiovisual Systems
19 Acoustical Criteria
20 Fire Protection Criteria

l. A remote or local user, with proper username and password, shall have access to monitor or control the BMS functions via a graphical interface. Native internet browser–based user interfaces must be hypertext markup language (HTML) compliant and not require plug-ins (thin clients). The system shall be capable of supporting an unlimited number of clients using a standard secure web browser.

14.C LEVEL OF INTEGRATION

1. The building management system shall not control the fire alarm, security, lighting, or court business systems. These systems shall have independent control panels and network interfaces. The BMS shall, however, be able to monitor the status of these systems, as required, to prompt emergency operating modes of the HVAC system.
2. The control system shall be designed to use the available energy efficiently and assist in troubleshooting the malfunction conditions of numerous addressable and nonaddressable devices.
3. The programming of the control system shall be performed from the facility operation center or remotely via a web browser. Provide a field processing unit or web server to access the system via a web browser. Both require a password for access, and the latter shall have firewall protection.
4. The installed BMS shall comply with the American Society of Heating, Refrigerating and Air-Conditioning Engineers' (ASHRAE) Standard 135-2020, introducing BACnet/Secure Connect (SC), and the National Institute of Standards and Technology (NIST) Cybersecurity Framework.
5. The system must include the ability to log data created by user-selectable features.
6. The BMS shall have at least 25 percent spare memory capacity for future expansion.
7. All new systems shall be native protocol neutral and use no gateways for communication with controllers.

14.D ENERGY CONSERVATION DESIGN

ASHRAE Guideline 36, High-Performance Sequences of Operation for HVAC Systems, shall be used when developing building-specific sequences of operations (SOOs). The HVAC control algorithms shall include optimized, environmentally linked start/stop for equipment and be in accordance with the project's associated energy goals and the current California Energy Code, at a minimum. Commissioning of the SOOs on all applicable systems shall be done before building occupancy and follow LEED postoccupancy commissioning procedures.

The HVAC building control system shall have the capability to perform automatic measurement of energy consumption and monitor performance as described in this section.

1. Energy Measurement and Demand Response Capabilities

The HVAC building control system shall have the capability to perform automatic measurement of total energy consumption. The BMS shall have demand response capabilities as stipulated by the California Building Code and be able to:

a. Interact with HVAC equipment to demand-limit individual cooling equipment (e.g., chiller demand limiting);

b. Automatically adjust temperature set point by 4 degrees Fahrenheit in noncritical zones from a central point as necessary to demand-limit the HVAC system on receipt of a signal from the local utility provider;

c. Return the system to its original state following a demand response event;

d. Provide an adjustable rate of change and three operating states: automated demand shed, manual, and disabled; and

e. Through zone-level sequences of operations, exclude courtrooms, holding cells, and judges' chambers from being affected during demand response events.

2. Energy Management via Trending

Analytics are an important element in managing the efficiency of building systems. Therefore, the following are required as part of the BMS.

a. Electrical values such as volt (V), ampere (A), and kilowatt (kW) shall be monitored at equipment with motors.

b. Mechanical values such as chilled water flow, temperature, and pressure; hot water flow, temperature, and pressure; and equipment status and capacity shall be monitored, measured, and stored. These points shall be gathered from connected equipment (e.g., chiller reported values), or meters (e.g., Btu meters), as applicable.

c. All control points monitored and controlled via the system shall be archived in the local microprocessor controllers and set up to frequently be archived into the central processing station (e.g., front end) for indefinite historical data retrieval, with points-naming conventions that incorporate Project Haystack data tagging (as incorporated at time of writing in proposed ASHRAE Standard 223P, Designation and Classification of Semantic Tags for Building Data).

d. Energy management measurements shall have the capability to mark trends in both instantaneous (e.g., kW) and time-based (e.g., kWh) numbers for chillers, boilers, air-handling units, exhaust fans, and pumps.

e. Trending of all control points used in the SOO calculations shall be provided at 15-minute intervals. These points include but are not restricted to outside air temperature (OAT), supply air temperature (SAT), return air temperature (RAT), and chilled water supply and chilled water return temperatures (CWST and CWRT). During the commissioning phase of building construction, all points within the building shall be enabled for trending. All applicable points used in commissioning of the building preoccupancy shall be adjustable to five-minute intervals for the commissioning phase and future retrocommissioning activities. After the commissioning phase of construction is completed, trends shall be reset to 15-minute intervals for a list of points agreed upon in advance.

f. Trended points shall be exported in a single comma-separated, value-formatted text file (a .csv file) and written to a shared drive at one-week intervals. The collection of data shall be maintained indefinitely and archived annually and locally on the central control system.

g. Trending intervals shall be easily adjustable at the front end to at least 5-minute intervals for commissioning purposes and reenabled to 15-minute intervals thereafter. Commissioning activity trending shall be stored and labeled accordingly in the same manner as normal trending log files.

h. Trend files shall be accessible to court staff, commissioning agents, and service providers remotely. These files shall be downloadable from a remote location and through the user front end.

DIVISION TWO: TECHNICAL CRITERIA
11 Architectural Criteria
12 Structural Criteria
13 Mechanical Criteria
14 BUILDING MANAGEMENT SYSTEM CRITERIA
14.A Objectives
14.B Building Management System
14.C Level of Integration
14.D Energy Conservation Design
14.E Design Features
14.F Commissioning
15 Electrical Criteria
16 Lighting Criteria
17 Network and Communication Systems
18 Audiovisual Systems
19 Acoustical Criteria
20 Fire Protection Criteria

14.E DESIGN FEATURES

Specific control features and points shall be dictated by project-specific design requirements and SOOs.

1. The following general features shall be implemented:
    - Direct digital control drill down to zone level at the front end and remotely through a browser-based interface;
    - Zone-level closed-loop temperature control;
    - Fault detection and diagnostics over and above the requirements for economizers set forth in the California Building Code;
    - Cascading closed loop for sequencing to minimize heating and cooling;
    - Variable air volume (VAV) zone cascading control (no overlapping of heating and cooling); and
    - Air-handling unit controls (cascading set point reset per ASHRAE Standard 55, where applicable).
2. Accurate direct measurement (of, for example, differential pressure or flow station) of minimum outside airflow at the outside air damper/plenum assembly shall be provided for all air-moving equipment, as applicable. Outside airflow shall be trended by the control system at 15-minute intervals.
3. Occupant status for control, if applicable per code, shall be coordinated and interfaced with the lighting control system to avoid a double-up on status sensors.
4. Nighttime ventilation for the purpose of building precooling or pre- or postoccupancy air changeover shall be investigated based on historical nighttime temperature swings. As applicable, nighttime ventilation shall take place when building temperature and OAT are at suitable levels to properly cool the building before occupancy.
5. A pre- and postoccupancy building flush control sequence shall be submitted for review during the submittal review phase. This building flush sequence of operation will accommodate three total air changes, with minimal use of building heating and cooling outside utility peak periods.
6. A written mechanical control intent narrative submittal that explains the mechanical control systems in plain language shall be provided for client review and response during each design phase and revised for submittal as part of the contract documents. Selected control manufacturers shall be required to verify that their products, as submitted during the shop drawing phase, meet the control intent or indicate any exceptions and describe how they intend to satisfy the desired performance of their products.

14.F COMMISSIONING

1. Commissioning is a systematic process of ensuring that all building systems perform interactively according to the design intent and the owner's operational needs. It is achieved beginning in the design phase by documenting design intent and continuing through construction, acceptance, and the warranty period with actual verification of performance. The commissioning process shall encompass and coordinate the traditionally separate functions of system documentation, equipment startup, control system calibration, testing and balancing, performance testing, and training.

2. The following commissioning (Cx) process activities shall be completed for mechanical, electrical, plumbing, and renewable energy systems and assemblies in accordance with ASHRAE Guidelines 0-2019 and 202-2024 for HVAC and refrigeration (HVAC&R) systems, as they relate to energy, water, indoor environmental quality, and durability.
    a. Develop the owner's project requirements (OPR); and
    b. Develop a Basis of Design (BOD).
3. The commissioning authority (CxA) must do the following:
    a. Review the OPR, BOD, and project design;
    b. Develop and implement a Cx plan;
    c. Confirm incorporation of Cx requirements into the construction documents;
    d. Develop construction checklists;
    e. Review contractor submittals;
    f. Develop a system test procedure;
    g. Verify system test execution;
    h. Maintain an issues and benefits log throughout the Cx process;
    i. Verify systems manual updates and delivery;
    j. Prepare a final Cx process report; and
    k. Document all findings and recommendations, and report directly to the owner throughout the process.
4. Specifications shall include commissioning services to ensure that the building delivered at the end of construction has a fully operational building management system, mechanical control sequences, sensors, and programming, all of which provide proper controls. Basic services shall include staff training for systems operation and troubleshooting.

DIVISION TWO: TECHNICAL CRITERIA

11 Architectural Criteria
12 Structural Criteria
13 Mechanical Criteria
14 BUILDING MANAGEMENT SYSTEM CRITERIA
14.A Objectives
14.B Building Management System
14.C Level of Integration
14.D Energy Conservation Design
14.E Design Features
14.F Commissioning
15 Electrical Criteria
16 Lighting Criteria
17 Network and Communication Systems
18 Audiovisual Systems
19 Acoustical Criteria
20 Fire Protection Criteria

DIVISION TWO: TECHNICAL CRITERIA

15 ELECTRICAL CRITERIA

SECTION	TOPIC	PAGE
15.A	Objectives	15.2
15.B	Electrical Criteria	15.2
15.C	Emergency and Standby Power Systems	15.10



Superior Court of California, County of Sacramento
Sacramento, CA
© NBBJ

Designers shall use the criteria to develop electrical power systems for new buildings, retrofit of existing buildings, and interior renovation of existing buildings.

This section defines the general and technical criteria for the building's normal power system and the emergency and standby power systems. It encompasses recommendations and minimum acceptable performance criteria for the normal power distribution system and the emergency and standby power systems.

15.A OBJECTIVES

1. Designers shall use these criteria to develop the building's electrical power systems and emergency and standby electrical power systems, including emergency generator and uninterruptible power supply (UPS) design, and energy generation, when applicable. The electrical system design shall provide safe installation and operation of the electrical power supply and distribution through standardization of design, installation, and testing requirements based on sound engineering principles, applicable building codes, and field experience. For renovation projects, at the schematic design phase, the designer shall identify a specific list of standards deviations that are proposed based on the existing system configurations and the extent of renovations included in the project.
2. These criteria set the minimum acceptable requirements for design and installation of electrical power systems. Although new technologies or alternative arrangements may be used, they shall not result in a lower level of safety than prescribed by these criteria and the applicable state building codes.
3. When the criteria are applied to interior renovations of existing structures, the designer shall provide systems that meet the design parameters of the existing power system or the requirements of these criteria, whichever results in a better system and satisfies the applicable building codes.
4. The designer shall coordinate the requirements and configuration of the utility supply connections with the Judicial Council and the utility service providers to determine voltage, service redundancy, and other facility service criteria.
5. Low energy use through conservation and whole-building integrated energy efficiency measures shall be the initial focus of design. If the project includes energy generation (e.g., photovoltaic systems), consider installing energy storage and using a power monitoring system to shift energy use for peak load reduction, limit overgeneration sent back to the grid, reduce the demand charges, reduce energy costs by taking advantage of time-of-use (TOU) rates, and provide cloud cover and outage protection for the facility.

15.B ELECTRICAL CRITERIA

1. Basic Requirements

a. Electrical loads shall be determined by space classification and use of the following standards and requirements:

- Title 24 of the California Code of Regulations, Leadership in Energy and Environmental Design (LEED), and Illuminating Engineering Society (IES) standards for lighting loads and levels;
- National Fire Protection Association (NFPA) 70, National Electric Code, California Electric Code, and LEED requirements for receptacle and building general loads; and
- Any additional requirements that may be referenced in the standards above.

b. The lighting power densities shall not exceed the current California Energy Code.

c. Two locations for computer receptacles shall be provided in all office spaces. Do not locate computer receptacles on the same wall as the entrance door to the office. Provide at least one convenience receptacle in every room. The maximum number of receptacles per circuit are four for computer receptacles and six for convenience receptacles.

d. Cubicle or workstation open spaces shall be provided with four circuits / eight wires per junction box per pack of six cubicles for electrical whip connections.

e. Dedicated ground fault circuit interrupter (GFCI) receptacles shall be provided for the following:

- Vending machines
- Microwaves
- Refrigerators
- Ice machines
- Electric water coolers and bottle fillers

f. Convenience receptacles shall be installed every 40′ along the public corridor.

g. Regarding spare capacity, all electrical panels, including the main building electrical service, shall be adequately sized to power all the building loads in addition to providing the spare capacity listed in table 15.1.

h. Floor space clearances shall be maintained at all panels. Provide floor space in electrical rooms for 10 percent future growth for new and future panels.

Table 15.1 Spare Capacity Requirements

EQUIPMENT	SPARE LOAD CAPACITY (%)	BREAKER SPARES (%)	BREAKER SPACES (%)
Main switchboards	15	–	25
Distribution panelboards and motor control centers	15	–	25
Panelboards	20	10	15

i. The spare positions shall be complete, with full-length bus and hardware for future breaker installation. The designer shall demonstrate at the turnover of 100 percent of the construction documents that the required spare capacity and spaces have been preserved. The spare capacity shall also be provided at each of the following system elements:

- Distribution transformers
- Standby and emergency power systems
- UPS systems
- Distribution bus risers
- Distribution feeders and breakers

j. Space shall be provided in the electrical room layouts for the future addition of equipment. For each switchboard lineup in a new facility and switchboards rated 800 amps or higher, include floor space for one additional switchboard section. All switchboards shall have full-sized horizontal busing to allow for additional sections to be added.

DIVISION TWO
TECHNICAL CRITERIA

11 Architectural Criteria
12 Structural Criteria
13 Mechanical Criteria
14 Building Management System Criteria
15 ELECTRICAL CRITERIA
15.A Objectives
15.B Electrical Criteria
15.C Emergency and Standby Power Systems
16 Lighting Criteria
17 Network and Communication Systems
18 Audiovisual Systems
19 Acoustical Criteria
20 Fire Protection Criteria

k. Where panelboards are mounted recessed flush in a wall, fire integrity of the wall shall be maintained. Provide one empty 3/4″ electrical metallic tubing (EMT) conduit stubbed up into the nearest accessible ceiling location for every three spare single-pole or space-equivalent positions.

l. The distribution transformers feeding receptacle power for office areas shall be K-rated to compensate for harmonics generated by office equipment. The distribution transformers feeding MDF and IDF rooms shall have K-ratings appropriate for the proposed equipment loads. The neutral conductors on the secondary K-rated transformers shall be sized at 150 percent rated ampacity of the phase conductor. Analysis shall be performed by the project team for Judicial Council's determination whether K-rating may be removed based on the use of technologically evolved equipment.

m. To facilitate future installation of rooftop communication systems, an electrical subpanel and submeter shall be provided on the rooftop. Conduit pathways shall be provided to the rooftop from the electrical room with pull rope (not pull string) to allow for cable runs to be added for future installations.

n. Full-sized neutral conductors shall be used throughout the project for three-phase (3PH), four-wire (4W) service, power, and lighting feeders.

o. True root mean square meters shall be used wherever meters are specified on switchgear and distribution boards.

p. Separate electrical panels and metering may be required for noncourt occupancies in the facility. Review with the Judicial Council to establish specific project requirements. In accordance with California Code of Regulations, title 24, part 6, Energy Efficiency Standards, section 130.5, provide energy meters for each load group and floor, including, at a minimum:

- Total electrical consumption (main); and
- Onsite power generation (photovoltaic panels) and battery energy storage system (BESS), if applicable.

q. In office areas, the ceiling space shall typically be used for the distribution of power, data, and communication systems. The distribution drops shall be contained in columns and walls to offices and workstation spines. Power, voice, and data poles may be used on a case-by-case basis if approved by the Judicial Council.

r. Fire-rated poke-through floor outlets may be used only where ceilings below are accessible and the occupancies below are not compromised by the installation of conduit in the ceiling space. Where poke-through outlets are used, minimize conduits and cables in the ceiling space below by using the nearest partition to return the conduits and cables to the ceiling of the floor supplied. In-slab floor boxes may be used for limited areas where interior layouts are not subject to change, such as main lobbies, courtrooms, weapons screening areas, large training rooms, or other similar locations.

s. The electrical equipment and systems shall be specified to include startup, testing, training, and adjusting per the applicable codes, recognized industry standards, and equipment system manufacturer requirements.

t. The bus ducts shall be installed in the building interior and not outside, with or without a weatherproof enclosure. To prevent bus duct failure, torque testing shall be performed to verify that the installation was done correctly. If on Judicial Council approval, an exterior bus duct is used, it shall be National Electrical Manufacturers Association (NEMA) Type 3 Rainproof/Rain-resistant (3R) from utility service point to main switchboard.

u. Switchboards, distribution panels, transformers, disconnects, and branch circuit panelboards throughout the building shall be of commercial grade and manufactured by one manufacturer.

v. All panelboards shall include door-in-door trim and copper bus. All equipment enclosures shall be a NEMA type suitable for their environment.

w. All electric motors above 1/2 horsepower shall be three phase, where available. This requirement shall be coordinated across the project with other disciplines.

x. Regarding wiring devices, all power receptacles and switches for general-purpose circuits shall be NEMA specification grade, manufactured by one manufacturer, and rated for a specific environment and application. Outlets served from an emergency or standby power system shall be red.

y. All floor- or pad-mounted equipment such as motor control centers and transformers shall be provided with aluminum bus. Indoor equipment shall be installed on a minimum 4″ high concrete housekeeping pad; outdoor locations shall be installed on a minimum 6″ housekeeping pad. Confirm pad requirements with serving utility company.

z. The design shall include equal distribution of load on each phase for the feeders, balanced within 15 percent between phases, documented with submission of 100 percent of the construction documents.

2. Harmonics

The engineer shall provide a study to determine the level of harmonics and account for the harmonics in the design of transformers, feeders, and branch circuits. Consideration shall be given to computer and/or digital equipment, variable-frequency drives, and elevators.

3. Conductors

The following types of conductors shall be specified based on each one's application.

a. All wire, cable, and equipment shall be new.

b. All wire #8 American Wire Gauge (AWG) and larger shall be stranded copper or aluminum.

c. All wire #10 AWG and smaller shall be solid copper.

d. All wire and cable for secondary power distribution shall be 600-volt insulated thermoplastic high heat–resistant nylon-coated (THHN) or thermoplastic heat- and water-resistant nylon-coated (THWN) for #8 and smaller. THWN, THHN, and cross-linked polyethylene, high heat–resistant, water-resistant (XHHW) should be used for #6 and larger and for wet, underground, and exterior locations. Rubber-insulated, high heat–resistant (RHH) or THHN 90 degrees Celsius standard should be used for fixture wire and circuit runs within fixtures.

e. Multiwire branch circuits shall be provided with a means to simultaneously disconnect all ungrounded conductors at the point where the branch circuit originates (i.e., handle ties or multipole circuit breakers).

f. All wire shall be color coded throughout. The system conductors shall be identified as to phase connections by means of color-impregnated insulation.

g. Power and lighting branch circuits shall be specified not less than #12 AWG.

h. Signal and control circuits shall be specified not less than #14 AWG.

DIVISION TWO
TECHNICAL CRITERIA

11 Architectural Criteria
12 Structural Criteria
13 Mechanical Criteria
14 Building Management System Criteria
15 ELECTRICAL CRITERIA
15.A Objectives
15.B Electrical Criteria
15.C Emergency and Standby Power Systems
16 Lighting Criteria
17 Network and Communication Systems
18 Audiovisual Systems
19 Acoustical Criteria
20 Fire Protection Criteria

i. The cabling for fire alarm, security, telecommunications, and audiovisual (AV) systems shall be specified in accordance with the respective section requirements.

j. Cable ducts for power shall not be shared with data and communication systems.

k. All bus ducts shall be aluminum.

4. Conduits

The following shall be specified as a minimum requirement for conduits.

a. Minimum acceptable EMT conduit size shall be 3/4″ diameter, except for short runs to a single outlet and for single fixtures, which may be 1/2″.

b. For indoor locations subject to physical damage, rigid steel or intermediate metal conduit with zinc coating inside and out, with hot-dipped galvanizing, and conforming to American National Standards Institute's (ANSI) C80.1 and Underwriters Laboratories (UL) standards shall be used. Couplings and unions shall be electroplated steel, threaded type.

c. For interior spaces in dry locations, cold-rolled steel EMT tubing with enamel coating inside, zinc coating outside, and galvanized steel fittings shall be used. Steel-armored metal-clad (MC) cable shall be permitted for distribution of branch circuits where routed in concealed locations and installed with hangers and supports specifically approved for MC cable systems. MC cable shall be independently supported and not rely on ceiling or wall framing for support. MC cable shall not be used in exposed locations. MC cable is not permitted for circuit home runs.

d. Underground electrical service and underground feeder distribution shall be polyvinyl chloride (PVC)–coated galvanized rigid steel, concrete encased, or schedule 40 PVC, concrete encased. Elbows shall be PVC-coated rigid steel. All underground feeders shall be installed with spacers for proper support. Where installed under building slabs, concrete slurry shall be permitted in lieu of concrete duct banks.

e. In wet and outdoor locations, cadmium-plated, cast malleable iron liquid-tight fittings with insulated throat shall be specified.

f. Flexible metallic conduits of limited lengths may be used at power terminations to equipment in indoor and dry locations. For outdoor and wet locations, they shall be liquid-tight with plastic jacket extruded over the outer zinc coating.

g. Conduits in slabs on metal decks are not permitted.

5. Quality Assurance

a. All materials, devices, and equipment shall be commercial grade, new, and UL listed.

b. The electrical system design shall conform to the applicable codes and standards and the requirements of these criteria.

c. Certain material, equipment, apparatus, or other products may be specified by manufacturer's brand name, type, or catalog number. In such cases, the designated product shall meet the established standards for quality, style, utility, and performance.

d. The main switchboard, distribution panels, transformers, disconnects, and branch circuit panelboards shall be manufactured to commercial-grade specifications by a manufacturer with a minimum of 10 years' experience in the manufacture of such equipment.

6. Electric Distribution Studies

In addition to the electrical load and short-circuit studies required by the codes, each project shall include electrical coordination and arc flash risk analysis studies to confirm compliance with codes and building operational requirements. Coordinate with other trade disciplines to verify that all equipment short-circuit current ratings exceed the available fault current identified in the short-circuit study. The engineer of record shall review and approve the study before the contractor may place the order for manufacturing of the equipment.

7. Identification

The electrical system shall be specified to include identification and signage in accordance with ANSI standards and NFPA 70 and 70E requirements. Specify identification at all power service switchboards, power distribution panels, transformers, conduits, branch circuits, pull boxes, outlet covers, and junction boxes using industry standard materials and methods.

Electrical light fixtures and convenience outlets on emergency power circuits shall be identified with a system of unique identification. The identification tags shall be applied on location and be easily identifiable and uniformly applied throughout the building. Receptacles shall be labeled with panel and circuit number.

Conduits and boxes shall be color coded for specialty systems. Emergency power conduits shall have a circumferential red mark every 10′, and boxes shall be marked with a diagonal red stripe on the cover. Fire alarm systems shall be color coded red; building management system (BMS) shall be blue. Other systems shall have similarly designated colors.

8. Coordination

The electrical work shall be coordinated with the work of all other divisions to interface power and control requirements to equipment, devices, lighting, control systems, and other systems specified under the respective divisions.

9. Power Distribution System

a. For new facilities, a three-phase, four-wire power service shall be delivered to the building via utility transformers that are located in a vault or pad mounted. The service voltage shall be 277/480 volts (V) or 120/208V three-phase (3 PH), four-wire (4W), depending on square footage and equipment needs. The location of the transformer shall be properly coordinated with the local utility company. The designer shall coordinate with the utility company on proper sizing of the service based on load calculations and including 15 percent spare capacity for future growth. Any other service voltage or configuration shall be reviewed for approval by the Judicial Council.

b. Branch circuit panelboards will be located throughout the facility. The panels will be fed from breakers in the main switchboard or from distribution panelboards. Dry-type step-down transformers will be provided where required, which will in turn feed 120/208V 3 PH 4W distribution-type panelboards or distribution panels. Provide K-rated transformers as required. The 120/208V branch panelboards located throughout the facility will be fed from breakers in these distribution panels. Large air-conditioning and motor loads will be supplied at 480V or 208V 3 PH from the new main switchboards and distribution boards.

c. Voltage drop for installed feeder conductors and branch circuit conductors shall not exceed 5 percent to the farthest connected load.

d. Lighting fixtures will be connected to 20-amp, single-pole circuit breakers in lighting branch circuit panelboards.

DIVISION TWO
TECHNICAL CRITERIA

11 Architectural Criteria
12 Structural Criteria
13 Mechanical Criteria
14 Building Management System Criteria
15 ELECTRICAL CRITERIA
15.A Objectives
15.B Electrical Criteria
15.C Emergency and Standby Power Systems
16 Lighting Criteria
17 Network and Communication Systems
18 Audiovisual Systems
19 Acoustical Criteria
20 Fire Protection Criteria

e. Convenience and special power receptacles will be provided as required throughout the facility. Convenience receptacles and miscellaneous loads will be connected to 120/208V 3 PH 4W branch circuit panelboards.

f. Provide controlled receptacles in office areas, lobbies, conference rooms, kitchenettes, and copy rooms as required by the California Energy Code (Cal. Code Regs., tit. 24, pt. 6). In general, this includes one controlled receptacle within 6′ of each noncontrolled receptacle provided. Alternatively, use of split-wired receptacles with one controlled and the other not controlled is acceptable.

g. Where a centralized UPS is not provided, computer and other sensitive electronic loads will be fed through point-of-use, localized UPS units as required to meet the standards.

h. For equipment supplied by K-rated transformers, neutral busing and conductors for distribution equipment feeding panelboards will be sized to accommodate harmonic currents generated by electronic power supplies.

i. Surge-protective devices (SPDs) shall be provided for overvoltage protection per California Electrical Code (CEC) articles 242 and 700.

10. Grounding System

a. A complete grounding system shall be provided per the California Electrical Code. The electrical system shall be grounded to a common building grounding electrode system that uses grounding to building steel, building cold water pipes, and concrete-encased electrodes. Grounding to cold water pipes shall be only to continuous metallic main pipe. Where the cold water pipe has insulated joints or plastic pipe connectors, properly sized jumper cables shall be specified to maintain the continuity of the pipe grounding.

b. The grounding system for utility service transformers shall be provided per the local utility company criteria. The building emergency generator shall be grounded per code.

c. A copper main ground bus shall be provided in the main switchboard room and connected to the building grounding electrode system. Provide a grounding riser in the building with a ground bus located at each electrical room. Transformers and other separately derived systems shall be bonded to this ground bus system in addition to bonding to other code-required connections.

d. Telecommunications equipment rooms shall be grounded per the requirements of chapter 17, Network and Communication Systems. The telecommunications grounding system shall be connected to the main ground bus.

e. For existing buildings, the grounding shall tie back to the nearest building grounding electrode system, including the building steel and building cold water pipes.

f. A grounding grid shall be specified for raised-floor computer rooms. Within the room, bond all metallic pipes, conduits, and steel equipment housings to the grounding grid.

g. Each project shall be evaluated for the requirements of a lightning protection system. The risk assessment shall follow NFPA 780, Annex L.

11. Photovoltaic and Battery Energy Storage System

The inclusion of energy generation and storage (PV and BESS) is required if they are part of the scope of the project. The system shall be designed to exceed the minimum requirements of the California Code of Regulations if included in the project.

a. PV requirements:

- The PV system shall be configured for full integration into the building electrical distribution and must be connected to the utility grid through a grid-interactive inverter. The system shall meet the requirements of the local utility company.
- The size of PV and BESS shall be determined based on title 24 minimum requirements and as identified in the project-specific criteria documents.
- If a project is funded to be a net zero building, approximately 90 percent of the building's annual energy consumption will be during daylight hours and served directly from the PV system. The remaining approximately 10 percent of the annual energy consumption will be during morning and evening hours when the PV system is not generating energy; therefore, a BESS shall be provided and sized to account for the remaining daily energy consumption. The PV system shall be sized to serve the approximately 90 percent of energy consumption during the PV-producing times plus the additional approximately 10 percent of energy production required to charge the BESS to serve the energy consumption during the times when the PV system is not generating. The 90 percent and 10 percent figures are provided only as a baseline for early design planning. Final sizing of the PV and BESS shall be based on the results of energy and PV models of hourly load and generation profiles, respectively, commonly referred to as "8760 data."
- The system shall be designed and installed in such a way that it is capable of future expansion and improvement.
- The PV system shall be capable of islanding.
- The PV system shall be mounted as a covered parking structure installation (roof mounted is not permissible). Identify the minimum panel count and supporting structure area required to achieve the target PV percentage offset. Should the required area of parking to support the minimum panel count and supporting structure area exceed the area available in parking, maximize the system size to the available area and document the shortfall to achieving the target percentage. The installation shall meet all applicable code and structural, electrical, and mounting standards for carport photovoltaic systems and be designed for long-term performance and maintainability.
- The clearance height of carports shall be 13′6″ clear along the fire access lane.

b. BESS requirements:

- The BESS shall be connected to and monitored by the BMS system as described in Chapter 14 and should be evaluated for use as an emergency and standby power system. If providing services as emergency backup, care should be taken to ensure adequate capacity and listing. Emergency power shall be distributed through a critical load panel that is sized to accommodate critical loads throughout the building as detailed in section 15.C.2.1 below.
- The BESS must provide both monitoring and control capability. The battery management system must also be capable of interfacing to a building management system (BMS) and the power monitoring system.
- The BESS shall be listed for use in the proposed space. Consider exterior installations as the primary option.

DIVISION TWO
TECHNICAL CRITERIA

11 Architectural Criteria
12 Structural Criteria
13 Mechanical Criteria
14 Building Management System Criteria
15 ELECTRICAL CRITERIA
15.A Objectives
15.B Electrical Criteria
15.C Emergency and Standby Power Systems
16 Lighting Criteria
17 Network and Communication Systems
18 Audiovisual Systems
19 Acoustical Criteria
20 Fire Protection Criteria

15.C EMERGENCY AND STANDBY POWER SYSTEMS

1. General Requirements

a. The need for and capacity of the emergency and standby power system shall be carefully evaluated based on the code requirements, project size, and location. The purpose of an emergency and standby power system is to provide safe evacuation of the court building and allow for the orderly shutdown of building systems as required by the California Building Code (CBC). Emergency and standby power will not be provided for any other purpose without prior approval of the Judicial Council. In remote project areas with limited accessibility, or if the court building will also serve as an emergency operations center, the generator size and fuel storage capacity may be designed to meet local requirements, but only with prior approval of the Judicial Council.

b. Unless approved otherwise, emergency generators shall include only the systems outlined in California Code of Regulations, title 24, and this section, 15.C. For loads that are not required to be connected to the generator either by CBC or *Facilities Standards*, a study shall be completed for the project to support the need for additional loads. The study shall require formal approval by the Judicial Council before its findings are incorporated into the design. Before procurement of materials early in the construction phase, a construction submittal shall be sent for formal approval to both the Judicial Council and the Office of the State Fire Marshal verifying the loads connected to the generator.

c. Each project shall undergo an evaluation to document the specific need for emergency and standby power. The evaluation shall include the following:

- A site utility reliability review documenting the power sources available, redundancy inherent in the utility supply, and outage history.
- Code analysis.
- Fuel storage capacity to meet code requirements and site accessibility for refueling.
- Statement of the impacts of utility power loss.
- Identification of the specific systems and loads for support and categorization by requirements (code, function, etc.). Include backup time required for fuel/battery design.
- Review of appropriate generator or battery systems that best meet code and local air quality district requirements.
- Confirmation of generator exhaust and after-treatment requirements by the local air quality district.

d. Electrical generators to supply emergency power and standby power are to be provided only where the electrical loads can be demonstrated to be best accommodated by a generator set or battery and as required by code. Factors to be considered include locations with a history of significant outage occurrences or sustained periods of power interruptions. The duration of emergency power supply shall be determined by the building and fire codes. Additional consideration may be made based on the time necessary to prudently shut down critical systems and safely evacuate and close the building, whichever time is greater.

2. Emergency Generators

2.1 Requirements Based on California Electrical Code

a. The following requirements shall be considered as minimum criteria. In all cases, the requirements of the code and the authority having jurisdiction, including but not limited to the Office of the State Fire Marshal, shall govern the system provisions.

b. On projects where it is determined that an emergency generator is required to serve the courthouse buildings, the loads identified in sections 15.C.2.1 and 15.C.2.2 below and any other code requirements will be designed to be supported by that generator. Per the CEC, the emergency/standby system includes three branches: code-required emergency loads, legally required standby, and optional standby (noncode emergency loads). Provide a minimum of three automatic transfer switches, one for each branch. The breakers serving the automatic transfer switches on the emergency and/or standby side shall be in separate vertical sections, per the CEC. The distribution for these branches shall be separate as well. Loads shall be segregated as follows.

Emergency Systems: Systems that are legally required for automatic illumination or power for safe exiting and panic control in buildings essential for safety to human life (as defined by CEC, art. 700; CBC, ch. 27; California Fire Code (CFC), ch. 12; and NFPA 110 and 111), such as:

- Fire pumps, including jockey pumps;
- Egress path lighting and exit signs;
- Generator fuel transfer pumps, if applicable; and
- Doors and locks for cells.

Legally Required Standby Systems: Systems that are required to avoid interruptions to firefighting operations (as defined by CEC, art. 701; CFC, ch. 12; and NFPA 110 and 111) or other systems that ensure safety or facilitate rescue, such as:

- Elevator systems (only if elevators are required to be on the generator), including:
  - Elevators
  - Elevator machine room ventilation
  - Elevator cab lighting
  - Elevator hoistway lighting
  - Elevator recall power
  - Elevator control/status panels
- Fire alarm and life-safety systems (including emergency voice alarms);
- Fire and life safety in MDFs or IDFs that are on the converged network (network switches);
- Horizontal sliding doors, if part of egress path;
- Turnstiles, if part of egress path; and

DIVISION TWO
TECHNICAL CRITERIA

11 Architectural Criteria
12 Structural Criteria
13 Mechanical Criteria
14 Building Management System Criteria
15 ELECTRICAL CRITERIA
15.A Objectives
15.B Electrical Criteria
15.C Emergency and Standby Power Systems
16 Lighting Criteria
17 Network and Communication Systems
18 Audiovisual Systems
19 Acoustical Criteria
20 Fire Protection Criteria

- The smoke control system (if it is required on the project), including:
  - All fans and motors associated with the system;
  - Fire smoke dampers;
  - Smoke curtains; and
  - Pressurization fans for paths of egress.

Optional Standby Systems: Systems intended to supply power where life and safety do not depend on the performance of the system (as defined by CEC, art. 702), provided only with prior approval by the Judicial Council.

Emergency Responder Communication Enhancement System (ERCES): ERCES shall not be connected to the generator but be on its own UPS system that provides no less than 12 hours of power.

2.2 General Requirements for Emergency Generators

Early in the project, the design team shall define what building systems have emergency and standby power and monitor any changes that would increase the size of the emergency and standby power system. Other important considerations and directives include the following.

a. Check generator fuel storage amounts and occupancy classifications against California Fire Code, California Building Code, and NFPA 30, 37, and 110.

b. Identify the minimum and maximum size of the fuel tank. Include the setback requirements per NFPA 30.

c. Do not install foreign systems in the generator room per NFPA 110.

d. Do not install combustion air or cooling intakes through rated partitions.

e. Address temperature exhaust running through the load bank. Address general cooling—and heating, if required—of the generator room.

f. Confirm that the flue is installed in a rated shaft. Confirm three hour–rated enclosure, including deck, per NFPA 37.

g. Confirm access for installation and maintenance. Confirm that the emergency power off switch is located outside the generator room.

h. Recommend placing the generator in an acoustically designed exterior enclosure.

i. Provide connection from the generator to the fire alarm system for monitoring.

j. Provide connection from the generator to the BMS for monitoring, per chapter 15, section 15.C.4, Building Management System Interface.

2.3 Detailed Requirements for Emergency Generators

For projects where an emergency generator is provided, the following requirements shall be met.

a. The automatic emergency power system shall consist of a 120/208V or 277/480V 3 PH 4W generator set, water-cooled radiator type. The engine generator set shall be located indoors or at grade. Exterior generator sets shall be provided with a lock-secured, alarmed, weatherproof, sound-attenuating enclosure to meet the acoustical requirements of the site.

b. Fuel vent calculations shall be provided per NFPA 30 and exhaust vent calculations per the California Mechanical Code (CMC).

c. Exterior enclosures shall be secure under lock and have emergency power service and emergency lighting. Provide excess buffer space around main electrical gear from building components to allow a flexible installation, and provide adequate space for future replacements and maintenance. Provide phone data lines for remote metering and a status panel for remote locations.

d. Automatic transfer switches shall be provided. Provide an open transition between normal and emergency positions, or as directed by the local utility provider.

e. Fuel sources shall be evaluated based on all pertinent criteria. If a diesel engine is selected, it shall be provided with an integral base-mounted day tank. The following other possible fuel sources shall be considered:

- Dual fuel with a natural gas connection and a local liquid propane gas tank;
- Bi-fuel generator using diesel for starting and then running on natural gas; and
- Electrical battery energy storage system.

f. Other sources of emergency and standby power as defined by CEC article 700.12 shall be considered.

g. Engine-mounted critical-type exhaust muffler and double-contained integral-type fuel oil day tank with fuel-leak detection system shall be specified.

h. Diesel generator exhaust shall be carefully located to prevent entry of fumes into building HVAC system and building openings, per CMC.

i. The system shall be provided with an exterior connection point for a load bank. This connection point shall be capable of providing test load for the generator and UPS (if UPS is centralized). It is assumed that testing will be done with building load and/or a rental load bank.

j. Fuel oil storage tank shall be above grade, with proper filling and monitoring systems. The day tank shall be of the manufacturer's standard size based on the generator capacity. Installation of a fuel leak detection system is required.

k. Emergency generator shall be located a minimum of 50′ away from the primary electrical source.

l. The following areas in the building shall have emergency and/or standby lighting on the emergency and/or standby power source, as a minimum (refer to the CBC, CEC, and CFC):

- Detention areas, custody areas, and sally port;
- Exit signage;
- Exit corridors and stairwells;
- Assembly rooms, such as courtrooms;
- IT/AV equipment rooms (MDF, IDF, etc.);
- Generator, electrical, mechanical, and elevator equipment rooms and exterior generator enclosures; and

DIVISION TWO
TECHNICAL CRITERIA

11 Architectural Criteria
12 Structural Criteria
13 Mechanical Criteria
14 Building Management System Criteria
15 ELECTRICAL CRITERIA
15.A Objectives
15.B Electrical Criteria
15.C Emergency and Standby Power Systems
16 Lighting Criteria
17 Network and Communication Systems
18 Audiovisual Systems
19 Acoustical Criteria
20 Fire Protection Criteria

- Security and detention control equipment locations (security operations center, detention control room).

m. Emergency and/or standby power shall be provided for holding areas in accordance with the California Building Code.

2.4 Spare Capacity
All electrical panels fed from emergency and/or standby sources shall be adequately sized to power the building emergency and standby loads, in addition to providing the spare capacity listed in table 15.1.

2.5 Temporary Emergency Generator
When a building is provided with a permanently installed emergency generator, a connection for a temporary generator with capacity to support emergency loads is required. This requirement allows permanent emergency generators to be taken offline for maintenance without disruption to the power supply.

3. Uninterruptible Power Supply

Systems where an outage of 10 seconds (to transfer from normal to emergency power) could damage essential equipment or impair safety shall be on UPS power. The areas served by the UPS shall include but are not limited to:

- Security operations center, main and secondary equipment locations, including cameras and communication systems;
- Computer servers (MDF, IDF, BMS); and
- Telephone switches.

UPS shall not be connected to generator power. Following are the detailed requirements for UPS, when provided.

a. Any UPSs shall be provided per NFPA 111.

b. UPSs shall be small, localized, rack-mounted units to serve individual racks or equipment. In a larger facility, one or more centralized UPSs may be appropriate. During the project's schematic design phase, a review shall be provided of the projected UPS loads along with their locations and supporting functions to determine the optimal UPS system solution for the facility. In the study, the required battery backup time shall be confirmed, taking into consideration outage scenarios and the availability of onsite generators.

c. The design team shall define early in the project what is included in the UPS and control the scope creep; identify amperage, voltage, and run time of the UPS; and confirm who is responsible for design and construction of the UPS in the contract.

d. UPS for the data-processing equipment shall include rectifier/battery charger, solid-state inverter, static bypass transfer switch, maintenance-free batteries sized for 90 minutes, and synchronized circuitry. External maintenance bypass switches shall be provided.

e. The full complement of technology-related systems housed inside communications spaces (MDF/IDF rooms) shall have adequate UPS power backup to support electrical interruptions for 90 minutes for non-life-safety equipment.

f. Coordination shall be included for the UPS and generator systems (if applicable) to address capacity, compatibility, and code requirements. Coordination shall be included for fire protection, suppression, ventilation, and if applicable, system separation requirements for the rooms where UPS systems are located.

g. If used, centralized UPS systems shall include a load bank for testing, and the load banks may be shared with the generator systems, provided the load bank is not generator mounted.

4. Building Management System Interface

a. Coordinate with the BMS to control, monitor, alarm, and data log the following electrical power information, at a minimum:

- Building normal and emergency power consumption and demand; and
- Load types by system.

b. Coordinate with the BMS to provide system monitoring for the following electrical systems:

- Emergency generator alarms, including but not limited to engine trouble, low fuel, fuel leak, low voltage, and loss of phase.
- Photovoltaic systems, including but not limited to energy generation and flow of energy to the building loads, energy storage, or to the grid.
- Battery energy storage systems, including but not limited to state of charge and flow of energy to the building loads or to the grid.
- UPS alarms, including but not limited to load on battery, load on bypass, high temperature, and UPS emergency power off. Provide a full list of possible alarms to the Judicial Council during design. The Judicial Council shall determine what it would like annunciated as an alarm.
- Fire alarms, including supervisory and trouble signals.

c. Coordinate with the BMS to provide an interface for lighting controls, including interior and exterior lighting.

DIVISION TWO
TECHNICAL CRITERIA

11 Architectural Criteria
12 Structural Criteria
13 Mechanical Criteria
14 Building Management System Criteria
15 ELECTRICAL CRITERIA
15.A Objectives
15.B Electrical Criteria
15.C Emergency and Standby Power Systems
16 Lighting Criteria
17 Network and Communication Systems
18 Audiovisual Systems
19 Acoustical Criteria
20 Fire Protection Criteria

DIVISION TWO: TECHNICAL CRITERIA

16 LIGHTING CRITERIA

SECTION	TOPIC	PAGE
16.A	Objectives	16.2
16.B	Lighting Criteria	16.2
16.C	Lighting Strategies	16.6
16.D	Lighting Controls	16.10
16.E	Lighting Commissioning	16.11



Superior Court of California, County of Sonoma
Santa Rosa, CA
© Tim Griffith

Designers are encouraged to minimize types of luminaires and drivers.

This chapter defines the general and technical criteria for lighting systems and encompasses recommendations for best practices, energy efficiency, sustainability, and creation of productive work environments that emphasize the dignity and importance of activities conducted in the facility.

16.A OBJECTIVES

Lighting design in the court facility shall be functional, appropriate for users, energy efficient, and easy to maintain and shall maximize use of modern and appropriate technology. Daylight in occupied spaces is desirable but must be carefully controlled to avoid glare and minimize heat gain. In security-sensitive spaces, minimize views into the space from outside the building. Direct sunlight penetration into functional court spaces shall be avoided to prevent high light and shadow contrast and glare.

16.B LIGHTING CRITERIA

1. General

a. Tables 16.1 and 16.2 provide recommended illuminance levels.

b. Lighting designs shall meet the power density requirements of the current California Energy Code (Cal. Code Regs., tit. 24, pt. 6).

c. Lighting level calculations (for normal and emergency settings) shall be provided by the designer at the end of the design development phase. Calculations shall include all interior spaces and all exterior areas within the project boundaries.

2. Reflectance Values

Indirect or direct/indirect lighting systems shall be the preferred system. The reflectance of surrounding surfaces greatly affects the quality of the lighting system and energy efficiency levels. Surrounding surface reflectance values shall comply with criteria noted in table 16.3

3. Light Engine Performance Requirements

Refer to table 16.4 for performance requirements for light-emitting diode (LED) lighting systems.

4. Light Engine Selection

a. Lighting systems shall be primarily solid-state lighting, such as LED lamps, to maximize energy efficiency and minimize maintenance.

b. Preference shall be given to LED luminaires with replaceable drivers to aid long-term maintenance and serviceability.

c. Maintenance of such systems shall be discussed during the design process to ensure longevity of the installed system.

d. Renovated facilities shall develop a plan to phase out current mercury-containing fluorescent lamps and upgrade to LED technology.

e. Lighting and controls shall be designed to accommodate videoconferencing where programmed in courtrooms, conference rooms, chambers, or mediation areas.

f. Illuminated exit signs shall use LED lamp technology and less than five watts of power.

Table 16.1 Required Interior Illuminance Levels

SPACE DESCRIPTION*	REQUIRED AVERAGE HORIZONTAL ILLUMINATION LEVEL (FC)†	RECQUIRED AVERAGE VERTICAL ILLUMINATION LEVEL (FC)‡	OTHER CONSIDERATIONS
Courtrooms			
Judge's bench	45–55	19	Additional task lighting to be provided from ceiling.
Clerk's desk	45–55	19	Additional task lighting to be provided from ceiling.
Spectator seating	15–25	5	
Litigant's table	45–55	19	Additional task lighting to be provided from ceiling.
Podium	45–55	19	Additional adjustable task lighting to be provided.
Witness chair	30–40	14	
Offices			
Intensive VDT use offices	30–40	—	Additional task lighting to be provided.
Intermittent VDT use offices	45–55	—	Additional task lighting to be provided.
Other Areas			
Conference rooms	30–40	7–28	
Jury assembly areas	10–30	5–19	Provide multiple levels of light for various room functions.
Waiting areas, lounges, cafés	10	—	
High-density files	—	7–19	Provide vertical illumination to within 30″ of the floor.
Public and private circulation	15–20	—	
Staff circulation	5–10	—	
Public lobbies	15–20	—	
Holding areas	25–35	5–9	
Restrooms	10–20	3–19	
Mechanical/plumbing rooms	10	—	
Electrical/AV/telecom rooms, MDF, mailroom	50	—	

Notes: Value ranges are for average general illumination at work-plane height, unless noted otherwise. Task illumination requirements are higher.

* For areas not listed, refer to the Illuminating Engineering Society (IES) Lighting Library for illumination guidelines. If the light level recommendations stated in the IES Lighting Library differ from these standards, project designers shall notify the Judicial Council for review and approval of proposed target light levels.

AV = audiovisual; FC = foot-candles; MDF = main distribution frame; VDT = visual display terminal.

DIVISION TWO: TECHNICAL CRITERIA

11 Architectural Criteria
12 Structural Criteria
13 Mechanical Criteria
14 Building Management System Criteria
15 Electrical Criteria
16 LIGHTING CRITERIA
16.A Objectives
16.B Lighting Criteria
16.C Lighting Strategies
16.D Lighting Controls
16.E Lighting Commissioning
17 Network and Communication Systems
18 Audiovisual Systems
19 Acoustical Criteria
20 Fire Protection Criteria

Table 16.2 Required Exterior Illuminance Levels

SPACE DESCRIPTION*	REQUIRED MINIMUM HORIZONTAL ILLUMINATION LEVEL (FC)†	REQUIRED MINIMUM VERTICAL ILLUMINATION LEVEL (FC)‡	OTHER CONSIDERATIONS
Parking Areas			
Parking garage—general	1.0	0.5	
Parking garage—ramps	1.0	0.5	Daytime minimum horizontal shall be 2.0 FC. Daytime minimum vertical shall be 1.0 FC.
Parking garage—entrance	1.0	0.5	Daytime minimum horizontal shall be 50 FC. Daytime minimum vertical shall be 25 FC. Daytime light level may include daylight.
Parking garage—stairways	5.0	2.5	
Open parking lots	0.2 (asphalt)	0.1	Provide 4:1 maximum-to-average uniformity ratio.
Other Exterior Areas			
Active building entries	5.0 average	3.0	
Inactive building entries	3.0 average	3.0	
Pedestrian pathways	1.0	0.3–0.65	
Stairways	1.0	0.3–0.60	

Notes: Value ranges are for average general illumination at work-plane height, unless noted otherwise. All exterior target light levels are to be determined per project based on security equipment, local ordinances (if any), and emergency egress requirements.

* For areas not listed, refer to the online Illuminating Engineering Society (IES) Lighting Library for illumination guidelines. If the light level recommendations stated in the IES Lighting Library differ from these standards, project designers shall notify the Judicial Council for review and approval of proposed target light levels.

Table 16.3 Required Reflectance Levels

ROOM SURFACE	REQUIRED REFLECTANCE
Ceilings	Minimum reflectance shall not be below 85%.
Walls, systems furniture partitions	Generally, walls shall not be below 60% reflective, but occasional accent walls that are between 40% and 60% reflective will be acceptable on Judicial Council approval. The interior finish schedule shall have a column indicating light reflectance of any materials used in courtrooms or offices.
Floors	Reflectance shall be approximately 20%.

Table 16.4 Lighting Systems LED Performance Requirements

	INTERIOR	EXTERIOR
Fidelity index (R_f)	>90 (P1F2)	>70 (P3)
Gamut index (R_g)	>95	>88
Minimum fidelity red (R9) value	50	20
Minimum efficacy	75 lumens per watt	100 lumens per watt
Minimum L70 lifetime (extrapolated)	80,000 hours	100,000 hours
MacAdam ellipse	Maximum three-step MacAdam ellipse variation throughout listed life (L70)	Maximum four-step MacAdam ellipse variation throughout listed life (L70)
Legacy color rendering index (CRI); minimum average CRI value (R_a)	90	70

DIVISION TWO: TECHNICAL CRITERIA

11 Architectural Criteria
12 Structural Criteria
13 Mechanical Criteria
14 Building Management System Criteria
15 Electrical Criteria
16 LIGHTING CRITERIA
16.A Objectives
16.B Lighting Criteria
16.C Lighting Strategies
16.D Lighting Controls
16.E Lighting Commissioning
17 Network and Communication Systems
18 Audiovisual Systems
19 Acoustical Criteria
20 Fire Protection Criteria

Each project design team shall develop a luminaire specification that uses the least number of types required to satisfy the design in an effort to simplify maintenance.

As design teams endeavor to reduce exterior lighting energy consumption during inactive periods at night, the exterior lighting design should strive to maintain the uniformity of light during the reduced light level scenario, which can help contribute to the sense of safety in pedestrian areas and parking lots at night.

5. Luminaire Selection

Custom-designed luminaires are not permitted. Avoid trendy luminaires or materials; instead, use durable, readily available, off-the-shelf luminaires. Luminaires shall be selected on the basis of maintaining a 25-year life cycle with the facility. Luminaires shall be evaluated on the basis of effectiveness and long-term life cycle costs, especially for characteristics and components that ensure longevity and quality, not just lowest first costs.

6. Visual Criteria

Luminaires shall be selected and located to minimize direct or reflected glare. When multiple luminaires are specified, the specifier shall ensure that the luminaires meet equivalent performance standards.

7. Energy Efficiency Criteria

The most efficient luminaires that provide visual comfort necessary for the activity shall be used.

8. Maintenance Criteria

Lighting maintenance (including but not limited to component replacement) is a significant portion of the ongoing court building operating cost; the limited resources available for operation and maintenance must be conserved. Therefore, lighting designs shall, at a minimum, provide:

- Readily apparent access to all luminaire assemblies for driver and array replacement (do not use or locate luminaires such that they require special lifts or overly specialized equipment to access them);
- Removable shielding devices with cables or chains to hold the device to the luminaire during relamping; and
- LED luminaires that have a replaceable driver, when that option is available.

16.C LIGHTING STRATEGIES

The following requirements address various spaces in and around the facility.

1. Exterior Lighting

The primary purpose of exterior lighting is to provide safety and security for those entering and exiting the building outside of daylight hours.

a. Exterior lighting shall be compatible with security cameras used on the site. Typically, an average-to-minimum uniformity ratio of 4:1 shall be achieved, with well-shielded luminaires out of view of cameras. Illumination levels do not need to be high if the light source is of good color quality, uniformity is high, and glare is minimized.

b. Illumination levels shall be determined for each project based on camera technology and local site requirements (refer to table 16.2, Required Exterior Illuminance Levels).

c. Exterior lighting shall not contribute to light pollution or trespass by emitting light beyond the property. Minimize glare and unwanted light for neighbors. The U.S. Green Building Council's Leadership in Energy and Environmental Design (LEED) for Building Design and Construction (Sustainable Sites credit category: Light Pollution Reduction) shall be used as a guideline for developing the exterior lighting plan, as shall the code-required light pollution reduction measures in the California Green Building Standards Code (CALGreen; Cal. Code Regs., tit. 24, pt. 11). Designers shall consider

specifying LED luminaires compliant with the DarkSky International requirements—specifically, a correlated color temperature of 3,000 kelvin or less.

d. Outdoor lighting shall have photosensors or an astronomical time clock for control. Exterior luminaires shall be specified to minimize the opportunity for vandalism. For example, in-grade landscape lighting with vandal-resistant hardware is preferred over above-grade adjustable landscape accent lights.

e. Light bollards are discouraged because of potential damage and maintenance issues.

f. Luminaires shall be provided for all flagpoles.

g. Designers shall use LED sources with integrated occupancy/motion controls in parking lot luminaires. Emergency lighting shall be exempt from this requirement.

h. Exterior lighting levels shall be reduced rather than turned off during nighttime hours of inactive periods in compliance with California Energy Code. Lighting required for emergency lighting or nighttime security shall be exempt.

2. Security Lighting

a. Determine security lighting requirements at entries, screening stations, or wherever programmed, and coordinate with the security equipment specifications. Faces appearing in cameras must be lit. Color rendition for security needs shall be improved by specifying LED luminaires that have been successfully evaluated to have a minimum fidelity index of at least 78, as tested by the methodology defined in American National Standards Institute (ANSI) and Illuminating Engineering Society (IES) TM-30, *IES Method for Evaluating Light Source Color Rendition*.

b. In larger facilities with a centralized lighting control system, provide means within the security operations center to manually override the reduced level of exterior lighting for security purposes.

c. Provide a comprehensive nighttime security lighting scheme—to be discussed with the Judicial Council's Emergency Planning and Security Coordination unit and coordinated with the architectural design team—to satisfy both security needs and the architectural design intent establishing the nighttime civic presence of the facility.

d. Comply with California Department of Industrial Relations requirements. Comply with American National Standards Institute (ASME) A17.1, Safety Code for Elevators and Escalators, for illumination at thresholds, pits, and equipment rooms.

3. Emergency Lighting

a. To maximize energy savings, consider providing means to turn off emergency lighting after hours via Underwriters Laboratories' (UL) 924–listed bypass relay or similar means, while still allowing the emergency lighting to activate during loss of normal power. Coordinate after-hours switching with Judicial Council security requirements.

b. Provide integral battery packs or connection to an uninterruptible power source for select lights in the vicinity of the generator, within the generator enclosure. Provide emergency lighting as required in chapter 15, Electrical Criteria.

c. Coordinate all emergency egress lighting with current State Fire Marshal requirements. Comply with National Fire Protection Association (NFPA) 101, Life Safety Code, for illumination in stairwells.

DIVISION TWO: TECHNICAL CRITERIA
11 Architectural Criteria
12 Structural Criteria
13 Mechanical Criteria
14 Building Management System Criteria
15 Electrical Criteria
16 LIGHTING CRITERIA
16.A Objectives
16.B Lighting Criteria
16.C Lighting Strategies
16.D Lighting Controls
16.E Lighting Commissioning
17 Network and Communication Systems
18 Audiovisual Systems
19 Acoustical Criteria
20 Fire Protection Criteria

d. Comply with Federal Aviation Administration (FAA) requirements, if applicable. Locate the FAA lighting controls status panel in an area that is staffed 24 hours a day, 7 days a week. Plan for temporary FAA lighting and permitting when the building tops out. Confirm grounding and lightning protection. Confirm that FAA lighting is on emergency power.

4. Courtroom Lighting

a. Facial feature clarity is very important in the courtroom, except in the spectator area. Therefore:

- Use a combination of direct and indirect lighting;
- Avoid harsh shadows, whether from electric light or daylight; and
- Minimize direct and reflected glare.

b. Audiovisual (AV) presentations are common in courtrooms. Lighting must be flexible enough to allow for dimmed ambient light levels, with sufficient light for note taking. Lighting directly in front of a projection or video display shall be capable of being switched off for evidence display. For courtrooms with flat-screen monitors, ensure that light sources do not obscure the screen image. Provide multiple levels of switched and continuous dimming in all courtrooms. Do not combine lighting scene controls with AV system controls. The same principle of lighting control shall be applied in conference and training rooms equipped with projectors and flat-screen monitors.

c. Diffused daylight (without direct sunlight penetration) is desirable but may not be possible in all spaces. Where daylight is available, provide mechanical shading devices capable of darkening but not blacking out the room. Because a direct view into the courtroom is a security concern, provide daylight by clerestories or skylights only, or provide fixed louvers or baffles that prevent unwanted angles of view from exterior locations. Do not use diffusing glass below 8′ above finished floor for any glazing that can receive direct sunlight during any hours of courtroom occupancy. All exterior glazing into a courtroom is generally required to be bullet-resistant for security, so daylight into courtrooms shall be carefully evaluated against project budget constraints. Where daylight is unavailable, supplement general illumination with other wall lighting such as wall washers or sconces.

5. Lighting for General Open Areas and Private Offices

Office ceilings shall be suitable for indirect lighting or both direct and indirect lighting. As with other spaces, minimizing glare and maximizing luminaire efficiency are key considerations. Where the California Energy Code requires additional controls for daylight zones, dimming is preferred to multilevel switching or stepped dimming.

6. Lighting of Judges' Chambers

Judges' chambers have the same general illumination requirements as other offices. The chambers typically have several task areas. Provide supplementary dimmable overhead task lighting at the conference table.

7. Lobby Lighting

Lobby shape, size, and finishes vary at each facility. Select the most efficient source with good shielding to reduce glare. Luminaires shall be located at a reasonable height for easy maintenance without the need to use scissor lifts.

8. Circulation Lighting

Circulation areas shall have even, diffuse illumination for wayfinding. Luminaire selection and location shall be coordinated with directional signage. Limited accent lighting may be used to assist in wayfinding.

Exit stair lighting shall incorporate the use of luminaires with integral ultrasonic occupancy sensors for energy savings. Each project shall verify with the California State Fire Marshal the specific control scheme acceptable with regard to egress illumination.

9. Holding Area Lighting

For holding areas, select security-rated luminaires resistant to penetration, distortion, and contraband concealment. Characteristics may include but are not limited to continuously seam-welded and smooth corners, completely concealed hinges, hardened security screws, and inner and outer lenses rated for the level of security required per space (refer to chapter 8, In-Custody Defendant Receiving, Holding, and Transport).

10. High-Density File Lighting

Each row of file stacks shall have illumination from luminaires designed to provide high levels of uniform vertical illumination in a narrow space.

11. Transaction Counter Lighting

A glass or acrylic security barrier typically separates the public from staff in areas where public transactions occur. This barrier can create reflections from luminaires that can reduce visibility and the ability to view facial expressions and intent. Minimize reflections by limiting light output to horizontal work surfaces and using luminaires with a low surface brightness. A glass or acrylic barrier that is intersected by an 18″ or greater soffit at the ceiling will help reduce reflections. Lighting layouts that are identical on both sides of the glazed material can also minimize reflections. Indirect or direct and indirect lighting shall be avoided under these conditions because the bright ceiling will be a source of reflected glare in the clear security barrier.

12. Restroom Lighting

Lighting at mirrors shall be sufficient to see without creating facial shadows. Select lighting positions in front of the user, such as cove lighting, sconces, or over-mirror lighting. Lighting shall be evenly distributed within the stall areas. Light-color-value wall surfaces are preferred over darker values (refer to table 16.3, Required Reflectance Levels).

13. Service Area Lighting

Lighting for electrical and mechanical rooms, main distribution frame rooms, intermediate distribution frame rooms, janitor closets, and related areas shall consist of LED striplights with drop lenses, providing at least 5 percent up-light. Bare-diode striplights shall not be used.

14. Below-Grade Vehicle Area Lighting

At judges' parking, loading, receiving, and central holding areas, uniform lighting without shadows shall provide visibility and coverage if security cameras are used.

DIVISION TWO: TECHNICAL CRITERIA

11 Architectural Criteria
12 Structural Criteria
13 Mechanical Criteria
14 Building Management System Criteria
15 Electrical Criteria
16 LIGHTING CRITERIA
16.A Objectives
16.B Lighting Criteria
16.C Lighting Strategies
16.D Lighting Controls
16.E Lighting Commissioning
17 Network and Communication Systems
18 Audiovisual Systems
19 Acoustical Criteria
20 Fire Protection Criteria

16.D LIGHTING CONTROLS

1. General

a. Lighting controls shall meet the requirements of the California Energy Code (Cal. Code Regs., tit. 24, pt. 6). Lighting control systems shall be nonproprietary. Courtrooms typically have multiple zones of control. Use the least complex, most intuitive system that will provide the required functions. These control stations shall be button style, not touchscreen, and shall provide local control capability in all cases. In courtrooms with four or fewer zones of control, where lighting can be controlled from one primary location with one or two additional three-way controls, standard wall box dimmers shall be used at a minimum. In courtrooms with more than four zones of control or multiple control location requirements, or if a room can be subdivided into smaller rooms with movable partitions, provide a preset dimming system. Controls shall be located to be convenient to court staff but not accessible to the public.

b. Integrated AV/lighting touchscreen controls shall not be used. Wall-mounted lighting control modules shall be provided. AV and lighting controls shall be designed to function independently. Where provided, a graphical user interface (GUI) shall be dedicated to the audiovisual system only. The GUI shall not be used to control any other system, such as the lighting system or the building management system (BMS).

c. Courtrooms, jury assembly rooms, large training rooms, and the security operations center shall have dimmable lighting. Other spaces shall be provided with dimmable lighting as required by code.

d. Occupancy controls that provide vacancy sensing are required in most spaces such that lights within a space are turned on manually and then turned off automatically when the room is vacant. Time delay setting shall comply with section 130.1(c) of the California Energy Code and be coordinated with the Judicial Council.

e. Demand response lighting systems, if required for a project, shall be determined early in the design phase to coordinate required lighting specifications and lighting control systems.

f. Interface between the centralized lighting control system and the BMS is required. See chapter 14, Building Management System Criteria, for more information.

g. Preference shall be given to control systems with features for scalability for long-term maintenance and serviceability.

2. Daylighting

a. Daylight-responsive (daylight-harvesting) controls shall meet the minimum criteria established by the California Energy Code (Cal. Code Regs., tit. 24, pt. 6).

b. In spaces with daylight, luminaires located in the primary and secondary daylighted areas shall be zoned separately from other luminaires.

c. Unless it can be demonstrated that daylight illumination is insufficient between the vernal equinox (typically March 20) and the autumnal equinox (typically September 22 or 23), provide daylight-harvesting controls. All luminaires connected to the daylight-harvesting system shall use continuous dimming drivers.

d. Low-end trim for dimming shall be between 1 and 10 percent; daylighting systems shall not turn luminaires completely off except in parking areas, where they shall dim to off per the California Energy Code.

e. Photosensors shall be filtered or calibrated to respond only to light in the visual range (no ultraviolet or infrared light) and adjusted for the human sensitivity spectral curve. Continuous dimming controls shall use a sliding set point algorithm. The design set point for daylight dimming shall be 1.5 times the nighttime measured light level. For example, if the electric lights alone provide 30 foot-candles (FC), the luminaires shall not start to dim until the combined daylight and electric light reach or exceed 45 FC (30 × 1.5).

3. Quality Control

Provide a written lighting control intent narrative that explains the lighting control systems in common language for client review and response during each design phase, and revise it for submittal as part of the contract documents. Selected control manufacturers shall be required to verify that their products, as submitted during the shop drawing phase, meet the control intent or indicate any exceptions and describe how they intend to satisfy the desired performance of their products. At minimum, the lighting designer shall provide a narrative about lighting control design intent for each type of space. This narrative shall include the sequence of operations.

16.E LIGHTING COMMISSIONING

Specifications shall include commissioning services to ensure that the building delivered at the end of construction has fully operational occupancy sensors, photocells, photosensors, and dimming systems that provide proper controls. Basic services shall include staff training for systems operation and troubleshooting. Commissioning shall comply with California Energy Code (Cal. Code Regs., tit. 24, pt. 6).

DIVISION TWO: TECHNICAL CRITERIA

11 Architectural Criteria
12 Structural Criteria
13 Mechanical Criteria
14 Building Management System Criteria
15 Electrical Criteria
16 LIGHTING CRITERIA
16.A Objectives
16.B Lighting Criteria
16.C Lighting Strategies
16.D Lighting Controls
16.E Lighting Commissioning
17 Network and Communication Systems
18 Audiovisual Systems
19 Acoustical Criteria
20 Fire Protection Criteria

DIVISION TWO: TECHNICAL CRITERIA

17 NETWORK AND COMMUNICATION SYSTEMS

SECTION	TOPIC	PAGE
17.A	General Overview	17.2
17.B	Minimum Point of Entry (MPOE)	17.4
17.C	Distribution Pathways	17.11
17.D	Backbone Connectivity	17.14
17.E	Horizontal Connectivity	17.15
17.F	Administration and Verification	17.19
17.G	Network Architecture	17.20
17.H	Distributed Antenna System	17.24



Superior Court of California, County of Yolo
Woodland, CA
© Fentress and Dreyfuss + Blackford

Effective technology systems are essential for daily courthouse operations. A technology program is required to be developed along with the architectural program. The designers, Judicial Council, and court advisory team shall determine what is to be provided throughout the court building.

17.A GENERAL OVERVIEW

1. Introduction

This chapter covers the requirements for network and other communication systems within courthouse buildings. Simply defined, a network communication system is the convergence of building technologies over a network architecture and shared physical layer that support the transport of Internet Protocol (IP)–based communications signals. This best practice has been made possible by ever-increasing bandwidth and numerous refinements in networking transmission techniques, allowing information to be transported using Ethernet interfaces and IP-based technologies.

The purpose of the network communications technology design is to provide a basis for the development of a structured cabling infrastructure that supports a physically converged, logically segregated IP network solution. Implementing a converged network solution offers several identifiable benefits. Commercial benefits include a lower capital expenditure and a reduction in the cost for maintenance and support. Considering the network, convergence provides increased network availability, scalability, and functionality. In addition, environmental benefits result from the reduction in materials and the need for building utility support, such as power and cooling.

A technology program shall be developed along with the architectural program. The technology program shall be predicated on the extent and complexity of the technology embedded in a new court building. These factors will be the basis for decisions related to the implementation of a unified communication system, a converged IP network, and the structured cabling system.

This chapter contains standards, criteria, and recommendations related to the following:

- Communications rooms, including architectural, electrical, mechanical, grounding, and bonding guidelines required to support infrastructure and equipment deployment;
- Distribution pathways to support the intrabuilding infrastructure;
- Communications backbone and horizontal connectivity distribution and the performance rating of the cable used to support the building utility services throughout the facility; and
- Administration and verification with identification and testing of the communications infrastructure and system components.

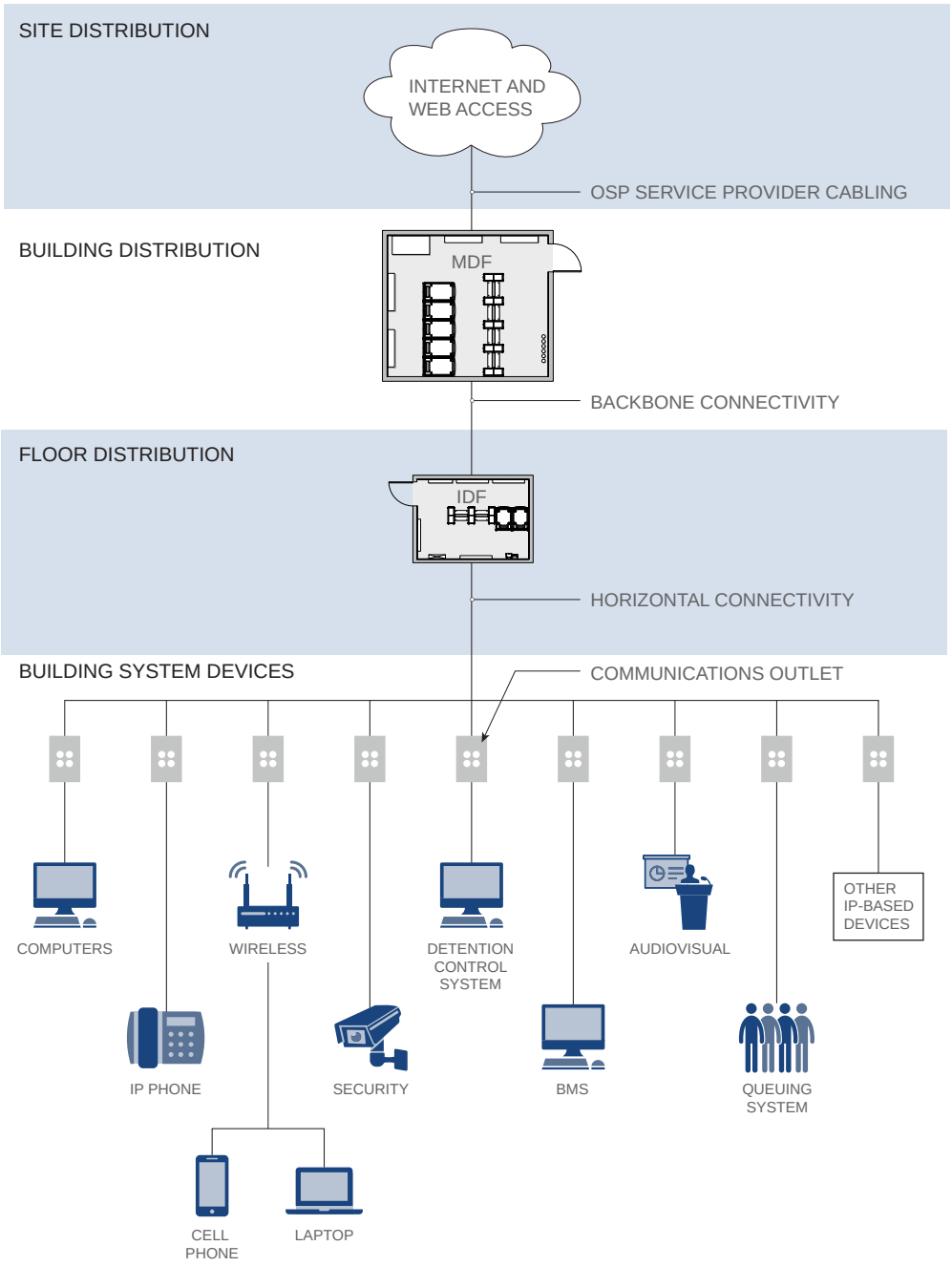
2. Structured Cabling

The structured cabling goal is to provide a robust physical layer that supports high reliability, bandwidth capacity, and future flexibility to extend current and future technology services to each courthouse facility.

3. Network Architecture

The Judicial Council standard is for all IP traffic to traverse a single integrated physical network that is segmented into multiple subnetworks. Network segmentation can be accomplished in various ways; the specific design for each courthouse shall be predicated on the extent and complexity of the technology embedded in a new court building. Figure 17.1 provides a high-level view of the physical architecture of a typical courthouse network, including telecommunications rooms, backbone and horizontal structured cabling, and end-point devices. Though not intended to convey each component or the logical network design, this illustration should give the reader a visual reference of the components and how they interconnect.

See tool 3, Integrated Network Architecture, for the integrated network architecture diagram that illustrates the expected intelligent building systems under the unified communication system.



BMS = building management system.
IDF = intermediate distribution frame.
IP = Internet Protocol.
MDF = main distribution frame.
OSP = outside plant.

Figure 17.1 Layout Diagram of Structured Cabling Topology That Includes Building Systems

DIVISION TWO: TECHNICAL CRITERIA

11 Architectural Criteria
12 Structural Criteria
13 Mechanical Criteria
14 Building Management Systems Criteria
15 Electrical Criteria
16 Lighting Criteria
17 NETWORK AND COMMUNICATION SYSTEMS
17.A General Overview
17.B Minimum Point of Entry (MPOE)
17.C Distribution Pathways
17.D Backbone Connectivity
17.E Horizontal Connectivity
17.F Administration and Verification
17.G Network Architecture
17.H Distributed Antenna System
18 Audiovisual Systems
19 Acoustical Criteria
20 Fire Protection Criteria

17.B MINIMUM POINT OF ENTRY (MPOE)

1. Telecommunications and Server Equipment Room

The telecommunications and server equipment room (main distribution frame (MDF) room) must have a minimum of one-hour resistive construction. All walls (four sides) shall terminate at the structure above so a sealed enclosure is created. No intermediate ceiling is required. Adjoining rooms should not be restrooms or electrical, uninterruptible power supply (UPS), fire pump, switchgear, transformer, generator, or other high-combustible or high-fire risk rooms.

2. Service Entrance Facilities

2.1 General Guidelines

a. An independent space, described as the service entrance facility, will be required within each court building to house service provider termination components and equipment or to serve as a splice point for incoming services.

b. The placement of the entrance facility should be evaluated on a case-by-case basis considering location of service provider networks "in the street," overall building size, and location of other building communications rooms. Whenever possible, colocate the entrance facility within the main distribution frame. Doing so minimizes the need to develop a separate, dedicated space.

c. The entrance facility size and type should be developed considering overall building design, square footage of the facility, quantity of incoming conduits, and types of services required. A dedicated space within the entrance facility should be allocated to stub out conduit pathways. At a minimum, a 48″ wide × 12″ deep floor-to-ceiling space should be allocated on one accessible wall to support up to six conduits.

2.2 Design Criteria

a. To simplify incoming conduit pathways, consider locating the entrance facility on the basement level (if applicable) or the ground level and close to a load-bearing wall.

b. Provide adequate overhead space for conduit pathways that either enter the room from outside the building or extend connections to the main communications space within the building.

c. To accommodate cable pulling and apparatus, provide adequate clearance in front of the wall where the conduits terminate.

d. Use vertical cable runway sections to route cables from the floor and ceiling conduit penetrations to the overhead cable runway.

3. Main Distribution Frame

This section refers to the MDF as a single space for space planning only. In practice, the MDF will be subdivided between various operational units allocating space for termination fields, active components, equipment cabinets, and relay racks required to house building communication system control devices. In simple terms, the MDF room will function as the main hub, or headend, within each courthouse facility. The MDF room size is determined by the amount of headend equipment in a particular court building. Refer to table 17.1, MDF Space Considerations.

Alternative Considerations

Colocating an IDF inside the MDF is an acceptable design practice.

For larger buildings that contain data centers, dual-service entrance facilities shall be included to house multiple service provider termination components and equipment. All service entrance facilities should adhere to the requirements set out by the service providers. The physical entrance doors to these spaces shall be from within the building, with no doors opening directly to the exterior.

Related Reading

Chapter 20, Fire Protection Criteria, for fire suppression requirements

Table 17.1 MDF Space Considerations

BUILDING TECHNOLOGY SYSTEM	TYPICAL MOUNTING LOCATION
Service provider fiber	2-post relay rack
Service provider copper	Wall
OSP/ISP building fiber	2-post relay rack
OSP/ISP building fiber	2-post relay rack
OSP/ISP building fiber	Wall
Vertical cable management	Sides of each relay rack
IP network hardware	2-post relay rack
Court information technology servers	Equipment cabinet*
Audiovisual systems	Equipment cabinet
Security access control panels	Wall
Security servers	Equipment cabinet
DAS connectivity	Wall
DAS radio and cellular components	Equipment cabinet
BMS servers	Equipment cabinet
BMS control panels	Wall
Detention system servers	Equipment cabinet
Technician desk	Floor (min. 4′ wide × 5′ deep)
Electrical distribution panel	Wall
Entrance facility conduits	Floor and wall
Expansion capability	25% future rack space

* May be adjusted due to technological advancements.
BMS = building maintenance system.
DAS = distributed antenna system.
IP = Internet Protocol
OSP/ISP = outside plant / inside plant.

3.1 General Guidelines

a. Each courthouse building shall have a minimum of one MDF room, located on a lower floor, with an accessible pathway to the loading dock or freight elevator. The MDF shall not be located on any building exterior walls or below the flood level.

b. A well-designed MDF is imperative to the overall success of the IP network and the technology systems that function within a courthouse facility. Figure 17.2 presents, for a smaller courthouse facility, a typical MDF layout that provides space for five equipment cabinets and four relay racks. The cold aisle is lined with the front sides of the server racks housing the cold air intakes, and hot aisles are where the hot air exhausts are located. The cold aisle should face the air-conditioning supply ducts, and hot aisles should face air-conditioning return ducts. Minimum clearances are indicated because they are critical to the functionality of all unified communications rooms and should be factored into the layout.

3.2 Design Criteria

a. Use cabinets and relay racks that are EIA/ECA-310, ANSI/TIA-569, or IEC 60297-3-100 compliant with a standard height of 42 rack units (U).

DIVISION TWO: TECHNICAL CRITERIA
11 Architectural Criteria
12 Structural Criteria
13 Mechanical Criteria
14 Building Management Systems Criteria
15 Electrical Criteria
16 Lighting Criteria
17 NETWORK AND COMMUNICATION SYSTEMS
17.A General Overview
17.B Minimum Point of Entry (MPOE)
17.C Distribution Pathways
17.D Backbone Connectivity
17.E Horizontal Connectivity
17.F Administration and Verification
17.G Network Architecture
17.H Distributed Antenna System
18 Audiovisual Systems
19 Acoustical Criteria
20 Fire Protection Criteria

Important References

An example of "active electronics" would be an information technology (IT) network switch used to connect local area network (LAN) segments.

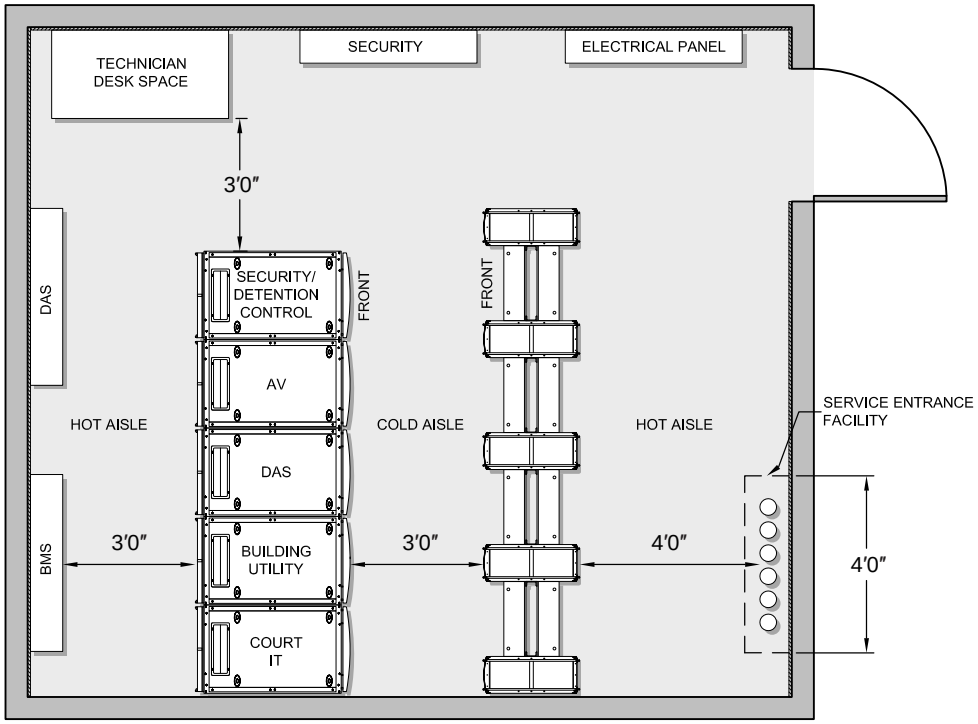
Multiple courtrooms may be served from a single IDF; however, close coordination of the various technology systems' space requirements is imperative when developing the overall size of an IDF supporting a courtroom space.

EIA/ECA = Electronic Industries Alliance Standards

ANSI = American National Standards Institute

TIA = Telecommunications Industry Association

IEC = International Electrotechnical Commission



AV = audiovisual.
BMS = building management system.
DAS = distributed antenna system.
IDF = intermediate distribution frame.
IT = information technology.
MDF = main distribution frame.

Figure 17.2 Typical Smaller Courthouse MDF Layout

b. Do not locate restrooms, janitor closets, or piping with running water immediately above, next to, or in the MDF.

c. Cover internal wall surfaces with 3/4″ fire-rated plywood. Sealed concrete is an acceptable finish on floors.

d. Use vertical cable runway sections to route cables from the floor and ceiling conduit penetrations to the overhead cable runway.

e. Provide outward-swinging doors fitted with both a key and a card lock; the minimum door size should be 42″ wide × 90″ high.

f. Factor floor loading at 200 pounds per square foot, confirmed on a case-by-case basis.

g. Reserve a minimum of one relay rack for the consolidation of service provider, county, and court wide area network (WAN) edge active equipment devices.

h. At a minimum, use 10″ × 17-1/2″ double-sided vertical cable management between racks.

i. For relay racks used for the termination of structured cabling, reserve 50 percent of the available rack unit space for active electronics.

j. Install all equipment racks and cabinets in compliance with California Building Code (CBC) seismic standards.

k. Obtain typical power draw and National Electrical Manufacturers Association (NEMA) plug type for switches and UPS units. Include 208-volt outlets in the MDF/IDF with 30-amp receptacles. Coordinate with site network requirements for additional power requirements.

l. Develop the port count matrix early. Early involvement of the applicable provider is recommended.

m. Calculate the estimated heat load of IDF/MDF for heating, ventilation, and air-conditioning (HVAC). If evaporative cooler is used, coordinate the air supply locations with equipment locations in electrical, MDF, and IDF rooms to ensure the air supply is not above sensitive equipment.

n. Ensure the court data racks are next to the provider's data racks in an appropriately sized IT room.

o. Provide a room-ready checklist in contract documents.

p. See chapter 20, Fire Protection Criteria, for fire protection requirements for IDF/MDF rooms.

4. Intermediate Distribution Frame

An IDF is typically an enclosed architectural space for housing communications equipment, cabling terminations, and any cross-connect cabling required to distribute communications signals throughout a localized area.

4.1 General Guidelines

a. IDF spaces should be dedicated to communication systems and audiovisual (AV) equipment use, centrally located on every floor, and stacked vertically through the building to enable efficient pathway and cabling distribution within each serving zone.

b. IDF serving zones must allow for each individual twisted pair copper cabling segment to fall within the Ethernet distance limitations of 295′. Additional IDF spaces should be considered when the serving area is greater than 10,000 SF or the interior building space plan restricts the size of a single IDF, limiting the available space for equipment.

c. Typically, IDF room size recommendations are derived from the square footages of the area served, factoring one outlet per typical 100 SF of work area. However, these general guidelines do not take into account the quantity of technology systems that courtroom IDF rooms are required to support; therefore, the general industry rule-of-thumb numbers should not apply. IDF rooms should be sized on a case-by-case basis considering the minimum clearances to accommodate the active electronics and termination components that each room houses.

d. Table 17.2 outlines the systems and typical mounting locations that should be considered when developing the IDF size and interior design.

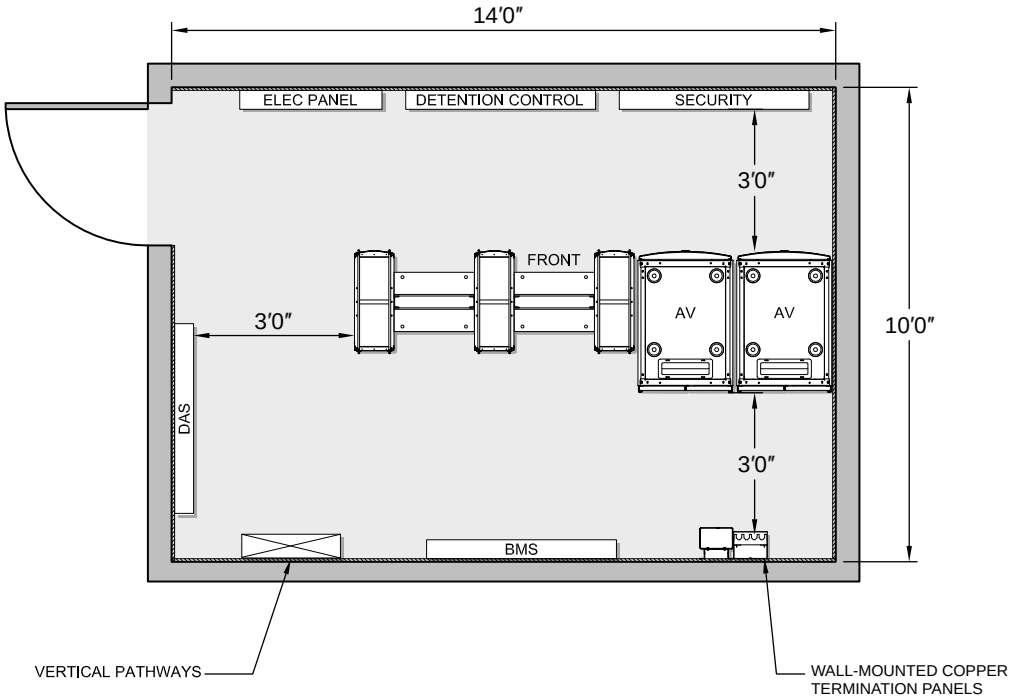
e. Figure 17.3 presents a typical IDF layout for a courthouse facility where two courtrooms are served from a single IDF. This IDF provides two audiovisual cabinets (one per courtroom) and two relay racks for housing active electronics and structured cabling termination components. Minimum clearances are critical to the room design and are indicated for reference.

DIVISION TWO: TECHNICAL CRITERIA
11 Architectural Criteria
12 Structural Criteria
13 Mechanical Criteria
14 Building Management Systems Criteria
15 Electrical Criteria
16 Lighting Criteria
17 NETWORK AND COMMUNICATION SYSTEMS
17.A General Overview
17.B Minimum Point of Entry (MPOE)
17.C Distribution Pathways
17.D Backbone Connectivity
17.E Horizontal Connectivity
17.F Administration and Verification
17.G Network Architecture
17.H Distributed Antenna System
18 Audiovisual Systems
19 Acoustical Criteria
20 Fire Protection Criteria

Table 17.2 IDF Space Considerations

BUILDING TECHNOLOGY SYSTEM	TYPICAL MOUNTING LOCATION
Intrabuilding fiber	2-post relay rack
Intrabuilding copper	Wall
Horizontal cabling	2-post relay rack
Vertical cable management	Sides of each relay rack
IP network hardware	2-post relay rack
Audiovisual systems	Equipment cabinet
Security access control panels	Wall
Security servers	Equipment cabinet
DAS connectivity	Wall
BMS control panels	Wall
Detention system servers	Equipment cabinet
Detention system control panels	Wall
Electrical distribution panel	Wall
Vertical conduit pathways	Floor and wall

BMS = building management system.
DAS = distributed antenna system.
IDF = intermediate distribution frame.
IP = Internet Protocol.
MDF = main distribution frame.
OSP = outside plant.



AV = audiovisual.
DAS = distributed antenna system.

Figure 17.3 IDF Serving Two Courtrooms

4.2 Design Criteria

a. Cabinets and relay racks shall be EIA/ECA-310 or IEC 60297-3-100 compliant with a standard height of 42U.

b. No restrooms, janitor closets, or piping with running water shall be located immediately above, next to, or in the IDF.

c. Internal wall surfaces should be covered with 3/4″ fire-rated plywood.

d. Sealed concrete is an acceptable finish on floors, and a finished ceiling should not be provided.

e. Vertical cable runway sections shall be used to route cables from the floor and ceiling penetrations to the overhead cable runway grid.

f. A single outward-swinging door should be provided and fitted with both a key and a card lock; minimum door size is 42″ wide × 90″ high.

g. Adequate space and clearance should be provided for vertical conduit pathways.

h. At a minimum, 10″ double-sided vertical cable management between racks should be used.

i. Relay racks used for the termination of structured cabling shall reserve 50 percent of the available rack unit space for active electronics.

j. Equipment racks shall reserve 25 percent of the available space for additional equipment.

k. All equipment racks and cabinets shall be installed in compliance with CBC seismic standards.

5. Electrical Systems

Although the main focus of this chapter is not the electrical system criteria, the technology systems located within MDF and IDF rooms have specific power requirements. Therefore, this section provides an overview of the specific MDF and IDF electrical needs that should be considered in the building-wide electrical design. Refer to chapter 15 for the full list of systems requiring backup generator power and independent UPS systems.

5.1 General Guidelines

a. The full complement of technology-related systems housed inside MDF and IDF spaces should have adequate UPS backup to support electrical interruptions for 90 minutes for non-life-safety equipment. The UPS shall not be connected to an emergency power system. A centralized UPS system is the preferred methodology for the distribution of short-term power when the main input power source fails. Among other things, this best practice provides benefits with increased space savings within the MDF and IDF rooms and reduces maintenance costs.

b. All systems requiring generator power or dedicated UPS systems are defined in chapter 15. Refer to chapter 15 for details pertaining to fire-life-safety systems and non-life-safety systems and the specific requirements for each.

c. During preliminary building design, load estimates are required to begin the electrical system design and for space planning. Although the actual electrical equipment loads are calculated once the final systems equipment is defined, general load estimates are provided as a basis for design. For detailed requirements of emergency and standby power systems, refer to chapter 15, Electrical Criteria.

DIVISION TWO: TECHNICAL CRITERIA
11 Architectural Criteria
12 Structural Criteria
13 Mechanical Criteria
14 Building Management Systems Criteria
15 Electrical Criteria
16 Lighting Criteria
17 NETWORK AND COMMUNICATION SYSTEMS
17.A General Overview
17.B Minimum Point of Entry (MPOE)
17.C Distribution Pathways
17.D Backbone Connectivity
17.E Horizontal Connectivity
17.F Administration and Verification
17.G Network Architecture
17.H Distributed Antenna System
18 Audiovisual Systems
19 Acoustical Criteria
20 Fire Protection Criteria

Coordinate with local service providers to determine specific pathway requirements or best practices.

Satellite pathways should be designed considering each courthouse facility's specific requirements.

Important References

ASHRAE Environmental Guidelines for Datacom Equipment

BICSI *Telecommunications Distribution Methods Manual* (latest edition) for separation information from electromagnetic interference sources and for pull box sizing guidelines

Related Reading

Chapter 13, Mechanical Criteria

Chapter 15, Electrical Criteria

Chapter 16, Lighting Criteria

Chapter 20, Fire Protection Criteria

5.2 Design Criteria

a. Provide an overhead busway electrical distribution system within communications rooms. An electrical busway provides a more flexible power solution that accommodates a variety of receptacles and is more cost-effective over the life of the building.

b. Provide a grounding circuit for communications equipment. Grounding and bonding shall be provided for all equipment and racks. A grounding bus bar shall be provided.

c. Provide, in aisleways parallel to rows of racks and cabinets, lighting that does not conflict with the cable management infrastructure inside the rooms.

d. Ensure that lighting fixtures are not powered from the same distribution panel as the room's power outlets.

e. Provide in-rack power distribution units (PDUs) with power sources provided through the UPS system. Specific requirements for PDU sizes and load requirements shall be coordinated based on equipment requirements for each site.

6. Mechanical Systems

Although the main focus of this chapter is not the mechanical system criteria, the technology systems located within MDF and IDF rooms have specific mechanical requirements. Therefore, this section provides an overview of the specific MDF and IDF mechanical needs that should be considered in the building-wide mechanical design. Refer to chapter 13 for the building-wide mechanical systems design criteria.

6.1 General Guidelines

a. Mechanical system cooling units shall be dedicated to the operation of the MDF and IDF rooms they serve and located inside the room. Multiple floors shall have discrete service—that is, not ganged together—and be capable of providing 24/7/365 operation independent of the base building system. System selection shall be either packaged heat pumps (condenser water) or fan coils (chilled water), based on case-by-case project analysis. Supply and return ducting shall be directed at the respective cold and hot aisle layout within each MDF and IDF room requiring cooling. Hot and cold aisles shall be fully contained such that hot aisle air does not interact with cold aisle air.

b. At a minimum, the mechanical systems shall be designed to meet the current American Society of Heating, Refrigerating and Air-Conditioning Engineers Technical Committee's (ASHRAE TC) 9.9 thermal guidelines for allowable temperature and humidity parameters. For reference, the ASHRAE TC 9.9 standard provides the following system parameters:

- Low-end temperature: 64.4°F (supply air to equipment)
- High-end temperature: 80.6°F (supply air to equipment)
- Low-end moisture: 41.9°F dew point
- High-end moisture: 60 percent relative humidity and 59°F dew point

Note: These recommended temperatures and conditions are for inlet air measurement entering the equipment and not necessarily room temperature.

c. During preliminary building design, the estimated MDF room cooling load British thermal units per hour (Btu/hr) should be based on a minimum

electrical load of 75 watts per square foot. In each IDF, the estimated cooling load (Btu/hr) should be based on a minimum electrical load of 65 watts per square foot. These load estimates should be developed further as the building design moves forward. The load shall be confirmed as equipment is determined and must meet or exceed the equipment manufacturer's requirements.

6.2 Design Criteria

a. Consideration of air-side free cooling should be made based on climatic conditions.

b. The mechanical systems shall report to the building management system (BMS), building engineers, and IT support personnel, triggering alarms when set parameters are exceeded.

c. In general, routing plumbing or HVAC pipes (pressurized or unpressurized) to go through any communications space should be avoided. Water-filled pipes shall route around communications rooms rather than through them, unless they serve components within the room, such as fire suppression systems.

d. When water-filled pipes travel within a communications room, pipe isolation and drain pans shall be provided.

e. Roof drains or other sources of water shall not be located above any communications rooms.

7. Grounding and Bonding

a. A uniform telecommunications grounding and bonding system shall be provided between all communications rooms in accordance with American National Standards Institute / Telecommunications Industry Association (ANSI/TIA)-607-E telecommunications grounding and bonding standards and Building Industry Consulting Services International (BICSI) guidelines. The building-wide grounding system that provides each communications space with a dedicated grounding bus bar shall comply with California Electrical Code (CEC).

b. Extended from the grounding bus bar within each communications space, a common bonding network consisting of a series of insulated stranded conductors, no less than 6 American Wire Gauge (AWG), should bond all communications components requiring a ground connection to the grounding bus bar. Components typically bonded to the grounding bus bar include but are not limited to equipment cabinets, relay racks, communications equipment, protector blocks, cable runways, and communications conduits.

17.C DISTRIBUTION PATHWAYS

To meet the overall goal of physical convergence, communications pathways should be designed to support the distribution needs of all unified communication systems. Combining low-voltage cabling infrastructure in shared pathways provides a well-organized, functional approach to the distribution of connectivity, whether outside or inside a courthouse building. In turn, a unified pathway design that takes into consideration the cable needs of each IP-based building technology enhances the flexibility of the distribution system over time, allowing for simplified changes or upgrades.

1. Outside Plant Pathways

In addition to the entrance conduits required for service provider connectivity, outside plant (OSP) pathways provide a means to route communications cabling outside the building. For a

DIVISION TWO: TECHNICAL CRITERIA
11 Architectural Criteria
12 Structural Criteria
13 Mechanical Criteria
14 Building Management Systems Criteria
15 Electrical Criteria
16 Lighting Criteria
17 NETWORK AND COMMUNICATION SYSTEMS
17.A General Overview
17.B Minimum Point of Entry (MPOE)
17.C Distribution Pathways
17.D Backbone Connectivity
17.E Horizontal Connectivity
17.F Administration and Verification
17.G Network Architecture
17.H Distributed Antenna System
18 Audiovisual Systems
19 Acoustical Criteria
20 Fire Protection Criteria

courthouse facility, this may include media connections to a television network pedestal, security entry control and camera devices, and landscaping control equipment. The OSP pathway system needs to be carefully coordinated with all site utilities. Industry standard components such as conduits, maintenance holes, pull boxes, or handholes should be used to distribute connectivity in the OSP.

Alternative Considerations

Large multifloor facilities may be better served using second-level backbone cabling distribution—that is, a central IDF serving as a termination point for backbone connectivity from other IDF spaces.

For each project, the designer shall consider all building utility systems and verify the need for horizontal optical fiber media.

1.1 Dedicated MPOE Conduits

Pathways and pulling points shall be dedicated to incoming service provider networks and not shared with other technologies or utilities. Diverse paths into the building should be considered and coordinated with the service providers.

1.2 Service Entrance Conduit Quantities

The quantity of service entrance conduits should be based on the size of the facility, with a minimum of four 4″ conduits, the service provider circuits, and the level of redundancy required. ANSI/California Energy Commission (CEC) codes shall be used to determine quantities. Table 17.3 shall be used for general guidance. Entrance conduit routing should be developed with site utilities and local service providers to ensure that the property line conduit termination points have been successfully coordinated.

Table 17.3 Guidelines for Service Entrance Conduit Quantities

NUMBER OF COURTROOMS	CONDUIT QUANTITY
1–6	4
7–19	6
20+	8

2. Inside Plant Pathways

A well-designed inside plant (ISP) distribution system must allow for day-one capacity as well as the high likelihood of future modifications to provide numerous efficiencies over the life cycle of a building. The ISP pathways provide a means to successfully route and support all IP and non-IP low-voltage connectivity, including larger conduit pathways for backbone connectivity between communications rooms, smaller conduit pathways for horizontal connectivity extended to wall and floor communications outlets, and connectivity for devices using Power over Ethernet.

2.1 Backbone Distribution System

a. From the MPOE, dedicated ISP conduit pathways shall extend to the MDF. When the service entrance facility is colocated within the MDF, conduit pathways shall extend directly from the OSP to the entrance facility space. An OSP-to-MDF conduit pathway system should be designed considering standard practices of the various service providers delivering connections to the building.

b. The design of backbone pathways between communications rooms should factor together the many variables associated with connecting technology spaces. The standard practice is to provide conduit pathways between the main communications rooms. In cases where IDF rooms are stacked, locating pathways in the same place within each IDF is the preferred vertical distribution methodology. Provide a functional and flexible backbone pathway design—including access and clearance, appropriate bend radii, and pull boxes—to allow for the successful distribution of communications backbone cabling.

c. The number of conduits per pathway varies depending on the number of communications cables. Provide a minimum 25 percent for future growth when considering the total quantity of conduits required. Backbone conduit segments that are greater than 50′ should have fabric duct separators installed for the

length of the conduit run. A maximum fill rate of 40 percent should be factored for day-one conduit capacity.

2.2 Rooftop Communication Systems

To facilitate future installation of rooftop communication systems, provide an electrical subpanel and submeter on the rooftop. Provide conduit pathways to the rooftop from the electrical room with pull rope (not pull string) to allow for cable runs to be added for future installations.

2.3 Horizontal Distribution System

a. Horizontal distribution pathways designed to accommodate low-voltage cabling systems can be grouped into two preferred methodologies: the primary conveyance system, which is a cable tray that extends above the main corridors from the serving communications room, and the secondary conveyance system consisting of conduit pathways from the cable tray to the communications outlet location. Coordination of each communications outlet location throughout the facility is critical, especially within the courtroom.

b. Basket or solid-rail cable trays are required for courtroom buildings because of their elevated capacities, increased robustness, and accessory components used for separation of the non-IP cable bundles such as BMS, AV, and security cabling. Accessibility and clearance requirements should be coordinated so that the overall functionality of the conveyance system is enhanced. At a minimum, cable tray clearances of 12″ above, 24″ to one side, and 3″ clear vertical space above ceiling tiles and supports should be provided.

c. Conduit pathways used for horizontal distribution shall be designed to accommodate the quantity of cables they are required to support. Coordinating final outlet locations and pathway design factoring millwork and other interior architectural parameters is critical within every courtroom. The current minimum conduit size for a standard communications outlet is 1-1/4″. Wall-mounted electrical back boxes should have manufactured 1-1/4″ knockouts to accommodate the conduit.

d. To minimize the overall number of floor penetrations, combined power and communications floor boxes and poke-through devices are acceptable for floor-mounted outlets. Size floor boxes and poke-through devices according to the number of low-voltage communications and electrical outlets at each outlet location. Specific attention should be given to floor depths and fire ratings when specifying floor boxes and poke-through devices.

e. In addition to the conveyance systems, reenterable UL-rated fire-stop assemblies are required for through penetrations in all rated walls and floors. At a minimum, size the assembly considering UL and the manufacturer's allowable fill rate. Provide a minimum 25 percent for future growth when considering the total quantity of assemblies required

2.4 Design Criteria

a. Install conduit runs in lieu of cable trays where access to the cable tray is restricted for more than 10′.

b. Locate conduit pull boxes in easily accessible locations.

c. Install ground distribution pathways according to telecommunications industry standards.

d. Insert conduit pull cords within the pathway to allow for future expansion.

DIVISION TWO: TECHNICAL CRITERIA

11 Architectural Criteria
12 Structural Criteria
13 Mechanical Criteria
14 Building Management Systems Criteria
15 Electrical Criteria
16 Lighting Criteria
17 NETWORK AND COMMUNICATION SYSTEMS
17.A General Overview
17.B Minimum Point of Entry (MPOE)
17.C Distribution Pathways
17.D Backbone Connectivity
17.E Horizontal Connectivity
17.F Administration and Verification
17.G Network Architecture
17.H Distributed Antenna System
18 Audiovisual Systems
19 Acoustical Criteria
20 Fire Protection Criteria

Important Reference

The communication system should comply with ANSI/TIA 606-D, Administration Standard for Commercial Telecommunications Infrastructure.

e. Include the cable tray size, location, and mounting methods in the building information modeling.

f. Consider acoustical transfer of hard wall connection.

g. Coordinate rated wall penetrations.

h. Do not install cable trays above hard lids when avoidable.

i. Use basket trays in lieu of rail trays.

j. Include seismic support for weight.

k. Include expansion percentage in specifications.

17.D BACKBONE CONNECTIVITY

As technology systems converge onto the IP network, efficiencies increase when a common backbone is used to distribute communications signals. Optical fiber cables shall be used as the primary backbone medium because they provide higher bandwidth and can extend greater distances than their copper counterpart. Multipair copper cabling has become the auxiliary backbone medium used to extend analog or non-IP signal technology.

Coordinate the backbone and horizontal connectivity needs for community antenna television (CATV) distribution on a case-by-case basis.

1. Optical Fiber

The current design base for first-level backbone connectivity, from the MDF to each IDF, is to deploy single-mode fiber (SMF) and 50/125 micron, laser-optimized multimode fiber (LOMMF). The fiber cable performance characteristics described below are provided considering these two fiber types. As network design evolves to meet growing bandwidth needs, the strand quantities and types of optical fiber provided in the backbone segment should meet current project requirements, industry standards, and projected bandwidth benchmarks. Reference ANSI/TIA-568.3-E for fiber installation standards and the National Electrical Contractors Association and Fiber Optic Association's (NECA/FOA) 301.

1.1 Single Mode

For single-mode fiber, OS2 fiber is the recommended cable type. Backbone SMF cable should be capable of 40-gigabit Ethernet signal transmission to 10,000 meters in the 1,310-nanometer (nm) operating window. Maximum attenuation for an SMF cable shall be no greater than 0.7 decibel (dB) per kilometer (km) using 1,310 nm and 0.5 dB/km using 1,550 nm wavelengths, respectively. Fusion-spliced, factory-connectorized pigtails are the required termination practice for SMF cable. SMF cable between the MDF and each IDF shall have a minimum of 24 strands.

1.2 Laser-Optimized Multimode

For multimode fiber, OM4 is the recommended cable type. Laser-optimized multimode cables should be capable of 40-gigabit Ethernet signal transmission to 300 meters at 2,000 MHz/km effective modal bandwidth. Maximum attenuation for LOMMF cable shall be no greater than 3.0 dB/km using 850 nm and 1.0 dB/km using 1,300 nm wavelengths, respectively. LOMMF cable between the MDF and each IDF shall have a minimum of 24 strands.

1.3 Cabling Criteria

a. Provide a flexible, spirally wrapped interlocking armor over an individual jacketed and tight buffered cable.

b. Terminate fiber cabling in fully enclosed fiber panels.

c. Provide 25 percent spare termination capacity in the panel.

d. Provide fiber connectors to be small-form-factor latched connector (LC) duplex.

e. Provide connectivity to be rated per the installation environment.

2. Multipair Copper

2.1 General Requirements

Multipair copper cable should extend from the MDF to each IDF room. Select a voice-grade Category 5e unshielded twisted pair (UTP) abrasion resistant millimeters (ARMM) cable. Use a minimum of 25 pairs.

2.2 Cabling Criteria

a. Terminate cabling onto a 110-type wall field.

b. Provide 25 percent spare termination capacity.

c. Connectivity shall be rated per the installation environment.

17.E HORIZONTAL CONNECTIVITY

Horizontal connectivity, from the floor serving IDF space to each communications outlet location, is required to extend service to various building system end devices that use the IP network. The transport medium most widely used in the horizontal is a twisted pair copper cable. Optical fiber cabling should be considered for outlet locations that are determined to be over distance.

Supplementing the hardwired connections throughout the facility, a wireless local area network (WLAN) shall be included (when developing the technology program) to provide additional connectivity to court staff or court building users. An understanding of the connectivity requirements for each system should be realized at the earliest phases in the design process and include a site survey with heat maps to plan placement of WLAN access points to ensure even signal coverage and eliminate dead spots. WLAN connectivity shall be provided for all areas with computerized maintenance equipment, such as utility rooms in the basement and penthouse.

1. Four-Pair Copper

1.1 General Requirements

Provide an end-to-end solution based on ANSI/TIA-568.0-E or the highest performance standard ratified by ANSI/TIA for topologies, distances, installation, performance, and testing requirements for telecommunications structured cabling. The minimum standard for the horizontal permanent link cabling is 6A foiled, unshielded twisted pair (F/UTP) cable, otherwise known as augmented Category 6. A foil applied over unshielded twisted pairs shall be the minimum standard for jacketing of four-pair copper cables. As network bandwidth increases, the category performance rating of four-pair copper cable should be revised to meet current industry standards.

1.2. Cabling Criteria

a. Each four-pair copper cable permanent link shall fall within the Ethernet distance limitation of 295′.

b. The complete cable plant shall meet ANSI/TIA-1152-A, Level IIIe performance requirements for Category 6A cabling.

c. In communications rooms, cabling shall be terminated in angled patch panels.

d. The end-to-end, four-pair copper connectivity solution shall use shielded components, including faceplates, wall jacks, and patch cables.

e. Connectivity shall be rated for the installation environment.

DIVISION TWO: TECHNICAL CRITERIA
11 Architectural Criteria
12 Structural Criteria
13 Mechanical Criteria
14 Building Management Systems Criteria
15 Electrical Criteria
16 Lighting Criteria
17 NETWORK AND COMMUNICATION SYSTEMS
17.A General Overview
17.B Minimum Point of Entry (MPOE)
17.C Distribution Pathways
17.D Backbone Connectivity
17.E Horizontal Connectivity
17.F Administration and Verification
17.G Network Architecture
17.H Distributed Antenna System
18 Audiovisual Systems
19 Acoustical Criteria
20 Fire Protection Criteria

Related Requirements

Tool 3, Integrated Network Architecture

2. Wireless Local Area Network

Although the term "wireless" lends itself to the concept that hardwired connections are not needed, a grid-type network of connection points dedicated to the wireless system is preferred, subject to confirmation by the technology program. To achieve seamless 100 percent coverage, communications outlets are placed in accessible locations, typically above suspended ceilings. These dedicated wireless outlets are considered part of the structured cabling system and are passive wiring-only locations, intended for use by active wireless devices, known as wireless access points (WAPs). WAP placement shall be determined through independent analysis via specialized testing and survey techniques (such as heat map or site survey) and shall be developed alongside the active systems network architecture design.

3. Typical Outlet Configurations

Typical configurations can be applied to the quantity of cables per outlet and the location of outlets per room or device. This practice is used early in design so the designer can begin validating architectural space planning efforts and develop device outlet layouts that are consistent with previous court projects.

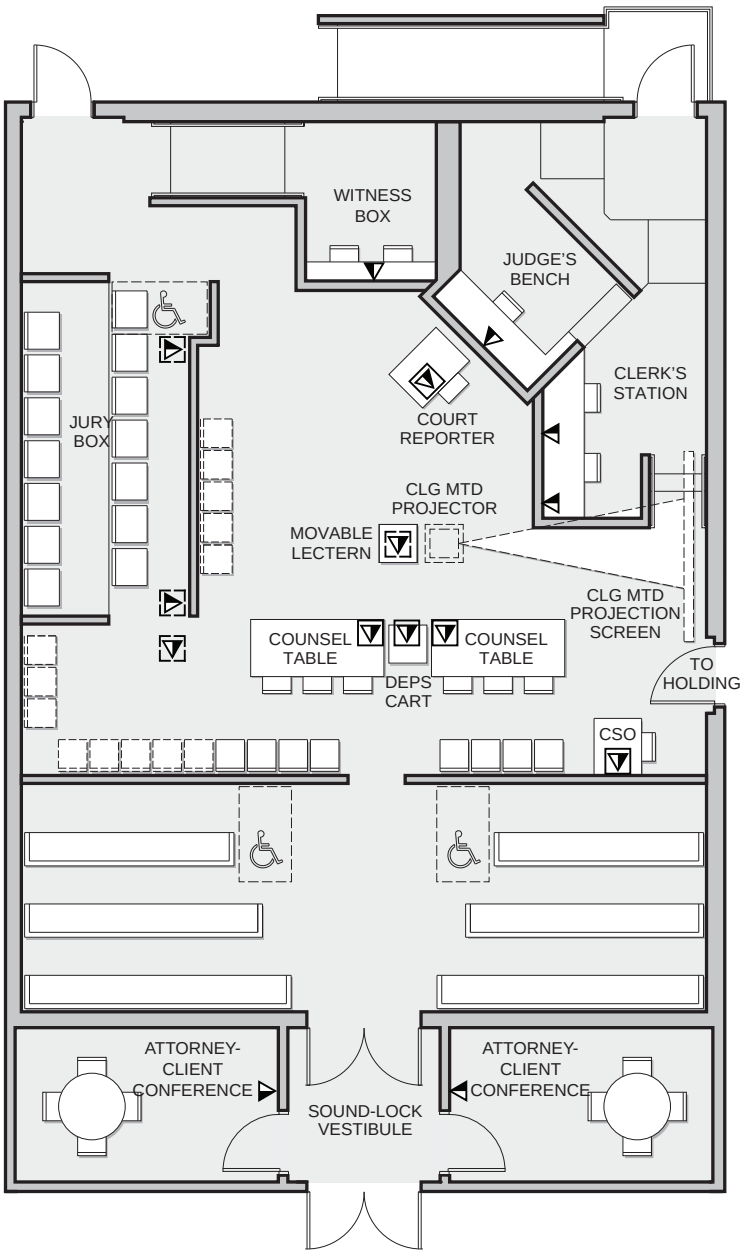
Table 17.4 is a matrix of typical communications outlets expected in a courthouse facility. The matrix illustrates the typical quantity of horizontal four-pair copper cables for each communications outlet adjacent to the IP port activation strategy. The quantity of IP port activations is provided factoring the various building system devices that may be deployed.

The standard outlet housing or faceplate shall have a minimum of four ports. All unused ports shall have a blank insert. A wall-mount phone faceplate is an exception.

Figures 17.4 and 17.5 identify the typical wall, floor, and future outlet locations within a typical courtroom.

Table 17.4 Communications Outlet Matrix

OUTLET TYPE	FOUR-PAIR CABLES	ACTIVE IP PORTS
Typical office	3	2
Typical systems furniture	3	2
Typical copier/printer/fax	2	2
Wireless local area network access point	2	2
Digital display	2	1
Audiovisual projector	2	2
Elevator control	1 (per elevator)	0
Wall phone	1	0
Audiovisual control panel	1	0
Security control panel	2	2
Security camera	1	1
BMS control panel	2	1
Intercom	1	1
Lighting control panel	2	1
Judge position	3	3
Clerk	3	2
Court reporter position	2	2
Witness position	2	2
Counsel table	2	2
Lectern	4	4
Interpreters	2	2

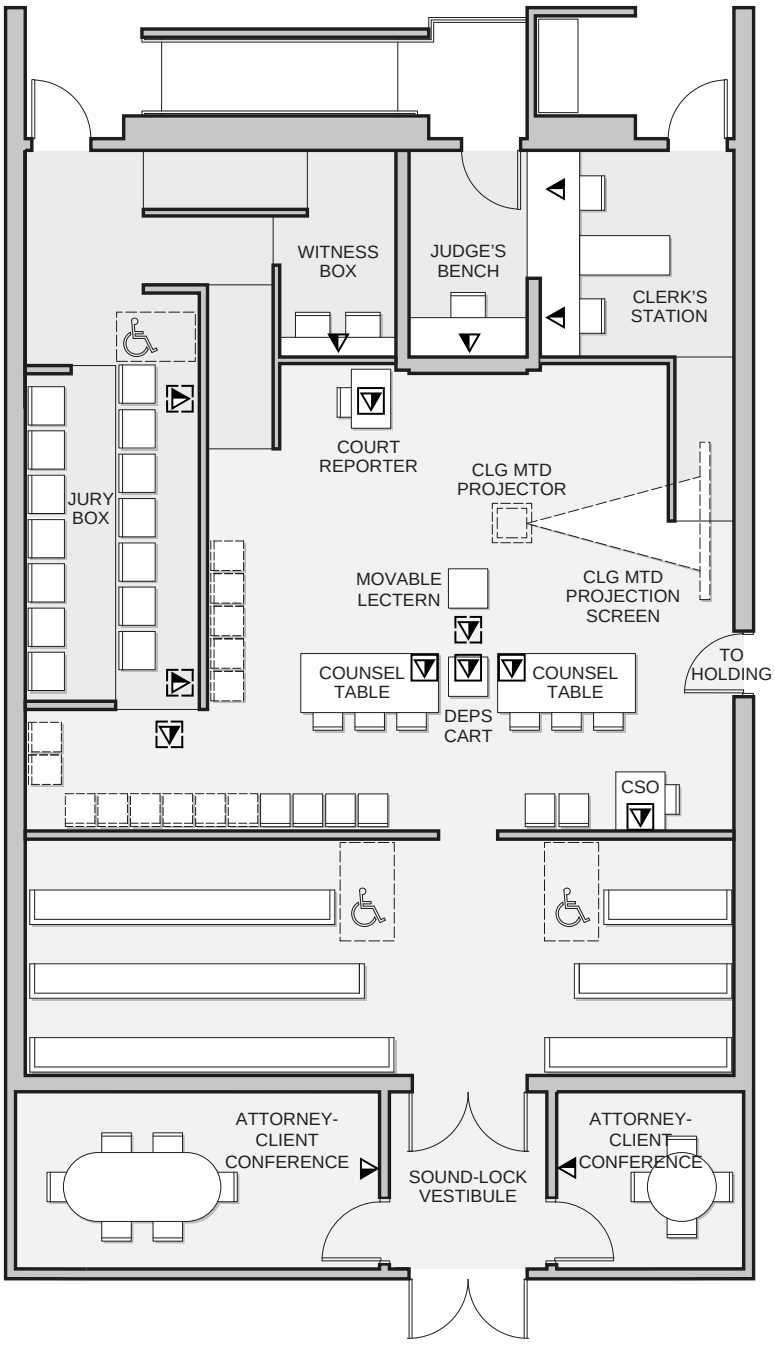


CLG MTD = ceiling-mounted.
CSO = court security officer.
DEPS CART = digital evidence presentation system cart.

Figure 17.4 Multipurpose Courtroom With Corner Bench Showing Outlets

DIVISION TWO: TECHNICAL CRITERIA

11 Architectural Criteria
12 Structural Criteria
13 Mechanical Criteria
14 Building Management Systems Criteria
15 Electrical Criteria
16 Lighting Criteria
17 NETWORK AND COMMUNICATION SYSTEMS
17.A General Overview
17.B Minimum Point of Entry (MPOE)
17.C Distribution Pathways
17.D Backbone Connectivity
17.E Horizontal Connectivity
17.F Administration and Verification
17.G Network Architecture
17.H Distributed Antenna System
18 Audiovisual Systems
19 Acoustical Criteria
20 Fire Protection Criteria



CLG MTD = ceiling-mounted.
CSO = court security officer.
DEPS CART = digital evidence presentation system cart.

Figure 17.5 Multipurpose Courtroom With Center Bench Showing Outlets

17.F ADMINISTRATION AND VERIFICATION

Administration and verification of the structured cabling system are critical to the efficient functioning of a new courthouse facility through the design phase, construction build-out, and technology systems implementation on day one and during the lifespan of the building.

Well-documented design processes—where detailed product information, shop drawings, and as-built drawings are submitted by the installing contractor—are project requirements and shall be strictly enforced. Project documentation of this type shall be reviewed in detail for accuracy and completeness.

The structured cabling connectivity solution shall be certified by the component manufacturers and provided with an extended minimum warranty period of 25 years.

1. Identification and Labeling

An identification system that complies with ANSI/TIA-606-D shall be implemented to uniquely identify the network infrastructure, including devices and cabling, installed in the facility. Provide a unique and consistent alphanumeric identification system to form the basis for the development of a communications administration system database to be approved before final design.

2. Connectivity Testing

A complete set of test results verifying the installed link and channel performance parameter results for all cable types shall be provided. Testing for copper cabling should be performed using, at a minimum, a level 4 testing device. For LOMMF cable, testing should be performed using fiber modules incorporating 850 nm vertical-cavity, surface-emitting laser and 1,310 nm laser sources combined into a single output port. All testing should be performed in accordance with ANSI/TIA-1152-A for copper and ANSI/TIA 568.3 E C.0 for fiber.

The test result documentation shall, at a minimum, contain testing, verification, and documentation of all performance specification parameters for the installed optical fiber and copper media. The documentation should be in both paper and electronic formats.

3. As-Built Documentation

As-built submittals should be developed in electronic format. At a minimum, the following documents should be provided (in addition to overall building as-built requirements):

- Project site plan of all OSP infrastructure with labeling and identification of each element;
- Matrix of the communications cabling indicating type, location, splicing, physical routing, and quantities of all communications cabling;
- Communications OSP cable plant test results;
- Single-line diagrams showing connectivity throughout the OSP, including all splice and termination locations inside and outside the building;
- Building floor plans showing communications outlet locations with identifiers for each cable;
- Building floor plans showing communications outlet locations that indicate the quantity of active IP ports per location;
- IP port activation matrix with per switch port to cable, to IP address, to virtual local area network (VLAN) identification;

DIVISION TWO: TECHNICAL CRITERIA
11 Architectural Criteria
12 Structural Criteria
13 Mechanical Criteria
14 Building Management Systems Criteria
15 Electrical Criteria
16 Lighting Criteria
17 NETWORK AND COMMUNICATION SYSTEMS
17.A General Overview
17.B Minimum Point of Entry (MPOE)
17.C Distribution Pathways
17.D Backbone Connectivity
17.E Horizontal Connectivity
17.F Administration and Verification
17.G Network Architecture
17.H Distributed Antenna System
18 Audiovisual Systems
19 Acoustical Criteria
20 Fire Protection Criteria

- Building floor plans showing distributed antenna system (DAS) locations;
- Enlarged plans of the communications rooms;
- Heat maps for WLAN placement with access point locations;
- Building floor plans showing routing of communications pathways and pull box locations;
- Building floor plans showing locations and types of UL fire-stop systems;
- Communications interior cable plant test results for copper and fiber; and
- Single-line diagrams of all components of the DAS, including infrastructure, connectivity, operating and safety devices, control panels, instrumentation, and annunciators.

17.G NETWORK ARCHITECTURE

1. Design Principles

The converged IP network design's goal is to develop an intelligent, converged network that provides a responsive, effective, and supportive environment so the courts can achieve their communications network objectives.

A converged IP-based network provides an intelligent communications transport facility that is effective in increasing building performance, functionality, and environmental sustainability. Network convergence should allow the integration, automation, and optimization of all courthouse systems and equipment required to serve the building and its occupants.

Design principles that the integrated IP network should factor in include but are not limited to:

- Maximum efficiency for occupants;
- Effective resource management;
- Responsivity to user needs;
- The ability to adapt, integrate, and enhance new technologies;
- The ability to accommodate and react to organizational changes; and
- Ease of operation and maintenance.

2. Systems on the IP Network

The building systems communications goal is to employ IP devices so that they can be transported over the IP network. A converged IP network provides a single logical transmission platform for all the IP devices within a facility.

Building systems connected to the IP network may require a temporary network for commissioning and testing purposes. Typically, the building IP network is one of the last systems to come online. For systems requiring commissioning and testing before network availability, the contractor shall provide a temporary network. Once the building IP network is live, a transfer to the permanent IP network can be made.

The following courthouse technology systems are typically supported by the facility's converged IP network:

- Data for office applications
- Judicial-specific applications
- Case management systems
- Internet/web access
- IP telephony system
- WLAN communications (Wi-Fi)
- Network management and network control traffic
- Security and access control systems
- Security video media
- Building management system
- Lighting control system
- Digital signage system
- Video and streaming media
- Audiovisual system
- Queuing system
- HVAC system
- Landscaping irrigation system
- Public address system
- Electrical metering
- Solar controllers and inverters
- Intercoms

Accurate estimation of the number of IP ports required for facilities-related devices is essential for the design and implementation of a properly sized, robust, and scalable network infrastructure. The technology program, which examines individual project needs and requirements, will determine which of the courthouse technology systems are needed and to what extent they will use the converged IP network.

3. IP Network Segregation

Table 17.5 documents the baseline network usage groups expected on the converged IP network that should be taken into account when designing IP network segregation (e.g., IP addressing and VLAN schemes).

4. Network Availability

a. The primary design considerations of a high-availability network begin with the accumulation of information related to strategic business and system functionality requirements. After the primary information has been gathered, recommendations to achieve the required availability should be developed considering the latest communications technologies and converged network design principles.

DIVISION TWO: TECHNICAL CRITERIA
11 Architectural Criteria
12 Structural Criteria
13 Mechanical Criteria
14 Building Management Systems Criteria
15 Electrical Criteria
16 Lighting Criteria
17 NETWORK AND COMMUNICATION SYSTEMS
17.A General Overview
17.B Minimum Point of Entry (MPOE)
17.C Distribution Pathways
17.D Backbone Connectivity
17.E Horizontal Connectivity
17.F Administration and Verification
17.G Network Architecture
17.H Distributed Antenna System
18 Audiovisual Systems
19 Acoustical Criteria
20 Fire Protection Criteria

Table 17.5 Network Segregation

SYSTEMS	SUBNET SEGREGATION	DEVICES
Data	Data (general user data traffic)	
	Data (printer)	
	Data (application server traffic)	
Voice	VoIP	
	VoIP end devices (handsets, etc.)	
	VoIP call management	
BMS	BMS IP controller	
	BMS servers	
	BMS monitor workstations	
Security—SMS	SMS	Security IP end devices
	SMS	Monitoring & badge workstations
	SMS	Access control servers
Security—DLCS	DLCS	Intercom & programmable logic controller
	DLCS	Monitoring terminals
	DLCS	Detention control & intercom servers
Security	Video media	Security IP cameras
	Video media	Monitoring workstations
	Video media	Media video recording servers
Security—duress	Duress alarm system	Duress alarm controller
Audiovisual	AV control & monitoring	AV IP end devices
	AV control & monitoring	AV matrix
	Digital signage, queuing, and IPTV	Display panels
	Digital signage, queuing, and IPTV	Media servers
Wireless LAN	WLAN trusted	
	WLAN guest	
	WLAN controller	
LAN to LAN	Routing LAN core to LAN core	
WAN Edge	Routing edge public subnets	
Extranet	Extranet clients	
Intrusion detection system	Intrusion prevention system monitoring	
DMZ	DMZ subnets	
Firewall to core LAN	Routing firewall to core LAN	
Network management	Network management	

AV = audiovisual.
BMS – building management system.
DLCS = detention lock control system.
DMZ = demilitarized zone.
IP = Internet Protocol.
IPTV = Internet Protocol television.
LAN = local area network.
SMS = security management system.
VoIP = Voice over Internet Protocol.
WAN = wide area network.
WLAN = wireless local area network.

b. The following design parameters shall guide the design process through implementation, commissioning, and testing:

- Scalability: Switch port density shall be included in the LAN access and core/distribution layer, incoming service interface ports for WAN routers, and voice gateways.
- Resilience: The network shall be designed with fault tolerance and/or fail-over capabilities to prevent system downtime resulting from a single point of failure.
- Redundancy: "Hot standby" redundancy (secondary paths) provides system resilience by delivering the capability to handle all the traffic and services of the primary system with minimal or no effect on the user base.
- Security: The relationship between network security and network availability is important. A network that has been compromised may not be available to its regular user base or may not achieve the expected performance or availability levels. Careful consideration is required when designing an environment where access to resources is restricted to users based on access lists, filtering, and passwords.
- Performance: Design criteria shall ensure the delivery of client server–based applications, including interfaces and link data rates, quality of services (queuing, loss, latency, and jitter), and application characteristics.
- Manageability: System design shall allow administrators to be proactive when dealing with day-to-day operations. Management areas include device activity, bandwidth management, and software and system upgrades.
- Wireless: The converged network system shall be designed to provide the user base with logical connectivity without being physically connected to the LAN infrastructure.
- Technology: A design consideration should be the adoption of open architecture standards–based communications and networking models to allow interoperability between existing systems and future system enhancements.
- Environmental: With the implementation of a converged network system providing business-critical availability, the need to protect the physical equipment environment becomes increasingly important. Environmental considerations typically include power, air-conditioning, and secure access.

5. IP Network Hardware Design Elements

a. At the baseline level, the IP network hardware elements in table 17.6 shall be included in the design and integration of the converged IP network and WAN.

DIVISION TWO: TECHNICAL CRITERIA

11 Architectural Criteria
12 Structural Criteria
13 Mechanical Criteria
14 Building Management Systems Criteria
15 Electrical Criteria
16 Lighting Criteria
17 NETWORK AND COMMUNICATION SYSTEMS
17.A General Overview
17.B Minimum Point of Entry (MPOE)
17.C Distribution Pathways
17.D Backbone Connectivity
17.E Horizontal Connectivity
17.F Administration and Verification
17.G Network Architecture
17.H Distributed Antenna System
18 Audiovisual Systems
19 Acoustical Criteria
20 Fire Protection Criteria

Early determination and coordination of DAS requirements are required for MDF space planning and layout.

Table 17.6 IP Network Hardware Elements

WIDE AREA NETWORK	LOCAL AREA NETWORK
WAN edge routers or switches	LAN core switches
Public zone	LAN access switches
Firewalls	
Extranet security zone	
Demilitarized zone	

b. The type and capacity of IP network hardware elements needed shall be determined on a per project basis because the size of facility and number of active IP ports will vary significantly between projects. At a minimum, provide 25 percent IP port and switching throughput expansion capability for all LAN core and LAN access switches.

c. The IP network hardware elements must be capable of accommodating the IP packet data traffic and IP device port needs of all the project-relevant building systems.

17.H DISTRIBUTED ANTENNA SYSTEM

1. Objectives

A distributed antenna system (DAS) is a network of spatially separated antenna nodes connected via a transport medium that provides radio and cellular wireless service throughout the facility. Because of the complexity of design factors related to developing an effective DAS, the extent of this system must be defined in the overall technology program.

The provision of cellular DAS shall be determined on a project-by-project basis. A detailed court-by-court analysis is required for each facility to understand which service providers should be supported by the cellular DAS. In addition, coordination by the design and construction team with the cellular vendors for the approval of interconnection to all the required service provider macro networks is required. This coordination effort will also need to be extended to public safety entities to accommodate the various frequencies that the emergency responder communication enhancement system (ERCES) will support for emergency services and first responders.

2. General Requirements

Provide ERCES per California Fire Code (CFC) chapter 510; National Fire Protection Association (NFPA) 72, chapter 24; and NFPA 1225, Chapter 18. The ERCES frequency shall be coordinated with the local county's agency that owns the frequencies and incorporated in the project. The frequency for the two-way in-building radio communication shall be coordinated with the court's security team (sheriff, bailiff, third-party security provider, etc.) that will be working in the building. This frequency shall also be used for the duress alarm notification system.

3. Public Safety

At a minimum, the public safety entities that should be considered during the design phase are the sheriff or marshal, fire and rescue department, emergency medical services, and any other first responders. A list of all entities and their associated frequencies must be captured under the primary public safety requirements of the ERCES. The ERCES shall be flexible enough to allow for jurisdiction changes and for additional system frequencies. The radio frequencies for the court security provider personnel shall be included for in-building two-way radio communication.

4. Coverage Areas

Radio coverage is the primary concern, followed by cellular coverage for a courthouse building. Detention areas shall be provided with 100 percent radio coverage. Spaces including the fire command center, security operations center, fire pump room, judicial chambers, exit stairs, exit passageways, elevator lobbies, standpipe cabinets, sprinkler section valve locations, and all mechanical room and communications spaces should have a minimum of 99 percent radio coverage.

Other general building area coverage should be within the allowable tolerance set by the Judicial Council and in compliance with CFC chapter 510; NFPA 72, chapter 24; and NFPA 1225, chapter 18 for ERCES. It shall not fall below a minimum of 95 percent floor area radio coverage with a delivered audio quality (DAQ) of 3.0.

5. Space Requirements and Connectivity

If required, the DAS headend equipment, the base station, and other main components should be located within the MDF. If the MDF is used, then the space is required to be two-hour rated. There should be provisions within the MDF to support these components and space allocated for service provider cabinets. Wall space should be dedicated within the MDF for DAS equipment panels and distribution equipment. All DAS equipment shall be placed in a NEMA 4 enclosure. Additionally, wall space in each IDF may need to be reserved to support DAS equipment and connectivity.

The DAS will use the building ISP fiber backbone. Any coaxial cable, splitters, or other DAS distribution media will need to be incorporated into the overall pathway and connectivity requirements. Where radio frequency–based technology requires the use of coaxial cable for horizontal connectivity, provide an RG-6 quad-shielded cable.

The ERCES cabling shall meet code-mandated survivability requirements.

6. Power

The power requirements for the DAS shall follow the CBC and CFC requirements. The DAS radio and cellular base station and other headend equipment must remain operational during a power outage. The source of uninterrupted power is project dependent and should be determined considering the independent needs of each courthouse facility. The ERCES shall be provided with standby power per CFC 510.4.2.3 and 1203.2.3. Refer to chapter 15, Electrical Criteria, for detailed power requirements.

DIVISION TWO: TECHNICAL CRITERIA

11 Architectural Criteria
12 Structural Criteria
13 Mechanical Criteria
14 Building Management Systems Criteria
15 Electrical Criteria
16 Lighting Criteria
17 NETWORK AND COMMUNICATION SYSTEMS
17.A General Overview
17.B Minimum Point of Entry (MPOE)
17.C Distribution Pathways
17.D Backbone Connectivity
17.E Horizontal Connectivity
17.F Administration and Verification
17.G Network Architecture
17.H Distributed Antenna System
18 Audiovisual Systems
19 Acoustical Criteria
20 Fire Protection Criteria

DIVISION TWO: TECHNICAL CRITERIA

18 AUDIOVISUAL SYSTEMS

SECTION	TOPIC	PAGE
18.A	Audiovisual Design	18.2
18.B	Audiovisual Criteria	18.2
18.C	Technical Infrastructure	18.3
18.D	Audiovisual System Descriptions	18.3
18.E	Description of Courthouse Spaces	18.9
18.F	Audiovisual System Commissioning	18.15



Superior Court of California, County of Glenn
Willows, CA
© Drew Kelly Photography

18.A AUDIOVISUAL DESIGN

Audiovisual (AV) systems are part of the technology program to be implemented in the planning of the courthouse as described in chapter 17, Network and Communication Systems.

The design shall provide an integrated, reliable, scalable, and sustainable audiovisual system to assist the court with judicial proceedings and day-to-day administrative and training needs. Systems shall be easy to use and maintain, regardless of the size and location of the facility or the number of staff employed. Courtrooms that will hear remote proceedings shall comply with the technology standards described in Code of Civil Procedure section 367.76(o).

Coordinate with network and communication systems, mechanical, and electrical disciplines to ensure that adequate power, cooling, and network bandwidth are provided for all audiovisual system components to run concurrently and at peak performance.

For further information, see chapter 13, Mechanical Criteria; chapter 15, Electrical Criteria; and chapter 16, Lighting Criteria.

Various configurations in the layout of courtrooms are driven by the function or functions assigned to their operation. Refer to chapter 5, Court Set, for layout descriptions.

18.B AUDIOVISUAL CRITERIA

The following criteria shall be followed when designing the audiovisual systems.

1. Reliability and Serviceability

Systems with a high level of reliability and ease of maintenance shall be chosen by implementing industry standard technologies and installation practices as well as using readily available components and materials. All equipment specified must be available from at least two vendors.

2. Integration

a. System components and infrastructure shall be fully integrated within the design of the courthouse. Equipment and cable management systems that allow for incorporation into the architectural elements, millwork, and furniture shall be selected. An effort shall be made to conceal equipment from plain sight.

b. Audiovisual systems shall be integrated with the telecommunications and information technology (IT) systems to gain efficiency within the building design. Whenever possible, AV and network spaces, pathways, components, and cabling shall be shared. Where applicable, the AV system shall also use the IT systems for the delivery and transmission of audio, video, and control signals. Audiovisual systems shall identify specific IT protocol (e.g., Donte, etc.) that will be needed to integrate into network switches.

c. All non–user interface AV equipment shall be installed in dedicated equipment cabinets located in the facility's main distribution frame (MDF) and intermediate distribution frame (IDF) locations. Only user-essential equipment shall be installed in individual rooms. See chapter 17, Network and Communication Systems, for specific equipment criteria.

3. Scalability

A system that is nonproprietary, standards based, and scalable to allow for the future addition of components and functionality shall be chosen. The system components and technical infrastructure shall provide for a minimum of 15 percent expansion capability. Expandability shall include additional inputs and outputs on the digital signal processor (DSP), matrix switcher, and control system.

Do not use the Audio Video Bridging (AVB) protocol, as it requires AVB-compliant switches, which prevent leveraging the primary building network switches, limiting design flexibility and increasing infrastructure costs.

4. Sustainability

The designer shall provide a system designed to use environmentally conscious technologies, installation approaches, and power management strategies to reduce the impact on the building's electrical and mechanical systems and to promote overall facility efficiency. Whenever possible, the designer shall specify Energy Star–compliant components.

18.C TECHNICAL INFRASTRUCTURE

Figures 18.1 and 18.2 illustrate the distribution of technology elements in the courtroom. Wherever possible, colocate audiovisual services with the network infrastructure. See chapter 17, Network and Communication Systems, for coordination information.

1. Equipment Cabinets

Unless otherwise noted, all non–user interface AV components shall be installed in dedicated equipment cabinets located in the facility's MDF and IDF locations. If AV equipment is located in rooms other than IDF or MDF rooms (e.g., conference room credenzas), provisions must be made to supply adequate cooling air to keep the temperature below the manufacturer's rating, even when the building-wide air-conditioning system is in unoccupied mode during nights and weekends. Equipment racks must include all cable management, electrical power distribution, blank panels, vent panels, and the like. See chapter 17, Network and Communication Systems, for specific equipment cabinet size criteria.

2. Cable Pathways

Where industry best practice allows, the audiovisual cabling shall use the telecommunications pathway infrastructure. Careful planning and design shall be observed to avoid signal cross-contamination. Where Ethernet cable is used, no horizontal AV pathway initiated at the MDF or IDF shall exceed the distance limitation of 295′.

18.D AUDIOVISUAL SYSTEM DESCRIPTIONS

1. Speech and Audio Reinforcement System

a. Wired microphones shall use shock and vibration isolation mounts, mute switches, and illuminated mute lights. Radio frequency (RF)–based wireless microphones shall use digital encryption.

b. When RF-based microphones are used, the designer shall conduct radio frequency sweep tests to ensure that correct allocation and sufficient bandwidth are available.

c. Eight to twelve channels of digital audio recording output shall be provided via Universal Serial Bus (USB) output for personal computer (PC) connection.

d. Audio reinforcement shall consist of four designated speaker zones (judge and witness, jury, courtroom well, and audience seating) using mix-minus audio functionality.

e. Sound masking using pink noise shall be provided for sidebar conversations with the control from the judge's bench push button control and the touch panel.

f. Stereo headphone audio outputs (3.5 mm) shall be provided at the court reporter and clerk locations.

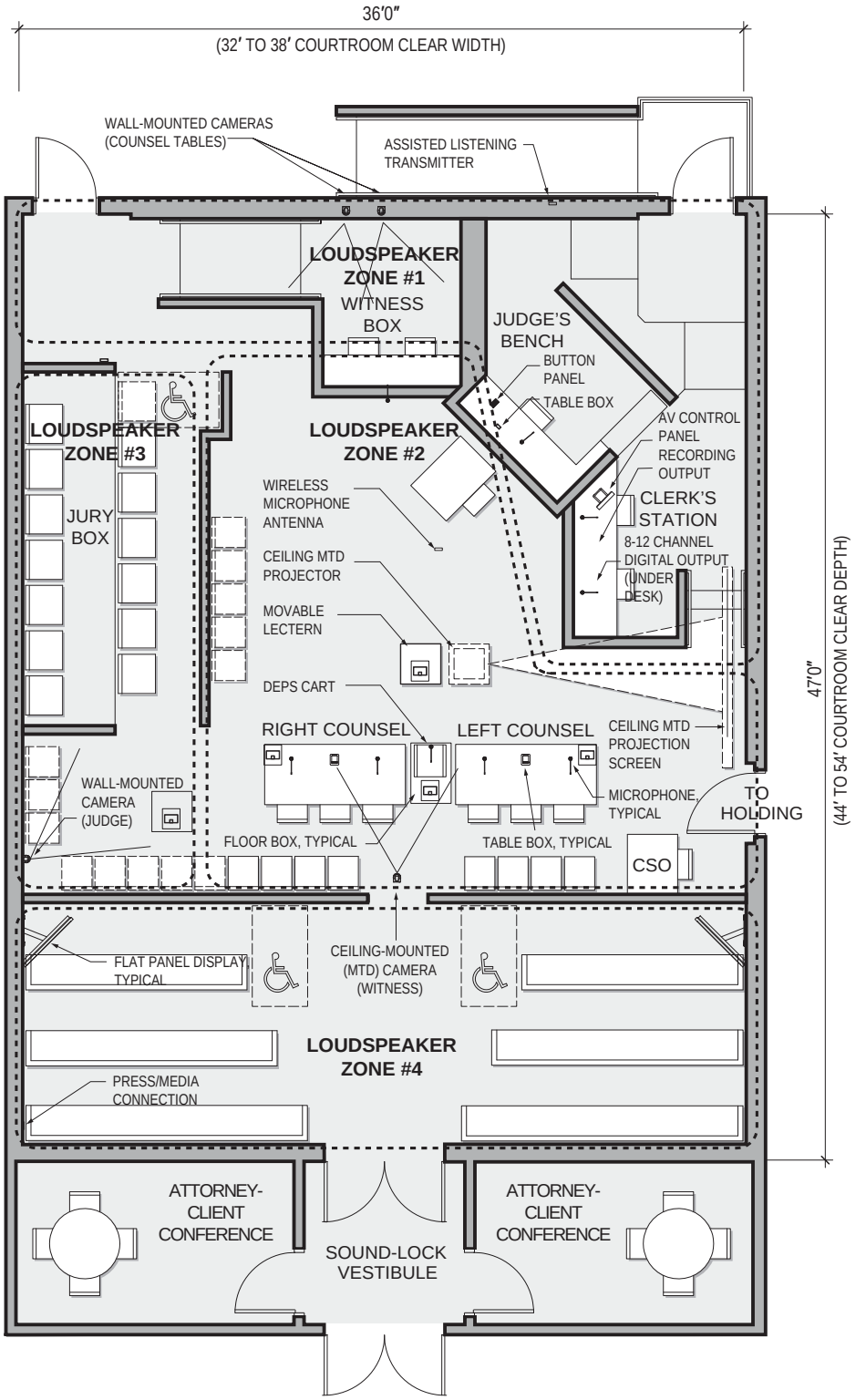
g. Speech and audio reinforcement systems design and final commissioning shall follow the current release of the design standards established by Audiovisual and Integrated Experience Association (AVIXA) A102.01:2017, Audio Coverage Uniformity in Listener Area.

DIVISION TWO: TECHNICAL CRITERIA
11 Architectural Criteria
12 Structural Criteria
13 Mechanical Criteria
14 Building Management System Criteria
15 Electrical Criteria
16 Lighting Criteria
17 Network and Communication Systems
18 AUDIOVISUAL SYSTEMS
18.A Audiovisual Design
18.B Audiovisual Criteria
18.C Technical Infrastructure
18.D Audiovisual System Descriptions
18.E Description of Courthouse Spaces
18.F Audiovisual System Commissioning
19 Acoustical Criteria
20 Fire Protection Criteria

Refer to chapter 10, Building Support Services, for additional information.

MDFs and IDFs are integral parts of the audiovisual system's backbone. Close coordination with the network, mechanical, and electrical infrastructure systems is necessary to ensure successful audiovisual technology deployment. Refer to the corresponding chapters for more information.

Network pathways play a key role in the routing and distribution of cables for many of the building technology systems. The sharing of these pathways with audiovisual systems is encouraged. Refer to chapter 17, Network and Communication Systems, and chapter 15, Electrical Criteria, for standards and procedures.



CSO = court security officer.
DEPS cart = digital evidence presentation system cart.

Figure 18.1 Typical Courtroom, Corner Bench—AV Requirement

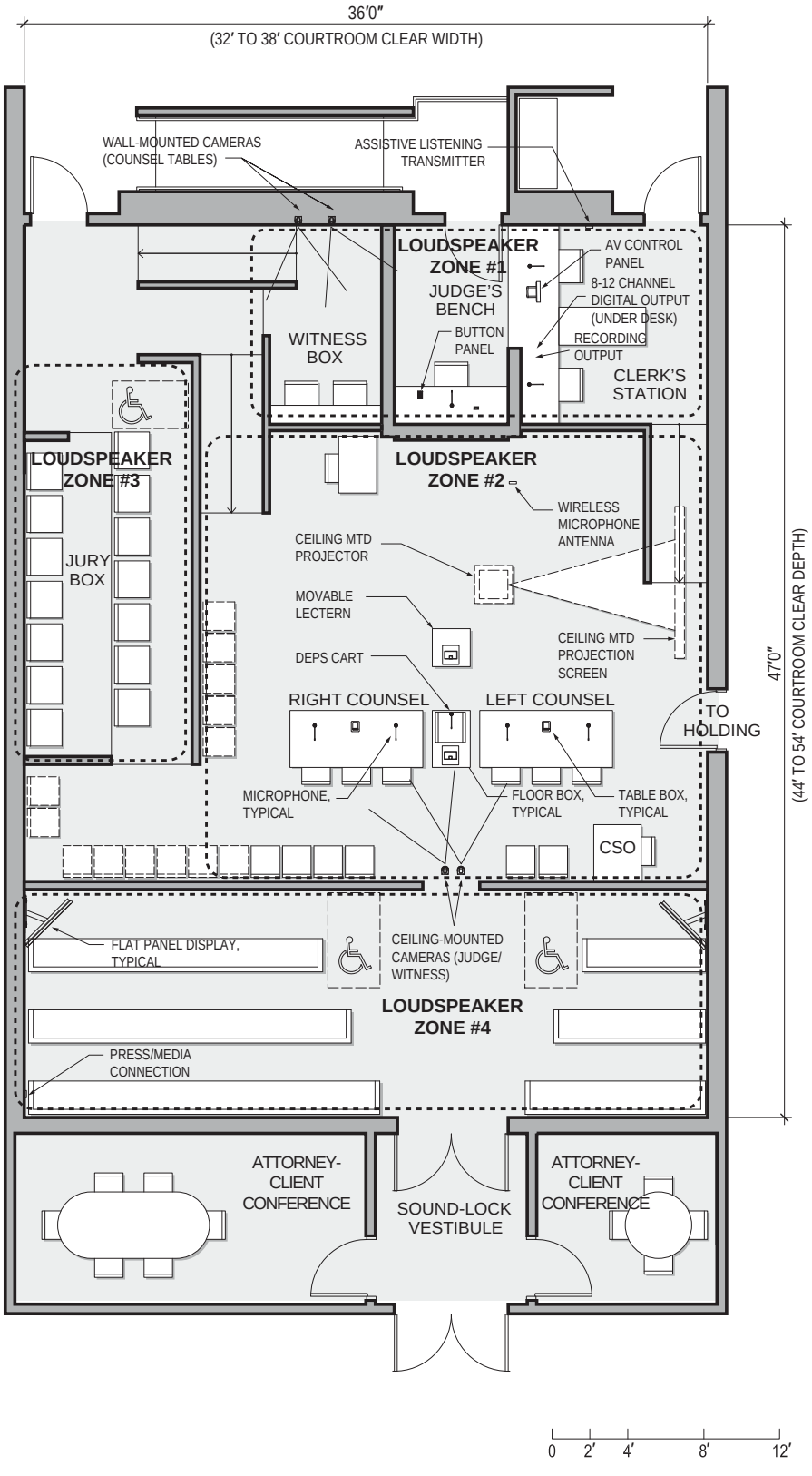


Figure 18.2 Typical Courtroom, Center Bench—AV Requirement

DIVISION TWO: TECHNICAL CRITERIA

11 Architectural Criteria
12 Structural Criteria
13 Mechanical Criteria
14 Building Management System Criteria
15 Electrical Criteria
16 Lighting Criteria
17 Network and Communication Systems

18 AUDIOVISUAL SYSTEMS
18.A Audiovisual Design
18.B Audiovisual Criteria
18.C Technical Infrastructure
18.D Audiovisual System Descriptions
18.E Description of Courthouse Spaces
18.F Audiovisual System Commissioning

19 Acoustical Criteria
20 Fire Protection Criteria

Speech and audio reinforcement systems shall amplify program audio and enhance the voice of the speaker to ensure that all participants can adequately hear the material being presented.

Speech reinforcement loudspeakers shall be ceiling mounted and zoned appropriately for the application. Loudspeakers shall be distributed to provide even coverage throughout the space.

Pink noise is the sound-masking criterion.

2. Assistive Listening

An assistive listening system (ALS) shall provide secure transmission of both speech and program audio to participants or members of the public. When evaluating the types of assistive listening systems in the design as well as the quantities of headsets, refer to sections 1B-219 and 11B-706 of title 24 of the California Code of Regulations to ensure adequate provisioning. Infrared ALS shall be provided.

ALS shall be required to support multichannel functionality. ALS shall operate on the standard functionality on the primary channel. On the secondary channel, the system shall be used for language interpretation. The control of the functionality shall be at the touch panel. ALS is required in different types of rooms, such as standard courtrooms, high-volume courtrooms, conference rooms, and jury deliberation rooms. The specific number of devices required per room type shall be determined during project design.

3. Language Access

The language access system shall work in conjunction with alternate channels of the assistive listening system to provide for live interpretation to participants and audience members in courtrooms. Language access may be provided in other spaces as required on a per project basis.

4. Video Display

Video display systems that will ensure that all participants can adequately view presented material on a common display shall be provided. The display can be either a projector with a motorized screen or a flat panel.

5. Digital Evidence Presentation System

The digital evidence presentation system (DEPS) is an additional input to the courtroom video display. It is located between or in front of the attorney's tables, or in front or to the side of the courtroom clerk's desk. It is a neutral location for the display of evidence, which can be used by either attorney. Source content may include audio and video playback devices, laptops, and document cameras.

Annotation of digital evidence capability is required. The document camera shall support annotation of digital evidence with the functionality of saving digital formats as well as sharing the annotated evidence through the videoconferencing system. The system may be portable or dedicated, depending on courthouse needs. A DEPS cart shall be provided for each courtroom.

6. Videoconferencing and Remote Appearances

The videoconferencing systems in the courthouse enable real-time two-way communication between two or more locations, including locations of remote interpreters, conference rooms, training rooms, remote holding facilities, and remote locations.

In hybrid courtroom applications, the design shall include the use of a rack-mounted computer or small-scale personal computer to operate a videoconferencing platform. Audio and video signals to and from the videoconferencing computer shall be managed through the touch panel. Audio and video shall be connected to the videoconferencing computer via digital connections.

The videoconferencing system shall integrate with the control and touch panel system, when applicable. If this is not possible, the use of a rack-mounted computer may be considered. The use of an integrated PC platform (such as Unified Communications for Teams or Zoom Rooms) capable of integrating with the control and touch panel system is preferred. Coordinate with the court to confirm the conferencing platform for specific locations.

Audio from the courtroom shall be routed through the DSP to the videoconferencing computer via USB and any corresponding converting equipment required. Audio from the videoconferencing computer shall be routed through the DSP cable to the courtroom house speaker system.

The video feed shall be transmitted through the video control switcher to the videoconferencing computer via digital connection and any required conversation equipment. Four views shall provide a clear image of the judge, witness, litigants, and their attorneys but not of the members of the jury. Camera control shall be on the touch panel with preset views for convenience, not to exclude manual zoom controls. In systems with multiple cameras, camera selection shall also reside on the touch panel. Camera views shall feed into a multiviewer to provide various output configurations. In addition to the cameras, presentation view for PC connection and a document camera in the courtroom shall be included as selectable views.

The multiviewer shall be controlled through the touch panel. View options and preset multiview layouts shall be selectable from the touch panel. The video feed to the videoconferencing platform will be a composite view from one or more cameras. A variety of predefined layouts will be available for selection.

The desktop view from the videoconferencing computer shall be transmitted to the display(s) in the courtroom (or multiple locations). A keyboard and mouse shall be provided to control the videoconferencing computer. Extenders may be needed depending on the distance of the courtroom to the rack AV equipment (IDF room). Routing of the videoconferencing computer video to the courtroom display(s) shall be controlled at the touch panel.

Easily accessible mute controls shall be on the touch panel. These include mute control for all video and audio into the courtroom and for audio to the back of the courtroom. Content from digital evidence and annotation devices such as the document camera shall be shared through the videoconferencing system for remote viewers.

7. Control System

a. A control system for the management, monitoring, operation, and notification of local and facility-wide audiovisual equipment shall be provided.

b. The control system shall be designed to use the network infrastructure for the distribution of commands and data.

c. Control systems provide simplified means of managing the functions of the audiovisual operations of the facility. All control system user interface devices shall meet the requirements as stated in the Division of the State Architect (DSA) access compliance requirements of the California Building Code.

8. Control System Requirements

a. Before starting the design of the touch panel graphical user interface (GUI), obtain the template for a typical courtroom design from the Judicial Council.

b. Conduct a GUI coordination meeting with the court and the Judicial Council to determine if the court has a preferred approach, and select an approach.

DIVISION TWO: TECHNICAL CRITERIA

11 Architectural Criteria
12 Structural Criteria
13 Mechanical Criteria
14 Building Management System Criteria
15 Electrical Criteria
16 Lighting Criteria
17 Network and Communication Systems
18 AUDIOVISUAL SYSTEMS
18.A Audiovisual Design
18.B Audiovisual Criteria
18.C Technical Infrastructure
18.D Audiovisual System Descriptions
18.E Description of Courthouse Spaces
18.F Audiovisual System Commissioning
19 Acoustical Criteria
20 Fire Protection Criteria

An MDF is a space in which the core technology of the facility is concentrated. An MDF serves as a central point for the distribution of various subsystems that are part of the overall technology of the facility. Refer to chapter 17, Network and Communication Systems, for additional information.

See chapter 11, Architectural Criteria, for rooftop equipment information.

c. Based on the selected approach, customize the design to conform to the requirements of this project, and submit a set of screenshots for the most complex courtroom design. Explain if a single button performs multiple functions (e.g., partition sensors, teleconference in progress, fire alarm signal, shared resources being used).

d. Once comments on the courtroom GUI have been incorporated, revise and resubmit the GUI to include the remaining spaces within the courthouse that use AV control systems.

e. Once the comments on the complete GUI design have been approved, write processor code to operate the GUI (but not the actual controlled devices). Load it into a processor on the internet, and submit the appropriate files necessary to simulate the actual operation of the touch panel on a computer using a mouse.

f. If the functioning GUI has been approved, proceed with the installation.

9. Touch Panel Design

a. Tool 4, Graphical User Interface Template, provides the touch panel template.

b. All panels are to have the time and date displayed in the same position on every page.

c. All pages are to have a title indicating the piece of equipment and/or functionality being controlled.

d. User interface design shall be as consistent as possible, taking into account the variations in system functionality from room type to room type throughout the project.

e. Whenever the same button appears on more than one page, it must be in the same position on each page. This includes buttons that cause page-to-page flips.

f. Functions used during a general presentation shall be accessible with a minimal amount of button presses or page flips.

g. The sidebar and mute buttons from the judge's button panel shall also appear on every touch panel page.

h. Individual microphone volume controls should not be on the main control page but should be on a setup page to reduce clutter.

i. The capability for automatically powering down all nonessential equipment supporting each individual room at a preset time (e.g., 6 p.m.) each day shall be included. Allow the time to be set by the user on the room page, with an override valid for one day and the automatic power down restarting the next day. Play an audible sound from the touch panel one minute before automatic power down occurs, and allow the operator to override this function.

10. Television

Infrastructure to feed television (TV) signals to desired spaces within the courthouse shall be provided. TV is usually viewed in the jury assembly room, employee break rooms, and some conference rooms. If the court has a contract with cable or satellite TV companies, provide the cabling and infrastructure to support this service. If the court wishes to view free, over-the-air TV, provide a roof-mounted antenna and tuners at the desired locations.

11. Provisions for Video Remote Interpreting

Provide the infrastructure to support video remote interpreting (VRI) in courtrooms either through the court's videoconferencing system or through the use of third-party videoconferencing software platforms (e.g., Zoom, Cisco Webex) that can be hosted on the videoconferencing system. When conducting VRI, the equipment and technology must

provide high-quality communications, regardless of the physical location of the participants, so that all participants can be seen and heard whenever possible. See *Recommended Guidelines and Minimum Specifications for Video Remote Interpreting (VRI) for Spoken Language–Interpreted Events* and *Recommended Guidelines for Video Remote Interpreting (VRI) for ASL-Interpreted Events*. VRI is generally preferred over telephonic interpreting, which does not provide visual cues. Several third-party videoconferencing platforms provide options for confidential conversations with the litigant, attorney, and interpreter. These platforms may also provide options for simultaneous interpretation, consecutive interpretation, and sight translation of documents. Some platforms, like Zoom and Webex, have a built-in simultaneous interpretation feature (i.e., separate audio channel).

12. Digital Signage and Customer Flow Management

The digital signage system consists of video displays and signal transport methods capable of accepting and displaying information from local or remotely generated video content sources and software. Digital signage is used for wayfinding, display of the court calendar, and other visual messaging as required by the facility.

Customer flow management (CFM) systems direct the flow of customers in waiting areas for a service provided at the facility. The system consists of customer intake, printing of queue tickets, sending of short message service (SMS) texts to court users' personal devices, and visual and audible announcements of the queuing process.

a. In the waiting area, provide a minimum of one video display and speaker that are visually accessible to the public. Signal transport and system requirements shall be coordinated during the design phase.

b. Integrate video displays with the architecture of the building to allow for adequate technical infrastructure, cooling, ventilation, and future display hardware upgrades. See chapter 11, Architectural Criteria, for signage information. Digital signage systems may be interconnected to the court case management system and the CFM system to provide additional layers of information to the public specific to court proceedings, directories, and individual courtrooms.

18.E DESCRIPTION OF COURTHOUSE SPACES

1. Objective

Provide a turnkey audiovisual system—to include equipment and material, with associated labor, whether specifically mentioned herein or not—to ensure a complete working system that meets the needs of the court.

2. Typical Courtrooms

a. Provide a sound reinforcement system with 15″–18″ gooseneck microphones at the following locations.

- Judge's bench (one), clerk's workstation (zero to two, at the discretion of the court), and attorney's tables (two on each table) on movable bases with a mute button and a mute light. At the attorney's tables, cabling shall be through separate grommets, not through the cable box used for power, video, and data.
- Court reporter (zero to one, at the discretion of the court) and bailiff (zero to one, at the discretion of the court).
- Witness station on a fixed threaded mount.

DIVISION TWO: TECHNICAL CRITERIA
11 Architectural Criteria
12 Structural Criteria
13 Mechanical Criteria
14 Building Management System Criteria
15 Electrical Criteria
16 Lighting Criteria
17 Network and Communication Systems
18 AUDIOVISUAL SYSTEMS
18.A Audiovisual Design
18.B Audiovisual Criteria
18.C Technical Infrastructure
18.D Audiovisual System Descriptions
18.E Description of Courthouse Spaces
18.F Audiovisual System Commissioning
19 Acoustical Criteria
20 Fire Protection Criteria

b. If a floor box is provided for a lectern or DEPS cart, provide a microphone on a fixed threaded mount. If the lectern does not have a dedicated location, provide a clip for a handheld microphone.

c. Install a videoconferencing system based on the design criteria of section 18.D.6.

d. At the discretion of the court, provide a boundary microphone at the judge's location for use during a sidebar to record the sidebar and/or feed the court reporter's headphone jack.

e. Provide a minimum of two handheld wireless microphones for use by the jury and for general use by litigants and during voir dire. Provide a four-channel wireless microphone receiver so that additional microphones can be used from other courtrooms if needed. The antennas can be either remotely located in the courtroom or mounted on a receiver within the courtroom.

f. Provide a source of pink noise, enabled in all zones except the bench when the judge calls a sidebar. The court shall be able to set the volume as needed from the touch panel.

g. Provide ceiling loudspeakers configured as a mix-minus system. In a mix-minus system, audio from microphones in a zone is not reproduced through loudspeakers within that zone. The ceiling loudspeakers shall be zoned as follows:

   - Jury (if the individual courtroom has a jury box)
   - Gallery
   - Bench
   - Well

h. At the discretion of the court, provide loudspeakers in the holding cells with on/off control from the touch panel. If holding cells are shared between adjoining courtrooms, provide a system to select and route audio from either courtroom.

i. Provide an 8- to 12-channel audio feed for digital recording court proceedings. The actual recording equipment shall be provided by the court. At the discretion of the court, the feeds shall terminate at the equipment rack or be brought to the clerk's station within the courtroom. Provide audio input to allow recordings to be played back within the courtroom. At the discretion of the court, the channels shall be assigned to the following:

   - Judge and clerk (with optional sidebar)
   - Witness
   - Plaintiff/prosecution, wireless microphone, telephone receive, videoconference receive
   - Defense, lectern
   - Videoconferencing

j. Provide line-level monitor outputs for the clerk and court reporter.

k. Provide at a two-channel Americans with Disabilities Act / California Building Code (ADA/CBC)–compliant infrared assistive listening system used to meet ADA/CBC requirements (channel 1) and language translation (channel 2). At the discretion of the court, more than two channels may be specified if the court has a need for multiple languages translated simultaneously.

l. Provide a single-line teleconference system for making telephone calls using microphones (wired and wireless) and ceiling loudspeakers, with acoustic echo canceling on every microphone input. The output shall be selectable either to feed the ceiling speakers (default) or channel 2 of the assistive listening system for use when the language translator is remote. Depending on the courthouse system, the telephone system may be either analog or Voice over Internet Protocol (VoIP).

m. Provide a display for attorneys to present evidence and for judges to present jury instructions. All displays shall be placed so that the bottom of the image is a minimum of 48″ above the finished floor. They may be either video projectors (approx. 6,000–8,000 lumens) or flat panel displays (98″ or larger). Display equipment shall have a minimum resolution of either 1,920 × 1,080 or 1,920 × 1,200 pixels. The projector shall be on a fixed mount on the courtroom ceiling with a lens selected to fill the projection screen. The screen shall be located opposite the jury. Provide appropriate power and data behind the screen for future installation of a flat panel display.

n. If a projector is used, provide an electrically operated projection screen with a contact closure interface, concealed in the ceiling when not in use, sized so that the height is one-sixth the distance to the back row of the jury. Match the aspect ratio to the projector.

o. Provide a multiformat routing switcher or network switch for source selection. In either case, the clerk or judge shall control access to the display.

p. Provide an additional display for the judge and/or clerk, if sightlines prevent the judge and/or clerk from seeing the display directly. It can be connected to a dedicated monitor or a spare high-definition multimedia interface (HDMI) or digital visual interface (DVI)—not DisplayPort—input on a computer monitor supplied by the court.

q. Provide access to the display from a computer on each counsel table and at the judge's and clerk's location. At the discretion of the court, provide access at the DEPS location.

r. Provide a table box at each attorney's table to accommodate the computer inputs, along with power and data. Cutouts in the millwork shall be coordinated with the furniture provider.

s. Provide only infrastructure to support a real-time transcription system between the court reporter and the judge, compatible with the systems used by the court.

t. Provide document cameras for deployment in each courtroom. They may be mounted on carts for mobility.

u. Provide an AV control system with one 7″ desk-mounted wired touch panel (Power over Ethernet (PoE)) that can be connected via a network cable at either the judge's, clerk's, or (optionally) bailiff's location.

v. Provide a button panel with a minimum of two buttons, permanently mounted at the judge's bench, to control, at a minimum, the sidebar function and audio/video mute.

w. Provide infrastructure for two gallery monitors consisting of power and data connections plus empty conduits for future signal connections. If not used on day one, wall boxes shall be behind the wall coverings, if possible.

3. High-Profile Courtroom

a. Provide all the capabilities of a typical courtroom.

b. Provide two flat panel gallery monitors on articulated mounts.

DIVISION TWO: TECHNICAL CRITERIA

11 Architectural Criteria
12 Structural Criteria
13 Mechanical Criteria
14 Building Management System Criteria
15 Electrical Criteria
16 Lighting Criteria
17 Network and Communication Systems
18 AUDIOVISUAL SYSTEMS
18.A Audiovisual Design
18.B Audiovisual Criteria
18.C Technical Infrastructure
18.D Audiovisual System Descriptions
18.E Description of Courthouse Spaces
18.F Audiovisual System Commissioning
19 Acoustical Criteria
20 Fire Protection Criteria

c. Provide the capability for the judge to face forward during a videoconference rather than looking sideways at the projection screen, allowing the camera at the rear of the courtroom to pick up a full-face view of the judge rather than a profile. It can be connected to a dedicated monitor or a spare HDMI or DVI (not DisplayPort) input on a computer monitor supplied by the court.

d. Provide an installed videoconference system based on the design criteria of section 18.D.6.

e. At the discretion of the court, provide audio and video feeds from the cameras or multimedia sources plus a mix of the audio from within the courtroom to an alternative location within the courthouse for overflow capabilities. This signal shall use the Internet Protocol network for data transport. This feed must be separately enabled both in the courtroom and at the alternative location for security reasons.

f. Provide a wall plate in the gallery on the same wall as the jury area for TV or radio stations feeding balanced analog audio (× 2) and 3G serial digital interface (SDI) video (× 2) to a weatherproof media pedestal external to the building. Also include a balanced analog feed from the courtroom audio system and one 20-amp power circuit.

4. Courtrooms With Arraignment Dock

a. Provide all capabilities of a typical or high-profile courtroom but without any accommodation for a jury.

b. If the dock has floor-to-ceiling windows, provide a wall-mounted (not ceiling-mounted) tamper-resistant microphone adjacent to or attached to the window overlooking the courtroom. If the dock does not have a full glass wall, no microphone may be needed, unless the voices of those in custody need to be recorded. However, if video conferencing is included, audio shall be transmittable to video conference system.

c. Provide ceiling loudspeakers with appropriate security hardware within the dock area.

d. Provide touch panel controls of the speakers and microphones in the dock area.

e. Discuss with the court in detail the exact expected use of the dock, and provide equipment to meet those needs.

f. In camera views of arraignments, include the judge, attorney's tables, and arraignment dock. Video feed of the dock shall input into videoconferencing system.

5. Jury Deliberation Rooms

On a per project basis, the court may choose to use these spaces as conference or meeting rooms, and if so, the minimum infrastructure requirements for these types of spaces shall also be included.

a. Provide a 75″ flat panel for displaying evidence.

b. Provide a floor box under the table for laptop inputs and a line-level output for the assistive listening system. This input will be used for connecting a laptop for displaying evidence saved electronically or for connecting a portable document camera.

c. Provide a table box to accommodate the computer input, along with power, data, and audio output to feed the assistive listening system. Cutouts in the millwork shall be provided by the furniture vendors.

d. Provide a wall-mounted button panel for control of the AV system located at the video display.

e. Provide a portable, ADA-compliant, encrypted RF assistive listening system with a microphone for voice pickup and input for multimedia audio at the table surface.

6. Jury Assembly Rooms

The jury assembly area consists of a single public space or multiple spaces that can be combined or separated to accommodate various functions and group sizes. The audiovisual systems in these spaces shall provide for speech reinforcement, paging, and the presentation of audiovisual materials to a group or groups of potential jurors. The public address system for emergency communication throughout the courthouse shall also serve the jury assembly areas. These areas may also be used by the court as multipurpose spaces for meetings, training, or multimedia presentations or for public events.

a. Provide a sound system with overhead loudspeakers for voice amplification, television viewing, multimedia presentations, and juror orientation.

b. Provide a 1080p resolution video projector (approx. 5,000–8,000 lumens) on a fixed mount with a lens selected to fill the projection and/or television screens.

c. Provide an electrically operated projection screen, concealed in the ceiling when not in use, sized as large as possible, taking into consideration ceiling height and the requirement that the bottom of the image shall be 48″ above the floor. Match the aspect ratio to the projector.

d. Provide a wireless handheld or clip-on microphone for ad hoc presentations.

e. Provide a wired push-to-talk microphone for announcements.

f. Provide a media playback connection for juror orientation.

g. Provide a television tuner to entertain prospective jurors while they wait to be called. Depending on the data source of TV and desires of the individual court, this tuner may be owner furnished.

h. Provide an audio-only miniplug input for a background music source.

i. Provide a single-channel, ADA-compliant assistive listening system used to meet ADA requirements.

j. Provide a computer input at the staff counter.

k. Provide a multiformat routing switcher or network switch for source selection.

l. At the discretion of the court, provide an input for the audio and video feed from the high-profile courtroom. This feed must be enabled separately in both the courtroom and the jury assembly room.

m. At the discretion of the court, provide a floor box for a lectern with laptop inputs, along with a wired microphone input.

n. Provide an AV control system with one 7″ wired touch panel (PoE) that can be connected via a network cable at the staff counter to control all aspects of the audiovisual system.

o. At the discretion of the court, install a videoconferencing system.

7. Training Room

a. Provide a sound reinforcement system with overhead loudspeakers for voice amplification and multimedia presentations.

b. Provide one or more large, flat panel displays, appropriately sized for the room.

DIVISION TWO: TECHNICAL CRITERIA

11 Architectural Criteria
12 Structural Criteria
13 Mechanical Criteria
14 Building Management System Criteria
15 Electrical Criteria
16 Lighting Criteria
17 Network and Communication Systems
18 AUDIOVISUAL SYSTEMS
18.A Audiovisual Design
18.B Audiovisual Criteria
18.C Technical Infrastructure
18.D Audiovisual System Descriptions
18.E Description of Courthouse Spaces
18.F Audiovisual System Commissioning
19 Acoustical Criteria
20 Fire Protection Criteria

c. Provide a single-channel, ADA/CBC-compliant, RF or infrared assistive listening system for use to meet ADA requirements.

d. Provide a floor box for a lectern or desk with laptop input.

e. At the discretion of the court, provide a wireless handheld or clip-on microphone system.

f. Provide a multiformat routing switcher or network switch for source selection. If feasible, combine this device with the audiovisual control system.

g. Provide one 7″ wall-mounted wired touch panel (PoE) to control all aspects of the audiovisual system.

h. At the discretion of the court, install a videoconferencing system.

8. Judicial Conference Room

a. Provide one or more large, flat panel wall-mounted displays appropriately sized to the room, with separate side-mounted loudspeakers.

b. Provide a portable or fixed ADA/CBC-compliant, encrypted RF assistive listening system with a microphone for voice pickup and input for multimedia audio at the desk surface.

c. Provide a floor box under the table with laptop inputs and a line-level output for the assistive listening system.

d. Provide a table box to accommodate the computer input, along with power, data, and audio output to feed the assistive listening system. Cutouts in the millwork shall be provided by the furniture vendor.

e. Provide recording capabilities through the in-room AV system.

f. Provide one 7″ desk-mounted wired touch panel (PoE) to control all aspects of the audiovisual system.

g. Provide a videoconferencing system with acoustic echo canceling on every input using microphones installed in the table and ceiling loudspeakers. Depending on court usage, provide a system that operates with multiple platforms, such as Zoom and Teams.

9. Executive Conference Room

a. Provide a sound reinforcement system with overhead loudspeakers for voice amplification (depending on the size of the room) and multimedia presentations.

b. Provide one or more large, flat panel wall-mounted displays with separate side-mounted loudspeakers, soundbar, or integrated ceiling speakers.

c. Provide a portable or fixed ADA/CBC-compliant, encrypted RF assistive listening system with a microphone for voice pickup and input for multimedia audio at the desk surface.

d. Provide a table box to accommodate input from a laptop, along with power and data. Cutouts in the millwork shall be provided by furniture vendors.

e. Provide a multiformat routing switcher or network switch for source selection and image processing. If feasible, combine this device with the audiovisual control system.

f. Provide one 7″ desk-mounted wired touch panel (PoE) to control all aspects of the audiovisual system.

g. Install a videoconferencing system with one or more cameras integrated into the room AV system.

18.F AUDIOVISUAL SYSTEM COMMISSIONING

Specifications shall include commissioning services to ensure that the building delivered at the end of construction has fully operational audiovisual systems, with all devices and hardware fully integrated into user controls as reflected in tool 4, Graphical User Interface Template. Basic services shall include staff training for systems operation and troubleshooting. Commissioning shall comply with AVIXA D402.02:2013 (R2024).

DIVISION TWO: TECHNICAL CRITERIA

11 Architectural Criteria
12 Structural Criteria
13 Mechanical Criteria
14 Building Management System Criteria
15 Electrical Criteria
16 Lighting Criteria
17 Network and Communication Systems
18 AUDIOVISUAL SYSTEMS
18.A Audiovisual Design
18.B Audiovisual Criteria
18.C Technical Infrastructure
18.D Audiovisual System Descriptions
18.E Description of Courthouse Spaces
18.F Audiovisual System Commissioning
19 Acoustical Criteria
20 Fire Protection Criteria

DIVISION TWO: TECHNICAL CRITERIA

19 ACOUSTICAL CRITERIA

SECTION	TOPIC	PAGE
19.A	Objectives	19.2
19.B	Acoustical Criteria	19.2
19.C	Best Practices	19.8



Superior Court of California, County of Imperial
El Centro, CA
© Jim Brady Architectural Photography

Factors to be considered in the acoustical design of the court facility include background noise levels, sound isolation, and room finishes. Courtrooms shall be quiet and free of detectable echoes and naturally enhance voice levels with strategic placement of sound-reflecting surfaces.

19.A OBJECTIVES

The goal of this chapter is to address acoustical criteria and best practices for room acoustics (reverberation and echo control); environmental noise reduction; sound isolation; speech privacy; and noise and vibration control of mechanical, electrical, plumbing, and vertical transportation equipment and systems. Each courtroom, except for very large courtrooms, shall be designed for effective spoken communication with minimum sound reinforcement. In the standard-sized trial courtroom, all participants should be able to hear and be understood at normal speech volumes.

19.B ACOUSTICAL CRITERIA

1. Background Noise Levels

The acoustical design goal for heating, ventilation, and air-conditioning (HVAC) systems is the achievement of a level of background noise that is unobtrusive and low enough that it does not interfere with the function of the space being served. Background noise shall exhibit no tonal characteristics or noticeable time-varying levels resulting from aerodynamic instability or turbulence. To achieve these goals, the Noise Criteria (NC) family of curves is used as a design tool. These curves define the recommended octave band limits of an acceptable background noise spectrum for a particular space use.

The "Noise and Vibration Control" chapter of the American Society of Heating, Refrigerating and Air-Conditioning Engineers' *ASHRAE Handbook—HVAC Applications* lists acceptable NC ratings for various spaces. Refer to table 19.1 for the recommended HVAC NC ratings for select spaces within the court facility. Using Room Criteria and reverberation time for setting design goals is the preferred method for courtrooms, conference rooms, and other high-occupancy spaces. Office areas and other lower-occupancy spaces may be designed by specifying the noise reduction coefficient (NRC) rating of finishes.

Table 19.1 Background Noise Criteria

NOISE CRITERIA	SPACE TYPE—ROOM(S)
NC 30	Courtrooms
	Conference rooms
	Meeting rooms
	Training spaces
	Interview rooms
NC 35	Judicial chambers
	Enclosed offices
	Jury deliberation rooms
	Clerk's office
	Lactation rooms
NC 40	Reception areas
	Lobbies
	Open office areas
	Corridors
	Dining areas
NC 50	Warehouses
	Parking garages

2. Room Acoustics

Room acoustics, including reverberation and echo control, define the quality of sound within a space. Room acoustics are affected by room size, shape, proportions, geometry, and finishes. The standard metric for determining how "live" or "dead" a room acts is reverberation time (RT60). Hard surfaces—such as untreated gypsum board, concrete, glass, and wood paneling—will promote sound reflections and reverberation in a space. Soft-surfaced materials—such as acoustical tile, carpet, and fabric-wrapped fiberglass panels—will result in less reverberation.

Reverberation is the effect of sound reflecting and steadily decaying in a room. Conversely, echoes are distinct, late-arriving reflections from discrete wall surfaces. Absorptive materials, as well as proper room shaping or the addition of diffusive panels, also help control any unwanted echoes.

Flutter echo is a resonant echo that occurs when sound reflects back and forth between two parallel reflective surfaces. Refer to table 19.2 for room acoustics considerations for select court facility spaces.

Table 19.2 Room Acoustics Requirements

SPACE TYPE	ROOM ACOUSTICS CONSIDERATIONS
Courtrooms	Reverberation time criteria should be between 0.6 and 1.0 second.
	The majority of the ceiling surface should be sound absorptive to help meet the reverberation time criteria.
	The wall behind the judge's bench, witness station, and clerk's workstation should be hard surfaced to provide good projection of voice to the jury.
	The walls and ceiling at the rear of the courtroom (around the spectator seating area) should be finished with an efficient sound-absorptive material to prevent sound from reflecting back to the well and the bench. This treatment is especially important for the back wall to alleviate the reflection of sound between the judge's bench and the far end of the courtroom.
	A hard-surfaced ceiling over the judge's bench, slightly inclined outward, will have the effect of projecting a voice into the room without creating a flutter echo with the bench counter.
	The courtroom shall not be a long or narrow rectangle finished totally with sound-reflective materials. Such conditions can cause excessive flutter echo. Reducing the room length and using appropriately selected absorptive finishes can alleviate potential issues.
Conference rooms, training spaces	Reverberation time criteria should be between 0.6 and 1.0 second.
	The majority of the ceiling surface should be sound absorptive to help meet the reverberation time criteria.
	A minimum of two perpendicular walls should feature sound absorptive material to reduce overall reverberation and flutter echo.
	Carpet and upholstered furniture should be considered for conference and training rooms.
Enclosed offices, judicial chambers, jury deliberation rooms, clerk's office	The ceilings of these spaces should be a sound-absorptive material with a minimum noise reduction coefficient of 0.70.
Interview rooms	The ceilings of the attorney side of interview rooms should be a sound-absorptive material with a minimum NRC of 0.70, and floors should be carpeted. The ceilings of the in-custody side of interview rooms should be detention-grade perforated metal and backed with a 1″ thick sound-absorbing material with a minimum NRC of 0.70.
Open office areas	The ceilings of open office spaces should be a sound-absorptive material with a minimum NRC of 0.85. Reverberation time criterion should be less than 1.5 seconds.
Lobbies	If lobbies will function as more than just circulation and security checkpoints (for receptions, speeches, gatherings, etc.), the reverberation time criterion should be reduced to approximately 1.0 second.
	A sound-absorptive ceiling is recommended in the lobby to help control excessive reverberation and loudness.
	Additional absorptive wall material will be required to meet the 1.0-second reverberation time criterion.
	Additional absorptive wall material will be required to meet the 1.0-second reverberation time criterion.

DIVISION TWO: TECHNICAL CRITERIA

11 Architectural Criteria
12 Structural Criteria
13 Mechanical Criteria
14 Building Management System Criteria
15 Electrical Criteria
16 Lighting Criteria
17 Network and Communication Systems
18 Audiovisual Systems
19 ACOUSTICAL CRITERIA
19.A Objectives
19.B Acoustical Criteria
19.C Best Practices
20 Fire Protection Criteria

NIC: A field-measured noise reduction from a building design element

STC: Sound isolation performance as measured in a controlled laboratory

STC and NIC are one-number rating systems that allow for an easy comparison of the acoustical performance between different constructions. The higher the STC or NIC rating of an assembly, the less sound is transmitted through it.

3. Sound Isolation and Speech Privacy

Sound isolation is the capacity of a structure to prevent sound from being transmitted from one space to another. Sound isolation is quantified by two numerical ratings, noise isolation class (NIC) and sound transmission class (STC).

Refer to table 19.3 for sound-isolating performance requirements for court facility spaces. Where more than one STC rating can be applied to a specific adjacency, the higher STC rating shall be used for the assembly. Refer to the acoustic guidelines established by the Office of Noise Control in the California Department of Health Services and other similar requirements for rated assembly types.

Speech privacy within a space depends on the sound insulation performance of its partitions and doors, the background sound level, the loudness of speech, and the room finish treatment. *Confidential speech privacy* is speech that is detectable but with individual words that are indiscernible.

To achieve a normal speech privacy level, the sum of both numbers shall equal 70 or more. *Normal speech privacy* is when a few words may be understandable, but complete sentences cannot be comprehended.

For normal to raised speech levels, confidential speech privacy should be achieved when the STC rating of the construction separating two spaces plus the background NC level is greater than 80. A raised voice might result during lively conversation or the use of a speakerphone. For example, if the room adjoining the space under consideration has a background noise level of NC 30, the intervening partition must have an STC rating of 50 to achieve confidential speech privacy. Unless a reliable source of background noise, such as a sound-masking system, is provided in the adjoining space, an STC 50 construction assembly is generally required to achieve greater levels of speech privacy.

A higher STC rating or higher background noise levels would be required to achieve confidential privacy for raised or loud voice levels. The limit of the speech range would be a loud voice, which occurs when the speaker is exerting maximum speech effort or when the speaker is amplified electronically.

Details and specifications shall be provided by the design firm to appropriately construct sound-rated partitions in the field. Seal the perimeter of sound-rated walls, penetrating elements, outlets, junction boxes, and low-voltage receptacles to maintain sound isolation.

4. Doors

Doors to noise-sensitive areas should have sufficient sound transmission loss performance so that the partition sound isolation is not unduly compromised. Doors in partitions of noise-sensitive rooms represent the acoustic weak link in the system. Refer to table 19.4 for door requirements for select spaces within the court facility. Sound isolation requirements for doors to mechanical rooms should be reviewed on a case-by-case basis.

5. Interview Room Windows

An unamplified passive solution for communication through the window to both sides of an interview room shall be provided; an amplification system shall be avoided. The glazed opening between the attorney and in-custody interview rooms must provide a sufficient free (open) area to support unamplified conversation between the two rooms (refer to tool 5, In-Custody Interview Room Guidelines).

Table 19.3 Sound Isolation Requirements

STC OF PARTITION*	SPACE TYPE AND ADJACENCY
STC 65	Courtroom to holding cell
	Electrical rooms containing transformers to NC 30 spaces†
	Elevator shafts to NC 30 spaces†
	Hydraulic elevator equipment room to NC 30 spaces†
	Mechanical rooms to NC 30 spaces†
STC 55	Large or special proceedings courtrooms to adjoining areas
	Jury deliberation room to adjoining areas
	Large conference rooms and training rooms to adjoining areas
	Judicial conference rooms to adjoining areas
	Toilet rooms to adjoining areas—with plumbing†
	Computer and server rooms containing fans and cooling equipment to adjoining areas†
STC 50	Courtrooms to adjoining areas
	Judicial chambers to adjoining areas
	Small conference rooms to adjoining areas
	Family law mediator office to adjoining areas
	Private offices requiring confidential speech privacy
	Toilet room to adjoining areas—no plumbing
	Telecommunications and audiovisual rooms with cooling equipment to adjoining areas
	Attorney interview rooms to adjoining areas (unless otherwise noted)
STC 45	Electrical rooms with no transformers to adjoining areas
	Workroom to adjoining areas
	Jury assembly area to adjoining areas
	Orientation room to adjoining areas
	Private offices requiring normal speech privacy
	Office equipment rooms to adjoining areas
	Waiting rooms to adjoining areas
	Lactation rooms—partition to enclosed space
	Telecommunications and AV rooms with minimal equipment to adjoining areas
	Attorney interview room to public corridor or vestibule
STC 40	General office space to general office space
	In-custody interview rooms to adjacent spaces
STC 35	Lactation rooms—partition to corridor

* Partitions with doors need only be 10 points greater than the STC rating of the door.

† The partitions between shared restrooms and between restrooms or mechanical equipment rooms and occupied areas, especially where the partition contains piping, should feature two independent stud rows with a nominal 1″ air space in between. The studs should not be bridged by any bracing. The two separate stud rows should provide enough room to prevent the piping contained within from directly contacting any part of the partition. Where the restroom or mechanical equipment room is adjacent to occupied space, both stud cavities should be filled with batt insulation, and a minimum of two layers of 5/8″ gypsum board should be installed on the occupied side of the partition.

STC = sound transmission class.

DIVISION TWO: TECHNICAL CRITERIA

11 Architectural Criteria
12 Structural Criteria
13 Mechanical Criteria
14 Building Management System Criteria
15 Electrical Criteria
16 Lighting Criteria
17 Network and Communication Systems
18 Audiovisual Systems
19 ACOUSTICAL CRITERIA
19.A Objectives
19.B Acoustical Criteria
19.C Best Practices
20 Fire Protection Criteria

AHUs = air-handling units

ANSI = American National Standards Institute

dB or dBA = decibel

IIC = impact insulation class

NEMA = National Electrical Manufacturers Association

OITC = outdoor-indoor transmission class

VAV = variable air volume

Table 19.4 Door Requirements

SPACE TYPE	DOOR REQUIREMENTS
Courtroom to courtroom	Interconnecting doors are not recommended; use vestibules, if possible. If not possible, use only a laboratory-rated STC 53 door (or two fully gasketed doors in tandem).
Courtroom to jury deliberation room	
Jury deliberation room	Laboratory-rated STC 43 (an electronic sound-masking system) is recommended in the corridor outside all nonequipment rooms.
Judge's chambers	
Judicial conference room	
Attorney conference and interview room (to public corridor)	
Computer and server rooms containing fans and cooling equipment (to occupied areas)	
Conference rooms and training rooms	A minimum 1-3/4″ solid-core wood door or hollow metal steel door with a full set of acoustical seals—including perimeter gasketing, an automatic door bottom, and a removable center post or overlapping astragal between double doors—is recommended.
Telecommunications and AV rooms	
Courtroom public vestibule (both door sets)	
Courtroom and attorney interview room to secure vestibule/hallway	
Court reporters' work area	
Small electrical rooms (to occupied areas)	
Mediation rooms	
Investigator's office	
Private offices requiring speech privacy	
In-custody interview rooms	
Lactation rooms	

AV = audiovisual; STC = sound transmission class.

6. Operable Partitions

The recommendations below should be considered if operable partitions will be included within the court facility:

a. The operable partition should be chosen with minimum ratings of STC 50 and NIC 42.

b. If the operable partition is separating a conference room, training room, or jury assembly space, an operable partition with a sound-absorptive finish with a minimum rating of NRC 0.65 would be beneficial.

c. Perimeter conditions must be properly detailed to reduce the effect of flanking and to maintain the transmission loss performance of the operable partition. Following are important conditions to consider:

- An overhead barrier above the ceiling shall be provided. The gypsum board barrier should be constructed without gaps and sealed airtight.
- Sidewall construction should be able to withstand the pressure of the end partition panel. The sidewall finish must meet the end panel of the operable partition continuously. There should be no voids or reveals at baseboards, ceilings, or the like.
- The deployed horizontal operable partition should span the storage room through the closet to the farthest sidewalls. The panels should not end at the storage room doors. The design should be carefully coordinated with the operable partition manufacturer.

7. Impact Insulation

Impact noise, or footfall noise, is created when an object strikes a floor/ceiling assembly or when a person walks across a floor. The noise from the impact is transmitted through the assembly and into the space below. The ability of floor and ceiling construction to insulate impact sounds can be determined by the IIC rating. As with the STC rating, the higher the IIC value of the assembly, the better the construction is at reducing impact noises.

a. Typical floor/ceiling assemblies between occupied spaces within the court facility should achieve a minimum IIC rating of 50 to help reduce footfall noise between vertically adjacent areas.

b. Rooms with carpet on a concrete slab should meet a minimum IIC 50 rating.

c. Wood-framed construction presents special impact-insulation problems and should receive careful attention.

d. Spaces with hard-surfaced flooring materials such as ceramic tile or wood most likely will not meet IIC 50. For all spaces with hard-surfaced floor materials, consider installing a resilient underlayment material within the floor/ceiling assembly to help meet the minimum IIC rating requirement.

8. Environmental Criteria

To identify noise levels in decibels (dB or dBA) at a potential site under consideration, conduct an environmental noise study that tests for average and single-event noise. Perform this study for all potential project sites, especially near roadways, highways, trains, busy urban areas, and flight paths. The duration of the noise study should range from one to four days, depending on the conditions at the site. The primary hours of measurement should coincide with the typical hours of courtroom use.

DIVISION TWO: TECHNICAL CRITERIA
11 Architectural Criteria
12 Structural Criteria
13 Mechanical Criteria
14 Building Management System Criteria
15 Electrical Criteria
16 Lighting Criteria
17 Network and Communication Systems
18 Audiovisual Systems
19 ACOUSTICAL CRITERIA
19.A Objectives
19.B Acoustical Criteria
19.C Best Practices
20 Fire Protection Criteria

Based on the results of the environmental noise study, calculate minimum exterior façade outdoor-indoor transmission class (OITC) and STC ratings required to achieve an interior maximum single-event noise level of 50 dBA. For intrusive noise from exterior sources, such as traffic, calculation of the interior maximum single-event noise level using L10 (the measured noise level that is exceeded for 10 percent of the measurement period) is recommended. The L10 is known as the *intrusive noise level,* the level that may be noticed when engaging in activities requiring lesser degrees of concentration.

19.C BEST PRACTICES

The following general recommendations address noise reduction from mechanical, electrical, plumbing, and vertical transportation systems and equipment; sound isolation and speech privacy; and room acoustics.

1. Mechanical, Electrical, Plumbing, and Vertical Transportation Systems and Equipment Noise Control

a. Locating air-handling units (AHUs) and other noisy equipment above courtrooms or other noise-sensitive spaces may require expensive and complicated mitigation measures such as sound-attenuating ceilings, thickened slabs, or floating floors.

b. Rooftop down-discharge AHUs shall not be used. Instead, use side-discharge units, maximizing the length of ductwork between the unit and the roof penetration point. Noise mitigation of down-discharge units may be prohibitively complicated and expensive.

c. Provisioning space for sound attenuators is advisable early in the HVAC system design. Typical attenuators would be 5′ in length and should be planned for the intake and discharge side of each main air-moving system. Ductwork before and following each attenuator should be straight and at least two duct diameters in length.

d. Variable air volume (VAV) units shall not be located above courtrooms, chambers, conference rooms, or other rooms with a Noise Criteria level of NC 35 or less. Instead, locate VAV boxes in corridors or unoccupied spaces. If not possible, a gypsum board ceiling or an enclosure around the VAV box may be required.

e. Locating fan-powered VAV boxes above spaces with a noise criterion of NC 45 or less may require expensive and complicated sound-attenuating ceilings.

f. Static pressure at VAV box inlets shall not exceed 1-1/4″.

g. Air diffusers shall be at least five points below the NC rating of the room they serve.

h. Volume dampers shall be located at least 10′ upstream from air diffusers in rooms with an NC rating of 35 or less. Do not use opposed-blade dampers in the face of outlet devices.

i. A minimum 3′ of insulated type flexible duct shall be provided upstream of all supply diffusers and return grilles. The flexible duct should be free of kinks or deformities.

j. Maximum duct velocities shall be designed to meet the requirements listed in the “Noise and Vibration Control” chapter of *ASHRAE Handbook—HVAC Applications.*

k. All mechanical and plumbing equipment shall be isolated from vibration per the requirements listed in the “Noise and Vibration Control” chapter of *ASHRAE Handbook—HVAC Applications.*

l. All mechanical water, domestic water, and steam piping shall be resiliently supported as described in the "Noise and Vibration Control" chapter of *ASHRAE Handbook—HVAC Applications.*

m. Independent seismic restraints are preferred to vibration isolators with integral seismic restraints.

n. Ductwork attached to the fan discharge is to be connected with a flexible connection.

o. Pipe and conduit penetrations through full-height partitions and floors shall be slightly oversized and sealed airtight with resilient sealant. A neoprene pad should be installed between all pipe clamps and the structure. There shall be no direct contact between the penetrating element and the structure.

p. Non–fire rated ducts penetrating full-height partitions shall have a clear distance of at least 1/2″ around the perimeter. The perimeter void must be packed with glass-fiber batts at both ends and caulked airtight with a nonshrinking, nonhardening, flexible acoustical sealant and a backer rod, if required.

q. All water pipes should be sized for a maximum velocity of 4 feet per second (fps) for pipe 2″ and smaller and 10 fps for larger pipe sizes.

r. To vibration-isolate transformers, inverters, rectifiers, and an uninterruptible power supply, flexible conduit and resilient neoprene mounts with a minimum static deflection of 1/4″ shall be used.

s. Transformer rooms shall not be located near sensitive locations. If not possible, consider double-stud partition construction.

t. Penetrations of cable trays through full-height partitions shall be packed tightly with heavy-density putty once the cables are pulled.

u. Emergency generators will often require acoustical provisions such as exhaust mufflers, spring vibration isolators. and low-pressure drop attenuators at the discharge and intake louvers. Locate the emergency generator within the building, away from any noise-sensitive areas, when possible.

v. Transformers with sound levels that do not exceed the following maximums in accordance with National Electrical Manufacturers Association (NEMA) and American National Standards Institute (ANSI) standards shall be provided. The manufacturer is to verify that the actual sound levels comply by conducting sound tests before shipping to the project site.

- 25–50 kilovolt-amps (kVA): 45 dB
- 51–150 kVA: 50 dB
- 151–300 kVA: 55 dB
- 301–500 kVA: 60 dB

w. Resilient piping attachments are recommended to isolate the plumbing piping and fixtures from the structure when the plumbing runs adjacent to occupied noise-sensitive areas. There shall be no direct contact of plumbing piping to studs or the back of drywall.

x. Pressure at fixtures shall be limited to 70 pounds per square inch or less to minimize noise generation.

y. Pipes and conduits should not pass through sensitive spaces to service other areas.

DIVISION TWO: TECHNICAL CRITERIA
11 Architectural Criteria
12 Structural Criteria
13 Mechanical Criteria
14 Building Management System Criteria
15 Electrical Criteria
16 Lighting Criteria
17 Network and Communication Systems
18 Audiovisual Systems
19 ACOUSTICAL CRITERIA
19.A Objectives
19.B Acoustical Criteria
19.C Best Practices
20 Fire Protection Criteria

z. Toilet rooms should be located away from noise-sensitive spaces. Do not put plumbing in walls next to or common with these spaces.

aa. Holding cell toilet fixtures should not be installed on partitions adjacent to occupied noise-sensitive spaces.

bb. Quiet devices such as quiet-type flush valves and taps with full-ported nozzles and nonsplash aerators are required. If toilet rooms are unavoidably next to sensitive spaces, use siphon-jet, tank-type water closets with adjustable-flow valves.

cc. Installing air chambers or shock-absorbing devices prevents water hammer in lines subject to abrupt shutoff.

dd. All vertical transportation systems—such as hydraulic elevators, traction elevators, or escalators—should incorporate the most effective vibration isolation system available from the elevator manufacturer to limit the amount of structure-borne noise introduced into the building. Elements to consider include but are not limited to pumps, motors, hydraulic lines, equipment rooms, hoists, sheaves, control units, roller wheels, and guide rails.

2. Sound Isolation and Speech Privacy

a. Mass and airspace are effective means to increase the sound isolation performance of partitions. Flanking paths, such as above-ceiling ducts or window mullions at partitions, degrade sound isolation performance.

b. The recommendation is to use the lightest-gauge studs possible. The stud depth and stud spacing of the partition should also be considered. The greater the stud depth and stud spacing, the better the partition should perform acoustically.

c. Higher levels of sound isolation are required for incompatible adjacencies or when acoustically sensitive spaces are located near sound-generating equipment.

d. Sound-rated partitions shall be sealed with nonhardening acoustical sealant around the entire perimeter and at partition intersections.

e. Full-height partitions should be used between adjacent rooms where confidential speech privacy or high levels of sound isolation are required.

f. For partitions requiring normal speech privacy, a foam seal tape shall be installed between the top of the partition and the lay-in ceiling, or the partition shall be extended 6″ above the ceiling.

g. A sound-masking system may be considered where the partition construction does not allow adequate speech privacy or where the background noise level is expected to be lower than desired.

h. For adjacent spaces along the exterior window façade where speech privacy is required, the joint detail between the partition and the mullion will need to be carefully reviewed and coordinated. It may be necessary to treat the window mullion with a layer of wood or gypsum board on each side of the partition where the partition intersects the exterior window.

i. Doors with cam-lift hinges and thresholds are preferable to standard hinges. Use a threshold with integral gasketing. Doors with drop-bottom gasketing will require periodic maintenance to align seals. Do not use noisy panic hardware.

j. Heavy-duty adjustable or dual gaskets, such as compression sound gaskets and smoke gaskets, in tandem, shall be used for sound-isolating doors.

k. Acoustically rated doors shall be provided where an exceptional degree of sound isolation is required.

l. Duct paths that will create crosstalk between spaces shall be avoided.

m. The return-air path for rooms requiring confidential speech privacy should use a fully ducted return system. If not possible, install acoustically lined sound boots with at least one 90-degree turn on the return grilles. Aim the air opening away from the corridor.

n. Recessed junction boxes of all types must be offset at least 16″ on opposing sides of sound-rated construction.

o. Recessed junction boxes 4-gang and smaller are to have the back and sides sealed airtight using sheet caulking. Junction boxes larger than 4-gang require gypsum board backing.

p. Conduit must not bridge independently framed sound-rated partitions or resilient ceilings by rigidly connecting to the framing. Flexible conduit connections are required.

q. Plastic tape, fiberglass, or neoprene wrapping shall be used to avoid all metal-to-metal contact.

3. Room Acoustics

Excessive reverberation can adversely affect speech intelligibility. However, a room with too much sound absorption on its wall surfaces can be perceived as acoustically dead. To achieve the proper balance of sound-reflecting versus sound-absorbing surfaces, alternating "hard" and "soft" surfaces can be installed on the sidewalls. The panels should be arranged such that a hard-surfaced panel directly faces a soft panel on the opposing wall.

a. Typical fabric-wrapped sound-absorbing panels shall be at least 1″ thick with a minimum NRC of 0.70 or 2″ thick with a minimum NRC of 0.85 (preferred).

b. Fabric for acoustical panels must be porous. Do not use fabric with acrylic or other impervious backings.

c. Acoustically absorptive materials installed on walls and ceilings should be as uniformly distributed as possible to achieve the target reverberation time as well as good speech intelligibility throughout the space.

d. Concave or domed surfaces focus sound energy and shall be avoided. If these surfaces cannot be avoided, they must be acoustically treated. Convex surfaces, which scatter sound energy, are preferred.

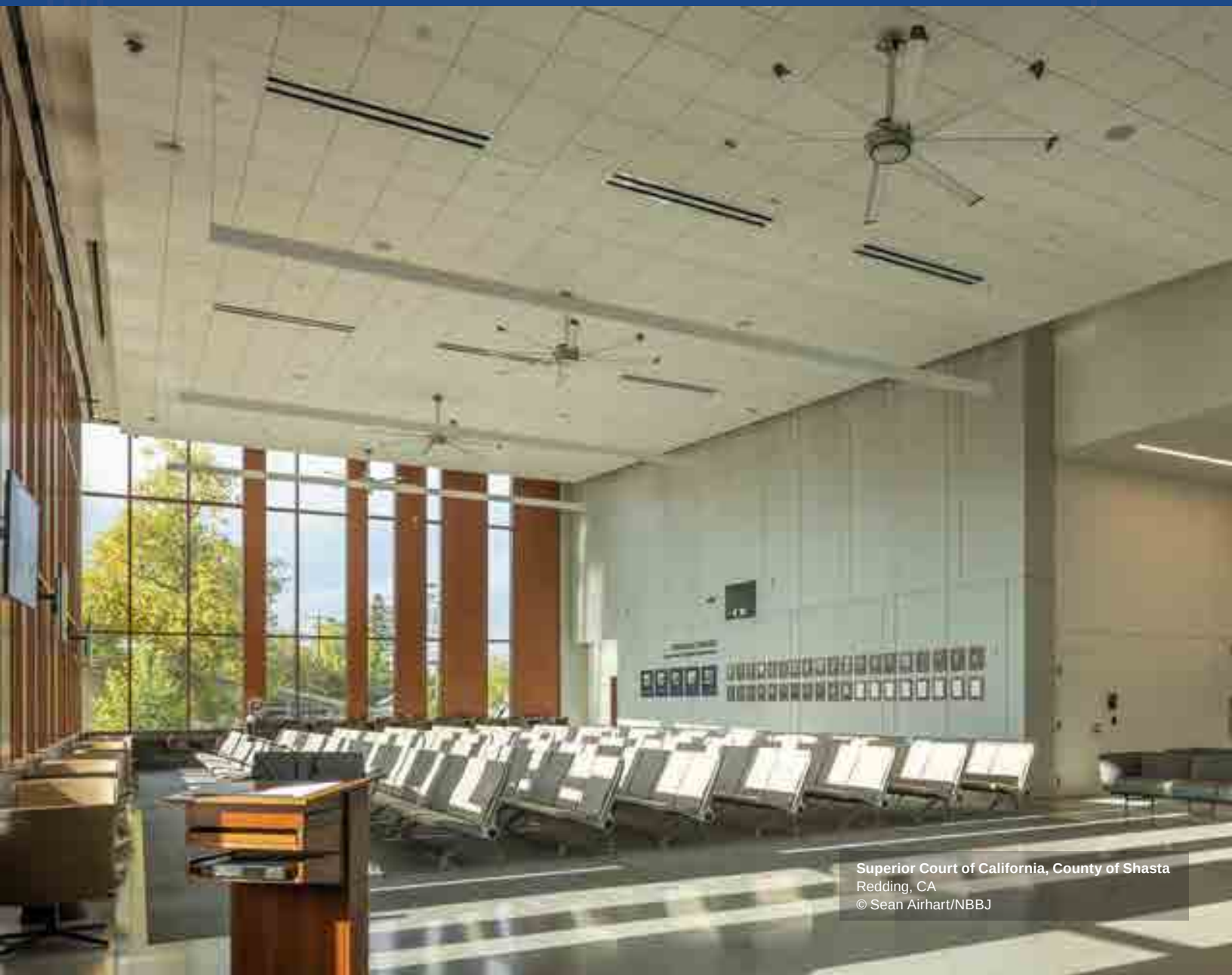
e. An efficient (i.e., NRC of 0.80 or greater) sound-absorbing ceiling is the most effective initial treatment to control reverberation and loudness in most occupied rooms.

DIVISION TWO: TECHNICAL CRITERIA
11 Architectural Criteria
12 Structural Criteria
13 Mechanical Criteria
14 Building Management System Criteria
15 Electrical Criteria
16 Lighting Criteria
17 Network and Communication Systems
18 Audiovisual Systems
19 ACOUSTICAL CRITERIA
19.A Objectives
19.B Acoustical Criteria
19.C Best Practices
20 Fire Protection Criteria

DIVISION TWO: TECHNICAL CRITERIA

20 FIRE PROTECTION CRITERIA

SECTION	TOPIC	PAGE
20.A	Objectives	20.2
20.B	Fire Protection Criteria	20.2
20.C	Fire Alarm System Objectives	20.8
20.D	Fire Alarm System Criteria	20.9



Superior Court of California, County of Shasta
Redding, CA
© Sean Airhart/NBBJ

This chapter defines the general and technical criteria for fire protection systems, including recommendations and minimum acceptable performance criteria.

AHJ = authority having jurisdiction

AWWA = American Water Works Association

DPDT = double pole, double throw switch

NFPA = National Fire Protection Association

20.A OBJECTIVES

Fire protection systems protect life and property from fire through standardization of design, installation, and testing requirements for sprinkler systems based on sound engineering principles, applicable state fire code, and field experience. The following criteria set minimum acceptable standards for design and installation of fire protection systems. New technology and alternative arrangements may be applied in accordance with section 104.2.3 of the California Building Code (CBC) upon written Judicial Council approval, but they shall not reduce safety levels prescribed by these criteria or by state fire and building codes.

Designers shall use the following criteria to develop fire protection systems for new buildings, automatic sprinkler system retrofits of existing buildings without sprinkler systems, or interior renovation of existing buildings. When the criteria are applied to interior renovations of existing structures, designers shall provide systems that meet design parameters of either the existing fire protection system or the criteria that satisfy applicable codes.

20.B FIRE PROTECTION CRITERIA

1. Interior Finishes

Wood required to be fire-retardant shall, during manufacture, be treated with fire-retardant chemicals by a pressure impregnation process that treats the materials throughout (as opposed to on the surface only). All interior finish materials shall have flame spread index and smoke-developed index as outlined in California Code of Regulations, title 24, based on the occupancy classification of various spaces in the courthouse.

2. Automatic Sprinkler Systems

a. All fire suppression systems shall be designed by a California registered fire protection engineer. Deferred-approval construction shop drawings may be prepared by a Class C-16 fire protection contractor (Cal. Code Regs., tit. 16, § 832.16).

b. For areas subject to freezing, automatic sprinkler systems shall be dry-pipe sprinkler systems.

c. Active fire protection, including an automatic sprinkler system, shall be required during construction, alteration, and demolition operations in accordance with the California Building Code and California Fire Code.

d. Automatic sprinkler system zones shall be established by the installation of accessible floor control assemblies for all floors in multistory buildings, including basements.

e. Automatic sprinkler system designs (wet pipe) shall achieve the minimum design criteria listed in table 20.1.

f. The maximum working pressure for sprinkler systems shall be limited to 175 pounds per square inch (psi).

g. Automatic sprinkler systems in mechanical rooms shall be installed per NFPA requirements using corrosion-resistant, standard-response sprinklers.

h. High temperature–grade sprinkler heads shall be provided in the generator room, boiler room, and other high-temperature areas.

i. The location of each sprinkler head shall be coordinated with the various systems shown in the reflected ceiling plan, including lighting, diffuser, and grille layout. Sprinklers shall be installed in center-of-tile locations for suspended ceilings based on the dimension of the ceiling tiles.

Table 20.1 Minimum Design Criteria for Automatic Sprinkler System Designs (Wet Pipe)

OCCUPANCY CLASSIFICATION	DESIGN DENSITY (GPM/FT)	DESIGN AREA (FT^2)	HOSE STREAM ALLOWANCE (GPM)*	DURATION OF SUPPLY (MINUTES)
Light Hazard	0.10	1,500	100	30
Ordinary Hazard Group 1	0.15	1,500	250	60
Ordinary Hazard Group 2	0.20	1,500	250	60
Extra Hazard Group 1	0.30	2,500	500	90
Extra Hazard Group 2	0.40	2,500	500	90

* Combined inside/outside.
gpm/ft^2 = gallons per minute per square foot.

j. Sprinkler head guards shall be installed on any heads subject to possible mechanical injury. Sprinkler head guards shall be listed by Underwriters Laboratories (UL) for the specific sprinkler the guard is protecting.

k. Sprinkler guards shall be installed on sprinklers in the following locations:

- Within elevator machine rooms and elevator pits;
- Within electrical closets;
- Within electrical equipment rooms;
- Less than 7′6″ above the floor; and
- In main distribution frame (MDF) rooms, unless concealed-type sprinklers are installed.

l. On retrofit projects, existing standard-response sprinklers shall be replaced in light hazard areas, with quick-response sprinklers throughout the areas being retrofitted.

m. A framed, printed sheet (protected by transparent plastic, safety glass, or a plexiglass cover) with brief instructions regarding all necessary aspects of sprinkler controls and emergency procedure shall be provided next to sprinkler main risers.

n. The main drain shall be installed at riser and auxiliary drains at all low points in the system on each floor. Install inspector's test drains on the sprinkler system at the main riser assembly. Five or fewer trapped heads may be drained through a plugged fitting. Route the drainpipes for each sprinkler riser, and test connections to the building sanitary sewer system. The sewer system shall be designed to accommodate full flow for the main drain.

o. Sprinkler drain locations shall be coordinated with plumbing drawings.

p. The location of and access to fire pump rooms and the location of signage, keying, and fire sprinkler shutoff and zone valve access shall be coordinated with local fire authorities. Access and signage shall be obvious. Visibility shall not be blocked by equipment.

3. Fire Water Tanks

a. Onsite water storage, where required, shall be designed and installed per NFPA 22.

b. Fire water tanks shall be installed as part of the building, at the exterior, or in a separate structure to prevent flooding of the main building interior in the event of a leak. If installed within the building, it shall be located in the basement or on the lowest level in the absence of a basement. If underground, it shall be installed outside the building foundation.

DIVISION TWO: TECHNICAL CRITERIA
11 Architectural Criteria
12 Structural Criteria
13 Mechanical Criteria
14 Building Management System Criteria
15 Electrical Criteria
16 Lighting Criteria
17 Network and Communication Systems
18 Audiovisual Systems
19 Acoustical Criteria
20 FIRE PROTECTION CRITERIA
20.A Objectives
20.B Fire Protection Criteria
20.C Fire Alarm System Objectives
20.D Fire Alarm System Criteria

c. Approval from the authority having jurisdiction shall be obtained for underground fire water tanks, which shall be installed in accordance with NFPA 22.22.

d. Fire water tanks shall be designed as suction tanks and protected from freezing.

e. Fire water tanks shall be protected from exposure to fires as required in accordance with NFPA 22.

f. Fire water tanks shall be made of steel or concrete. Any other material shall require approval by the AHJ.

g. A single fire water tank shall be specified for the required fire water demand. The tank shall provide the minimum required volume of water for the full design duration.

h. Adequate access to the fire water tank, valves, and pipe shall be provided, and confined space entry conditions shall be avoided. The service entry shall be from a top hatch. If the entry is from the side, it shall be large enough for feet-first rather than head-first entry and is subject to approval of the Judicial Council and the Office of the State Fire Marshal (OSFM). Design shall allow for access in an emergency situation.

i. Fire water tanks shall be periodically inspected, tested, and maintained in accordance with NFPA 25.

4. Hydrants

Design and installation shall comply with NFPA 24 and meet requirements of the Office of the State Fire Marshal and the local fire department, except as follows.

a. Contact the responding fire department for hydrant and water pressure requirements.

b. Locate fire hydrants as required by section 507.5 and Appendix C of the California Fire Code (Cal. Code Regs., tit. 24, pt. 9). The approximate distance between a fire hydrant and the building fire department connection shall be 50′.

c. Install wet barrel hydrants where piping is not subject to freezing.

d. Locate hydrants adjacent to paved areas, no closer than 3′ and no farther than 7′ from roadway shoulder or curb line, accessible to fire department apparatus. Barrels shall be long enough to permit at least 18″ clearance between center of pumper connection and grade. Pumper connection shall be perpendicular to the street to allow straight-line connection to the pumper.

e. Design site grading for surface drainage away from the hydrant.

5. Fire Pump Requirements

Evaluate fire pump requirements based on building size, number of floors, occupancy, and available city water pressure. Specify fire pump, jockey pump, and associated control system in accordance with NFPA 20 requirements and NFPA 70 (NEC) Article 695 for electrical requirements.

a. Specify that a single vendor shall furnish pumps, motors, transfer switches, and all controls. All equipment shall be UL listed.

b. Protect fire pump buildings or rooms enclosing diesel engine pump drivers and day tanks with an automatic sprinkler system in accordance with NFPA 13 as an Extra Hazard Group 2 occupancy.

c. Protect fire pump buildings or rooms with electric fire pump drivers with an automatic sprinkler system in accordance with NFPA 13 as an Ordinary Hazard Group 1 occupancy.

d. Require the pump manufacturer or representative to provide the services of a qualified fire protection engineer for startup and acceptance testing in the presence of the authority having jurisdiction (AHJ).

e. Ensure fire pumps start automatically at 10 psi below pressure maintenance pump (jockey pump) start pressure. The fire pump must be manually shut down; incorporate operation by automatic periodic exercise timers used for the required maintenance run times. The fire pump installation must include a test header and a flow meter.

f. Where an emergency generator is required or provided, and the emergency generator is intended to provide secondary or backup power to the fire pump, coordinate the electric fire pump starter type and loads with the generator for adequate starting capacity.

g. Provide emergency lighting in fire pump rooms.

6. Piping Requirements

a. All aboveground automatic sprinkler system piping shall comply with the provisions of NFPA 13. Only black steel piping shall be allowed for aboveground piping.

b. Aboveground piping shall include a single air vent at a high point in the system in accordance with NFPA 13.

c. All underground fire protection piping shall comply with NFPA 24.

d. For corrosive soil areas, the underground piping shall be encased in polyethylene encasement in accordance with American Water Works Association (AWWA) C105 and provided with cathodic protection.

e. Corrosion protection for buried ductile iron pressure piping and supports shall be specified. All wrapping shall be installed onsite. Specify cathodic protection as necessary for local conditions.

f. Local water purveyor, fire, or building department requirements for corrosion protection shall be incorporated into the project requirements.

g. Continuous detectable warning tape shall be installed directly above all underground fire service line piping, approximately 1′ below the finished grade surface.

h. When backflow preventers are installed in fixed fire protection systems for new buildings, a test connection shall be provided downstream of all backflow prevention valves for flow tests at system demand.

i. Valves in underground water distribution lines shall be provided to isolate leaks and allow water to supply the remainder of the loop. Locate isolation valves so that no more than five fire appurtenances are affected by shutdown of any single portion of the fire service main. Each fire hydrant, fire sprinkler system riser, and standpipe riser shall be considered a separate fire appurtenance.

j. Steel piping having a corrosion-resistant ratio less than 1 is not permitted to be installed.

k. Plain-end fittings shall not be permitted.

l. Pressure seal-type fittings or methods of joining pipes shall not be permitted.

m. The automatic sprinkler system drainage piping shall be specified as galvanized steel pipe with galvanized threaded malleable iron fittings.

n. Aboveground pipe, fittings, and hangers shall be installed in accordance with NFPA 13 and local code requirements, including seismic sway and uplift bracing.

DIVISION TWO: TECHNICAL CRITERIA

11 Architectural Criteria
12 Structural Criteria
13 Mechanical Criteria
14 Building Management System Criteria
15 Electrical Criteria
16 Lighting Criteria
17 Network and Communication Systems
18 Audiovisual Systems
19 Acoustical Criteria

20 FIRE PROTECTION CRITERIA
20.A Objectives
20.B Fire Protection Criteria
20.C Fire Alarm System Objectives
20.D Fire Alarm System Criteria

o. One-piece reducing fittings shall be used to make reductions in pipe sizes. Bushings will not be acceptable except when standard fittings of proper size are not manufactured.

p. Earthquake protection and bracing shall be in accordance with NFPA 13. Other methods of bracing shall be permitted if certified by a California registered professional structural engineer.

q. Exposed piping supplying chrome-plated hose valves or fire department connections shall be painted (color to be approved by architect). Chrome-plated wall or floor escutcheons shall be provided at point of concealment.

r. A hinged chrome-plated escutcheon shall be installed at all visible wall, floor, and ceiling pipe penetrations in finished areas.

s. Piping through elevator hoistways, machine rooms, machinery spaces, or enclosures is not permitted unless piping is serving these spaces. Branch sprinkler piping serving those spaces shall be provided with a supervised branch shutoff valve located at an accessible location outside these spaces. Furnish a supervisory switch at these valves.

t. Piping through electrical rooms is not permitted unless piping is serving these spaces. Coordinate piping layouts to prevent installation directly over electrical equipment. If pipe routing over equipment is unavoidable, provide drain pans under piping to prevent leaking pipe drips from damaging equipment while maintaining sprinkler coverage.

7. Piping Specialties

a. Specify piping specialties that are UL listed and made by a single manufacturer.

b. Specify pressure gauges to be 3-1/2″ dial with a dial range of twice the system working pressure, 1/4″ bottom connection, and shutoff valve.

c. Specify UL-listed flow switches with adjustable time delays. Each must have two contacts for local and remote alarms, double pole, double throw (DPDT).

d. Specify inspector's test and drain valve assembly in accordance with NFPA 13.

e. Specify valve supervisory switches to be UL listed, 120 volts of alternating current (VAC) / 30 volts of direct current (VDC), with DPDT.

f. Specify other specialty items following NFPA 13 or local conditions and codes.

g. Specify the sprinkler heads to be UL-listed automatic sprinklers in accordance with the following:

- A temperature rating of 155°F–165°F, except when the application requires a higher rating.
- A 200°F temperature rating for sprinkler heads in all switchgear rooms, electrical rooms, elevator machine rooms, mechanical rooms, and skylights, and where required by NFPA.
- Detention-grade, ceiling-mounted sprinkler heads in all areas accessible to in-custodies. Sprinkler heads must meet Compliance Services and Assessments (CSA) standards for suicide prevention and be located a minimum of 8′ above the finish floor. The sprinkler heads come with a factory finish. Tyco sprinkler heads shall be the basis of design and pricing, with smooth underside and no protruding elements.
- Standard response type sprinkler heads—upright, sidewall, or pendant—in open ceiling areas and switchgear rooms, electrical rooms, elevator machine rooms, mechanical rooms, and other service areas.

8. Fire Department Connections

a. Specify the fire department connections (FDC) to be provided in accordance with NFPA, California Fire Code, and local fire department requirements. Hose threads shall conform to the standards of the responding fire departments.

b. Use cast brass or ductile iron body FDCs with drop clappers. Provide chrome-plated brass plate with lettering as required by the local fire authorities. Provide chrome-plated brass female snoots with hose thread swivels, of a style to meet local fire department requirements, with threaded caps and chains. All hose inlets and threads shall meet National Standard Thread requirements and conform to local fire department requirements.

9. Valve Requirements

a. Valves shall be UL listed, all with supervisory switches.

b. Automatic sprinkler system control valves shall be located in accessible spaces; they are not permitted in above-ceiling spaces. Valves shall be accessible and not require special equipment to operate the control valves.

c. Valves shall be UL listed for the application and pressure classification and manufactured by companies with a full line of fire protection system components.

10. Post Indicator Valve Assembly

When required by the local authorities, specify UL-listed post indicator valve (PIV) assembly. PIVs shall be monitored by the building fire alarm system.

11. Main Distribution Frame / Server Equipment Room Protection

Sprinkler heads shall be provided with sprinkler guards. A double interlock pre-action sprinkler system is required. The dedicated pre-action panel shall be connected to the building fire alarm system.

A pre-action fire sprinkler system shall be provided for MDF and IDF rooms. The fire sprinkler system shall have a separate, dedicated, manually operated isolation valve with a supervisory switch and a separate flow switch located outside the protected area in an accessible location. Both the supervisory switch and the flow switch shall be connected to the building fire alarm system.

If approved by the Judicial Council, an automatic clean agent fire suppression system compliant with NFPA-2001 in high-value critical facilities rooms may be allowed. The detection system shall use cross-zone or counting-zone photoelectric detectors.

Activation of a minimum of two detectors is required before the agent discharge countdown sequence can begin. The quantity of detectors shall be determined by airflow within the hazard area, but the area protected shall not exceed 250 SF per detector. Minimum detection to be provided for each clean agent–protected room shall be two counting-zone detectors or two cross-zone detectors.

12. Coordination

a. Coordinate fire protection systems with other specification sections such as earthwork, architectural, site utilities, concrete, plumbing, structural, electrical, sheet metal, and mechanical sections.

b. Specify wiring diagrams for interfacing with electrical work for all electrical equipment provided under fire protection systems.

DIVISION TWO: TECHNICAL CRITERIA

11 Architectural Criteria
12 Structural Criteria
13 Mechanical Criteria
14 Building Management System Criteria
15 Electrical Criteria
16 Lighting Criteria
17 Network and Communication Systems
18 Audiovisual Systems
19 Acoustical Criteria
20 FIRE PROTECTION CRITERIA
20.A Objectives
20.B Fire Protection Criteria
20.C Fire Alarm System Objectives
20.D Fire Alarm System Criteria

The fire alarm system shall be coordinated with other specification sections such as architectural, site utilities, plumbing, fire sprinkler, electrical, telephone, data, security, intelligent building, and mechanical systems.

c. Coordinate automatic sprinkler systems with the building fire alarm system for transmitting all flow and tamper alarms.

d. Design the edge-of-slab UL–fire rated system to address general requirements for protection of steel per the Office of the State Fire Marshal. Specify how ratings are to be maintained where walls abut exterior window walls or columns.

e. Specify that the OSFM may require sequential inspection of each component of the rated walls.

f. Clearly define fire and temperature rating requirements and products for mechanical, electrical, and plumbing systems (e.g., piping and conduit) and large banks of pipes, conduits, and bus ducts.

g. In projects greater than five stories tall, when installing wood paneling or backing into the building during construction, provide a temporary fire protection plan. The fire protection plan shall include water and fire hose with full design pressure to the floors receiving wood. If power is not available, a temporary fire pump with a temporary generator shall be required.

13. Guarantee

The fire protection work shall be free from defects of workmanship and materials for two years after filing notice of completion, and the general contractor shall remedy any defects developing during this period free of charge. Manufacturers that provide a longer guarantee period for their equipment shall provide a written guarantee.

14. Installation Contractor Certification

Specify that the fire protection system shall require the installation contractor to submit all certificates in triplicate indicating approval of work, approval or performance of tests, and final inspection issued by the OSFM before final acceptance of the fire protection system.

15. Cleaning

Specify that the sprinkler heads placed before painting be covered with paper or plastic bags, which shall be removed only after painting is completed.

20.C FIRE ALARM SYSTEM OBJECTIVES

Fire alarm system design shall provide safe installation and operations through standardization, installation, and testing requirements based on sound engineering principles, applicable state and local codes, and field experience. These criteria set minimum acceptable requirements for design and installation of the building fire alarm system.

Designers shall use these criteria to develop fire alarm systems for construction of new buildings, retrofit of existing buildings, and interior renovation of existing buildings. When the criteria are applied to the design of interior renovations of existing structures, the designer shall provide systems that meet either the design parameters of the existing building fire alarm system or these criteria, whichever result in a system that satisfies applicable codes.

20.D FIRE ALARM SYSTEM CRITERIA

1. General Requirements

a. The fire alarm and notification system shall be UL listed, State Fire Marshal listed and approved, and manufactured by firms regularly engaged in manufacturing fire detection, alarm, and communication systems; be of types, sizes, and electrical characteristics required; and use products that have been in satisfactory use in similar service for not less than five years. The fire alarm system shall be a fully addressable and nonproprietary system. Class B wiring shall be acceptable except for connections (signaling circuits) between the main fire alarm control panel and any networked remote fire alarm panels, where Class A wiring shall be provided. Minimum conduit size throughout the installation shall be 3/4″.

b. All fire alarm systems shall be designed by a California registered fire protection engineer; deferred-approval construction shop drawings may be prepared by a Class C-10 fire protection contractor.

c. The fire alarm system shall have the following specifications:

- For non-high-rise buildings, the fire alarm control panel shall be located in the security operations center unless another location is mandated by code. Provide a fire alarm remote annunciator inside the building in a location adjacent to the main entrance.
- For high-rise buildings, the fire alarm panel and other equipment and documentation, as required by the California Fire Code, shall be located in the fire command center. It shall be shown in plans and elevations with all systems included. The layout shall be coordinated with the local fire department, and access shall be from within the building. The plans shall show each fire alarm zone.

d. Fire alarm systems shall include an emergency communication system (voice notification system) when any one of the following conditions exists:

- The building is two or more stories in height above the level of exit discharge.
- The total calculated occupant load of the building is 300 or more.
- The building is subject to 100 or more occupants above or below the level of exit discharge.

e. The emergency communication system must provide an automatic voice message in response to the receipt of a signal indicative of a fire emergency. Manual control with the capability of making live voice announcements must also be furnished to provide occupants notification on either a selective or an all-call basis. The system shall be Speech Transmission Index for Public Address (STIPA) tested and approved by OSFM.

f. All fire alarm signals (i.e., alarm, supervisory, and trouble signals) must be automatically transmitted to a UL-listed central station service using one or more of the methods allowed by NFPA 72 section 26.6. Operation of a duct smoke detector is permitted to initiate a supervisory signal.

g. Manual fire alarm boxes must be installed in accordance with the requirements in NFPA 72 and the California Fire Code.

h. Fire alarm control units and annunciators shall be semirecessed in finished areas.

i. All wiring entering or exiting a fire alarm control panel must be clearly labeled marking destination or source and purpose (e.g., “Fan #22 Shutdown”).

DIVISION TWO: TECHNICAL CRITERIA
11 Architectural Criteria
12 Structural Criteria
13 Mechanical Criteria
14 Building Management System Criteria
15 Electrical Criteria
16 Lighting Criteria
17 Network and Communication Systems
18 Audiovisual Systems
19 Acoustical Criteria
20 FIRE PROTECTION CRITERIA
20.A Objectives
20.B Fire Protection Criteria
20.C Fire Alarm System Objectives
20.D Fire Alarm System Criteria

j. In the event of primary power failure, all fire alarm systems shall be provided with battery backup power to accommodate a 24-hour standby load plus 15 minutes of alarm condition load.

k. If a building is classified as a nonseparated building in accordance with the California Building Code Nonseparated Occupancies in chapter 5, the building fire alarm system shall meet the most restrictive occupancy requirements of chapter 9 of the California Building Code. In courthouse buildings with an I-3 temporary holding area, the most restrictive I-3 occupancy requirements shall apply to the building.

l. If a building is classified as a separated building in accordance with the California Building Code Separated Occupancies in chapter 5, the building fire alarm system is required to meet the requirements within each separated occupancy.

2. Initiating Devices

Group I-3 occupancies shall be equipped with a manual fire alarm system and automatic smoke detection.

a. Automatic smoke detection is required within I-3 temporary holding cells. Unless a smoke detector with guard is approved by BSCC and OSFM, smoke detectors with guards are not permitted within holding cells.

b. An alternative method of smoke detection within the holding cells shall be coordinated with the Judicial Council, BSCC, and OSFM during the design phase.

c. HVAC duct smoke detection is permitted and the preferred method to provide automatic smoke detection within the holding cells. If the duct automatic smoke detection is designed to serve the I-3 holding cells, then the minimum airflow requirement does not have to meet the 2,000 cfm requirement.

d. The HVAC duct system serving the I-3 holding cells shall not communicate with other areas and shall be isolated to serve the I-3 area only.

e. Very Early Smoke Detection Apparatus (VESDA) smoke detection is permitted as a worst-case scenario smoke detection system. If used, the system shall be fully equipped with antiligature and tamper-resistant sampling points in each holding cell and associated dayroom and anteroom areas. Sampling holes in holding cells shall be flush mounted and drilled into an approved antiligature stainless steel flush plate or directly into an approved antiligature sampling pipe end cap. No exposed pipe, fittings, or labels shall be permitted inside the cell volume.

f. Smoke detectors shall be installed in accordance with the requirements in NFPA 72 and the California Fire Code. Provide individually addressable smoke detectors appropriate for the application in these locations: all elevator lobbies, uninterrupted power supply rooms, electrical switchgear rooms, transformer vaults, telephone exchanges, and elevator machine rooms. When smoke detection is installed in rooms having medium-voltage equipment, the smoke detection shall not be installed directly above the medium-voltage equipment. MDF rooms containing server or mainframe computer equipment shall be provided with smoke detection connected to the fire alarm system unless a separate smoke detection provision (e.g., dedicated to clean agent systems detection or actuation) already exists.

3. Notification Devices

a. The requirement and placement of audible and visible notification devices within exit enclosures (stairways) and restrooms shall be reviewed by the Judicial Council and the OSFM on a case-by-case basis and depend on room size, use, furniture, and floor and

ceiling finishes. The OSFM may approve elimination of audible devices because of the potential of exceeding the allowable 110 A-weighted decibels (dBA) The OSFM may approve elimination of visible notification devices because of the potential confusion that could occur within the exit enclosures. See California Fire Code sections 907.5.2.1.2 and 907.5.2.3 and NFPA 72 section 18.4.4.2 for detailed requirements.

b. All non-high-rise fire alarm systems must have an annunciator located near the primary fire department entrance to the building, except when the fire alarm control panel is already present in this location.

c. Fire alarm system–signaling line circuits shall be installed with isolation modules in sufficient number and location to limit the potential number of impaired devices from a single circuit failure to a maximum of eight.

4. Emergency Control Functions

a. Phase I Emergency Recall Operation shall be coordinated with the Judicial Council during the design phase.

b. System inputs of the fire alarm sequence of operation shall include the following:

- Identify which initiation devices will actuate elevator recall.
- Provide the type of initiation devices (e.g., smoke detector, heat detector, water flow switch) and the floor level they are located on in the System Input section of the sequence of operation.

c. System outputs of the fire alarm sequence of operation shall include the following:

- For each type of initiation device that actuates elevator recall, provide a system output to show recall to the primary level of recall.
- For each type of initiation device that actuates elevator recall on the primary level, provide a system output to show recall to the secondary level of recall (if applicable). Refer to table 20.2.

Table 20.2 Elevator Recall Sequence

SYSTEM INPUTS	SYSTEM OUTPUTS	
	RECALL TO PRIMARY LEVEL	RECALL TO ALTERNATIVE LEVEL
Smoke Detector—Elevator Lobby on Primary Level		X
Smoke Detector—Elevator Lobby on Other Level	X	

5. Rational Analysis

a. A rational analysis shall be performed and a report prepared to establish minimum requirements for the design, installation, and acceptance testing of smoke control systems that are intended to provide a tenable environment for the evacuation or relocation of occupants. The report and associated design, in compliance with the California Building Code, shall be submitted with the construction documents.

b. A smoke control system shall be provided where required by code. Roll-down doors provided as part of smoke control in high-volume spaces shall have smoke control fire alarm position switches for the smoke control panel.

DIVISION TWO: TECHNICAL CRITERIA
11 Architectural Criteria
12 Structural Criteria
13 Mechanical Criteria
14 Building Management System Criteria
15 Electrical Criteria
16 Lighting Criteria
17 Network and Communication Systems
18 Audiovisual Systems
19 Acoustical Criteria
20 FIRE PROTECTION CRITERIA
20.A Objectives
20.B Fire Protection Criteria
20.C Fire Alarm System Objectives
20.D Fire Alarm System Criteria

c. Specifications shall describe the intent, scope, responsibilities, weekly testing, referenced specifications, and the like for the smoke control system. Include testing requirements for systems that use ductwork for both smoke exhaust and normal return. The smoke control ductwork pressure class shall be noted on supply, exhaust, and return systems. Define the testing requirements of the electric resettable link (ERL).

6. Quality Assurance

a. All materials specified shall be the best available, new, and approved by UL and the Office of the State Fire Marshal.

b. All panels and peripheral devices shall be the standard product of a single fire alarm system manufacturer under the appropriate UL category.

c. Installer shall be qualified with at least five years of successful installation experience on projects with fire detection, alarm, and communication systems installation work similar to that required for the project.

d. Construction and installation of fire detection, alarm, and communication system components and accessories shall comply with the California Energy Code, as applicable.

e. The fire detection, alarm, and communication system components and accessories shall comply with all federal and state standards.

7. Identification

Specify that the proper identification and signage be provided at each fire alarm panel, conduit, branch circuit, pull box, and junction box using industry standard materials and methods.

8. Guarantee

The fire alarm work shall be free from defects of workmanship and materials for two years after filing notice of completion, and the general contractor shall remedy any defects that develop during this period free of charge. Manufacturers whose equipment has a longer guarantee period shall provide a written guarantee. Specifications shall include requirements for the fire alarm contractor to provide a minimum two-year warranty for all fire alarm systems. The fire alarm contractor shall provide required inspection, testing, and maintenance services at least every six months throughout the warranty period.

9. Tests and Adjustments

Specify that after installation has been completed, the entire system is to be tested in accordance with NFPA 72 by the contractor in the presence of the AHJ.

10. Installation Contractor Certification

Specify that the fire alarm system installation contractor shall submit all certificates in triplicate indicating approval of work, approval or performance of tests, and final inspection issued by local authorities.

REQUIRED TOOLS

T1 Life Cycle Cost Analysis

T2 Catalog of Courtroom Layouts for California Trial Courts

T3 Integrated Network Architecture

T4 Graphical User Interface Template

T5 In-Custody Interview Room Guidelines

T6 Building Management System Guidelines

T7 Small Courthouse Guidelines

T8 Security System Guidelines

REQUIRED TOOLS

T1 LIFE CYCLE COST ANALYSIS

SECTION	TOPIC	PAGE
T1.A	Purpose	T1.2
T1.B	Principles	T1.3
T1.C	Performing LCCA	T1.15



Central Courthouse, County of San Diego
San Diego, CA
© Skidmore, Owings & Merrill LLP

T1.A PURPOSE

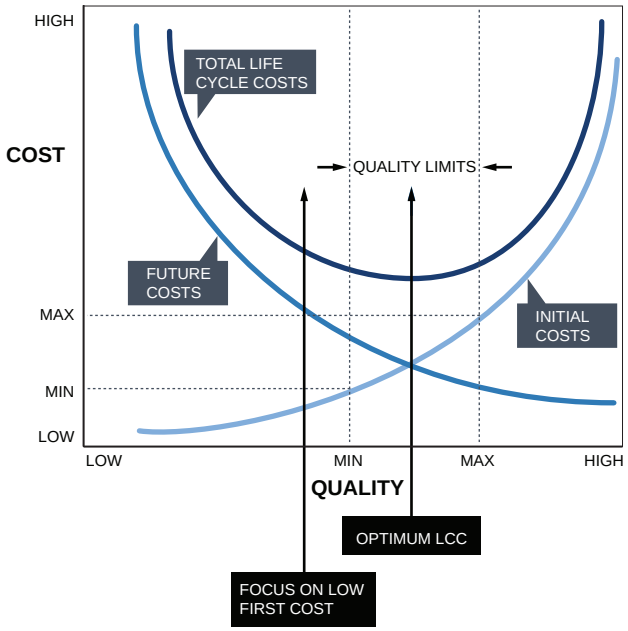
This tool documents the standardized process for conducting a life cycle cost analysis. LCCA is an economic assessment of an item, system, or facility considering all significant costs of ownership over an economic life, expressed in terms of equivalent costs. To ensure that costs are compared on an equivalent basis, the baselines used for initial cost must be the same as those used for all other costs associated with each option, including maintenance, operating cost, and replacement. LCCA is especially useful when comparing project alternatives that differ with respect to initial costs and operating costs to select the option that maximizes net savings.

LCCA is used to compare various options by identifying and assessing economic impacts over the whole life of each alternative. Future costs over the life of a facility—including operations, maintenance, and replacement—typically will match or exceed the initial cost of facility procurement. If staffing and other use costs are factored into the analysis, the initial procurement may be less than 20 percent of the total cost of ownership. Nearly every decision made during design and construction affects project costs. Some decisions are straightforward because they affect building performance or respond to codes and standards and their cost ramifications are apparent. Others are more subtle in their effect on cost and can profoundly affect disciplines and building systems beyond the prime decision-maker, such as insulation or glazing choices, which affect building heating and cooling. Most design choices have a major effect on life cycle costs.

The Judicial Council expects designers to control future facility expenditures while avoiding an undue burden on initial costs. The move toward sustainable design has highlighted the need for sensitivity to future cost. LCCA is an important tool in making more effective design decisions—ultimately for managing costs throughout the life of a facility, seeking optimum life cycle cost, and balancing functional needs with economic limitations. Figure T1.1 shows the comparison between low first cost versus optimum life cycle cost.

There will always be questions on how best to prioritize design choices. The overriding requirement is to optimize life cycle costs while maintaining cost management responsibility for the construction cost limitation.

This tool discusses methods for defining, estimating, and managing life cycle costs.



LCC = life cycle cost.

Figure T1.1 Life Cycle Cost Curve

T1.B PRINCIPLES

In making decisions, both present and future costs need to be taken into account and related to one another. A dollar today is not equal to a dollar tomorrow. Money invested in any form has the capacity to earn interest. A current dollar is always worth more than the prospect of a dollar at some future time. The exact amount depends on the investment rate (interest or the cost of money) and the length of time. This relationship—that money has the power to earn more money—is fundamental to economic analysis and LCCA.

The terms *interest rate* and *discount rate* are generally used synonymously. *Interest* is more commonly used in financial analyses, whereas *discount* is more often used in economic studies. Both terms refer to the annual growth rate for the time value of money.

At a 5 percent discount rate, a dollar will grow in value by a factor of approximately 3.5 over a 25-year period; at a 15 percent discount rate, the factor is nearly 35. Even though the discount rates differ by a factor of 3, the resulting relationship in value differs by a factor of nearly 10. The selection of a discount rate is important to an LCCA.

What does the term *real discount rate* mean? Inflation can affect an economic analysis because over time, it reduces the purchasing power of currency. This effect means that in the future, more currency will be required to purchase the same goods.

General inflation does not directly affect the actual time value of money because, under all circumstances, money must have a time value. Inflation, however, does affect how the time value is calculated and must be accommodated in the calculation. So, if the real time value of money is 5 percent and inflation is predicted to be 3 percent, then any discounting analysis would need to use 8 percent as an interest rate and inflate all future costs by 3 percent. This is called a *current dollars analysis.*

As a simplification, especially in comparative analyses not used for cash flow calculations, constant dollars may be used. In this case, a 5 percent discount rate would be used, and all future costs would be held at the base date relative cost and not inflated.

For all Judicial Council analyses, a real discount rate (exclusive of inflation) of 3.25 percent will be used unless otherwise directed.

The one exception for an adjustment to a real discount rate would be for any future costs expected not to follow inflation. For example, energy costs have tended to increase at 1 to 2 percent above inflation over the last 10 years. In this case, future energy costs would be inflated differentially (above the general inflation rate) by 1 to 2 percent. This effect is referred to in economic analyses as *escalation.*

1. Economic Analysis Period

The economic or study period used when comparing alternatives is an important consideration. Predicting future costs for 25 to 40 years is usually long enough to capture the most significant costs for economic purposes. Nearly 90 percent of the total present value equivalent cost is consumed in the first 25 years at a 5 percent discount rate. For this reason, periods longer than 40 years generally add little benefit to an LCCA unless very low (below 2 percent) interest rates are used.

The Judicial Council requires a 30-year economic analysis period unless there is a specific reason to deviate.

REQUIRED TOOLS

T1 LIFE CYCLE COST ANALYSIS
T1.A Purpose
T1.B Principles
T1.C Performing LCCA
T2 Catalog of Courtroom Layouts for California Trial Courts
T3 Integrated Network Architecture
T4 Graphical User Interface Template
T5 In-Custody Interview Room Guidelines
T6 Building Management System Guidelines
T7 Small Courthouse Guidelines
T8 Security Systems Guidelines

2. Life of an Element

A time frame must also be identified for each system or component under analysis relative to the overall study period. The *technological life* of an item is the estimated number of years until technology causes the item to become obsolete. The *useful life* of an item is the estimated number of years during which it will perform its function according to some established performance standard. The *economic life* of an item is the estimated number of years until that item no longer represents the least expensive method of performing its function.

The economic life of an item is the most important of the three from the viewpoint of cost optimization. It is also generally the shortest, with the exception of consequential technological changes that bring in new solutions at much lower cost. However, the technological and useful lives of an item should still be considered when its economic life is estimated.

Extending the life of an item beyond its economic life in an LCCA is generally economically neutral or negative. For example, a rooftop heating, ventilation, and air-conditioning (HVAC) component can operate past its 20-year economic life but will require above-normal maintenance, is more likely to fail, and will use more energy. The result in terms of total life cycle cost will be similar to simply allowing for replacement at the 20th year.

For all Judicial Council analyses, the economic life of systems or components will be used unless otherwise directed.

Table T1.1 provides guidelines for the economic life of building components in UniFormat. Various sources were used for the table, including *Life Cycle Costing for Facilities* by Alphonse J. Dell'Isola and Steven J. Kirk (RSMeans, 2003). Table T1.3 shows the relationship between UniFormat and MasterFormat. Table T1.8 shall be used as a reference for economic life of building components in MasterFormat.

3. Categories of Cost

Over the life of a facility, costs will be expended on a broad range of components and for numerous purposes. A life cycle cost analysis is a comparative analysis; therefore, it is important that costs be properly identified and categorized ***so that common items can be eliminated from the analysis and effort can be focused on the difference between critical items.***

The costs of owning a facility can be subdivided as follows:

- Initial costs
  - Construction
  - Fees
  - Environmental review and mitigation
  - Other initial costs
- Future facility one-time costs
  - Replacements
  - Alterations
  - Salvage
  - Other one-time costs

Table T1.1 Economic Life of Building Components in UniFormat

COMPONENT	ECONOMIC LIFE (YEARS)
General Construction (Divs. 2–14)	
Foundations	30(+)
Substructure	30(+)
Superstructure	
Steel	30(+)
Masonry	30(+)
Cast-in-place concrete	30(+)
Precast concrete	50–100
Exterior closure	
Masonry	30
Wood	20
Precast	25
Steel/aluminum curtain wall	30
Glazing systems	25
Sun control devices	15
Roofing	
Built-up	17
EPDM single-ply	20
Interior construction	
Drywall partitions on metal studs	20
Masonry interior walls	30
Interior finishes	10–20
Conveying systems	
Passenger elevators	30
Escalators	20
Equipment	10–20

EPDM = ethylene propylene diene monomer.

VAV = variable air volume.

COMPONENT	ECONOMIC LIFE (YEARS)
Mech/Elect Construction (Divs. 21–28)	
Plumbing	
Piping	30
Fixtures	20–30
Hot water heater	25
Roof drainage	30
Air conditioners	
Water-cooled package	15
Computer room	15
Rooftop multizone	20
Boilers	
Steel/cast iron	25
Electric	15
Furnaces: gas or oil-fired	18
Unit heaters	
Gas or electric	12
Hot water or steam	20
Air terminals	
Diffusers, grilles, and registers	25
Fan coil units	20
VAV boxes	20
Ductwork	30
Fans	20–25
Chillers	20–25
Cooling towers	20–25
Pumps	15–20
Controls	15–20
Electric motors	15
Motor starters	17
Branch circuits and wiring devices	20
Switchgear	20
Liquid-filled transformers	30
Dry-type transformers	25
Interior lighting systems	20
Communication systems	15–20
Engine/generators	20
Turbine/generators	25
Solar panels	30

REQUIRED TOOLS

T1 LIFE CYCLE COST ANALYSIS
T1.A Purpose
T1.B Principles
T1.C Performing LCCA

T2 Catalog of Courtroom Layouts for California Trial Courts
T3 Integrated Network Architecture
T4 Graphical User Interface Template
T5 In-Custody Interview Room Guidelines
T6 Building Management System Guidelines
T7 Small Courthouse Guidelines
T8 Security Systems Guidelines

- Future facility annual costs
  - Operations including utilities
  - Maintenance
  - Financing
  - Taxes
  - Insurance
  - Security
  - Utility rate escalation
  - Other annual costs
- Functional use costs
  - Staffing
  - Materials
  - Denial of use
  - Other functional use costs
- Environmental costs
  - Water scarcity
  - Ongoing environmental mitigation
  - Other environmental costs

Initial costs include construction, fees, and costs such as land acquisition and moving. These represent up-front costs associated with facility development. Future one-time costs represent major expenditures that are not annual (although they may be periodic) and include replacement, elective alterations, and salvage.

Facility annual costs include all costs to run the facility itself, such as operations, maintenance, and other built environment costs.

Functional use costs are costs associated with using a facility, including staffing, materials, and any other nonfacility costs. Items such as denial-of-use costs may be necessary during construction and include temporary space, operations, and added security.

Additionally, environmental costs shall be considered when doing the LCCA. Future site water scarcity, ongoing environmental mitigation, and other environmental costs shall be considered in conjunction with initial environmental review and mitigation costs to determine the appropriate building parameters.

4. Life Cycle Costing Procedures

Life cycle costing focuses on comparing competing alternatives. To compare alternatives, both present and future costs for each alternative must be brought to a common point in time using one of two methods: Costs may be converted into today's costs by the *present-worth method*, or they may be converted to an annual series of payments by the *annualized method*. Either method will properly allow comparison between alternatives.

4.1 Present-Worth Method

The present-worth method requires conversion of all present and future expenditures to a baseline of today's cost. Initial (present) costs are already expressed in present worth. Future costs are converted to present value by applying the factors presented previously.

4.2 Annualized Method

The annualized method converts initial, recurring, and nonrecurring costs to an annual series of payments and may be used to express all life cycle costs as an annual expenditure. Mortgage payments are an example of this procedure.

4.3 Other Economic Analysis Methods

Other methods of economic analysis can be used in a life cycle study depending on the client's requirements and special needs. It is possible to determine the payback period, establish a break-even point between alternatives, determine the rate of return on total investment and extra investment, determine rate-of-return alternatives, perform a cash flow analysis, and review the benefits and costs. All methods, correctly applied, will yield results pointing to the same conclusion.

The Judicial Council requires the present-worth analysis to be used for LCCA.

5. Accuracy Requirements for LCCA

To perform a life cycle cost analysis, certain assumptions must be made. These assumptions concern significant economic variables, including discount rate, study duration, and escalation, as well as data defining the cost and performance of competing alternatives. Seldom are clear-cut, obvious, and easy choices available. Invariably, good judgment, experience, and common sense need to be used in making decisions. The following guidelines should be considered:

- Issues common to all alternatives can be ignored. The objective of LCCA is to select between competing alternatives. Therefore, assumptions need to be made, and data that is sufficient to distinguish performance needs to be gathered only for issues that differ between the alternatives.
- In general, because of likely margins of error in estimating costs, alternatives would have to exhibit a life cycle cost (LCC) differential greater than 10 percent to be judged conclusive. Numeric accuracy should be balanced between the need to differentiate the alternatives and the dependability of input information. Much of the LCC data available has been gathered from observation and is inherently highly variable.
- A sensitivity analysis should be considered whenever assumptions may be deemed questionable. Even when differentials exceed 10 percent, confidence in major variables in the analysis may limit confidence in the overall conclusions. In these instances, a sensitivity analysis may be required. It involves conducting multiple LCCAs using extremes of the cost parameters in question and evaluating the resulting sensitivity of the analysis to the assumptions. To reach the same overall conclusion even when assumptions are significantly varied is not uncommon.

6. Typical Areas of Study

The areas of study for an LCCA will vary among facilities and, to some degree, by geographic location. Table T1.2 lists components that are typically selected for study and provides some general areas for consideration.

Table T1.2 Typical Components to Be Considered in a Life Cycle Cost Analysis

COMPONENT	TYPICAL ALTERNATIVES TO BE ANALYZED
Predesign	
	Impacts of new acquisition, leasing, and/or public-private partnerships
	Renovation, upgrade, or revitalization of an existing facility
	Use of other state facilities
General Life Cycle Cost Issues for All Components	
	Element/component service and replacement life
	Maintenance and maintainability
	Direct and indirect energy impacts
Site and Program	
	Building shape and orientation on the planned site (including impact on adjacent buildings)
	Alternative sites
	Seismic, environmental, and community issues
Architecture	
Substructure	
	Foundations—water infiltration, special seismic features
	Slab on grade—special loads, vibration isolation
	Basement excavation—use of import/export materials
	Basement and retaining walls—water infiltration
Superstructure	
	Floor construction—seismic impacts, floor displacement, noise isolation, security
	Roof construction—seismic impacts
	Stair construction—long-term maintainability, safety
Wall construction	
	Increased insulation levels, insulation placement, etc.
	Mass (passive solar thermal storage)
	Daylighting
	Building envelope (exterior closure) type
Fenestration	
	Type, amount, and location/orientation of glass
	Indoor/outdoor shading devices
	Daylighting
Interior space plan	
	Space arrangement and circulation
	Demising walls and partitions
	Finishes and colors
	Ceiling and plenum heights

Table T1.2 continues on next page

Table T1.2 Typical Components to Be Considered in a Life Cycle Cost Analysis *continued*

COMPONENT	TYPICAL ALTERNATIVES TO BE ANALYZED
Architecture *(continued)*	
Roof construction	
	Increased insulation levels, type of insulation
	Roof membrane type and color
	Daylighting
Conveyances	
	Selection of elevators and dumbwaiters
	Escalators
Secondary HVAC systems	
	System types and zoning
	Operating plans, economizer cycle(s), and optimization
	Heat recovery (exhaust air, internal source, etc.)
	Controls
Primary HVAC systems	
	System types and energy sources
	Pumping/piping configuration
	Heat recovery (waterside economizer cycle, etc.)
	Thermal storage (electrical demand shifting)
	Controls
Plumbing	
	Domestic hot water generation (method and energy source)
	Water source—municipal, well, or harvested
Electrical	
Lighting and communications	
	System selection
	Artificial lighting levels, methods, and control
	Daylighting
	Photovoltaic sources
	Communications and data management
Power	
	Voltage selection (building and large equipment)
	Transformers (quantity, locations, efficiencies)
	Emergency power

HVAC = heating, ventilation, and air-conditioning.

REQUIRED TOOLS

T1 LIFE CYCLE COST ANALYSIS
T1.A Purpose
T1.B Principles
T1.C Performing LCCA

T2 Catalog of Courtroom Layouts for California Trial Courts
T3 Integrated Network Architecture
T4 Graphical User Interface Template
T5 In-Custody Interview Room Guidelines
T6 Building Management System Guidelines
T7 Small Courthouse Guidelines
T8 Security Systems Guidelines

Table T1.3 Relationship Between UniFormat and MasterFormat

						FACILITY CONSTRUCTION														FACILITY SERVICES							SITE & INFRA-STRUCTURE					
						General Requirements	Existing Conditions	Concrete	Masonry	Metals	Wood, Plastics, Composites	Thermal & Moisture Protection	Openings	Finishes	Specialties	Equipment	Furnishings	Special Construction	Conveying Equipment	Fire Suppression	Plumbing	HVAC	Integrated Automation	Electrical	Communications	Electronic Safety & Security	Earthwork	Exterior Improvements	Utilities	Transportation	Waterway & Marine	
						01	02	03	04	05	06	07	08	09	10	11	12	13	14	21	22	23	25	26	27	28	31	32	33	34	35	
LEVEL 1		**LEVEL 2**		**LEVEL 3**																												
A	Substructure	A10	Foundations	A1010	Standard Foundations			■	■			■															■					
				A1020	Special Foundations			■	■			■															■					
				A1030	Slab on Grade			■		■		■															■		■			
		A20	Basement Construc-tions	A2010	Basement Excavation																						■					
				A2020	Basement Walls			■	■			■		■																			
B	Shell	B10	Superstruc-ture	B1010	Floor Construction			■	■	■	■	■																				
				B1020	Roof Construction			■	■	■	■	■																				
		B20	Exterior Enclosure	B2010	Exterior Walls			■	■	■	■	■	■	■	■																	
				B2020	Exterior Windows								■																				
				B2030	Exterior Doors								■																				
		B30	Roofing	B3010	Roof Coverings			■		■		■			■																	
				B3020	Roof Openings							■	■		■																	
C	Interiors	C10	Interior Construction	C1010	Partitions			■	■	■	■	■	■	■	■																	
				C1020	Interior Doors								■																				
				C1030	Fittings				■	■	■				■																		
		C20	Stairs	C2010	Stair Construction			■		■	■																					
				C2020	Stair Finishes					■	■			■																			
		C30	Interior Finishes	C3010	Wall Finishes			■			■			■																			
				C3020	Floor Finishes			■				■		■	■																		
				C3030	Ceiling Finishes			■			■			■																			
D	Services	D10	Conveying	D1010	Elevators & Lifts														■				■									
				D1020	Escalators & Moving Walks														■				■									
				D1090	Other Conveying Systems														■				■									

Table T1.3 continues on next page

Table T1.3 Relationship Between UniFormat and MasterFormat *continued*

						FACILITY CONSTRUCTION														FACILITY SERVICES							SITE & INFRA-STRUCTURE				
						General Requirements	Existing Conditions	Concrete	Masonry	Metals	Wood, Plastics, Composites	Thermal & Moisture Protection	Openings	Finishes	Specialties	Equipment	Furnishings	Special Construction	Conveying Equipment	Fire Suppression	Plumbing	HVAC	Integrated Automation	Electrical	Communications	Electronic Safety & Security	Earthwork	Exterior Improvements	Utilities	Transportation	Waterway & Marine
						01	02	03	04	05	06	07	08	09	10	11	12	13	14	21	22	23	25	26	27	28	31	32	33	34	35
LEVEL 1		**LEVEL 2**		**LEVEL 3**																											
D	Services	D20	Plumbing	D2010	Plumbing Fixtures																■										
				D2020	Domestic Water Distribution																■		■								
				D2030	Sanitary Waste																■										
				D2040	Rainwater Drainage																■										
				D2090	Other Plumbing Systems																■										
		D30	HVAC	D3010	Energy Supply																	■		■							
				D3020	Heat Generating Systems																	■									
				D3030	Cooling Generating Systems																	■									
				D3040	Distribution Systems																	■									
				D3050	Terminal & Package Units																	■									
				D3060	Controls and Instrumentation																	■	■								
				D3070	Systems Testing & Balancing																	■	■								
				D3090	Other HVAC System & Equip.																	■									
		D40	Fire Protection	D4010	Sprinklers															■			■								
				D4020	Standpipes															■											
				D4030	Fire Protection Specialities															■											
				D4090	Other Fire Protection Systems										■					■											
		D50	Electrical	D5010	Elect. Service & Distribution																		■	■					■		
				D5020	Lighting & Branch Wiring																		■	■					■		
				D5030	Comm. & Security Sys.																		■		■	■			■		
				D5090	Other Electrical Systems																		■	■					■		
E	Equipment & Furnishings	E10	Equipment	E1010	Commercial Equipment											■							■								
				E1020	Institutional Equipment											■							■								
				E1030	Vehicular Equipment											■							■								
				E1090	Other Equipment											■							■								

Table T1.3 continues on next page

Table T1.3 Relationship Between UniFormat and MasterFormat *continued*

						FACILITY CONSTRUCTION														FACILITY SERVICES							SITE & INFRA-STRUCTURE				
						General Requirements	Existing Conditions	Concrete	Masonry	Metals	Wood, Plastics, Composites	Thermal & Moisture Protection	Openings	Finishes	Specialties	Equipment	Furnishings	Special Construction	Conveying Equipment	Fire Suppression	Plumbing	HVAC	Integrated Automation	Electrical	Communications	Electronic Safety & Security	Earthwork	Exterior Improvements	Utilities	Transportation	Waterway & Marine
						01	02	03	04	05	06	07	08	09	10	11	12	13	14	21	22	23	25	26	27	28	31	32	33	34	35
LEVEL 1		**LEVEL 2**		**LEVEL 3**																											
E	Equipment & Furnishings	E20	Furnishings	E2010	Fixed Furnishings												■														
				E2020	Moveable Furnishings												■														
F	Special Construction & Demolition	F10	Special Construction	F1010	Special Structures													■													
				F1020	Integrated Construc-tion									■				■													
				F1030	Special Construction Systems													■													
				F1040	Special Facilities													■		■	■	■									
				F1050	Special Controls & Instrument.													■					■								
		F20	Selective Bldg. Demolition	F2010	Building Elements Demolition		■																								
				F2020	Hazardous Compo-nents Abate.		■																								
G	Building Site Work	G10	Site Preparation	G1010	Site Clearing																					■					
				G1020	Site Demolition & Relocations		■																								
				G1030	Site Earthwork																					■					
				G1040	Hazardous Waste Remediation		■																								
		G20	Site Improvements	G2010	Roadways																						■				
				G2020	Parking Lots																						■				
				G2030	Pedestrian Paving																						■				
				G2040	Site Development																						■				
				G2050	Landscaping																						■				
		G30	Site Mechanical Utilities	G3010	Water Supply																							■			
				G3020	Sanitaty Sewer																							■			
				G3030	Storm Sewer																							■			
				G3040	Heating Distribution																							■			
				G3050	Cooling Distribution																							■			
				G3060	Fuel Distribution																							■			
				G3090	Other Site Mechanical Utilities																							■			

Table T1.3 continues on next page

Table T1.3 Relationship Between UniFormat and MasterFormat *continued*

						FACILITY CONSTRUCTION														FACILITY SERVICES							SITE & INFRA-STRUCTURE				
						General Requirements	Existing Conditions	Concrete	Masonry	Metals	Wood, Plastics, Composites	Thermal & Moisture Protection	Openings	Finishes	Specialties	Equipment	Furnishings	Special Construction	Conveying Equipment	Fire Suppression	Plumbing	HVAC	Integrated Automation	Electrical	Communications	Electronic Safety & Security	Earthwork	Exterior Improvements	Utilities	Transportation	Waterway & Marine
						01	02	03	04	05	06	07	08	09	10	11	12	13	14	21	22	23	25	26	27	28	31	32	33	34	35
LEVEL 1		**LEVEL 2**		**LEVEL 3**																											
G	Building Site Work	G40	Site Electrical Utilities	G4010	Electrical Distribution																								■		
				G4020	Site Lighting																			■					■		
				G4030	Site Communication & Security																			■					■		
				G4090	Other Site Electrical Utilities																			■					■		
		G90	Other Site Construction	G9010	Service & Pedestrian Tunnels																							■			
				G9090	Other Site Construc-tion																							■			
	Overhead & Profit	X20	Office Overhead & Profit			■																									

7. Sources of Life Cycle Cost Data

Obtaining life cycle cost data is a challenge. Even when data is available, its applicability to a specific project may be questionable. That said, several sources of LCC data are available, including *Cost Planning and Estimating for Facilities Maintenance*, an annual publication of RSMeans; *Life Cycle Costing for Facilities*, an RSMeans publication; and CBRE's CostLab system.

8. Design and Analysis Tools

The use of computer tools can considerably reduce the time and effort spent on formulating the LCCA, performing the computations, and documenting the study. The Judicial Council will provide an Excel spreadsheet for use with LCCA efforts.

As an alternative, the Building Life Cycle Cost Program—an economic analysis tool developed by the National Institute of Standards and Technology for the U.S. Department of Energy's Federal Energy Management Program—can be used.

9. LCCA Study Requirements

LCCA studies are required for the major systems and components of court facilities that are energy and maintenance sensitive. Refer to table T1.4 for general guidance on the number of studies to be conducted based on the size of the courthouse. The number of studies required is determined on a project-by-project basis with direction from the Judicial Council. Typically, these studies would include the following systems, and each system shall be individually counted as a study:

- HVAC systems;
- Impact on overall building from seismic structural systems;
- Electrical lighting;
- Electrical power distribution;
- Flooring systems;
- Exterior closure;
- Fenestration;
- Solar panels; and
- Water distribution.

Table T1.4 Number of LCCA Studies by Size of Courthouse

Number of Courtrooms	≤4	5–7	8–14	>14
Number of LCCA Studies Expected	1–2	2–3	2–4	3–5

10. Conducting an LCCA

An important aspect in LCCA is identifying appropriate alternatives and establishing good cost data.

Step 1: Identify alternatives.
The types of alternatives considered depend on the creativity of the design and management teams. The baseline and alternatives should represent a wide range of solutions to the

identified objectives. It is often helpful to use an interdisciplinary team during this stage to draw from a wide range of backgrounds, perspectives, and past experiences. Developing specific criteria to measure the effectiveness of the proposed alternatives is also helpful.

Step 2: Define parameters.
The discount rate (3.25 percent) and analysis period (30 years) are defined by the Judicial Council. Any variations must be approved before an LCCA may be conducted.

Life expectancies for individual elements or components being studied are expected to be defined by the design or design-build team.

Differential escalation rates for energy are built into the LCCA Excel spreadsheet form (and the Building Life Cycle Cost (BLCC) program) and are a function of the fuel type being consumed. Escalation rates for all other components of the analysis are up to the design or design-build team.

Step 3: Identify costs and savings.
Typically, two types of costs—nonrecurring and recurring—must be estimated. A nonrecurring cost appears as a lump sum cost in the present or at a fixed point in the future. An example of a nonrecurring cost is the capital expenditure for a new high-efficiency chiller unit.

Recurring costs are paid out periodically over the lifetime of the facility. An example of a recurring cost is a capital cost that is expected to occur in the future. Repair or maintenance costs that occur on a regular basis are also considered to be recurring costs.

Step 4: Document baseline and alternatives.
Assumptions and cost information should be documented, along with eventual recommendations. The evaluation form shown in table T1.5 provides an approach. Most efforts can be defined on a single page.

Step 5: Perform the LCCA.
Use the Excel spreadsheet provided by the Judicial Council to prepare an analysis for the system being evaluated. Alternatively, the BLCC program can be used. See table T1.6 for instructions, followed by table T1.7 and figure T1.2 for an example project.

Step 6: Provide documentation for review and acceptance.
Provide forms; exhibits, as necessary; and the Excel spreadsheet—all in PDF form.

T1.C PERFORMING LCCA

1. Overview

The life cycle cost analysis worksheet is a simple spreadsheet for use in comparing up to three options against a baseline design case to determine financial performance and life cycle cost. This spreadsheet is useful for identifying options for further study. It is not intended to provide a complete and detailed study, especially one representing cash flow.

2. Limitations

The spreadsheet does not consider effects of depreciation, tax alternatives, variable escalation of interest rates over a period of time, or other factors that may change the valuation or payback of an asset. It is suggested that studies be limited to a maximum 40-year cycle and whole percentage escalation rates from 5 to 7 percent.

REQUIRED TOOLS

T1 LIFE CYCLE COST ANALYSIS
T1.A Purpose
T1.B Principles
T1.C Performing LCCA
T2 Catalog of Courtroom Layouts for California Trial Courts
T3 Integrated Network Architecture
T4 Graphical User Interface Template
T5 In-Custody Interview Room Guidelines
T6 Building Management System Guidelines
T7 Small Courthouse Guidelines
T8 Security Systems Guidelines

3. Reporting

Reports are formatted for printing and presentation on 8.5″ × 11″ paper in landscape format. Two pages total are provided for presentation. Normally, only the results from the template pages are presented for use. The output is provided in a format that meets most Judicial Council, General Services Administration, and other federal requirements for analysis.

4. Basics

Macros must be enabled for the spreadsheet to function properly. If some of the cells indicate *?NAME#*, macros have not been activated in the spreadsheet. Also, some cells may display *#DIV/0!* before key data is entered. These codes will disappear when data is entered.

A baseline design condition or scope of work must be entered for comparison and evaluation. Payback period, net savings, and other items are calculated relative to the value of the baseline condition. All worksheets are protected, and data is to be entered in the pale blue cells. Results are provided as tabular comparisons and graphical representations of total cost of ownership.

5. Contents

Table T1.6 provides instructions for completing the life cycle cost analysis worksheet. An example project worksheet is provided after the instructions.

Table T1.5 Life Cycle Cost Analysis Evaluation Form

LCCA EVALUATION FORM
System Evaluated:
Describe baseline system as currently considered:
Define Alternative 1:
Define Alternative 2:
Define Alternative 3:
RECOMMENDATION & RATIONALE SUMMARY
Identify recommended approach:
Define key advantages:
Assess any disadvantages:
ATTACH APPROPRIATE EXHIBITS AND LCCA SPREADSHEET RESULTS

Table T1.6 LCC General Purpose Worksheet Instructions

Contents
Worksheets include:
READ FIRST—An introduction and summary of features and instructions for use
Present Value (PV) Annuity—Calculation table of PV factors for an escalated equal annuity series used in support of main sheet
LCC-Form Template—Blank template for use
Sample Analysis—Completed spreadsheet sample for reference
LCC-Form Template HIDE—Hidden version of template sheet for recovery, if main sheet is accidentally deleted or corrupted
For Further Study
Architect's Essentials of Cost Management by Michael D. Dell'Isola, ISBN 0-471-44359-X
Life Cycle Costing for Facilities by Alphonse J. Dell'Isola and Stephen J. Kirk, ISBN 0-87629-702-5
Instructions
Instructions for use are presented by specific worksheet as listed below starting with Read First.
General Economic Notes
It is suggested that the user conduct the study using *constant dollars*, where the purchasing power of the dollar is held constant as of the date of the study, and *discount rates* are "real," excluding general inflation. Thus, an item costing $1,000 today would be replaced in the future at $1,000. Any real escalation or de-escalation is handled separately. If the user wishes to operate in *current* dollars, then future expenditures must be inflated individually, and the discount rate must be increased to include general inflation. The results are nearly identical unless inflation rates are extreme—over 15 percent.

Worksheet	Cell Reference	Required Information
General		Cells with a light gray background are for entry of information for the analysis. The background color of the cells may be removed or changed following data entry.
		DO NOT ADD ANY ROWS ABOVE ROW 6
Worksheet Protection		The worksheets are protected against accidental overwriting or deletion of formulas. There is no password for the protection; it may be turned off (via Tools > Protection > Unprotect Sheet) to allow changes in formatting, if desired.
READ FIRST		No specific entry required.
PV Annuity	M2	Input Discount Rate. This sheet does not affect the calculations on the template or sample workbooks. These sheets are provided purely for reference to show in tabular form the PV factors and effects.
PV Single	M2	Input Discount Rate. This sheet does not affect the calculations on the template or sample workbooks. These sheets are provided purely for reference to show in tabular form the PV factors and effects.
LCC-Form Template		Copies of the template can be made for various alternatives and added as new worksheets to the file.

Table T1.6 continues on next page

Table T1.6 LCC General Purpose Worksheet Instructions *continued*

Worksheet	Cell Reference	Required Information
Option Names	K1, M1, O1, Q1	Input Option Names and Titles. Names of the Base Design and Options will be presented on the graphs and printed reports.
Project	C2	Input Project.
Title	D3	Input title of study and report.
Discount Rate	D4	Input Discount Rate for the study. This rate is 3.25 percent, as required by the Judicial Council. Alternative rates must be approved before the study. Note: This requirement assumes a "real" discount rate exclusive of inflation.
Date	G4	Input date of study.
Study Period	D5	Input period of analysis in years as a whole number—40 years maximum. Note that the Judicial Council requires a study period of 30 years. Alternative periods must be approved before the study.
Energy Location	G5	Dropdown menu for energy location for the study. Choose "West Commercial" as required by the Judicial Council. Energy escalation will be calculated from Federal Energy Management Program (FEMP) data. Alternative rates must be approved before the study.
Initial Costs	Rows 7–16	Input description of cost items and first costs for various options considered. Costs are entered in columns K, M, O, and Q for the various items. Multiple cost items may be added to reach the total first cost of the various options. Since these items are first cost and not subject to the financial analysis and discounting procedure, they should sum to the value of the work being estimated. Use the Escalation Factor for initial costs only when directed.
Replacement Costs	Rows 21–30	Input description of cost items and current costs for various options considered. These items are generally SINGLE (not annual) expenditures during the life of the study. Enter either year of replacement for single-cost item *OR* number of years between replacement or upgrades to equipment and materials being provided in columns G or H. Only one of these values can be provided for each cost item. Enter assumed escalation or inflation rate for the study period in column I. This is to be an approximate value that will be applied for the entire period of the study. Costs for work items are entered in columns K, M, O, and Q for the various items. Multiple-cost items may be added to reach the total first cost of the various options. These values are entered as current market value and will be escalated to account for inflation and discounted based on the provided Discount Rate. Assumed salvage or residual value may be included here as a negative number. If the value results in a negative PV cost in this category, the graph will show this value and plot it below the X-axis (green bar). Salvage values are usually insignificant and ignored.

Table T1.6 continues on next page

Table T1.6 LCC General Purpose Worksheet Instructions *continued*

Worksheet	Cell Reference	Required Information
Annual Costs	Rows 34–45	Input description of cost items and current costs for various options considered. These items are generally recurring annual costs. Examples include annual energy usage costs, annual recurring maintenance costs, filter changes, and other costs that are incurred over the life of the asset. Escalation Rates: Energy costs can be escalated using the FEMP. Select from the dropdown menu in column F. Other Annual Costs such as maintenance or special energy costs separate from FEMP can have escalation entered as a numeric percentage in column I. For any annual cost, differing start/stop years can be used. This approach is most appropriate for maintenance costs, which can vary from year to year. Costs for work items are entered in columns K, M, O, and Q for the various items. Multiple-cost items may be added to reach the total first cost of the various options. These values are entered as current market value and will be escalated to account for inflation and discounted based on the provided Discount Rate.
Building Metrics	Rows 56–58	Input building information relative to size and number of seats or occupants.
Operation Cost Sensitivity	Row 64	Normally self-calculating. In cases where fewer than three options are being presented, the formulas in these cells will need to be manually adjusted. These cells calculate an average of the operations expenditures and compare each of the alternatives to one another. A factor higher than 1 means that the present value will be affected by a change in annual (or energy) costs more than other options. A value below 1 means that the option will be less affected by a change in annual (or energy) costs. *One or more of these values should ALWAYS be less than 1. If this is not the case, the formula reference to the "0" value cell must be removed to avoid incorrectly lowering the average.*
Summary and Recommendations	H97	Enter a brief description of summary conclusions from the analysis.

Table T1.7 Example Project

LCCA EVALUATION FORM
System Evaluated: Evaluate different mechanical systems to determine the best system for the facility, including initial cost, maintenance cost, and efficiency.
Describe baseline system as currently considered: VAV with current central plant efficiency Variable air volume (VAV) air handlers use an energy recovery wheel to precondition outside air. Variable volume terminal units use 140°F to 180°F hot water for reheat. The existing chiller plant capacity will be increased with no efficiency changes.
Define Alternative 1: Decoupled with current central plant efficiency Dedicated outside air units will provide the code minimum of fresh air or makeup air to spaces. Dedicated outside air will be at lower temperatures to help offset some of the cooling loads. Multiple four-pipe fan coil units will provide individual space conditioning for both heating and cooling.
Define Alternative 2: Decoupled + displacement ventilation with current central plant efficiency In addition to Alternative 1, displacement ventilation systems would be used for air distribution in tall spaces and concourses. Ventilation systems will be routed under the floor to air devices in double-height or taller spaces. Assume most air devices from the displacement ventilation systems will be custom style integrated into architectural design.
Define Alternative 3: Decoupled + displacement ventilation with current central plant efficiency and wider comfort definition See Alternatives 1 and 2 above for descriptions that would use 75°F cooling and 72°F heating space temperatures. Alternative 3 would evaluate cooling temperatures up to 76°F and heating temperatures down to 68°F. Alternative 3 would use spot fans to provide localized air movement.
RECOMMENDATION & RATIONALE SUMMARY
Identify recommended approach: Recommend that the new facility heating, ventilation, and air-conditioning (HVAC) systems use Alternative 2 with a combination of decoupled + displacement ventilation with current central plant efficiency.
Define key advantages: • Lowest energy costs and life cycle costs
Assess any disadvantages: • Slightly higher installation costs
ATTACH APPROPRIATE EXHIBITS AND LCCA SPREADSHEET RESULTS

Figure T1.2 Life Cycle Study Template

Life Cycle Cost Analysis - General Purpose Worksheet							Base Design		Option 1		Option 2		Option 3	
Project:	Large-Scale Facility Example						VAV with current central plant efficiency		Decoupled with current central plant (CP) efficiency		Decoupled + displacement ventilation with current CP efficiency		Decoupled + displacement ventilation with current CP efficiency and wider comfort definition	
Study Title:	Evaluate different mechanical systems													
Discount Rate :	3.25%	Date:	May 1, 2020				Estimated Costs	Present Value	Estimated Costs	Present Value	Estimated Costs	Present Value	Estimated Costs	Present Value
Study Period (Yrs.)	30	Energy Loc:	West Commercial											
Capital Expenditures (CAPEX)	Initial/First/Collateral Costs			Year	Inf/Esc Rate	PV Fact.								
A.	VAV current eff. initial costs						10,136,400	10,136,400						
B.	Decoupled w/ current initial costs								10,773,000	10,773,000				
C.	Dec+Disp initial costs										11,211,800	11,211,800		
D.	Dec+Disp, comfort initial costs												11,237,800	11,237,800
E.														
F.														
G.														
H.														
I.														
J.														
Total Initial/Collateral Costs							$10,136,400	$10,136,400	$10,773,000	$10,773,000	$11,211,800	$11,211,800	$11,237,800	$11,237,800
Difference										($636,600)		($1,075,400)		($1,101,400)
Operations Expenditures (OPEX)	Replacement/Salvage (Single Expenditures)			Occurrence Year -or- Cycle	Inflation/ Escal. Rate	PV Factor								
A.	Misc Repairs			5		3.174	400,000	1,269,768	425,000	1,349,128				
B.	Misc Repairs			10		1.254					500,000	626,872	520,000	651,947
C.	Misc Replacements			15		0.619			14,000	8,665	21,000	12,998	23,000	14,236
D.	Misc Replacements			20		0.527								
E.	Misc Replacements			25		0.450								
F.														
G.														
H.														
I.														
J.														
Total Replacement/Salvage Costs								$1,269,768		$1,357,794		$639,869		$666,182
	Annual Costs	Energy Type	Years Start	Years Stop	Inflation/ Escal. Rate	PV Factor								
	Energy (Using FEMP Escalation):													
A.	Annual Energy	Electricity	1	30	-0.02%	18.933	452,800	8,572,715	382,900	7,249,321	215,800	4,085,671	210,000	3,975,862
B.														
C.														
D.														
E.														
	Other Annual Costs (Enter Escalation Rate):													
F.	Annual Maintenance/Service		1	30	0.5%	20.286	112,000	2,272,001	144,000	2,921,144	144,000	2,921,144	144,000	2,921,144
G.														
H.														
I.														
J.														
K														
Total Annual Costs							$564,800	$10,844,716	$526,900	$10,170,465	$359,800	$7,006,815	$354,000	$6,897,005
Subtotal Replacement/Salvage + Annual Costs (Present Value)								$12,114,484		$11,528,258		$7,646,684		$7,563,188
Difference—Compared to Base Design										$586,225		$4,467,799		$4,551,296
Life Cycle Cost	Total Life Cycle Costs (Present Value)							$22,250,884		$22,301,258		$18,858,484		$18,800,988
Difference—Life Cycle Cost PV Compared to Base Design										($50,375)		$3,392,399		$3,449,896
Payback—Simple Discounted (Added Cost / Annualized Savings)										NA		4.6 yrs.		4.6 yrs.
Payback—Fully Discounted (Added Cost+Interest / Annualized Savings)										NA		5.0 yrs.		5.1 yrs.
Total Life Cycle Costs—Annualized							per year:	$1,172,215	per year:	$1,174,869	per year:	$993,497	per year:	$990,468

Life Cycle Cost Analysis - General Purpose Worksheet

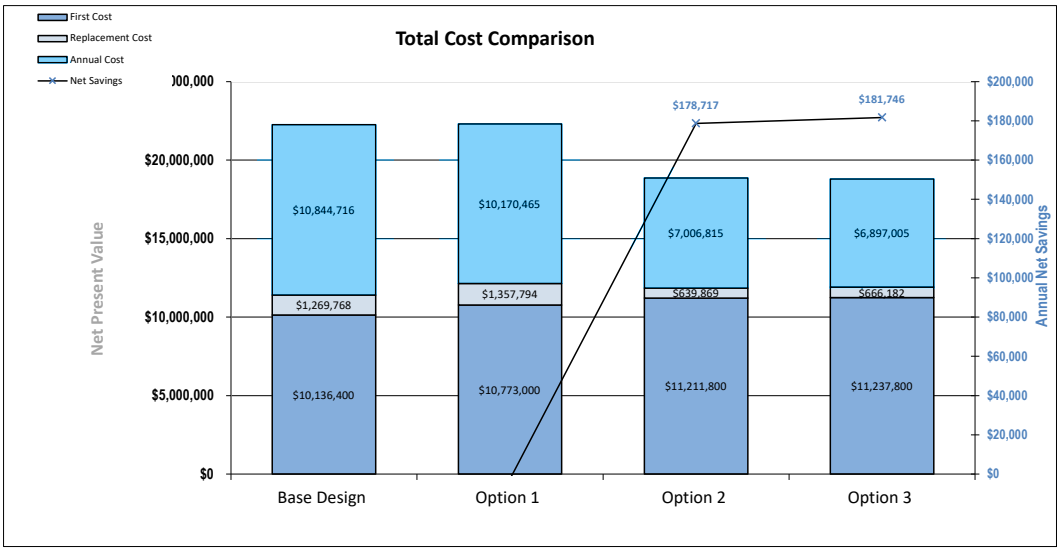
Project:	Large Scale Facility Example
Study Title:	Evaluate different mechanical systems

	Base Design	Option 1	Option 2	Option 3
	VAV with current central plant efficiency	*Decoupled with current central plant efficiency*	*Decoupled + displacement ventilation with current CP efficiency*	*Decoupled + displacement ventilation with current CP efficiency and wider comfort definition*
PV per GSF	$ 317.87	$ 318.59	$ 269.41	$ 268.59
PV per NSF	$ 445.02	$ 446.03	$ 377.17	$ 376.02
PV per Seat	$ 55,627.21	$ 55,753.15	$ 47,146.21	$ 47,002.47
Annual Cost per Seat	$2,930.54	$2,937.17	$2,483.74	$2,476.17
First Cost (CAPEX) per GSF	$ 144.81	$ 153.90	$ 160.17	$ 160.54
Present Value Operations Expense (OPEX) per NSF	$ 242.29	$ 230.57	$ 152.93	$ 151.26
Ratio OPEX to CAPEX	1.67	1.50	0.95	0.94
Operation Cost Sensitivity	1.24	1.17	0.80	0.79

Other Comparison Metrics

Total Building Gross Square Footage	70,000
Total Building Net Usable Footage	50,000
Total Seats or Occupants	400

Definition : Ratio of annual operations costs to average of all options. Factor higher than 1 means present value will be affected by a change in annual (or energy) costs more than other options. Value below 1 means option will be less affected by a change.



Summary and Recommendations:

Recommend the new facility HVAC systems use Alternative 2 with a combination of decoupled + displacement ventilation with current central plant efficiency. Although it has a slightly higher installation cost, it has the lowest energy costs and life cycle costs.

BUR = built-up roofing

CIP = cast-in-place

CLT = cross-laminated timber

CMU = concrete masonry unit

Table T1.8: Economic Life of Building Components in MasterFormat

SOURCE REFERENCE KEY

Ref	Source	Abbreviation
[1]	CPUC Database for Energy Efficiency Resources	DEER
[2]	ASHRAE Public Service Life Database	ASHRAE
[3]	Building Owners and Managers Association via University of Illinois PDF	BOMA
[4]	Marshall Swift Life Expectancy Guidelines	MS
[5]	National Renewable Energy Laboratory Reports	NREL
[6]	California Counties Property Insurance Authority	CCPIA
[7]	Engineering Judgment (Professional Practice)	EJ

PROCUREMENT & CONTRACTING (Divs. 00–01)

MasterFormat	Division Title	EUL (Years)	Notes	Source
00	Procurement & Contracting	NA	Not applicable for EUL	NA
01	General Requirements	NA	Not applicable for EUL	NA

FACILITY CONSTRUCTION (Divs. 02–14)

Division 02—Existing Conditions				
MasterFormat	**Division Title**	**EUL (Years)**	**Notes**	**Source**
02 41	Demolition	NA	One-time activity	NA
02 82–83	Hazardous Material Remediation	NA	One-time activity	NA

Division 03—Concrete				
MasterFormat	**Division Title**	**EUL (Years)**	**Notes**	**Source**
03 30	Cast-in-Place Concrete	30–50+	Structural elements	[3]
03 35	Concrete Finishing	30+	Polished concrete	[3]
03 38	Post-Tensioned Concrete	30+	Based on CIP concrete	[3,7]
03 40	Precast Concrete	50–100	Panels and structural	[3]
03 53	Concrete Topping	20–30		[3,4]

Table T1.8 continues on next page

Table T1.8: Economic Life of Building Components in MasterFormat *continued*

Division 04—Masonry				
MasterFormat	**Division Title**	**EUL (Years)**	**Notes**	**Source**
04 20	Unit Masonry	30+	CMU, brick	[3]
04 21	Clay Brick	30–100	Veneer systems	[3]
04 40	Stone Assemblies	30–50+	Natural stone	[3]
04 71	Manufactured Masonry	30+		[3]

Division 05—Metals				
MasterFormat	**Division Title**	**EUL (Years)**	**Notes**	**Source**
05 12	Structural Steel	30+	Framing	[3]
05 21	Steel Joists	30+		[3]
05 30	Metal Decking	30+		[3,4]
05 40	Cold-Formed Metal	25–30	Light-gauge framing	[3]
05 50	Metal Fabrications	20–30	Stairs, railings	[3]
05 52	Railings	20–25		[3]

Division 06—Wood, Plastics, Composites				
MasterFormat	**Division Title**	**EUL (Years)**	**Notes**	**Source**
06 10	Rough Carpentry	20–30	Framing	[3]
06 13	Heavy Timber	30–75+	Mass timber/CLT	[3,7]
06 20	Finish Carpentry	15–30	Trim, millwork	[3]
06 40	Architectural Woodwork	20–30	Casework	[3]

Division 07—Thermal & Moisture Protection				
MasterFormat	**Division Title**	**EUL (Years)**	**Notes**	**Source**
07 10	Dampproofing/ Waterproofing	10–25		[3]
07 21	Insulation	20–30	Standard types	[3]
07 21 29	Spray Foam	30+		[3,7]
07 26–27	Air/Vapor Barriers	30		[3,7]
07 31–33	Shingles & Tiles	15–50	Varies by material	[3]
07 41	Metal Roofing	30–50	Standing seam	[3]
07 51	Built-Up Roofing	17–20	BUR systems	[3]

Table T1.8 continues on next page

EPDM = ethylene propylene diene monomer

EV = electric vehicle

LVT = luxury vinyl tile

PVC = polyvinyl chloride

TPO = thermoplastic polyolefin

VCT = vinyl composition tile

Table T1.8: Economic Life of Building Components in MasterFormat *continued*

Division 07—Thermal & Moisture Protection continued				
MasterFormat	**Division Title**	**EUL (Years)**	**Notes**	**Source**
07 52	Modified Bitumen	15–20		[3]
07 53–54	Single-Ply	15–25	EPDM, TPO, PVC	[3]
07 55	Green Roofs	30–40	Vegetated systems	[6,7]
07 60	Flashing & Sheet Metal	20–30		[3]
07 71	Roof Accesso-ries	20–25	Gutters, downspouts	[3]
07 92	Joint Sealants	5–20	Caulking	[3]

Division 08—Openings				
MasterFormat	**Division Title**	**EUL (Years)**	**Notes**	**Source**
08 11	Metal Doors/ Frames	25–30	Hollow metal	[3]
08 14	Wood Doors	20–30	Interior/exterior	[3]
08 31–36	Access/Over-head Doors	15–20		[3]
08 41–44	Entrances/Store-fronts	25–30	Aluminum systems	[3]
08 51–56	Windows	20–30	By material	[3]
08 71	Door Hardware	15–20	Locksets, closers	[3]
08 80	Glazing	20–30	Standard glass	[3]
08 88	Special Glazing	20–30	Electrochromic	[1,7]

Division 09—Finishes				
MasterFormat	**Division Title**	**EUL (Years)**	**Notes**	**Source**
09 21	Plaster/Gypsum	20–30	Drywall systems	[3]
09 30	Tile	20–75	Ceramic, porcelain	[3]
09 51	Acoustical Ceil-ings	10–30		[3]
09 64	Wood Flooring	20–100		[3]
09 65	Resilient Flooring	10–20	VCT, LVT, rubber	[3]
09 68	Carpet	5–10	Tile or broadloom	[3]
09 72	Wall Coverings	7–15	Vinyl, fabric	[3]
09 91	Paint	5–10	Interior/exterior	[3]

Table T1.8 continues on next page

Table T1.8: Economic Life of Building Components in MasterFormat *continued*

Division 10—Specialties				
MasterFormat	**Division Title**	**EUL (Years)**	**Notes**	**Source**
10 11–14	Visual Display	10–20	Boards, directories	[3,7]
10 21	Compartments/ Cubicles	15–20	Toilet partitions	[3]
10 22	Partitions	15–20	Operable, demountable	[3,7]
10 28	Toilet Acces-sories	15–20		[3]
10 44	Fire Protection	10–20	Extinguishers/ cabinets	[3]
10 51–57	Lockers/Storage	20–25		[3]

Division 11—Equipment				
MasterFormat	**Division Title**	**EUL (Years)**	**Notes**	**Source**
11 12–14	Parking/Loading	10–20	Gates, equipment	[3,7]
11 30	Commercial Equipment	10–20		[3]
11 40	Food Service	10–15	Kitchen equipment	[1,3]
11 53	Laboratory	10–15		[3,7]
11 57	Vocational/EV	10–15	EV chargers	[1,5]

Division 12—Furnishings				
MasterFormat	**Division Title**	**EUL (Years)**	**Notes**	**Source**
12 21	Window Treat-ments	10–15	Blinds, shades	[3]
12 30	Casework	20–25	Fixed casework	[3]
12 50	Furniture	15–20	Systems furniture	[3,7]
12 60	Multiple Seating	10–20	Fixed seating	[3]

Division 13—Special Construction				
MasterFormat	**Division Title**	**EUL (Years)**	**Notes**	**Source**
13 11	Swimming Pools	20–30		[3]
13 21	Controlled Envi-ronments	15–20	Clean rooms	[3,7]
13 34	Fabricated Struc-tures	20–30	Pre-engineered	[4,7]
13 36	Solar Structures	30–40	Carports/ canopies	[1,5]

Table T1.8 continues on next page

AFUE = annual fuel utilization efficiency

AHU = air handling unit

BMS = building management system

DDC = direct digital control

EC = electronically commutated

ERV = energy recovery ventilator

HRV = heat recovery ventilator

HVAC = heating, ventilation, and air-conditioning

IoT = internet of things

PTAC = packaged terminal air conditioner

PTHP = packaged terminal heat pump

RTU = rooftop unit

VFD = variable-frequency drive

VRF = variable-refrigerant flow

Table T1.8: Economic Life of Building Components in MasterFormat *continued*

Division 14—Conveying Equipment				
MasterFormat	**Division Title**	**EUL (Years)**	**Notes**	**Source**
14 20	Elevators	20–35	By type	[3]
14 24	Dumbwaiters	20–25		[3,7]
14 31	Escalators	30–35		[3]
14 32	Moving Walks	25–30		[3,7]
14 42	Wheelchair Lifts	15–20		[3,7]
14 91	Facility Chutes	20–30	Trash, linen	[3,7]

FACILITY SERVICES (Divs. 21–29)

Division 21—Fire Suppression				
MasterFormat	**Division Title**	**EUL (Years)**	**Notes**	**Source**
21 10	Water-Based Systems	25–30+	Sprinklers	[3]
21 20	Fire Pumps	20–25		[3]
21 22	Clean Agent	20	Special suppression	[3,7]
21 30	Fire Extinguishers	10–20		[3]

Division 22—Plumbing				
MasterFormat	**Division Title**	**EUL (Years)**	**Notes**	**Source**
22 05	Common Work Results	15–30	Valves, supports	[3]
22 11–13	Facility Water	20–50	Piping by material	[3]
22 14	Storm Drainage	30+		[3]
22 30	Water Treatment	10–20		[1,3]
22 33–34	Water Heaters	10–20	By type	[1,2]
22 40	Fixtures	20–25		[3]

Division 23—HVAC				
MasterFormat	**Division Title**	**EUL (Years)**	**Notes**	**Source**
23 00	HVAC General	NA	Primary sources	[1,2]
23 05	Common Work	20–30	Piping, insulation	[2,3]
23 07	Insulation	20		[2,3]
23 09	Controls	10–15	BMS, DDC	[1,2]
23 09 23	Smart HVAC Controls	10–12	IoT, AI based	[1,7]

Table T1.8 continues on next page

Table T1.8: Economic Life of Building Components in MasterFormat *continued*

Division 23—HVAC continued				
MasterFormat	**Division Title**	**EUL (Years)**	**Notes**	**Source**
23 21–23	Hydronic/ Refrigerant	25–30	Piping systems	[2,3]
23 31–38	Air Distribution	15–30+	Ducts, fans	[2,3]
23 34 23	Variable-Speed Fans	20–25	EC motors, VFD	[1,2]
23 40	Air Treatment	10–20	Filters, UV	[1,2]
23 52	Heating Boilers	25–35	Cast iron, steel	[1,2]
23 52 16	Condensing Boilers	20–25	High efficiency >90%	[1,2]
23 54	Furnaces	15–20	Standard efficiency	[1,2]
23 54 16	High-Efficiency Furnaces	18–22	>95% AFUE	[1,2]
23 56	Solar Heating	20–25	Thermal collectors	[1,5]
23 57	Heat Exchangers	20–25	Plate, shell & tube	[1,2]
23 61	Refrigerant Compressors	20–25	Chillers	[1,2]
23 62	Packaged Compressor/ Condenser	15–20	Standard efficiency	[1,2]
23 62 23	High-Efficiency Chillers	20–23	Magnetic bearing, VFD	[1,2]
23 64	Packaged Water Chillers	20–23	Water cooled	[1,2]
23 65	Cooling Towers	20–25		[1,2]
23 70	Central HVAC Equipment	20–30	AHUs, RTUs	[1,2]
23 72	Air-to-Air Energy Recovery	15–20	ERV, HRV	[1,2]
23 81	Decentralized HVAC	12–20	Split systems, VRF	[1,2]
23 81 13	Packaged Terminal Units	12–15	PTAC, PTHP	[1,2]
23 81 16	Air-Source Heat Pumps	15–18	Standard efficiency	[1,2]
23 81 19	High-Efficiency Heat Pumps	18–20	Cold climate, >HSPF 10	[1,2]
23 82	Convection Heating/Cooling	15–25	Fan coils, radiators	[1,2]
23 83	Radiant Heating/ Cooling	25–40	In floor, panel	[1,2]
23 84	Ground-Source Heat Pumps	20–25	Geothermal, loops 50+ yrs	[1,5]

Table T1.8 continues on next page

BAS = building automation system

BMS = building management system

IoT = internet of things

PV = photovoltaic

VFD = variable-frequency drive

SPD = surge protective device

LED = light-emitting diode

NVR = network video recorder

Table T1.8: Economic Life of Building Components in MasterFormat *continued*

Division 24—Reserved				
MasterFormat	**Division Title**	**EUL (Years)**	**Notes**	**Source**
24	Reserved	NA		NA

Division 25—Integrated Automation				
MasterFormat	**Division Title**	**EUL (Years)**	**Notes**	**Source**
25 00	Building Automation	10–15	BAS, BMS	[1,3]
25 30	Detection Devices	7–15	Sensors	[1,3]
25 50	Integrated Controls	10–15		[1,7]

Division 26—Electrical				
MasterFormat	**Division Title**	**EUL (Years)**	**Notes**	**Source**
26 01	Operation/ Maintenance	NA		NA
26 05	Common Work	30+	Conduit, wiring	[3]
26 09	Lighting Controls	10–15	Occupancy, daylight	[1,3]
26 09 23	Lighting Networked Controls	10–12	Smart, IoT based	[1,7]
26 10	Grounding	30+		[3]
26 20	Low-Voltage Distribution	25–35		[3]
26 22	Transformers	30–35	Dry type, liquid	[3]
26 22 13	High-Efficiency Transformers	30–35	>98% efficiency	[1,3]
26 24	Switchboards/ Panelboards	25–35		[3]
26 27	Wiring Devices	20–30	Receptacles, switches	[3]
26 28	Motor Starters	15–20	Standard across line	[1,3]
26 29	Variable Frequency Drives	10–15	VFDs for motors	[1,2]
26 31	Photovoltaic Collectors	25–30	PV panels/ modules	[1,5]
26 32	PV Inverters	10–15	String, micro, central	[1,5]
26 32 23	Central PV Inverters	12–15	Utility scale	[1,5]
26 33	Battery Energy Storage	10–15	Lithium-ion, flow battery	[1,5]

Table T1.8 continues on next page

Table T1.8: Economic Life of Building Components in MasterFormat *continued*

Division 26—Electrical continued				
MasterFormat	**Division Title**	**EUL (Years)**	**Notes**	**Source**
26 33 53	Static UPS	10–15	Uninterruptible power	[1,3]
26 35	Generators	20–30	Diesel, natural gas	[3]
26 36	Transfer Switches	25–30	Automatic	[3]
26 37	Alternative Energy	20	Wind turbines	[1,5]
26 41	Lightning Protection	20–30		[3]
26 43	Surge Protection	10–15	SPDs	[1,3]
26 51	Interior Lighting	15–20	Fixtures	[1,3]
26 51 13	LED Interior Lighting	15–20	High efficiency	[1,3]
26 51 19	LED Linear Lighting	18–22	Industrial, commercial	[1,3]
26 52	Emergency Lighting	10–20	Battery backup	[1,3]
26 55	Special Purpose Lighting	10–20	Task, accent	[1,3]
26 56	Exterior Lighting	15–20	Site, parking	[1,3]
26 56 13	LED Site Lighting	15–20	Area, roadway	[1,3]

Division 27—Communications				
MasterFormat	**Division Title**	**EUL (Years)**	**Notes**	**Source**
27 00	Communications General	5–15		[3,7]
27 10	Structured Cabling	10–15	Cat 6, fiber	[3]
27 20	Data Networks	5–10	Active equipment	[3,7]
27 30	Voice Systems	7–10		[3,7]
27 40	AV Systems	5–10		[3,7]
27 50	Sound Systems	10–15	Mass notification	[3,7]

Division 28—Electronic Safety & Security				
MasterFormat	**Division Title**	**EUL (Years)**	**Notes**	**Source**
28 10	Access Control	10–15		[3,7]
28 13	Intrusion Detection	10–15		[3,7]
28 16	Video Surveillance	5–10	Cameras, NVR	[3,7]
28 31	Fire Alarm	15–20	Panels, devices	[3]

Table T1.8 continues on next page

HVAC = heating, ventilation, and air-conditioning

Table T1.8: Economic Life of Building Components in MasterFormat *continued*

Division 29—Reserved				
MasterFormat	**Division Title**	**EUL (Years)**	**Notes**	**Source**
29	Reserved	NA		NA

SITE & INFRASTRUCTURE (Divs. 31–35)

Division 31—Earthwork				
MasterFormat	**Division Title**	**EUL (Years)**	**Notes**	**Source**
31 10	Site Clearing	NA	One-time	NA
31 20	Earth Moving	50+	Grading	[4,7]
31 31–32	Soil Treatment	20–30	Stabilization	[4,7]
31 60	Foundations	30–50+	Piles, caissons	[3]

Division 32—Exterior Improvements				
MasterFormat	**Division Title**	**EUL (Years)**	**Notes**	**Source**
32 10	Bases/Paving	15–40	Asphalt, concrete	[3]
32 14	Unit Paving	20–50	Pavers, permeable	[3]
32 16	Curbs/Gutters	25–40		[3]
32 17	Recreational Surfaces	10–25		[3]
32 31	Fences/Gates	15–25	By material	[3]
32 32	Retaining Walls	30–40		[3]
32 33	Site Furnishings	10–20		[3,7]
32 80	Irrigation	15–20		[3]
32 90	Planting	10–15	Landscaping	[3]

Division 33—Utilities				
MasterFormat	**Division Title**	**EUL (Years)**	**Notes**	**Source**
33 10	Water Utilities	30–80	Service lines	[3]
33 20	Wells	20–30		[3,7]
33 30	Sanitary Sewer	30–80		[3]
33 32	Lift Stations	15–20		[3,7]
33 40	Storm Drainage	30–75		[3]
33 46	Stormwater Treatment	20–25		[4,7]
33 50	Fuel Distribution	30–50	Natural gas	[3]
33 60	Hydronic/Steam	30–40	District energy	[3,7]
33 70	Electrical Utilities	30+	Underground	[3]
33 80	Communications	15–25	Site cabling	[3,7]

Table T1.8 continues on next page

Table T1.8: Economic Life of Building Components in MasterFormat *continued*

Division 34—Transportation				
MasterFormat	**Division Title**	**EUL (Years)**	**Notes**	**Source**
34 10	Rails	NA	Not typical	NA
34 20	Traction Power	NA	Not typical	NA
34 40	Signals	10–15	Traffic signals	[3,7]
34 70	Vehicle Barriers	15–20		[3,7]

Division 35—Waterway & Marine				
MasterFormat	**Division Title**	**EUL (Years)**	**Notes**	**Source**
35 20	Dredging	NA	Not typical	NA
35 50	Marine Construction	NA	Not typical	NA

CONDITION & QUALITY MULTIPLIERS

Environmental Conditions		
Condition	**Multiplier**	**MasterFormat Application**
Coastal/Marine (<1 mile)	0.8	Div. 05 (Metals), 07 (Roofing/Enclosure), 08 (Openings), 22–23 (Plumbing/HVAC), 26 (Electrical), 31–35 (Site)
High Humidity (>70%)	0.85	Div. 26 (Electrical), 27 (Communications), 28 (Security)
Extreme Heat (>100°F)	0.9	Div. 07 (Roofing), 23 (HVAC), 26 51–56 (Lighting)
Extreme Cold (<0°F)	0.9	Div. 22 (Plumbing), 23 (HVAC), 33 (Site Utilities)
High UV Exposure	0.85	Div. 07 (Roofing/Waterproofing), 08 (Windows/Doors), 32 (Site Improvements)
Seismic Zone 4	0.95	Div. 03 (Concrete), 04 (Masonry), 05 (Metals), 14 (Conveying), 22–23 (Plumbing/HVAC), 26 (Electrical)

Usage Intensity		
Condition	**Multiplier**	**MasterFormat Application**
24/7 Operation	0.85	Div. 22–28 (All MEP systems)
Heavy Public Use	0.85	Div. 09 (Finishes), 14 (Elevators), 22, 40 (Fixtures)
Light Use (<40 hrs/week)	1.15	All systems

Table T1.8 continues on next page

BAS = building automation system

CBM = condition-based maintenance

HVAC = heating, ventilation, and air-conditioning

LEED = leadership in energy and environmental design

MEP = mechanical, electrical, and plumbing

Table T1.8: Economic Life of Building Components in MasterFormat *continued*

Maintenance Program		
Condition	**Multiplier**	**MasterFormat Application**
Predictive/CBM	1.2	Div. 23 (HVAC), 26 (Electrical)
Preventive	1.1	All systems
Reactive Only	0.85	All systems
Deferred	0.7	All systems

Quality Level		
Condition	**Multiplier**	**MasterFormat Application**
Premium/Institutional	1.15	All systems
Commercial Standard	1	All systems
Economy	0.85	All systems

Technology Maturity		
Condition	**Multiplier**	**MasterFormat Application**
Mature (>10 years)	1.1	Standard systems (all divisions)
Proven (5–10 years)	1	Most systems (all divisions)
Emerging (<5 years)	0.85	Div. 23–56 (Solar Thermal), 23, 70–83 (Advanced HVAC), 26, 33 (Battery Storage), 26 51–56 (LED/Smart Lighting)

Integration Level		
Condition	**Multiplier**	**MasterFormat Application**
Fully Integrated BAS	1.15	Div. 23 (HVAC), 25 (Integrated Automation), 26 (Electrical)
Partial Integration	1.05	Div. 22–28 (MEP systems)
Stand-alone	1	All systems

California Specific		
Condition	**Multiplier**	**MasterFormat Application**
Title 24 Compliant	1.05	Div. 23 (HVAC), 26 (Electrical)
LEED Gold+	1.10	All systems
Net Zero Energy	1.15	Div. 23, 56 (Solar Thermal), 26, 33 (Energy Storage), 26, 51–56 (Efficient Lighting)
Historic Building	0.90	All retrofit applications

How to Apply Multipliers

Step 1: Identify base EUL.
Look up the component in the main crosswalk table to find the base expected useful life range.

Step 2: Identify applicable conditions.
Review the project conditions and identify which multipliers apply from the tables above. Check the MasterFormat Application column to confirm the multiplier applies to your specific division.

Step 3: Calculate adjusted EUL.
Multiply the base EUL by all applicable multipliers:
Adjusted EUL = Base EUL × $Multiplier_1$ × $Multiplier_2$ × $Multiplier_3$...

Example:

- Component: Water-Cooled Centrifugal Chiller (MasterFormat 23 61)
- Base EUL: 20–23 years [1, 2]
- Conditions:
    - Coastal location (within 1 mile): 0.80
    - Preventive maintenance program: 1.10
    - Title 24 compliant: 1.05
- Calculation: 20 × 0.80 × 1.10 × 1.05 = **18.5 years**

Step 4: List document assumptions.
Record all multipliers applied and their justification in the facility condition assessment.

Table T1.9: Multiplier Application Matrix by Division

Division	Typical Multipliers to Consider
03–06	Seismic, Quality Level, Maintenance
07	Coastal, UV, Extreme Temps, Quality Level
08	Coastal, UV, Usage, Quality Level
09	Usage, Quality Level, Maintenance
14	Seismic, Usage, Maintenance
22	Coastal, Extreme Cold, Usage, Maintenance, Quality
23	Coastal, Extreme Temps, 24/7 Operation, Maintenance, Integration, Title 24
25–26	High Humidity, Maintenance, Integration, Title 24, Technology Maturity
27–28	High Humidity, Technology Maturity, Maintenance
32–33	Coastal, UV, Extreme Temps, Quality Level

References

1. DEER database
2. ASHRAE public database
3. BOMA (via University of Illinois)
4. Marshall Swift
5. NREL Reports
6. CCPIA

Application Notes

- Use **DEER** [1] as primary source for all energy-related systems in California.
- Use **ASHRAE** [2] as primary source for all HVAC equipment.
- Use **BOMA** [3] as primary source for commercial building components.
- Use **Marshall Swift** [4] for cost estimating and general building components.
- Apply condition and quality multipliers from tables above based on actual facility conditions.
- Multipliers are cumulative—multiply all applicable factors together.
- Where published data does not exist or is insufficient, apply **Engineering Judgment (EJ)** [7] based on professional practice, manufacturer specifications, and comparable component analysis.

Citation Format

Component Name: XX–YY years [Source1, Source2]

Example:

Centrifugal Chiller (23 61): 20–23 years [1,2]

Adjusted: 18.5 years (Coastal 0.80, Preventive Mx 1.10, Title 24 1.05)

T2

REQUIRED TOOLS

CATALOG OF COURTROOM LAYOUTS FOR CALIFORNIA TRIAL COURTS

SECTION	TOPIC	PAGE
T2.A	Courtroom Layout Overview	T2.2
T2.B	Multipurpose Courtroom Templates	T2.4
T2.C	Courtroom Design Examples	T2.29
T2.D	Holding Core Templates	T2.45



Superior Court of California, County of San Bernardino
San Bernardino, CA
© Skidmore, Owings & Merrill LLP

T2.A COURTROOM LAYOUT OVERVIEW

MULTIPURPOSE COURTROOM TEMPLATES

GROUP 1—CENTER BENCH

TEMPLATE NAME	TOTAL SQUARE FEET*	SPECTATOR SEATING CAPACITY†	PAGE
Typical Trial Courtroom—Center Bench A	1,850	48	T2.4
Typical Large Trial Courtroom—Center Bench A	2,050	71	T2.6
Typical Trial Courtroom—Center Bench B	1,950	51	T2.8
Typical Large Trial Courtroom—Center Bench B	2,250	74	T2.10
Center Bench A With Holding Door Flipped	1,850	48	T2.12

Group 1 Courtrooms A use identical working areas, as do Courtrooms B. They vary from one another in that either a smaller gallery and two adjoining attorney-client conference rooms can be provided in the footprint or a larger gallery without the conference rooms can be selected.

GROUP 2—CORNER BENCH

TEMPLATE NAME	TOTAL SQUARE FEET*	SPECTATOR SEATING CAPACITY†	PAGE
Typical Trial Courtroom—Corner Bench A	1,796	48	T2.14
Typical Large Trial Courtroom—Corner Bench A	2,008	65	T2.16
Typical Trial Courtroom—Corner Bench B	2,056	48	T2.18
Typical Large Trial Courtroom—Corner Bench B	2,285	73	T2.20
Corner Bench A With Holding Door Flipped	1,796	48	T2.22

As with the center bench designs, Group 2 designs vary based on trade-offs between more gallery space and adjoining conference rooms. Corner bench designs are used in a number of California courthouses, and although they somewhat compromise the efficient use of space in comparison with the center bench configuration, they are approved for use.

GROUP 3—CENTER BENCH, WIDE

TEMPLATE NAME	TOTAL SQUARE FEET*	SPECTATOR SEATING CAPACITY†	PAGE
Typical Large Trial Courtroom—Center Bench C	2,200	52	T2.24
Typical Large Trial Courtroom—Center Bench D	2,445	85	T2.26

These floor plans are significantly wider but otherwise similar to the other center bench template designs and can be considered when cases of unusual scale are routinely encountered in a specific jurisdiction.

COURTROOM DESIGN EXAMPLES

COURTROOM EXAMPLE	TOTAL SQUARE FEET*	SPECTATOR SEATING CAPACITY†	PAGE
San Diego Central Courthouse, Trial Courtroom, Center Bench	1,700	46	T2.30
San Bernardino Justice Center, Trial Courtroom, Corner Bench	1,700	50	T2.32
San Diego Central Courthouse, Large Trial Courtroom, Center Bench	2,100	98	T2.34
San Diego Central Courthouse, Double Jury Courtroom, Center Bench	2,100	64	T2.36
San Bernardino Justice Center, Double Jury Courtroom, Corner Bench	2,400	92	T2.38
San Diego Central Courthouse, Arraignment Courtroom, Center Bench	1,800	98	T2.40
San Diego Central Courthouse, Family Courtroom, Center Bench	1,700	46	T2.42

The Courtroom Design Examples are included as references from constructed projects. The layouts in these courtrooms are shown for illustrative purposes only.

HOLDING CORE TEMPLATES

	TOTAL SQUARE FEET*	TOTAL RATED CAPACITY	PAGE
Typical Holding Core—8″ CMU Walls	709	7	T2.46
Typical Holding Core—6″ CMU Walls	690	7	T2.47
Typical Holding Core—6″ CMU Walls and 2″ Metal Panel Walls at Holding	672	7	T2.48

* Includes ramp in corridor where applicable.

† Wheelchair spaces added to total spectator seating capacity.

CMU = concrete masonry unit.

REQUIRED TOOLS

T1 Life Cycle Cost Analysis

T2 CATALOG OF COURTROOM LAYOUTS FOR CALIFORNIA TRIAL COURTS

T2.A Courtroom Layout Overview

T2.B Multipurpose Courtroom Templates

T2.C Courtroom Design Examples

T2.D Holding Core Templates

T3 Integrated Network Architecture

T4 Graphical User Interface Template

T5 In-Custody Interview Room Guidelines

T6 Building Management System Guidelines

T7 Small Courthouse Guidelines

T8 Security Systems Guidelines

T2.B MULTIPURPOSE COURTROOM TEMPLATES

Group 1—Center Bench
Typical Trial Courtroom—Center Bench A
Courtroom Component Information

COURTROOM TYPE	SQUARE FEET	SPECTATOR SEATING AT 18″	VOIR DIRE
Multipurpose Trial	1,850	46+2 WC	74

ELEMENT OR WORKSTATION	FURNITURE/ WIDTH	CASEWORK DEPTH	HEIGHT ABOVE FLOOR	NO. OF OCCUPANTS
Judge	6′6″/6′4″	2′0″/1′6″	+16″	1
Courtroom Clerk	12′0″	2′3″	+12″	2
Court Security Officer	4′0″	2′6″	+0″	1
Court Reporter	4′0″	2′0″	+0″	1
Witness Stand	5′0″	1′7″	+6″	2
Jury Box	NA	NA	(Row 1) +0″ (Row 2) +6″	14
Counsel Tables	7′0″	3′0″	+0″	3 ea.
DEPS Cart	2′0″	2′0″	NA	0
Lectern	2′6″	2′0″	NA	0

DEPS = digital evidence presentation system.
NA = not applicable.
WC = wheelchairs.

Key Attributes of Courtroom Layout

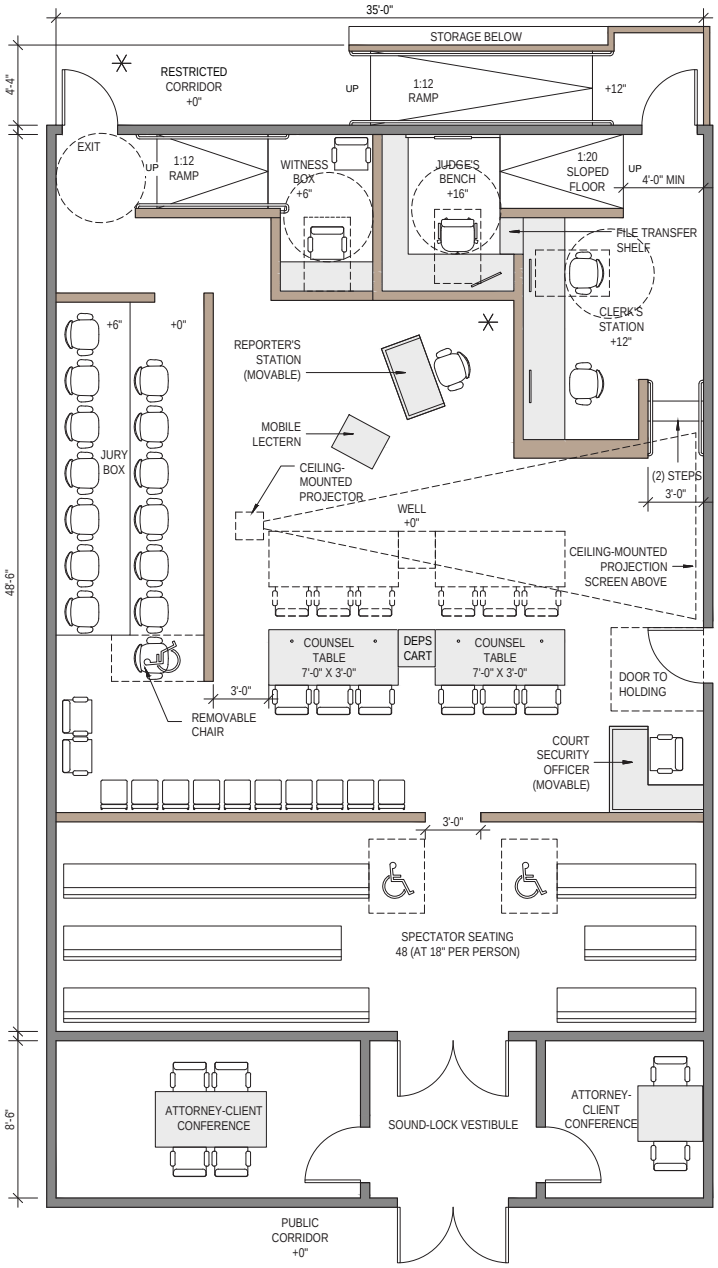
- Seventy-four seats for voir dire to provide maximum flexibility for trial use.
- Increase of judge's bench work surface from 6′ to 12′10″ long.
- Increase of work surface return at judge's bench from 10″ to 18″ deep.
- Access ramps outside courtroom.
- Judge's bench elevated 16″ to minimize need for ramping.
- Optimal sightlines for all participants.
- Multidefendant capable because of movable well components.
- Multiple locations for sidebar conferences (indicated with ⁎ on schematic, next page).
- Exhibit storage table adjacent to clerk's workstation.
- Stairs to clerk's workstation area that reduce width of courtroom.
- Efficient jury box dimensions that control courtroom width.
- Adjustable-height work surfaces for judge and clerk.

Options provided:

- Alternative court security officer desk and evidence table locations.
- Movable lectern and court reporter's station that facilitate options for adding counsel tables.

Note:

- A court may adjust the combined ramp pitches from floor level to the bench to retain the bench height of 16″ while lowering the clerk floor height so long as the maximum pitch used does not exceed a 1:12 ratio.



DEPS = digital evidence presentation system.

Figure T2.1 Typical Trial Courtroom—Center Bench A

REQUIRED TOOLS

T1 Life Cycle Cost Analysis

T2 CATALOG OF COURTROOM LAYOUTS FOR CALIFORNIA TRIAL COURTS

T2.A Courtroom Layout Overview

T2.B Multipurpose Courtroom Templates

T2.C Courtroom Design Examples

T2.D Holding Core Templates

T3 Integrated Network Architecture

T4 Graphical User Interface Template

T5 In-Custody Interview Room Guidelines

T6 Building Management System Guidelines

T7 Small Courthouse Guidelines

T8 Security Systems Guidelines

Typical Large Trial Courtroom—Center Bench A

Courtroom Component Information

COURTROOM TYPE	SQUARE FEET	SPECTATOR SEATING (18″)	VOIR DIRE
Multipurpose Large Trial	2,050	67+4 WC	97

ELEMENT OR WORKSTATION	FURNITURE/ WIDTH	CASEWORK DEPTH	HEIGHT ABOVE FLOOR	NO. OF OCCUPANTS
Judge	6′6″/6′4″	2′0″/1′6″	+16″	1
Courtroom Clerk	12′0″	2′3″	+12″	2
Court Security Officer	4′0″	2′6″	+0″	1
Court Reporter	4′0″	2′0″	+0″	1
Witness Stand	5′0″	1′7″	+6″	2
Jury Box	NA	NA	(Row 1) +0″ (Row 2) +6″	14
Counsel Tables	7′0″	3′0″	+0″	3 ea.
DEPS Cart	2′0″	2′0″	NA	0
Lectern	2′6″	2′0″	NA	0

DEPS = digital evidence presentation system.
NA = not applicable.
WC = wheelchairs.

Key Attributes of Courtroom Layout

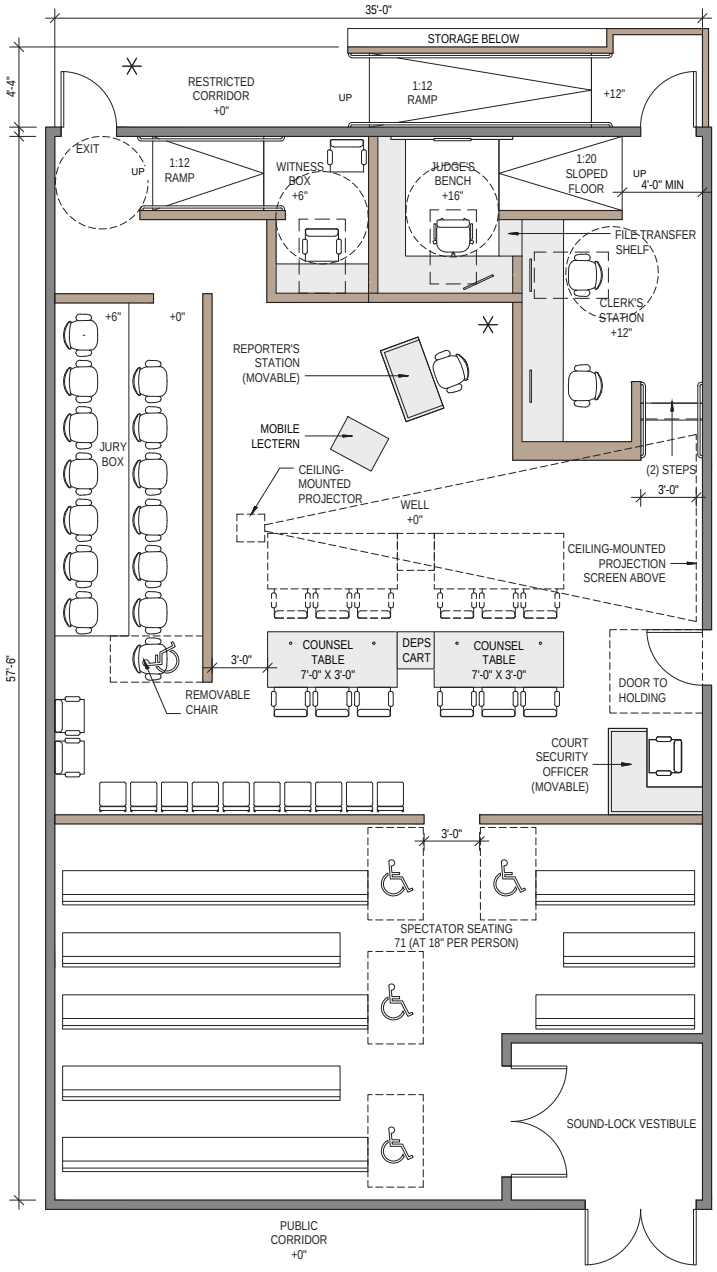
- Ninety-seven seats for voir dire to provide maximum flexibility for trial use.
- Multidefendant capable.
- Increase of judge's bench work surface from 6′ to 12′10″ long.
- Increase of work surface return at judge's bench from 10″ to 18″ deep.
- Judge's bench elevated 16″ to minimize need for ramping.
- Multiple locations for sidebar conferences (indicated with ⁎ on schematic, next page).
- Optimal sightlines for all participants.
- Exhibit storage table adjacent to clerk's workstation.
- Adjustable-height work surfaces for judge and clerk.
- Increase of clerk's work surface from 10′ to 12′ long (two clerks).
- Jury box dimensions that are efficient and control courtroom width.
- Spectator seating increased by eliminating attorney-client conference rooms.

Options provided:

- Alternative court security officer desk and evidence table locations.
- Movable lectern and court reporter's station that facilitate options for adding counsel tables.

Note:

- A court may adjust the combined ramp pitches from floor level to the bench to retain the bench height of 16″ while lowering the clerk floor height so long as the maximum pitch used does not exceed a 1:12 ratio.



DEPS = digital evidence presentation system.

Figure T2.2 Typical Large Trial Courtroom—Center Bench A

Typical Trial Courtroom—Center Bench B

Courtroom Component Information

COURTROOM TYPE	SQUARE FEET	SPECTATOR SEATING (18″)	VOIR DIRE
Multipurpose Trial	1,950	49+2 WC	77

ELEMENT OR WORKSTATION	FURNITURE/ WIDTH	CASEWORK DEPTH	HEIGHT ABOVE FLOOR	NO. OF OCCUPANTS
Judge	7′9″/6′4″	2′0″/1′6″	+16″	1
Courtroom Clerk	12′0″	2′3″	+12″	2
Court Security Officer	4′0″	2′6″	+0″	1
Court Reporter	4′0″	2′0″	+0″	1
Witness Stand	5′6″	1′7″	+6″	2
Jury Box	NA	NA	(Row 1) +0″ (Row 2) +6″	14
Counsel Tables	7′6″	3′0″	+0″	3 ea.
DEPS Cart	2′0″	2′0″	NA	0
Lectern	2′6″	2′0″	NA	0

DEPS = digital evidence presentation system.
NA = not applicable.
WC = wheelchairs.

Key Attributes of Courtroom Layout

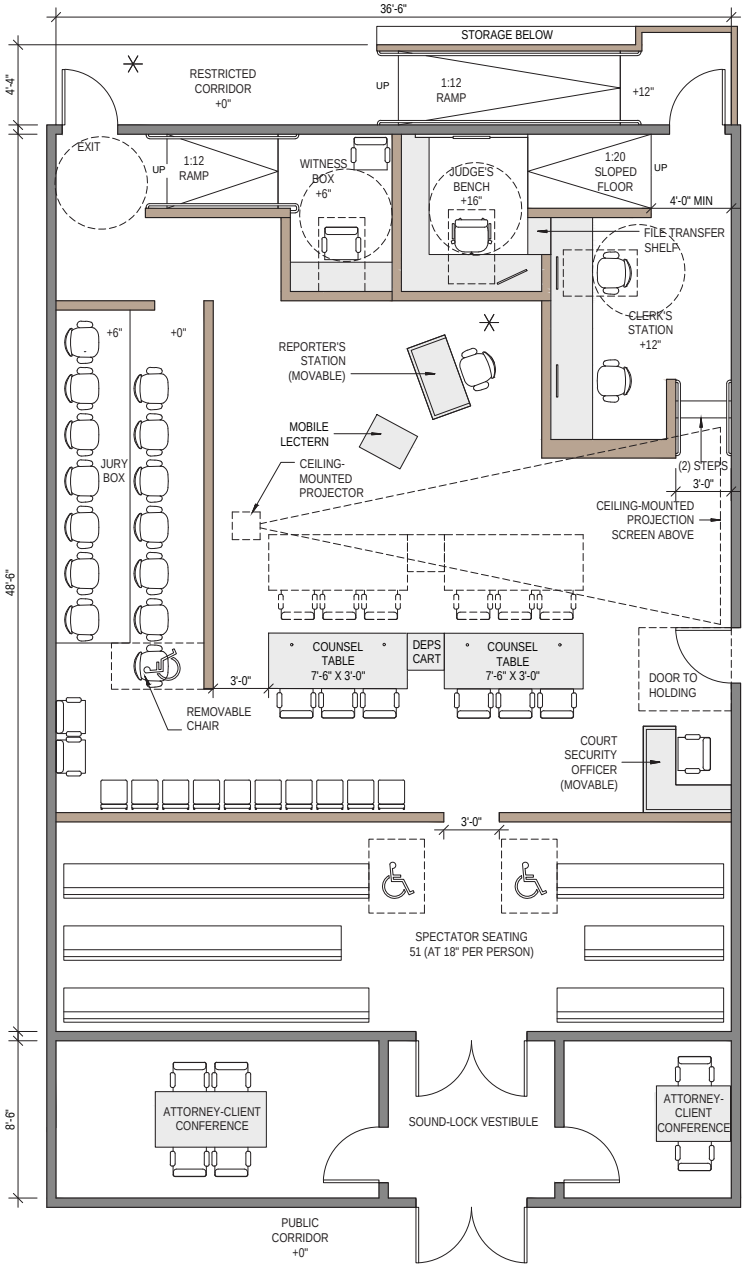
- Seventy-seven seats for voir dire to provide maximum flexibility for trial use.
- Multidefendant capable because of movable well components and increased courtroom width.
- Increase of judge's bench work surface from 6′ to 14′1″ long.
- Increase of work surface return at judge's bench from 10″ to 18″ deep.
- Judge's bench elevated 16″ to minimize need for ramping.
- Multiple locations for sidebar conferences (indicated with ⁎ on schematic, next page).
- Optimal sightlines for all participants.
- Exhibit storage table adjacent to clerk's workstation.
- Increase of clerk's work surface from 10′ to 12′ long (two clerks).
- Stairs to clerk's workstation area, which reduce width of courtroom.
- Adjustable-height work surfaces for judge and clerk.
- Counsel tables providing for four seats at each table.
- Jury box dimensions that are efficient and control courtroom width.

Options provided:

- Alternative court security officer desk and evidence table locations.
- Movable lectern and court reporter's station to facilitate options for adding counsel tables.

Note:

- A court may adjust the combined ramp pitches from floor level to the bench to retain the bench height of 16″ while lowering the clerk floor height so long as the maximum pitch used does not exceed a 1:12 ratio.



DEPS = digital evidence presentation system.

Figure T2.3 Typical Trial Courtroom—Center Bench B

REQUIRED TOOLS

T1 Life Cycle Cost Analysis

T2 CATALOG OF COURTROOM LAYOUTS FOR CALIFORNIA TRIAL COURTS

T2.A Courtroom Layout Overview

T2.B Multipurpose Courtroom Templates

T2.C Courtroom Design Examples

T2.D Holding Core Templates

T3 Integrated Network Architecture

T4 Graphical User Interface Template

T5 In-Custody Interview Room Guidelines

T6 Building Management System Guidelines

T7 Small Courthouse Guidelines

T8 Security Systems Guidelines

Typical Large Trial Courtroom—Center Bench B

Courtroom Component Information

COURTROOM TYPE	SQUARE FEET	SPECTATOR SEATING (18″)	VOIR DIRE
Multipurpose Large Trial	2,250	70+4 WC	100

ELEMENT OR WORKSTATION	FURNITURE/ WIDTH	CASEWORK DEPTH	HEIGHT ABOVE FLOOR	NO. OF OCCUPANTS
Judge	7′9″/6′4″	2′0″/1′6″	+16″	1
Courtroom Clerk	12′0″	2′3″	+12″	2
Court Security Officer	4′0″	2′6″	+0″	1
Court Reporter	4′0″	2′0″	+0″	1
Witness Stand	5′6″	1′7″	+6″	2
Jury Box	NA	NA	(Row 1) +0″ (Row 2) +6″	14
Counsel Tables	7′6″	3′0″	+0″	3 ea.
DEPS Cart	2′0″	2′0″	NA	0
Lectern	2′6″	2′0″	NA	0

DEPS = digital evidence presentation system.
NA = not applicable.
WC = wheelchairs.

Key Attributes of Courtroom Layout

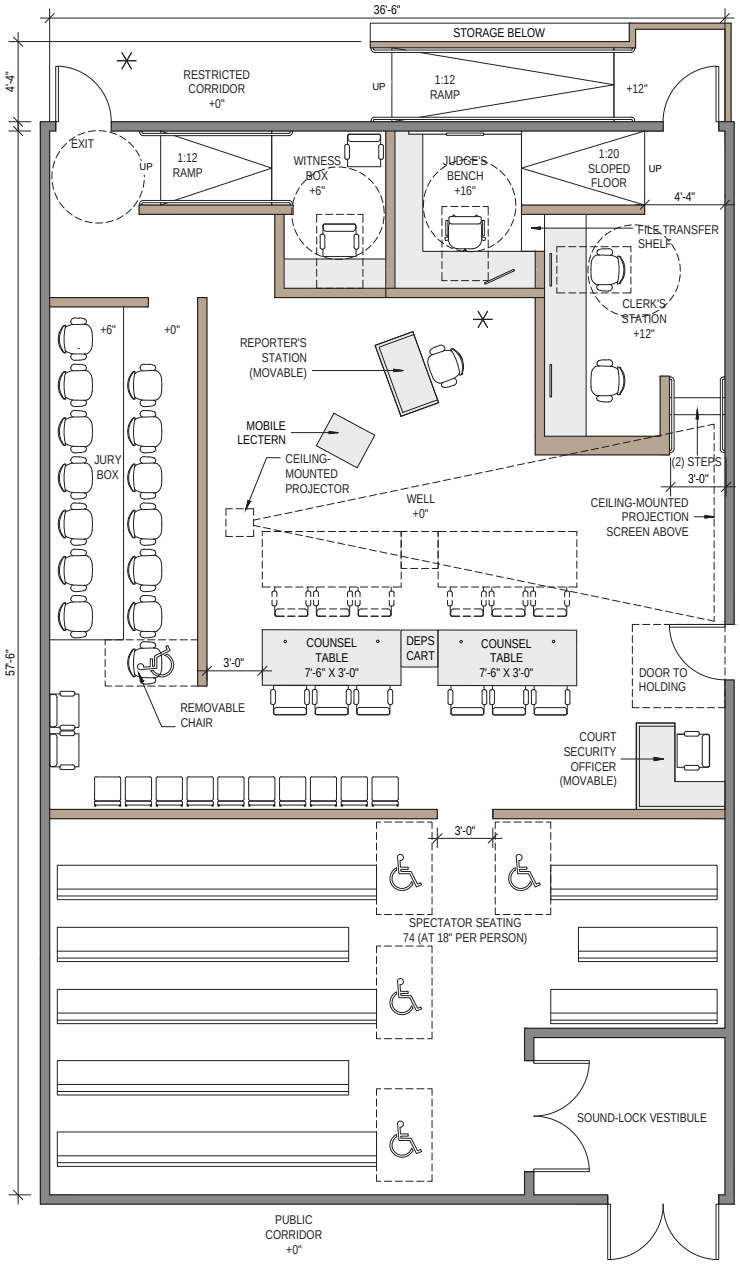
- One hundred seats for voir dire to provide maximum flexibility for trial use.
- Multidefendant capable because of movable well components and increased courtroom width.
- Increase of judge's bench work surface from 6′ to 14′1″ long.
- Increase of work surface return at judge's bench from 10″ to 18″ deep.
- Judge's bench elevated 16″ to minimize need for ramping.
- Multiple locations for sidebar conferences (indicated with ⁎ on schematic, next page).
- Optimal sightlines for all participants.
- Exhibit storage table adjacent to clerk's workstation.
- Adjustable-height work surfaces for judge and clerk.
- Increase of clerk's work surface from 10′ to 12′ long (two clerks).
- Clerk's storage in workstation area.
- Ramp provided to clerk's workstation area.
- Counsel tables to provide for four seats at each table.
- Jury box dimensions that are efficient and control courtroom width.
- Spectator seating increased by eliminating attorney-client conference rooms.

Options provided:

- Alternative court security officer desk and evidence table locations.
- Movable lectern and court reporter's station that facilitate options for adding counsel tables.

Note:

- A court may adjust the combined ramp pitches from floor level to the bench to retain the bench height of 16″ while lowering the clerk floor height so long as the maximum pitch used does not exceed a 1:12 ratio.



DEPS = digital evidence presentation system.

Figure T2.4 Typical Large Trial Courtroom—Center Bench B

Center Bench A With Holding Door Flipped

Courtroom Component Information

COURTROOM TYPE	SQUARE FEET	SPECTATOR SEATING AT 18″	VOIR DIRE
Multipurpose Trial	1,850	46+2 WC	72

ELEMENT OR WORKSTATION	FURNITURE/ WIDTH	CASEWORK DEPTH	HEIGHT ABOVE FLOOR	NO. OF OCCUPANTS
Judge	6′6″/6′4″	2′0″/1′6″	+16″	1
Courtroom Clerk	12′0″	2′3″	+12″	2
Court Security Officer	4′0″	2′6″	+0″	1
Court Reporter	4′0″	2′0″	+0″	1
Witness Stand	5′0″	1′7″	+6″	2
Jury Box	NA	NA	(Row 1) +0″ (Row 2) +6″	14
Counsel Tables	7′0″	3′0″	+0″	3 ea.
DEPS Cart	2′0″	2′0″	NA	0
Lectern	2′6″	2′0″	NA	0

DEPS = digital evidence presentation system.
NA = not applicable.
WC = wheelchairs.

Key Attributes of Courtroom Layout

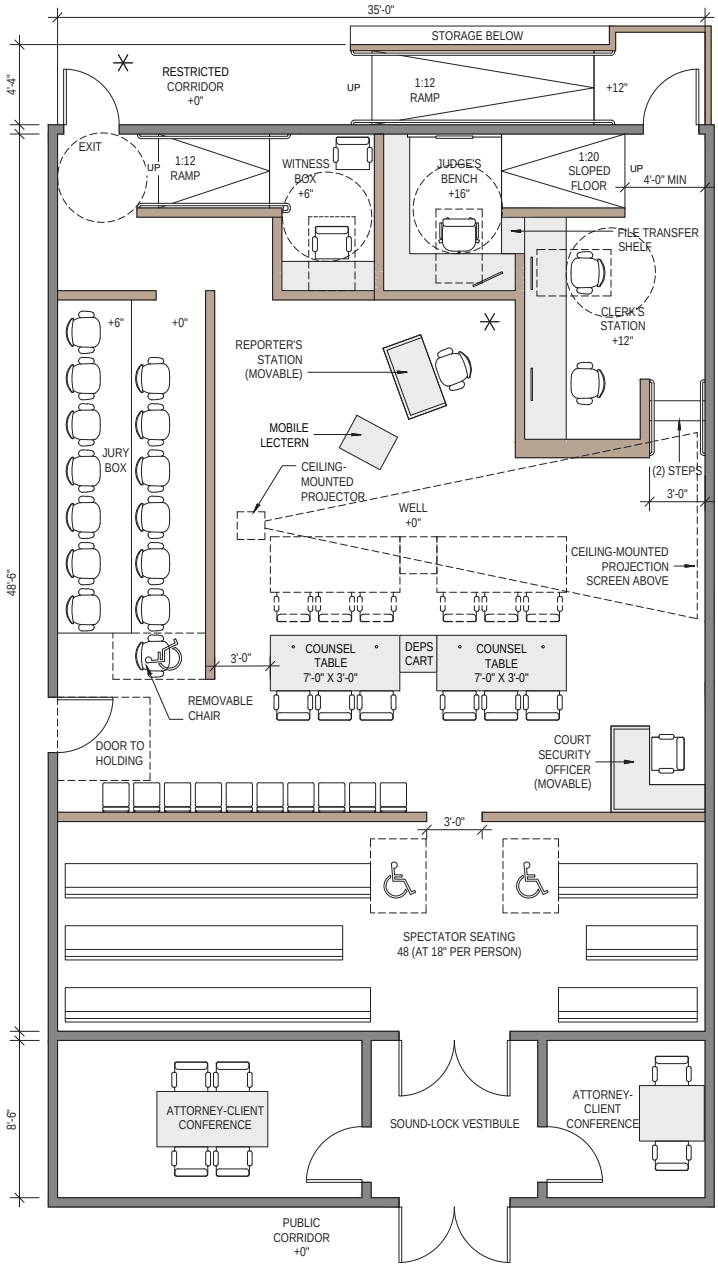
- Seventy-two seats for voir dire to provide maximum flexibility for trial use.
- Increase of judge's bench work surface from 6′ to 12′10″ long.
- Increase of work surface return at judge's bench from 10″ to 18″ deep.
- Access ramps outside courtroom.
- Judge's bench elevated 16″ to minimize need for ramping.
- Optimal sightlines for all participants.
- Multidefendant capable because of movable well components.
- Multiple locations for sidebar conferences (indicated with ⁎ on schematic, next page).
- Exhibit storage table adjacent to clerk's workstation.
- Stairs to clerk's workstation area, which reduce width of courtroom.
- Jury box dimensions that are efficient and control courtroom width.
- Adjustable-height work surfaces for judge and clerk.

Options provided:

- Alternative court security officer desk and evidence table locations.
- Movable lectern and court reporter's station that facilitate options for adding counsel tables.

Note:

- A court may adjust the combined ramp pitches from floor level to the bench to retain the bench height of 16″ while lowering the clerk floor height so long as the maximum pitch used does not exceed a 1:12 ratio.



DEPS = digital evidence presentation system.

Figure T2.5 Center Bench A With Holding Door Flipped

Group 2—Corner Bench
Typical Trial Courtroom—Corner Bench A
Courtroom Component Information

COURTROOM TYPE	TOTAL SQUARE FEET (INCLUDES RAMP IN CORRIDOR)	SPECTATOR SEATING AT 18″	VOIR DIRE
Typical Trial	1,796	46+2 WC	72

ELEMENT OR WORKSTATION	FURNITURE/ WIDTH	CASEWORK DEPTH	HEIGHT ABOVE FLOOR	NO. OF OCCUPANTS
Judge	6′6″/6′9″	2′0″/1′6″	+16″	1
Courtroom Clerk	9′3″	2′3″	+12″	2
Court Security Officer	4′6″	2′0″	+0″	1
Court Reporter	4′0″	2′0″	+0″	1
Witness Stand	6′0″	1′7″	+6″	2
Jury Box	NA	NA	(Row 1) +0″ (Row 2) +6″	14
Counsel Tables	7′0″	3′0″	+0″	3 ea.
DEPS Cart	2′0″	2′0″	NA	0
Lectern	2′6″	2′0″	NA	0

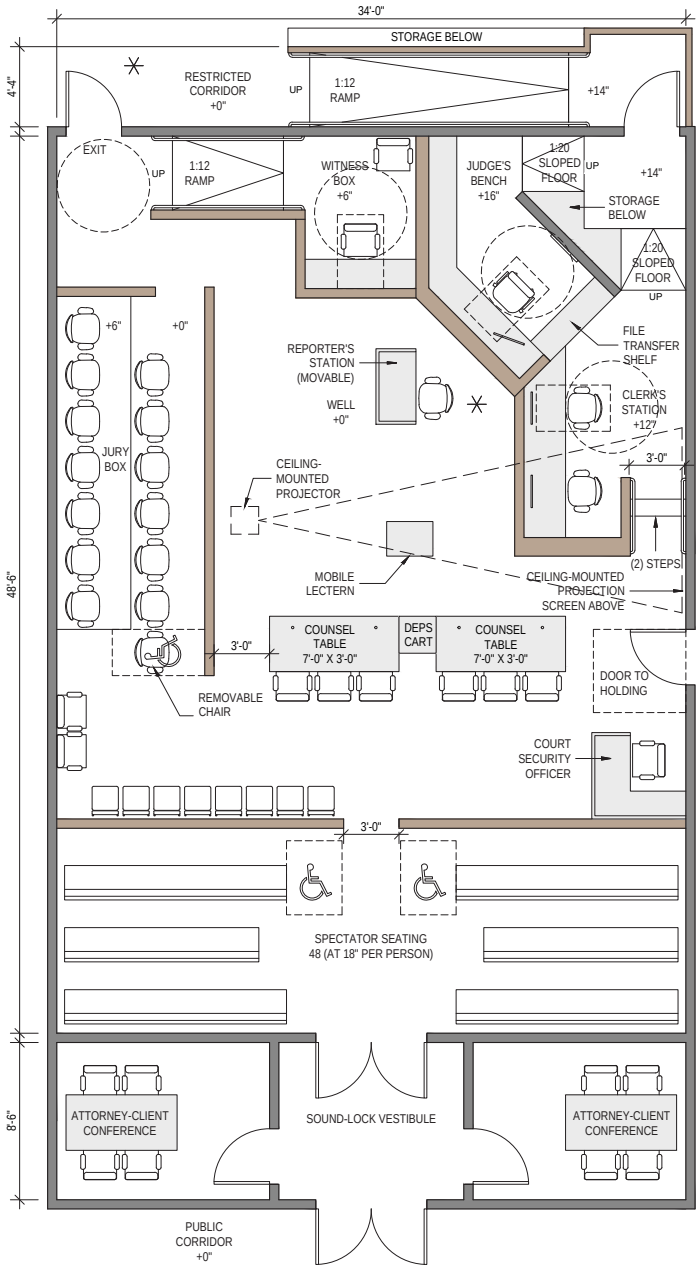
DEPS = digital evidence presentation system.
NA = not applicable.
WC = wheelchairs.

Key Attributes of Courtroom Layout

- Seventy-two seats for voir dire to provide maximum flexibility for trial use.
- Increase of judge's bench work surface from 6′ to 13′3″ long.
- Increase of work surface return at judge's bench from 10″ to 18″ deep.
- Judge's bench elevated 16″ to minimize need for ramping.
- Multiple locations for sidebar conferences (indicated with ⁎ on schematic, next page).
- Optimal sightlines for all participants.
- Exhibit storage table adjacent to clerk's workstation.
- Stairs to clerk's workstation area, which reduce width of courtroom.
- Adjustable-height work surfaces for judge and clerk.
- Jury box dimensions that are efficient and control courtroom width.

Note:

- A court may adjust the combined ramp pitches from floor level to the bench to retain the bench height of 16″ while lowering the clerk floor height so long as the maximum pitch used does not exceed a 1:12 ratio.



DEPS = digital evidence presentation system.

Figure T2.6 Typical Trial Courtroom—Corner Bench A

Typical Large Trial Courtroom—Corner Bench A

Courtroom Component Information

COURTROOM TYPE	SQUARE FEET	SPECTATOR SEATING (18″)	VOIR DIRE
Multipurpose Large Trial	2,008	61+4 WC	90

ELEMENT OR WORKSTATION	FURNITURE/ WIDTH	CASEWORK DEPTH	HEIGHT ABOVE FLOOR	NO. OF OCCUPANTS
Judge	6′6″/6′9″	2′0″/1′6″	+16″	1
Courtroom Clerk	9′3″	2′3″	+12″	2
Court Security Officer	4′0″	2′0″	+0″	1
Court Reporter	4′0″	2′0″	+0″	1
Witness Stand	5′6″	1′7″	+6″	2
Jury Box	NA	NA	(Row 1) +0″ (Row 2) +6″	14
Counsel Tables	7′0″	3′0″	+0″	3 ea.
DEPS Cart	2′0″	2′0″	NA	0
Lectern	2′6″	2′0″	NA	0

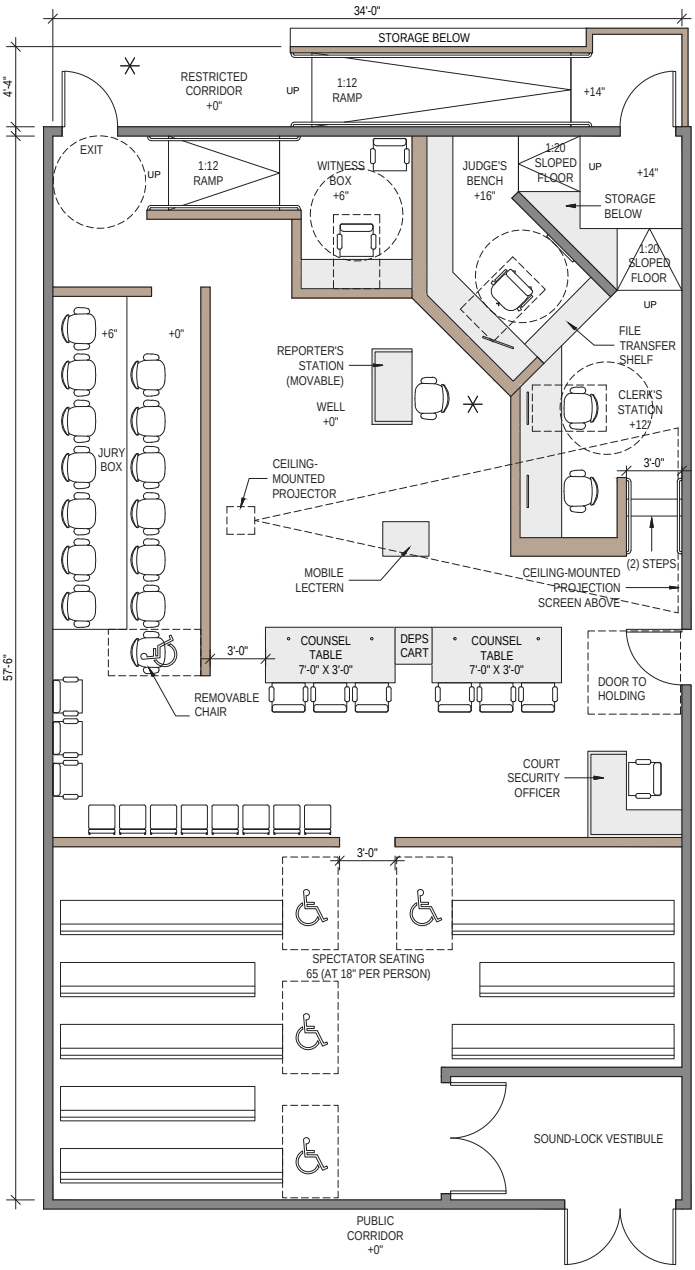
DEPS = digital evidence presentation system.
NA = not applicable.
WC = wheelchairs.

Key Attributes of Courtroom Layout

- Ninety seats for voir dire to provide maximum flexibility for trial use.
- Increase of judge's bench work surface from 6′ to 13′3″ long.
- Increase of work surface return at judge's bench from 10″ to 18″ deep.
- Judge's bench elevated 16″ to minimize need for ramping.
- Multiple locations for sidebar conferences (indicated with ⁎ on schematic, next page).
- Optimal sightlines for all participants.
- Exhibit storage table adjacent to clerk's workstation.
- Adjustable-height work surfaces for judge and clerk.
- Jury box dimensions that are efficient and control courtroom width.
- Spectator seating increased by eliminating attorney-client conference rooms.

Note:

- A court may adjust the combined ramp pitches from floor level to the bench to retain the bench height of 16″ while lowering the clerk floor height so long as the maximum pitch used does not exceed a 1:12 ratio.



DEPS = digital evidence presentation system.

Figure T2.7 Typical Large Trial Courtroom—Corner Bench A

Typical Trial Courtroom—Corner Bench B

Courtroom Component Information

COURTROOM TYPE	TOTAL SQUARE FEET (INCLUDES RAMP IN CORRIDOR)	SPECTATOR SEATING AT 18″	VOIR DIRE
Typical Trial	2,056	46+2 WC	73

ELEMENT OR WORKSTATION	FURNITURE/ WIDTH	CASEWORK DEPTH	HEIGHT ABOVE FLOOR	NO. OF OCCUPANTS
Judge	8′0″/6′9″	2′0″/1′6″	+16″	1
Courtroom Clerk	9′3″	2′3″	+12″	2
Court Security Officer	4′6″	2′0″	+0″	1
Court Reporter	4′0″	2′0″	+0″	1
Witness Stand	6′0″	1′7″	+6″	2
Jury Box	NA	NA	(Row 1) +0″ (Row 2) +6″	14
Counsel Tables	7′6″	3′0″	+0″	3 ea.
DEPS Cart	2′0″	2′0″	NA	0
Lectern	2′6″	2′0″	NA	0

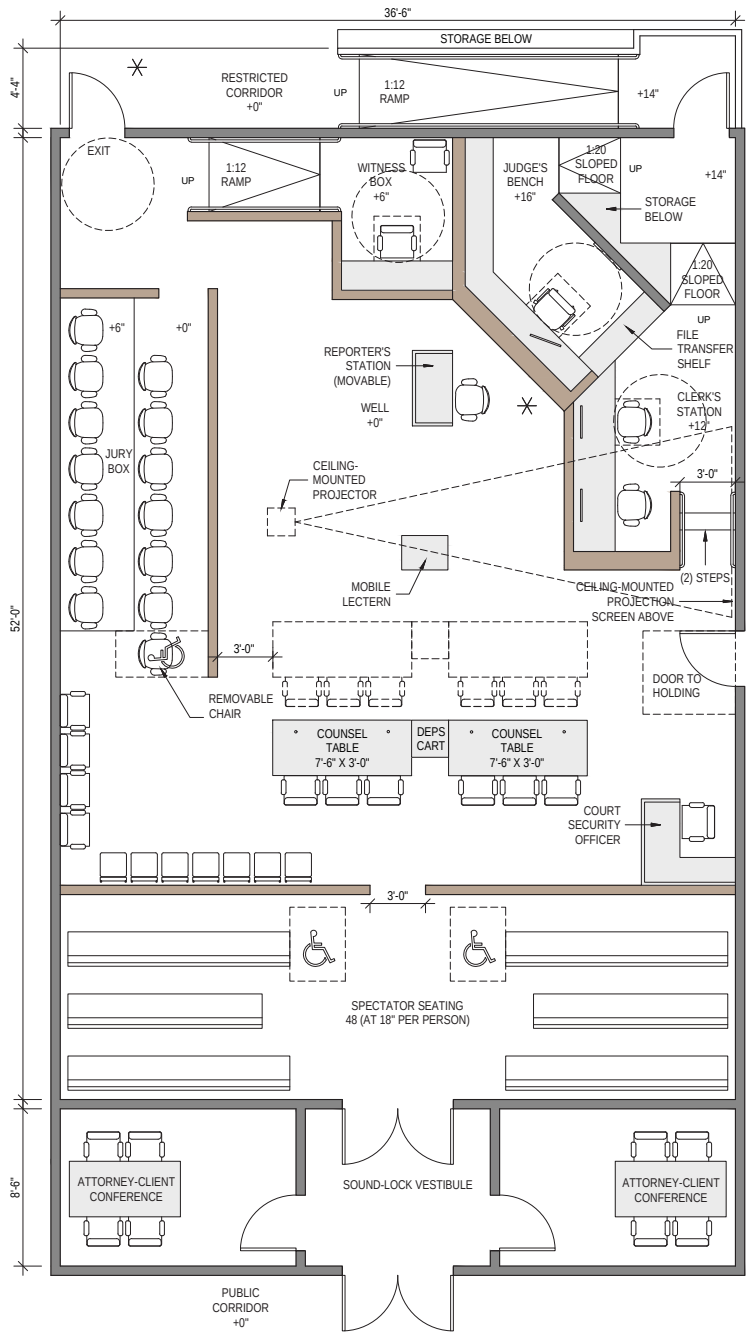
DEPS = digital evidence presentation system.
NA = not applicable.
WC = wheelchairs.

Key Attributes of Courtroom Layout

- Seventy-three seats for voir dire to provide maximum flexibility for trial use.
- Increase of judge's bench work surface from 6′ to 14′9″ long.
- Increase of work surface return at judge's bench from 10″ to 18″ deep.
- Judge's bench elevated 16″ to minimize need for ramping.
- Multiple locations for sidebar conferences (indicated with ⁎ on schematic, next page).
- Optimal sightlines for all participants.
- Multidefendant capable because of movable well components.
- Exhibit storage table adjacent to clerk's workstation.
- Stairs to clerk's workstation area, which reduce width of courtroom.
- Adjustable-height work surfaces for judge and clerk.
- Jury box dimensions that are efficient and control courtroom width.

Note:

- A court may adjust the combined ramp pitches from floor level to the bench to retain the bench height of 16″ while lowering the clerk floor height so long as the maximum pitch used does not exceed a 1:12 ratio.



DEPS = digital evidence presentation system.

Figure T2.8 Typical Trial Courtroom—Corner Bench B

Typical Large Trial Courtroom—Corner Bench B

Courtroom Component Information

COURTROOM TYPE	SQUARE FEET	SPECTATOR SEATING (18″)	VOIR DIRE
Multipurpose Large Trial	2,285	69+4 WC	100

ELEMENT OR WORKSTATION	FURNITURE/ WIDTH	CASEWORK DEPTH	HEIGHT ABOVE FLOOR	NO. OF OCCUPANTS
Judge	8′0″/6′9″	2′0″/1′6″	+16″	1
Courtroom Clerk	9′3″	2′3″	+12″	2
Court Security Officer	4′0″	2′0″	+0″	1
Court Reporter	4′0″	2′0″	+0″	1
Witness Stand	5′6″	1′7″	+6″	2
Jury Box	NA	NA	(Row 1) +0″ (Row 2) +6″	14
Counsel Tables	7′6″	3′0″	+0″	3 ea.
DEPS Cart	2′0″	2′0″	NA	0
Lectern	2′6″	2′0″	NA	0

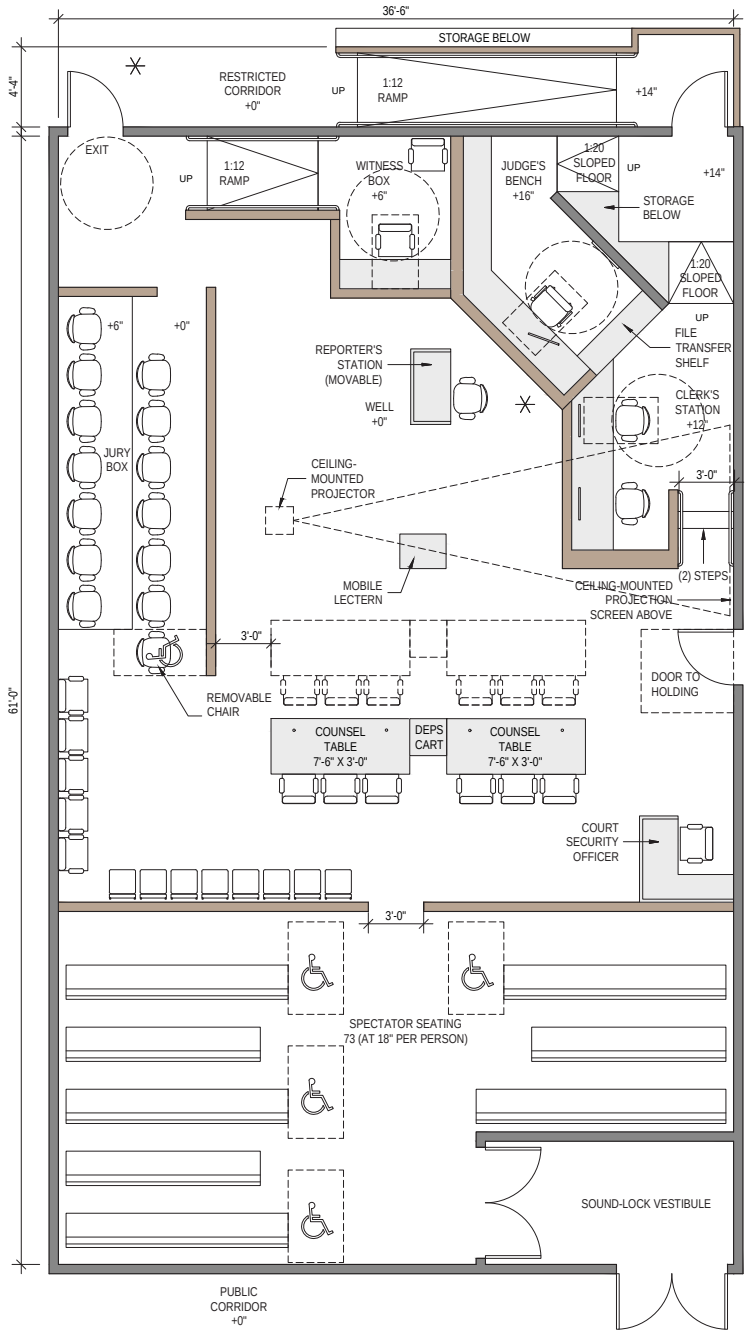
DEPS = digital evidence presentation system.
NA = not applicable.
WC = wheelchairs.

Key Attributes of Courtroom Layout

- One hundred seats for voir dire to provide maximum flexibility for trial use.
- Multidefendant capable.
- Increase of judge's bench work surface from 6′ to 14′9″ long.
- Increase of work surface return at judge's bench from 10″ to 18″ deep.
- Judge's bench elevated 16″ to minimize need for ramping.
- Multiple locations for sidebar conferences (indicated with ⁎ on schematic, next page).
- Optimal sightlines for all participants.
- Exhibit storage table adjacent to clerk's workstation.
- Adjustable-height work surfaces for judge and clerk.
- Jury box dimensions that are efficient and control courtroom width.
- Additional counsel tables accommodated by eliminating attorney-client conference rooms.

Note:

- A court may adjust the combined ramp pitches from floor level to the bench to retain the bench height of 16″ while lowering the clerk floor height so long as the maximum pitch used does not exceed a 1:12 ratio.



DEPS = digital evidence presentation system.

Figure T2.9 Typical Large Trial Courtroom—Corner Bench B

Corner Bench A With Holding Door Flipped

Courtroom Component Information

COURTROOM TYPE	TOTAL SQUARE FEET (INCLUDES RAMP IN CORRIDOR)	SPECTATOR SEATING AT 18″	VOIR DIRE
Typical Trial	1,796	46+2 WC	69

ELEMENT OR WORKSTATION	FURNITURE/ WIDTH	CASEWORK DEPTH	HEIGHT ABOVE FLOOR	NO. OF OCCUPANTS
Judge	6′6″/6′9″	2′0″/1′6″	+16″	1
Courtroom Clerk	9′3″	2′3″	+12″	2
Court Security Officer	4′6″	2′0″	+0″	1
Court Reporter	4′0″	2′0″	+0″	1
Witness Stand	6′0″	1′7″	+6″	2
Jury Box	NA	NA	(Row 1) +0″ (Row 2) +6″	14
Counsel Tables	7′0″	3′0″	+0″	3 ea.
DEPS Cart	2′0″	2′0″	NA	0
Lectern	2′6″	2′0″	NA	0

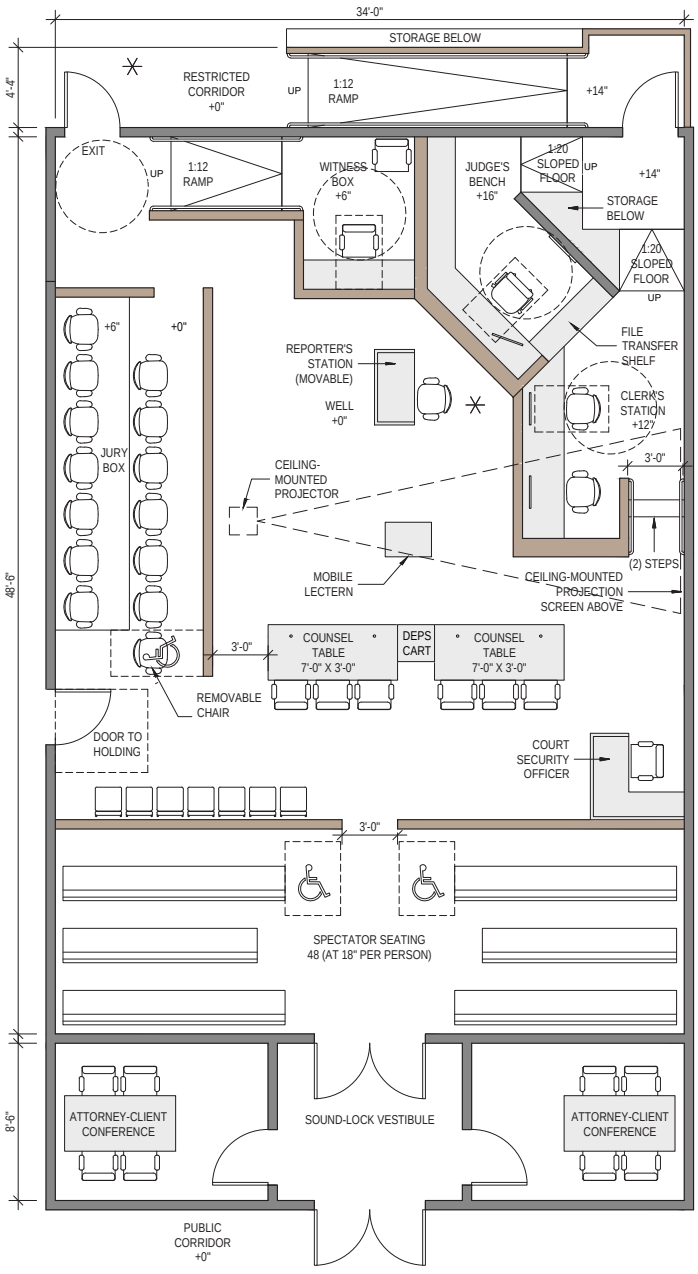
DEPS = digital evidence presentation system.
NA = not applicable.
WC = wheelchairs.

Key Attributes of Courtroom Layout

- Sixty-nine seats for voir dire to provide maximum flexibility for trial use.
- Increase of judge's bench work surface from 6′ to 13′3″ long.
- Increase of work surface return at judge's bench from 10″ to 18″ deep.
- Judge's bench elevated 16″ to minimize need for ramping.
- Multiple locations for sidebar conferences (indicated with ⁎ on schematic, next page).
- Optimal sightlines for all participants.
- Exhibit storage table adjacent to clerk's workstation.
- Stairs to clerk's workstation area, which reduce width of courtroom.
- Adjustable-height work surfaces for judge and clerk.
- Jury box dimensions that are efficient and control courtroom width.

Note:

- A court may adjust the combined ramp pitches from floor level to the bench to retain the bench height of 16″ while lowering the clerk floor height so long as the maximum pitch used does not exceed a 1:12 ratio.



DEPS = digital evidence presentation system.

Figure T2.10 Corner Bench A With Holding Door Flipped

REQUIRED TOOLS

T1 Life Cycle Cost Analysis

T2 CATALOG OF COURTROOM LAYOUTS FOR CALIFORNIA TRIAL COURTS

T2.A Courtroom Layout Overview

T2.B Multipurpose Courtroom Templates

T2.C Courtroom Design Examples

T2.D Holding Core Templates

T3 Integrated Network Architecture

T4 Graphical User Interface Template

T5 In-Custody Interview Room Guidelines

T6 Building Management System Guidelines

T7 Small Courthouse Guidelines

T8 Security Systems Guidelines

Group 3—Center Bench, Wide
Typical Large Trial Courtroom—Center Bench C
Courtroom Component Information

COURTROOM TYPE	SQUARE FEET	SPECTATOR SEATING (18″)	VOIR DIRE
Multipurpose Large Trial	2,200	50+2 WC	78

ELEMENT OR WORKSTATION	FURNITURE/ WIDTH	CASEWORK DEPTH	HEIGHT ABOVE FLOOR	NO. OF OCCUPANTS
Judge	7′9″/6′10″	2′0″/1′6″	+16″	1
Courtroom Clerk	12′0″	2′3″	+10″	2
Court Security Officer	4′0″	2′6″	+0″	1
Court Reporter	4′0″	2′0″	+0″	1
Witness Stand	5′6″	1′7″	+6″	2
Jury Box	NA	NA	(Row 1) +0″ (Row 2) +6″	14
Counsel Tables	8′6″	3′0″	+0″	4 ea.
DEPS Cart	2′0″	2′0″	NA	0
Lectern	2′6″	2′0″	NA	0

DEPS = digital evidence presentation system.
NA = not applicable.
WC = wheelchairs.

Key Attributes of Courtroom Layout

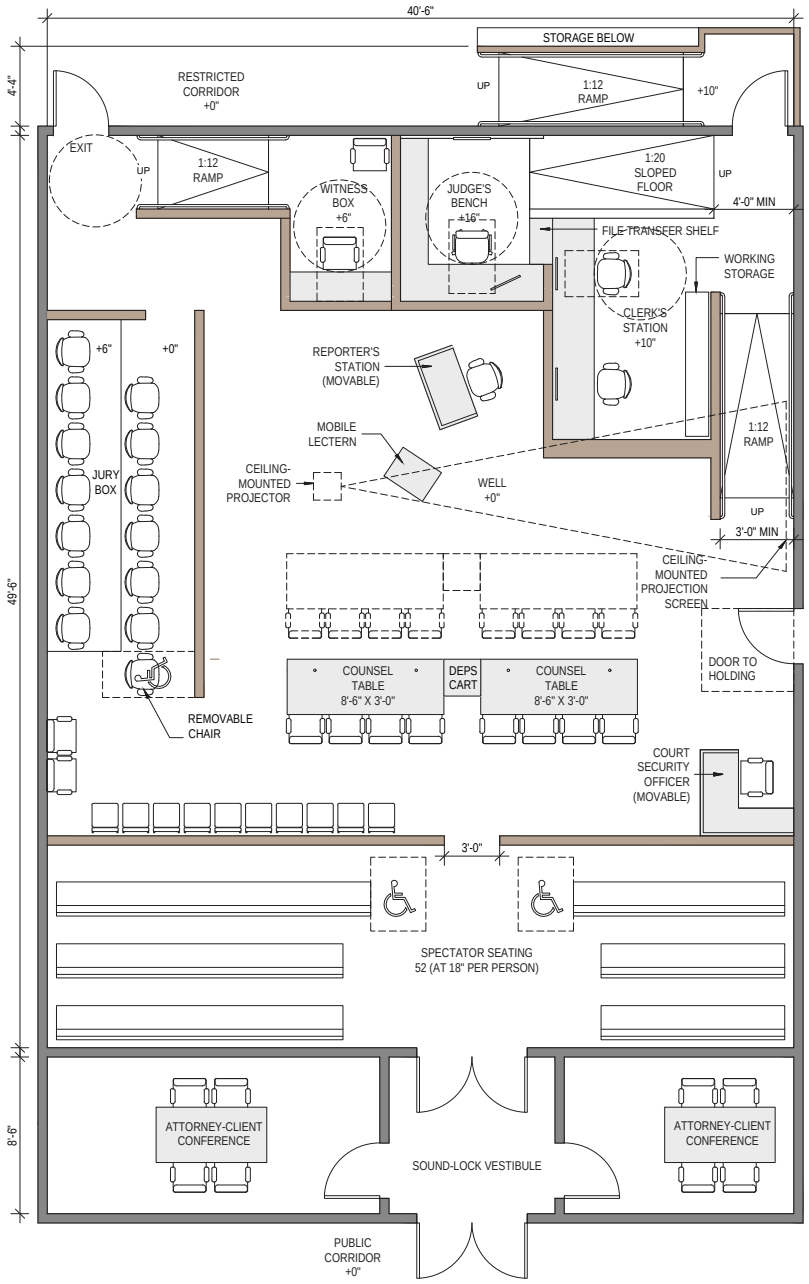
- Seventy-eight seats for voir dire to provide maximum flexibility for trial use.
- Multidefendant capable because of movable well components and increased courtroom width.
- Increase of judge's bench work surface from 6′ to 14′7″ long.
- Increase of work surface return at judge's bench from 10″ to 18″ deep.
- Judge's bench elevated 16″ to minimize need for ramping.
- Multiple locations for sidebar conferences (indicated with * on schematic, next page).
- Optimal sightlines for all participants.
- Exhibit storage table adjacent to clerk's workstation.
- Adjustable-height work surfaces for judge and clerk.
- Clerk's work surface increased from 10′ to 12′ long (two clerks).
- Clerk's storage in workstation area.
- Ramp provided to clerk's workstation area.
- Counsel tables providing four seats at each table.
- Jury box that provides increased room to accommodate individual flat-screen displays, room for jurors when exiting, and two alternative locations for wheelchair locations.

Options provided:

- Alternative court security officer desk and evidence table locations.
- Movable lectern and court reporter's station that facilitate options for adding counsel tables.

Note:

- A court may adjust the combined ramp pitches from floor level to the bench to retain the bench height of 16″ while lowering the clerk floor height so long as the maximum pitch used does not exceed a 1:12 ratio.



DEPS = digital evidence presentation system.

Figure T2.11 Typical Large Trial Courtroom—Center Bench C

REQUIRED TOOLS

T1 Life Cycle Cost Analysis

T2 CATALOG OF COURTROOM LAYOUTS FOR CALIFORNIA TRIAL COURTS

T2.A Courtroom Layout Overview

T2.B Multipurpose Courtroom Templates

T2.C Courtroom Design Examples

T2.D Holding Core Templates

T3 Integrated Network Architecture

T4 Graphical User Interface Template

T5 In-Custody Interview Room Guidelines

T6 Building Management System Guidelines

T7 Small Courthouse Guidelines

T8 Security Systems Guidelines

Typical Large Trial Courtroom—Center Bench D

Courtroom Component Information

COURTROOM TYPE	SQUARE FEET	SPECTATOR SEATING (18″)	VOIR DIRE
Multipurpose Large Trial	2,445	81+4 WC	110

ELEMENT OR WORKSTATION	FURNITURE/ WIDTH	CASEWORK DEPTH	HEIGHT ABOVE FLOOR	NO. OF OCCUPANTS
Judge	7′9″/6′10″	2′0″/1′6″	+16″	1
Courtroom Clerk	12′0″	2′3″	+10″	2
Court Security Officer	4′0″	2′6″	+0″	1
Court Reporter	4′0″	2′0″	+0″	1
Witness Stand	5′6″	1′7″	+6″	2
Jury Box	NA	NA	(Row 1) +0″ (Row 2) +6″	14
Counsel Tables	8′6″	3′0″	+0″	4 ea.
DEPS Cart	2′0″	2′0″	NA	0
Lectern	2′6″	2′0″	NA	0

DEPS = digital evidence presentation system.
NA = not applicable.
WC = wheelchairs.

Key Attributes of Courtroom Layout

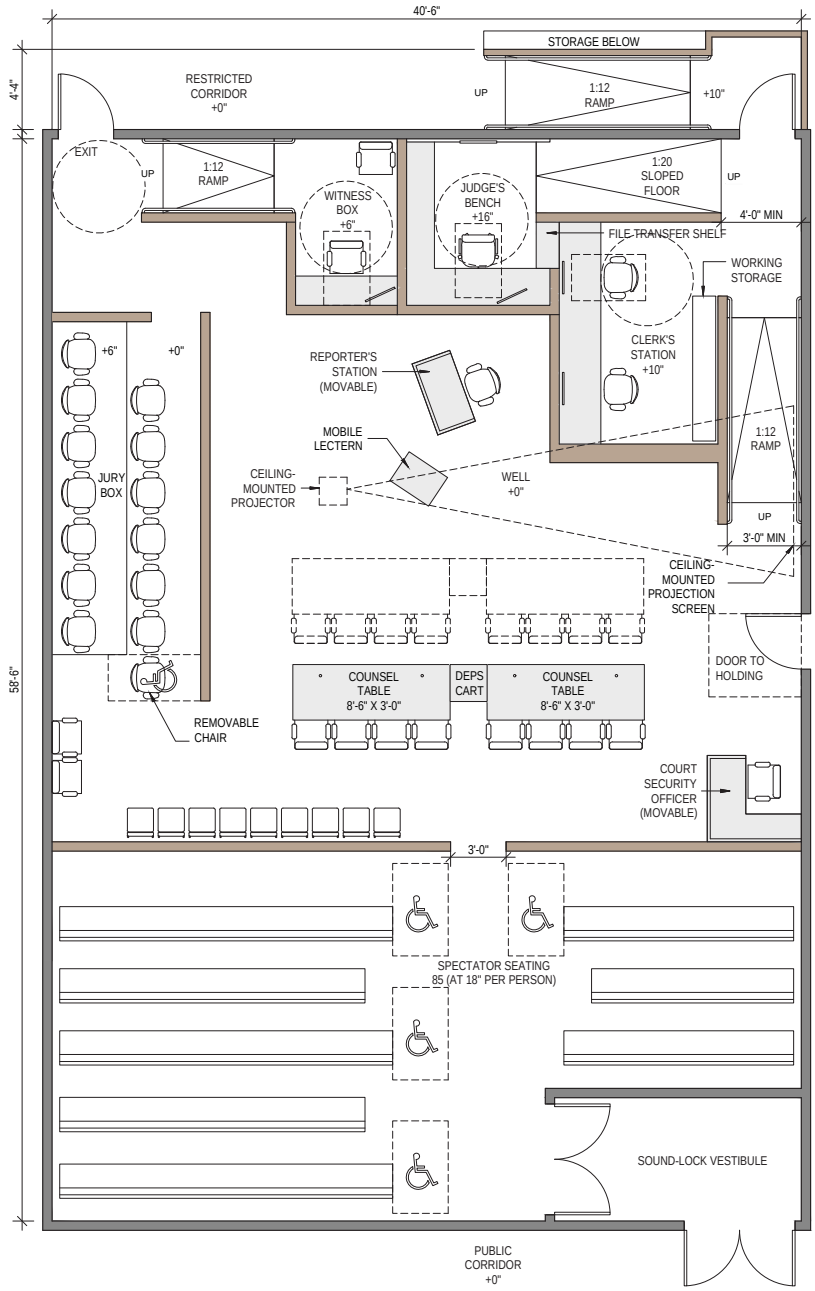
- One hundred ten seats for voir dire to provide maximum flexibility for trial use.
- Multidefendant capable because of movable well components and increased courtroom width.
- Increase of judge's bench work surface from 6′ to 14′7″ long.
- Increase of work surface return at judge's bench from 10″ to 18″ deep.
- Judge's bench elevated 16″ to minimize need for ramping.
- Multiple locations for sidebar conferences (indicated with ⁎ on schematic, next page).
- Optimal sightlines for all participants.
- Exhibit storage table adjacent to clerk's workstation.
- Adjustable-height work surfaces for judge and clerk.
- Clerk's work surface increased from 10′ to 12′ long (two clerks).
- Clerk's storage in workstation area.
- Ramp provided to clerk's workstation area.
- Counsel tables providing four seats at each table.
- Jury box that provides increased room to accommodate individual flat-screen displays, room for jurors when exiting, and two alternative locations for wheelchair locations.
- Spectator seating increased by eliminating attorney-client conference rooms.

Options provided:

- Alternative court security officer desk and evidence table locations.
- Movable lectern and court reporter's station that facilitate options for adding counsel tables.

Note:

- A court may adjust the combined ramp pitches from floor level to the bench to retain the bench height of 16″ while lowering the clerk floor height so long as the maximum pitch used does not exceed a 1:12 ratio.



DEPS = digital evidence presentation system.

Figure T2.12 Typical Large Trial Courtroom—Center Bench D

Page intentionally left blank

T2.C COURTROOM DESIGN EXAMPLES

	TOTAL SQUARE FEET*	TOTAL RATED CAPACITY†	PAGE
San Diego Central Courthouse, Trial Courtroom—Center Bench	1,700	46	T2.30
San Bernardino Justice Center, Trial Courtroom—Corner Bench	1,700	50	T2.32
San Diego Central Courthouse, Large Trial Courtroom—Center Bench	2,100	98	T2.34
San Diego Central Courthouse, Double Jury Courtroom—Center Bench	2,100	64	T2.36
San Bernardino Justice Center, Double Jury Courtroom—Corner Bench	2,400	92	T2.38
San Diego Central Courthouse, Arraignment Courtroom—Center Bench	1,800	98	T2.40
San Diego Central Courthouse, Family Courtroom—Center Bench	1,700	46	T2.42

* Includes ramp in corridor where applicable.

† Wheelchair spaces added to total spectator seating capacity.

REQUIRED TOOLS

T1 Life Cycle Cost Analysis

T2 CATALOG OF COURTROOM LAYOUTS FOR CALIFORNIA TRIAL COURTS

T2.A Courtroom Layout Overview

T2.B Multipurpose Courtroom Templates

T2.C Courtroom Design Examples

T2.D Holding Core Templates

T3 Integrated Network Architecture

T4 Graphical User Interface Template

T5 In-Custody Interview Room Guidelines

T6 Building Management System Guidelines

T7 Small Courthouse Guidelines

T8 Security Systems Guidelines

San Diego Central Courthouse
Trial Courtroom—Center Bench
Courtroom Component Information

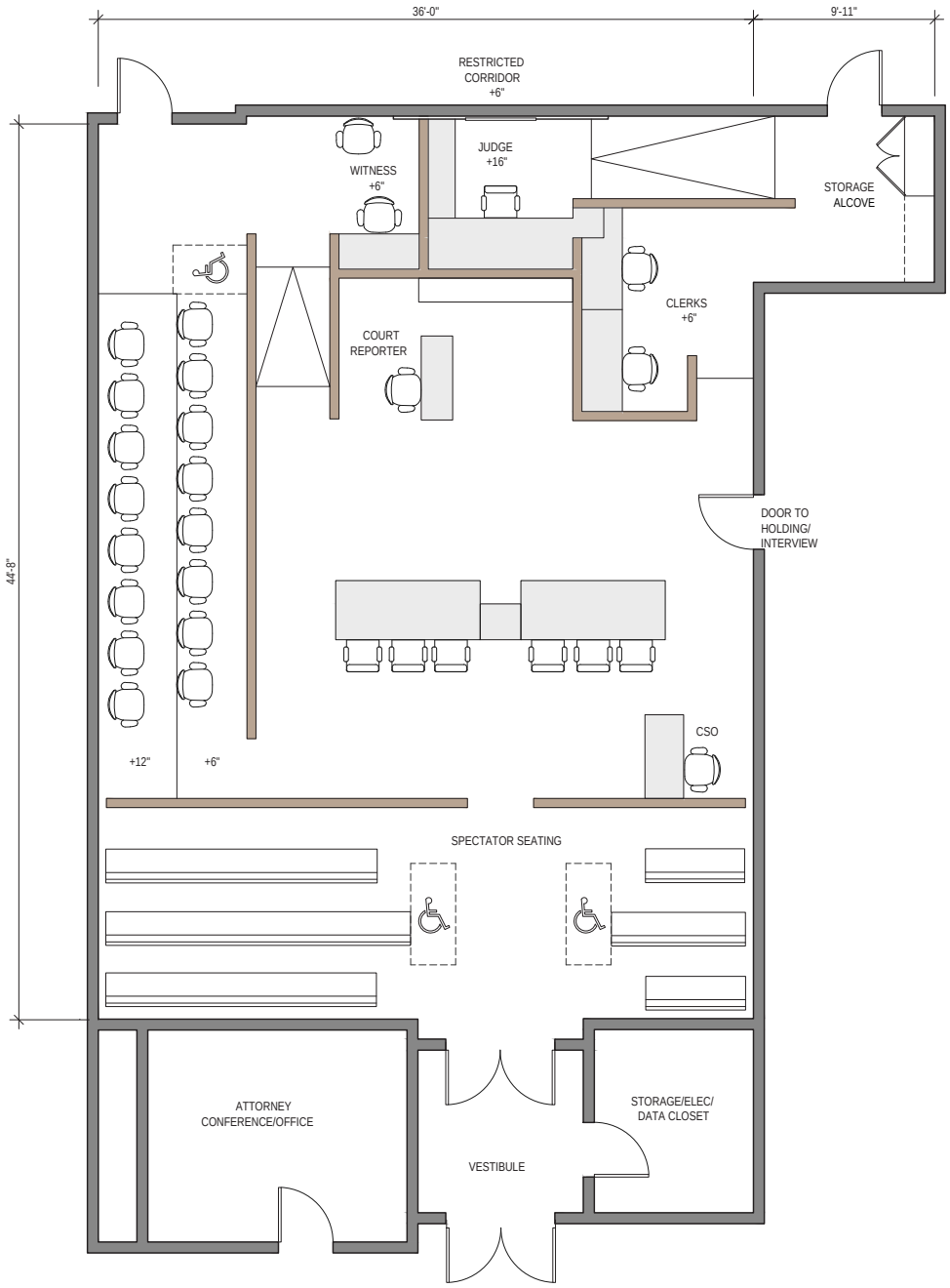
COURTROOM TYPE	TOTAL SQUARE FEET (INCLUDES RAMP IN CORRIDOR)	SPECTATOR SEATING AT 18″
Trial	1700	44+2 WC

ELEMENT OR WORKSTATION	FURNITURE/ WIDTH	CASEWORK DEPTH	HEIGHT ABOVE FLOOR	NO. OF OCCUPANTS
Judge	8′0″/5′0″	2′6″/1′6″	+16″	1
Courtroom Clerk	10′0″	2′2″	-	2
Court Security Officer	4′2″	2′2″	-	1
Court Reporter	4′2″	1′9″	-	1
Witness Stand	4′6″	1′8″	+6″	2
Jury Box	NA	NA	(Row 1) +6″ (Row 2) +12″	16
Counsel Tables	8′0″	3′6″	-	3 ea.
Lectern	2′0″	2′0″	-	-

NA = not applicable.
WC = wheelchairs.

Notes for Future Applications

- Avoid jagged outline to the footprint of the courtroom. Simplify the shape to a rectangular room.
- Avoid jury seats in the jury box located behind counsel tables. All jury seats should be forward of counsel tables.
- Plan for additional chairs to be located forward of the spectator seating gallery.



CSO = court security officer.

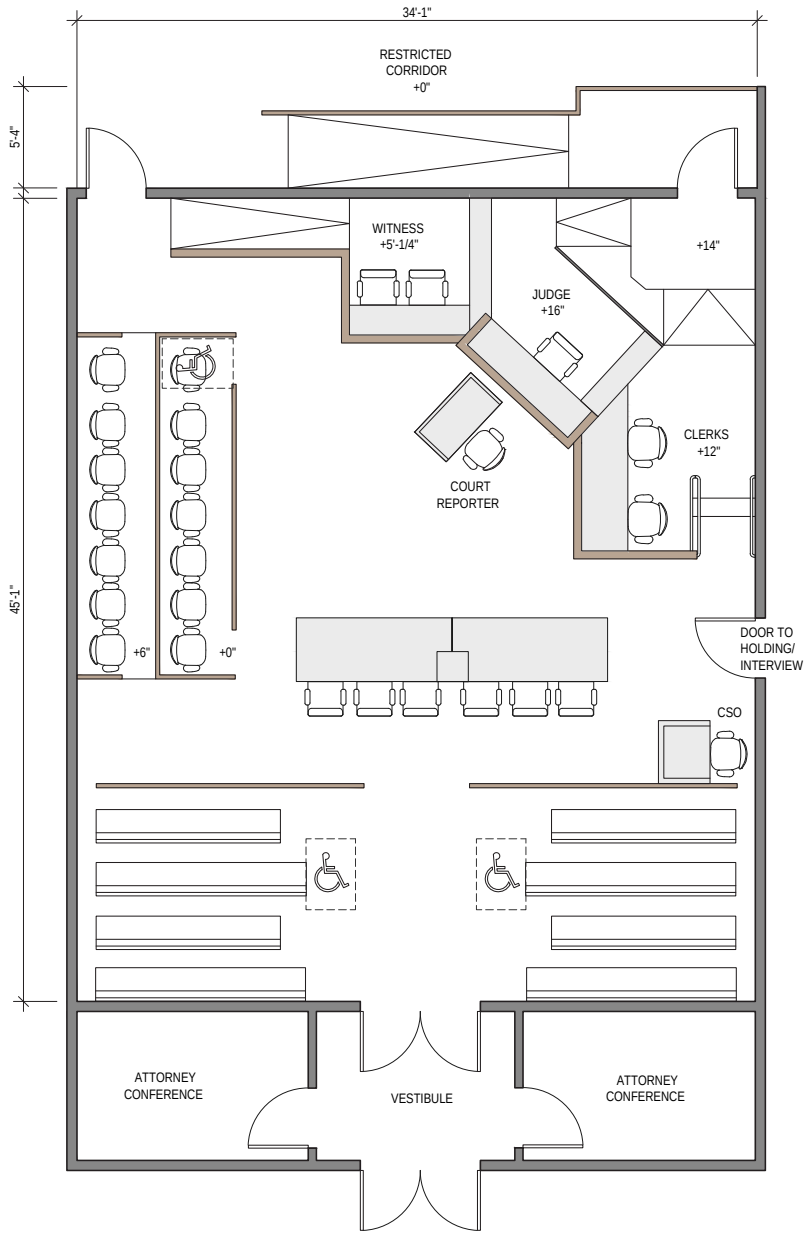
Figure T2.13 San Diego Central Courthouse, Trial Courtroom—Center Bench

San Bernardino Justice Center
Trial Courtroom—Corner Bench
Courtroom Component Information

COURTROOM TYPE	TOTAL SQUARE FEET (INCLUDES RAMP IN CORRIDOR)	SPECTATOR SEATING AT 18″
Trial	1,700	48+2 WC

ELEMENT OR WORKSTATION	FURNITURE/ WIDTH	CASEWORK DEPTH	HEIGHT ABOVE FLOOR	NO. OF OCCUPANTS
Judge	7′0″/4′9″	2′0″/1′2″	+16″	1
Courtroom Clerk	9′0″	2′2″	+12″	2
Court Security Officer	3′0″	2′4″	-	1
Court Reporter	3′9″	2′0″	-	1
Witness Stand	6′4″	1′7″	+5-1/4″	2
Jury Box	NA	NA	(Row 1) +0″ (Row 2) +6″	14
Counsel Tables	7′10″	3′6″	-	3 ea.
Lectern	-	-	-	-

NA = not applicable.
WC = wheelchairs.



CSO = court security officer.

Figure T2.14 San Bernardino Justice Center, Trial Courtroom—Corner Bench

San Diego Central Courthouse
Large Trial Courtroom—Center Bench
Courtroom Component Information

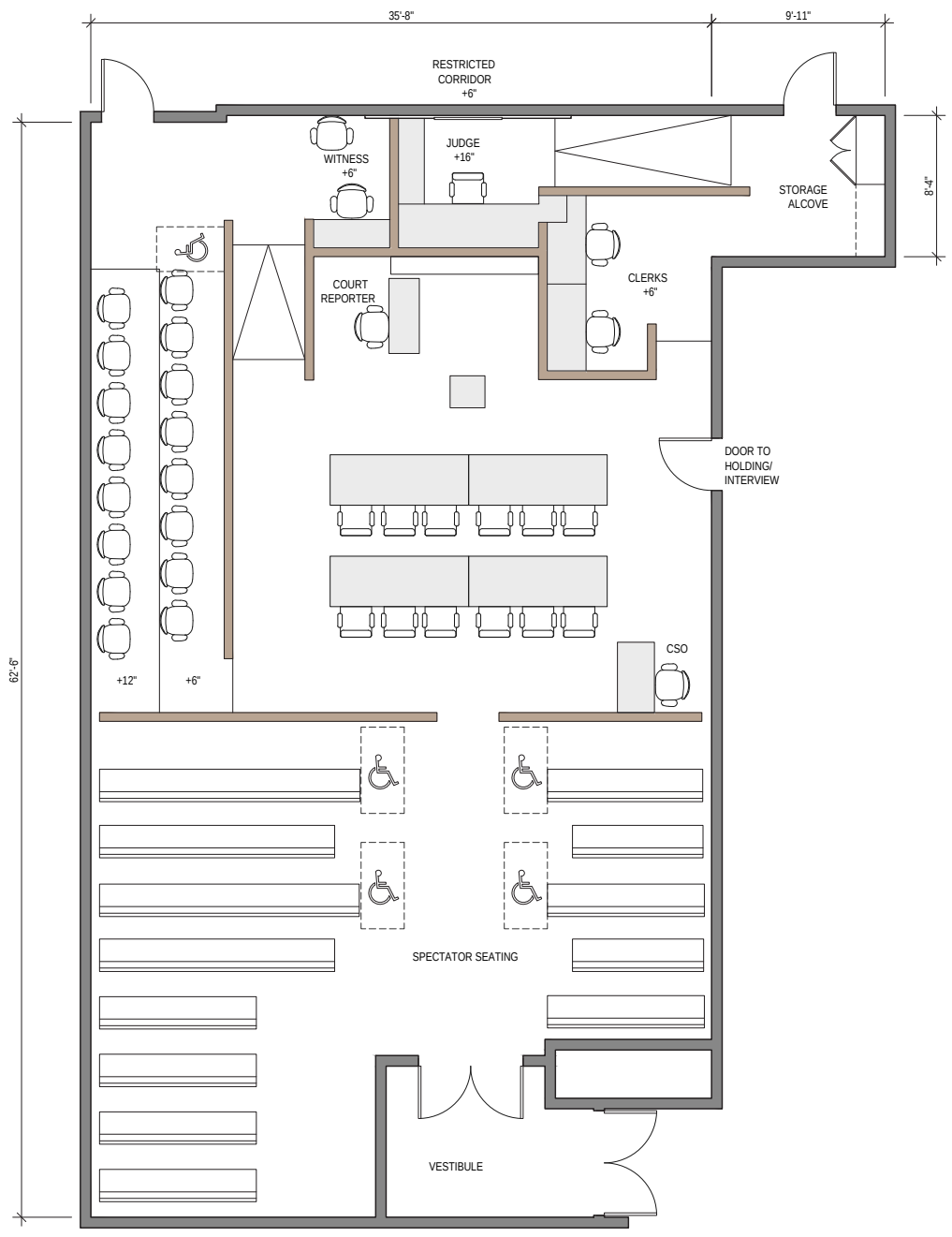
COURTROOM TYPE	TOTAL SQUARE FEET (INCLUDES RAMP IN CORRIDOR)	SPECTATOR SEATING AT 18″
Large Trial	2,100	94+4 WC

ELEMENT OR WORKSTATION	FURNITURE/ WIDTH	CASEWORK DEPTH	HEIGHT ABOVE FLOOR	NO. OF OCCUPANTS
Judge	8′0″/5′0″	2′6″/1′6″	+16″	1
Courtroom Clerk	10′0″	2′2″	+6″	2
Court Security Officer	3′10″	2′2″	-	1
Court Reporter	4′2″	1′9″	-	1
Witness Stand	4′6″	1′8″	+6″	2
Jury Box	NA	NA	(Row 1) +6″ (Row 2) +12″	16
Counsel Tables	8′0″	3′6″	-	3 ea.
Lectern	2′0″	2′0″	-	-

NA = not applicable.
WC = wheelchairs.

Notes for Future Applications

- Avoid jagged outline to the footprint of the courtroom. Simplify the shape to a rectangular room.
- Avoid jury seats in the jury box located behind counsel tables. All jury seats should be forward of counsel tables.
- Plan for additional chairs to be located forward of the spectator seating gallery.
- Maintain clear circulation space next to court security officer desk so that obstructions don’t impede quick response to disturbance in the courtroom.



CSO = court security officer.

Figure T2.15 San Diego Central Courthouse, Large Trial Courtroom—Center Bench

San Diego Central Courthouse
Double Jury Courtroom—Center Bench
Courtroom Component Information

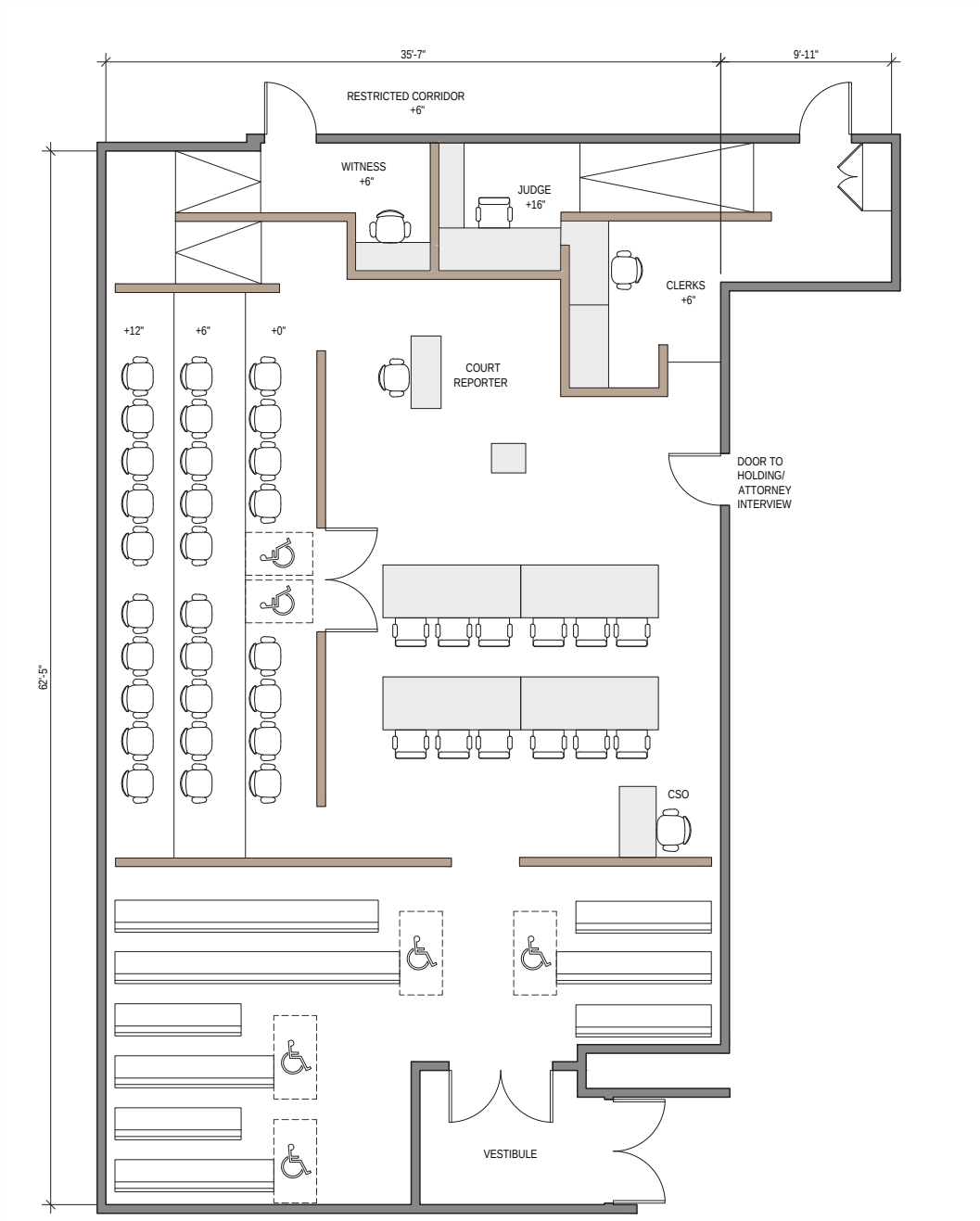
COURTROOM TYPE	TOTAL SQUARE FEET (INCLUDES RAMP IN CORRIDOR)	SPECTATOR SEATING AT 18″
Double Jury	2,100	60+4 WC

ELEMENT OR WORKSTATION	FURNITURE/ WIDTH	CASEWORK DEPTH	HEIGHT ABOVE FLOOR	NO. OF OCCUPANTS
Judge	7′0″/5′0″	2′6″/1′4″	+16″	1
Courtroom Clerk	9′0″	2′2″	+6″	2
Court Security Officer	4′2″	2′2″	-	1
Court Reporter	4′2″	1′9″	-	1
Witness Stand	6′4″	1′8″	+6″	2
Jury Box	NA	NA	(Row 1) +0″ (Row 2) +6″ (Row 3) +12″	28
Counsel Tables	7′0″	3′0″	-	3 ea.
Lectern	-	-	-	-

NA = not applicable.
WC = wheelchairs.

Notes for Future Applications

- Avoid jagged outline to the footprint of the courtroom. Simplify the shape to a rectangular room.
- Avoid jury seats in the jury box located behind counsel tables. All jury seats should be forward of counsel tables.
- Plan for additional chairs to be located forward of the spectator seating gallery.
- Avoid jury box seats that may obstruct sightlines from the bench to spectator seating.
- Provide clear space forward of accessible seats in the jury box.



CSO = court security officer.

Figure T2.16 San Diego Central Courthouse, Double Jury Courtroom—Center Bench

San Bernardino Justice Center
Double Jury Courtroom—Corner Bench
Courtroom Component Information

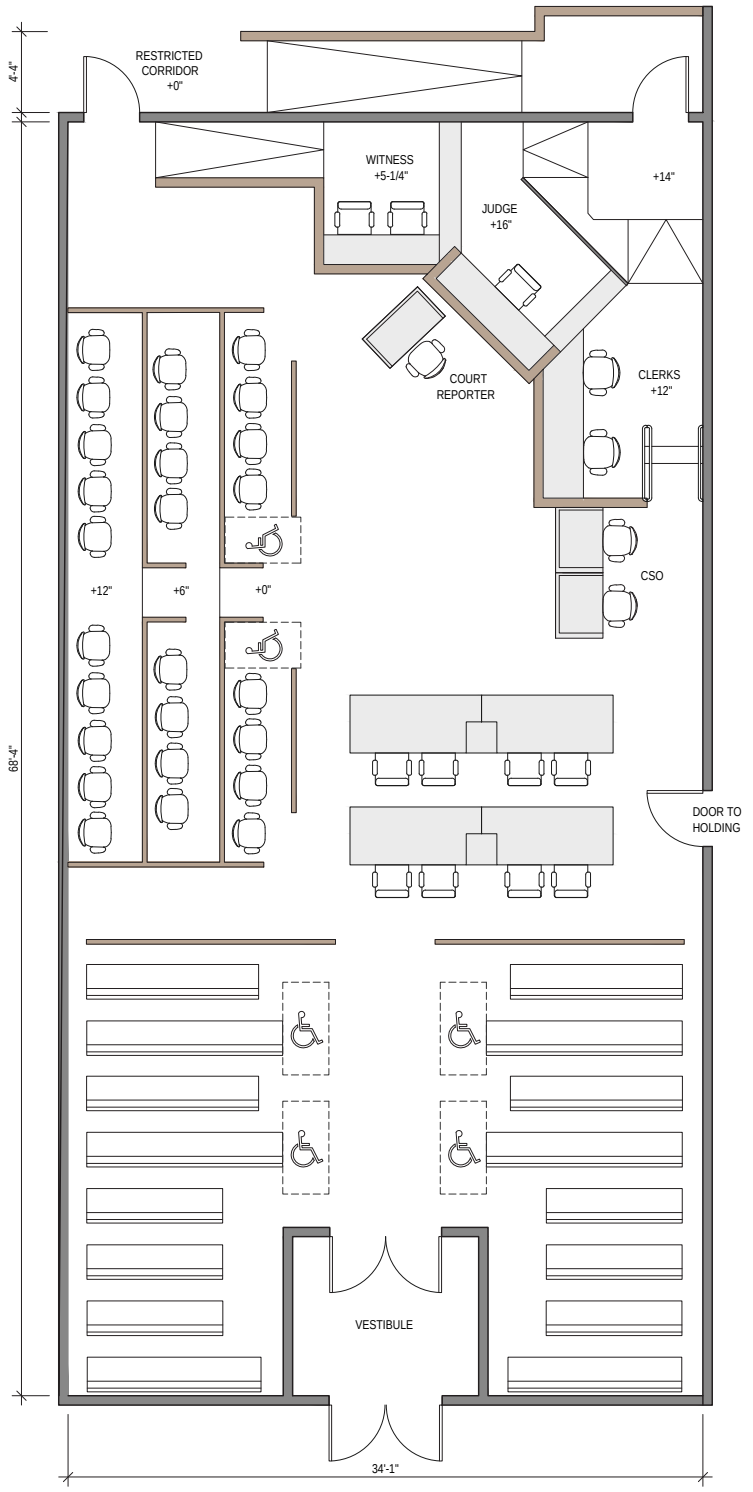
COURTROOM TYPE	TOTAL SQUARE FEET (INCLUDES RAMP IN CORRIDOR)	SPECTATOR SEATING AT 18″
Double Jury	2,400	88+4 WC

ELEMENT OR WORKSTATION	FURNITURE/ WIDTH	CASEWORK DEPTH	HEIGHT ABOVE FLOOR	NO. OF OCCUPANTS
Judge	7′0″/4′9″	2′0″/1′2″	+16″	1
Courtroom Clerk	9′0″	2′2″	+12″	2
Court Security Officer	7′0″	2′4″	-	2
Court Reporter	4′3″	2′0″	-	1
Witness Stand	6′4″	1′7″	+5-1/4″	2
Jury Box	NA	NA	(Row 1) +0″ (Row 2) +6″ (Row 3) +12″	26
Counsel Tables	7′0″	3′0″	-	2 ea.
Lectern	-	-	-	-

NA = not applicable.
WC = wheelchairs.

Notes for Future Applications

- Avoid long, narrow courtroom.
- Avoid jury seats in the jury box located behind counsel tables. All jury seats should be forward of counsel tables.
- Plan for additional chairs to be located forward of the spectator seating gallery.
- Avoid jury box seats that may obstruct sightlines from the bench to spectator seating.
- Provide sightlines from the bench to all the seats in the spectator gallery.
- Locate court security officer closer to the gallery.



CSO = court security officer.

Figure T2.17 San Bernardino Justice Center, Double Jury Courtroom—Corner Bench

San Diego Central Courthouse
Arraignment Courtroom—Center Bench
Courtroom Component Information

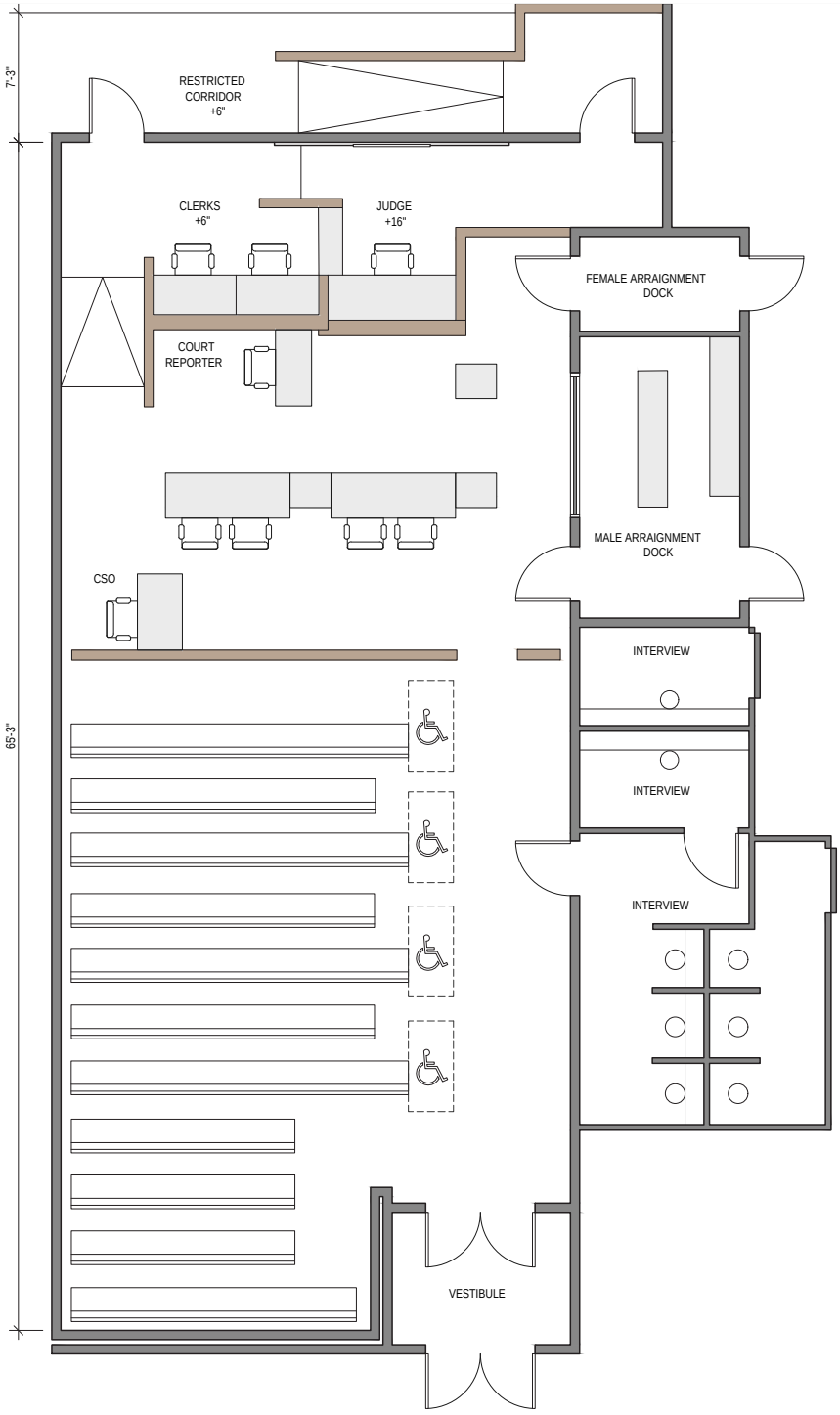
COURTROOM TYPE	TOTAL SQUARE FEET (INCLUDES RAMP IN CORRIDOR)	SPECTATOR SEATING AT 18″
Arraignment Courtroom	1,800	94+4 WC

ELEMENT OR WORKSTATION	FURNITURE/ WIDTH	CASEWORK DEPTH	HEIGHT ABOVE FLOOR	NO. OF OCCUPANTS
Judge	6′0″/3′8″	2′6″/1′3″	+16″	1
Courtroom Clerk	8′2″	2′6″	+6″	2
Court Security Officer	4′2″	2′2″	-	1
Court Reporter	4′2″	1′9″	-	1
Witness Stand	NA		NA	
Jury Box	NA	NA	NA	NA
Counsel Tables	6′0″	3′0″	-	2 ea.
Lectern	2′6″	2′0″	-	-

NA = not applicable.
WC = wheelchairs.

Notes for Future Applications

- Avoid jagged outline to the footprint of the courtroom. Simplify the shape to a rectangular room.
- Use the layout requirements for attorney-client interview rooms provided in tool 5, In-Custody Interview Room Guidelines.
- Avoid long, narrow courtroom.
- Plan for additional chairs to be located forward of the spectator seating gallery.
- Locate door to arraignment dock forward of counsel table.
- Provide sightlines from the bench to all the seats in the spectator gallery.



CSO = court security officer.

Figure T2.18 San Diego Central Courthouse, Arraignment Courtroom—Center Bench

San Diego Central Courthouse
Family Courtroom—Center Bench
Courtroom Component Information

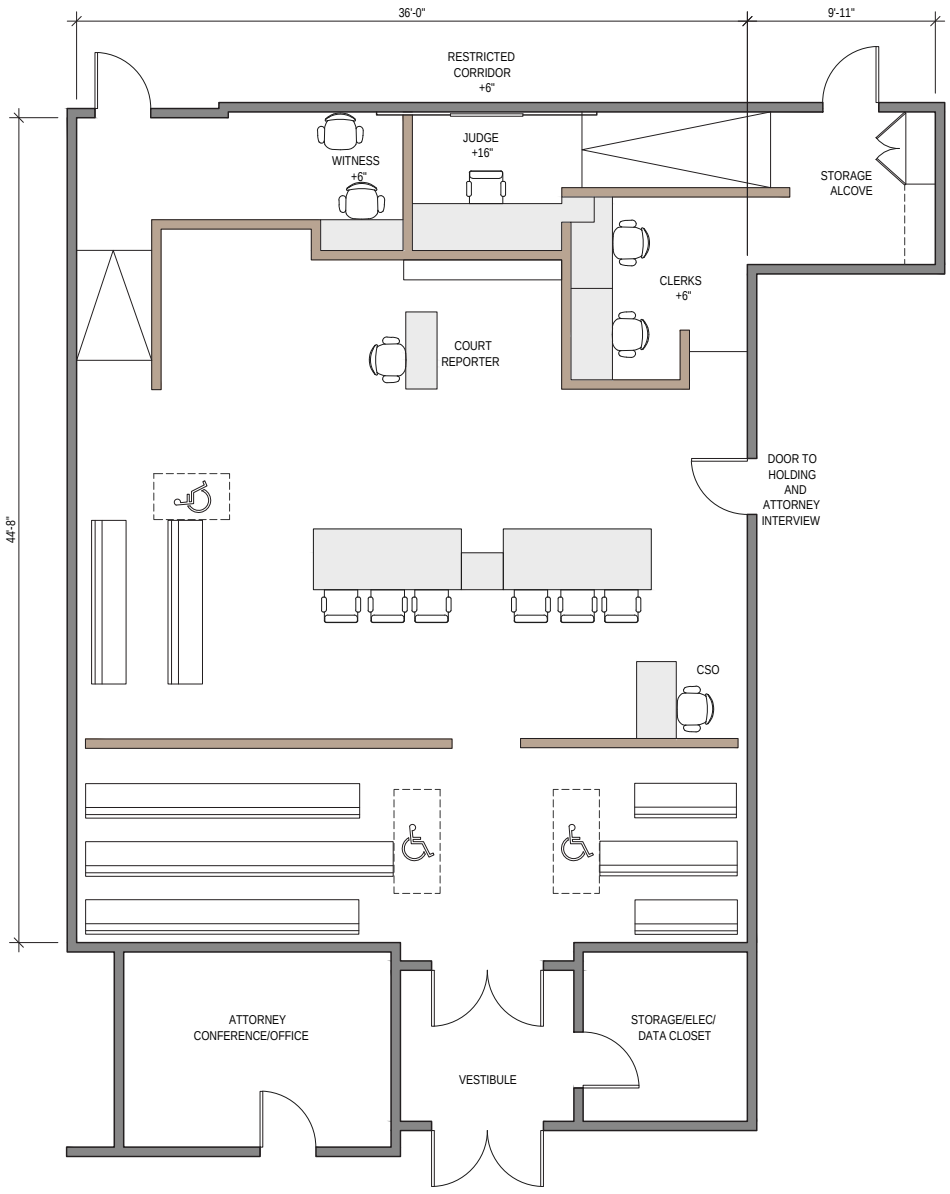
COURTROOM TYPE	TOTAL SQUARE FEET (INCLUDES RAMP IN CORRIDOR)	SPECTATOR SEATING AT 18″
Family	1,700	44+2 WC

ELEMENT OR WORKSTATION	FURNITURE/ WIDTH	CASEWORK DEPTH	HEIGHT ABOVE FLOOR	NO. OF OCCUPANTS
Judge	8′0″	2′6″	+16″	1
Courtroom Clerk	10′0″	2′2″	+6″	2
Court Security Officer	4′2″	2′2″	-	1
Court Reporter	4′2″	1′9″	-	1
Witness Stand	4′6″	1′8″	+6″	2
Jury Box	NA	NA	NA	NA
Counsel Tables	8′0″	3′0″	-	3 ea.
Lectern	2′0″	2′0″	-	-

NA = not applicable.
WC = wheelchairs.

Notes for Future Applications

- Avoid jagged outline to the footprint of the courtroom. Simplify the shape to a rectangular room.
- Plan for additional chairs to be located forward of the spectator seating gallery.



CSO = court security officer.

Figure T2.19 San Diego Central Courthouse, Family Courtroom—Center Bench

Page intentionally left blank

T2.D HOLDING CORE TEMPLATES

	TOTAL SQUARE FEET	TOTAL RATED CAPACITY	PAGE
Typical Holding Core—8″ CMU Walls	709	7	T2.46
Typical Holding Core—6″ CMU Walls	690	7	T2.47
Typical Holding Core—6″ CMU Walls and 2″ Metal Panel Walls at Holding	672	7	T2.48

CMU = concrete masonry unit.

REQUIRED TOOLS

T1 Life Cycle Cost Analysis

T2 CATALOG OF COURTROOM LAYOUTS FOR CALIFORNIA TRIAL COURTS

T2.A Courtroom Layout Overview

T2.B Multipurpose Courtroom Templates

T2.C Courtroom Design Examples

T2.D Holding Core Templates

T3 Integrated Network Architecture

T4 Graphical User Interface Template

T5 In-Custody Interview Room Guidelines

T6 Building Management System Guidelines

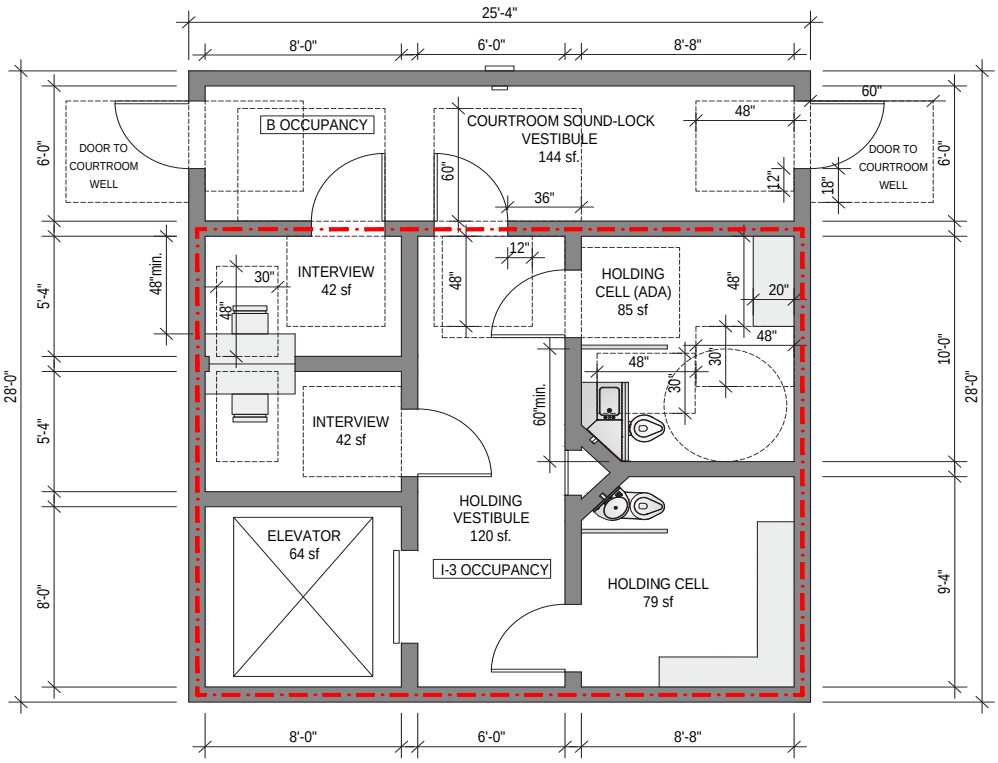
T7 Small Courthouse Guidelines

T8 Security Systems Guidelines

Typical Holding Core—8″ CMU Walls

Holding Core Information

TOTAL SQUARE FEET	TOTAL RATED CAPACITY	TOTAL CELL COUNT
709	7	2

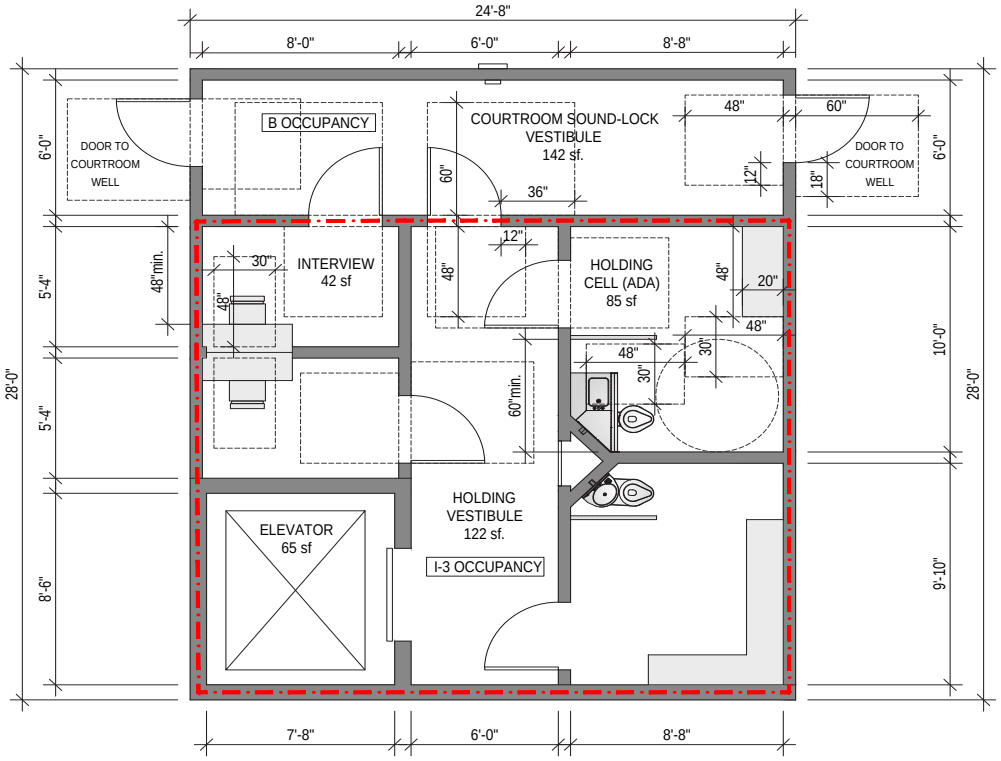


Note: The red line indicates rated wall boundary for institutional occupancy separation.
ADA = Americans with Disabilities Act.
CMU = concrete masonry unit.
sf = square feet.

Figure T2.20 Typical Holding Core—8″ CMU Walls

Typical Holding Core—6″ CMU Walls
Holding Core Information

TOTAL SQUARE FEET	TOTAL RATED CAPACITY	TOTAL CELL COUNT
690	7	2



Note: The red line indicates rated wall boundary for institutional occupancy separation.
ADA = Americans with Disabilities Act.
CMU = concrete masonry unit.
sf = square feet.

Figure T2.21 Typical Holding Core—6″ CMU Walls

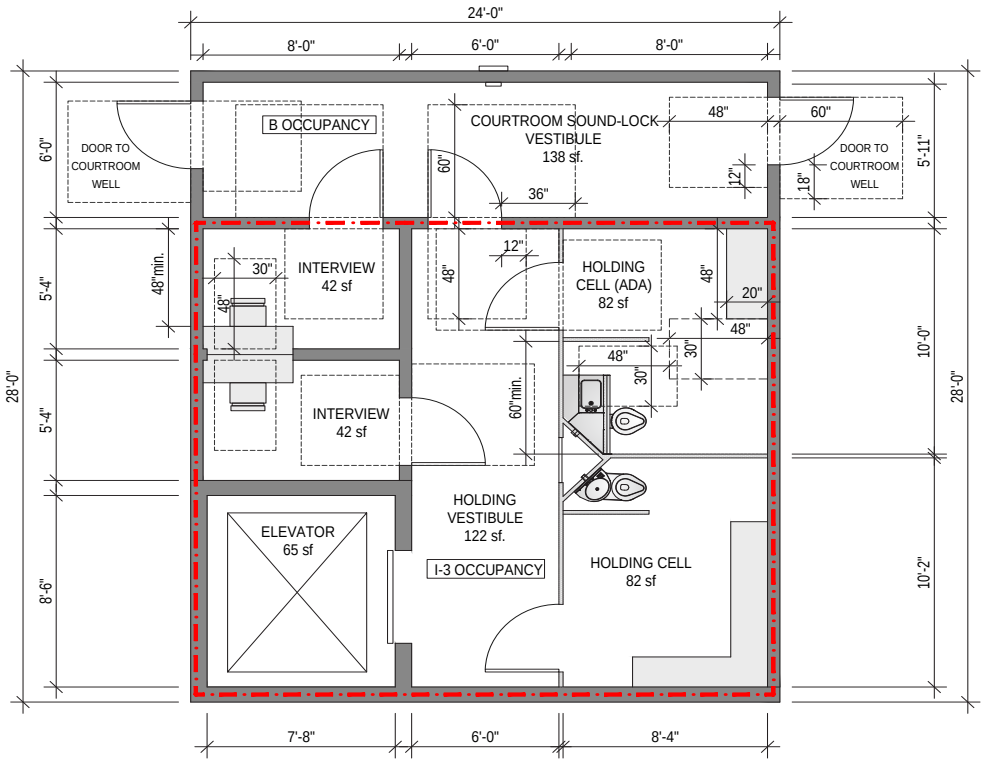
REQUIRED TOOLS

T1 Life Cycle Cost Analysis
T2 CATALOG OF COURTROOM LAYOUTS FOR CALIFORNIA TRIAL COURTS
T2.A Courtroom Layout Overview
T2.B Multipurpose Courtroom Templates
T2.C Courtroom Design Examples
T2.D Holding Core Templates
T3 Integrated Network Architecture
T4 Graphical User Interface Template
T5 In-Custody Interview Room Guidelines
T6 Building Management System Guidelines
T7 Small Courthouse Guidelines
T8 Security Systems Guidelines

Typical Holding Core—6″ CMU Walls and 2″ Metal Panel Walls at Holding

Holding Core Information

TOTAL SQUARE FEET	TOTAL RATED CAPACITY	TOTAL CELL COUNT
672	7	2

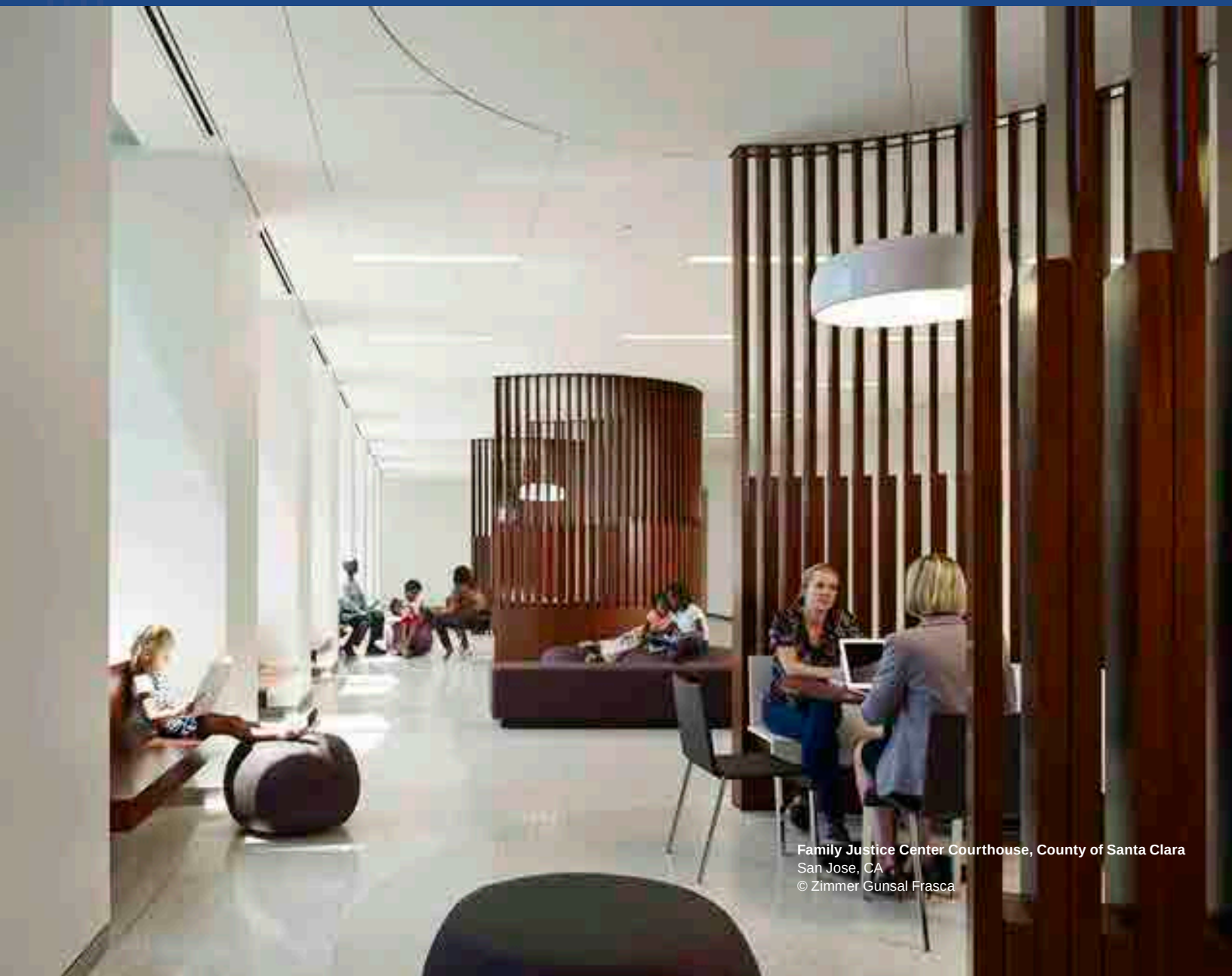


Note: The red line indicates rated wall boundary for institutional occupancy separation.
ADA = Americans with Disabilities Act.
CMU = concrete masonry unit.
sf = square feet.

Figure T2.22 Typical Holding Core—6″ CMU Walls and 2″ Metal Panel Walls at Holding

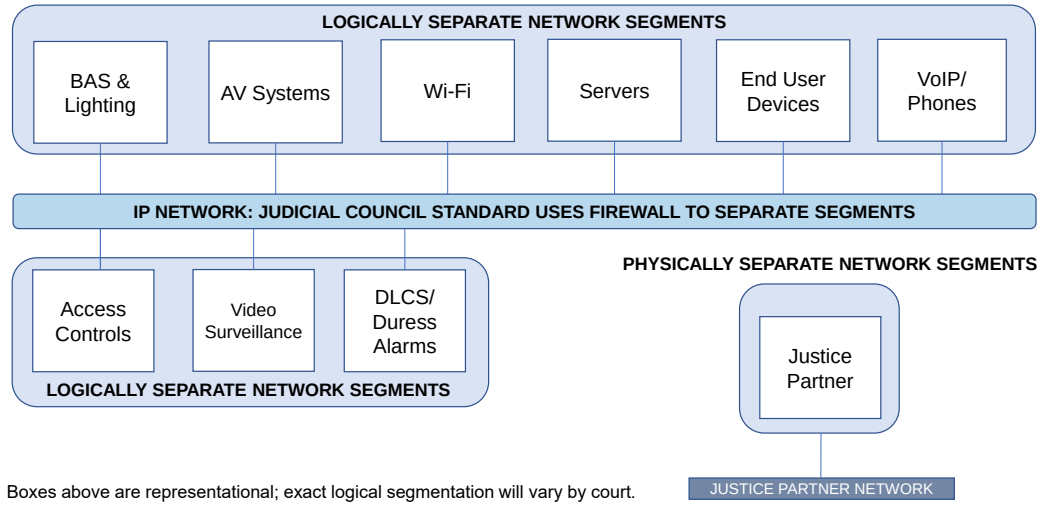
REQUIRED TOOLS

INTEGRATED NETWORK ARCHITECTURE



Family Justice Center Courthouse, County of Santa Clara
San Jose, CA
© Zimmer Gunsal Frasca

Page intentionally left blank



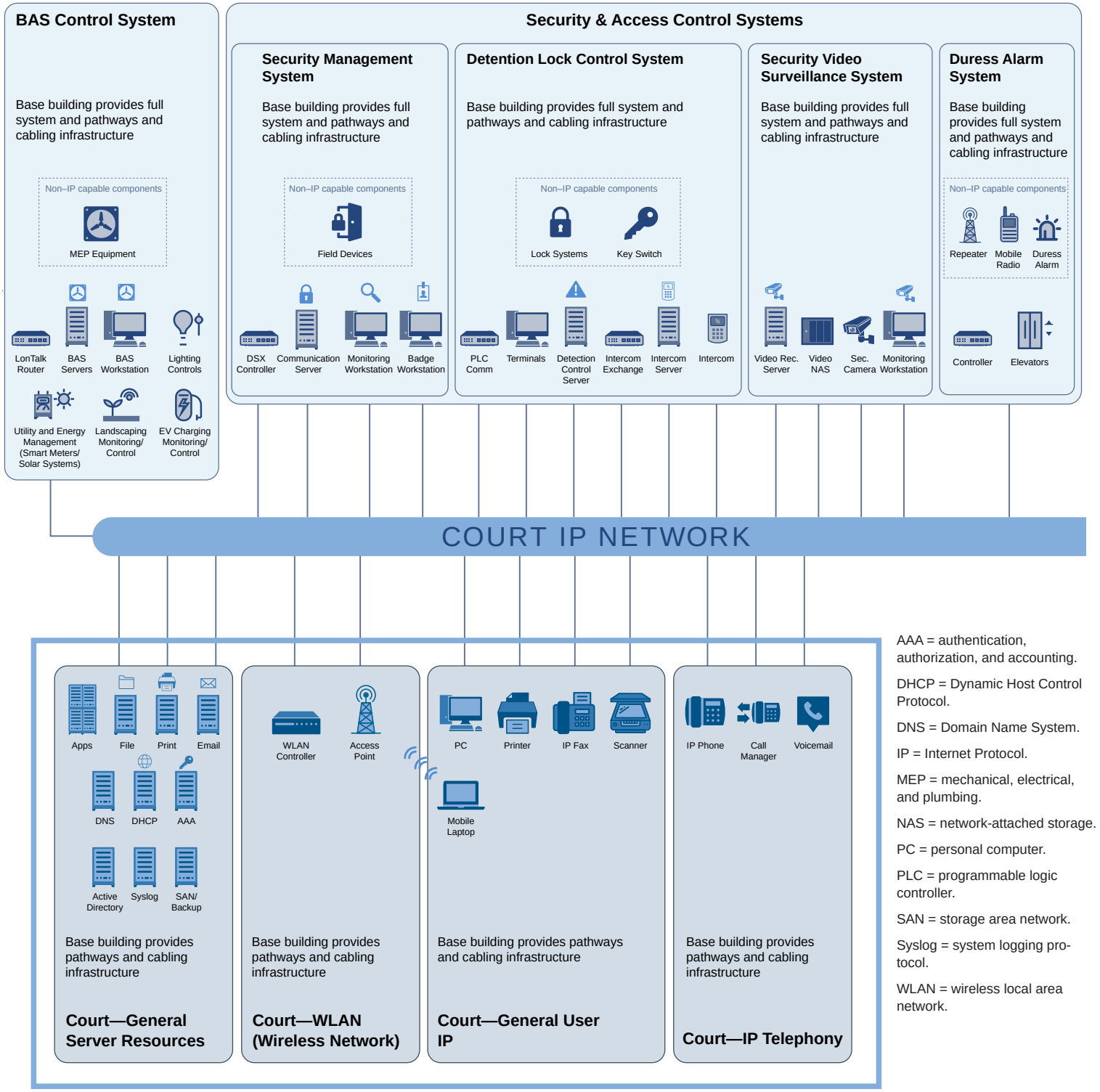
AV = audiovisual.

BAS = building automation system.

DLCS = detention lock control system.

VoIP = Voice over Internet Protocol.

Figure T3.1 Overview of Integrated Network Architecture



AAA = authentication, authorization, and accounting.

DHCP = Dynamic Host Control Protocol.

DNS = Domain Name System.

IP = Internet Protocol.

MEP = mechanical, electrical, and plumbing.

NAS = network-attached storage.

PC = personal computer.

PLC = programmable logic controller.

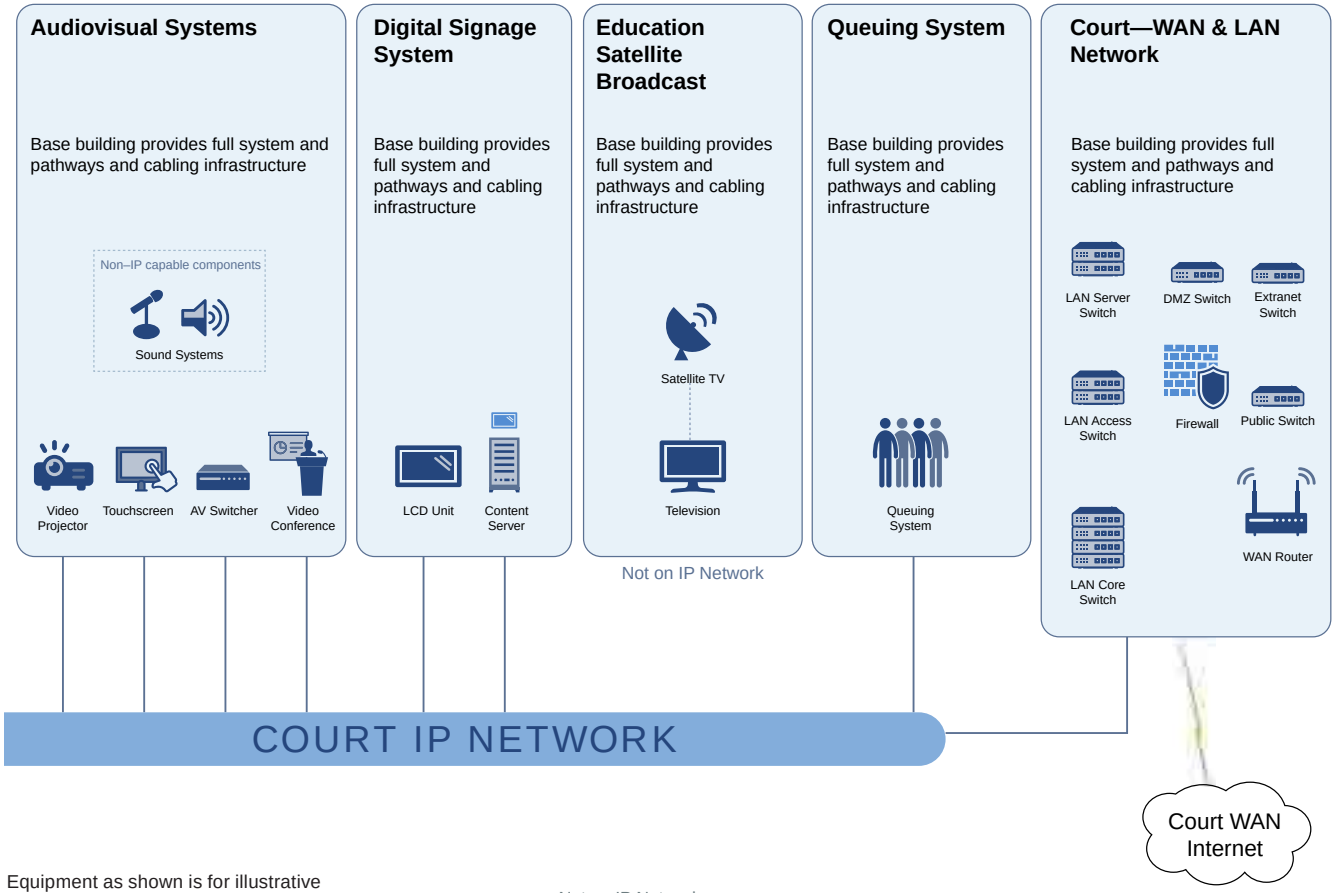
SAN = storage area network.

Syslog = system logging protocol.

WLAN = wireless local area network.

Figure T3.2 Integrated Network Architecture by Systems

Figure T3.2 continues on next page



Equipment as shown is for illustrative purposes only.

This diagram does not indicate exact type and number of devices needed for each system.

This diagram does not show exact interconnections between system devices.

DMZ = demilitarized zone.

LCD = liquid crystal display.

WAN = wide area network.

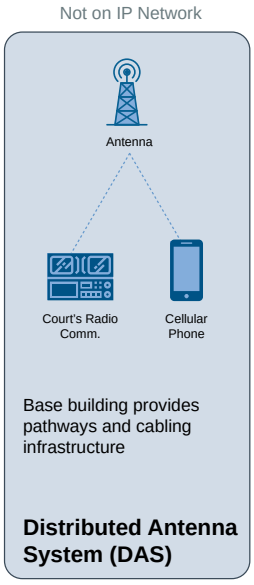


Figure T3.2 Integrated Network Architecture by Systems *continued*

T4

REQUIRED TOOLS

GRAPHICAL USER INTERFACE TEMPLATE

SECTION	TOPIC	PAGE
T4.A	Introduction	T4.2
T4.B	Page Descriptions	T4.2



Superior Court of California, County of Sonoma
Santa Rosa, CA
© Tim Griffith

T4.A INTRODUCTION

The graphical user interface (GUI) template is provided as a starting point for the design of the courtroom touchscreen control panel located at either the judge's, clerk's, or bailiff's desk. It must be customized based on the specific capabilities and layout of each courtroom. Control panels for ancillary spaces should follow the same general layout as much as possible. The following pages describe the step-by-step instructions to design and use the template.

T4.B PAGE DESCRIPTIONS

Startup Page

If the page in figure T4.1 is visible, then the audiovisual (AV) system is off. Tap the screen to start the system.

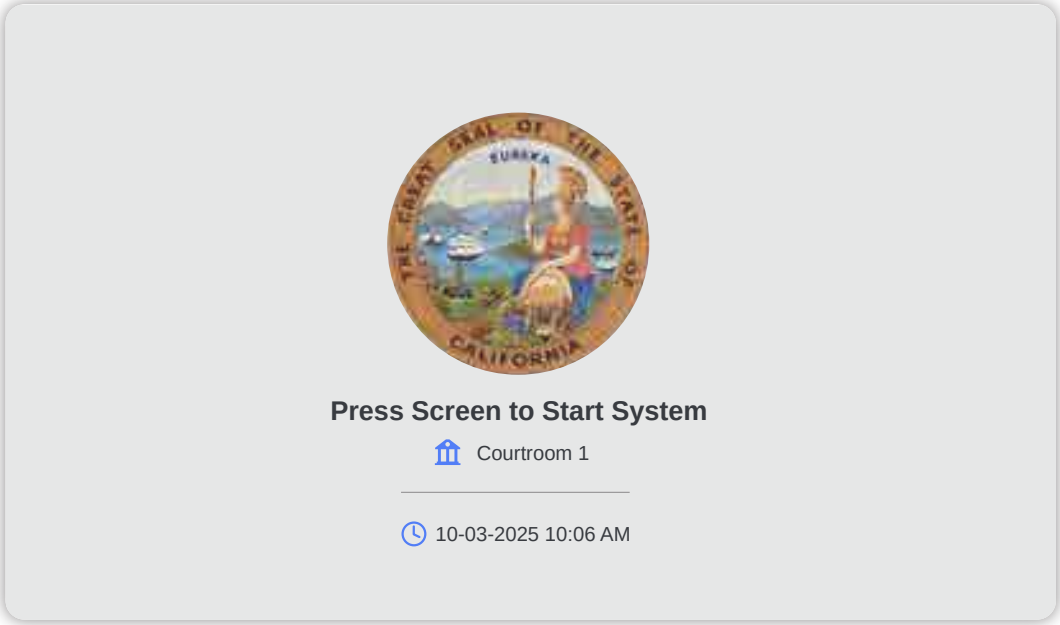


Figure T4.1 Audiovisual System Startup Page

Audio Video Page

At the top of the resulting page—the simplified Audio Video page (figure T4.2)—is a ribbon of all the page views. On the ribbon, tap the tab of the page you wish to view.

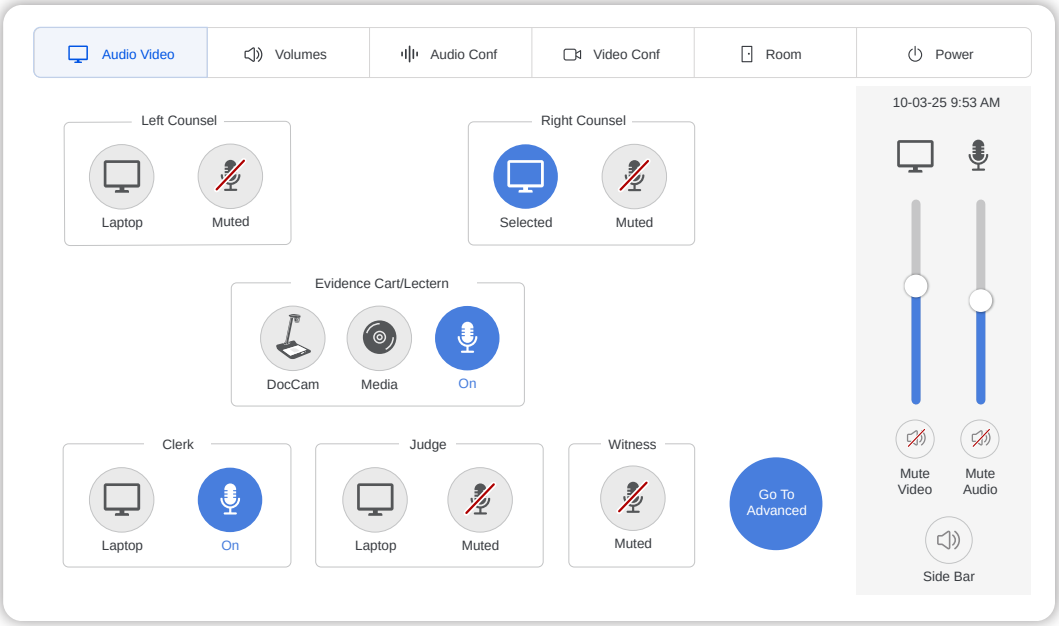
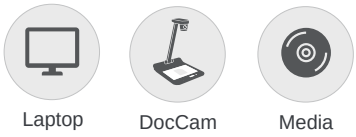


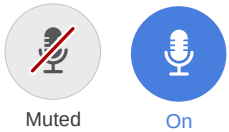
Figure T4.2 Simplified Audio Video

On the Audio Video page, tap the applicable Laptop, DocCam, or Media button to connect the device at the indicated location to the display system. For example, figure T4.2 shows the laptop in the Right Counsel group as Selected, which means it is connected to the display system. To switch to the judge's laptop, tap the Laptop button in the Judge group.

Tapping any display button (see icons below) also turns on the courtroom projector and lowers the projection screen.



The Audio Video page also shows whether a microphone is on or off. The microphone button toggles between On and Muted. For example, figure T4.2 shows that the microphones at the lectern and clerk's desk are on. Tap the Muted button to turn a microphone on and the On button to turn it off. On this simplified page, the microphone buttons in the Left Counsel or Right Counsel group, when tapped, mute and unmute both of the two microphones in those areas. To control them separately, see figure T4.3.



REQUIRED TOOLS

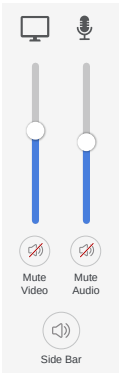
T1 Life Cycle Cost Analysis
T2 Catalog of Courtroom Layouts for California Trial Courts
T3 Integrated Network Architecture
T4 GRAPHICAL USER INTERFACE TEMPLATE
T4.A Introduction
T4.B Page Descriptions
T5 In-Custody Interview Room Guidelines
T6 Building Management System Guidelines

Tapping the Go to Advanced button toggles from the simplified page to the advanced page.



The next set of buttons appears on every page of the AV system.

- The two volume sliders control either the laptop volume or the master microphone volume.
- The Mute Video button mutes all video and Mute Audio mutes all audio.
- The Side Bar button turns on pink noise, mutes all microphones, and sends audio from the sidebar to the court reporter. A pop-up window volume control allows the volume of the pink noise to be adjusted.



The advanced Audio Video page (figure T4.3) differs, in part, from the simplified page in that it has buttons for each of the two counsel microphones on each table (rather than one button for both), along with buttons that control arraignment dock and holding cell speakers, if available.

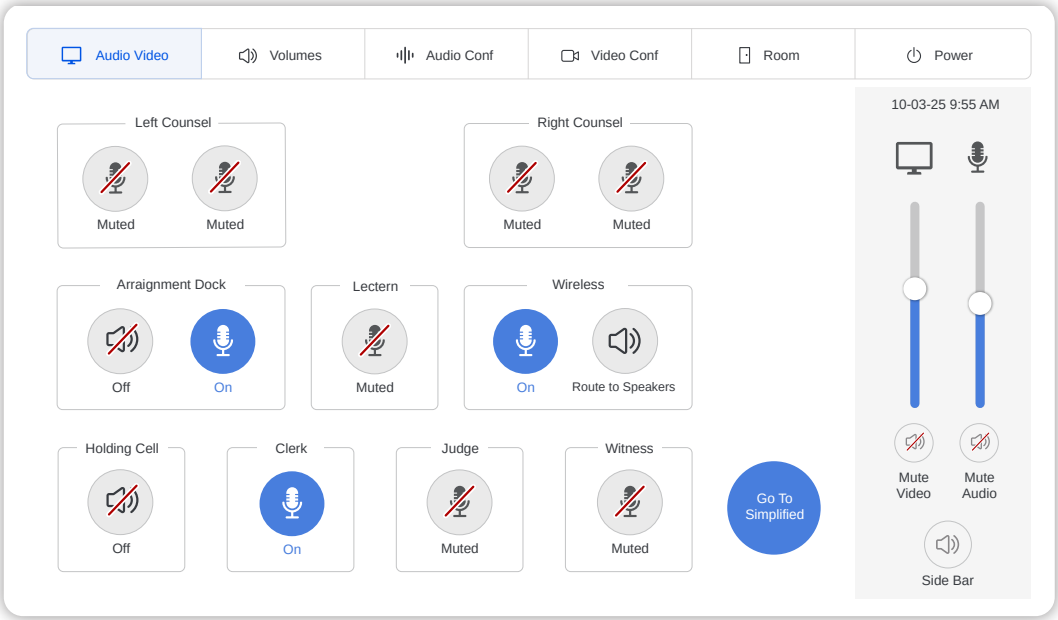
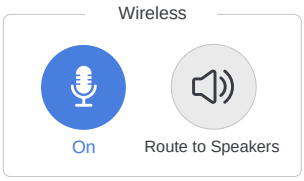


Figure T4.3 Advanced Audio Video Page

Another feature of the advanced page is the Wireless group, with buttons that control the wireless microphone. The default is to have the wireless microphone routed to the ceiling speakers. If the Route to Speakers button is tapped, the wireless microphone is routed to the infrared (IR) headsets in the courtroom. If a language interpreter is in the room, the interpreter can use the wireless microphone to translate what is being said in the courtroom directly to anyone wearing a wireless headset.



Tapping the Go to Simplified button toggles the page back from the advanced to the simplified Audio Video page.



REQUIRED TOOLS

T1 Life Cycle Cost Analysis
T2 Catalog of Courtroom Layouts for California Trial Courts
T3 Integrated Network Architecture
T4 GRAPHICAL USER INTERFACE TEMPLATE
T4.A Introduction
T4.B Page Descriptions
T5 In-Custody Interview Room Guidelines
T6 Building Management System Guidelines

Volumes Page

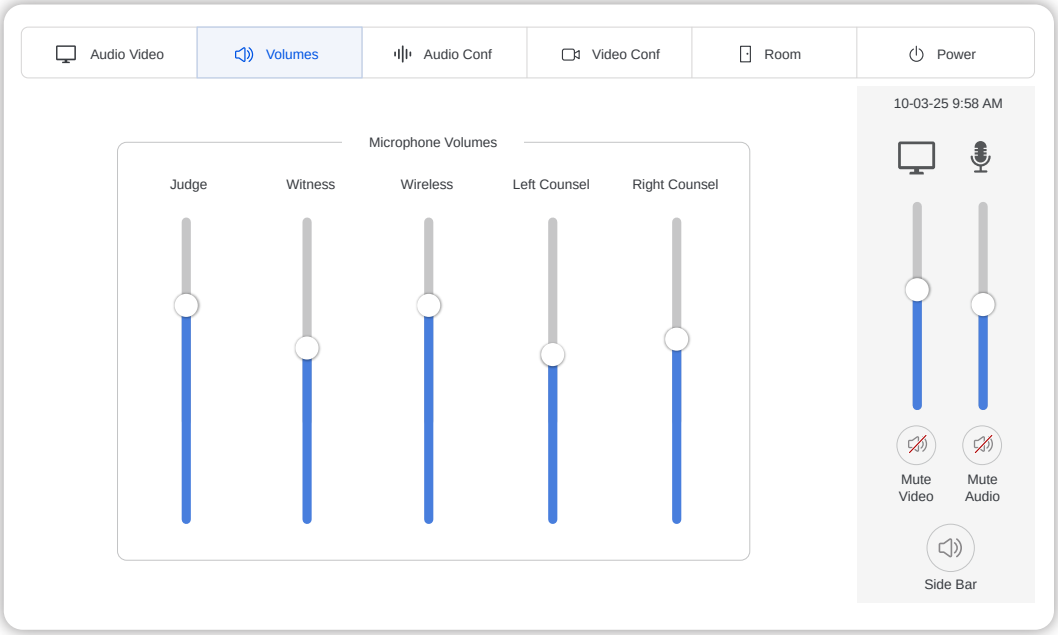


Figure T4.4 Volumes Page

The Volumes page has slider volume controls for each courtroom microphone.

Audio Conf Page

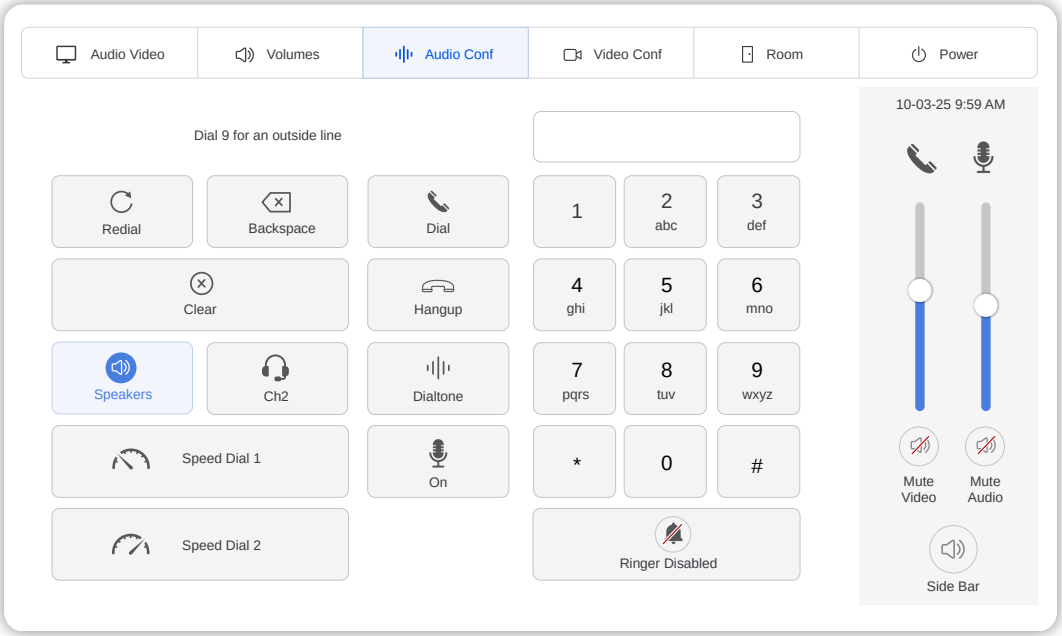


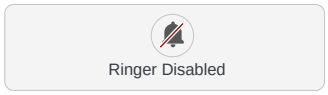
Figure T4.5 Audio Conf Page

The Audio Conf page allows audio telephone calls with the microphones and speakers already used for amplification within the courtroom. Calls can be placed either by tapping the Dialtone button first or by entering the number and then tapping the Dial button. The volume control then adjusts the volume of the received telephone audio. The page can display the court's phone number and a message saying "Dial 9 for an outside line."

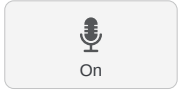
The Speakers and Ch 2 buttons control the routing of the telephone audio feed. The default is to the ceiling speakers. If the language translator has been called on the telephone, the translator can hear what is being said in the courtroom and translate it for anyone who is wearing a wireless IR headset. If the Speakers button is blue, the system is set to the default, routing the telephone audio feed to the ceiling speakers. If the Ch 2 button is tapped, the blue Speakers button toggles to black and the Ch 2 button turns blue, changing the feed to channel 2 on the headsets.



The Ringer Disabled button indicates that the telephone ringer is disabled, so the courtroom will not be disturbed if someone calls the phone number of the courtroom. The ringer is disabled by default. If the button is tapped, the ringer is activated.



The On microphone button acts as a privacy button, either enabling or disabling the sending of audio from the courtroom over the telephone.



REQUIRED TOOLS

T1 Life Cycle Cost Analysis
T2 Catalog of Courtroom Layouts for California Trial Courts
T3 Integrated Network Architecture
T4 GRAPHICAL USER INTERFACE TEMPLATE
T4.A Introduction
T4.B Page Descriptions
T5 In-Custody Interview Room Guidelines
T6 Building Management System Guidelines

Video Conf Page

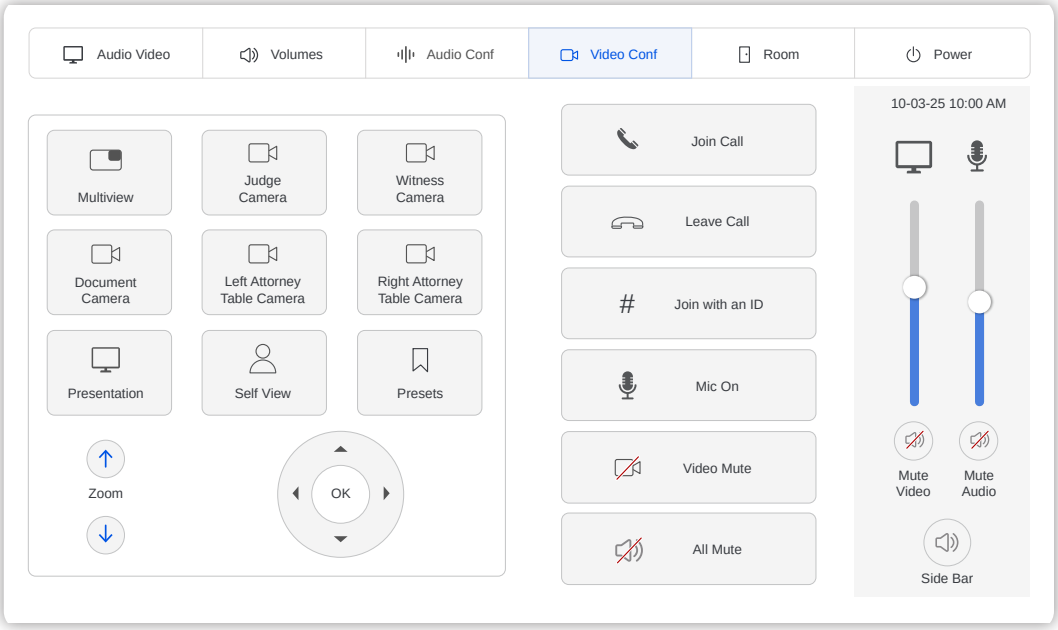


Figure T4.6 Video Conf Page

The Video Conf page allows the making of videoconferencing calls with the cameras, microphones, and speakers installed in the courtroom. This page shall include mute functions for both audio and video as well as an all mute button for emergency scenarios. Page should mimic the visual layout of the videoconferencing platform the system will use (e.g., Zoom, Teams, Webex, etc.). Camera controls shall allow for manual zoom features and a way to view those cameras through the display system independently. Multiview functionality controls shall be available on this page or a pop-up page to select which cameras will be sent to the far end, with the capability to send up to four camera views at once. Preset will be used to have selectable camera combination configurations readily available, such as Judge/Witness/Both Attorney Tables, or Judge/Witness, or Judge/Witness/Document. Camera views include Judge, Witness, Right Attorney Table, Left Attorney Table, and Document. Routing of the videoconference system to the courtroom displays is required. This page shall be customized based on the specific videoconference platform in use.

Room Page

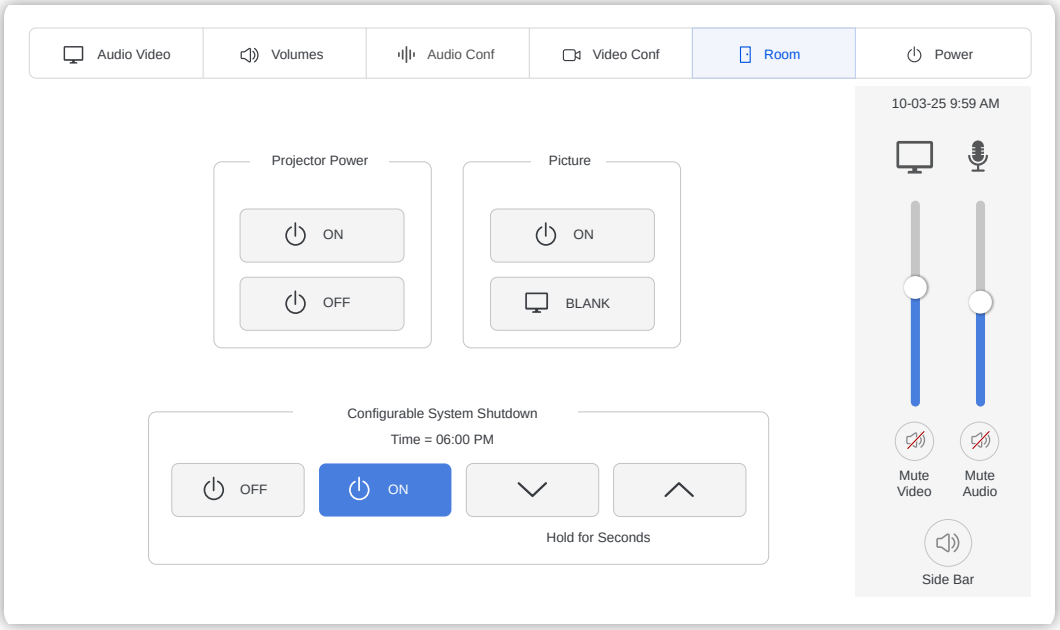
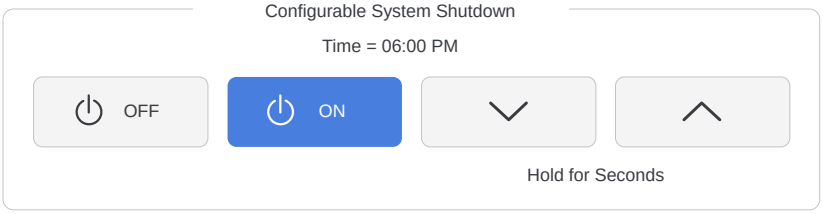


Figure T4.7 Room Page

The Room page contains seldom-used controls and backup controls. It allows the user to turn projector power on and off and to momentarily "blank" the picture image.

The Configurable System Shutdown group controls the end-of-day auto shutdown. To set the time, tap the up or down arrows, holding for a few seconds as the time changes. The auto shutdown can be temporarily disabled by tapping the Off button, but it is automatically enabled the next day.



REQUIRED TOOLS

T1 Life Cycle Cost Analysis
T2 Catalog of Courtroom Layouts for California Trial Courts
T3 Integrated Network Architecture
T4 GRAPHICAL USER INTERFACE TEMPLATE
T4.A Introduction
T4.B Page Descriptions
T5 In-Custody Interview Room Guidelines
T6 Building Management System Guidelines

T5

REQUIRED TOOLS

IN-CUSTODY INTERVIEW ROOM GUIDELINES

SECTION	TOPIC	PAGE
T5.A	Acoustic Study	T5.2
T5.B	Observations and Measurement Results	T5.3
T5.C	Requirements	T5.3
T5.D	Speech Privacy	T5.5
T5.E	Sound Isolation	T5.5
T5.F	As-Built Dimensioned Drawing	T5.6
T5.G	Selective Performance Requirements for Interview Rooms Specification	T5.6



Superior Court of California, County of Tuolumne
Sonora, CA
© Lionakis

ABBREVIATIONS

ASHRAE = American Society of Heating, Refrigerating and Air-Conditioning Engineers

ASTM = An international standards organization that develops and publishes voluntary consensus technical standards

NC = Noise Criteria: A single-number rating defined by ASHRAE that quantifies a steady-state noise

NIC = noise isolation class: A single-number rating defined in ASTM E336 that quantifies the ability of a partition to reduce airborne noise between adjacent enclosed spaces under field conditions

NRC = noise reduction coefficient: A number between 0 and 1 that represents how much an object hinders sound passing through it (with a higher number representing a greater sound barrier)

STC = sound transmission class: An integer rating used to indicate how well a building partition attenuates sound (with a higher rating indicating a greater sound barrier)

T5.A ACOUSTIC STUDY

To ensure confidentiality, care must be taken in the construction of in-custody interview rooms, also referred to as attorney-client interview rooms, to prevent sound transmission to outside those rooms. The in-custody interview rooms are composed of an attorney side and an in-custody side, separated by a partition and a transaction window as described below. The Judicial Council Facilities Services office has noted that in-custody interview rooms in the Superior Court of Santa Clara County's Family Justice Center Courthouse in San Jose, California, have kept conversations between attorneys and their clients sufficiently contained within the constructed interview rooms. The following report has been put together to characterize the existing space and to recommend acoustic standards based on these rooms to inform the construction of future in-custody interview rooms.

1. Findings

The following is a summary of the findings of the existing conditions and the sound isolation assessment of a selected pair of in-custody interview rooms in the Family Justice Center Courthouse. Observations and measurements were focused on a fourth-floor pair of in-custody interview rooms. Architectural working drawings suggest similar construction at similar pairs of interview rooms on the second and third floors.

a. In-custody interview room separation walls include windows with frame spacers to support unamplified conversation.

b. The entry door at the attorney side of the interview room is fully gasketed, whereas the in-custody side of the room has head and jamb seals only; corresponding sound isolation between interview rooms and adjacent circulation spaces was measured as noise isolation class (NIC) 34 and NIC 21, respectively.

c. Measured airborne sound isolation through the typical gypsum board wall on the attorney side of the interview rooms and the security wall on the in-custody side of the rooms was NIC 46 and NIC 34, respectively.

d. Because of the column layout on the fourth floor, interview rooms are separated from adjacent attorney-client conference rooms and a courtroom by double-wall assemblies; measured airborne sound isolation was NIC 52 to NIC 62 through these assemblies.

e. Heating, ventilation, and air-conditioning (HVAC) systems serving interview rooms consist of the following:

- A supply duct path served by variable air volume (VAV) boxes that also serve adjacent spaces.
- No ducted return air paths. Therefore, return air from the attorney side of the interview room appears to pass through the window frame to the in-custody side of the interview room, and return air then travels through the undercut door to the holding vestibule.

f. Background noise levels, because of HVAC systems, were Noise Criteria (NC) 38 in the attorney side of the interview room and NC 27 in the in-custody side of the interview room.

2. Guidelines

Following is a summary of guidelines for future in-custody interview rooms:

a. The transaction window between the attorney side and the in-custody side of interview rooms shall allow unamplified speech communication at normal conversational levels.

b. Room acoustical treatments shall support speech intelligibility.

c. Sound isolation and minimum background sound levels shall provide confidential speech privacy between interview rooms and adjacent spaces.

d. HVAC systems shall support the intended use and maintain sound isolation.

T5.B OBSERVATIONS AND MEASUREMENT RESULTS

The Family Justice Center Courthouse has three pairs of in-custody interview rooms, one on the second, third, and fourth floors. Each pair of rooms is separated by a concrete masonry unit (CMU) wall that breaks the ceiling plane and extends to within 6″ of the deck above. These walls include windows with frame spacers to support unamplified conversation.

The attorney side of the interview rooms is accessed from public circulation areas with fully gasketed doors and is separated from adjacent rooms by full-height metal stud walls. The in-custody side of the interview rooms is accessed from holding vestibules with partially gasketed doors and is separated from adjacent rooms by security walls constructed of mortar and steel. Table T5.1 summarizes additional design features.

Conditioned air serving the interview rooms is provided by ducted air-handling units with zoned VAV systems. Although the attorney and in-custody sides of the interview rooms are served by separate VAV boxes, the boxes are shared with other adjacent attorney and in-custody spaces. Each room includes one ducted supply air diffuser. Mechanical drawings indicate that neither room has a ducted return air path. Therefore, it appears that return air from the attorney side of the interview room travels through the conversation window to the in-custody side of the interview room; return air from both rooms travels through the undercut room door on the in-custody side to the holding vestibule.

When measurements were taken, the building was partially occupied and HVAC systems were operating as normal. Measurements quantified airborne sound isolation in terms of noise isolation class between the in-custody interview rooms and adjacent spaces, as well as background noise levels caused by HVAC systems. Sound levels measured in the in-custody interview room were not adjusted to account for the effects of the room volume and furnishings. Figure T5.1 summarizes measured airborne sound isolation. Background HVAC noise was NC 38 in the attorney side of the interview room and NC 27 in the in-custody side of the interview room.

T5.C REQUIREMENTS

The requirements for interview rooms are based on observations and measurements of existing interview rooms at the Family Justice Center Courthouse and industry standard knowledge. Requirements are also included in chapter 5, Court Set; chapter 8, In-Custody Defendant Receiving, Holding, and Transport; and chapter 19, Acoustical Criteria. Following is a summary of the requirements.

1. HVAC Noise

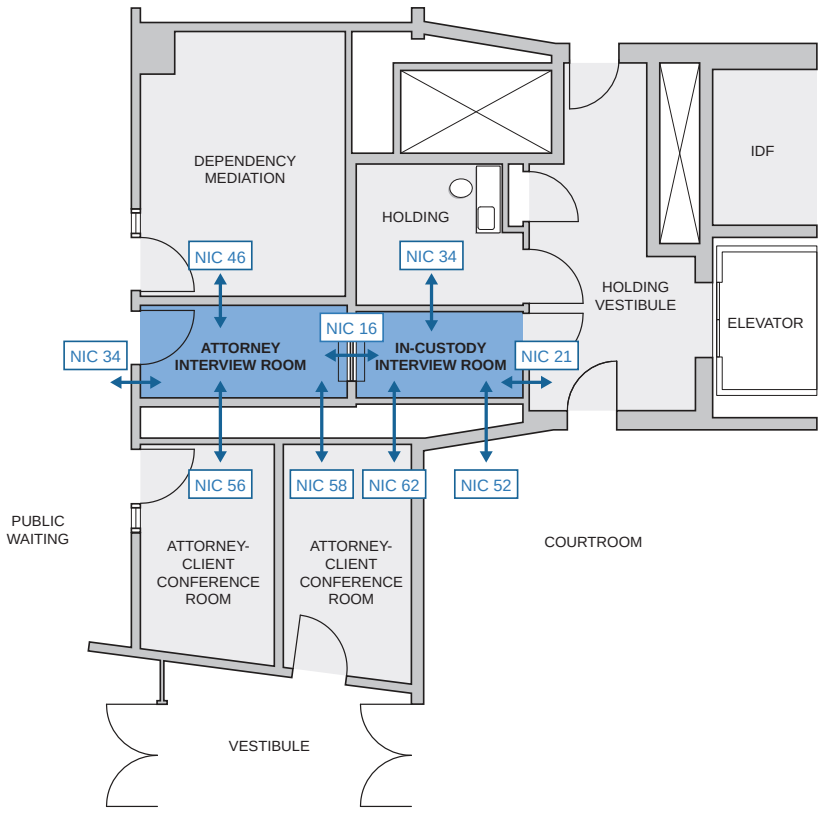
- Interview rooms: Background noise level of NC 30 or less so that it does not interfere with speech communication between interview rooms.
- Ducted supply and return air paths: Lined return air boots to support fully gasketed interview room doors. Undercutting the door for air return is not permitted. Note that this requirement is not followed in the application at the Family Justice Center Courthouse in that the in-custody interview room door is undercut to provide a return

REQUIRED TOOLS

T1 Life Cycle Cost Analysis
T2 Catalog of Courtroom Layouts for California Trial Courts
T3 Integrated Network Architecture
T4 Graphical User Interface Template
T5 IN-CUSTODY INTERVIEW ROOM GUIDELINES
T5.A Acoustic Study
T5.B Observations and Measurement Results
T5.C Requirements
T5.D Speech Privacy
T5.E Sound Isolation
T5.F As-Built Dimensioned Drawing
T5.G Selective Performance Requirements for Interview Rooms Specification
T6 Building Management System Guidelines

Table T5.1 Construction Elements and Finishes of In-Custody Interview Rooms

ROOM	FLOOR	CEILING	DOOR	WALLS
Attorney side of Interview Room 4C (427)	Carpet	Acoustical ceiling tile (USG Mars mineral fiber or equivalent product, NRC 0.75)	Metal door with head and jamb bulb gaskets; automatic drop bottom with threshold	Typical: Full-height single metal-stud assemblies sealed to the underside of the deck above Corridor/circulation walls with three total layers of gypsum board and surrounding rooms with four Additional furred walls where structural columns exist, including on the fourth floor
In-custody side of Interview Room 4-IC (428)	Polished concrete	Detention-grade perforated metal	Metal door with full perimeter bulb seal and approximately 1″ gap at the bottom	Typical: Steel-covered walls with mortar-filled corrugated metal interior composition



NIC = noise isolation class.
IDF = intermediate distribution frame.

Figure T5.1 Airborne Sound Isolation Measurement

air path at that facility. Speech privacy is required at in-custody interview rooms, and the undercut may impede the privacy requirements. Hence, this variation will not be permitted in future projects.

2. Room Acoustics

- Attorney side of the interview rooms: Carpeted floor and sound-absorbing ceiling with minimum noise reduction coefficient (NRC) of 0.70 to support clear speech communication.
- In-custody side of the interview rooms: Hard-finish floor and ceilings that are detention-grade perforated metal with a 1″ thick sound-absorbing material above (minimum NRC 0.70).

T5.D SPEECH PRIVACY

Speech privacy is a function of the acoustic separation between two spaces, quantified in terms of sound transmission class (STC) and the background noise level in the receiving space, measured in terms of Noise Criteria (NC). For normal conversational levels, speech privacy is generally considered to be normal when the composite STC and NC is 70 and confidential when the composite is 80. For reference, normal speech privacy generally means the ability to comprehend an occasional word but not complete sentences, and confidential speech privacy generally implies that an occupant in the adjacent space may be aware that a conversation is taking place but would be unable to understand individual words.

Following are the requirements for sound isolation in in-custody interview rooms. The design team shall review adjacencies on a project-by-project basis to confirm that confidential speech privacy is achieved and upgrade wall and door assemblies, and/or background noise levels, as needed. If HVAC systems operate at varying fan speeds, electronic sound masking may be needed to maintain a constant background noise level in adjacent spaces.

T5.E SOUND ISOLATION

1. Wall Assemblies

- Attorney side of interview room to adjoining areas (unless otherwise noted): STC 50, using, for instance, a single metal stud with two layers of gypsum board on each side and batt insulation in stud cavities.
- Attorney side of interview room to public corridor or vestibule: STC 45, using, for instance, a single metal stud with two layers of gypsum board on one side and one layer on the opposite side and batt insulation in stud cavities.
- In-custody side of interview rooms to adjacent spaces: STC 40, using, for instance, grout-filled metal security wall assembly.

2. Doors

- Attorney side of interview room to public corridor: Laboratory-rated STC 43.
- Attorney side of interview room to secure vestibule or hallway: A minimum 3/4″ solid-core wood door or hollow metal steel door with a full set of acoustical seals, including perimeter gasketing and an automatic door bottom.
- In-custody side of interview room: A minimum 3/4″ solid-core wood door or hollow metal steel door with a full set of acoustical seals, including perimeter gasketing and an automatic door bottom. MegaMet Industries' MegaSCIF doors rated up to STC 52

REQUIRED TOOLS

T1 Life Cycle Cost Analysis
T2 Catalog of Courtroom Layouts for California Trial Courts
T3 Integrated Network Architecture
T4 Graphical User Interface Template
T5 IN-CUSTODY INTERVIEW ROOM GUIDELINES
T5.A Acoustic Study
T5.B Observations and Measurement Results
T5.C Requirements
T5.D Speech Privacy
T5.E Sound Isolation
T5.F As-Built Dimensioned Drawing
T5.G Selective Performance Requirements for Interview Rooms Specification
T6 Building Management System Guidelines

and made of military-grade 14-gauge stainless steel are available. If removal of the typical seals the manufacturer uses is a self-harm concern for the in-custody person, manufacturers offer custom doors that could minimize the chances of the seals being removed for this purpose.

3. Floors

- Attorney side of interview rooms: Carpeted floor and sound-absorbing ceiling to reduce unwanted echoes and increase speech intelligibility, with a minimum NRC of 0.70.
- In-custody side of interview rooms: Hard finish, with perforated metal ceilings with a 1″ thick absorbing material above (minimum NRC 0.70).

4. Windows

The wall separating attorney and in-custody sides of the interview room is typically CMU or grout filled for security purposes. The design and construction shall allow for unamplified speech communication. Provide voice-around transaction windows that allow for natural voice transmission through the frame, as consistent with security requirements. Appropriate products shall be equivalent to Aluminum Voice Around Transaction Windows by Total Security Solutions. More specific requirements for windows in these interview rooms are listed below:

- Interview room windows: A glazed opening between the attorney and in-custody sides of the interview room that provides sufficient open areas in the frame to support unamplified conversation between the two sides, as consistent with security requirements.
- Attorney-side door windows: Integrated door windows provided by the manufacturer to meet the desired sound rating.
- In-custody-side door windows: Security windows as required.
- Sound-rated construction: Sealed perimeter walls, penetrating elements, outlet boxes, junction boxes, and low-voltage receptacles to maintain sound isolation.

T5.F AS-BUILT DIMENSIONED DRAWING

The as-built drawing of the Family Justice Center Courthouse may be used as a template for future in-custody interview rooms. The airborne sound isolation measurement drawing is shown in figure T5.2. Upon court request and Judicial Council approval, a paper pass-through opening may be added below or on the side of the transaction window, as shown in figure T5.3.

T5.G SELECTIVE PERFORMANCE REQUIREMENTS FOR INTERVIEW ROOMS SPECIFICATION

1. General

1.1 Related Documents

a. Drawings and general provisions of the construction contract, including General and Supplementary Conditions and other Division 01 Specification sections, apply to this section.

b. The construction or renovation of in-custody interview rooms shall comply with the *California Trial Court Facilities Standards*, including but not limited to chapter 5, Court Set; chapter 8, In-Custody Defendant Receiving, Holding, and Transport; and chapter 19, Acoustical Criteria.

1.2 Summary

a. This section includes general requirements and procedures for compliance with sound containment for in-custody interview rooms, as indicated in the drawings.

b. This section also includes the Noise Criteria requirements for the in-custody interview room to ensure speech communication without noise interference.

1.3 Definitions

The definitions that follow explain the difference between several sound ratings used in the performance requirements outlined in this specification. They measure noise reduction, noise criteria, noise buildup within a space, and sound transmission between spaces. These factors are combined to achieve the desired sound performance of the space.

a. Noise Isolation Class—A single-number rating, defined in ASTM E336, that quantifies the ability of a partition to reduce airborne noise between adjacent enclosed spaces under field conditions. The sound levels measured in the receive room are not adjusted to account for the effects of the room volume and furnishing. Higher NIC ratings correspond to improved airborne sound isolation.

b. Noise Criteria—A single-number rating, defined by ASHRAE, that quantifies a steady-state noise. It is based on a family of curves that includes noise from 63 to 8,000 hertz (Hz). NC is typically used to rate the loudness of HVAC system noise in a room.

c. Sound Transmission Class—The STC measures the sound transmission between spaces. A single-number rating is used to measure the assembly's barrier effect. A higher STC rating blocks more noise from transmitting through a partition. Loud speech can be understood through an STC 30 wall but should not be audible through an STC 60 wall. For instance, Fiberlite Technologies' cellulose insulation products have an STC rating of 44 to 68 depending on the wall construction. STC ratings do not assess the low-frequency sound transfer. They are based on performance with frequencies from 125 to 4,000 Hz (speech frequencies). The STC rating is a lab test that does not take into consideration weak points, penetrations, or flanking paths.

d. Noise Reduction Coefficient—The NRC measures the buildup of noise within a space. A single-number index rating is used to measure the sound absorption of a material. Fiberlite's cellulose insulation products have an NRC rating from 0.75 to 0.82 depending on wall design, materials, and applied density of the product. Fiberlite's cellulose insulation products will absorb 75 to 82 percent of the sound that they come in contact with and will reflect 18 to 25 percent of the sound back into the space. However, NRC does not address a material's barrier effect, nor does it give information as to how absorptive a material is in the low and high frequencies. NRC is only the average of the midfrequency sound absorption coefficients (250, 500, 1,000, and 2,000 Hz) rounded to the nearest 5 percent.

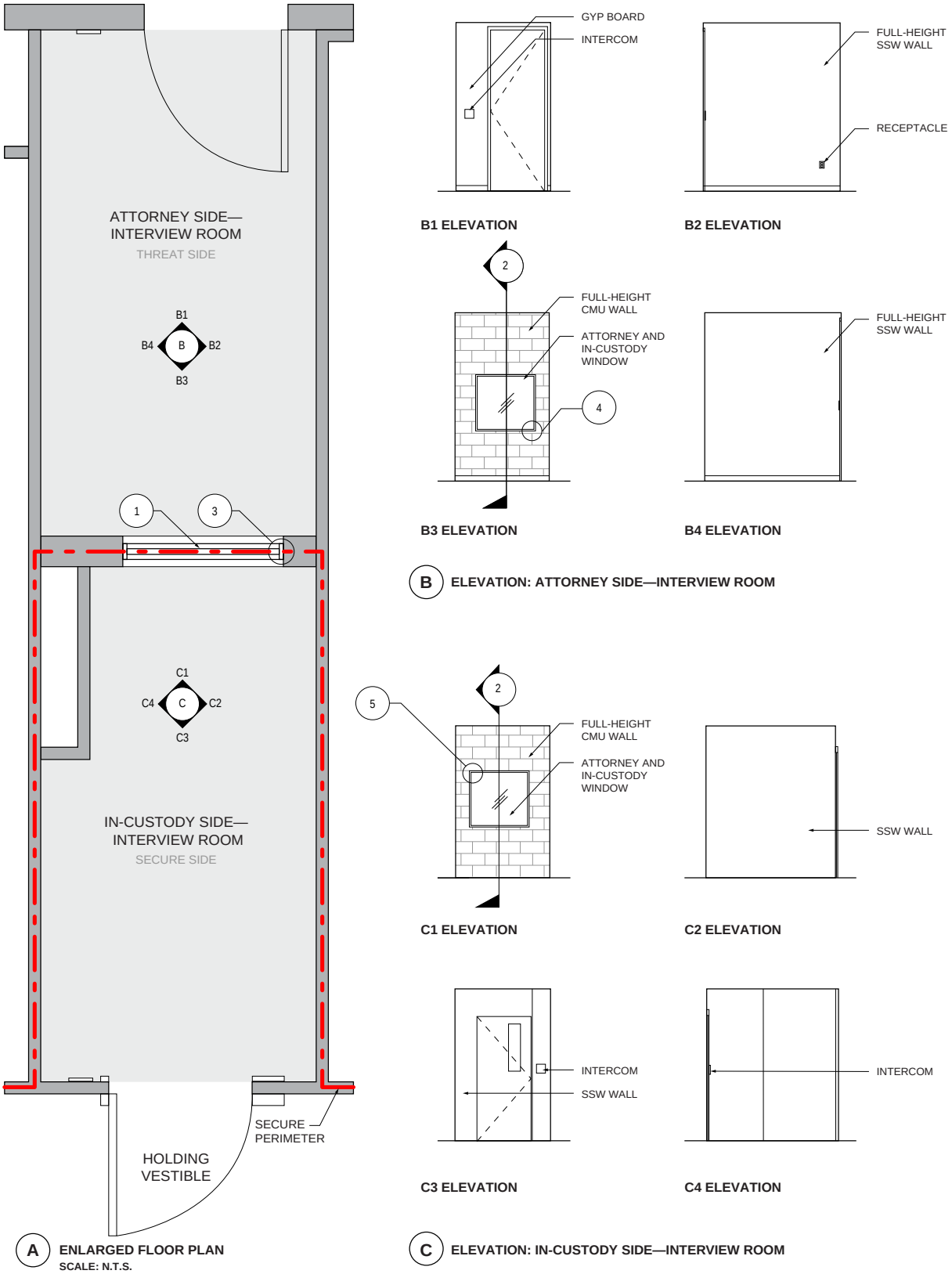
1.4 Interview Room Performance Requirements

a. HVAC noise: All in-custody interview rooms shall have a background of NC 30 or less so that noise does not interfere with speech communications.

b. Room acoustics: In-custody interview rooms shall include sound-absorbing elements with a minimum NRC of 0.70.

REQUIRED TOOLS

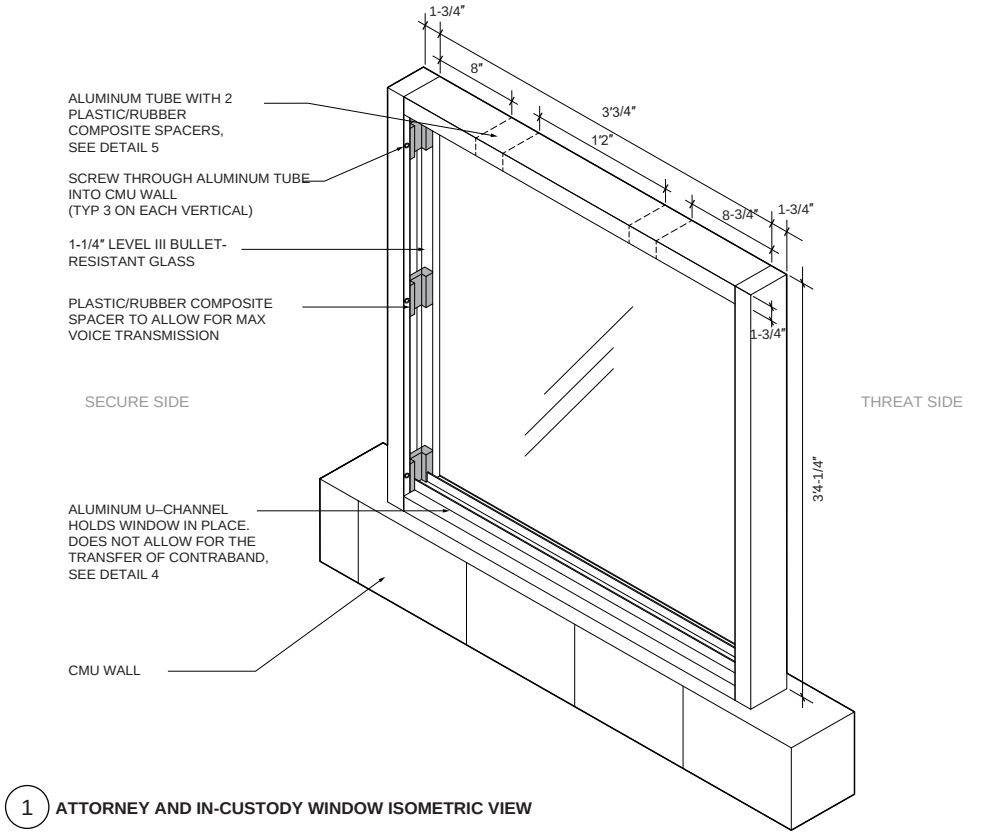
T1 Life Cycle Cost Analysis
T2 Catalog of Courtroom Layouts for California Trial Courts
T3 Integrated Network Architecture
T4 Graphical User Interface Template
T5 IN-CUSTODY INTERVIEW ROOM GUIDELINES
T5.A Acoustic Study
T5.B Observations and Measurement Results
T5.C Requirements
T5.D Speech Privacy
T5.E Sound Isolation
T5.F As-Built Dimensioned Drawing
T5.G Selective Performance Requirements for Interview Rooms Specification
T6 Building Management System Guidelines



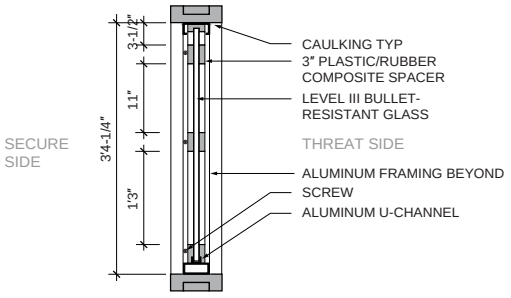
A **ENLARGED FLOOR PLAN**
SCALE: N.T.S.

CMU = concrete masonry unit.
GYP = gypsum.
SSW = Steel Strong-Wall.
TYP = typical.

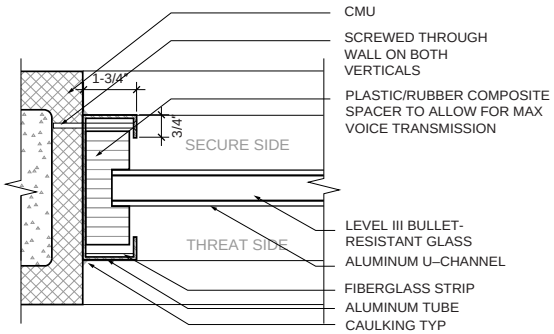
Figure T5.2 As-Built Drawing (not to scale)



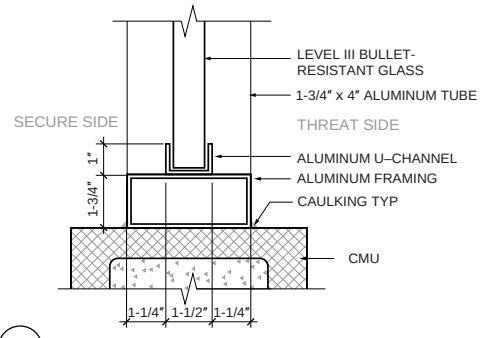
1 **ATTORNEY AND IN-CUSTODY WINDOW ISOMETRIC VIEW**



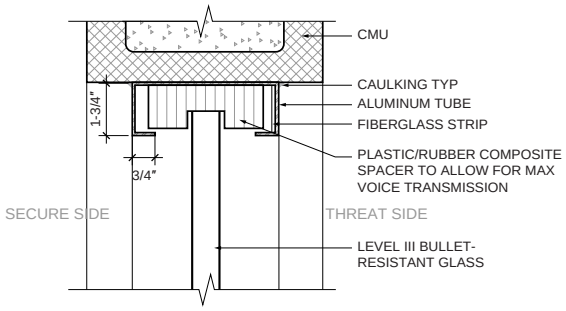
2 **ATTORNEY AND IN-CUSTODY WINDOW SECTION**



3 **ATTORNEY AND IN-CUSTODY WINDOW SIDE DETAIL**

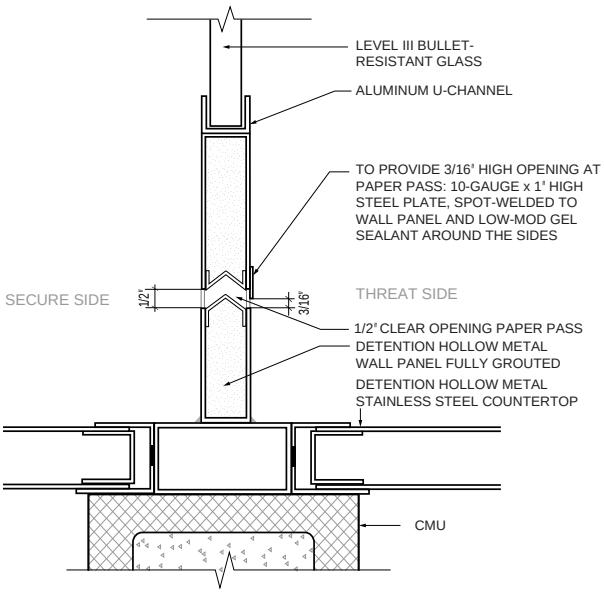


4 **ATTORNEY AND IN-CUSTODY WINDOW BASE DETAIL**



5 **ATTORNEY AND IN-CUSTODY WINDOW TOP DETAIL**

Figure T5.2 As-Built Drawing (not to scale) *continued*





Picture from attorney side



Picture from in-custody side

Figure T5.3 Paper Pass-Through (not to scale)

c. Sound isolation: Transmission class will vary depending on adjacent spaces and room occupancy as follows:

   1. Attorney side of interview rooms to adjacent areas shall have an STC 50 rating.

   2. Attorney side of interview rooms to secure vestibule or hallway shall have an STC 45 rating.

   3. In-custody side of interview room to adjacent spaces shall have an STC 40 rating.

d. Door transmission: Doors shall be laboratory tested and rated for STC 43.

e. Window speech passage: Window sound ratings and open area to support unamplified conversation between two rooms shall be certified by manufacturer and tested after installation to ensure that room will meet the sound criteria.

   1. Through the design, manufacturing techniques, and material application, the Total Security Solutions (TSS) Natural Voice Rail transaction window shall be of the "non-ricochet" type. This design is intended to permit the capture and retention of an attacking projectile, lessening the potential of a random injury or lateral penetration. This design shall employ a spacer within the frame to allow for natural sound transmission. No dip tray shall be included. Components must be manufactured in strict accordance with the specifications, design, and details. All vision panels shall be cut to size, with all exposed edges polished. Necessary holes shall be predrilled and tapped where required. Stainless steel assembly screws and acrylic spacers shall be provided. Frame and channel shall be provided. Anchor screws shall be provided by the installer.

      No field alterations to the construction of the units fabricated under the acceptable standards shall be allowed unless approved by the manufacturer and the architect. Standard manufacturing tolerances shall be ±1/16″.

2. Materials shall meet or exceed UL 752 requirements.

1.5 Design Meetings

a. Predesign conference: Conduct conference at the project site to review in-custody interview room requirements and action plans for compliance with these requirements.

b. After preparation of proposed sound performance measures, conduct a review meeting.

1.6 Administrative Requirements

a. Respond to questions and requests from the Judicial Council about proposed sound compliance measures.

b. Submit documentation to the Judicial Council project manager.

1.7 Action Submittals

a. Provide sound performance calculations for each compliance measure listed in T5.G.1.4.

b. Provide shop drawings of the proposed assemblies included in the compliance measures—including HVAC ductwork, wall and ceiling assemblies, floor attenuation, door types and proposed seals and gaskets, window types, and sound rating—to provide unamplified conversation.

c. Provide detail of sound-rated construction—including seals around perimeter walls and treatment of penetrating elements, including air terminal devices, outlet boxes, junction boxes, and receptacles, as required—to maintain sound isolation.

2. Products and Materials

2.1 General

a. Provide materials per approved shop drawings, product data submittals, and proposed room assemblies for ceilings, walls, and floor.

b. Provide all new materials that meet Judicial Council requirements.

c. Use materials that form a passive system with spacers, sound insulation, gaskets, and seals to meet the sound performance requirements.

2.2 Wall Assemblies

a. In the attorney side of interview rooms, build walls with metal studs with sound-absorbing fiberglass insulation in cavity and faced with two layers of drywall on each side. QuietRock or an equivalent product may be used on one layer facing the interview room side, if necessary, to meet the required sound rating.

b. Construct walls for the in-custody side of interview rooms of grout-filled metal security wall assembly that meets the sound transmission class specified.

2.3 Floor Assemblies

a. Consider carpet or rubber sound-absorbing materials in the attorney side of interview rooms to meet the required sound transmission class.

b. Construct walls for the in-custody side of interview rooms of grout-filled metal security wall assembly that meet the sound transmission class specified.

REQUIRED TOOLS

T1 Life Cycle Cost Analysis
T2 Catalog of Courtroom Layouts for California Trial Courts
T3 Integrated Network Architecture
T4 Graphical User Interface Template
T5 IN-CUSTODY INTERVIEW ROOM GUIDELINES
T5.A Acoustic Study
T5.B Observations and Measurement Results
T5.C Requirements
T5.D Speech Privacy
T5.E Sound Isolation
T5.F As-Built Dimensioned Drawing
T5.G Selective Performance Requirements for Interview Rooms Specification
T6 Building Management System Guidelines

2.4 Ceilings

a. Drywall or acoustical ceiling with sound control measures for all penetrating elements shall be used in the attorney side of the interview rooms.

b. The in-custody side of the interview rooms shall include detention-grade perforated metal ceiling lined above with 1″ minimum of sound-absorbing material to meet STC requirements.

2.5 Doors

a. Doors shall be a minimum 3/4″ solid wood core or hollow metal steel.

b. Doors shall have a full set of acoustical seals, including a perimeter gasket.

c. Doors shall have an automatic seal door bottom.

2.6 Windows

a. General Requirements

1. All windows shall meet the Judicial Council security requirements.
2. In-custody-side door windows shall be high-security rated to prevent breakage.
3. All windows shall meet the room-specified sound rating.
4. The glazed opening between the attorney and in-custody sides of interview rooms must provide sufficient free (open) area to support unamplified conversation between the two rooms without compromising the security requirements.
5. Integrated door windows shall be certified by the manufacturer to provide the desired sound rating.

b. Window Products

1. Product shall be a TSS Natural Voice Rails transaction window or approved equivalent.
2. Window system shall consist of a custom prefabricated bullet-resistant glazing section with secure air passage through frames, with black foam and wood spacers as required for natural voice transmission.
3. It shall include an optional shelf with or without an optional paper pass-through, if requested by the court and approved by the Judicial Council.
4. All accessories for installation shall be included.
5. Available frame selections are aluminum, steel, or stainless steel, but see item e below.
6. Product size of TSS Natural Voice Rail transaction window shall be a recommended width not to exceed 36″ and height not to exceed 48″.

c. Bullet-Resistant Glazing Material Options

1. Bullet Resistant Level 1: 3/4″ LP 750 laminated, 1/4″ uncoated acrylic, and glass-clad polycarbonate (GCP) 750
2. Bullet Resistant Level 2: 1″ LP 1000 laminated, 3/8″ uncoated acrylic, and TSS 002 L/S

3. Bullet Resistant Level 3: 1/4″ LP 1250 laminated and TSS 003 L/S
4. Bullet Resistant Levels 4–8: TSS 004 L/S through TSS 008 L/S

d. Optional Shelf

Provide a 1-1/2″ thick shelf the full width of the window, 18″ deep, centered under the glazing, and covered with a black high-pressure laminate, with an optional stainless steel 18-gauge #4 finish.

e. Recommended Frame Material: Aluminum

1. Frame shall be anodized aluminum (optional 18-gauge primed or stainless steel, as specified). The bottom of the glazing shall be capped with corresponding material on the frame (i.e., stainless steel on stainless steel).
2. Aluminum sections shall be manufactured in accordance with ASTM B209, extruded aluminum alloy 6063 T5 anodized or powder-coated finish to match the existing décor, and free of sharp edges or burrs when in place.
3. Glazing channel shall be a U-channel specifically designed for securing transparencies tightly in place. Angles and stops are acceptable only for top attachment.

2.7 HVAC

a. The HVAC system shall include ducted supply air and return air ducts.

b. Supply air shall be ducted to a VAV box and/or main air distribution duct. It shall not be connected to another room distribution branch where sound transmission between rooms could occur.

c. Return air ducts shall include a lined return air box before connecting to the return air fan.

d. Undercutting the door for air return is not permitted. Interview room doors shall include an automatic basket.

REQUIRED TOOLS

T1 Life Cycle Cost Analysis
T2 Catalog of Courtroom Layouts for California Trial Courts
T3 Integrated Network Architecture
T4 Graphical User Interface Template
T5 IN-CUSTODY INTERVIEW ROOM GUIDELINES
T5.A Acoustic Study
T5.B Observations and Measurement Results
T5.C Requirements
T5.D Speech Privacy
T5.E Sound Isolation
T5.F As-Built Dimensioned Drawing
T5.G Selective Performance Requirements for Interview Rooms Specification
T6 Building Management System Guidelines

REQUIRED TOOLS

T6 BUILDING MANAGEMENT SYSTEM GUIDELINES

SECTION	TOPIC	PAGE
T6.A	General Requirements	T6.2
T6.B	General Pneumatic Control Requirements	T6.5
T6.C	General Design Requirements	T6.6
T6.D	System Requirements	T6.8
T6.E	Control Guidelines for Single-Zone Rooftop Units	T6.9
T6.F	Data Normalization Requirements	T6.11



Superior Court of California, County of Siskiyou
Yreka, CA
© EHDD

This section provides building management system (BMS) guidelines for Judicial Council projects.

ABBREVIATIONS

ANSI = American National Standards Institute

ASC = application-specific controller

ASHRAE = American Society of Heating, Refrigerating and Air-Conditioning Engineers

BACnet = Building Automation and Control Network (ANSI/ASHRAE Standard 135)

BMA = BACnet Manufacturer's Association

BMS = building management system

BTL = BACnet Testing Laboratories (recognized, independent third-party laboratory certified to test products for compliance to BACnet standards)

BTL Mark = seal affixed to product certifying that it has been tested by a recognized BTL and found to conform to BACnet standards

DCP = distributed control panel

HTML = hypertext markup language

LAN = local area network

NEMA = National Electric Manufacturers Association

OIW = operator interface workstation

REST API = representational state transfer application programming interface

T6.A GENERAL REQUIREMENTS

1. All BMS designs shall incorporate and conform to these requirements.
2. The BMS shall consist of the Tridium Niagara 4 platform to create smart-device applications. The system shall support an encrypted REST API, which allows for secure third-party custom applications and interfaces. The system shall be compliant with and support the HTML5 framework.
3. Submittal requirements include the following:
    - Riser diagram;
    - Standard for naming components;
    - Design drawings for control panels, including wiring design diagram;
    - Sequence of operation (to be developed in a collaborative effort with the Judicial Council);
    - Detailed network architecture diagram showing internet and/or active port connections;
    - Detailed drawings showing cable pathways; and
    - Drawings showing all fire-rated walls and required fire-rated assemblies through rated walls.
4. All BACnet equipment and software supplied for Judicial Council projects shall be supported by a manufacturer-supplied protocol implementation conformance statement (PICS) certifying that the device complies with the specified BACnet requirements.
    - At a minimum, each BACnet PICS shall convey the following:
        - Basic information identifying the vendor and describing the BACnet device;
        - The BACnet Interoperability Building Blocks supported by the field device;
        - The standardized BACnet device profile to which the device conforms;
        - All nonstandard application services that are supported, along with an indication for each service of whether the device can initiate a service request, respond to a service request, or both;
        - A list of all standard and proprietary object types that are supported;
        - For each object type supported:
            a. Any optional properties that are supported;
            b. Which properties can be written to use BACnet services;
            c. Whether the objects can be dynamically created or deleted using BACnet services; and
            d. Any restrictions on the range of data values for properties.
        - The data link layer options supported, both real and virtual;
        - Whether segmented requests are supported; and
        - Whether segmented responses are supported.

- All products shall have a BTL Mark certifying that the product was independently tested by a third-party testing facility and complies with BACnet conformance requirements; and
- All BACnet products shall come with a full warranty for a minimum period of two years after system acceptance.

5. Design specifications for BMS installations shall provide detailed specifications for all components of the BMS including equipment, field devices, wire/cable, conduit, pneumatic tubing, mounts, terminations, and the like.
6. The BMS designer shall fully coordinate BMS design requirements with the other project design team parties (where applicable). The BMS designer shall coordinate field panel mounting locations, intended DCP/ASC locations, power supply requirements, communications outlet requirements, and the like.
7. All new BMS installations shall be integrated and include all associated graphics without exception.
8. The following are general installation guidelines for BMS installations:
   - All equipment and materials furnished shall be new.
   - All equipment and materials shall be UL listed. All temperature control panels (TCPs) shall be a UL-listed enclosure and built by a UL-listed panel shop. Equipment and components shall be labeled accordingly.
   - All similar components (e.g., temperature sensors, differential pressure transducers, current transformer/relay combinations, signal transmitters) in a BMS installation shall be provided by the same manufacturer.
   - Components shall be provided that are suitable for the intended application. Components shall be capable of maintained operation in the applicable environmental conditions and operation in contact with the controlled/monitored medium.
   - Except for field-mounted instrumentation and devices, all BMS components shall be installed in field panels (TCPs). Panels and enclosures shall meet, at a minimum, the following requirements:
     - Painted steel panels with hinged locking door. All panels shall be keyed to a standard key.
     - Ventilated to prevent excessive heat buildup, where excessive heat buildup is expected.
     - Field cabling terminated on terminal stripes. Cable within enclosures shall be installed in cable trays with snap-on covers.
     - Internal components installed to allow easy access for diagnostics, maintenance, removal, or replacement.
     - Panel or enclosure suitably rated for the environment in which it is to be installed. Exterior enclosures shall be, at a minimum, NEMA 4 rated.
     - UL listed and registered.
   - Panels and enclosures shall only be located within mechanical rooms or at approved locations. Panel locations shall be coordinated during design with a Judicial Council representative and identified on project design drawings. For new construction projects, the BMS panel locations shall be identified in the project mechanical design drawings. For retrofit applications, the BMS panel locations shall be identified on building floor plan drawings, to be included in the project documents.

REQUIRED TOOLS

T1 Life Cycle Cost Analysis
T2 Catalog of Courtroom Layouts for California Trial Courts
T3 Integrated Network Architecture
T4 Graphical User Interface Template
T5 In-Custody Interview Room Guidelines
T6 BUILDING MANAGEMENT SYSTEM GUIDELINES
T6.A General Requirements
T6.B General Pneumatic Control Requirements
T6.C General Design Requirements
T6.D System Requirements
T6.E Control Guidelines for Single-Zone Rooftop Units
T6.F Data Normalization Requirements
T7 Small Courthouse Guidelines
T8 Security System Guidelines

ABBREVIATIONS (CONT.)

PICS = protocol implementation conformance statement: All devices conforming to the BACnet protocol shall have a documented statement (PICS) that identifies all the portions of BACnet that are implemented in the device.

TCP/IP = Transmission Control Protocol / Internet Protocol

UC = unitary controller

VPN = virtual private network

- All components of the BMS shall be tagged for identification. Identification tags shall be plastic, laminated luggage-style tags securely fastened to the end device. Tags shall be of a minimum size of 3.15″ × 1″ and engraved with 0.5″ bold lettering. Identification tags shall be provided for, at a minimum, the following:
  - Distributed control panels (DCPs);
  - BACnet Advanced Application Controllers (B-AACs);
  - BACnet Application Specific Controllers (B-ASCs); and
  - Field panels.
- All BMS wire, cable, and pneumatic control tubing shall be tagged for identification. Wire/cable shall be tagged at every termination location. Wire/cable and tubing terminating at DCPs or ASCs shall be tagged with the DCP/ASC controller termination number. Wire/cable and tubing terminating at field devices shall be tagged with both the DCP/ASC number and termination number. At any splices or terminal strips between the field device and DCP/ASC, the wiring shall be tagged on both sides of the termination point the same as for a field device termination.
- All BMS field panel and DCP mounting locations shall be provided with 120 VAC power supply sources. The selection of normal or standby power supply facilities shall be based on project- and application-specific requirements (for power requirements, see chapter 15, Electrical Criteria). In general, however, BMS DCPs/ASCs (and associated network interface equipment) monitoring designated building-critical alarm points shall be provided with standby power supplies. The DCP/ASC at which the building-critical alarms are terminated shall be designated at the tie-in panel for the building. Where no standby power is available in the building, the tie-in panel shall be provided with uninterruptible power supply equipment. The BMS tie-in panel is required to remain operational in the event of loss of normal power supply to the building. In the event of a power supply failure, the tie-in panel shall continue to operate for 30 minutes and provide alarm annunciation, monitoring, and control of connected systems/devices from the ASC. The electrical power supply circuit shall be clearly labeled at the electrical distribution panel and at the BMS field panel location. As-built documentation shall detail power supply circuit source panels and termination locations.
- All installations shall readily allow access for maintenance.
- Submittals shall be provided on a memory key (USB flash drive) to the Judicial Council upon project completion.
- Room sensors in public spaces shall be supplied without displays or keypads. BMS designers shall coordinate with the Judicial Council for specific project requirements.
- Software requirements include the following:
  - Trending logs
  - Schedules
  - Storage requirements
  - Event logging
  - Alarm generation and processing
  - Programming
  - Report creation

T6.B GENERAL PNEUMATIC CONTROL REQUIREMENTS

The following are minimum requirements related to BMS pneumatic control installations. Note that this section is only applicable to existing, not new, installations.

1. All installations shall be in accordance with applicable codes, statutes, and ordinances. All pneumatic control air tubing shall be specified to comply with minimum operating temperatures and pressures.
2. Pneumatic control air lines installed within mechanical rooms may be copper tubing and/or polyethylene-type tubing, rated for the installation application, and suitably labeled.
3. Pneumatic control air tubing may be installed in ceiling spaces without conduit where code permits. Tubing installed in ceiling spaces without conduit shall be suitably rated and labeled. Tubing shall be securely supported and installed in a neat and workmanlike manner following building lines. Sleeves shall be provided for all tubing that penetrates wall partitions, concrete slabs, or rated partitions.
4. In retrofit applications, three-way switch-over valves shall be provided on existing pneumatic control air lines to controlled devices for switching between new BMS control and existing pneumatic control facilities. Existing pneumatic control facilities shall remain installed and operational until the work on the BMS is complete and demonstrated to the Judicial Council. The BMS designer shall specify the requirement for the removal of redundant pneumatic control components.
5. BMS pneumatic control air facilities shall meet the following minimum requirements:
    - Tubing shall be installed with suitable support using standard fittings and conditions and run parallel to building lines.
    - Tubing shall be installed with protection from ambient and outdoor temperature effects. Where required, tubing shall be installed with standoffs, insulation, and the like.
    - Multiple tubing runs shall be installed in parallel runs, suitably supported, and tie-wrapped in tube bundles.
    - Pneumatic control air tubing shall be terminated with standard fittings at panel-mounted devices or at pneumatic bulkhead fittings within panels. Field device connections may be run in steel protective spring or BX conduit (armored cable).
    - Rubber grommets shall be provided wherever control tubing passes through ducts or plenum walls.
    - A pressure gauge shall be provided at each tapping off of the main air line. If a pressure-reducing valve is required, then the gauge shall be positioned after the valve.
    - BMS pneumatic control output lines to each controlled device shall be provided with two pressure gauges. The gauges shall be mounted at the DCP/ASC control output location and at the input to the control actuator.
6. Pilot positioners shall be provided for all BMS-controlled pneumatic actuators that are controlled in sequence (e.g., mixed air dampers, 1/3–2/3 steam valves).
7. In-line desiccant filters shall be provided on all main pneumatic control air lines supplying DCPs and ASCs with BMS pneumatic control outputs. The in-line desiccant filters shall be provided in addition to the building's main pneumatic control air dryer/filter facilities.
8. In a BMS retrofit application, the existing building pneumatic control air facilities shall be inspected during the design phase to ensure that air dryer and filter equipment are installed and operational. If the building is not equipped with satisfactory pneumatic control air filtration

REQUIRED TOOLS

T1 Life Cycle Cost Analysis
T2 Catalog of Courtroom Layouts for California Trial Courts
T3 Integrated Network Architecture
T4 Graphical User Interface Template
T5 In-Custody Interview Room Guidelines
T6 BUILDING MANAGEMENT SYSTEM GUIDELINES
T6.A General Requirements
T6.B General Pneumatic Control Requirements
T6.C General Design Requirements
T6.D System Requirements
T6.E Control Guidelines for Single-Zone Rooftop Units
T6.F Data Normalization Requirements
T7 Small Courthouse Guidelines
T8 Security System Guidelines

and dryer equipment, this equipment shall be installed as part of the BMS installation project. The following are minimum pneumatic control air dryer and filtration equipment requirements:

- Two refrigerant-type air dryers shall be provided in a duty/standby configuration;
- Installation shall be in a discharge air line from the control's air compressor set and storage tank; and
- Installation shall include:
  - Air inlet and outlet pressure gauges and automatic moisture removal trap.
  - Three-way valve manifold piped in a duty/standby configuration to allow the operation of one dryer at a time, with the second (standby) dryer valve switched off.
  - Dual air filtration to remove moisture, oil, and particulate matter from the control's air supply, including a BMS-monitored low-pressure alarm indication device. The low-pressure alarm condition shall be annunciated at the BMS front end.

T6.C GENERAL DESIGN REQUIREMENTS

1. The BMS shall incorporate hardware and software resources sufficient to meet the functional requirements of the specifications. The facility local area network and device-level network shall be based on industry standard open platforms and protocols and use commonly available operation, management, and application software. Systems shall use BACnet IP via Category 6A cable. All software packages and databases shall be licensed to the Judicial Council to allow unrestricted maintenance and operation of the BMS. The contractor shall include all items not specifically itemized in these requirements and guidelines that are necessary to implement, maintain, and operate the system in compliance with the functional intent of the specifications.
2. All BMSs shall conform to the most recent revision of ANSI/ASHRAE Standard 135, including all issued addenda, at a minimum at the management data communication network level as defined within these guidelines. All BMSs shall also be native BACnet compliant at the automation data communication network level.
3. When applicable, the BMS designer shall use sequences of operation in compliance with the most recent version of ASHRAE Guideline 36 (High-Performance Sequences of Operation for HVAC Systems).
4. BMS installations shall allow for centralized operator interface for monitoring and supervisory control of the individual building BMS.
5. BMS installations shall use standardized iconography as part of the graphical user interface. The icons shall be based on the type of equipment and must be approved by the Judicial Council at the time of system design.
6. All BMS installations shall have a network data server computer, where specified, with associated BMS manufacturer application software installed onsite and running. The network data server computer shall be provided by the associated BMS contractor to the Judicial Council, complete with all manufacturer-specific BMS operator interface software for programming, database development, data archiving and storage, and controller program backup.
7. BMS installations shall be provided that incorporate BMS equipment and network facilities in compliance with the requirements identified in these guidelines. The BMS network segments shall be dedicated to the BMS. The BMS designer shall specify detailed BMS equipment

requirements and BMS network architecture requirements in the BMS design specifications. BMS equipment and data communication network specifications shall incorporate good BMS engineering, design, and application practices and these BMS design guideline requirements. Network latencies must match or respond faster than the fastest controller device node on the BMS network.

8. The DCPs shall be designed around open and secure communication standards using HTML5 (or the current major version of the HTML standard) web technology. DCPs shall have the capability to communicate via multiple industry open protocols running over building network infrastructures and computer networks. At a minimum, the DCP shall be able to communicate directly with BACnet, LonWorks, and Modbus devices and controllers using TCP/IP.
9. It shall be possible to access the BMS remotely. With a proper username and password, a remote operator shall be able to monitor or control BMS functions via a graphical user interface. The remote access shall be through a standard internet browser. The system shall be capable of supporting an unlimited number of remote clients. A VPN gateway shall be provided for security protection.
10. Browser-based access: A remote/local user, with a proper username and password, shall have access to monitor or control the BMS functions via a graphical user interface. Native internet browser–based user interfaces must be HTML5 compliant and not require plug-ins (thin clients). The system shall be capable of supporting an unlimited number of clients using a standard web browser.
11. BMS online editing is necessary for all controllers that serve critical equipment (as determined by the project team) that cannot be shut down without a maintenance shutdown notice.
12. BMS installations in Judicial Council buildings shall incorporate the following minimum requirements:
    - Equipment shall be approved components as manufactured by one of the Judicial Council–approved BMS manufacturers and follow these BMS design guidelines; and
    - Management- and automation-level communication LANs shall be provided to ensure the following:
        - The failure of a DCP shall not affect the operation of other operating DCPs. Unitary controllers (UCs) supervised by the failed DCP shall continue to function and control associated equipment according to specified failure routines. Where information in the failed DCP is used by other DCPs, UCs, buildings, routines, and the like, the nonavailability of the information shall be alarmed, and alternative control strategies shall be automatically initiated.
        - The failure of a UC shall not affect the operation of another operating UC or DCP.
        - All BMS-monitored and -controlled points associated with an individual HVAC system or equipment shall be terminated in the same UC or DCP. It is not acceptable for BMS-monitored and -controlled points associated with an individual system to be terminated at separate distributed DCPs or UCs.
        - All required logic programming and point database facilities associated with an individual building system shall reside in the same UC or DCP to which the system input/output points are terminated. It is unacceptable for logic programming and database facilities required for BMS monitoring and control of a building system to reside in a DCP or UC other than the one in which the system input/output points are terminated.

REQUIRED TOOLS

T1 Life Cycle Cost Analysis
T2 Catalog of Courtroom Layouts for California Trial Courts
T3 Integrated Network Architecture
T4 Graphical User Interface Template
T5 In-Custody Interview Room Guidelines
T6 BUILDING MANAGEMENT SYSTEM GUIDELINES
T6.A General Requirements
T6.B General Pneumatic Control Requirements
T6.C General Design Requirements
T6.D System Requirements
T6.E Control Guidelines for Single-Zone Rooftop Units
T6.F Data Normalization Requirements
T7 Small Courthouse Guidelines
T8 Security System Guidelines

REFERENCES

Johnson Controls

Honeywell

Schneider Electric

Distech Controls

- UCs controlling space terminal units (e.g., variable air volume terminal units, fan-powered terminal units) shall reside on the same automation LAN as the UC that is controlling the associated air-handling unit. If an air-handling unit is controlled directly by a DCP, the UC's controlling space terminal units shall be supervised by that DCP.
- All BMS designs and installations shall incorporate and interface with lighting control systems, as applicable.
- The sequence of operations shall be provided by the system designer to the Judicial Council before installation as part of the submittal process.
- Hardware, firmware, and client software upgrades shall be performed only if they enhance specific features applicable to the existing BMS environment, security, or system architecture.

13. In existing facilities with stand-alone internet connections, the following shall apply:
    - The BMS installation shall include software, firmware, and a firewall to ensure network protection.
    - The installer shall be responsible for generating the required IP addresses for all BMS devices. This information will be provided as part of the closeout documentation.
14. In existing facilities connected to the court's network, the following shall apply:
    - Coordination with court IT staff shall be facilitated through the Judicial Council;
    - The installer shall identify the active port connections needed for the system;
    - The Judicial Council shall ask the court to create a virtual local area network (VLAN) for the BMS; and
    - The installer shall generate a series of IP addresses based on the VLAN information provided by the court.

T6.D SYSTEM REQUIREMENTS

1. Acceptable manufacturers include the following:
    - Johnson Controls Inc.
    - Honeywell
    - Schneider Electric
    - Distech Controls
    - Siemens
    - Automated Logic
    - An approved equal
2. BMS installations shall be provided by BMS contractors who meet the following requirements:
    - Have been in operation in the BMS industry for a minimum of 10 years;
    - Employ qualified staff in the state of California capable of undertaking a complete BMS installation project and providing routine and emergency maintenance on all elements of the BMS;

- Have successful project experience on similar projects for a minimum of five years;
- Have service and support available 24 hours per day, 7 days per week (suppliers only); and
- Have access to local suppliers of BMS components with a maximum delivery period of 24 hours.

3. All BMS DCPs, UCs, OIWs (where applicable), and other BMS manufacturer-specific equipment within a building shall be manufactured by the same manufacturer. All HVAC and building services monitoring and controls shall be provided by BMS facilities from one of the approved BMS manufacturers. In applications where HVAC system controls within an existing building are being retrofitted and BMS facilities of any of the approved BMS manufacturers exist within the building, BMS facilities shall be provided by the manufacturer of the BMS equipment already installed. The retrofitted BMS installation shall be provided to connect the new renovation work into the existing building and campus BMS facilities.
4. BMS direct digital controllers shall be products manufactured by a company that is an active corporate member of BACnet International.
5. All BMS systems shall be fully demonstrated and operational, satisfy the Judicial Council, and be approved by Judicial Council Facilities Services before being considered an approved product or equal.
6. The maximum allowed distance from the local field office of the system provider to the project site shall be no more than 75 miles.

T6.E CONTROL GUIDELINES FOR SINGLE-ZONE ROOFTOP UNITS

1. Applicability
   - These control guidelines apply to HVAC control upgrades in buildings conditioned by single-zone packaged rooftop HVAC units (RTUs) controlled by 24V thermostats, unless such RTUs are controlled by a control system that complies with the Judicial Council building management system (BMS) guidelines.
   - This standard does not supersede any applicable building codes or the Judicial Council facility standards.
2. Functionality requirements of building controls:
   - All requirements of chapter 14, Building Management System Criteria, shall apply.
3. Network connections:
   - Where applicable, chapter 14, Building Management System Criteria, shall take precedence. In existing facilities with stand-alone internet connections, the following shall apply:
     - The building control installation shall include software, firmware, and a firewall to ensure network protection; and
     - The installer shall be responsible for generating the required IP addresses for all control devices.
   - In existing facilities connected to the court's network, the following shall apply:
     - Court IT coordination shall be facilitated through the Judicial Council;
     - The installer shall identify the active port connections needed for the system;

REQUIRED TOOLS

T1 Life Cycle Cost Analysis
T2 Catalog of Courtroom Layouts for California Trial Courts
T3 Integrated Network Architecture
T4 Graphical User Interface Template
T5 In-Custody Interview Room Guidelines
T6 BUILDING MANAGEMENT SYSTEM GUIDELINES
T6.A General Requirements
T6.B General Pneumatic Control Requirements
T6.C General Design Requirements
T6.D System Requirements
T6.E Control Guidelines for Single-Zone Rooftop Units
T6.F Data Normalization Requirements
T7 Small Courthouse Guidelines
T8 Security System Guidelines

- The court shall create a virtual local area network (VLAN) for the control system; and
- The installer shall generate a series of IP addresses based on the VLAN information provided by the court.

- In all cases, the following shall apply:
  - The number of direct connections to the court's network or the internet shall be minimized, for example via the use of a gateway; and
  - Firmware updates shall be part of an annual preventative maintenance program or if needed in the event of critical or security updates.

4. Installation and commissioning
   - Where applicable, California Building Code requirements for commissioning and acceptance testing for the installed devices shall be satisfied.
   - Upon installation of control hardware, the following Judicial Council requirements shall apply. The satisfaction of these requirements shall be documented in a project closeout binder that shall also include hardware user guides.
     - Ensure that devices are connected to the correct network, IP addresses are logged in closeout documentation, and identification tags on hardware match software-based identifiers.
     - Installer and facility staff shall agree on default schedules and set points that shall be documented in the closeout binder and provided to the Judicial Council. Schedules and set points shall cover occupied periods, unoccupied periods, holiday periods, other periods as needed, and parameters for user adjustment (e.g., allowable temperature band for user adjustment and time period before settings revert to default).
     - All control hardware shall have temperature readings within 2°F of calibrated handheld device upon closeout of installation.
     - As applicable, weather station data used in control logic and displayed in control-related software shall be checked at closeout to ensure the weather station location is appropriate for the building location.
     - Installer shall ensure that firmware (and software, if applicable) is up to date.
     - Installer shall collect and store monitored data, and software screenshots where applicable, that confirms that set points, schedules, and control sequences meet Judicial Council requirements. On at least a sample of devices, installer shall verify, with data:
       a. Thermostat settings can be temporarily adjusted by users and have settings revert to default after a specified time period;
       b. Where appropriate, device setting cannot be adjusted (e.g., for devices installed in public spaces); and
       c. Existing operations and maintenance (O&M) manuals have been reviewed and updated when the work is part of a major renovation project.

T6.F DATA NORMALIZATION REQUIREMENTS

This section establishes mandatory standardized requirements for BAS point-naming conventions, metadata tagging implementation, and statewide asset integration. These requirements shall apply to all new construction and major renovation projects to ensure consistency, interoperability, and efficient data management across the Judicial Council portfolio.

1. General Requirements

a. All BAS installations shall implement standardized naming conventions, tagging protocols, and data access methods as specified in this section.

b. Contractors shall submit all proposed object names and tags to the Judicial Council for review and approval prior to implementation.

c. Any system objects implemented prior to approval shall be corrected by the vendor at no additional cost to the Judicial Council.

2. BAS Object Naming Standard

a. Naming convention structure

All BAS objects shall follow this mandatory naming convention:

Format: BuildingID_Equipment_ObjectName

- Components
  - Building ID: Designated by Judicial Council (format: ##-XXX)
  - Equipment designation: Maximum six characters derived from mechanical drawings
  - Object name: 16–31 characters using standardized camel-case abbreviations
  - Delimiter: Underscore (_) between all components
  - Maximum length: 45 characters total (critical requirement)
- Example: 19-AX1_AHU01_SATmpSp
  (Building: Van Nuys East; Equipment: Air Handler 01; Object: supply air temperature set point)

b. Required object name suffixes

The standardized suffixes from table T6.1 shall be used for all applicable objects:

Table T6.1 Required Object Name Suffixes

Suffix	Description/Usage
Cmd	Command point—initiates action (starts motor, modulates valve, etc.)
Sts	Status point—actual state of commanded equipment
Sp	Set point—target value for control variable
Ena	Enable—indicates conditions met for device operation
Pos	Position—feedback from valve, damper, or variable-frequency drive
Alm	Alarm—only for objects with event notification capability
Td	Trend—historical data-logging object
Sched	Schedule—time-based control object

REQUIRED TOOLS

T1 Life Cycle Cost Analysis
T2 Catalog of Courtroom Layouts for California Trial Courts
T3 Integrated Network Architecture
T4 Graphical User Interface Template
T5 In-Custody Interview Room Guidelines
T6 BUILDING MANAGEMENT SYSTEM GUIDELINES
T6.A General Requirements
T6.B General Pneumatic Control Requirements
T6.C General Design Requirements
T6.D System Requirements
T6.E Control Guidelines for Single-Zone Rooftop Units
T6.F Data Normalization Requirements
T7 Small Courthouse Guidelines
T8 Security System Guidelines

c. Engineering units standards

- Analog outputs: Percent (% or pct)
- Valves and dampers: %open (0% = fully closed, 100% = fully open)
- Binary outputs: Off/On or position-specific labels (e.g., Closed/Open)
- Temperature: Degrees Fahrenheit (°F)
- Pressure: psi or inches of water column (in WC)

3. Judicial Council Web Platform Integration Requirements

Proper integration between BAS and the Judicial Council web system shall be achieved by configuring two critical and required parameters, as specified.

a. Asset type field

- Defined equipment category and capacity.
- Predefined system values only.
- No custom entries.
- Examples:
  - AHU-01: Air-handling unit, 3–24 tons
  - CHL-CW1: Chiller, centrifugal, water cooled, up to 100 tons

b. Asset tag field

- Contains unique equipment identifier as displayed in BAS.
- Alphanumeric field supports full equipment descriptions.
- Matches BAS equipment naming exactly.
- Example: AHU-01-LBY (lobby air-handling unit)

4. References and Standards

Refer to all the applicable standards for functionality requirements of building controls, BAS server-level data requirements, metadata tagging requirements, and scope and applicability, including but not limited to:

- ASHRAE Standard 135—BACnet
- ASHRAE Guideline 36—High-Performance Sequences of Operation
- ASHRAE Standard 90.1—Energy Standard for Buildings
- Project Haystack—Open Source Data Tagging Standard

T7

REQUIRED TOOLS

SMALL COURTHOUSE GUIDELINES

SECTION	TOPIC	PAGE
T7.A	Purpose and Intent	T7.2
T7.B	Context	T7.3
T7.C	Programming Principles	T7.4
T7.D	Design Principles	T7.6
T7.E	Courthouse Prototypes	T7.8
T7.F	Construction and Delivery	T7.10



Superior Court of California, County of Glenn
Willows, CA
© Drew Kelly Photography

T7.A PURPOSE AND INTENT

1. Purpose

The small courthouses are the low-rise facilities consisting of one to four courtrooms, as described in chapter 1, section 1.D.2. The *Facilities Standards* are applicable to all courthouses regardless of their size. This tool provides additional comprehensive guidance for the planning, design, and delivery specifically for small courthouse projects. It establishes principles for achieving affordability, operational efficiency, and civic integrity in facilities that serve limited jurisdictions or rural communities. The goal is to ensure that smaller projects uphold the same standards of dignity, safety, and functionality as larger justice centers while adapting scale, cost, and complexity to local conditions.

2. Intent

Projects shall use this tool to integrate courthouse planning with community needs and statewide judicial priorities. Small courthouse facilities shall provide the same fundamental level of public access to justice, operational integrity, judicial dignity, and safety and security as larger courthouse facilities while optimizing total building area, use of space, and construction cost and delivery time.

The intent of this tool is to define a right-sized courthouse model that reflects:

- Lower daily population volumes;
- Reduced staffing structures;
- Increased reliance on shared and flexible-use spaces; and
- Growing use of remote and hybrid proceedings.

This tool supports development of courthouse facilities that are functionally complete but not programmatically complex, ensuring that limited public resources are used efficiently. The tool also promotes standardized planning modules and delivery processes so that smaller facilities can be replicated efficiently without sacrificing architectural quality or performance.

3. Application

These guidelines apply to small courthouses developed as stand-alone facilities or as annexes to larger regional courts. They may also inform satellite courthouses, hearing centers, or adaptive reuse projects that supplement existing court capacity. For guidance on part-time satellite court facilities and part-time specialty court facilities, refer to chapter 2, sections 2.C.7 and 2.C.8.

4. Objectives

The primary objectives of tool 7 are to:

- Reduce overall building area through shared-use strategies and elimination of redundant spaces;
- Simplify building systems to reduce construction and maintenance costs;
- Support flexible operations, including hybrid and remote proceedings;
- Enable standardization and replication across multiple courthouse projects; and
- Maintain appropriate civic presence while avoiding unnecessary monumentality.

T7.B CONTEXT

1. Role in the Judicial System

Small courthouses play a critical role in providing access to justice in rural, remote, and lower-density communities. As with all the courthouse facilities, economy of design is prudent to match resources provided to the volume of public services needed. In some instances, small, part-time facilities provide localized access for court users who would otherwise need to travel significant distances to larger regional courthouses. Small courthouses that are not a county's main or only facility tend to operate on reduced or part-time schedules and rely on regional systems for specialized services. In larger, highly populated communities, small courthouses may also provide service countywide as specialty facilities offering specialty case types such as juvenile justice, collaborative, or mental health cases.

Facilities shall be designed to function independently while maintaining connectivity to broader judicial infrastructure through:

- Digital systems;
- Remote participation capabilities; and
- Coordinated administrative processes.

2. Community Integration

Each project shall respond to its community's physical and cultural context. Courthouses in smaller towns may be located adjacent to or share civic campuses with city halls, libraries, or county offices, leading to site efficiencies as well as seamless integration in the community's fabric. Architecture shall align with local development patterns and building scale and reinforce public visibility without imposing excessive monumentality. Exterior design shall emphasize durability, clarity of public entry, and appropriate civic expression.

3. Site Considerations

Small courthouse sites are often constrained by limited parcel size, shared-use conditions, and infill development requirements.

Design shall:

- Optimize building footprint and site use;
- Minimize site disturbance and infrastructure cost; and
- Provide clearly defined zones for public, staff, and secure access.

Where necessary, vertical building configurations are permitted to reduce site footprint and maintain required functional separation.

4. Affordability and Life Cycle Value

Projects shall prioritize long-term value over initial construction cost. Design decisions shall consider:

- Total building area reduction;
- Simplified structural systems;
- Reduced complexity of mechanical and electrical systems; and
- Durability of materials and finishes.

REQUIRED TOOLS

T1 Life Cycle Cost Analysis
T2 Catalog of Courtroom Layouts for California Trial Courts
T3 Integrated Network Architecture
T4 Graphical User Interface Template
T5 In-Custody Interview Room Guidelines
T6 Building Management System Guidelines
T7 Small Courthouse Guidelines
T7.A Purpose and Intent
T7.B Context
T7.C Programming Principles
T7.D Design Principles
T7.E Courthouse Prototypes
T7.F Construction and Delivery
T8 Security Systems Guidelines

Design shall demonstrate measurable reductions in construction cost per courtroom and long-term operational costs. See tool 1, Life Cycle Cost Analysis, for additional requirements.

T7.C PROGRAMMING PRINCIPLES

1. General Approach

Programming for small courthouses shall be based on projected caseload, staffing levels, operational schedules, and community needs. The program shall emphasize consolidation of functions, flexibility of use, and elimination of redundant spaces. Programs shall be scaled appropriately and, in the case of a courthouse that is not the court's main courthouse, shall not replicate typical full-service courthouse models.

2. Modifications to Base Programming Requirements

The following programmatic adjustments are encouraged:

- Shared jury assembly, staff training, jury deliberation, and hearing rooms: Spaces may serve multiple functions depending on court schedule.
- Multiuse courtrooms and hearing rooms: Spaces may be designed to support multiple case types or operational modes.
- Combined administrative functions: Clerk, administrative, and support functions may be colocated where operationally appropriate.
- Shared support spaces: Conference rooms and staff support areas may be shared across functions.

3. Functional Relationships

Space adjacency diagrams shall illustrate the required separation and connection among public, private, and detention zones. Courtrooms must connect efficiently to clerk counters, jury areas, and judicial chambers, minimizing travel distances while maintaining circulation separation, as described in chapter 2, section 2.A, Program Stacking and Zoning.

4. Public Zone

The public zone shall provide clear, welcoming access from the main entry through screening to the lobby and counter services. Circulation paths must be intuitive, allowing first-time users to orient themselves without extensive signage. Waiting areas shall accommodate varying occupancy and allow observation by security personnel.

5. Private Zone

Private areas support judges and staff. These spaces require controlled access from the public circulation and direct connections to chambers, conference rooms, and staff work areas. Design shall promote collaboration through open offices and shared support spaces rather than multiple isolated suites. Privacy and acoustic separation must still be maintained where confidentiality is required, such as for judicial chambers.

6. Detention Zone

The detention zone connects the sally port, holding, and courtroom detention areas. This path shall be continuous, restricted, and visually supervised. Layouts shall minimize escort distances and avoid cross traffic with public circulation. Interlocks with secure circulation are permissible as illustrated in figures T7.3, T7.4, and T7.5. Mechanical, electrical, and fire

protection systems within this zone must be tamper-resistant and easy to maintain. Refer to chapters 4 and 8 for additional requirements.

7. Shared and Flexible Use

Small courthouse facilities shall maximize the use of flexible, multipurpose spaces. Spaces shall be designed to accommodate multiple functions without major reconfiguration and integrate technology and infrastructure to enable flexibility. Movable partitions, modular furniture systems, and distributed technology shall support multiple use scenarios. Provide opportunities for multiuse spaces, such as shared jury assembly and hearing rooms, and combined conference and jury deliberation rooms. See figure T7.1 for an illustration of flexible spaces.

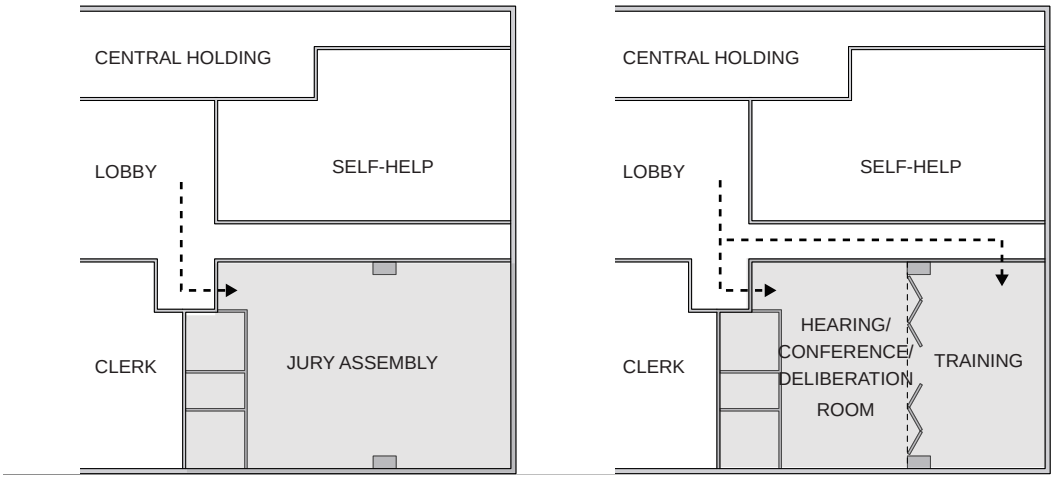


Figure T7.1 Shared-Use and Multifunction Space Concept

8. Scalability and Replication

Design modules—courtroom clusters, office pods, and service cores—shall be used so they can be replicated for projects of varying sizes. A two-courtroom facility shall expand to three or four courtrooms using the same planning logic, structural grid, and building systems. Standardization shall enable rapid design, predictable cost, and simplified maintenance.

9. Operational Efficiency

Small courthouses often operate with limited staff who perform multiple roles. Programming shall accommodate this operational reality through counters positioned for visual control of lobby and corridors, file and storage rooms placed centrally, and direct sightlines that allow security staff to monitor activity without additional cameras or personnel. Workflow analysis shall confirm that spatial layouts minimize travel and duplication.

10. Technology Integration

All programs shall accommodate current and emerging technology. Infrastructure for hybrid in-person and remote hearings; digital evidence display; and remote interpretation, participation, and electronic filing shall be provided. Shared spaces shall include data and power access points for mobile equipment, allowing flexible use.

REQUIRED TOOLS

T1 Life Cycle Cost Analysis
T2 Catalog of Courtroom Layouts for California Trial Courts
T3 Integrated Network Architecture
T4 Graphical User Interface Template
T5 In-Custody Interview Room Guidelines
T6 Building Management System Guidelines
T7 Small Courthouse Guidelines
T7.A Purpose and Intent
T7.B Context
T7.C Programming Principles
T7.D Design Principles
T7.E Courthouse Prototypes
T7.F Construction and Delivery
T8 Security Systems Guidelines

T7.D DESIGN PRINCIPLES

1. General

Design shall implement program requirements while minimizing overall building size, construction complexity, and operational inefficiencies. Buildings shall achieve a balance between functionality, cost efficiency, and civic presence.

2. Circulation

Circulation systems shall comply with the base facilities standards requirements. The following efficiencies shall be achieved for small courthouse facilities:

- Reduced travel distances through compact layouts; and
- Clarity and separation of movement types.

3. Courtroom Planning

Courtrooms are the functional core of the courthouse. Their layout shall provide visual clarity, safety, and acoustical quality while integrating technology and accessibility. Courtroom design shall maintain clear sightlines, appropriate acoustics, accessibility for all users, and integrated technology systems. Courtrooms shall meet base facilities standard requirements with flexible layouts supporting multiple case types.

Courtroom furnishings, audiovisual systems, and data infrastructure shall accommodate hybrid proceedings and remote appearances. An effort shall be made to reduce the number of courtrooms in the facility through shared courtrooms and multiuse flexible spaces. The courtroom size shall be maintained per the courtroom templates; however, the conference rooms outside the courtroom may be eliminated in lieu of a multiuse shared conference room in the public corridor. The courtroom entry vestibule shall remain in place. The gallery benches can be placed on the sides of the vestibule while maintaining the required sightlines and courtroom square footage. Figure T7.2 illustrates square footage savings through elimination of conference rooms outside the courtroom.

4. Public Space Design

Public spaces shall clearly define entry and circulation paths, support efficient queuing and movement, and use durable and maintainable materials. Design shall avoid oversized or underused public areas.

5. Staff and Judicial Support

Staff spaces shall promote collaboration and flexibility. Instead of multiple enclosed offices, provide open-plan workrooms with shared resources where confidentiality allows. Private lockable offices shall be limited to executive and management or supervisory staff whose functions require security or privacy. Judicial support spaces shall be efficient and appropriately scaled.

6. Security and Supervision

Security design shall comply with applicable facilities standards. Design shall emphasize visibility and passive supervision, controlled access points, and reduced reliance on redundant physical barriers.

7. Building Systems

Building systems shall be simplified and standardized, align with reduced building scale, and minimize maintenance complexity. Systems shall be zoned appropriately to support different occupancy patterns and varied operational schedules.

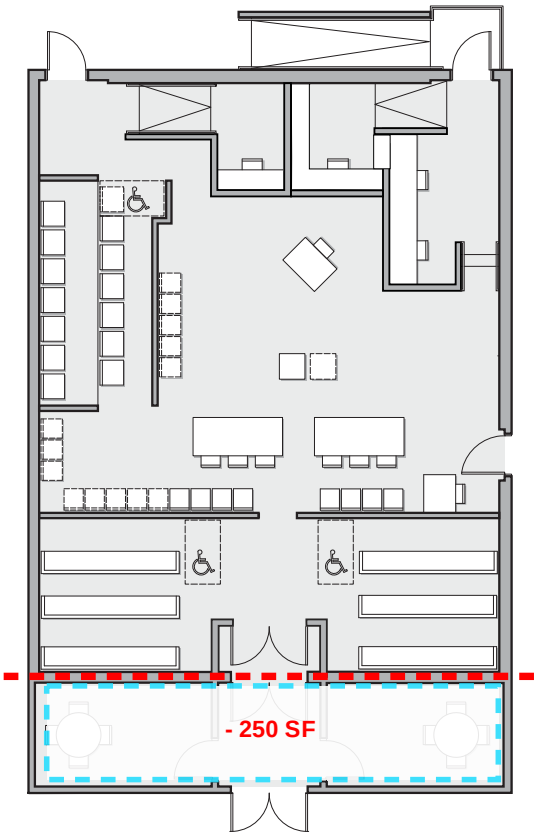


Figure T7.2 Plan Without Conference Rooms

8. Environmental Quality

Instead of heavily relying on building systems for occupant comfort, design shall prioritize access to daylight, indoor environmental quality, and energy-efficient systems. Envelope design shall balance performance and cost. Punched-hole windows are preferred over glazed curtain walls.

9. Accessibility and Universal Design

Accessibility shall be integral to circulation and space planning. All accessibility requirements shall comply fully with title 24 and *Facilities Standards.* Refer to chapter 1, section 1.C for additional guidance.

10. Wayfinding

Wayfinding shall rely on logical spatial organization, clear sightlines, and minimal but effective signage.

T7.E COURTHOUSE PROTOTYPES

Prototypical courthouse layouts provide consistent planning logic and efficiencies that can be adapted to a variety of local conditions. Prototypes illustrate scalable planning strategies that support efficient circulation, shared-use principles, and standardized modules.

The prototypes that follow are not prescriptive but illustrate repeatable design strategies suitable for small courthouse facilities that may be adapted to specific site and program requirements.

1. One-Courtroom Prototype (Figure T7.3)

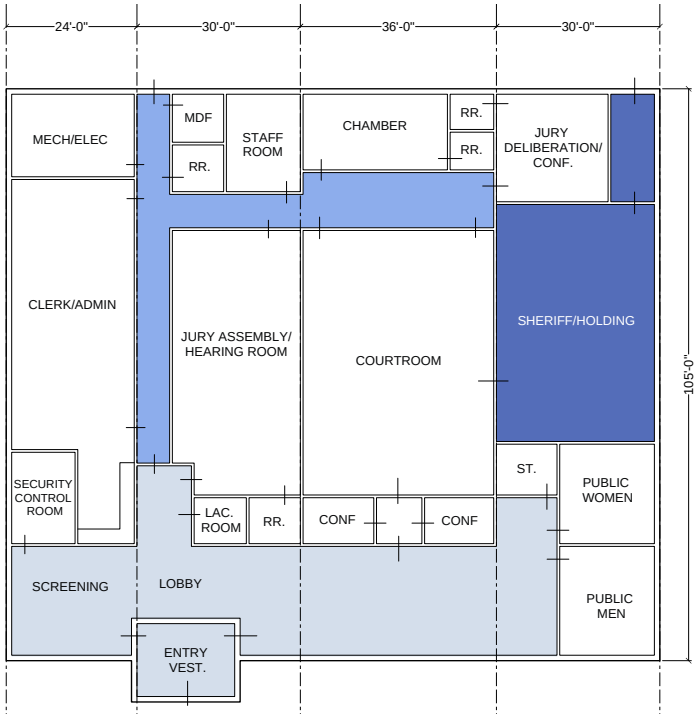
- Design Intent

  The one-courtroom prototype represents the smallest independent facility providing full judicial function. It prioritizes simplicity, shared use, and compact circulation.

- Key Characteristics
  - One public entry and screening zone serving one courtroom.
  - Lobby immediately adjacent to clerk counter and public waiting.
  - One courtroom with a private corridor and compact detention holding.
  - Shared jury assembly and staff support areas.

- Design Guidance

  Circulation shall minimize walking distances while maintaining security separation. The lobby shall allow direct supervision of public entry.



CONF = conference room.
LAC = lactation.
MDF = main distribution frame.
MECH/ELEC = mechanical/electrical room.
RR = restroom.
ST = storage.
VEST = vestibule.

Figure T7.3 One-Courtroom Prototype

2. Two-Courtroom Prototype (Figure T7.4)

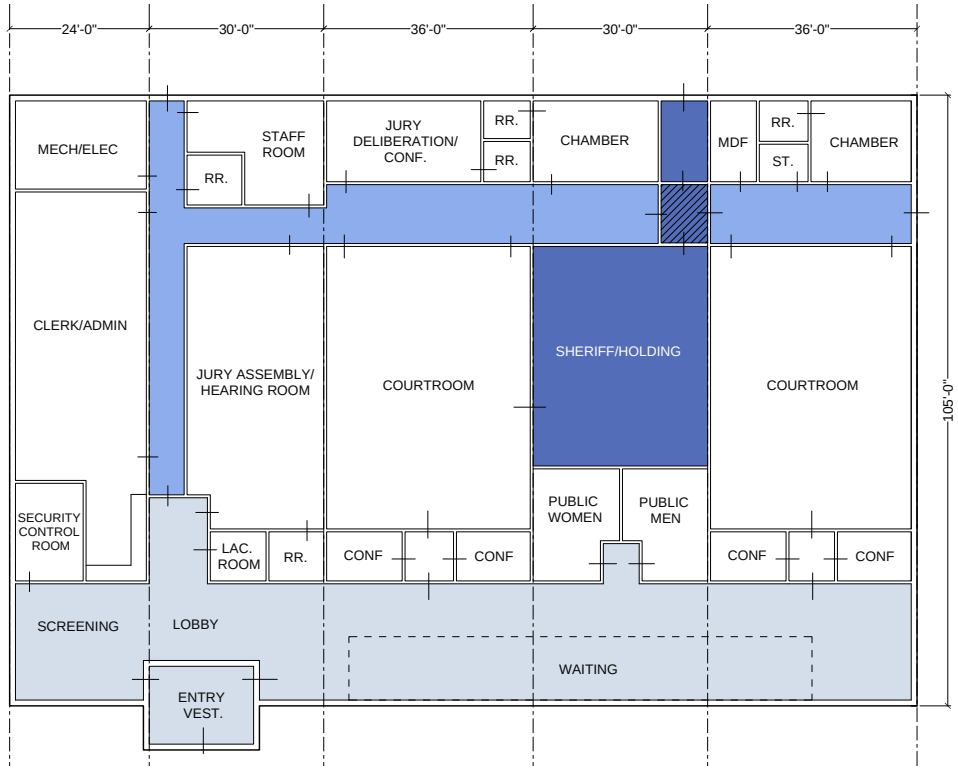
- Design Intent

  The two-courtroom prototype represents a slightly larger facility than a one-courtroom prototype.

- Key Characteristics
  - The simplest module of one court set with holding core in the middle of two courtrooms.
  - Two courtrooms accessed from a shared private corridor.
  - Private and detention circulations intersecting to create an interlock to be controlled from the detention control room.

- Design Guidance

  The plan is rectangular to accommodate the court set while maintaining to the fullest extent possible three separate circulation zones.



CONF = conference room.
LAC = lactation.
MDF = main distribution frame.
MECH/ELEC = mechanical/electrical room.
RR = restroom.
ST = storage.
VEST = vestibule.

Figure T7.4 Two-Courtroom Prototype

3. Four-Courtroom Prototype (Figure T7.5)

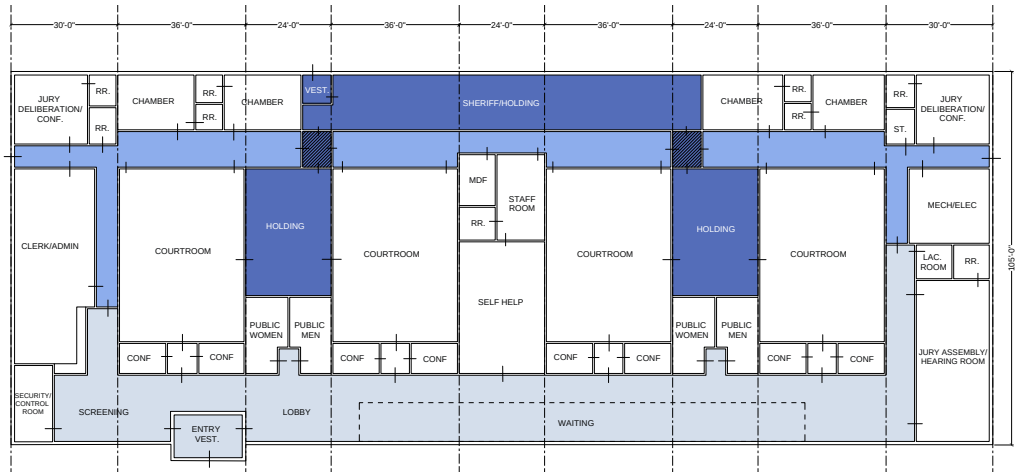
- Design Intent

  This prototype demonstrates scalability through paired courtrooms with shared support. It introduces economies of scale without compromising clarity.

- Key Characteristics
  - Two court sets sharing back-of-house functions.
  - Consolidated holding and jury facilities serving all four courtrooms.
  - Two interlocks due to intersection of private and detention circulations.

- Design Guidance

  Layouts shall maintain a consistent structural grid for future expansion. Shared spaces shall be centrally located. Staff work areas shall be designed for flexibility.



CONF = conference room.
LAC = lactation.
MDF = main distribution frame.
MECH/ELEC = mechanical/electrical room.
RR = restroom.
ST = storage.
VEST = vestibule.

Figure T7.5 Four-Courtroom Prototype

T7.F CONSTRUCTION AND DELIVERY

1. Delivery Method

Construction and delivery methods shall reinforce the same objectives as those guiding design: affordability, quality, and efficiency. The selected delivery method shall suit project complexity, site conditions, and funding structure. Coordination among the Judicial Council, architects, engineers, and contractors shall begin at the earliest phase.

Design-build is preferred for most courthouse projects because it integrates cost control and design quality from the outset. The design-build team shall collaborate closely with the Judicial Council to verify that design intent and cost parameters remain aligned throughout development.

Construction efficiency is best achieved through simplification of form, reduction of redundant systems, and consistent detailing. Each design choice shall reflect the project's total life cycle value rather than initial cost alone.

2. Building Systems Integration

The California Office of the State Fire Marshal–approved UL-listed details shall be used as a starting point for architectural design. Mechanical, electrical, plumbing, and structural systems shall be coordinated early and integrated into the architectural design. Structural grids shall correspond to planning modules and allow standardized bay spacing. MEP routing shall minimize penetrations through fire-rated walls and ceilings while providing access for maintenance.

Ceiling spaces shall allow future conduit or ductwork installation without major demolition. Systems shall include clear labeling and controls accessible to maintenance personnel.

3. Prefabrication and Modular Construction

Prefabricated or modular construction is encouraged to reduce cost and improve consistency.

Components such as wall assemblies, detention partition systems, and mechanical skids may be fabricated offsite. Prefabricated assemblies shall meet all applicable building codes and achieve the same standards of performance as traditional construction. Use of prefabrication shall reduce construction time, improve quality control, and reduce cost variability.

Designers shall consider transportation limits, structural connections, and joint detailing in early planning. Modular construction shall preserve functional integration rather than appear as an add-on (see figure T7.6, Modular and Scalable Construction Approaches).

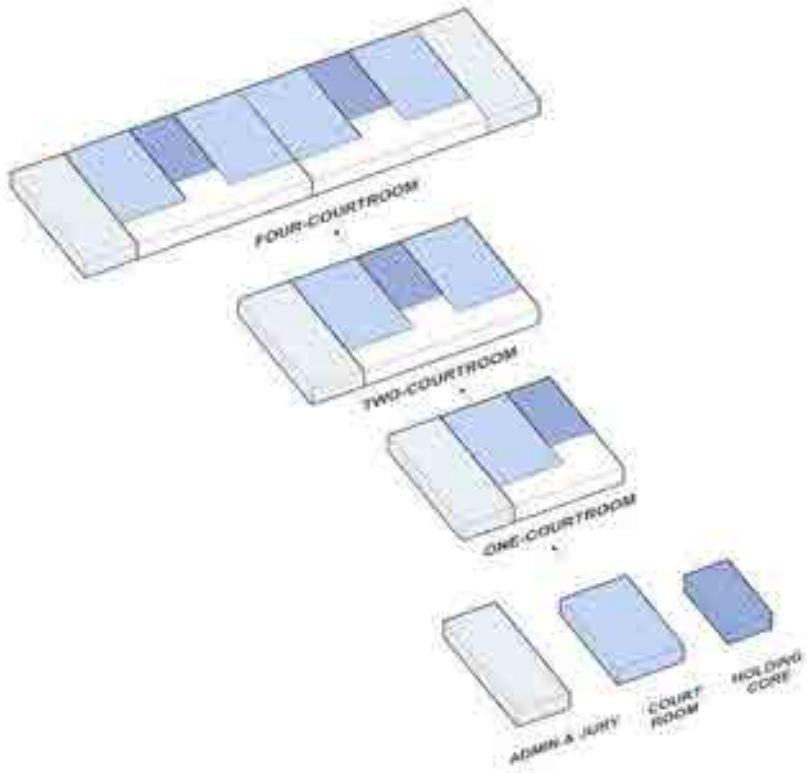


Figure T7.6 Modular and Scalable Construction Approaches

4. Materials and Finishes

Materials shall prioritize durability and longevity, minimize maintenance requirements, and reflect appropriate civic character. See chapter 11, section 11.C, for guidance on exterior construction, and section 11.D, for guidance on interior construction.

5. Life Cycle Considerations

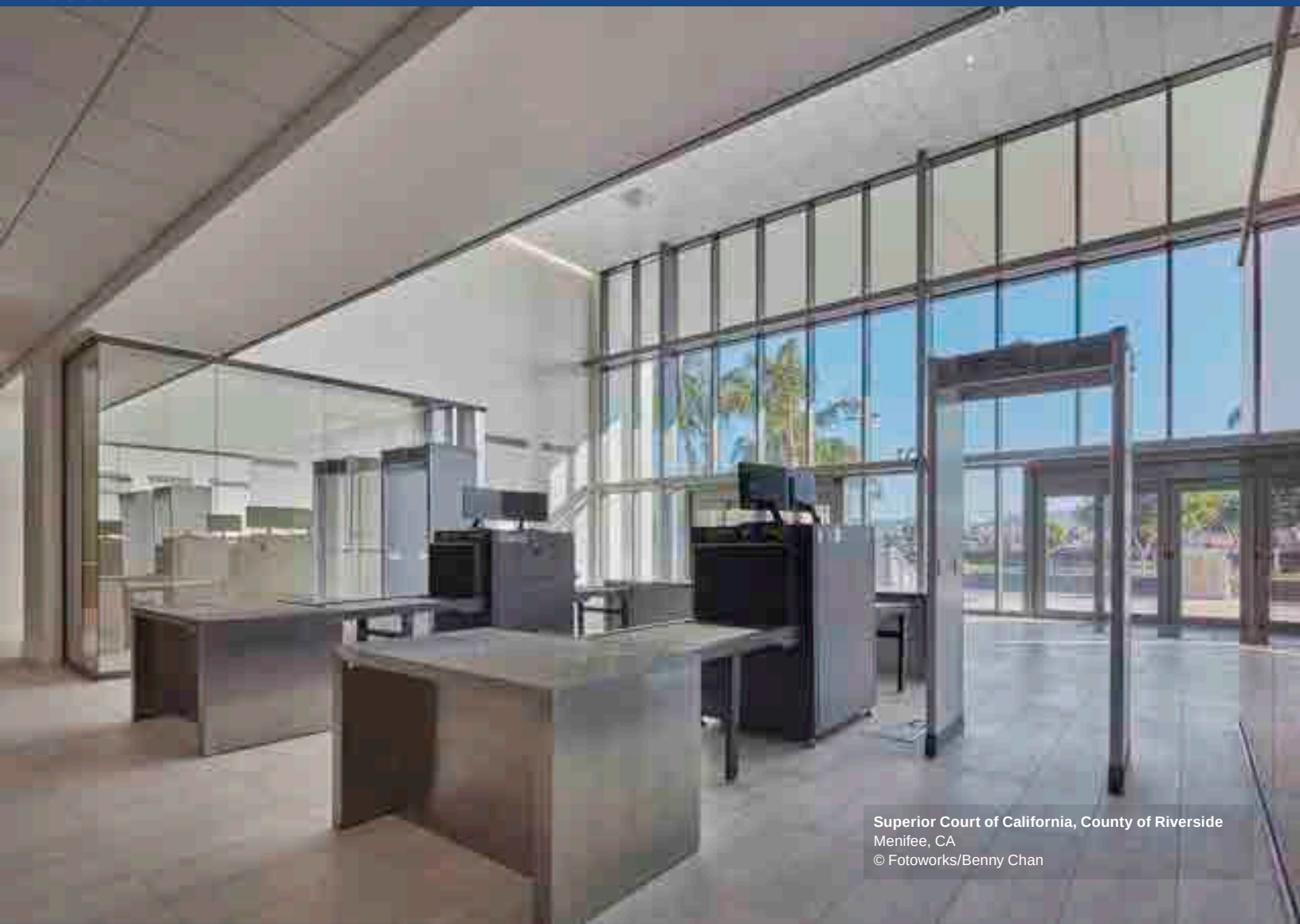
Systems and materials shall be selected for durability and low maintenance. Designs shall permit straightforward access for repairs and replacement. Control systems shall be user-friendly for small facilities teams with limited technical staff. All life-cycle cost analyses shall compare maintenance, energy, and replacement costs, not just first cost. See tool 1, Life Cycle Cost Analysis, for detailed requirements.

T8

REQUIRED TOOLS

SECURITY SYSTEM GUIDELINES

SECTION	TOPIC	PAGE
T8.A	General	T8.2
T8.B	Access Control System	T8.11
T8.C	Duress System	T8.17
T8.D	Alarm System	T8.19
T8.E	Video	T8.19
T8.F	Intercom	T8.24
T8.G	Detention	T8.24
T8.H	Licensing	T8.29
T8.I	Cable, Conduit, and Termination	T8.29
T8.J	Servers and Workstations	T8.30
T8.K	Coordination	T8.30
T8.L	Acceptance Testing	T8.34
T8.M	Attachments	T8.37



Superior Court of California, County of Riverside
Menifee, CA
© Fotoworks/Benny Chan

T8.A GENERAL

1. Design for Security

Security design is covered in chapter 4, Courthouse Security; chapter 8, In-Custody Defendant Receiving, Holding, and Transport; and chapter 9, Public Spaces, which should be referred to for overall security planning. The Security System Guidelines tool provides additional details about current equipment standards and other specific information.

Guidance on site-specific security is provided in the facility risk assessment per chapter 4, section 4.D, and by the Judicial Council security coordinator assigned to the project.

2. Circulation

Chapter 4, section 4.E.2, explains concentric circles of protection, or the separation of "intervention zones." These zones must be separated by access control systems (see chapter 4, section 4.I, Electronic Security Systems).

3. Space Allocation

In addition to the security equipment space allocation described in chapter 4, section 4.H, Electronic Security Planning Criteria, at least 45 SF must be allocated to security equipment and access to that equipment in main distribution frame (MDF) and intermediate distribution frame (IDF) rooms. Larger facilities may also require closet space on individual floors.

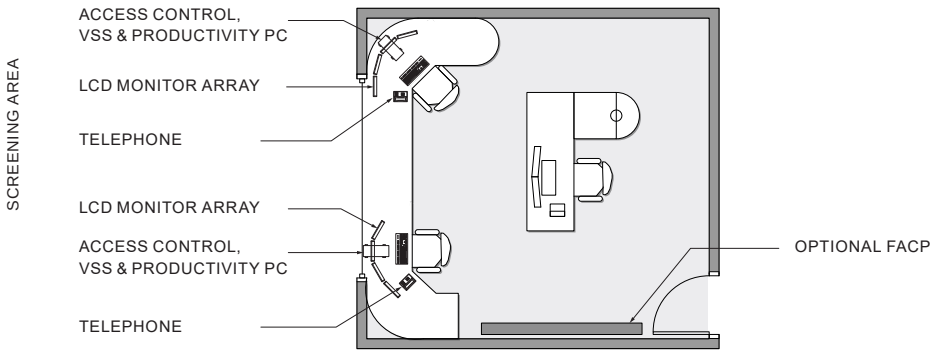
4. Security Operations Center

Specific information on the security operations center (SOC; also referred to as the security control center), particularly as related to the detention control rooms, is provided in chapter 4, section 4.H. Generally, the SOC shall be located at or near the main courthouse entrance screening stations. However, this may be adjusted depending on the operations of the security providers. Every opportunity to minimize space and staffing and utilize redundant security systems shall be explored. The SOC must be a minimum of 144 SF.

Chapter 4, figure 4.4, provides an SOC plan suitable for small to medium-size courthouses. An alternative design suitable for large or multiagency courthouses is shown in figure T8.1.

Design elements for SOC:

- SOC operator's workstation shall have a view through the glass window to entrance screening.
- This window and the wall below shall be ballistic rated. The minimum protective level shall be UL 752 Level 3.
- The quantity and size of displays shall be based on ergonomic needs and system requirements.
- A wall intended for building systems and a fire alarm control panel (FACP) shall be designated, as needed.
- A supervisor's desk may not be required.
- Equipment in the control room shall be limited to user interface devices. Locate servers, control panels, and other equipment in an IDF or a utility closet.



FACP = fire alarm control panel.
LCD = liquid crystal display.
PC = personal computer.
VSS = video surveillance system.

Figure T8.1 Security Operations Center for Large or Multiagency Courthouses

5. Rack Space in MDF/IDF Rooms

In general, a full rack is needed in data centers or MDF rooms and a half rack in IDF rooms. Typical installation and space requirements are shown in T8.E, Video. For additional information, see chapter 4, section 4.H.15, Security Equipment Location.

6. Wall Space in MDF/IDF Rooms

The wall space needed in either the MDF or IDF room for the duress, alarm, access control system, and network jacks is typically 48″ wide and 96″ high, with 36″ inches of clearance. A second, similar-sized space is required in the IDF room for detention control. A typical installation and its space requirements are shown in figure T8.2.

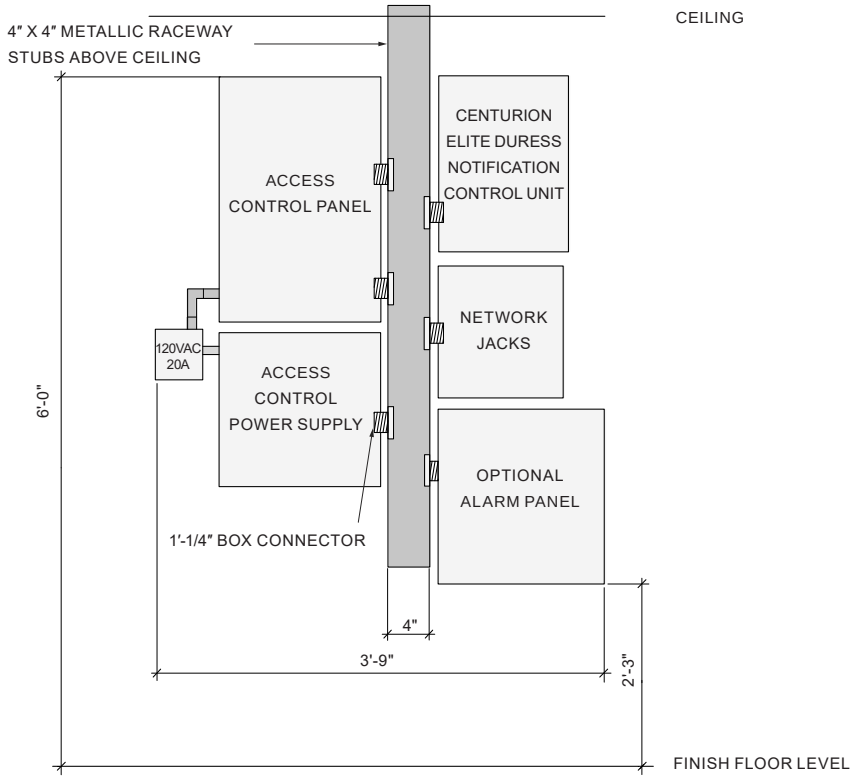


Figure T8.2 Elevation Showing a Typical Installation and Space Requirements

REQUIRED TOOLS

T1 Life Cycle Cost Analysis
T2 Catalog of Courtroom Layouts for California Trial Courts
T3 Integrated Network Architecture
T4 Graphical User Interface Template
T5 In-Custody Interview Room Guidelines
T6 Building Management System Guidelines
T7 Small Courthouse Guidelines
T8 Security System Guidelines
T8.A General
T8.B Access Control System
T8.C Duress System
T8.D Alarm System
T8.E Video
T8.F Intercom
T8.G Detention
T8.H Licensing
T8.I Cable, Conduit, and Termination
T8.J Servers and Workstations
T8.K Coordination
T8.L Acceptance Testing
T8.M Attachments

The access control panels may be combined with power supply boards in a single enclosure if the UL listing is maintained. Products such as FlexPower from LSP, Trove from Altronix, or a Judicial Council–approved equivalent are acceptable for a combined enclosure design. Power supplies must include low-power disconnect to protect connected devices. Power supply may be combined into a single enclosure with the access control panels if it maintains UL listings.

7. Screening System

Refer to chapter 9, section 9.C.2, Security Screening Station. Entrance screening must be incorporated into the design with thought given to throughput, the operator's position as it relates to the current equipment's operating mode, and security observation positions. The number of screening stations should be based on a study of the current number of people screened during peak hours at the courthouse being replaced. Peak hours account for approximately three total hours during the day. These consist of the first two hours after opening and the hour after lunch. Ideally, each screening station can process five individuals per minute. Physical barriers must be used to prevent easy bypass of screening. Entrance screening suites include magnetometers and X-ray machines. The magnetometer standard width for the council is 32″ to accommodate the Americans with Disabilities Act (ADA) requirements. The council has master agreements with magnetometer and X-ray machine vendors. Information and cut sheets are in T8.M, Attachments.

Full-size X-ray machines are the standard for all courthouse designs. The compact or portable X-ray machines listed in attachment 1 may be considered with the full agreement of the court and Judicial Council. Roller tables for the full-size X-ray machines come in 2′ sections. Generally, a project requires a total of 8′ (4′ for the entrance table and 4′ for the exit table).

Design consideration must be given to allow court attendees to bypass screening equipment in case of medical concerns, such as pacemakers. Although the equipment used in screening has proven to be safe, some visitors may still request individual hand screening. A method to bypass the screening equipment through a controlled door or exit passageways, under escort, must be included in the design.

8. Entrance Screening Equipment Physical Placement and Clearance Requirements

The screening station shall be designed as outlined in chapter 9, section 9.C.2. Figure T8.3 depicts additional alternative layouts for the screening equipment.

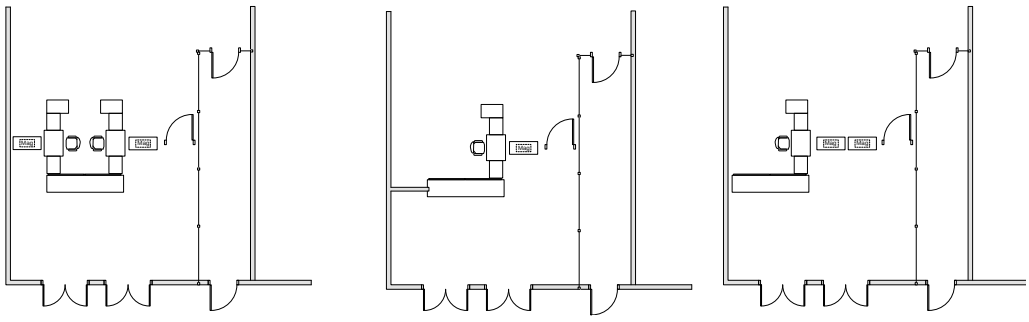


Figure T8.3 Examples of Screening Equipment Layouts

Where space between two sets of screening equipment is limited, it may make sense to stagger the equipment so that operators are not sitting or standing back-to-back. Figure T8.4 reflects staggered equipment.

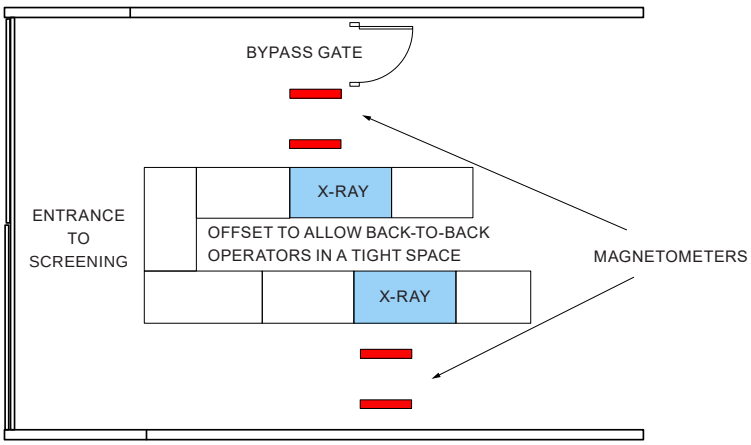


Figure T8.4 Staggered Screening Equipment

- Critical Physical Design and Spacing Requirements for Screening Equipment
  - Standard X-ray machines include one input and one output roller table. The roller tables are available in lengths of either 0.5 or 1.0 meter.
  - Customization and built-in cabinetry are discouraged.
  - The best physical position of the magnetometer (metal detector) in relation to the X-ray imaging system is in the middle of the main body of the X-ray machine.
  - Do not position the magnetometer close to the entry and exit conveyor/roller tables. These roller tables can be a tremendous source of mechanical interference from moving metal and objects on the roller table/conveyor.
  - The transmitter (TX) antenna of the magnetometer must be positioned toward the X-ray unit. The receiver (RX) antenna must be on the side near the X-ray machine.
  - Distance between the magnetometer and the X-ray unit should be a minimum of 16".
  - Distance between the magnetometer and the monitor of the X-ray unit must be a minimum of 39.5".
  - There must be a minimum of 16" clearance between walls or windows that could potentially cause any vibration interference.
  - Each device requires a 110 AC outlet with a minimum of 15 amps.

9. Single Point for Public Entry

There should be a single point for public entry leading to screening. It is required that employees also enter through this point. See chapter 9, sections 9.B and 9.C.

10. Main Exit and Emergency Exits

The main exit must be designed to prevent people from entering. This is often best achieved by using a pedestrian sally port or vestibule with two sets of doors. These doors must have door monitoring and door-held-open local alarms. It is also good practice for the exit doors to be easily observable by security officers in screening.

One alternative to pedestrian sally ports is a barrier gate exit lane turnstile. These differ from traditional “tripod” turnstiles. Refer to T8.B.7, Turnstiles. The barriers shall be clear, flat material and slide open and close automatically instead of swinging or rotating. The exit lanes shall be ADA compliant. For people passing from the screened area to the unscreened area, the barrier shall automatically open and close. For people attempting to pass from the

REQUIRED TOOLS

T1 Life Cycle Cost Analysis
T2 Catalog of Courtroom Layouts for California Trial Courts
T3 Integrated Network Architecture
T4 Graphical User Interface Template
T5 In-Custody Interview Room Guidelines
T6 Building Management System Guidelines
T7 Small Courthouse Guidelines
T8 Security System Guidelines
T8.A General
T8.B Access Control System
T8.C Duress System
T8.D Alarm System
T8.E Video
T8.F Intercom
T8.G Detention
T8.H Licensing
T8.I Cable, Conduit, and Termination
T8.J Servers and Workstations
T8.K Coordination
T8.L Acceptance Testing
T8.M Attachments

unscreened area to the screened area, the barrier shall either remain closed or immediately close—then a local alarm should sound, triggering an exit violation to be recorded in the security management system transaction log and prompting the associated camera.

The emergency exit doors are a serious security vulnerability. The requirement for multiple exit paths makes access control and screening difficult to ensure. To reduce the risk, a pedestrian sally port or vestibule is helpful. At a minimum, the exit door shall have a local door alarm and camera. Emergency exit doors shall be devoid of all external hardware such as locks or handles. Wireless alarm sensors tied through the duress alarm system may be considered for use in monitoring these exits. Automatic camera call-up shall be tied to alarms from these doors.

As an option, video analytics can be used to monitor the direction of pedestrian traffic through the pedestrian sally port or secure vestibules. This can be accomplished by properly positioning a high-quality camera with built-in directional tracking analytics in the monitored area. The analytic algorithms that filter and manage the real-time video shall alert operators and show an alarm on the video workstation when a violation of the direction of pedestrian traffic occurs.

11. Locks and Keys

Locks and keys are the basis of good access control. Recommended lock functions, master keying, and key control are detailed in table T8.1. Table T8.2 identifies the type of key required for each space type.

12. Electrified Locking Hardware

It is important to use quality electric locks for security and long service life. As shown in the following tables, mortise locks are the optimum choice for standard applications. For exit hardware, Von Duprin is the preferred manufacturer. An alternative choice for standard applications is cylindrical locks. Electric strikes are not recommended. All doors using electrified locks require a mechanical backup. Refer to chapter 4, table 4.4, for security electronic devices at court building elements.

Table T8.1 Minimum Required Lock Functions, Master Keying, and Key Control by Space

Room	Lock*	Function	Description	Card Access	Closer	Holder
Main lobby	Von Duprin 98/99 series exit hardware	Store-room	Latch bolt retracted by 24VDC or by key outside. Inside push bar always free for immediate exit. Push bar cannot be dogged down to keep latch bolt retracted.	Yes	Yes	
Emergency exit	Von Duprin 98/99 series exit hardware	Store-room	Latch bolt retracted by key outside. Exit-only doors have outside trim removed. Inside push bar always free for immediate exit. Push bar cannot be dogged down to keep latch bolt retracted.		Yes	

Table T8.1 Minimum Required Lock Functions, Master Keying, and Key Control by Space
continued

Room	Lock*	Function	Description	Card Access	Closer	Holder
Exit	Schlage L9080 Mortise	Store-room	Latch bolt retracted by key outside or by lever inside. Outside lever always inoperative. Auxiliary latch deadlocks latch bolt when door is closed. Inside lever is always free for immediate exit.		Yes	
Inner lobby	Schlage L9080PEU Mortise	Store-room	Outside lever unlocked by 24VDC. Latch bolt retracted by key outside or lever inside. Auxiliary latch deadlocks latch bolt when door is closed. Inside lever always free for immediate exit.	Yes	Yes	
Courtroom front	Von Duprin 98/99 series exit hardware	Store-room	Latch bolt retracted by 24VDC or by key outside. Inside push bar always free for immediate exit. Push bar cannot be dogged down to keep latch bolt retracted.	Yes	Yes	Yes
Courtroom rear†	Von Duprin 98/99 series 99L-BE exit hardware	Passage	Card reader turns off local alarm when exiting. Request-to-exit motion detector turns off local alarm when entering. Exiting door without card read sounds local alarm. Latch bolt retracted by lever from outside at all times. Inside push bar always free for immediate exit. Push bar cannot be dogged down to keep latch bolt retracted.	Yes	Yes	
Bench exit	Schlage L9010 Mortise	Passage	Card reader turns off local alarm when exiting. Request-to-exit motion detector turns off local alarm when entering. Exiting door without card read sounds local alarm. Opening door without card read sounds local alarm. Latch bolt retracted by lever from either side at all times. Inside lever is always free for immediate exit.	Yes	Yes	

REQUIRED TOOLS

T1 Life Cycle Cost Analysis
T2 Catalog of Courtroom Layouts for California Trial Courts
T3 Integrated Network Architecture
T4 Graphical User Interface Template
T5 In-Custody Interview Room Guidelines
T6 Building Management System Guidelines
T7 Small Courthouse Guidelines
T8 Security System Guidelines
T8.A General
T8.B Access Control System
T8.C Duress System
T8.D Alarm System
T8.E Video
T8.F Intercom
T8.G Detention
T8.H Licensing
T8.I Cable, Conduit, and Termination
T8.J Servers and Workstations
T8.K Coordination
T8.L Acceptance Testing
T8.M Attachments

Table T8.1 Minimum Required Lock Functions, Master Keying, and Key Control by Space
continued

Room	Lock*	Function	Description	Card Access	Closer	Holder
Chambers	Schlage L9080PEU Mortise	Office	Outside lever unlocked by 24VDC. Latch bolt retracted by key outside or lever inside. Auxiliary latch deadlocks latch bolt when door is closed. Inside lever always free for immediate exit.	Yes	Yes	Yes
Evidence storage	Schlage L9080PEU Mortise	Store-room	Outside lever unlocked by 24VDC. Latch bolt retracted by key outside or lever inside. Auxiliary latch deadlocks latch bolt when door is closed. Inside lever always free for immediate exit.	Yes	Yes	
Exhibit storage	Schlage L9080 Mortise	Store-room	Latch bolt retracted by key outside or by lever inside. Outside lever always inoperative. Auxiliary latch deadlocks latch bolt when door is closed. Inside lever is always free for immediate exit.		Yes	
Mediation	Schlage L9010 Mortise	Passage	Latch bolt retracted by lever from either side at all times. Inside lever is always free for immediate exit.			
Conference	Schlage L9010 Mortise	Passage	Latch bolt retracted by lever from either side at all times. Inside lever is always free for immediate exit.			
Office	Schlage L9050 Mortise	Office	Latch bolt retracted by lever from either side unless outside is made inoperative by key outside or by turning inside thumb turn. When outside is locked, latch bolt is retracted by key outside or by lever inside. Outside lever remains locked until thumb turn is returned to vertical or unlocked by key. Auxiliary latch deadlocks latch bolt when door is closed. Inside lever is always free for immediate exit.			

Table T8.1 Minimum Required Lock Functions, Master Keying, and Key Control by Space *continued*

Room	Lock*	Function	Description	Card Access	Closer	Holder
Lactation room	Schlage L9496 Mortise	Privacy with occupied indicator	Lever retracts latch bolt from either side. Deadbolt thrown or retracted by key outside (retraction by key required in an emergency) or inside thumb turn. Throwing deadbolt locks outside lever and displays *OCCUPIED* plate. Rotating inside lever simultaneously retracts both deadbolt and latch bolt and unlocks outside lever. Inside lever is always free for immediate exit.			
Storage/ file	Schlage L9080 Mortise	Store-room	Latch bolt retracted by key outside or by lever inside. Outside lever always inoperative. Auxiliary latch deadlocks latch bolt when door is closed. Inside lever is always free for immediate exit.		Yes	
Janitor closet	Schlage L9465 Mortise	Closet	Latch bolt retracted by knob/ lever from either side. Deadbolt thrown or retracted by key outside.		Yes	
Electrical/ mechanical	Schlage L9080 Mortise	Store-room	Latch bolt retracted by key outside or by lever inside. Outside lever always inoperative. Auxiliary latch deadlocks latch bolt when door is closed. Inside lever is always free for immediate exit.		Yes	
Telecom/ data	Schlage L9080PEU Mortise	Store-room	Outside lever unlocked by 24VDC. Latch bolt retracted by key outside or lever inside. Auxiliary latch deadlocks latch bolt when door is closed. Inside lever always free for immediate exit.	Yes	Yes	

* The manufacturers and part numbers are shown as examples of quality and function that should be met or exceeded. Equivalent quality and function may be found using different manufacturers.

† If included in project design.

VDC = volts of direct current.

REQUIRED TOOLS

T1 Life Cycle Cost Analysis
T2 Catalog of Courtroom Layouts for California Trial Courts
T3 Integrated Network Architecture
T4 Graphical User Interface Template
T5 In-Custody Interview Room Guidelines
T6 Building Management System Guidelines
T7 Small Courthouse Guidelines
T8 Security System Guidelines
T8.A General
T8.B Access Control System
T8.C Duress System
T8.D Alarm System
T8.E Video
T8.F Intercom
T8.G Detention
T8.H Licensing
T8.I Cable, Conduit, and Termination
T8.J Servers and Workstations
T8.K Coordination
T8.L Acceptance Testing
T8.M Attachments

Table T8.2 Key Plan

	Primus secure keyway*	Card access†	Grand master	Janitor master	Keyed alike card reader	Keyed alike perimeter	Keyed alike electrical/ mechanical	Keyed alike exhibit storage	Change key office
Indicating letter on key			**GM**	**J**	**CR**	**P**	**EM**	**EV**	**O1-On**
Main lobby	x	x	x		x				
Perimeter emergency exit	x		x			x			
Inner lobby‡		x	x		x				
Courtroom		x	x		x				
Courtroom side entrance		x	x		x				
Bench		x	x		x				
Chambers		x	x		x				
Evidence storage	x	x	x					x	
Exhibit storage	x		x					x	
Office			x	x					x
Janitor closet			x	x					
Electrical/mechanical			x				x		
Telecom/data		x	x		x				

* Primus is the brand name of the Schlage secured and controlled keyway. Similar products are offered by other manufacturers such as Medeco.

† This column indicates doors with card access control.

‡ Inner lobby doors separate private from public circulation.

13. Cylinders

Interchangeable cylinders shall be used.

14. Everest Primus and Primus Classic Controlled Keyways

The Judicial Council must retain control of the keyway in such a way as to prevent dealer lock-in. The designer shall specify Everest Level 9 and Primus Classic Level 3 or 4 end-user exclusive keyway for the owner to retain control.

15. Key Control

By using a secure keyway from Schlage or Medeco on the perimeter, an extra level of control is built in, as these keyways control the blanks and are not easy to duplicate. Keys must be stamped with a letter and number indicating where they fit. For example, the first office key must be stamped O1, the second office O2, etc. Also, each duplicate key can be stamped with a number. The first office's first key duplicate should be stamped O1 1, the second key for the first office stamped O1 2, etc. The second office keys are similarly stamped O2 1, O2 2, etc.

Records must be kept of keys issued. Regularly scheduled audits and reconciliations must be conducted. Record which key is issued, to whom the key is issued, by whom, the date of issuance, and the date of return. Spare or unassigned keys should be kept in a locked key cabinet.

The topmost grand master key is irreplaceable. If it is lost, the entire building should be rekeyed. Similarly, if the perimeter key is lost, the perimeter will be rekeyed—and likewise with the custodial master key, although in this case, the master key is limited to lower-value rooms (e.g., it does not open the perimeter or the data closets). See figure T8.5, Key Plan Chart.

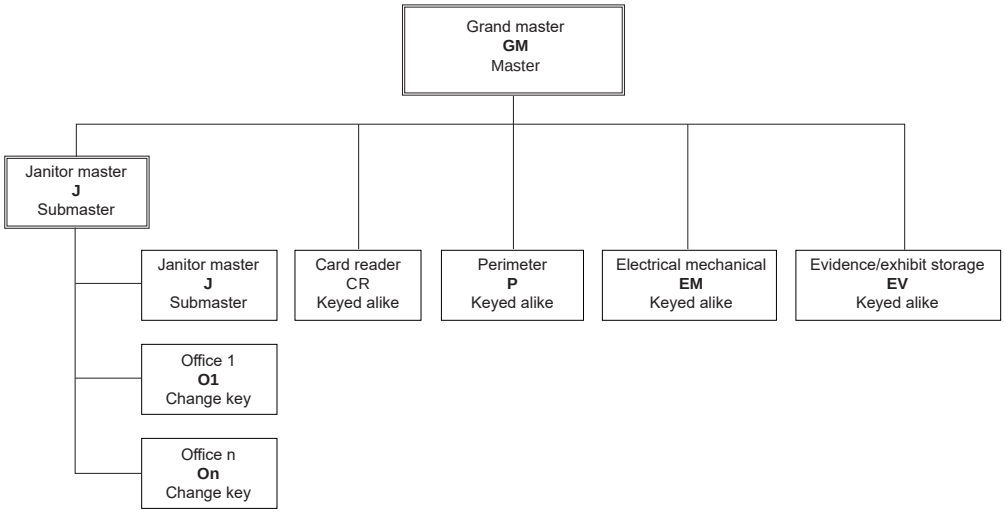


Figure T8.5 Key Plan Chart

16. Knoxbox Fire Department Access

A Knoxbox key keeper is required for emergency access to the building. The box must be large enough to contain a master key and a proximity card. The box must also include a switch that is wired to the security system and sounds an alarm if the box is opened.

T8.B ACCESS CONTROL SYSTEM

The design team shall provide details on the proposed access control system. The system shall incorporate easily maintained and supported hardware. The system shall not require any ongoing licensing costs to remain functional (e.g., software service agreement, software maintenance agreement, etc.) and shall include five years of support and updates from the date of project acceptance at no additional cost to the Judicial Council.

Acceptable manufacturers include DSX and Avigilon. Any deviation will need to be approved by the council. The selected product and design need to incorporate interconnecting the video management system (VMS) platform and programmable logic controller (PLC) system with the access control system in such a way that will avoid losing interoperability if one system is updated. Determining the location of card access doors must be done while referencing the specific building design. The separation of the three types of circulation (see chapter 2, section 2.A, Program Stacking and Zoning) will help determine the locations. Additionally, any high-value areas such as evidence storage shall have access control. Doors shall be factory prepared to receive electric mortise locks, electric hinges, and door contact sensors (see chapter 4, section 4.I, Electronic Security Systems).

REQUIRED TOOLS

T1 Life Cycle Cost Analysis
T2 Catalog of Courtroom Layouts for California Trial Courts
T3 Integrated Network Architecture
T4 Graphical User Interface Template
T5 In-Custody Interview Room Guidelines
T6 Building Management System Guidelines
T7 Small Courthouse Guidelines
T8 Security System Guidelines
T8.A General
T8.B Access Control System
T8.C Duress System
T8.D Alarm System
T8.E Video
T8.F Intercom
T8.G Detention
T8.H Licensing
T8.I Cable, Conduit, and Termination
T8.J Servers and Workstations
T8.K Coordination
T8.L Acceptance Testing
T8.M Attachments

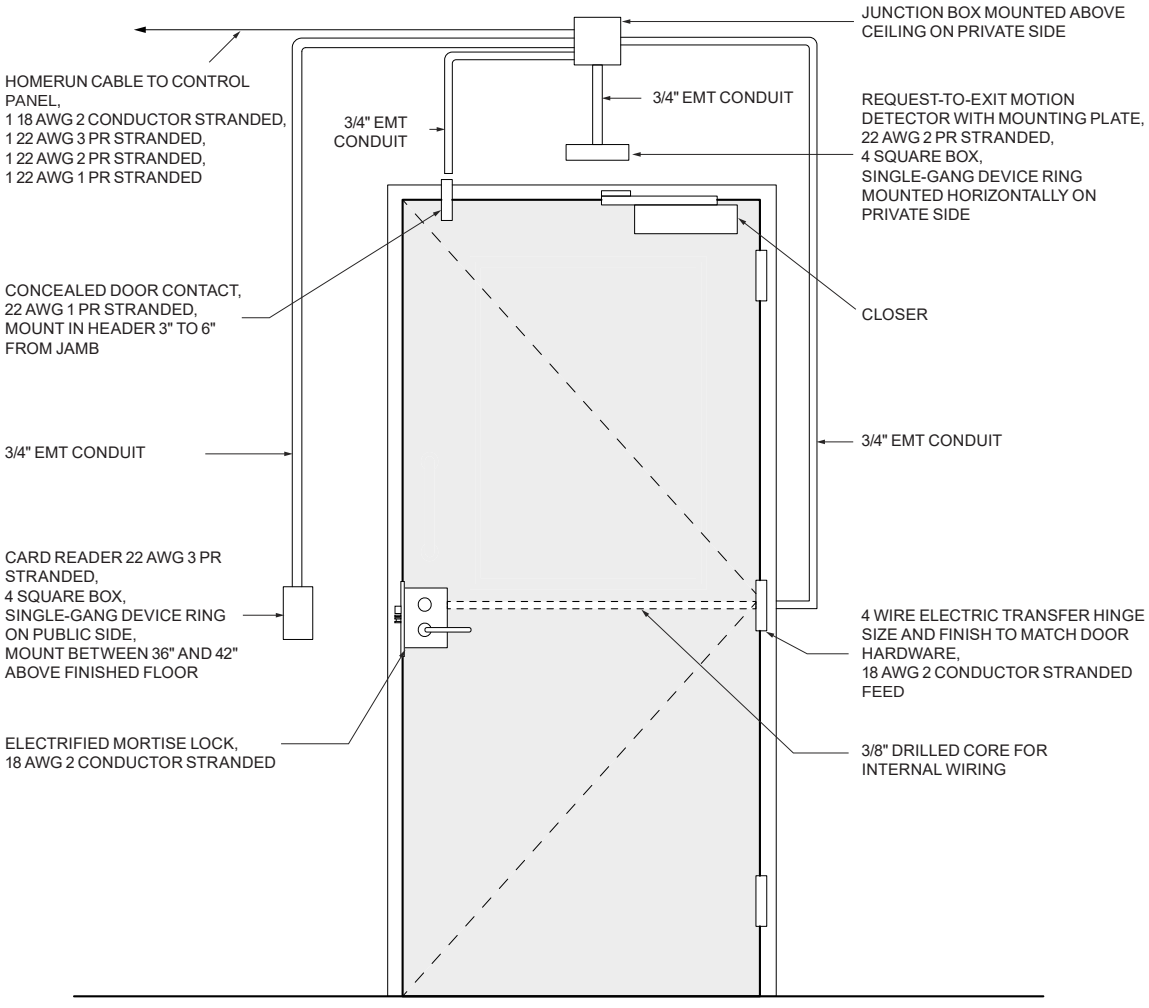
1. Access Cards and Readers

The Judicial Council desires to provide our courts with the most current and secure card reader technology. All access readers require credentials to be presented before granting access. Cards and readers should meet federal information process standards (FIPS). Card and reader technology shall be reviewed with the council security coordinator. Card design should be determined by the courts.

Note: The Judicial Council may not provide badge printers for the new projects. While many courts add identification information to access cards, making them essentially identification cards, this secondary process is a court expense. The council can assist with technical information if a court decides to add this feature at its own expense.

2. Access Control Door

A typical access-controlled door is shown in figure T8.6 and serves as a guide for conduit, cable, and door requirements.

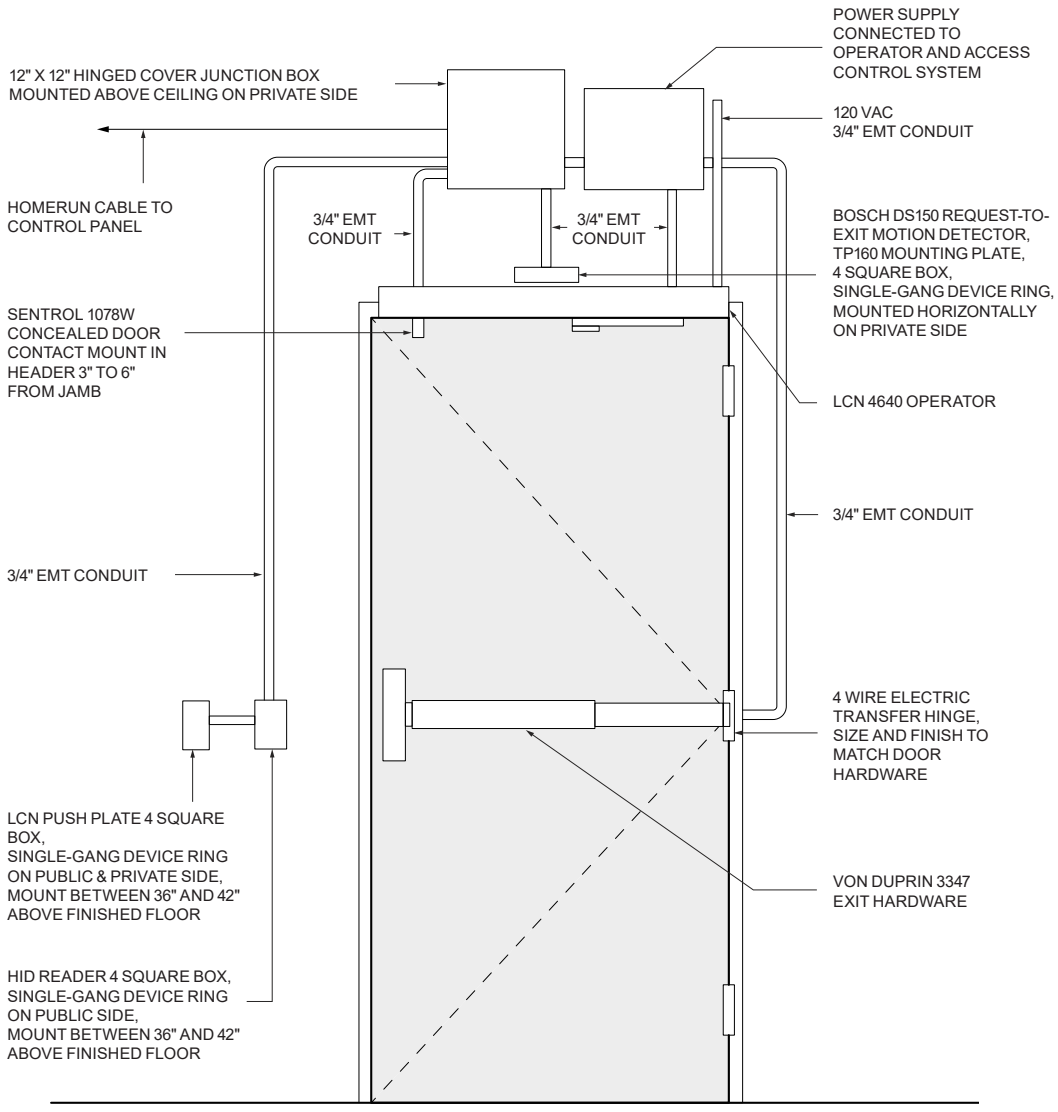


AWG = American Wire Gauge.
EMT = electrical metallic tubing.

Figure T8.6 Access Control Door in Elevation

3. Doors With Power Openers

ADA-compliant doors with operators require special consideration. During business hours, the lobby door operation is that the door is unlocked; pressing either the enter or the exit ADA push plate operates the door. After hours, entering requires a valid card read first, then pressing the push plate operates the door. Exiting is either by pushing the exit hardware bar or the push plate. A typical door is shown in figure T8.7.



EMT = electrical metallic tubing.
VAC = volts alternating current.

Figure T8.7 Door With Power Opener in Elevation

REQUIRED TOOLS

T1 Life Cycle Cost Analysis
T2 Catalog of Courtroom Layouts for California Trial Courts
T3 Integrated Network Architecture
T4 Graphical User Interface Template
T5 In-Custody Interview Room Guidelines
T6 Building Management System Guidelines
T7 Small Courthouse Guidelines
T8 Security System Guidelines
T8.A General
T8.B Access Control System
T8.C Duress System
T8.D Alarm System
T8.E Video
T8.F Intercom
T8.G Detention
T8.H Licensing
T8.I Cable, Conduit, and Termination
T8.J Servers and Workstations
T8.K Coordination
T8.L Acceptance Testing
T8.M Attachments

Theories of Operation

Door 100:

a. Valid card read unlocks door, relocks on time or opening. For general use.

b. Valid read plus PIN unlocks door. Valid read plus PIN relocks. To open doors for court session by bailiff.

Door 102:

Nondetention sound-lock door leading to vestibule.

4. Courtroom Door

The outermost door leading into the courtroom from the public corridor is card access controlled. The card reader includes a PIN pad. When court is not in session, users with access rights may enter the courtroom by presenting their card to the reader. To unlock the door for a session, bailiffs present their card and enter a PIN. The door is unlocked and remains so until bailiffs present their card and enter a PIN a second time. The logic for the operation is configured through the access control system software.

If attorney-client conference rooms are designed in conjunction with a courtroom entrance and the conference doors are located in the vestibule of the courtroom entrance, then the keypad/reader and locking hardware may be installed on the conference room doors. This design will allow the conference rooms to be used at all times, not only while court is in session. Courts will make this final determination. See figure T8.8.

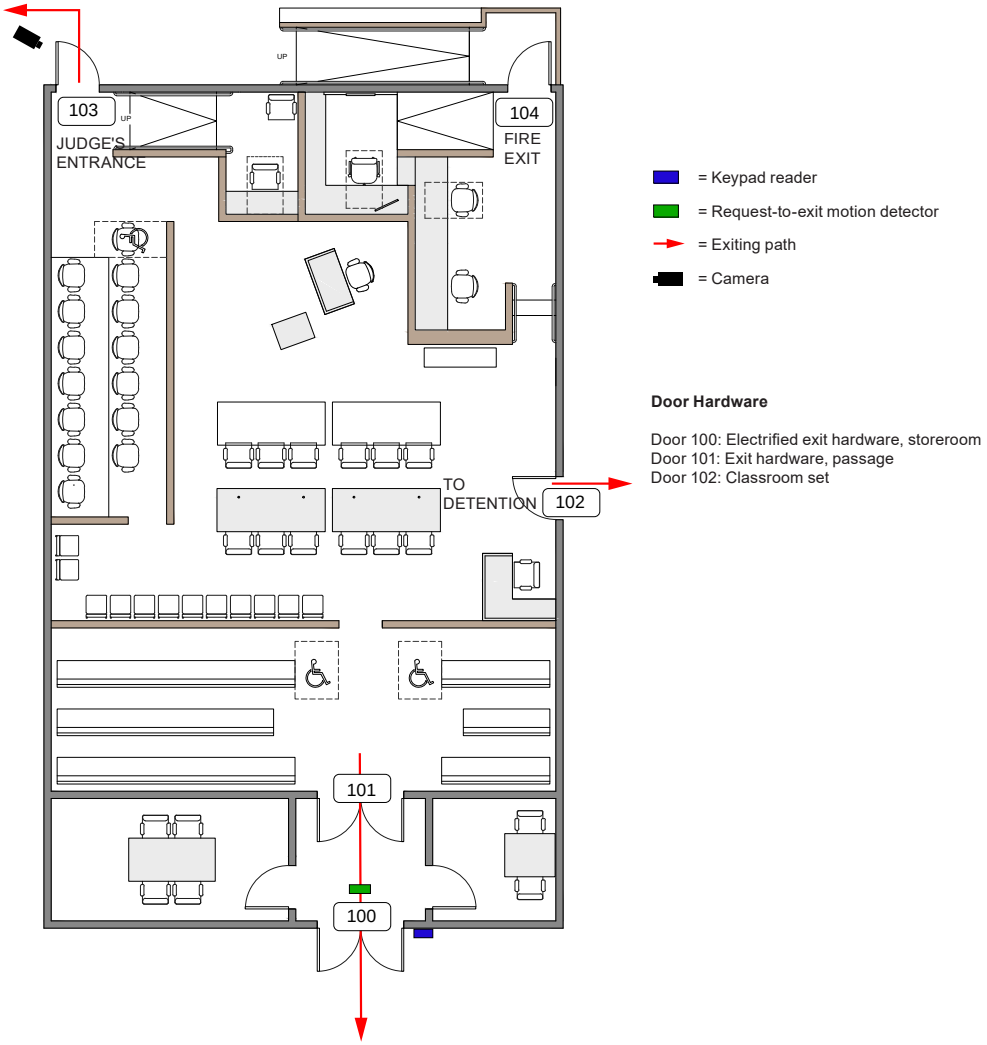
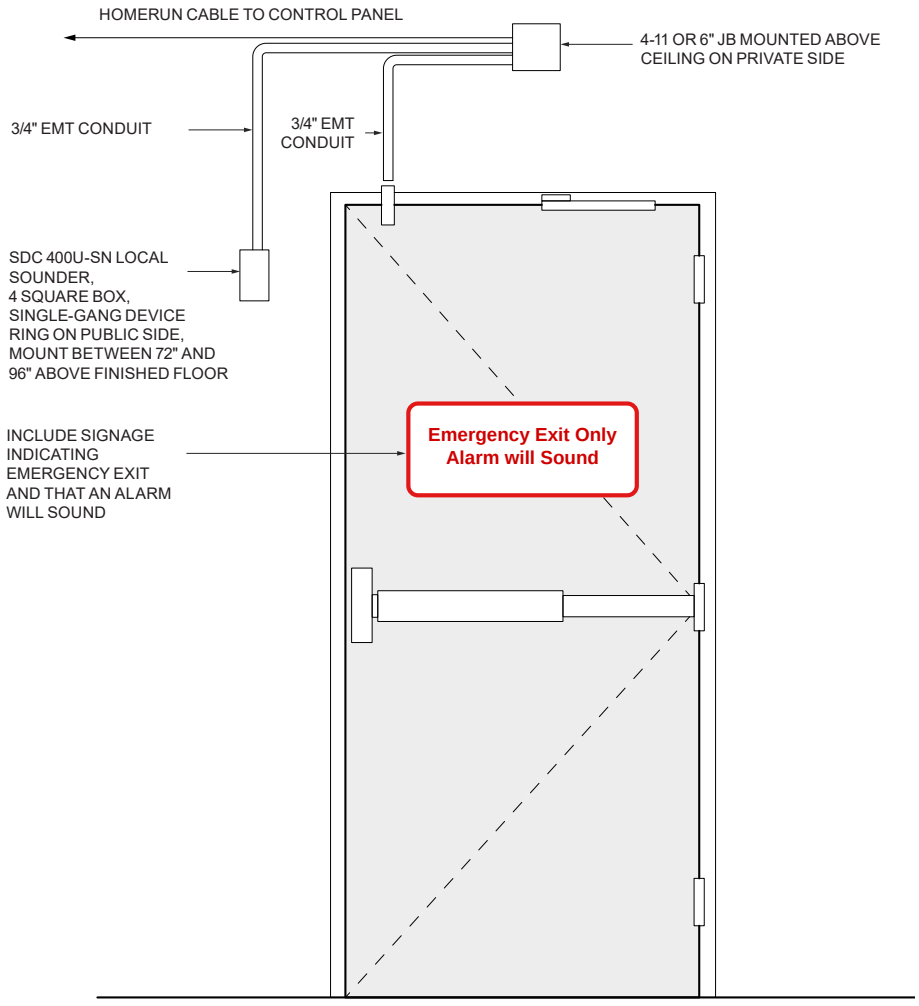


Figure T8.8 Courtroom Floor Plan

5. Exterior Emergency Exits

Emergency exits leading to the exterior need special consideration. Entrance screening divides the building envelope into two areas, sometimes referred to as sterile and nonsterile. Emergency exits located in the sterile area pose a security vulnerability. The doors can easily be opened to let unscreened people or contraband in. Courthouses need to have several security devices, including door position monitoring, local audible door alarm, a camera, and signage. If the door is opened, the door alarm sounds locally, sends a forced-door signal to the access control system, and calls up the camera. These doors must be devoid of all hardware on the exterior. An emergency exit elevation is shown in figure T8.9.



EMT = electrical metallic tubing.
JB = junction box.

Figure T8.9 Emergency Exit Elevation

6. Stairwell Access

Ideally, doors leading from stairwells to floors should be locked and require a card for access to each level. Public access to stairwells should be for exiting purposes only and should not allow access between floors, except when they are specifically designed as communicating stairs for public use.

REQUIRED TOOLS

T1 Life Cycle Cost Analysis
T2 Catalog of Courtroom Layouts for California Trial Courts
T3 Integrated Network Architecture
T4 Graphical User Interface Template
T5 In-Custody Interview Room Guidelines
T6 Building Management System Guidelines
T7 Small Courthouse Guidelines
T8 Security System Guidelines
T8.A General
T8.B Access Control System
T8.C Duress System
T8.D Alarm System
T8.E Video
T8.F Intercom
T8.G Detention
T8.H Licensing
T8.I Cable, Conduit, and Termination
T8.J Servers and Workstations
T8.K Coordination
T8.L Acceptance Testing
T8.M Attachments

7. Turnstiles

There is no set standard as to a specific turnstile to be used in courthouses. Provided here are the minimum features and performance requirements that any proposed turnstile should be measured against. Also included is the theory of operation that the turnstile, once installed, should be able to meet.

Turnstile features and performance requirements include:

- Small footprint for minimal space;
- At least one lane of ADA travel;
- Access card reader compatible with building access system;
- High flow rate (30–50 people per minute);
- Glass panel barriers that are retractable (check with state fire marshal);
- Infrared barriers;
- Audible and visual card reader signals for security staff;
- Anti-tailgating device (1/4″ sensor);
- Bidirectional travel;
- Variable modes (in/out, barrier/beam);
- Tamper-resistant construction;
- Compliance with fire codes/egress; and
- Preferably powered by plug rather than hardwiring (for ease of servicing).

Theory of Operation

Turnstiles are generally used to control the path of travel from the building's public exit. As a person enters the turnstile to exit the building, the glass partition will open, allowing free egress and then closing behind the person. A person trying to enter through the exit side would trip the infrared barriers, sounding an alarm both locally and in security control. When used as a controlled entry for staff, building access credentials will be presented by authorized court users to the access control reader mounted to the front of the turnstile unit. If the access credential is valid, the turnstile will show both a positive visual indicator and an audible signal that access is granted, and the glass barrier will retract. The authorized user may enter the facility, and the infrared beam will ensure the user is not followed by unauthorized persons. Attempts to enter the turnstile by unauthorized persons will trigger visual and audible alarms and will send a signal to the security control room.

8. Parking and Gate Control System

Entrance to secure parking is controlled using a proximity booster or similar technology. When paired with an authorized access card, the booster does long-range authentication so that the gate and overhead door can be opened by pushing a button. Overhead doors are high speed. Safety measures are required on all gate arms and overhead doors and include safety loops, reversing edges, and beam detectors. A typical gate and overhead door system is shown in figure T8.10.

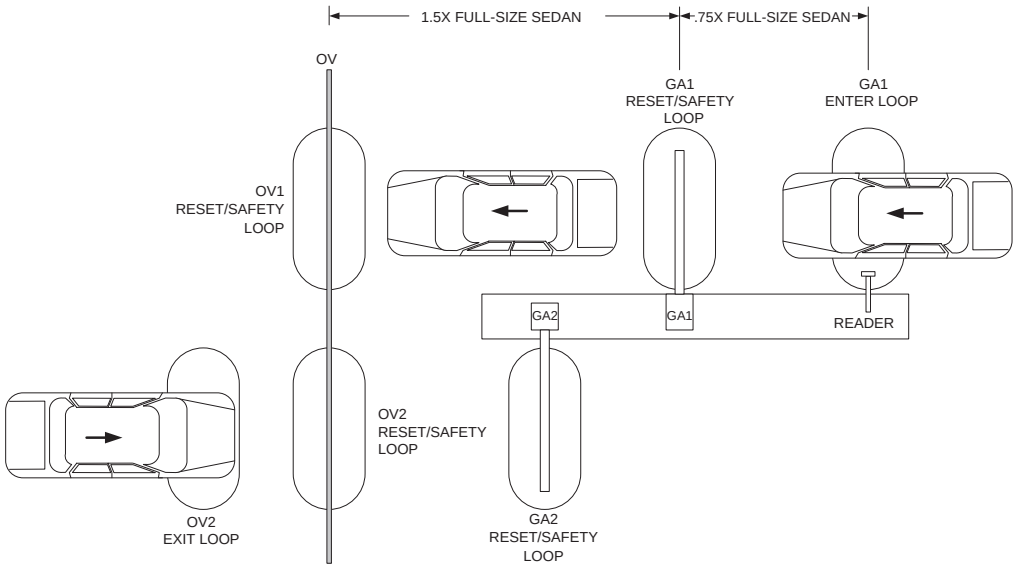


Figure T8.10 Plan for a Typical Gate and Overhead Door System

T8.C DURESS SYSTEM

The standard duress system is the Centurion Elite emergency notification system made by Response Technologies. The Centurion Elite's architecture transmits voice and text notifications to phone, two-way radio, email, pagers, and computer monitoring stations. It is capable of using a variety of wireless and network-driven sensors. A triggered alarm can be announced on the court mobile radios using a recorded message. For example, the message from any duress button in Courtroom A may say, "Duress alarm in Courtroom A." This system has proven to be efficient, easy to install, and cost-effective to maintain. This wireless solution is approximately one-third of the initial cost of a hardwired system. Another advantage is the ease with which individual buttons can be relocated to other sites at little or no cost to the court. Hardwired systems are expensive to maintain as they age and often fall into disrepair.

Determining the location of duress buttons is done while referencing the specific building design. In general, wireless duress buttons are provided at all locations where judicial officers or court staff interact with the public, in detention areas along in-custody travel paths, in sally ports, and in judicial parking areas. Refer to attachment 2 and chapter 4, table 4.4, for details on specific locations and button types. Repeaters are distributed as the site requires to ensure a good signal. Power supplies for repeaters need to be in locations that will secure them from being easily disconnected. The contractor shall use Response Technologies for the design and installation of the system. Electrical outlets need to be provided at each repeater location.

The duress system is connected to the network to provide email and/or text notification and is also used for system maintenance. The American Standard Code for Information Interchange (ASCII) or other connection will provide transaction reporting and alarm integration to the PLC, access control, and ultimately the video systems. The Centurion Elite may also be connected to a telephone line as an additional notification option. See figure T8.11.

REQUIRED TOOLS

T1 Life Cycle Cost Analysis
T2 Catalog of Courtroom Layouts for California Trial Courts
T3 Integrated Network Architecture
T4 Graphical User Interface Template
T5 In-Custody Interview Room Guidelines
T6 Building Management System Guidelines
T7 Small Courthouse Guidelines
T8 Security System Guidelines
T8.A General
T8.B Access Control System
T8.C Duress System
T8.D Alarm System
T8.E Video
T8.F Intercom
T8.G Detention
T8.H Licensing
T8.I Cable, Conduit, and Termination
T8.J Servers and Workstations
T8.K Coordination
T8.L Acceptance Testing
T8.M Attachments

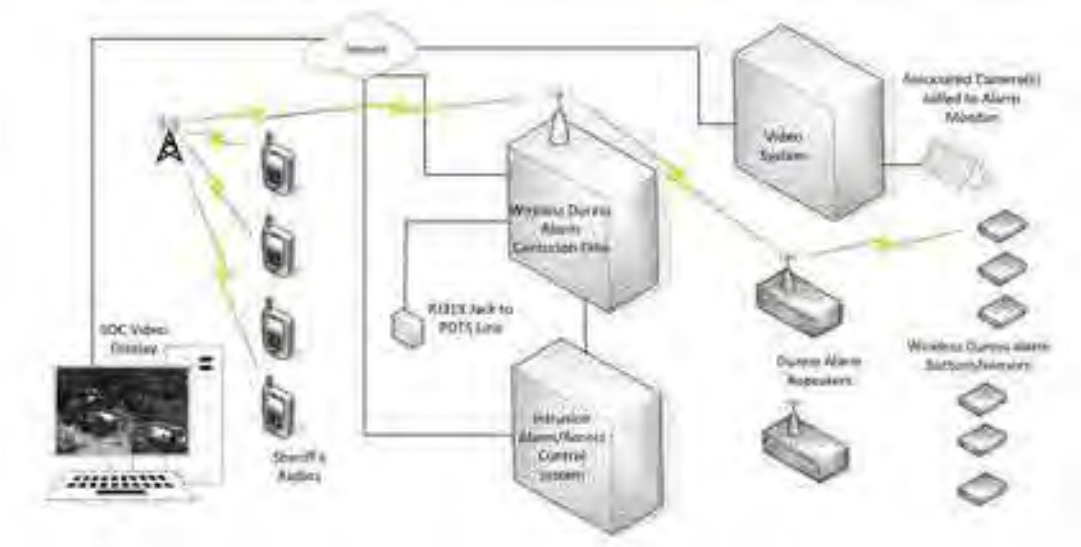


Figure T8.11 Standard Duress System

1. Centurion Elite Wireless Duress Alarm System

The details about the Centurion Elite Wireless Duress Alarm System are included in attachment 2. This is a completely wireless system that allows simple recording of duress alarm messages to specifically identify the origination of an alarm. The signal is transmitted to officers' two-way radios, pagers, and/or cell phones for immediate response. The system requires a court-supplied radio to transmit alerts to officers' radios.

Generally, this is the only cost to the court. The court will also be expected to conduct minor as-needed maintenance on the system, such as re-recording messages, replacing batteries, and moving buttons.

2. Approved Duress Alarm Locations

The duress alarm program will include payment for duress alarm buttons in the following nonpublic locations. If the court believes buttons are essential in locations not listed below, they may be brought to the attention of the Judicial Council's security coordinator for review.

- Any courtroom that is used at any time for court functions. Buttons are to be installed at the bench.
- Bailiff's station inside the courtroom.
- Clerk's workstation inside the courtroom.
- Judge's chambers.
- Clerk's or secretary's desks adjacent to chambers (those not inside the courtroom).
- Clerk's area supervisor and/or manager (one only per public clerk's area).
- Public counter positions in the clerk's office regardless of other screening material or shields.
- In-custody holding areas.
- Court executive officer's (CEO) office.
- Mediator's offices.

- Entrance screening station area.
- Jury assembly public counter.
- Secure parking area.
- Family law office areas where contact with the public is routine.
- Five additional buttons and five additional messages to be placed at the court's discretion.
- If courts choose to add additional buttons or messages beyond the Judicial Council–funded locations, they can arrange for these with the Response Technologies installation representative at the state-negotiated price.

T8.D ALARM SYSTEM

A supplementary intrusion detection alarm system may be considered for after-hours monitoring of the court by a third-party central station. See the project risk assessment and chapter 4, sections 4.D and 4.I, for more information. Glass break detectors may be installed where appropriate. A recommended method of arming and disarming is by access card instead of PIN. A card access reader is installed next to the keypad. A valid card read at the keypad will start the exit delay or stop the entry delay. The arming station is located at the judges' entrance and the staff entrance. The council security coordinator can assist the design team and the court with alarm systems and their requirements. Alarm systems and their monitoring become the court's responsibility after the project is finished. This includes after-hours response, service, monitoring charges, and any local penalties for false alarm activation. These costs can be significant. The majority of alarm responses to courthouses are due to human error. Designers shall discuss this with court management before final design decisions are made.

T8.E VIDEO

Video equipment must be compliant with the National Defense Authorization Act (NDAA, 2023). Premium camera products from Axis, Hanwha, Avigilon, Illustra, or Bosch that meet this standard are acceptable. Camera manufacturers' native drivers must be fully supported by the selected video management system (VMS). Any deviation will need to be approved by the Judicial Council.

1. Video System

Video systems are installed to address specific security concerns. They are not intended for the monitoring and tracking of employees. Depending on the courthouse, video systems must be Internet Protocol (IP) based (see chapter 4, section 4.I).

The basis of design for the IP-based video management systems is to be nonproprietary and open platform. These include Avigilon, exacqVision, and Hanwha Wave/Network Optix. Systems must include professional or enterprise licenses as appropriate. Any deviation will need to be approved by the Judicial Council. The initial channel license and storage configuration of the system will be based on the size of the installation and include a minimum of 10 percent expansion of storage. A minimum three-year warranty is required on all cameras and recording hardware.

A system that uses redundant array of independent disks (RAID) storage and dual servers with fail-over capability is recommended. Resolution of recorded active scenes should be at a minimum of 1080p, at a high-quality setting. All cameras are to be recording continuously at a minimum of 15 images per second, with events flagged in the recording. A minimum of 30 days of recorded video is required. Storage calculation should be made based on

REQUIRED TOOLS

T1 Life Cycle Cost Analysis
T2 Catalog of Courtroom Layouts for California Trial Courts
T3 Integrated Network Architecture
T4 Graphical User Interface Template
T5 In-Custody Interview Room Guidelines
T6 Building Management System Guidelines
T7 Small Courthouse Guidelines
T8 Security System Guidelines
T8.A General
T8.B Access Control System
T8.C Duress System
T8.D Alarm System
T8.E Video
T8.F Intercom
T8.G Detention
T8.H Licensing
T8.I Cable, Conduit, and Termination
T8.J Servers and Workstations
T8.K Coordination
T8.L Acceptance Testing
T8.M Attachments

continuous recording using H.264 or less efficient video compression. Outdoor cameras are to record continuously at the highest resolution available.

Client management and viewing software must be loaded on workstation computers, and the video systems should not incur recurring camera licensing or support fees. If licensing is required, the VMS must include five years of support and software updates. This period is to commence with the occupancy of the building by the courts. The number of clients, viewing locations, and monitors should be determined during the design process.

2. Hardware Specification Minimums for Recorders, Servers, and Viewing Stations

Recorders must include video-grade hard drives designed for continuous operation. Servers must be sized to easily provide required processing based on selected VMS, camera counts, resolution, and frame rates. The viewing stations must have the capability of providing multiple displays with processing capacity and video cards to support decoding livestreams of a minimum of 16 two-megapixel (MP) images displayed on each monitor connected to the viewing station in real time. Manufacturers include Seneca, BCDVideo, or approved equivalent. Servers from the VMS manufacturer may also be appropriate as long as they use industrial components designed for continuous use and have a minimum three-year warranty. Consumer-grade components are not acceptable.

An uninterruptible power supply (UPS) with clean filtered power is required for all server and recording equipment. This is especially important when the building generator system is providing backup power. A local rack-mounted UPS is required to mitigate power surges and brownouts when power transfers to the facility backup system. When backup power is not provided by the facility, the video components must have a minimum of 20 minutes' runtime upon power outage and ability to safely shut down components. Ideally, all client workstation computers and servers will be mounted in locations that will remain clean and cooled, such as in IDF or MDF rooms and not under the operator's desk. All equipment must be clearly marked for identification.

3. Camera Types and Mounts

Video cameras must be high resolution (minimum 1080p) and include quality optics with low distortion. Indoor cameras require the flexibility to be configured in "hallway" view and have a minimum 120 dB wide dynamic range (WDR) for difficult backlighting situations; 360-degree single-sensor "fisheye" cameras may be used indoors but should be used sparingly. When used, they must provide a minimum of 9 MP recording resolution.

Multihead cameras may be used indoors and outdoors where appropriate. Outdoor cameras and cameras in vulnerable accessible areas must be encased in vandal-resistant housings and be equipped with vandal-resistant, detention-grade hardware. Cameras in holding cells, if approved to be provided by Judicial Council, shall be in detention-grade enclosures. The use of domes, mounting locations, and mounting styles that discourage vandalism or tampering is imperative. Avoid recess-mounted cameras due to future replacement challenges. In outdoor locations, wall arms with sun shrouds should be used to avoid sun damage.

Standard fixed-dome cameras should be capable of 1080p resolution using varifocal lenses with remote positioning zoom and focus (RPTZ). (RPTZ motors designed for setup positioning of the cameras may be appropriate.) Dual-head cameras with appropriate lensing may also be used. In all applications where backlight will be an issue, wide dynamic range will be enabled to provide optimum exposure of both dark and light areas within the scene. All cameras must be configured to minimize or eliminate blur on motion when reviewing an event frame by frame.

In courthouses with elevators transporting in-custody defendants, cameras will be mounted inside the elevator. Cameras, converters, or any other associated parts are to be mounted inside the elevator cab to minimize maintenance costs. Cameras must have detention-grade enclosures and low-profile dome or corner mounts with a minimum 105-degree horizontal field of view.

In public areas, standard domes and mounts may be used. In areas where cameras can be easily reached, a tamper-resistant dome should be specified. In detention circulation areas, tamper-resistant domes must be used. In holding cells with adequate ceiling height, vandal-resistant dome cameras may be used. Lower ceilings will require detention-grade, ligature-resistant, corner-mount enclosures. In either case, Board of State and Community Corrections guidelines must be followed.

Pan-tilt-zoom (PTZ) cameras are installed only in specific warranted circumstances. (A single exterior PTZ camera mounted in a strategic location may be appropriate, based on court input.) PTZ cameras require personnel to operate the unit, and often, when incidents occur, the camera is not facing in the right direction, or an operator is not present. In lieu of PTZ cameras for outdoor coverage, high-resolution and/or multihead cameras providing a 270-degree or a 180-degree field of view are recommended. The primary area of coverage should be immediately around the building, secured parking, entrances, and exits. Public parking does not require camera coverage.

Generally, cameras will be mounted on the buildings. Expansive outdoor areas may require higher resolution; 180-degree-view cameras must provide a stitched view with a minimum of four 1080p imagers. In most instances, multihead cameras can be installed for the same price and will incur far lower maintenance costs over time. PTZ cameras should never be used in courtrooms; they take the bailiffs' attention away from their specific duties and can be unintentionally set to view the wrong locations. A single wide-angle-view security camera mounted above the judge's bench is usually adequate. Ceiling lights, finishes, and undulations should be considered when identifying the camera location in the courtroom.

All cameras must be labeled with a number for identification, ideally matching numbering associated with the VMS. Labels must be machine printed and firmly affixed to the device.

4. Monitors

Monitor size should be based on the available space, with a display as large as practicable for the location without blocking physical views of critical locations. Mounting hardware should be sized to support the dimension and weight of the monitors. Articulating arms should provide adjustment allowing the displays to provide minimal blockage of any viewing windows in the control areas. Touchscreen displays for the VMS, in addition to the detention control system, may also be considered to provide ease of use.

5. Camera Installations

Camera installations serve the following purposes:

a. Transmit real-time information to a full-time monitoring station or record specific activities after hours for future review.

b. Provide a record for court use on recent activities in a courtroom or other specific location.

c. Operate controlled access or egress points such as sally ports or judicial parking entrances.

d. Act as a direct crime deterrent.

REQUIRED TOOLS

T1 Life Cycle Cost Analysis
T2 Catalog of Courtroom Layouts for California Trial Courts
T3 Integrated Network Architecture
T4 Graphical User Interface Template
T5 In-Custody Interview Room Guidelines
T6 Building Management System Guidelines
T7 Small Courthouse Guidelines
T8 Security System Guidelines
T8.A General
T8.B Access Control System
T8.C Duress System
T8.D Alarm System
T8.E Video
T8.F Intercom
T8.G Detention
T8.H Licensing
T8.I Cable, Conduit, and Termination
T8.J Servers and Workstations
T8.K Coordination
T8.L Acceptance Testing
T8.M Attachments

e. Enhance the safety of security staff in holding areas through coverage of high-profile and at-risk inmates. Video is not required in all holding cells and is not a replacement for required inspection viewing by security staff.

f. Provide perimeter security through coverage of high-risk emergency exits, screening areas, and limited parking and driveway areas.

The Judicial Council requires installations to provide 30 days of recording history. Courts are encouraged to create a video use policy and protect recorded information.

The specification for the final bid documents should include professional services provided by the equipment manufacturer to review programming best practices and verify performance. The services are to take place at the completion of the installation and in conjunction with the integrator who installed the system. These services are intended to confirm that the system is set up appropriately for the court from the first day of operation.

6. Camera Locations

The locations of cameras should be determined while referencing the specific building design (refer to chapter 4, table 4.4). In general, cameras are placed at screening, perimeter entrances, emergency exits, transaction windows, evidence storage, public corridors, and behind the bench facing the well. On the site, cameras are placed at secure parking areas and on the perimeter of the building. The security coordinator will assist the security provider and security consultant with placement of cameras during the design development phase.

Ease of maintenance shall be considered when determining mounting locations. Indoor cameras shall be accessible with an 8′ ladder. Ease of maintenance shall be balanced with the need to prevent vandalism; therefore, the height of installation shall be carefully coordinated in consultation with the Judicial Council. Signage, light fixtures, and other objects that could obstruct the view must be taken into consideration in camera placement and mounting height. Outdoor cameras typically would not be mounted higher than 12′ above ground. Roof-mounted cameras using parapet adapters attached to the inside of the parapet for service and accessibility are also acceptable. Tie-off points may be required for maintenance per OSHA standards. Camera locations requiring a lift for maintenance are to be avoided.

Duress button alarms and local door alarms should be integrated such that the video system must provide automatic call-up of the associated camera nearby, allowing security officers to verify the alarm. The video called up in the event of an alarm must be on the video system client, not the access control client.

In holding areas, cameras are placed in sally ports, in detention elevators, in corridors, and in a few select cells. Placement will be decided by the Judicial Council design team and the court security provider and is normally associated with large holding areas and specific cells for high-profile inmates or suicide watches. Particular attention must be given to dead-end corridors, hidden doors, and elevators. These areas must have video coverage. All cameras within holding cells must include detention-grade enclosures. Cameras are not installed in attorney-client interview rooms. The normal path of travel for judicial parking and judicial entry into the building by stairs and/or elevator will be covered by video.

Prior to installation of any conduit, back boxes, cameras, or other video appliances, the contractor must perform, in the field, a camera-obstruction survey to ensure that the field of view of each camera to be installed is clear and unobstructed in accordance with the logically intended view indicated on the drawings and as called out in the schedules (if schedules are included in the construction documents). The contractor must report any discrepancies and suggested or required changes to the project manager, the architect, security consultant, and Judicial Council security coordinator. If the contractor is installing

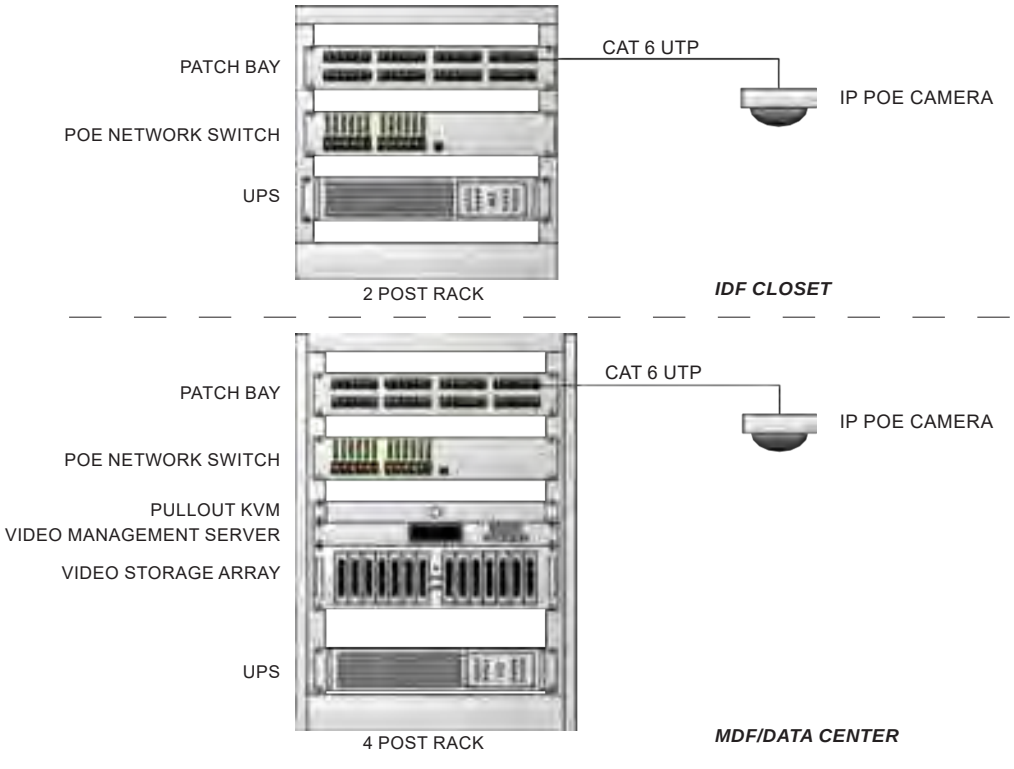
conduit and back boxes for security systems, then they must be advised of potential changes to device locations to prevent any inappropriately located devices. The design team and the contractor will advise and confirm all final positions.

7. Video Monitoring at Screening

If the design includes video monitoring at the screening station, as may be the case at small courthouses that do not have a full-time SOC, care must be taken with the location and design of the video monitoring station to prevent access and the ability of the general public to view the cameras. In situations where there is no control room and there will be no access control workstation located at the screening area, alarm control will be through the video system. This prevents the need for additional logins or access to the access control system. In courthouses where there will be a separate SOC, an access control workstation can be located with the video system workstation. Primary video and alarm monitoring must be through the video system. Control of the access system will be decided by court administration but may include security personnel, court administration, and other court functions.

8. Typical IP/NVR-Based Video System

The typical IP-based video system uses Power over Ethernet (PoE) switches, the IP backbone, and a data center–based network video recorder (NVR). See figure T8.12.



CAT 6 UTP = Category 6 untwisted pair.
IP POE = Internet Protocol Power over Ethernet.
KVM = keyboard, video, and mouse.
MDF = main distribution frame.

Figure T8.12 Typical IP/NVR-Based Video System

T8.F INTERCOM

Intercom systems need to have minimal or no license costs or ongoing software maintenance requirements. Stations may be IP based, but often two-wire or four-wire intercom substations are more cost-effective and practical to maintain. Products such as those from Harding Instruments or an approved equivalent are preferred for detention spaces and integration to the PLC systems. Aiphone or similar audio and audio/video intercoms can be used for simple door control applications.

Flush-mount intercom stations must incorporate standard electrical mounting such as four-square or two-gang enclosures. Custom flush-mount back boxes are not acceptable.

T8.G DETENTION

These are the requirements pertaining to detention design. See chapter 8, In-Custody Defendant Receiving, Holding, and Transport, for more information.

1. Conform to Code

Conform to the appropriate codes for detention facilities, including California Code of Regulations titles 15 and 24.

2. In-Custody Transportation Sally Port

The site design must include a sally port that will accommodate the types of vehicles normally used by the sheriff's department for defendant delivery to the courthouse. Space should be considered for all agency vehicles using the delivery method (probation, sheriff, California Department of Corrections and Rehabilitation, etc.) to have secured parking. If internal parking space is not available, then secure parking adjacent to the sally port should be considered. Ideally, the vehicle sally port is a drive-through design. Sally port gates or overhead doors are interlocked. Control of the sally port is by staff in detention control.

3. In-Custody Holding and Circulation

Control of the holding cells and circulation is done from a detention control room (DCR) that has visibility to the cells. Entering in-custody holding must be done through interlocked sally ports.

4. Detention Control Workstation

The detention control workstation should be in a secure, clean environment and use modular or systems furniture. An ergonomic layout is very important. Only electronic devices related to the user interface layout are allowed at the workstation. All servers and supporting equipment must be located in the MDF or nearby technology closet. A detention-specific systems closet is not required. Monitors for video, productivity applications, and detention control must be uniform and mounted on articulating arms. Articulating arms should provide a minimum height adjustment of 12″ and provide adjustability with up to 180-degree tilt and 180-degree rotation of the monitors, allowing the displays to be adjusted to provide minimal blockage of any viewing windows in the control areas. Where the detention control workstation is of open or a pedestal-type design, control in the center of holding (which is not recommended by the Judicial Council) and not secured, detention-grade furniture must be used. Equipment and desk accessories must be kept to a minimum and firmly attached to the furniture.

5. Detention Control System

A detention control system is required to operate holding cell doors, sally ports, and holding elevators. A programmable logic controller controls the interconnected locks, door and latch position monitors, elevators, intercom, and video monitoring. Sally ports are interlocked wherein only one door in a sally port door set may be unlocked and opened at a time. The system is operated through a touchscreen user interface. The operator and user interface are in a secured room. If detention control is open to the detention area, control of the elevators and sally ports must be moved outside of detention to the security operations center.

Detention-grade electrified locking hardware is required. Locks are maintained holdback, half-cycle motor locks. Locks are operated electrically or with a key. Cylinders are paracentric. Locking hardware includes a latch position sensor. Detention doors include a door position sensor. Detention devices such as intercoms may be mounted in the doorframe along with the lock. This allows for a single chase.

The PLC equipment is housed in a wall-mounted cabinet in the MDF or nearby IDF. Refer to the cabinet requirements in section T8.I.1, Terminal Cabinets. The cabinet is mounted at a height allowing ease of service. All cable entering the cabinet is fully contained in either metallic raceway or conduit. No cable is exposed or contained in plastic. All detention cabling must be contained in conduit or fully enclosed metallic wireway from source point to destination.

6. Programmable Logic Controllers

Programmable logic controllers are the only acceptable controller for detention control systems. Card access control systems are not an appropriate substitution. PLCs shall be from major manufacturers such as Allen-Bradley, Omron, OSSI, or an approved equivalent. The associated mapping software controlling the PLC should be provided by a company with adequate local service personnel to handle issues for the local court. All remark statements with annotated program listings of all custom scripts, macros, and subroutines must be provided to the court. This is to include any documentation required for future troubleshooting or service by third-party vendors, including custom programming detail. All licenses to all installed software and passwords, including service and programming-level passwords, are to be included with documentation provided to the court.

7. Detention Elevators

Detention elevators are controlled by the detention control system. The elevator cabs include an intercom and camera. Camera type and mounting is described in T8.E, Video. Control of the elevators will be decided by the design team subject to the operations of the security provider. Internal elevator controls may or may not be installed.

8. Courtroom Holding and Sally Port

Holding rooms near courtrooms are built to the same standards as the main detention area. The sally port leading into the courtroom must have split control. The inner door closest to the elevator must be operated by detention control. The outer door opening into the courtroom must be operated by the bailiff. This method is ideal and recommended, but the court and sheriff must be consulted for final decisions, including manual operation of all courtroom holding cell locks.

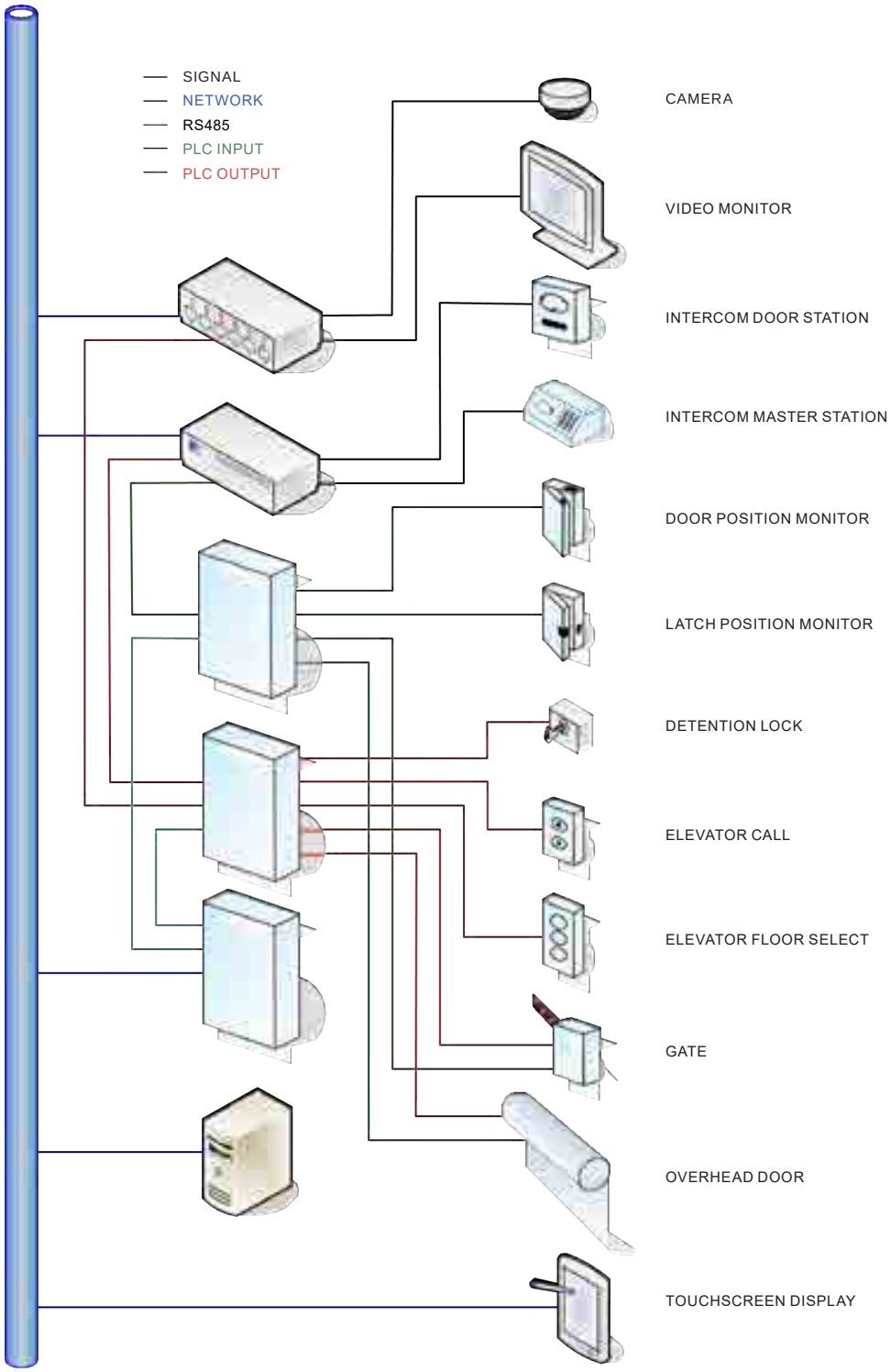
9. Opening and Closing Detention

Means to open and close detention must be included in the design. Ideally, at the end of the day, all the cells are opened, and locks are latched open. This prevents cleaners from accidentally getting locked in. At the beginning of the day, the sheriff must check the cells

REQUIRED TOOLS

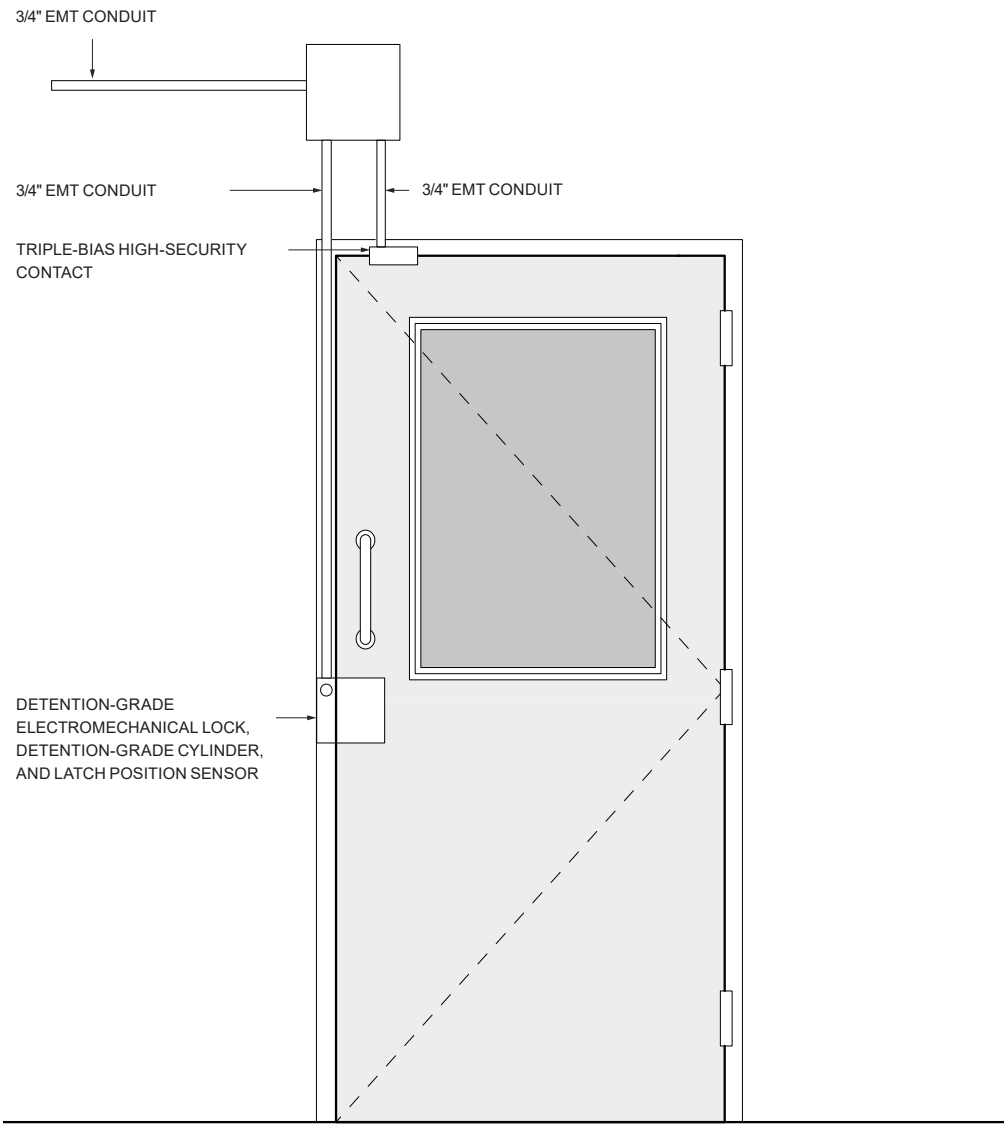
T1 Life Cycle Cost Analysis
T2 Catalog of Courtroom Layouts for California Trial Courts
T3 Integrated Network Architecture
T4 Graphical User Interface Template
T5 In-Custody Interview Room Guidelines
T6 Building Management System Guidelines
T7 Small Courthouse Guidelines
T8 Security System Guidelines
T8.A General
T8.B Access Control System
T8.C Duress System
T8.D Alarm System
T8.E Video
T8.F Intercom
T8.G Detention
T8.H Licensing
T8.I Cable, Conduit, and Termination
T8.J Servers and Workstations
T8.K Coordination
T8.L Acceptance Testing
T8.M Attachments

and close the cells, latching them locked. This is subject to court operations and may be adjusted accordingly. See figure T8.13 for a typical detention control system, shown schematically. See figure T8.14 for a detention door elevation showing the locking mechanism.



PLC = programmable logic controller.

Figure T8.13 Detention Control System Diagram



EMT = electrical metallic tubing.

Figure T8.14 Typical Detention Door

10. Detention Lock, Power Source, and PLC

The detention control system must be designed for safety, ease of service, and fault tolerance. When designing a control system using 120VAC, each lock circuit must be fused and have a disconnect. This serves two purposes: The lock is isolated from other locks by the fuse, and the system is then more fault tolerant. This disconnect makes it safer to service as the lock can be de-energized.

The PLC will be interfaced to the video system. Commands or actions through the PLC controller will call up associated video from a camera in the area. Additionally, an audio channel will be opened through an intercom system for two-way communications. This must be accomplished through either PLC control or an application programming interface (API) or other integration to the video system.

REQUIRED TOOLS

T1 Life Cycle Cost Analysis
T2 Catalog of Courtroom Layouts for California Trial Courts
T3 Integrated Network Architecture
T4 Graphical User Interface Template
T5 In-Custody Interview Room Guidelines
T6 Building Management System Guidelines
T7 Small Courthouse Guidelines
T8 Security System Guidelines
T8.A General
T8.B Access Control System
T8.C Duress System
T8.D Alarm System
T8.E Video
T8.F Intercom
T8.G Detention
T8.H Licensing
T8.I Cable, Conduit, and Termination
T8.J Servers and Workstations
T8.K Coordination
T8.L Acceptance Testing
T8.M Attachments

11. Integration

Integration is a critical piece of all new security systems for courthouse projects. The video management, access control, intercom, and duress systems will be integrated to work with and use information from each other. The following are the required level of integration and the accessibility of functions within the touchscreen display.

- Create alarms based on access control events.
- Associate access events to cameras for simultaneous display of events and live video.
- Associate duress alarm events to call up appropriate cameras to monitors.
- Associate video call-up from intercom activation.

12. Functions Within the System

The touchscreen display controlling the integrated security system should require as few steps as possible to perform functions. During the design process, the court's security provider should detail higher security areas that may require a secondary confirmation to process a request (e.g., opening a sally port door). Whenever possible, each floor should be displayed as a single map. The following are the details of the functionality to be represented within the touchscreen for each of the security systems.

- Access Control System
  - Monitor access points and door position switches on non-access controlled doors.
  - Trigger visual and audible alarms for access events such as door forced open and held open.
  - Display door status on the representative icons.
  - Display associated video with any access alarm.
  - Lock and unlock door using icons on the touchscreen map.
  - Acknowledge access control alarms.
- Video System
  - Pull live cameras using icons on the touchscreen map.
  - Display loss of video signal on the representative icons.
- Duress Alarm System
  - Trigger both an audible and visual alarm.
  - Indicate the location of the duress button that was activated and show live video from the nearest camera covering that location.
- Detention Control
  - Control all doors in the detention area, including cell movement and sally port doors through icons on the touchscreen map.
  - Control detention movement elevators, including movement between floors as well as door open and close.
  - Answer intercoms using icons.
  - Bring up associated video when intercom is activated.

- Turn off cell water using associated icon if cells are equipped with electronic water control are shut. (This may not be necessary if the water shutoff function is provided through another building control system.)
- Transfer function to security operations center (if applicable) in the event of in-custody takeover.

T8.H LICENSING

Initial installation of all systems should include five years of necessary licensing—software service agreement (SSA), software maintenance agreement (SMA), etc. The cost of licensing shall be included in the project deliverables. After the five-year period, the cost responsibility will shift to the individual courts.

T8.I CABLE, CONDUIT, AND TERMINATION

1. Terminal Cabinets

Terminal cabinets are hinged and lockable. Cable leading into the cabinet is contained in conduit or metallic raceway. Equipment inside the cabinet is mounted on a perforated metal backboard on standoffs. Cable routing inside the cabinet is managed by finger duct. Terminals, fuses, and relays are modular and mount on Deutsche Institut für Normung (DIN; the German Institute of Standards) rail. Cables must be supported to minimize stress at connection and termination points.

2. Lightning Protection

All security device cabling entering the building from the exterior must have lightning arresters and proper grounding or be fiber optic cable. This is particularly important for cameras mounted on poles and at high elevation on the building and gate controls.

Cameras mounted to the building face or roof should use lightning arresters. Arresters must be properly grounded. Pole-mounted cameras may use fiber optic cable.

3. Termination

All network cable terminations must conform to network standards. Structured cabling terminates at a patch panel at its source and a jack at its destination. Equipment is then patched into the patch panel or jack using a patch cord. No other splicing or termination technique is allowed for a network circuit. Cabling must be properly supported using proper rack and enclosure cable management and cable support to minimize stress on cable connectors and equipment connection points.

All terminations within an equipment cabinet or within a terminal cabinet use either the equipment's terminal or DIN rail modular terminals. No other termination technique or splice is allowed.

Field hardware with leads in lieu of terminals may be spliced using a crimp; solder is not required, and wire nuts are not allowed. Telephone crimp splices, commonly known as beans, are a suitable termination method. No underground splices will be allowed.

If coaxial cable is used for elevator cameras, Bayonet Neill–Concelman (BNC) connectors are the only accepted method of terminating coaxial cable. F-type connectors are not allowed. Screw-on BNCs are not allowed. Compression or two- or three-piece crimp BNC connectors, correctly sized for the cable type and jacket type, are required. A full-cycle ratcheting crimper matching the size of the cable and connectors must be used.

REQUIRED TOOLS

T1 Life Cycle Cost Analysis
T2 Catalog of Courtroom Layouts for California Trial Courts
T3 Integrated Network Architecture
T4 Graphical User Interface Template
T5 In-Custody Interview Room Guidelines
T6 Building Management System Guidelines
T7 Small Courthouse Guidelines
T8 Security System Guidelines
T8.A General
T8.B Access Control System
T8.C Duress System
T8.D Alarm System
T8.E Video
T8.F Intercom
T8.G Detention
T8.H Licensing
T8.I Cable, Conduit, and Termination
T8.J Servers and Workstations
T8.K Coordination
T8.L Acceptance Testing
T8.M Attachments

Any low voltage or communication cable in outdoor locations or in underground conduit (outside the footprint of the building) is to have a water-blocking compound, and the jacket is to be outdoor rated for the environment (wet locations).

4. Identification and Labeling

Security cables shall be easily identifiable by a unique jacket color. Labels must be machine printed and firmly affixed to the device. The architectural numbering scheme is the basis for both the data labels in the security system databases and physical devices. It should be a simple task to correlate a device label with a device point in a database with an architectural plan.

All cable runs require labels at the source and destination ends. Each duress button must include a label identifying its address in the duress system. All card readers must have a label affixed unobtrusively on the bottom edge. All cameras must have a label affixed to the body in an unobtrusive way.

Equipment, especially cabinets, must not be marked up either inside or outside by hand with markers, pens, or paint. Any identifying marks needed in or on cabinets must be machine printed.

T8.J SERVERS AND WORKSTATIONS

1. Servers

If a security subsystem requires a server, it must be easily supported, fault tolerant, and include a minimum three-year warranty. It should be rack mounted in the MDF/data center. The operating system image must be installed on mirrored drives. Data disks should be mounted on separate mirrored drives. Servers must be sized to provide adequate throughput for optimum performance of the camera system with a minimum of 10 percent headroom for expansion or the use of higher-resolution cameras or higher frame rates.

2. Workstation Computers

User workstation computers must be high-powered, multidisplay workstation class and sized for the application. Security-specific report printers are not required; users must access general-use printers available on the network. Front panel access to a USB port is important. Include a minimum three-year warranty on hardware.

T8.K COORDINATION

1. Sheriff or Marshal Radio System

The duress system will use a radio compatible with and programmed to operate on the existing sheriff's or marshal's radio frequency. The radio may be provided by the sheriff or marshal or may need to be purchased, then programmed to the correct frequency.

Frequency selection and Federal Communications Commission licensing are the sheriff's responsibility. Any deviation from this will require Judicial Council approval. Additionally, refer to table T8.3 for electrical requirements.

Table T8.3 Electrical Requirements

System	Location	Requirement
Screening	Front entry	Dedicated 20A 120VAC outlet
Duress controller	MDF or IDF	Shared 20A 120VAC circuit with access and alarm; wall outlet
Duress repeaters	Repeater locations and quantity are site specific depending on size and construction.	120VAC outlet in close proximity to repeater
Alarm	MDF or IDF	Shared 20A 120VAC circuit with access and duress; wall outlet
Video	MDF or IDF	120VAC power strip in rack
Video	PTZ cameras	When PoE is not sufficient, a dedicated 20A 120VAC outlet in close proximity to PTZ is required. If PTZ is outdoors, the power outlet is to be located on the inside wall.
Access controller	MDF or IDF	Shared 20A 120VAC circuit with duress and alarm; hardwired to power supply
Access doors	Access doors	Concealed conduit for door devices

IDF = intermediate distribution frame.
MDF = main distribution frame.
PoE = Power over Ethernet.
PTZ = pan-tilt-zoom.
VAC = volts alternating current.

2. Security Virtual Local Area Network

A security virtual local area network (VLAN) is recommended for the security systems. Because of streaming video bandwidth requirements, careful consideration of the network topology is needed. See table T8.4 for network requirements.

Table T8.4 Network Requirements

System	Location	Requirement
Duress controller	MDF or IDF	POTS 31x jack shared with alarm; 1 Ethernet drop for email notification
Alarm	MDF or IDF	POTS 31x jack shared with duress; alarm seizes line
Video	MDF or IDF	1 Ethernet drop per NVR and 1 per camera or encoder
Access	MDF or IDF	1 Ethernet drop per controller location

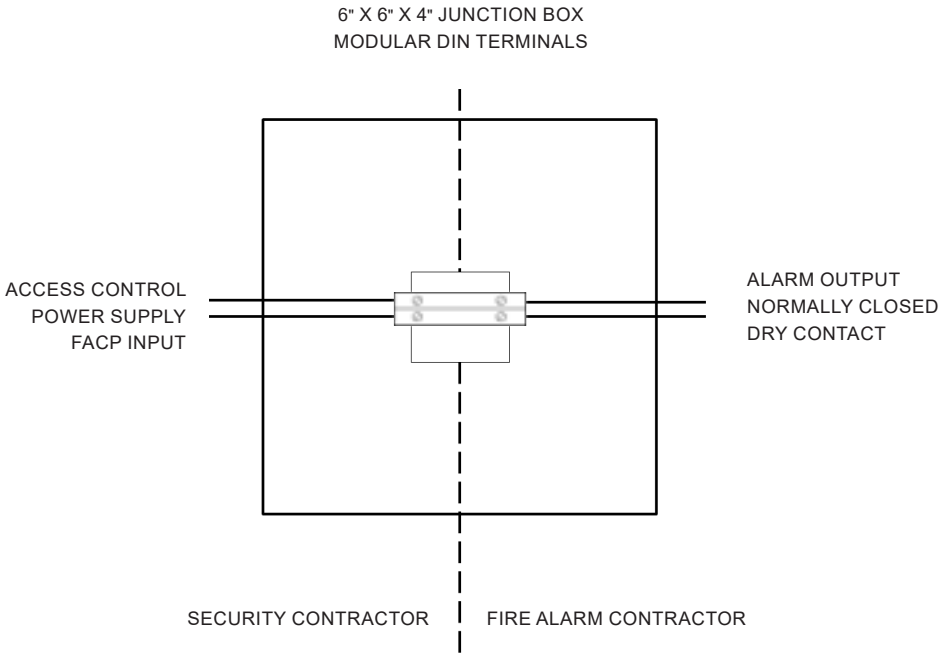
IDF = intermediate distribution frame.
MDF = main distribution frame.
NVR = network video recorder.
POTS = plain old telephone service.

REQUIRED TOOLS

T1 Life Cycle Cost Analysis
T2 Catalog of Courtroom Layouts for California Trial Courts
T3 Integrated Network Architecture
T4 Graphical User Interface Template
T5 In-Custody Interview Room Guidelines
T6 Building Management System Guidelines
T7 Small Courthouse Guidelines
T8 Security System Guidelines
T8.A General
T8.B Access Control System
T8.C Duress System
T8.D Alarm System
T8.E Video
T8.F Intercom
T8.G Detention
T8.H Licensing
T8.I Cable, Conduit, and Termination
T8.J Servers and Workstations
T8.K Coordination
T8.L Acceptance Testing
T8.M Attachments

3. Fire Alarm Control Panel Demarcation

The lock standards allow for mechanically free egress. This must comply in most instances with requirements of the state fire marshal. If there is a requirement to connect the fire alarm control panel (FACP) to the access control system, a demarcation box must be mounted in close proximity to the access controller in the MDF or IDF. The demarcation box separates responsibility between the FACP contractor and the security contractor at a terminal point. See figure T8.15.



DIN = Deutsche Institut für Normung (the German Institute of Standards).
FACP = fire alarm control panel.

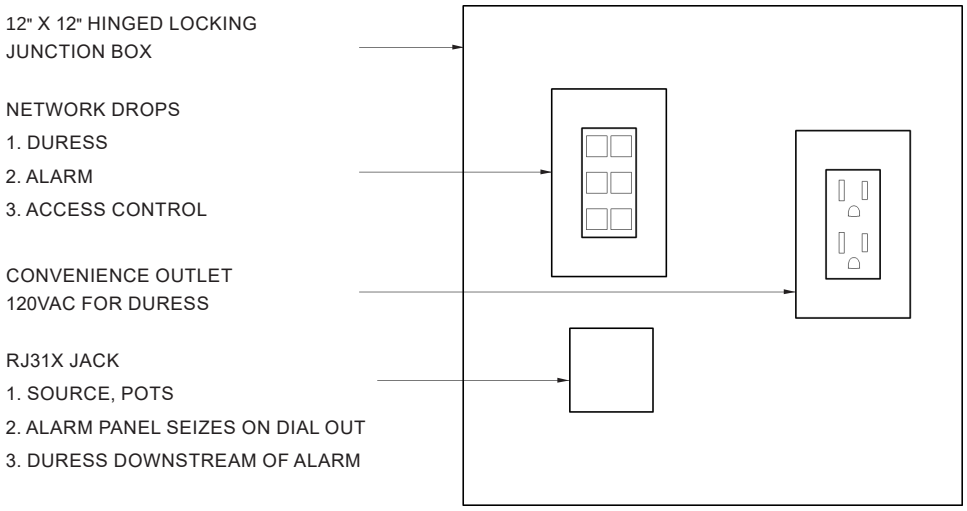
Figure T8.15 Fire Alarm Control Panel Demarcation

4. Network Jack Box

A hinged and lockable junction box is required for the wall-mounted equipment. It houses network jacks, a phone jack, and a convenience outlet. Figure T8.16 shows a typical layout.

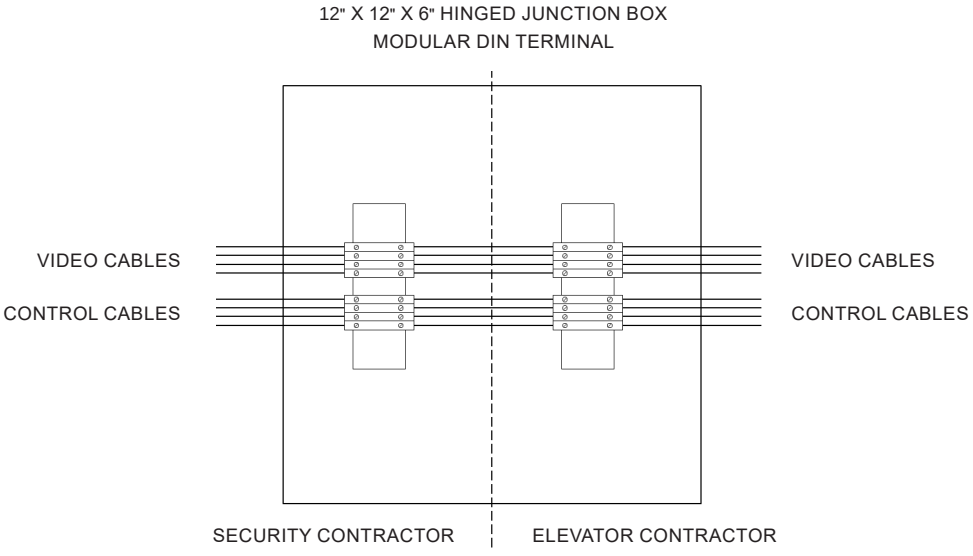
5. Elevator Demarcation

If cameras or access control are used on elevators, there must be a demarcation terminal point separating the elevator contractor's and security contractor's responsibility. Work inside cabs, in elevator penthouses, and on call buttons is the responsibility of the elevator contractor. Any security devices in these areas are cross-connected at the elevator demarcation box. IP devices such as cameras in elevator cabs may require IP over coax, or IP over twisted pair converters. A high-definition analog camera with an analog-to-IP encoder after the demarcation point could also be considered. See figure T8.17.



POTS = plain old telephone service.
VAC = volts alternating current.

Figure T8.16 Typical Layout of Network Jack Box



DIN = Deutsche Institut für Normung (the German Institute of Standards).

Figure T8.17 Elevator Demarcation Box

REQUIRED TOOLS

T1 Life Cycle Cost Analysis
T2 Catalog of Courtroom Layouts for California Trial Courts
T3 Integrated Network Architecture
T4 Graphical User Interface Template
T5 In-Custody Interview Room Guidelines
T6 Building Management System Guidelines
T7 Small Courthouse Guidelines
T8 Security System Guidelines
T8.A General
T8.B Access Control System
T8.C Duress System
T8.D Alarm System
T8.E Video
T8.F Intercom
T8.G Detention
T8.H Licensing
T8.I Cable, Conduit, and Termination
T8.J Servers and Workstations
T8.K Coordination
T8.L Acceptance Testing
T8.M Attachments

T8.L ACCEPTANCE TESTING

A thorough test of the security system and all its component subsystems is required for acceptance by the Judicial Council. Test criteria include:

1. Access Control System

a. Valid card is read.
   i. Reader beeps.
   ii. LED changes state.
   iii. Door unlocks.
   iv. Door relocks on time when door is not open.
   v. Door relocks immediately when door is opened.

b. Invalid card is read.
   i. Reader beeps.
   ii. LED changes state and times out.

c. Operator unlocks.
   i. Momentary unlock by time occurs.
   ii. Unlock/lock is toggled.

d. Scheduled unlock by calendar/time of day occurs.

e. Forced-open alarm sounds.
   i. No alarm sounds when exiting.
   ii. Alarm sounds when entering without valid card read.

f. Door-held alarm sounds.

g. Emergency exit alarms with local sounder sounds on door forced/held.

h. Transaction log records all above events.

i. Above events display on activity monitor.

j. Data labels are correct in transaction log on activity monitor.

k. User permissions are set and assigned (view only, user, super user).

l. Contractor user permissions are removed.

2. Video System

a. Cameras are back focused, iris is wide open, and image is sharp.

b. Cameras are focused.

c. Color is balanced.

d. Light level is adjusted.

e. View is unobstructed and covers scene.

f. PTZ limits are set.

g. PTZ presets are set.

h. PTZ home/park is set.

i. Data labels are correct.

j. Video motion detection is configured; unnecessary triggers are minimized.

k. Pre- and postroll speed change is set.

l. Camera call-up is set, manually and on alarm, including forced door, door prop, and for cameras associated with all duress alarms.

m. Video records and plays back.

n. Analytics alarm functionality is verified (if used).

o. User permissions are set and assigned (view only, user, super user).

p. Contractor user permissions are removed.

3. Duress System

a. Alarm trigger initiates radio message.

b. Alarm trigger records transaction log.

c. Alarm trigger sends a command to the video and/or access system for alarm record and call-up to the video workstation.

d. Alarm trigger picks output relay.

e. Trigger matches message/transaction log.

4. Intrusion Alarm System (if Installed)

a. System arms/disarms at keypads, starts entry/exit delays.

b. Door-forced-open alarm sounds.

   i. Dials central station.

   ii. Alphanumeric keypad shows alarm.

   iii. Data labels match.

   iv. No alarm sounds when disarmed.

c. Glass-break alarm sounds.

   i. Dials central station, alerts onsite staff, or communicates via text or email to designated court employees.

   ii. Alphanumeric keypad shows alarm.

   iii. Data labels match.

   iv. Alarms sounds when disarmed.

d. Motion detection occurs.

   i. Dials central station.

   ii. Alphanumeric keypad shows alarm.

   iii. Data labels match.

   iv. No alarm sounds when disarmed.

5. Detention Control System

a. Intercom

   i. Intelligible bidirectional voice communication

   ii. Function of button and speaker

b. Doors

   i. Locks function.

REQUIRED TOOLS

T1 Life Cycle Cost Analysis
T2 Catalog of Courtroom Layouts for California Trial Courts
T3 Integrated Network Architecture
T4 Graphical User Interface Template
T5 In-Custody Interview Room Guidelines
T6 Building Management System Guidelines
T7 Small Courthouse Guidelines
T8 Security System Guidelines
T8.A General
T8.B Access Control System
T8.C Duress System
T8.D Alarm System
T8.E Video
T8.F Intercom
T8.G Detention
T8.H Licensing
T8.I Cable, Conduit, and Termination
T8.J Servers and Workstations
T8.K Coordination
T8.L Acceptance Testing
T8.M Attachments

ii. Door position switches are functioning properly.

iii. Lock position switches are functioning properly.

iv. Lock fires properly.

c. Functionality of programming

i. Test door interlocks.

ii. Show "door forced" when door is keyed.

iii. Show "door held" when door is held open.

iv. Test for group functions such as lockdown.

v. Test all elevator functionality when present.

vi. Verify camera call-up from intercom.

vii. Verify all touchscreen functions operate properly.

6. Milestones

During the architectural and engineering milestones of programming, schematic, design development, and construction documents, security system design shall not be ignored. Work should keep pace with the overall project design. The Judicial Council expects that at two milestones, 100 percent design development and 50 percent working drawings, the following minimum requirements are reflected in the documents in addition to the standard deliverables for architectural and engineering drawings and specifications:

100 percent design development milestone

a. Screening and queuing.

b. MDF/IDF elevations.

c. Detention floor plan.

d. Integrated detention single-line diagram.

e. Detention door elevation.

f. Detention control room plan.

g. Detention control room axonometric or isometric projection.

50 percent working drawings milestone

a. Cabinet layouts.

b. Device details.

c. Schedules.

d. Load calculations.

e. Detention device details.

f. Detention schedules

T8.M ATTACHMENTS

	ATTACHMENT NAME	PAGE
1	Magnetometer and X-ray machine information	T8.38
2	Duress alarm information	T8.49

REQUIRED TOOLS

T1 Life Cycle Cost Analysis
T2 Catalog of Courtroom Layouts for California Trial Courts
T3 Integrated Network Architecture
T4 Graphical User Interface Template
T5 In-Custody Interview Room Guidelines
T6 Building Management System Guidelines
T7 Small Courthouse Guidelines
T8 Security System Guidelines
T8.A General
T8.B Access Control System
T8.C Duress System
T8.D Alarm System
T8.E Video
T8.F Intercom
T8.G Detention
T8.H Licensing
T8.I Cable, Conduit, and Termination
T8.J Servers and Workstations
T8.K Coordination
T8.L Acceptance Testing
T8.M Attachments

Attachment 1—Magnetometer and X-Ray Machine Information

The Judicial Council uses the Panel version of this product and not the Elliptic version to reduce the footprint width.



CERTIFIED BY GOVERNMENTAL LABORATORIES*

NEW WTMDs IP66 CONTROL UNIT

SMD600 Plus

ENHANCED WALK-THROUGH MULTI-ZONE METAL DETECTOR



HIGH SENSITIVITY

Fully compliant with the **NIJ-0601.02** Law Enforcement Standard

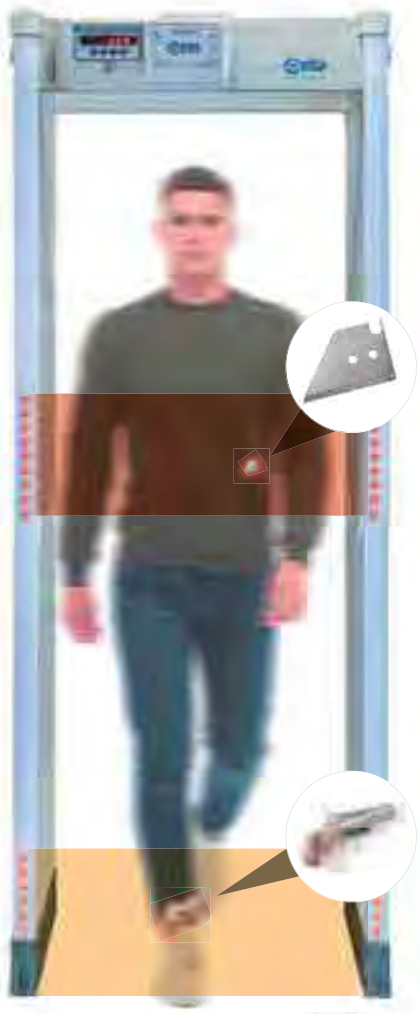


HIGH DISCRIMINATION

Compliant with and Certified to the **strictest Standards for Airport security screening**

*The **SMD600 Plus is the first Metal Detector** in the market fully compliant with the NIJ-0601.02 Standard, as required in **very high sensitivity applications**, which also allows **very high throughput** in high security public screening checkpoints.*

**Data available upon request*



GSA Contract Holder

CEIA® USA

www.ceia-usa.com

THREAT DETECTION THROUGH ELECTROMAGNETICS

SMD600 PLUS - ENHANCED WALK-THROUGH MULTI-ZONE METAL DETECTOR

FULLY COMPLIANT WITH THE NIJ-0601.02 STANDARD

The Standard establishes the requirements of Sensitivity, Discrimination and Immunity for Law Enforcement and Correctional Facilities.

NIJ-0601.02 FULL COMPLIANCE

The **SMD600 Plus Metal Detector fully complies with the requirements of the NIJ0601.02 Standard** for all Security Levels, and can therefore be applied in situations from the inspection of visitors to that of inmates **in top-security checkpoints, even in areas with strong electrical and mechanical interferences**.

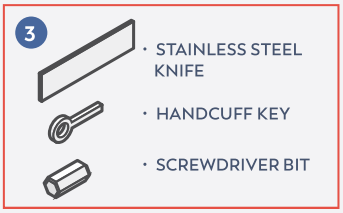
3 LEVEL OF SECURITY



LO LEVEL: LARGE OBJECT SIZE

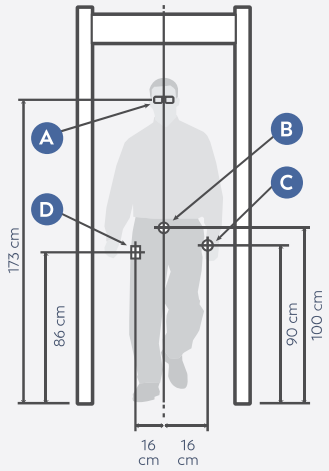


MO LEVEL: MEDIUM OBJECT SIZE



SO LEVEL: SMALL OBJECT SIZE

INNOCUOUS ITEMS



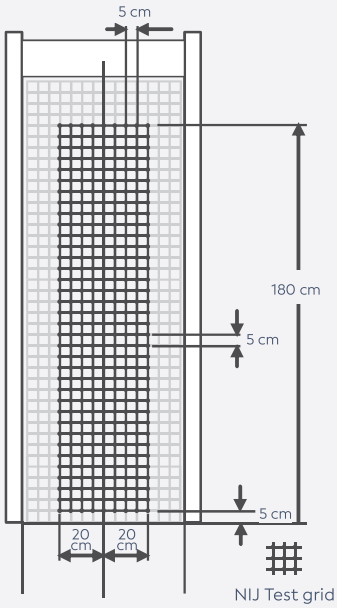
DISCRIMINATION TEST

Clean tester shall carry the innocuous items specified, performing the specified number of transits, walking at normal speed (0,5...1,5 m/s):

LO 25 transits with A + B + C + D (max 5 alarms)
MO 25 transits with A + B (max 5 alarms)
SO 8 transits with no items (no alarms allowed)

A Eyeglasses
B Belt buckle
C Watch
D Set of coins

TEST POSITIONS



DETECTION TEST OBJECT TRANSITS

Perform, for each Test Object, two passages, one forward and the other backwards, for each position and for each orientation, verifying that for every transit an alarm is triggered.

CEIA USA reserves the right to make changes, at any moment and without notice, to the models (including programming), their accessories and options, to the prices and conditions of sale.

Attachment 1—Magnetometer and X-Ray Machine Information (cont.)

SMD600 PLUS - ENHANCED WALK-THROUGH MULTI-ZONE METAL DETECTOR

TWO-IN-ONE ENHANCED METAL DETECTOR

The SMD600 Plus is a very high sensitivity Metal Detector that also offers characteristics of high discrimination and high detection uniformity.

HIGH SENSITIVITY

- Quick, accurate analysis of all parts of the body of people in transit, from the shoe level to the crossbar
- Built-in programs to screen visitors and staff for weapons and contraband
- Met-Identity technology for Identification of Threat Composition
- Accurate pinpointing of individual and multiple metal targets

HIGH THROUGHPUT

- Cutting-edge discrimination technology allows personal effects to be ignored, creating rapid transit flow
- No need to remove items such as belts, coins, keys, jewelry, watches, wallets, etc.
- Very low nuisance alarm rate even at the strictest Security Levels
- High transit flow rates and the minimum need for intervention by inspection personnel







CEIA USA reserves the right to make changes, at any moment and without notice, to the models (including programming), their accessories and options, to the prices and conditions of sale.

SMD600 PLUS - ENHANCED WALK-THROUGH MULTI-ZONE METAL DETECTOR



UNIFIED CONSTRUCTION FOR **INDOOR** AND **OUTDOOR USE**

NEW WTMDs IP66 CONTROL UNIT

- New integrated design
- Total mechanical compatibility with IP20 (plastic) and IP65 (stainless steel) control units:
  - ▸ Dimensional ▸ Installation ▸ Wiring ▸ Chip card
- Robust structure through the use of high-performance polymers for the construction of housing
- Waterproof / Dustproof: IP rating IP66 compliant
- Exceptional impact resistance at low and high temperatures and resistance to corrosion from atmospheric agents
- Display made with specific polymer to improve the visibility of the LEDs by increasing the definition and clarity

UNIQUE ALARM SIGNALING

- High visibility of the control unit and the zone indication independent from the operator position and the installation environment
- Flexible Acoustic Alarm Signaling System:
  - ▸ 10 Continuous and Pulsed Tones ▸ 34 Special Sounds
- 10 Alarm Volume Levels
- Very High Precision Transit Counter

MOST POWERFUL AND VERSATILE SECURITY FEATURES

- Up to 50 built-in Security Programs
  - ▸ Up to 30 International Standards
  - ▸ Up to 20 Customizable Levels
- Chip Card system for fast, simple and secure parameter changes (i.e. alarm volume and tone, counter reading, etc.) and security level selection.
- Any security standard can be enhanced with selectable random alarm probability

DUAL SIDE 20 x 2 LOCALIZATION ZONES



Light bars indicate metal position vertically and can also show pacing lights.

CHIP CARD SYSTEM



CEIA USA reserves the right to make changes, at any moment and without notice, to the models (including programming), their accessories and options, to the prices and conditions of sale.

Attachment 1—Magnetometer and X-Ray Machine Information (cont.)

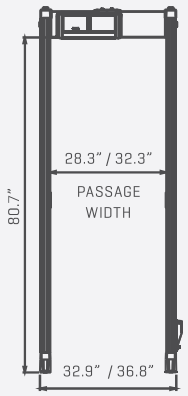
SMD600 PLUS - ENHANCED WALK-THROUGH MULTI-ZONE METAL DETECTOR

SMD600 Plus/PZ MODEL CONFIGURATION

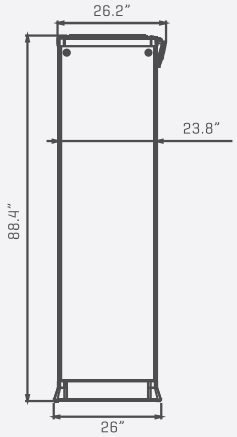
STANDARD CONFIGURATION	
Fully compliant with, and exceeding, the NIJ-0601.02 Standard	●
4 display bars each programmable as zone indicators and/or pacing lights	●
Dual Side 20 x 2 localization zones	●
Antivandalic and Antitampering IP66 control unit	●
High precision transit counter (2-beam photocells)	●
Chip Card Reader	●
BT, infrared and RS-232 communication	●
Programmable Random Alarm capability	●
3-Level Password and hardware key access protection	●
Met-Identity technology (separate Ferrous and Non-Ferrous alarm signaling)	●
One Touch Automatic Self Installation (OTS)	●
Automatic Operational Functional Verification (OFV)	●
Automatic Vibration Compensation (AVS, EVA)	●
Automatic Channel Search (CS)	●
Automatic Floor Gain Adjustment (FGA)	●
Automatic Technical Functional Verification (TFV)	●
Automatic Environmental Noise Compensation (ENA)	●
Powered by safe low voltage DC	●
Anti-tamper on/off switch	●

DIMENSIONS

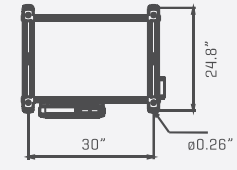
FRONT



LATERAL



TOP



COMMUNICATION CAPABILITIES

TYPE OF OPERATION	ETHERNET	USB	INFRARED	BT	RS-232
MAINTENANCE	○	○		●	●
REMOTE CONTROL	○		●	●	●
REMOTE DATA COLLECTION	○				

STANDARD ● OPTION ○

CEIA USA reserves the right to make changes, at any moment and without notice, to the models (including programming), their accessories and options, to the prices and conditions of sale.

SMD600 PLUS - ENHANCED WALK-THROUGH MULTI-ZONE METAL DETECTOR

SMD600 Plus can be upgraded anytime either with MI2 Sensor for superior smartphone and cellphone detection, **or with TDU** including advanced IR processing for fully automatic, highly selective and precise detection of maximum facial temperature measurements even in harshest environmental conditions.

METAL DETECTOR

CELL PHONES DETECTOR

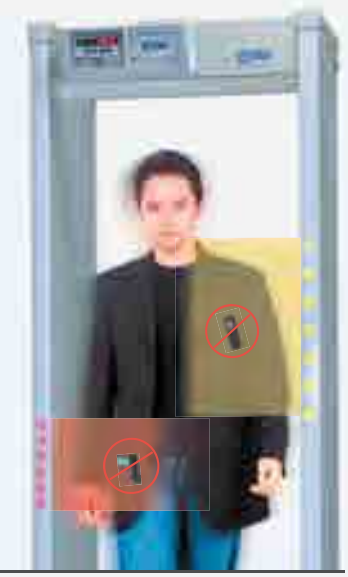
MI2 SENSOR

The **SMD600 Plus with integrated MI2 sensor** provides unmatched versatility in its ability to screen people in applications that require simultaneous detection of all metal (magnetic and non-magnetic) firearms and cellphone/smartphone devices, including the most miniaturized, low-metal content versions.

In this configuration both panels of the archway are equipped with dual color light bars (red and yellow colors) and 4-beam photocells modules.

Code: 93530





TDU THERMAL DETECTION UNIT

ANTI-COVID SECURITY SOLUTION

The **TDU** (Thermal Detection Unit) is an **upgrade sensing kit for covid screening compliance**:

- Simultaneous threat and fever detection on all screened persons
- Accurate person measurement using an infrared camera with automatic determination of the highest temperature
- Embedded upgrade: no additional installation checkpoint space required
  1. Thermal Camera Arm
  2. Dual Reference Calibration Unit

Code: TDU/P





CEIA USA reserves the right to make changes, at any moment and without notice, to the models (including programming), their accessories and options, to the prices and conditions of sale.

Attachment 1—Magnetometer and X-Ray Machine Information (cont.)



SMD600 PLUS - ENHANCED WALK-THROUGH MULTI-ZONE METAL DETECTOR

CEIA USA Ltd - 6336 Hudson Crossing Parkway, Hudson OH 44236
P 330-405 3190 • **F** 330-405 3196 • **E** security@ceia-usa.com • **CALL** (833) 224-2342 (CEIA)

w w w . c e i a - u s a . c o m

CEIA USA reserves the right to make changes, at any moment and without notice, to the models (including programming), their accessories and options, to the prices and conditions of sale. DP060K0094v1000uUS (2021)

ASTROPHYSICS®

XIS-6545™



PRODUCT HIGHLIGHTS

- Artificial Intelligence (AI)
- 8-Color Imaging
- Enhanced Imaging™ (EI)
- Optimum Tunnel Size for Efficient Bag Scanning
- Proven Field Reliability

ENAC CERTIFIED

DESIGNED IN THE USA · MADE IN NORTH AMERICA

PRODUCT DESCRIPTION

The XIS-6545™ is a field proven X-Ray Inspection System (XIS) designed with a wide tunnel to accommodate a larger variety of screened objects while minimizing floor space. Ideal for high-volume screening sites, the XIS-6545™ provides high-resolution images enabling operators to identify materials and isolate threats with speed and accuracy. The #1 global manufacturer of critical infrastructure products, Astrophysics is the clear choice.

ABOUT ASTROPHYSICS

Since 2002, Astrophysics has led the industry in research and development, creating integrated solutions to advance the critical security missions of our customers and partners. Headquartered outside of Los Angeles, CA in the USA, Astrophysics has over 35,000 systems deployed in more than 150 countries, safeguarding critical infrastructure, aviation, and ports and border sites worldwide.

TOMORROW'S TECHNOLOGY FOR TODAY'S SECURITY™

Attachment 1—Magnetometer and X-Ray Machine Information (cont.)

XIS-6545™

CHECKPOINT

GENERAL SPECIFICATIONS

Tunnel Size: (WxH)	65.0 cm x 45.1 cm 25.6" x 17.8"
Dimensions:[1] (LxWxH)	153.4 cm x 87.7 cm x 130.5 cm 60.4" x 34.5" x 51.4"
Shipping Dimensions:[1] (LxWxH)	165.1 cm x 96.5 cm x 160.0 cm 65.0" x 38.0" x 63.0"
Net Weight:[1]	476 kg (1050 lbs)
Shipping Weight:[1]	522 kg (1150 lbs)
Conveyor Speed:	23 cm/s (45 ft/min) Forward or Reverse
Conveyor Height:	71.9 cm (28.3") from Floor
Conveyor Capacity:	165 kg (364 lbs) Evenly Distributed Load

X-RAY GENERATOR & IMAGE PERFORMANCE

Voltage:	160kV, Operating at 150kV
Tube Current:	0.7 mA
Wire Resolution:	40 AWG Typical, 38 AWG Standard
Steel Penetration:[2]	39 mm Typical, 37 mm Standard
Cooling:	Sealed Di-Electric Oil Bath with Forced Air
Duty Cycle:	100%, No Warm-Up Procedure Required
Beam Direction:	Diagonally Upward

COMPUTER & VIDEO

Platform:	Windows® 10 OS
Memory:	8 GB RAM
Storage Capacity:	256 GB SSD
Display Type:	21.5" Flat Panel Monitor
Display Resolution:	1920 x 1080

ENVIRONMENTAL

Operating Temperature:	0°C to 40°C / 32°F to 104°F
Storage Temperature:	-20°C to 60°C / -4°F to 140°F
Humidity:	Up To 95% Non-Condensing

ELECTRICAL

System Power:	110 VAC +/- 10% 50/60Hz, 15 Amp Max 220VAC +/- 10% 50/60Hz, 10 Amp Max
Power Conditioner:	Automatic Voltage Regulator (AVR), 600VA

HEALTH & SAFETY

Compliant with USFDA Center for Devices and Radiation Health Standards for Cabinet X-Ray Systems (21-CFR 1020.40)

Typical radiation leakage is less than 0.1 mR/hr
(Leakage less than 0.5 mR/hr permitted by U.S. Federal Standards)

180KV GENERATOR UPGRADE

Penetration[2]: 41 mm Steel Typical, 39 mm Standard

FEATURES

STANDARD

3 & 6 Color Imaging
Black & White Imaging
Enhanced Imaging™ (EI)
High Penetration Function
Organic/Inorganic Imaging
Pseudo Color
Reverse Monochrome

Atomic Z-Number Measurement
Material Discrimination
Geometric Image Distortion Correction
Real-Time Image Manipulation

Auto Image Archiving
Image Review
Save Image (RGB)

Baggage Counter

Image Annotation
JPEG Conversion
Print Image Capable

Multi-Tier Accessibility
Network Ready
Real-Time Self Diagnostics

9 Quadrant Zoom
Continuous Scanning
Continuous Zoom Up to 64x
Vertical Zoom Panning

OPTIONAL

Artificial Intelligence (AI)
Barcode Scanning
Density Alert
Local Language
Safe Passage® Computer Based Training
Screener Assist Software
Test Case
Threat Image Projection (TIP) Software

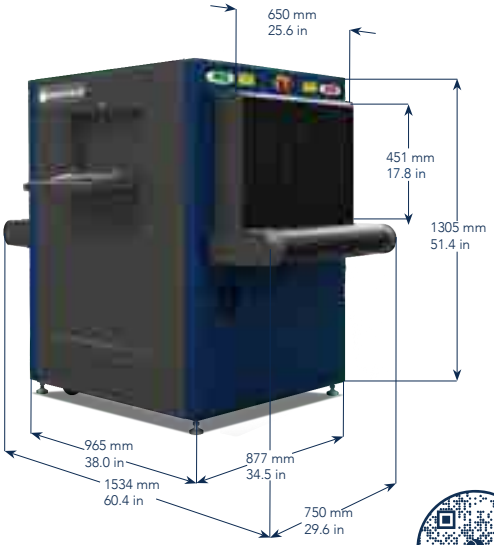
24" Flat Panel Monitor
Custom Paint
Environmental Kit
Entry/Exit Roller Tables
Footmat Operator Interlock
Internal/External UPS
Mobility Kit
Roller Bed
Radiation Meter
Remote Workstation Configuration
Sloped Conveyor

Conveyor Capacity Load Increase
External USB Ports
Variable Conveyor Speed

Long Conveyor
8-Color Imaging

XIS-6545N™

Dimensions[1]	153.4 cm x 83.7 cm x 130.5 cm (LxWxH)
Shipping Dimensions[1]	165.1 cm x 96.5 cm x 160.0 cm (LxWxH)
Net Weight[1]	476 kg (1050 lbs)



ISO 9001 & ISO 14001 CERTIFIED

[1]Weight and dimensions of the system may vary depending on customization.
[2]As tested on Astrophysics Inc. Test Piece.
[3]Optional Features may affect lead time, price, and weight of product. Please contact your Astrophysics Sales Representative for more information.

Due to continued product development, Astrophysics Inc. reserves the right to amend all technical specifications without prior notice.
Contact **sales@astrophysicsinc.com** for the most updated brochures.

DCO#2990 P/N 50.00-PB07-00 Rev. L

Astrophysics HQ +1.909.598.5488 | **Astrophysics – EMEA** +961.9.832.500 | **Astrophysics – INDIA** +91.11.41709990 | **Astrophysics – ASIA** +63.2.812.0033

sales@astrophysicsinc.com | **www.astrophysicsinc.com** | service@astrophysicsinc.com

ORION 920 CX

Rapiscan systems
An OSI Systems Company

DATASHEET



The new 920CX is a High Performance 620mm by 420mm tunnel checkpoint screening system with best in class image quality and excellent threat detection alert capabilities.

- INDUSTRY BEST PENETRATION, WIRE & SPATIAL RESOLUTION
- EXPLOSIVES & NARCOTICS DETECTION
- LOW DENSITY IMAGE ENHANCEMENT
- MATRIXING, NETWORKING & REMOTE VIEWING

UK DfT APPROVED

EC 300/2008 AVIATION COMPLIANT

SPECTRUM 4-COLOR IMAGING

920CX can present images to the operator in the Classic 4-color and the new proprietary Spectrum 4-color (SP4) option providing superior image, allowing improved security by quick and accurate identification of threats and increase in throughput.

EXPLOSIVES AND NARCOTICS DETECTION

Target and NARCScan are designed to detect a wide range of explosives and narcotics respectively in real time during the scanning process by marking a potential threat on the X-ray image. Rapiscan® Systems detection algorithms are based on regulatory approved material analysis techniques.

DUAL MODE AUTO Z_{EFF}

This feature aids the operator in quick identification of organic materials, either in Range Mode which highlights areas based on operator selected Z-effective values of 7, 8 or 9, or in Interactive Mode which gives the operator the option to display the Z-effective number of a selected pixel.

EUROPEAN AVIATION COMPLIANCE

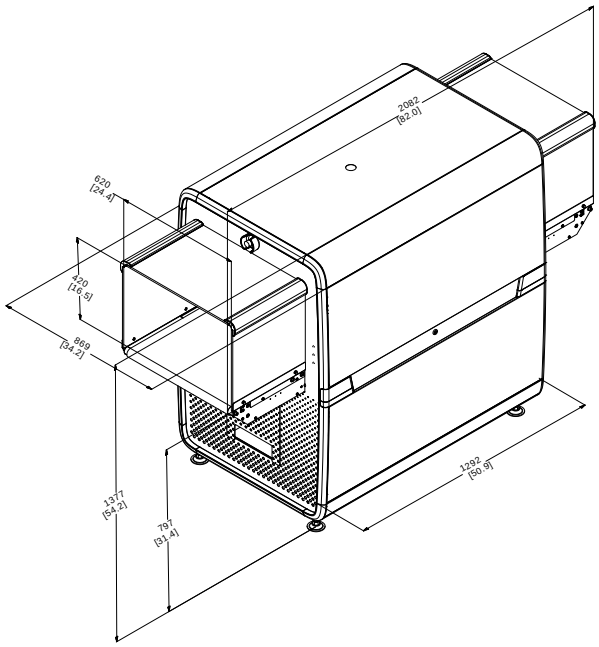
920CX performance is in full compliance with the mandatory regulations (EC) No. 300/2008, (EC) Implementing Regulation 1998/2015 and update 815/2017, EC Implementing Decision 8005/2015 and update 3030/2017 for aviation security in the European Union.

info@rapiscansystems.com **www.rapiscansystems.com**

ONE COMPANY, TOTAL SECURITY

Attachment 1—Magnetometer and X-Ray Machine Information (cont.)

Dimensions are in mm[in]



PHYSICAL SPECIFICATIONS [1]

DIMENSIONS	L	2,082 mm (82.0 in)
	W	869 mm (34.2 in)
	H	1,377 mm (54.2 in)
TUNNEL SIZE	W	620 mm (24.4 in)
	H	420 mm (16.5 in)
CONVEYOR HEIGHT		797 mm (31.4 in)
WEIGHT (NET)		537 Kg (1184 lbs)

ENVIRONMENT & POWER

STORAGE TEMPERATURE	-20°C to 50°C
OPERATING TEMPERATURE	0°C to 40°C
RELATIVE HUMIDITY	5 to 95% non-condensing
SYSTEM POWER	100/110/120/200/208 /220/230/240 VAC ±10%

PERFORMANCE [2]

CONVEYOR SPEED[1]	0.20 m/sec (39.4 ft/min)
CONVEYOR LOAD[1]	165 Kg (364 lbs)
STEEL PENETRATION	44 mm typical, 42 mm standard
WIRE RESOLUTION	44 AWG typical, 42 AWG standard
SPATIAL RESOLUTION	0.8 mm vertical & horizontal

HIGH SPEED OPTION

CONVEYOR SPEED[1]	0.35 m/sec (68.9 ft/min)
STEEL PENETRATION	35 mm typical, 34 mm standard
WIRE RESOLUTION	40 AWG typical, 38 AWG standard
SPATIAL RESOLUTION	0.8 mm vertical & horizontal

X-RAY GENERATOR

ANODE VOLTAGE	160kV
ORIENTATION	Diagonally Upward

KEY FEATURES AND OPTIONS

- Explosive threats, narcotics & density alerts
- Spectrum 4
- 17 Image processing functions
- SINERGY low density enhancement
- Dual Mode Z-effective
- CrystalClear™
- Automatic, Enhanced Image Archiving
- E.U. Approved Threat Image Projection
- Remote Status Monitoring
- Remote Archive Review
- Multi-System Alarm Resolution Network
- Multiplexing and Matrixing
- Tray Return System Compatible
- 13 Languages
- 64-bit Operating System

ScanOS™

64-bit Operating System

Rapiscan® systems
An OSI Systems Company

info@rapiscansystems.com www.rapiscansystems.com

1. Approximate Values 2. Stated performance as measured by Rapiscan® Imaging Validation Test Kit

Rapiscan® Systems is ISO 9001:2015 Certified

Rapiscan® Systems' cabinet X-ray products comply with all applicable U.S. FDA and equivalent international regulatory agency requirements, contained in the cabinet X-ray radiation safety performance standard [21 CFR 1020.40] and the general performance standard [21 CFR Part 1010] as well as IEC standard 61010-2-091. Rapiscan® baggage and parcel inspection systems radiation emission leakages are well below the required regulatory limits with less than 1µSv/hr at 10 cm from all surfaces of cabinet X-ray.

With continual development of our products Rapiscan® Systems reserves the right to amend specifications without notice. Product pictures are for general reference. Please note that due to US laws and regulations, not all Rapiscan® products are available for sale in all countries without restriction. Please contact your Rapiscan® Systems sales representative for more information.

DS-920CX-003

Product Specifications

CENTURION ELITE®

Operating System	Linux/EOS (Proprietary Elite Operating System)
Sensor Capacity	No Practical Limit
Connectivity	Ethernet (2 Ports), WiFi, Bluetooth®, USB
Notification Limit	No Practical Limit
Outputs	Phone, Email/Text, Two-Way Radio (Customer Provided), Relays, and Speaker
Modular Expansion USBs	6
Wireless Sensor Frequency	900 MHz
Dimensions	18"Hx13.8"Wx8.4"D
Weight	12.5lbs
Power Requirement	120V AC
Battery Back Up	12VDC 7000MA/h



ELITE CONNECT™ WEB PORTAL

Browser Compatibility	Internet Explorer, Google Chrome, Safari, Firefox
Network Connection	WiFi or Ethernet



ELITE CONTROL™ SOFTWARE

Compatible Operating Systems	Windows® XP, Windows® 7, Windows® 8, Windows® 10
Software Size	20MB
Hardware Requirements	Operating computer must have a built in, or add on microphone



PCDURESS®

Network Requirements	• Centurion® with a static IP Address • Centurion® must be accessible from the PC clients via UDP on port 8916 • Less than 15 second network latency preferred • Applications installed on the client PC must be able to talk via TCP on 8917 • WiFi or Ethernet access to network
Supported Operating Systems	Windows® XP, Windows® 7, Windows® 8, Windows® 10,
PC Requirements	Computer must satisfy OS Minimum requirements
PCDuress® Resource Usage	100B every 30 seconds per seat license



Windows XP, Windows 7, Windows 8 and Windows 10 are either registered trademarks or trademarks of Microsoft Corporation in the United States and/or other countries.

ResponseTechnologies LTD.

800-537-0102 | Response-Technologies.com

Attachment 2—Duress Alarm Information (cont.)

Centurion Elite Specs



Feature Specs:

- The Centurion Elite® is a self-contained unit capable of receiving alarm transmission and intelligently routing the alarms to proper personnel over communication methods including Phone, email, text message, two way radio, computer software, and video boards concurrently.
- The Centurion Elite® is built in a modular structure to allow for easy replacement of components, as well as "hot swapping" of modules in the event of malfunction to ensure maximum uptime.
- The Centurion Elite® can house up to 2 or more radios in a RF shielded enclosure to prevent the possibility of outside RF interference of radio transmissions.
- The Centurion Elite® utilizes Elite Connect® for web based system management, accessible from any authorized device within the same network as the system.
- Access to Elite Connect® utilizes SSL encryption for information security
- The Centurion Elite® offers assignable user permission levels for limiting access to system components based on the assigned category of a user.
- The Centurion Elite® possess the ability to create individual user login credentials requiring industry best practices for user password strength.
- The Centurion Elite® is built on a Linux operating system.
- For security reasons, The Centurion Elite® is does not possess an integrated display in order to limit capability of unauthorized users to interact with system.
- The Centurion Elite® utilizes a 900 MHz wireless architecture for delivering alarms between sensor and receiver.
- The Centurion Elite® is capable of integration into other equipment via relay, TCP/IP, or serial connection
- The Centurion Elite® allows for deployment of wireless panic buttons in multiple building over a large geographic area to be linked under a single unit through Centurion® Gateway.
- The Centurion Elite® possess an onboard Wi-Fi access point for "off network" servicing.

ResponseTechnologies LTD.

When seconds count, response is everything

800-537-0102 | Response-Technologies.com

- The Centurion Elite® allows the user to record alarm notification audio via Elite Control® computer software.
- Notifications are capable of being routed to specifically assigned groups allowing for customization of output types based on the sensor activated.
- The Centurion Elite® has no practical limit to the predefined recording time of alarm messages. This includes individual messages, as well as total record time allowed by system for all messages.
- The Centurion Elite® allows the user to assign predefined templates to notifications. The templates include the name as well as visual icons capable of being displayed in all text based notifications.
- The Centurion Elite® offers three forms of back-ups including onboard, onsite and cloud based backups to be used at the discretion of the customer.
- The Centurion Elite® allows for scheduling of inactive times and alternative responders for individual sensors.
- The Centurion Elite® is capable of automatically escalating alarms to higher responder levels when alarms are left unchanged for a period of time based on a user selectable time frame.
- The Centurion Elite® possess the capability to alert the system administrator via phone, email, radio, text message, computer software or video board when a sensor enters or leaves an alarm able supervisory state. Alarm able supervisory states include low battery, low signal strength, and sensor missing.
- The Centurion Elite® is capable of sending sensor and system health reports to pre-defined users via email.
- The Centurion Elite® is capable of driving pre-defined, and free form, notifications directly from the Elite Connect® web face to select groups.
- The Centurion Elite® has the ability to trigger alarms using PCDuress®, software that can run on any windows PC.
- The Centurion Elite® has the ability to display alarms on a computer screen using PCAlert®, software that can run on any windows PC.
- PCAlert® displays both a visual warning as well as text based alarm. PCAlert® has an audible alert tone with an optional text to voice reading of the notification.
- PCDuress® has multiple alarming methods including icon click, in application alarming function, as well as user definable hot key combination.

Physical Specs:

- Dimensions- 18” H x 13.8” W x 8.4” D
- Weight- 12.5 lbs
- Power Requirement- 120 AC
- Battery Backup- 12VDC 700MA/h
- Wireless Frequency- 900MHz
- Connectivity- Ethernet, WiFi, Bluetooh®, USB

ResponseTechnologies LTD.

When seconds count, response is everything

800-537-0102 | Response-Technologies.com

Attachment 2—Duress Alarm Information (cont.)

Duress Button- Single Button

Part Number: E4005

To be used in court staff and under desk applications.



FEATURES

- Single button activation
- LED flashes with all transmissions
- Can easily be mounted for fixed position
- White color
- Supervised
    - Battery Condition
    - Signal Strength

SPECIFICATIONS

- Size: 3” x 1.6” x 0.72” (7.6cm x 4.1cm x 1.8cm)
- Weight: 1.7oz (48g)
- Battery: 3.0V Lithium (supplied)
- Battery Life: 3 to 5 years

ResponseTechnologies LTD.

When seconds count, response is everything

800-537-0102 | Response-Technologies.com

Duress Button- Industrial Red

Part Number: E4018

To be used in detention, garage, and outdoor applications.



FEATURES

- Large 1.5” (3.8cm) red mushroom button
- Suitable for mounting on various wall surfaces
- Suitable for indoor and outdoor use
- Supervised
    - Battery Condition
    - Signal Strength

SPECIFICATIONS

- 4” x 4” x 2” (10.2cm x 10.2cm x 5.1cm) PVC box containing Wireless Universal Transmitter
- Battery: 3.0V Lithium (supplied)
- Battery Life: 4 to 5 years
- Weight: 13oz (.37kg)

ResponseTechnologies LTD.

When seconds count, response is everything

800-537-0102 | Response-Technologies.com

APPENDIXES

Codes and Standards
List of Abbreviations
Index
Acknowledgments

APPENDIXES

CODES AND STANDARDS

The construction and modification of buildings using the *Facilities Standards* shall comply with the following codes, standards, and guidelines and any other applicable nationally recognized code, standard, or guideline. The latest adopted code edition, standard, or guideline (including applicable addenda) shall be used, regardless of dates shown in this document. See California Building Code chapter 35 for applicable standards beyond those listed in this appendix. If a triennial update of a code is due to occur after beginning of schematic design and before submission for plan check, the applicable code edition shall be determined after discussions with the authorities having jurisdiction. This list is not intended to limit the use of other reference documents.

A

Air-Conditioning, Heating, and Refrigeration Institute (AHRI)

AHRI Standard 880: Performance Rating of Air Terminals

ANSI/AHRI Standard 260: Sound Rating of Ducted Air Moving and Conditioning Equipment

ANSI/AHRI Standard 350: Sound Rating of Non-ducted Indoor Air-Conditioning Equipment

Air Movement and Control Association Inc. (AMCA)

AMCA 300: Reverberant Room Method for Sound Testing of Fans

AMCA 301: Methods for Calculating Fan Sound Ratings From Laboratory Test Data

ANSI/AMCA 330: Laboratory Method of Testing to Determine the Sound Power in a Duct

ANSI/AMCA 500-L: Laboratory Methods of Testing Louvers for Rating

AMCA Certified Ratings Program

American Concrete Institute (ACI)

ACI 318: Building Code Requirements for Structural Concrete and Commentary

American Institute of Steel Construction (AISC)

AISC 303: Code of Standard Practice for Steel Buildings and Bridges

AISC 341: Seismic Provisions for Structural Steel Buildings

AISC 358: Prequalified Connections for Special and Intermediate Steel Moment Frames for Seismic Applications

AISC 360: Specification for Structural Steel Buildings

AISC Design Guide 11: Vibrations of Steel-Framed Structural Systems Due to Human Activity

American Iron and Steel Institute (AISI)

AISI S100: North American Specification for the Design of Cold-Formed Steel Structural Members

American National Standards Institute (ANSI)

ANSI C80.1: Electrical Rigid Steel Conduit

American Society of Civil Engineers (ASCE)

ASCE/SEI 7: Minimum Design Loads and Associated Criteria for Buildings and Other Structures

ASCE 25: Earthquake-Actuated Gas Shutoff Devices

ASCE 41: Seismic Evaluation and Retrofit of Existing Buildings

American Society of Heating, Refrigerating and Air-Conditioning Engineers (ASHRAE)

ASHRAE Standard 15: Safety Code for Mechanical Refrigeration

ASHRAE Standard 34: Safety Classification of Refrigerants

ASHRAE Standard 52.2: Method of Testing General Ventilation Air-Cleaning Devices for Removal Efficiency by Particle Size

ASHRAE Standard 55: Thermal Environmental Conditions for Human Occupancy

ASHRAE Standard 62.1: Ventilation for Acceptable Indoor Air Quality

ASHRAE Standard 90.1: Energy Standard for Buildings Except Low-Rise Residential Buildings

ASHRAE Standard 100: Energy Efficiency in Existing Buildings

ASHRAE Standard 105-2021: Standard Methods of Determining, Expressing, and Comparing Building Energy Performance and Greenhouse Gas Emissions

ASHRAE Standard 111: Measurement, Testing, Adjusting, and Balancing of Building HVAC Systems

ASHRAE Standard 135: BACnet: A Data Communication Protocol for Building Automation and Control Networks

ASHRAE Handbooks and Guidelines

ASHRAE Handbook—Fundamentals

ASHRAE Handbook—HVAC Systems and Equipment

HVAC System Duct Design

Practical Guide to Seismic Restraint

ASHRAE Handbook—HVAC Applications

ASHRAE Guideline 4: Preparation of Operating and Maintenance Documentation for HVAC&R Systems

ASHRAE Guideline 36: High-Performance Sequences of Operation for HVAC Systems

ASHRAE TC 9.9: Data Center Power Equipment Thermal Guidelines and Best Practices

American Society of Mechanical Engineers (ASME)

ASME A17.5/CSA-B44.1: Elevator and Escalator Electrical Equipment

ASME A17.1: Safety Code for Elevators and Escalators, and all supplements as modified and adopted by the AHJ

ASME A17.1S: Safety Code for Elevators and Escalators, supplement to A17.1 as modified and adopted by the AHJ for machine room less (MRL) installations

ASME A17.2: Guide for Inspection of Elevators, Escalators, and Moving Walks

ASME A17.3: Safety Code for Existing Elevators and Escalators, as modified and adopted by the AHJ

ASME A17.4: Guide for Emergency Personnel (including emergency evacuation of passengers from elevators)

American Society of Plumbing Engineers (ASPE)

ASPE Data Books

American Society for Testing and Materials (ASTM)

ASTM C423: Method for Measuring Sound Absorption

ASTM C1071: Standard Specification for Fibrous Glass Duct Lining Insulation (Thermal and Sound Absorbing Material)

ASTM D6754: Standard Specification for Ketone Ethylene Ester Based Sheet Roofing

ASTM E84: Standard Test Method for Surface Burning Characteristics of Building Materials

ASTM E90: Method for Measuring Sound Transmission Loss

ASTM E96: Standard Test Methods for Water Vapor Transmission of Materials

ASTM E413: Determination of Sound Transmission Class

ASTM E477: Test for Duct Lining and Silencer Performance

ASTM E492: Standard Test Method for Laboratory Measurement of Impact Sound Transmission Through Floor-Ceiling Assemblies Using the Tapping Machine

ASTM E779: Standard Test Method for Determining Air Leakage Rate by Fan Pressurization

ASTM G21: Standard Practice for Determining Resistance of Synthetic Polymeric Materials to Fungi

ASTM E1332: Standard Classification for Determination of Outdoor-Indoor Transmission Class

ASTM E2813: Standard Practice for Building Enclosure Commissioning

ASTM E3158: Standard Test Method for Measuring the Air Leakage Rate of a Large or Multizone Building

ASTM F476: Standard Test Methods for Security of Swinging Door Assemblies

ASTM F588: Standard Test Methods for Measuring the Forced Entry Resistance of Window Assemblies, Excluding Glazing Impact

ASTM F710: Standard Practice for Preparing Concrete Floors to Receive Resilient Flooring

ASTM F842: Standard Test Methods for Measuring the Forced Entry Resistance of Sliding Door Assemblies, Excluding Glazing Impact

ASTM F1642: Standard Test Method for Glazing and Glazing Systems Subject to Airblast Loadings

ASTM F1915: Standard Test Methods for Glazing for Detention Facilities

ASTM F2170: Standard Test Method for Determining Relative Humidity in Concrete Floor Slabs Using in situ Probes

ASTM F2656: Standard Test Method for Vehicle Crash Testing of Perimeter Barriers

ASTM F3010: Standard Practice for Two-Component Resin Based Membrane-Forming Moisture Mitigation Systems for Use Under Resilient Floor Coverings

American Water Works Association (AWWA)

AWWA C105: Polyethylene Encasement for Ductile-Iron Pipe Systems

American Welding Society (AWS)

Americans with Disabilities Act (ADA)

Americans with Disabilities Act Accessibility Guidelines (ADAAG) (Section 11)

Applied Technology Council (ATC)

ATC-40: Seismic Evaluation and Retrofit of Concrete Buildings

ATC-58: PACT Program Software

Architectural Woodwork Institute (AWI)

Audiovisual and Integrated Experience Association (AVIXA)

AVIXA A102.01:2017: Audio Coverage Uniformity in Listener Area

B

Board of State and Community Corrections (BSCC)

Building Industry Consulting Services International (BICSI)

BICSI Information Transport Systems Installation Manual (ITSIM)

BICSI Telecommunications Distribution Methods Manual (TDMM)

BICSI Outside Plant Design Reference Manual (OSPDRM)

BICSI Wireless Design Reference Manual (WDRM)

Building Owners & Managers Association (BOMA)

Gross Areas of a Building: Standard Methods of Measurement

C

California Air Resources Board

Regulation for the Management of High Global Warming Potential Refrigerants for Stationary Sources

California Code of Regulations (CCR)
Title 8: Division 1, Chapter 4, Subchapter 7, General Industrial Safety Orders

Title 15: Division 1, Chapter 1, Subchapter 4, Minimum Standards for Local Detention Facilities

Title 16: Professional and Vocational Regulations

Title 17: Public Health, Section 95380 et seq. (Air Resources Board, Subarticle 5.1, Management of High Global Warming Potential Refrigerants for Stationary Sources)

Title 19: Public Safety, Division 1, State Fire Marshal

Title 22: Social Security, Division 4.5, Environmental Health Standards for the Management of Hazardous Waste

Title 24, Part 1, California Administrative Code (CAC)

Title 24, Part 2, California Building Code (CBC)

Title 24, Part 3, California Electrical Code (CEC)

Title 24, Part 4, California Mechanical Code (CMC)

Title 24, Part 5, California Plumbing Code (CPC)

Title 24, Part 6, California Energy Code (CEC)

Title 24, Part 7, California Wildland-Urban Interface Code

Title 24, Part 9, California Fire Code (CFC)

Title 24, Part 10, California Existing Building Code (CEBC)

Title 24, Part 11, California Green Building Standards Code (CALGreen)

Title 24, Part 12, California Referenced Standards Code

California Department of Health Services

California Disabled Accessibility Guidebook (CALDAG)

California Energy Commission
Nonresidential Alternative Calculation Method Reference Manual

California Rules of Court
Rule 5.215, Domestic Violence Protocol for Family Court Services

Rule 10.180, Court Facilities Standards

Rule 10.181, Court Facilities Policies, Procedures, and Standards

California Standards of Judicial Administration
Standard 10.24

Canadian Standards Association (CSA)

Cast Iron Soil Pipe Institute (CISPI)
CISPI Standards

Center for Universal Design

Code of Federal Regulations (CFR)
Title 40, Part 761: Polychlorinated Biphenyls (PCBs) Manufacturing, Processing, Distribution in Commerce, and Use Prohibitions

Compliance Services and Assessments, LLC (CSA)

Concrete Reinforcing Steel Institute (CRSI)

Consumer Electronics Association (CEA)
ANSI/CEA-709.1-B-2000 Control Network Protocol Standards

Crime Prevention Through Environmental Design (CPTED)

D

Division of the State Architect (DSA)
Access Checklist

Interpretation of Regulations (IR) 25-2, IR 25-3

Structural Safety (SS)

E

Electronic Industries Alliance (EIA/ECA)
EIA/ECA-310-D: Cabinets, Racks, Panels and Associated Equipment

Energy Efficiency Policy

Energy Independence and Security Act of 2007 (EISA)

Energy Star Portfolio Manager Technical Reference: Source Energy

F

Factory Mutual Global Standards

Family Code
- Division 8, Custody of Children, Section 3113
- Division 8, Custody of Children, Section 3180
- Division 10, Prevention of Domestic Violence, Section 6218

Federal Communications Commission (FCC)
- CFR Title 47, Part 15: Radio Frequency Devices

Federal Emergency Management Agency (FEMA)
- FEMA 74: Reducing the Risks of Nonstructural Earthquake Damage: A Practical Guide
- FEMA 412: Installing Seismic Restraints for Mechanical Equipment
- FEMA 413: Installing Seismic Restraints for Electrical Equipment
- FEMA 460: Seismic Considerations for Steel Storage Racks Located in Areas Accessible to the Public
- FEMA: HAZUS Program Software

Federal Energy Management Program (FEMP)

Fiber Optic Testing Procedures

G–H

Green Building Action Plan

Government Code
- Section 70391

Guiding Principles for Sustainable Federal Buildings

I

Illuminating Engineering Society (IES)
- ANSI/IES TM-30-18 IES: Method for Evaluating Light Source Color Rendition
- Lighting Handbook

InfoComm International
- ANSI/INFOCOMM 2M: Standard Guide for Audiovisual Systems Design and Coordination Processes
- AV Design Reference Manual
- AV Installation Handbook
- Dashboard for Controls Design Reference

Institute of Electrical and Electronics Engineers (IEEE)
- IEEE C2: National Electrical Safety Code
- IEEE 241: IEEE Recommended Practice for Electric Power Systems in Commercial Buildings (IEEE Gray Book)
- IEEE 493: IEEE Recommended Practice for Design of Reliable Industrial and Commercial Power Systems (IEEE Gold Book)
- IEEE 802.3ae: 10Gb/s Ethernet Standard
- IEEE 802.3af & at: Power over Ethernet Standards
- IEEE 802.11: Wireless Ethernet Standards, Including 802.11a, 802.11b, 802.11g, and 802.11n
- IEEE 1100: IEEE Recommended Practice for Powering and Grounding Electronic Equipment (IEEE Emerald Book)

Instrument Society of America (ISA)
- Instrument Data Sheets

International Association of Plumbing and Mechanical Officials (IAPMO)

International Building Code (IBC)

International Electrotechnical Commission (IEC)
- IEC 60297-3-100: Mechanical Structures for Electronic Equipment—

Dimensions of Mechanical Structures of the 482,6 mm (19 in) Series—Part 3-100: Basic Dimensions of Front Panels, Subracks, Chassis, Racks and Cabinets

International Organization for Standardization (ISO)
ISO 14044: Environmental management—Life cycle assessment—Requirements and guidelines

International Risk Insurance (IRI)

J–K

Judicial Council of California
Courthouse Naming Policy

Project Procedure A-14: Quality Management Plan

Statewide Action Plan for Serving Self-Represented Litigants

Justice for All: Designing Accessible Courthouses

L

LEED (Leadership in Energy and Environmental Design) Green Building Rating System, U.S. Green Building Council (USGBC)

M

Model Water Efficient Landscape Ordinance (MWELO)

Montreal Protocol

N

National Design Specifications (NDS)
Manual for Engineered Wood Construction

NDS for Wood Construction

NDS Supplement: Design Values for Wood Construction

Special Design Provisions for Wind and Seismic

National Electrical Contractors Association (NECA)
NECA/FOA 301: Standard for Installing and Testing Fiber Optics

ANSI/NECA/BICSI-568: Standard for Installing Commercial Building Telecommunication Cabling

National Electrical Manufacturers Association (NEMA)

National Fire Protection Association (NFPA)
NFPA 10: Portable Fire Extinguishers

NFPA 13: Standard for the Installation of Sprinkler Systems

NFPA 14: Standard for the Installation of Standpipe and Hose Systems

NFPA 17: Standard for Dry Chemical Extinguishing Systems

NFPA 20: Standard for the Installation of Stationary Pumps for Fire Protection

NFPA 22: Standard for Water Tanks for Private Fire Protection

NFPA 24: Installation of Private Fire Service Mains and Their Appurtenances

NFPA 25: Water-Based Fire Protection Systems

NFPA 30: Flammable and Combustible Liquids Code

NFPA 37: Standard for the Installation and Use of Stationary Combustion Engines and Gas Turbines

NFPA 54/ANSI Z223.1: National Fuel Gas Code

NFPA 70: National Electrical Code (NEC)

NFPA 72: National Fire Alarm and Signaling Code

NFPA 80: Standard for Fire Doors and Other Opening Protectives

NFPA 90A: Standard for Installation of Air-Conditioning and Ventilation Systems

NFPA 96: Standard for Ventilation Control and Fire Protection of Commercial Cooking Spaces

NFPA 101: Life Safety Code

NFPA 110: Standard for Emergency and Standby Power Systems

NFPA 111: Stored Electrical Energy Emergency and Standby Power Systems

NFPA 780: Standard for the Installation of Lightning Protection Systems, Annex L

NFPA 2001: Clean Agent Fire Suppression System

National Floor Safety Institute (NFSI)

B101.1: Test Method for Measuring Wet SCOF of Common Hard-Surface Floor Materials

B101.6: Standard Guide for Commercial Entrance Matting in Reducing Slips, Trips and Falls

National Institute for Occupational Safety and Health (NIOSH)

Guidance for Protecting Building Environments from Airborne Chemical, Biological, or Radiological Attacks

National Institute of Standards and Technology (NIST)

Cybersecurity Framework

O

Office of Statewide Health Planning and Development (OSHPD)

OSHPD Preapproved Details (OPD)

P–R

Principles of Universal Design

S

Savings By Design

Sheet Metal and Air Conditioning Contractors' National Association, Inc. (SMACNA)

SMACNA HVAC Duct Construction Standards: Metal and Flexible

SMACNA HVAC Air Duct Leakage Test Manual

SMACNA Fire, Smoke, and Radiation Damper Installation Guide for HVAC Systems

State Administrative Manual (SAM)

State Executive Order (EO)

B-18-12

B-30-15

State of California Green Buildings

T

Telecommunications Industry Association (TIA)

ANSI/TIA-492.AAAD: Detail Specification for 850-nm Laser-Optimized, 50-µm Core Diameter/125-µm Cladding Diameter Class Ia Graded-Index Multimode Optical Fibers Suitable for Manufacturing OM4 Cabled Optical Fiber

ANSI/TIA-492.CAAB: Detail Specification for Class IVa Dispersion-Unshifted Single-Mode Optical Fibers with Low Water Peak

ANSI/TIA/EIA-526-7: Measurement of Optical Power Loss of Installed Single-Mode Fiber Cable Plant

ANSI/TIA/EIA-526-14A: Measurement of Optical Power Loss of Installed Multimode Fiber Cable Plant

ANSI/TIA/EIA-568-C.0: Generic Telecommunications Cabling for Customer Premises

ANSI/TIA/EIA-568-C.1: Commercial Building Telecommunications Cabling Standard Part 1: General Requirements

ANSI/TIA/EIA-568-C.2: Commercial Building Telecommunications Cabling Standard Part 2: Balanced Twisted-Pair Cabling Components

ANSI/TIA/EIA-568-C.3: Commercial Building Telecommunications Cabling Standard Part 3: Optical Fiber Cabling Components

ANSI/TIA/EIA-568-C.3-1: Addendum 1, Addition of OM4 Cabled Optical Fiber and Array Connectivity

ANSI/TIA-568.0-D: Generic Telecommunications Cabling for Customer Premises

ANSI/TIA/EIA-568.3-D: Optical Fiber Cabling Components

ANSI/TIA/EIA-569-D: Commercial Building Standard for Telecommunications Pathways and Spaces

ANSI/TIA/EIA-598-C: Optical Fiber

ANSI/TIA/EIA 606A/B/C: Administration Standard for Commercial Telecommunications Infrastructure

ANSI/TIA/EIA-607-C: Commercial Building Grounding (Earthing) and Bonding Requirements for Telecommunications

ANSI/TIA/EIA-758-B: Customer-Owned Outside Plant Telecommunications Infrastructure Standard

ANSI/TIA 862: Building Automation Systems Cabling Standards for Commercial Buildings

ANSI/TIA-942: Telecommunications Infrastructure for Data Centers

ANSI/TIA-1152: Requirements for Field Test Instruments and Measurements for Balanced Twisted-Pair Cabling

U–Z

Underwriters Laboratories (UL)

UL 181: Standard for Factory-Made Air Ducts and Air Connectors

UL 300: Standard for Fire Testing of Fire Extinguishing Systems for Protection of Commercial Cooking Equipment

UL 464: Audible Signaling Devices for Fire Alarm and Signaling Systems, Including Accessories

UL 521: Standard for Heat Detectors for Fire Protective Signaling Systems

UL 752: Standard for Bullet-Resisting Equipment

UL 916: Standard for Energy Management Equipment

UL 924: Standard for Emergency Lighting and Power Equipment

UL 1449: Standard for Surge Protective Devices

UL 1971: Standard for Signaling Devices for the Hearing Impaired

Unified Facilities Criteria (UFC)

UFC 4-023: Design of Buildings to Resist Progressive Collapse

Uniform Federal Accessibility Standards (UFAS)

U.S. Army Corps of Engineers

PDC-TR 06-02, Rev. 1, Protective Design Center Technical Report

PDC-TR 06-08, Rev. 1, Single Degree of Freedom Structural Response Limits for Antiterrorism Design

U.S. Court Design Guide

U.S. General Services Administration

Facilities Standards for the Public Buildings Service

U.S. Green Building Council (USGBC)

Welfare and Institutions Code

Section 300 et seq.

Section 325 et seq.

APPENDIXES

LIST OF ABBREVIATIONS

ºC degrees Celsius

ºF degrees Fahrenheit

% percent

4W four wire

A

A or amp ampere

ABB ASEA (Allmänna Svenska Elektriska Aktiebolaget) Brown Boveri

ACI American Concrete Institute

ACU Audio Coverage Uniformity

ADA Americans with Disabilities Act of 1990

ADAAG Americans with Disabilities Act Accessibility Guidelines *or* ADA Accessibility Guidelines

ADR alternative dispute resolution

AFF above finished floor

AHJ authority/authorities having jurisdiction

AHRI Air-Conditioning, Heating, and Refrigeration Institute

AHU air-handling unit

AISC American Institute of Steel Construction

AISI American Iron and Steel Institute

ALS assistive listening system

AMCA Air Movement and Control Association

ANSI American National Standards Institute

$\mathbf{a_o}$ acceleration

$\mathbf{a_p}$ peak acceleration

Arch. architecture

ARMM abrasion resistant millimeters

ASCE American Society of Civil Engineers

ASHRAE American Society of Heating, Refrigerating and Air-Conditioning Engineers

ASME American Society of Mechanical Engineers

ASPE American Society of Plumbing Engineers

ASTM American Society for Testing and Materials

ATC Applied Technology Council

ATTY attorney

AV audiovisual

AVIXA Audiovisual and Integrated Experience Association

AWG American Wire Gauge

AWI Architectural Woodwork Institute

AWS American Welding Society

AWWA American Water Works Association

B

BACnet Building Automation and Control Network

BAS building automation system

BECx Building Enclosure Commissioning

BGSF building gross square feet

BICSI Building Industry Consulting Services International

BMS building management system

BOMA Building Owners and Managers Association

BSCC Board of State and Community Corrections

BTL BACnet Testing Laboratories

Btu British thermal unit

C

CA California

CAC California Administrative Code

CAL California

CALDAG *California Disabled Accessibility Guidebook*

CALGreen California Green Building Standards Code

Cal/OSHA California Occupational Safety and Health Administration

CATV community antenna television (cable television)

Cal. Code Regs. California Code of Regulations

CBC California Building Code

CEA Consumer Electronics Association

CEC California Electrical Code

CEO court executive officer

CFAC Court Facilities Advisory Committee

CFC California Fire Code

CFCs chlorofluorocarbons

cfm cubic feet per minute

CFM customer flow management

C.F.R. Code of Federal Regulations

CGSF component gross square feet

CISPI Cast Iron Soil Pipe Institute

CLG. MTD. ceiling mounted

CMC California Mechanical Code

CMU concrete masonry unit

CO_2 carbon dioxide

CONF conference

CPC California Plumbing Code

CPTED Crime Prevention Through Environmental Design

CPUC California Public Utilities Commission

CRI color rendering index

CRSI Concrete Reinforcing Steel Institute

CSA Canadian Standards Association

CSA Compliance Services and Assessments, LLC

CSO court security officer

CxA certified commissioning authority/agent *or* commissioning authority/agent

D

DAS distributed antenna system

dB decibels

dBA decibels, A-weighted

DCR detention control room

DCS detention control system

DDC direct digital control

DEPS digital evidence presentation system

DLCS detention lock control system

DMZ demilitarized zone

DNA deoxyribonucleic acid

DPDT double pole, double throw

DSA Division of the State Architect

DSA-SS Division of the State Architect—Structural Safety

DVD digital versatile disc

DVI Digital Visual Interface

DX direct expansion

E

e.g. exempli gratia; for example

EIA/ECA Electronic Industries Alliance/ Electronic Components Association

EISA Energy Independence and Security Act of 2007

EL elevation

ELEC electric/electrical

EMT electrical metallic tubing

EO executive order

EPDM ethylene propylene diene monomer

ERL electronic resettable link

et seq. et sequens; and the following

etc. et cetera; at the others

exp exponential

F

FAA Federal Aviation Administration

FAIA Fellow of the American Institute of Architects

FC foot-candle

FCC Federal Communications Commission

FCS Family Court Services

FDC fire department connections

FEMA Federal Emergency Management Agency

FEMP Federal Energy Management Program

f_n natural frequency

FOA Fiber Optic Association

fpm feet per minute

fps feet per second

ft. feet

FT^2 square foot/feet

FW firewall

G

g gravity

Gb gigabyte

gpm gallons per minute

GSF gross square feet

GUI graphical user interface

H

h hour

HDMI High-Definition Multimedia Interface

Hg mercury

HP horsepower

hr hour

HTML hypertext markup language

HVAC heating, ventilation, and air-conditioning

I

IAPMO International Association of Plumbing and Mechanical Officials

IBC International Building Code

ID identification, inside diameter

IDF intermediate distribution frame

IEC International Electrotechnical Commission

IEEE Institute of Electrical and Electronics Engineers

IES Illuminating Engineering Society

IIC impact insulation class

incl. including

IP Internet Protocol

IPTV Internet Protocol Television

IR infrared, Interpretation of Regulations

IRI International Risk Insurance

IS Information Systems

ISA Instrument Society of America

ISO International Organization for Standardization

ISP inside plant

IT information technology

ITSIM *Information Transport Systems Installation Manual*

K

km kilometer

kVA kilovolt-amps

kW kilowatt

kWh kilowatt-hour

L

L10 measured noise level that is exceeded for 10 percent of the measurement period

L70 70% of the initial lumens

LAN local area network

lb. pound/pounds

LC latched connector

LCC life cycle cost

LCCA life cycle cost analysis

LCD liquid crystal display

LED light-emitting diode

LEED Leadership in Energy and Environmental Design

LEP limited English proficient

LJS latex joint sealants

LOMMF laser-optimized multimode fiber

M

MAX maximum

MC metal clad

MDF main distribution frame

Mech. mechanical

MEP mechanical, electrical, and plumbing

MERV minimum efficiency reporting value

min. minimum

misc. miscellaneous

MPOE minimum point of entry

MRL machine room less

msec. millisecond

MSF modular systems furniture

MWELO Model Water Efficient Landscape Ordinance

N

NA not applicable

NAS network-attached storage

NC Noise Criteria

NDS National Design Specifications

NEC National Electrical Code

NECA National Electrical Contractors Association

NEMA National Electrical Manufacturers Association

NFPA National Fire Protection Association

NFSI National Floor Safety Institute

NIC noise isolation class

NIOSH National Institute for Occupational Safety and Health

NIST National Institute of Standards and Technology

nm nanometer

NPLV nonstandard part load values

NRC noise reduction coefficient

NSC nonstructural seismic coordinator

NSF net square feet

O

OITC outdoor-indoor transmission class

OPEX operating/operations expense/ expenditure

OSHA Occupational Safety and Health Administration

OSHPD Office of Statewide Health Planning and Development

OSP outside plant

OSPDRM *Outside Plant Design Reference Manual*

P

PACT Performance Assessment Calculation Tool

PC personal computer

PDC Protective Design Center

perm unit of permeation

PEX cross-linked polyethylene

PH phase

pH potential of hydrogen

PIN personal identification number

PIV post indicator valve

PLC programmable logic controller

P_o constant force representing the excitation, pounds

PoE Power over Ethernet

psf pounds per square foot

psi pounds per square inch

pt. part

PTZ pan-tilt-zoom

PV present value

PVB polyvinyl butyral

PVC polyvinyl chloride

R

R9 fidelity red

R_a average color rendering index value

RA risk assessment

RC Room Criteria

RCSC Research Council on Structural Connections

Regs. regulations

REX request-to-exit

R_f fidelity index

RF radio frequency

R_G gamut index

RH relative humidity

RHH rubber-insulated, high heat–resistant

rpm revolutions per minute

RT reverberation time

S

SC Secure Connect

SDI serial digital interface

SEI Structural Engineering Institute

SF/ft² square foot/feet

SGF security epoxy resin gap filler

SJS security joint sealant

SMACNA Sheet Metal and Air Conditioning Contractors' National Association

SMF single-mode fiber

SMS security management system, short message service

SOC security operations center

SR strongly recommended

SS security system**,** structural safety

STC sound transmission class

Syslog system logging protocol

T

TARR Texture Appearance Retention Rating

TBD to be determined

TC Technical Committee

TCP temperature control panel/field panel, Transmission Control Protocol

TDD telecommunications device for the deaf

TDM transportation demand management

TDMM *Telecommunications Distribution Methods Manual*

TEFC totally enclosed, fan cooled

THHN thermoplastic high heat–resistant nylon-coated

THWN thermoplastic heat- and water-resistant nylon-coated

TIA Telecommunications Industry Association

tit. title

TM Technical Memorandum

TNT trinitrotoluene

TR Technical Report

TSS Total Security Solutions

TV television

TVSS transient voltage surge suppressor

U

UFAS Uniform Federal Accessibility Standards

UFC Unified Facilities Criteria

UL Underwriters Laboratories

UPS uninterruptible power supply/source

U.S. United States

USGBC U.S. Green Building Council

UTP unshielded twisted pair

V

V volt

VA volt-amperes

VAC volts of alternating current

VAV variable air volume

VCT vinyl composition tile

VDC volts of direct current

VDT video/visual display terminal

VFD variable-frequency drive

VLAN virtual local area network

VOC volatile organic compound

VoIP Voice over Internet Protocol

VSD variable-speed drive

VSS video surveillance system

W

W Effective Weight, wire

WAN wide area network

WAP wireless access point

WC water column, wheelchair

WDRM *Wireless Design Reference Manual*

WLAN wireless local area network

WRB weather-resistive barrier

X

XHHW cross-linked polyethylene high heat– and water-resistant

APPENDIXES

INDEX

A

access control, 4.4–4.5, 4.19–4.20

access panels, 8.20, 13.13

accessibility
- of courtrooms, 5.5–5.6
- importance of, 1.3–1.4
- parking and, 3.4
- Universal Design principles and, 1.3–1.4

acoustical design
- background noise levels, 19.2
- best practices for, 19.8–19.11
- criteria for, 19.2–19.8
- environmental noise study, 19.7–19.8
- impact insulation, 19.7
- objectives of, 19.2
- room acoustics, 19.2–19.4, 19.11
- sound isolation, 13.10, 19.2, 19.4–19.5, 19.6, 19.10–19.11
- speech privacy, 19.2, 19.4, 19.10–19.11

airflow measuring devices, 13.18

air-handling units, 13.3, 13.19–13.24

alarm systems
- duress, 4.20, 6.5
- fire protection, 20.8–20.10

alternative dispute resolution, 2.9, 4.31, 7.6–7.7

architectural elements. *See also individual elements*
- exterior, 11.2–11.9
- interior, 11.9–11.17
- signage, 11.17–11.20

area and volume definitions, 2.6–2.7

armory, 8.12, 8.33

arraignment
- courtrooms, 2.8, 5.3, 5.22–5.23
- videoconferencing, 18.6

assistive listening systems, 18.3, 18.6, 18.9–18.13

attorney-client interview rooms. *See* interview rooms

attorney convenience centers, 4.31, 7.7

audiovisual systems
- assistive listening, 18.3
- cabinets for, 18.3
- cabling infrastructure for, 18.3
- control systems for, 18.6
- criteria for, 18.2
- digital evidence presentation, 18.6
- digital signage/customer flow management, 18.8
- integration of, 18.2
- reliability of, 18.2
- scalability of, 18.2
- speech and audio reinforcement, 18.3
- sustainability and, 18.2
- videoconferencing/arraignment, 18.6
- video display, 18.6

B

background noise levels, 19.2

barrier walls, 11.3–11.4

benches. *See* detention benches; judge's bench

bird roosting and nesting control, 11.9

blast
- building envelope and, 4.11–4.12
- evacuation after, 4.12–4.14
- setback distance and, 4.5–4.8, 4.23

blood draw rooms, 7.8

break rooms, 6.11, 8.13, 11.16, 13.4

building automation system (BAS). *See* building management system

building directory, 11.19

building gross square feet (BGSF), 2.6–2.7

building management system (BMS)
- components of, 14.2–14.4
- energy conservation design and, 14.4–14.5
- level of integration of, 14.4

building orientation, 1.4–1.5, 3.5

building support services
- fire alarm and emergency communication system control room, 10.4
- janitor closets, 10.2
- lighting and, 16.9
- loading dock, 10.2
- mailroom, 10.3
- maintenance shops, 10.3
- news media functions, 10.3
- security and, 4.32
- space standards for, 2.9
- storage, 10.3

bullet-resistant glazing, 4.21–4.22

C

cabinets, 11.17, 18.3

cabling
- for audiovisual systems, 18.3
- for network and communication systems and, 17.2, 17.3, 17.11–17.16
- security, 4.21, 8.32

calendar postings, 11.19

California, state seal of, 11.15

cameras, 8.32, 8.33. *See also* video

card access control, 4.19

carpets, 11.14

casework, 11.17

ceilings
- finishes for, 11.16
- heights of, 2.5
- impact insulation and, 19.7
- in in-custody areas, 8.15
- planning and design of, 11.10
- recommended reflectance for, 16.5

cellular service, 17.25–17.26

cement plaster cladding, 11.4–11.5

children's waiting rooms
- finishes for, 11.16
- planning and design of, 7.5, 7.6
- security and, 4.17, 4.24, 4.31

chilled water systems, 13.7–13.8

circulation areas
- lighting for, 16.3, 16.9
- security and, 4.16, 4.29, 8.10

circulation zones, 2.2–2.5

clerk's office
- background noise criteria for, 19.2
- ceiling height of, 2.5
- room acoustics requirements for, 19.3
- security and, 4.24

clerk's station
- audiovisual system requirements for, 18.3, 18.4, 18.5
- communications outlets for, 17.17
- lighting for, 16.3
- planning and design of, 5.5, 5.8–5.9
- security and, 4.23, 4.29

CO_2 demand control, 14.6

collapse, resistance to, 4.12–4.13

communications. *See* network and communication systems

component gross square feet (CGSF), 2.4, 2.6, 2.7

conductors, 15.5–15.6

conduits, 15.6

conference rooms
- allocating space for, 6.10
- audiovisual system requirements for, 18.13
- background noise criteria for, 19.2
- for Family Court Services, 7.4–7.5
- finishes for, 11.16
- lighting for, 16.3
- occupant density of, 13.4
- power requirements for, 13.4, 15.3
- room acoustics requirements for, 19.3
- size of, 2.8, 2.12, 6.10
- temperature of, 13.4

copy rooms, 2.8, 5.16, 11.16, 13.4, 13.13

cornerstones, 11.7

corridors
- background noise criteria for, 19.2
- ceiling height of, 2.5
- finishes for, 11.16
- floor vibration acceptance criteria for, 12.3
- in in-custody areas, 8.33
- as public waiting areas, 9.5
- width of, 2.5–2.6

counsel tables
- audiovisual system requirements for, 18.10
- communications outlets for, 17.17
- lighting for, 16.3
- planning and design of, 5.5, 5.12

counters
- finishes for, 11.16
- lighting for, 16.9
- planning and design of, 6.5–6.7
- security and, 4.9, 4.17, 4.22, 4.24, 4.29, 4.30

court administration spaces
- conference and training rooms, 6.10
- court executive officer's area, 6.7–6.11
- equipment storage, 6.11
- human resources, 6.9
- mail center, 6.10
- offices and workstations, 6.8
- other support areas, 6.11
- public service counters, 6.5–6.7
- purchasing, 6.8
- records storage, 6.9
- revenue and collections, 6.7
- security and, 4.30, 6.5
- size of, 2.8

court executive officer's area, 6.7–6.11

courthouses. *See also individual spaces, systems, and services*
- circulation zones for, 2.2–2.5
- entrances to, 3.6, 9.2
- landscape design and, 3.7–3.8
- life cycle cost analysis for, 1.2–1.3, 1.4, 1.6
- naming of, 11.20
- orientation of, 1.4–1.5, 3.5
- pedestrian access to, 1.4, 3.6
- relative building volume ratio for, 2.7
- signage for, 11.17–11.20
- site design for, 3.2–3.8
- size of, 2.5–2.8, 3.5–3.6
- space standards for, 2.5, 2.8–2.12

court reporter's area/station
- communications outlets for, 17.17
- planning and design of, 5.5, 5.10, 5.16
- size of, 2.8

court reporter's room
- planning and design of, 5.16
- security and, 4.30

courtroom holding, 8.11–8.12

courtrooms. *See also individual components*
- accessibility and, 5.5–5.6
- adjacencies for, 5.4
- arraignment, 2.8, 5.3, 5.22–5.23
- audiovisual system requirements for, 18.3–18.5, 18.8–18.11
- background noise criteria for, 19.2
- bench configuration for, 5.4–5.5
- BGSF per, 2.6–2.7
- ceiling height of, 2.5
- components of, 5.5, 5.6–5.15
- entries to, 2.8, 5.4, 5.15
- finishes for, 11.15, 11.16, 11.17
- floor organization of, 5.2
- floor vibration acceptance criteria for, 12.3
- large, 2.8
- lighting for, 16.3, 16.8, 16.10
- mockups of, 5.4, 5.6
- multipurpose, 2.8, 5.3–5.4, 5.20–5.21, 17.18–17.19
- occupant density of, 13.4
- planning and design of, 5.2–5.3
- platforms in, 11.14
- power requirements for, 13.4, 15.3
- room acoustics requirements for, 19.3
- security and, 4.9, 4.16, 4.23, 4.29
- signage for, 11.17–11.20
- size of, 2.8
- support spaces for, 5.15–5.19
- temperature of, 13.4
- types of, 5.3

court security officer (CSO) station, 5.5, 5.13

court set. *See also individual components*
- definition of, 5.2
- security and, 4.29
- space standards for, 2.8

Crime Prevention Through Environmental Design (CPTED), 4.4–4.5

customer flow management (CFM), 18.8

D

dampproofing, 11.3

daylighting, 11.9, 16.10–16.11

dedication plaques, 11.7

defendants. *See* in-custody areas

demand base reset control, 14.6

design excellence principles, 1.5–1.6

detention benches, 8.16, 8.20

detention circulation system, 2.5, 8.10, 8.28

detention control rooms, 2.9, 8.7–8.8

detention control systems, 8.24–8.33

diffusers, 13.3

digital evidence presentation system (DEPS), 18.6

digital signage system, 18.8

dining areas, 15.3, 19.2

direct evaporative coolers, 13.10–13.11

direct expansion systems, 13.8

directories, 11.19

distributed antenna system (DAS), 17.25–17.26

DNA swab rooms, 7.8

doorframes, 8.16, 8.19–8.20, 11.12–11.13

doors
- drainage plane walls, 11.3–11.4
- exterior, 11.6
- in in-custody areas, 8.16, 8.17–8.19, 8.21, 8.24, 8.26–8.27, 8.33
- security and, 4.12, 4.25, 4.26, 4.28, 4.29
- sound isolation requirements for, 19.4, 19.6

drains, 13.15

driveways, 4.21, 4.28, 8.24–8.25, 8.33

drop boxes, 6.7

drug testing suites, 7.7

ductwork
  acoustical isolation and, 13.10
  insulation of, 13.17
  planning and design of, 13.5

duress alarm system, 4.20, 6.5

E

earthquakes, 12.4

electrical systems
  conductors, 15.5–15.6
  conduits, 15.6
  coordination of, 15.7
  criteria for, 15.2–15.8
  distribution studies for, 15.7
  emergency and standby power systems, 15.9–15.13
  equipment enclosures for, 10.4
  grounding, 15.8
  identification of, 15.7
  minimum load power requirements, 15.3
  planning and design of, 15.2
  power distribution, 15.7–15.8
  quality assurance of, 15.7
  security and, 4.14–4.15, 4.26, 4.32
  space for, 2.7
  spare capacity requirements, 15.3, 15.12

electronic security systems
  location of, 4.18–4.19
  planning, 4.19–4.21
  standards for, 4.28–4.32
  types of, 4.19–4.21

elevators
  detention circulation and, 8.10, 8.28, 8.33
  mechanical requirements for, 13.12
  noise reduction and, 19.10
  planning and design of, 11.11–11.12

emergency lighting, 16.7–16.8

emergency power systems, 15.9–15.13

energy conservation
  mechanical systems and, 13.2

entrances
  lighting for, 16.4
  orienting, 3.5
  primary building, 3.5, 9.2
  security and, 4.28
  separate, for judges and bench officers, 3.6
  service, 17.4–17.5, 17.12
  signage for, 11.18
  weather exposure and, 11.6

environmental noise study, 19.7–19.8

equipment insulation, 13.17

escalators
  noise reduction and, 19.10

evacuation, 4.12–4.13

evidence
  presentation system for, 18.6
  storage for, 2.8, 4.10, 4.17, 4.25, 4.30, 5.15

exhibits
  display area for, 5.12
  storage for, 2.8, 4.9, 4.17, 4.25, 4.30, 5.15

exit signs, 16.6

expansion joints, 11.5

exterior construction, 11.2–11.9

exterior lighting, 16.6–16.7

F

façade access equipment, 11.8–11.9

Family Court Services, 4.17, 7.3–7.6

family law facilitators, 2.9, 4.31, 7.2–7.3

fasteners, tamperproof, 8.23

Federal Energy Management Program (FEMP), 1.3

files. *See also* records
  lighting for, 16.3, 16.9
  planning and design of, 11.15
  power requirements for, 15.3
  security and, 4.17, 4.25
  service loads for, 12.3

fingerprinting, 7.8

finishes, interior, 11.15, 11.16, 11.17, 20.2

fin-tube heating systems, 13.9

fire department connections (FDC), 20.6

fire protection systems
  alarm systems, 10.4, 20.8–20.10
  automatic sprinkler systems, 20.2–20.3
  cleaning, 20.7
  control room, 4.18, 10.4
  coordination, 20.7
  criteria for, 20.2–20.7
  fire department connections (FDC), 20.6
  fire pump requirements, 20.4
  guarantee, 20.7, 20.10
  hydrants, 20.3–20.4
  installation contractor certification, 20.7, 20.10

interior finishes, 20.2
for MDF/server equipment room, 20.6–20.7
objectives for, 20.2
piping requirements, 20.4–20.5
piping specialties, 20.5–20.6
post indicator valve (PIV) assembly, 20.6
security and, 4.14–4.15, 4.26
sprinkler control valves, 20.6
valve requirements, 20.5

flagpoles, 3.6, 11.7, 11.15

flashing, 11.4–11.5

flexibility, planning for, 1.5

floods, 12.5

floor drains, 13.15

flooring materials, 11.14, 11.16

floors
impact insulation and, 19.7
in in-custody areas, 8.13–8.14
recommended reflectance for, 16.5
vibration of, 12.3

floor-to-floor heights, 11.9

fluorescent lamps, 16.2

flutter echo, 19.3, 19.4

footbridges, 12.3

footfall noise, 19.7

four-pair copper cable, 17.16

fuel piping, 13.16

G

generators, emergency, 4.8, 4.14, 13.12, 15.9–15.13

glare control, 11.6

glazing
blast load and, 4.12
bullet-resistant, 4.21–4.22
in in-custody areas, 8.16, 8.21

gravity loads, 12.2–2.3

grilles
mechanical, 8.22
walk-off, 11.6–11.7

grounding system, 15.8, 17.11

growth, planning for, 1.5

gun lockers, 8.16, 8.20

H

heat gains, internal, 13.6

heating systems, 13.8–13.9. *See also* HVAC

holding areas
ceiling height of, 2.5
central, 8.8–8.10
courtroom, 8.11–8.12
electronic detention control requirements for, 8.33
lighting for, 16.3, 16.9
mechanical requirements for, 13.12
occupant density of, 13.4
power requirements for, 15.3
size of, 2.9
support areas for, 8.12–8.13
temperature of, 13.4

housekeeping pads, 13.13

human comfort performance levels, 12.3

human resources, 6.9

humidifiers, 13.10–13.11

HVAC
background noise from, 19.2, 19.8–19.9
criteria for, 13.3–13.10
equipment enclosures for, 10.4
planning and design of, 13.2

hydrants, 20.3

I

illuminance levels, recommended, 16.3–16.4

impact insulation, 19.7

incandescent lamps, 16.2

in-custody areas. *See also individual components*
benches in, 8.16, 8.20
components of, 8.5–8.13
construction/finishes in, 8.13–8.15
detention equipment in, 8.16, 8.20
door signage in, 8.24
doors in, 8.16, 8.17–8.19, 8.21, 8.24, 8.26–8.27, 8.33
electronic detention control system in, 8.24–8.33
fasteners in, 8.23
frames in, 8.16, 8.19–8.20, 8.23
functional overview of, 8.3–8.5
glazing in, 8.16, 8.21
light fixtures in, 8.21
mechanical grilles in, 8.22
mechanical requirements for, 13.12

planning and design of, 8.2–8.3
plumbing fixtures in, 8.22
sealants in, 8.23
space standards for, 2.9
sprinkler heads, 8.22
technical criteria for, 8.13–8.24
toilet accessories in, 8.24

information kiosks/counters, 2.9, 4.29, 9.4–9.5

information systems
security and, 4.32
space standards for, 2.8

inside plant (ISP) pathways, 17.12–17.14

insulation, 13.17

intercom system, 8.31–8.32, 17.17

interior construction
fire protection and, 20.2
planning and design of, 11.9–11.17

intermediate distribution frame (IDF) rooms
definition of, 17.7
electronic security systems and, 4.18–4.19
occupant density of, 13.4
planning and design of, 17.7–17.9
power requirements for, 13.4, 15.3
security and, 4.32
space considerations for, 17.8
temperature of, 13.4

interpreters
communications outlets for, 17.17
convenience centers for, 7.8

interview rooms, 2.8, 5.18, 8.10–8.11, 8.27

intrusion detection, 4.20

IP network, 17.21–17.24

J

janitor closets
finishes for, 11.16
in holding areas, 8.13
lighting for, 16.9
mechanical requirements for, 13.12
occupant density of, 13.4
planning and design of, 10.2
size of, 2.9
temperature of, 13.4

judge's bench
communications outlets for, 17.17
corner vs. center, 5.4–5.5
lighting for, 16.3
planning and design of, 5.4, 5.5, 5.6–5.7
security and, 4.22, 4.29

judge's/judicial chambers
background noise criteria for, 19.2
ceiling height of, 2.5
lighting for, 16.8
occupant density of, 13.4
planning and design of, 5.15–5.16
power requirements for, 13.4, 15.3
room acoustics requirements for, 19.3
security and, 4.9, 4.16, 4.24, 4.30
size of, 2.8
temperature of, 13.4

jury assembly rooms
audiovisual system requirements for, 18.12
ceiling height of, 2.5
finishes for, 11.16
floor vibration acceptance criteria for, 12.3
lighting for, 16.3, 16.10
planning and design of, 6.3
security and, 4.30
size of, 2.8

jury boxes
planning and design of, 5.10–5.12
security and, 5.12

jury deliberation rooms
background noise criteria for, 19.2
ceiling height of, 2.5
finishes for, 11.16
occupant density of, 13.4
planning and design of, 5.17
power requirements for, 13.4, 15.3
room acoustics requirements for, 19.3
security and, 4.9, 4.17, 4.24, 4.30
size of, 2.8
temperature of, 13.4

jury support staff, 6.4

K

kitchens, 13.4, 15.3

L

lactation rooms, 2.8, 6.11

landscape design, 3.7–3.8

laser-optimized multimode (LOMMF) cable, 17.14–17.15

law enforcement waiting rooms, 2.8, 7.7–7.8

law library, 5.16

lecterns, 5.5, 5.12, 17.17

LED, 16.2

LEED Silver rating, 1.6

life cycle cost analysis (LCCA), 1.2–1.3, 12.4, 12.6

lifts, 5.6

lighting. *See also* lighting fixtures
- commissioning, 16.11
- controls for, 16.10–16.11
- criteria for, 16.2–16.6
- day-, 11.9, 16.10–16.11
- emergency, 16.7–16.8
- energy efficiency and, 16.2, 16.6
- exterior, 16.6–16.7
- maintenance, 16.6
- planning and design of, 16.2
- recommended illuminance levels, 16.3–16.4
- reflectance values, 16.2, 16.5
- security, 16.7
- strategies for, 16.6–16.10

lighting fixtures (luminaires)
- energy efficiency of, 16.6
- in in-custody areas, 8.21
- selection of, 16.6

litigation area
- components of, 5.12
- separation of, from spectator area, 5.14

loading docks
- finishes for, 11.16
- mechanical requirements for, 13.12
- planning and design of, 10.2
- power requirements for, 15.3
- security and, 4.7, 4.10, 4.18, 4.25, 4.28, 4.32

loading zones, 3.4

lobbies
- background noise criteria for, 19.2
- ceiling height of, 2.5
- design of, 9.2–9.5
- finishes for, 11.16
- lighting for, 16.3, 16.9
- occupant density of, 13.4
- power requirements for, 13.4
- room acoustics requirements for, 19.3
- security and, 4.8, 4.9, 4.16, 4.21, 4.24–4.25 9.3–9.4
- temperature of, 13.4

local area network (LAN), 17.24

loudspeakers, 18.4–18.5, 18.6, 18.9, 18.11, 18.12, 18.13

M

mail centers
- for court administration, 6.10
- for jury assembly, 6.4

mailroom
- location of, 4.8
- mechanical requirements for, 13.12
- planning and design of, 10.3
- security and, 4.18, 4.25, 4.32
- size of, 2.9

main distribution frame (MDF)
- definition of, 17.5
- electronic security systems and, 4.18–4.19
- fire protection systems for, 20.6–20.7
- occupant density of, 13.4
- planning and design of, 17.5–17.7
- power requirements for, 13.4, 15.3, 17.7
- security and, 4.32
- space considerations for, 17.4
- temperature of, 13.4

maintenance shops, 4.32, 10.3

massing, 3.5–3.6

mats, 11.6–11.7

mechanical systems
- access to, 13.12
- criteria for, 13.3–13.10
- energy conservation and, 13.2
- equipment enclosures for, 10.4
- flexibility of, for change, 13.2
- insulation, 13.17
- isolation of, 13.10, 13.14
- maintenance of, 13.2
- performance of, 13.2
- planning and design of, 13.2
- reliability of, 13.2
- requirements for specific spaces, 13.12–13.13
- security and, 4.14–4.15, 4.26
- space for, 2.7
- standby capacity of, 13.2
- sustainability and, 13.2
- thermometers and gauges, 13.17–13.18

media area
- exterior, 10.3
- interior, 10.3
- security and, 4.32

mediation rooms, 7.5

metal finishes, 11.16

microphones, 18.3, 18.7, 18.8–18.9, 18.11–18.13

mockups, 5.2, 5.4

multipair copper cable, 17.15

multipurpose rooms
  jury assembly rooms as, 6.3
  planning and design of, 7.7–7.8
  security and, 4.31
  uses for, 7.7–7.8

N

natural gas systems, 13.16

net square feet (NSF), 2.6

network and communication systems
  administration and verification, 17.20–17.21
  backbone connectivity, 17.14–17.15
  cabling, 17.2, 17.3
  definition of, 17.2
  distributed antenna systems, 17.25–17.26
  distribution pathways, 17.11–17.14
  horizontal connectivity, 17.15–17.19
  network architecture, 17.2–17.4, 17.21–17.24
  overview of, 17.2–17.4

network architecture, 17.2–17.4, 17.21–17.24

noise. *See also* acoustical design
  background, 19.2
  environmental, 19.7–19.8
  footfall, 19.7

noise isolation class (NIC), 19.4

nonstructural seismic coordinator (NSC), 12.4, 12.5

"No Smoking" signs, 11.20

notice boards, 11.19

O

occupant density, suggested, 13.4

offices
  background noise criteria for, 19.2
  ceiling height of, 2.5
  communications outlets for, 17.14
  for court administration, 6.8
  for court executive officer, 6.7–6.11
  finishes for, 11.16
  floor vibration acceptance criteria for, 12.3
  lighting for, 16.3, 16.8
  occupant density of, 13.4
  open, 19.2, 19.3
  power requirements for, 13.4, 15.3
  room acoustics requirements for, 19.3
  security and, 4.24, 4.31
  size of, 2.8, 2.11
  temperature of, 13.4

optical fiber, 17.14–17.15

outlets, 17.13, 17.16, 17.17

outdoor-indoor transmission class (OITC), 19.6, 19.8

outside air control methods, 14.6

outside plant (OSP) pathways, 17.12

P

paper pass, 8.16, 8.20

parking
  accessible, 3.4
  background noise criteria for, 19.2
  landscape design for, 3.7–3.8
  lighting for, 16.4, 16.10
  planning and design of, 3.2–3.4
  power requirements for, 15.3
  public, 3.2–3.3, 4.7
  secure, 3.3–3.4, 4.7, 4.15, 4.21
  security and, 4.7, 4.21, 4.23

partitions
  interior, 11.10
  operable, 19.7

pedestrian access, 1.4, 3.6

pedestrian pathways, 16.4

pedestrian sally ports, 8.6–8.7, 8.26

perimeter, secure, 8.5

pink noise, 18.3, 18.6, 18.9

piping
  fuel, 13.16
  hangers, 13.10
  identification of, 13.14
  insulation, 13.17
  isolation of, 13.10, 13.14
  planning and design of, 13.13–13.17

pistol lockers, 8.16, 8.20

platforms, 11.14

plenum spaces, 11.9–11.10, 13.5

plumbing systems
  criteria for, 13.13–13.16
  fixtures, 8.22, 13.15–13.16
  insulation, 13.17
  noise reduction and, 19.8–19.10

post indicator valve (PIV) assembly, 20.6

power requirements
minimum load, 15.3
by room type, 13.4
spare capacity, 15.3

power systems
for detention control system, 8.33
emergency and standby, 15.9–15.13
new, 15.7–15.8

press access. *See* media area

pressure gauges, 13.17–13.18

pressurization, 13.6

programmable logic controllers (PLCs), 8.30

propane gas systems, 13.16

protection, concentric circles of, 4.5

public spaces
information kiosk or counter, 9.4–9.5
lobby, 9.2–9.5
planning and design of, 9.2
primary building entrance, 9.2
space standards for, 2.9
waiting areas, 9.5

pump systems, 13.13

purchasing, 6.8

R

radiant heating systems, 13.9

rainwater drainage system, 13.15

ramps, 5.5–5.6, 11.6

rare loads, criteria for, 12.4–12.5

receiving, 4.18, 4.28

reception areas
for alternative dispute resolution, 7.7
background noise criteria for, 19.2
for courtroom support, 2.8, 5.16
for Family Court Services, 7.4–7.5
for jury assembly areas, 6.2
for self-help centers, 7.2–7.3

records. *See also* files
security and, 4.30
storage, 2.8, 4.30, 6.9–6.10
viewing, 4.30, 6.7

reflectance values, 16.2, 16.5

relative humidity, 13.11

research attorney work area, 2.8, 5.17

restroom facilities
for court administration staff, 6.11
finishes for, 11.16
in in-custody areas, 8.22, 8.24
for jury assembly rooms, 6.3
lighting for, 16.3, 16.9
mechanical requirements for, 13.12
occupant density of, 13.4
power requirements for, 13.4, 15.3
size of, 2.8, 2.9
temperature of, 13.4

revenue and collections office, 6.8

reverberation time, 19.2, 19.3

risk assessment procedures, 4.4

roofs, 11.7–11.8

room acoustics, 19.2–19.4, 19.11

S

safety equipment storage, 8.12–8.13

sally ports
definition of, 8.4
electronic detention control requirements for, 8.33
mechanical requirements for, 13.12
pedestrian, 8.6–8.7, 8.26, 8.33
vehicle, 8.5–8.6, 8.25–8.26, 8.33

sanitary waste systems, 13.15–13.16

Savings By Design program, 1.8

screening stations, 2.9, 4.21, 4.29, 9.3–9.4

sealants, 8.23

seal of the State of California, 11.15

security. *See also individual areas*
building envelope and, 4.11–4.12, 4.25 4.26
building layout and, 4.8–4.9, 4.23
cable routing, 4.21
capability for increasing, 4.4
card access control, 4.19
challenges to, 4.2
duress alarm, 4.20
electrical systems and, 4.14–4.15, 4.26
electronic security systems, 4.19–4.21, 4.27, 4.28–4.32
factors affecting levels of, 4.3–4.4
fire protection systems and, 4.14–4.15, 4.26
intrusion detection, 4.20
lighting, 16.7
mechanical systems and, 4.14–4.15, 4.26
physical planning criteria, 4.4–4.12
planning and design of, 4.2–4.3

protective structural design, 4.10, 4.12–4.13, 4.26
risk assessment procedures, 4.4
screening stations, 2.9, 4.21, 4.29, 9.3–9.4
site design and, 4.5–4.7, 4.23
standards for, 4.23–4.32
turnstiles, 4.21
video surveillance, 4.19–4.20

security operations center
combined with detention control room, 8.6, 8.7
lighting for, 16.7, 16.10
location of, 4.10
power requirements for, 15.3
size of, 2.9
standards for, 4.25, 4.32

self-help centers, 2.9, 4.31, 7.2–7.3, 11.16

self-represented litigants, 7.2–7.3

service entrance facilities, 17.4–17.5, 17.12

service loads, criteria for, 12.2–12.3

setback distance, 4.6–4.8

sewage ejectors, 13.15

shredding, 10.2

signage
digital, 18.8
exit, 16.6
in in-custody areas, 8.24
for jury assembly rooms, 6.2
planning and design of, 11.17–11.20

single-mode fiber (SMF) cable, 17.14–17.15

site design
security and, 4.5–4.7, 4.23

snow, 12.2, 12.5

sound isolation, 13.10, 19.2, 19.4–19.5, 19.6, 19.10–19.11

sound masking, 18.3, 18.6

sound transmission class (STC), 19.4–19.5

space standards, 2.5–2.6, 2.8–2.12

special services
alternative dispute resolution, 7.6–7.7
children's waiting room, 7.6
Family Court Services, 7.3–7.6
family law facilitators, 7.2–7.3
multipurpose rooms and offices, 7.7–7.8
offices for related justice agencies, 7.7
self-help centers, 7.2–7.3

spectator area
lighting for, 16.3
planning and design of, 5.14–5.15
security and, 4.29
separation of, from litigation area, 5.14

speech and reinforcement systems, 18.3, 18.6

speech privacy, 19.4, 19.10–19.11

sprinkler systems
cleaning, 20.7
coordination of, 20.7
criteria for, 20.2–20.7
in in-custody areas, 8.22
for MDF/server equipment room, 20.6–20.7
piping requirements, 20.4–20.5
sprinkler control valves, 20.6
sprinkler head guards, 20.3
sprinkler head requirements, 20.6
valve requirements, 20.5

stairs
exterior, 11.6
finishes for, 11.16
floor vibration acceptance criteria for, 12.3
for in-custody areas, 8.33
lighting for, 16.4, 16.8
planning and design of, 11.12
for private circulation system, 2.4–2.5

standby power systems, 15.9–15.13

state seal, 11.15

storage
for building support services, 10.3
for court administration, 6.9–6.10, 6.11
for evidence and exhibits, 2.8, 4.10, 4.17, 4.25, 4.30, 5.15
for Family Court Services, 7.4, 7.6
finishes for, 11.16
in holding areas, 8.12–8.13
occupant density of, 13.4
power requirements for, 15.3
for records, 2.8, 4.17, 4.25, 4.30, 6.9–6.10
for safety equipment, 8.12–8.13
security and, 4.32
size of, 2.8, 2.9

striplights, 16.9

structural design
adaptability and, 12.2
criteria for, 12.2–12.5
goals for, 12.2
life cycle cost analysis and, 12.4, 12.6
rare events and, 12.2
serviceability and, 12.2

surge protective devices, 15.8

surveillance
  natural, 4.4, 4.5, 4.8
  video, 4.19–4.20, 8.31

sustainability
  audiovisual systems and, 18.2
  design criteria and performance goals for, 1.6–1.8
  energy savings programs, 1.8
  landscape design and, 3.7–3.8
  life cycle cost analysis and, 1.6
  mechanical systems and, 13.2
  objectives for, 1.6

T

telecommunications
  finishes for, 11.16
  security and, 4.32
  space standards for, 2.9

temperature control, 13.3

territoriality, 4.4, 4.5

thermometers, 13.17–13.18

toilets. *See* restroom facilities

training rooms
  allocating space for, 6.10
  audiovisual system requirements for, 18.12–18.13
  background noise criteria for, 19.2
  for Family Court Services, 7.5
  jury assembly rooms as, 6.3
  lighting for, 16.10
  room acoustics requirements for, 19.3
  security and, 4.30
  size of, 2.8, 6.10
  standards for, 6.10

transcription, real-time, 18.10

transient voltage surge suppressor (TVSS) units, 15.8

trash and recycling area, 2.9, 4.32

turnstiles, 4.21

TV, 18.7. *See also* media area

U

Universal Design principles, 1.3–1.4

UPS (uninterruptible power supply), 15.12–15.13, 17.4

utilities
  location and visibility of, 3.6–3.7
  security and, 4.14

V

vehicle sally ports, 8.5–8.6, 8.25–8.26, 8.33

veneer panels, 11.17

ventilation, 13.3, 13.6. *See also* HVAC

vibration, 13.10

victim waiting areas, 7.8

video
  display systems, 18.6
  surveillance, 4.19–4.20, 8.31

volunteer convenience centers, 7.7

W

waiting areas/rooms
  for alternative dispute resolution, 7.7
  children's, 4.17, 4.24, 4.31, 7.6, 11.16
  for interpreters, 7.8
  for law enforcement, 2.8, 7.7–7.8
  lighting for, 16.3
  occupant density of, 13.4
  power requirements for, 13.4
  public, 9.5
  security and, 4.9–4.10, 4.16, 4.24–4.25, 4.29–4.31
  for self-help centers, 7.2–7.3
  size of, 2.8, 2.9
  temperature of, 13.4
  for victims, 7.8
  for witnesses, 5.18

walk-off mats and grilles, 11.6–11.7

wall coverings, 11.16

walls
  barrier, 11.3–11.4
  drainage plane, 11.3–11.4
  exterior, 11.3–11.7
  in in-custody areas, 8.14–8.15
  recommended reflectance for, 16.5
  security and, 4.12

waste systems, 13.15–13.16

water
  cold, 13.14
  conservation, 1.7
  flow measuring devices, 13.18
  hammer arresters, 13.14
  hot, 13.9, 13.14
  treatment, 13.10–13.11

wayfinding, 1.4–1.5, 18.8

weapons
  lockers for, 8.16, 8.20
  screening for, 4.21, 4.29

wide area network (WAN), 17.24

wind, 11.2–11.3,12.5

window coverings, 11.14

windows
  planning and design of, 11.5–11.6
  security and, 4.11, 4.12, 4.21, 4.28
  washing, 11.8–11.9

wireless access point (WAP), 17.16

wireless local area network (WLAN), 17.16

witness boxes
  communications outlets for, 17.17
  lighting for, 16.3
  planning and design of, 5.9–5.10

witness waiting areas, 5.18

workplace environment, enhancing, 11.9

workshop rooms, 7.3

workstations
  DCS, 8.28
  design and planning of, 6.5–6.7
  size of, 2.8–2.10

APPENDIXES

ACKNOWLEDGMENTS

JUDICIAL COUNCIL OF CALIFORNIA

Chair

Hon. Patricia Guerrero
Chief Justice of California and Chair of the Judicial Council of California

Supreme Court

Hon. Carol A. Corrigan
Associate Justice of the Supreme Court of California

Courts of Appeal

Hon. Stacy Boulware Eurie
Associate Justice of the Court of Appeal, Third Appellate District

Hon. Brad R. Hill
Administrative Presiding Justice of the Court of Appeal, Fifth Appellate District

Trial Courts

Hon. Maria Lucy Armendariz
Judge of the Superior Court of California, County of Los Angeles

Hon. Bunmi O. Awoniyi
Judge of the Superior Court of California, County of Sacramento

Hon. Charles Crompton
Judge of the Superior Court of California, County of San Francisco

Hon. Judith K. Dulcich
Judge of the Superior Court of California, County of Kern

Hon. Maureen F. Hallahan
Judge of the Superior Court of California, County of San Diego

Hon. Maria D. Hernandez
Judge of the Superior Court of California, County of Orange

Hon. Ann C. Moorman
Judge of the Superior Court of California, County of Mendocino

Hon. Ricardo R. Ocampo
Assistant Presiding Judge of the Superior Court of California, County of Los Angeles

Hon. Michael Rhoads
Judge of the Superior Court of California, County of San Francisco

Hon. Tamara L. Wood
Presiding Judge of the Superior Court of California, County of Shasta

Legislature

Hon. Ash Kalra
Member of the California State Assembly

Hon. Thomas J. Umberg
Member of the California State Senate

State Bar

Ms. Rachel W. Hill
Attorney at Law

Ms. Gretchen M. Nelson
Attorney at Law

Mr. Craig M. Peters
Attorney at Law

Ms. Dena Stone
Attorney at Law

Advisory Members

Ms. Kate Bieker
Court Executive Officer, Superior Court of California, County of Ventura

Hon. Ryan Davis
Commissioner of the Superior Court of California, County of Sacramento

Mr. Charles Johnson
Clerk/Executive Officer, Court of Appeal, First Appellate District

Hon. Jeffrey C. Kauffman
Judge of the Superior Court of California, County of Solano

Hon. Patricia L. Kelly
Presiding Judge of the Superior Court of California, County of Santa Barbara

Mr. David Slayton
Court Executive Officer, Superior Court of California, County of Los Angeles

Secretary

Ms. Michelle Curran
Administrative Director

COURT FACILITIES ADVISORY COMMITTEE (CFAC)

Hon. Brad R. Hill, Chair
Administrative Presiding Justice of the Court of Appeal, Fifth Appellate District

Hon. Eric J. Wersching, Vice-Chair
Judge of the Superior Court of California, County of Orange

Hon. JoAnn M. Bicego
Judge of the Superior Court of California, County of Siskiyou

Hon. Donald Cole Byrd
Presiding Judge of the Superior Court of California, County of Glenn

Mr. Anthony P. Capozzi
Attorney at Law

Ms. Melissa Fowler-Bradley
Former Court Executive Officer, Superior Court of California, County of Shasta

Hon. William F. Highberger
Judge of the Superior Court of California, County of Los Angeles

Hon. Harry E. Hull, Jr.
Associate Justice of the Court of Appeal, Third Appellate District

Hon. Steven E. Jahr (Ret.)
Judge of the Superior Court of California, County of Shasta

Hon. Patricia L. Kelly
Presiding Judge of the Superior Court of California, County of Santa Barbara

Ms. Krista LeVier
Court Executive Officer, Superior Court of California, County of Lake

Hon. Elaine Lu
Judge of the Superior Court of California, County of Los Angeles

Ms. Kyria Martinez
County Administrative Officer, County of Kings

Hon. Gary R. Orozco
Judge of the Superior Court of California, County of Fresno

Hon. David Edwin Power (Ret.)
Judge of the Superior Court of California, County of Solano

Hon. Lisa M. Rogan
Judge of the Superior Court of California, County of San Bernardino

Hon. Sergio C. Tapia II
Presiding Judge of the Superior Court of California, County of Los Angeles

Mr. Thomas J. Warwick, Jr.
Attorney at Law

The Judicial Council acknowledges the contributions of the following committee members, staff, and consultant firms for their input and guidance during the creation of the 2026 edition of the *California Trial Court Facilities Standards.*

CFAC STANDARDS WORKING GROUP

Hon. Eric J. Wersching, Chair
Judge of the Superior Court of California, County of Orange

Ms. Melissa Fowler-Bradley
Court Executive Officer, Superior Court of California, County of Shasta

Hon. William F. Highberger
Judge of the Superior Court of California, County of Los Angeles

Hon. Steven E. Jahr (Ret.)
Judge of the Superior Court of California, County of Shasta

JUDICIAL COUNCIL STAFF

Mr. Tamer Ahmed
Director, Facilities Services

Mr. Jagandeep Singh
Deputy Director, Facilities Services

Ms. Deepika Padam
Building Official, Facilities Services

Ms. Nirlip Syan
Attorney, Real Estate, Legal Services

Ms. Denise Logsdon
Communications Editor, Editing and Graphics, Leadership Support Services

Facilities Services staff at large

CONSULTANT FIRMS

BPR Consulting Group
Architecture, Fire Protection, and Structural Engineering

Frank M. Booth, Inc.
Mechanical Engineering

Gensler
Graphic Design

The Engineering Enterprise
Electrical Engineering

Vanir Construction Management Inc.
Knowledge Sharing

Attachment B

DRAFT REDLINE VERSION

Commented [DP1]: Replace cover per the new design we decided.

JUDICIAL COUNCIL OF CALIFORNIA

CALIFORNIA TRIAL COURT FACILITIES STANDARDS

2023 Edition

DRAFT REDLINE VERSION

JUDICIAL COUNCIL
OF CALIFORNIA

CALIFORNIA TRIAL COURT FACILITIES STANDARDS

20263 Edition

Commented [DP2]: Gensler: change the seal to the one I emailed.

Commented [LD3]: Should we be using the anniversary seal?

Commented [DP3R2]: Good idea!
Gensler: I will email you the anniversary seal for incorporation.

Published by the Judicial Council of California
~~Administrative Division,~~ Facilities Services
455 Golden Gate Avenue
San Francisco, CA 94102-3688

Copyright © ~~2023~~ 2026 by Judicial Council of California. All rights reserved.

Except as permitted under the Copyright Act of 1976 and as otherwise expressly provided herein, no part of this publication may be reproduced in any form or by any means, electronic, online, or mechanical, including the use of information storage and retrieval systems, without permission from the copyright holder.

TABLE OF CONTENTS

Preface vii

DIVISION ONE: DESIGN CRITERIA

PAGE PAGE

Commented [DP4]: Gensler: Update TOC - section headings and page numbers.

1 GENERAL PRINCIPLES

1.A Functional Usefulness, Physical Durability, and Maintainability 1.2
1.B Accessibility 1.3
1.C Design Principles 1.4
1.D Sustainable Design 1.6

2 COURTHOUSE ORGANIZATION

2.A Program Stacking and Zoning 2.2
2.B Space Standards 2.5
2.C Area and Volume Definitions 2.6
2.D Occupancy and Exiting Calculations 2.9
2.E Court Floor Plan for Occupancy and Exiting Analysis 2.11

3 SITE DESIGN

3.A Objectives 3.2
3.B Parking 3.2
3.C Site and Building Security 3.5
3.D Integration of Building and Site 3.5

4 COURTHOUSE SECURITY

4.A Objectives 4.2
4.B Design, Technology, and Operations 4.2
4.C Factors Affecting Security Levels 4.3
4.D Risk Assessment Procedures 4.4
4.E Physical Security Planning Criteria 4.4
4.F Structural Systems 4.13
4.G Mechanical, Electrical, and Fire Protection Systems 4.15
4.H Electronic Security Planning Criteria 4.16
4.I Electronic Security Systems 4.20
4.J Bullet-Resistant Glazing and Panels 4.22

5 COURT SET

5.A Objectives 5.2
5.B Courtroom 5.3
5.C Courtroom Accessibility 5.5
5.D Courtroom Components 5.6
5.E Courtroom Support Spaces 5.15

6 JURY FACILITIES AND COURT ADMINISTRATION

6.A Jury Facilities Objectives 6.2
6.B Jury Assembly Spaces 6.2
6.C Objectives of the Clerk's Office 6.5
6.D Clerk's Office Spaces 6.5
6.E Court Executive Officer's Area 6.9

7 SPECIAL SERVICES

7.A Objectives 7.2
7.B Family Law Facilitators and Services for Self-Represented Litigants 7.2
7.C Family Court Services 7.4
7.D Child Waiting Room (Optional) 7.6
7.E Alternative Dispute Resolution 7.7
7.F Multipurpose Rooms and Offices 7.7
7.G Lactation Rooms 7.8

8 IN-CUSTODY DEFENDANT RECEIVING, HOLDING, AND TRANSPORT

8.A Objectives 8.2
8.B Planning Criteria 8.2
8.C Functional Overview 8.3
8.D Program Components 8.5
8.E Technical Criteria 8.13
8.F Electronic Detention Control System 8.25

9 PUBLIC SPACES

9.A Objectives 9.2
9.B Primary Building Entrance 9.2
9.C Public Lobby 9.2
9.D Courtroom Public Waiting Areas 9.5

10 BUILDING SUPPORT SERVICES

10.A Janitor Closets 10.2
10.B Loading Dock 10.2
10.C News Media Functions 10.3
10.D Mail ~~room~~Room 10.3
10.E Maintenance Shops and Office 10.3
10.F Storage 10.3
10.G Mechanical Equipment Enclosures 10.4
10.H Fire Alarm and Emergency Communication System Control Room 10.4

DIVISION TWO: TECHNICAL CRITERIA

PAGE

11 ARCHITECTURAL CRITERIA

11.A Objectives 11.2
11.B Architectural Criteria 11.2
11.C Building Elements: Exterior Construction 11.2
11.D Building Elements: Interior Construction 11.9
11.E Signage 11.17

12 STRUCTURAL CRITERIA

12.A Objectives 12.2
12.B Structural Systems 12.2
12.C Criteria for Service Loads 12.2
12.D Criteria for Rare Loads 12.4
12.E Life Cycle Cost Analysis 12.6
12.F Quality Assurance 12.7
12.G Fire-Resistive Ratings of Structural Elements 12.7

13 MECHANICAL CRITERIA

13.A Objectives 13.2
13.B HVAC Criteria 13.3
13.C Humidification and Water Treatment 13.11
13.D Mechanical Requirements for Specific Spaces 13.11
13.E Plumbing and Piping Systems Criteria 13.13
13.F Insulation 13.17
13.G Thermometers and Gauges 13.18

14 BUILDING MANAGEMENT SYSTEM CRITERIA

14.A Objectives 14.2
14.B Building Management System 14.2
14.C Level of Integration 14.4
14.D Energy Conservation Design 14.4
14.E Design Features 14.6
14.F Commissioning 14.6

15 ELECTRICAL CRITERIA

15.A Objectives 15.2
15.B Electrical Criteria 15.2
15.C Emergency and Standby Power Systems 15.9

PAGE

16 LIGHTING CRITERIA

16.A Objectives 16.2
16.B Lighting Criteria 16.2
16.C Lighting Strategies 16.6
16.D Lighting Controls 16.9
16.E Lighting Commissioning 16.11

17 NETWORK AND COMMUNICATION SYSTEMS

17.A General Overview 17.2
17.B Minimum Point of Entry (MPOE) 17.4
17.C Distribution Pathways 17.11
17.D Backbone Connectivity 17.14
17.E Horizontal Connectivity 17.15
17.F Administration and Verification 17.19
17.G Network Architecture 17.20
17.H Distributed Antenna System 17.24

18 AUDIOVISUAL SYSTEMS

18.A Audiovisual Design 18.2
18.B Audiovisual Criteria 18.2
18.C Technical Infrastructure 18.3
18.D Audiovisual Systems Descriptions 18.3
18.E Description of Courthouse Spaces 18.9

19 ACOUSTICAL CRITERIA

19.A Objectives 19.2
19.B Acoustical Criteria 19.2
19.C Best Practices 19.8

20 FIRE PROTECTION CRITERIA

20.A Objectives 20.2
20.B Fire Protection Criteria 20.2
20.C Fire Alarm System Objectives 20.8
20.D Fire Alarm System Criteria 20.9

REQUIRED TOOLS

TOOL 1: LIFE CYCLE COST ANALYSIS PAGE

T1.A Purpose T1.2
T1.B Principles T1.3
T1.C Performing LCCA T1.11

TOOL 2: CATALOG OF COURTROOM LAYOUTS FOR CALIFORNIA TRIAL COURTS

T2.A Courtroom Layout Overview T2.2
T2.B Multipurpose Courtroom Templates T2.4
T2.C Courtroom Design Examples T2.29
T2.D Holding Core Templates T2.45

TOOL 3: INTEGRATED NETWORK ARCHITECTURE

TOOL 4: GRAPHICAL USER INTERFACE TEMPLATE

T4.A Introduction T4.2
T4.B Page Descriptions T4.2

TOOL 5: IN-CUSTODY INTERVIEW ROOM GUIDELINES

T5.A Acoustic Study T5.2
T5.B Observations and Measurement Results T5.3
T5.C Requirements T5.3
T5.D Speech Privacy T5.5
T5.E Sound Isolation T5.5
T5.F As-Built Dimensioned Drawing T5.6
T5.G Selective Performance Requirements for Interview Rooms Specification T5.6

TOOL 6: BUILDING MANAGEMENT SYSTEM GUIDELINES

T6.A General Requirements T6.2
T6.B General Pneumatic Control Requirements T6.5
T6.C General Design Requirements T6.6
T6.D System Requirements T6.8

APPENDIXES

APPENDIX 1: CODES AND STANDARDS

APPENDIX 2: LIST OF ABBREVIATIONS

APPENDIX 3: INDEX

APPENDIX 4: ACKNOWLEDGMENTS

Commented [DP5]: Gensler: Add the two new tools.

Commented [DP6]: Gensler: the title of tool 8 is wrong in your revised file.

The Judicial Council of California has full responsibility, jurisdiction, control, and authority over trial court facilities~~,~~ and shall adopt appropriate facilities standards under Government Code section 70391. The Judicial Council is served by its staff administrative organization, of which the Facilities Services office has the responsibility under Government Code section 70391 and rules 10.180 and 10.181 of the California Rules of Court to prepare and present to the Judicial Council recommendations for policies, procedures, and standards for ensuring that the courts have adequate and sufficient facilities.

~~With the~~ transfer ~~of responsibility for design, construction, and management of court facilities from counties to the state, t~~The Judicial Council is responsible for the design, construction, and management of court facilities and has determined that it is prudent to develop standards that reflect~~ing the~~ best practices and successful solutions for the basic components of the trial court building. On adoption by the Judicial Council of the standards in *California Trial Court Facilities Standards* (hereafter the *Facilities Standards* or *CTCFS*), Facilities Services staff, in accordance with rule 10.180 of the California Rules of Court, will apply the standards for design and construction of court facilities.

This edition supersedes the *Facilities Standards* adopted by the Judicial Council effective April 2006, the amendment to the 2006 *Facilities Standards* effective March 2010, the 2011 draft update to the *Facilities Standards* (not officially adopted), ~~and~~ the 2020 edition effective November 2020, and the 2023 edition effective September 2024.

This ~~2023~~ 2026 edition is an expansion of the earlier *Facilities Standards*; it has been developed using input from a variety of sources, including comments from knowledgeable judges, court administrators, court facility planners, and facility operations technicians; insight from experienced architects, engineers, and building code officials; and reference sources such as federal and other state court facility standards. Lessons learned from the design and construction of recent court buildings in California, using the 2011, 2020, and 202~~3~~0 editions, have been identified and incorporated in this ~~2023~~ 2026 edition.

This *Facilities Standards* edition shall be ~~utilized~~ used with professional care as stated in the service agreements between the Judicial Council and consultants retained for specific projects~~,~~ and ~~shall be used~~ in conjunction with applicable code and project requirements as the basis of design for new court facilities in California. For each court construction or major renovation project, the Judicial Council staff and the affected court will establish an advisory group in accordance with ~~rule~~ rule 10.184(d) of the California Rules of Court; the advisory group will assist the Judicial Council staff with implementing the facilities standards for that specific project.

The *Facilities Standards* will promote buildings that are functional, durable, maintainable, and efficient and that provide long-term value to the public, the judicial branch, courthouse occupants, the community in which they reside, and court users and taxpayers of California. This *Facilities Standards* edition attempts to maximize value to the State of California by balancing the aesthetic, functional, and security requirements of courthouse design with the budget realities of initial construction costs and the long-term life cycle costs of owning and operating institutional buildings.

Judicial Council of California
Facilities Services

Commented [DP7]: Legal: I think we can take this out at this point since transfers happened many years ago. Please review.

Commented [SN7R2]: I think a sentence in this location is useful because it explains *why* the Judicial Council is issuing the standards. However, I agree that the word "transfer" is unnecessary here (it introduces a historical reference that does not connect to the surrounding text). The sentence can be revised and combined with the next one for clarity. I have reverted to "determined" rather than "believes," because "determined" conveys a deliberate institutional conclusion rather than a subjective viewpoint. Here is the revised sentence:

"The Judicial Council is responsible for the design, construction, and management of court facilities and has determined that it is prudent to develop standards that reflect best practices and successful solutions for the basic components of the trial court building."

DIVISION ONE: DESIGN CRITERIA

1 GENERAL PRINCIPLES

SECTION	TOPIC	PAGE
1.A	Functional Usefulness, Physical Durability, and Maintainability	1.2
1.B	Accessibility	1.3
1.C	Design Principles	1.4
1.D	Sustainable Design	1.6



Superior Court of California, County of San Joaquin
Stockton, CA
NBBJ

Important References

California Green Building Standards Code (CALGreen), California Code of Regulations, title 24, part 11 (current version)

~~*Facilities Standards for the Public Buildings Service* (U.S. General Services Administration)~~

California Energy Design Assistance Program (CEDA), an energy-efficiency program

American Society of Heating, Refrigerating and Air-Conditioning Engineers (ASHRAE), an international organization for advancing heating, ventilation, air-conditioning, and refrigeration

~~LEED (~~Leadership in Energy and Environmental Design (LEED), a registered trademark of the U.S. Green Building Council and a voluntary program in which buildings obtain Silver, Gold, or Platinum certification based on the number of points achieved through the LEED rating system, where each level represents a more sustainable building

The most recent version of applicable code requirements~~, which~~ shall be used during design. ~~(~~For more information, see ~~the a~~Appendix___, Codes and Standards~~).~~

"Universal Design is the design of products and environments to be usable by all people, to the greatest extent possible, without the need for adaptation or specialized design."

Ronald L. Mace, FAIA
(1941–1998)

California Trial Court Facilities Standards defines the minimum space and the functional, technical, and security requirements for the design of ~~new construction in~~ new ~~and existing~~ court facilities in the state of California. The *Facilities Standards* reflects best practices and successful solutions as the basis for design and construction of functional, durable, maintainable, efficient, and secure contemporary court facilities.

The *Facilities Standards* provides the criteria to be used by designers (~~,~~including~~,~~ but not limited to~~,~~ design and construction teams, planners, architects, engineers, contractors, design builders, and construction managers), the judiciary, court administrators, and facility planners. ~~The *Facilities Standards* is primarily tailored for implementation by design and construction teams, including planners, architects, engineers, contractors, design builders, and construction managers.~~ ~~The *Facilities Standards* is a required contract document.~~ It provides ~~a resource of~~the Judicial Council's required planning, design and technical criteria. The Basis of Design for new projects shall comply with the *Facilities Standards* while allowing flexibility for the designer to deliver the best value to the Judicial Council. In case of any discrepancy between the Basis of Design and *Facilities Standards*, the *Facilities Standards* shall govern the decision.

Each courthouse project entails many variables that influence design decisions, including size, calendar type, location, climate, geography, and site context. The *Facilities Standards* provides a basic understanding of the programmatic, design, and operational concerns common to court facilities, and it illustrates how standards may reasonably be applied to meet the needs of individual projects. The specific solutions may vary by project; therefore, the diagrams shown are representational and do not describe the only acceptable solutions. Variations have been indicated in some cases, but designers have flexibility to propose solutions that are appropriate to specific project requirements.

The facilities standards in this document represent minimum planning and design expectations; the~~se facilities standards~~y do not exempt designers from meeting the standard of care for their profession.

This document is intended primarily for new court building projects. However, many of the design criteria and performance standards may be applicable to substantial court renovation projects or building system upgrades in existing court buildings, buildings shared with other related justice agencies, leased facilities, and tenant improvements. For projects subject to the *Facilities Standards*, the most recent updated version of *Facilities Standards* at the time of creation of criteria documents or schematic design documents shall govern.

1.A REGULATORY FRAMEWORK

Judicial Council projects are subject to the jurisdiction of multiple enforcement entities, or ~~A~~authorities ~~H~~having ~~J~~jurisdiction (AHJs). The Judicial Council's ~~B~~building ~~O~~official is the primary point of contact for permittees working on Judicial Council projects. The ~~B~~building ~~O~~official administers the Judicial Council's code compliance program including conducting plan review, issuance of building permits, and conducting construction inspections; managing and facilitating plan review and inspections by other regulatory agencies when necessary or appropriate; verifying the commissioning of new facilities; maintaining inspection records; and managing structural, mechanical, and smoke control system peer reviews.

Throughout design and construction, the ~~B~~building ~~O~~official cooperates with and acts as the liaison with external AHJs. The Office of the State Fire Marshal (OSFM) has authority for the enforcement of all fire and panic safety, also sometimes referred to as fire and life safety, provisions of the California Building Standards Administrative Code and other regulations of the State Fire Marshal. The California Division of the State Architect (DSA) is responsible for ensuring compliance with accessibility requirements. The Board of State and Community Corrections (BSCC) is responsible for ensuring that all correctional facilities, including detention facilities located within courts, are safe and secure. Occasionally, other AHJs will be involved with regulatory enforcement and permitting for certain projects.

Commented [SR1]: It seems that this document could use a Preface/Intro section that addresses:
1)Who is this document meant for?
2)How to use this document?
3)What is design process that is implicit in this document?
4)Who are the stakeholders that will provide input and accept the design?
A process flow chart that lists the stakeholders would perhaps be helpful - the Judicial Council, The Court, County Sheriff's Office, etc. Perhaps, a short about the AHJs migh be helpful as well.

Commented [DP1R2]: Agreed. I will expand on these points.

Commented [SN2]: This comment is for the text in the gray box: Reference to PBS, GSA Facilities Standards (P100). Per 2/24/25 GSA memo, P100 Facilities Standards was rescinded. The memo provided a short appendix of applicable "Interim Core Standards." Therefore, the text should be updated to not reference P100.

Commented [DP2R2]: Deleted reference.

Commented [DP3]: Proposed change rejected since CTCFS are primarily applicable to new projects only. The existing facility modifications are addressed three paragraphs down.

Commented [SN4]: Removed and incorporated partially into the preceding sentence. I think the term "is primarily tailored for" could be problematic down the road as the JCC may end up on the wrong side of an argument that the Standards have only a particular purpose. Additionally, I think the addition was meant to address DB contracting and that it is applicable to the full list of DB members, which I think can be picked up by incorporation into the prior sentence. One caution, by listing out in the first sentence to whom the criteria is to be used by, you may wish to consider if there is a catch-all term to add to make sure the list doesn't leave off anyone not explicitly mentioned.

Commented [SN5]: The Facilities Standards should provide standards requirements, not contract terms. Contractual incorporation should occur in the contract itself. The standard approach is for the contract to explicitly incorporate the external standards by reference. Also, embedding this requirement in the Facilities Standards may restrict contract drafters' ability to tailor obligations for project type, procurement type, or negotiated terms.

Commented [SN6]: This text does not logically fit here. Neither is the entirety of the text necessary for a technical standards document because the information is more about procedure. However, I do think it is important to alert designers to these code compliance and permitting issues in that they interplay with technical. There are a few options: 1) put the text (rewritten to something like, "Judicial Council projects are reviewed and permitted by the Judicial Council's Building Official. The Building Official coordinates required reviews with other Authorities Having Jurisdiction (AHJ), including OSFM for fire and life safety, DSA for ... [1]

Commented [DP6R2]: I will add a new section heading for Regulatory Framework. But the entirety of this information needs to be shared since we constantly see lack of clarity among DBs on who the AHJs are. Separating this information under multiple sections will not provide the needed clarity.

~~The *Facilities Standards* shall be used as the starting point for project planning and design.~~ Peer reviews and plan reviews during the design phases shall be led by the Judicial Council's ~~B~~building ~~O~~official to confirm compliance with *Facilities Standards*, title 24, and other codes and standards applicable to Judicial Council projects. After plan review is completed with all AHJs, ~~Judicial Council's~~the ~~B~~building ~~O~~official shall issue the building permit. Conformance to the *Facilities Standards*, as part of contract documents, is required to be followed throughout design and construction. Exceptions to *Facilities Standards* are not permissible. Any exception, if unavoidable, shall be requested from the Judicial Council's ~~B~~building ~~O~~official for consideration and potential approval.

At the conclusion of projects, the Judicial Council's ~~B~~building ~~O~~official shall ensure that construction inspections are complete~~.~~; final sign-offs are received from the inspector of record, special inspectors, and external AHJs~~.~~; certificate of occupancy is approved by the Office of the State Fire Marshal~~.~~; and the building commissioning is complete. The ~~B~~building ~~O~~official shall then issue the Certificate of Completion to close the project.

~~1.A~~1.B FUNCTIONAL USEFULNESS, PHYSICAL DURABILITY, AND MAINTAINABILITY

1. Design Team Guidelines

California court facilities shall be functional, durable, and easy to maintain. The design team shall:

- Select value-driven solutions benefiting the Judicial Council and the taxpayers for the entire life cycle of the building~~.~~;
- Define a clear approach to space planning, space use, and the integration of building systems to positively impact occupants and maximize efficiency~~.~~;
- Provide easily accessible, operable, and maintainable building systems, products, and materials~~.~~; and
- Provide long-term value by balancing initial construction costs with projected life cycle operational costs.

To achieve value and limit total ownership costs, architects, engineers, and designers shall develop building components and assemblies that function effectively for the durations (target functional lifetimes) outlined in tool 1, Life Cycle Cost Analysis.

Commented [SN7]: This sentence is problematic because it implies that the Facilities Standards are something that allow discretionary deviation, rather than that these are required minimums (as stated in the first sentence of this section above). This would create risk in something like DB because that relies heavily on clear, enforceable criteria, and calling them a starting point here creates ambiguity and contradicts the design intent of the Facilities Standard - that it is a baseline obligation.

Commented [DP8]: Modified by CFAC-WG.

Commented [SN9]: This highlighted text also does not logically fit here in the guiding principles section and neither is there a place for them elsewhere. This may be best put into the aforementioned (in comments) Project Context / Code Compliance Framework section because they are about administrative and regulatory processes. For your consideration, text incorporating the earlier recommended text for the AHJ and code compliance with the plan review language here: "Judicial Council projects are reviewed and permitted by the Judicial Council's Building Official, who oversees plan review, permitting, and inspections throughout design and construction. The Building Official coordinates required reviews with external Authorities Having Jurisdiction (AHJs), including the Office of the State Fire Marshal (OSFM) for fire and life safety, the Division of the State Architect (DSA) for accessibility, and the Board of State and Community Corrections (BSCC) for detention facilities. Designers must comply with all applicable codes, Title 24 requirements, these Facilities Standards, and the criteria enforced by these AHJs as referenced in the applicable chapters. Deviations from the Facilities Standards are not permitted unless a formal exception request is submitted to, reviewed by, and approved by the Judicial Council's Building Official. At project completion, the Building Official confirms that construction inspections are complete, external AHJ approvals and final sign-offs have been received, commissioning is complete, and then issues the Certificate of Completion.

Commented [DP9R2]: Your proposed change duplicates the information provided on the previous page. These two paragraphs get into the steps involved in design and construction.

2. Life Cycle Cost Analysis

Selection of major building components, materials, and systems must consider long-term costs for operations and maintenance. Life cycle cost analysis (LCCA) shall be used to evaluate the total cost of ownership for design alternatives over the useful life of components or systems in a court facility. The Judicial Council will consider life cycle cost analysis, along with other project-specific factors, in determining acceptability of design alternatives.

a. Whole-building life cycle assessment should be conducted, including operating energy, showing that the building project achieves the code-required percentage improvement for at least four impacts—including climate change, stratospheric ozone depletion, photochemical oxidants (smog), and water conservation—when compared to a reference building of similar size, function, complexity, and operating energy performance~~,~~ and that it meets current California Energy Code requirements, at a minimum.

b. Life cycle assessments shall be compliant with International Organization for Standardization~~'s~~ (ISO) 14044.

c. LCCA shall be applied over a 30-year life cycle for design alternatives. The target functional lifetimes for components and systems are outlined in required tool 1, Life Cycle Cost Analysis.

d. LCCA shall be prepared using the building LCCA program available from the Federal Energy Management Program (FEMP), or similar tools accepted by the Judicial Council, or the LCCA tool provided for use by the council.

e. Energy consumption costs shall be calculated from annual energy usage reports generated by compliance software and relevant utility time-of-use rate schedules for the local energy utilities.

f. The discount, inflation, and escalation rates shall be determined as described in the Judicial Council LCCA procedure.

g. Unless otherwise directed, a 5 percent real discount rate shall be used for all studies.

h. Selection of structural systems, building components, and materials should consider long-term capital cost impacts of estimated losses resulting from expected earthquakes and other rare and damaging events.

i. In certain projects, to be determined by the Judicial Council, the LCCA should be based on known and established methods and techniques, including simulations, to estimate probable losses—resulting from seismic events—at various confidence levels for individual event scenarios or over a considered time frame. In complicated scenarios, a formal risk analysis should be undertaken.

j. Table 1.1 lists the building components, materials, or systems that may be subject to LCCA, depending on the size or scale of a particular court facility.

~~j. (Possibly note here the issue with replacing large windows due to vandalism)~~

Commented [DP10]: Valid suggestion, but this has been added to chapter 11 where the info is better suited.

~~1.B~~1.C ACCESSIBILITY

Accessibility is an integral component of civic building planning and design. As an essential element of the justice system, courthouses must be easily accessible to the public. Because of the~~ir unique~~ distinctive spaces and functions, court buildings often present unique access challenges for persons with disabilities or ~~with~~ limited ~~English~~ English language proficiency.

DIVISION ONE: DESIGN CRITERIA

1 GENERAL PRINCIPLES

1.C Design Principles
1.D Sustainable Design

2 Courthouse Organization
3 Site Design
4 Courthouse Security
5 Court Set
6 Jury Facilities and Court Administration
7 Special Services
8 In-Custody Defendant Receiving, Holding, and Transport
9 Public Spaces
10 Building Support Services

Universal Key Goals

- Comply with sustainable initiatives.
- Plan and design for flexibility.
- Use natural strategies.
- Improve energy efficiency.
- Perform building commissioning.
- Promote healthy environments.

California court facilities shall be designed to provide long-term value by balancing initial construction costs with projected life cycle operational costs.

LCCA = life cycle cost analysis

FEMP = Federal Energy Management Program

1. Universal Design

Because most people experience changing physical abilities over a lifetime and benefit from barrier-free design, the design team shall use the principles of Universal Design with the goal of providing equal access to court facilities and making the built environment usable by as many people as possible, regardless of age, ability, or condition. The principles of Universal Design are:

- *Equitable Use*: The design is useful and marketable to people with diverse abilities.
- *Flexibility in Use*: The design accommodates a wide range of individual preferences and abilities.
- *Simple and Intuitive Use*: Use of the design is easy to understand, regardless of the user's experience, knowledge, language skills, or current concentration level.
- *Perceptible Information*: The design communicates necessary information effectively to the user, regardless of ambient conditions or the user's sensory abilities.
- *Tolerance for Error*: The design minimizes hazards and the adverse consequences of accidental or unintended actions.
- *Low Physical Effort*: The design can be used efficiently and comfortably and with a minimum of fatigue.
- *Size and Space for Approach and Use*: Appropriate size and space are provided for approach, reach, manipulation, and use, regardless of the user's body size, posture, or mobility.

(~~The~~ Center for Universal Design, *The Principles of Universal Design* (~~Raleigh, N.C.:~~ North Carolina State University, 1997).)

2. Application

Universal Design principles shall be incorporated into all court buildings.

Courthouses shall be designed in accordance with California Building Code, chapter 11B, which sets the baseline standards of equal facilitation for public buildings, in addition to applicable federal regulations. Compliance with chapter 11B incorporates the Americans with Disabilities Act of 1990 (ADA) guidelines.

~~1.C~~1.D DESIGN PRINCIPLES

1. Building Orientation and Wayfinding

Many court facility users, especially first-time visitors and people with hearing or visual impairment, are unfamiliar with the public functions and spaces in the courthouse and require assistance in determining where they need to go. Clear circulation, wayfinding visual cues, signage, and graphics are important design elements that will minimize confusion and enhance the visitor's experience when using the courts.

Architects shall provide clear and identifiable pedestrian paths of travel to the main entrance of the courthouse and through internal corridor and site circulation systems, enabling the public to easily understand the facility's organization. They shall provide a coordinated series of visual cues, placed in strategic locations, to allow visual orientation to key functional public areas, including courtrooms, the clerk's office, self-help centers, and the jury assembly room.

Views to the outdoors and of architectural elements, windows, doors, landscaping, color,

texture, and scale are among the design opportunities that can be applied when developing a wayfinding program. Other visual strategies that enhance orientation include stylized door types, door surrounds, and interior glazing, in addition to standardized, multilingual signage. These elements encourage building users to rely on intuitive decisions~~,~~ rather than signage only~~,~~ when navigating the building. Other wayfinding strategies include:

- Locating the entries of high-volume public ~~-~~use spaces so that they can be seen directly from the public entry lobby, or if locations of high-volume spaces cannot be seen from the lobby, providing visual clues immediately on entering the building;
- Providing weapons screening that is integral to the design of the lobby, including path-of-travel and queuing considerations;
- Providing vertical circulation (public stairs and/or elevators) directly adjacent to, or clearly visible from, the public lobby;
- Providing clear, concise, and attractive graphics, signage, and visual elements so that visitors can locate their destinations without asking security personnel or courthouse staff for assistance; and
- Planning and locating public toilet rooms, waiting areas, courtrooms, and public areas in the same areas on each floor to enhance orientation.

2. Small, Medium, Large, and ~~X~~Extra-Large Courthouses

The *Facilities Standards* provides guidance about appropriate systems or components for small or low-rise (1 to ~~6~~ 4 courtrooms), medium or low- to mid-rise (~~5~~7 to 169 courtrooms), large or high-rise (up to 200~~'~~' tall, (17 to 40 courtrooms), or extra-large or super-high-rise (greater than 200~~'~~' tall, (more than ~~19~~40 courtrooms) court buildings. Design responses to programmatic needs will vary~~,~~ depending on the court facility size, type, and location.

For example, a small rural courthouse requires a different architectural scale, exterior cladding, room size, and building system than those required for a large urban courthouse. Design solutions should be consistent and appropriate for the court type, size, location, context, project complexity, and community the court serves. See t~~T~~ool 7, Small Courthouse Guidelines, for detailed requirements. ~~(If we do a small courthouse tool it should be noted here)~~

3. Flexibility and Growth

California court facility space needs change over time.

a. Court facilities shall be planned for flexibility and, to the extent feasible, to accommodate growth without increasing the authorized gross square footage. Examples of programmed flexibility include standard courtroom sizes with capacity for juries or special case types~~,~~ and standard structural modules with adequate dimension and capacity to be converted to courtroom space.

b. Floor-to-floor heights, location of vertical and horizontal circulation elements, and column bay dimensions shall allow for conversion of office space into courtrooms. This approach will permit expansion of the judiciary within buildings containing infrastructure elements such as central holding, secure elevators, and electronic security systems.

c. Building infrastructure and raceway shall allow for a reasonable amount of future expansion consistent with the project program and funding.

DIVISION ONE: DESIGN CRITERIA

1 GENERAL PRINCIPLES
1.A Functional Usefulness, Physical Durability, and Maintainability
1.D Sustainable Design
2 Courthouse Organization
3 Site Design
4 Courthouse Security
5 Court Set
6 Jury Facilities and Court Administration
7 Special Services
8 In-Custody Defendant Receiving, Holding, and Transport
9 Public Spaces
10 Building Support Services

Commented [DP11]: Modified by CFAC-WG.

Commented [SN12]: Defer to qualified persons as to correct definitions and whether these align with code requirements. My question is since there is no low end to the high rise listed (at what point does a mid-rise become a high rise), did you want to add that in?

Commented [DP12R2]: The number of courtrooms and heights are added for clarity on when to consider it one size or the other. Code definitions have been reviewed to create this size breakdown.

Commented [SN13]: I don't see a Tool 7 in the folder with the chapters.

Commented [DP13R2]: It is a new tool being added to this edition.

4. Design Excellence

The *Facilities Standards* requires implementation of design excellence principles outlined by the Judicial Council ~~organization~~'s Facilities Services office in its *Project Procedure DB A-11: Quality Management Plan*. To promote accountability and consistency and ~~to~~ focus on results for all projects, Facilities Services developed success factors that are measurable: scope, budget, schedule, quality, customer satisfaction, and team satisfaction.

The success factors are measured based on the quality of the court building that is being designed and constructed~~,~~ because the building transcends the completion of the project. Following are the elements that are evaluated in measuring quality and finalizing a quality score during each stage of design:

~~1.~~a. Reflection of the dignity of the law and the stability of the judicial system.
~~2.~~b. Responsiveness to local context, geography, climate, and setting.
~~3.~~c. Reflection of the importance of the activities within the courthouse, with adequate spaces that are planned and designed to be adaptable to change.
~~4.~~d. Consideration of the economics of operation and maintenance, including controlling long-term ownership costs.
~~5.~~e. A sustainable, healthy, safe, and accessible environment.
~~6.~~f. Technical excellence in building systems.

~~1.D~~1.E SUSTAINABLE DESIGN

The objectives, design criteria, and performance goals outlined below provide the basis for the planning and design of sustainable trial court buildings in California.

1. Objectives

a. Architects and engineers shall focus on proven design approaches and building elements that improve court facilities for building occupants and result in cost-effective, climate~~-~~-appropriate, sustainable buildings.

b. All new courthouse projects shall be designed and constructed in accordance with the current versions of the California Green Building Standards Code (CALGreen) (Cal. Code Regs., tit. 24, pt. 11) and the California Energy Code (Cal. Code Regs., tit. 24, pt.~~-~~ 6). Design teams shall incorporate sustainable design strategies that reduce energy and water use, improve indoor environmental quality, and minimize life ~~-~~cycle environmental impacts.
~~All new courthouse projects shall be designed and constructed in conformance with the Nonresidential Mandatory Measures of the current version of the California Green Building Standards Code (CALGreen) (Cal. Code Regs., tit. 24, pt. 11), as well as the current version of the California Energy Code (Cal. Code Regs., tit. 24, pt. 6). All projects shall target 15 percent increased energy efficiency and 12 percent increased water conservation levels as compared to the minimum requirements of Title 24.~~

c. Implementation of CALGreen Tier 1 Nonresidential Voluntary Measures will depend on a positive net present value result of the Tier 1 LCCA design options or Judicial Council LCCA procedure-based design against a code-compliant design.

d. Additionally, all new courthouse projects shall be designed to receive, at a minimum, the Leadership in Energy and Environmental Design (LEED) Silver rating ~~or higher~~ without an increase in the authorized project budget or long-term operating costs.

2. Design Criteria and Performance Goals

2.1 Compliance Requirements and Goals

The following design criteria and performance goals are universally applicable to all court buildings and shall provide a direct benefit to building occupants and reduce ownership costs.

Commented [YR14]: Consideration to strike out "new courthouse" if CTCFS applicability is expanded to major FMs as well.

Commented [DP14R2]: CTCFS are primarily applicable to new projects only.

Commented [YR15]: Per Arup California State-Managed Courthouses Energy Efficiency Strategy Study (CSMCESS), CTCFS Recommended Language, 10/30/2025
1.D-1b (replace existing)

@Rao, Srinivas

Commented [DP15R2]: Proposed change acceptable.

~~a. Comply with the current version of the CALGreen Nonresidential Mandatory Measures as described above.~~

~~b. Comply with the current version of the California Energy Code (Cal. Code Regs., tit. 24, pt. 6).~~

~~c. Comply with the current LEED criteria as described above.~~

~~d.~~a. Plan and design for flexibility to anticipate future changes and enhance building longevity. Use modular planning and flexible building infrastructure for ~~HVAC (~~heating, ventilation, and air-conditioning (HVAC)~~,~~); power~~,~~ ; water~~,~~ ; security~~, ;~~ and communication systems. ~~(During a lessons learned meeting a couple of issues came up regarding future cost to maintain , repair or replace regarding exterior skin large plans of glass / storefront and ceilings) Basically all finishes should be nice but not over the top due to future cost, Glass panel size the large view windows when vandalized cost a lot to replace consider smaller modular easy to replace, Ceilings should be simple but nice easy to replace~~

~~e.~~b. Conserve water. Install building-level water submeters to allow for the management of water use during occupancy, including the detection of leaks. Use low-flow plumbing fixtures that meet current California regulations, install water-efficient appliances, eliminate any designs with single-pass cooling, and optimize cooling tower operations through the use of pH conductivity controllers for minimizing cooling tower blowdown. ~~Where feasibleIf available~~Where feasible, request a connection to the local water utility non-potable (purple pipe) water main for use in irrigation and evaporative cooling systems. Use energy-efficient HVAC equipment. Meet ~~or exceed~~ the applicable statewide and regional requirements of the State Water Resources Control Board.

~~f.~~c. Use natural strategies to protect and restore water resources. Limit disruption to existing vegetated areas. To purify runoff and promote groundwater recharge, use natural stormwater treatment systems such as bioretention ~~or,~~and bioswales with native and climate-appropriate plants, ~~and permeable paving,~~ as geographically appropriate.

d. Design new courthouse facilities to meet ~~or exceed~~ the defined site Energy Use Intensity (EUI)[1] ~~targets established by the Judicial Council of California~~ for each building size category and California Building Climate Zone. ~~(S~~refer to~~see:~~ Table 1.1) ~~without considering any on-site renewable generation.~~ On-site renewable generation is not included in the site EUI targets.

All projects, regardless of code compliance pathway, shall demonstrate through whole-building energy simulation that the proposed design achieves ~~either (a) at least 15 percent reduction in modeled energy consumption compared to the applicable Title 24 Part 6 performance approach baseline or (b)~~ compliance with the target EUI range provided below.

Energy modeling shall begin early in design, consistent with American Society of Heating, Refrigerating and Air-Conditioning Engineers (ASHRAE) Standard 209, and shall be refined at each major design phase to evaluate alternatives and

DIVISION ONE: DESIGN CRITERIA

1 GENERAL PRINCIPLES
1.A Functional Usefulness, Physical Durability, and Maintainability
1.B Accessibility
3 Site Design
4 Courthouse Security
5 Court Set
6 Jury Facilities and Court Administration
7 Special Services
8 In-Custody Defendant Receiving, Holding, and Transport
9 Public Spaces
10 Building Support

Commented [DP16]: Unnecessary duplication.

Commented [DP17]: This is already covered in chapter 11. I will enhance that section if needed.

Commented [DP18]: Proposed change rejected since availability may not mean that it is feasible for a project. So the determination has to be on a case by case basis.

Commented [DP19]: Proposed change rejected since exceeding minimum requirements may be costly and is not the intent of CTCFS.

Commented [DP21]: This proposed addition of section about EUIs is pending approval by CFAC WG.

Commented [PB21R2]: [FMB] For Consideration

1.Comparing EUI (Annual Energy Use Intensity) during a design competition is often misleading because EUI depends heavily on assumptions that aren't fixed yet (occupancy, schedules, plug loads, climate files, operations) and each team may make different assumptions which could inappropriately mislead what solution is best.
2.The use of publishing a % better than code (T-24) target has limitations on evaluating solutions because the approved T-24 software is intended for code compliance only and it is archaic in terms of its ability to effectively evaluate/compare) alternate solutions.
3.Recommendation: If the JCC wants to go above and beyond CA current energy codes (which are considered very efficient) then identify the goals as "targets" (not "meet or exceed" language) that is difficult to confirm until projects are further along with the design (via energy models, etc) and the team though the LCCA method in other chapters can work with the JCC in determining best value for the project.

Commented [DP22]: Modified by CFAC-WG.

Commented [DP23]: Gensler: Put the footnote into the Grey bar as an inset.

Commented [DP24]: Gensler: Move this footnote to the grey bar on page 1.6 since we don't do footnotes in this document.

Commented [YR25]: For clarity consider changing to :

"On-site renewable generation is not included in the site EUI targets."

Commented [DP25R2]: Rephrased for clarity and consistency with EUI definition.

[1] Per ASHRAE Standard 100, energy use intensity (EUI) is "an expression of building energy use per year in terms of net energy divided by gross floor area." The EUI is calculated as annual net energy use ~~in, kBtu~~kilo British thermal units (kBtu) per ~~/~~gross floor area ~~(ft²)~~in square feet. Net energy is defined as "the sum of the metered energy entering the building minus metered energy leaving the building." On-site renewable energy is not included in the calculation if it is used within the building.

optimize the building's performance.

The project's EUI target, modeling approach, and compliance documentation shall be included in the Basis of Design report and reviewed at each design phase by the Judicial Council ~~of California or its designee~~.

~~Perform~~Conduct building fundamental and enhanced commissioning to verify that all systems perform as designed and modeled in accordance with the current Building Energy Efficiency Standards ~~§~~section 120.8, CALGreen Chapter 5, and LEED criteria. Monitoring-based commissioning shall be performed on a case-by-case basis.

EUI Targets

~~a.~~ Table 1.1 establishes target EUI ranges for courthouse facilities of different size categories in California Building Climate Zones 1 through 16. Size categories are defined in section 1.C-2 above.

~~b. The "Upper Bound" values represent typical code-compliant courthouse energy use determined by a large-scale parametric energy modeling study and is considered the maximum EUI threshold.~~

~~The "Lower Bound" values represent cost-effective targets achievable through a subset of possible design efficiency measures from the same energy modeling study. Design teams should use this as a reference and aim to meet or exceed the threshold when feasible.~~

~~c)An "Upper Bound project "vs an "Lower Bound project" design should be evaluated via Life Cycle Cost Analysis as described in Tool 1 Life Cycle Cost Analysis~~

Table 1.1 EUI Targets[1] by Climate Zone and Building Size

Size	EUI by Climate Zone															
	1	2	3	4	5	6	7	8	9	10	11	12	13	14	15	16
Small (1-4 courtrooms)	51	44	36	41	38	32	33	34	33	39	46	45	43	45	47	53
Medium (5-16 courtrooms)	52	48	39	44	39	38	36	38	38	43	50	48	47	48	50	58
Large (17-40 courtrooms)	51	46	37	42	38	37	33	35	35	40	47	45	44	46	47	56
Extra Large (>40 courtrooms)	Same as Large Courthouses. However, Criteria Phase will reconfirm the EUI target and establish the final EUI target based on +NPV on a case-by-case basis.															

~~Size~~	~~EUI by Climate Zone[2]~~															
	~~1~~	~~2~~	~~3~~	~~4~~	~~5~~	~~6~~	~~7~~	~~8~~	~~9~~	~~10~~	~~11~~	~~12~~	~~13~~	~~14~~	~~15~~	~~16~~
~~Small (1-4 courtrooms)~~	~~51~~	~~44~~	~~36~~	~~41~~	~~38~~	~~32~~	~~33~~	~~34~~	~~33~~	~~39~~	~~46~~	~~45~~	~~43~~	~~45~~	~~47~~	~~53~~
~~Medium (5—16 courtrooms)~~	~~52~~	~~48~~	~~39~~	~~44~~	~~39~~	~~38~~	~~31~~	~~38~~	~~38~~	~~43~~	~~50~~	~~48~~	~~47~~	~~48~~	~~50~~	~~58~~
~~Large[3] (17-40 courtrooms)~~	~~51~~	~~46~~	~~37~~	~~42~~	~~38~~	~~37~~	~~30~~	~~35~~	~~35~~	~~40~~	~~47~~	~~45~~	~~44~~	~~46~~	~~47~~	~~56~~

Commented [DP26]: Monitoring-based commissioning for post-occupancy phase for 12-month with quarterly trend data reviewing(included LEED) - $20,000

Monitoring-based commissioning utilizing energy monitoring tools CIM to implement MBCx and setup for annual review going forward. Year 1-$25,000/Annual after year 1-$15,000

Commented [DP27]: Gensler: follow the bullet formatting of the document and make adjustments to this section.

Commented [YR28]: @Rao, Srinivas
Please see this add-on bullet,
(not provided by Arup.)

@Duggan, Elisa FYI per our discussions regarding Tool 1.

Commented [DP28R2]: This text is deleted per latest discussions.

Commented [DP29]: Gensler: Follow the table formatting per the document style.

Commented [DP30]: This table needs to be updated to match the small, medium, large, x-large building size definition.

Commented [DP30R2]: Gensler: This table is to be replaced.

Commented [DP31]: Gensler: update the table.

~~**Extra Large (>40 courtrooms)**~~	~~Same as Large Courthouses. However, Criteria Phase will reconfirm the EUI target and establish the final EUI target based on +NPV analysis on a case-by-case basis.~~

[1]Table values are targets for annual ~~net~~ weather-normalized site energy use~~.~~ in kilo British thermal units (kBtu)/gross floor area (~~ft²~~SF).

[2]California building climate zone, as defined by the California Energy Commission. Refer to Climate Zone tool, maps, and information supporting the California Energy Code.

[3] Water-Cooled Chiller (WCC) Energy Conservation Measure (ECM):~~.~~ Water-cooled chiller plants are required for medium and large courthouse projects in Climate Zones 8, 10, 11, 12, 13, 14, and 15. Where limited water resources, poor water quality, or fully electric plant configurations make water-cooled systems demonstrably undesirable, baseline EUIs in the table are applicable. As part of the site-specific assessment, consult local water agencies for data on water supply, water quality, and sanitary sewer capacity to determine the feasibility of water-cooled systems. Ensure compliance with local water regulations and statewide and regional requirements of the State Water Resources Control Board. Consider projected drought risks due to climate change, referencing the California Department of Water Resources Climate Change Program for guidance.

~~Improve energy efficiency and provide thermal comfort. Optimize the building envelope and develop passive solar heating and cooling strategies. Design energy-efficient HVAC systems and use high-efficiency pumps and motors. In addition to complying with CALGreen, use whole-building energy model analysis to refine the design so that whole-building energy consumption is permissible for ASHRAE 90.1–compliant court buildings. Whole-building energy models must be optimized to comply with the location-specific California Building Climate Zone. Perform building commissioning to verify that systems perform as designed and modeled. Building commissioning is required per the current Building Energy Efficiency Standards section 120.8, Nonresidential Building Commissioning, and current CALGreen chapter 5 criteria, and LEED criteria as described above.~~

~~g.~~e. Promote occupant health and well-being in the indoor environment. Provide a connection to natural daylight, optimal lighting and acoustics, and good indoor air quality. Coordinate daylighting with high-efficiency electric lighting and programmable controls. Develop systems and detailing that maintain thermal comfort and prevent microbial contamination.

~~h.~~f. Evaluate and plan for occupant thermal comfort conditions based on future climatic conditions for the project location using Cal-Adapt or an equivalent climate change scenario tool for the facility's lifetime.

~~i.~~g. Create construction ~~Indoor~~ indoor ~~Air~~ air ~~Quality~~ quality (IAQ) management plan, perform building flush-out, and conduct IAQ testing as outlined in the requirements for LEED Indoor Environmental Quality (EQ) Credit: ~~Construction Indoor Air Quality Management Plan~~Enhanced Air Quality and EQ Credit: ~~Indoor Air Quality Assessment~~Air Quality Testing and Monitoring.

Commented [LD32]: Add en dashes in ranges of courtrooms. "Same as large courthouses." (sentence case)

Commented [DP33]: Footnote 2 corresponds to the column heading "EUI by Climate Zone".

Commented [YR35]: Per Arup CSMCESS 10/30/2025

1.D-2.1g (replace existing)

@Rao, Srinivas

- Specify materials only when Environmental Product Declarations (EPDs) exist for them. Use locally sourced materials when possible. Do not specify or install building materials included in the International Living Future Institute's Living Building Challenge Red List.

Perform a Whole-Building Life Cycle Assessment (WBLCA) in accordance with ASTM E2921-22, Standard Practice for Whole Building Life Cycle Assessment for Use in Building Design and Construction. The WBLCA shall quantify embodied and operational carbon and inform material selection, structural systems, and major assemblies. The goal of the assessment shall be to minimize the building's total carbon footprint over its lifecycle.

Ph. Targetlan to useSpecify materials that are accompanied byfor which Environmental Product Declarations (EPDs) are available. Use locally sourced materials when possible. Do not specify or install building materials included in the International Living Future Institute's Living Building Challenge Red List.

j.h. Plan for recycling of materials during construction, demolition, and occupancy. Develop specifications for construction recycling; require contractors to develop a construction waste management plan that identifies waste minimization and recycling strategies. The construction project shall, at minimum, meet the mandatory waste diversion rates specified in CALGreen at the time of project permitting.

i. Provide collection bins for public refuse, and recyclable, and organic materials on each floor and, in outdoor spaces, as well as a staging area for materials collection.

- A concept design-phase feasibility study shall be conducted to evaluate the potential for achieving Zero Net Energy (ZNE) in accordance with the California Department of General Services (DGS) definition: A Zero Net Energy building is one where the net amount of energy produced by on-site renewable energy sources is equal to the total amount of energy used by the building annually, measured at the utility meter. Life-cycle cost analysis has determined that ZNE through on-site photovoltaic (PV) systems is generally cost-effective for one- and two-story buildings and may also be feasible for larger buildings depending on available roof and carport area for PV installation.

The feasibility study shall:

- Assess compliance with California Title 24, Part 6, Energy Code requirements for on-site solar photovoltaic (PV) and battery energy storage systems (BESS), as applicable to office buildings.
- Evaluate the technical, regulatory, and financial feasibility of achieving ZNE through PV and BESS integration.
- Identify barriers to ZNE achievement and recommend infrastructure to support future PV and BESS installation if full ZNE is not immediately feasible.

Install submetering for all major end uses (e.g., HVAC, lighting, plug loads, domestic hot water, process loads) in new construction and major renovations. The meters should be part of a real-time energy monitoring system integrated into the building management system (BMS) and have the ability to trend and store historic data. Follow the BMS requirements in Chapter 14. The design and installation of submetering and energy

Commented [DP36]: Deleted because this is duplicative to what is already noted below.

Commented [DP38]: Gensler: this is the bullet h. The subsequent bullets would readjust once you add this.

Commented [YR39]: Per Arup CSMCESS 10/30/2025
1.D-2.1k (replace existing)
@Rao, Srinivas

Commented [DP39R2]: This is deleted per latest discussions.

Commented [YR40]: Per Arup CSMCESS 10/30/2025:

1.D-2.1n (new section)

@Rao, Srinivas

Commented [DP40R2]: This is deleted per latest discussions.

Commented [DP41]: Gensler: delete this text.

monitoring system should also align with:

- California Energy Code (Title 24, Part 6) Section 130.5(b) regarding separation of electrical circuits for electrical energy monitoring.
- ASHRAE Standard 90.1-2022, Section 8.4.3.1 regarding energy monitoring of separate end uses.
- LEED requirements for Energy Metering (for projects seeking LEED certification).

2.2 Best Practices

The following design criteria and performance goals shall be applied as best practices:

a. Use sustainable building materials. Evaluate the life cycle environmental impacts such as embodied carbon, resource efficiency, and performance of building materials. Seek out nontoxic low- or no-VOC (volatile organic compound) materials with no or low levels of volatile organic compounds (VOCs) from local, renewable, and sustainably acquired resources that minimize waste and pollution from manufacturing, installation, and maintenance. Do not use tropical hardwoods. Do not use materials with hazardous components such as asbestos, lead, and PCBs.

a. Embodied Carbon accounting should be developed by the Architect and Structural Engineer to incorporate project life stages A1 – A3 Cradle-to-Gate, A4 Transportation, A5 Installation, B1-7 Use and C1-4 End of Life, as defined in the Standard: *"EN15978:2011 Sustainability of construction works. Assessment of environmental performance of buildings. Calculation method."* Use of the EC3 Tool or equivalent is required and will be expected to be updated by the General Contractor team as a deliverable for the project's duration.

b. Use native and climate-appropriate drought-tolerant plants and trees. Reduce maintenance and irrigation requirements by using native plant species. Explore opportunities to provide habitat for wildlife, including protection and promotion of pollinator habitat, and to restore degraded site areas. Turf and invasive species are is not permitted.

c. Seek opportunities to redevelop existing sites. Develop links to public transit, and create strategies for integrating pedestrian-friendly active transportation and, mixed-use communities.

d. Install HVAC, refrigeration, and fire suppression equipment that does not contain the ozone-depleting gases regulated by the Montreal Protocol, specifically chlorofluorocarbons (CFCs) or halons. If possible, use natural refrigerants. Otherwise, Specify specify low global warming potential refrigerants with low global warming potential (GWP) for use in HVAC, refrigeration, and fire suppression systems, as defined in the Regulation for the Management of High Global Warming Potential Refrigerants for Stationary Sources, California Air Resources Board: (1) any refrigerant with a global warming potential value lower than 150, or (2) any refrigerant that is not an ozone-depleting substance (Cal. Code Regs., tit. 17, § 95382). For systems with a full charge greater than or equal to 2,000 pounds of a high-GWP refrigerantFor systems containing fluorinated greenhouse gases equivalent to more than 500 450 metric tons of CO_2, the design should must shall incorporate an automatic leak detection system. The leak detection system must alert building maintenance staff, or a service company responsible for maintaining the relevant equipment, if a leak is detected.

d. Design all-electric courthouses, eliminating on-site fossil fuel combustion for space heating, water heating, and other end uses, unless technical infeasibility or higher total cost over a 30-year life cycle cost analysis can be demonstrated. Where all-electric design is not feasible, provide documentation of the constraints and a plan for future electrification of the specific courthouse.

3. Participation in Energy Savings Programs

The Judicial Council recommends participation requires pursuing participation in new construction incentive programs sponsored by investor-owned utilities or other programs that are or may become available. These programs may be sponsored by investor-owned utilities,; local, state, or federal government,; community choice aggregators,; or other entities. Participation is encouraged intended to promotes energy efficiency and environmental awareness, and

Commented [YR42]: Per Arup CSMCESS 10/30/2025

1.D-2.1o (new section)

@Rao, Srinivas

Commented [DP42R2]: Gensler: delete this bullet. Deleted per latest discussions.

Commented [LW43]: Revisiting this suggestion from 2023.

Commented [YR43R2]: **Per CSMCESS the new 1D 2.1k already incorporates this requirement already if adopted. If 1D 2.1k is not adopted then retain this, otherwise delete.**

Commented [DP44]: FMB: Is there a rationale for why someone suggested the number be changed from 500 to 450? What is the best practice? What are the repercussions of changing the number?

Commented [PB44R2]: [FMB] The European Union regulation framework uses the 500 value still. The CA Air Resources board is the authority in terms of stationary high-GWP refrigerants and they state "greater than or equal to 2000 pounds of high-GWP refrigerant". The CA Mechanical code also addresses leak detection requirements (which are based on a number of different factors). Would not suggest that the CTCFS just quote sections of code as that is a given for licensed engineers/contractors.

Recommendation: Delete the last paragraph altogether as the intent is to just be code compliant.

If the consensus that the JCC wants to leave the last paragraph in there (I.E. quoting code minimum) then change the wording from "*For systems containing fluorinated greenhouse gases equivalent to more than 450 metric tons of CO_2*," to "*For systems with a full charge greater than or equal to 2,000 pounds of a high-GWP refrigerant*". Internal Note: for comparison 2000lbs of one of today's typical refrigerants (R-454B) is equal to +/-422 metric tons C02 so using the 450 number in current proposed revisions would not meet the CA Air resources requirements.

Commented [YR45]: Per Arup CSMCESS 10/30/2025

1.D-2.2e (new section)

@Rao, Srinivas

Commented [DP45R2]: This is deleted per latest discussions.

Commented [SN46]: This phrasing may introduce ambiguity as to what effort is required. How would JCC like designers to "pursue?" You will want to make sure any minimum you are expecting is communicated here.

provideas a guide for sound energy usage and cost decisions. Programs such as California Energy Design Assistance (CEDA) address energy efficiency in new construction and renovation projects and are funded by utility customers through the public purpose program surcharge applied to gas and electric services. Some services offered under programs such as these include design assistance, energy-efficiency analysis, life cycle cost analysis, and financial incentives for the facility owner and design team.

a. As long as CEDA or equivalent applicable programs are funded by the local utility, California Public Utility Commission, or California Energy Commission for participation, all new California court projects shall participate in the program and evaluate energy-efficiency measures.

b. For CEDA and other energy savings programs, a court project must analyze energy-efficiency measures using the "whole building approach" and life cycle cost analysis to determine the financial feasibility of incorporating these measures into a court building.

Table 1.12 Typical Components to Be Bbe Considered in a Life Cycle Cost Analysis

COMPONENT	TYPICAL ALTERNATIVES TO BE ANALYZED
Predesign	
	Impacts of new acquisition, leasing, and/or public-private partnerships
	Renovation, upgrade, or revitalization of an existing facility
	Use of other state facilities
General Life Cycle Cost Issues for All Components	
	Element/component service and replacement life
	Maintenance and maintainability
	Direct and indirect energy impacts
Site and Program	
	Building shape and orientation on the planned site (including impact on adjacent buildings)
	Alternative site(s)
	Seismic, environmental, and community issues
Architecture	
Substructure	
	Foundations—Water water infiltration, special seismic features
	Slab on grade—Special special loads, vibration isolation
	Basement excavation—Use use of import/export materials
	Basement and retaining walls—Water water infiltration
Superstructure	
	Floor construction—Seismic seismic impacts, floor displacement, noise isolation, security
	Roof construction—Seismic seismic impacts
	Stair construction—Longlong-term maintainability, safety

Table 1.12 continues on next page

Table 1.~~1~~2 Typical Components to Be Considered in a Life Cycle Cost Analysis *continued*

COMPONENT	TYPICAL ALTERNATIVES TO BE ANALYZED
Architecture *(continued)*	
Wall construction	
	Increased insulation levels, insulation placement, etc.
	Wall R-value
	Wall façade material
	Mass (passive solar thermal storage)
	Building ~~Airtightness~~ airtightness ~~Value~~ value (scfm/ft²)
	Daylighting
	Building envelope (exterior enclosure) type
Fenestration	
	Type, amount, and location/orientation of glass
	Window assemblies U- ~~Factor~~factor
	Window ~~Solar~~ solar ~~Heat~~ heat ~~Gain~~ gain ~~Coefficient~~ coefficient ~~(SHGC)~~
	Indoor/outdoor shading devices
	Daylighting
Interior space plan	
	Space arrangement and circulation
	Demising walls and partitions
	Finishes and colors
	Ceiling and plenum heights
Roof construction	
	Increased insulation levels, type of insulation
	Roof membrane type and color
	Roof R-value
	Daylighting
Conveyances	
	Selection of elevators and dumbwaiters
	Escalators
Secondary HVAC systems	
	System types and zoning
	Operating plans, economizer cycle(s), and optimization
	Heat recovery (exhaust air, internal source, etc.)
	Controls
Primary HVAC systems	
	System types and energy sources
	Pumping/piping configuration
	Heat recovery (waterside economizer cycle, etc.)
	Thermal storage (electrical demand shifting)
	Controls

Table 1.~~1~~2 continues on next page

Table 1.~~1~~2 Typical Components to Be Considered in a Life Cycle Cost Analysis *continued*

COMPONENT	TYPICAL ALTERNATIVES TO BE ANALYZED
Plumbing	
	Domestic hot water generation (method and energy source)
	Water source—m~~M~~unicipal, well, or harvested
Electrical	
Lighting and communications	
	System selection
	Artificial lighting levels, methods, and control
	Daylighting
	Photovoltaic sources
	Communications and data management
Power	
	Voltage selection (building and large equipment)
	Transformers (quantity, locations, efficiencies)
	On-site renewable energy systems type and system rating
	Emergency power system type and fuel source (diesel generator and battery energy storage system base options)

HVAC = heating, ventilation, and air-conditioning

DIVISION ONE: DESIGN CRITERIA

2 COURTHOUSE ORGANIZATION

SECTION	TOPIC	PAGE
2.A	Program Stacking and Zoning	2.2
2.B	Space Standards	2.5
2.C	Area and Volume Definitions	2.6
2.D	Occupancy and Exiting Calculations	2.9
2.E	Court Floor Plan for Occupancy and Exiting Analysis	2.11



Superior Court of California, County of San Benito
Hollister, CA
SmithGroup

The general organizational principles for courthouse functions are described in this chapter. Site and program constraints of each project will determine the optimum organization or configuration of a specific court facility.

Three Distinct Circulation Systems

- Public
- Detention
- Private

Any courthouse program must include adequate courtroom space to serve all the public needs that arise in the administration of justice. Courtrooms provide flexible, efficient, and functional space, which, to be sufficient, generally should be planned as one courtroom for every ~~JPE~~ (judicial position equivalent (JPE).

2.A PROGRAM STACKING AND ZONING

The courthouse program outlines the sizes and adjacencies required for courthouse organization. Courthouse organization is segregated both horizontally and vertically. The horizontal zoning and vertical stacking of spaces is determined based on the program and design review comments during the predesign phase. In courthouses with in-custody defendants, functionality and efficiency should be optimized by providing courtrooms in multiples of two, sharing one court floor holding area and a security elevator to the central in-custody defendant holding area. Courthouses require three separate and distinct zones of public, private, and detention circulation. Figure 2.1 indicates the vertical relationships of the three-part circulation system in a multilevel courthouse. The exact locations of these circulation systems may vary, depending on the location of departments and uses within the building.

1. Layout of Large Facilities

a. High-volume public spaces and services should be conveniently accessible to the public entrances, minimizing elevator load and public penetration into the courthouse. They are typically located on the lower floors of court facilities, directly adjacent to the public lobby. These lower-floor functions typically include the clerks' offices, jury services and the jury assembly room, child waiting rooms, records, a public grab-and-go cafeteria, self-help centers, alternative dispute resolution centers, and other frequently visited public areas, in addition to high-volume courtrooms (for arraignments, felony dispositions, and high-profile cases). Clerks' offices shall be located on lower floors for functional efficiency and adjacency to public and semipublic functions.

b. Consider providing exterior clerk/public transaction windows on the ground level to eliminate unnecessary public entry into the courthouse to pay traffic citations.

c. If high-volume functions are located on the second floor, a connecting set of stairs—in addition to public elevators—shall be provided from the main public lobby to access these areas. Functions requiring less public contact or quieter surroundings—including courtrooms, court administration, and judges' chambers—shall be located on the upper floors.

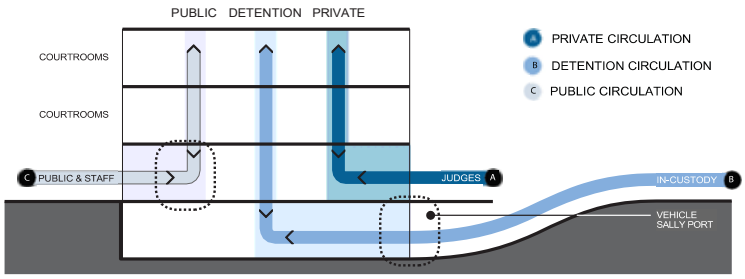


Figure 2.1 Cross-Section Showing Three-Part Circulation System

d. Functions requiring higher levels of security and control—including law enforcement waiting, in-custody receiving and holding, and security command centers—should be located on or below the ground-level floors to minimize the transport of in-custody defendants within the courthouse and the security risk associated with this transport. Operational adjacencies shall be considered in the program stacking so that elevator travel times are as efficient as possible (~~i.~~e.g., arraignment courts typically include a steady flow of in-custody defendants, so they should be located on a lower floor closer to the central holding area).

2. Layout of Small Facilities

a. High-volume public spaces and services are located directly adjacent to the public lobby; courtroom and high-security functions are located in more remote, quieter locations.

b. Facilities that courts do not currently anticipate using as criminal courthouses may require only two dedicated circulation zones, public and private, because in-custody cases are not frequently processed in these facilities.

c. Controlling unauthorized movement from a public zone to a private zone is a security requirement. Each circulation zone shall be separated from the others by access control systems or sally ports monitored from a central security operations center~~,~~ and entry authorization protocols as part of security operations, as described in chapter 4, Courthouse Security. The three zones of horizontal and vertical circulation shall intersect only in controlled areas, including courtrooms, sally ports, and central holding. Figure 2.2 ~~A brief description of t~~illustrates the three circulation systems ~~is illustrated in figure 2.2~~.

d. For court facilities in which juvenile delinquency cases are adjudicated, the detention circulation for juveniles must be separated from adult detention circulation in a manner consistent with the requirements of state law. For additional requirements, refer to chapter 8, In-Custody Defendant Receiving, Holding, and Transport.

~~d.~~e. See tool 7, Small Courthouse Guidelines, for detailed requirements for small facilities.

3. Public Circulation System

a. Design ~~The~~ the public circulation system to provide~~s~~ access from the public point of entry to the controlled access points of the private and detention areas of the courthouse. A corridor circulation system should link the public lobby to all public parts of a court building. The overall building organization must be easily understood and ~~be~~ defined by this circulation system.

b. Introduce natural light into public and restricted corridors where possible.

c. Simplify building orientation and wayfinding to and from all public spaces and courtrooms.

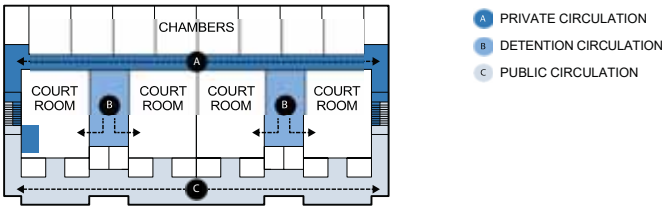


Figure 2.2 Three Circulation Zones

DIVISION ONE: DESIGN CRITERIA
1 General Principles
2 COURTHOUSE ORGANIZATION
2.A Program Stacking and Zoning
2.B Space Standards
2.C Area and Volume Definitions
2.D Occupancy and Exiting Calculations
2.E Court Floor Plan for Occupancy and Existing Analysis
3 Site Design
4 Courthouse Security
5 Court Set
6 Jury Facilities and Court Administration
7 Special Services
8 In-Custody Defendant Receiving, Holding, and Transport
9 Public Spaces
10 Building Support Services

Commented [SN1]: I do not see Tool 7 in the folder containing all chapters and other tools.

Commented [DP1R2]: I will add it there.

d. Ensure that all areas that have a public service counter or require access by the general public are accessible from the public circulation system. These areas include the courtrooms, public counter areas, jury assembly room, mediation and alternative dispute resolution centers, self-help centers, administrative offices, public waiting areas, food service or vending areas, children's waiting area, public restrooms, public elevators, and other public reception areas.

e. All participants and visitors to the building shall pass through security screening at the main building entry. In buildings in which justice partners also occupy space in the courthouse building, their employees are to be screened but may have a separate passing lane with keycard access.

f. The public circulation system also includes the public waiting areas immediately adjacent to courtrooms and attorney conference rooms. ~~Appropriately s~~Size the public circulation corridors appropriately to allow for adequate waiting areas by providing benches or other breakout areas for conversation and waiting.

g. The public circulation system may be located on the perimeter of the court floors, thereby providing windows that allow natural light in and promote a sense of the transparency of the judicial process to the outside public. This approach implies a single-loaded public corridor with courtrooms on one side of the corridor only, but some courthouses may benefit from a double-loaded corridor approach with courtrooms on both sides of the public corridor, thereby resulting in a more efficient component gross square footage ratio of circulation to program area.

4. Private Circulation System

The private circulation corridors provide access to court staff, judicial officers, escorted jurors, and security personnel. Justice partners and the public do not have access to the private circulation system. These corridors and vertical circulation systems connect courtrooms, chambers, support space, jury deliberation rooms, and authorized staff parking areas. Building service functions—including storage, staging and loading areas, security staff offices, and other support areas—are located within the private circulation zone.

a. The private circulation system cannot be bisected by the public circulation system.

b. In most courthouses, the emergency egress stair for private circulation should be separate from the egress stair for public circulation, but occasionally the public and private egress may be combined as long as security measures prohibit reentry to the floors. If dedicated egress stairs are provided for the private circulation system, intercommunicating connecting stairs may be used between staff areas on other floors. For the staff located closer to the egress stairs, the building's required emergency egress stair system can be used as an intercommunicating stair between floors. Analyze the security, fire exiting, and smoke control system requirements before implementing this option.

5. Detention Circulation System

a. Design ~~The~~ the detention circulation system to provide~~s~~ access between the secure in-custody entrance (sally port), central holding and intake areas, secure attorney-client interview rooms, courtroom holding areas, and courtrooms. The design of these areas shall prohibit unauthorized access by the public and escape by persons in custody.

b. Separate the detention circulation system for in-custody defendants from the public and private circulation zones. Court holding facilities must have, for in-custody defendants, a secure path of travel that is separate from paths used by the public.

c. Minimize turns, alcoves, and other potential hiding places ~~Detention~~ in detention circulation corridors, elevators, and stairwells ~~should minimize turns, alcoves, and other potential hiding places~~; detention circulation areas are monitored with video cameras supervised by the court security staff.

d. Provide direct exiting to the outside per code requirements for California Building Code Institutional occupancy classification for in-custody holding (I occupancy) for c~~C~~entral holding, located in the basement or on the ground floor~~, shall have direct exiting to the outside per code requirements for I occupancy (California Building Code [CBC] Institutional occupancy classification for in-custody holding)~~. Upper-floor detention circulation does not necessarily require its own independent means of emergency egress, assuming in-custody defendants are escorted and/or supervised during emergency exiting. Both the central holding and the holding core between courtrooms shall be constructed for I-3 occupancy with rated separation from other occupancy classifications. See tool 2, Catalog of Courtroom Layouts for California Trial Courts, for holding core templates.

~~d.~~e. Do not provide ~~E~~exiting ~~shall not travelbe~~ through the vehicle sally port. When the required number of exits is provided for the I-3 holding areas, each required exit shall~~ould~~ be separated by ~~1/3rd~~one-third of the overall diagonal of the I-3 holding area, provided the area is fully sprinklered. None of the required exits of the I-3 holding area shall have to ~~enterpass~~ through the vehicle sally port area to reach an exit to the exterior.

2.B SPACE STANDARDS

1. Space Standards

The standards for the size of typical functional areas in California court facilities are listed in table 2.2. A selection of sample layouts is provided in figures 2.4–2.6.

2. Ceiling Heights

Table 2.1 lists the ceiling height requirements for functional areas of court facilities. All ceiling heights are measured to the face of ceiling finish. In courtrooms and public lobbies, heights will vary and may be lower or higher than the nominal height. Atriums are not permitted; lobby ceiling height shall follow the range listed in table 2.1. Courtroom minimum ceiling heights shall~~to~~ be coordinated with ~~F~~floor–to–floor heights as well as mechanical~~MEP~~ and structural components. No value engineering shall be allowed through reduction of ceiling heights~~VE aloud~~ due to the acoustical and room performance ~~requirement achieved with the minimum ceiling height requirement as part of overall performance~~.

3. Corridor Widths

The following minimum and maximum corridor widths apply:

- Public corridors: 8′–12′ clear~~, (this can be interpreted as ambiguous on [Ukiah] we had issues with the DBT providing less than 6' widths because it was code compliant. I suggest changing the verbiage) depending on code requirements for occupancy loading and amount of public waiting that is provided in the corridor~~.
- Private corridors: ~~Minimum~~ 6′, depending on ~~unless~~ code requirements ~~wider in order~~ for occupancy loading.
- Detention corridors: Minimum 6′–8′ in most areas where in-custody defendants are transported~~,~~ and 8′ in central holding areas where two detainees may be escorted in opposite directions, to minimize the risk of contact or conflict.

DIVISION ONE: DESIGN CRITERIA

1 General Principles

2 COURTHOUSE ORGANIZATION

2.A Program Stacking and Zoning

2.B Space Standards

2.C Area and Volume Definitions

2.D Occupancy and Exiting Calculations

2.E Court Floor Plan for Occupancy and Existing Analysis

3 Site Design

4 Courthouse Security

5 Court Set

6 Jury Facilities and Court Administration

7 Special Services

8 In-Custody Defendant Receiving, Holding, and Transport

9 Public Spaces

10 Building Support Services

Commented [LD2]: Table 2.1 needs to be referenced before 2.2. Figure 2.3 needs to be referenced before 2.4 Figures and tables throughout this chapter should appear much closer to their text reference, on the same page if possible.

Commented [DP2R2]: It would be an arduous task at this point to cross-check references to figures and tables across multiple chapters to confirm they appear in order. This will need to be tackled for the next edition.

Commented [DP3]: I have added clarity to the table.

Table 2.1 Minimum to Maximum Range for Ceiling Heights

SPACE	HEIGHT
Courtroom	12′–13′
Chambers	9′–10′
Public Lobbylobby	15′–305
Open Planplan	9′–10′
Private Officesoffices	9′–10′
Clerk's Public public Spacesspaces	9′–10′
Jury Assembly assembly Roomroom	10′–12′
Jury Deliberation deliberation Roomroom	8′–10′
Public Corridorscorridors	9′–12′
Restricted Private Corridorscorridors	8′–9′
Ancillary Spacesspaces	8′–10′
Secure Detention Corridorscorridors	per BSCC stds.10′
Holding Cellscells	per BSCC stds.10′

BSCC = Board of State and Community Corrections.

Commented [DP4]: Lobby ceiling maximum height reduced based on lesson learned from Ukiah.

Computation of CGSF

CGSF = NSF × (1.15 to 1.30)

Exterior Gross Area = CGSF × (1.30 to 1.40)

2.C AREA AND VOLUME DEFINITIONS

This section defines terms used in the planning and measurement of court building size and volume~~,~~ and the ratios resulting from the implementation of these standards.

Any public spaces that extend above the first story shall be limited to 35′ maximum height to the bottom of ceiling and shall not exceed 5 percent of the ground floor area~~,~~ for buildings with fewer than 10 courtrooms~~,~~ and 8 percent for buildings with 10 or more courtrooms.

1. Net Square Feet ~~(NSF)~~

The amount of space required for or assignable to a specific employee classification or function, exclusive of interior walls or internal circulation, is the net area, expressed in net square feet. The *Facilities Standards* includes space standards that are described in NSF. For example, a courtroom of 1,650 NSF describes the courtroom floor area measured to the face of finishes, excluding the thickness of demising walls. However, space required for ramping outside the courtroom (e.g., ramps up to the judge's door in the private corridor) should also be included in the courtroom NSF; otherwise, the space required for the widened corridor to accommodate the ramp would have to be accounted for in the component gross square feet (see section 2.C.2, Component Gross Square Feet ~~(CGSF)~~, below).

Functional areas to be included in the assignable NSF include but are not limited to court floor public waiting areas, weapons screening stations and the public queuing aisles serving them, server and telecommunications equipment rooms, courtroom technology closets, public entry lobby vestibules, courtroom vestibules, court floor holding, public waiting areas for all public service counters, self-help public access computer stations, elevator equipment rooms, mechanical and electrical equipment rooms, fire command center, security operations centers, enclosed parking spaces, vehicle sally ports, and enclosed receiving and recycling areas.

2. Component Gross Square Feet ~~(CGSF)~~

The ~~amount of~~ area required by a department or component to function within a court facility is the component area, expressed in component gross square feet (CGSF). In predesign~~,~~ the CGSF is calculated by multiplying a department's or component's total NSF by a factor~~,~~ to approximate the area needed for circulation, partitions, and structural members and columns within the space. Circulation factors vary~~,~~ depending on the type and size of the spaces in a component.

3. Exterior Gross Area

The gross area of California court buildings shall be measured in accordance with Building Owners and Managers Association's (BOMA) 2018 *Gross Areas: Standard Methods of Measurement*. Gross Area 1 (Leasing Method) shall be used to calculate ~~Exterior~~ exterior ~~Gross~~ gross ~~Area~~ area computed in accordance with the BOMA 2018 standards. Gross Area 4 (Construction Method) shall also be computed and provided for additional building analysis. These measurement methodologies are included within internal procedures to be used for designing and reports to the Judicial Council.

Courthouses require a relatively high grossing factor because of the multiple levels of circulation, assembly spaces, and public waiting areas. For predesign purposes, building gross square feet is typically 1.3 to 1.4 times the CGSF.

Figure 2.3 illustrates the relationships between NSF, CGSF, and ~~Exterior~~ exterior ~~Gross~~ gross ~~Area~~area.

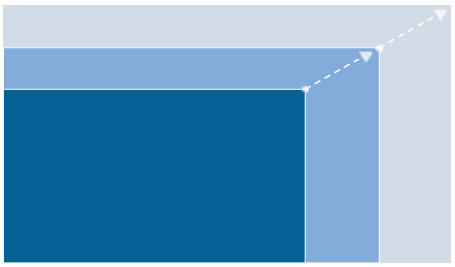


Figure 2.3 Courthouse Grossing Factors

4. Ratio of Total Building Area to Total Number of Courtrooms

a. The application of the space standards and the planning factors should result in a range of 9,000 to ~~4~~13,000 ~~Exterior~~ exterior ~~Gross~~ gross ~~Area~~ area per courtroom. During conceptual planning, a parametric modeling tool may be used to establish a typical ~~Exterior~~ exterior ~~Gross~~ gross ~~Area~~ area associated with a conceptual building program. This tool can identify the anticipated square footage for a facility based on facility characteristics such as jury assembly, central holding areas, and self-help centers. The basis range of 9,000 to ~~4~~13,000 ~~Exterior~~ exterior ~~Gross~~ gross ~~Area~~ area for each courtroom can be further developed and refined through use of the parametric model.

b. In general, courts that include a relatively large ratio of office departments to court sets, a unique program, or other specialized functions may have a larger-than-average ~~Exterior~~ exterior ~~Gross~~ gross ~~Area~~ area per courtroom. Conversely, court facilities that are used ~~part~~ part-time, have no in-custody holding capacity, or have no jury facilities may have less than the average ~~Exterior~~ exterior ~~Gross~~ gross ~~Area~~ area per courtroom. As the number of courtrooms increases, the overall efficiency (by this measure) of the building should increase and result in a total ~~Exterior~~ exterior ~~Gross~~ gross ~~Area~~ area that is lower than the average ~~Exterior~~ exterior ~~Gross~~ gross ~~Area~~ area per courtroom.

c. For a one-courtroom courthouse project, annual case filings shall be considered and may warrant a reduction in the total size of the proposed new courthouse. The sizes of some functional areas should be reduced, and the development of multifunctional spaces should be maximized. For example, for a court handling a low annual caseload and number of jury trials, jury assembly could be held in a multipurpose room functioning as a conference room and jury deliberation room. Similarly, the jury seats in the courtroom may be used for seating in-custody defendants during arraignment. See section 2.C.7 for general guidance on the layout of a one-courtroom courthouse.

5. Relative Building Volume Ratios

The relative building volume ratio for California court facilities shall be in the range of 14 to 16 when total building gross area is divided by total interior building volume and expressed as a resultant. Court facilities typically require a higher volume ratio than office buildings to accommodate the higher ceilings of courtrooms and large assembly areas.

6. Predesign Planning Factors for Mechanical and Electrical Equipment Spaces

Mechanical and electrical equipment spaces are considered functional areas that are included in the assignable NSF.

DIVISION ONE: DESIGN CRITERIA
1 General Principles
2 COURTHOUSE ORGANIZATION
2.A Program Stacking and Zoning
2.B Space Standards
2.D Occupancy and Exiting Calculations
2.E Court Floor Plan for Occupancy and Existing Analysis
3 Site Design
4 Courthouse Security
5 Court Set
6 Jury Facilities and Court Administration
7 Special Services
8 In-Custody Defendant Receiving, Holding, and Transport
9 Public Spaces
10 Building Support Services

Commented [DP5]: Range reduced to 13,000 based on revised parametric model done by Planning team.

a. For planning purposes, mechanical spaces may be estimated to require 5 to ~~6~~10 percent of the total estimated building gross. Mechanical rooms must provide adequate access for maintenance and repair. ~~(too often Mechanical room is too small cannot fit equipment and or clearances)~~ The ~~M~~mechanical engineer of record~~EOR / design to~~ shall provide cut sheets of proposed equipment for a closer estimate of size and appropriate working clearances. ~~During~~From ~~P~~pre-design through ~~to DD~~the design development phases, ~~provide~~estimate additional space of 10 ~~%~~percent of total room for future growth as well as accommodating the ~~actual~~proposed equipment.

b. Electrical spaces will require an additional 2 to ~~3~~6 ~~to 8~~ percent of the total estimated building gross. Electrical rooms must provide code-required clearances around all equipment. Electrical rooms and data rooms must be stacked in multistory buildings. Provide cut sheets of equipment for basis of design~~BOD~~ and estimation of room size. Provide an additional 10 percent~~%~~ for future growth or change in equipment sizes.

7. Part-Time Satellite Court Facility

The *Facilities Standards* contemplates construction of small, medium, large, and ~~x~~extra-large full-time court facilities.

In some jurisdictions, however, small population centers that are remote to the county seat, either because of travel distance or seasonal weather-related travel obstructions, are determined by the court and the Judicial Council to require a court presence. In such circumstances, the Judicial Council may elect to construct a part-time satellite court facility to ensure meaningful access to court services. Such facilities may be used to process some but not all case types in circumstances where the resulting case volume requires less than full-time courtroom services.

The Judicial Council recognizes there are circumstances in which a public need exists for part-time, single-department satellite court facilities~~,~~ and also recognizes there must be proportionality between the significant construction costs associated with court facilities and the projected volume of cases in, and frequency of public visits to, such facilities.

When developing plans for a part-time court facility, the Judicial Council ~~organization~~'s Facilities Services office and the design professionals engaged for that purpose shall consider the case types for which the court will conduct proceedings and the anticipated frequency and volume of public visits. The Facilities Services office and the design professionals will then propose a facility design that may vary from these facilities standards with respect to design elements, including~~,~~ without limitation~~,~~ the size and configuration of the courtroom; the size or presence of ancillary rooms including clerks' offices, judicial chambers, ~~and~~ restrooms, and multipurpose rooms; the size and configuration of the public entrance, public lobby, and courtroom public waiting areas; and the provision of public parking.

Alternative means of construction, including prefabricated and modular construction, may be considered in the design process.

The designs for such court facilities must comply with all applicable codes and regulations more particularly stated in ~~this~~ the *Facilities Standards* ~~document~~.

8. Part-Time Specialty Court Facility

In several jurisdictions, courts maintain part-time facilities for handling specialty case types, for instance juvenile delinquency proceedings, in addition to their full-time multipurpose court facilities.

The policy announced in section 2.C.7 regarding remote single-courtroom satellite facilities, enabling variation from these facilities standards, may be similarly applied to the design and construction of such specialty facilities for the same reasons, while meeting all applicable codes and regulations stated in ~~this~~ the *Facilities Standards* ~~document~~.

2.D OCCUPANCY AND EXITING CALCULATIONS

The purpose of this section is to standardize the application of occupancy and exiting calculations for the courtrooms and adjacent areas in the design of new courthouse facilities.

1. General Method of Calculation for Occupant Load

Designers shall verify that the building exiting adequately accommodates the actual number of occupants. The occupant load factor (OLF) for each building area will be determined in accordance with the current adopted edition of the California Building Code (Cal. Code Regs., tit. 24, pt. 2 (CBC)) unless indicated otherwise in this document.

2. Graphic Depiction of Occupant Load on Code Diagrams

Use color tones and hatches on code diagrams on life-safety sheets to depict different occupancy classifications and areas.

3. Graphic Depiction of Fire and Smoke Areas

Use color-toned areas and hatches on the smoke control diagrams produced by the fire protection engineer on the design team.

4. Graphic Depiction of Rated Walls on Code Diagrams

Use different colored line types, excluding red, to distinguish between walls of varying fire resistive ratings. Rated walls shall be shown on main architectural floor plans, smoke control diagrams, ~~life~~ life-safety floor plans, HVAC floor plans, plumbing floor plans, electrical floor plans, fire alarm plans, and sprinkler plans.

5. Graphic Depiction of Exiting and Path of Travel

Plans shall clearly show path of travel (POT) and means of egress from all areas and show direction of travel within all egress systems, ~~(i.~~e.g., directional arrows within stairways, exit signage on fire ~~and life~~ life-safety drawings, areas of refuge, and exit passageways~~)~~. Fire ~~and life~~ life-safety drawings shall clearly show POT to the public ~~right~~ right-of-way and the accumulative occupant load along the POT. This information is needed to ensure that the width of the POT is adequate for the occupant load shown (see CBC, § 1004.2.1).

6. Occupant Loads in Courtrooms

Three occupant load values shall be used in courtrooms. The public seating area load shall be based on either number of fixed seats or by one person for each 18" ~~inch~~ length of bench. The occupant load of wheelchair spaces and the associated companion seat shall be based on one occupant for each wheelchair space and one occupant for the associated companion seat provided in accordance with California Building Code section 1108.2.3. The ~~Jury~~ jury box shall be calculated separately and ~~be~~ based on the number of fixed and movable chairs in the jury box. The occupant load of the remaining courtroom well (minus area of jury box and the judge's bench) shall be calculated using an OLF of 40 sf/person net.

7. Occupant Load in Attorney ~~/~~ Client Conference Rooms

These spaces shall be classified as meeting/conference rooms. The OLF shall be calculated as unconcentrated assembly at 15 sf/person net. Conference rooms with occupant loads of less than 50 may be classified as a Group B occupancy.

DIVISION ONE: DESIGN CRITERIA

1 General Principles

3 Site Design
4 Courthouse Security
5 Court Set
6 Jury Facilities and Court Administration
7 Special Services
8 In-Custody Defendant Receiving, Holding, and Transport
9 Public Spaces
10 Building Support Services

Commented [AP6]: Occupancy groups and occupant load calculations are technical and should be relocated to the technical criteria Chapter 11 Architectural Crtieria.

Commented [DP6R2]: This info is used early in design, therefore it is appropriately located here.

8. Occupant Load in Public Corridor

The occupant loads in the circulation area of the public corridor shall be calculated using an OLF of 40 sf/person net (considered as part of "courtroom" base building use). In addition, the occupant load of the seating area shall be calculated by counting the total number of fixed seating or one seat for each 18" ~~inch~~ length of bench. Eighteen inches in front of the seating shall be excluded from the corridor load calculation, including in public corridors on the main entry level.

9. Occupant Load in Restrooms

Public and staff restrooms shall be included in the gross area calculation with an OLF of ~~150~~ 150 sf/person.

10. Public Lobby and Elevator Lobby Transition Space

Public lobbies and elevator lobbies are transition spaces and shall have no calculated occupant load. Per chapter 2 of the California Building Code, a lobby is an area not defined as a waiting room at the entrance of a building through which persons must pass. Therefore, the lobby and the elevator lobby must have no other use (i.e., no benches or chairs).

11. Occupant Load in Restricted Corridor

Occupant loads in the restricted corridor shall be calculated with an OLF of 150 sf/person, using the ~~Business~~ business use occupancy gross calculation.

~~Dead-ends corridors are limited to 20 feet when serving occupants of Group A occupancies.~~

Commented [DP7]: Moved below.

12. Rated Corridors

Any room or space, in accordance with the provisions for assembly occupancies, that exceeds 100 persons (such as~~, i.e.,~~ a courtroom) shall have access to at least one 1-hour ~~fire~~ fire-resistive corridor system.

Group A occupancy courtrooms with an occupant load between 100 and 300 ~~occupants~~ shall have no less than one of the required means of egress exit through one of the following:

1. Directly to an exit.

2. Egress through a lobby that is not used to access the other required exit.

3. To a one ~~-~~hour ~~-~~rated corridor to an exit.

4. Continuous through a one ~~-~~hour ~~-~~rated lobby to an exit.

The exit shall meet the definition and requirements of an exit in accordance with ~~C~~chapter 10, section 1022 of the California Building Code.

Commented [LD8]: "section"?

Commented [DP8R2]: Corrected.

Penetrations into fire ~~-~~rated wall assemblies shall be coordinated and protected.

Dead-end~~s~~ corridors are limited to 20' ~~feet~~ when serving occupants of Group A occupancies.

13. Occupant Load in Jury Deliberation Rooms

Occupant loads for rooms designed exclusively for jury deliberation shall be assigned an occupant load of 14, which accounts for 12 jurors plus 2 alternates, or by using the unconcentrated assembly at 15 sf/person net, whichever method results in the greater occupant load. Deviation to this occupant~~cy~~ load will require approval by the building official under California Building Code section 1004.5.

~~If the room is identified as a conference room, then the occupant load shall be determined~~

by using either the unconcentrated assembly at 15 sf/person net, or the jury deliberation occupant load of 14, whichever method results in the greater occupant load.

14. Occupant Load in Queuing and Waiting Areas (Business Offices & and Transaction Counters)

The occupant load for queuing and waiting areas shall be calculated using an OLF of 5 5 sf/ person net (Assembly assembly without fixed seats, i.e., or standing space).

15. Occupant Load in Courtroom Holding Cells

The OLF for courtroom holding cells shall be calculated at 1 one person per 18″ linear inches of fixed seating in cells plus 1 one person for bailiff in each holding core.

16. Occupant Load in Judge's' Chambers and Judge's' Restrooms

Judge's' chambers, which include judge's' restrooms and robing areas, shall be calculated at an OLF of 150 sf/person gross (these spaces shall be classified as Group B occupancy. a business area).

17. Stair Width Measurement

Stairs shall be measured in accordance with figure 11.1 in chapter 11, Architectural Criteria, from inside stringer to inside stringer.

Commented [DP9]: Some of the text from here is moved to the section 2.E below.

Design stairwell clearances with tolerance. ~~Consider~~ Include fireproofing thickness for any elements that protrude into the stairwells. Avoid beams and braces penetrating in the stairwells. Provide sufficient headroom clearances in stairwells.

18. Cumulative Loading Calculations

Along the path of travel through intervening rooms and spaces, the occupant load of each space shall be cumulative in accordance with the provisions of California Building ~~C~~ Code section 1004.2, Cumulative occupant loads.

2.E COURT FLOOR PLAN FOR OCCUPANCY AND EXITING ANALYSIS

The floor plan in figure 2.7 ~~is reflective of~~shows a typical courtroom floor on an upper level; it is not intended to represent the requirements of the ground floor. The plan accounts for the more restrictive code requirements of high-rise buildings. Table 2.3 shows the associated occupant load factors and other requirements. Per California Building Code section 403.1, a high-rise building is one that has occupied floors located more than 75~~' feet~~ above the lowest level of fire department vehicle access. In some instances, these Judicial Council requirements exceed code minimums. The floor plan in figure 2.7 and the associated table 2.3 are included for illustrative purposes because the square footage of various spaces will vary from project to project. The intent of the figure and table is to illustrate the requirements specified below.

The floor plan focuses primarily on exit analysis requirements. The floor plan is diagrammatic and not intended to limit design creativity or specify exact locations or organization of spaces. Low-rise courthouses have greater flexibility relative to the location of the elevator cores and stairs, but the configuration as shown in the floor plan of those elements is recommended for high-rise buildings. The requirements for each project are distinct, and therefore each project will have a ~~unique~~ different floor plan. However, in the interest of communicating Judicial Council requirements, the plan provides the following direction:

a. Every project shall have a building code analysis on the cover sheet to outline the following:

- Occupancy classifications in the building;
- Building height and area;
- Number of stories~~.~~;
- Separated or no~~n-~~t separated;
- Type of construction; and
- Fire protection systems present.

~~a.~~b. Each occupied space shall be labeled with a room name and number.

Occupancy Groups

~~a.~~ The occupancy group for each zone shall be indicated on the plan (generally A-3 for lobbies and courtrooms, B for office areas, and I-3 for locked inmate areas).

Occupant Load

~~b.~~a. An Occupant Load Table shall be included for every occupied floor level ~~to include~~and will show the following:

DIVISION ONE: DESIGN CRITERIA
1 General Principles
2 COURTHOUSE ORGANIZATION
2.A Program Stacking and Zoning
2.B Space Standards
2.C Area and Volume Definitions
2.D Occupancy and Exiting Calculations
2.E Court Floor Plan for Occupancy and Existing Analysis
3 Site Design
4 Courthouse Security
5 Court Set
6 Jury Facilities and Court Administration
7 Special Services
8 In-Custody Defendant Receiving, Holding, and Transport
9 Public Spaces
10 Building Support Services

Commented [AP10]: This section is also technical and should be in the technical criteria.

Commented [DP10R2]: This is fine here for early design decisions.

Commented [AP11]: Add sub section

- Room number;
- Room name;
- Area;
- Function (as defined by CBC, table 1004.5);
- Occupant load factor (OLF as defined by CBC, table 1004.5, or per supplemental Judicial Council requirements listed herewith);
- Net/gross area requirements (as required by CBC, table 1004.5);
- Number of fixed seats (as required by CBC, § 1004.6);
- Occupant load based on dividing area by OLF and/or by determining the number of fixed seats; and
- Details ~~which~~ that ~~may~~ might clarify how the occupant load was calculated.

b. The exit load from each room shall be shown at each exit door and aligned with the occupant load values shown in the Occupant Load Table.

c. Where occupants egress ~~from occupants egress~~ from one or more rooms, ~~areas~~ or through other spaces ~~through others~~, the design occupant load shall be the combined occupant load of interconnected accessory or intervening spaces.

~~c.~~d. Design of egress path capacity shall be based on the cumulative portion of occupant loads of all rooms, areas, or spaces to that point along the path of egress travel.

~~d. Cumulative occupant loads shall be indicated along the exit access route~~

e. Occupant loads at each exit stair or exterior exit shall be indicated.

f. A 20 percent contingency shall be added to each occupant load discharging to exit stairs or exterior exits; a calculation at each exit stair or exterior exit shall include the following:

- Occupant load;
- Contingency (20 percent of the occupant load);
- Design load factor (the occupant load + contingency);
- Egress capacity factor (typically 0.2″ ~~inches~~, per CBC, §~~section~~ 1005);
- Calculated stairway width (design load factor × egress capacity factor);
- Minimum stair width (per CBC, § 1005.3.1, and 44″ ~~inches~~ minimum when serving a design occupant load > 50); and
- Actual stair width (as measured between stringers).

Means of Egress Sizing

a. In courthouses equipped throughout with an automatic sprinkler system ~~and~~ installed in accordance with California Building Code section 903.3.1.1 or 903.3.1.2 and an emergency voice/alarm communications system in accordance with ~~CBC~~ section 907.5.2.2, the egress capacity factor shall be 0.2″ ~~inch~~ for stairways~~,~~ and 0.15″ ~~inch~~ for door openings and other egress components. Deviations ~~to~~ from these requirements will require approval by the building official under California Building Code section 1005.3.1, ~~Exception~~ exception 1, and ~~section~~ section 1005.3.2, ~~Exception~~ exception 1.

b. The width requirements of each door shall be shown either with a calculation for each door or a note clarifying how many occupants each ~~standard~~ standard-sized door can accommodate.

c. The courtroom entry door that opens into the public corridor shall be rated. The second door between the courtroom vestibule and the courtroom shall neither be rated nor equipped with panic hardware or latch mechanism ~~which~~that disrupts the court proceedings.

d. Won doors are not permitted. Magnetically held swing fire doors shall be used where required by title 24.

~~g.~~e. Staff circulation, including egress stairs, shall be separated from public circulation with card access control to maintain separation of public and secure circulation zones.

Passive Fire Protection Assemblies

a. Plans shall clearly indicate the type of fire-rated assembly: fire wall, fire barrier, fire partition, smoke barrier, ~~and~~or smoke partition.

~~h.~~b. The public lobby and the secure staff corridor shall be constructed as a corridor and protected by a one-hour fire partition at minimum.

Commented [SN12]: Does this need to be capitalized to Building Official?

Commented [DP12R2]: No, editing team changed it to lowercase in chapter 1.

Commented [DP13]: Won doors are expensive to install and maintain.

Commented [DP14]: Addition made by CFAC-WG due to lesson learned from Redding.

Commented [AP15]: Add Sub section

c. ~~Required stairwells shall be enclosed in shafts constructed as two-hour fire barriers at minimum (refer to the CBC for exceptions for stairs and elevators connecting only two floors)~~Shaft enclosures, including stair shafts, shall have a fire ~~-~~resistance rating of no less than the floor assembly penetrated. ~~1~~One-hour shafts, including stair shafts, serving less than four stories of Type I construction are not permitted.

d. Penetrations into any interior or exterior stairway ~~is~~are prohibited unless specifically for the stair exit system to function or for fire protection and suppression.

e. Elevators shall be enclosed in shafts providing two-hour fire barrier construction and openings protected with either a smoke curtain or an elevator lobby meeting the same requirements (refer to the CBC for exceptions for stairs and elevators connecting only two floors) ~~all elevator shafts using drywall~~. The drywall is to be ~~2~~two layers of impact resistance and~~s well as their~~ fire rating. No exceptions shall be permitted for high-~~-~~rise construction.

Exit Access

a. Exit access travel distances from the most remote spaces on each floor to the nearest stairwells or exits shall be demonstrated on plans.

b. Common paths of travel~~s~~ shall be demonstrated on plans.

Safe Dispersal Areas

a. Where exits discharge into an enclosed area, a safe dispersal area shall be provided. The safe dispersal area shall comply with the California Building Code minimum size requirements.

b. Where exits serving in-custody and other occupants of the building discharge into an enclosed area, the in-custody occupants shall have a designated safe dispersal area. A safe dispersal area shall not accommodate in-custody occupants with other occupants of the building.

~~1.~~c. When more than one safe dispersal area is provided, each area shall clearly indicate which occupants of the building it serves.

High-Rise Buildings

~~i.~~ For high-rise buildings, each stairwell shall be accessed via a vestibule as required by California Building Code section

a. 909.20.1.

~~j.~~b. For high-rise buildings over 420~~' feet~~ in building height, an additional stairway shall be provided per California Building Code section 403.5.2.

~~k. Elevators shall be enclosed in shafts providing two-hour fire barrier construction and openings protected with either a smoke curtain or an elevator lobby meeting the same requirements (refer to the CBC for exceptions for stairs and elevators connecting only two floors)~~

~~l.~~c. Exit travel distances from the most remote spaces on each floor to the nearest stairwells or exits shall be demonstrated.

~~m.~~d. For high-rise buildings, the fire service elevator and stair shall be indicated. The fire service stair must have access to the roof and ~~must~~ discharge directly to the exterior (may discharge through an uninterrupted exit passageway).

~~n.~~e. For high-rise buildings, a ~~fire equipment room may be required (refer to local requirements)~~dedicated fire command center is required and shall be separated from the rest of the building by a minimum ~~of 1~~one -hour ~~-~~rated fire barrier.

~~b. The occupancy group for each zone shall be indicated on the plan (generally A-3 for lobbies and courtrooms, B for office areas, and I-3 for locked inmate areas)~~

Commented [AP16]: Add sub section

Commented [AP17]: Add sub section

Commented [DP18]: Clarification added per CFAC-WG direction.

Commented [AP19]: This seems irrelevant. I don't think we have courthouses 420 feet tall or will in the near future.

Commented [DP19R2]: It is possible that we may have one, so I am leaving this as is.

~~c.~~g. The floor plan is not intended to show the following:

- a. The structural system;
- ~~b. Construction type~~
- c. Fire-resistive requirements for building components:
  - i. Primary structural frame
  - ii. Bearing walls
  - iii. Nonbearing partitions
  - iv. Floor construction
  - v. Roof construction
  - vi. Shaft construction;
- d. Exterior openings;
- e. Protection of exterior walls and openings;
- f. Requirements of local jurisdictions;
- g. Mechanical, plumbing, and electrical systems and infrastructure or actual sizes of ~~Rooms~~rooms;
- h. Ground-floor requirements;
- i. Basement-level requirements;
- j. Roof-level requirements; or
- k. Non-court-floor requirements.

Commented [AP20]: The egress analysis is based on construction type. This should be removed.

DIVISION ONE: DESIGN CRITERIA
1 General Principles
2 COURTHOUSE ORGANIZATION
2.A Program Stacking and Zoning
2.B Space Standards
2.C Area and Volume Definitions
2.D Occupancy and Exiting Calculations
2.E Court Floor Plan for Occupancy and Existing Analysis
3 Site Design
4 Courthouse Security
5 Court Set
6 Jury Facilities and Court Administration
7 Special Services
8 In-Custody Defendant Receiving, Holding, and Transport
9 Public Spaces
10 Building Support Services

Table 2.2 Space Standards

DESCRIPTION	SIZE (NSF)
Court Set	
Multipurpose Courtroomcourtroom	1,600–2,050*
Large Courtroomcourtroom	2,000–2,500
Arraignment Courtroomcourtroom	1,800–2,300
Chambers (incl. private toilet)	400
Staff/Receptionreception/Waitwait 1 person	100–140
Staff/Receptionreception/Waitwait 2 person	140–200
Copy/Workroomworkroom/ Supply supply Areaarea	80–100
Court Reporter's reporter's Workstationworkstation	48–64
Research Attorney attorney Work work Areaarea	80–150
Staff Toilet toilet Roomroom	60
Jury Deliberation deliberation Room room (including toilet)	400
Attorney Interview interview Roomroom	per Catalogcatalog
Entry Vestibulevestibule	64
Law Enforcement enforcement Waitingwaiting Roomroom	100
Courtroom Exhibitexhibit/Evidence evidence Storagestorage	50
Jury Assembly Facilities	
Entry Queuing queuing Areaarea	10%–25% of jury call†
Reception/Registrationregistration	0–300
Jury Assembly assembly Roomroom	12–20/jurors
Forms Counter counter	3%–10% of jury call†
Coffee and Snack snack Areaarea	115
Staff Workstationworkstation	48

DESCRIPTION	SIZE (NSF)
Court Administration	
Public Counter counter Queuingqueuing	14/person
Records Viewingviewing	24/person
Training Roomsrooms	
Large	1,100–1,600
Medium	800
Small	550
IS Workroom workroom and Storagestorage	150–300
Active Records records Storagestorage	
Inactive Records records Storagestorage	
Staff Break break Areaarea	
Lactation Roomroom	50
Private Office	
CEO	240–300
Large	150–200
Medium	120–150
Standard	100
Mediator	120–150
Workstation	
Large	64
Standard	48
Counter Workstationworkstation	40–48
Conference Room	
Large (16–20 people)	420
Medium (8–12 people)	280
Small (4–6 people)	140

Commented [AP21]: Space standards or occupant load factors?

Commented [DP21R2]: These are NSF, not OLF

Table 2.2 Space Standards *continued*

DESCRIPTION	SIZE (NSF)
Family Law Facility / Self-Help Center	
Waiting	14/person
Reception/Signsign-in	40–60
Orientation RoomRoom	150–200
Workshop	375–400
Mediation Roomroom	120–150
Child Waitingwaiting	120 + 20/child
Security Stationstation	50–80
Equipment Storagestorage	100
Alternative Dispute Resolution	
Reception/Waitingwaiting	14/person
Mediation/Arbitration arbitration Roomsrooms	200–400
Caucus Roomroom	100
Related Justice Agency Spaces	
Multipurpose Roomsrooms	*
Attorney Convenience convenience Centercenter	150–300
Volunteer Workstationworkstation	48
Volunteer Coordinatorcoordinator	100
In-Custody Defendant Receiving, Holding, and Transport	
Vehicle Sally sally Portport	Size per bus dimensions*
Pedestrian Sally sally Portport	50–100
Detention Control control Roomroom	100–250
Central Holding holding Cellscells	per Holdingholding Metricmetric†
Attorney Interview interview Roomroom	per Catalogcatalog
Courtroom Holding holding Corecore	per Catalogcatalog‡

DESCRIPTION	SIZE (NSF)
Public Areas	
Public Queuing queuing Areaarea	14/person
Security Screening screening Stationstation	250
Information Kiosk kiosk or Countercounter	48
Courtroom Public public Waitingwaiting	220 ea.
Public Toilet toilet Roomsrooms	*
Public Transaction transaction Countercounter	40–60/station
Building Support Services	
Janitor Closetcloset	40
Loading Dockdock	*
Trash & and Recycling recycling Areaarea	*
Media Areaarea	100–120
Mailroom	150–300
Staff Toilet toilet With with Showershower	80
Furniture/Equipment equipment Storagestorage	*
Telecommunications Equipequip- ment Roomroom	150 min.
Telecommunications Roomroom	90 per 120,000 SF served
Electrical Roomroom	*
Electrical Closetcloset	*
Security Operations operations Centercenter	150–400
Security Equipment equipment Closetcloset	100 min.

DIVISION ONE: DESIGN CRITERIA

1 General Principles

2 COURTHOUSE ORGANIZATION

2.A Program Stacking and Zoning

2.B Space Standards

2.C Area and Volume Definitions

2.D Occupancy and Exiting Calculations

2.E Court Floor Plan for Occupancy and Existing Analysis

3 Site Design

4 Courthouse Security

5 Court Set

6 Jury Facilities and Court Administration

7 Special Services

8 In-Custody Defendant Receiving, Holding, and Transport

9 Public Spaces

10 Building Support Services

Storage ~~Rooms~~rooms	40–100

Note: For small courthouses, the areas should be scaled down, and some may not be required.

CEO = court executive officer.

IS = Information Systems.

* Per programmatic, technology, equipment, or code requirements.

† Sizes determined by the Court Facilities Advisory Committee's metric approved in December 2013.

‡ Courtroom holding cores are determined by the layouts in tool 2, Catalog of Courtroom Layouts for California Trial Courts.

Space standards illustrations are diagrammatic; project-specific furniture and equipment requirements should take precedence.

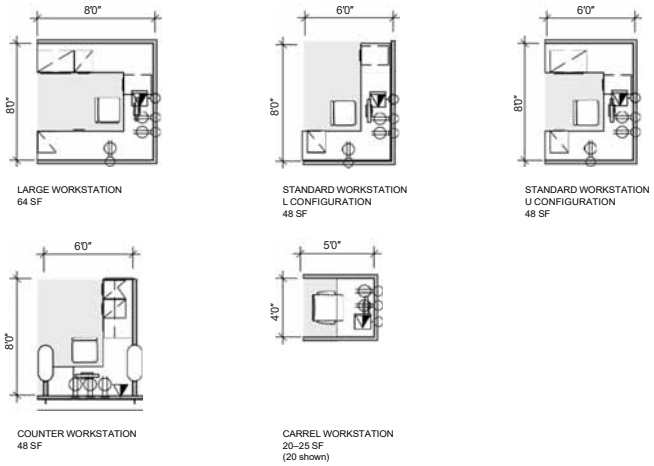


Figure 2.4 Open Plan Workstations

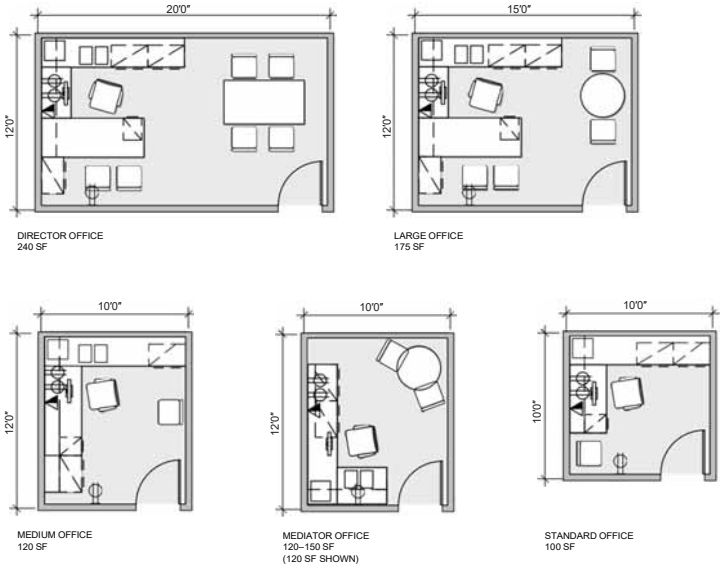


Figure 2.5 Offices

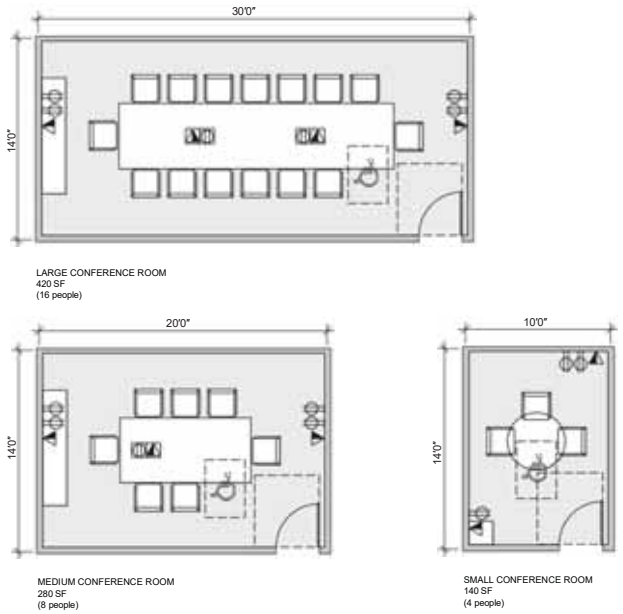


Figure 2.6 Conference Rooms

DIVISION ONE:
DESIGN CRITERIA

1 General Principles

2 COURTHOUSE ORGANIZATION
2.A Program Stacking and Zoning
2.B Space Standards
2.C Area and Volume Definitions
2.D Occupancy and Exiting Calculations
2.E Court Floor Plan for Occupancy and Existing Analysis

3 Site Design
4 Courthouse Security
5 Court Set
6 Jury Facilities and Court Administration
7 Special Services
8 In-Custody Defendant Receiving, Holding, and Transport
9 Public Spaces
10 Building Support Services

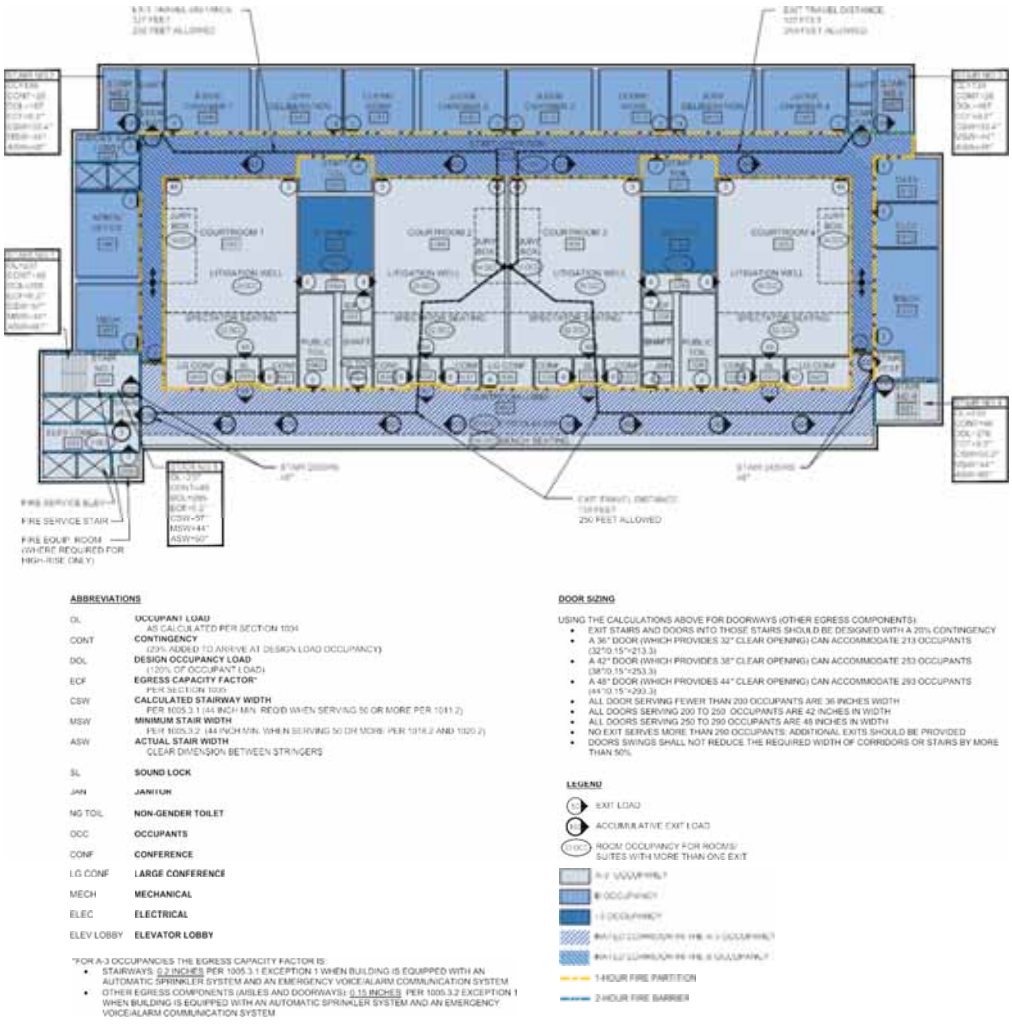


Figure 2.7 Court Floor Plan for Occupancy and Exiting Analysis

Commented [LD22]: Usage of feet/inches and prime/double prime inconsistent; they should all be the same.

In notes just above, if you choose to spell out measurements, "inches" should be "inch" because amount is <2.

ROOM NUMBER	ROOM NAME	AREA	FUNCTION	OCCUPANT LOAD FACTOR	NET/ GROSS	NUMBER OF SEATS	OCCUPANT LOAD	DETAILS
000	FIRE EQUIPMENT ROOM	50	ACCESSORY/STOR/MECH	300	GROSS		1	
001	ELEV LOBBY	281	-	150	GROSS		0	PER JCC REQUIREMENTS
002	**COURTROOM LOBBY**							
002A	LOBBY SEATING	600	FIXED SEATING (200" BENCH)	NA		134	134	18" PER OCC
002B	LOBBY CIRCULATION	2,573	CIRCULATION/SEATING	40	NET		65	PER JCC REQUIREMENTS
003	STAFF (RESTRICTED) CORRIDOR	2,730	CIRCULATION/B OCC. GROSS	150	GROSS		19	PER JCC REQUIREMENTS
004	STAIR NO.1	225	-	NA			0	CIRCULATION/NOT OCCUPIED
005	MECH	315	ACCESSORY/STOR/MECH	300	GROSS		2	
006	ADMIN/OFFICE	402	BUSINESS	150	GROSS		3	
007	ELEV LOBBY	136	-	150	GROSS		0	PER JCC REQUIREMENTS
008	STAIR NO.2	162	-	NA			0	CIRCULATION/NOT OCCUPIED
009	JUDGE CHAMBER 1	402	BUSINESS	150	GROSS		3	PER JCC REQUIREMENTS
010	JURY DELIBERATION	277	FIXED SEATING	NA			14	
011	CLERK/WORK	329	BUSINESS	150	GROSS		3	PER JCC REQUIREMENTS
012	JUDGE CHAMBER 2	402	BUSINESS	150	GROSS		3	PER JCC REQUIREMENTS
013	JUDGE CHAMBER 3	402	BUSINESS	150	GROSS		3	PER JCC REQUIREMENTS
014	CLERK/WORK	329	BUSINESS	150	GROSS		3	PER JCC REQUIREMENTS
015	JURY DELIBERATION	277	FIXED SEATING	NA			14	
016	JUDGE CHAMBER 4	402	BUSINESS	150	GROSS		3	PER JCC REQUIREMENTS
017	STAIR NO.3	162	-	NA			0	CIRCULATION/NOT OCCUPIED
018	DATA	208	ACCESSORY/STOR/MECH	300	GROSS		1	
019	ELEC	208	ACCESSORY/STOR/MECH	300	GROSS		1	
020	MECH	615	ACCESSORY/STOR/MECH	300	GROSS		3	
021	STAIR NO.4	162	-	NA			0	CIRCULATION/NOT OCCUPIED
022	LG CONF	148	ASSEMBLY W/TABLES/CHAIRS	15	NET		10	
023	SL (SOUND LOCK)	56	-	NA			0	CIRCULATION/NOT OCCUPIED
024	CONF	83	ASSEMBLY W/TABLES/CHAIRS	15	NET		6	
025	**COURTROOM 4**							
025A	LITIGATION WELL	1,160	COURTROOMS-W/O FIX SEATS	40	NET		29	PER JCC REQUIREMENTS
025B	JURY BOX	169	FIXED SEATING			14	14	PER JCC REQUIREMENTS
025C	SPECTATOR SEATING	420	FIXED SEATING			52	52	PER JCC REQUIREMENTS
026	PUBLIC TOILET	250	-	150	GROSS		2	
027	JAN	67	ACCESSORY/STOR/MECH	300	GROSS		1	
028	IDF	67	ACCESSORY/STOR/MECH	300	GROSS		1	
029	SL (SOUND LOCK)	100	-	NA			0	CIRCULATION/NOT OCCUPIED
030	HOLDING	415	FIXED SEATING	NA		6	7	+1 FOR ADA
031	STAFF TOIL	160	-	150	GROSS		2	
032	CONF	83	ASSEMBLY W/TABLES/CHAIRS	15	NET		6	
033	SL (SOUND LOCK)	56	-	NA			0	CIRCULATION/NOT OCCUPIED
034	CONF	87	ASSEMBLY W/TABLES/CHAIRS	15	NET		6	
035	**COURTROOM 3**							
035A	LITIGATION WELL	1,160	COURTROOMS-W/O FIX SEATS	40			29	PER JCC REQUIREMENTS
035B	JURY BOX	169	FIXED SEATING		NET	14	14	PER JCC REQUIREMENTS
035C	SPECTATOR SEATING	420	FIXED SEATING			52	52	PER JCC REQUIREMENTS
036	LG CONF	119	ASSEMBLY W/TABLES/CHAIRS	15	NET		8	
037	CONF	87	ASSEMBLY W/TABLES/CHAIRS	15	NET		6	
038	SL (SOUND LOCK)	56	-	NA			0	CIRCULATION/NOT OCCUPIED
039	CONF	83	ASSEMBLY W/TABLES/CHAIRS	15	NET		6	
040	**COURTROOM 2**							
040A	LITIGATION WELL	1,160	COURTROOMS-W/O FIX SEATS	40	NET		29	PER JCC REQUIREMENTS
040B	JURY BOX	169	FIXED SEATING			14	14	PER JCC REQUIREMENTS
040C	SPECTATOR SEATING	420	FIXED SEATING			52	52	PER JCC REQUIREMENTS
041	NG TOIL (NON GENDER)	67	-	150	GROSS		1	
042	PUBLIC TOILET	250	-	150	GROSS		2	
043	IDF	67	ACCESSORY/STOR/MECH	300	GROSS		1	
044	SL (SOUND LOCK)	100	-	NA			0	CIRCULATION/NOT OCCUPIED
045	HOLDING	415	FIXED SEATING	NA		6	7	+1 FOR ADA
046	STAFF TOIL	160	-	150	GROSS		2	
047	CONF	83	ASSEMBLY W/TABLES/CHAIRS	15	NET		6	
048	SL (SOUND LOCK)	56	-	NA			0	
049	LG CONF	147	ASSEMBLY W/TABLES/CHAIRS	15	NET		10	
050	**COURTROOM 1**							
050A	LITIGATION WELL	1,160	COURTROOMS-W/O FIX SEATS	40	NET		29	PER JCC REQUIREMENTS
050B	JURY BOX	169	FIXED SEATING			14	14	PER JCC REQUIREMENTS
050C	SPECTATOR SEATING	420	FIXED SEATING			52	52	PER JCC REQUIREMENTS
TOTAL							**745**	

ADA = Americans with Disabilities Act.
JCC = Judicial Council or California.
NA = not applicable.

Table 2.3 Occupant Load Factors and Other Requirements

Commented [LD23]: "JCC"?

Commented [DP23R2]: No, it is 18" per occupant. Gensler: spell out occupant.

Commented [LD24]: Title should be on top for tables, below for figures.

DIVISION ONE: DESIGN CRITERIA

3 SITE DESIGN

SECTION	TOPIC	PAGE
3.A	Objectives	3.2
3.B	Parking	3.2
3.C	Site and Building Security	3.5
3.D	Integration of Building and Site	3.5



Superior Court of California, County of Kings
Hanford, CA
DLR Group

Courthouse ~~Site~~ site ~~Design~~ design ~~Shall~~shall:

- Provide a safe yet accessible environment;
- Use site design to engage and reinforce the architectural design principles; and~~,~~
- Provide secure ~~and~~ public parking~~,~~ and appropriate loading areas, as determined by the program.

3.A OBJECTIVES

The selection of a site affects the building design, the building's users, and the surrounding area. To provide the courts with the ~~most well~~best-located and most thoughtfully sited facilities, the project team must consider the following:

- Initial and life cycle costs, including site development and site purchase, which should include features that have ongoing maintenance costs (~~i.~~e.g., landscaping and irrigation).
- Convenience and access to public transportation, major roads, and parking. This consideration may predetermine the location in areas with existing infrastructure and transit systems.
- Utility infrastructure.
- Proximity to existing and planned ~~future~~ justice agencies and detention facilities.
- Visibility and dignity of the location for an important civic building.
- Community and regional context. Local community groups' points of view must be considered in the design process. The siting of the court facility should take into consideration and ideally improve the existing context by complying with local restrictions and planning mandates~~,~~ such as compatibility with neighboring land use and view corridors.
- Effect on the environment. Selection of sites requiring reclamation and cleanup, or sites with historic buildings, may reduce environmental impact and serve as successful examples of reuse.
- Site orientation. Sites with a longer east-west axis ~~should be~~are preferred, within plus or minus ~~15~~ 15 degrees of geographical east-west, to allow a longer south-facing façade for optimal solar orientation.

The selection of an appropriate and successful site will serve the best interests of the courts, building users, and the community. The Judicial Council ~~organization~~'s Administrative Director has the final authority for approving a site for acquisition.

3.B PARKING

The transportation contexts in which trial court facilities will be designed and built vary greatly throughout the state and have changed over time. Certain communities limit the amount of parking to shift people into public transit; some communities are not served by public transit. Parking in surface lots or structures requires large amounts of land and funds for capital construction, operation, and maintenance. The public may equate convenient access to the justice system with easy access to inexpensive parking. Therefore, parking demands and solutions must be carefully considered for each new or expanded court building.

1. Electric Vehicle Charging Stations

Electric vehicle (EV) charging stations shall be provided as required by California Code of Regulations,~~,~~ title 24, in parking areas. Projects shall provide equitable distribution of EV charging stations among all parking areas provided. For public and semi-public charging stations, equipment shall incorporate anti-theft and anti-vandalism features including cut-resistant charging cables with internal alarm wires, secure cable management systems, and tamper-resistant hardware. Charging stations must incorporate a mechanism for receiving payment for use, to be coordinated per the project-specific site requirements.

New projects shall provide infrastructure and facilities for EV charging stations, EV-capable spaces, and EV-ready spaces as outlined in ~~Title~~ title 24. ~~(Need something about vandalism~~

Commented [PS1]: Not sure if this is the section to add this comment, but we have seen quite a few water intrusion issues with buildings that have a sub grade. We should avoid excavating below grade and/or a better waterproofing system with enhanced inspections

Commented [DP1R2]: This falls in chapter 11. I will expand on that section.

Commented [DP2]: Gensler: Add a : after Courthouse site design in the gray bar.

Commented [PS3]: Shouldn't we include solar in the parking lots since we are now looking at adding solar panels to our buildings?

Commented [DP3R2]: Added verbiage for solar.

Commented [DP4]: Gensler: make this bullet 6

and the use of the protected charging cable so it is not easily cut and removed).

For detailed technical requirements, equipment specifications, infrastructure standards, and safety provisions for EV supply equipmentSE, see Cchapter 15.D, Electric Vehicle Supply Equipment.

2. E-Mobility Parking and Charging Facilities

a. General Requirements

E-mobility facilities for electric bicycles (e-bikes) and electric scooters (e-scooters) shall be evaluated on a project-by-project basis and are not automatically included in project scope. When included, these facilities shall be designed to accommodate both court staff and public users while addressing fire safety, operational efficiency, and fiscal responsibility.

b. Project Evaluation Criteria

The decision to include e-mobility facilities shall consider:

1. Project Goals and Budget: Alignment with sustainability objectives and available funding
2. Site Characteristics: Available space, proximity to building entries, and utility infrastructure
3. User Demand: Anticipated usage by court staff and public based on location and transportation patterns
4. Safety Infrastructure: Ability to accommodate required fire suppression and containment systems
5. Operational Capacity: Facilities Management capability to maintain charging infrastructure

c. Space Planning Requirements

Court Staff E-Mobility Facilities

Secure e-mobility parking and charging for court staff shall:

1. Be located in controlled-access areas (staff parking or secured bike rooms)
2. Provide minimum 2-feet width × 6-feet length per e-bike space
3. Provide minimum 1.5-feet width × 4-feet length per e-scooter space
4. Include additional clearance of minimum 4 feet for maneuvering and access
5. Be separated from standard bicycle parking when feasible
6. Include weather protection where economically feasible

Public E-Mobility Facilities

Public e-mobility parking and charging shall:

1. Be located in publicly accessible areas near building entries
2. Provide visibility for natural surveillance
3. Be separated from pedestrian paths of travel
4. Include clear wayfinding signage
5. Accommodate minimum dimensions as specified for staff facilities

d. Charging Infrastructure Planning

Commented [TP5]: Also this is the only section on EVCS we might want to consider in site design noting their requirements and JCCs expectations of minimum level that will be acceptable.

Commented [YR5R2]: @Pennington-T, Troy I have expanded considerably in chapter 15 re EVSE and e-mobility. Also please see my paragraph above for anti-theft measures as a lesson-learnt from Menifee Justice Center.

Commented [YR6]: New section per requests and inquiries from the Courts to Chris Magnusson, Jagan Singh, and me.

Commented [YR6R2]: @Petrushka, Michelle

Commented [DP6R3]: Gensler: make this bullet 7

Commented [DP7]: This section is deleted per CFAC-WG direction.

~~Power Source Selection~~

~~Projects shall evaluate both grid-powered and solar-powered charging options:~~

~~Grid-Powered Charging:~~

~~• Requires user payment mechanism (app-based or credit card) to prevent gifting of public funds~~

~~• Provides consistent charging availability~~

~~• Incurs ongoing utility costs~~

~~Solar-Powered Charging:~~

~~• May provide free charging without gifting concerns (renewable source)~~

~~• Reduces operational costs~~

~~• Requires adequate solar resource and battery storage~~

~~• Initial capital cost may be higher~~

~~User Categories~~

~~Charging infrastructure shall distinguish between:~~

~~1. Court Staff: May utilize employer-provided charging as employment benefit~~

~~2. Public Users: Must provide payment for grid-powered charging~~

~~3. Official Visitors: Case-by-case determination~~

~~e.~~ Fire Safety and Risk Management

~~Fire Hazard Considerations~~

~~E-mobility facilities present fire risks due to lithium-ion battery characteristics:~~

~~1. Thermal runaway potential~~

~~2. Rapid fire spread~~

~~3. Toxic gas emissions~~

~~4. Difficulty in extinguishing~~

~~5. Re-ignition potential~~

~~Fire Safety Requirements~~

~~All e-mobility facilities shall include:~~

~~1. Fire-rated Enclosures: Storage within fire-rated rooms or cabinets where charging occurs~~

~~2. Fire Suppression: Automatic suppression systems appropriate for lithium-ion battery fires~~

~~3. Containment: Design to limit fire spread to adjacent areas~~

~~4. Detection: Early warning smoke and heat detection systems~~

~~5. Emergency Access: Clear access for emergency responders~~

~~Coordination Requirements~~

~~Projects including e-mobility facilities shall:~~

~~1. Coordinate with the Office of the State Fire Marshal during design~~

~~2. Provide emergency response information to local fire departments~~

~~3. Install clear emergency signage indicating:~~

Commented [DP8]: I don't believe JCC or courts can offer free charging as employment benefit.

- Presence of lithium-ion batteries
- Number and type of vehicles
- Location of electrical shutoffs
- Emergency contact information

f. Signage and User Information

Required Signage

E-mobility facilities shall include:

Emergency Services Signage:

- "CAUTION: LITHIUM-ION BATTERY CHARGING"
- Battery type and quantity information
- Emergency contact information
- Electrical shutoff locations

User Safety Signage:

- Safe charging practices
- Prohibited charging locations (not in building proper)
- Battery condition inspection guidelines
- Emergency procedures

Operational Signage:

- Charging instructions
- Payment requirements (if applicable)
- Maximum charging duration
- Facility rules and hours

g. Accessibility and Code Compliance

E-mobility facilities shall comply with:

1. California Building Code accessibility requirements
2. California Fire Code for battery storage and charging
3. California Electrical Code for charging equipment
4. Judicial Council and any other applicable authority having jurisdiction requirements

2. Public Parking

Study access to and availability of adjacent public parking for staff, visitors, and jurors before determining how to provide parking for each new or expanded court building. Study public transit service to the site, as parking demand may be correspondingly reduced. Consider shared parking agreements with adjacent property owners~~,~~ to use existing parking with demand times that might be different from those of the trial court. In areas where the public typically expects to pay for parking, it is consistent to expect visitors, jurors, and staff to pay prevailing rates for parking in adjacent public or privately operated parking lots and structures.

If public parking is provided, calculate parking requirements as 2.34 spaces per 1,~~000~~ 000 building gross square feet, which is a metric that the Court Facilities Advisory Committee approved in July 2013 for planning on~~-~~site parking for use by the public, jurors, and court staff. Application of ~~the~~ this metric ~~described above~~ does not preclude site-specific parking studies from being conducted or consideration of factors to reduce or increase on~~-~~site parking requirements, such as the following:

- The size and location of the courthouse, number of courtrooms, and types of matters to be heard.
- Public transit availability and expected public transit use. Staff parking demands can be reduced through traffic management plans, such as carpooling and public transportation programs.
- The average number of attorneys, visitors, and jurors expected daily~~;~~ and the expected length of stay for each type of parking user.
- Availability of parking within a three- to five-minute walk from the facility.
- The number of employees at the facility~~;~~ and existing employment agreements regarding provision of parking.
- The average number of official vehicles expected daily at the site.

Demand for parking spaces at court facilities is not well documented by empirical studies. Limited data gathered by Facilities Services staff indicate~~s~~ a parking demand for all courthouse users except judicial officers ranging from ~~2~~ two to ~~4~~ four spaces per 1,000 gross building square feet. There is no single standard for parking. The characteristics of individual court projects such as geographic location, number of courtrooms and court calendars, number of employees, proximity to downtown and ~~to~~ transit systems, shared parking with other departments, and land uses—as well as users' perspectives of existing parking supply or transit—all affect parking demand.

Transportation demand management (TDM) measures can be effective in reducing parking demand if applied to the three components of parking demand: jurors, visitors, and employees. TDM measures may differ for each group. An integrated parking management strategy using more than one TDM measure can reduce parking demand by 20 to 40 percent and improve convenience for those who use the parking.

3. Secure Parking

a. Provide secure parking adjacent to or within the courthouse for each judicial officer, the court executive officer, and a small number of staff who may require secure parking~~.~~ (~~See~~ see figure 3.1). If secure parking is provided beneath the courthouse, separate private elevator access from the secure parking area to private court spaces shall be provided. Other requirements for vehicular access to security areas are provided in chapter 4, Courthouse Security.

DIVISION ONE: DESIGN CRITERIA
1 General Principles
2 Courthouse Organization
3 SITE DESIGN
3.C Site and Building Security
3.D Integration of Building and Site
3 Site Design
4 Courthouse Security
5 Court Set
6 Jury Facilities and Court Administration
7 Special Services
8 In-Custody Defendant Receiving, Holding, and Transport
9 Public Spaces
10 Building Support Services

Commented [YR9]: Becomes 3.

Commented [DP9R2]: Gensler: make this bullet 1

Commented [YR10]: Becomes 4

Commented [DP10R2]: Gensler: make this bullet 2



Figure 3.1 Secure Parking, Vista Courthouse, San Diego County

b. On-grade parking spaces, except for accessible spaces, shall be minimum 8′6″ × 18′ or the minimum required per CBC, whichever is greater. On-grade parking shallould range from 280 to 300 gross square feet (GSF) per space, assuming a 24′ drive aisle for double-loaded 90-degree layouts and some stormwater pollution prevention plan elements. Parking space depth dimensions beyond the minimum 8′6″ × 18′ can overhang a planting area by up to 1′6″, as shown in figure 3.2. Angled -parking -space layouts are also acceptable if designed efficiently.

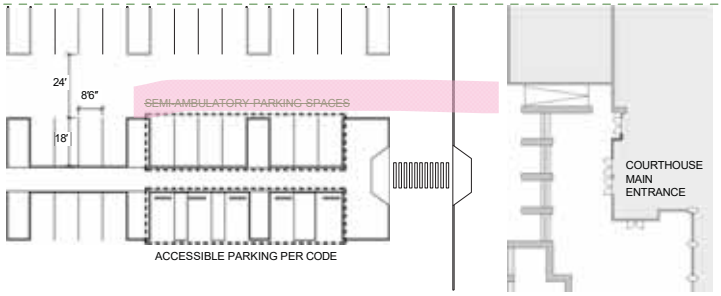


Figure 3.2 Parking Layout Showing Location of Accessible and Semi-ambulatory Spaces

c. Following are guidelines for structured parking space efficiencies:

- A 27′6″ × 64′ bay should range from 350 to 375 GSF/space.
- A 30′ × 64′ bay should range from 375 to 400 GSF/space.
- A 36′ × 30′ bay should range from 350 to 360 GSF/space.

d. Consider the size of structural bay spacing, type of structure, column sizes, and location of columns in relation to the front or back of the parking space.

4. Accessible Parking

Provide accessible parking spaces in the quantities required by code relative to the overall size of the parking lot and located adjacent (or as close as possible) to the building entry. Some project sites include no provision for public parking and are not immediately adjacent to existing public parking facilities with accessible parking spaces. For those sites, Facilities

Commented [LD11]: This figure shows accessible parking, not planting area overhang.

Commented [DP11R2]: I have clarified the language.

Commented [DP12]: Gensler: delete the dashed rectangle over the previously noted semi-ambulatory spaces.

Commented [DP13]: Modification by CFAC-WG.

Commented [YR14]: Becomes 5

Commented [DP14R2]: Gensler: make this bullet 3

Services shall initiate a dialogue with the local government entity having jurisdiction over the adjoining public streets with the goal of developing accessible parking spaces on a public street adjoining the project and as close as possible to the building entry.

5. Loading Zones

Provide a loading zone for delivery vehicles that do not need to use the loading dock, or where a loading dock is not provided.

6. Solar Panels on Canopies

For projects that include solar panels, locate them on canopies in parking lots, or on the building's rooftop if space is available. Design the canopies to hold the weight of the panels and for sturdy structural longevity. Provide adequate electrical connections to the building's main power. The canopies shall be tall enough for the fire lane clearance required by t~~T~~itle 24 and the local fire department. The canopies shall be durable and last for the life of the overall courthouse facility. Necessary warranties shall be provided. Any on-~~-~~site work and off-~~-~~site fabrication shall be inspected by Judicial Council inspectors.

3.C SITE AND BUILDING SECURITY

Balancing security and openness is an essential site design principle. A building can provide a safe working environment without becoming a fortress~~,~~ isolated from the community. For specific security measures, see chapter 4, Courthouse Security.

3.D INTEGRATION OF BUILDING AND SITE

The following planning criteria shall apply to site design.

1. Sustainable Locations

Consideration should be taken of the environmental impact of siting decisions when making new facility investments; those concerns should be balanced with cost and security.

a. Consider site-specific, long-term climate change impacts such as drought, flood, wind, and wildfire risks.

b. Prioritize sites that offer robust transportation options—including walking, biking, and transit—~~and~~ to minimize the combined greenhouse gas emissions of the building and associated commuter and visitor transportation emissions over the project's life.

c. Leverage existing infrastructure, and align, where possible, with local and regional planning goals~~.~~;

~~c.~~d. P~~p~~rotect natural, ~~historic~~historical~~al~~, and cultural resources.

2. Orientation

a. Consider airflow and microclimate when siting buildings:

- For instance, ~~In~~ in hot climates, maintain airflow around buildings to reduce interior temperatures.
- Avoid creating enclosed areas, which can block airflow.
- Orient the buildings along an east-west axis for longer north- and south-facing façades.
- Maximize solar orientation for outdoor seating and to cool the buildings. In hot

DIVISION ONE: DESIGN CRITERIA
1 General Principles
2 Courthouse Organization
3 SITE DESIGN
3.A Objectives
3 Site Design
4 Courthouse Security
5 Court Set
6 Jury Facilities and Court Administration
7 Special Services
8 In-Custody Defendant Receiving, Holding, and Transport
9 Public Spaces
10 Building Support Services

Commented [YR15]: Becomes 6.

Commented [DP15R2]: Gensler: make this bullet 4

climates, position the building on the site to minimize the solar exposure on façades enclosing permanently occupied space.

- Consider orientation for purposes relating to daylighting, glare, solar gain, and passive solar heating.

b. Orient main entrances of new buildings toward pedestrian areas~~,~~ to facilitate safe and barrier-free access.

c. Orient buildings to take advantage of views; conversely, for~~in~~ new buildings, do not block major view corridors. Orientation for views should not compromise optimal solar orientation.

Scale and function of landscape materials shall be appropriate to the region, site climate, neighborhood context, security, and functional requirements of a California courthouse.

d. Create spaces for programmed outdoor ~~uses~~use, scaled ~~to~~for the intended activity. Locate outdoor sitting and service areas away from building air intake units~~,~~ to minimize the intake of smoke and exhaust fumes.

3. Massing

Building shape, size, and scale contribute to a facility's architectural and visual character. To convey human scale~~,~~ and not overwhelm court users, massing and scale of all-new construction shall be considered during planning and design.

a. Building height and coverage may respect local zoning regulations, although such regulations do not strictly apply to state buildings.

b. Detail of architectural elements of large buildings should maintain a sense of scale and sensitivity to the neighborhood context. Consider the visual and environmental effects that new and existing structures will have on the neighborhood and on existing buildings located in the sphere of influence caused by shading or reflectance, changes in airflow, and views to and from existing buildings.

4. Pedestrian Access

Access to and from the courthouse must be safe, convenient, and consistent with Universal Design principles.

5. Building Entrances

a. Provide a single building entrance for visitors, staff, and the public~~,~~ to facilitate cost-effective security operations~~.~~ ~~(See~~ see figure 3.3 ~~for an illustration)~~. For large courthouse projects, the Court Facilities Advisory Committee may approve the addition of a second entrance, if warranted.

b. Provide a separate entrance for judges and bench officers. See chapter 4, Courthouse Security, for specific security requirements.

c. Provide two flagpoles prominently located near the public entrance and of a height scaled in accordance with the building position such that the flags unfurled on these poles will not interfere with the surveillance camera coverage or landscape trees. Provide one pole each for the State of California flag and the U.S. flag.

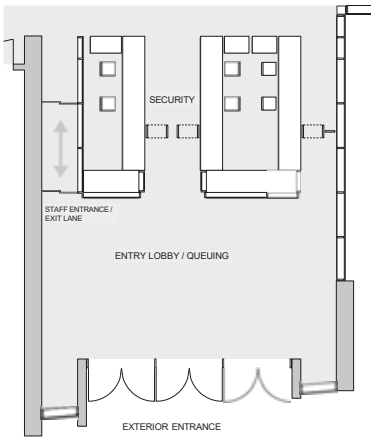


Figure 3.3 Illustration of a ~~Single~~ Single Entrance Lobby for the Courthouse Building

6. Site Utilities

a. Design the location and visibility of utilities to minimize impact on the landscape.

b. For service areas and above-grade utilities, including backflow preventers, standpipes, gas docks, and emergency generators:
   - Ensure that locations accommodate long-term maintenance requirements and minimize conflicts with landscape design;
   - Locate enclosures away from primary entries, or if not possible, cluster components and screen from entries and primary pedestrian paths using appropriate lighting, materials, and planting material; and
   - Consider maintenance access and serviceability requirements for site-located equipment (e.g., consider access for fuel delivery trucks when locating emergency generators on the site).

c. For underground utilities, including electrical substations, manholes, controlled environment vaults, and steam service:
   - If possible, consolidate under roads, walks, and plazas to minimize impact on the landscape;
   - Locate surface hatches, utility covers, ventilation, and access elements within paved areas, but if planted areas are the only option, integrate into shrub and ground cover plantings to conceal appearance; and
   - Conceal vault covers in modular paving areas.

7. Landscape Design

Provide a related group of landscape materials~~,~~ to promote continuity throughout the site. The following landscape design standards apply.

a. Configure landscape elements per Crime Prevention Through Environmental Design strategies. See chapter 4, Courthouse Security.

b. Provide visual focus for the public entry and the path to it with appropriate planting scale and plant placement.

c. Define outdoor spaces consistently and with appropriate scale and function throughout the premises.

d. Design landscaping features so as not to compromise video and staff surveillance of the building or create hiding places.

e. Avoid use of landscaping that abuts the building surface to prevent water leakage. Provide adequate moisture control along the foundation walls. For sloped sites, use appropriately sized and weighted landscap~~ing~~ cover ~~material~~ to prevent~~hibit washing out of inappropriate products~~mulch runoff. The landscape cover~~ing material~~ selected by the design team shall~~is to~~ remain ~~as located~~ in place during any typical weather event.

~~e.~~f. Provide~~s~~ adequate details for termination of the downspouts to avoid erosion of the landscaping below. ~~-~~ Providing a minimum height of downspout termination is not acceptable;~~, rather~~ maximum height shall be considered.

~~f.~~g. Green walls, planters on the roof, underground landscaped plazas, and green roofs are prohibited because of maintenance concerns. Water features and fountains are also not permitted.

~~g.~~h. Integrate green building and Leadership in Energy and Environmental Design (LEED) principles, when possible, in landscape and building design.

~~h.~~i. Use landscaping and building configuration to shade and provide sound, sun, and wind buffering for outdoor spaces and pedestrian areas. Provide shading on southern and western building elevations.

~~i.~~j. Consider surface parking lot shading in areas not already designed to incorporate solar carport systems, with a minimum of one canopy shade tree for every 10 parking spaces.

DIVISION ONE: DESIGN CRITERIA

1 General Principles
2 Courthouse Organization
3 SITE DESIGN
3.A Objectives
3.B Parking
3.C Site and Building Security

3 Site Design
4 Courthouse Security
5 Court Set
6 Jury Facilities and Court Administration
7 Special Services
8 In-Custody Defendant Receiving, Holding, and Transport
9 Public Spaces
10 Building Support Services

Commented [AG16]: Lesson Learned from Redding Courthouse: Downspout terminations were given a minimum height above ground rather than a maximum height. During rain runoff events, the bark ground cover erodes the landscaping below. Ensure the design provides adequate details for termination of the downspouts to avoid erosion of the landscaping below. Providing a minimum height of downspout termination is not acceptable.

Commented [DP16R2]: Incorporated.

~~j.~~k. Consider using light-colored pavement (i.e., cool pavement), which has high solar reflectance (high albedo), to mitigate heat island effect.

~~k.~~l. Respect sustainable performance goals described in chapter 1.D, Sustainable Design, to reduce maintenance and irrigation requirements by giving preference to regionally appropriate plant species and ~~by~~ using natural strategies to protect and restore water resources. If available, a ~~Non~~non-potable water connection with the local water utility system~~s~~ should be evaluated for use in landscape irrigation.

~~l.~~*m.* Use natural strategies to protect and restore water resources. Limit disruption to existing vegetated areas. To purify runoff and promote groundwater recharge, use natural storm-water treatment systems such as bioretention or~~,~~ bioswales with indigenous or climate-appropriate plants~~, and permeable paving or structural permeable parking systems~~.

~~m.~~n. Design landscape elements to prevent unsightly damage by vandalism, birds, trash, transients, or skateboarders, where necessary.

~~n.~~o. Consider the maintenance requirements of tree and planting selections (i.e., pruning and seasonal cleanup requirements of selected vegetation species). Consider appropriateness of location for certain plant species relative to the site's climate and solar exposure. Select indigenous plants whenever possible. Consider the location of specific species within the site boundaries (e.g., tree species selected for parking lots should provide shade~~,~~ but not drop excessive debris on parked cars). Trees shall be planted at least ~~6~~ six feet away from building exterior envelope to prevent damage to the structure from tree roots. All trees within ~~8~~eight feet of the building ~~wi~~shall include~~have~~ a root barrier.

~~o.~~p. Take into consideration the abundance of smokers at courthouses when selecting planting, drip irrigation~~landscaping sprinkler~~ systems, and mulch material. Dry mulch and certain plant types and grasses near walkways are vulnerable to fires from tossed cigarettes. Provide cigarette urns (secured to concrete pad or walk) at key areas of public access and gathering. Locate the cigarette urns at least 25 feet away from the building.

DIVISION ONE: DESIGN CRITERIA

4 COURTHOUSE SECURITY

SECTION	TOPIC	PAGE
4.A	Objectives	4.2
4.B	Design, Technology, and Operations	4.2
4.C	Factors Affecting Security Levels	4.3
4.D	Risk Assessment Procedures	4.4
4.E	Physical Security Planning Criteria	4.4
4.F	Structural Systems	4.13
4.G	Mechanical, Electrical, and Fire Protection Systems	4.15
4.H	Electronic Security Planning Criteria	4.16
4.I	Electronic Security Systems	4.20
4.J	Bullet-Resistant Glazing and Panels	4.22



Superior Court of California, County of Madera
Madera, CA
AC Martin

"Courthouses must be a safe harbor to which members of the public come to resolve disputes that often are volatile. Once courthouses themselves are perceived as dangerous, the integrity and efficacy of the entire judicial process are in jeopardy."

Ronald M. George
Former Chief Justice
of California

For security relating to in-custody defendants, see chapter 8, In-Custody Defendant Receiving, Holding, and Transport.

For detailed system requirements, see tool 8, Security System Guidelines.

For electronic systems' infrastructure, see chapter 15, Electrical Criteria, and chapter 17, Network and Communication Systems.

Courthouse security planning must ensure a safe and secure environment for all users of the court and must protect the functions and assets of California court facilities. Balancing security, accessibility, and comfort in civic buildings presents myriad challenges. Security planning and design must anticipate terrorist events, chemical and biological attack, natural disasters, emergencies, power outages, crime, and workplace violence. It is of paramount importance that building systems be designed and maintained to protect public health and life safety. The design should provide direct egress routes for rapid and safe evacuation of building occupants to the outside. These guidelines represent best practices to maximize public security and personal safety. The security planning process is most effective when integrated into the courthouse design at an early stage. Terminology related to building level of protection and component damage levels is defined in *U.S. Army Corps of Engineers Protective Design Center Technical Report* PDC-TR 06-08 Rev. 1 and incorporated herein as referenced below.

Commented [SN1]: The text in the gray column to the left ends abruptly mid-sentence in the first paragraph. Also update footer date.

Commented [DP1R2]: This is corrected in the revised version.

Commented [LD1R3]: If the text in quotation marks is a quote, please attribute it. If not, you can delete quotation marks.

Commented [DP1R4]: Addressed.

4.A OBJECTIVES

Courthouse security planning and design shall be based on a site-specific risk assessment and will:

- Provide a safe and secure environment for all building occupants;
- Maintain continuous operations until building inhabitants can evacuate to a safer area;
- Provide security and confidentiality of critical information;
- Enable security and court personnel to maintain control during normal and disrupted operations; and
- Be responsive to the risk assessment.

4.B DESIGN, TECHNOLOGY, AND OPERATIONS

1. Approach

A comprehensive court facility security design approach integrates design, technology, and operations, including policies, procedures, and personnel. The most effective security approach is achieved when these three elements are coordinated during early project phases.

a. Design comprises architectural elements and engineering systems, including space planning, adjacencies, user group zoning, and passive physical protection; doors, locks, and site perimeter barriers; exterior lighting and egress and circulation system; and all building systems relating to building evacuation.

b. Technology includes electronic security systems and equipment, such as weapons screening, automated access controls, alarm monitoring, duress alarms, remote door and gate controls, and video surveillance.

c. Operations refers to policies and procedures for the court facility, and those for security program management, security staffing, and employee training.

2. Elements

This chapter addresses design and technology planning criteria. When developing a facility security design approach, the project team must understand the essential role of operations and staffing levels because they are directly related to the ability to provide a safe environment and they affect annual operating costs and budgets. As figure 4.1 illustrates, architectural elements, electronic systems, and security staff and procedures are the significant elements of a security plan.

a. Security planning must consider and reflect security staffing levels at each facility. The project team shall develop a comprehensive plan with court administration and courthouse security personnel to understand operating policies, procedures, and projected security staffing levels (refer to chapter 8 for the sheriff's Operational Program Statement related to in-custody movement and detention).

b. Technology and electronic systems shall be coordinated with architectural and engineering systems and with building operations.

c. The Operational Program Statement, together with the risk assessment measures and the security and detention space program, ~~are~~ is a key element~~s~~ of a comprehensive security approach, which shall be prepared for each new court building project—ideally in the program verification or predesign phase.

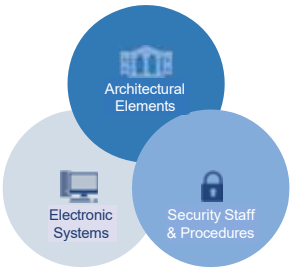


Figure 4.1 Security Plan Elements

4.C FACTORS AFFECTING SECURITY LEVELS

New court facilities vary in size, complexity, types of cases handled, threats, and geographic location. Court facilities may, in some instances, be colocated with other public or private uses. Security design may be influenced by:

- Size of court operation: Loss of use or destruction of a facility would have a significant impact on the courts and the community.
- Types of cases: Juvenile and family courts have a high risk of confrontation, assault, and violent behavior. Criminal courts require security measures to ensure safe handling of individuals in detention.
- Threats: History of incidents or threats may be interpreted as a site-specific increased risk factor. Intelligence from local police, the sheriff, the California Highway Patrol, and the Federal Bureau of Investigation shall also be considered.
- Location: Adjacent facilities, such as federal and public buildings, symbolic targets, and landmarks, may pose a threat to a court facility. High-crime neighborhoods, as identified by crime risk survey data, may result in increased security risks. Measures may be required to mitigate substandard site characteristics such as lack of building setback distances, limited parking arrangements, and sightlines from adjacent buildings or landscapes into chamber~~s~~ windows.

1. Courthouse Risks

The project team will provide appropriate security design elements and countermeasures to mitigate potential risk and damage under the findings and recommendations of the risk assessment conducted by the Judicial Council's Emergency Planning and Security Coordination unit. Refer to 4.D, Risk Assessment Procedures. Per the National Center for State Courts, security risks for new courthouses include:

DIVISION ONE: DESIGN CRITERIA
1 General Principles
2 Courthouse Organization
3 Site Design
4 COURTHOUSE SECURITY
4.A Objectives
4.B Design, Technology, and Operations
4.C Factors Affecting Security Levels
4.D Risk Assessment Procedures
4.E Physical Security Planning Criteria
4.F Structural Systems
4.G Mechanical, Electrical, and Fire Protection Systems
4.H Electronic Security Planning Criteria
4.I Electronic Security Systems
4.J Bullet-Resistant Glazing and Panels
5 Court Set
6 Jury Facilities and Court Administration
7 Special Services
8 In-Custody Defendant Receiving, Holding, and Transport
9 Public Spaces
10 Building Support Services

CPTED = Crime Prevention Through Environmental Design

Basic CPTED Strategies

- Natural surveillance
- Natural and constructed access control
- Territoriality

- Violent or assaultive behavior directed against staff, judicial officers, the public, or detainees;
- Damage to physical facilities and theft of property, including money;
- Disruption of court activities; and
- Compromise of court process, including evidence, court records, jury sequester, and due process.

2. Capability to Increase Security

The facility must be designed to accommodate changes in security requirements. For example, if a high-profile or celebrity case is assigned to a court located in a small county, security needs may temporarily increase to levels higher than normally encountered.

National, regional, and local conditions and threat levels may also affect security requirements. Examples of increased security during heightened threat and alert levels include escalating screening capacity in the lobby and increasing building setback distances between building and vehicles to protect against vehicular threats.

4.D RISK ASSESSMENT PROCEDURES

a. The Emergency Planning and Security Coordination unit shall conduct a risk assessment for each project.

b. The risk assessment shall identify potential threats and vulnerabilities, consider the likelihood and potential consequences of an event occurring, and recommend mitigation measures.

c. The risk assessment report shall be reviewed by the Court Facilities Advisory Committee in predesign phase.

d. The assessment shall be used as the reference document for project-specific solutions prepared by the architects and engineers, such as environmental deterrents, blast-resistant requirements, and electronic monitoring and control measures, including video surveillance.

Table 4.3 lists mandatory requirements and those determined by the project-specific risk assessment. Table 4.4, as well as the principles and security measures described in this chapter, shall set the scope of electronic security design elements for the site and the court building.

Commented [LD2]: Tables 4.1 and 4.2 must be mentioned before 4.3.

Commented [DP2R2]: Agreed, but it doesn't seem to be workable here since the discussion about 4.1 and 4.2 doesn't occur until later. In the standard approach to all the chapters, the large tables like 4.3 and 4.4 are at the end of the chapter.

4.E PHYSICAL SECURITY PLANNING CRITERIA

Security-planning best practices for trial court buildings are described in this section. These practices provide the minimum physical security elements indicated or as modified and required by the project-specific risk assessment.

1. Crime Prevention Through Environmental Design ~~(CPTED)~~

Permanent, effective, and visually appealing security planning solutions are the basis of Crime Prevention Through Environmental Design (CPTED). CPTED principles reinforce the ability of design and the built environment to minimize crime and the fear of crime and to improve the quality of life. There are three basic CPTED strategies:

- Natural surveillance: The placement of physical features, activities, and people to maximize visibility—for example, proper placement of windows overlooking sidewalks and parking lots and use of transparent vestibules at building entrances to divert persons

to reception areas—can decrease the likelihood of crime in the surrounding areas of the courthouse. This strategy can be supplemented with the use of security and police patrols and the application of closed-circuit television.

- Natural and constructed access control: Natural access control focuses on limiting and providing guided access through use of properly located entrances, exits, fencing, landscaping, sidewalks and roadways, signage, and lighting. This guidance helps deter access to a crime target and creates a perception of risk to a perpetrator.
- Territoriality: The use of physical attributes that express ownership—such as fencing, pavement treatments, signage, and landscaping—promotes a perception that these areas are controlled. In an area that is physically designed to protect designated space, people are more likely to challenge intruders or report suspicious activity, and the design itself causes intruders to stand out.

Designers must comply with the findings and recommendations of the risk assessment and accommodate their impact on the operational design criteria.

Designers must apply CPTED principles in site and building master plans and in the early phases of architectural and landscape design.

2. Concentric Circles of Protection

The concept of concentric circles of protection is based on varying levels of protection originating at the site perimeter, building envelope, lobby areas, and interior specialty controlled areas, with the levels becoming increasingly more stringent as one proceeds through each level to reach the most critical areas. This concept establishes "intervention zones" between security levels; these zones provide an opportunity for control, detection, evaluation, and response to undesired activity or to intruders or other unauthorized individuals.

Where possible, the facility design should establish distinct separation of areas with differing levels of security.

3. Site Selection and Design

Vehicular and adjacency threats may be a major concern at court facilities and must be considered during site selection and site design.

The site must have a minimum 25′ setback between unscreened vehicle threats and buildings, unless otherwise determined by the risk assessment.

Setback is the distance maintained between a structure or asset and the potential location of the explosive threat. Increasing setback distance greatly improves protection for the building and occupants, because blast pressure and impulse quickly decay as a function of distance. See figures 4.2 and 4.3.

By way of illustration, improvised explosive devices weigh approximately 100 pounds per cubic foot. It is reasonable to assume that 10 to 50 pounds may be transported in a hand-carried package, 50 pounds may be surreptitiously concealed within a vehicle, and 100 to 500 pounds (or more) may be transported within a vehicle. Although these magnitudes may be significantly less than the weights of explosive that may be transported by the largest vehicles accessible to the site, they correspond to the reasonable levels of blast load intensity (based on site standoff distances) that normal building materials and any feasible upgrades to the building construction can reasonably be expected to withstand.

DIVISION ONE: DESIGN CRITERIA

1 General Principles
2 Courthouse Organization
3 Site Design
4 COURTHOUSE SECURITY
4.A Objectives
4.B Design, Technology, and Operations
4.C Factors Affecting Security Levels
4.D Risk Assessment Procedures
4.E Physical Security Planning Criteria
4.F Structural Systems
4.G Mechanical, Electrical, and Fire Protection Systems
4.H Electronic Security Planning Criteria
4.I Electronic Security Systems
4.J Bullet-Resistant Glazing and Panels
5 Court Set
6 Jury Facilities and Court Administration
7 Special Services
8 In-Custody Defendant Receiving, Holding, and Transport
9 Public Spaces
10 Building Support Services

High-risk areas are those into which unscreened packages or vehicles may be brought.

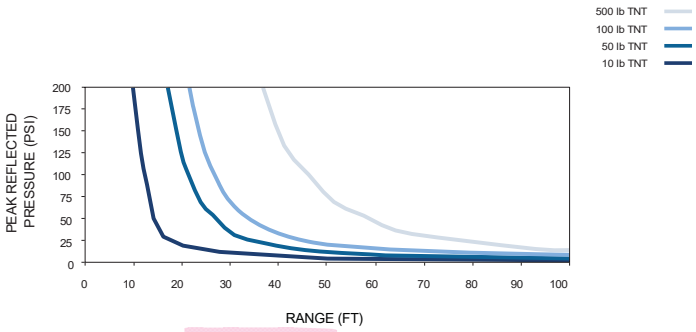
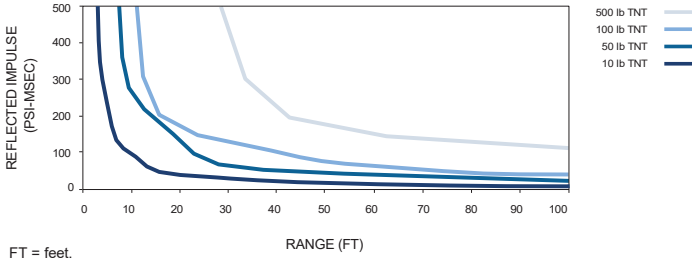


Figure 4.2 Peak Pressure Decay ~~with~~ With Distance



FT = feet.
psi = pounds per square inch.
msec = millisecond.

Figure 4.3 Impulse Decay ~~with~~ With Distance

The setback distance is measured from the face of the building structure, enclosure, or both to the location of the nearest parked vehicle for the passive vehicle threat and to the location of the antiram perimeter for the moving vehicle threat (see 4.E.5, Site Security). Increased setback may also reduce the cost of blast hardening as required. Every foot of setback distance is critical.

Site the building so street configurations do not create a straight, head-on approach to the facility and adjacent facilities~~,~~ and so that functions do not pose significant risks or threats. Certain site configurations will require vehicle barriers (described under 4.E.5, Site Security~~, below~~).

4. Parking Security

a. Do not site ~~Public~~ public parking ~~is not allowed~~ within or beneath the courthouse.

Commented [DP3]: Changes by Editor from EGG.

b. Provide a minimum 25′ setback of public parking from the courthouse, unless otherwise determined by the risk assessment.

c. If secure parking is provided in surface lots, ~~they shall be~~ provide a fence~~d~~, visually screen~~ed~~, and ~~separated~~ separate these areas from public circulation pathways and parking.

d. For secure parking in surface lots not contiguous with the court building, provide a continuous path of travel to the secure entry to the courthouse. This exterior walkway is considered a part of the court building private circulation system (see chapter 2, Courthouse Organization). The secure parking area and path of travel shall be screened from view by the public or in-custody defendants.~~;~~

~~d.~~e. Install ~~The~~ ~~such~~ screen fence or wall in all secure parking surface lots and path of travel ~~shall~~ that will deter scaling and climbing, to be angled on top, and be a minimum of 8′ tall as modified by site conditions (e.g., adjacent slope, nearby equipment) or the project risk assessment.

~~e.~~f. Place all onsite (unsecured) parking as far from the building as possible. Reduce or eliminate adjacencies between occupied or critical areas and spaces accessible to screened or unscreened vehicles.

~~f.~~g. Minimize and control the number of vehicular access points into secure parking areas and sally ports.

~~g.~~h. Provide operable barriers at entries of exterior secure and service parking areas adjacent to the courthouse, as well as interior secure parking areas.

~~h.~~i. Colocate loading dock and parking garage entries.

~~i.~~j. Provide a minimum 6″ of nonstructural architectural finish around all columns in or adjacent to interior secure parking.

~~j.~~k. If a screened vehicle threat is specified by the risk assessment, harden interior walls around interior secure parking areas where a 25′ distance to critical or occupied space is not provided. Heavy damage to these interior enclosure walls is acceptable if adjacent occupied or critical space is protected and the walls are ~~non~~not ~~-~~load~~-~~ bearing. If these interior enclosure walls are load bearing, they shall be limited to superficial damage unless a high-fidelity analysis can demonstrate sufficient service load carrying capacity following a blast event. Harden interior columns in or adjacent to interior secure parking and the floor above and below interior secure parking to resist loading up to and including the specified explosive where the spaces above or below are occupied or contain critical equipment. Interior secure parking areas should be considered to include sally ports.

5. Site Security

a. Employ CPTED principles.

b. Place any trash receptacles or public mailboxes outside the building setback distance.

c. Illuminate site perimeters, walkways, and drives.

d. Ensure that trees at partial or full projected growth do not impede lighting and security cameras throughout the site.

e. Restrict heights of landscaping to maintain natural surveillance. As a goal, avoid landscaping that will allow for concealment of packages 12″ tall within the building setback distance.

f. Protect utilities (gas, power, telephone) at entrance to the site through burial or concrete encasement.

g. Employ physical barriers to maintain setback distances, enhance perceived protection, and create a perception of the courthouse as a hard target. The risk assessment will specify either a passive (stationary) or moving vehicle threat as well as the location of

DIVISION ONE: DESIGN CRITERIA
1 General Principles
2 Courthouse Organization
3 Site Design
4 COURTHOUSE SECURITY
4.A Objectives
4.B Design, Technology, and Operations
4.C Factors Affecting Security Levels
4.D Risk Assessment Procedures
4.E Physical Security Planning Criteria
4.F Structural Systems
4.G Mechanical, Electrical, and Fire Protection Systems
4.H Electronic Security Planning Criteria
4.I Electronic Security Systems
4.J Bullet-Resistant Glazing and Panels
5 Court Set
6 Jury Facilities and Court Administration
7 Special Services
8 In-Custody Defendant Receiving, Holding, and Transport
9 Public Spaces
10 Building Support Services

Commented [DP4]: Modified by CFAC-WG and editor.

each, if not uniform. For a moving vehicle threat, the level of antiram resistance will be determined by the risk assessment. Threat definition and barrier selection shall be based on ASTM Standard F2656. A passive vehicle threat may be deterred using curbs, ~~No no Parking~~ parking signs, striping, and the like. A moving vehicle threat must be stopped at the minimum required setback distance using an antiram barrier. The designers must select a barrier system~~,~~ around the entire protected perimeter~~,~~ that will stop the identified vehicular threat. Consider traffic pattern and flow relative to the site configuration. The moving vehicle threat should minimally be considered opposite pedestrian building entrances and at vehicle entrances to loading docks, sally ports, and underground parking.

h. Design ~~Barrier~~ barrier systems ~~may~~ consisting of landscaping elements, fixed outdoor furniture, grade changes, planters, walls, bollards, or other antiram designs that provide the required antiram resistance and are integrated into the site or building architecture but shall not be an impediment to visual surveillance by law enforcement.

6. Building Layout

The building plan shall minimize vulnerabilities through appropriate space planning and adjacencies.

a. Locate lobbies and delivery areas outside the main building footprint or in an exterior bay, when possible, and away from densely occupied spaces and critical facilities.

b. Provide one shared staff and public entrance point to reduce weapons-screening operational requirements. Provide a secure path from the judges' secure parking area to judges' chambers.

c. Provide natural or constructed surveillance for building access points.

d. Protect buildings from vehicular threats. Public parking is not allowed within or directly adjacent to the building.

e. Separate high-risk areas—including an unscreened lobby, loading docks, mailrooms, vehicle sally ports, and secure parking garages—from occupied spaces, critical utilities, and building systems needed to ensure rapid and safe building evacuation, including electrical, mechanical, and fire protection equipment. Do not place critical utilities at exterior walls or within 25′ of high-risk areas. Do not locate occupied areas within 25′ of high-risk areas.

f. Locate emergency generators at least 50′ from the primary electrical source.

g. Colocate the loading dock and mailroom toward the building exterior.

h. Locate all emergency egress away from high-risk areas. Provide redundant emergency egress exits, but do not cluster routes.

i. Stack critical areas and supporting utilities.

j. Provide ductile materials in emergency egress pathways to minimize debris.

7. Courtrooms, Judge's Chambers, and Jury Deliberation Rooms

a. For courtrooms, provide bullet-resistant panels within the podium and bench for judge, court security officer (CSO), clerk, and witness stand (see 4.J, Bullet-Resistant Glazing and Panels).

b. Minimize windows with direct line of sight from public areas, circulation zones, and parking garages~~,~~ to prevent observation of activities, threat exposure, or communication with courtroom occupants.

c. Where exterior windows are provided, provide ballistic glazing as determined by the risk assessment (see section 4.J).

8. Public Transaction Counters

Outdoor or unsecured public transaction counters shall be provided with bullet-resistant wall panels, transaction glazing, and pass-through drawers (see section 4.J).

9. Lobby and Waiting Areas

a. Place unsecured lobby areas outside the main building footprint or in an exterior bay so that a blast will not damage the building frame or critical court functional areas.

b. Eliminate trash~~,~~ and mail receptacles~~,~~ or other areas of concealment in the unscreened lobby areas.

c. ~~Optimize throughput with the level of staffing to be provided.~~ Staffing level for screening is a primary consideration in lobby screening design. Optimize throughput with the level of staffing to be provided. ~~The screening configuration needs to optimize throughput with the level of staffing to be provided.~~

d. Design lobby, queuing area, screening lanes, and exit lanes to accommodate direct visual surveillance by staff and security officers. Optimally, an exit lane should be located adjacent to a regularly staffed (incoming) screening lane.

e. Design lobby for increased levels of security; this design may include additional screening areas or restriction of openings into secure areas.

f. Provide physical barriers and indirect circulation between ~~not~~ unsecure and secure space to minimize cross contamination of screened and unscreened persons and the introduction of harmful agents or weapons.

g. Provide a minimum 6″ nonstructural architectural finish around all columns in or adjacent to the loading dock and mailroom.

h. If explosive screening is provided and a hand-carried satchel threat is specified by the risk assessment, harden interior walls around the lobby screening area as well as the adjacent lobby or other space into which blast pressures may propagate. Heavy damage to these interior enclosure walls is acceptable as long as adjacent occupied or critical space is protected and the walls are ~~non~~not ~~-~~ load ~~-~~bearing. If these interior enclosure walls are load bearing, they shall be limited to superficial damage unless a high-fidelity analysis can demonstrate sufficient service load carrying capacity following a blast event. The lobby is considered transient and is not required to be protected from the prescreening area. Harden the interior columns in or adjacent to the prescreening area and the floor above and below the unsecured lobby areas to resist loading up to and including the specified satchel explosive threat located at the lobby floor level where the spaces above or below are occupied or contain critical equipment.

10. Evidence and Exhibit Storage Rooms

a. Locate evidence and exhibit storage rooms in private circulation areas.

b. Design ~~The~~ rooms ~~shall~~ to have full-height partitions and hard ceilings and be secured using keyed locks.

c. Include ~~dual~~ dual-authentication card readers with personal identification numbers (PINs) and video surveillance at room entry doors.

DIVISION ONE: DESIGN CRITERIA

1 General Principles
2 Courthouse Organization
3 Site Design
4 COURTHOUSE SECURITY
4.A Objectives
4.B Design, Technology, and Operations
4.C Factors Affecting Security Levels
4.D Risk Assessment Procedures
4.E Physical Security Planning Criteria
4.F Structural Systems
4.G Mechanical, Electrical, and Fire Protection Systems
4.H Electronic Security Planning Criteria
4.I Electronic Security Systems
4.J Bullet-Resistant Glazing and Panels
5 Court Set
6 Jury Facilities and Court Administration
7 Special Services
8 In-Custody Defendant Receiving, Holding, and Transport
9 Public Spaces
10 Building Support Services

Lobby Considerations

- Limit adjacencies between the unsecured portions of lobby and court offices or jury assembly spaces.
- Consider potential for mail and package deliveries to be brought in through the lobby in smaller courthouses.

Minimum Prescriptive Design Requirements

- Debris-mitigating materials
- Ductile systems
- Standoff to critical building elements
- Forced-entry protection
- Bullet resistance

Performance-Based Design Requirements

- Apply when specified by risk assessment.
- Use blast-resistant façade.
- Harden critical building elements.
- Protect occupied space and critical systems from high-risk areas.

11. Loading Dock and Mailroom

a. Control access to loading dock area by means of operable barriers at entries.

b. Where feasible, place loading docks and the mailroom in the exterior bay, and provide a means for venting gas pressures that may result from an internal detonation. If not possible, alternatives should be considered, such as screening incoming packages and mailing via the lobby or at a remote facility. Locate critical and occupied space at least 25′ away from the loading dock and mailroom.

c. Provide a minimum 6″ architectural cover around all columns in or adjacent to the loading dock, shipping/receiving area, and mailroom.

d. If explosive screening is provided and a package threat is specified by the risk assessment, harden interior walls around the loading dock, shipping and receiving areas, and mailroom, where a 25′ distance to critical or occupied space is not provided. Heavy damage to these interior enclosure walls is acceptable as long as adjacent occupied or critical space is protected and the walls are non-load-bearing. If these interior enclosure walls are load bearing, they shall be limited to superficial damage unless a high-fidelity analysis can demonstrate sufficient service load carrying capacity following a blast event. Harden interior columns in or adjacent to the loading dock, shipping and receiving areas, and mailroom and the floors above and below them to resist loading up to and including a satchel explosive at the floor level or on the dock where the spaces above or below are occupied or contain critical equipment.

12. Building Security Operations Center ~~(SOC)~~

a. Locate the security operations center (SOC) to allow visual monitoring of the entrance screening area with a direct line of sight and ~~to allow~~ monitoring and operation of electronic security systems. ~~Refer to~~See figure 4.4. This space is not required in small court facilities.

b. Keep ~~Fire~~ fire command centers, required with high-rise life-safety systems, ~~shall remain~~ separate from the security operations center.

c. If the SOC has a window overlooking the main entrance, weapons screening, and/or entrance queuing, install ballistic glazing ~~is required~~ as determined by the risk assessment (see section 4.J). Glazing must use mirror tint or other means of obscuring vision into the SOC.

d. ~~The~~ Provide~~walls shall have~~ bullet-resistant paneling for the walls.

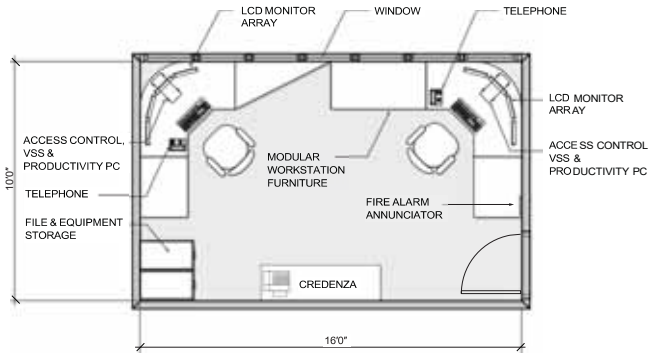
13. Building Envelope

a. The exterior building envelope shall be designed to minimize vulnerabilities and protect occupants from flying debris entering the building in the event of an external blast. The minimum prescriptive requirements, as described in section 4.E.13.1 ~~of this chapter~~, must be provided on all projects.

b. The risk assessment will specify whether a performance-based design approach is also required, in which case an unscreened exterior vehicle threat may be specified. If a performance-based approach to building hardening is required, the exterior façade systems constituting the building envelope shall resist loading up to and including the actual blast loads on the façade calculated for the specified unscreened exterior vehicle threat, up to a maximum air-blast design load of 4 psi peak pressure and 28 psi-msec impulse.

Commented [SN5]: Is there a discrepancy between this text allowing for alternatives to placing a loading dock and mailroom in the exterior bay (such as screening incoming packages and mailing via the lobby or remote facility) and Table 4.3 mandatory requirement to provide space and driveway arrangement to permit manual screening of delivery trucks?

Commented [DP5R2]: I don't believe there is a discrepancy. Both are stating the same expectations, although the alternatives are spelled out here. The table refers to the risk assessment which will narrow down the alternatives for a particular project.



LCD = liquid crystal display.
~~VSS = video surveillance system.~~
PC = personal computer.
VSS = video surveillance system.
~~LCD = liquid crystal display.~~

Figure 4.4 Plan of Security Operations Center

c. Negative-phase blast loading effects shall be considered when rebound is a design consideration under blast loading. Negative-phase blast loading shall be determined assuming the charge size defined in the project-specific ~~Risk~~ risk ~~Assessment~~ assessment and the analytical methods defined in United Facilities Criteria (UFC) 3-340-02.

13.1 Minimum Prescriptive Requirements

a. Glass: Laminate ~~The~~ the innermost pane of all exterior glass ~~shall be laminated~~. Alternatively, the glass makeup (i.e., both inner and outer lights of insulated glass unit) may be panes of monolithic fully tempered glass. If monolithic fully tempered glass is to be used in lieu of laminated glass, then the only requirement is that the entire makeup be composed of fully tempered glass.

b. Windows: Do not install ~~Operable~~ operable windows ~~are not permitted~~.

c. Doors: Lock and monitor all unscreened perimeter doors.

d. Fenestration: Limit building envelope fenestration at critical areas such as courtrooms, chambers, and jury deliberation rooms, especially at the first level.

e. Building exterior: Minimize blast effects by using convex shapes (toward exterior) and limited reentrant corners.

f. Bullet-resistant glazing: Provide bullet-resistant exterior glazing in judicial chambers and courtrooms~~,~~ to the extent required by the risk assessment and available line of sight from surrounding street and nearby buildings. See section 4.J.

g. Openings~~'~~ security: Provide forced-entry protection at the first floor. Forced-entry rating shall satisfy ASTM Standards F588 for windows, F476 for swinging doors, and F842 for sliding doors, as specified by the risk assessment, including required resistance grade.

h. Walls: Use ductile systems that will minimize flying debris entering occupied spaces.

DIVISION ONE: DESIGN CRITERIA
1 General Principles
2 Courthouse Organization
3 Site Design
4 COURTHOUSE SECURITY
4.A Objectives
4.B Design, Technology, and Operations
4.C Factors Affecting Security Levels
4.D Risk Assessment Procedures
4.E Physical Security Planning Criteria
4.F Structural Systems
4.G Mechanical, Electrical, and Fire Protection Systems
4.H Electronic Security Planning Criteria
4.I Electronic Security Systems
4.J Bullet-Resistant Glazing and Panels
5 Court Set
6 Jury Facilities and Court Administration
7 Special Services
8 In-Custody Defendant Receiving, Holding, and Transport
9 Public Spaces
10 Building Support Services

Protective Structural Design

- Prescriptive threat-independent approach
- Redundant and ductile structural systems
- Resistance for disproportionate and progressive collapse
- Ductile detailing and failure modes

Courtroom doors

Refer to Litigation Area under 5.D, Courtroom Components, for a discussion of security measures.

13.2 Performance Requirements

~~a.~~ Glass: Design exterior glass to achieve a blast hazard rating of Low as defined by ASTM Standard F1642 in response to the specified blast loading. See table

a. 4.1 for rebound response requirements. Ideally, the glass pane shall be as weak as possible~~,~~ so as not to transmit additional load to the frames, mullions, and anchorage. Structural silicone sealant shall be used along the exterior perimeter of the pane to adhere the glass to the frame.

b. Window mullions, frames, and anchorage: Design frames and anchorage to resist the calculated blast load intensity. Provide calculations or explosive testing results of identical systems to demonstrate that the façade components can resist the specified tributary blast loads without failure, including the dismemberment or premature ejection of the glass panels. The allowable rotation of mullion ends in response to the specified blast loading shall be a maximum of 3 degrees (L/40 maximum deflection). Design components using allowable stresses equal to the average expected dynamic yield strength of their respective materials; average strength factor (ASF) and dynamic increase factor (DIF) values defined in the most recent version of ASCE 59 may be used to transform minimum specified strengths to average expected dynamic strengths. Aluminum or steel mullions are preferred. Typically, curtain wall systems, including unitized systems, can be modified with deeper or thicker sections than generally used. A clear load path must be provided from the glass to the primary structure.

~~b.~~c. Consider ~~B~~blast protection ~~shallto be taken into consideration~~ early in design for proper layout of architectural features ~~and possible views~~. Clearly define the areas to ~~use~~be provided with no-~~-~~spall versu~~e~~s low-~~-~~spall glass. ~~The use of low-spall glazing for areas with interior cleaning requirements also note I~~Low-~~-~~spall ~~is~~glass shall be used for areas that are not required to meet UL- 752. Contractor ~~to~~shall provide ~~documentation~~instructions for ~~FM team regarding~~ proper cleaning of no-~~-~~spall and low-spall glass as well as demarcation to prevent the use of inappropriate cleaning products on ballistic and bullet-~~-~~resistant glazing.

Table 4.1 Summary of Building Envelope Performance Requirements

Element	Performance Requirement	Design for Rebound?
Glass	Blast hazard rating of Low, as defined by ASTM F1642*	Only if required by project-specific requirements.
Window ~~Mullions~~mullions, ~~Frames~~frames, and ~~Anchorage~~anchorage	Rotation of mullion ends shall be a maximum of 3 degrees (L/40 maximum deflection)*	Yes
Doors and ~~Door~~ door ~~Anchorage~~anchorage	Performance requirement for doors to be determined on a project specific basis*,†	‡
Nonglazed façade systems	Transfer reaction forces back to the building structure without failure*,§	§

* See section 4.E.13.2 for other requirements.
† Performance objectives may vary by door type and desired level of protection.
‡ Doors exhibiting Category III performance or worse as defined in ASTM F2247 shall be designed for rebound only if required by project-specific requirements. Doors exhibiting Category II performance or better as defined in ASTM F2247 shall be designed for rebound.
§ Parallels can be drawn between glazed and nonglazed façade systems: ~~a~~ A low level of protection should be provided for glass/paneling, and a medium level of protection should be provided for the supporting framing system. Rebound should be considered in the design of the supporting framing system~~,~~ and anchorage; rebound of the glass/paneling should be considered only if required by project-specific requirements.

~~c.~~d. Doors: Design ~~The~~ the operable door portion that is exposed to an explosive threat ~~shall~~ to consist of heavy-gauge (14 gauge or greater) metal and debris-mitigating materials (e.g., laminated glass adhered with structural silicone). The stationary frame shall be designed to develop the tributary blast load reaction forces~~,~~ for the design blast load. Calculations or explosive testing results of identical systems shall demonstrate that the frame components are capable of resisting the specified tributary blast loads without failure.

~~d.~~e. Nonglazed façade systems: Design components using ductile materials to withstand the specified blast load and transfer reaction forces back to the building structure without failure. Refer to PDC-TR 06-08, Rev. 1 (Jan. 7, 2008), for appropriate response limits.

4.F STRUCTURAL SYSTEMS

1. Protective Structural Design

Protective structural design enables building occupants to evacuate the building safely and rapidly during an emergency, especially if part of the building is subject to a blast or otherwise damaged or destroyed. The goal is to avoid progressive collapse by designing a structure that will not collapse if one or more structural members are damaged, fail, or are destroyed. This threat-independent approach is intended to ~~assure~~ ensure redundant structural design.

a. If the risk assessment specifies an exterior vehicle explosive threat or a hand-carried package threat (and associated magnitudes), the structural members that may be exposed to blast loading must also be designed to provide the specified performance for loading up to both (1) the blast load defined by the project-specific risk assessment and (2) the blast load defined within this guidance document (see section 4.E.13.b).

b. Primary structural members that may be exposed to blast loading shall be designed to resist their tributary loads either by remaining elastic or through the formation of a ductile failure mechanism. If the member is designed to remain elastic under the specified blast load, the capacity of nonductile modes shall include a 1.5 factor of safety for the calculated force / moment demands. Redundant load paths shall be provided where the governing limit state is still found to be nonductile. Secondary structural members may sustain a localized breach in response to near-contact detonations; however, the extent of damage shall be limited to the structural bay in proximity to the event and shall not precipitate a disproportionate collapse.

c. Negative~~-~~phase blast loading effects shall be considered when rebound is a design consideration under blast loading. Negative~~-~~phase blast loading shall be determined assuming the charge size defined in the project-specific risk assessment and the analytical methods defined in UFC 3-340-02.

2. Guidelines for Improved Structural Performance

The following general guidelines shall be followed to improve structural performance in the event of an explosion.

a. Avoid overhangs with occupied space above.

b. Provide structural redundancy and alternative load paths to mitigate the potential for catastrophic failure stemming from blast loads.

c. Minimize horizontal and vertical structural irregularities.

DIVISION ONE: DESIGN CRITERIA

1 General Principles
2 Courthouse Organization
3 Site Design
4 COURTHOUSE SECURITY
4.A Objectives
4.B Design, Technology, and Operations
4.C Factors Affecting Security Levels
4.D Risk Assessment Procedures
4.E Physical Security Planning Criteria
4.F Structural Systems
4.G Mechanical, Electrical, and Fire Protection Systems
4.H Electronic Security Planning Criteria
4.I Electronic Security Systems
4.J Bullet-Resistant Glazing and Panels
5 Court Set
6 Jury Facilities and Court Administration
7 Special Services
8 In-Custody Defendant Receiving, Holding, and Transport
9 Public Spaces
10 Building Support Services

d. Prevent a single point of failure of the building structure by avoiding large transfer girders or locating them away from areas that may be exposed to blast loading.

e. Select a ductile structural system. Preferred structural systems include moment frame steel structures, steel frames with shear walls, braced steel frames, and reinforced concrete beam and slab systems with ductile detailing.

f. Design structures greater than two stories tall to resist progressive collapse using the alternate-path method, which requires the structure to withstand the threat-independent removal of any first-floor exterior column, one at a time, or one bay width of exterior load-bearing walls, one at a time, without precipitating a disproportionate extent of damage. Give consideration to ductile moment-resisting frame lateral systems at the exterior of the building. Ensure that alternate-path analysis methods for demonstrating a structure's resistance to progressive collapse conform to UFC 4-023-03, Design of Buildings to Resist Progressive Collapse. Remove columns spaced closer than ~~30~~ 30 percent of the largest bay dimension in the same alternate-path analysis.

g. Assess structural members that may be exposed to blast loading for both direct blast loading and the effects of rebound as specified in table 4.2. Performance requirements shall conform to a medium level of protection as described in PDC-TR 06-08 Rev. 1, "Single Degree of Freedom Structural Response Limits for Antiterrorism Design," unless noted otherwise in table 4.2.

h. Design and detail all flexural elements, their connections, and their splices such that no brittle failure mode limits the capacity of the section. Unless the element is designed to remain elastic in response to blast loading, ductile failure modes shall be the governing failure mode for flexural elements and their connections and splices. If the elements are designed to resist the blast loads elastically, the design of nonductile modes shall include a 1.5 factor of safety on the calculated forces or moment demand on the member.

i. Design primary structural member connections to ensure the capacity of the connection is governed by a ductile failure mode. This requirement can be met by including a 1.~~5~~ 5 factor of safety on the design of nonductile modes and ensuring that a ductile failure mode is found to be the governing limit state.

j. Harden floor systems separating high-risk areas and occupied court areas to withstand the effects of the specified explosive, as per the risk assessment, located within an adjacent structural bay. Design floor slabs for upward forces (direct blast loading for slabs above high-risk areas and rebound loading for slabs below high-risk areas). The floor slab reinforcement in both the top and bottom mat shall be continuous and symmetric.

k. Design structural columns in high-risk areas to resist the specified explosive, as per the risk assessment, located 3′ away.

l. Design wall elements that may be exposed to blast loading as one-way systems that span from floor to floor and do not attach them to columns.

m. Fully grout and reinforce ~~Concrete~~ concrete masonry unit (CMU) walls that may be exposed to blast loading ~~shall be fully grouted and reinforced~~, with connections designed to allow full development of capacity at the supports.

Table 4.2 Summary of Structural System Performance Requirements

Component *	Component Damage Limit†	Design for Rebound?
Primary ~~Structural~~ structural ~~Component~~ component (e.g., load-bearing walls, columns, girders)	Superficial	Yes‡
Secondary ~~Structural~~ structural ~~Component~~ component (e.g., non-load- bearing masonry walls)	Moderate	Yes‡
Nonstructural ~~Component~~ component (e.g., partitions, furniture, equipment, light fixtures)	Moderate	Only if required by project-specific requirements§
Non-~~Load~~load-~~Bearing~~ bearing ~~Interior~~ interior ~~Enclosure~~ enclosure ~~Walls~~walls	Heavy	Only if required by project-specific requirements‖

* Component descriptions can be found in table 2-3 of PDC-TR 06-08 Rev. 1.

† The *CTCFS* generally requires that the performance of structural members conform to a medium level of protection (see section 4.F.2.g). For this level of protection, PDC-TR 06-08 Rev.1 assigns a superficial damage limit to primary structural components and a moderate damage limit to secondary and nonstructural components. The use of a heavy damage limit for non-load-bearing interior enclosure walls is permitted by this guidance document in select instances, as described in sections 4.E.4., 4.E.9.h, and 4.E.11.d.

‡ The *CTCFS* generally requires that structural members subject to blast loads are evaluated for the effects of rebound (see section 4.F.2.g).

§ Although the damage limit is set to moderate to minimize hazards to occupants, and follow the guidance of PDC-TR 06-08 Rev.1, assessment for rebound is required only if necessary per project-specific guidelines because most nonstructural components are generally symmetric and symmetrically anchored.

‖ Heavy damage corresponds with a low level of protection. Since non-load-bearing interior enclosure walls are treated as sacrificial within this guidance document, the design for rebound is required only if necessary per project-specific guidelines.

4.G MECHANICAL, ELECTRICAL, AND FIRE PROTECTION SYSTEMS

Mechanical, electrical, and fire protection systems are critical security elements that must remain functional until all building occupants are able to evacuate safely and completely during an emergency.

Critical systems include fire protection, air-handling systems to evacuate smoke and positively pressurize egress stairs and vestibules, emergency communication systems, emergency lighting (especially at means of egress), and emergency power to ensure that these systems are functional in the event of a power outage.

a. Locate critical utilities as far as possible from high-risk areas. Do not install utilities within 25′ of public parking areas, an unscreened lobby, loading docks, and mailrooms. Stack critical areas and their supporting utilities.

b. Locate power supply transformers and emergency generators away from high-risk areas—below grade, where possible, for best protection. If exterior transformers are required, locate them in an enclosure or fenced area with security locks, emergency lighting, and alarms.

DIVISION ONE: DESIGN CRITERIA
1 General Principles
2 Courthouse Organization
3 Site Design
4 COURTHOUSE SECURITY
4.A Objectives
4.B Design, Technology, and Operations
4.C Factors Affecting Security Levels
4.D Risk Assessment Procedures
4.E Physical Security Planning Criteria
4.F Structural Systems
4.G Mechanical, Electrical, and Fire Protection Systems
4.H Electronic Security Planning Criteria
4.I Electronic Security Systems
4.J Bullet-Resistant Glazing and Panels
5 Court Set
6 Jury Facilities and Court Administration
7 Special Services
8 In-Custody Defendant Receiving, Holding, and Transport
9 Public Spaces
10 Building Support Services

Refer to table 4.4 for security requirements by area and space type and the Judicial Council's *Security Systems Design Criteria Guide* for specific information regarding security systems requirements.

Electronic security systems shall be coordinated with building systems and reflect the evolving needs of the facility.

Locate properly vented emergency generators at least 50′ from the primary electrical source. Buildings should not intake exhaust fumes from generators. If emergency generators are located adjacent to high-risk areas, harden the intermediate floor and wall systems.

c. Avoid routing critical utilities next to parking areas. If this cannot be avoided, encase them in concrete.

d. To mitigate a chemical or biological attack within the building, locate air intakes at least 48′ above grade or as high as practical. If air intakes are placed on the roof, secure all roof access points.

e. Protect critical utilities, including service entrances.

f. Locate main and backup systems as far apart from each other as possible, a minimum of 50′.

g. If ~~feasible~~required by the risk assessment, isolate the mailroom heating, ventilation, and air-conditioning (HVAC) zone to prevent circulation into the main building. Provide a system to purge mailroom in case of biochemical contamination.

Commented [DP6]: Modified per discussion with CFAC-WG. Instances of this requirement are rare and will be identified by the risk assessment report if it is needed.

h. Evaluate required redundancy of critical systems. Refer to the individual sections for evaluation requirements. Where redundancy is provided for security purposes, place backup systems and distribution as far from primary systems as possible.

i. Ensure adequate HVAC for heating load in detention control during unoccupied building mode.

4.H ELECTRONIC SECURITY PLANNING CRITERIA

Best practices for electronic security planning are described in this section. Table 4.4 lists the electronic security elements that are mandatory for all court buildings and those that may be required or modified by the project-specific risk assessment.

Detailed product requirements and information are contained in the Judicial Council's *Security Systems Design Criteria Guide*, which is shared with the design team at the start of a new courthouse project.

1. Site Security

a. Use vehicle entry and exit gates and gate barrier arms at secure driveway entrances and exits.

b. Provide video surveillance of all secure driveway areas and general coverage of public circulation areas. Coordinate with landscape design to ensure that camera sightlines are unobstructed. Refer to chapter 3, Site Design.

c. At secure driveway entry vehicle gates, provide pedestals that accommodate the vehicle heights anticipated. Pedestal heads must support a card reader and, where applicable, camera and intercom station. Where in-custody transport vehicles share use of the secure driveway, pedestal heads must also support a detention intercom substation.

d. In addition to pedestal-mounted card readers, provide a long-range reader at the secure vehicle gate entry lane to allow operation of the entry gate by judges and other designated personnel from within the safety of their vehicles using a windshield-mount access card signal booster or similar device.

e. Provide alarm monitoring and video surveillance of pedestrian gates.

f. At secure parking entries and exits, provide video surveillance, hands-free telephones, and card access control of vehicle gates and gate barrier arms.

2. Building Envelope

a. Provide video surveillance of building exterior.

b. Provide video surveillance, door position monitoring, and local alarm sounders at all operable building entry and exit points.

c. Control after-hours access through designated perimeter doors with card readers. Provide, at perimeter doors, the minimum number of card readers that will facilitate operations.

d. Provide intrusion alarms to monitor perimeter doors and sensitive areas after hours as required by the risk assessment.

e. Early in the design process, take a holistic approach ~~shall be taken~~ to determine the optimal locations of the video cameras for maximum coverage by the fewest possible number of devices.

3. Lobby, Circulation, and Waiting Areas

a. Provide video surveillance, duress alarms, magnetometer, and package weapons scanners at screening lanes.

b. Provide barrier turnstiles at exit lanes in line with the screening lanes to restrict access to the secure area from the exit lane, while maintaining throughput to satisfy exiting requirements.

c. Provide video surveillance of lobby, circulation, and waiting areas.

d. Provide alarm monitoring, local alarms, and video surveillance at doors separating not secure from secure, public from private, public from detention, and private from detention spaces. Provide card readers at designated security separation doors only where needed to facilitate operations.

e. Provide video surveillance, alarm monitoring, and local alarm sounders for ~~Doors~~ doors that are used strictly for emergency egress purposes and that separate areas with differing security levels ~~shall have video surveillance, be monitored for alarms, and have local alarm sounders~~.

4. Private Circulation and Waiting Areas

a. Provide alarm monitoring, local alarms, and video surveillance at doors separating public from private and private from detention spaces. Provide card readers at designated security separation doors only where needed to facilitate operations.

~~b.~~ Provide video surveillance, alarm monitoring, and local alarm sounders for ~~Emergency~~ emergency egress ~~doors~~ doors separating areas with differing security levels ~~shall have video~~

b. ~~surveillance, alarm monitoring, and local alarm sounders~~.

c. Design ~~Exiting~~ exiting ~~should~~ to always be from a higher security area to a lower security area. The public should not exit through a private corridor, except in cases of emergency.

5. Courtrooms

a. Provide silent duress alarm buttons for judge, CSO, and clerk positions.

b. Provide ~~video surveillance of~~security cameras in the courtroom, ~~including~~ covering the well area, public seating, and, where applicable, door-to-court holding.

c. Control the public entry door into the courtroom using a card reader with integral keypad. Presentation of a card at the reader will momentarily unlock the doors to provide access to authorized persons when court is not in session. Each use of a card at

DIVISION ONE: DESIGN CRITERIA

1 General Principles
2 Courthouse Organization
3 Site Design
4 COURTHOUSE SECURITY
4.A Objectives
4.B Design, Technology, and Operations
4.C Factors Affecting Security Levels
4.D Risk Assessment Procedures
4.E Physical Security Planning Criteria
4.F Structural Systems
4.G Mechanical, Electrical, and Fire Protection Systems
4.H Electronic Security Planning Criteria
4.I Electronic Security Systems
4.J Bullet-Resistant Glazing and Panels
5 Court Set
6 Jury Facilities and Court Administration
7 Special Services
8 In-Custody Defendant Receiving, Holding, and Transport
9 Public Spaces
10 Building Support Services

Commented [DP7]: Modified by CFAC-WG.

the reader will activate the courtroom entry door to unlock the door while court is in session or lock the door to secure the courtroom when not in session. Refer to 5.D, Courtroom Components, for more information on courtroom doors.

d. Card access control readers shall be installed on the door leading from the courtroom to the private corridor at behind the witness stand and or jury egress door box, as well as the door behind the judge's bench. The doors shall be equipped with fire alarm, which will sound if the door is opened but can be turned off with the use of the card reader. is discouraged; however, it may be allowed on a case-by-case basis The purpose of the card reader is to turn off the alarm only, but not to prevent free access. Card access control of the judge's door behind the bench is not allowed. Card readers may be installed in the secure corridor on the doors leading to the courtroom on a case-by-case basis on court request and Judicial Council approval. Card readers shall be installed on the door from the courtroom to the private corridor behind the witness stand and jury box, as well as on the door behind the judge's bench. These doors shall have a fire -alarm device that sounds when the door is opened. The card reader's sole function is to silence the alarm, not to restrict free egress. Card readers may also be installed in the secure corridor on doors leading to the courtroom on a case-by-case basis, subject to court request and Judicial Council approval.

6. Chambers

a. Provide silent duress alarm buttons at the judges' desks.
b. Provide secure access at judges' chambers doors to limit entry to authorized personnel.

7. Jury Deliberation Rooms

Provide wall-mounted silent duress alarm buttons in jury deliberation rooms. Locate duress buttons in a readily accessible area, situated to minimize inadvertent activation.

8. Public Transaction Counters

a. Provide a duress alarm button for Each each public transaction counter position shall have a duress alarm button.

b. Provide overall video surveillance of the public queuing and walk-up areas. If cameras are located behind the transaction counters, they should capture images of customers only, not staff.

c. Provide an active full-duplex audio communication system at outdoor and unsecured public transaction counters. The communication system must have an on/off switch allowing staff to enable or disable communications.

9. Family Court Services Mediator Offices

Provide silent duress alarm buttons in mediator offices and video surveillance outside offices in the adjacent corridors.

10. Child Waiting Areas

a. Provide silent duress alarm buttons and video surveillance inside child waiting areas. Camera coverage should include interior and exterior corridors by the child waiting area door in addition to the main child waiting area.
b. Consider A a door intercom, remote door release, and local alarm annunciation system should be considered at child waiting areas with doors and interior circulation that are out of view of the staffed position. Local alarm annunciation must notify staff that a child has entered an out-of-view area or that someone has entered the child waiting area without permission. The staff person shall have the ability to arm and disarm local alarm annunciation as needed.

11. Current Case File Storage Areas

a. Provide silent duress alarm buttons at staffed positions in public records viewing areas.
b. Where public records rooms are not staffed, provide remote door release from secure staffed positions that are within view of the door.
c. Provide video surveillance of all public viewing areas to create a record of files in custody of the public.

Commented [TP8]: Discrepancy between CTCFS pg. 68 and SSDCG pg. 11 Security has card reader required at rear courtroom door the CTCFS is called out as discouraged. Also "card control access of the judges door behind the bench is not allowed" security document has it required.

Commented [TP8R2]: The SSDCG page 11 should be updated

Commented [DP8R3]: I have corrected the error here. The reference in tool 8 is correct since it applies if card reader is provided.

Commented [SN9]: Suggest slight revisions to tighten and clarify the language: "Card readers shall be installed on the door from the courtroom to the private corridor behind the witness stand and jury box, as well as on the door behind the judge's bench. These doors shall have a fire-alarm device that sounds when the door is opened. The card reader's sole function is to silence the alarm, not to restrict free egress. Card readers may also be installed in the secure corridor on doors leading to the courtroom on a case-by-case basis, subject to court request and Judicial Council approval.

Commented [DP9R2]: Agreed, this is clearer. We will make changes as suggested.

12. Evidence and Exhibit Storage Rooms

a. Limit access to authorized personnel via card access control at the door. Provide two-factor authentication (card plus PIN) access control for entry into the evidence storage room using a card reader with integral keypad to prevent lost or stolen access cards from being used by unauthorized persons to enter evidence storage.

b. Provide video surveillance and recording of all who enter and exit the evidence storage room.

13. Loading Dock, Receiving, and Mailroom

a. Use card readers at key operational doors to facilitate loading dock and mailroom operations.

b. Provide video surveillance of loading dock and receiving areas, and monitor doors for intrusion.

c. Provide video surveillance and silent duress alarm button in the mailroom. Provide telephone outside receiving door to facilitate communication with delivery drivers when loading dock and mailroom are closed.

d. Where required by the risk assessment, provide package weapons scanner in the mailroom. Where a package weapons scanner is not required by the risk assessment and not provided, all incoming packages delivered shall go through lobby security screening or another package screening process consistent with the court security operations plan.

14. Security Operations Center

a. The building SOC may duplicate functions of or combine functions with the detention/holding control room. Chapter 8, In-Custody Defendant Receiving, Holding, and Transport, describes systems that may require backup operation in the SOC and provides information about detention and holding control rooms.

b. Detention cameras monitored outside the detention area must not be viewable by the public at any time.

c. ~~Use m~~Modular workstation furniture in the SOC that is ergonomic and does not obstruct visibility of the lobby and screening area ~~should~~ be provided.

d. Fire control centers, required with high-rise life-safety systems, shall remain separate from the security operations center. Locate a fire alarm annunciator in the SOC to provide security personnel with immediate fire alarm event information that affects security of the facility. Refer to chapter 20, Fire Protection Criteria, for specific fire alarm system criteria.

15. Security Equipment Location

a. Locate electronic security headend equipment—including computers, storage, interface equipment, and the like—in the building main distribution frame (MDF) room.

b. Locate monitoring and control computers, monitors, annunciators, and related equipment in the security operations center or other designated area if an SOC is not required.

c. House security headend equipment in MDF or intermediate distribution frame (IDF) rooms in enclosed and lockable equipment racks and/or wall cabinets. Coordinate ample rack and wall space plus 25 percent future security equipment capacity. Coordinate rack

DIVISION ONE: DESIGN CRITERIA
1 General Principles
2 Courthouse Organization
3 Site Design
4 COURTHOUSE SECURITY
4.A Objectives
4.B Design, Technology, and Operations
4.C Factors Affecting Security Levels
4.D Risk Assessment Procedures
4.E Physical Security Planning Criteria
4.F Structural Systems
4.G Mechanical, Electrical, and Fire Protection Systems
4.H Electronic Security Planning Criteria
4.I Electronic Security Systems
4.J Bullet-Resistant Glazing and Panels
5 Court Set
6 Jury Facilities and Court Administration
7 Special Services
8 In-Custody Defendant Receiving, Holding, and Transport
9 Public Spaces
10 Building Support Services

Commented [DP10]: Gensler: change should to shall.

Security Electrical Systems

- Card access control
- Video surveillance
- Duress alarm
- Intrusion detection
- Turnstiles
- Weapons screening
- Secure driveway and parking controls
- Cable routing

and wall space requirements with the design of the MDF and IDF rooms. Refer to chapter 17, Network and Communication Systems, for specific telecommunications criteria.

d. Design ~~Electronic~~ electronic security system headend equipment ~~must~~ to be network based and ~~be~~ provided with network connectivity and an uninterruptible power source.

e. Point-to-point wiring is permitted in MDF and IDF rooms and from MDF or IDF rooms to field devices located on the same floor.

f. Design ~~Communication~~ communication between floors ~~must be~~ over the court network using a virtual local area network. Point-to-point wiring between floors is not permitted.

g. Detail detention equipment, ~~and~~ monitor layout, and equipment arms for organized and efficient layout.

4.I ELECTRONIC SECURITY SYSTEMS

Security systems shall be integrated and communicate with each other via the court's local area network. Security electronics systems shall include the features described below. For additional details, refer to the latest draft of the Judicial Council Emergency Planning and Security Coordination unit's *Security Systems Design Criteria Guide*.

1. Card Access Control

The card access control system is the primary means of monitoring security events, controlling card access points, and logging and reporting activity.

a. Provide monitoring and control of the secure driveway vehicle gates and doors, vehicle gate barrier arms, building perimeter protection, and separation between public, private, detention, and other critical areas.

b. Design card access control measures to restrict access from a lower security area to a higher security area and where the measures will substantially benefit operations and minimize issuance of keys. Provide free egress in the reverse direction using a request-to-exit (REX) switch in the door hardware and a REX push button or motion sensor. Except where otherwise required by the type of door hardware, REX devices shall not unlock doors; ~~REX devices~~they shall only bypass the door position sensors to allow egress without generating an alarm.

c. When armed, doors, hatches, and other operable access points shall be monitored for forced entry.

d. Monitor all card access control doors for forced door and propped door alarms.

e. Design ~~Monitoring~~ monitoring and administration of the system ~~shall be~~ via client computers located in the SOC.

f. Integrate the card access control system with the video surveillance system, duress alarm system, lobby exit lane turnstiles, and intrusion detection system to provide alarm monitoring and automated camera call-up of all events in view of a camera.

g. Coordinate security system ~~(SS)~~ plans with door schedule and hardware specifications for door position switches and card readers.

h. Confirm top or bottom orientation and voltage for door operators.

2. Video Surveillance

a. Provide an Internet Protocol (IP~~)~~ based video surveillance system ~~utilizing~~ using networked cameras, video servers, storage, and workstations. Coaxial cable is not acceptable, except in certain elevator applications. Refer to chapter 17, Network and Communication Systems, for network cable criteria.

b. Provide high-resolution color cameras throughout the facility and high-definition color cameras in each courtroom with digital video recording and storage for all cameras and thirty~~seven~~ days of data retention. Exterior cameras must have day and night capability to provide a usable image in low-light conditions. The use of ~~Panpan-Tiltilt-Zoom-~~ zoom (PTZ) cameras shall be minimized or avoided altogether.

c. Cameras may be powered via Power over Ethernet (PoE) or by Class 2 camera power supplies, provided they have a separate circuit breaker or fuse-protected output for each camera.

d. Ensure that monitoring and control of the video surveillance system are at computer workstations located in the SOC and detention control room (DCR). Smaller facilities may combine the operations of the SOC and DCR.

e. Locate cameras at a height that would not require the use of a lift to service and that is also out of reach.

f. Integrate the video surveillance system with the card access control system, duress alarm system, detention control system, and vehicle gate control equipment to automatically call up cameras relevant to facility alarms, triggers, and system events requiring immediate assessment and response by security or law enforcement personnel. Refer to chapter 8, In-Custody Defendant Receiving, Holding, and Transport, for detention control system requirements.

g. Clarify security camera structural backing requirements. Coordinate camera locations with exterior wall assemblies. Confirm that all exterior penetrations are weatherproofed. Review camera orientation virtually with court security provider. Confirm stair devices with the Office of the State Fire Marshal. ~~Recommend not i~~Installing cameras in security ceilings is not recommended.

3. Duress Alarm

a. Provide a wireless duress alarm system consisting of a controller, repeaters for larger facilities, and wireless duress buttons.

b. Design the duress alarm system to communicate using a variety of methods, including a designated law enforcement radio frequency and the audible announcement of the location of the alarm. Coordinate the methods, including the exact frequency to be used, with the security personnel who will be working in the building, including the sheriff, bailiff, and other law enforcement agencies. The identified frequency shall also be incorporated into the Emergency Responder Communication Enhancement System (ERCES)~~court and the court's designated law enforcement agency~~.

c. Integrate the duress alarm system with the card access control and video surveillance systems via the court network to permit alarm notification and automatic camera call-up in the SOC or other designated security monitoring locations.

d. Incorporate a NEMA 3R wet-rated button for all exterior-mounted duress alarms, such as those located in sally ports.

4. Intrusion Detection

a. Where required by the risk assessment, provide intrusion detection at perimeter doors. Provide double-pole door position switches at doors being monitored by the access control and intrusion detection systems to isolate their inputs and minimize modifications to doors and frames.

DIVISION ONE: DESIGN CRITERIA

1 General Principles
2 Courthouse Organization
3 Site Design
4 COURTHOUSE SECURITY
4.A Objectives
4.B Design, Technology, and Operations
4.C Factors Affecting Security Levels
4.D Risk Assessment Procedures
4.E Physical Security Planning Criteria
4.F Structural Systems
4.G Mechanical, Electrical, and Fire Protection Systems
4.H Electronic Security Planning Criteria
4.I Electronic Security Systems
4.J Bullet-Resistant Glazing and Panels
5 Court Set
6 Jury Facilities and Court Administration
7 Special Services
8 In-Custody Defendant Receiving, Holding, and Transport
9 Public Spaces
10 Building Support Services

Commented [TP11]: discrepancy between CTCFS pg. 71 and SSDCG- the security calls out for 30 day storage of video and CTCFS calls for seven.

Commented [DP11R2]: Corrected it here.

Commented [RR12]: Define this coordination with the security personal who will be working in the building(i.e. Sheriff, Bailiff or security services). This identified frequency will also need to be incorporated into the ERRC system as well.

Commented [DP12R2]: Incorporated.

Commented [DP13]: Gensler: Change to Emergency Responder Communication Enhancement System (ERCES)

b. Locate arming stations at designated entry points. Keep the number of arm/disarm entry points to a minimum. Where the entry point is a public area, situate arming stations to minimize public access while remaining in plain sight of staff.

c. Provide a card reader at each arming station, and interface the card access system with the intrusion detection system to allow arming and disarming by access card.

5. Turnstiles

Monitor the lobby screening exit lane turnstiles for operational failures and attempts to enter the secure area via the exit lane. Operation of the lobby screening exit lane turnstiles by the security system is not required. Exit lanes shall have an 8′ tall glass wall for visual surveillance.

6. Weapons Screening

a. Provide XX-ray scanners and Americans with Disabilities Act– (ADA) compliant magnetometers in the lobby to screen persons and belongings for weapons before entering secure space.

b. Design screening lanes to provide ample space for equipment, including current recommended spacing between magnetometers and XX-ray scanners and between conveyers and tables, as well as clearance for ADA-compliant magnetometers.

7. Secure Driveway and Parking Controls

a. Provide vehicle gates and gate barrier arms at secure driveways and at secure parking entrances to restrict public access.

b. Provide vehicle gates and gate barrier arms at secure parking areas to restrict access from secure driveways.

c. Ensure that vehicles cannot become trapped between gates, overhead doors, and gate barrier arms under any circumstances.

8. Cable Routing

a. Route all security cabling in metallic conduit or raceway where cabling is run in walls and above hard ceilings. Above accessible ceilings, use cable tray where provided and J-J-hooks elsewhere. Any security cable in outdoor locations, including within underground conduit, shall include a water water-blocking compound, and the jacket shall be outdoor rated for wet locations.

b. Provide back boxes suitable for all field devices and terminations.

c. Refer to chapter 15, Electrical Criteria, for specific conduit criteria.

d. Refer to chapter 17, Network and Communication Systems, for specific network cable requirements.

e. Installation of ceiling access doors in the detention cell ceilings is prohibited.

4.J BULLET-RESISTANT GLAZING AND PANELS

1. Exterior Windows

Where risk assessment stipulates bullet resistance, provide the following:

- Glazing: Glass-clad polycarbonate assembly. See chapter 11, Architectural Criteria. Bullet-resistant glass in doors may be too heavy for a typical door frame. Provide structural calculations for Judicial Council approval for door or window systems receiving bullet resistant glass.
- Panel in opening above or below glass: Bullet-resistant starch-oil woven roving ballistic-grade fiberglass panels to match the ballistic rating of the glazing.
- Threat level: Underwriters Laboratories' (UL) 752 Level 3, three shots or greater, as stipulated by risk assessment.

2. Clerk/Public Transaction Counter

a. For counter outside the building weapons screening, provide the following:

- Glazing: ~~glass~~Glass-clad polycarbonate assembly (see chapter 11).
- Panel in opening above or below glass: ~~bullet~~Bullet-resistant starch-oil woven ballistic-grade fiberglass panels to match the ballistic rating of the glazing.
- Threat level: UL 752 Level 3, three shots and forced entry or greater, as stipulated by risk assessment.

b. For counter within the building weapons screening, provide the following:

- Laminated glass: Two glass layers with polyvinyl butyral (PVB) interlayer (thickness determined by calculation for glass size and supporting structure).
- No bullet-resistant panels.
- Not bullet- or forced-entry-resistant.

3. Judge/Clerk/Witness Courtroom Bench

For judge's bench, witness box, and courtroom clerk's work area, provide the following:

- Behind finish material: B~~b~~ullet-resistant starch-oil woven ballistic-grade fiberglass panels.
- Threat level: UL 752 Level 3, three shots or greater, as stipulated by risk assessment.

DIVISION ONE: DESIGN CRITERIA
1 General Principles
2 Courthouse Organization
3 Site Design
4 COURTHOUSE SECURITY
4.A Objectives
4.B Design, Technology, and Operations
4.C Factors Affecting Security Levels
4.D Risk Assessment Procedures
4.E Physical Security Planning Criteria
4.F Structural Systems
4.G Mechanical, Electrical, and Fire Protection Systems
4.H Electronic Security Planning Criteria
4.I Electronic Security Systems
4.J Bullet-Resistant Glazing and Panels
7 Special Services
8 In-Custody Defendant Receiving, Holding, and Transport
9 Public Spaces
10 Building Support Services

Commented [AG14]: Lesson Learned: Bullet Resistant Glass in doors is too heavy for the door frame. Ensure structural calcs are approved for door or window systems receiving bullet resistant glass.

Commented [DP14R2]: Incorporated.

Commented [SR15]: To avoid acoustical issues, consider listing preferred/acceptable speak-thru systems that have worked at other courthouses.

Commented [DP15R2]: This is addressed in chapter 19 and tool 5.

Table 4.3 Notes

M: Compliance ~~Mandatory~~mandatory

RA: As ~~Determined~~ determined by ~~Risk~~ risk ~~Assessment~~assessment

SR: Strongly ~~Recommended~~recommended

Table 4.3 Security Standards

	COMPLIANCE
Site Selection	
Maximize setback distance to street or adjacent buildings.	M
Locate building to minimize adjacency and configuration risks.	M
Provide setback distance other than that defined in 4.E, Physical Security Planning Criteria.	RA
Parking Security	
Restrict public parking locations in proximity to court building to satisfy setback requirements.	M
Restrict and control secure parking locations within defended perimeter.	M
Colocate parking garage and loading dock entries.	RA
Provide minimum 6″ nonstructural architectural finish around interior columns in secure parking areas.	M
Provide video surveillance at parking entries and exits.	RA
Locate critical and occupied space at least 25′ away from secure parking, or harden enclosure for screened vehicle threat (charge weight to be specified by ~~RA~~risk assessment).	RA
Harden interior structure in parking for screened vehicle threat (charge weight to be specified by ~~RA~~risk assessment).	RA
Site Security	
Employ CPTED principles.	M
Place trash receptacles and mailboxes outside the setback distance.	M
Illuminate site perimeters, walkways, and drives.	M
Restrict height of landscaping.	M
Protect utilities (gas, power, telephone, etc.) at entrance to site.	M
Provide video surveillance of site.	M
Provide antiram barriers to enforce required building setback distance (moving vehicle threat). Risk ~~A~~ assessment to indicate extent of antiram perimeter required and level of antiram resistance.	RA
Building Layout	
Provide only one public entrance.	M
Provide a secure path between judges' parking and chambers.	M
Separate high-risk areas from occupied spaces, critical systems, utilities, and egress.	M
Colocate loading dock and mailroom toward the building exterior.	M
Courtrooms	
Provide silent duress alarm buttons for judge, CSO, and clerk.	M
Provide bullet-resistant panels within podium/bench for judge, CSO (depending on makeup of CSO station), clerk, and witness stand.	M
Provide video surveillance.	M
Provide bullet-resistant panels and glazing to counters accessible outside secure areas.	M
Minimize vision through windows with the line of sight from exterior into courtroom.	M
Provide bullet-resistant glazing.	RA

Table 4.3 continues on next page

Table 4.3 Security Standards *continued*

	COMPLIANCE
Judge's Chambers	
Provide silent duress alarm buttons for judge and clerk.	M
Minimize vision through windows with the line of sight from exterior into chambers.	M
Provide bullet-resistant glazing up to height and/or story specified in ~~RA~~risk assessment.	M
Jury Deliberation Room	
Provide silent duress alarm buttons.	M
Minimize windows with the line of sight into jury deliberation room.	M
Payment Counter	
Provide silent duress alarm buttons.	M
Provide video surveillance.	M
Provide two-way audio communications.	M
Provide bullet-resistant panels and glazing to counters accessible outside security screening.	M
Court Clerk Offices	
Provide silent duress alarm buttons in private corridor adjacent to chambers.	M
Executive/Administrative Offices	
Provide silent duress alarm buttons	M
Family Court Services Mediator Offices	
Provide silent duress alarm buttons in offices.	M
Provide video surveillance outside offices in adjacent corridors.	M
Child Waiting Areas	
Provide silent duress alarm button at staffed position.	M
Provide video surveillance inside child waiting areas.	M
Provide video surveillance in corridor outside child waiting areas.	M
Lobby and Waiting Area	
Provide only one public entrance.	M
Eliminate potential areas of concealment in unscreened areas.	M
Provide duress alarms, magnetometer, and package weapons scanner at screening station.	M
Design lobby to accommodate direct visual surveillance by security.	M
Design lobby to allow increased levels of security.	M
Provide barriers between lobby and secure areas of building.	M
Physically isolate unscreened lobby area.	M
Provide video surveillance of lobby and secure public circulation areas of building.	M
Provide minimum 6″ nonstructural architectural finish around interior columns.	M
Harden interior structure in lobby for hand-carried satchel threat (charge weight to be specified by ~~RA~~risk assessment).	RA
Harden lobby enclosure for hand-carried satchel threat (charge weight to be specified by ~~RA~~risk assessment).	RA

Table 4.3 continues on next page

DIVISION ONE: DESIGN CRITERIA
1 General Principles
2 Courthouse Organization
3 Site Design
4 COURTHOUSE SECURITY
4.A Objectives
4.B Design, Technology, and Operations
4.C Factors Affecting Security Levels
4.D Risk Assessment Procedures
4.E Physical Security Planning Criteria
4.F Structural Systems
4.G Mechanical, Electrical, and Fire Protection Systems
4.H Electronic Security Planning Criteria
4.I Electronic Security Systems
4.J Bullet-Resistant Glazing and Panels
5 Court Set
6 Jury Facilities and Court Administration
7 Special Services
8 In-Custody Defendant Receiving, Holding, and Transport
9 Public Spaces
10 Building Support Services

Table 4.3 Notes

M: Compliance ~~Mandatory~~mandatory

RA: As ~~Determined~~ determined by ~~Risk~~ risk ~~Assessment~~assessment

SR: Strongly ~~r~~Recommended

Table 4.3 Security Standards *continued*

	COMPLIANCE
Current Case File Storage Areas	
Locate within private circulation.	M
Provide silent duress alarms at staffed positions.	M
Provide card reader.	M
Provide video surveillance.	M
Provide dual authentication card reader with ~~personal identification number (~~PIN~~)~~.	RA
Provide remote door unlock.	RA
Evidence and Exhibit Storage Rooms	
Locate evidence room within private circulation.	M
Provide dual authentication card reader with PIN for evidence room.	M
Provide video surveillance of evidence room door.	M
Locate exhibit storage rooms within private circulation.	M
Provide hard ceilings in exhibit storage rooms and secure by lock and key.	M
Loading Dock and Mailroom	
Provide silent duress alarm button.	M
Provide video surveillance.	M
Provide space and driveway arrangement to permit manual screening of delivery trucks.	M
Provide minimum 6″ nonstructural architectural finish around interior columns.	M
Physically isolate the loading dock and provide a means for venting gas pressures.	RA
Locate critical and occupied space at least 25′ away from loading dock and mailroom, or harden enclosure for package threat (charge weight to be specified by ~~RA~~risk assessment).	RA
Harden interior structure in loading dock and mailroom for package threat (charge weight to be specified by ~~RA~~risk assessment).	RA
Provide package scanner in mailroom.	RA
Security Operations Center	
Use modular workstation furniture where an SOC is provided.	M
Provide SOC to operate and monitor electronic security systems.	RA
Duplicate functions of in-custody detention control room.	RA
Building Envelope	
Exterior doors shall be locked after hours.	M
Limit windows at critical areas.	M
Provide laminated or tempered glass for debris mitigation.	M
Provide forced entry protection at the first floor (forced-entry rating to be specified by ~~RA~~risk assessment).	M
Provide video surveillance of building perimeter and all entrances.	M
Provide the minimum number of card readers at perimeter doors that will facilitate operations.	M
Monitor exterior doors and glass with an intrusion alarm system.	RA
Provide blast-, bullet-, or forced entry–resistant façade to meet performance requirements.	RA

Table 4.3 continues on next page

Table 4.3 Security Standards *continued*

	COMPLIANCE
Structural Systems	
Design structures greater than two stories tall to resist progressive collapse using the alternate path method.	M
Fully grout and reinforce exterior concrete masonry unit walls as well as those around high-risk areas with an identified explosive threat, with connections designed to allow full development of capacity at the supports.	M
Minimize floor-to-floor heights.	SR
Minimize column bay spacing.	SR
Avoid overhangs with occupied space above.	SR
Limit or avoid large transfer girders.	SR
Provide redundancy and alternative load paths.	SR
Use ductile structural systems.	SR
Design structural members to satisfy performance requirements if explosive threats are specified, and detail the connections to prevent brittle modes of failure.	RA
Harden floor and/or walls to resist specified threat in high-risk areas.	RA
Use circular columns with spiral reinforcing for concrete buildings; encase columns in concrete for steel buildings.	RA
Design structural columns to resist specified explosive threat located 3′ away.	RA
Use one-way wall elements spanning from floor to floor.	RA
Mechanical, Electrical, and Fire Protection Systems	
Locate critical utilities as far as possible from high-risk areas.	M
Locate emergency generators at least 50′ from the primary electrical source.	M
Avoid routing critical utilities next to parking areas.	M
Protect air intakes.	M
Protect critical utilities and service entrances.	M
Locate main and backup systems as far apart from each other as possible, a minimum of 50′.	RA
Isolate mailroom HVAC zone.	RA
Provide mailroom purging system.	RA
Provide redundancy of critical systems.	RA
Electronic Security Systems	
Provide access control between public, private, and detention areas.	M
Provide electronic building perimeter protection.	M
Provide recording of all cameras.	M
Provide monitoring of intrusions and duress alarms.	M
Integrate security subsystems for automated responses to system events.	M
Use court network infrastructure for ~~Security~~ security subsystems ~~shall utilize court network infrastructure~~ for intersystem communications and communications between MDF/IDF rooms.	M
~~Coordinate current and future infrastructure and control systems.~~	~~M~~

DIVISION ONE: DESIGN CRITERIA

1 General Principles
2 Courthouse Organization
3 Site Design

4 COURTHOUSE SECURITY
4.A Objectives
4.B Design, Technology, and Operations
4.C Factors Affecting Security Levels
4.D Risk Assessment Procedures
4.E Physical Security Planning Criteria
4.F Structural Systems
4.G Mechanical, Electrical, and Fire Protection Systems
4.H Electronic Security Planning Criteria
4.I Electronic Security Systems
4.J Bullet-Resistant Glazing and Panels

5 Court Set
6 Jury Facilities and Court Administration
7 Special Services
8 In-Custody Defendant Receiving, Holding, and Transport
9 Public Spaces
10 Building Support Services

Table 4.4 Notes

R: Required

R1: Required as ~~a~~Applicable

D: Discretionary

Table 4.4 Electronic Security Standards by Space Type

	Card Access	Card + PIN Access	Card Access—Long Range	Door/Gate Position Monitoring	Local Alarm	Video Surveillance	X-~~ray~~ Ray Screening	Magnetometer	Exit Control/Turnstile	Duress Alarm	Voice Communications at Door/Window	Vehicle Door/Gate	Gate Barrier Arms	Door Intrusion Detection	Glass Break Detection	Intrusion System Keypad	Security Monitoring and Control Workstation	Headend Equipment
Site																		
Secure driveway entrance	R		R	R		R					R	R	R					
Secure driveway						R												
Secure parking vehicle entrance	R		R	R		R						R	R					
In-custody driveway entrance	R		R	R		R					R	R	R					
In-custody driveway						R												
Parking driveway entrance						R												
Utility equipment & access						R												
Generator and ~~Fuel~~ fuel ~~Storage~~storage						R												
Building Perimeter																		
Main entrance doors	R			R	R1	R					P			R1	R1	R1		
Perimeter doors	R1			R	R1	R					R1			R1	R1	R1		
Emergency egress doors				R	R	R								R1	R1			
Operable windows, hatches, vents				R1		R1								R1	R1			
Secure parking area						R				R								
Secure parking building entrance	R					R				R				R1	R1	R1		
Exterior utility ~~and~~& ~~mep~~ MEP rooms				R		R								R1				
Loading dock	R1			R		R					R			R1				
Receiving	R			R		R	R1				R			R1				
Building exterior						R												

Table 4.4 continues on next page

Table 4.4 Electronic Security Standards by Space Type *continued*

	Card Access	Card + PIN Access	Card Access—Long Range	Door/Gate Position Monitoring	Local Alarm	Video Surveillance	X-ray Screening	Magnetometer	Exit Control/Turnstile	Duress Alarm	Voice Communications at Door/Window	Vehicle Door/Gate	Gate Barrier Arms	Door Intrusion Detection	Glass Break Detection	Intrusion System Keypad	Security Monitoring and Control Workstation	Headend Equipment
Interior Public Circulation																		
Public queuing area						R												
Weapons screening station						R	R	R	R	R								
Information ~~Kiosk~~ kiosk or ~~Counter~~counter						R				R								
Courtroom public waiting area						R												
Interior Private Circulation																		
Public to p~~P~~rivate ~~Area~~ area ~~Doors~~doors	R			R	R	R												
Court Set																		
Courtroom entry door		R		R		R												
Courtroom jury door	R1			R	R1													
Courtroom bench door	R1			R1	R1													
Courtroom w~~W~~ell and ~~Spectator~~ spectator ~~Area~~area						R												
Judge's bench										R								
Clerk's stations										R								
Court security officer's ~~Station~~station										R								
~~Courtroom holding door~~						R												

Table 4.4 continues on next page

DIVISION ONE: DESIGN CRITERIA
1 General Principles
2 Courthouse Organization
3 Site Design
4 COURTHOUSE SECURITY
4.A Objectives
4.B Design, Technology, and Operations
4.C Factors Affecting Security Levels
4.D Risk Assessment Procedures
4.E Physical Security Planning Criteria
4.F Structural Systems
4.G Mechanical, Electrical, and Fire Protection Systems
4.H Electronic Security Planning Criteria
4.I Electronic Security Systems
4.J Bullet-Resistant Glazing and Panels
5 Court Set
6 Jury Facilities and Court Administration
7 Special Services
8 In-Custody Defendant Receiving, Holding, and Transport
9 Public Spaces
10 Building Support Services

Commented [DP16]: Gensler: Make "well" lowercase.

Table 4.4 Notes

R: Required

R1: Required as Applicable

D: Discretionary

Table 4.4 Electronic Security Standards by Space Type *continued*

	Card Access	Card + PIN Access	Card Access—Long Range	Door/Gate Position Monitoring	Local Alarm	Video Surveillance	X-~~ray~~-Ray Screening	Magnetometer	Exit Control/Turnstile	Duress Alarm	Voice Communications at Door/Window	Vehicle Door/Gate	Gate Barrier Arms	Door Intrusion Detection	Glass Break Detection	Intrusion System Keypad	Security Monitoring and Control Workstation	Headend Equipment
Court Support																		
Chambers	D			D						R								
Court reporter's room	D			D														
Jury deliberation room	D			D						R								
Entry vestibule		R		R		R												
Law enforcement waiting area																		
Courtroom exhibit storage	R			R														
Evidence storage		R		R	R	R												
Jury Assembly Facilities																		
Entry/Queuing						R												
Reception/Registration	R			R						R								
Jury Assembly	R1			R1	R1	R												
Court Administration																		
Public Counter Queuing						R												
Public Transaction Counter										R	R							
Records Viewing Area	R1			R1		R				R1								
Training Room																		
Active Records Storage	R			R														
Inactive Records Storage	R1			R1														

Table 4.4 continues on next page

Table 4.4 Electronic Security Standards by Space Type *continued*

	Card Access	Card + PIN Access	Card Access—Long Range	Door/Gate Position Monitoring	Local Alarm	Video Surveillance	X-ray-Ray Screening	Magnetometer	Exit Control/Turnstile	Duress Alarm	Voice Communications at Door/Window	Vehicle Door/Gate	Gate Barrier Arms	Door Intrusion Detection	Glass Break Detection	Intrusion System Keypad	Security Monitoring and Control Workstation	Headend Equipment
Private Office																		
Executive/~~Director~~director										R1								
Mediator										R1								
Family Law / Self-Help Center																		
Waiting area						R												
Reception/~~Sign~~sign-in						R												
Orientation room	R1			R1														
Workshop	R1			R1														
Mediation room										R								
Child waiting area	R			R		R				R								
Alternative Dispute Resolution																		
Reception/waiting area										R								
Mediation/arbitration rooms										R								
Related Justice Agency Spaces																		
Multipurpose rooms	R1			R1		R1												
Attorney convenience center	R1			R1		R1												

Table 4.4 continues on next page

DIVISION ONE: DESIGN CRITERIA
1 General Principles
2 Courthouse Organization
3 Site Design
4 COURTHOUSE SECURITY
4.A Objectives
4.B Design, Technology, and Operations
4.C Factors Affecting Security Levels
4.D Risk Assessment Procedures
4.E Physical Security Planning Criteria
4.F Structural Systems
4.G Mechanical, Electrical, and Fire Protection Systems
4.H Electronic Security Planning Criteria
4.I Electronic Security Systems
4.J Bullet-Resistant Glazing and Panels
5 Court Set
6 Jury Facilities and Court Administration
7 Special Services
8 In-Custody Defendant Receiving, Holding, and Transport
9 Public Spaces
10 Building Support Services

Table 4.4 Notes

R: Required

R1: Required as ~~Applicable~~applicable

D: Discretionary

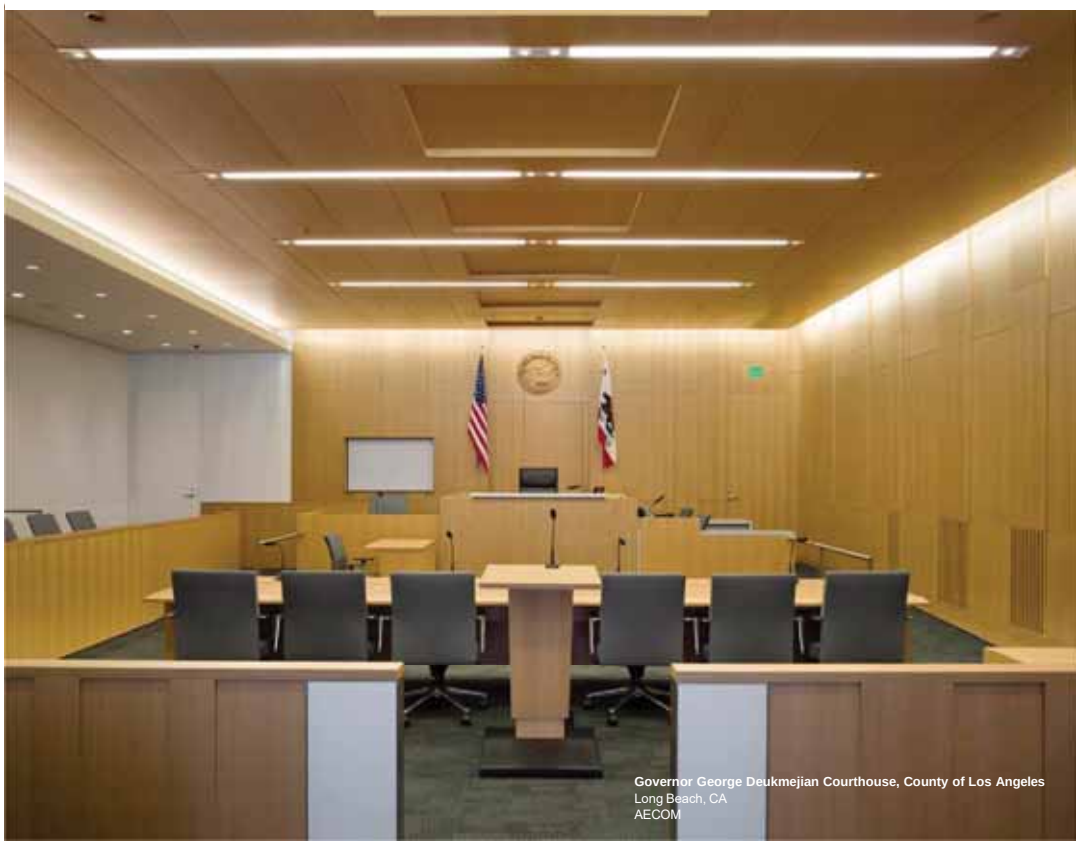
Table 4.4 Electronic Security Standards by Space Type *continued*

	Card Access	Card + PIN Access	Card Access—Long Range	Door/Gate Position Monitoring	Local Alarm	Video Surveillance	X-ray~~-Ray~~ Screening	Magnetometer	Exit Control/Turnstile	Duress Alarm	Voice Communications at Door/Window	Vehicle Door/Gate	Gate Barrier Arms	Door Intrusion Detection	Glass Break Detection	Intrusion System Keypad	Security Monitoring and Control Workstation	Headend Equipment
Building Support Services																		
Security operations center	R			R													R	
Loading dock	R			R		R												
Trash and ~~Recycling~~ recycling ~~Area~~area						R												
Media area						R												
Mailroom						R	R1			R								
Maintenance shop	R			R														
Furniture/equipment storage	R1			R1														
Information systems workroom	R			R														
MDF and IDF ~~Rooms~~rooms	R			R														R
Telecommunications storage room	R1			R1														
Telecommunications closet	R			R														
Electrical room	R1			R1														
Electrical closet	R1			R1														
Interior media space						R1												

DIVISION ONE: DESIGN CRITERIA

5 COURT SET

SECTION	TOPIC	PAGE
5.A	Objectives	5.2
5.B	Courtroom	5.3
5.C	Courtroom Accessibility	5.5
5.D	Courtroom Components	5.6
5.E	Courtroom Support Spaces	5.15



Governor George Deukmejian Courthouse, County of Los Angeles
Long Beach, CA
AECOM

The courtroom is the focal point of the judicial process, providing a formal setting for conducting the business of the court, and ~~is~~ the primary place where judicial officers, court staff, attorneys, and litigants or defendants interact.

Refer to tool 2, ~~catalog~~ Catalog of ~~courtroom~~ Courtroom ~~layouts~~ Layouts for ~~california~~ California ~~trial~~ Trial ~~courts~~Courts, for application in the design of all ~~fully~~ fully or partially state-funded new courthouses to be used by the trial courts.

The courthouses are presumptively required to use templates for ~~Layouts~~ layouts of multipurpose courtrooms and holding core.

A courtroom millwork finish mockup is required for medium and large projects before beginning casework manufacturing~~,~~ to ensure the quality requirements of finish materials are satisfied.

For technical requirements, refer to chapter 15, Electrical Criteria; chapter 17, Network and Communication Systems; and chapter 18, Audiovisual Systems.

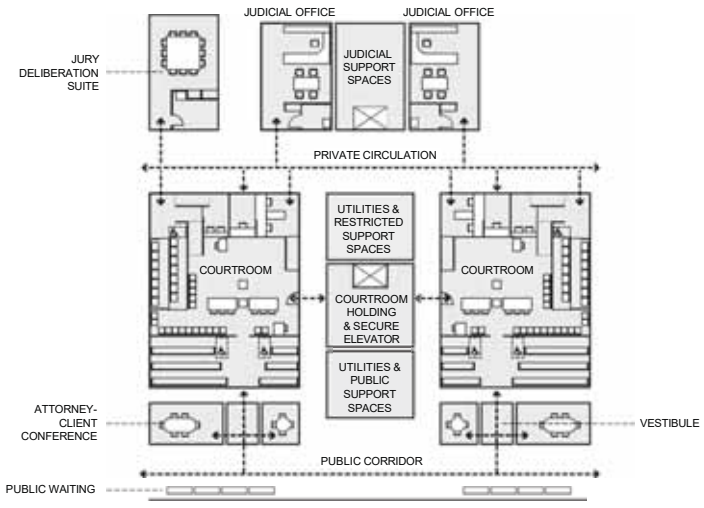
The court set includes courtrooms, judicial offices (subsequently referred to as chambers), chambers support space, jury deliberation rooms, witness waiting, attorney conference rooms, evidence storage, and equipment storage. A private corridor, with staff elevator and stairs, connects the chambers suites with staff offices and secure parking (see figure 5.1). Emergency egress for the private corridor should be separate from egress for the public corridor, but in some courthouses, the private population may egress into the public circulation and then use the public egress stair. In courthouses where separate stairs are provided, private area stairs may be unsecured to allow staff intercommunication between floors, whereas public stairs should always be secure, allowing egress only. Specific space requirements are developed during the programming phase, consistent with area requirements described in chapter 2, Courthouse Organization.

5.A OBJECTIVES

The courtroom accommodates the judicial officer (judge, commissioner, or hearing officer), court clerk, reporter, court security officer (CSO), attorneys, witnesses, jury, and spectators. Special-purpose courtrooms may include some variation of these participants.

The design of each courtroom shall:

- Ensure that the participants in any proceeding are able to see and hear the witness, jury, judicial officer, court clerk, court reporter, and attorneys.~~;~~
- Protect witnesses and jurors from intimidation.~~;~~
- Provide reasonable confidentiality for attorneys, defendants, litigants, and judicial officers.~~;~~



Note: For illustration only. Refer to tool 2, Catalog of Courtroom Layouts for California Trial Courts, for courtroom template plans.

Figure 5.1 Illustration of Typical Courtroom Floor Organization

- Provide full accessibility for persons with disabilities to the witness stand, jury box, spectator areas, judge's bench, and clerk's station.~~,~~
- Provide security and safe emergency egress.~~;~~
- Provide ease of assistance in emergency situations.~~;~~ ~~and~~
- Provide spaces with sufficient flexibility to allow change in future court operations~~.~~.
- Demonstrate and ensure adequate sightlines in courtrooms during the design phase ~~where identified~~ with three-dimensional renderings and animation. Prepare reusable mockups to verify ~~—~~ sightlines during construction phase. ~~(S~~see section 5.C.2.d).

DIVISION ONE: DESIGN CRITERIA
1 General Principles
2 Courthouse Organization
3 Site Design
4 Courthouse Security
5 COURT SET
5.A Objectives
5.B Courtroom
5.C Courtroom Accessibility
5.D Courtroom Components
5.E Courtroom Support Spaces
8 In-Custody Defendant Receiving, Holding, and Transport
9 Public Spaces
10 Building Support Services

Commented [SR1]: This is important as this was an issue at Willows and Indio. At willows, we had to make changes after construction, and at Indio, we had to make changes after mockup.

Commented [DP1R2]: See the requirement about mockups on page 5.6.

5.B COURTROOM

1. Basic Courtroom Types

~~This~~ The *Facilities Standards* ~~document~~ recognizes two types of courtrooms~~s~~, multipurpose ~~courtrooms~~ and specialty ~~courtrooms~~.

1.1 Multipurpose Courtrooms

The multipurpose courtroom is the typical trial courtroom in California, capable of accommodating every kind of court proceeding. It is sized and configured to support a variety of proceedings in different case types, including the array of criminal and civil pretrial calendars and proceedings, jury trials, and court trials. The use of multipurpose courtrooms maximizes a court's capacity to accommodate its overall courtroom workload and ~~to~~ adjust its processes and calendar design, which are necessary because subject ~~-~~matter caseloads change over time and changes in law place new demands on trial courts.

1.2 Specialty Courtrooms

Specially designed and sized courtrooms may be required in light of population size, caseload volumes, courthouse scale, and other considerations unique to a specific project. Specialty courtrooms can include multiple jury courtrooms, high-volume criminal arraignment/pretrial courtrooms equipped with secure high-volume in-custody docks (located adjacent to court holding facilities), high-volume traffic courtrooms, juvenile delinquency and dependency courtrooms, and mental health courtrooms, among others. Specialty courtrooms are by their nature not as flexible as multipurpose courtrooms for use in a variety of different case types and proceedings. Accordingly, specialty courtrooms should be considered only when the multipurpose courtroom cannot effectively and safely be used.

2. Initial Design Considerations

Tool 2, Catalog of Courtroom Layouts for California Trial Courts, is a collection of approved templates of multipurpose courtrooms that were developed based on—and tested against—designs used in constructed courthouse projects. These templates offer optimal sightlines throughout the courtroom, the capability to accommodate multiparty cases, additional space for chairs in front of the gallery, sufficient work area for two clerks, sufficient space in the witness box for an interpreter, sufficient working space for the bench officer, ease of access to the jury box, inclusion of an array of courtroom security solutions, adequate size and proportion of all working areas, adequate gallery size, the most effective and efficient overall use of space including a rectangular footprint, the positioning of counsel tables to ensure privacy from juror chair sightlines, and the highest-quality approaches to the various design considerations articulated in the balance of this chapter.

The proposed inclusion of multipurpose courtrooms for a new construction project that does not adopt approved templates from tool 2, Catalog of Courtroom Layouts for California Trial Courts, will be presumed to be unsupportable and—absent a showing that overcomes the presumption—will be disallowed.

Tool 2 also includes examples of courtroom floor plans of constructed California courthouses. The examples are similar to the template layouts and are included to enable design teams to compare design floor plans with built courtrooms and, if necessary, visit the courtrooms in lieu of constructing courtroom mockups. These floor plans include multipurpose and specialty courtroom designs.

The Catalog of Courtroom Layouts does not contain templates for specialty courtrooms.

For the number of courtroom requirements in a project, the program team and court should clearly identify any specialty courtroom needs during the programming phase because later identification in the design process can lead to compromised solutions.

The proposed inclusion of multipurpose courtrooms for a new construction project that does not adopt approved templates from tool 2, ~~catalog~~ Catalog of ~~courtroom~~ Courtroom ~~layouts~~ Layouts for ~~california~~ California ~~trial~~ Trial ~~courts~~Courts, will be presumed to be ~~Unsupportable~~ unsupportable and—absent a showing that overcomes the presumption—will be disallowed.

This presumption does not apply to part-time satellite and specialty court facilities described in chapter 2, sections ~~2, sections~~ 2.C.7 and 2.C.8.

Commented [DP2]: Gensler: add this reference back in.

3. Courtroom Entries

Commented [PS3]: Courtroom entries should have the fire rating at the corridor doors so that the doors directly into the courtroom do not need to have panic hardware/latching which disrupts court in session

Commented [DP3R2]: This has been added to chapter 2.

All courtrooms, regardless of whether in-custody proceedings occur there, require three distinct points of entry:

- Public—for spectators, attorneys, parties, witnesses, and press—through a vestibule from the public corridor.
- Private—for judicial officers, jurors, court personnel, and designated court participants—through two doorways from a private court staff corridor.
- Detention—for in-custody defendants, detention officers, and CSOs—through a controlled, secure entry near the CSO's station and defense attorney table from the detention (secure) circulation system.

4. Courtroom Adjacencies

a. Locate courtrooms adjacent to court floor holding cells (or area reserved for the future addition of secure holding cells). In some instances, multipurpose courtrooms are used initially only for civil proceedings and do not require access to court floor holding facilities. In the initial construction, however, provisions must be included for future construction of secure holding directly adjacent to the courtroom.

b. Locate courtrooms for easy access from judicial chambers. Judicial chambers and related support spaces shall be adjacent to the private corridor, providing judges and staff quick courtroom access.

c. Courtrooms may be assigned to an individual judge. Where courtrooms are not dedicated for use by one bench officer, chambers can be remote from the courtroom.

d. If chambers are colocated in an area remote from the courtrooms, such as on adjoining floors, a robing room and conference area may be necessary adjacent to the courtroom.

5. Corner Bench or Center Bench Layouts

California courtrooms may use either a corner bench or ~~a~~ center bench configuration. Each offers different design and operational opportunities. Selection of either is a project decision, to be based on the following design and operational criteria:

- Optimum sightlines among the judge, jury, attorneys, and witness;
- Ease of accommodating two courtroom clerks;
- Ability to move paper documents between clerk and judge;
- Sightlines to projected images;
- Full accessibility to the bench, other raised platforms, and areas of the courtroom;
- Dignity and formality;
- Accommodation of courtroom technology and computer equipment; and
- Space efficiency.

5.C COURTROOM ACCESSIBILITY

1. Floor Levels

Because floor levels of courtroom components vary, maintaining sightlines among all components while providing full accessibility shall be a priority.

a. The accessible path of travel to the judge's courtroom workspace (bench), courtroom clerk's workspace, witness box, and jury box must address the recommended "height above floor" specifications discussed in table 5.1. Separate paths of travel for persons with disabilities shall be avoided.

b. The judge's circulation path must never be in front of the bench.

Table 5.1 Court Component Information

ELEMENT OR WORKSTATION	FURNITURE-/-CASEWORK WIDTH	DEPTH	HEIGHT ABOVE FLOOR	NUMBER OF OCCUPANTS	AREA SF
Judge	6′–7′	24″ ~~MAX~~max.	+15″–18″	1	64–80
Courtroom ~~Clerk~~clerk	10′	24″–27″	+0″–14″	1– or 2	75–85
CSO	4′	30″	+0″	1	25
Court ~~Reporter~~reporter	4′	30″	+0″	1	25
Witness ~~Stand~~stand	6′		+0″–14″	1 or 2	33–43
Jury ~~Box~~box	N~~/~~A	N~~/~~A	(~~1st~~ Row 1~~tier~~) +0″–7″ (~~2nd~~ Row 2~~tier~~) 6″–14″	14	144
Counsel ~~Tables~~tables	7′–10′	3′–4′	+0″	3 ea.	90–110
Lectern	38″	2′	+0″	0	

Note: Heights of judge, clerk, and witness stand must be in strict relation—judge highest~~:~~, clerk within 12″ of judge~~:~~, and witness stand at least 6″ lower than judge. The number of litigants at the tables can be ~~more~~ higher if size and configuration permit~~s~~. This table provides general guidance for measurements. Refer to the templates in ~~T~~tool 2 for the width, depth, and height measurements per the selected template.
CSO = court security officer
N~~/~~A = not applicable.
SF = square feet.

DIVISION ONE: DESIGN CRITERIA
1 General Principles
2 Courthouse Organization
3 Site Design
4 Courthouse Security
5 COURT SET
5.A Objectives
5.B Courtroom
5.C Courtroom Accessibility
5.D Courtroom Components
5.E Courtroom Support Spaces
6 Jury Facilities and Court Administration
7 Special Services
8 In-Custody Defendant Receiving, Holding, and Transport
9 Public Spaces
10 Building Support Services

Commented [DP4]: Sentence added to address discrepancy with the variety of templates.

2. Floor Level Changes

Level changes of floors can be achieved in a variety of ways.

a. Ramps, with handrails as required by code based on the slope of the ramp, are the preferred solution for providing universal access and operationally functional spaces. However, a long ramp may be required in the private corridor, or the private corridor may be constructed at an elevation above that of the primary courtroom floor elevation. A multipurpose courtroom litigation area may accommodate up to 18 people, along with exhibits and a court reporter. Ramps to the courtroom clerk, witness box, and first level of the jury box shall not create a hazard or encroach on~~into~~ the litigation area.

b. A two-stop lift to the judge's bench, with ramps to the witness area and the clerk at the courtroom floor level, is another approach. However, the Judicial Council does not allow motorized lifts because of operation and serviceability concerns, except in retrofit situations where space is too limited to accommodate ramps. The approach to use motorized lifts should be avoided in new construction.

c. A three-stop lift to the witness's and judge's level of the bench may be the only choice in retrofit situations where space is extremely limited, but lifts are the least preferred method because their use focuses attention on the person with disabilities, they may require staff assistance to function properly, and they require servicing and testing.

d. A courtroom millwork finish mockup is required for medium and large projects before casework manufacturing may begin~~,~~ to ensure that the quality requirements of finish materials are satisfied. The mockup materials shall be reused during the courthouse construction. For small projects, an in-place mockup may be considered.

5.D COURTROOM COMPONENTS

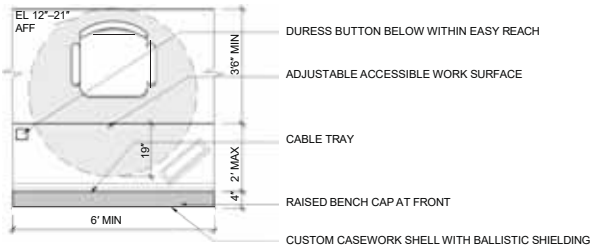
The following design criteria shall apply to courtroom components.

1. Judge's Bench

The size, location, height, area, and design of the bench reinforce the role of the judge as the administrator of justice and ~~as~~ the principal controller of order in the courtroom. Design the bench to be the focal point of the courtroom without favoring any one party.

a. Design the bench size and height to be proportionate to the courtroom and to ensure an unobstructed view of and from the entire courtroom. Raise the bench so that the judge's eye level when the judge is seated is higher than that of any standing participant or spectator. The height of the barrier between the judge's bench and the well depends on the actual height of the judge's platform above the well. The attorney's view of the judge's desktop needs to be considered if the judge's platform height is lower as a result of ramping and accessibility issues.

b. Provide a work surface ~~72″ to 84″ wide by a recommended 24″ deep~~as required per the selected template in ~~T~~tool 2 with a 3″ high privacy screen in front. This area must be of sufficient size to keep paperwork and reference materials within reach and accommodate a computer monitor. The work surface at the judge's bench is not meant for sit-stand configuration but may be adjustable to be higher or lower than the standard work surface height for a comfortable seated position. If the work surface needs to be higher than the in-built 3″ privacy screen, a modesty panel may be attached to the table. Provide adequate bookshelves behind or under the bench. Provide an area for conferences between the judge and attorneys at the sidebar. (Sidebars are typically conducted on the side of the litigation area opposite the jury.) Provide built-in or movable undercounter storage drawers and cabinets~~.~~ (~~Refer to~~see figures 5.2 and 5.3).



EL = elevation.
AFF = above finished floor.
MIN = minimum.

Figure 5.2 Judge's Bench Plan

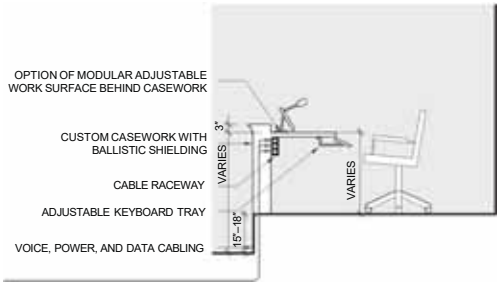


Figure 5.3 Judge's Bench Section

c. Between the judge's area and the witness box, a fixed barrier of sufficient width and height to prevent a witness from reaching the judge while maintaining sightlines is required. The judge's exit route should be away from the witness.

d. Provide a minimum of 3′6″ between the edge of the judge's desk and the wall behind. This space will accommodate a wheelchair or mobility device and allow the judge sufficient work area. Design the front and sides of the bench to facilitate transfer of documents and verbal communication between the judge, courtroom clerk, and court reporter.

e. Design the bench with a custom casework wall compatible with the courtroom design. Line the wall with bullet-resistant material that meets the criteria of Underwriters Laboratories' (UL) 752 Level 3. Provide accessible under-desktop cable raceways to accommodate voice, data, video, power, and courtroom technology cabling.

DIVISION ONE: DESIGN CRITERIA
1 General Principles
2 Courthouse Organization
3 Site Design
4 Courthouse Security
5 COURT SET
5.A Objectives
5.B Courtroom
5.C Courtroom Accessibility
5.D Courtroom Components
5.E Courtroom Support Spaces
6 Jury Facilities and Court Administration
7 Special Services
8 In-Custody Defendant Receiving, Holding, and Transport
9 Public Spaces
10 Building Support Services

The visual and physical relationships between the courtroom elements must be carefully planned to ensure a successful design.

f. Consider an ergonomic adjustable desk system behind the casework shell in lieu of custom millwork. This component can be made from modular furniture, providing adjustable heights and angles of desktop.

g. Provide areas for computer equipment, a printer, storage, a telephone, and outlets for data transmission. The bench requires a microphone with a mute button and may include the courtroom audio controls. Provide holes and grommets in the work surface for wire management. Refer to chapter 16, Lighting Criteria, and chapter 18, Audiovisual Systems.

2. Courtroom Clerk's Station

The courtroom clerk is responsible for maintaining a record of case actions and files and for receiving and labeling exhibits. The courtroom clerk must be close to the judge— to transfer exhibit papers and files by hand and to communicate privately— and must be accessible to counsel for marking and introducing documents. The height difference between the clerk's station floor and the judge's bench floor should not exceed 12″; the constant transfer of files creates an ergonomic problem with a greater difference. Consider a "pass-throughs" or other millwork solutions to assist in paper passing. (See sec figure 5.4). The clerk's station is located on the same side of the courtroom as the CSO and near a doorway to the private corridor.
Access may be provided directly from clerk's station to courtroom well.

a. The clerk's workstation requires a work surface that is 120″ wide by 24″ to 27″ deep and must accommodate two clerks. An optional 8″ to 12″ deep shelf in front of the workstation may be added to provide a writing surface and additional screening of documents on the clerk's desk. The clerk's workstation requires substantial area for placement of files, forms, supplies, and other material. (seeRefer to figures 5.5 and 5.6). A telephone equipped with a flashing light rather than a ringer is recommended. An electronic signaling system connecting the CSO's station and the jury deliberation room is required.

b. Because the clerk's station is the primary work area, design the clerk's stationit like the judge's bench, compatible with the courtroom design. Provide a custom casework low front wall lined with bullet-resistant material that meets the criteria of UL 752 Level 3, similar to the judge's bench. Behind the paneling, consider using a modular furniture work surface with adjustable height to provide flexibility. Locate a wireless duress alarm button in a discreet location under the work surface. Because this work area is used for all office functions, such as typing and writing, this area must meet all requirements for ergonomic office workspaces.

c. The clerk's workstation must be cable cable-ready for electronic equipment and requires multiple telephone, data, and electrical outlets and audio controls. Provide concealed, accessible raceways to incorporate voice, data, video, power, and audiovisual cabling.

d. The clerk's workstation must be designed with space for a printer and possibly a copier. Provide flexibility in terms of locating the printer; some clerks prefer the printer located adjacent to their work surfaces, whereas others prefer it located behind their workstations or immediately adjacent, but not in the courtroom. Provide under-counter file drawers and cabinets for files and forms, and provide file storage behind the workstation. Maximizing the amount of surface area behind the workstation is desirable for stacking case files and other material.

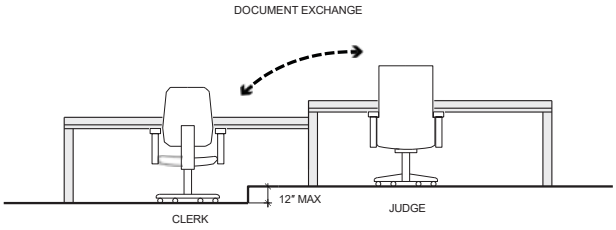


Figure 5.4 Bench and Clerk Elevation

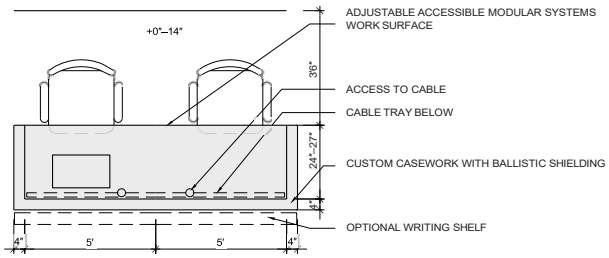


Figure 5.5 Clerk Station Plan

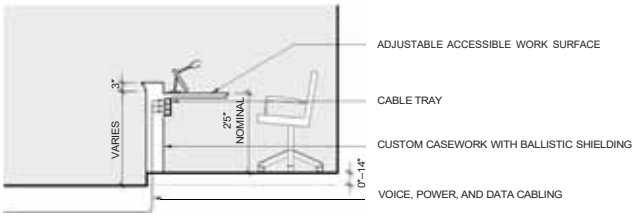


Figure 5.6 Clerk Station Section

3. Witness Box

a. The witness box shall be located between the judge and the jury and in such a way that the witness's face is clearly visible to the judge, jury, court clerks, court reporter, and counsel tables.

b. ~~Design t~~The witness box shall~~must~~ be designed to comfortably seat the witness and interpreter (if required) and to accommodate a wheelchair or mobility device. The witness chair shall be height adjustable and movable, except in certain buildings, where it shall be fixed. ~~(Refer to~~see figures 5.7 and 5.8).

c. ~~Design t~~The witness box shall~~mut~~ be designed to maximize visibility between the jury and

DIVISION ONE: DESIGN CRITERIA
1 General Principles
2 Courthouse Organization
3 Site Design
4 Courthouse Security
5 COURT SET
5.A Objectives
5.B Courtroom
5.C Courtroom Accessibility
5.D Courtroom Components
5.E Courtroom Support Spaces
6 Jury Facilities and Court Administration
7 Special Services
8 In-Custody Defendant Receiving, Holding, and Transport
9 Public Spaces
10 Building Support Services

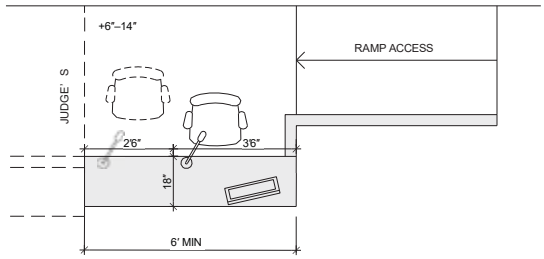


Figure 5.7 Witness Box Plan

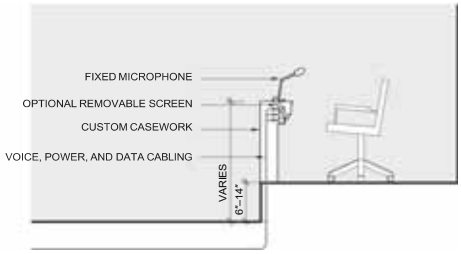


Figure 5.8 Witness Box Section

d. The witness box shall~~must~~ accommodate many people throughout the day. Ramps are the most common and preferred means to provide wheelchair access to this area and a wheelchair turning circle to permit forward entry and exit.

e. Witness boxes typically have a work surface for reference material, and an expert witness may have a computer for use during testimony. Line the wall behind the paneling of the witness box with bullet-resistant material that meets the criteria of ~~UL~~ UL 752 Level 3, similar to the judge's bench.

4. Court Reporter's Area

The court reporter provides verbatim recording of all court proceedings.

a. Locate the court reporter's area so that anything said by participants can be heard by the court reporter, and ensure sightlines to the judge, witness, and attorneys.

b. Provide a mobile (preferred) or stationary workstation that includes a work surface at least 24″ deep, with a lockable drawer for storage and a modesty panel.

c. Ensure that the workstation is cable ready for in-courtroom headphone audio output and computer-assisted real-time transcription. Provide concealed, accessible raceways to incorporate data, power, and audiovisual cabling.

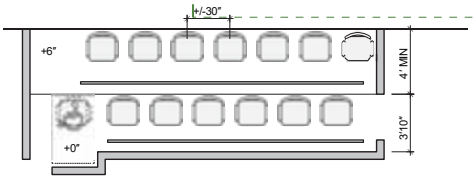


Figure 5.9 Jury Box Plan

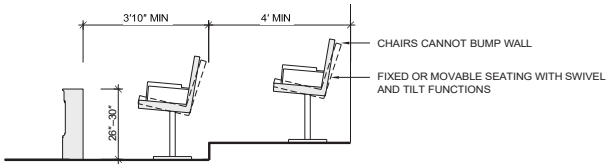


Figure 5.10 Jury Box Section

5. Jury Box

a. Provide clear sightlines from each juror to the witness, attorneys, judge, courtroom clerk, and evidence displays. The jury box cannot extend past either the witness box or the attorneys' tables. Provide direct access into the jury box from the private corridor to the deliberation room so that the jury does not have to pass in front of the bench or litigant tables~~.~~ ~~(Refer to~~see figures 5.9 and 5.10~~)~~.

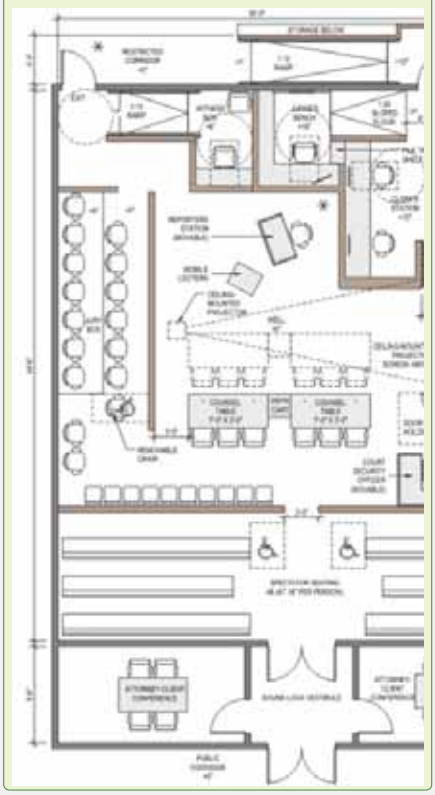
b. Design a two-tiered ~~The~~ jury box sized to accommodate 14 people~~, shall be two-tiered, that can accommodate~~including people with disabilities~~, and sized to accommodate 14 people~~. The dimensions shall be approximately 8′ by 18′. The first row of jurors may be at floor level. When locating accessible seating space, provide sightlines equivalent to sightlines for other jury seating, and integrate the accessible position into the overall seating layout so that it is equal in its location and opportunity to the other seats.

c. Design the jury box to prevent communication between jurors and ~~the~~ spectators and to guard against juror harassment. A space of 6′ between jurors and the spectator area railing is recommended. This area may be used to accommodate prospective jury members sitting on movable, stackable chairs while a jury is being impaneled. Where space is insufficient, provide a physical separation such as a transparent panel between the jury and spectator seating.

d. Provide comfortable, ergonomic jury chairs to accommodate people of all sizes. Chairs may be movable or fixed; however, fixed seating is recommended. The height should be adjustable from 16″ to 20″. Chairs must swivel and tilt and be spaced so that the arms do not collide and the chairs do not strike the rear wall. Provide sufficient aisle space in front of each row of seats for juror legroom. If required by the court, provide writing surfaces that are integral to the jury chairs. Provide a front modesty panel between 26″ and 33″ in height separating the jury box from the litigation area. Handrails may also be provided. The rear row of seating should be far enough away from the back wall to avoid scuff marks from chair backs or jurors' heads on the back wall. Provide a durable wall material behind the jury box ~~that is resistant to scuff marks from chair backs and head prints from jurors leaning back~~.

DIVISION ONE: DESIGN CRITERIA
1 General Principles
2 Courthouse Organization
3 Site Design
4 Courthouse Security
5 COURT SET
5.A Objectives
5.B Courtroom
5.C Courtroom Accessibility
5.D Courtroom Components
5.E Courtroom Support Spaces
6 Jury Facilities and Court Administration
7 Special Services
8 In-Custody Defendant Receiving, Holding, and Transport
9 Public Spaces
10 Building Support Services

Commented [DP5]: Gensler: change this to look like the jury box in this:



Commented [LD6]: If the first requirement is met, the second is unnecessary, right?

Commented [DP6R2]: I removed the redundancy, but kept the requirement for durability.

e. Incorporate additional elements such as glass panels into ~~High~~high-security courtrooms~~ may incorporate additional elements~~, as needed, ~~such as glass panels,~~ to secure the safety of the jury, spectators, staff, and court personnel and to ensure secure prisoner movement. Verify these requirements during the programming phase. In-custody defendants may not pass in front of the jury box on the way to and from the court floor holding area.

6. Litigation Area

The litigation area, or well, provides space for primary participants in activities of the judicial proceeding. Size varies~~,~~ depending on courtroom type, and components within the well vary by the type of proceeding.

a. Counsel tables: ~~Locate c~~Counsel tables are to be located in the courtroom so that attorneys can be seen and heard by other attorneys, the judge, the witness, the courtroom clerk, the court reporter, and the jury. Provide at least two movable, accessible counsel tables with space for comfortable, ergonomic, movable chairs. The counsel tables shall have a table box for data, video, and power. Separate grommets in the tables shall be provided for the two microphones. Design the floor boxes with flexibility in mind because the counsel tables are movable. Tables shall include a modesty panel to conceal defendant restraint devices. Provide a floor-attached U-bolt for the defense table. The table surface shall be scratch-resistant. Provide an area behind the counsel tables and between the spectator area for a row of chairs along the railing for staff, paralegals, or other involved parties~~.~~ (~~Refer to~~see figures 5.11 and 5.12). If special counsel is required, particularly in juvenile and domestic cases, provide additional tables or seating at one of the counsel tables.

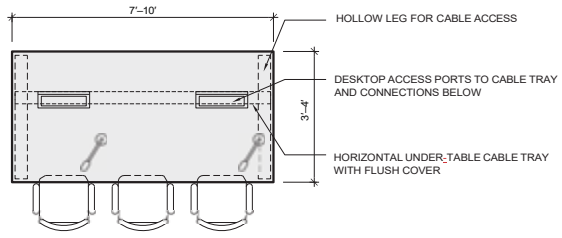


Figure 5.11 Counsel Table

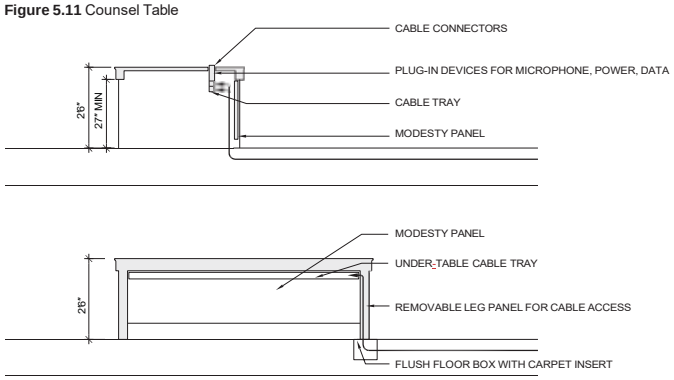


Figure 5.12 Counsel Table Section

b. Lectern: A movable, height-adjustable, universally accessible lectern may be provided that may be shared between courtrooms and located within reasonable proximity to the counsel tables. The lectern shall be floor supported (not tabletop mounted). Provide a shelf and a gooseneck with a clip for a wireless microphone.

c. Digital evidence presentation system placed between the two counsel tables: The system can be a cart shared between courtrooms or installed as a fixed shelf. It can contain a document camera and/or a Blu-ray player. Provide a recessed floor box with outlets for data, video, and power.

d. Egress: Emergency egress from the litigation area ~~may be either~~shall be provided out the front of the courtroom to the public corridor ~~or~~ and out the rear of the courtroom to the restricted corridor~~, or some combination of the two~~. Courts may require controlled access~~,~~ on private corridor doors~~.~~ that still allows for emergency exiting. Delayed egress exit devices are not permitted~~may be one way of achieving normally locked doors that still allow for emergency egress, provided that all the provisions of California Building Code section 1010 for "delayed egress locks" are satisfied. This solution needs to be approved by the authority having jurisdiction, including the Office of the State Fire Marshal. The California Building Code restricts the use of delayed egress locks in certain occupancy classifications, so courtrooms classified as Group A occupancy require the specific approval from the State Fire Marshal for using delayed egress locks as an alternative means of code compliance.~~ See chapter 4, section 4.H.5.d for additional requirements.

7. Exhibit Display Area

Provide space for exhibit display and a large ceiling-mounted projection screen or wall–mounted monitor in a location clearly visible to all court participants. (See chapter 18, Audiovisual Systems, for screen size standards.) Provide adequate clearance at the bottom of the screen when fully open to prevent head injuries for those walking by. Plan floor-level transition and steps to avoid a conflict with the projection screen.

8. Court Security Officer ~~(CSO)~~ Station

Locate the CSO's station within the litigation area to the rear of the well and in front of the spectators' barrier. The CSO is typically located near the door to the in-custody holding area and requires easy and quick access to the defendant's table.

a. Provide the CSO station with a small work surface, modesty panel 36" tall above finish floor, and lockable desk suitable for storage of a service pistol and ammunition. A telephone equipped with a flashing light rather than a ringer is recommended. An electronic signaling system connecting the CSO's station and the jury deliberation room is required.

b. Incorporate bullet-resistant material into the paneling of the CSO station, and include a silent duress alarm system in the workstation design. Install impact-resistant gypboard behind the CSO's chair.

9. Spectator Area and Litigation Area Separation

The spectator area shall be separated from the litigation area to control movement and reinforce the hierarchy of the participants within the courtroom. This separation element, commonly called the "rail," may be millwork or predesigned and manufactured and shall have a clear opening at least 44″ wide.

DIVISION ONE: DESIGN CRITERIA

1 General Principles
2 Courthouse Organization
3 Site Design
4 Courthouse Security
5 COURT SET
5.A Objectives
5.B Courtroom
5.C Courtroom Accessibility
5.D Courtroom Components
5.E Courtroom Support Spaces
6 Jury Facilities and Court Administration
7 Special Services
8 In-Custody Defendant Receiving, Holding, and Transport
9 Public Spaces
10 Building Support Services

Commented [PD7]: Added per CFAC-WG direction to avoid nicks.

10. Spectator Area

A multipurpose courtroom has seating in the spectator area for the majority of the jury panel. The number of seats shall be planned to accommodate voir dire panels for jury selection through a combination of seats behind the rail, movable chairs inside the litigation area, and the jury box seating. See figures 5.20 and 5.21~~.~~ at the end of this chapter.

Commented [LD8]: Figures must be referenced in order and should be placed as close to their text reference as feasible.

a. Provide bench seating in lieu of individual theater-style seats because more people of various sizes can be accommodated and ~~because~~ bench seating is low maintenance (see figure 5.13). Contour and proportion benches to provide comfortable seating; provide hardwood veneer and solid wood construction. Anchor benches to the floor, but make them removable for relocation. Individual theater-style seating systems are not permitted. ~~See figure 5.13.~~

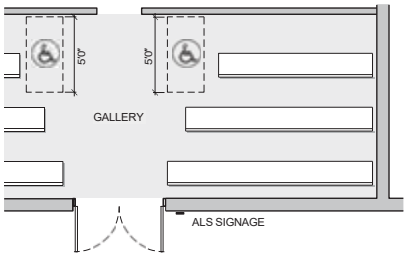
b. ~~Provide w~~Wheelchair spaces, companion seating, and semiambulatory seating shall~~must~~ be provided in ratios required by law. ~~(Refer to~~see figures 5.13 and 5.14).

c. In multipurpose courtrooms, accessible seating can be located in one area. In large courtrooms that are wider than a typical multipurpose courtroom, accessible seating areas shall be provided in several locations to equalize sightline advantages. A wide central aisle allows flexibility for persons with disabilities.

d. A companion seat must be located adjacent to the wheelchair space. The wheelchair space must align with the companion seat. ~~(Refer to~~see figure 5.14).

e. ~~Provide s~~Space in front of and behind the wheelchair space shall~~must~~ be provided such that the spectator using a wheelchair or mobility device can roll forward or backward to allow other spectators to exit a row. The wheelchair or mobility device cannot permanently block exit from an aisle.

f. Temporary seating, or a fold-down seat, may be placed in wheelchair spaces when not occupied, but this is not a preferred option because of the logistics of how the temporary seats are removed when the space is needed for a wheelchair.



ALS = assistive listening system.

Figure 5.13 Bench-Type Spectator Seating

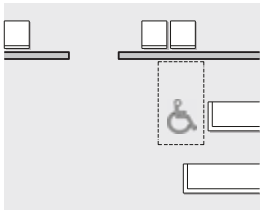


Figure 5.14 Companion Seating Adjacency

11. Sound Lock / Entry Vestibule

Provide a vestibule between the courtroom and the public circulation that will be a transition space and control noise. Place glass panels in the doors from the vestibule into the courtroom (doors from the public corridor into the vestibule are typically solid). The outside

doors from the corridor to the vestibule shall be lockable for security. It is preferable not to have exit devices, latches, or astragals on the doors from the courtroom to the vestibule due to noise considerations. If the attorney-witness conference rooms are needed while the courtroom is dark or locked, the vestibule may be unlocked to provide access. Flexibility in the locking system may be provided on a project-by-project basis.

For high-profile cases, court security staff may provide additional security screening at the courtroom entrance. Consider providing electrical outlets close to the courtroom entries to allow supplemental screening equipment to be plugged in.

12. Exhibit Storage

Provide a secure room or closet for storage of exhibits. For security, install a card reader entry system, camera surveillance, and hard ceiling. This space shall be accessible directly from the courtroom or from the private corridor. Two locking systems for all exhibit storage are recommended to prevent a borrowed access card from allowing access. Wall construction around exhibit storage should be secure and continuous from slab to slab to prevent access from above the ceiling.

13. Evidence Storage

Posttrial evidence storage should be provided in a secure central location adjacent to clerks' secure offices. Refer to the requirements for records storage in chapter 6, Jury Facilities and Court Administration.

5.E COURTROOM SUPPORT SPACES

Jury deliberation rooms and other support spaces off the private corridor may in the future accommodate staff offices or functions different from those in the original program. Therefore, the configurations and fixtures in these spaces must be flexible.

The private corridor and courtroom support spaces may be at a higher floor elevation than the courtroom well to reduce the ramping requirements within the courtroom.

1. Chambers

Chambers are the personal office and conference areas in which the judges conduct legal research and case study~~,~~ and hold meetings with attorneys or judicial personnel.

a. Because each judge requires a quiet, distraction-free work environment in which to perform these tasks, separate chambers shall be provided for each judge.

b. Chambers shall be provided with durable furniture with scratch-resistant work surfaces. Provide holes and grommets in the work surfaces for wire management.

c. Depending on the number of judges in a facility, one or more additional chambers for use by judges who are not regularly assigned to the court may be provided.

d. The chambers shall be designed with a private restroom.

e. Adequate sound control between the chambers and the staff and reception areas shall be provided to reduce sound transmission during sensitive conference sessions.

f. Natural lighting shall be provided to the chambers~~.~~ (~~Refer to~~see figure 5.15).

g. Judicial chambers may be clustered for improved collaboration and to share support functions. If chambers are clustered, space may be conserved and costs reduced by providing a common restroom to be shared among judges and a separate shared restroom for staff~~.~~ (~~Refer to~~see figure 5.16).

DIVISION ONE: DESIGN CRITERIA

1 General Principles
2 Courthouse Organization
3 Site Design
4 Courthouse Security
5 COURT SET
5.A Objectives
5.B Courtroom
5.C Courtroom Accessibility
5.D Courtroom Components
5.E Courtroom Support Spaces
6 Jury Facilities and Court Administration
7 Special Services
8 In-Custody Defendant Receiving, Holding, and Transport
9 Public Spaces
10 Building Support Services

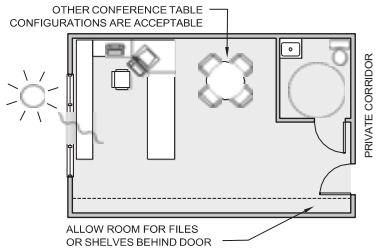


Figure 5.15 Judge's Chamber Plan

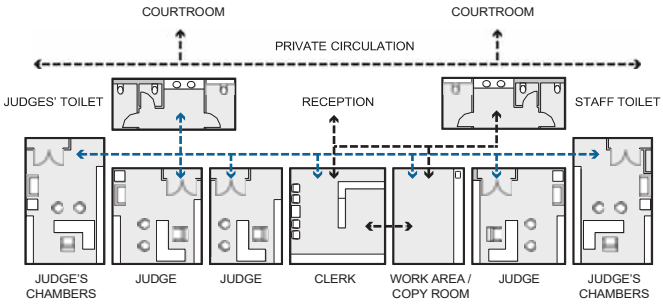


Figure 5.16 Clustered Chamber Layout

2. Support Staff Workstations, Reception, and Waiting Areas

The judicial office may be adjacent to and entered through an anteroom that contains space for floating courtroom clerks and support staff who perform clerical functions, receive and screen visitors, and maintain legal files for one or more judges. In some cases, this area may function as an unstaffed waiting area. The size of this area depends on related functional requirements.

3. Copy, Workroom, and Supply Area

Provide a copy, workroom, and supply area containing photocopy and fax machines to be accessible to judicial support staff, research attorneys, attorneys, and CSOs. A ratio of one copy workroom for every four to eight judges is required.

4. Court Reporter's Work Area

Court reporters transcribe court proceedings and review transcripts. Provide a separate court reporter's work area, grouping multiple court reporter workstations in a larger area. Locate the work area on the private corridor on the same floor as the courtrooms, on nearby courtroom floors, or on a court administration floor. Provide an area for locked transcript storage and general office supplies inside or adjacent to the court reporter's work area. Provide a shared counter space to assemble transcripts; provide cubicles with higher divider walls for regular work.

5. Conference Room

A conference room may be provided for judges as defined in the project program. This area may include bookshelves for reference materials. In small courts, this area may be combined with the jury deliberation function, provided that legal books are not accessible to jurors. A designated law library is not permitted.

6. Research Attorney Offices and Workstations

Space may be provided for research attorneys, who review case files and perform legal research for one or more judges.

7. Jury Deliberation Room

Provide jurors a private deliberation room that is free from distractions and outside interference, accessible from the private corridor~~.~~ (see~~Refer to~~ figures 5.17–5.19).

a. Provide not more than one juror deliberation room for every two courtrooms, and consider one deliberation room for every three courtrooms. The ratio may be verified by a study~~,~~ during programming~~,~~ of the recent data on the number of jury deliberations at a particular court; however, more than one jury deliberation room per two courtrooms must be approved by the Judicial Council. For efficiency and flexibility, some jury rooms can be initially assigned ~~for~~ to other courtroom support functions in the program but must be convertible to jury rooms without remodeling.

b. Design the jury deliberation room to accommodate a table allowing all jurors, including persons with disabilities, to participate equally without hierarchy. Round or square tables are preferred to long rectangular tables.

c. Design ~~The~~ the jury deliberation room ~~shall~~ to comfortably accommodate 12 jurors and allow use of charts, mounted exhibits, and video monitors for evidence.

d. Provide one accessible toilet room positioned so that the door opens from a vestibule. Orient the toilet room door for sound attenuation and to provide reasonable privacy to the toilet room.

e. Provide a ~~cold~~non-chilled ~~counter with lower cabinet and space for a~~ water bottle filling stati

f. Provide space for coat storage, which can be either a coat rack or a built-in closet space.

g. Provide natural light for ~~The~~ the room~~, shall have natural light;~~but ensure that windows do not allow jurors to communicate with people outside the court facility.

h. Design ~~Jury~~ jury deliberation rooms ~~shall be designed~~ in a flexible manner so that they can easily be converted into ~~a~~ chambers to accommodate assigned judges.

8. Attorney-Client Conference Rooms

Provide conference rooms for attorneys and clients and for use by witnesses.

a. Provide two attorney conference rooms for every courtroom. ~~In larger court facilities, t~~The ratio of conference rooms may be reduced. One room may be eliminated to add spectator seating.

b. Provide access to ~~Conference~~ conference rooms ~~may be accessible~~ from the public corridor~~,~~ if this is consistent with the court's security and operational procedures~~,~~. Alternatively, conference rooms ~~or~~ may be reached through the courtroom entry vestibule~~,~~ if access can be provided but controlled when the courtroom is not occupied.

DIVISION ONE: DESIGN CRITERIA

1 General Principles
2 Courthouse Organization
3 Site Design
4 Courthouse Security

5 COURT SET
5.A Objectives
5.B Courtroom
5.C Courtroom Accessibility
5.D Courtroom Components
5.E Courtroom Support Spaces

6 Jury Facilities and Court Administration
7 Special Services
8 In-Custody Defendant Receiving, Holding, and Transport
9 Public Spaces
10 Building Support Services

Commented [DP9]: Gensler: change cold to non-chilled.

Commented [TP10]: This came up in lessons learned the base cabinet and counter the design team kept installing sinks not water bottle fillers also there was discussion this should be cold or chilled water .

Commented [DP11]: Modified by CFAC-WG.

c. In addition, provide a secure attorney-client interview room adjacent to courtroom holding. The court security officers shallould have the ability to control ~~from the courtroom~~ both sides of the secure interview room from the courtroom. Refer to tool 5, In-Custody Interview Room Guidelines.

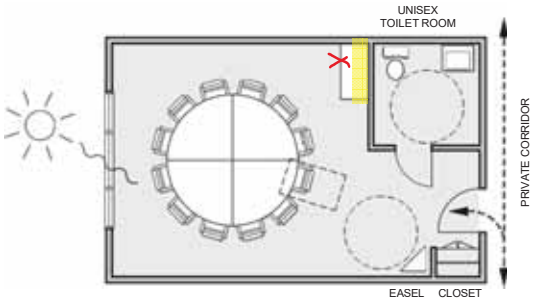


Figure 5.17 Jury Deliberation Room 400 SF

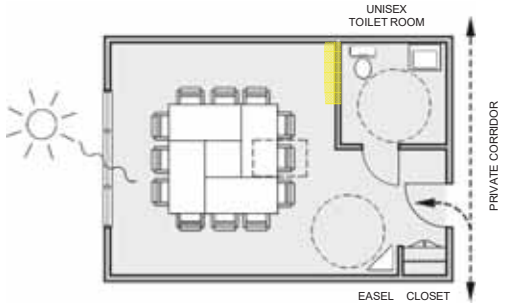


Figure 5.18 Jury Deliberation Room 345 SF

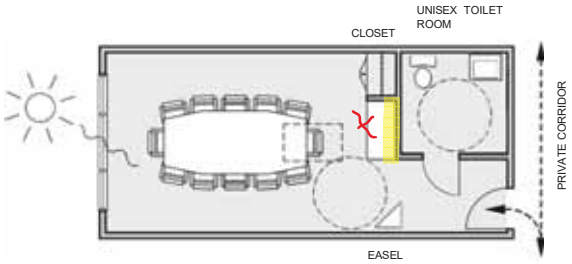


Figure 5.19 Jury Deliberation Room 300 SF

Page intentionally left blank

DIVISION ONE:
DESIGN CRITERIA

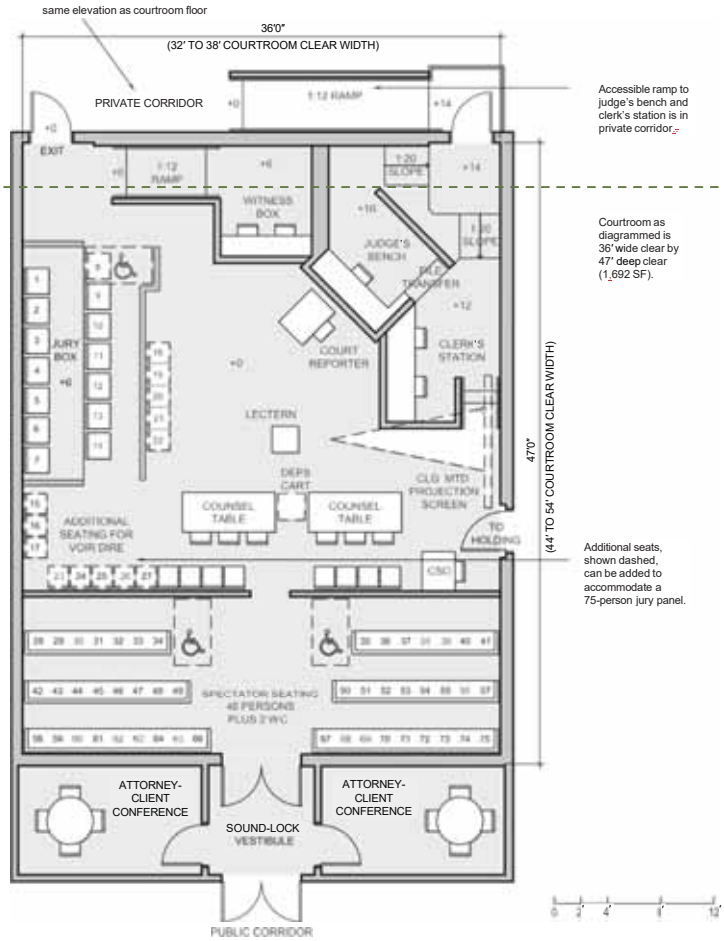
1 General Principles
2 Courthouse Organization
3 Site Design
4 Courthouse Security
5 COURT SET
5.A Objectives
5.B Courtroom
5.C Courtroom Accessibility
5.D Courtroom Components
5.E Courtroom Support Spaces
6 Jury Facilities and Court Administration
7 Special Services
8 In-Custody Defendant Receiving, Holding, and Transport
9 Public Spaces
10 Building Support Services

Figure 5.20 Variations

- Ramping requirements may be reduced for judge's bench and clerk's station if private corridor is at a higher floor elevation than the courtroom floor. However, the ramp shall remain in the corridor and not be added within the courtroom. Courtroom templates in tool 2 shall be strictly adhered to.
- If a court intends to use the jury box for in-custody seating, the jury box shall include a pony wall adjacent to the exit door leading to the private corridor to prevent someone from running out that door.
- ~~Refer to~~See spectator seating layout shown in figures 5.22 and 5.23 for seating layout in large courtrooms.

Figure 5.21 Variations

- Ramping requirements will increase for judge's bench and clerk's station if private corridor is at the same floor elevation as the courtroom floor.
- If a court intends to use the jury box for in-custody seating, the jury box shall include a pony wall adjacent to the exit door leading to the private corridor to prevent someone from running out that door.
- ~~Refer to~~See spectator seating layout shown in figures 5.22 and 5.23 for seating layout in large courtrooms.



~~ATTY CONF = attorney conference room.~~
CLG MTD = ceiling mounted.
CSO = court security officer.
DEPS = digital evidence presentation system.
~~CLG MTD = ceiling mounted.~~
WC = wheelchairs.
~~ATTY CONF = attorney conference room.~~

Note: For illustration of courtroom components only. Refer to tool 2, Catalog of Courtroom Layouts for California Trial Courts, for courtroom template plans.

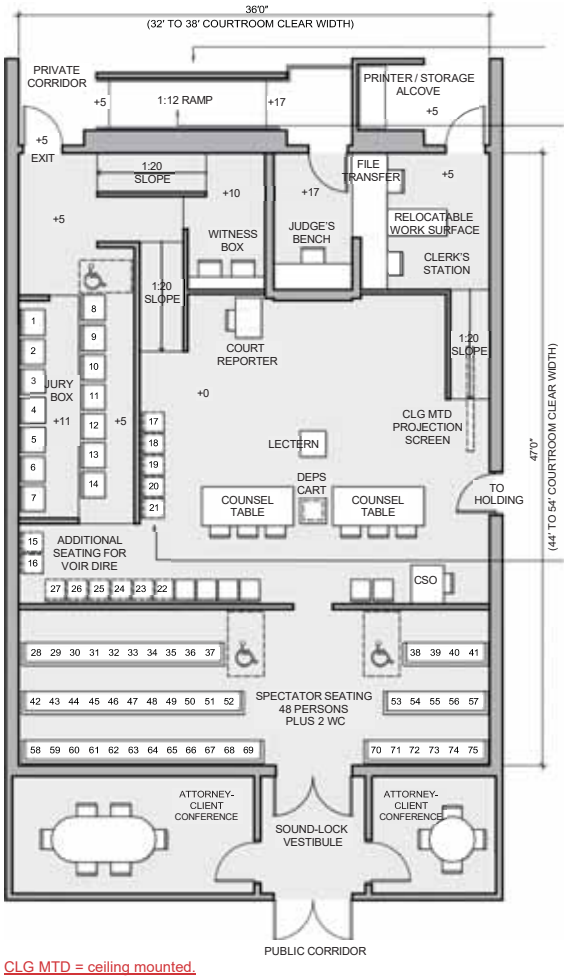
Figure 5.20 Multipurpose Courtroom (Corner Bench, Seating for Jury Panel)

Commented [TP12]: Ukiah lifted the back of house 6" and moved the rest of their ramps to the courtroom which created line of site issues and also additional DSA review. Noting that in case there is language needed to prevent that in the future

Commented [DP12R2]: Added statement.

Commented [PS13]: Deepika, do we need to have another modified courtroom where the jury box does not have direct line to the exit door….per comments from Santa Rosa where the in custodies are sitting in the jury box?

Commented [DP13R2]: No, a wall can be added at the jury box as shown here and the ADA chair should be moved down. I will make a note here about that. We are also adding alarms and card readers to there doors. Another template plan is not needed.



CLG MTD = ceiling mounted.
CSO = court security officer.
DEPS = digital evidence presentation system.
WC = wheelchairs.

Note: For illustration of courtroom components only. Refer to tool 2, Catalog of Courtroom Layouts for California Trial Courts, courtroom template plans.

Figure 5.21 Multipurpose Courtroom (Central Bench—Asymmetrical)

DIVISION ONE: DESIGN CRITERIA

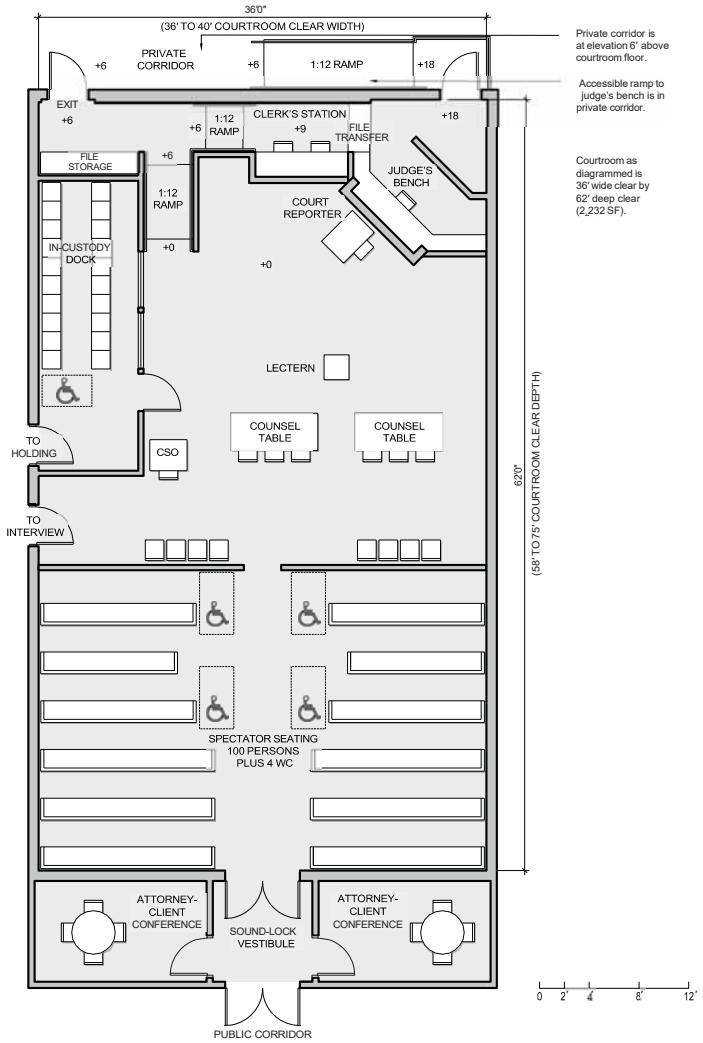
1 General Principles
2 Courthouse Organization
3 Site Design
4 Courthouse Security
5 COURT SET
5.A Objectives
5.B Courtroom
5.C Courtroom Accessibility
5.D Courtroom Components
5.E Courtroom Support Spaces
6 Jury Facilities and Court Administration
7 Special Services
8 In-Custody Defendant Receiving, Holding, and Transport
9 Public Spaces
10 Building Support Services

Figure 5.22 Variations

- Ramping requirements will increase for judge's bench and clerk's station if private corridor is at the same floor elevation as the courtroom floor.
- In-custody dock may alternatively be located outside of courtroom perimeter in holding area.

Figure 5.23 Variations

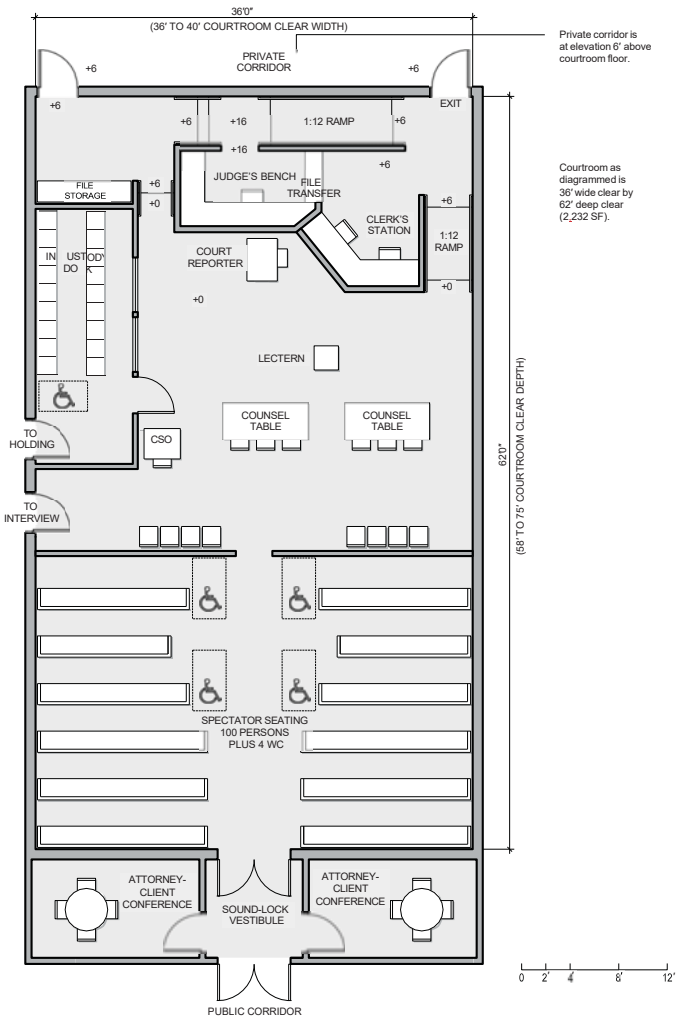
- Ramping requirements will increase for judge's bench and clerk's station if private corridor is at the same floor elevation as the courtroom floor.
- In-custody dock may alternatively be located outside of courtroom perimeter in holding area.



CSO = court security officer.
WC = wheelchairs.

Note: For illustration of courtroom components only.

Figure 5.22 Arraignment Courtroom (Corner Bench)



CSO = court security officer.
WC = wheelchairs.

Note: For illustration of courtroom components only.

Figure 5.23 Arraignment Courtroom (Central Bench)

DIVISION ONE: DESIGN CRITERIA

1 General Principles
2 Courthouse Organization
3 Site Design
4 Courthouse Security
5 COURT SET
5.A Objectives
5.B Courtroom
5.C Courtroom Accessibility
5.D Courtroom Components
5.E Courtroom Support Spaces
6 Jury Facilities and Court Administration
7 Special Services
8 In-Custody Defendant Receiving, Holding, and Transport
9 Public Spaces
10 Building Support Services

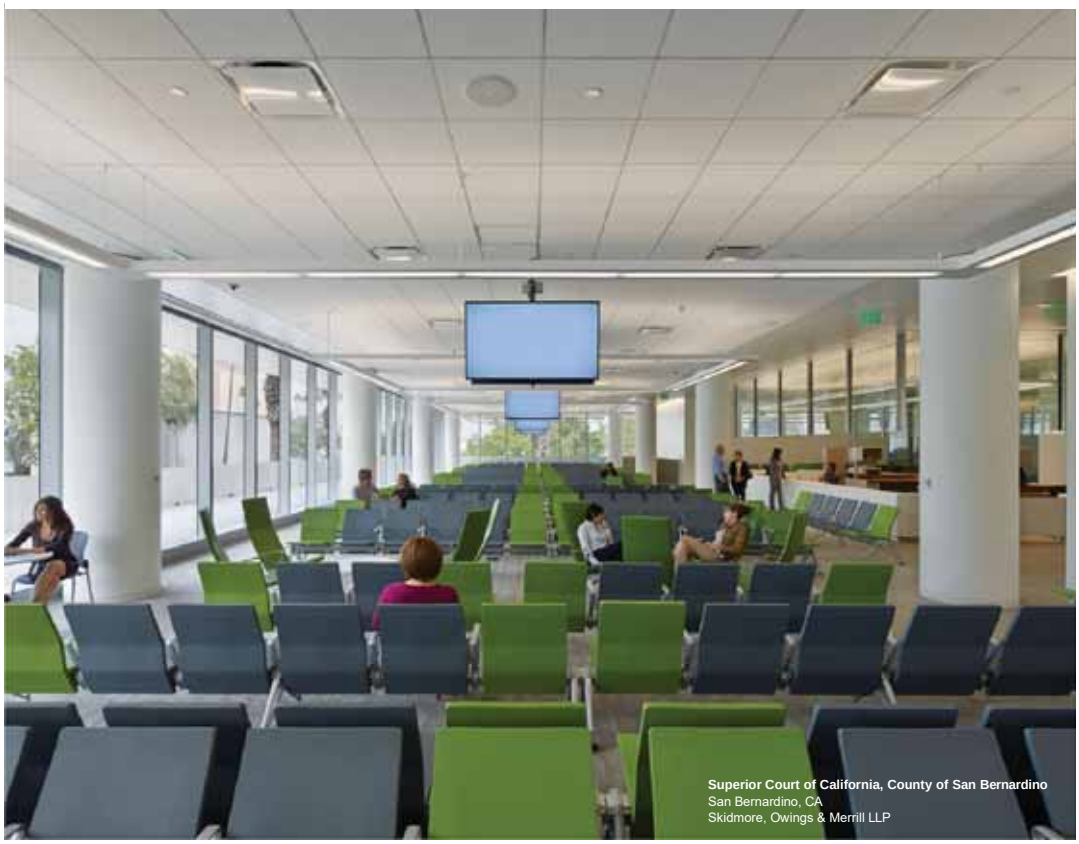
Commented [LD14]: "In-Custody Dock" in diagram is partly obscured (the words, not the element).

Commented [DP14R2]: It doesn't show up in Word properly, but appears fine in PDF.

DIVISION ONE: DESIGN CRITERIA

6 JURY FACILITIES AND COURT ADMINISTRATION

SECTION	TOPIC	PAGE
6.A	Jury Facilities Objectives	6.2
6.B	Jury Assembly Spaces	6.2
6.C	Objectives of the Clerk's Office	6.5
6.D	Clerk's Office Spaces	6.5
6.E	Court Executive Officer's Area	6.9



Superior Court of California, County of San Bernardino
San Bernardino, CA
Skidmore, Owings & Merrill LLP

©2014 BRUCE DAMONTE

Jury Assembly Spaces

- Entry Queuing Area
- Reception, Check-In, and Registration
- Jury Assembly Room and Information Presentation Area
- Forms Counter
- Coffee and Snack Area
- Jury Staff Area
- Mail Center
- Call Center

6.A JURY FACILITIES OBJECTIVES

Jury duty is a public service obligation. For many citizens, jury duty is their only contact with the judicial system. The jury assembly area presents potential jurors with a physical symbol of the importance of their duty and orients them to the process of the courts.

~~a.~~• Plan and design the jury assembly rooms to be comfortable, efficient, and safe.

~~b.~~• Locate, size, and configure the spaces appropriately to facilitate use by potential jurors.

~~c.~~• Ensure that all jury assembly areas can be monitored by jury staff.

~~d.~~• Because technology and new operational models will continue to affect jury call and associated space needs, design jury assembly spaces ~~should be designed~~ to consider future changes, such as online jury summons processes, that will reduce or eliminate the need for such large spaces. Jury assembly rooms should be designed to allow for easy conversion to other uses.

6.B JURY ASSEMBLY SPACES

1. General Requirements

The jury assembly area is a high-volume public access function and should be located on the building's entry floor or lower floor.

a. All prospective and selected jurors must enter through a screening station. The entrance to the jury area must be easy to locate upon entering the courthouse and easily accessible from public corridors.

b. Jury staff must be able to control the entry into the jury assembly area.

c. ~~Ensure that t~~Traffic to the jury assembly room ~~does~~ shall~~must~~ not interfere with public circulation in the lobby, stairs, or elevators. Plan movement of jurors to minimize juror contact with attorneys and litigants and to preclude intimidation by ~~and~~ or contact with the public.

d. ~~Protect t~~The assembly area shall~~must~~ be protected from exterior viewing.

2. Components

The jury assembly area consists of several unique components, described below.

2.1. Entry Queuing Area

a. Prominently placed signage shall provide clear directions to the jury assembly area. Jurors arrive simultaneously, so queuing areas will be required for prospective jurors waiting to sign in.

b. The queuing area can be colocated within a lobby, waiting area, or building circulation. The queuing area should be within the jury assembly room to prevent contact with defendants, family members of defendants, ~~and~~ or witnesses.

2.2 Reception, Check-In, and Registration

a. Configure ~~The~~ the reception, check-in, and registration area ~~shall~~ to be immediately visible at the entry of the jury area. The size of this area will depend on the number of courtrooms and the peak volume of anticipated jurors expected at sign-in times. Self-check-in kiosks may be considered in this location.

b. Provide standard clerical support workstations (refer to table 2.2).

c. Provide counter space at the registration counter for jurors.

d. Provide at least six trauma kits in an easily accessible and recognizable

Commented [LD1]: Please list tables in order.

Commented [DP1R2]: It would be an arduous task at this point to cross-check references to figures and tables across multiple chapters to confirm they appear in order. This will need to be tackled for the next edition.

container located next to an automated external defibrillator (AED) as required by Health and Safety Code section 19300.

2.3. Jury Assembly Room and Information Presentation Area

a. Provide ~~Sufficient~~ sufficient seating ~~shall be provided~~ for all prospective jurors. Provide movable grouped seating and lounge seating with power supply. The minimum number of seats will vary by the size and location of the facility. Provide wheelchair spaces, companion seating, and semiambulatory seating in ratios required by law.

b. Provide areas for reading, studying, working, and watching television~~, designed as acoustically separated rooms or alcoves adjacent to the jury assembly area~~. ~~Work areas shall include study carrels, Wi-Fi, and~~Provide work counters for a large volume of users with power connections for personal electronic devices~~.~~ (~~See~~ see figure 6.1).



Figure 6.1 Seating and Work Areas in Jury Assembly Room, Superior Court of Tulare County, Porterville

~~c.~~ Design and construct ~~Jury assembly rooms may serve as multipurpose community~~ rooms ~~during business hours or off-hours. Therefore, the design of the jury assembly area should permit p~~artitioning the assembly area from the ~~rest of the courthouse functions during off-hours. The Judicial Council Facilities Services office shall be consulted for off-hours requests.~~

~~d.~~c. ~~J~~jury assembly rooms in courthouses without dedicated training rooms ~~shall be designed and constructed~~ to the same standards as training rooms, with full multimedia capabilities, ~~to enable them to~~so they can be used for training and other collaborative activities ~~with full multimedia capabilities~~. This design includes the use of nonfixed, easily removable seating to allow for flexible room setups. ~~In addition, t~~These rooms should be designed to allow use for training sessions without disturbing jury services staff.

~~e.~~d. Locate ~~Restroom~~ restroom facilities ~~should be located~~ within or close to the jury assembly room.

~~f.~~e. Provide a movable lectern for juror orientation and infrastructure for wireless or cell phone access.

~~g.~~f. At the information presentation area, provide for use of audiovisual equipment, computer data lines, and telecommunications systems to accommodate

DIVISION ONE: DESIGN CRITERIA

1 General Principles
2 Courthouse Organization
3 Site Design
4 Courthouse Security
5 Court Set

6 JURY FACILITIES AND COURT ADMINISTRATION
6.A Jury Facilities Objectives
6.B Jury Assembly Spaces
6.C Objectives of the Clerk's Office
6.D Clerk's Office Spaces
6.E Court Executive Officer's Area

7 Special Services
8 In-Custody Defendant Receiving, Holding, and Transport
9 Public Spaces
10 Building Support Services

Commented [AG2]: Lesson Learned from San Diego Courthouse: The POE identified that this space is utilized by many customers that use a variety of digital devices requiring power and ultimately not being able to locate an available power source. Consider the large amount of users and devices in this area and factor this into the power design and layout of this space.

Commented [DP2R2]: Adjusted language.

Commented [DP3]: Removed by CFAC-WG.

programs such as video orientation, automated jury management systems, and juror call-in programs. Provide glare control for video orientations. See ~~chapter~~ chapter 17, Network and Communication Systems, and chapter 18, Audiovisual Systems, for technical requirements.

Outdoor areas may be provided if they are within the building's secure perimeter and jurors are prevented from public viewing ~~and~~ or contact.

2.4 Forms Counter

Provide counters for filling out forms. A reasonable proportion of the counter space shall be designed for accessibility by people in wheelchairs.

2.5 Coffee and Snack Area

a. Provide space for a minimum of three or four vending machines, a table, chairs, and a space for water and coffee. Room size shall be proportionate to the number of people served; in larger facilities, the area may be increased commensurately.

b. Provide ~~Space~~ space for a vendor ~~may be provided~~, if requested, in some facilities. This area is usually provided in a separate alcove to contain food-related mess and minimize noise impact on the assembly and work areas. Depending on other food service in the building, this vending area may need to be accessible to nonjurors.

2.6 Jury Staff Area

In cases where jury staff screen jurors, an adjoining space may be necessary for the jury coordinator or for staff consultation. In larger courthouses, space for additional support staff not located in the jury reception area may be required.

a. The size of the support space area will be proportionate to the size of the court facility.

b. The jury office will be readily accessible to the reception counter.

c. Provide sufficient space for storage of jury records and files. (~~S~~see figure 6.2).

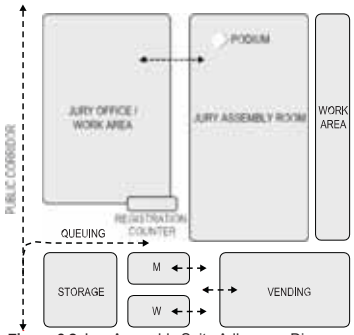


Figure 6.2 Jury Assembly Suite Adjacency Diagram

~~b.a. Provide sufficient space for storage of jury records and files. See figure 6.2.~~

2.7 Mail Center

If required, provide a work area where staff can prepare juror summons~~es~~, scan

summons return information, and print checks. Most courts outsource summons preparation, printing, and mailing or centralize this function with other mail activities.

2.8 Call Center
Provide a work area where staff can answer telephone queries. Larger facilities often use call centers or interactive voice response.

6.C OBJECTIVES OF THE CLERK'S OFFICE

The trial court's administrative organization combines the traditional public and case management functions of the clerk with the financial and administrative services of a modern business. Clerk responsibilities include case filing and tracking, records administration, calendar management, collection of fines and fees ~~collection~~, and sharing public information. Business services may include human resources, budget management, and information services activities; statistical reporting; and purchasing.

The number of court staff varies by jurisdiction. Variables influencing court staffing include the number of judicial officers, number and type of case filings, number of court locations, and extent to which business services are provided internally or are contracted with other entities.

a. Colocate functions of the clerk's office (CO), and provide convenient public access to areas with high public contact. These areas should be located on lower floors near the main entry and public elevators in a multistory building. Provide staff areas with easy access to the private circulation system. Connect the CO to private and public corridors, allowing controlled access to judicial officers, courtroom personnel, attorneys, and the general public.

b. Ensure that the appearance of the CO is consistent with the rest of the courthouse. The public side of the counter area must have durable finishes. The counters, workstations, and public viewing stations shall make use of modular furniture where appropriate to maximize complete ergonomic and expansion flexibility. The clerk's office shall be an open-office environment with modular furniture appropriate for a public agency.

c. Consider making rooms more flexible by providing telephone, data, and power outlets in areas that may be converted to workstations, offices, or conference areas. Electronic case management will affect future record storage areas that may be required, and these areas must be designed with flexibility in mind for conversion to other program needs.

d. Provide security to ensure the safety of the public, staff, records, and exhibits. Integrate security duress alarm notification systems into the courthouse security system. Consider security elements in the public service lobby. Incorporate glass and closed-circuit television cameras at the public counter area. At transaction windows that are not accessed through the public entry weapons-screening station, provide bullet-resistant glass barrier systems and counter casework. Provide the evidence storage room and vault with locks and intrusion alarms, ~~,~~ and ~~located~~ locate it in an area that allows constant supervision. CO staff access shall be restricted by use of key cards or other devices.

6.D CLERK'S OFFICE SPACES

The clerk's office area consists of the following spaces. See figure 6.3 for a typical layout.

1. Public Counter and Counter Workstation

a. Design public service counters to encourage access to the judicial system while providing security for office personnel. Counters allow sufficient work area to transact case filing activities, and they separate private staff office areas from public areas.

DIVISION ONE: DESIGN CRITERIA
1 General Principles
2 Courthouse Organization
3 Site Design
4 Courthouse Security
5 Court Set
6 JURY FACILITIES AND COURT ADMINISTRATION
6.A Jury Facilities Objectives
6.B Jury Assembly Spaces
6.C Objectives of the Clerk's Office
6.D Clerk's Office Spaces
6.E Court Executive Officer's Area
7 Special Services
8 In-Custody Defendant Receiving, Holding, and Transport
9 Public Spaces
10 Building Support Services

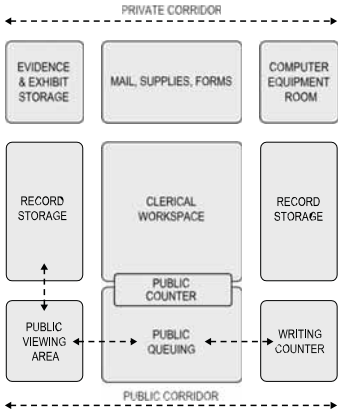


Figure 6.3 Clerk's Adjacency Diagram

Design spaces to ensure efficient and secure acceptance, exchange, review, and reproduction of high volumes of public documents. Size the pass-through window to prevent physical intrusion.

b. Locate one or more universally accessible counters closest to the entrance. Such counters must have the ability to accommodate wheelchair users on each side. Two counter workstation design options are available:

   - Option 1: Staff workstations shall be designed at an elevation above the public floor that allows for seated, eye-level interaction with customers standing at the counter~~.~~ (~~Refer to~~see figure 6.4). An accessible writing surface is required on the public side, with 12″–18″ depth. A raised solid barrier between openings should screen the view of computer and desktop items. The divider height is limited by reach distance. If a raised platform is provided, consider the ability of clerks to obtain records easily.
   - ~~•~~ Option 2: Staff and public sides shall be accessible at a seated level~~.~~ (~~Refer to~~see figure
   - 6.5). Provide a single-height writing surface that meets accessible height and depth requirements. This height will accommodate people standing and people in wheelchairs. Sightlines and sound levels when speaking must be considered in this model. For longer transactions, movable seating may be provided for the public; the public may stand for short transactions.

c. Consider that ~~Staff~~ staff assignments to counter workstations may be to permanent, rotating, or walk-up counters. A *permanent* counter means that counter station is the dedicated and only workspace for the assigned staff and needs to have all the support necessary for a clerk staff workstation. *Rotating* and *walk-up* counters require that counter staff have dedicated workstations elsewhere.

d. Design each counter position to include the counter, staff workspace on the private side, and a standing area on the public side.

e. Provide for confidentiality and privacy on the public side~~,~~ between windows.

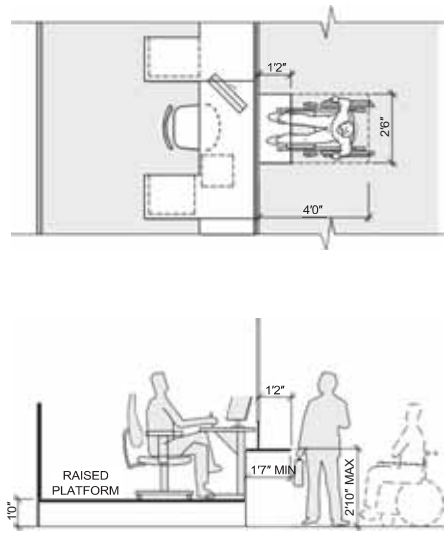


Figure 6.4 Transaction Height Counter

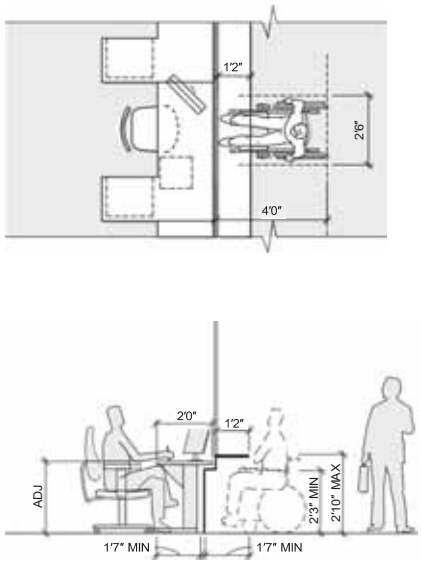


Figure 6.5 Universal Height Counter

DIVISION ONE:
DESIGN CRITERIA

1 General Principles
2 Courthouse Organization
3 Site Design
4 Courthouse Security
5 Court Set

6 JURY FACILITIES AND COURT ADMINISTRATION
6.A Jury Facilities Objectives
6.B Jury Assembly Spaces
6.C Objectives of the Clerk's Office
6.D Clerk's Office Spaces
6.E Court Executive Officer's Area

7 Special Services
8 In-Custody Defendant Receiving, Holding, and Transport
9 Public Spaces
10 Building Support Services

f. Design workstations to accommodate communication and electronic equipment and storage space. Provide space for dual monitors on the desk. Configure and provide all counter stations with power and data to allow cash and credit card transactions. Include outlets for a credit card swipe machine, a printer, a cash drawer, and cameras. Locations shall facilitate communication and passage of documents between clerks and the public. Attach the credit card swipe machine to the public side of the counter.

g. Provide a silent duress alarm at each clerk counter position.

h. See chapter 16, Lighting Criteria, for lighting suggestions.

i. Provide permanent counter positions with a means of blocking the view from the public side when the staff member is off duty but still working in the position. Pull-down shades or movable screening devices are acceptable.

j. ~~Providing~~ Provide security with glass barriers; this is the preferred method to create a layer of separation between staff and the public.

k. Provide voice transmission through 1-1/4″ vertical slots or grilles on either side of the window. Provide a pass-through tray.

l. Avoid amplified acoustic systems to prevent a loud lobby environment. The lobby shall be designed with acoustical finishes for sound absorption. An amplification system may be considered on a case-by-case basis depending on the acoustic quality of the space and ambient noise.

m. When a queuing area is provided in the public area outside the counter, allow 10′ minimum between the public entrance and the counter for the public queuing area. Provide additional space near the queuing area for a public writing counter for forms preparation. When a "take-a-number" system is in use, provide adequate seating for the waiting public.

n. Consider that ~~Some~~ some public counters may be located on the nonsecure side of the security screening station. If counters for fast transactions, such as traffic and attorney filing, are located in the public lobby queuing area or outside, they must be protected with a glass barrier and cameras. Outside counters must be located under an overhang for protection from wind, sun, and rain and shall have an exterior-grade vandal-proof credit card swipe machine on the public side of the counter.

o. Locate and design drop boxes for convenient public use. Locate drop boxes within the courthouse public spaces. Review location and design of all drop boxes regarding safety and security issues.

p. Provide a counter for information and payment transactions for the revenue and collections office.

2. Records Viewing

a. Provide an area adjacent to the public service counter for public viewing of records. This area must be secure and visible to staff at all times to prevent tampering with or theft of records. Record~~s~~ viewing sequence and operation should be clearly incorporated in the design.

b. Provide ~~Space~~ space for self-service duplication equipment in the public area on the request of the court~~may be provided on the request of the court~~. Establish a reasonable ratio of public computers to the number of counter stations.

6.E COURT EXECUTIVE OFFICER'S AREA

Office needs for the court executive officer's area include an office for the court executive officer (CEO), a reception area, offices for support staff to the CEO, a conference room close to the CEO office, workstations for staff, and space for files and office equipment. A separate restroom for the CEO is not required. The CEO area can be separate from the main clerk's office and is often located on an upper level in multilevel courthouses or adjacent to the presiding judge's chambers.

1. Offices and Workstations

a. Provide modular ~~Workstations~~ workstations and office furniture ~~shall be modular~~ to enable complete ergonomic and expansion flexibility. Provide medium workstations with overhead storage. Low partitions, at a height of 42″, are encouraged for part of the enclosure~~,~~ to promote communication and visibility to the public counter area. Some stations can be combined into a shared work area and shared central small conference area.

b. See workstation size standards in table 2.2 of chapter 2, Courthouse Organization, and planning criteria below for each respective court division per its office area requirements.

c. Provide space for:

- Office equipment, files, storage, counters, and special work areas;
- Visitors, meetings, training, reception, and waiting areas; and
- Dedicated conference and meeting rooms, unless staff can share other meeting spaces.

2. Information Technology ~~(IT)~~

Information technology (IT) administration functions include systems development, programming, information management, technical support, planning, and research operations. These functions are primarily nonpublic and require office and workstation environments. Larger jurisdictions maintain technical libraries, computer server equipment rooms, computer workrooms, and~~,~~ occasionally~~,~~ large mainframe computer operations.

a. Provide an IT workroom and storage space with a 32″ counter on two sides.

b. Provide a 14″ shelf 21″ above the counter. This casework shall be plastic laminate finish.

c. Above the counters, provide a continuous plugmold electrical unit. See chapter 17, Network and Communication Systems, for more information.

3. Purchasing

Office space needs for purchasing staff include small to large workstations for buyers or other support staff and a medium office for management. Consider a small conference space for meetings or negotiations with vendors.

4. Revenue and Collections

The revenue and collections office area requires standard workstations.

a. Provide a public reception area and counter space for information and payment transactions.

b. Provide counter workstation positions and space for files and office equipment.

c. Provide space for multiple file cabinets for records and files.

DIVISION ONE: DESIGN CRITERIA

1 General Principles
2 Courthouse Organization
3 Site Design
4 Courthouse Security
5 Court Set

6 JURY FACILITIES AND COURT ADMINISTRATION
6.A Jury Facilities Objectives
6.B Jury Assembly Spaces
6.C Objectives of the Clerk's Office
6.D Clerk's Office Spaces
6.E Court Executive Officer's Area

7 Special Services
8 In-Custody Defendant Receiving, Holding, and Transport
9 Public Spaces
10 Building Support Services

d. Consider providing separate storage with restricted access and a security camera for safety.

5. Human Resources

The human resources office area requires standard to large workstations.

a. Provide space for multiple file cabinets for records and files and a large conference room~~space within or adjac~~ent to the workstations.

b. Provide duress buttons at public counters and at any staff work area used for employee termination.

c. Provide acoustical separation of any public space and staff areas where confidential telephone and personn~~e~~al conversations occur.

6. Records Storage

Some jurisdictions distinguish between active and inactive records for file storage purposes. *Active records* include open or regularly accessed files that are generally stored adjacent to the court clerk work areas. Active records are often maintained in indexed, open shelving units for easy access. *Inactive records* are often stored at a more remote location. Typically, three to four years of records are maintained on-site. A destruction program, if available, can help control growth of records storage.

a. The design shall take into account the extent to which the court has transitioned from paper files to electronic files, since this has a big impact on space needs. This analysis shall be done during the ~~Programming~~ programming phase.

b. Records must be maintained, pulled on request, routed, and interfiled.

c. ~~Provide s~~Space shall~~must~~ be provided for scanning documents for storage and to accommodate future records storage and retrieval technologies. Floors must be designed to accommodate file weight. Provide minimum aisle widths of 36″.

d. ~~See c~~Chapter 16, Lighting Criteria, ~~for~~ provides lighting suggestions.

e. Posttrial exhibit storage should be provided in a secure central location adjacent to secure clerks' offices.

7. Active Records Storage

a. Active records must be easily accessible from the clerk's office work areas and in a secure location. Functional requirements and policies of each courthouse will influence the location of the active file storage area; the ground floor is preferred because of structural load issues.

b. ~~Verify t~~The functional and space requirements for active record storage shall~~must~~ be verified to provide sufficient space. Include adequate workspace adjacent to the file storage equipment.

c. High-density record storage is preferred for most active file storage because of the smaller footprint but cannot be used in departments requiring constant file retrieval. Motorized systems are preferred, but manual systems may be acceptable for infrequently accessed high-density files. Design with some fixed aisles so several aisles can stay open for staff access. Specify record storage seven shelves high.

d. A locking feature may be used to secure confidential files.

Commented [DP4]: Modified by CFAC-WG.

8. Inactive Records Storage

If inactive files are stored on-site, an adequate and accessible storage area must be provided. Spatial requirements will vary in accordance with the number of records and the length of file retention schedules.

a. Older inactive records should be stored off-site to economize on use of courthouse space.

b. Warehouse shelving is recommended for files that have been transferred to storage boxes.

c. ~~Protect t~~The file storage medium shall~~must~~ be protected against deterioration or damage from flooding or moisture.

9. Conference and Training Rooms

a. Provide conference rooms that allow judges, court managers, and staff to gather regularly for bench meetings, education and training, and administrative meetings. The three conference room sizes listed in chapter 2, table 2.2, do not preclude larger conference rooms in large court buildings or combining of multiple rooms with folding walls.

b. Provide small conference rooms adjacent to workstation areas. Sharing of conference and training rooms between departments is encouraged.

c. Provide a training room~~,~~ located for easy accessibility by staff. Design the room for flexibility~~,~~ with multipurpose furniture and a projection screen to accommodate training, conferences, and other meetings. See chapter 16, Lighting Criteria, for lighting requirements and chapter 18, Audiovisual Systems, for audiovisual requirements.

d. Locate training rooms in private circulation areas. One entrance to a training room shall be accessible only by court personnel and judicial officers through a private corridor. A second entrance may be accessible via a public corridor.

e. To determine the size of a training room, use the following guidelines:

- Computer training layout: 35–40 square feet (SF) per person
- Hollow square layout: 30 SF per person
- Classroom-style layout: 20–22 SF per person
- Theater-style layout: 10–12 SF per person

f. In addition to the recommendations above, when allocating space for training rooms, take into consideration other factors, including:

- Availability of other training spaces in the area;
- Distance between other justice centers;
- Number of employees and judges in the area;
- Largest anticipated internal event, frequency of such events, and availability of space to accommodate these types of events;
- Average number of attendees for regularly offered training courses and meetings~~,~~ and frequency of these types of trainings and meetings;
- Anticipated demand for technical training; and
- Ratio of open office space to private offices to help determine the demand for private meeting spaces.

DIVISION ONE: DESIGN CRITERIA
1 General Principles
2 Courthouse Organization
3 Site Design
4 Courthouse Security
6 JURY FACILITIES AND COURT ADMINISTRATION
6.A Jury Facilities Objectives
6.B Jury Assembly Spaces
6.C Objectives of the Clerk's Office
6.D Clerk's Office Spaces
6.E Court Executive Officer's Area
7 Special Services
8 In-Custody Defendant Receiving, Holding, and Transport
9 Public Spaces
10 Building Support Services

10. Mail Center

Provide an area for intake, sorting, and distribution of mail. See chapter 4, Courthouse Security, for main room physical security design standards. Large facilities may require an additional area for mechanical and electrical components to support heating, ventilation, and air-conditioning (HVAC) biofiltration systems.

11. Other Support Areas

Other support areas may include copy facilities, supply rooms, restrooms, and break areas.

a. Provide printer/copier areas to accommodate high-volume copying. They shall be ventilated to dissipate copier heat and fumes and located to minimize noise disruption of other work areas. Depending on the size of the court facility and workload, convenience copiers may be located throughout the building.

b. Provide an area with adequate shelving and work areas for storing office supplies.

c. Allocate space for employee restrooms. Consider current and projected future staff composition when determining the number of toilet fixtures. Additional restroom facilities for female employees may be required.

d. Provide a staff break room with a sink, disposal, and casework. The court and/or its employees shall provide appliances.

e. Provide an employee lactation room in close proximity to employee workstations as required by California and federal laws and the California Building Code. The lactation room shall include a sink, space for a refrigerator, and easily accessible power outlets. The number of lactation rooms in the building shall be based on the number of employees as outlined in California and federal law.

12. Equipment Storage

Provide a locked area for equipment storage, including computer equipment.

DIVISION ONE: DESIGN CRITERIA

7 SPECIAL SERVICES

SECTION	TOPIC	PAGE
7.A	Objectives	7.2
7.B	Family Law Facilitators and Services for Self-Represented Litigants	7.2
7.C	Family Court Services	7.4
7.D	Child Waiting Room (Optional)	7.6
7.E	Alternative Dispute Resolution	7.7
7.F	Multipurpose Rooms and Offices	7.7
7.G	Lactation Rooms	7.8



Family Justice Center Courthouse, County of Santa Clara
San Jose, CA
Zimmer Gunsal Frasca LLP

Family law facilitators guide litigants through the forms and procedures related to child support, spousal support, and maintenance of health insurance. They assist with cases involving the local child support agency, many of which are cases requiring reimbursement for public assistance. Many facilitators are involved in community outreach programs.

Facilitators provide mediation services~~,~~ in which they meet with both parents and help work out child support issues. Some courts have enlisted volunteer attorneys or provided additional funding that enables facilitators to assist self-represented litigants in other family law areas, including divorce, custody, and visitation.

Task Force on Self-Represented Litigants, highlights from *Statewide Action Plan for Serving Self-Represented Litigants.*

FCS = Family Court Services

ADR = alternative dispute resolution

Family law facilitators, self-help centers, Family Court Services (FCS), juvenile dependency mediation, ~~child waiting rooms,~~ and alternative dispute resolution (ADR) programs promote the effectiveness and efficiency of certain types of court cases. Through the use of these services, the litigant has better information, issues are settled more frequently, court appearances are minimized, and paperwork is reduced.

Related justice agencies (~~i.~~e.g., district attorney, public defender, probation, Child Protective Services) have significant business each day within the trial court. Temporary spaces for related justice agencies may be considered.

Commented [LD1]: Do child waiting rooms really fit here? They add convenience and comfort but probably not any of the benefits listed here.

Commented [DP1R2]: Since child waiting areas are optional now and not applicable to the following statement, I am removing it from this paragraph.

7.A OBJECTIVES

a. Design ~~The~~ spaces ~~of~~ for special services ~~must be~~that are convenient to the public and located off the public corridor or public waiting. These areas must also have access to the private circulation system.

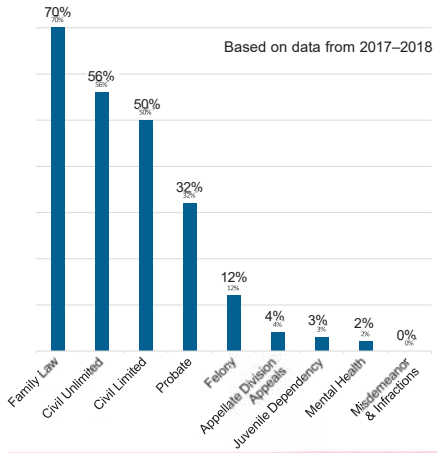
b. Ensure safety and security in the event of physical confrontation by means of duress alarms and sidelights at doors. Duress alarms shall be inconspicuous but convenient to the user. Facilitate future flexibility by providing these features in all spaces.

7.B FAMILY LAW FACILITATORS AND SERVICES FOR SELF-REPRESENTED LITIGANTS

Family law facilitator programs are a mandated service. Supervised by experienced family law attorneys, they provide self-help assistance to litigants ~~with child support issues~~.

Most courts have expanded their family law facilitator activities to provide other self-help assistance in family law, and a growing number of courts provide self-help in other areas. ~~In the *Statewide Action Plan for Serving Self-Represented Litigants*, prepared by the Task Force on Self-Represented Litigants and approved by the Judicial Council in 2004, attorney-supervised, staffed self-help centers are recommended for every court.~~ Figure 7.1 shows the variety of case types that are ~~self-represented by litigants.~~

Commented [DP2]: Outdated data. Deleted per CFAC-WG direction.



~~**Figure 7.1** Self-Represented Litigants' Needs (by Case Type)~~

Family law facilitators and self-help centers provide assistance and practical information about court procedures for self-represented litigants using the court. Locate self-help centers near the clerks' offices, easily accessible from a public corridor. See figure 7.12.



Figure 7.~~2~~ 1 Self-Help Center, the Robert M. Falasco Justice Center, Superior Court of Merced County, Los Banos

1. Reception, Waiting, and Triage Areas

a. Provide public waiting areas for users and children, with child waiting, reception counter, and triage areas. These areas experience an extremely high volume of usage. In large courts, seating should be available for 30 to 50 people.

b. Provide small tables that can be reconfigured for classes, ~~for~~ filling out forms, or ~~for~~ conferencing; computer terminals located against the wall; ~~and~~ brochure racks~~,~~; shelving~~,~~; storage~~,~~; video monitors~~,~~; and a photocopier.

c. Provide staff workspace with file storage, work counters, and equipment. Public counters and reception areas may be integrated into the work areas.

d. Provide a duress alarm at counters.

2. Workshop Rooms

a. In jurisdictions with more than one family law facilitator, provide a workshop room. The room must accommodate reference materials, audiovisual equipment for workshops, and computers to allow litigants to complete forms. See chapter 16, Lighting Criteria; chapter 17, Network and Communication Systems; and chapter 18, Audiovisual Systems, for technical requirements.

b. In jurisdictions with at least one full-time facilitator, provide at least one conference room for services to be provided by volunteer attorneys, paralegals, and other staff supervised by the attorney facilitator or self-help center attorney's office.

c. Provide one private office per facilitator and staff attorney. If separate interview or conference rooms are not provided for mediation, the private offices should be large enough to accommodate up to five people for this purpose.

d. Provide a duress alarm in offices and at counters.

3. Small Courthouse Model

Provide one room designed so that one staff member can provide supervision and control.

DIVISION ONE: DESIGN CRITERIA

1 General Principles
2 Courthouse Organization
3 Site Design
4 Courthouse Security
5 Court Set
6 Jury Facilities and Court Administration

7 SPECIAL SERVICES
7A Objectives
7B Family Law Facilitators and Services for Self-Represented Litigants
7C Family Court Services
7D Child Waiting Room (Optional)
7E Alternative Dispute Resolution
7F Multipurpose Rooms and Offices
7G Lactation Rooms

8 In-Custody Defendant Receiving, Holding, and Transport
9 Public Spaces
10 Building Support Services

Commented [LD3]: 7.1 missing.

Commented [DP3R2]: Gensler: renumber figures and references since 7.1 is deleted.

Each court should endeavor to provide a children's waiting room located in the courthouse for the use of minors under the age of 16 who are present on court premises as participants or who accompany persons who are participants in court proceedings. The waiting room should be supervised and open during normal court hours. If a court does not have sufficient space in the courthouse for a children's waiting room, the court should create the necessary space when court facilities are reorganized or remodeled or when new facilities are constructed.

California Standards of Judicial Administration, standard 10.24

4. Information Shared Outside Courtroom

Provide a brochure rack and video feed outside the family courtrooms to instruct users on courtroom procedures.

7.C FAMILY COURT SERVICES

1. Requirements

Courts are required to set contested child custody and visitation issues for mediation. Family Court Services provides mediation, which must include a mandatory orientation as well as a mandatory intake process that screens for, and informs staff about, any restraining orders, dependency petitions under Welfare and Institutions Code section 325 et seq., and other safety-related issues affecting any party or child named in the proceedings. Rule 5.215 of the California Rules of Court requires FCS to conduct differential domestic violence assessments; make reasonable efforts to ensure the safety of victims, children, and other parties when they are participating in services provided by FCS; and, consistent with Family Code sections 3113 and 3181, offer separate mediation sessions at separate times when there is a history of domestic violence, or when a protective order as defined in Family Code section 6218 is in effect, or if domestic violence is discovered while mediation or evaluation services are in process. A domestic violence support person may accompany a party protected by a restraining order to mediation and orientation. In child custody and visitation cases, FCS may also offer appropriate services as available, such as child custody evaluation, parent education, relevant education programs for children, booklets, DVDs, or referrals to community resources. FCS offices also commonly offer such services as stepparent adoption, conservatorship, and guardianship investigations.

The Family Court Services mediation area can generate considerable traffic flow. Locate FCS on a lower floor close to the main lobby or near elevators on an upper floor. Other civil mediation and arbitration services do not generate the same traffic load as FCS and may be located away from the main lobby. Parties using FCS often also use family law facilitator ~~/~~ or self-help services; locating these services nearby would be helpful to the public. If possible, provide more than one exit from FCS to have alternative access for domestic violence victims who are participating in mediation.

2. Facilities

Family Court Services consists of the following areas:

- Mediator and evaluator offices
- Reception and waiting areas
- Orientation room
- Mediation room
- Conference and training room
- Children's waiting area
- Security station
- Equipment storage

For sizes, refer to table 2.2 in chapter 2, Courthouse Organization.

2.1 Mediator Offices

a. Provide a private office for each mediator~~,~~ ~~to~~ that accommodates three additional people. If separate mediation/interview rooms are not provided for larger mediations, private offices shall accommodate up to six people.

b. Provide sidelights at office doors.

c. Provide acoustical treatment of office walls and doors.

d. Provide a duress alarm in each office~~,~~ because of the potential for physical confrontation.

2.2 Reception and Waiting Areas

a. Provide reception and waiting areas with seating sized for the court's needs.

b. Provide a vision panel at the suite entry door.

c. In large jurisdictions, provide a reception counter and sign-in area~~,~~ with a counter position.

d. Provide duress alarms in support staff areas and at counters.

e. Provide an area for copy and fax machines adjacent to clerical staff and mediators.

f. Provide space for FCS files and records adjacent to clerical staff.

g. Provide a reception area with sufficient space to accommodate mandatory screening, intake, and differential assessment. Private space should be available to allow for safe consultations with vulnerable parties, such as victims of violence.

h. If possible, provide separate waiting areas for different parties in mediation. One or two reception and waiting areas will serve several mediation offices. Separate FCS waiting areas should be available for domestic violence victims~~,~~ so ~~that~~ they do not have to be in the same area as the alleged perpetrators.

2.3 Orientation Room

Provide an orientation room with seating for four to six people for orientation sessions before participation in mediation or other ADR services. This room can also be used for additional waiting and conferencing.

2.4 Mediation Room

a. Provide a mediation room. In some jurisdictions, a combination of large and small mediation rooms will accommodate large family groups and allow involvement of social workers and other staff. This room can also be used for interview purposes.

b. Provide acoustical treatment of office walls and doors~~,~~ because of the confidential and sometimes vocal exchanges associated with these discussions.

c. Provide a duress alarm.

d. Provide video cameras to allow remote observation of proceedings.

2.5 Conference and Training Room

In jurisdictions with more than eight FCS mediators, provide a conference and training room of a size proportionate to the number of mediators. The room must accommodate reference books and related materials needed by mediators to conduct their business. One room may be used for mediation, orientation,

DIVISION ONE: DESIGN CRITERIA

1 General Principles
2 Courthouse Organization
3 Site Design
4 Courthouse Security
5 Court Set
6 Jury Facilities and Court Administration
7 SPECIAL SERVICES
7.A Objectives
7.B Family Law Facilitators and Services for Self-Represented Litigants
7.C Family Court Services
7.D Child Waiting Room (Optional)
7.E Alternative Dispute Resolution
7.F Multipurpose Rooms and Offices
7.G Lactation Rooms
8 In-Custody Defendant Receiving, Holding, and Transport
9 Public Spaces
10 Building Support Services

conferences, and training. See chapter 16, Lighting Criteria, and chapter 18, Audiovisual Systems, for audiovisual requirements. Provide a duress alarm.

2.6 Children's Waiting Area (Optional)
If no other children's waiting area is available or convenient, provide a separate children's waiting area near FCS to be used when children or their parents or guardians are involved in court proceedings. See figure 7.2~~3~~ and refer to 7.D, Child Waiting Room (Optional), for standards for this area.

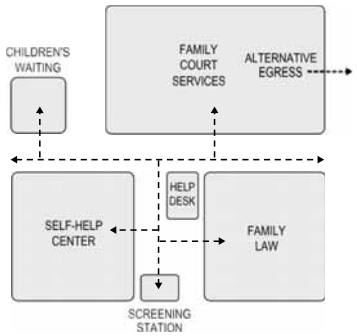


Figure 7.2~~3~~ Special Services Adjacency Diagram

2.7 Security Station
Security provisions for the FCS area vary based on the size and location of the function. If remote from the court security staff, the FCS area may require a separate security post. If the security staff is stationed at FCS, provide a post with workstation and security equipment.

2.8 Equipment Storage
Provide an area near the mediation rooms for storage of equipment and furnishings, such as video monitors, used in mediation.

7.D CHILD WAITING ROOM (OPTIONAL)

~~In all c~~Court facilities may~~, endeavor to~~ provide a safe place for children to play—including a child waiting room—while their parents conduct their court business.

a. Provide an area of 120 net square feet (NSF) for two or three children, increasing the area by 15 NSF per child. The waiting area must be located near the security station but in a semiprivate corridor. Space needs will vary with court caseloads. Consider providing a separate area~~s~~ for adolescents.

b. Provide a check-in workstation with a duress alarm and a view of the entire room~~,~~ to allow supervision by one staff person; design must facilitate safe check-in and checkout of children. Include file storage for administrative records, forms, and brochures.

c. ~~Do not allow~~Design the space with no outside visual access or windows; the public shall not be able to look into the room.

d. Provide a controlled area for the children. Access doors shall be locked, with a remote buzzer operated from the check-in workstation.

e. Provide one or two restrooms, one with a changing table. Furniture, fixtures, and restroom fixtures should be specified and installed for elementary ~~-~~school~~-~~aged children.

Commented [AG4]: Lesson Learned from San Diego Courthouse: Consider the following recommendations: Create column free open play spaces. Furniture, fixtures and restroom fixtures should be specified for elementary aged children. Wainscot protection is recommended on the walls. Ensure storage units are securely mounted to prevent tipping over if children climb on them or place them in areas not accessible to the children.

Commented [DP4R2]: Incorporated.

Commented [DP5]: Modified by CFAC-WG since this is optional.

f. Provide a second door into a secure corridor. Small facilities can use a multipurpose room.

g. Provide space for child-sized tables, chairs, couch, and floor games~~,~~ and storage space for toys and games. Create column-free open play spaces.

h. Provide space for information racks about community resources for service referrals and other resources (housing, health care, childcare, literacy, and education).

i. Provide a quiet room with a sink, locking cupboards, a refrigerator, and a microwave.

j. Provide wainscot protection on the walls.

~~i.~~k. Securely mount the storage units to prevent tipping over if children climb on them, or place them in areas not accessible to the children.

7.E ALTERNATIVE DISPUTE RESOLUTION

Alternative dispute resolution services are an increasingly important part of the judicial process. In the civil case context, ADR includes the traditional civil case settlement process involving a judicial officer, attorneys, and the litigants; mediation, involving a facilitator and the parties, sometimes without attorneys; and arbitration, involving an arbitrator, attorneys, and the litigants.

1. Mediation and Settlement Conferences

Civil case mediation and arbitration services may be provided privately and occur outside the court facility. Civil case settlement conferences often take place in a courtroom, jury deliberation room, or conference area. Court-sponsored mediation, such as in small claims and unlawful detainer cases, may be provided in court facilities.

Provide space for civil case settlement conferences and mediation services within the court facility when required by the program. Requirements for these functions may vary considerably depending on anticipated volume of usage. In larger jurisdictions with formal ADR programs, consider multiple rooms of various sizes and capacities. For sizes, refer to table 2.2 in chapter 2. Space for these functions may include reception and waiting areas.

2. Reception and Waiting

If required by the program, provide an area with seating for six to eight people, where attorneys and litigants can be seated while waiting for a mediation room. This area can serve one to four mediation rooms and may be increased in size according to the number of additional mediation rooms required.

7.F MULTIPURPOSE ROOMS AND OFFICES

1. Guidelines

a. Provide multipurpose rooms~~,~~ to be assigned by the trial court to related justice agencies or others. The character and quantity of rooms shall be determined during programming.

b. Locate rooms adjacent to the public corridor, potentially with controlled access to the private circulation system; provide keypad locking so the superior court can reassign the use easily.

2. Examples of Room Use

Representative uses of multipurpose rooms include:

- Related justice agency drop-in offices: Rooms suitable for installation of modular workstations~~,~~ for staff ~~use~~ to prepare and read court papers, make telephone calls, and conduct other court-related activities.
- On-site drug testing suite: A toilet room used for drug testing adjacent to the courtroom, with an anteroom for supplies and sample storage.

DIVISION ONE: DESIGN CRITERIA

1 General Principles
2 Courthouse Organization
3 Site Design
4 Courthouse Security
5 Court Set
6 Jury Facilities and Court Administration

7 SPECIAL SERVICES
7A Objectives
7B Family Law Facilitators and Services for Self-Represented Litigants
7C Family Court Services
7D Child Waiting Room (Optional)
7E Alternative Dispute Resolution
7F Multipurpose Rooms and Offices
7G Lactation Rooms

10 Building Support Services

- Attorney convenience center: A work and waiting area~~,~~ with power and data communications for laptop connections, similar to drop-in offices for related justice agencies.
- Multiagency and volunteer~~s~~ convenience center: Workstations for volunteers.
- Volunteer coordinator's office: In larger counties with comprehensive or centralized volunteer programs, a coordinator's office. May be located on a semiprivate corridor. Volunteers may also be located within specific court departments.
- Law enforcement waiting: A waiting area that must be located off public corridors near courtrooms and may be provided in criminal, traffic, and juvenile courts in which law enforcement officers may wait before court appearances and during court recesses. Access to the law enforcement waiting area must be secure and away from the public corridor. The waiting area must include space for a couch, chairs, lounge seating, and a table.
- Victim waiting: A waiting area located off public corridors near courtrooms, with chairs and a table. This room may be used for remote testimony to the courtroom. Provide power, lighting, and configuration to allow audiovisual equipment to obtain proper images for victim to testify remotely.
- Court interpreters convenience center: A waiting area located off public corridors near courtrooms. The convenience center requires a bullpen with adequate space for lockers, carrels, tables, manager's office, shared phones, secure storage, and a telecommunications device for the deaf (TDD).
- Blood draw / DNA swab room: A room at family court with a chair and locked cabinet.
- Fingerprinting: An area adjacent to criminal court, with a secure door. Provide a pass-through to the family law clerk's area. Provide a desk and a camera area to take headshot photos.
- Government attorneys conference room: A large conference room with computers and printers available to calculate child support and print out agreements. Local child support agencies often meet with litigants before and during the high volume of child support calendars to try to reach stipulations.
- Paralegal office: A drop-in center to assist families with child support issues, requiring room for a desk, file storage, and three or four guest chairs.
- Social services resource room: A room located near courtrooms so that litigants who are referred to social services can get immediate assistance for problems such as substance abuse.

7.G LACTATION ROOMS

Provide one lactation room for the public and one lactation room for court employees. Lactation rooms cannot be in a bathroom; they require their own dedicated space.

1. General Requirements

a. The lactation rooms shall be shielded from view and ~~be~~ free from intrusion while in use.

b. The rooms shall include a sink with running water.

c. The space shall be safe, clean, and free of hazardous materials and ~~shall~~ contain a built-in shelf on which to place personal items. The room shall have space for a movable chair with adequate ADA accessibility clearances.

d. The room shall include electrical outlets to operate lactation equipment.

2. Public Lactation Room

a. The public lactation room is available to visitors of the court facility and shall be accessed from the public corridor.

b. The court shall have a policy in place for lactating mothers to reserve the room when needed. Signage outside the room shall include information on how to reserve the room.

~~b.~~c. The entry door shall include locks on both sides.

3. Employee Lactation Room

a. The employee lactation room is available to court employees and shall be accessed from the secure corridor.

b. The lactation room shall be located in close proximity to the work area of the majority of court employees.

c. The room shall include space and hookups for a refrigerator.

~~c.~~d. The entry door shall include locks on the inside.

Commented [DP6]: Modification by CFAC-WG.

DIVISION ONE: DESIGN CRITERIA

1 General Principles
2 Courthouse Organization
3 Site Design
4 Courthouse Security
5 Court Set
6 Jury Facilities and Court Administration

7 SPECIAL SERVICES
7.A Objectives
7.B Family Law Facilitators and Services for Self-Represented Litigants
7.C Family Court Services
7.D Child Waiting Room (Optional)
7.E Alternative Dispute Resolution

Receiving, Holding, and Transport
9 Public Spaces
10 Building Support Services

DIVISION ONE: DESIGN CRITERIA

8 IN-CUSTODY DEFENDANT RECEIVING, HOLDING, AND TRANSPORT

SECTION	TOPIC	PAGE
8.A	Objectives	8.2
8.B	Planning Criteria	8.2
8.C	Functional Overview	8.3
8.D	Program Components	8.5
8.E	Technical Criteria	8.13
8.F	Electronic Detention Control System	8.25



Superior Court of California, County of Shasta
Redding, CA
NBBJ

Important Terms

Circulation: ~~Public~~public, ~~Private~~private, ~~Detention~~detention

Control ~~Rooms~~rooms: For more information, see chapter 4, section 4.H.14, Security Operations Center, and chapter 8, section 8.D.4, Detention Control Room.

In-custody(ies): Persons in the custody of a correctional or detention institution

Detention and *holding* are used interchangeably in this chapter.

This chapter addresses the requirements for all in-custody areas. For detailed system requirements, see tool 8, Security System Guidelines.

The United States Constitution makes provision for defendants involved in criminal proceedings to confront the witnesses against them. Therefore, trial courthouse design and construction must provide accommodation for those defendants who are in custody. Criminal courts must have secure facilities to receive, hold, and transport in-custody defendants to and from the courtroom. In small court facilities, this requirement may amount to a few holding cells and a secure corridor to the courtrooms. In larger criminal court facilities, it may consist of a large receiving and detention facility. Similarly, civil, family, and juvenile court facilities must maintain safe and secure movement of in-custody defendants.

The information in this chapter provides each architectural and engineering team a perspective on how the in-custody receiving, holding, and transport functions integrate into the overall courthouse; a general description of the program components that pertain to these areas; and performance criteria for finishes, equipment, and security systems.

These standards are intended to supplement the requirements addressed in the regulations of the Board of State and Community Corrections, found in titles 15 and 24 of the California Code of Regulations. The design of all in-custody areas must adhere to requirements prescribed in ~~titles~~ titles 15 and 24 of the California Code of Regulations.

8.A OBJECTIVES

The objectives are to provide a safe and secure environment for the transport and accommodation of in-custody defendants while in the courthouse; ~~to~~ maintain the safety and welfare of the judiciary, staff, and public visitors in the building; and ~~to~~ prevent the infiltration of contraband.

The local sheriff, under contract with the superior court, manages all in-custody holding and transport areas and operates the security electronic systems relating to the in-custody holding, detention, transport, and detention circulation areas within the courthouse.

a. Every design solution must optimize operational and staffing efficiencies.

b. Although these standards establish criteria for the in-custody holding area, during the design process, the sheriff must also provide an Operational Program Statement as required by the Board of State and Community Corrections (BSCC). The design and the Operational Program Statement are developed together and influence one another.

c. All in-custody areas shall comply with detention standards subject to BSCC inspection and certification under California Code of Regulations~~,~~ title 15. The ~~Detention~~ detention area design shall provide safety for in-custody defendants, sheriffs, and others and be consistent with the sheriff's Operational Program Statement.

8.B PLANNING CRITERIA

From a physical security standpoint, several basic rules of thumb apply to the design of secure holding and circulation areas:

- Maximize the direct line of sight, allowing the court security officer (CSO) to supervise in-custodies and ~~to~~ minimize reliance on video surveillance cameras.
- In detention circulation areas and corridors, minimize protrusions that create blind spots.
- Organize functional components to avoid circulation "eddies." The in-custody holding areas are process driven. Designs must achieve a logical flow for managing the process, movement, and separation of in-custody defendants.

Local sheriffs will have protocols, or a classification system, for how they manage the separation of individuals in custody. Classification determines if it is appropriate to accommodate an individual in a group holding cell or if a single holding cell is required for the safety of the in-custody and those around the in-custody. The separation or isolation of an in-custody can be based on a number of factors, such as whether the in-custody~~'s being~~ is a danger to others or ~~requiring~~ requires protection from others. Separate holding areas are typically preferred in maintaining the separation of males and females ~~in~~ in-~~custody~~custodies.

1. Sight and Sound Separation

Under some circumstances, juveniles in custody must be present at court proceedings. Provisions must be made in the design of holding areas to maintain "sight and sound separation" between in-custody juveniles and in-custody adults. In-custody juveniles should not come into contact with in-custody adults as they enter, are held in, and circulate to and from the courtrooms during the course of normal operations. Together, the building plans and Operational Program Statement must demonstrate a good-faith effort to maintain the required separation through the course of foreseeable circumstances.

Several design features are inherent with accomplishing proper sight and sound ~~and sight~~ separat

a. Central holding must have separate areas for juveniles and adults. It is not enough to have separate cells accessed from the same corridor.

b. Access to adult and juvenile holding areas from the vehicular sally port should be separate. A single, centrally controlled pedestrian sally port does not violate this principle, but to circulate juveniles or adults through the other's holding area to reach their own is unacceptable.

c. ~~Design i~~In-custody elevators and shared detention corridors must be designed such that detention control can coordinate their use to reliably clear one group before use by another.

2. Acoustics Management

The acoustics of holding areas shall be managed appropriately.

a. For security and durability reasons, materials in the holding areas result in "hard" surfaces. Special care must be taken to manage the acoustics. Minimizing reverberation within in-custody holding and transport areas is essential in reducing stress among in-custody defendants and staff.

b. The design solution must prevent the transmission of sound from a central holding area into any adjacent departmental areas. ~~Most critical is to p~~Preventing the transmission of sound between courtroom holding areas and the courtroom is most critical. Acoustical requirements are defined in chapter 19, Acoustical Criteria.

8.C FUNCTIONAL OVERVIEW

The business of the courts includes motions, hearings, and trials involving in-custody defendants. Courthouses do not include provisions for booking in-custody defendants because this procedure typically occurs at a detention facility before transporting the defendant to the courthouse. Therefore, courthouses must provide safe and secure accommodations for receiving individuals coming from secure detention facilities~~;~~ , for holding them before their courtroom appearances~~;~~ , and for moving them to and from the courtroom itself. Courthouse detention facilities do not house in-custody defendants overnight; they are present in the courthouse only during the normal hours of operation for the court.

DIVISION ONE: DESIGN CRITERIA

1 General Principles
2 Courthouse Organization
3 Site Design
4 Courthouse Security
5 Court Set
6 Jury Facilities and Court Administration
7 Special Services
8 IN-CUSTODY DEFENDANT RECEIVING, HOLDING, AND TRANSPORT
8.A Objectives
8.B Planning Criteria
8.C Functional Overview
8.D Program Components
8.E Technical Criteria
8.F Electronic Detention Control System
9 Public Spaces
10 Building Support Services

Important Term

Sally port: A secure, controlled entryway.

Important Design Elements

The secure perimeter is a physical barrier that prevents the unauthorized and uncontrolled movement of persons, contraband, and weapons into or out of in-custody areas.

Space allocations for detention functions within the building include holding cells, both centrally located and on the courtroom floors, and a system of dedicated elevators and/or corridors contained within the secure perimeter of the in-custody holding and transport areas. Standards require that all court facilities provide a secure pathway for in-custody movement from the transport vehicle, through pedestrian sally ports, to holding areas and the courtroom—using dedicated circulation to avoid cross-circulation with judges, staff, and the public.

1. Defendant Arrival

All transport vehicles delivering in-custody defendants access the courthouse proper through a secure vehicle sally port. Individuals are escorted from the vehicle sally port into the facility through a pedestrian sally port. For in-custody defendants escorted on foot (e.g., from a colocated detention facility), the entrance includes a pedestrian sally port that provides direct, controlled access to the secure circulation on the courthouse side.

In-custody defendants proceed to the central holding area (directly from the pedestrian sally port or through secure circulation), where paper check, pat search, and/or staging may occur before they are placed in a holding cell.

2. Holding

a. ~~Provide b~~Both individual and group holding cells shall~~ould~~ be provided to allow for containment of various in-custody populations and for efficient grouping and movement to the designated holding cells located on the courtroom floors. The area must be configured to provide for required sight and sound separation~~s~~ of cells and related circulation paths.

Commented [DP1]: Gensler: change should to shall.

b. The number, size, and configuration of holding cells will vary based on the type of courthouse and/or the scale. For example, small facilities (one to four courtrooms) may not need both central holding and courtroom holding cells because volume and physical proximity may allow for in-custody defendants to be moved directly from the sally port into courtroom holding cells. Large, multistory facilities, however, need a designated central holding area to manage the influx of what could be hundreds of in-custody defendants daily~~,~~ and to manage their movement from central holding to the courtroom holding cells distributed on the courtroom floors.

c. When court call approaches, in-custody defendants move from the central holding area to the courtroom holding cells located immediately adjacent to the courtrooms. Movement shall be via a secure, dedicated elevator and/or corridor, and defendants may or may not be escorted.

d. Larger facilities may have courtrooms that are dedicated to special dockets, such as arraignment, felony disposition, drug court, pretrial hearings, and family and civil court cases. In smaller courthouses, a single courtroom may be used for arraignment for part of the day and for trials or hearings the rest of the day. Although different courtroom types may present different courtroom holding needs, courtroom holding should be provided between each pair of courtrooms in a shared "core." The core space shall include individual holding cells, noncontact attorney-client interview rooms, sound-lock vestibules into each courtroom, and a dedicated secure elevator stop, if applicable.

e. If adjacent courtroom holding is not provided for courtrooms initially designated for civil cases (which typically do not require courtroom holding), the space should presumptively be configured (horizontally and vertically) so that holding could be added between a pair of these courtrooms~~,~~ if the designation changes.

f. For courts that have high-volume in-custody access and ~~have~~ rapid case turnover, such as arraignment court, consider locating larger holding areas adjacent to the courtroom~~,~~ or ~~locate~~ locating the courtroom adjacent to central holding, thereby eliminating the

intermediate step of dedicated courtroom holding altogether. If not possible, locate these courtrooms as close as possible to the central holding area (i.e., in larger courthouses, locate arraignment courts on lower floors closer to basement-level central holding) to minimize the transport time and travel distance for the large numbers of in-custody defendants.

g. At the conclusion of the courtroom proceeding, in-custody defendants are returned to the central holding area to await transport back to the detention center. Based on local preference and demand, remand cells may be designated for individuals who came to court on the public side but have been remanded to jail as a result of the hearing.

8.D PROGRAM COMPONENTS

1. Secure Perimeter

The secure perimeter is a physical barrier between in-custody holding and transport areas and the building exterior and/or other nondetention departmental areas within the courthouse. The secure perimeter prevents the unauthorized and uncontrolled movement of persons, contraband, and weapons into and out of in-custody areas. An access control point (sally port) facilitates the movement of authorized persons between the secure and ~~nonsecure~~ unsecure sides of the secure perimeter barrier. The secure perimeter barrier comprises maximum- security construction for partitions (full -height, slab -to -slab), windows, doors, and floors; security bars at any vertical and/or horizontal penetrations 5″ or larger in any direction; and sally ports at all access points.

2. Vehicle Sally Port

Vehicular access to the courthouse proper is via an enclosed vehicle sally port. A "drive-through" vehicle sally port is preferred, but not all sites and building configurations will be able to accommodate one. The optimal configuration must be determined on a project-by-project basis. (See figure 8.1.)

a. In all cases, the vehicle sally port must be of secure construction and ~~must~~ minimize views into and out of the vehicle sally port area.

b. The vehicle sally port must be designed with careful consideration of traffic flow and vehicle turning radii; backing maneuvers and three-point turns for large custody vehicles are to be avoided.

c. ~~Provide a~~A secure access gate at the entry point, a second egress gate, and a personnel gate are required. The vehicle sally port gates shall be interlocking and able to be electronically monitored and controlled at the detention control room. The primary means of communication and coordination between an arriving in-custody transport vehicle and the detention control room is via radio. ~~; However~~however, ~~provide~~ an audio call station/pedestal ~~shall~~~~must~~ be provided for outside agency use. Include video monitoring at access and egress points. Access and egress gates and doors shall be detention grade and must be sized (width and height) to accommodate the largest transport vehicle expected (car, van, or bus).

d. The vehicle sally port must provide adequate space for the temporary parking of transport vehicles for the loading and unloading of in-custody defendants. The number and type of transport vehicles to be accommodated in the vehicle sally port will vary by project. For example, courthouses that are adjoined to the primary detention facility by tunnel or secure walkway would have considerably less vehicular transport and may require no more than a few parking spaces for sedans. In a major criminal court facility located remotely from the jail, the vehicle sally port may require parking for several large-capacity vehicles, vans, and cars.

DIVISION ONE: DESIGN CRITERIA
1 General Principles
2 Courthouse Organization
3 Site Design
4 Courthouse Security
5 Court Set
6 Jury Facilities and Court Administration
7 Special Services
8 IN-CUSTODY DEFENDANT RECEIVING, HOLDING, AND TRANSPORT
8.A Objectives
8.B Planning Criteria
8.C Functional Overview
8.D Program Components
8.E Technical Criteria
8.F Electronic Detention Control System
9 Public Spaces
10 Building Support Services

Commented [DP2]: Gensler: change must to shall.

Commented [DP3]: Added info in the next section.

The functions of the detention control room and security operations center may be combined in small court facilities, depending on the Operational Program Statement provided by the local sheriff's department responsible for the security of both the holding areas and the overall courthouse.

When the functions of the detention control room and security operations center are combined, coordinate the detention control room requirements with the security operations center requirements prescribed in chapter 4, Courthouse Security.

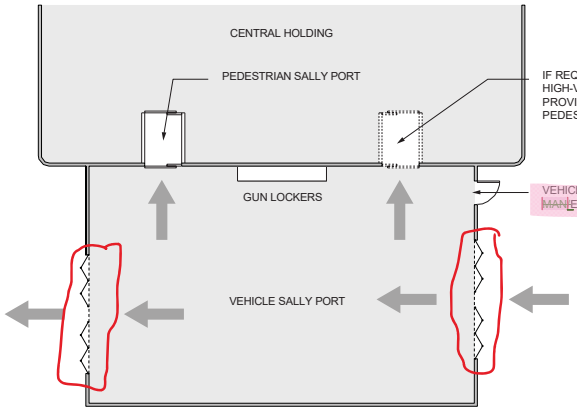


Figure 8.1 Vehicle Sally Port

e. ~~Provide a wall-mounted gun locker in t~~The vehicle sally port requires a wall-mounted gun locker for securing transport staff weapons outside the secure perimeter. Such weapons lockers shall be equipped with individual compartments, each with an individual locker device.

f. Sight and sound separation of adult and juvenile in-custody defendants must be maintained at the point of reception in the vehicle sally port and into the building via the secure pedestrian sally port. This separation can be accomplished with a single pedestrian sally port. If required at a high-volume courthouse, provide a secondary pedestrian sally port dedicated to the movement of female~~s~~ and/or ~~juveniles~~juvenile in-custodies.

3. Pedestrian Sally Port

In-custody defendants are off-loaded from the transport vehicle in the vehicle sally port and escorted into the secure area of the courthouse via a pedestrian sally port. A pedestrian sally port is also required at all points of entry or egress into and out of the secure perimeter of the in-custody holding and transport areas. The pedestrian sally port provides control of movement to and from adjoining areas and prevents infiltration to these areas by unauthorized persons—or escape of in-custody defendants.

a. The pedestrian sally port should have a minimum width of 8′ determined by the custody agency's standard operating procedures regarding the maximum number of in-custodies allowed in one movement.

b. The doors at each end of the pedestrian sally port are interlocked, meaning that one door must be in the locked position before the other can be opened. Provide metal or other durable, heavy-duty, heat-resistant roll-up doors for the enclosed sally ports. For ~~open~~ open-air sally ports, sliding doors may be considered. The options ~~of~~ for door types shall be reviewed with the Judicial Council early in design.

c. Pedestrian sally port doors are monitored and controlled by the detention control room staff. Provide a voice and video connection. Provide glazing to facilitate visual observation of the pedestrian sally port entry and within by the security staff.

d. Pedestrian sally ports must meet secure perimeter construction requirements.

4. Detention Control Room

The detention control room is responsible for all circulation in and out of the secure perimeter of the secure transport and holding areas, detention circulation corridors for moving in-custody defendants to and from courtroom holding areas, and elevators dedicated

Commented [TP4]: Sally port gate graphic shows bi-folding graphic- suggest to remove door and show roll down type

Commented [DP4R2]: Gensler: update the graphic.

Commented [DP4R3]: Gensler: update figure 8.1 to align the roll up door and arrows on the left with the ones on the right

Commented [LD5]: "pedestrian"?

Commented [DP5R2]: We don't need either of the qualifier.

Commented [AG6]: Lesson Learned from San Diego Courthouse: Exiting door is reported to be a "plastic-like" material. POE identified that the roll down door in the sallyport is deteriorating from the heat of the detainee bus exhaust. During design, consider metal or other type of heat-resistant roll down doors for the sallyport.

Commented [DP6R2]: Incorporated.

to in-custody movement. (See figure 8.2.) Detention control will control and monitor doors and locking devices, video surveillance systems, the duress alarm system, intercom and paging systems, lighting, and other functions dedicated to all in-custody secure holding and transport areas throughout the courthouse. Detention control has monitoring capabilities within the in-custody holding and transport areas for doors that are equipped with card access devices.

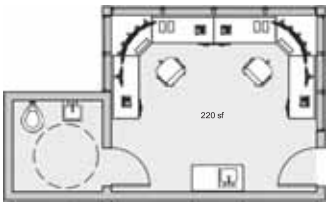


Figure 8.2 Detention Control Room

a. The system's main point of control shall be located at the detention control. In larger courthouse facilities, the secure holding areas will have a dedicated control room (detention control) located within central holding.

b. In courthouses with a segregated holding area for juvenile in-custodies, a separate control station may be required for the juvenile section because ~~juveniles~~ they are typically monitored and handled by probation officers, who are different personnel from the sheriff's department personnel who control the adult in-custody populations. This control station may be a desk with a control panel in the control room for probation officers to operate doors remotely within the juvenile area. In some cases, the local sheriff and probation departments may request that probation officers have a completely separate control room for the juvenile area.

c. A separate security operations center for managing overall courthouse building security will be located elsewhere in the building, typically adjacent to the primary screening area in the main building lobby. Refer to chapter 4, Courthouse Security.

d. Smaller courthouses may not warrant two separate control rooms. The goal of achieving staffing and operational efficiencies should be kept in mind. The functions of the detention control room and security operations center may be combined in small courthouses, depending on the Operational Program Statement provided by the local sheriff's department responsible for the security of both the holding areas and the overall courthouse. If a single central control room services the entire courthouse, the control room shall be located outside the secure perimeter of the in-custody holding areas. In such instances, the opening and closing of cell doors, operation of in-custody elevators, and other functions generally performed by the dedicated security personnel from the detention control room shall be managed from the single central control room.

e. Whether the detention control room is within the in-custody holding area secure perimeter or elsewhere in the courthouse, it shall be constructed with security-grade partitions extending to the underside of the structure above. Access to the detention control room shall be limited and controlled by the detention control room itself. The detention control room should be inaccessible to in-custody defendants at all times. It should be equipped with a pantry station and a toilet room and must be accessible to persons with disabilities.

f. When located within central holding, the control workstation within the detention control room shall be located so that the detention control officer has direct line of sight into holding areas and the main circulation areas within central holding. The line of sight must work from a seated position and be unobstructed by security equipment configurations.

DIVISION ONE: DESIGN CRITERIA
1 General Principles
2 Courthouse Organization
3 Site Design
4 Courthouse Security
5 Court Set
6 Jury Facilities and Court Administration
7 Special Services
8 IN-CUSTODY DEFENDANT RECEIVING, HOLDING, AND TRANSPORT
8.A Objectives
8.B Planning Criteria
8.C Functional Overview
8.D Program Components
8.E Technical Criteria
8.F Electronic Detention Control System
10 Building Support Services

A sally port is required at any penetration allowing access in or out of the secure perimeter and shall be controlled by detention control.

g. The detention control room environment must reduce stress and fatigue, as well as enhance the staff member's efficiency. Sound-absorbing material must be used to reduce sound reverberation and harshness of noise inside the room. Lighting design must reduce glare and reflection, with provision of a dimmer switch to control the lighting levels.

h. The detention control room will be equipped with workstations that accommodate all equipment associated with monitor, control, and surveillance functions. The number of control workstations will be determined on a project-by-project basis. Control workstations should be flexible to accommodate the integration of future technologies and shall integrate wires and cabling within an enclosed, accessible housing. The use of modular or systems furniture is preferred. An ergonomic layout is very important. Monitors for video, productivity applications, and detention control should be uniform in size and mounted on articulating arms.

i. Only electronic devices related to the user interface layout are accommodated at control workstations. The programmable logic controller (PLC) equipment, servers, and supporting equipment must be located in a nearby technology closet or main distribution frame (MDF) or intermediate distribution frame (IDF) room; access to the technology closets shall be located outside the in-custody secure perimeter. An equipment room dedicated to housing the electronic detention control systems is not required.

5. Central Holding

In-custody defendants are detained in a secure central holding area pending transport to the courtroom floor. Both individual and group holding cells are provided in this area, allowing for separation of juveniles and separation by gender. Several factors influence the number of central holding cells required. Where the courthouse is connected to a jail, for example, in-custody defendants can be escorted to the court more frequently and in smaller groups. The number of vehicular court transports—morning and afternoon runs or once a day—can also reduce the amount of central holding space required, which is some of the costliest construction in the building. (See figures 8.3–8.5.)

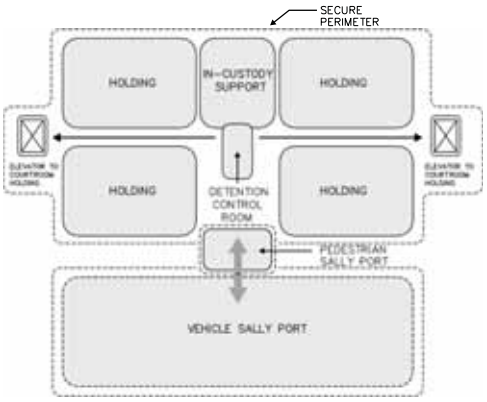


Figure 8.3 Central Holding

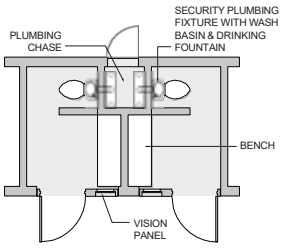


Figure 8.4 Single Holding Cells

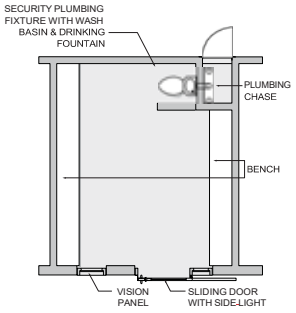


Figure 8.5 Group Holding Cell

a. Some staging may occur before placement in a holding cell, including a paperwork check and/or pat search. Provide a counter for completing paperwork and benches for in-custody defendants awaiting processing.

b. Central holding is operational during daytime hours only, with no overnight use of the holding cells. Still, all cells must comply with the requirements of California Code of Regulations, titles 15 and 24, for temporary holding facilities, as well as Prison Rape Elimination Act (PREA) standards to maintain privacy of in-custodies. Therefore, they must:

- Contain a minimum of 10 square feet (~~SF~~sf) of floor area per in-custody;
- Be limited to no more than 16 in-custodies;
- Be no smaller than 40 ~~SF~~sf;
- Have a clear ceiling height of 8′ or more;
- Contain seating to accommodate all in-custodies;
- Contain a toilet, floor-mounted modesty panel, wash basin, and drinking fountain;
- Contain one-sided privacy film on the glass in the detention door, not to exceed 53″ above floor finish, if required by BSCC and if it does not affect the UL listing of the glass; and
- Be equipped with an audio monitoring system.

c. Although they are not required by regulation, some cells may be equipped with cameras at the request of the court, subject to Judicial Council review and approval.

d. Cells must be of secure construction. Fixtures and furnishings should be antiligature (suicide resistant). Accessible holding cells must be available in the central holding area. Provide a minimum of one for each area of separation: male, female, and juvenile. Confirm requirements for mirrors in detention cells, including the accessible cells.

e. Access to the central holding area is controlled by detention control room staff. Cell doors are controlled remotely by detention control room staff, with manual (key) fail override. If swinging doors are used instead of sliders, they must swing out to prevent the occupant's ability to barricade the door. Cells should be positioned to avoid blind spots and provide optimal sightlines for staff working in the area. Provide glazed cell fronts to maximize visibility.

DIVISION ONE: DESIGN CRITERIA
1 General Principles
2 Courthouse Organization
3 Site Design
4 Courthouse Security
5 Court Set
6 Jury Facilities and Court Administration
7 Special Services
8 IN-CUSTODY DEFENDANT RECEIVING, HOLDING, AND TRANSPORT
8.A Objectives
8.B Planning Criteria
8.C Functional Overview
8.D Program Components
8.E Technical Criteria
8.F Electronic Detention Control System
9 Public Spaces
10 Building Support Services

The door inside the courtroom leading to the courtroom holding shall be designed to match the courtroom decor and is operated by the bailiff.

f. BSCC requirements state that toilet areas shall allow modesty for in-custodies with staff being able to visually supervise. Toilets should be positioned in cells to allow for surveillance by staff while still providing modesty for the occupants. If supervision is supplemented by video surveillance in the cell area, cameras should be positioned or digitally obscured to allow for privacy of the toilet component.

g. Sight and sound separation between adults and juveniles in central holding requires separate areas. It is not enough to have separate cells accessed from the same corridor. Note that juvenile probation staff are, generally, responsible for the supervision of in-custody juveniles in central holding; some space for probation staff may be required in this area.

6. Detention Circulation and Elevators

a. All in-custody holding and circulation must be separated from public and private circulation paths and spaces. The areas associated with in-custody holding and circulation are contained within the secure perimeter. A sally port is required at any penetration allowing access in or out of the secure perimeter and shall be controlled by detention control.

b. In courthouses with multiple multistory court sets per floor and/or where central holding is not colocated on a court's floor, a dedicated detention circulation path is required to transport in-custody defendants from the central holding area to in-custody elevators serving the courtroom holding areas. Detention corridors shall be 6′–8′ wide (refer to chapter 2, Courthouse Organization) and shall minimize turns to facilitate direct line of sight and avoid blind spots created by protrusions. All secure circulation corridors on courtroom floors between courtrooms shall be built to detention-grade standards. The secure corridors in central holding shall have detention-grade floors and walls, but acoustical ceiling tiles or gypsum board ceilings are an acceptable alternative.

c. The detention control room monitors and controls access and movement of in-custody elevators. In-custody elevators must include video and intercom capabilities and be able to accommodate a gurney. The baseline standard shall be a 4,000-pound-capacity cab with a minimum clear inside dimension of 5′8″ × 7′1″. ~~Alternative capacity cabs and cab dimensions may be appropriate for certain courthouses, depending on the size of the courthouse, the number of holding cores, and the Operational Program Statement for the specific courthouse.~~

Commented [DP7]: Based on a closer review of the required dimension for the elevator, an alternate smaller elevator does not work since it is too tight to fit a gurney, law enforcement and paramedic. Therefore, removing this statement.

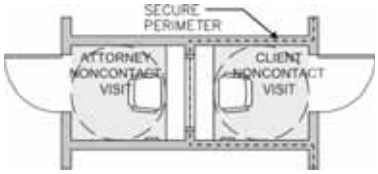


Figure 8.6 Attorney-Client Interview Rooms



Figure 8.7 Attorney-Client Interview Room Window

7. Attorney-Client Interview Rooms

Attorney-client interview rooms provide the opportunity for counsel to consult privately with their in-custody clients. A "noncontact" visitation arrangement is required to prevent the exchange of contraband. Attorneys do not enter the secure perimeter of the in-custody holding areas. In-custody defendants enter the interview room from the secure side (within the secure perimeter), and attorneys enter from the public circulation or a courtroom. (See figure 8.6.)

a. Both entries shall be separated and enclosed from adjacent spaces to promote confidentiality. The entry on the in-custody side shall have glazing to facilitate visual observation by the courtroom holding officer. The wall between the in-custody defendant and the attorney must meet secure perimeter construction requirements. The two parties view each other via a glazed opening per guidelines outlined in tool 5, In-Custody Interview Room Guidelines. (See figure 8.7.)

b. Communication shall be facilitated by passive design, without using handsets or amplification devices. Fixed writing surfaces may be provided upon court request. Pass-through windows are discouraged for security reasons. If provided upon court request and Judicial Council approval, they shall follow the requirements outlined in tool 5, In-Custody Interview Room Guidelines.

c. Attorney interview rooms shallould be sized for wheelchair movement on both the attorney and in-custody sides. Provide not less than 70 square feet of floor space with no single dimension less than 6 feet. See title 15 regulations, title 19, and title 24, part 2 ~~tool 2, Catalog of Courtroom Layouts,~~ for additional room ~~sizes~~requirements. The in-custody side shall have a detention-grade movable plastic chair for the in-custody defendant. Fixed or swivel stools for in-custody defendants are not permitted. In-custody defendants are not expected to open and close doors themselves in holding areas that are ~~manned~~ staffed or have remotely controlled operators. Door handles and locks are not permitted on the interior side of the door.

d. Spaces should be treated to manage reverberation of sound within, as well as the transmission of sound to adjacent spaces, because conversations held in these rooms are confidential.

e. Because attorney-client interview rooms are adjacent to courtroom holding areas, in-custody access is from the courtroom holding circulation area, and attorney access is from public circulation or from the courtroom itself, provide a sound-lock vestibule or barriers to both sides for acoustical separation. Determining the location of attorney entrances is based on local court preferences and security staff efficiencies. (See figure 8.8.)

f. In some instances, typically associated with larger courthouses, local users might request attorney-client interview rooms at the central holding area. This scenario necessitates provisions for public circulation (corridor and/or

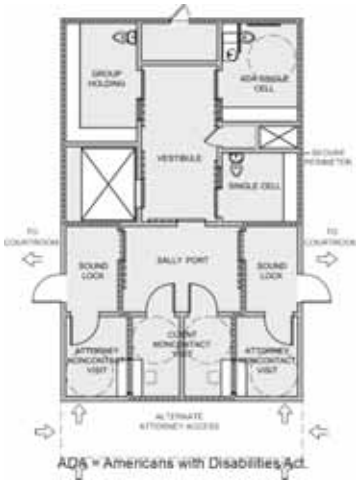


Figure 8.8 Courtroom Holding

DIVISION ONE: DESIGN CRITERIA
1 General Principles
2 Courthouse Organization
3 Site Design
4 Courthouse Security
5 Court Set
6 Jury Facilities and Court Administration
7 Special Services
8 IN-CUSTODY DEFENDANT RECEIVING, HOLDING, AND TRANSPORT
8.A Objectives
8.B Planning Criteria
8.C Functional Overview
8.D Program Components
8.E Technical Criteria
8.F Electronic Detention Control System
9 Public Spaces
10 Building Support Services

Commented [TP8]: The window in the photo does not show the paper transaction pass through- Some Capital projects are getting confused and showing pass through windows

Commented [DP8R2]: This picture is correct. Pass-through windows are generally not allowed. If provided, they need to follow tool 5 requirements. I have added a note about that.

Commented [DP9]: Gensler: add this to be consistent with tool 5.

Commented [DP10]: Gensler: make these changes based on BSCC input.

Technical Criteria

- Construction/finishes
- Detention doors
- Detention hollow metal frames
- Miscellaneous detention Equipment
- Security glazing
- Light fixtures
- Plumbing fixtures
- Sprinkler heads
- Mechanical grilles
- Security sealants
- Tamper-proof metal fasteners
- Detention toilet accessories
- Detention door signage

Where possible, cell plumbing fixtures shall not be located adjacent to courtroom partitions. The cell toilet fixture shall have secure plumbing readily serviceable by a technician from outside the cell.

elevators) to extend to central holding, where attorneys would access attorney-client interview rooms from public circulation. The detention control room shall have direct line of sight to attorney-client interview rooms located within the central holding area.

g. See tool 5, In-Custody Interview Room Guidelines, for detailed requirements.

8. Courtroom Holding

a. Each courtroom shall have direct access to a courtroom holding core that includes a sound-lock vestibule, in-custody holding cells, and an attorney-client interview room. Courtrooms shall be paired, sharing a courtroom holding core.

b. A sound-lock vestibule acts as a sound buffer between the courtroom and the holding area and screens views from the courtroom into the holding area. In addition, the sound -lock serves as a sally port for managing controlled movement between the two areas. The door inside the courtroom leading to the courtroom holding shall be designed to match the courtroom decor and is operated by the bailiff. Therefore, it does not typically require detention-grade hardware. The inner door leading to the holding area is detention grade and may be operated from the detention control room or manually by the bailiff.

c. The courtroom holding cells shall:

- Contain a minimum of 10 ~~SF~~ sf of floor area per in-custody;
- Be limited to no more than 16 in-custodies;
- Be no smaller than 40 ~~SF~~sf;
- Have a clear ceiling height of 8′ or more;
- Contain seating to accommodate all in-custodies;
- Contain a toilet, floor- mounted modesty panel, wash basin, and drinking fountain;
- Contain one-sided privacy film on the glass in the detention door, not to exceed 53″ above floor finish, if required by BSCC and if it does not affect the UL listing of the glass; and
- Be equipped with an audio monitoring system.

d. Cells shall have glazed ~~cell~~ fronts to manage sound from within ~~the cells~~ and ~~to~~ maximize supervision of in-custody defendants by staff. The detention control room may operate cell doors remotely. Cell doors shall be equipped with a manual key override if they are operated from the control room. All cell doors must swing out (or be sliding) to prevent an in-custody defendant from barricading the door. Provide a minimum of one accessible cell per courtroom holding area. All holding cells have penal-grade plumbing fixtures.

e. In-custody defendants access the noncontact attorney-client interview room from within the courtroom holding circulation area. The design and arrangement of the courtroom holding cells and circulation areas shall facilitate supervision and ~~shall~~ avoid blind spots.

f. Measures shall be taken to manage sound reverberation within the courtroom holding core as well as prevent the transmission of sound between the courtroom holding core and the adjacent courtroom. Where possible, cell plumbing fixtures shall not be located adjacent to courtroom partitions.

9. Secure In-Custody Holding Support Areas

Several program components are essential to the daily operations of the in-custody holding and transport areas. While essential, they are not accessible to in-custody defendants.

a. Sheriff Lockers: Confirm locker sizes and types with the sheriff for storage requirements. Confirm locking mechanisms for the sheriff lockers.

b. Armory: Provide an armory ~~Located~~ located within the in-custody secure perimeter~~, the armory provides~~ for the secure storage of tactical defense equipment. The armory shall be constructed of security-grade partitions that extend to the underside of the structure above. Access is limited to authorized personnel only. The door to the armory shall have hardened door hardware to prevent kick-ins. The armory shall be equipped with monitoring and surveillance devices. Detention control is responsible for monitoring the security of the armory. The need for an armory and its location is dependent on the size of the court facility.

c. Safety Equipment Storage: Provide ~~A~~ a secure area ~~shall be provided~~ for the storage of safety equipment such as fire extinguishers, self-contained breathing apparatus, wire and bar cutters, and emergency lights. The area should lock securely.

d. Lunch Storage: Provide the ability to store lunches for in-custody defendants who are scheduled to spend a full day at the courthouse. Requirements and protocol for the types of lunches, the quantity of lunches, and how lunches are brought to the court facility are determined on a case-by-case basis. For the storage of in-custody meals, include space and hookups for refrigerated storage, and provide a sink and a general dry storage area. The quantity of storage required depends on the size of the court facility.

e. Staff Break Room: Locate the staff break room immediately outside the secure perimeter with other security functions. The break room does not require detention-grade finishes or equipment. It should accommodate storage and provide space for vending machines, a coffee machine, a refrigerator, and a table and chairs. The size of and need for a staff break room depend~~s~~ on the size of the court facility.

f. Janitor Closet: Locate ~~Courtroom holding areas do not require a janitor closet. In the central holding area,~~ at least one securely lockable janitor closet ~~shall be located~~ within the secure perimeter in the central holding area. The janitor closet shall be equipped with a mop sink and sufficient storage for cleaning implements and supplies. Courtroom holding areas do not require a janitor closet.

g. Storage Room: Provide ~~One~~ one or more storage rooms ~~shall be provided~~ to accommodate supplies and other materials. Court holding facilities are excluded from the California Building Code's storage space requirement for personal and institutional clothing because institutional clothing is issued at a different facility.

8.E TECHNICAL CRITERIA

1. General Information

The purpose of this section is to provide detailed description and technical design direction for the secure construction of the holding areas, including doors, frames, locks, wall construction, surface material finishes, equipment, and fixtures.

a. Each secure holding area with multiple rooms, whether central or adjacent to the courtroom, requires a secure perimeter of an approved system constructed to the underside of the structure, with a limited number of 8″ × 8″ or larger penetrations and equipped with security locks and vestibules.

b. All rooms must have a minimum clear ceiling height of 8′ to the underside of surface-mounted light fixtures or other elements. Higher ceilings are preferred when possible~~,~~ to allow the installation of sprinkler heads and smoke detectors farther from the in-custody defendant.

DIVISION ONE: DESIGN CRITERIA
1 General Principles
2 Courthouse Organization
3 Site Design
4 Courthouse Security
5 Court Set
6 Jury Facilities and Court Administration
7 Special Services
8 IN-CUSTODY DEFENDANT RECEIVING, HOLDING, AND TRANSPORT
8.A Objectives
8.B Planning Criteria
8.C Functional Overview
8.D Program Components
8.E Technical Criteria
8.F Electronic Detention Control System
9 Public Spaces
10 Building Support Services

Commented [SN11]: To be aware of: Since this is not definitive, how would someone know if the court is or is not excluded from the requirement? In the particular design and plans? How will this work with DB where the DB is designing and constructing? Will you state that this is required or not for that specific facility?

Commented [DP11R2]: Good catch, this doesn't apply to any courthouse. I have modified the statement.

2. Construction and Finishes

2.1 Floor Construction

The floor construction at all areas within the security perimeter of the central and courtroom holding areas will be concrete. Also, to help prevent flooding of the holding areas, slope the floor to the floor drains.

2.2 Concrete Floor Finishes

a. A sealed concrete floor finish shall consist of a chemical hardener/sealer finish. This finish is used at non-in-custody traffic areas and areas that typically see a low volume of foot traffic. These areas include but are not limited to janitor closets, mechanical rooms, and storage rooms.

b. A polished concrete floor finish shall consist of a combination of diamond grinding and polishing using a chemical hardener and sealing agent to get the desired level of concrete finish. This finish is used in in-custody circulation areas where a high volume of in-custody traffic is expected. These areas include but are not limited to corridors, sally ports, and staging areas.

c. An epoxy resinous floor system shall consist of an elastomeric primer, two intermediate coats of clear mixed liquids with aggregate, and a final clear glazing coat. This finish is used at all in-custody cells and in-custody–attorney visiting areas. This finish can also be used at corridors, sally ports, and staging areas.

2.3 Wall Construction

a. Wall construction of 8″ concrete masonry units grouted solid with 3,000-000 pounds per square inch (psi) grout, including vertical and horizontal reinforcing to the underside of the structure, shall be used at all central, courtroom holding, and detention control room secure perimeter walls.

b. A wall system with 8″ or 6″ concrete masonry units grouted solid with 3,000-000 psi grout and vertical reinforcing to a height of 10′ above the finished floor and extended to the underside of the structure with 3-5/8″ 20-gauge metal studs at 16″ on center with secure metal lath and 5/8″ high-impact Type X gypsum board on both sides of the metal studs shall be used inside the security perimeter at walls that are required to extend to the underside of the structure, such as rated corridor walls.

c. A wall system with 8″ or 6″ concrete masonry units grouted solid with vertical reinforcing to a height determined by the designers and generally extended a minimum of 8″ above the finished ceiling shall be used inside the security perimeter at walls that are not required to extend to the underside of the structure, such as nonrated corridor walls. If these walls are part of the secure envelope, they must be tied into the secure ceiling.

d. Precast concrete wall panels with thicknesses based on the level of security can be used for walls both forming and inside the security perimeter.

e. A metal wall panel detention system has a typical panel thickness of 2″ with 10-gauge faceplates on each side and 10-gauge base, wall, and ceiling channels. Panels are also grouted solid with 3,000 psi grout. This wall system can be used at cell fronts, cell backs, and cell demising walls. Limitations would be height of panels and fire ratings over one hour.

f. Do not use detention panels for rated walls. Only use concrete masonry unit (CMU) for detention-rated walls. Develop or specify grouting installation

procedures for CMU detention-rated walls. Do not locate equipment that requires access above detention cells.

2.4 Wall Finishes

a. A fiber-reinforced, epoxy, abrasion-resistant coating system consists of a surface preparation followed by a primer coat, body coat, and final coat. This finish system shall be used in all holding cells and in-custody–attorney interview rooms. This finish can also be used in circulation areas.

b. An ~~Epoxy~~ epoxy paint system is a low-~~VOC (~~volatile organic compound (VOC) product consisting of a block filler and two topcoats. This finish shall be used as an 8″ high base at all latex enamel-painted walls and can be used at all circulation walls.

c. A latex enamel paint system is a low-VOC product consisting of a block filler and two topcoats. This finish shall be used at all circulation areas and ~~al~~areas ~~non~~not accessible to ~~-~~in-custody~~- accessible areas~~ies.

d. A stainless steel finish shall be used on all in-custody elevator cab walls.

2.5 Ceiling Construction

a. A system of precast concrete with all ceiling joints grouted solid is painted in the field and can be used at all areas except where acoustical ceilings are required.

b. An acoustical steel roof/floor deck consists of a cellular deck profile with a ribbed deck welded to an acoustical perforated bottom plate. The deck thickness is typically 1-1/2″ or 3″, with a lightweight concrete topping slab. Factory-~~-~~installed sound-absorbing insulation is installed into the cells of the deck. This system comes with a primer and requires final painting in the field. This system shall be used at all holding cell and in-custody–attorney visiting areas.

c. An acoustical panel deck consisting of a one-piece galvannealed steel plate with 5/32″ diameter perforated holes is typically 14 gauge, with a heavy-duty steel frame. Antimicrobial and sound-deadening insulation is installed on top of the panels. The system comes with a durable powder coat finish and shall be used at all circulation areas.

d. A~~n a~~coustical metal ceiling panels ~~detention system is the ceiling system for~~are used for the metal wall panel detention system. The typical panel thickness is 2″, with a perforated acoustical bottom plate and sound-absorbing insulation installed in the panels. This system comes with a primer and is painted in the field with two topcoats of a low-VOC latex enamel paint.

e. An acoustical ceiling tile of either 2′ × 2′ or 2′ × 4′ on a suspension grid with hanger wires comes with a factory finish and can be used in areas not accessible to ~~non-~~in-custody~~- accessible areas~~ies. This system can also be used in in-custody circulation areas where the ceiling height is greater than 10′ and hold-down clips are provided.

f. A system of 5/8″ high-impact gypsum board on a suspension grid with hanger wires is painted in the field and shall be used in areas not accessible to ~~non-~~in-custody~~- accessible areas~~ies, such as staff toilets and janitor closets.

g. Stainless steel is a factory finish and shall be used in in-custody elevators.

h. Exposed construction would have no finish and could be used in a mechanical or electrical ~~-type~~ room.

DIVISION ONE: DESIGN CRITERIA

1 General Principles
2 Courthouse Organization
3 Site Design
4 Courthouse Security
5 Court Set
6 Jury Facilities and Court Administration
7 Special Services
8 IN-CUSTODY DEFENDANT RECEIVING, HOLDING, AND TRANSPORT
8.A Objectives
8.B Planning Criteria
8.C Functional Overview
8.D Program Components
8.E Technical Criteria
8.F Electronic Detention Control System
9 Public Spaces
10 Building Support Services

Table 8.1 Technical Matrix

	Single Holding Cell	Group Holding cell	Holding Control Room	In-Custody Circulation	In-Custody Sally Port	Pedestrian Sally Port	Vehicle Sally Port	Sally Port Staging	In-Custody Interview	Attorney Interview Room	In-Custody Search	Armory
Swing and Sliding Door Types												
Detention hollow metal flush door						•						•
Detention hollow metal flush door ~~with~~with c~~C~~uff pass												
Detention hollow metal half- glass door			•					•	•	•		
Detention hollow metal half- glass door ~~with~~ with cuff pass	•	•										
Detention hollow metal vision panel door				•	•		•					
Detention hollow metal vision panel door ~~with~~ with view shutter											•	
Hollow Door Frame Types												
Controlled swing/slider door			•	•								
Controlled swing/slider door ~~with~~ with sidelight	•	•			•	•	•	•				
Noncontrolled door											•	•
Noncontrolled door ~~with~~ with sidelight									•	•		
Borrowed light frame									•	•		
Control room borrowed light frame			•									
Security Glazing Types												
Glass-clad polycarbonate glazing manufactured (requirements at 8.E.6.2, Security Glazing ~~Types~~)					•				•	•	•	
Laminated polycarbonate glazing manufactured (requirements at 8.E.6.2, Security Glazing ~~Types~~)	•	•		•			•	•				•
Glass-clad polycarbonate with tinting film for one-way vision			•									
Benches												
Detention ~~Benches~~ benches (requirements at 8.E.4.2, Detention Benches)	•	•			•			•			•	
Detention Equipment												
Paper pass (requirements at 8.E.5.1, Detention Equipment Types)			•									
Gun locker (requirements at 8.E.5.1, Detention Equipment Types)												•

3. Detention Doors

3.1 Detention Swing Doors

See table 8.1 for locations and type.

a. ~~Fabricate d~~Detention hollow metal doors ~~must~~shall be fabricated from 12-gauge galvannealed steel face sheets spot-welded to the internal core construction.

b. The top and bottom edges of the door shall be closed with a continuous closing channel. The vertical edges of the door shall be reinforced by a continuous steel channel, not less than 12 gauge, extending the full length of the door. Edge seams shall be continuously welded and finished till smooth such that no seams are visible. All metal doors shall have a flush top and bottom edge channel and shall be welded to the closing channel.

c. ~~Provide c~~Cuff passes shall~~must~~ be provided at the edge of all cell doors and at the d custody side of attorney-client interview rooms.

d. The door finish shall match the wall finish on that side of the door.

e. All cell doors must swing out of all cells and attorney visiting rooms.

3.2 Detention Sliding Doors

See table 8.1 for locations and type.

a. Provide sliding detention door device assemblies, including locking device, receiver, overhead door hanger, bottom door guide, lock column, and enclosure as a complete assembly.

b. Provide cuff passes at the edge of all cell doors.

c. Match ~~The~~ the door finish ~~shall match~~to the wall finish on that side of the door.

d. Detention swing and sliding door types include:

- Detention hollow metal flush door with or without cuff pass;
- Detention hollow metal half-glass door with or without cuff pass; and
- Detention hollow metal vision panel door with or without view shutter.

3.3 Cuff Passes in Detention Doors

a. Standard cuff pass opening shall be 16″ long × 5″ high with 10 Series lock and continuous hinge. Cuff pass shall be flush with the door.

b. Horizontal center line of cuff port shall be 35″ from finished floor. See figure 8.9 for center line height requirement for cuff pass.

c. Cuff pass shall be installed at the factory in the detention door and integral door frame.

d. The detention door shall have an integral glazed opening for visual surveillance. The glazing shall be single ~~pane or~~ double pane with two vertical panes, with the lower half including a tinted film for modesty screening if required by BSCC and if it does not affect the UL listing of the glass. See table 8.1 for glazing requirements. See figure 8.9 for glazed opening in the detention door.

e. ~~Standardize d~~Door type, configuration, glazing, and cuff pass design and placement shall~~must~~ be standardized to reduce costs associated with unique door designs for new courthouses and replacement doors. Off-the-shelf detention doors that meet these requirements are recommended.

DIVISION ONE: DESIGN CRITERIA
1 General Principles
2 Courthouse Organization
3 Site Design
4 Courthouse Security
5 Court Set
6 Jury Facilities and Court Administration
7 Special Services
8 IN-CUSTODY DEFENDANT RECEIVING, HOLDING, AND TRANSPORT
8.A Objectives
8.B Planning Criteria
8.C Functional Overview
8.D Program Components
8.E Technical Criteria
8.F Electronic Detention Control System
9 Public Spaces
10 Building Support Services

Commented [DP12]: Gensler: change must to shall.

Commented [DP13]: Gensler: change must to shall.

Commented [DP14]: Gensler: change must to shall.

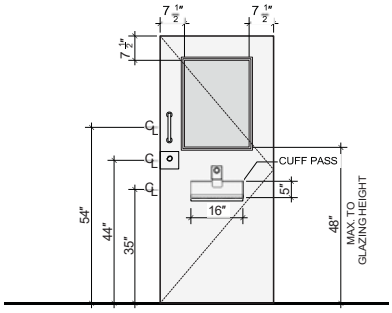


Figure 8.9 Glazed Opening and Center Line Height of Cuff Pass in Detention Door

f. ~~Obtain a~~Approval of the county sheriff and Judicial Council is required before making final selection of detention door with cuff pass during the design phase of the project.

g. Shop drawings of door and frame assembly with the cuff pass shall be submitted for Judicial Council approval.

3.4 Detention Electric Locks

a. For swinging cell doors, electrical operation, and maximum security:

- Lock is frame-mounted 115 volts of alternating current (VAC), continuous-duty solenoid operated;
- Bolt is retracted electrically by icon at the control panel and remains retracted until door is opened;
- Bolt is retracted manually by mogul key on outside and/or inside;
- Internal switches monitor status of bolt to show deadlocked and unlocked conditions;
- Galvanized case at exterior installations shall be provided; and
- A key cylinder extension for locks keyed both sides or keyed stop side shall be provided.

b. For circulation swing doors, motor operation, and maximum security:

- Lock is frame-mounted 115VAC, motor operated;
- Bolt is retracted electrically by icon at the control panel and remains retracted until door is opened;
- Bolt is retracted manually by mogul key on outside and/or inside;
- Internal switches monitor status of bolt to show deadlocked and unlocked conditions; and
- A key cylinder extension for locks keyed both sides or keyed stop side shall be provided.

3.5 Detention Mechanical Locks

a. For detention access panels and cuff passes—mechanical operation:

- Lock is a door-mounted deadbolt;

Commented [DP15]: Gensler: Add another door elevation to the right which shows two vertical panes of glass instead of a single pane. Everything else remains the same. Make the middle bar 4" wide.

Commented [TP16]: confirmation on door window height with cuff window below- There was a letter from DSA that did not show up Ukiah Team is saying the current design is not ADA.

Commented [DP16R2]: Ukiah team is incorrect. This drawing is DSA approved.

- Bolt is retracted manually by paracentric (lever tumbler; mogul pin tumbler) key on outside only;
- Door strike shall be provided; and
- Hollow metal lock mounting, escutcheon, and security screws shall be provided.

b. For swinging doors—mechanical operation:

- Lock is a door-mounted, paracentric key deadlocking latch bolt with three hardened steel pins;
- Bolt is retracted manually by paracentric key on outside and/or inside;
- Hollow metal lock mounting, escutcheon, and security screws shall be supplied;
- Door strike shall be provided; and
- Galvanized case and cylinder shields at exterior installations shall be provided.

3.6 Electromechanical Locking, Electromechanical Door Movement, and Sliding Door Device Assemblies

a. These assemblies are operated from a remote-control panel that activates electric motors to unlock sliding doors and motorized rack-and-pinion drive mechanisms to open and close doors. Doors lock in open position and deadlock when closed. Provide factory-wired cable harness with plug connectors for each motor unit.

b. Each door can be individually unlocked locally or from a remote panel—or unlocked from a remote panel with other doors as a group. In an emergency or if power fails, each door can be manually operated from a pilaster release adjacent to receiving jamb of each door operated by paracentric key; doors shall not relock in any position.

c. The electric key switch is operated by paracentric key and shall provide electric control of detention sliding door operation at door location, where indicated.

3.7 Detention Door Hardware

The hardware listed below is the minimum requirement for detention doors; additional hardware may be required. Coordinate hardware selection with the sheriff's office.

a. Detention hinges shall be cast stainless steel leaves with integral security studs, nonremovable stainless steel pins, stainless steel ball bearings, three knuckle with hospital tips.

b. Concealed door closers shall have full hydraulic, rack-and-pinion action with high-strength cast iron cylinder.

c. Concealed door position switches shall be a mortise installation overhead mounting with switch contacts housed in the door-frame and actuating magnet mortised into the top of the door.

d. Keeper switches shall be a mortise installation with limit-monitoring switch housed in the door-frame. All manual locks shall use keeper switches.

DIVISION ONE: DESIGN CRITERIA
1 General Principles
2 Courthouse Organization
3 Site Design
4 Courthouse Security
5 Court Set
6 Jury Facilities and Court Administration
7 Special Services
8 IN-CUSTODY DEFENDANT RECEIVING, HOLDING, AND TRANSPORT
8.A Objectives
8.B Planning Criteria
8.C Functional Overview
8.D Program Components
8.E Technical Criteria
8.F Electronic Detention Control System
9 Public Spaces
10 Building Support Services

Where possible, cell plumbing fixtures shall not be located adjacent to courtroom partitions. The cell toilet fixture shall have secure plumbing readily serviceable by a technician from outside the cell.

e. Push plates shall be 3/16″ thick stainless steel 32″ wide × 16″ high with 7/8″ lip projection at bottom. Attach with stainless steel security rivets.

f. Pull loops shall be cast bronze satin chrome plated with a dimension of 8-3/4″ long × 12″ clearance.

g. Pull flush shall be cast bronze satin chrome plated with a dimension of 4″ wide × 5″ high × 1″ deep.

h. Doorstops shall be black silicone rubber 2″ diameter, mounted on a 5/8″ × 2-1/2″ steel shank for permanent attachment in grout-filled masonry or concrete.

i. Door cuff passes shall be 16″ long × 5″ high with 10 Series lock and continuous hinge. Cuff passes shall be flush with the door face.

j. For cylinders, keys, and keying, the detention locks shall incorporate two separate keying systems: one for lever tumbler (paracentric) and one for pin tumbler (mogul cylinder) locks. Each keying system's keys shall be die stamped for identification. For all individual key designations, three keys each shall be provided. For each master key designation, four keys each shall be provided.

4. Detention Hollow Metal Frames

a. Fabricate fFrames shallmust be fabricated from 12-gauge steel, with mitered corners continuously welded through head inside corner and miter miter-ground smooth.

b. The manufacturer shall provide all frames with approved jamb anchors, floor knees, plaster boxes, removable angle spreaders, and door silencers.

c. All frames are to be grouted solid with frame anchors tied to rebar. All No glazing stops and or fasteners are to be installed on the non in-custody side of the frame. The frame finish is to match the wall finish on that side of the frame.

4.1 Detention Hollow Metal Frame Types

Detention hollow metal frame types include:

- Controlled swing/slider door with or without sidelight;
- Noncontrolled door with or without sidelight;
- Borrowed light frame; and
- Control room borrowed light frame.

4.2 Detention Benches

a. Detention benches shall be provided at all holding cells and other areas where detention seating may be required. All benches must meet ADA requirements for height and depth.

b. The metal bench can be part of the metal wall panel detention system and should be constructed to meet the wall panel requirements. The bench should come primed; and need its final painting to shawill be done in the field.

c. The concrete top with masonry base shall be constructed out of a minimum 4″ ″ thick concrete and minimum 6″ concrete masonry unit base grouted solid and reinforced. The concrete top shall be finished with sealer/hardener, and the finish of the masonry base shall match the wall finish surface.

Commented [DP17]: Gensler: change must to shall.

Commented [DP18]: Gensler: change will to shall.

5. Miscellaneous Detention Equipment

5.1 Detention Equipment Types

a. Paper pass, if provided upon court request and Judicial Council approval at any location, shall be provided with a built-in bottom made from stainless steel. The size will be 16″ long × 10″ wide × 2″ high × 1-1/2″ deep. It shall have a factory finish.

b. Pistol lockers shall be made up of six compartment lockers with 3/16″ shell and doors. Compartments shall be lined with 1/8″ felt with swing-out compartment doors on continuous hinges. Provide each compartment with snap locks, each compartment individually keyed and master keyed. The unit comes primed and will require final painting in the field.

c. A gun locker with a 3/16″ shell and doors shall be provided in the armory and shall be capable of holding a minimum of six rifle-type weapons. The compartment shall have a felt lining and a secure door that is keyed. The unit comes primed or with a factory finish. Confirm gun locker location, size, and quantity, and provide details for backing and surrounding finish trim, if recessed.

5.2 Detention Access Panels

a. Install ~~Fire~~fire-rated detention access panels ~~are to be~~ rated for 90 minutes. The frame shall be constructed out of 16-gauge cold-rolled steel with 1″ wide surface-~~-~~mounted trim. The door shall be constructed out of 14-gauge cold-rolled steel with 2″ of fire-retardant insulation enclosed in sheet metal. Provide a continuous piano hinge and an automatic self-latching door closure. The panels come primed and will require a final field painting.

b. Install ~~N~~nonrated detention access panels ~~are to have~~with a 3″ × 2″ × 3/16″ steel angle frame ~~with~~ and 1″ × 1″ × 1/8″ angle stops on three sides. Door construction is ~~to be~~ 3/16″ steel with 1-1/4″ flange on all four sides. Equip each panel with two hinges. The panels come primed and will require a final field painting.

c. Provide safety chain on swing-down, ceiling-type detention access panels.

d. Do not locate detention access panels in holding cells or other areas where in-custodies may be left alone.

6. Security Glazing

6.1 Security Glazing Locations

Locations for security glazing shall include:

- Detention doors;
- Detention glazed frame;
- Control room;
- Attorney-client interview; and
- Court dock area.

6.2 Security Glazing Types

a. See table 8.1 for locations and type. In the holding cells, an effort shall be made to provide laminated polycarbonate glazing. Based on supply chain availability, glass-clad polycarbonate glazing may be approved by the Judicial Council.

b. Glass-clad polycarbonate glazing shall be manufactured to comply with the following requirements (see table 8.1 for locations and type):

DIVISION ONE: DESIGN CRITERIA

1 General Principles
2 Courthouse Organization
3 Site Design
4 Courthouse Security
5 Court Set
6 Jury Facilities and Court Administration
7 Special Services

8 IN-CUSTODY DEFENDANT RECEIVING, HOLDING, AND TRANSPORT
8.A Objectives
8.B Planning Criteria
8.C Functional Overview
8.D Program Components
8.E Technical Criteria
8.F Electronic Detention Control System

10 Building Support Services

- Consisting of a layer of strengthened glass, a polycarbonate core, and a layer of strengthened glass.
- Bullet resistance: H. P. White TP 500 Level A, Weapon .38 Special (three shots).
- Forced entry resistance: H. P. White TP 500 Level II and ASTM F1915 Grade 2.
- Tinting film at control rooms.

c. Laminated polycarbonate glazing shall be manufactured to comply with the following requirements:

- Consisting of a ~~layer of~~ polycarbonate mar-resistant outer layer, a polycarbonate core, and a ~~layer of~~ polycarbonate mar-resistant outer layer.
- Bullet resistance: H. P. White TP 500 Level A, Weapon .38 Special (three shots).
- Forced entry resistance: H. P. White TP 500 Level I and ASTM F1915
- Grade 2.

d. ~~d.~~ When contacting manufacturers, specify the required security and fire performance criteria as follows:

- Identify the required security performance using the applicable test standard, such as UL 752 ballistic level or ASTM ~~forced~~ forced entry resistance rating, and clearly state whether ballistic resistance, forced entry resistance, or both are required.
- Where ~~fire~~ fire-rated glazing is required, specify the required fire resistance duration and require that the glazing system be tested and listed as a complete ~~fire~~ fire-rated assembly, including glazing, framing, anchors, and interfaces, in accordance with the applicable fire test standard.
- For insulated glass units, ~~the criteria documents shall~~ identify minimum performance targets for R value, U value, solar heat gain coefficient, and visible light transmittance. These values shall be used by the design builder and fabricator to propose appropriate exterior lite makeup and airspace thicknesses that meet or exceed the stated performance requirements.
- ~~The design team shall c~~Coordinate with the selected manufacturer to ensure compatibility with required thermal performance, framing systems, and testing criteria.
- ASTM standards quick guide:
  - ASTM F1233 tests security glazing systems for resistance to forced entry attacks with tools.
  - ASTM C 1172 specifies laminated architectural flat glass properties for safety and durability.
  - UL 752 ballistic resistance levels for glazing, panels, doors and systems against specified firearms and ammunition.
  - NIJ 0108.01 ballistic standard originally for armor and ballistic materials,

Commented [DP19]: Added verbiage on ballistic glazing requirements due to lessons learned from crazing, cracking and distortion of glass over time.

often used for glazing/vehicle protection classifications.

- Follow ~~Ballistic glazing shall meet~~ all specified ballistic performance standards outlined in ~~*the Facilities Standards*~~*CTCFS* for ballistic glazing. No manufacturer listed below is required or pre-approved. Any product meeting the performance criteria may be used. References to manufacturers are illustrative only and do not constitute endorsement or exclusion. Contractor shall submit certified test data verifying compliance. Following are the security glazing manufacturers provided as a reference to support coordination of ballistic or forced entry glazing assemblies with the insulated glass performance requirements.

~~1.~~ Isoclima

~~Website: https://www.isoclimagroup.com/us/~~

1. ~~Overview: Isolima~~ produces advanced transparent glazing solutions engineered for safety, design, and performance in demanding settings. ~~Their~~ Its products include high-performance security and ballistic glass, laminated and forced-entry–resistant glazing, and adaptive smart glass for privacy and solar control. ~~They~~ It offers custom specialty laminated and architectural glass, plus vehicle armor and transparent systems for rail, marine and aerospace applications. ~~Their~~ Its solutions are tailored for buildings, vehicles, and high-security environments. Its products ~~Meets~~ meet ~~ASTM~~ ASTM F1233-21 for forced-entry resistance, which tests how glazing resists physical attack by tools and delays unauthorized entry. Products are ~~Also~~ also tested to NIJ 0108.01 ballistic standards for bullet resistance. F1233 defines classes of forced-entry resistance for security glazing systems.

~~2.~~ Insulgard Corporation

~~Website: https://www.insulgard.com/~~

2. ~~Overview: Insulgard security products~~ makes architectural security systems designed to protect buildings from ballistic attacks, forced entry, and severe weather impacts. ~~Their~~ Its line includes bullet-resistant windows, doors, framing, and counterline systems. ~~They~~ It also produces forced-entry–resistant glazing and impact-resistant (storm) doors and windows for tornado and hurricane shelter applications. ~~Their~~ Its products are tested and certified to industry safety standards. Products comply with ~~ASTM~~ ASTM F1233-08 forced-entry testing, which evaluates resistance against tools and manual attacks aimed at breaking into glazing systems. Ballistic products are tested to UL 752 Levels 1-8 for gunfire resistance and also meet NIJ
Levels II–IV for certain ballistic threats. F1233 applies to forced-entry resistance of security glazing materials and systems.

~~3.~~ Armortex

~~Website: https://www.armortex.com/~~

3. ~~Overview: Armortex~~ manufactures a range of physical security products engineered to resist bullets, blasts, and forced entry for buildings and secure facilities. ~~They~~ It produces lightweight, ballistic-grade fiberglass composite panels tested to UL standards. ~~Their~~ Its product line also includes bullet- and blast-resistant windows, doors, transaction equipment like deal trays and drawers, gun ports, speakers, package receivers, and aluminum storefront systems. ~~Their~~ Its solutions serve security needs in courts, banks, schools, and government facilities. Bullet-resistant glazing and framing products are designed to meet UL 752 Levels 1–10 ballistic standards, and UL 752 is the primary verified ballistic rating.

~~4.~~ Total Security Solutions

Website: https://www.tssbulletproof.com/

4. Overview: Total Security Solutions (TSS) produces custom bullet-resistant security products including ballistic glass, bulletproof windows, and bulletproof doors tailored to specific threat levels. They It fabricates bullet-resistant fiberglass panels, frames, and full barrier systems for secure environments. Accessories like currency trays, package passers, and voice hardware are also offered to complete security installations. Their Its solutions are designed and manufactured to meet industry ballistic safety standards. TSS Primarily primarily tests products to UL 752 for ballistic resistance, which defines how resistant glazing, panels, and doors are to specified gunfire threats.

5. Bullet Guard
Website: https://bulletguard.com/
Overview: Bullet Guard's product offerings focus on bullet-resistant physical security systems, including windows, doors, and fiberglass panels designed to withstand ballistic threats. They supply complete bulletproof barriers, custom framed systems, transaction windows, and accessory components like package pass-throughs and trays. Their solutions also include custom-fabricated enclosures and architectural armor for secure lobbies and teller lines. The brand now operates as part of Total Security Solutions while retaining its legacy product expertise. Products are designed and supplied as bullet resisting (proof) systems that adhere to UL 752 ballistic resistance standards, which define how well materials such as glazing, panels, and doors withstand specified firearm threats without penetration or dangerous spall.

e. Manufacturer Warrantywarranty:

- Provide manufacturer's written warranty for security glazing products including laminated glass, glass-clad polycarbonate, laminated polycarbonate, insulated units, and fire fire-rated glazing, where applicable. Warranty shall cover defects in materials and workmanship.
- Warranty Periodperiod:
  - Five years from date of manufacture for laminated glass, glass glass-clad polycarbonate, laminated polycarbonate, and security glazing constructions against delamination.
  - Five years from date of manufacture for coatings including pyrolytic, chemical vapor deposition (CVD), magnetron sputtered vacuum deposition (MSVD), silicone, or ceramic coatings against peeling, flaking, blistering, or deterioration beyond 1/8" inch into the viewing area.
  - Five years from date of manufacture for insulated glass units against seal failure resulting in visible moisture intrusion or material obstruction of vision.
  - Five years from date of manufacture for insulated glass units against seal failure resulting in visible moisture intrusion or material obstruction of vision.
- Conformance Warrantywarranty:
- Safety glazing shall comply at time of manufacture with applicable standards including ANSI Z97.1, CPSC 16 CFR 1201, and referenced ASTM standards as specified in this Sectionsection.

7. Security Light Fixture Types

a. Maximum-security light fixtures can be either recessed or surface mounted with a 12-gauge, one-piece, seamless, doorless unit and a prismatic polycarbonate lens. Recessed fixtures must maintain the continuity of the security ceiling and not be

Commented [LD20]: Bullet Guard (#5 on the list) has been acquired by TSS (#4 on the list).

Also, I styled hyperlinks to follow current ADA compliance.

Commented [SN21]: There are a couple of problems that listing specific manufacturers creates: 1) a strong risk of being interpreted as mandating those manufacturers, even if you say it is "for reference only"; 2) this can be viewed as a restrictive specification, which public agencies must avoid because it limits competition; 3) if you list only some manufacturers, it implies unlisted manufacturers are not acceptable, even if they fully meet all technical requirements; 4) because the market changes (some manufacturers stop producing compliant products and new ones appear), a static list becomes quickly outdated, creating compliance and fairness problems; 5) designers, contractors, and even courts may treat any listed manufacturers as pre-approved, reducing flexibility and potentially locking you into specific vendors; 6)

You may wish to only specify performance standards and avoid naming brands. Is there any reason why examples must be provided? If so, then consider placing them in a non-binding, separately maintained reference, clearly stating that any product meeting performance criteria is acceptable.

Alternatively, if you must put it in the Standards, you might consider this language: Ballistic glazing shall meet all specified ballistic performance standards (UL 752, ASTM, NIJ, etc.). No manufacturer is named, required, or pre-approved. Any product meeting the performance criteria may be used. References to manufacturers in any document are illustrative only and do not constitute endorsement or exclusion. Contractor shall submit certified test data verifying compliance.

Commented [DP21R2]: We do need to list them because this is an ongoing problem with the contractors claiming to not find any products with the right performance expectations. I have incorporated your suggested addition.

removable. The light fixture comes with a factory finish. These light fixtures shall be located at all cells, all attorney interview rooms, and the court dock area.

b. Medium-security light fixtures can be either recessed or surface mounted with a 14-gauge, one-piece, seamless, doorless unit and a prismatic lens. Recessed fixtures must maintain the continuity of the security ceiling and not be removable. The light fixture comes with a factory finish. These light fixtures shall be located at all in-custody circulation areas and other areas where in-custodies have access.

c. Architectural-grade fixtures can be recessed or surface mounted and come with a factory finish. These light fixtures can be used in areas where in-custodies have no access, such as administration areas.

8. Security Plumbing Fixture Types

a. A standard rear -wall–mounted, chase-accessible unit shall be installed at all in-custody areas where an accessible unit is not required. The unit shall be constructed out of a 14-gauge, type 304 stainless steel cabinet and toilet bowl. Include a toilet paper holder and a penal hemispherical bubbler. The unit comes with a factory finish. The unit shall also be provided with an electronic water usage controller~~,~~ to allow for control of the unit's solenoid ~~to be controlled~~ to prevent vandalism or excessive flushing. The electronic water usage controller shall be inaccessible to the in-custody defendants and managed by the facility management staff. The cell toilet fixture shall have a secure plumbing chase inaccessible to in-custody defendants but readily serviceable by a technician from outside the cell.

b. An accessible rear -wall–mounted, chase-accessible unit shall be installed at all in-custody areas where an accessible unit is required. The unit shall be constructed out of a 14-gauge, type 304 stainless steel cabinet and toilet bowl. Include a toilet paper holder, an antiflood device, a penal hemispherical bubbler, and a grab bar assembly. The unit comes with a factory finish. The cell toilet fixture shall have a secure plumbing chase

inaccessible to in-custody defendants but readily serviceable by a technician from outside the cell.

c. ~~In m~~Medium or large court buildings~~, provide~~ require a sewage grinder system ~~to~~ for all waste lines that connect to detention toilet fixtures. This system is typically located outside the building perimeter.

d. Architectural-grade plumbing fixtures such as toilets and lavatories can be used in all areas where in-custodies have no access, such as administration areas. These fixtures come with a factory finish.

e. ~~Provide f~~Floor drains shall~~must~~ be provided in all holding areas, with detention drain covers with small hole openings and fasteners. Detention-grade floor drains shall be provided outside the door of each group of two in-custody holding cells.

9. Security Sprinkler Head Types

a. Provide detention-grade, ceiling-mounted sprinkler heads in all areas accessible to in-custody ~~accessible areas~~ies. Sprinkler heads must meet Compliance Services and Assessments~~.~~ LLC (CSA) standards for suicide prevention and be located a minimum of 8′ above the finish floor. The sprinkler heads come with a factory finish. Tyco RAVEN institutional sprinkler heads shall be the basis of design and pricing, with smooth underside and no protruding elements.

b. Provide non-detention ~~-type~~ sprinkler heads in all areas where in-custodies have no access, such as administration areas.

c. See chapter 20, Fire Protection Criteria, for sprinkler system and sprinkler head options.

10. Security Mechanical Grille Types

a. Use wall- and ceiling-mounted grilles in all areas accessible to in-custody ~~accessible areas~~ies. Provide a risk-resistant grille with a nonvision core consisting of a 3/16″ faceplate with louvers, vertical mullions, sleeve, and four-sided mounting frame. The grilles come with a factory finish.

b. Provide non-detention ~~-type~~ grilles in all areas where in-custodies have no access, such as administration areas.

c. Provide detention duct bars at all openings larger than 5″ × 5″. Duct bars are to be tool-resistant 7/8″ diameter steel bars spaced so that no opening is bigger than 5″ in diameter.

d. Provide security bars at all openings and/or penetrations of secure perimeter envelope larger than 5″ × 5″. Security bars are to be tool-resistant 7/8″ diameter steel bars spaced so that no opening is bigger than 5″ in diameter.

11. Security Sealant Types

For more information on sealants, see table 8.2.

a. Security joints ~~sealant~~ shall be sealed with a two-component, premium-grade, polyurethane-based elastomeric sealant.

~~b. Security epoxy resin gap filler (low-mod gel) shall be a two-component, 100~~ 100 percent

b. solid~~s~~, moisture-tolerant, low-modulus, nonsag, paste-consistency epoxy resin binder.

12. Tamper-Proof Metal Fasteners

~~a.~~ Use Torx-head (star design with center pin) security fasteners. Finish shall match ~~that~~

a. ~~specified of~~ the item to be anchored.

DIVISION ONE: DESIGN CRITERIA
1 General Principles
2 Courthouse Organization
3 Site Design
4 Courthouse Security
5 Court Set
6 Jury Facilities and Court Administration
7 Special Services
8 IN-CUSTODY DEFENDANT RECEIVING, HOLDING, AND TRANSPORT
8.A Objectives
8.B Planning Criteria
8.C Functional Overview
8.D Program Components
8.E Technical Criteria
8.F Electronic Detention Control System
9 Public Spaces
10 Building Support Services

Commented [DP22]: Gensler: change must to shall.

Commented [DP23]: Modified by CFAC-WG.

Commented [DP24]: I am making this requirement more lenient due to cost concerns.

Commented [TP25]: I have a note to check with Tony on locating something about VESDA alarms here

Commented [DP25R2]: That level of detail will come in chapter 20.

Table 8.2 Sealant Matrix

LOCATIONS	ALL CELLS, INTERVIEW & CONTROL ROOMS	CORRIDORS & COURT DOCK AREAS	ADMIN, STAFF & COURTROOM AREAS
Detention hollow metal frames	SGF	SGF	SGF
Arch. ~~Door~~ door & window frames	SJS	SJS	LJS
Mech. ~~Grilles~~grilles/diffusers	SGF	SJS	LJS
Water closets & lavatories	SGF	N/A	LJS
Sprinkler heads/plumbing	SGF	SGF	N/A
Security light fixtures	SGF	SJS	N/A
Exposed conduit/raceways	SGF	SJS	N/A
Switch/outlet	SGF	SJS	N/A
In-~~custody~~ custody d~~D~~uress ~~Plates~~plates	SGF	SJS	LJS
Misc. ~~Detention~~ detention equip. (mirrors)	SGF	N/A	N/A
Interior ~~Wall~~ wall s~~S~~ystems at ~~Base~~base	SGF	SGF	SGF
Wall & ceiling joint	SGF	SJS	N/A
Intercom call stations	SGF	SJS	LJS

LJS = latex joint sealants. These are typical architectural sealants.

~~NA = not applicable.~~

~~SGF = security epoxy resin gap filler.~~

SJS = security joint sealant.

~~SGF = security epoxy resin gap filler.~~

~~N/A = not applicable.~~

b. Fabricate removable tamper-proof fasteners to allow removal only by tools produced by the fastener manufacturer or another licensed fabricator specifically for individual tamper-proof fastener design. Limit size and shape variations such that no more than six tools are required for each type of tamper-proof fastener used on a project.

c. Provide tamper-proof metal fasteners at all central and court holding areas where in-custodies have access.

13. Detention Toilet Accessories

a. Use grab bars with underslung plate to prevent suicides.

b. Provide a recessed toilet paper holder if it is not part of the toilet fixture.

c. Use a detention mirror with embedded mounting plate.

- Mirror frame dimension shall be 12-1/2″ × 16-1/2″, fabricated from 16-gauge mild steel. The 5/16″ × 1″ mirror frame is to be chrome plated. Mirror opening shall be 10-1/2″ × 14-1/2″, and mirror shall be made of 20-gauge stainless steel polished for high reflectivity.
- Embedded mounting plate is to be constructed of 1/4″ plate steel with two 11-gauge, ~~x~~ 3″ wide bent steel anchors with minimum 1″ bend. Embedded plate shall be drilled and tapped for security fasteners.
- For accessible mirrors, use either two mirrors or one longer mirror for both applications.

14. Detention Door Signage

a. Provide low- or no-VOC paint, exterior alkyd gloss enamel on interior and exterior ferrous surfaces.

b. Provide 6″ high numbers on the face of all controlled and monitored doors within the central and court-secure perimeters.

c. Provide 6″ high numbers on both sides of the face of all doors that are in circulation areas within the central and court-secure perimeters.

8.F ELECTRONIC DETENTION CONTROL SYSTEM

1. Overview

The electronic detention control system (DCS) consists of integrated electronic subsystems that provide holding area monitoring and control from a detention control room (DCR) and from alternative locations where designated in larger facilities, such as a security operations center (SOC). The DCS's electronic subsystems include programmable logic controls, video surveillance, intercom, and a distributed antenna system. The systems are designed to enhance manual processes and staff safety while maintaining a secure and protective environment for in-custody defendants awaiting trial. ~~See~~ Refer to table 8.3.

Table 8.3 Electronic Detention Control Requirements

	Locking—Local	Locking—Remote	Door Interlock	Cameras	Video Recording	Audio Monitoring	Audio Communication	Call Button	Monitoring and Control	Card Access	Card and PIN Access	Gate Control	Duress Buttons
Secure driveway				R	R		R			R		R	
Sally port—vehicle	R		R	R	R	R	R		R				R1
Sally port—~~egress man door~~	R		R	R	R	R	R		R	R1			
Holding cell—group	R		D	P	R	R	R		R				
Holding cell—individual	R		D	P	R	R	R		R				
Courtroom holding vestibules	R		R	R	R	R	R		R				R1
Courtroom holding cells	R		R	R	R	R	R		R				
Interview rooms	R		D	D	R1			R	C				
In-custody elevator	R		R	R	R	R	R		R				
Stairwell	R		R1	R	R	R	R		R				
Corridor	R		R1	R	R	R	R		R				R1
Armory	R			R	R						R		
Holding control	R		R1						R	R			R1
Auxiliary control				M	M								
Remote holding control		R1							R	R			

~~C = control.~~
~~D = discretionary.~~
~~M = monitoring only.~~
~~P = partial requirement.~~
R = required.

R1 = required as applicable. ~~P = partial requirement.~~
~~D = discretionary.~~
~~M = monitoring only.~~
~~C = control.~~

DIVISION ONE: DESIGN CRITERIA
1 General Principles
2 Courthouse Organization
3 Site Design
4 Courthouse Security
5 Court Set
6 Jury Facilities and Court Administration
7 Special Services
8 IN-CUSTODY DEFENDANT RECEIVING, HOLDING, AND TRANSPORT
8.A Objectives
8.B Planning Criteria
8.C Functional Overview
8.D Program Components
9 Public Spaces
10 Building Support Services

Commented [TP26]: There was an issue with cameras for in custody elevators and the length or distance to the IDF room- table 8.3 calls them out but the DBT said they could not do it due to length of run

Commented [DP26R2]: That's a design flaw, not an issue with CTCFS.

Commented [LD27]: "pedestrian"?

Commented [DP27R2]: Egress doors are for pedestrians.

2. Transport Driveway

a. For ~~Transport~~ transport vehicles delivering in-custody defendants by accessing the vehicle sally port through a secure driveway~~.~~, ~~Provide~~ provide sliding or swinging gates and barrier arm gates to control secure driveway access and egress. Provide for remote control of gates from the DCR or from a card reader located at the secure driveway.

b. Provide sensors and programming used during vehicle gate entry and exit sequences to detect vehicles and prevent them from being stranded or trapped between vehicle control points. Sensors employed include in-ground vehicle detector loops, photoelectric beams, and leading-edge gate and barrier arm sensors.

3. Transport Driveway Entry

When a transport vehicle approaches the secure driveway, the driver communicates with the DCR either from the vehicle or from a pedestal-mounted intercom to request access. Alternatively, the driver may use a card reader for automated entry. A vehicle detection loop shall be provided to detect vehicles, enable the gate card reader, and call up adjacent surveillance cameras. Entrance gate card readers are otherwise deactivated. Vehicle pedestals shall be provided with single- and dual-height pedestal heads to accommodate a variety of vehicles, and vehicle types must be coordinated at each site to ensure that appropriate security pedestals are provided.

Commented [AG30]: Lesson Learned from San Diego Courthouse: Consider the mounting height of the exterior security cameras during design to ensure they are not low enough to be vandalized.1

Commented [DP30R2]: Incorporated.

The DCR monitors secure driveway surveillance cameras and gate status and controls vehicle gates from a DCS touchscreen computer. When the DCR grants secure driveway access, the entrance gate and barrier arm open and the transport vehicle enters. The barrier arm and entrance gate close immediately after the transport vehicle has cleared its respective safety sensors and entered the secure driveway.

The surveillance cameras throughout the building exterior and interior shall be mounted at an out-of-reach height to prevent vandalism.

4. Transport Driveway Exit

When a transport vehicle approaches the secure driveway exit gate, it shall pass over a vehicle detector loop, which opens the gate. The barrier arm and vehicle gate shall close after the transport vehicle has cleared its respective safety sensors and exited the driveway. The DCR can remotely control the exit gate and barrier arm via the DCS.

5. Vehicle Sally Port

Vehicle sally port entry and exit sequences shall employ sensors and programming to detect vehicles and prevent them from being stranded or trapped between vehicle control points. Sensors employed shall include in-ground vehicle detector loops, photoelectric beams, and leading-edge door sensors.

6. Vehicle Sally Port Entry

a. The transport driver communicates with the DCR to request entry on approach to the vehicle sally port. An in-ground vehicle detection loop shall be located at the sally port entrance to detect vehicles and call up and display an entry surveillance camera in the DCR. The DCR operator may manually call up vehicle sally port cameras via the DCS.

b. The DCR monitors sally port surveillance cameras and doors and controls sally port doors from a touchscreen computer. When sally port access is requested, the DCR confirms whether sally port doors are secure. If sally port doors are secure, the sally port may be opened to allow transport vehicle access. If any sally port door is not secure, no other sally port door can be opened. The entry door may be closed after the transport vehicle has cleared the door safety sensors and entered the sally port. If a safety sensor is activated while the door is closing, the door shall stop and reverse to the

open position, and the DCS shall generate an alarm. The door may be closed after safety sensors are cleared.

c. *Open*, *stop*, and *close* manual override door controls shall be provided in a locked and monitored enclosure at the sally port door. The *open* function opens the door, the *stop* function stops the door in its current position, and the *close* function closes the door.

7. Vehicle Sally Port Exit

The transport vehicle driver communicates with the DCR to request exit from the vehicle sally port.

a. The DCR monitors sally port surveillance cameras and doors and controls sally port doors from a touchscreen computer. When sally port exit is requested, the DCR confirms whether sally port doors are shown as secure on the DCS touchscreen computer. If sally port doors are secure, the sally port may be opened to allow transport vehicle exit. If any sally port door is not secure, no other sally port door can be opened. The exit door may be closed after the transport vehicle has cleared the door safety sensors and exited the sally port. If a safety sensor is activated while the door is closing, the door shall stop and reverse to the open position, and the DCS shall generate an alarm. The door may be closed after safety sensors are cleared.

b. *Open*, *stop*, and *close* manual override door controls shall be provided in a locked and monitored enclosure at the sally port door. The *open* function opens the door, the *stop* function stops the door in its current position, and the *close* function closes the door.

8. Pedestrian Sally Port

When sally port access is requested, the DCR operator confirms whether sally port doors are secure. If sally port doors are secure, the sally port may be opened to allow officer access. If any sally port door is not secure, no other sally port door can be opened. After the officer accesses the sally port, manual doors are closed by the officer, and motorized doors are closed via the DCS.

9. Central Holding Door Operation

Central holding door types include corridor doors and holding cell doors, either swinging or sliding, as defined in 8.E, Technical Criteria.

9.1 Door Operation Process

a. When an officer communicates with the DCR by intercom requesting central holding door access, a graphic of the door shall be automatically displayed on the DCS touchscreen display, and the door surveillance camera shall be automatically displayed on a video monitor.

b. When an officer communicates with the DCR by other means, the DCR operator selects the appropriate graphic map icon from the DCS touchscreen, which shall display a graphic map of the door location on the touchscreen and the relevant surveillance camera feed on a video monitor.

c. The DCR monitors central holding surveillance cameras and doors and controls central holding doors from a DCS touchscreen computer. When central holding door access is requested, the door shall be able to be opened from the DCR to allow officer access to the corridor or holding cell. After the officer accesses the central holding door, manual doors are closed by the officer, and motorized doors are closed via the DCS.

DIVISION ONE: DESIGN CRITERIA

1 General Principles
2 Courthouse Organization
3 Site Design
4 Courthouse Security
5 Court Set
6 Jury Facilities and Court Administration
7 Special Services
8 IN-CUSTODY DEFENDANT RECEIVING, HOLDING, AND TRANSPORT
8.A Objectives
8.B Planning Criteria
8.C Functional Overview
8.D Program Components
8.E Technical Criteria
8.F Electronic Detention Control System
9 Public Spaces
10 Building Support Services

9.2 Card Reader–Controlled Detention Doors (Card In/Out)

a. When the DCS is in night mode, central holding perimeter doors may be controlled by card readers to facilitate cleaning, maintenance, and inspection. Provide card reader control through an interface between the access control system and the DCS. In no case shall a card access control system be used for primary control of operation of in-custody detention areas.

b. In DCS day mode, the holding area perimeter door shall be locked and closed. In this mode, the DCS shall reject unlock signals from the access control system.

c. For DCS night mode, the entry and exit sequence of operation shall function as follows:

- Door is locked and closed.
- On a valid entry or exit card read, the access control system signals the DCS to unlock the door and bypass door and lock position sensor alarms.
- After the door unlocks and is opened, the DCS detects the *open* door status and releases the latch -bolt to relock the door when closed.
- When the door is closed and locked, the DCS detects the *closed* door status and rearms door and lock position sensors.

10. Court Holding Vestibule

Court holding vestibule doors include the secure elevator door, cell doors, and courtroom ~~sound~~ sound-lock doors. Court holding vestibule doors are monitored and controlled from the DCS touchscreen computer.

a. When a CSO requests in-custody transport to a courtroom, the in-custody shall be transported to the ~~court~~ court holding vestibule in the secure elevator.

b. When a CSO communicates by intercom, a graphic of the court holding vestibule shall be automatically displayed on the DCS touchscreen display, and a vestibule surveillance camera feed shall be automatically displayed on a video monitor.

c. When a CSO communicates by other means, the DCR operator selects an appropriate graphic from the DCS touchscreen, which shall display a graphic map of the vestibule on the touchscreen and a vestibule surveillance camera feed on a video monitor.

d. When the DCS confirms that all court holding vestibule doors are secure, the secure elevator door may be opened through the DCS touchscreen. If any holding vestibule door is not secure, the secure elevator door shall not be able to be opened from the DCS. When the DCR confirms that other court holding vestibule doors are secure, the cell door may be opened through the DCS touchscreen. If other holding vestibule doors are unsecured, the cell door may not be opened.

e. When the DCR confirms that other court holding vestibule doors are secure, the courtroom ~~sound~~ sound-lock door may be opened from the DCS touchscreen display.

f. If other holding vestibule doors are unsecured, the courtroom ~~sound~~ sound-lock door may not be opened. After the officer accesses the court holding door, manual doors are closed by the officer, and motorized doors are closed via the DCS.

11. Secure Interview Rooms

Call buttons located in the holding area interview rooms provide notification to the DCR that an in-custody is ready to be escorted back to ~~his or her~~their cell. These doors are monitored and controlled as a central holding door. The CSO should have the ability to control both sides of the secure interview room at the courtroom.

12. Secure Circulation and Elevators

a. Secure elevators are controlled from DCS touchscreen computers. The DCS monitors elevator door and floor status and controls floor selection and door operation. The DCS touchscreen shall incorporate a virtual elevator return panel that displays elevator location and status and duplicates the elevator return panel controls in each cab.

b. When an officer communicates with the DCR by intercom requesting secure elevator access, a graphic map of the elevator floor and virtual return panel shall be automatically displayed on the DCS touchscreen computer, and the elevator surveillance camera feed shall be automatically displayed on a video monitor.

c. When an officer communicates with the DCR by other means, the DCR operator may select an appropriate graphic map from the DCS touchscreen computer, which shall display a graphic of the elevator floor and virtual return panel on the touchscreen and the elevator surveillance camera feed on a video monitor.

d. When the elevator is clear and secure, the DCR operator selects the requested floor. If the court holding vestibule is secure, the elevator door icon may be selected to open the door. If any court holding vestibule door is unsecured, the elevator door shall not be able to be opened. Secure elevator doors must not automatically open upon arrival to a floor.

e. When in-custody passengers enter the elevator, the DCR operator closes the elevator door and selects a destination floor from the DCS touchscreen computer. The touchscreen shall display the elevator location while in transit.

f. When the elevator arrives at the selected floor, the touchscreen and surveillance camera displays shall be automatically updated to view the selected floor.

g. If the court holding vestibule is secure, the elevator door icon may be selected to open the door. If any court holding vestibule door is unsecured, the elevator door shall not be able to be opened until secure. After all persons have exited, the elevator door is closed from the DCS.

13. Holding Control

13.1 DCS Workstations

a. ~~Locate m~~Multiple DCS workstation positions shall~~must~~ be located at the DCR for redundancy. DCS workstation positions include a modular workstation desk, DCS touchscreen and video surveillance system computers, video surveillance system monitors, and an intercom master station.

b. The workstation positions must also support control room equipment required by other sections of the ~~*Facilities Standards*~~*CTCFS*.

13.2 Unified Control

a. DCS computers shall be capable of controlling all holding areas to eliminate operational conflicts between workstations.

b. DCS computers shall be capable of providing unified control when independent control is not required.

DIVISION ONE: DESIGN CRITERIA

1 General Principles
2 Courthouse Organization
3 Site Design
4 Courthouse Security
5 Court Set
6 Jury Facilities and Court Administration
7 Special Services

8 IN-CUSTODY DEFENDANT RECEIVING, HOLDING, AND TRANSPORT
8.A Objectives
8.B Planning Criteria
8.C Functional Overview
8.D Program Components
8.E Technical Criteria
8.F Electronic Detention Control System

9 Public Spaces
10 Building Support Services

Commented [DP31]: Gensler: change must to shall.

13.3 Independent Control

A ~~dedicated juvenile holding~~ DCS computer dedicated to juvenile holding shall be provided at facilities requiring independent juvenile holding area control. Provide a fully functional ~~designated juvenile~~ DCS touchscreen computer designated for juvenile holding that is capable of providing unified control, with operational control limited to the juvenile holding area.

13.4 Day and Night Mode

a. For day mode, when the DCS locks all holding area doors, limit holding area access to only through the DCS touchscreen control or with a key.

b. For night mode, provide an interface between the access control system and the DCS to control select central holding perimeter doors and holding area doors by card reader. The system shall allow DCS to unlock designated holding area interior doors to facilitate cleaning, maintenance, and inspection.

13.5 Detention Office Monitoring

Detention remote viewing stations may be required at holding area support offices to monitor holding area cameras. Detention office DCS computers do not provide holding area control.

13.6 Fail-Over Holding Control

a. In larger facilities, you may be required to provide additional fail-over DCS control stations at alternative locations, such as an SOC, to ensure holding area control redundancy and continuity if DCS operation is not possible from the DCR.

b. ~~Locate f~~Fail-over equipment shall~~must~~ be located to maintain and ensure holding area privacy and in areas where public viewing of detention surveillance cameras is not possible.

Commented [DP32]: Gensler: change must to shall.

14. Operational Descriptions and Installation Criteria

14.1 DCS Core Equipment

a. Provide core DCS equipment, including file server, central processing unit, touchscreen interfaced computers, PLCs, intercom exchange, intercom master stations and substations, and a distributed antenna system for two-way radio communication.

b. Provide DCS network communications that ~~utilize~~ use a converged building Transmission Control Protocol (TCP)/Internet Protocol (IP) network including virtual local area networks to provide secure DCS communications.

c. Design the DCS to comprise ~~The~~ the PLC and intercom servers, integrated with the court facility video surveillance system (VSS) headend equipment. ~~form the DCS~~. Systems integration shall be via the court network and provide seamless monitoring, control, and operation of detention areas from the DCR and other designated locations.

d. Integrate the DCS ~~integration~~ with the video surveillance system ~~shall~~ to provide automated camera call-up and display based on DCS commands, intercom substation calls, and holding area alarms.

e. Integrate the DCS with secure driveway gates and barrier gate arms to provide gate control from the DCR. The DCS gate position sensor alarms monitored by the card access control system shall be bypassed while the gates are under DCS control.

f. Rack-mount the DCS file server and intercom exchange server in an MDF or IDF room on the same floor as the DCR.

14.2 DCS Programmable Logic Controller

a. Provide ~~Programmable logic controller shall be provided via~~ standardized PLCs~~s. PLCs are,~~ which are the only acceptable means of providing DCS monitoring and control of detention doors. PLCs shall be tailored to each facility's size and unique requirements. PLCs interface with all DCS system inputs and outputs for operator control from DCS touchscreen computers.

b. For local PLCs, locate the central holding area PLC equipment ~~shall be located~~ outside the holding area perimeter. Locate the PLC server in a fully enclosed and locked equipment rack. Wall-mount local (central holding) PLCs, power supplies, interface cabinets, and network connections in the same room as the PLC and intercom servers.

c. For remote PLCs, wall-mount remote (i.e., court holding) PLCs, power supplies, interface cabinets, and network connections in an IDF room on the same level as the remote holding area they control.

d. For PLC inputs, include vehicle and pedestrian door position monitoring, latch bolt position monitoring, gate position and safety sensor monitoring, secure elevator floor status and door position monitoring, and inputs from interfaces to other systems.

e. For PLC outputs, include vehicle and pedestrian door control, secure elevator call and floor select control, secure elevator door control, vehicle gate control, and outputs to interfaces with other systems.

14.3 DCS Touchscreen Interface

Locate the DCS touchscreens on the workstation furniture monitor tree with the VSS monitors so that they are easily accessed from a seated or standing position.

14.4 DCS Door Monitoring

a. Provide holding area door latch monitor switches to confirm that doors are latched.

b. Provide holding area door position monitoring with triple-bias, high-security, detention-grade magnetic door position switches.

c. Provide commercial-grade, surface-mounted position switches to monitor vehicle door position.

d. Provide commercial-grade, surface-mounted position switches to monitor vehicle gate position.

e. Homerun ~~Door~~ door monitoring circuits ~~must be home run~~ from each door position switch to a PLC input via an interface termination cabinet in the same room as the PLC equipment. Door monitoring and lock status may share the same PLC input circuit.

14.5 DCS Lock Control

a. Provide PLC outputs that control DCS locks at sally ports, central holding, secure circulation, and courtroom holding areas.

b. PLC outputs switching 120VAC locks shall be National Electrical Code ~~Class~~ Class 1–rated electrically isolated relay circuits to protect PLC outputs and shall have individually fused disconnect terminal blocks to prevent a short circuit on one door lock ~~circuit~~ from affecting any other doors on the same branch circuit.

c. Shield and isolate all connections to ensure a "finger-safe" maintenance environment.

DIVISION ONE: DESIGN CRITERIA

1 General Principles
2 Courthouse Organization
3 Site Design
4 Courthouse Security
5 Court Set
6 Jury Facilities and Court Administration
7 Special Services

8 IN-CUSTODY DEFENDANT RECEIVING, HOLDING, AND TRANSPORT
8.A Objectives
8.B Planning Criteria
8.C Functional Overview
8.D Program Components
8.E Technical Criteria
8.F Electronic Detention Control System

9 Public Spaces
10 Building Support Services

14.6 DCS Video Surveillance System

a. ~~Include in t~~The DCS video surveillance system shall~~must~~ include client computers, monitors, and cameras as an extension of the court facility VSS. Refer to chapter 4, Courthouse Security, for specific information regarding the court facility VSS.

b. Video surveillance monitoring shall be password protected to prevent unauthorized viewing and control of detention cameras. Authorized monitoring of detention cameras outside detention areas must not be observable by the public.

c. Cameras in common detention areas and secure elevators must be vandal resistant. Cameras in detention cells must be high~~-security~~ security detention type. Cameras must be installed in compliance with the requirements of this chapter. In all other respects, detention~~-~~ area cameras must be compatible and consistent with the building VSS design.

d. VSS client computers must be located in secure cabinets within the DCR modular workstation furniture. VSS monitors will be located on a monitor tree, oriented to allow easy viewing and ~~to~~ minimize operator fatigue. Large-format monitors mounted on walls are also acceptable.

e. The VSS system must provide camera call-up at DCR touchscreen computers using a graphic icon for each camera.

14.7 DCS IP-~~based~~ Based Intercom System

a. ~~Include in t~~The intercom system shall~~must~~ include a rack-mounted intercom exchange and modular expansion chassis equipment rack mounted in an MDF or IDF room on the same level as the DCR.

b. The intercom substations shall use Power over Ethernet network connections from MDF and IDF rooms to each intercom field device.

c. The intercom system shall provide call initiation from the DCS touchscreen computers, master stations, and substations for two-way voice communications between master stations and substations.

d. The intercom system shall provide monitoring of substations from DCS touchscreen computers and master stations.

e. The intercom system shall provide notification of call button activation at master stations and DCS touchscreen computers.

f. The intercom system shall provide annunciation of substation calls at DCR touchscreen displays with a graphic icon and audible notification. Intercom substation calls may be placed from the DCR touchscreen computer by selecting a graphic substation icon on the touchscreen.

g. The intercom system shall interface with VSS for automatic display of cameras viewing the calling substation each time a call is initiated from that substation.

h. ~~In s~~Sally port, central holding, secure circulation, and courtroom holding area intercom substations~~,~~ shall~~must~~ incorporate one-touch push-button operation, vandal~~-~~-resistant construction, and integral tamper alarms.

i. L~~L~~~~ocate~~ocating sally port, central holding, secure circulation, and courtroom holding area detention door intercom substations ~~preferably~~ in the detention door frames is preferred.

Commented [DP33]: Gensler: change must to shall.

Commented [DP34]: Gensler: change must to shall.

Commented [DP35]: Gensler: change must to shall.

j. ~~Locate i~~Intercom master stations ~~shall~~~~must~~ be located adjacent to DCR touchscreen monitors at DCR modular workstation furniture~~,~~ and incorporate an alphanumeric display and programmable push-button keypad.

14.8 DCS Workstations

a. Modular or systems furniture shall be provided at DCS workstation locations that are secure or located in a DCR. Workstation monitors shall be uniform in size and specification and located on a monitor tree.

b. Detention-grade furniture shall be provided at DCS workstation locations that are unsecured or located within a detention area. Equipment and desk accessories shall be ~~minimized~~ minimal and ~~shall be~~ securely attached to the furniture.

c. Project requirements should include early and periodic review of the detention furniture with BSCC. Moveable, temporary, or breakable furniture (e.g., plastic chairs) that can be tampered with, thrown, or broken for use as a weapon or provide a risk of ligature is subject to BSCC inspection and approval. Furniture mockup is recommended.

15. Infrastructure Wire and Cable

a. Protect DCS wire and cable in a metallic raceway, conduit, enclosed cable tray, or enclosed cable ladder~~,~~ where exposed, readily accessible, or inside walls. Plastic raceway is unacceptable.

b. All TCP/IP network cabling and connectivity shall be in accordance with chapter 17, Network and Communication Systems, and chapter 18, Audiovisual Systems.

c. ~~For p~~Point-to-point cabling:

- Low-voltage power cabling shall be two-conductor, 18 American Wire Gauge (AWG), stranded and unshielded. Typical applications include 24-volt direct current lock power.
- Alarm point cabling will be one twisted pair, 18 AWG, stranded and unshielded. Typical applications include door contacts and latch monitoring.

d. VSS ~~Cameras~~cameras:

- Interior IP camera cabling shall be in accordance with chapter 17, Network and Communication Systems, and chapter 18, Audiovisual Systems.
- Analog cameras shall use unshielded twisted pair (UTP) interfaces to transmit camera and control signals over a network cabling infrastructure.
- Secure elevator cameras shall ~~utilize~~ use converters for IP cameras to transmit camera signals via coaxial or twisted pair within the traveler cable.
- Exterior camera signal cabling shall be fiber optic unless the routed distance is within the maximum length allowed in chapter 17, Network and Communication Systems, for copper cable.

16. Infrastructure Power

a. Normal power shall be provided for DCS components with a low-voltage power supply incorporating a battery backup power source.

b. For detailed uninterruptible power supply (UPS) requirements, see chapter 15, Electrical Criteria.

DIVISION ONE: DESIGN CRITERIA

1 General Principles
2 Courthouse Organization
3 Site Design
4 Courthouse Security
5 Court Set
6 Jury Facilities and Court Administration
7 Special Services

8 IN-CUSTODY DEFENDANT RECEIVING, HOLDING, AND TRANSPORT
8.A Objectives
8.B Planning Criteria
8.C Functional Overview
8.D Program Components
8.E Technical Criteria
8.F Electronic Detention Control System

10 Building Support Services

Commented [DP36]: Gensler: change must to shall.

Commented [DP37]: Gensler: add : after cameras.

DIVISION ONE: DESIGN CRITERIA

9 PUBLIC SPACES

SECTION	TOPIC	PAGE
9A	Objectives	9.2
9B	Primary Building Entrance	9.2
9C	Public Lobby	9.2
9D	Courtroom Public Waiting Areas	9.5



Superior Court of California, Tuolumne County
Sonora, CA
Lionakis

Public spaces provide courthouse visitors with a first impression of the justice system and the court facility.

Public Courthouse Spaces

- Primary ~~Building~~ building ~~Entrance~~entrance
- Public ~~Lobby~~lobby, ~~Including~~ including ~~Security~~ security ~~Station~~ station and ~~Information~~ information ~~Counter~~counter
- Courtroom ~~Public~~ public ~~Waiting~~ waiting ~~Areas~~areas

9.A OBJECTIVES

Planning and design of public spaces are critical to the successful operation of a courthouse. Public spaces should provide simple and clear movement of visitors and staff into and throughout the courthouse~~,~~ while limiting access to non-public zones. Public spaces should also provide an open and spacious experience for users—who are often under stress—and convey the importance and authority of the courts.

Strategically placed, clear, and legible graphics and signage—visible on entry—will provide first-time visitors with information about where to find various functions and how to get there. Wayfinding techniques shall provide visual cues about the location of important public spaces and services.

The court facility must maintain a safe and secure environment for all people and property. Court security includes active and passive measures~~,~~ encompassing design, technology, and operations~~.~~ ~~(See~~ see chapter 4, Courthouse Security~~)~~.

9.B PRIMARY BUILDING ENTRANCE

The front door of each court building has important symbolic and functional attributes. This main ceremonial entrance is the single point of entry for staff, visitors, and the public.

a. Provide a single primary entry with universal access.

b. Provide an attractive and user-friendly environment as a first impression to court visitors and staff.

c. Design the entrance to accommodate peak-hour lines of prospective jurors and courthouse visitors ~~through the entrance and entrance doors~~.

d. Because lines may extend out the entrance door, provide outside protection from inclement weather, including sun, wind, and rain. Some climates may require a vestibule~~.~~ ~~(Refer~~ refer to chapter 11, Architectural Criteria~~)~~.

e. Building entries~~,~~ ~~especially~~ including the main judges, staff and public entries~~y~~, must accommodate persons with disabilities in the same manner as the general public. ~~Entry doors shall meet the door closer requirements of applicable codes.~~ Power-assist doors ~~or balanced doors~~ shall be provided. In addition, interior power-assist door(s) shall be provided in the path of travel leading up to the building elevators, where applicable. ~~Power-assist doors are preferred because they can be used when needed but are a universally accessible solution.~~ Entry doors shall meet the door closer requirements of applicable codes. Overhead closers with easy access shall be used for ease of maintenance so that the entire door system does not have to be removed for repairs and maintenance.

f. Provide delayed action door closers for the same number of judges chambers and judges courtroom entries as the number of required ADA spaces in the judges parking based on CBC 11B-208.2. See chapter 11 section 11.D.1.10 for additional requirements for delayed action closers. If during design it is determined that a court's bench officer(s) or staff have a known existing need related to accessible doors, upon Judicial Council approval, additional variations from Facilities Standards may be considered.

~~e.~~g. Main lobby entry doors shall be programmed to be controlled ~~by~~from the building security operations center (SOC)~~central control or programable by sheriffs. Building entries, especially the main public entry, must accommodate persons with disabilities in the same manner as the general public. Entry doors shall meet the door closer….. Provide a line items f. for programmable doors operated by sheriff~~.

9.C PUBLIC LOBBY

1. Lobby Requirements

The public lobby serves as the focal point for the building and provides visual orientation

Commented [DP1]: Gensler: additional changes made to bullet e, added a new bullet f.

Commented [AG2]: Lesson Learned from Sonora Courthouse: Front doors have in-ground door closers that require the entire door system be removed from the frame in order to access the in-ground components for repairs. Overhead closers or in-ground closures that have easy access should be options considered for future maintenance purposes.

Commented [DP2R2]: Incorporated.

Commented [AG3]: Lesson Learned from Sonora Courthouse: Front doors have in-ground door closers that require the entire door system be removed from the frame in order to access the in-ground components for repairs. Overhead closers or in-ground closures that have easy access should be options considered for future maintenance purposes.

Commented [DP3R2]: Incorporated.

to the other areas through visual cues and signage. (See see figure 9.1).

a. Provide a public lobby sized for a queuing area sufficient to accommodate the volume of people entering the courthouse and weapons screening stations. Give attention to integrating the security screening stations into the lobby design to avoid the appearance of an intrusion or afterthought.
b. Provide security cameras throughout public areas, with special emphasis on weapons screening, to record the public entering the facility and receiving their belongings once they have gone through weapons screening.
c. Provide clear signage and graphics immediately upon arrival in the courthouse public lobby. Many courthouse visitors will require directions to courtrooms or hearing rooms.



Figure 9.1 Public Lobby, Superior Court of Siskiyou County, Yreka

d. Provide large, easily readable court calendar monitors. Areas where courtroom assignments are posted must be accessible without impeding the security screening process or blocking public circulation paths.

e. Provide climate and glare control for building management staff. Consider finish materials to control the glare throughout the space.

2. Security Screening Station

a. Building users and staff shall enter the facility through a public entry screening station~~.~~ (~~See~~ see figure 9.2). Screening of the public occurs in the building lobby. Provide one security screening station, or lane, for full-time operation~~.~~ (~~See~~ see figure 9.3). Provide additional ~~-~~lanes as required to operate during peak usage—in mornings and after lunch, for example, during high-volume jury return flow. The number of lanes is determined ~~based on~~by a metric used by the Judicial Council planning team in conjunction with the court during the early design stage.



Figure 9.2 Screening Station, Sutter County Superior Courthouse, Yuba City

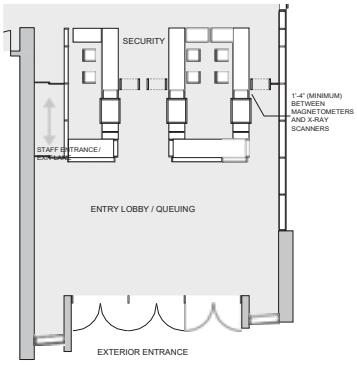


Figure 9.3 Screening Station Diagram

DIVISION ONE: DESIGN CRITERIA
1 General Principles
2 Courthouse Organization
3 Site Design
4 Courthouse Security
5 Court Set
6 Jury Facilities and Court Administration
7 Special Services
8 In-Custody Defendant Receiving, Holding, and Transport
9 PUBLIC SPACES
9.A Objectives
9.B Primary Building Entrance
9.D Courtroom Public Waiting Areas
10 Building Support Services

During the early planning and design phases, involve the sheriff's department or court security officers to ensure compliance and cooperation from planning through design and occupancy.

b. Screening stations shall include space for the following:

- An interior or covered area for queuing of the projected peak volume of people entering the building. Distance between the security screening station and the building entrance is recommended to be at least 20 linear feet.
- A magnetometer, or metal detector, through which visitors pass for detection of metal objects. The opening shall be 32″ clear to accommodate wheelchairs or mobility devices.
- An ~~x~~X-ray scanner for screening contents of visitor briefcases, handbags, and personal possessions, paired with sufficient project-specific roller-table assemblies for the input and output of packages. There shall be a minimum of 1′4″ distance between magnetometers and ~~x~~X-ray scanners.
- Where multiple screening lines are required, a ratio of one magnetometer per pair of package screening units (1:2), subject to confirmation with a project-specific security operations program.
- A table or counter for secondary inspection of scanned items.
- A magnetic -wand inspection area.
- Security staff posts to assist individuals through the magnetometer screening and ~~x~~X-ray scanning. In multiportal screening areas, a third security post may be needed to oversee the screening process and assist security staff. Provide power, data, and voice communications to the security post.

c. Magnetometers, ~~x~~X-ray scanners, and other equipment shall not be affixed to built-in casework to allow for ease of equipment replacement when needed.

d. ~~Design the s~~Screening area design shall~~must~~ ~~to~~ be consistent with the court public spaces and project
a positive first impression to court visitors. Do not make screening equipment the main focus of the space. Provide a casework screen for the scanning position, constructed of durable materials to withstand the stress of a high-traffic area~~,~~ and lined with nonricochet, bullet-resistant material that will absorb multiple firings of a large-caliber handgun.

e. The accessible path of travel shall include the lobby security screening area. Wheelchair users shall not travel a separate and nonequivalent path through the screening process area. Persons with disabilities shall pass through a magnetometer~~,~~ along with the general population. Space must be provided to allow bypass of the magnetometer for people with implanted medical devices that may be affected by magnetic fields.

f. In some cases, it may be necessary to provide gun lockers for law enforcement officers entering the facility, consistent with local security procedures.

g. ~~Design e~~Each security screening area ~~to~~ shall~~must~~ allow visual observation ~~by security staff~~ of all public exits by security staff to ensure that individuals entering the building do not circumvent the screening process. Directionally sensitive motion-detection systems with audiovisual alarms or electronic turnstiles may be used to deter entry of individuals through the exit lanes.

h. ~~Locate s~~Staff-only entrances or exits shall~~must~~ be located at a staffed security screening station only~~,~~ to avoid
compromising overall building security and increasing security costs.

i. ~~See t~~Tool 8, Security System Guidelines, ~~for~~provides additional requirements for security screening.

Commented [SN4]: I do not see Tool 8 in the folder containing the current chapters being reviewed.

Commented [DP4R2]: It is a new tool. I will add the file.

3. Information Counter (Where Required)

a. A clearly identified information display screen with an optional desk space shall be used to provide direction and basic information to individuals unfamiliar with the court facility or court system. The desk shall be provided if the court plans to have reception staff in the lobby. (see Refer to figure 9.4). The information screen must be located in a highly visible place near the main entrance but beyond the screening area. Design the information area consistent with the public spaces. The screen shall display the courthouse map and court calendar.

b. The information area must be used in conjunction with directional signage to provide courthouse visitors information about location of services.

c. If a kiosk is used, it may be an automated system with touchscreen technology or a combination of automated signage with a staff member so that the kiosk still provides information if the staff member is not present. If the counter is staffed, provide adequate accessible workspace. Staff may be volunteers.



Figure 9.4 Information Display Screens Beyond Information Desk, B. F. Sisk Courthouse, Fresno

9.D COURTROOM PUBLIC WAITING AREAS

a. Public waiting areas shall include sufficient comfortable seating and be located near areas of highest public use, with easy access to restrooms and water drinking fountains. The water drinking fountains shall be combination units with non-chilled water for drinking and bottle filling and shall be ADA compliant. Provide natural light in waiting areas, if possible.

b. Corridors may be used as public waiting areas if they are wide enough to accommodate bench seating and if a vestibule with a sound lock is provided at courtroom entrances.

c. Waiting areas shall be proportional to the population served. Family law, arraignment, traffic, and juvenile courts require larger public waiting areas.

~~9.E ATRIUM DESIGN GUIDELINES FOR HIGH COOLING LOAD CALIFORNIA CLIMATE ZONES~~

DIVISION ONE: DESIGN CRITERIA

1 General Principles
2 Courthouse Organization
3 Site Design
4 Courthouse Security
5 Court Set
6 Jury Facilities and Court Administration
7 Special Services
8 In-Custody Defendant Receiving, Holding, and Transport

9 PUBLIC SPACES
9.A Objectives
9.B Primary Building Entrance

10 Building Support Services

Commented [DP5]: Added per CFAC-WG direction.

Commented [SN5R2]: Does this intend to indicate that not all courthouses will have such an information counter? If so, suggest it be changed to "Where Required" to clarify that this does not mean that the information counter requirements are optional.

Commented [DP5R3]: Changed to Where Required.

Commented [DP6]: Gensler: add non-chilled water.

Commented [DP7]: Atriums are not permitted in our courthouses. So the proposal of adding this section is rejected. See chapter 2, section 2.B.

9.E.1 Applicability

Applies to trial court facilities with atriums in Climate Zones 10, 12, 13, 14, and 15 (1,400-3,500 CDD 65F). These climate zones have California's highest cooling loads, where atrium design significantly impacts energy performance.
Project teams should evaluate courtyard configurations and alternative daylighting strategies (clerestories, distributed skylights, tubular daylighting devices) before incorporating enclosed atriums. The Imperial County Criminal Courthouse (El Centro) occupied in December, 2024, demonstrates effective courtyard design in Climate Zone 15. The 49,000 SF facility uses three shaded outdoor courtyards instead of enclosed atriums, achieving natural daylighting while minimizing cooling loads through extensive external shading, limited glazing ratios, and high-thermal-mass light-colored stone construction.

9.E.2 Design Principles

- Limit to one atrium per building
- Integrate functionally with lobby and circulation
- Right-size using energy modeling
- Optimize for passive ventilation and daylighting
- Use materials reflecting civic dignity

9.E.3 Sizing Guidelines

9.E.3.1 Scale appropriately: Smaller atriums in hotter climates. Target 800 to 3,200 sf, depending on facility size and climate severity, with the smallest sizes for desert zones (CZ 15) and larger allowances for moderate zones (CZ 10-13). Smaller facilities and hotter climates require smaller atriums within this range.

9.E.3.2 Height: 40-55 feet preferred (optimizes stack ventilation, avoids smoke control requirements)

9.E.3.3 Geometry:

- Atrium ≤25% of building floor area
- Plan: Square or length-to-width ≤1.5:1
- Height-to-width: 1:1 to 2:1

9.E.4 Performance Requirements

9.E.4.1 Envelope

- Glazing U-Factor: ≤0.30 (vertical), ≤0.35 (skylight)
- SHGC: ≤0.25 (vertical), ≤0.30 (skylight)
- Glazing ratio: ≤30% walls, ≤40% roof
- Insulation: R-38 roof, R-19 walls
- Shading: External shading required; automated for atriums >2,000 sf

9.E.4.2 Interior

- Light-colored finishes (LRV ≥0.70) on ≥60% of walls
- Durable civic-quality materials (stone, terrazzo, quality wood/metal)
- Acoustic consultant recommended; target RT60 ≤2.5 seconds
- STC (Sound Transmission Class) ≥50 to courtrooms, ≥45 to secure spaces

9.E.4.3 Ventilation

- Design for natural ventilation with high/low openings where feasible
- Outlet area ≥ inlet area
- Separate HVAC zone for atrium

9.E.4.4 Controls

- Automatic daylighting controls with dimming
- Occupancy sensors for lighting

- Integrate with building automation

9.E.5 Energy Performance

- Whole-building energy modeling required
- Demonstrate Title 24 compliance and EUI targets per Chapter 1, Section TBD
- Computational Fluid Dynamics (CFD) analysis recommended for atriums >2,500 sf or > 4 stories

9.E.6 Alternative Compliance

9.E.6.1 Projects may use a performance-based approach demonstrating:

- Energy performance equal to or better than baseline without atrium
- Thermal comfort per ASHRAE 55 for 90% of occupied hours
- Equal or better life-cycle cost

9.E.6.2 Designs with atrium sizes exceeding the guidelines in Section 9.E.3 require justification demonstrating either:

- Superior performance (≥5% better EUI), or
- Functional necessity

9.E.7 References

- California Title 24, Part 6
- California Building Code Sections 404, 909
- ASHRAE Standards 55, 62.1, 90.1
- U.S. Courts Design Guide (2021)

Commented [YR8]: Site EUI targets per Arup CSMCESS study

Commented [DP8R2]: This is covered in chapter 1.

DIVISION ONE: DESIGN CRITERIA

10 BUILDING SUPPORT SERVICES

SECTION	TOPIC	PAGE
10.A	Janitor Closets	10.2
10.B	Loading Dock	10.2
10.C	News Media Functions	10.3
10.D	Mailroom	10.3
10.E	Maintenance Shops and Office	10.3
10.F	Storage	10.3
10.G	Mechanical Equipment Enclosures	10.4
10.H	Fire Alarm and Emergency Communication System Control Room	10.4



Superior Court of California, Mono County
Mammoth Lakes, CA
Mark Cavagnero Associates

Building support services ensure that necessary routine maintenance and operational functions occur on a daily basis within the court facility. Support services include deliveries, collection and removal of trash or recycling, and storage of fixtures and equipment.

The character and size of building support spaces shall be determined during programming and early design phases~~,~~ with input from the Facilities Services building operations staff.

10.A JANITOR CLOSETS

Provide janitor closets on each floor of the court building, except in small facilities or on floors with limited occupied spaces. Include a service sink, tool racks, water~~-~~tight wall covering with high-impact resistance, and wall-mounted shelving. All janitor closets should be separately ventilated and exhausted~~,~~ and negatively pressurized to adjacent spaces. Access to janitor closets may be from within public restrooms, but this is not the preference.

In large facilities, provide a janitorial storage room for central inventory of supplies. Locate the room near staff locker rooms and the management office.

10.B LOADING DOCK

a. Large facilities require a raised loading dock to accommodate delivery, trash, and recycling trucks, as determined by the program. Some facilities may use an on-grade loading area equipped with a motorized platform dock lift. Large interstate trailer rigs need not be accommodated in the loading dock, but a staging area shall be provided so that all deliveries can be scanned or examined before entering the building.

b. The building location within the site circulation system shall allow easy delivery and efficient distribution of goods throughout the facility.~~:~~

   - Locate the loading dock near the freight elevator but away from general office areas of the court.
   - Locate air intake ducts to avoid intake of fumes from idling trucks.

c. Access from the street shall~~must~~ be through a restricted vehicle circulation system. The driveway, loading dock, loading dock apron, and exterior staging areas must be within the security perimeter and fully enclosed by fencing.

d. ~~Provide c~~Closed-circuit television ~~is necessary~~shall be provided to monitor the driveway, loading dock, loading dock apron, and exterior staging area. Provide a telephone or other annunciation system at the gateway ~~-~~to the service driveway. If the gate is remotely operated, provide a manual backup system. Refer to chapter 4, Courthouse Security.

e. Office supplies can be delivered on an as-needed basis. Provide space for pallet delivery and storage near the loading dock.

f. ~~Dedicate o~~One dedicated truck bay shall~~must~~ be located within a secure loading area ~~to~~ for trash and recycling. This area will include collection and compaction bins and locked, covered roll-off containers.

   - Include a covered area for temporary storage of delivered supplies, equipment, and recyclable materials.
   - Provide a file shredding area near the loading dock. If this process is contracted out, provide a secure area to store materials awaiting pickup.

10.C NEWS MEDIA FUNCTIONS

If requested by the court, the courthouse must accommodate the media, inside and outside the facility. For technical requirements, refer to chapter 17, Network and Communication Systems, and chapter 18, Audiovisual Systems.

1. **Interior Media Area**

   If requested by the court, provide an interior space for use by news media personnel~~,~~ off a public corridor, not necessarily near the courtrooms, with appropriate power, data, and telecommunications support systems, including audio, video, or other feeds to the main distribution frame. The news media room may be multipurpose~~,~~ but must be available for the news media in courthouses, especially during high-profile cases.

2. **Exterior Media Area**

   If requested by the court, designate an exterior area with parking for multiple satellite trucks. If possible, the area should face south for satellite exposure. The location can be beyond building security standoff. For urban areas where no parking can be designated for satellite trucks, provide an exterior connection box for video and audio accessibility on the south side of the building or at the loading dock.

10.D MAILROOM

Most facilities receive daily mail and packages through the public entry, where an ~~x~~X-ray machine may scan them. A large facility may require a dedicated room for receiving and opening mail, with ~~x~~X-ray package screening and biohazard control capabilities.

Locate the mailroom and mail opening room near the central receiving or loading dock and ~~near~~ a service or freight elevator~~,~~ ~~to~~ which will allow staff to easily transport mail to other parts of the building.

10.E MAINTENANCE SHOPS AND OFFICE

Provide an office for court-based maintenance staff. The office shall be sized to accommodate workstations for ~~project and~~ facilities management staff, Judicial Council~~'s~~ facility operations staff, and service providers~~,~~ and also allow space for visitors. Provide furnishings for storing and reviewing building plans and for reference catalog shelving. Locate a staff restroom for easy access by maintenance staff. Locate the office in the basement or in a nonpublic location.

In large facilities, locate a maintenance shop on the ground floor~~,~~ near the freight elevator. Provide walls that minimize noise transmission. ~~Also, provide~~Include a ~~lunchroom~~ break room for custodial workers.

10.F STORAGE

~~In medium and large facilities, p~~Provide a furniture storage area near the freight elevator. Provide ~~shelving~~ a storage area for attic stock~~.~~, including ~~Building~~ building supplies and materials~~,~~ such as carpet, air filters, and ceiling tiles ~~shall be stored there~~. Locate this storage area adjacent to the maintenance shop and office.

DIVISION ONE: DESIGN CRITERIA

1 General Principles
2 Courthouse Organization
3 Site Design
4 Courthouse Security
5 Court Set
6 Jury Facilities and Court Administration
7 Special Services
8 In-Custody Defendant Receiving, Holding, and Transport
9 Public Spaces

10 BUILDING SUPPORT SERVICES

10.G Mechanical Equipment Enclosures
10.H Fire Alarm and Emergency Communication System Control Room

Commented [PS1]: The mail room should have a separate HVAC system that is not connected to the main building and have emergency control should a package arrive that has hazmat concerns

Commented [DP1R2]: This is covered in chapter 4 and 13.

Commented [PS2]: This space needs to accommodate our service provider who maintain the building and also our Ops group assigned to the building. Can this section be more defined as to who occupies the space?

Commented [DP2R2]: Incorporated.

Commented [DP3]: Modifications per CFAC-WG.

Refer to chapter 17, Network and Communication Systems, for information on telecommunications and server equipment rooms.

Refer to chapter 20, Fire Protection Criteria.

10.G MECHANICAL EQUIPMENT ENCLOSURES

a. Mechanical and electrical equipment, outside of the nominal building envelope, shall be protected from weather and environmental elements within an architectural equipment enclosure that allows suitable access for maintenance personnel. An evaluation shall be conducted for prevalent site elements such as wind, sand, and rain to determine enclosure requirements. An equipment enclosure on a building roof shall be integrated with the overall building design and comply with other sections of these standards. Enclosures in the form of penthouses are preferred~~,~~ but not required, depending on the size and type of equipment. If a penthouse is not provided, exterior-grade equipment and visual screens shall be provided.

b. An evaluation shall be conducted to determine the potential for the migration of Legionella between adjacent rooftop cooling towers and the cooling tower in the project. Cooling towers shall be enclosed if the evaluation deems it necessary.

c. Equipment enclosures on a building roof shall be accessible via a permanent dedicated industrial stair from the top occupied building floor to the roof. It is preferable but not required for the stair to terminate inside the equipment enclosure. The stair shall be wide enough to afford access for maintenance personnel carrying hand tools or small parts. Ladders shall not be employed to provide access to equipment enclosures.

d. Air-handling unit outside-air intakes, relief air, and exhaust air shall be ducted directly to the outside of the roof equipment enclosure. Toilet (or other product-conveying) exhaust fans should not be located within the roof equipment enclosure.

e. Emergency generator sets (see chapter 15.C, Emergency and Standby Power Systems) are generally exempt from the above enclosure standard~~,~~ if the equipment is in the building or vault. Equipment that needs to be located outside shall be screened~~,~~ but not enclosed, per above. That equipment includes:

   - Water backflow and detector check valves;
   - Irrigation controllers;
   - Utility company electrical transformers; and
   - Battery energy storage systems, if photovoltaic and energy management systems are included in the project.

10.H FIRE ALARM AND EMERGENCY COMMUNICATION SYSTEM CONTROL ROOM

Emergency communication system control equipment that is installed in non-high-rise buildings must be located within a room separated from the remainder of the building by not less than a one-hour fire ~~resistance~~ resistance–rated fire barrier with one-hour fire ~~resistance~~ resistance–rated opening protection. This room must be located after consultation with the authorities having jurisdiction (fire department) and ~~be~~ approved by the Judicial Council. The room must be a minimum of 100 square feet, with a minimum dimension of 8′.

DIVISION TWO: TECHNICAL CRITERIA

11 ARCHITECTURAL CRITERIA

SECTION	TOPIC	PAGE
11.A	Objectives	11.2
11.B	Architectural Criteria	11.2
11.C	Building Elements: Exterior Construction	11.2
11.D	Building Elements: Interior Construction	11.9
11.E	Signage	11.17



Superior Court of California, County of San Bernardino
San Bernardino, CA
Skidmore, Owings & Merrill LLP

Courthouses are public buildings emblematic of our judicial system. As such, they should use architectural elements and materials that are dignified, yet practical, and durable enough to withstand sustained public use.

Architectural criteria provide performance standards for selected architectural components, building assemblies, and finishes.

11.A OBJECTIVES

The performance standards and criteria listed in this chapter provide functional solutions to objectives listed in chapter 1, General Principles: functional usefulness, physical durability, maintainability, accessibility, sustainability, and energy efficiency. Where feasible pProjects toshall be designed to standard material sizes that are available off -the -shelf and are easily replaceable. TakingThe material selection shall take into consideration the life –cycle cost toof replacement items and or replacement of itemsthem due to wear and tear or vandalism such as broken windows. Consideration shall be given to the mechanism for easy maintenance and replacement, such as avoiding the use of cranes to reach broken parts and components at high elevation.Using glazing sizes that do not require a crane to install can save on replacement cost.

11.B ARCHITECTURAL CRITERIA

California court facilities shall use practical and durable materials and finishes in all elements, and exhibit consistency in the design and use of materials throughout. The performance of architectural elements shall be consistent with the functional lifetime defined in chapter 21, Life Cycle Cost Analysis, and the selection of elements, systems, or and materials shall be consistent with the construction budget and the imperative to control overall maintenance and operation costs of the building over its lifetime. Minimize variation in the number of materials used in a building.

11.C BUILDING ELEMENTS: EXTERIOR CONSTRUCTION

Design the exterior building envelope—including roofs, exterior walls, foundations, retaining walls, and door and window assemblies—to be weatherproof. Design to exclude leaks and other defects for all moisture protection systems, including exterior sealants, vapor barriers, underslab moisture barrier systems, exterior cladding systems, roofing, and waterproofing. Avoid excavating below grade for facilities that do not need a basement. Provide a durable, long-lasting, high–grade waterproofing system with enhanced testing and inspections. All window designs must anticipate water infiltration and condensation and provide means to direct water to the exterior and allow it to escape. Consider material thickness dimensions in exterior design and layout dimensions.

1. **Building Enclosure Commissioning (BECx)**
   a. The purpose of BECx shall be to ensure integrity of four critical barrier systems of the building envelope: water, thermal, vapor, and air barriers. Do not use one barrier to serve for all four barrier systems, so that over time, a failure of one system will not compromise all four systemsthe others. Building enclosure commissioning and testing to be provided by the same company.
   b. The project shall achieve air tightness to the extent required by the California Energy Code.
   c. A commissioning authority or agent (CxA) shall be responsible for BECx plan development, thorough review of progressive design drawings and specifications, and review of building envelope value engineering efforts, and shall participate in inspections and testing during the construction phase and one-year warranty review. Building enclosure commissioning and testing shallto be provided by the same company.
   d. The standard for BECx shall be ASTM E2813, Standard Practice for Building Enclosure Commissioning. The standard test for air infiltration shall be ASTM E3158, Standard Test Method for Measuring the Air Leakage Rate of a Large or Multizone Building, or ASTM E779-19, Standard Test Method for Determining Air Leakage Rate by Fan Pressurization. In addition, the CxA shall specify as appropriate other standards for shop and/or field testing of building envelope systemsRefer to Judicial Council Division One specifications provided to the selected designbuilder for the tests and inspections required for BECx.
2. **Wind Analysis**
   The forces of wind and weather shall be considered in architectural design based on specific project site conditions. A pedestrian-level wind analysis may be required to determine wind effects on the court building and surrounding buildings, sidewalks, the plaza, and entrances and to determine the need for a main entry vestibule. The effects of wind should also be

Commented [DP1]: Modified by CFAC-WG.

Commented [SN1R2]: Consideration "shall" be given?

Commented [LD2]: Are these part of this document? Can we direct readers to where they can be found?

Commented [DP2R2]: They are given to the selected design builder. I have added clarification.

Commented [DP3]: Change made due to challenges with the tests listed here and to set the expectations at one place instead of providing conflicting direction to vendors between CTCFS and Division 1.

considered in the selection of entry door systems and hardware to ensure that doors will securely latch. The recommendations of a wind analysis shall be addressed by the architectural design. Snow and ice accumulation analysis may be required for court buildings in cold regions of the state. An air ~~-~~quality wind analysis may be required to determine the optimum location of air intakes and exhaust stacks, but in all cases, building exhausts should be located away from building entries and ventilation air intakes.

3. Exterior Building Walls

The exterior wall design shall present a consistent image, character, and permanence. Scoring, control joints, and other wall plane relief shall be considered and incorporated into the design. The building cladding system requires high-quality, ~~long-lasting,~~ durable components that can accommodate movement, are designed for low maintenance, and have a functional lifetime as defined in required tool 1, table T1.1. The use of anti~~-~~graffiti coatings is encouraged at locations vulnerable to graffiti and where suitable for the substrate.

3.1 Moisture and Damp ~~-~~Pproofing

a. Provide an exterior envelope system, including roofing, that is a complete weather- and moisture-proof assembly ~~that~~ and will prevent infiltration into the building's occupied or unoccupied areas.

   - Design the building exterior systems to prevent the introduction or long-term growth of mold or other pathogens that could adversely affect the indoor environmental quality or work environment.
   - Design exterior wall systems that provide two distinct lines of protection against water penetration and one line of protection against air infiltration.
   - Provide a complete moisture- and damp~~-~~proofing system at all concrete slabs on grade, retaining walls, and other below-grade structures. No wooden elements shall be exposed to rain.

b. Specifications shall include a section for moisture mitigation before flooring installation, if required based on relative humidity (RH) testing. All new interior concrete substrates shall be tested per the current edition of the ~~ASTM~~ ASTM F2170 test method using in situ probes as a means of conducting relative humidity testing of the concrete slabs.

If the RH test results indicate a saturated slab condition, only a two-component, resin-based, membrane-forming moisture mitigation system that meets the full intent of the current edition of ASTM F3010 shall be allowed. The product requirements shall have a vapor permeance no greater than 0.1 grain per hour per square foot per inch of mercury (0.1 grain/hour/ft^2/inch Hg) (perm) when the product is tested in accordance with ASTM E96 when applied at the recommended thickness designated by its manufacturer.

3.2 Barrier Walls and Drainage Plane Walls

The defining feature of a barrier wall is that protection from sun, water, and wind is provided at the single outermost surface of the wall, whereby the system that faces the environmental forces is the same system that repels water. By contrast, a drainage plane or cavity wall has the primary water-resistant weather line behind the exterior surface system, which provides the environmental protection, and a secondary water barrier.

Traditional barrier walls rely on mass to absorb moisture and evaporate it slowly to the exterior and on physical shielding—such as roof overhangs, window setbacks, and drip edges—to protect vulnerable joints from weather exposure.

DIVISION TWO: TECHNICAL CRITERIA

11 ARCHITECTURAL CRITERIA
11.A Objectives
11.B Architectural Criteria
11.C Building Elements: Exterior Construction
11.D Building Elements: Interior Construction
11.E Signage

12 Structural Criteria
13 Mechanical Criteria
14 Building Management System Criteria
15 Electrical Criteria
16 Lighting Criteria
17 Network and Communication Systems
18 Audiovisual Systems
19 Acoustical Criteria
20 Fire Protection Criteria

a. Contemporary surface barrier walls shall have the redundancy features of a drainage plane wall and shall not rely solely on the surface material or coatings~~,~~ ~~as well as~~and sealant joints~~,~~ to keep water at the exterior. Typical exterior materials include aluminum and glass curtain wall systems, ceramic tile, brick, precast concrete panels, concrete masonry units, composite metal panels, and cement plaster. Weather enclosure performance can be problematic with contemporary barrier walls designed with the exterior surface as the single water-resistant barrier~~,~~ because of their reliance on superior construction craftsmanship to maintain a consistently watertight surface. Because the consequences of leakage through the exterior of court buildings are unacceptable, surface barrier walls shall be designed with a second line of protection against water penetration (~~i.~~e.g., sheet flashing or other weather-resistive barrier (WRB)) behind the surface material so that exterior walls of new court buildings are in effect designed as drainage plane or cavity wall systems, regardless of the primary exterior surface material.

b. Drainage plane walls shall provide internal drainage by using separate surfaces, or planes, for water and environmental protection. The water ~~-~~protection layer, made up of a WRB and flashings inside the wall behind the exterior finish, provides an initial weather protection barrier. These walls recognize the inevitability of water entry past the outermost exterior surface. Components of a drainage plane wall shall include:

- Exterior veneer and seals, which shed most water and protect the WRB from sun and excessive water exposure.
- Air space~~, which~~ that separates the inner and outer walls and provides a drainage pathway and drying of veneer anchors and weather barriers.
- Sheet flashing or other WRB, which is a continuous membrane located behind the exterior surface veneer, with all joints and penetrations sealed against water infiltration. This membrane serves as the primary water-resistant weather line in a drainage plane wall system.
- Flashings ~~shall be~~ located at all openings and wall penetrations that are transverse to the WRB, extend beyond the veneer, slope to drain, ~~and~~ or pan up at inboard edges.

3.3 Exterior Cladding Systems

Life cycle cost analysis shall be used to determine the cladding system for the exterior façade of a courthouse building. Precast concrete panels and curtain walls are generally acceptable cladding systems for high-rise buildings. For low-rise structures, cement plaster and tilt-up concrete are acceptable construction systems. The system selection shall be predicated on maintainability, durability, and efficiency.

Careful attention shall be paid to the design of the cladding system when cement plaster is used. Cement plaster exterior walls shall function as modified drainage plane walls. Conventional exterior Portland cement–based plaster cladding is an allowable cladding system for a court building of one or two stories. Use of cement plaster cladding for buildings greater than two stories requires special considerations and Judicial Council approval.

A building clad with exterior plaster must be completely weather-resistive before the installation of cement plaster. Completely weather-resistive barriers include all surfaces that are to be covered by ~~the~~ plaster; all penetrations, such as windows and

doors; and all terminations, such as parapets and the base of walls. Two-layer WRB for exterior plaster cladding is required. The choice of WRB material will depend on project conditions, including sheathing material.

3.4 Flashing

Concealed flashing systems that cannot be easily replaced shall be durable and made of stainless steel, copper, or other metal not subject to corrosion. Flashing systems consistent in material, detail, scale, and quality with the facility design shall be provided. If flashings are exposed, they shall be designed using noncorrosive materials that are consistent with the design intent. Flashing systems should be removable when installed adjacent to other systems requiring periodic inspection and/or replacement (~~i.~~e.g., flashing systems adjacent to roofing terminations). Designers shall coordinate with manufacturers to ensure overall system performance.

3.5 Expansion Joints

Develop the structure to limit movement and suit the requirements for expansion joints. Expansion joints should be designed to allow for all anticipated building movement, plus a safety factor of 25 percent, without resulting in any damage to the joint. Where required, design the expansion joints to be minimally visible and watertight. Joint cover assemblies shall meet all code requirements for impact, loading, and fire protection.

3.6 Windows and Doors

a. The best-proven institutional-grade window systems shall be provided. Glazed entry systems shall be constructed of finished aluminum or other metal systems. All glazing shall be insulated units for optimum thermal and acoustic performance, tinted or coated as required. Windows shall be fixed. Consider window size at areas reachable by the public. Ease of replacing damaged windows due to vandalism shall ~~needs to~~ be taken into ~~design~~ consideration. Use punched windows with modular pane sizes readily available off ~~-~~the ~~-~~shelf.

b. Architectural metal and glass curtain walls are a special class of drainage plane wall, with pathways, flashings, and sealants internal to the framing elements. Curtain walls shall be avoided, especially for low- to mid-rise projects. Architectural curtain walls may be designed as drainage plane walls, with internal seals, gutters, and drainage channels that function as the primary water penetration weather line. For this reason, the engineering, detailing, testing, and construction of glass and metal curtain walls for California court buildings shall follow the highest recommended industry practices.

c. Public entrances require doors that are easy to operate and securely latch in a variety of environmental conditions. Balanced swinging doors, power-assisted swinging doors, or power-activated sliding doors are appropriate for courthouse public entries. Certain site environmental conditions may require vestibules to address site environmental conditions and ~~to~~ maintain interior comfort and cleanliness.

d. Provide aluminum, stainless steel, or other approved metal institutional-grade door systems with matching frames for public entries. Painted aluminum frames and doors are not allowed for high-volume entrances. Provide ~~flush~~ flush-panel metal doors with welded steel, heavy-duty matching frames and institutional-quality hardware and finishes for service and staff doors and frames. Hardware on exterior doors shall be stainless steel.

3.7 Shading and Glare Control

Control glare and heat gain ~~at all work areas and~~in interior spaces. The glazing in the public lobby shall be mitigated for temperature and glare control so that security screeners and any other staff can work and see monitors in comfort~~,~~ and security

DIVISION TWO: TECHNICAL CRITERIA

11 ARCHITECTURAL CRITERIA
11.A Objectives
11.B Architectural Criteria
11.C Building Elements: Exterior Construction
11.D Building Elements: Interior Construction
11.E Signage

12 Structural Criteria
13 Mechanical Criteria
14 Building Management System Criteria
15 Electrical Criteria
16 Lighting Criteria
17 Network and Communication Systems
18 Audiovisual Systems
19 Acoustical Criteria
20 Fire Protection Criteria

Commented [SN4]: Shall?

Commented [DP4R2]: Gensler: change to shall.

Commented [DP5]: Staff comment: During a lessons learned meeting a couple of issues came up regarding future cost to maintain , repair or replace regarding exterior skin large plans of glass / storefront and ceilings) Basically all finishes should be nice but not over the top due to future cost, Glass panel size the large view windows when vandalized cost a lot to replace consider smaller modular easy to replace, Ceilings should be simple but nice easy to replace.

Commented [DP5R2]: Incorporated.

Commented [SN6]: Confirming that you want the flexibility to allow curtainwalls for low to mid rise by use of this word with "shall" rather that simply stating such shall be avoided.

Commented [DP6R2]: Removed the word “generally” since the flexibility is already inherent by the use of word “avoided”.

cameras can produce quality photographs. Consider exterior sunshades and window treatments to help mitigate the temperature and control glare.

3.8 Protection of Building Entrances

Protect building entries from exposure to weather. Provide exterior canopies, building recesses, or overhangs at all exterior entrances to protect doorways from exposure to rain and snow.

3.9 Exterior Stairs and Ramps

a. Often the entry levels of court facilities are raised above street level and require universal access via permanent stairways and ramps serving all courthouse users. Provide a system of guardrails and handrails, as required by code, of stainless steel, bronze, or other permanent material that has a design and finish consistent with the facility design. Steel with epoxy finish coating can be used for guardrails and handrails not subject to high-volume use.

b. Provide skate stoppers on ramps and benches to discourage skateboarding on the site. Identify exterior concrete items such as skate stoppers and shotcrete finishes, where appropriate, on the plans and specifications.

3.10 Walk-Off Mats and/or Grilles

Walk-off mat or grille systems are required to improve indoor air quality through the reduction of dirt and dust tracked into the building and ~~of~~ maintenance of indoor floor coverings. Provide a system of exterior and interior walk-off mats and/or grilles flush with the floor surface directly in front of the main entry doors and immediately after entering the public lobby. Mats shall be removable, cleanable, and replaceable. Grilles shall be constructed from corrosion-resistant durable materials~~,~~ such as stainless steel, and the assemblies shall include a recessed catch basin with removable grilles to allow for cleaning ~~of the catch basin~~. Minimum dimensions of walk-off mats and/or grilles shall be the width of the doorway and 10′ total in length in the direction of travel, which can be split between the interior and exterior sides of the doors. The design should follow the American National Standards Institute / National Floor Safety Institute B101.6 Standard Guide for Commercial Entrance Matting in Reducing Slips, Trips and Falls.

3.11 Exterior Flagpoles

Provide two flagpoles~~,~~ to accommodate a State of California flag and a U.S. flag~~,~~ near the courthouse public entrance. One pole must provide for two flags to be flown at the same time (the Prisoner of War flag is required to be flown on certain dates). The flagpoles shall be placed at a distance so that the flags do not touch during windy conditions.

So that the flag may be displayed at all times, it shall be properly illuminated during the hours of darkness. The design shall consider light pollution reduction strategies.

3.12 Dedication Plaque and/or Cornerstone

Provide a dedication plaque and/or cornerstone, with relevant project information and dates, that is permanently attached to the building. A cornerstone is appropriate for a prominent exterior location near the building entry, whereas a dedication plaque could be located either on the exterior or at a prominent interior location in the lobby or other public space.

Commented [PS7]: Please add a comment that the flagpoles will need to be designed such that the poles are separated enough so the flags will not touch when flying. This is an issue at Sonora, I am not sure of other courthouses where the poles are too close together and when windy the flags hit each other

Commented [DP7R2]: Incorporated.

Commented [SN8]: shall?

Commented [DP8R2]: Gensler: change to shall.

4. Roofs

~~Roof Type~~

The roofing system and design~~type~~ shall take into account the project location's local climate~~,~~ and ~~shall~~ be optimized for function, durability, and ease of future maintenance. ~~and the shape that is best suited to the region.~~

4.1 Low-Slope Roofing System

a. The roof shall be weathertight and provided with a positive drainage that will effectively dispose of rainwater. The roof shall be insulated so that the heat transfer values from roof to occupied area comply with the California Building Code. Low-sloped roofs shall provide a minimum slope in accordance with the manufacturer's warranty for the specified roof system~~,~~ ~~but~~ or ~~a~~ the minimum required slope of 1/4″ per foot measured along the valleys ~~is the minimum required slope to drain~~, whichever is greater. Roof drainage slopes may be achieved by the elevations of the roof structure or with built-up fill material under the membrane.

b. The type of warranty coverage must be determined during the initial contract negotiation due to the cost and construction impact that may result from high prevalent wind speeds. The type of warranty shall cover a high quality of continuous-membrane roofing and flashing system with compatible components that will not permit the passage of liquid and will withstand—without failure—wind loads, building movement, flotation loads, thermally induced movement, and exposure to weather. The selected roofing system should have an ASTM E108 and a manufacturer's warranty for a minimum period of 30 years. Fully adhered ASTM D6754-10 single-ply roofing is an acceptable system for low-slope roofs.

c. The roof membrane will be replaced occasionally over the lifespan of the building. To facilitate reroofing, relatively large uninterrupted roof planes are preferred. Flashing assemblies at curbs and roofing terminations should be removable and reinstallable (~~i.~~e.g., a two-part system with removable reglet and counterflashing) to maintain the integrity of the overall building envelope weather line after a roofing replacement. Mechanical and electrical rooftop equipment and rooftop screens shall be designed to permit reroofing in the future. Curbs and equipment bases on roofs shall be a minimum of 8″ high to allow adequate space for roof membrane terminations and flashing systems.

d. Extreme low-odor, ~~low~~ low–volatile organic compound, fluid-applied systems are encouraged for roof upgrades on existing facilities. A 20-year warranty is required for whichever system is chosen. If restoration is not possible, default to roof replacement. Fully adhered ASTM D6754 single-ply roofing is an acceptable system, in addition to the other types of thermoplastic single-ply roofing permitted by California Building Code section 1507.12.

e. Roof drains shall be recessed below the roof level to form a collection basin; roof drain bodies shall be a two-part cast iron type that allows the waterproof membrane to be clamped between drain body parts so that water infiltrating the roofing layers can drain into the system.

f. ~~Provide a~~Additional protection shall be provided at walking surfaces for rooftop service routes.

4.2 Rooftop Equipment

Rooftop equipment shall be kept to a minimum. Locate equipment in rooftop penthouses (preferred) or behind visual screens. Integrate the location, size, and finish of rooftop penthouses and visual screens with the architectural design. Install critical rooftop equipment to permit roof system replacement without unreasonable disruption of equipment operation. Satellite antennae and telecom equipment shall be located on the roof, and a point of entry into the building and a distribution pathway to a central intermediate distribution frame shall be considered when

DIVISION TWO: TECHNICAL CRITERIA

11 ARCHITECTURAL CRITERIA
11.A Objectives
11.B Architectural Criteria
11.C Building Elements: Exterior Construction
11.D Building Elements: Interior Construction
11.E Signage

12 Structural Criteria
13 Mechanical Criteria
14 Building Management System Criteria
15 Electrical Criteria
16 Lighting Criteria
17 Network and Communication Systems
18 Audiovisual Systems
19 Acoustical Criteria
20 Fire Protection Criteria

Commented [DP9]: Modified by CFAC-WG.

Commented [DP9R2]: Edited by EGG.

Commented [LW10]: @Roussev, Yassen, per our previous discussion, it may be worth adding something about the roof for buildings in snow country.

Commented [YR10R2]: Thanks @Wong, Laura @Duggan, Elisa @Shirazi, Ali for your time discussing this lessons learnt from the CMAR Mammoth Lakes Courthouse occupied in 2011. https://courts.ca.gov/facilities/mono-county-mammoth-lakes-courthouse

The language for consideration has been added to the new sections 4.4 and 5.3.

Commented [RC11]: CDCR requires a minimum of ¼ inch per foot standard slope and the department discovered that manufacturer minimum slope lead to areas of ponding.

Commented [DP11R2]: This has historically been a difficult to achieve requirement. I added "whichever is greater".

establishing a roof location for this equipment. Refer to chapter 15, Electrical Criteria, for additional requirements.

4.3 Roof Access

Provide an interior permanent dedicated industrial stair (not a ship's ladder) and access hatches to the roof of all court facilities with a roof slope of less than 3:12. This stairway can be an extension of the building exit stair system. Provide access to the roof via the freight elevator~~,~~ if the roof includes significant mechanical equipment that requires regular maintenance or the transport of heavy replacement parts. Maintenance worker safety shall be a prime design consideration in the development of roof access and roof parapets. The rooftop access shall be of sufficient size to allow the transport of required tools, small equipment, and materials. Rooftop access shall be drawn early in design for early installation.

4.4 Climate Zone 16 Snow Country Roofing Requirements

4.4.1 Applicability and Scope

~~a.~~ These enhanced requirements apply to all courthouse facilities located in California Climate Zone 16, encompassing high-elevation regions above 5,000 feet from the Oregon border through the Sierra Nevada to mountain areas in Southern California counties where ground snow loads exceed 75 psf.

~~b. All Climate Zone 16such courthouse facilities shall be designed as Risk Category III or IV per ASCE 7-22, with importance factors (Is) of 1.1 to 1.2. Enhanced requirements apply when ground snow loads exceed 75 psf.~~

~~c. Ground snow loads shall be determined using local jurisdiction ordinances as approved by the Division of the State Architect. Designers shall verify values using the ASCE 7-22 Hazard Tool and obtain DSA approval for all snow load calculations.~~
~~d. Structural design shall follow the requirements outlined in title 24 and ASCE 7, chapters 7 and 12.~~

~~4.4.2 Structural Design Requirements~~

~~**a. Snow Load Calculations.** Flat roof snow loads shall be calculated per ASCE 7-22 Section 7.3 using $pf = 0.7 \times Ce \times Ct \times Is \times pg$. The exposure factor (Ce) shall be 1.0 for partially exposed conditions typical of courthouse sites. The thermal factor (Ct) shall be 1.0 for heated structures maintained above 50°F. Minimum importance factor (Is) shall be 1.1.~~

~~**b. Drift and Unbalanced Loads.** Design shall account for snow drifts at elevation changes, parapets, and equipment per ASCE 7-22 Chapter 7. Leeward drift heights at roof steps shall use ground snow load (pg) and fetch length calculations. Windward drifts shall be 75% of leeward values.~~

~~**c. Seismic Combinations.** Snow loads shall be included in seismic load combinations per CBC Section 1605.3.1, using 20% of design snow load where ground snow exceeds 30 psf.~~

~~4.4.3 Roof Configuration~~

~~**a. Minimum Slopes.** Metal roofing systems shall have a minimum slope of 1/4 inch per foot for structural standing seam systems and 3:12 for architectural metal roofing. Single-ply membrane and built-up roofs shall have a minimum slope of 1/4 inch per foot, with 1/2 inch per foot preferred for enhanced drainage.~~

~~**b. Crickets and Positive Drainage.** Crickets shall be provided at all equipment curbs exceeding 24 inches perpendicular to the direction of flow. Where roof valleys occur at intersecting roof planes, they shall maintain minimum 2% slope (1/4 inch per foot) with reinforced membrane or standing seam construction.~~

~~**c. Parapets and Curbs.** Parapets shall extend minimum 24 inches above roof surface. Equipment curbs shall be minimum 12 inches high, with 18 inches required where ground snow exceeds 75 psf.~~

~~4.4.4 Roofing Materials~~

Commented [DP12]: BPR: We have not outlined any requirements for other climate zones. This proposed addition for zone 16 seems valid, but then why aren't we covering other zones? Is this entire section a copy paste from CBC? If so, why wouldn't we refer to the code instead of repeating the info? Please provide input and strike out code redundant info.

Commented [BR12R2]: Please see my notes below. I would recommend retaining Section 4.4.5 (Snow Retention) to close what we believe to be a gap in the CBC. The balance of the section is already covered in the code and its referenced standards.

Commented [BR13]: BPR: Recommend 4.4.2 be removed as this information is covered by CBC 1608 / ASCE 7 Chapters 7 and 12.

Commented [BR14]: BPR: Remove reference to Risk Category IV as it does not apply to Courthouses; Risk Category III already established in Chapter 12

Commented [BR15]: BPR: Section a. sets the "enhanced" threshold to elevations above 5000'; while Section b. establishes the threshold at 75 psf. These need to be coordinated.

Commented [BR16]: Recommend removal of this section. This is already addressed in Chapter 12, and snow load importance factors are no longer applicable.

Commented [BR17]: BPR: Should read, "ASCE Hazard Tool" (ascehazardtool.org)

Commented [BR18]: BPR: DSA-SS approval should not be required for snow load determination.

Commented [BR19]: Recommend removal of this section. Ground snow determination should be in accordance with the CBC, which relies on the ASCE Hazard Tool exclusively.

Commented [BR20]: Not necessary to restate what is already addressed by the CBC, et al.

Commented [BR21]: This duplicates information in CBC 1507. Recommend deleting.

Commented [BR22]: This duplicates CBC 1503.5, but introduces conflicting information regarding min. slope of cricket material. Recommend deleting.

Commented [BR23]: Parapet min. height is 30" per CBC 705.12. Recommend deleting this section. RTUs should be discouraged in heavy snow areas. CMC 303.8 covers RTU installations.

~~**a. Temperature Rating.** All roofing materials shall be rated for service temperatures from -20°F to 160°F. Membranes shall maintain flexibility at -40°F per ASTM D6164 testing.~~

~~**b. Membrane Requirements.** Single-ply membranes shall be minimum 80 mil thickness for TPO and 90 mil for EPDM, fully adhered or mechanically attached with FM I-90 or greater wind uplift rating.~~

~~**c. Fasteners and Plates.** All fasteners shall be stainless steel Type 304 or 316. Stress plates shall be minimum 2.4 inch diameter with factory applied sealant for TPO systems.~~

Commented [BR24]: These requirements either duplicate or exceed CBSC provisions. Recommend sticking with CBC language for installations to comply with m'fr instructions.

4.4.5 ~~.~~Snow Retention Systems

a. Snow Guards:~~.~~ Engineered snow retention systems shall be provided on all sloped roofs exceeding 3:12 pitch. Systems shall be designed per manufacturer's tested capacities for the calculated ground snow load.

b. Critical Areas:~~.~~ Snow guards shall protect all elements of the means of egress, pedestrian walkways, paths of travel for access, ~~pedestrian entrances, emergency exits,~~ adjacent lower roofs, adjacent structures, adjoining properties, and mechanical equipment. Guards shall extend a minimum of 2′ ~~feet~~ beyond protected areas.

Commented [DP25]: Gensler: replace . with : after Snow Guards and Critical Areas.

Commented [BR27]: Recommend this section be added. The codes are somewhat silent on this matter, and we think it is important to address it in the CTCFS to ensure designers are considering the danger of snow sliding off roofs. The Town of Mammoth Lakes (as an example) requires sliding snow to be considered and protections provided as noted in proposed CTCFS language. Ref. Section 15.24.040 of TOML Municipal Code.

~~**c. Heat Cable Systems.** Self-regulating heat cables rated for 5-8 watts per foot at 32°F shall be provided at eaves, valleys, and critical drainage paths where ground snow exceeds 60 psf.~~

~~**4.4.6 Drainage Systems**~~

Commented [DP28]: BPR: Is this requirement standard? What are the cost implications for including this?

~~**a. Primary Drainage.** Roof drains and conductors shall be sized for 125% of the 100-year, 60-minute rainfall intensity. Minimum drain size shall be 4 inches diameter with 6 inches required where ground snow exceeds 75 psf.~~

Commented [BR28R2]: The CBC does not require this active system. The CBC-mandated ice barrier (passive system) is required whether or not the heat cable is present. Not sure what the cost is for the system.

~~**b. Secondary Drainage.** Independent secondary drainage at the same capacity as primary shall be provided. Scuppers shall be minimum 6 inches high by 12 inches wide, located maximum 2 inches above primary drain inlet.~~

~~**c. Ice Dam Prevention.** Drains shall include sump receivers minimum 4 inches deep. Heat trace cables shall be provided in all drain bowls, leaders, and horizontal conductors exposed to freezing temperatures.~~

Commented [DP29]: BPR: This section 4.4.6 seems excessive. Please share your thoughts and take out what is not required by code.

~~**4.4.7 Insulation and Thermal Performance**~~

Commented [BR29R2]: These requirements either exceed or duplicate CBSC provisions. Recommend removal.

~~**a. Minimum R-Values.** Roof insulation shall provide minimum R-38, with R-49 required where ground snow exceeds 60 psf and R-60 where it exceeds 100 psf. For unvented assemblies, above-deck rigid insulation shall comprise minimum 50% of total R-value to control condensation.~~

Commented [BR30]: These requirements either duplicate or exceed the code. Recommend removal.

~~**b. Unvented Assembly Requirements.** Roof assemblies shall typically be unvented with continuous air barrier and vapor retarder. Above-deck insulation shall comprise minimum 50% of total R-value to maintain dewpoint above roof deck. Where vented assemblies are provided for steep-slope sections or unconditioned spaces, maintain minimum 2-inch clear ventilation space between insulation and roof deck with equal soffit and ridge vent areas at 1:150 ratio.~~

Commented [DP31]: BPR: Share thoughts on this section also.

~~**c. Thermal Bridging.** All roof penetrations shall include thermal breaks. Equipment curbs shall be wrapped with minimum R-10 continuous insulation extending 12 inches onto the roof surface.~~

Commented [BR31R2]: These requirements either exceed or duplicate CBSC provisions. Recommend removal.

5. Building Maintenance

All roofs that will have regular maintenance, or on which exterior maintenance equipment will operate, shall have around the entire perimeter parapets or guardrails that comply with the building code.

All elevated areas without parapets or guardrails shall have safety anchorages (a secure point of attachment that complies with the California Building Code~~,~~ for lifelines, lanyards,

or other fall-protection deceleration devices) within 6′ of the edge. Exterior balconies are not permitted.

Roofs with a slope greater than 3:12 shall have safety anchorage integrated into adjacent eaves or gable end walls to facilitate maintenance work.

5.1 Window Washing and Façade Access Equipment

a. Design the building exterior to accommodate safe and cost-effective exterior maintenance procedures. Building maintenance operations include~~,~~ but are not limited to~~,~~ window cleaning, caulking, metal polishing, reglazing, and general maintenance on building surfaces. Buildings exceeding 130′ ~~feet~~ in height are required by code to have an in-place ~~window~~ window-washing system permanently mounted on the building. Shorter buildings may have other options available for providing façade access from the ground. Both operational and equipment costs shall be considered in determining the most cost-effective system in accordance with the building's design and the frequency of the exterior maintenance schedule.

b. Provide features necessary for maintenance ~~-~~worker safety in accordance with occupational safety codes and regulations. Where necessary, provide required davits and sockets, tie-offs, guardrails, and relocatable, motorized platforms to reach the exterior on all building elevations. Provide a clear path around the base of the building at ~~the~~ ground level for ground-rigged maintenance platforms that need to be rigged to or transferred between the roof-mounted davits. For low-rise buildings, provide a clear path at ground level for motorized articulated lifts to reach all exterior windows. California regulations applicable to façade access equipment can be found in California Code of Regulations, title 8, article 5 (Window Cleaning), section 3281 et seq., and article 6 (Powered Platforms and Equipment for Building Maintenance), section 3292 et seq.

5.2 Bird Roosting and Nesting Control

Design exterior façades and roof overhangs to inhibit bird roosting and nesting. Provide means of preventing bird roosting or nesting on horizontal surfaces greater

than 6″ deep, especially in protected or covered areas, such as the sally port ~~inside and outside bird protection required~~. The design shall inhibit bird species known to nest in the underside of overhangs and soffits. Consider sloped surfaces to deter birds perching. Mechanical air intakes and rooftop equipment shall be designed to prevent ~~are to be protected from birds and~~ bird nesting. ~~(during a lesson learned this issue came up for roof top Mechanical equipment becoming a home for birds and the bird waste is a hazard- possibly make the language more direct and sever regarding bird netting or protection from birds nesting)~~

~~**Climate Zone 16 Roofs Winter Maintenance**~~

~~5.3.1 Roof Access Requirements~~

~~**a. Access Ladders.** Fixed ladders shall have side rails extending 42 inches above the roof edge per Cal/OSHA requirements. Rung spacing shall not exceed 12 inches on center.~~

~~**b. Roof Hatches**. Access hatches shall be minimum 48 inches by 48 inches with counterbalanced covers opening to 70 degrees minimum. Automatic hold-open arms and grab bars shall be provided.~~

~~**c. Walkways.** Elevated walkways minimum 24 inches wide with slip-resistant surfaces shall connect access points to mechanical equipment. Walkways shall be designed for 100 psf live load plus snow accumulation.~~

~~**d. Marking System.** High-visibility markers extending 4 feet above the roof shall identify skylights, drains, gas lines, and equipment locations before winter season.~~

~~5.3.2 Snow Removal Protocols~~

~~**a. Monitoring Triggers**. Snow shall be removed when accumulation reaches 80% of design capacity or when forecast conditions could result in exceeding design loads. Building distress signs requiring immediate evaluation include: sagging ceiling tiles, unusual noises from structure, doors or windows that no longer operate properly, or visible deflection of roof members.~~

~~**b. Removal Procedures.** Snow removal shall progress from the center outward, maintaining balanced loading. Drifted areas shall be cleared first. Minimum 2 inches of snow shall remain to protect the roof membrane. Only plastic shovels and non-metallic tools shall be used.tc. **Professional Services**. Snow removal contractors shall provide proof of experience, OSHA-compliant safety plans, appropriate insurance, and trained personnel with fall protection equipment.~~

~~5.3.3 Fall Protection Systems~~

~~**a. Personal Protective Equipment.** Workers shall use full-body harnesses meeting ANSI Z359.11 connected to approved anchor points via self-retracting lifelines. Anchor points shall support 5,000 pounds per attached worker.~~

~~**b. Guardrail Systems.** Guardrails shall maintain 42-inch height (±3 inches) above anticipated snow depth. Systems shall withstand 200 pounds force in any direction per Cal/OSHA.~~

12 Structural Criteria
13 Mechanical Criteria
14 Building Management System Criteria
15 Electrical Criteria
16 Lighting Criteria
17 Network and Communication Systems
18 Audiovisual Systems
19 Acoustical Criteria
20 Fire Protection Criteria

Commented [DP32]: BPR: We have not outlined any requirements for other climate zones. This proposed addition for zone 16 seems valid, but then why aren't we covering other zones? Is this entire section a copy paste from CBC? If so, why wouldn't we refer to the code instead of repeating the info? Please provide input and strike out code redundant info.

Commented [BR32R2]: The proposed provisions are intended for those areas with heavy snow which are only found in Climate Zone 16. However, the proposal is either duplicating or exceeding requirements set forth in Title 24 and Title 8. Recommend removal of these provisions.

Commented [DP32R3]: This section should be part of service provider contract, not CTCFS.

Commented [BR33]: These provisions either duplicate or exceed CBSC provisions. Recommend removal.

Commented [BR34]: Snow Removal protocols are not considered in the CBSC. Buildings are intended to support design snow loads without need for removal.

Commented [DP34R2]: This should be part of service provider contract, not CTCFS.

requirements.

c. Skylight Protection. All skylights shall have permanent guardrails or protective cages extending above maximum anticipated snow depth.

d. Rescue Planning. A documented rescue plan shall be established before roof access. Suspended workers shall be rescued within 20 minutes to prevent suspension trauma.

5.3.4 Seasonal Maintenance Schedule

a. Fall Preparation (September–October). Inspect and test all access systems, fall protection equipment, and drainage components. Clear gutters and drains. Mark hazard locations. Review emergency procedures and contract snow removal services.

b. Winter Operations (November–March). Monitor weather forecasts and roof loading. Clear ice dams and maintain drainage paths. Document snow depths and estimated loads. Maintain minimum building temperature of 50°F.

c. Spring Assessment (April–May). Conduct comprehensive inspection of membrane, flashings, and drainage systems. Document any structural deflection or damage. Test all drains and downspouts. Remove winter markers.

d. Summer Repairs (June–August). Execute major repairs and upgrades. Install or upgrade fall protection systems. Relocate equipment from drift zones if needed. Update as-built drawings with any modifications.

5.3.5 Emergency Response

a. Evacuation Protocols. When structural distress signs are observed, the building shall be evacuated immediately and a structural engineer consulted before reoccupancy.

b. Documentation. Maintain logs of snow depths, removal operations, observed conditions, and any remedial actions taken. Photographs shall document conditions before and after removal operations.

c. Communication. Establish notification procedures for court operations, facilities management, and emergency responders when snow loads approach critical thresholds.

Commented [BR35]: Fall protection is covered by the CBC and DIR. Recommend removing these provisions as they are already covered by Title 24 and Title 8.

Commented [BR36]: Section 5.3.4, Maintenance: Detailed maintenance such as that proposed is beyond the purview of Title 24.

Commented [DP36R2]: This should be part of service provider contract, not CTCFS.

Commented [BR37]: Section 5.3.5, Emergency Response: Section 116 of the CEBC outlines emergency measures for existing buildings.

Commented [DP37R2]: This should be part of service provider contract, not CTCFS.

11.D BUILDING ELEMENTS: INTERIOR CONSTRUCTION

1. Interior Building

1.1 Daylighting

Provide natural light to all primary public waiting areas and the main lobby. Plan and design interior spaces to allow glare-free natural light at work areas wherever possible. Develop methods to share glare-free natural light through the use of interior glazing, sidelights, borrowed light, and light wells. Consider the solar orientation of the building, and provide methods of shading and glare control on façades with excessive solar exposure. In areas of excessive solar exposure that will not be mitigated by shading and glare control on the façade, provide window coverings. See section 11.D.1.13 below for window covering requirements.

1.2 Workplace Environment

11 ARCHITECTURAL CRITERIA
11.A Objectives
11.B Architectural Criteria
11.C Building Elements: Exterior Construction
11.D Building Elements: Interior Construction
11.E Signage

Standards for lighting, acoustics, heating, ventilation, air-conditioning, and other building systems shall be applied to enhance the work environment and ~~to~~ support a sustainable design objective. Design spaces to reduce energy and materials consumption.

1.3 Floor-to-Floor Heights

The standard floor-to-floor, or slab-to-slab, dimension for multistory courthouses shall be 14′ to 16′. Refer to chapter 2, secion 2.C, Area and Volume Definitions, for requirements for relative building volume.

1.4 Plenum Spaces

a. Provide space above all finished ceiling areas for the heating, ventilation, and air-conditioning (HVAC) supply and return distribution; electrical distribution; mechanical equipment; fire sprinkler systems; voice, data, and low-voltage cables; and other devices. Size plenum spaces to allow for future modification of these systems.

b. Coordinate the size, access, and clearance requirements of systems located in plenum spaces with the depth of structural elements to allow required clearances for all systems to all parts of the building.

c. Provide access to all plenum spaces for servicing all components. Provide access to plenum spaces above courtrooms for maintenance of utilities and modification of cabling and outlets~~, which~~ that serve the floor above.

1.5 Interior Partitions

a. Follow ~~The~~ the minimum standard for steel studs in multilayered gypsum wallboard assemblies, which is 20 gauge, unless a lighter gauge is required for acoustical reasons.

b. Comply with the manufacturer's recommended criteria for deflection and span with interior pressure loading based on tested industry standards.

c. Provide fire- and smoke-rated interior partitions, where required, in accordance with accepted industry ~~-~~standard~~–~~tested assemblies and approved manufacturers' designs for assemblies satisfying the test criteria.

d. Provide a system of concealed, permanent, secure, and appropriately designed backing, supports, and anchorages for all handrails, wall-hung cabinets, court

Integrated Interior Design

The design professional shall select the size, color, style, and finishes of movable furniture and equipment and integrate and coordinate them with the other interior elements.

seals, and other surface-mounted fixtures, equipment, systems, and building specialties.

e. Provide corner guards, where required.

f. Refer to chapter 19, Acoustical Criteria, for additional partition requirements.

1.6 Ceilings

a. Ceilings shall be designed for optimal visual, lighting, and acoustic performance. Refer to chapter~~s~~ 16, Lighting Criteria, and chapter 19, Acoustical Criteria.

b. Custom ceilings are not permitted~~. Additionally~~, nor are wood ceiling panel systems ~~are not permitted~~. Ceilings throughout the courthouse shall be of modular dimensions and specified off~~-~~ the~~-~~ shelf for easy replacement and maintenance.

c. ~~Integrate r~~Required technical features shall be integrated with the use of ceiling soffits, coffers, and materials to accommodate acoustic materials, lighting, sprinklers, speakers, cameras, projectors, and projection screens.

d. ~~Design c~~Ceilings of chambers, offices, and conference rooms shall be designed to integrate acoustic panels, lighting, and HVAC supply and return grilles.

~~e. Ceiling panels shall have a positive connection that engages the wood panel to the metal framing of the soffit. Screw connections shall be installed through the panel from below. Aluminum Z strips supported by wood, plastic shims providing spacing, and adhesive glue may be used in addition to mechanical fasteners, but not by themselves, for adequate structural connection to the panel.~~

Commented [DP38]: Deleted per CFAC-WG due to contradiction in language.

1.7 Public and Private Toilet Rooms

a. To avoid flooding, slope drains in all toilet rooms ~~should have floors sloped~~ to a drain with primer. Public toilet rooms are heavily used and require durable, washable, and easily maintained materials and finishes. ~~To avoid flooding, all toilet rooms should have floors sloped to a drain with primer.~~ Minimum finishes and features include:

- Coved ceramic tile floors;
- Glazed ceramic tile wall surfaces up to a minimum 4′ wainscot height (consider full-height tile on walls);
- Solid-surface countertops;
- Under~~-~~counter-mounted lavatories;
- Stainless steel or monolithic plastic floor-mounted and braced institutional-quality toilet stall dividers and doors~~,~~ and wall-hung urinal screens;
- Institutional-quality toilet fixtures and stainless steel toilet accessories;
- Wall-mounted mirrors behind the lavatory tops;
- A diaper-changing table in each restroom; and
- Semigloss-painted washable wall and ceiling surfaces.

Solid surface is an acceptable finish for countertops, but materials requiring a multitude of joints (e.g., ceramic tile) are not~~,~~ because of the ongoing maintenance implications of cleaning surfaces with joints. Dark-colored grout and caulking shall be used for ceramic tile floors and walls~~,~~ for maintainability.

b. Avoid combo units for the toilet seat cover, tissue, and receptacle because they may affect the Americans with Disabilities Act (ADA~~))~~ required grab bar

clearance. Provide toilet accessories in a noncorrosive, durable material (such as stainless steel) that are readily serviceable and consistent with the building design.

c. For high-volume public restroom entries, consider the use of doorless vestibules with integrated sound and visual screening.

d. Provide one shower and changing area (for each gender) in a staff toilet room off the private corridor on the first floor or lower level of the building. The dressing area shall have wall-mounted hooks.

1.8 Elevators

a. Vertical transportation strategy depends on project requirements and design parameters. If the project contains more than one floor or level change, the building shall include vertical conveyance systems. Courthouses typically require three elevator systems: public, private (staff), and detention (in-custody defendants). Staff elevators shall have an average interval of less than ~~30~~ 30 seconds (wait time of 18–20 seconds), public elevators shall have an average interval of less than 40 seconds (wait time of 24–26 seconds)~~. (Verify -this was debated at Ukiah confirm actual acceptable wait times on single lift 3 or less floors- the current wait time the GC said was impossible)~~, and both elevator groups shall have a handling capacity of 15 percent of the building population to be served. All passenger elevators must meet the design requirements of the building code for access by persons with disabilities and emergency personnel. If high-volume areas are located at any other level than the first, provide extra capacity to move large numbers of people to and from that level.

b. If the project contains more than one floor or level change, a shared or dedicated elevator for staff, freight, and service is required for deliveries, staff vertical movement, trash transport, document transport, and building maintenance. Staff elevators can double as a freight or service elevator in smaller courthouses, but in larger court buildings, a dedicated service elevator is preferred, with its own vestibule on every floor. Provide at least one public and one staff building elevator large enough to accommodate a paramedic's stretcher; this may be the service elevator~~,~~ in buildings with a dedicated service elevator. Use of an elevator for paramedic stretcher may be accomplished by changing the door mechanism of a regular elevator to open to one side instead of opening from the middle. Elevators for in-custody defendants may require an independent control system if their operation is remotely controlled from the central holding control room.

c. Hydraulic elevators are permitted for two- or three-story facilities, but traction elevators are preferred. Facilities that are four stories or taller shall have traction elevators.

d. Braille lettering and audio signals shall be provided at elevators and where required by code. Passenger elevator car interiors shall have durable and vandal-resistant finish materials consistent with the building design. Cab wall and ceiling panels shall be replaceable. One cab in the building shall have the capacity to accommodate extra-long deliveries such as rolls of carpet; this may be the service elevator cab. A typical car interior ceiling height is 9′ to 10′.

e. The following criteria shall be met by the design firm:

- Slope the elevator lobby floors away from the elevator doors toward a drain in the elevator lobby. Provide durable floor finish in the elevator lobby, carpet is not permitted. Provide drains in the elevator pits.~~In all elevators slope from~~

DIVISION TWO: TECHNICAL CRITERIA

11 ARCHITECTURAL CRITERIA
11.A Objectives
11.B Architectural Criteria
11.C Building Elements: Exterior Construction
11.D Building Elements: Interior Construction
11.E Signage

12 Structural Criteria
13 Mechanical Criteria
14 Building Management System Criteria
15 Electrical Criteria
16 Lighting Criteria
17 Network and Communication Systems
18 Audiovisual Systems
19 Acoustical Criteria
20 Fire Protection Criteria

Commented [DP39]: Per RR from tool 3: CBC now require 24/7 video monitoring of elevators cabs for emergency services. Code adoption of ASME A17.1/CSA B44-2019 and IBC 2021 into the California Building Code and Title 8, Section 3041. This system will need to operate through the network and will require battery back up for emergency.

Commented [DP39R2]: Incorporated.

Commented [PS40]: Please add the requirement to have drains at the elevator pits

Commented [DP40R2]: Incorporated.

~~doors away to drain.~~

- Design and install elevator shafts such that screws outside do not project into the hoistway and the edges of slabs and other protrusions are flush with the walls the entire height of the hoistway. The elevator shaft shall have no ledges and ~~shall~~ be finished flush. No cants ~~and~~or screws are permitted.~~No screws inside shaft and ledge cannot have screws going into elevator Design and install elevator shafts such that screws outside do notn't project into the hoistway, and the edge of slab and other protrusions are flush with the walls the entire height of the hoistway.~~
- Confirm if 1″ mesh and ladders are required in elevator pits.
- Confirm if separation is required for in-custody elevators.
- Coordinate duress button with judges' elevators during ~~(verify conflict on Ukiah and the discussions lead to the removal of an elevator duress button due to the elevator moving)~~ design and construction.
- Elevator cabs shall~~ould~~ have a picture frame included to hold a permit in the cab —per state requirements.

Commented [PS41]: Adding on to Troy's comment. DIR does not allow ledges in the elevator shaft. This is an exception in the code and DIR does not allow the cants to be added. The shafts need to be flush

Commented [DP41R2]: Incorporated.

Commented [DP42]: One project's unique challenges with design cannot lead to a change in standard requirements.

- Do not run any foreign services (that do not serve the elevators) through the elevator machine room.
- Coordinate card access with elevator stops and interior, and define function and operation.
- Provide video monitoring of elevators cabs for emergency services as required by title 24. This system shall operate through the network and ~~shall~~ include battery backup for emergency.
- ~~Provide drain from elevator doors to floor drain in elevator lobby. (look into providing floor drain in elevator pit as well) (this issue came up with three possible outcomes 1. Add floor drain near elevator door. 2. Add leak detection in the bottom of the elevator pit 3. Enhance the flow meter at the building entrance and add an isolation valve. See scope commentary in elevator folder)~~

1.9 Stairs ~~**(address cameras current discrepancy between calling out cameras table 8.3**~~

a. Provide convenience~~t~~ stairs that encourage walking to other floors in support of the sustainable design objective by reducing demand on the elevator systems. Communicating stairs can be provided in both the public areas and the private circulation system. Where possible and appropriate, ~~site~~locate stairwells near elevators.

b. Required exit stairs ~~may be~~are preferably shall be designed to encourage use by staff for normal circulation unless restricted by the California Building Code, with ~~materials and finishes similar to those in the private corridors and~~ introduction of natural lighting~~.~~ when appropriate.

c. ~~Provide a~~A public connecting stair shall be provided to access high-volume public uses (such as public counters and self-help center) on the second and third floors of courthouses, in addition to elevator access. Design and finish open stairways that connect public lobbies to the upper floors in harmony with materials used in the public lobby. Pre-engineered steel stair and railing systems are acceptable for exit and communicating stairs but not for high-volume public stairs. Stair treads and intermediate landings shall either be pan-type and filled with concrete or terrazzo or have dimensional stone paving; channel or flat-plate stair stringers are acceptable. Provide architectural railings for communicating stairs; a manufacturer's standard railing system might be adaptable for this purpose.

d. All staircases shall meet the California Building Code requirements. The required egress width for stairways shall be measured as shown in figure 11.1. The minimum clearance height shall be 2"" greater than required by code to take into account the fireproofing thickness.

e. ~~No cameras or video in~~Security cameras in rated stair-wells shall only be provided when approved by Judicial Council. ~~(coordinate with 8.3 table)~~

f. ~~For Highrise stair wells u~~~~Use o~~Only high-impact drywall ~~if drywall~~ is to be used in stairwells that use drywall.

~~d.~~g. No~~thing is~~ infrastructure or equipment shall ~~to~~ penetrate the rated stairwell walls unless it has to ~~do~~be provided specifically ~~with~~for the safety and proper functioning of the stair.

Commented [AG43]: Lesson Learned from Sacramento Courthouse: On Sacramento, the shaft walls were set back a few inches from the edge of slab. This created a projection at each floor that isn't allowed. Only the elevator pit can project into the shaft.
Further, shaftwall screws were screwed from the outside into the shaft. The tips of the screws project into the shaft. This is not allowed as a projection per DIR. Design and install elevator shafts such that screws don't project into the hoistway and edge of slab and other things are flush with the walls the entire height of the hoistway.

Commented [DP43R2]: Incorporated.

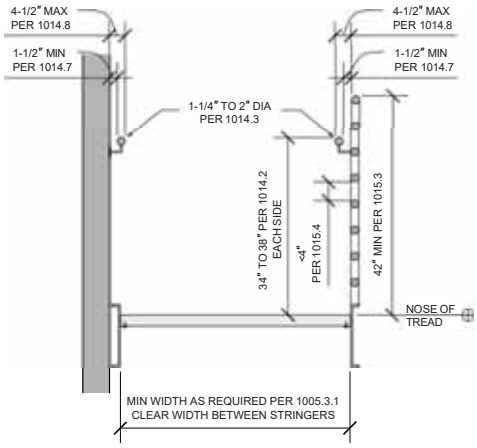
Commented [PS44]: Please add a minimum height requirement that is 2"minimum above code. When designed they are typically designed to the minimum code requirement and the required fireproofing, typically 2", is not taken into consideration.

Commented [DP44R2]: Incorporated.

Commented [BR45]: BPR: Should this read, "convenience" stairs?

Commented [DP45R2]: Yes, corrected.

Commented [DP46]: Exit stair finishes don't need to match the corridors due to cost implications.



DIA = diameter.
Note: Code citations refer to sections of chapter 10 of the California Building Code.

Figure 11.1 Egress Width Measurement Method

1.10 Doors, Frames, and Hardware

a. Provide one-piece, welded steel door frames at permanent locations requiring oversized or heavy doors or having significant traffic, including courtrooms.

b. Provide prefinished aluminum door frames in partitions subject to periodic remodeling. Tempered glass, full-height, 12″ to 18″ wide sidelights or glazed doors may be provided at private offices and conference rooms, except in judicial chambers, jury deliberation rooms, and offices that require privacy.

c. Provide flush ~~solid~~ solid core doors for typical interior conditions, where allowed by fire codes. Door construction shall meet or exceed Architectural Woodwork Institute (AWI) premium grade for courtrooms; custom grade for chambers, courtroom entrances, and private offices; and paint grade for all other doors. Courtroom public entrances may have ~~stile~~ stile ~~and~~ and rail doors with glass vision panels. Courtroom entry doors may have vision panels allowing a view into the courtroom, but the courtroom vestibule doors off the public corridor should be solid.

d. All hardware provided shall be institutional grade. Pins and hinges on all doors located on corridors, lobbies, and other public spaces shall be installed on the secure side of the door or shall be fixed. Latches and locksets shall be full mortised type; locks shall have removable key cylinders. Locks shall be ~~Grand~~grand mastered and master keyed. Provide multiple keys for every lock type. Certain locks off master shall be specified. Hardware specified for courtroom use shall be of the highest quality and ~~shall be~~ selected for quiet, acoustically optimal operation. Selected doors require electric locksets or strikes and proximity-reader card-key locking systems. Provide heavy-duty, institutional grade door closers in public areas, especially in high-traffic areas.

e. Floor installed closers and pivot doors shall not be used. All doors and door frames shall~~to~~ be supported ~~in a solid~~by sturdy structured walls. Provide engineered ~~approved~~ framing details. No door ~~and~~or door-frame shall twist, move ~~e~~up, or distort due to use.

f. Delayed action closers, where provided per chapter 9 section 9.B.f, shall add a third speed range to the closing cycle or provide an equal operation mechanism. The feature shall become effective when the door is opened and released at any point beyond 70%. The amount of delay time shall be adjusted as necessary to accommodate users with mobility challenges or to accommodate heavy use and high traffic. To prevent damage a high-pressure relief safety valve shall be included in the closer.

1.11 Courtroom Platforms

Raised platforms in courtrooms shall be of a construction method that does not require underfloor fire sprinklers. Platforms shall be of noncombustible construction in buildings of Types I and II construction. Handrails, if required at stairs and/or ramps, shall be discreet and integrated into courtroom design. Raised access floor systems may be considered in high-volume large specialty courtrooms with broadcast capability based on performance analysis and budget availability, subject to Judicial Council approval.

1.12 Flooring

a. Subfloors: New and existing concrete subfloors must meet the requirements of ASTM F710, Standard Practice for Preparing Concrete Floors to Receive Resilient Flooring.

b. Carpet: Consistent with the expected functional lifetime, ~~select~~ carpet ~~that is~~shall be durable and low maintenance. Carpet must be eligible for recycling by the supplying mill or fiber producer to an existing operational third party certified recycling center. Specify carpet appropriate to the traffic expected in the space. Broadloom carpet is not permitted. Carpet tiles should be a minimum

DIVISION TWO: TECHNICAL CRITERIA

11 ARCHITECTURAL CRITERIA
11.A Objectives
11.B Architectural Criteria
11.C Building Elements: Exterior Construction
11.D Building Elements: Interior Construction
11.E Signage

12 Structural Criteria
13 Mechanical Criteria
14 Building Management System Criteria
15 Electrical Criteria
16 Lighting Criteria
17 Network and Communication Systems
18 Audiovisual Systems
19 Acoustical Criteria
20 Fire Protection Criteria

Commented [LD47]: "move up"?

Commented [DP47R2]: Gensler: change to up.

Commented [DP48]: Gensler: add this new bullet.

Commented [BR49]: BPR: Lesson from build-out of shelled courtroom.

standard size of 24″ square and a maximum of 36″ square.

The minimum specification basis of carpet and carpet tile design is as follows:

- Fiber/~~Yarn~~yarn: 100 percent Antron Lumena solution-dyed type 6,6 nylon.
- Construction: Tufted, level or multilevel loop pile, cut and loop, or tip shear, as long as product passes a minimum Texture Appearance Retention Rating (TARR) of 4 out of 5~~ on the TARR scale~~.
- Pile ~~Weight~~weight: Minimum 16 ounces per square yard.

If ambient noise is a concern, consider a cushion-backed carpet tile. When higher acoustical values are required in a space, specify carpet that will adequately perform a dual role of a floor covering and a versatile acoustic aid. Products must meet the Carpet and Rug Institute standards for indoor air quality. Carpet on ramps or courtroom platforms shall meet wheelchair access requirements.

c. Impervious Flooring: Public corridors and lobbies that carry significant foot traffic and provide major circulation pathways throughout the building shall have extremely durable, slip-resistant materials that require low maintenance. Life cycle cost analysis shall be used to determine material options, such as terrazzo and manufactured tile. Carpet shall not be used in elevator lobby.

d. Horizontal embedded conduits in slabs on metal deck are not permitted.

e. Hydronic mechanical rooms shall not be located over water ~~-~~damage–sensitive areas such as intermediate distribution frame (IDF) or main distribution frame (MDF) rooms. If it is unavoidable:

- Make the floor and base cove and all penetrations through them watertight~~.~~;
- Add floor drains to prevent any significant water depth~~.~~; and
- Prevent any pooling of water on the floor.

1.13 Window Coverings

a. Provide window coverings appropriate for visual screening and glare control in work areas and courtrooms. Courtrooms with skylights, windows, or borrowed light require window coverings to prevent glare and visual distractions and ~~to~~ allow light control during audiovisual presentations.

b. Consider the method of operation for window coverings in terms of its appropriateness for the function of a space. Manually operated shades may be provided for private offices and open office work areas~~,~~ but not public corridors ~~and~~ or lobbies. In public areas, motorized shades are permitted. Synchronized~~,~~ motorized shades are not permitted. The controls for the shades shall be at ADA-accessible height and secured such that only authorized personnel may operate them.

c. Consider the exterior image of the building when selecting the color and materials of window coverings~~,~~ to provide an image consistent with interior and exterior design intent.

2. Modular Furniture and Workstations

Modular systems furniture (MSF) is composed of freestanding partition panels, worktops, files, components, and integrated circuitry and access raceways for provision of electrical power, voice, and data cabling. The building shall be designed to allow for flexible rearrangement of MSF and connection to building systems. The electrical, telecommunications, and data systems and their capacities ~~must~~ shall be designed to ensure compatibility with MSF design requirements.

2.1 High-Density Files

Where required, provide a mobile high-density filing system. Locate the system on the ground floor or an adequately reinforced floor structure~~,~~ near the public office clerk's counter. Coordinate high-density filing systems with building structure for distribution of gravity loads and seismic bracing requirements as a function of the height and configuration of the system. Specify fixed rows for every six movable

Commented [DP50]: No carpet in public lobby because we are adding floor drain in front of the elevators.

Commented [LW51]: Is there a reason for this? Synchronized motorized shades have potential for controlling solar gain.

Commented [DP51R2]: They keep breaking and are expensive to maintain. We do provide mechanical shades where appropriate.

rows or as determined by the Judicial Council to allow access to multiple rows of files. Provide a locking feature for confidential files. Specify seven ~~-~~shelf~~—~~high cars. The filing system shall be accessible to persons with disabilities and ~~shall be~~ coordinated with structural slab depressions so that the base of the filing system is flush with adjacent finished floor elevation. Use of a motorized system may be acceptable for infrequently accessed files.

2.2 State Seal

Provide the official seal of the State of California in each courtroom, in metal or composite material, with a minimum size of 32″ in diameter. Choose the material to avoid glare on the seal. The appearance and location must reflect the dignity of the court.

2.3 Flagpoles

Provide two flagpoles and holders in each courtroom~~,~~ to accommodate a State of California flag and a U.S. flag. Flagpoles may be wall or floor mounted. Their location shall not interfere with bench accessibility.

3. Interior Finishes and Materials

The *Facilities Standards* specifies four levels of interior architectural finishes corresponding to a component's target functional lifetime, required use, architectural importance, durability requirements, and surrounding interior context. Brief descriptions of example interior finish levels are provided below for reference; however, the designers shall propose finishes for each project. See table 11.1 for suggested finishes for the four levels.

- Level I ~~Interior~~ interior ~~Finishes~~finishes: Specified for building components with long functional lifetimes and high aesthetic importance. Level I finishes have quality, long-term durability~~,~~; ease of maintenance and cleanability~~,~~; and ability to sustain aesthetic appeal over a long period.
- Level II ~~Interior~~ interior ~~Finishes~~finishes: Specified for high-volume public service areas with midrange functional lifetimes and increased architectural importance. Level II finishes offer midrange durability~~,~~ yet require regular maintenance and refurbishment, such as occasional repainting.
- Level III ~~Interior~~ interior ~~Finishes~~finishes: Specified for building components with midrange functional lifetimes and moderate architectural importance. These finishes require regular repair, maintenance, and refurbishment, such as repainting.
- Level IV ~~Finishes~~finishes: Specified for building components that may have long functional lifetimes. These are typically utility or support areas that have relatively low architectural importance. Level IV finishes are durable and maintainable.

4. Architectural Woodwork for Courtrooms

4.1 Veneer Panels and Casework

a. ~~Provide h~~Hardwood veneer panels with solid hardwood trim and edge banding, with shop-applied stain, shall be provided and finished with three coats of transparent sealer per AWI premium-grade requirements. Wood ~~must be~~ from a certified sustainable source is preferred. A solid wood base to match courtroom panels or a metal base may be used in public spaces and chambers.

b. Courtroom built-in components may include the judge's bench; courtroom clerk's, court reporter's, and court security officer's stations; jury box; public bench seating; counsel tables, rails, and gates; and an accessible lectern. (Note that the bench seating, counsel tables, and lectern may be standard modular

DIVISION TWO: TECHNICAL CRITERIA

11 ARCHITECTURAL CRITERIA
11.A Objectives
11.B Architectural Criteria
11.C Building Elements: Exterior Construction
11.D Building Elements: Interior Construction
11.E Signage

12 Structural Criteria
13 Mechanical Criteria
14 Building Management System Criteria
15 Electrical Criteria
16 Lighting Criteria
17 Network and Communication Systems
18 Audiovisual Systems
19 Acoustical Criteria
20 Fire Protection Criteria

Commented [DP52]: Many of our projects cannot afford it. So we cannot require this.

Table 11.1 Notes

* Arraignment courts may have a combination of carpet and hard surface flooring. Hard surface flooring might be appropriate under spectator bench seating.

† Painting and gypsum board are appropriate above the wainscot level in corridors and in combination with other materials in courtrooms. Painted gypsum board is standard above tile in toilet room walls.

Signage

Grouping too many signs in one place (e.g., at entries, in lobbies, and in corridors) is unsightly, may confuse first-time visitors, and may decrease the dignity of the facility.

Maintain brief, clear, and polite messages in signage.

Table 11.1 Finish Matrix

	FLOOR						WALLS						CEILING					METAL	
	Premium ~~Carpet~~carpet	Manufactured ~~Tile~~ tile or ~~Engineered~~	Midgrade ~~Carpet~~carpet	Ceramic ~~Tile~~tile	Vinyl ~~Composition~~ composition ~~Tile~~ tile (VCT) / ~~Linoleum~~linoleum	Sealed ~~Concrete~~concrete	Paneling (~~Wood~~ wood ~~Panel~~)	Premium ~~Acoustic~~ acoustic ~~Wall~~ tile	Ceramic ~~Tile~~tile	Painted ~~Gypsum~~ gypsum ~~Board~~	Premium ~~Base~~ base (~~Metal~~metal)	Rubber ~~Base~~base	Architectural ~~Soffits~~soffits	Premium ~~Acoustic~~ acoustic ~~Ceiling~~	Midgrade ~~Acoustic~~ acoustic ~~Ceiling~~	Painted ~~Gypsum~~ gypsum ~~Board~~	Exposed ~~Structures~~tructure	Premium ~~Clear~~clear ~~Coated~~ ~~Metal~~	Painted ~~Metal~~ metal or ~~Stainless~~ ~~Steel~~
Level I																			
Courtroom* †	•	•	•				•	•	•	•	•		•	•		•		•	•
Public ~~Lobby~~lobby	•	•					•	•		•	•		•	•	•	•		•	•
Public ~~Corridor~~corridor	•	•	•	•	•		•			•	•		•	•	•	•		•	•
Public ~~Restroom~~restroom†				•					•	•	•	•				•			•
Level II																			
Jury ~~Assembly~~ assembly ~~Room~~room			•							•	•	•	•	•	•	•			•
Clerk's ~~Public~~ public ~~Counter~~counter		•	•							•		•	•	•	•	•			•
Self-~~Help~~ help ~~Center~~center		•	•							•		•	•	•	•	•			•
Child ~~Waiting~~ waiting ~~Area~~area			•	•	•					•	•	•	•	•	•	•			•
Level III																			
Judicial ~~Officer~~ officer ~~Private~~ private ~~Office~~office	•		•							•	•		•	•					•
Staff ~~Office~~office/~~Workstation~~workstation			•							•		•			•				•
Jury ~~Deliberation~~ deliberation ~~Room~~room			•							•		•			•				•
Conference ~~Room~~room			•							•		•	•	•					•
Employee ~~Breakroom~~breakroom					•					•		•			•				•
Staff ~~Toilet~~toilet				•	•				•	•					•				
Restricted ~~Corridor~~corridor			•							•		•			•				•
Restricted ~~Communicating~~ communicating ~~Stair~~stair			•	•	•	•				•		•				•			•
Copy ~~Room~~room					•					•		•			•				•
Level IV																			
Loading ~~Dock~~dock						•						•					•		
Emergency ~~Egress~~ egress ~~Stair~~stair						•						•					•		
Mechanical ~~Rooms~~rooms						•						•					•		
Telecom ~~Equipment~~ equipment ~~Room~~room						•						•					•		
Storage					•	•				•		•				•	•		
Janitor ~~Closets~~closets					•	•						•					•		

Commented [DP53]: Gensler: Remove dot in the premium carpet cell from public lobby because we are adding floor drain in front of the elevators. Carpet in lobby is no longer permitted.

furniture customized to match the courtroom finish.) Modular furniture with a built-in pony wall may be permitted at the discretion of the Judicial Council.

c. All courtroom desktop work surfaces, whether modular or custom -built, shall be wood or solid surface.

d. All veneer panels shall be positively attached to supporting elements. Adhesives or frictional resistance due to the effect of gravity are not considered positive attachments.

4.2 Cabinets and Casework

Provide (at a minimum) AWI premium-grade plastic laminate casework with ADA-compliant base cabinets and plastic laminate tops.

11.E SIGNAGE

Clear, legible, and strategically placed graphics and signage are essential design elements for a court facility. Signage directs visitors and staff to where they need to go and contributes to a positive experience in the courthouse by orienting users and minimizing confusion. Signage is particularly important in courthouses that house multiple court functions or a high volume of court users.

1. General Requirements

a. An integrated, complementary, and comprehensive signage program shall address both code-required signage (such as exit signs, exiting plans, and room numbers) and non-code-required signage (building directories, notices). The graphics and signage programs shall be developed during early design stages to integrate signage with the design concept, functional program, and building circulation zones. Attractive, legible signs showing directions and information shall be incorporated into the design of all public areas. Locations for uniform static and dynamic signage should be considered in the early design stages and based on precedents such as completed, well-functioning court projects. Additionally, electronic displays of graphical information—especially information that changes frequently—offer an orderly and flexible solution for the changing needs of certain spaces.

b. All signage must meet the requirements of the Americans with Disabilities Act and the most recently adopted provisions of the California Building Code regarding accessibility. As appropriate for community needs, courthouse signage should be accessible in English and in other common languages (e.g., Spanish) to direct persons who come to court and are limited English proficient (LEP). The Judicial Council requires various wayfinding strategies for both static and electronic signage to assist LEP users. Employ National Center for State Courts requirements and best practices from around the state in courthouse design and ~~in~~ the use of signage and wayfinding strategies to enhance access for LEP court users. Incorporate language access considerations in courthouse design and the use of technology to augment the court's ability to provide information in multiple languages. An ongoing language access signage and technology grant program is available to trial courts that are interested in obtaining funding to support their courthouse signage and/or technology initiatives.

c. Ideally, signs should use pictograms to establish consistency across all courts. English should be used for basic information and instructions, and prominent multilingual posting of public notices and informational court materials may be considered. A discussion should take place early on with the court and the Judicial Council team to determine if multilingual signs are appropriate.

DIVISION TWO: TECHNICAL CRITERIA

11 ARCHITECTURAL CRITERIA
11.A Objectives
11.B Architectural Criteria
11.C Building Elements: Exterior Construction
11.D Building Elements: Interior Construction
11.E Signage
12 Structural Criteria
13 Mechanical Criteria
14 Building Management System Criteria
15 Electrical Criteria
16 Lighting Criteria
17 Network and Communication Systems
18 Audiovisual Systems
19 Acoustical Criteria
20 Fire Protection Criteria

d. All signage shall be designed and placed to discourage vandalism and thievery. Signs shall not be easily removable in public areas.

e. Rooms shall be ~~Number~~ numbered ~~rooms~~ logically and consecutively to enable court users, including visually impaired persons, to make assumptions about where their destination is located. Public room numbers shall be sequential and predictable. Base courtroom labels on a predictable sequence, not the internal administrative department labels. For example, a second-floor courtroom shall be labeled Courtroom 200 or Room 200, not Division 200 or Department 4. Room numbering from floor to floor shall be consistent. Assign room numbers early in design and obtain the court's approval.

f. ~~Position r~~Room label signage shall be positioned at doorways, where court users, including sight-impaired persons, expect to find information. Locate signage of building management rooms, which are not accessible to the public, in different areas than accessibility signage. For example, locate electrical closet room numbers above the door~~,~~ rather than to the side.

~~f~~g. Judges' chambers shall include signage with judges' names. The names on the signage shall be easily replaceable. ~~Judges name- the placard or permanent sign denoting judges name needs to have an easy access to the actual name. The intent is to be able to easily change or replace the judges name for that court room as judges retire or move to other courtrooms. Having the judges name permanently fixed is difficult to alter.~~

2. Signage Specifics

The following guidelines shall apply to signage and graphics in various locations within the building.

2.1 Building Entry

a. Clearly mark the courthouse entrance with signs indicating that all persons and articles entering the facility are subject to search, ~~that~~ no weapons of any kind are allowed within the facility or on the grounds of the facility, and ~~that~~ violators are subject to fine and arrest.

b. Restrict all other signage at entry to preserve a unified and attractive façade.

c. ~~The signs at entry must i~~Include the State of California seal, court name, address, accessible symbol, and hours of operation among the signs at entry. If some functions, such as traffic payment windows, are located before the screening area, provide directional signage.

d. Match ~~The~~ the dedication plaque ~~shall match~~to the style of the other signs at the building entry.

e. Maintain legibility of signs containing letters during the day and nighttime. Take into account any shadow patterns with changing light conditions.

2.2 Building Directory

Locate a building directory near the main public entrance. The directory shall contain a diagram listing all major building components. This directory shall be located in an area seen by the public after they have been screened and may be integrated into an information desk. Provide smaller directories at each elevator lobby with information about various occupancies on that floor. Provide a directory before security screening if there are functions located outside the screening area.

2.3 Court Calendar Postings

Provide digital monitors to display the court calendar in the public lobby after screening. Calendar information may also be displayed at courtroom entries. This display shall be uniform in appearance; postings shall be limited to the display area. Electronic calendars should be standard practice at entries and courtrooms.

2.4 Public Notice Boards

A consistent, controlled system of wall-mounted notice boards shall be used throughout the facility to allow public postings. All computer-generated signs, handwritten signs, and notices will be restricted to these areas. Provide public

notice boards in consistent public locations to prevent staff from taping signs to walls. Design ~~of~~ these places for temporary information ~~should be~~to integrate~~d~~ architecturally with the overall interior space.

2.5 Courtroom Entry Signage

All signs outside courtroom doors shall be of uniform appearance and integrated with calendar information displays. The courtroom numbering system may be displayed at the top or side of the entry door and in the largest ~~font~~ letter height~~size~~ possible. ADA requirements shall also be met. Architects and engineers shall consider displaying the names of the judges as part of the electronic display. All other signage will be posted in the electronic display below the judge's name, according to the needs of the court. Consideration should be given to creating a display panel that will allow paper inserts~~—~~ easily printed by the court. No signage shall appear on courtroom doors. The designer shall work with court representatives to minimize signage.

Examples of court-specific entry signage ~~(which~~that could be displayed electronically~~)~~ include the following:

- "Calendar Postings"
- "Jurors and Witnesses Please Remain in Hallway Until Called"
- ~~"Before Entering With Children, Please See Court Staff"~~
- "Closed Hearing"
- "~~No Cell P~~Phones or Beepers, PleaseTurn off all electronics, including cellphones."

2.6 Courtroom Signage

Provide a consistent, controlled signage system within the courtroom to prevent individual postings by court personnel. The courtroom shall include the State of California seal, not the county seal, behind the judge's bench.

Examples of court-specific signage include the following:

- "No Communication With Inmates" (posted on the dock inside the courtroom facing the audience or in an area seen by the public after they are in audience seating);
- Jury seat numbering;
- Courtroom conduct; and
- Typical questions for jurors.

The Judicial Council's *Courthouse Naming Policy* (effective~~.~~ May 11, 2009; rev~~.~~ised July 21, 2023) affects signage, including naming of court buildings. Regardless of whether an individual's name is used, the building identification sign shall include "Superior Court of California, County of [*county*]." The dedication plaque shall be added to the building after construction is ~~completion~~complete. The year and date of dedication shall not be placed in the building signage in advance.

2.7 Other Signage Considerations

a. Provide a consistent, controlled system of other signs, such as restricted access warnings, directional signs, signs designating services for persons with disabilities, and procedural guides. If high-volume functions, such as the jury assembly room and the public counter, are not immediately visible from the entry lobby, clearly displayed graphics shall be prominently displayed to guide users to these areas.

DIVISION TWO: TECHNICAL CRITERIA

11 ARCHITECTURAL CRITERIA
11.A Objectives
11.B Architectural Criteria
11.C Building Elements: Exterior Construction
11.D Building Elements: Interior Construction
11.E Signage
12 Structural Criteria
13 Mechanical Criteria
14 Building Management System Criteria
15 Electrical Criteria
16 Lighting Criteria
17 Network and Communication Systems
18 Audiovisual Systems
19 Acoustical Criteria
20 Fire Protection Criteria

Commented [DP54]: Modified by CFAC-WG.

b. Provide ~~Visible~~ visible "No Smoking" signs ~~must be provided~~ to alert the public not to smoke within 20′ of an entrance.

c. Install ~~Wayfinding~~ wayfinding directional signs ~~shall be installed~~ in the stairwells.

d. Ensure that ~~Any~~ any photographs or artwork displays in the courthouse ~~shall~~ meet all ~~the~~ copyright law requirements.

DIVISION TWO: TECHNICAL CRITERIA

12 STRUCTURAL CRITERIA

SECTION	TOPIC	PAGE
12.A	Objectives	12.2
12.B	Structural Systems	12.2
12.C	Criteria for Service Loads	12.2
12.D	Criteria for Rare Loads	12.4
12.E	Life Cycle Cost Analysis	12.6
12.F	Quality Assurance	12.7
12.G	Fire-Resistive Ratings of Structural Elements	12.7



Family Justice Center Courthouse, County of Santa Clara
San Jose, CA
Zimmer Gunsal Frasca LLP

This chapter describes general and technical criteria for structural systems in new Judicial Council buildings.

12.A OBJECTIVES

Structural design goals for new trial court facilities shall reflect functional and programmatic needs, adaptability for future technology, and the ability to withstand potential structural damage and ~~to~~ minimize ~~impact on~~ disruption of building services and operations from disasters and rare events.

The Judicial Council shall determine the regional importance and any performance objectives above code expectations for all new facilities.

1. **Strength and Serviceability**
   The structure shall have the strength to support the intended occupancies, including level floors of adequate flatness, stiffness, and vibration control from environmental and internal sources.

2. **Adaptability**
   The structure shall be adaptable to changes of use and occupancy, allowing for the installation of new information technology or mechanical, electrical, ~~and~~ or plumbing systems resulting from changing technology. Adaptability features include gravity systems that have capacity to accommodate most nonspecialized courthouse occupancies, ~~that~~ enable local strengthening, and ~~that~~ facilitate additional floor and wall penetrations.

3. **Performance in Rare Events**
   Most Judicial Council facilities incorporate specialized features that will not allow relocation to alternative spaces without considerable preparation and alteration. Therefore, it is important to estimate the nature of damage that could be caused by rare but possible events such as high wind, fire, extreme snow and rain, flood, and seismic activity~~,~~ and the possibility the building will not be available for ~~re~~occupancy for an extended length of time.

   Except as noted below, the "A" chapter amendments to the California Building Code by the Division of the State Architect—Structural Safety (DSA-SS) and the Department of Healthcare Access and Information (HCAI) do not apply to Judicial Council projects.

4. **Prefabrication and Modular Technologies**
   Consider prioritizing prefabrication of structural elements and use of modular techniques to accelerate construction timelines and enhance project erection efficiency. This objective aims to optimize construction efficiency, minimize onsite labor requirements, and ensure timely project completion while upholding high quality standards.

12.B STRUCTURAL SYSTEMS

~~D~~dDesign ~~B~~build entities shall evaluate and select the proposed structural system using a formal ~~C~~choosing by ~~A~~advantage (CBA) methodology. The CBA analysis shall identify feasible structural alternatives and compare them based on clearly defined factors~~,~~ including but not limited to total life ~~-~~cycle cost, construction and inspection schedule impacts, constructability, and coordination with Office of the State Fire Marshal requirements. The analysis shall document the relative advantages of each alternative and demonstrate how the recommended system provides the greatest overall value to the project. Selection of the structural system shall not be based solely on initial construction cost~~,~~ but on the alternative that best supports project objectives related to cost certainty, schedule reliability, and regulatory approval.

There are no specific limitations on use of gravity- and lateral load~~-~~-resisting structural systems other than as prescribed by the California Building Code (CBC). The structural engineer shall submit written documentation to the architect describing how the recommended gravity load and lateral load systems will respond to the performance objectives.

Structural components, systems, and methods of design not specifically recognized by the CBC are permitted under approved requests for alternative means of compliance. Criteria for such components or systems shall be reviewed by one or more peer reviewers acceptable to the Judicial Council and ~~shall be~~ submitted to the council for approval in accordance with provisions established by the CBC.

12.C CRITERIA FOR SERVICE LOADS

The following criteria and performance goals shall apply to court facilities.

Commented [LD1]: Sidebar:
"and the ability to withstand potential damage and to **minimize impact on disruption of** building services and operations"

You don't need both; either "impact on" or "disruption of."

Commented [DP1R2]: I have modified for clarity.

Commented [AG2]: The Design Build entity shall evaluate and select the proposed structural system using a formal Choosing by Advantage (CBA) methodology. The CBA analysis shall identify feasible structural alternatives and compare them based on clearly defined factors, including but not limited to total life-cycle cost, construction and inspection schedule impacts, constructability, and coordination with Office of the State Fire Marshal requirements. The analysis shall document the relative advantages of each alternative and demonstrate how the recommended system provides the greatest overall value to the project. Selection of the structural system shall not be based solely on initial construction cost, but on the alternative that best supports project objectives related to cost certainty, schedule reliability, and regulatory approval.

Commented [DP2R2]: Incorporated.

Commented [SN2R3]: Because these standards are applicable to more than just DB entities or for DB contracting, it may be better to start with, "Design Build entities shall . . . ." rather than "The Design Build entity shall . . . ."

Commented [DP2R4]: Incorporated.

1. Gravity Loads

Court facilities shall be designed for the live loads established by the CBC. Live loads shall be based on the use and room occupancy of the building area under consideration and ~~shall~~ consider movable partitions in open office locations.

Superimposed dead loads shall include~~,~~ but are not limited to~~,~~ mechanical, electrical, plumbing, solar, and fire ~~-~~protection equipment and distribution systems; ceilings and suspended soffits; raised floors~~,~~ ; ramps~~,~~ ; platform assemblies~~,~~ ; built-in partitions~~,~~ ; finishes~~,~~ and cladding; and telecom, audiovisual, and fire alarm equipment and distribution systems.

2. High-Density Files

Areas that support high-density files shall be designed for a ~~250 pounds per square foot~~ live ~~L~~load of 250 pounds per square foot.

3. ~~—~~Restrooms a~~A~~nd Wet Rooms

~~Floors at grade proved~~ Provide recessed slabs for restrooms and other~~all~~ wet rooms for floors at grade. For ~~all~~ raised floor conditions, provide adequate slope or recessed beams to accommodate floor finish and sloped floor to the drain(s) in all ~~the~~ restrooms and wet rooms.

~~3.~~4. Floor Vibration: Human Comfort

Floors shall be designed to limit ~~the floor~~ acceleration by controlling floor vibration from footfall to achieve acceptable human ~~-~~comfort performance levels. The recommended criteria in table 12.1 are based on the dynamic response of floor systems to walking excitation. The acceleration limits are based on American Institute of Steel Construction (AISC) *Design Guide 11*. The floor system shall be considered satisf~~actory~~ied~~~~ if the peak acceleration, a_p, due to walking excitation as a fraction of the acceleration of gravity, g, does not exceed the acceleration limit, a_0/g, for the appropriate room occupancies as shown in table 12.1.

Table 12.1 Human Comfort Performance Levels
Floor Vibration Acceptance Criteria ~~(~~AISC~~)~~ Recommended Values of Parameters and a_0/g Limits

BUILDING OCCUPANCY	CONSTANT FORCE, P_0, IN LB.	DAMPING RATIO, β	ACCELERATION LIMIT, $a_0/g \times 100\%$	QUALITATIVE PERFORMANCE LEVEL
Typical ~~Use~~ use and ~~Occupancy~~occupancy	65 ~~lb~~	0.05	0.5~~%~~	~~Slightly~~ slightly pPerceptible
Courtroom	65 ~~lb~~	0.05	0.5~~%~~	~~Slightly~~ slightly ~~Perceptible~~perceptible
Jury ~~Assembly~~assembly	65 ~~lb~~	0.05	0.5~~%~~	~~Slightly~~ slightly ~~Perceptible~~perceptible
Offices	65 ~~lb~~	0.05	0.5~~%~~	~~Slightly~~ slightly ~~Perceptible~~perceptible
General ~~Assembly~~assembly	65 ~~lb~~	0.02	1.5~~%~~	~~Distinctly~~ distinctly ~~Perceptible~~perceptible
Corridors	65 ~~lb~~	0.02	1.5~~%~~	~~Distinctly~~ distinctly ~~Perceptible~~perceptible
Monumental ~~Stair~~stair	92 ~~lb~~	0.01	1.5~~%~~	~~Distinctly~~ distinctly ~~Perceptible~~perceptible
Footbridge ~~— —~~ ~~Indoor~~indoor	92 ~~lb~~	0.01	1.5~~%~~	~~Distinctly~~ distinctly ~~Perceptible~~perceptible
Footbridge ~~— —~~ ~~Outdoor~~outdoor	92 ~~lb~~	0.01	5.0~~%~~	~~Strongly~~ strongly ~~Perceptible~~perceptible

DIVISION TWO: TECHNICAL CRITERIA
11 Architectural Criteria
12 STRUCTURAL CRITERIA
12.A Objectives
12.B Structural Systems
12.C Criteria for Service Loads
12.D Criteria for Rare Loads
12.E Life Cycle Cost Analysis
12.F Quality Assurance
12.G Fire-Resistive Ratings of Structural Elements
13 Mechanical Criteria
14 Building Management System Criteria
15 Electrical Criteria
16 Lighting Criteria
17 Network and Communication Systems
18 Audiovisual Systems
19 Acoustical Criteria
20 Fire Protection Criteria

Commented [LD3]: "satisfactory"?

Commented [DP3R2]: Modified.

Notes: Peak acceleration, a_p, due to walking excitation:

$$\frac{a_p}{g} = \frac{P_o \exp(-.35 f_n)}{\beta W}$$

P_0 = Constant force representing the excitation, pounds.

f_n = Fundamental natural frequency of a beam or joist panel, a girder panel, or a combined panel, as applicable, modal damping ratio, and effective weight supported by the beam or joist panel, girder panel, or combined panel, as applicable.

β = Modal damping ratio.

W = Effective weight supported by the beam or joist panel, girder panel, or combined panel, as applicable.

ASCE = American Society of Civil Engineers

NSC = nonstructural seismic coordinator

~~4.~~5. Floor Vibration: Equipment

Vibration from equipment will be controlled locally by isolation under the direction of others, such as the mechanical engineer, acoustical consultant, or equipment supplier. The structural engineer shall confirm with the architect that the structure requires nothing special to minimize vibrations from sources other than footfall.

12.D CRITERIA FOR RARE LOADS

1. Earthquake

Seismic performance of all new Judicial Council facilities is intended to be higher than that of buildings designed in accordance with prescriptive code provisions. This performance will be achieved through design and quality assurance.

The Judicial Council may designate specific buildings to be designed for enhanced seismic performance. *Enhanced seismic performance* refers to controlling earthquake damage to a building ~~in order~~ to limit the expected loss of use of the building after an earthquake.

Enhanced seismic performance is required for high-rise court buildings assigned to Seismic
Design Category E.

2. Risk Category

The CBC requires all buildings and structures to be assigned to a risk category~~,~~ ranging from I (low hazard to human life, unoccupied structures) to IV (buildings and other structures that are deemed essential and must remain operational). Risk category is used to determine importance factors (as defined in the CBC) for amplifying loads and enhancing seismic responses; ensuring that ductile, lateral force-resisting systems are used in areas of high seismicity; and controlling building deformations in relation to buildings' and structures' uses and risk to human life and safety.

All new court facilities will be assigned to Risk Category III unless an alternative risk category is established for the project.

3. Seismic Design Category

All structures are assigned to a seismic design category based on mapped seismic acceleration parameters and risk category. Seismic design categories range from A (no seismic hazard) to F (extreme seismic hazard on essential services buildings). A seismic design category is used to ensure that the selected ductile structural systems are detailed for seismic ~~activity~~ activity–resistant design.

All new court facilities shall be assigned to Seismic Design Category D at a minimum, regardless of mapped or site-specific acceleration parameters.

4. Normal Seismic Performance: Structural Components

Normal structural seismic performance objectives must be met by thorough conformance with the principles and provisions of the CBC using either mapped seismic acceleration parameters or site-specific seismic ground motions.

5. Normal Seismic Performance: Nonstructural Components

a. Acceptable performance of nonstructural components and systems shall be achieved by implementing CBC requirements during the design and construction phases.

b. For nonstructural components, the design team is encouraged to specify preapproved standards such as:

- DSA Interpretation of Regulations (IR) 25-2-13, for metal suspension systems for lay-in panel ceilings;
- DSA IR 25-3-13, for suspended gypsum board ceilings; and
- HCAI OSHPD Preapproved Details, published by the CAalifornia Depart-ment of Healthcare Access and Information (HCAI).

6. Enhanced Seismic Performance: Structural Components

a. Enhanced seismic performance requires a performance-based seismic design process such as that outlined in FEMA P-58. The structural engineer shall work jointly with the Judicial Council, and other design professionals, and other stakeholders to identify desired building performance objectives at the outset of a project. Upon selection of performance objectives, designs must be developed, and performance assessments completed for the proposed structural systems.

b. Analysis and design methods shall explicitly account for nonlinear behavior of the designated lateral force- -resisting system's members and connectors using procedures such as the nonlinear static procedure or the nonlinear dynamic procedure stated in American Society of Civil Engineers' (ASCE) Standard ASCE 41 and/or FEMA P-58.

c. Seismically isolated systems and damping systems may be used to provide enhanced seismic performance.

d. The Judicial Council will review and approve the enhanced seismic performance design criteria and may appoint an independent peer review team to evaluate the proposed criteria and analysis methods.

7. Enhanced Seismic Performance: Nonstructural Components

When enhanced seismic performance is required by the Judicial Council, the amendments to the CBC by the DSA-SS that pertain to nonstructural components shall be adhered to.

The design team is encouraged to use and specify preapproved standards.

8. Nonstructural Seismic Coordinator

For all projects, the project's registered design professional in responsible charge shall act as the nonstructural seismic coordinator (NSC). The NSC shall establish and coordinate design criteria and performance specifications for nonstructural components during the design phase. In addition, the NSC shall identify equipment critical to continued building function and occupancy, as specified by the CBC and the Judicial Council, and shall assisthelp the Judicial Council to determine requirements for prequalification of such equipment.

During the construction phase, the NSC shall coordinate delegated design teams and review deferred approval submittals before submission to the authority having jurisdiction. The NSC shall be the project architect or project structural engineer, or may be an independent registered design professional retained by the registered design professional in responsible charge.

9. Blast

See chapter 4, Courthouse Security, for blast criteria.

10. Wind

Wind design shall be in accordance with the CBC, unless otherwise specified by the Judicial Council. Because of enhanced performance objectives or siting conditions, the Judicial Council may select certain buildings for site-specific wind studies. Such an analysis will

DIVISION TWO: TECHNICAL CRITERIA
11 Architectural Criteria
12 STRUCTURAL CRITERIA
12.A Objectives
12.B Structural Systems
12.C Criteria for Service Loads
12.D Criteria for Rare Loads
12.E Life Cycle Cost Analysis
12.F Quality Assurance
12.G Fire-Resistive Ratings of Structural Elements
14 Building Management System Criteria
15 Electrical Criteria
16 Lighting Criteria
17 Network and Communication Systems
18 Audiovisual Systems
19 Acoustical Criteria
20 Fire Protection Criteria

Commented [BR4]: BPR: Removed reference to year.

Commented [BR5]: BPR: Removed reference to year.

Commented [BR6]: BPR: Updated to refer to OSHPD OPD, published by HCAI

determine design parameters for the structural system, exterior cladding, roof systems, ornamentation, and pedestrian-level wind environment. Wind analysis and modeling shall be based on local climate, wind environment, and orientation of critical wind direction in compliance with the CBC.

11. Flood, Snow, and Rain

Parameters for design for flood, snow, and rain loading shall be in accordance with requirements of the local jurisdiction in which the court facility is to be constructed.

12. E LIFE CYCLE COST ANALYSIS

Life cycle cost analysis (LCCA) is a useful indicator in evaluating total ownership cost of design alternatives over a facility's useful life of 25 -year-s or-greater useful life more of the facility and identifies cost alternatives. See chapter 1, section 1.A, Functional Usefulness, Physical Durability, and Maintainability, for more information.

1. Objectives

Selection of building components, materials, and structural systems must take into account long-term capital cost impacts of estimated losses resulting from expected earthquakes and other rare and damaging events.

Loss estimates shall be evaluated using life cycle cost analysis (LCCA). The Judicial Council will consider analysis estimates in determining acceptability of design alternatives along with other factors. Refer to chapter 1, General Principles, for overall project life cycle cost analysis objectives and methodologies.

2. Methodologies and Standards

a. The LCCA methodology (refer to tool 1, Life Cycle Cost Analysis) should be able to synthesize hazards, fragilities, and consequences to provide measurable and useful estimates of capital losses and impacts due to business interruption. The LCCA should be able to estimate benefit-cost analysis and the total cost of ownership for design options and alternatives. The LCCA should be based on known and established methods and techniques, including simulations to estimate probable losses at various confidence levels for individual event scenarios or over a considered time frame.

b. Seismic risk assessments should be developed using tools that have been validated for intended use, with due consideration in the interpretation of results based on limitations of programs, methodologies, assumptions, and variables.

c. Selection of LCCA programs and tools shall be reviewed with the Judicial Council before implementation.

3. Seismic Hazard Risk Assessment

a. In estimating losses from expected earthquakes, the LCCA shall be based on probabilistic performance-based seismic hazard risk assessments. The LCCA should consider losses resulting from the following:

- Structural damage
- Nonstructural damage
- Damage to building contents
- Disruption of building functions (loss of use)
- Long-term environmental impacts

b. Estimates of the total cost of ownership and benefit-cost ratios may be used to provide relative comparisons of alternative options with respect to a baseline option. Project cost estimation should be used to establish the baseline option costs with respect to

alternative option costs in evaluating design options in the LCCA. Comparative results should be used to evaluate overall cost impacts and architectural trade-offs resulting in consideration of various structural system configurations and options. These options may include comparisons such as normal versus enhanced seismic performance objectives, use of moment frames versus braced frames, impact of column size on floor plan and program, impact of beam depth on typical floor-to-floor height, and steel versus concrete construction alternatives. See chapter 1, section 1.A, Functional Usefulness, Physical Durability, and Maintainability, for more information on life cycle cost analysis.

4. Environmental Impacts

Sustainable design strategies (see chapter 1, section 1.D, Sustainable Design) shall also ~~utilize~~ use life cycle cost analysis to assess relative environmental impacts of selected structural system options and alternatives. LCCA is a useful tool in determining lowest-cost structural system alternatives in the consideration and implementation of "state-of-the-practice" sustainable and environmental design principles. For structural systems, analysis is emphasized for *embodied energy*, or the life-cycle of raw material extraction, transport, manufacture, assembly, installation, disassembly, and deconstruction and/or decomposition ~~that make up~~of the base building's materials.

12.F QUALITY ASSURANCE

a. The registered design professional in responsible charge shall prepare a statement of special inspection that complies with the provisions of the CBC. This statement shall be inclusive, covering all special inspections and tests—both structural and nonstructural—required for the project. A comprehensive list of special inspections and tests shall be included in the working drawings deliverable by the registered design professional.

b. Structural observation is required for all new court facilities. The registered design professional in responsible charge shall prepare a schedule identifying the phases of construction to be observed.

12.G FIRE-RESISTIVE RATINGS OF STRUCTURAL ELEMENTS

The architect, fire-protection consultants, and structural engineer shall coordinate to clearly identify the fire-resistive ratings of all structural elements required to have a rating by the current California Building Code, volume 2, part 1, chapters 6 and 7.

DIVISION TWO: TECHNICAL CRITERIA
11 Architectural Criteria
12 STRUCTURAL CRITERIA
12.A Objectives
12.B Structural Systems
12.C Criteria for Service Loads
12.D Criteria for Rare Loads
12.E Life Cycle Cost Analysis
12.F Quality Assurance
12.G Fire-Resistive Ratings of Structural Elements
13 Mechanical Criteria
14 Building Management System Criteria
15 Electrical Criteria
16 Lighting Criteria
17 Network and Communication Systems
18 Audiovisual Systems
19 Acoustical Criteria
20 Fire Protection Criteria

Commented [DP7]: Gensler: add chapter number 1.

DIVISION TWO: TECHNICAL CRITERIA

13 MECHANICAL CRITERIA

SECTION	TOPIC	PAGE
13.A	Objectives	13.2
13.B	HVAC Criteria	13.3
13.C	Humidification and Water Treatment	13.11
13.D	Mechanical Requirements for Specific Spaces	13.11
13.E	Plumbing and Piping Systems Criteria	13.13
13.F	Insulation	13.17
13.G	Thermometers and Gauges	13.18



B. F. Sisk Courthouse, County of Fresno
Fresno, CA
SmithGroup

This chapter identifies the program and criteria for heating, ventilation, and air-conditioning (HVAC), plumbing, and piping systems.

Maintainability and reliability are essential requirements of the Judicial Council for facility operations.

13.A OBJECTIVES

The conservation of energy and natural resources shall be weighed against the initial – construction cost and future operating cost when incorporating the mechanical concepts into the design to ensure that the project's goals focus on the total life cycle operating costs of the facility. Design mechanical systems to meet building performance objectives, including sustainability – and energy conservation, maintenance and reliability, and flexibility for changes.

1. Performance

The design solutions shall not sacrifice the basic needs of one program area to optimize another. Instead, the mechanical designs must optimize the program to ensure attainment of all critical performance goals.

2. Sustainability and Energy Conservation

The design of mechanical systems shall combine with other component designs to produce a building that meets the project's programmed sustainability and energy -efficiency goals, as referenced in chapter 1, General Principles.

3. Maintenance and Reliability

Maintainability and reliability are essential requirements of the Judicial Council in facility operations. The design and installation of all mechanical equipment shall provide sufficient clearance to allow easy maintainability, including space for removal and replacement of filters in ceiling equipment, boilers, chillers, cooling towers, pumps, motors, building automation controllers, ~~fire dampers, smoke dampers, combination~~ ~~fire-smoke~~ ~~and life-safety~~ life-safety dampers, and air-handling equipment. Systems shall have reliability over the functional lifespans listed in tool 1, Life Cycle Cost Analysis.

Consider ~~the~~ alternative locations for cooling tower and boiler at rooftop and ground level. Develop a maintenance, access, and replacement plan during the design phase for review and approval by the Judicial Council.

~~**Equipment Placement for Maintainability and Replacement:**~~
~~Cooling towers shall typically be located on the roof for operational efficiency, noise control, and thermodynamic performance requirements. However, the following provisions shall be made to facilitate future equipment replacement:~~
~~**a. Crane Access**~~
~~Roof structures and surrounding site conditions shall be designed to accommodate crane access for equipment replacement, including:~~
~~Adequate setbacks from property lines for crane placement~~
~~Load-bearing capacity of adjacent grade areas for crane outriggers~~
~~Clear vertical clearance from overhead utilities or obstructions~~
~~**b. Rigging Points and Roof Access**~~
~~Permanent rigging points or structural provisions shall be incorporated into roof design to facilitate equipment lifts~~
~~**c. Equipment Sizing**~~
~~Where feasible, specify multiple smaller units rather than single large units to:~~
~~Reduce crane size requirements~~
~~Allow for phased replacement~~
~~Provide operational redundancy~~
~~**d. Ground-Level Equipment**~~
~~The following equipment shall be located at ground level or basement mechanical rooms when site conditions and building design permit:~~
~~Boilers (when not serving high-rise buildings requiring pressure considerations)~~
~~Chillers~~
~~Air-cooled condensers (where acoustical and spatial conditions allow)~~

Commented [PS1]: Can we add a note - 'when possible locate the cooling towers and boilers at the ground level for future cost savings when replacement is needed?

Commented [YR1R2]: Peggy, great recommendation! While cooling towers typically require rooftop placement for operational and technical reasons, your replacement cost concern is valid.

See proposed redlined language **Equipment Placement for Maintainability and Replacement** addressing crane access, rigging provisions, and ground-level placement of boilers and other equipment when feasible.

Commented [PB1R3]: [FMB] Intent of language is understood. In lieu of prescriptive language (that may handcuff some projects), suggest we make concise by emphasizing the importance of each project D/B team developing a maintenance (access/replacement) plan during the design phase of the project for review/discussion with the associated JCC project management team for the specific facility.

Commented [DP1R4]: Added language for flexibility.

Commented [PB2]: [FMB] industry standard terminology of "life safety dampers" cover the 3 types noted in the proposed revision. Consider leaving original language for conciseness

Commented [DP2R2]: Removed reference to the three types.

Primary pumps and expansion tanks
Building automation system controllers
Air handling equipment

e. Documentation
As-built drawings shall include:
Equipment weights and dimensions
Recommended crane specifications for future replacement
Site access routes and staging areas
Rigging point locations and load capacities

4. Flexibility for Change

Design systems to provide for the range of loads anticipated to support the use of all principal spaces in the court building.

5. Standby Capacity

Standby capacity shall be designed into mechanical systems, enabling continuous operation during repair or replacement of a failed piece of equipment or components. Unless otherwise noted, standby units shall be sized based on an N+1 approach. The N+1 approach provides for one additional unit sized to meet the largest unit of the given equipment type. Standby capacity is mandated for mechanical systems only in the case where it serves of systems serving equipment identified as critical to the life-safety and communication systems in the building program. In those situations, the Unless otherwise noted, mechanical system shall be designed with N+1 redundancy, meaning one additional component beyond the minimum required capacity shall be provided to allow continued operation during a single equipment failure or maintenance event.standby units shall be sized based on an N+1 approach. The N+1 approach provides for one additional unit sized to meet the largest unit of the given equipment type. For example, depending on size of the main distribution frame (MDF) room (specifically for medium and large courthouse projects), consider using coolant distribution units that are server-rack mounted. Doing so will reduce the physical size of an airside cooling solution, which will also reduce impact on the environment – acoustic impact, congestion above ceiling, and valuable floor space for floor-mounted computer room air-conditioning units – outside the room. Emergency power is not required unless specific project needs demand it.

6. Rational Analysis

A rational analysis shall be performed and a report prepared to establish minimum requirements for the design, installation, and acceptance testing of smoke control systems that are intended to provide a tenable environment for the evacuation or relocation of occupants. The report, and associated design, complying with the California Building Code, shall be submitted with the construction documents to the authority having jurisdiction.

Commented [DP3]: N+1 described per CFAC-WG direction.

Commented [PB4]: [FMB] Edits are recommended for clarity to the design team and improve conciseness.

Commented [PB5]: Added clarify about emergency power not being required as it has been a debate on projects regarding wants vs needs.

Commented [DP5R2]: Agreed.

13.B HVAC CRITERIA

1. Indoor Design Conditions

See table 13.1 for requirements. ~~Note that for climate zones known to be above 100 degrees F. or below 30 degrees~~

~~Table is to be adjusted to accommodate 5 degrees higher or lower.~~

~~Design must take into account~~

~~Rooms at max occupancies with set points varying to meet the high use areas.~~

Interior design values shall be based on ambient conditions listed in the 2025 C~~A~~alifornia Building Energy Efficiency Standards Reference Appendix JA2.2 (California Design Location Data)~~,~~: ~~-~~Cooling ~~D~~design: 0.1 ~~%~~percent column;~~-~~ ~~H~~heating ~~D~~design: 0.2 percent~~%~~ column.

2. Temperature Control Zone

Target the interior temperature control zone size to avoid exceeding 1,500 gross square feet for open areas~~,~~ or a maximum of three enclosed offices. Corner offices shall be independent zones. Provide independent zones for each courtroom, chambers suite, jury deliberation room, entrance lobby, mailroom, staff lounge, conference room, child waiting area, and equipment rooms~~s~~. Provide a zone map for review by the Judicial Council before any associated heating, ventilation, and air-conditioning (HVAC) design.

3. Air Distribution

3.1 System Requirements

a. Based on size and complexity of the building, air distribution systems may consist of air-handling units (AHUs), central direct expansion (DX) air conditioners, variable refrigerant flow (VRF) systems, or built-up central air-handling systems, with the decision based on the life cycle cost analysis (LCCA) and whole-building cost analysis.

b. AHUs provide flexible zone control through use of multiple smaller units. AHU casing construction details are included in table 13.3~~.~~ at the end of this chapter. Central systems shall incorporate components similar in quality to those in table 13.3.

c. Systems shall be designed for turndown to ensure that short-cycling during shoulder seasons does not occur.

d. Design air ventilation rates shall comply with the latest adopted version of ASHRAE Standard 62.1, Ventilation for Acceptable Indoor Air Quality, and California Code of Regulations, title 24. Thermal comfort conditions shall comply with the ~~latest~~ version of ASHRAE Standard 55, Thermal Environmental Conditions for Human Occupancy, referenced in the California~~A C~~code year in effect at the time of schematic design. Demand control ventilation using carbon dioxide (CO_2) sensors per occupancy zone shall be applied appropriately as defined by the building code occupancy classification per individual programmed space.

e. Demand ventilation controls shall maintain CO_2 concentrations less than or equal to 600 parts per million plus the outdoor air CO_2 concentration in all rooms that require CO_2 sensors by code.

f. If used, variable air volume (VAV) terminal boxes selected shall be pressure-~~-~~ independent and certified to Air-Conditioning, Heating, and Refrigeration

DIVISION TWO: TECHNICAL CRITERIA
11 Architectural Criteria
12 Structural Criteria
13 MECHANICAL CRITERIA
13.C Humidification and Water Treatment
13.D Mechanical Requirements for Specific Spaces
13.E Plumbing and Piping Systems Criteria
13.F Insulation
13.G Thermometers and Gauges

Commented [PB6]: [FMB] Added level of detail to give engineer clarity on the expected outdoor air conditions to be used for design calculations.

Commented [LD7]: 13.2 skipped.

Commented [DP7R2]: We'll have to track this in the next edition.

Commented [PB8]: [FMB] Clarification added to ensure clarity that the intent is to comply with code. There are later standards that are available, at times, than that required by the current code.

Commented [SN8R2]: Ending of the sentence states "California Code year in effect." This needs to be stated more clearly. Do you mean California Code in effect the year of the project design? Or California Code currently in effect? Or something else?

Commented [DP8R3]: Added verbiage for clarity.

Institute's (AHRI) Standard 880 ~~certified~~. VAV terminal boxes and their associated building management system (BMS) controllers shall be located in an accessible manner for replacement and maintenance. VAV terminal boxes shall incorporate a Belimo or approved equal direct digital control actuator, including a five-year warranty.

g. All terminal ceiling diffusers or booted-plenum slot diffusers shall be specifically designed for VAV air distribution. Booted-plenum slots shall not exceed 5′ in length unless more than one source of supply is provided. Diffuser spacing selection shall be based on the predominant air volume range. ~~There should be no e~~Exhaust fans are not permitted above court-rooms. To meet the minimum required ceiling heights in courtrooms, the HVAC equipment ~~is to~~shall be located so that there are no access panels in the courtroom and ~~that~~ the space above the courtroom ceiling ~~space above the courts~~ is predominantly free and clear from items needing access. Remote operators shall be provided on any balance dampers within the courtroom. Coordinate above ~~-ceiling~~ space with 3-D modeling prior to construction to ensure the required ceiling height is maintained.

Commented [PB9]: [FMB] The intent is understood. Added "from items needing access" (as there will be content up there). Also added need for remote damper operators

Important References

ASHRAE Standards 55, 62.1, and 90.1

EISA = Energy Independence and Security Act of 2007

NEC = National Electrical Code

NEMA = National Electrical Manufacturers Association

NFPA = National Fire Protection Association

SMACNA = Sheet Metal and Air Conditioning Contractors' National Association

Table 13.1 Indoor Design Conditions

ROOM TYPE	HEATING DESIGN TEMP. (°F)	COOLING DESIGN TEMP. (°F)	DESIGN OCCUPANT DENSITY	DESIGN POWER DENSITY
Lobby	72°F	75°F	Per CA Cal. Mech. Code	W/SF
Conference Roomsrooms	72°F	75°F	Per CA Cal. Mech. Code	2.0 W/SF
Offices	72°F	75°F	Per CA Cal. Mech. Code	1.2 W/SF
Break Roomsrooms	72°F	75°F	Per CA Cal. Mech. Code	1.5 W/SF
Waiting Roomsrooms	72°F	75°F	20 SF/person	1.5 W/SF
Public Gallerygallery/Passagepassage	72°F	75°F	50 SF/person	0.5 W/SF
Public Toilet toilet Roomsrooms*	72°F	75°F	Indirect indirect Thru through Exhaustexhaust Makeupmakeup	0.5 W/SF
Holding Cellcell/Roomroom*	72°F	75°F	Per CA Cal. Mech. Code	0.5 W/SF
Transformer/Sswitchgear Roomroom	N/A	95°F	N/A (normally unoccupied)	Project specificsproject specific
IDF Roomsrooms	N/A	75°F	N/A (normally unoccupied)	Project specificsproject specific
MDF Roomroom	N/A	75°F	N/A (normally unoccupied)	Project specificsproject specific
UPS Roomroom	77°F	77°F	N/A (normally unoccupied)	Project specificsproject specific
Janitor Closetsclosets*	N/A	75°F	Indirect indirect Thru through Exhaustexhaust Makeupmakeup	N/A
Copy Roomsrooms	72°F	75°F	Indirect indirect Thru through Exhaustexhaust Makeupmakeup	Project specificsproject specific
Kitchens	72°F	75°F	Per CA Cal. Mech. Code	2.5 W/SF
Coffee Stationsstations	72°F	75°F	Per CA Cal. Mech. Code	1.5 W/SF
Storage (<150 SF)	N/A	N/A	N/A	N/A
Storage (≥150 SF)	N/A	N/A	150 SF/person	N/A
Courtroom	72°F	75°F	pPer CA Cal. Mech. Code	0.5 W/SF
Jury Servicesservices	72°F	75°F	20 SF/person	1.0 W/SF
Jury Deliberation deliberation Roomsrooms	72°F	75°F	20 SF/person	2.0 W/SF
Judicial Chamberschambers	72°F	75°F	150 SF/person	1.2 W/SF

Notes:

This table lists initial suggested values only—actual values to be verified by design team. Suggestions do not

override code requirements.
Suggestions are intended for preliminary HVAC analysis only and may differ from those used by other design d disciplines.
Suggestions are independent of task lights and audio/visual loads.
* ~~100% outside air;~~ Oonce-through air only (no return air).

~~W/SF = watts per square foot.~~

IDF = intermediate distribution frame.

MDF = main distribution frame

NA = not applicable.

UPS = uninterruptible power supply.

W/SF = watts per square foot.

Commented [PB10]: Added clarity to the engineer

Table 13.2 Maximum Allowable Duct Velocities

NOISE CRITERIA	MAXIMUM ALLOWABLE DUCT VELOCITY (FPM)	
	MAIN	BRANCH
20	1,000	500
25	1,000	800
30	1,300	1,100
35	1,500	1,200
40	1,800	1,400

fpm = feet per minute.

h. ~~Ensure that the~~ Air Diffusion Performance Index values shall remain above the specified manufacturer's minimum. Diffusers shall be high-entrainment type (3:1 minimum) to maximize air velocity at low flow rates.

i. All motors that are operated with variable-speed drives shall be provided with inverter-duty motors with Class F insulation per the National Electrical Code (NEC) and the National Fire Protection Association (NFPA) and ~~shall~~ include motor shaft grounding assemblies.

j. Ductwork construction shall comply with Sheet Metal and Air Conditioning Contractors' National Association (SMACNA) duct construction standards and ~~shall~~ be installed per the SMACNA duct cleanliness standard for new construction. The ductwork shall meet the acoustical requirements outlined in table 13.2 per maximum allowable duct velocities.

k. Leakage testing shall be in compliance with the California~~A mM~~echanical ~~c~~Code. The engineer of record shall identify specific sections to be tested. A minimum of 10 ~~%~~percent of the total installed duct area (~~sqft~~SF) shall be tested. Leakage testing shall be performed ~~on all ductwork constructed greater than 3″ pressure class~~ in accordance with the SMACNA *HVAC Air Duct Leakage Test Manual* on ~~and~~ all ductwork associated with the smoke control system (if applicable). Use minimum SMACNA seal class A for all ductwork~~. SMACNA leakage class for 2″ and less shall be 16 for rectangular and 8 for round ductwork. SMACNA leakage class for 3″ and higher shall be 4 for rectangular and 2 for round ductwork.~~

l. ~~Fabricate d~~Ductwork shall be fabricated from galvanized steel, stainless steel, and/or aluminum sheet metal, depending on applications. Use ~~low~~ low–volatile organic compound duct sealant with U.S. Environmental Protection Agency listings. A factory-made Underwriters Laboratories' (UL) Class ~~1~~ 1–listed acoustical flex duct may be used for low-pressure ductwork connected to air devices and shall be installed in accordance with ~~the~~ SMACNA HVAC Duct Construction Standards: Metal and Flexible.

m. For plenum and ducted returns, no more than 1,000 cubic feet per minute (cfm) shall be collected at any one return grille. When deemed necessary, all plenums shall be sealed airtight with respect to the exterior wall and roof slab or ceiling deck to avoid creating negative air pressure in exterior wall cavities that would allow intrusion of untreated outdoor air. All ductwork shall be insulated per the California Energy Code.

n. Before building occupancy and after all interior finishes have been installed, ~~install~~ new filtration media shall be installed and ~~perform~~ a building flush-out performed as outlined in the LEED Indoor Environmental Quality (EQ) credit: Indoor Air Quality

DIVISION TWO: TECHNICAL CRITERIA
11 Architectural Criteria
12 Structural Criteria
13 MECHANICAL CRITERIA
13.A Objectives
13.C Humidification and Water Treatment
13.D Mechanical Requirements for Specific Spaces
13.E Plumbing and Piping Systems Criteria
13.F Insulation
13.G Thermometers and Gauges
14 Building Management System Criteria
15 Electrical Criteria
16 Lighting Criteria
17 Network and Communication Systems
18 Audiovisual Systems
19 Acoustical Criteria
20 Fire Protection Criteria

Commented [LD11]: "on"?

Commented [PB12]: Revisions required for new code

Assessment. In addition, perform the air testing outlined in the credit and provide to the Judicial Council the results that satisfy the credit requirements.

o. ~~Test and balance a~~All systems shall be tested and balanced by an Associated Air Balance Council (AABC)~~–~~ or National Environmental Balancing Bureau (NEBB~~).)~~ ~~–~~certified balance company.

3.2 Building Pressurization

Building pressurization shall meet the requirements of the latest version of *ASHRAE Handbook—Fundamentals*. Design the system to provide the required continuous positive pressure with respect to the outdoor environment. Principal spaces are to maintain positive pressure relative to circulation spaces; circulation spaces, building entrances, and public lobbies are to maintain positive pressure relative to the outdoors. Verification of required building pressurization shall be documented during the commissioning phase of building construction.

3.3 Air Intake and Exhaust

The placement, location, and quantity of outside air must comply with California Code of Regulations, title 24; ASHRAE Standard 62.1, Ventilation for Acceptable Indoor Air Quality; and the building security requirements. For security requirements, see chapter 4, Courthouse Security, and chapter 8, In-Custody Defendant Receiving, Holding, and Transport. The intake design shall minimize the entrainment of exhaust air. The outside air intake louvers shall be drainable stationary storm louver type ~~with~~ following American National Standards Institute and Air Movement and Control Association (ANSI/AMCA) Standard 500-L. Inactive sections of intake and exhaust louvers shall be blanked off to eliminate outside air and particulate ingress into the building. Airflow stations shall be designed for and installed to directly measure the minimum required outside airflow into each ~~air~~ air-handling unit (see section 13.G below). Furthermore, airflow station measurement and data shall be directly trended at the BMS front end for ongoing data analysis.

4. Internal Heat Gains

a. Refer to table 13.1 for target values unless noted otherwise.

b. Determine ~~Internal~~ internal heat gains from all appliances (electrical, gas, or steam) ~~shall be determined~~ by manufacturer-provided heat gain and usage schedules, if available; heat gains from office equipment shall be based on manufacturer-provided data, if available, or the latest edition of *ASHRAE Handbook—Fundamentals*.

c. Refer to electrical documents for the design lighting power density to be included in the associated HVAC load calculations.

5. Diversity

The designer should use diversity in sizing a system's~~,~~ peak capacities. The diversity factor shall be adjusted to the specific project. Diversity is defined as the concurrent zone peak loads compared to the sum of all peak building zone loads. Although the Judicial Council cannot suggest specific diversity criteria for the coincidence of weather (design cooling ~~-~~ days), occupancy, court operation, judges' chambers, lighting, and other functions within the building, several general ideas are suggested.

a. Diversity at the AHU (system) level is appropriate and should be taken to prevent oversizing of systems.
b. This diversity should not be taken at the zone level.
c. Greater diversity should be considered at the central plant or with applications of district energy.

Important References

ASHRAE Handbook—Fundamentals

The climate zone at the project location, as assigned by the California Energy Commission's California Building Climate Zones, should be the basis for all calculations, as defined in the California Code of Regulations, title 24.

For information on life cycle cost analysis, see chapter 1, General Principles.

d. All lighting will not be assumed to be energized at the same times throughout the entire building. At least 10 percent of the lights can be assumed to be off on a system basis. Advanced lighting controls, detailed in chapter 16, Lighting Criteria, can generate even more significant savings.

e. Court operation and occupancy will vary significantly on a monthly and weekly basis. The impact of varied occupancy should be considered based on past courthouse occupancy and performance data and project team judgment. Occupancy data shall be leveraged to determine diversity for all applicable systems before HVAC system design.

f. Judicial chambers will likely be generally occupied, yet conference functions that support the chambers will generally share occupancy. An office occupant may also be a conference participant, so avoid double counting.

g. Simultaneous operation of all these individual diversified operations should also be considered (further combined diversity).

6. Air-Conditioning Cooling Systems

6.1 Chilled Water Systems

a. District-chilled water, if available, shall be used if it is determined to be economical and reliable through a life cycle cost analysis. In the LCCA, use high-efficiency chillers that do not exceed the minimum requirements of Table 110.2-D in the California~~A~~ Energy Code~~0.585 kilowatt (kw)/ton and 0.380 integrated part load value (IPLV).~~ Chiller refrigerant leak detection systems shall be connected to the BMS with remote alarms.

~~a. Water-cooled chiller plants are preferred for medium and large courthouse projects in Climate Zones 7, 8, 10, 11, 12, 13, 14, and 15 where life cycle cost analysis demonstrates superior performance compared with air-cooled alternatives. These systems can provide substantially higher efficiency but must be evaluated in the context of site-specific water availability, water quality, and project electrification goals. Where limited water resources, poor water quality, or fully electric plant configurations make water-cooled systems undesirable, air-cooled or water-source heat pump systems may be used to achieve equivalent efficiency and reliability. As part of the site-specific assessment, consult local water agencies for data on water supply, water quality, and sanitary sewer capacity to determine the feasibility of water-cooled systems. Ensure compliance with local water regulations and statewide and regional requirements of State Water Resources Control Board. Consider projected drought risks due to climate change, referencing the California Department of Water Resources Climate Change Program for guidance.~~

b. The cooling system shall consist of multiple units of each equipment type, and the total plant capacity shall be 120 percent of the building cooling design load. If systems are deemed to serve critical areas, the system design shall be based on an N+1 approach as described in section 13.A.5 above. Redundancy analysis shall be provided for review and approval by the Judicial Council for any proposed chilled water system that will use an ice storage system. The redundancy analysis shall demonstrate that the combined cooling capacity of the chiller and the ice storage system provides a minimum of 60 percent of the design load across multiple ~~ice~~ ice-charging cycles, assuming one chiller is nonoperational because of maintenance.

c. All chillers in a facility shall use the same nonproprietary refrigerant and ~~shall~~ avoid use of refrigerants that do not comply with California Air Resources

DIVISION TWO: TECHNICAL CRITERIA
11 Architectural Criteria
12 Structural Criteria
13 MECHANICAL CRITERIA
13.A Objectives
13.C Humidification and Water Treatment
13.D Mechanical Requirements for Specific Spaces
13.E Plumbing and Piping Systems Criteria
13.F Insulation
13.G Thermometers and Gauges
14 Building Management System Criteria
15 Electrical Criteria
16 Lighting Criteria
17 Network and Communication Systems
18 Audiovisual Systems
19 Acoustical Criteria
20 Fire Protection Criteria

Commented [AG13]: Lessons Learned from Stockton Courthouse: Chillers should be provided with flow switches to prove flow through the equipment to verify the operation of the unit. The Facilities Operations team noted the preference of electronic flow compared to mechanical flow switches due to their reliability for proving flow through chillers due to no moving parts. Coordinate with design team to ensure the end users are provided a means of verifying operation of the chiller via a flow switch or other means.

Commented [DP13R2]: Incorporated.

Commented [PB14]: [FMB] Updated to adjust code minimum requirements

Commented [DP15]: Gensler: delete this bullet.

Commented [YR16]: Per Arup CSMCESS 10/30/2025 **13.B-6.1b (insert new section and re-letter the following sections)** @Rao, Srinivas

Commented [PB16R2]: [FMB] No objection to intent of added language

Commented [DP16R3]: This is duplicative of chapter 1. Deleted from here.

Board initiatives and regulations. If the operating conditions dictate, propylene glycol may be used at the required concentrations to prevent freezing. When propylene glycol is used, include a leak detection system. Ethylene glycol shall not be used. Chillers shall be equipped with variable-frequency drives when deemed appropriate based on the California Energy Commission's California Building Climate Zones, as defined in California Code of Regulations, title 24. The design chilled water temperature difference (delta T) across the chillers' evaporators shall be at least 14 degrees Fahrenheit (°F). Variable supply air set point control (see chapter 14, section 14.D.1) shall be applied to reduce loads and increase the efficiency of the chiller plant.

~~c~~d. Chillers shall be equipped with flow switches to confirm adequate flow through the equipment and verify proper unit operation. Electronic flow switches shall be used instead of mechanical switches due to their increased reliability and lack of moving parts. Coordinate with the design team to ensure that end users are provided with an effective method to verify chiller operation.

~~d~~e. All chillers shall be piped to a common chilled water header with provisions to sequence chillers online to match the load requirements. All required auxiliaries for the chiller systems shall be provided with expansion tanks, heat exchangers, water treatment, and air separators. When multiple chillers are used, automatic shutoff valves shall be provided for each chiller. Chiller condenser piping shall be equipped with recirculation and bypass control

Commented [SN17]: Does this contradict the requirement earlier is this paragraph that chillers "shall" be equipped with flow switches by allowing another approved approach?

Commented [DP17R2]: Removed contradictory statement.

valves as needed to maintain incoming condenser water temperature within the chiller manufacturer's minimum requirement.

~~e~~f. Multiple cell cooling towers and isolated basins are required. The number of cells and associated capacity shall match the number of chillers. Supply piping shall be connected to a manifold to allow for any combination of equipment use. Multiple towers shall have equalization piping between cell basins. Equalization piping shall include isolation valves between each cell. Supply and return lines for each cell shall be provided with automatic isolation valves. Provide a centrifugal separation filtration system in areas deemed subject to airborne debris. Cooling towers shall have ladders and platforms as required for inspections and replacement of components. Provide stainless steel basins to reduce life cycle cost based on local water quality.

~~f~~g. Cooling tower sizing shall be on a life cycle basis, taking into consideration operational energy and water consumption rather than first cost. Cooling tower controls shall include a pH (acidity) and conductivity controller connected to the water treatment system by adding chemicals that regulate the pH in the system to prevent corrosion and scaling and ~~to~~ facilitate water conservation through increased cycles of concentration. Flow meters connected to the BMS control system must be specified on makeup and blowdown water lines.

~~g~~h. Pumps shall be of a centrifugal type and ~~shall~~ generally ~~be~~ selected to operate at 1,~~750~~ 750 revolutions per minute (rpm) maximum peak efficiency. Both partial and full load must fall on stable areas of the pump curve. The number of primary chilled water and condenser water pumps shall be equal to the number of chillers. The specified pump motors shall not overload throughout the entire range of the pump curve. The pump associated with each individual cooling tower and chiller group shall be arranged with piping, valves, and controls to allow for independent, parallel operation of each chiller ~~–~~cooling tower group.

~~h~~i. All motors that are operated with variable-speed drives shall be inverter-duty motors with Class F insulation per NEC and NFPA and ~~shall~~ include motor shaft grounding assemblies.

~~i~~j. Chilled water systems shall be submetered via British thermal unit (~~BTU~~Btu) meters that report data back to the central BMS front end for ongoing data analysis. Real-time ~~BTU~~ Btu data shall be exposed on the front end for use by building engineers.

6.2 Direct Expansion Systems

Direct expansion (DX) evaporators with condensing units are not allowed unless, in the schematic design phase, the chilled water system application does not have a favorable life cycle cost or the application requires a DX approach. The HVAC designer is required to first consider and rule out using chilled water concepts before specifying any high-efficiency DX refrigeration equipment. Water conservation efforts shall be incorporated into the LCCA when considering system alternatives.

6.3 Alternative Systems

Alternative solutions may be provided that meet the requirements and the associated energy goals of the current California Building Code. Neither active nor passive radiant chilled beams, panels, or sails are permitted.

7. Heating Systems

7.1 Requirements per Heating System

a. Water heating systems: Low-temperature water heating is the preferred system. Supply temperatures and the corresponding temperature drops for ~~space~~ space-heating hot water systems must be set to best suit the equipment being served. ~~Water heating systems: Low-temperature water heating is required to ensure electric readiness per Title 24 Part 6 and minimize thermal losses in hot water piping. Supply temperatures must not exceed 130°F, and the corresponding temperature drops for space heating hot water systems must be set to best suit the equipment being served.~~ The temperature drop for terminal unit heating coils shall be 30°F–40°F. ~~-~~ Design water velocity in piping so as not to exceed 8′ per second, or design pressure friction loss in piping systems not to exceed 4′ of head loss per 100′ of pipe, whichever pipe size is larger, and not less than 4′ per second.

Any gas ~~All~~ boilers for hydronic ~~water~~ water-heating applications shall be condensing type, with the working pressure and maximum temperature limitation stated, and ~~shall be~~ installed in a dedicated mechanical room with all provisions made for chimney, flue stack, and combustion air. In general, three boilers each, sized for 40 percent of the full ~~cold~~ cold-start preheating load, shall be provided. For installations where the ASHRAE winter design is 34°F and above, a minimum of two equally sized units at 55 percent of the full ~~cold~~ cold-start preheating load shall be provided. The designer shall provide load calculations including safety factors used in final equipment selections.

All boiler emissions shall comply with local air quality regulations. The products of combustion from fuel-fired appliances and equipment shall be terminated to the outside of the building through the use of chimneys. All boilers shall be piped to a common heating water header, with provisions to sequence boilers online to match the load requirements. All required auxiliaries for the boiler systems shall be provided with expansion tanks, heat exchangers, water treatment, and air separators. Variable supply air set point control shall be applied to reduce loads and increase efficiency of the boiler plant. See chapter 14, Building Management System Criteria. Rooms housing combustion boilers or water heaters shall provide combustion air openings per California Mechanical Code, chapter 7, Combustion Air.

b. Radiant heating systems: Radiant heating systems are not permitted.

c. Fin-tube heating systems: When fin-tube radiation is used, the design shall incorporate individual zone thermostatic control capable of connecting to a self-contained microprocessor and an HVAC building control system.

d. Variable volume reheat boxes: A variable air volume system with hot water reheat shall be used for zone applications. VAV shutoff boxes that incorporate zone occupancy per California Code of Regulations, title 24, may be used with air distribution systems to eliminate the need for reheat.

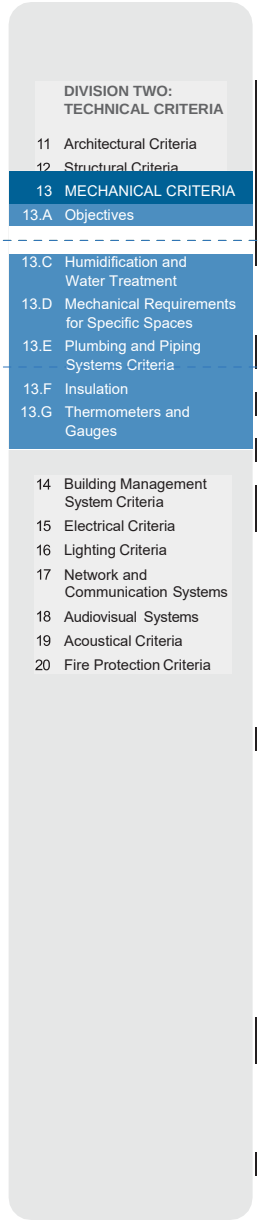
e. Variable volume with fan-powered boxes: Fan-powered boxes may have ~~water~~ water-heating coils for maintaining temperature conditions in the space under partial load conditions.

f. Water coils for heating: All zones on the perimeter and top floor of the building shall contain water coils for heating.

g. Alternative systems: Other systems may be considered that meet current code and the energy goals of the California Building Code.

7.2 General Requirements

a. The Judicial Council requires low-temperature (condensing) hot water heating systems, with the lowest working pressure suitable for the system and a



Commented [YR18]: Per Arup CSMCESS 10/30/2025

13.B-7.1a (replace existing first two sentences)
@Rao, Srinivas

Commented [PB18R2]: [FMB] No objection to proposed adjustment.

Commented [DP18R3]: Except the EUI change in chapter 1, all proposed changes from CSMCESS were rejected.

Commented [PB19]: [FMB] Added clarification for gas boilers (as some may be electric)

Commented [PB20]: [FMB] Deleted redundant statement to above revisions

Commented [DP20R2]: The above revision was rejected, so we will keep this statement.

Vibration and Acoustical Isolation

Refer to chapter 19, Acoustical Criteria, which shall govern in case of conflict. Refer to and incorporate the basic design techniques described in *ASHRAE Handbook—HVAC Applications.*

maximum temperature limitation of 160°F.

b. When steam is furnished to the building, it must be converted to hot water with a submetered heat exchanger in the mechanical room near the entrance into the building. Steam heating is discouraged inside the building, other than the conversion of steam to hot water in the mechanical room. The designer must investigate the use of district steam condensate for preheating domestic hot water.

c. Hot water and chilled water air systems must use a four-pipe main distribution system. ~~Dual~~ Dual-temperature piping systems are not permitted.

8. Vibration and Acoustical Isolation

a. Mechanical room isolation: Acoustical isolation floors shall be considered for major mechanical rooms located in penthouses or at intermediate levels of mid-rise construction.

b. Shaft requirements: Mechanical shafts and chases shall be closed at top and bottom, as well as at the entrance to the mechanical room. Any piping and ductwork shall be isolated as it enters the shaft to prevent propagation of vibration to the building structure. All openings for ducts and piping must be sealed. Shafts dedicated to gas piping must be ventilated.

c. Isolators: Isolators shall be specified by type and deflection, not by isolation efficiency. Specifications shall be worded so that isolation performance becomes the responsibility of the equipment supplier.

d. Vibration control: Concrete inertia bases shall be delineated for reciprocating equipment and all pumps unless equipment is installed on slab on grade.

e. Ductwork: The design shall delineate the methods to reduce fan-generated noise immediately outside any mechanical room. The ductwork design shall appropriately address the airborne-generated equipment noise, equipment vibration, duct-borne fan noise, duct breakout noise, airflow-generated noise, and duct-borne crosstalk noise. All ductwork connections to equipment having motors or rotating components shall be made with aligned, ~~min. 4.5" 6" long,~~ double-coated, ~~walled~~ UL-labeled, flexible connectors at least 4.5" long.

f. Piping hangers and isolation: The design shall analyze the need for isolation hangers for piping to address acoustical and expansion concerns. Piping hangers and supports shall be designed in accordance with the applicable codes.

g. Noise control in VAV systems: The system-generated sound levels at maximum flow must be carefully evaluated to ensure that acoustical performance conforms to project-specific targets. Inlet guide vanes shall be evaluated for noise in their most restricted position. Duct noise control shall be achieved by controlling air velocity using sound attenuators. Terminal units shall be selected so that design air volume is approximately three-quarters of the terminal box's maximum capacity. Volume dampers in terminal units shall be located at least 6" from the closest diffuser, and the use of grille-mounted balance dampers shall be restricted except in applications with accessibility problems and only on approval of the Judicial Council.

h. VAV box sound attenuation: The VAV boxes and associated plenums ~~attenuation lining~~ shall incorporate acoustical liner~~fiber-free insulation or foil-faced insulation duct materials.~~ The attenuation materials shall be appropriately sealed and either covered with reinforced, aluminum–laminated foil liner or coated with water-based sealant tested and approved for air erosion per UL 181 or ASTM C1071. The materials shall not promote or support the

Commented [PB21]: [FMB] Updated for industry standard of care products

Commented [PB22]: Updated to industry standard of care

growth of fungi or bacteria, in accordance with UL 181 and ASTM G21. All exposed edges shall be sealed with sealant approved per NFPA 90A.

13.C HUMIDIFICATION AND WATER TREATMENT

1. Humidifiers and Direct Evaporative Coolers

Courthouse spaces shall not be humidified. Direct evaporative coolers are not permitted because of maintenance and room moisture content concerns, unless approved by the Judicial Council. HVAC systems implementing an evaporative cooler to condition electrical rooms shall use only indirect ~~or direct-indirect~~ units to eliminate the possibility of water carryover in the HVAC system, which can damage electrical equipment.

2. Relative Humidity Controls Criteria

a. Summer: Unless noted to the contrary in the project program, do not directly control inside relative humidity ~~is not to be directly controlled~~. Dehumidification is a by-product of the cooling process.

b. Winter: Do not add moisture to the air-stream. When the program document indicates that humidification in the winter is required, the humidification equipment shall be sized to avoid condensation on inside surfaces, whether visible or concealed.

3. Water Treatment

a. A water treatment specialist must design the water treatment for closed and open hydronic systems with consideration of the operational and maintenance needs of all system equipment, including such components as boilers, chillers, cooling towers, other heat exchangers, pumps, and piping. The design must inhibit biological growth, address dissolved solids and scaling, and provide corrosion protection. A cost-benefit analysis shall be performed and evaluated with the Judicial Council to determine water treatment system alternatives and the use of water softeners to provide clean and safe potable water that will not negatively impact the approved infrastructure. If included, the w~~W~~ater treatment system cannot be removed or value engineered ~~to a point it will not provide proper protection~~later during construction. ~~A domestic water treatment system and water softenter system is required on all buildings.~~ Before design of the water treatment system, confirm pH, free chlorine, alkalinity, total dissolved solids, iron content, soluble copper, aerobic plate, and industry standards for *Legionella* management with the Judicial Council.

b. As part of the water treatment plan, ~~specify~~ coupon racks or an equivalent electronic monitoring system for corrosion in condenser water loops, heating hot water loops, and the building main chilled water loop shall be specified. The type and manufacturer of the proposed coupon racks to be installed shall be approved by the Judicial Council. The minimum quantity of coupons and frequency of inspections shall be described in the water treatment plan. Molybdenum shall not be used in Judicial Council buildings.

c. At a minimum, two coupon racks shall be installed for each loop and used to monitor mild steel and copper.

d. The methods used to treat the system makeup water shall have prior success in existing facilities on the same municipal water supply and follow the guidelines outlined in *ASHRAE Handbook—HVAC Applications*. The use of nonchemical water treatment is not permitted.

~~d. Water treatment and water softeners are to be clearly discussed with JCC and the designs teams approach in providing clean potable water that is safe and will not negatively impact the approved infrastructure.~~

DIVISION TWO: TECHNICAL CRITERIA
11 Architectural Criteria
12 Structural Criteria
13 MECHANICAL CRITERIA
13.A Objectives
13.E Plumbing and Piping Systems Criteria
13.F Insulation
13.G Thermometers and Gauges
14 Building Management System Criteria
15 Electrical Criteria
16 Lighting Criteria
17 Network and Communication Systems
18 Audiovisual Systems
19 Acoustical Criteria
20 Fire Protection Criteria

Commented [PB23]: Updated as direct-indirect adds moisture to the air and requires additional maintenance

Commented [PB24]: [FMB Recommend this proposed new language be adjusted to suggest a water analysis be performed and evaluated by the project team (including the JCC PM to help evaluate the LCCA). Not all projects should need treatment systems and some jurisdictions do not allow water softeners.

Commented [PB25]: This wording is more accommodating to the specific project vs the proposed mandate above.

Commented [DP25R2]: Incorporated above.

13.D MECHANICAL REQUIREMENTS FOR SPECIFIC SPACES

1. General Requirements

a. For security equipment, see chapter 4, Courthouse Security. For telecommunications equipment rooms, see chapter 17, Network and Communication Systems.

~~b.~~ Negatively pressurize ~~Holding~~ holding areas ~~shall be negatively pressurized~~ with regard to adjacent spaces and exhaust~~ed~~ directly outdoors.

b. ~~Holding I-3 areas shall have a dedicated HVAC system.~~ If a branch serves an I-3 area, then that branch shall not serve any adjacent area outside of the I-3 holding area.

Commented [PB26]: [FMB] The first sentence is a significant change depending on the definition of "dedicated". Suggest only incorporating the last sentence into the modifications.

Configure mechanical rooms with clear circulation aisles and adequate access to all equipment. The mechanical rooms shall have adequate doorways or areaways and staging areas to permit the replacement and removal of equipment without the need to demolish walls or relocate other equipment.

c. Secure ~~Mechanical~~ mechanical system diffusers and grilles in public and staff areas ~~must be secure~~ from tampering, particularly in areas that provide some degree of seclusion and privacy (restrooms, attorney-client visitation rooms, etc.). Maximum-security detention-type grilles, secured with tamper-proof fasteners, must be provided at all areas accessible to prisoners.

d. If required by the risk assessment, provide mailrooms ~~shall be provided~~ with once-through air that is ~~100~~ 100 percent exhausted from the facility. Mailrooms shall be maintained under a negative-pressure condition relative to surrounding spaces.

e. Do not locate ~~Water~~ water lines ~~shall not be located~~ directly above motor control centers, panels, or disconnect switches, as required by code. The mechanical rooms shall have sloped floors with floor drains in proximity to the equipment served.

f. Do not install ~~No~~ water lines ~~are permitted~~ in the ceiling or overhead in electrical rooms, except for fire sprinkler piping protecting the room or chilled water and condenser water piping serving the dedicated cooling equipment in the room.

g. Do not install ~~No~~ water lines ~~are permitted~~ in the ceiling or overhead in communication rooms. See chapter 20, section 20.B.11.

h. For elevator machine rooms, provide a dedicated cooling or ventilating system ~~must be provided~~ to maintain elevator machine room temperature as required by geographical location.

i. For emergency generator rooms, design the environmental systems ~~shall~~ to meet the requirements of NFPA 110 (Standard for Emergency and Standby Power Systems) and the combustion air requirements of the equipment to remove heat gain from equipment operation. The air supply and exhaust shall be located so that air does not get contaminated. Refer to chapter 15, Electrical Criteria, for generator requirements.

j. For UPS-designated battery rooms, design space to accommodate battery and exhaust requirements per code.

k. Design ~~The~~ the entrances and exits at loading docks and service entrances ~~shall be designed~~ to reduce infiltration and collection of outside debris. Loading docks must be maintained~~.~~ at negative pressure relative to the rest of the building. Enclosed vehicle sally ports shall be ventilated to prevent buildup of engine exhaust fumes and transferring of fumes into the building. Sally ports shall be equipped with ventilation fans controlled by a carbon monoxide detection and control system to automatically purge the sally port when unsafe levels of carbon monoxide are detected. The carbon monoxide sensors shall be uniformly located throughout the enclosed space and near each stairwell or exit. They shall be certified by the manufacturer to be accurate within ~~±~~5 percent of measurement, factory calibrated~~;~~ to drift no more than 5 percent per year~~,~~; and ~~to~~ require calibration no more frequently than once a year.

l. Design ~~Toilets shall have dedicated exhaust systems.~~ Janitor and housekeeping closets ~~shall~~ to maintain negative pressure in the rooms relative to the surrounding spaces.

m. Install ~~All dedicated high volume copy roomsareas shall have~~ a localized exhaust adjacent to ~~high-volume~~ reproduction machinery in all dedicated high-volume copy rooms, which ~~and~~ shall be negative in pressure to the surrounding areas.

2. Criteria for Mechanical Spaces

Service access shall be provided for equipment per manufacturer's recommendations. Access doors or panels shall be readily operable and sized to allow full access. Access doors and panels in courtrooms must be positioned so as not to impede judicial proceedings. Make provisions for removing and replacing major equipment over the life of the building~~.~~ without

Commented [DP27]: Gensler: change the reference to state the chapter and section numbers.

Commented [PB28]: [FMB Suggest removing language. Should just be code compliant. As written, someone could read that an entire dedicated exhaust system is required to be independent from other areas that may be exhausted (such as janitor rooms)

Commented [PB29]: [FMB Recommended updates to clarify that a copier next to someone's desk does not require to be exhausted. Language is intended for high volume copiers (which are in dedicated rooms)

damage to the structure. Provide adequate access to all devices with maintenance service requirements. Provide pathways for all major equipment that cannot be maintained from floor level. ~~For boiler rooms c~~Coordinate layout of equipment prior to construction. ~~Ensure enough space is provided to allow for equipment and all clearances.~~ Provide additional floor space for future growth of 10 percent~~%~~.

Specifically regarding housekeeping pads, they shall be at least 6″ wider on all sides than the equipment they support and a minimum height of 3-1/2″ above the roof level or finished floor. The pad shall be of adequate height to trap and drain condensate from heat transfer coils to the condensate drain.

13.E PLUMBING AND PIPING SYSTEMS CRITERIA

1. Pump Systems and Hydronic Heating Water

a. Each terminal unit or coil shall be provided with isolation valves~~,~~ on both supply and return lines~~,~~ and a flow-indicating balance valve on the return line. Isolation valves shall be provided on all major pipe branches, such as at each floor level, building wing, or mechanical room. Each pumping system shall be provided with a standby pump and ~~shall be~~ configured for automatic lead/standby operation.

b. Each boiler shall be provided with a control and piping arrangement that protects the boiler from thermal shock.

c. Hydronic hot water space heating pumps shall be selected to operate at 1,750 rpm maximum peak efficiency. Pumps with speeds greater than or equal to 3,500 rpm shall not be selected unless project noise criteria are proven to be met with them running at high speed.

d. Variable-volume pumping systems with greater than 5 pump horsepower (HP) shall be provided for all secondary piping systems ~~with pump horsepower (HP) greater than 5 HP~~.

e. Air separators and vents must be provided on hot water systems to remove accumulated air within the system. Automatic bleed valves shall be used only in accessible spaces in mechanical rooms where they can be observed by maintenance personnel, and they must be piped directly to open drains.

Manual bleed valves shall be used at terminal units and coils. Likewise, system drains shall be provided at the main system low points of the heating system and ~~at~~ each heating coil.

f. ~~For boiler rooms coordinate layout of equipment prior to construction. Ensure enough space is provided to allow for equipment and all clearances. Provide additional floor space for future growth of 10%.~~

2. Piping Systems

All piping systems shall be designed and sized in accordance with *ASHRAE Handbook—Fundamentals* and *ASHRAE Handbook—HVAC Systems and Equipment*.

a. Materials acceptable for piping systems are black steel and copper.

b. Stainless steel is an acceptable material for domestic water lines 6″ and larger. Connection points where the stainless steel connects to piping or fittings composed of other metals shall have dielectric corrosion protection.

c. Press-connect fittings such as ProPress or the equivalent may be used~~,~~ as long as they meet all other applicable code and standards requirements. When using such fittings, they shall be installed per the manufacturer's instructions, including cutting and chamfering the pipe square and ~~chamfered and~~ fully inserting it into the fitting before pressing occurs.

d. No polyvinyl chloride (PVC), cross-linked polyethylene (PEX), or other types of plastic

DIVISION TWO: TECHNICAL CRITERIA
11 Architectural Criteria
12 Structural Criteria
13 MECHANICAL CRITERIA
13.A Objectives
13.B HVAC Criteria
13.C Humidification and Water Treatment
13.F Insulation
13.G Thermometers and Gauges
15 Electrical Criteria
16 Lighting Criteria
17 Network and Communication Systems
18 Audiovisual Systems
19 Acoustical Criteria
20 Fire Protection Criteria

Commented [PB30]: [FMB] Redundnant to 13.D.2 (maintenance access). Will default to the JCC team if want to add an additional 10% sqft to projects

Commented [DP30R2]: Moved to that section and removed duplicative language. Kept 10% extra because we are often tight in these spaces.

pipe are permitted within the building.

e. Low-loss design principles shall be followed.

3. Piping Accessories

3.1 Isolation of Piping at Equipment

Isolation valves, shutoff valves, bypass circuits, flanges, and unions shall be provided as necessary for piping at equipment to facilitate equipment repair and replacement. Equipment requiring isolation includes boilers, chillers, pumps, coils, terminal units, and heat exchangers. Isolation valves shall be provided on all major pipe branches, such as at each floor level, building wing, or bank of fixtures~~Valves shall also be provided for zones off vertical risers~~.

3.2 Piping System and Equipment Identification

All pipes, valves, and equipment in mechanical rooms, shafts, ceilings, and other spaces accessible to maintenance personnel must be identified with color-coded bands and permanent tags indicating the system type and direction of flow for piping systems or type and number for equipment per ANSI color and labeling standards and the plumbing code.

Gas piping and sprinkler lines must be identified as prescribed by the fire code.

4. Domestic Water Supply Systems

Water hammer arrest~~co~~rs shall be provided per Plumbing Drainage Institute Standard PDI-WH-201 (~~Plumbing Drainage Institute,~~ Water Hammer Arrester) at every branch to multiple fixtures and on every floor for ~~both hot and~~ cold water. All plumbing fixtures and equipment that supply water pressure should be below the 80 psi maximum threshold per California Plumbing Code allowance (CPC, § 608.2), unless provided with a pressure-reducing device.

4.1 Cold Water Service

A pressurized piping distribution system shall incorporate a separate supply line from the tap in the existing outside water main to the equipment area inside the building. The water meters furnished by the local department of public works shall meter water service inside the facility property boundaries. Incoming service shall have an approved backflow prevention device as required by code. The irrigation systems must be submetered for deduct billing of the sewer system.

The internal distribution system shall include equipment that is capable of maintaining adequate pressure and flow in all parts of the system in accordance with the plumbing code. A booster pumping system with minimum N+1 standby capacity ~~s~~hall be used if the water pressure is inadequate to provide sufficient pressure at the most remote and/or highest fixture. The water pressure at the fixture shall be in accordance with the plumbing code.

4.2 Hot Water Service

Heaters using natural gas, electricity, or steam as an energy source shall generate hot water. Selection shall be supported by an economic evaluation incorporating first cost, operating costs, and life cycle costs in conjunction with HVAC energy provisions. Domestic hot water supply shall be generated at 140°F and ~~shall be~~ capable of providing tempered water to at least 121°F using a three-way mixing valve~~,~~ before supplying to all plumbing fixtures. Heat pump water heaters shall be used where possible to save energy. Circulation systems or temperature maintenance systems shall be included. Hot water shall be available at the farthest fixture from the heating source within 30 seconds of the time of operation. Where a hot water recirculation or electric resistance heat trace wire system is installed, the

Commented [PB31]: [FMB Recommend revisiting this section (mainly regarding valve tags). With today's technology (BIM) we are finding owners are not wanting to spend the $$$ on valve tags as they can identify the needs though other means

Commented [DP31R2]: We still need this since our models, database, and service providers are not yet technologically sophisticated.

Commented [PB32]: [FMB] Not required on heating water systems typically as there are not fast closing valves on high velocity systems.

Commented [PB33]: [PB] Some flows/demands may dictate triplex solution.

branch from the recirculating loop or electric resistance heat trace wire to the fixture should not exceed 25 ~~feet~~ in length per the California Plumbing Code. The application of point-of-use instantaneous hot water generators is permitted for isolated or incidental use at terminal fixtures and single-accommodation toilet rooms.

5. Sanitary Waste and Vent Systems

5.1 Waste Pipe and Fittings

A complete sanitary collection system shall be provided for all plumbing fixtures, floor drains, and kitchen equipment designed in compliance with applicable codes and standards. Piping shall be cast iron soil pipe with hub and spigot or heavy-duty no-hub joints and fittings. Coordinate drain size with fire protection design (see chapter 20, Fire Protection Criteria) so full-flow drainage is provided. Gravity-drained waste piping shall slope at no less than 1/4″ per foot of run unless approved by the authority having jurisdiction because of site conditions.

5.2 Floor Drains

Floor drains shall be provided in all private and public toilet rooms, ~~there is no exception~~except the detention cells, for which floor drains shall be provided outside each pair of detention cells. Floor drain strainers in secure areas shall have maximum 5/16″~~"~~ opening sizes. ~~P~~Provide floor drains in ~~,~~ mechanical equipment rooms, locations where condensate from equipment collects, locations where emergency showers or eyewashes drain to the floor, any wet rooms, and parking garages and ramps ~~any wet rooms~~.

Condensate piping shall be routed as required by the plumbing code. ~~See~~ Refer to ~~chapter~~ chapter 8, ~~section~~ 8.E.8 for more information regarding floor drains in holding areas. In general, floor drains shall have a cast iron body type with 6″ diameter stainless steel strainers for public toilets, kitchen areas, and other public areas. Provide vandal- proof fasteners for floor drains where there is public access. Equipment room areas shall require ~~large~~ large-diameter cast iron strainers, and parking garages shall require ~~large~~ large-diameter tractor grates.

Drainage for ramps shall require either trench drains or roadway inlets when exposed to rainfall and connect only to the storm drainage system, unless otherwise required on a site-specific basis. Storm drainage and sanitary sewer drainage systems should be drained separately as required by the California Plumbing Code. An automatic trap primer system shall be provided for P traps, as required by the California Plumbing Code. Power for trap primers shall include a disconnect switch. Trap guards that are International Association of Plumbing and Mechanical Officials (IAPMO) listed per the plumbing code are also an acceptable means for trap protection.

5.3 Sanitary Waste Equipment

Specific drains in kitchen areas (not employee break rooms) shall discharge into a grease interceptor before connecting into the sanitary sewer in accordance with the requirements of the state health department and local authorities. Sinks with garbage disposals may not discharge into a grease interceptor. If a sink produces grease waste, it shall not have a garbage disposal. Floor drains or trench drains in garage locations are to discharge into sand/oil interceptors, as required by the plumbing code.

5.4 Automatic Sewage Ejectors

Sewage ejectors shall be used only where gravity drainage is not possible. If sewage ejectors are required, only the lowest floors of the building shall be connected to them; fixtures on upper floors shall use gravity flow to the public sewer. Sewage

DIVISION TWO: TECHNICAL CRITERIA
11 Architectural Criteria
12 Structural Criteria
13 MECHANICAL CRITERIA
13.A Objectives
13.B HVAC Criteria
13.C Humidification and Water Treatment
13.D Mechanical Requirements for Specific Spaces
13.F Insulation
13.G Thermometers and Gauges
14 Building Management System Criteria
15 Electrical Criteria
16 Lighting Criteria
17 Network and Communication Systems
18 Audiovisual Systems
19 Acoustical Criteria
20 Fire Protection Criteria

Commented [PB34]: Would not recommend floor drains in holding cells. Suggest language be added to locate drains in the vicinity of holding cells for clarity.

Commented [PB35]: [FMB] Note to JCC, this is above code. Code does not require drains in single fixture restrooms

Commented [DP35R2]: We constantly deal with clogged toilets leading to major leak damages in our buildings. Addition of drains is a good investment for long-term benefits.

Commented [PB36]: Added to reduce chances for shackles snagging in the drain cover

Commented [DP36R2]: Added per CFAC-WG suggestion.

Commented [DP37]: Gensler: state chapter and section numbers.

All insulation shall comply with fire and smoke hazard ratings indicated by ASTM Standard E84, the NFPA, and UL. Accessories such as adhesives, mastics, cements, and tapes shall have the same or better component ratings.

ejectors shall be nonclog, screenless duplex pumps, with each discharge not less than 4″ in diameter. They shall be connected to the emergency power system, if available.

5.5 Rainwater Drainage System

Pipes and fittings shall be in compliance with local codes and sized based on local rainfall intensity. Roof drains shall be cast iron body type with ~~high~~ high ~~dome~~ grates and ~~membrane~~ membrane ~~clamping~~ rings that are manufactured as part of the assembly. Each roof drain shall have a separate overflow drain located adjacent to it. Overflow drains shall be the same drains as the roof drains except with a damming weir extension. Overflow drains shall route to discharge in an obvious location. Combination roof drain or~~/~~ overflow design ~~are~~is ~~allowed~~permissible per the California~~A p~~Plumbing ~~c~~Code for buildings that are three~~3~~ stories or taller.

5.6 Plumbing Fixtures

All plumbing fixtures and faucets shall be commercial grade and WaterSense labeled or equal~~, commercial grade type~~, ~~similar to hotel type fixtures.~~ Provide automatic flush valves for urinals and water closets and automatic faucets in public toilet rooms. Sensors shall be self-powered hydroelectric type or have a minimum three-year battery operation life. For detention fixtures, see chapter 8, In-Custody Defendant Receiving, Holding, and Transport. Water closet carriers that are rated for 500~~-~~ pound ~~s~~rated shall be provided for all wall-mounted water closets. Floor-mounted carriers shall be provided for all wall-mounted urinals and lavatories. A hose bibb shall be provided in each multifixture restroom.

5.7 Leak Detection System

Provide leak detection and automatic water isolation capabilities for plumbing and hydronic systems based on available technology and overall cost-effectiveness. At a minimum, provide smart valves with integrated low-flow sensing at each building water service entrance. The system shall monitor incoming water flow through the BMS and compare flow conditions against programmed occupancy schedules. Water flow detected outside of normal occupied periods shall initiate an alarm sequence. The system shall have the capability to automatically isolate the incoming water service upon detection of abnormal continuous flow conditions indicative of a potential leak.

~~A leak detection system shall be included for the plumbing and hydronic systems based on available technology and cost-effectiveness. Smart valves integrated with the Building Management System (BMS) shall be provided for all water supply lines.~~

- ~~Enhance the flow meter at the building entrance and add an isolation valve. Monitor the incoming water feed. Set up occupancy schedules in the BMS system that would send an alarm if water is detected outside of the occupancy schedule, and a control valve would shut to stop all incoming water makeup upon detection.~~

~~A leak detection system shall be considered for the plumbing and hydronic systems based on available technology and cost-effectiveness.~~

5.8 Commissioning

Commissioning of all water systems shall be done per chapter 14, Building Management System Criteria.

6. Fuel Piping

6.1 Natural and Propane Gas Systems

a. Service entrance: Gas piping entering the building must be protected from accidental damage by vehicles, foundation settlement, or vibration. Where practical, the entrance shall be above grade and provided with a self-tightening

Commented [PB38]: [FMB] Suggested added language for industry standard of care. 3 story comment is to help address potential for leaves getting into the system (if can be left off and just be in compliance with code if there is consensus otherwise)

Commented [PB39]: [FMB] too ambiguous

Commented [PB40]: Revised language for clarity

Commented [DP40R2]: Changes made based on CFAC-WG direction.

swing joint before gas pipe enters the building. The provision of a seismic gas shutoff valve is not required for facilities that conform to the following provisions of the building and fire codes:

- The building structure ~~is classified h~~as a one~~-~~hour~~–~~rated classification.
- The building has an approved and operational fire sprinkler system.

b. Gas shall not be piped through confined spaces~~,~~ such as trenches or unventilated shafts. All spaces containing equipment such as gas-fired boilers, chillers, and generators shall be ventilated. Vertical shafts carrying gas piping shall be ventilated. Gas meters shall ~~be located in enclosed rooms that~~ comply with local utility regulations.

Commented [PB41]: Most projects do not dictate the costs of putting the gas meter in an enclosed room nor does the local utility district typically endorse.

6.2 Fuel Oil Systems

a. Above-ground f~~F~~uel oil–piping systems shall use at least schedule 40 black steel or black iron piping. Fittings shall be of the same grade as the pipe material. Valves shall be bronze, steel, or iron and may be screwed, welded, flanged, or grooved. Double-wall piping with a leak detection system shall be used for buried fuel

Commented [PB42]: [FMB] Added clarity

piping. Duplex fuel oil pumps with basket strainers and exterior enclosures shall be used for pumping the oil to the fuel-burning equipment.

b. No underground fuel oil storage tanks shall be installed in a courthouse facility. Aboveground storage tanks shall be installed at ground level or higher whenever possible. The location of the storage tank's fuel delivery port shall provide a safe, protected location for fuel delivery vehicles to park and exit. The parking and work area for fuel deliveries shall have a concrete surface.

c. The fuel storage capacity of each generator system shall be determined by the emergency response plan requirements. Coordinate the fuel storage capacities with the requirements described in chapter 15, Electrical Criteria. The location of the generator system exhaust discharge shall be selected to minimize the potential of entrainment of exhaust fumes into the outside air intakes. Any additional external fuel tanks for the generator system shall be located adjacent to the generator in compliance with current and applicable fire code and UL listings for ~~double~~ double-containment tanks.

13.F INSULATION

1. Piping Insulation

Insulation shall be provided on all piping systems in accordance with the California Energy Code or where condensation has the potential ~~of~~ to form~~ing~~. Insulation that is subject to damage or reduction in thermal resistivity if wetted shall be enclosed with a vapor seal (such as a vapor barrier jacket).

Insulation assembly shall have zero permeability. All exposed piping up to 8′ above finished floor shall have PVC jacketing. All insulated piping exposed to the weather shall be protected with aluminum jacketing and sealed seams ~~sealed~~.

2. Duct Insulation

Insulation shall be provided on all duct systems in accordance with the California Energy Code. All duct insulation materials used as internal insulation exposed to the airstream shall be in accordance with UL 181 or ASTM C1071 erosion tests. The materials shall not promote or support the growth of fungi or bacteria. All exposed, externally insulated ductwork shall have sealed jacketing equal to Alumaguard. All concealed, externally insulated ductwork shall have foil face jacketing. Supply air duct insulation shall have a vapor barrier jacket. The insulation shall cover the duct system with a continuous, unbroken vapor seal. Insulation assembly shall have zero permeability.

All return air and exhaust air distribution systems shall be insulated if required by the California Energy Code. The insulation of return air and exhaust air distribution systems shall be evaluated for each project and ~~for~~ each system to guard against condensation formation and heat gain or loss on a recirculating or heat ~~-~~recovery system~~,~~ and for acoustics.

3. Equipment Insulation

All equipment—including air-handling units, chilled and hot water pumps, and heat exchangers—must be insulated in accordance with the California Energy Code.

4. Thermal Pipe Insulation for Plumbing Systems

DIVISION TWO: TECHNICAL CRITERIA
11 Architectural Criteria
12 Structural Criteria
13 MECHANICAL CRITERIA
13.A Objectives
13.B HVAC Criteria
13.C Humidification and Water Treatment
13.D Mechanical Requirements for Specific Spaces
13.G Thermometers and Gauges
14 Building Management System Criteria
15 Electrical Criteria
16 Lighting Criteria
17 Network and Communication Systems
18 Audiovisual Systems
19 Acoustical Criteria
20 Fire Protection Criteria

Commented [PB43]: [FMB] Added clarity

Commented [PB44]: [FMB] Added clarity

Btu = British thermal unit

Cal/OSHA = Division of Occupational Safety and Health

CSA = Canadian Standards Association.

dBA = decibels

EMT = electrical metallic tubing

EPDM = ethylene propylene diene monomer

fpm = feet per minute

SF / ft² = square feet

hr = hour

ID = inside diameter

MERV = minimum efficiency reporting value

TBD = to be determined

TEFC = totally enclosed, fan cooled

VFD = variable-frequency drive

VSD = variable-speed drive

WC = water column

Insulate all sanitary sewer vents terminating through the roof, if outdoor conditions justify, to prevent condensation from forming. Include a vapor barrier jacket on this insulation. All horizontal storm water piping shall be insulated from the drain body to the first vertical drop, as required, to prevent condensation.

13.G THERMOMETERS AND GAUGES

Major mechanical equipment shall be provided with instrumentation that includes Instrument Society of America (ISA) data sheets and permanent test ports to verify critical parameters, such as capacity, pressures, temperatures, and flow rates. Following are the general instrumentation requirements:

- Thermometers and pressure gauges are required on the suction and discharge of all pumps, chillers, boilers, heat exchangers, cooling coils, heating coils, and cooling towers.
- To avoid pressure gauge tolerance errors, a single pressure gauge may be installed, with a valve to sense both supply and return conditions.
- For cCoils with flows of less than 10 gallons per minute, , instead provide shall have permanent provisions for use of portable instruments to check temperatures and pressures. Provide temperature gauges on coils equal to or greater than 10 gallons per minute
- Differential static pressure gauge assemblies shall be placed across filters in air-handling units.

1. Airflow Measuring Devices

Airflow measuring grids are required for all outside air systems. Airflow measuring grids must be sized to give accurate readings at minimum flow.

2. Water Flow Measuring Devices

Manually read wWater flow or energy measuring devices shall be required for each chilled water refrigeration machine, hot water boiler, and pump, as well as connections to district energy plants. Individual water flow or energy-measuring devices shall be provided for chilled water lines serving computer rooms and chilled water and hot water lines to leased spaces and the central heating and chilled water system. These individual Flow measuring devices shall be capable of communicating with the BMS, and trending shall be enabled per chapter 14, Building Management System Criteria. Water flow and airflow measuring devices shall confirm or validate California Energy Code and ASHRAE Standard 90.1 requirements before occupancy.

Commented [PB45]: [FMB] Added clarity

Commented [LD46]: Sidebar:

"ft² = square feet" abbreviated SF in other chapters.

Commented [DP46R2]: I have added both since they are used interchangeably in the document.

Commented [PB47]: [FMB] Added clarity

Commented [DP47R2]: Phil, I am not clear on the reason for adding instead. Is the comma at the right place? Please make sure the sentence is reading correctly.

Commented [PB47R3]: Additional adjustments made (see 1st bullet also) to language to clarify that the intent is not to have temperature (or pressure gauges) at coils that have less than 10 gpm. Using portable instruments via a permanent provision such as "Pete's plug" on the lower (smaller) flow coils is standard of care. For instance, you would not want big temperature (or pressure) gauges at each terminal (VAV) unit.

Table 13.3 AHU Matrix (Airflow Ranges >5,000 to <60,000 cfm)

AHU COMPONENT ITEMS	MINIMUM REQUIREMENTS
Filters	ASHRAE 52.2, rigid or bag filters, MERV 13, low-pressure drop, rated at 500 fpm: 0.08″ WC clean, 1.0″ WC dirty, >150 grams minimum ~~dirt~~ dirt-holding capacity
Prefilter ~~Frames~~frames	Front- or side-loading type~~,~~ galvanized steel construction, incorporating closed-cell gasket edge with permanently attached 316 stainless steel hinged or locking clips that interlock with filter header, <5% bypass leakage at 2″ of static pressure
Filter ~~Media~~ media ~~Gaskets~~gaskets	Closed-cell neoprene or EPDM gasket, bonded to filter track header
Outside ~~Air~~ air ~~Makeup~~ makeup ~~Dampers~~dampers	Low-leakage control dampers
Preheat ~~Coils~~ coils (optional~~,~~ ~~to be determined [~~TBD~~]~~)	Copper tube / aluminum ~~copper~~ fins; >0.049″/0.0~~84~~0″ >6 fins/inch; coastal locations to use copper fins
Preheat ~~Coil~~ coil ~~Drain~~ drain ~~Pan~~ pan (optional~~,~~ TBD)	Stainless steel 304, double sloped—no~~—~~standing~~-~~ water design, >1/4″/ft minimum slope, 16-gauge construction or approved equal
Steam ~~Humidifier~~ humidifier ~~Section~~ section (optional~~,~~ TBD)	Stainless steel 304 grid type (DriSteem, UltraSorb, or approved equal)
Supply and/or ~~Return~~ return ~~Fan~~ fan ~~Systems~~systems	TBD by engineer
Supply ~~Fan~~ fan ~~Motors~~motors: ~~Inverter~~ inverter ~~Duty~~ duty ~~Motors~~motors	Motor shaft grounding protection; this requirement is to increase the service life of the motor-associated VFDs. ~~-~~EC motors are acceptable to meet the intent.
Supply ~~Fan~~ fan ~~Type~~type	Aluminum, steel, or composite airfoil type, AMCA certified—continuous welded scroll section, no bolts or screws protruding into the air~~-~~stream
Fan ~~Wheel~~ wheel ~~Protection~~protection	Cal/OSHA General Industry Safety Orders, California Code of Regulations, title 8, art. 41, section 3995 et seq.~~-~~ ~~(Article 41, Prime Movers and Machinery)~~
Fan ~~Isolation~~ isolation (vertical/horizontal)	>2″ spring height with ~~seismic~~ seismic-rated captive housing
Cooling ~~Coils~~ coil ~~Tubes~~tubes	Copper tubes ≥5/8″ diameter, 0.020″ min. tube wall
Cooling ~~Coil~~ coil ~~Fins~~fins	Aluminum fins (min. 0.008″)~~;~~ coastal locations to use copper fins: maximum of 10 fins/inch
Coil ~~Casing~~casing	Stainless steel 304 construction.
Coil ~~Access~~access	Field cleanable and side access removable without cutting and welding
Cooling ~~Coil~~ coil ~~Drain~~ drain ~~Pan~~pan	Stainless steel 304, 18-gauge construction, double-sloped—no~~—~~standing~~-~~water design, >1/5″/foot minimum slope, pan extends at >1″ downstream and >1″ upstream of the coil face sections or approved equal
AHU ~~Casing~~casing: ~~Double~~double-~~Wall~~ walled ~~Construction~~construction, ~~Internal~~ internal ~~Wall~~ wall ~~Insulation~~insulation, ~~Solid~~ solid ~~Smooth~~ smooth i~~I~~nterior, ~~Wipe~~wipe-~~Down~~ down, and	Aluminum or galvanized steel; manufacturer ~~shall~~ to provide calculations certifying that internal insulation meets or exceeds a 0.0769 Btu/hr/ft²/F; double-walled, thermal break construction with closed-cell polyurethane foam or mineral wool insulation and no exterior ~~and~~ or interior caulked seams

Table 13.3 continues on next page

Commented [PB49]: [FMB] Updated to meet current industry standard of care

DIVISION TWO: TECHNICAL CRITERIA
11 Architectural Criteria
12 Structural Criteria
13 MECHANICAL CRITERIA
13.A Objectives
13.B HVAC Criteria
13.C Humidification and Water Treatment
13.D Mechanical Requirements for Specific Spaces
13.E Plumbing and Piping Systems Criteria
13.F Insulation
14 Building Management System Criteria
15 Electrical Criteria
16 Lighting Criteria
17 Network and Communication Systems
18 Audiovisual Systems
19 Acoustical Criteria
20 Fire Protection Criteria

Table 13.3 AHU Matrix (Airflow Ranges >5,000 to <60,000 cfm) *continued*

AHU COMPONENT ITEMS	MINIMUM REQUIREMENTS
AHU ~~f~~Flooring (1/8″ minimum thickness); ~~the~~ design ~~shall~~ to prevent floor "oil canning" with 200-pound single-point load over 1 ~~square foot~~SF area	Aluminum with aluminum casing or galvanized steel with galvanized steel casing
AHU ~~Interior~~ interior ~~Lighting~~lighting	Interior light fixture, NEMA 3R housing with exterior-mounted control switch
Supply ~~Fan~~ fan ~~Motors~~ motors (TEFC) (1,200–1,800 rpm)	Label for inverter duty, high-efficiency, TEFC <2 HP~~;~~, premium high-efficiency, TEFC >3 HP with sealed grease bearings. EC motors are acceptable to meet the intent.
Fan ~~Access~~ access for >20 HP ~~Motors~~motors	Overhead support beam to allow for the removal of motor and fan assemblies
AHU ~~Door~~ door ~~Access~~access	Each section—double-gasket closed-cell neoprene
AHU ~~Under~~ under~~f~~Floor ~~Insulation~~insulation	Equal to U-factor of walls
AHU ~~Minimum~~ minimum ~~Frame~~ frame ~~Rail~~ rail ~~Height~~height	>3″ height, vertical flange-to-flange edges
AHU ~~Frame~~ frame ~~Deflection~~deflection	>1/240 of overall length
Cooling ~~Coil~~ coil ~~Velocity~~ velocity (design)	<475 fpm
Filter ~~Face~~ face ~~Velocity~~ velocity (design)	<475 fpm
AHU ~~Casing~~ casing ~~Leakage~~leakage	≤1.5% of total design air flow
Smoke ~~Detector~~detector	UL/CSA-listed (low-velocity type 200–650 fpm)
AHU ~~Test~~ test ~~Ports~~ports	1/2″ ID port with threaded cap for each access door
AHU ~~Variable~~VSD ~~Speed Drive (VSD)~~ ~~Inverter~~inverter	Any of the following: Yaskawa, Danfoss, or ABB only with integral bypass assembly or approved equal
AHU ~~Drain~~ drain ~~Pan~~ pan ~~Void~~ void ~~Insulation~~insulation	Expanded foam type or approved equal
AHU ~~Underfloor~~ underfloor ~~i~~Insulation	Compressed fiber or expanded foam type or approved equal
AHU ~~Bottom~~ bottom ~~Plate~~plate	TBD by engineer
Seismic ~~Design~~ design (California)	Zone TBD, C-~~Factor~~ factor >TBD
AHU ~~Airfoil~~ airfoil ~~Dampers~~dampers	Low-~~-~~leakage type with shaft seals
AHU ~~Coil~~ coil ~~Piping~~piping	Gasketed casing penetrations with identification labels
AHU ~~Cooling~~ cooling ~~Drain~~ drain ~~Pan~~ pan ~~Piping~~piping	Piped and sloped to exterior for connection
AHU ~~Coil~~ coil ~~Section~~ section ~~Drain~~ drain ~~Piping~~piping	Floor drain capped and pipe and slope to exterior with thread cap
AHU ~~Sound~~ sound ~~Criteria~~ criteria (at 1 meter)	<75 A-weighted ~~decibels (~~dBA~~)~~ ±3
Electrical ~~Services~~services	TBD, ~~3~~ three phase; 120 volts, ~~1~~ one phase
Electrical ~~Conduits~~conduits	EMT or PVC
Electrical ~~Safety~~safety	Manual disconnect and emergency stop button per NEC
Electrical ~~Controls~~controls	Color-coded and numbered wiring between electrical components at designated interconnections for testing and factory commissioning (refer to chapter 14, Building Management System Criteria, for sample sensor list).

Table 13.3 continues on next page

Table 13.3 AHU Matrix (Airflow Ranges >5,000 to <60,000 cfm) *continued*

AHU COMPONENT ITEMS	MINIMUM REQUIREMENTS
Warranty	18 months from date of shipment from factory; 12 months from startup; 8 months from completion of onsite acceptance testing
Factory cCleaning and ~~Packaging~~ packaging for ~~Shipping~~shipping	Surface wipe-down of interior, vacuum clean interior, provide protection of openings, exterior shrink-wrap for shipping, dedicated trucking to the job site

Notes:

Btu = British thermal unit.
Cal/OSHA = Division of Occupational Safety and Health.
cfm = cubic feet per minute
CSA = Canadian Standards Association.
dBA = decibels.
EMT = electrical metallic tubing.
EPDM = ethylene propylene diene monomer.
fpm = feet per minute.
SF / ft² = square feet
hr = hour.
ID = inside diameter.
MERV = minimum efficiency reporting value.
TBD = to be determined.
TEFC = totally enclosed, fan cooled.
VFD = variable-frequency drive.
VSD = variable-speed drive.
WC = water column.

DIVISION TWO: TECHNICAL CRITERIA
11 Architectural Criteria
12 Structural Criteria
13 MECHANICAL CRITERIA
13.A Objectives
13.B HVAC Criteria
13.C Humidification and Water Treatment
13.D Mechanical Requirements for Specific Spaces
13.E Plumbing and Piping Systems Criteria
13.F Insulation
14 Building Management System Criteria
15 Electrical Criteria
16 Lighting Criteria
17 Network and Communication Systems
18 Audiovisual Systems
19 Acoustical Criteria
20 Fire Protection Criteria

Commented [LD50]: See previous note about this.

DIVISION TWO: TECHNICAL CRITERIA

14 BUILDING MANAGEMENT SYSTEM CRITERIA

SECTION	TOPIC	PAGE
14.A	Objectives	14.2
14.B	Building Management System	14.2
14.C	Level of Integration	14.4
14.D	Energy Conservation Design	14.4
14.E	Design Features	14.6
14.F	Commissioning	14.6



Superior Court of California, County of San Joaquin
Stockton, CA
NBBJ

The criteria as outlined in this chapter shall be used in designing and selecting the building management system.

See chapter 17, Network and Communication Systems, for requirements to develop a technology program for each court building project.

The building management system device protocols and software will provide the following functions:

- Data collection;
- Data archiving;
- Data trending;
- Calendar scheduling;
- Programming and adjustment of system-functional set points;
- Automatic and manual control of addressable field devices;
- Access to building system flow diagrams~~,~~ with navigation using graphical user interface (GUI);
- Energy management monitoring and curtailment;
- Password reset; and
- Alarm-level notification.

14.A OBJECTIVES

This section identifies the criteria for systems that provide integrated control, monitoring, and communication of the heating, ventilation, and air-conditioning (HVAC) and plumbing systems within a court facility. The objectives of building automation are improved occupant comfort, efficient operation of building systems, reduction in energy consumption and operating costs, and improved life cycle of utilities.

The means and content of information to be reported remotely shall be discussed with the Judicial Council and the project team. For detailed Judicial Council requirements for the building management system (BMS), see tool 6, Building Management System Guidelines.

14.B BUILDING MANAGEMENT SYSTEM

1. General Requirements

a. The BMS shall be designed to automatically respond to local climatic conditions and energy ~~-~~efficiency opportunities by providing cost-effective energy conservation measures (ECMs) while ensuring set point control.

b. A new control system shall be nonproprietary for interoperability (meaning the ability of disparate control system devices to work together through the digital exchange of relevant information). The system will allow third-party protocol acceptance and processing of inputs from devices supplied by different vendors.

c. The BMS depends on local area support. Consult with the Judicial Council before determining the allowable manufacturers for each project site.

2. Minimum BMS Requirements

a. The facility local area network (LAN) and device level network shall be based on industry~~-~~ standard open platforms and use commonly available operation, management, and application software. All software packages and databases shall be licensed to the Judicial Council of California to allow unrestricted maintenance and operation of the BMS.

b. The BMS system shall use the ~~local area network (~~LAN~~),~~ and building-provided network switches~~,~~ and infrastructure. All devices requiring a network connection shall be identified and added to the ~~"N~~network ~~Port~~ port ~~Count~~ count ~~Matrix~~matrix.~~"~~ A temporary network can be used to commission the system until the building network is active and connections can be transferred to the building infrastructure.

c. All communication products shall have a ~~BTL (~~Building Automation and Control Network (BACnet)~~BACnet~~ Testing Laboratories (BTL) mark certifying that the product was independently tested by a third-party testing facility and ~~complied~~ complies with ~~Building Automation and Control Network (BACnet)~~ conformance requirements.

d. Except for field-mounted instrumentation and devices, all BMS components shall be installed in field panels, also known as temperature control panels (TCPs). Panels and enclosures shall be located only within mechanical rooms or at approved locations.

e. ~~Coordinate with the electrical engineer to provide power supply sources of 120 volts of alternating current to all BMS field panel locations.~~ The selection of normal ~~power supply~~ or standby power supply facilities shall be based on project- and application~~-~~specific requirements. Coordinate with the electrical engineer to provide power supply sources of 120 volts of alternating current to all BMS field panel locations. In general, BMS panels monitoring designated building-critical alarm points shall be provided with standby power supplies. Where no standby power is available in the building, the tie-in panel shall be provided with a local uninterruptible power supply.

f. The BMS shall incorporate hardware and software resources sufficient to meet the functional requirements of the specifications.

g. BMS installation shall use standardized iconography as part of the graphical user interface (GUI). These graphical icons shall be based on the type of equipment, must be approved by the Judicial Council at the time of system design, and shall include the following, at a minimum:

- Equipment pictorial diagrams of network component devices to provide a single-line network diagram of equipment~~.~~;
- Interactive, color-coordinated graphical status symbols;
- Component-level status notifications on demand;
- Execution of password-protected global and component-level commands;
- Multiple-level alarm notifications as defined by the user;
- Network component device fault detection and diagnosis system data and alarm collection;
- Energy and utility consumption data collection;
- Environmental data collection;
- Optional wireless communication of disparate and ~~non-disparate~~similar systems; and
- Optional seismic response data collection.

h. The BMS shall consist of a series of direct digital microprocessor controllers and have a central processing station, all interconnected by a high-speed LAN. The installation of a central processing station shall depend on building size, and this requirement shall be determined by the Judicial Council before the design proceeds.

i. The failure of a TCP shall not affect the operation of other operating TCPs. Where information in the failed TCP is used by other TCPs, the unavailability of the information shall be alarmed, and alternative control strategies shall be automatically initiated. All required logic programming and point database facilities associated with an individual system shall reside in the same TCP to which the system input/output points are terminated.

j. All nonproprietary energy management software and firmware shall be resident in field hardware and shall not depend on the operator's central control system terminal. Therefore, if the central control system fails, local control devices will continue to operate at the last control set point.

k. The BAS network shall consist of an independent Ethernet ring network topology support to provide a means for the ~~IP DDC (~~Internet Protocol direct digital controllers (IP DDC) ~~controllers~~ to continue to communicate, even if one controller or network segment within the ring network stops communicating~~,~~. This scenario ~~providing~~ provides network reliability by mitigating a single point of failure in the IP/Ethernet network wiring. Refer to ~~chapter~~ chapter 17, Network and Communication Systems, which discusses integrated network architecture to provide a common backbone platform for the integration of multiple systems. The control system design shall include a cabling network that complies with Telecommunications Industry Association's~~'s~~ (TIA) -862, Structured Cabling Infrastructure Standard for Intelligent Building Systems. The LAN shall be Institute of Electrical and Electronics Engineers' (IEEE) 802.3 Standard for Ethernet over fiber or Category 6 cable with switches and routers that support 1000BASE-T gigabit Ethernet throughput.

DIVISION TWO: TECHNICAL CRITERIA
11 Architectural Criteria
12 Structural Criteria
13 Mechanical Criteria
14 BUILDING MANAGEMENT SYSTEM CRITERIA
14.A Objectives
14.B Building Management System
14.C Level of Integration
14.D Energy Conservation Design
14.E Design Features
14.F Commissioning
15 Electrical Criteria
16 Lighting Criteria
17 Network and Communication Systems
18 Audiovisual Systems
19 Acoustical Criteria
20 Fire Protection Criteria

l. A remote or local user, with proper username and password, shall have access to monitor or control the BMS functions via a graphical interface. Native internet browser-based user interfaces must be ~~HTML (~~hypertext markup language (HTML~~)~~) compliant and not require plug-ins (thin clients). The system shall be capable of supporting an unlimited number of clients using a standard secure ~~Web~~ web browser.

14.C LEVEL OF INTEGRATION

a. The building management system shall not control the fire alarm, security, lighting, or court business systems. These systems shall have independent control panels and network interfaces. The BMS shall, however, be able to monitor the status of these systems, as required, ~~in order~~ to prompt emergency operating modes of the HVAC system.

b. The control system shall be designed to use the available energy efficiently and ~~to~~ assist in troubleshooting the malfunction conditions of numerous addressable and non-addressable devices.

c. The programming of the control system shall be performed from the facility operation center or remotely via a ~~Web~~ web browser. Provide a field processing unit or ~~Web~~ web server to access the system via a ~~Web~~ web browser. Both require a password for access, and the latter shall have firewall protection.

d. ~~Ensure that~~ The installed BMS~~s~~ shall comply~~-~~ with the American Society of Heating, Refrigerating and Air-Conditioning Engineers' (ASHRAE) Standard 135-2020, introducing BACnet/~~SC (~~Secure Connect (SC), and the National Institute of Standards and Technology (NIST) Cybersecurity Framework.

e. The system must include the ability to log data created by user-selectable features.

f. The BMS shall have at least 25 percent spare memory capacity for future expansion.

g. All new systems shall be native protocol neutral and ~~shall~~ use no gateways for communication with controllers.

14.D ENERGY CONSERVATION DESIGN

ASHRAE Guideline 36, High-Performance Sequences of Operation for HVAC Systems, shall be used when developing building-specific sequences of operations (SOOs). The HVAC control algorithms shall include optimized, environmentally linked start/stop for equipment and ~~shall~~ be in accordance with the project's associated energy goals and the current California Energy Code, at a minimum. Commissioning of the SOOs on all applicable systems shall be done before building occupancy and follow LEED post-occupancy commissioning procedures.

The HVAC building control system shall have the capability to perform automatic measurement of energy consumption and ~~to~~ monitor performance as described in this section.

1. Energy Measurement and Demand ~~-~~Response Capabilities

The HVAC building control system shall have the capability to perform automatic measurement of total energy consumption. The BMS shall have demand ~~-~~response capabilities as stipulated by the California Building Code and ~~discussed below~~be able to~~-~~:

a. ~~The BMS shall be capable of i~~Interact~~ing~~ with HVAC equipment to demand-limit individual cooling equipment (e.g., chiller demand limiting~~).~~);

b. Automatically adjust temperature set point by ~~±~~4 degrees Fahrenheit in noncritical zones from a central point as necessary to demand-limit the HVAC system on receipt of a signal from the local utility provider~~-~~;

c. Return the system to its original state following a demand ~~-~~response event~~.~~;

d. Provide an adjustable rate of change~~,~~ and ~~provide~~ three operating states: ~~Automated~~ automated ~~Demand~~ demand ~~Shed~~shed, ~~Manual~~manual, and ~~Disabled~~disabled~~.~~; and

e. Through zone-level sequences of operations, exclude courtrooms, holding cells, and judges' chambers ~~shall be excluded~~ from being affected during demand ~~-~~response events.

2. Energy Management via Trending

Analytics are an important element in managing the efficiency of building systems. Therefore, the following are required as part of the BMS.

a. Electrical values such as volt (V), ampere (A), and kilowatt (kW) shall be monitored at equipment with motors.

b. Mechanical values such as chilled water flow, temperature, and pressure; hot water flow, temperature, and pressure; and equipment status~~;~~ and ~~equipment~~ capacity shall be monitored, measured, and stored. These points shall be gathered from connected equipment~~, as applicable~~ (e.g., chiller reported values), or meters~~, as applicable~~ (e.g., ~~BTU~~ Btu meters), as applicable.

c. All control points monitored and controlled via the system shall be archived in the local microprocessor controllers and set up to frequently be archived into the central processing station (e.g., front end) for indefinite historical data retrieval, with ~~points~~ points~~-~~naming conventions that incorporate Project Haystack data tagging (as incorporated at time of writing in proposed ASHRAE Standard 223P, Designation and Classification of Semantic Tags for Building Data).

d. Energy management measurements shall have the capability to mark trends in both instantaneous (e.g., kW) and time-based (e.g., kWh) numbers for chillers, boilers, air-handling units, exhaust fans, and pumps.

e. Trending of all control points used in the SOO calculations shall be provided at 15-minute intervals. These points include but are not restricted to outside air temperature (OAT), supply air temperature (SAT), return air temperature (RAT), and chilled water supply and chilled water return temperatures (CWST ~~&~~ and CWRT). During the commissioning phase of building construction, all points within the building shall be enabled for trending. All applicable points used in commissioning of the building preoccupancy shall be ~~able to be~~ adjust~~ed~~able to 5-minute intervals for the commissioning phase and future retro~~-~~commissioning activities. After the commissioning phase of construction is completed, trends shall be reset to 15-minute intervals for a ~~pre-agreed-on~~ list of points agreed upon in advance.

f. Trended points shall be exported in a single comma-separated ~~value~~ value~~-~~formatted text file (a .csv file) and written to a shared drive at one-week intervals. The collection of data shall be maintained indefinitely and archived annually~~,~~ and locally~~,~~ on the central control system.

g. Trending intervals shall be easily adjustable at the front end to at least 5-minute intervals for commissioning purposes and re~~-~~enabled to 15-minute intervals thereafter. Commissioning activity trending shall be stored and labeled accordingly in the same manner as normal trending log files.

h. Trend files shall be accessible to court staff, commissioning agents, and service providers remotely. These files shall be download~~-~~able from a remote location and through the user front ~~-~~end.

DIVISION TWO: TECHNICAL CRITERIA
11 Architectural Criteria
12 Structural Criteria
13 Mechanical Criteria
14 BUILDING MANAGEMENT SYSTEM CRITERIA
14.A Objectives
14.B Building Management System
14.C Level of Integration
14.D Energy Conservation Design
14.E Design Features
14.F Commissioning
16 Lighting Criteria
17 Network and Communication Systems
18 Audiovisual Systems
19 Acoustical Criteria
20 Fire Protection Criteria

14.E DESIGN FEATURES

Specific control features and points shall be dictated by project-specific design requirements and SOOs.

a. The following general features shall be implemented:

- Direct digital control drill down to zone level at the front end and remotely through a browser-based interface;
- Zone-level closed-loop temperature control;
- Fault detection and diagnostics over and above the requirements for economizers set forth in the California Building Code;
- Cascading closed loop for sequencing to minimize heating and cooling;
- Variable air volume (VAV) zone cascading control (no overlapping of heating and cooling); and
- Air-handling unit controls (cascading set point reset per ASHRAE Standard 55, where applicable).

b. Accurate direct measurement (of, ~~e.g.~~ for example, differential pressure or flow station) of minimum outside air-flow at the outside air damper/plenum assembly shall be provided for all ~~air~~ air-moving equipment, as applicable. Outside airflow shall be trended by the control system at 15-minute intervals.

c. Occupant status for control, if applicable per code, shall be coordinated and interfaced with the lighting control system to avoid a double-up on status sensors.

d. Nighttime ventilation for the purpose of building precooling or pre- or postoccupancy air changeover shall be investigated based on historical nighttime temperature swings. As applicable, nighttime ventilation shall take place when building temperature and OAT are at suitable levels to properly cool the building before occupancy.

e. A pre- and postoccupancy building flush control sequence shall be submitted for review during the submittal review phase. This building flush sequence of operation will accommodate three total air changes, with minimal use of building heating and cooling ~~during~~ outside utility ~~non~~peak periods.

f. A written mechanical control intent narrative submittal ~~shall be provided~~ that explains the mechanical control systems in ~~common~~ plain language~~,~~ shall be provided for client review and response during each design phase~~,~~ and revised for submittal as part of the contract documents. Selected control manufacturers shall be required to verify that their products, as submitted during the shop drawing phase, meet the control intent~~,~~ or ~~to~~ indicate any exceptions and describe how they intend to satisfy the desired performance of their products.

14.F COMMISSIONING

1. Commissioning is a systematic process of ensuring that all building systems perform interactively according to the design intent and the owner's operational needs. It is achieved beginning in the design phase by documenting design intent and continuing through construction, acceptance, and the warranty period with actual verification of performance. The commissioning process shall encompass and coordinate the traditionally separate functions of system documentation, equipment startup, control system calibration, testing and balancing, performance testing, and training.

2. The following commissioning (Cx) process activities shall be completed for mechanical, electrical, plumbing, and renewable energy systems and assemblies~~,~~ in accordance with ASHRAE Guidelines 0-201~~3~~9 and ~~ASHRAE Guideline~~ 202-201~~8~~24 for ~~HVAC&R (~~HVAC and refrigeration (HVAC&R) systems, as they relate to energy, water, indoor environmental quality, and durability.

   a. Develop the ~~Owner's~~ owner's ~~Project~~ project ~~Requirements~~ requirements (OPR); and

   b. Develop a Basis of Design (BOD).

3. The commissioning authority (CxA) must do the following:

   a. Review the OPR, BOD, and project design~~.~~;

   b. Develop and implement a Cx plan~~.~~;

   c. Confirm incorporation of Cx requirements into the construction documents~~.~~;

   d. Develop construction checklists~~.~~;

   e. Review contractor submittals~~.~~;

   f. Develop a system test procedure~~.~~;

   g. Verify system test execution~~.~~;

   h. Maintain an issues and benefits log throughout the Cx process~~.~~;

   i. Verify systems manual updates and delivery~~.~~;

   j. Prepare a final Cx process report~~.~~; and

   k. Document all findings and recommendations, and report directly to the owner throughout the process.

4. Specifications shall include commissioning services to ensure that the building delivered at the end of construction has a fully operational building management system, mechanical control sequences, sensors, and programming, all of which provide proper controls. Basic services shall include staff training for systems operation and troubleshooting.

DIVISION TWO: TECHNICAL CRITERIA

11 Architectural Criteria
12 Structural Criteria
13 Mechanical Criteria
14 BUILDING MANAGEMENT SYSTEM CRITERIA
14.A Objectives
14.B Building Management System
14.C Level of Integration
14.D Energy Conservation Design
14.E Design Features
14.F Commissioning
15 Electrical Criteria
16 Lighting Criteria
17 Network and Communication Systems
18 Audiovisual Systems
19 Acoustical Criteria
20 Fire Protection Criteria

DIVISION TWO: TECHNICAL CRITERIA

15 ELECTRICAL CRITERIA

SECTION	TOPIC	PAGE
15.A	Objectives	15.2
15.B	Electrical Criteria	15.2
15.C	Emergency and Standby Power Systems	15.9



North Butte County Courthouse, County of Butte
Chico, CA
TSK Architects

Designers shall use the criteria to develop electrical power systems for new buildings, retrofit of existing buildings, and interior renovation of existing buildings.

This section defines the general and technical criteria for the building's normal power system and the emergency and standby power systems. It encompasses recommendations and minimum acceptable performance criteria for the normal power distribution system and the emergency and standby power systems.

15.A OBJECTIVES

a. Designers shall use these criteria to develop the building's electrical power systems and emergency and standby electrical power systems, including emergency generator and uninterruptible power supply (UPS) design, and energy generation, when applicable. The electrical system design shall provide safe installation and operation of the electrical power supply and distribution through standardization of design, installation, and testing requirements~~,~~ based on sound engineering principles, applicable building codes, and field experience. For renovation projects, at the schematic design phase, the designer shall identify a specific list of standards deviations that are proposed based on the existing system configurations and the extent of renovations included in the project.

b. These criteria set the minimum acceptable requirements for design and installation of electrical power systems. Although new technologies or alternative arrangements may be used, they shall not result in a lower level of safety than prescribed by these criteria and the applicable state building codes.

c. When the criteria are applied to interior renovations of existing structures, the designer shall provide systems that meet the design parameters of the existing power system or ~~and~~ the requirements of these criteria, whichever results in a better system and ~~satisfy~~ satisfies the applicable building codes.

d. The designer shall coordinate the requirements and configuration of the utility supply connections with the Judicial Council and the utility service providers to determine voltage, service redundancy, and other facility service criteria.

e. Low energy use through conservation and whole-building integrated energy ~~-~~efficiency measures shall be the initial focus of design. If the project includes energy generation (e.g., photovoltaic systems), consider installing energy storage and ~~utilizing~~ using a power monitoring system to shift energy use for peak load reduction, limit overgeneration sent back to the grid, reduce the demand charges, reduce energy costs by taking advantage of time-of-use (TOU) rates, and provide cloud cover and outage protection for the facility.

15.B ELECTRICAL CRITERIA

1. Basic Requirements

a. Electrical loads shall be determined by space classification and ~~utilization~~ use of the following standards and requirements:

- Title 24 of the California Code of Regulations, Leadership in Energy and Environmental Design (LEED), and Illuminating Engineering Society (IES) standards for lighting loads and levels;
- National Fire Protection Association (NFPA) 70, National Electric Code, California Electric Code, and LEED requirements for receptacle and building general loads; and
- Any additional requirements that may be referenced in the ~~above-referenced~~ standards above.

b. The lighting power densities shall not exceed the current California Energy Code.

Commented [LD1]: "or"? The rest of this sentence seems to indicate a binary.

Commented [DP1R2]: Modified.

Commented [AG2]: Lesson learned from Santa Clara Courthouse: Rainwater is entering the main feed bus duct. Either use exterior rated equipment or have a shade/cover to prevent water intrusion.

Commented [DP2R2]: Scott: Please incorporate this lesson learned in the appropriate section with your recommended verbiage.

Commented [SW2R3]: This is interesting. Sounds like they did not use NEMA 3R bus duct for exterior? I added language and included the NEMA 3R for all bus duct from service point to main switchboard. See added language in s below.

c. Two locations for computer receptacles shall be provided in all office spaces. Do not locate computer receptacles on the same wall ~~with~~ as the entrance door to the office. Provide at least one convenience receptacle in every room. The ~~Maximum~~ maximum number of receptacles per circuit~~:~~ are four for computer receptacles and six for convenience receptacles.
~~C~~Computer receptacles: 4 ~~Convenience receptacles: 6~~

~~d.~~ ~~C~~ubicle or workstation open spaces sh~~ould~~ould be provided with four~~4~~ circuits/~~8~~eight wires per junction ~~JB~~box per pack of ~~6~~six cubicles for electrical whip connection~~s for cubicle/workstation spaces.~~

~~d.~~e. ~~Provide d~~Dedicated ground fault circuit interrupter (GFCI) receptacles shall be provided for the following:
- Vending machines~~;~~
- Microwaves~~;~~
- Refrigerators~~;~~
- Ice machines~~; and~~
- Electric water coolers and bottle fillers~~.~~
- ~~Dishwasher~~

~~e.~~f. ~~Provide c~~Convenience receptacles shall be installed every 40′ along the public corridor.

g. Regarding spare capacity, all electrical panels, including the main building electrical service, shall be adequately sized to power all the building loads~~,~~ in addition to providing the spare capacity listed in table 15.1.

~~f.~~h. ~~Maintain f~~Floor space clearances shall be maintained at all panels. Provide floor space in electrical rooms for 10 ~~%~~percent future growth ~~10% of designed floor space~~ for new and future panels.

Table 15.1 Spare Capacity Requirements

EQUIPMENT	SPARE LOAD CAPACITY (%)	BREAKER SPARES (%)	BREAKER SPACES (%)
Main ~~Switchboards~~switchboards	15~~%~~	~~–~~	25~~%~~
Distribution ~~Panelboards~~ panelboards ~~&~~ and ~~Motor~~ motor ~~Control~~ control ~~Centers~~centers	15~~%~~	~~–~~	25~~%~~
Panelboards	20~~%~~	10~~%~~	15~~%~~

~~g.~~i. The spare positions shall be complete, with full-length bus and hardware for future breaker installation. The designer shall demonstrate at the turnover of 100 percent of the construction documents that the required spare capacity and spaces have been preserved. The spare capacity shall also be provided at each of the following system elements:
- Distribution transformers
- Standby and emergency power systems
- UPS systems
- Distribution bus risers
- Distribution feeders and breakers

~~h.~~j. ~~Provide s~~Space shall be provided in the electrical room layouts for the future addition of equipment. For each switchboard lineup in a new facility and ~~for~~ switchboards rated ~~800~~ 800 amps ~~and~~ or higher, include floor space for one additional switchboard section. All switchboards shall have full-sized horizontal bus~~s~~ing to allow for additional sections to be added.

~~i.~~k. Where panelboards are mounted recessed flush in a wall, ~~maintain~~ fire integrity of the wall shall be maintained. Provide one empty 3/4″ electrical metallic tubing (EMT) conduit stubbed up into the nearest accessible ceiling location for every three spare single-pole or space-equivalent positions.

Commented [MP3]: Do we ever plan on having dishwashers? If so they should have a dedicated circuit.

Commented [DP3R2]: No dishwashers are provided.

j.l. The distribution transformers feeding receptacle power for office areas shall be K-rated to compensate for harmonics generated by office equipment. The distribution transformers feeding MDF and IDF rooms shall have K-ratings appropriate for the proposed equipment loads. The neutral conductors on the secondary ~~of~~ K-rated transformers shall be sized at 150 percent rated ampacity of the phase conductor. Analysis shall be performed by the project team for Judicial Council's determination ~~if~~whether K-rating may be removed based on the use of technologically evolved equipment.

k.m. To facilitate future installation of rooftop communication systems, an electrical subpanel and submeter shall be provided on the rooftop. Conduit pathways shall be provided to the rooftop from the electrical room with pull rope (not pull string) to allow for cable runs to be added for future installations.

l.n. Full-sized neutral conductors shall be used throughout the project for three-phase (3PH), four-wire (4W) service, power, and lighting feeders.

m.o. True root-mean-square meters shall be used wherever meters are specified on switchgear and distribution boards.

n.p. Separate electrical panels and metering may be required for non-court occupancies in the facility ~~, including but not limited to rooftop communication systems.~~ Review with the Judicial Council to establish specific project requirements. In accordance with California Code of Regulations, title 24, ~~P~~part 6, Energy Efficiency Standards, ~~S~~section 130.5, ~~Provide~~ provide energy meters for each load group and floor, including, at a minimum ~~:on electrical service equipment, with the following capabilities as related to the electrical service size~~:

- Total electrical consumption (~~Main~~main); and
- ~~Exterior lighting;~~
- ~~Interior lighting on a per-floor basis;~~
- ~~Receptacle loads on a per-floor basis;~~
- ~~Vertical transportation;~~
- ~~Heating, ventilation, and air-conditioning (HVAC) equipment;~~
- ~~Plumbing equipment;~~
- ~~Information technology (IT) rooms;~~
- ~~Electric vehicle (EV) charging stations; and~~
- Onsite power generation (photovoltaic panels) and battery energy storage system (BESS), if applicable.

~~Metering Functionality~~	~~Electrical Services </= 50KVA~~	~~Electrical Services > 50KVA and </= 250KVA~~	~~Electrical Services > 250KVA and </= 1000KVA~~	~~Electrical Services > 1000KVA~~
~~Instantaneous KW~~	~~Required~~	~~Required~~	~~Required~~	~~Required~~
~~Historical Peak KW~~	~~Not Required~~	~~Not Required~~	~~Required~~	~~Required~~
~~Tracking KHW for a user-defined time~~	~~Required~~	~~Required~~	~~Required~~	~~Required~~
~~Tracking KWH per rate period~~	~~Not Required~~	~~Not Required~~	~~Not Required~~	~~Required~~

Commented [SW4]: We would suggest removing the requirement for K rated transformers. Office equipment power supplies have come a long way and are not nearly as harmonic prone as they once were. Likely substantial cost savings for transformers and neutral feeders.

Commented [DP4R2]: I wouldn't completely remove it for now since we continue to face complaints around this issue. I am adding a statement to evaluate this project-to-project for now.

Commented [DP5]: Reverting to original metering requirement while adding compliance requirement for title 24. Additional meters to be evaluated per project as stated in the paragraph.

Commented [SW5R2]: Agreed. Edited meters out. Left at service point (required by code) and the PV/BESS. The PV/BESS should be metered.

Commented [SW6]: These two tables offer great info. But, they are pulled form the code. We would suggest noting that code section rather than including the exact code language. That simplifies upkeep of the standards when there are code cycle changes or code amendments mid cycle.

Commented [DP6R2]: Scott, delete the copy-pasted info from code and add a reference to the code to direct readers.

In addition, segregation of electrical load types into individual distribution and panelboards may be required based on the electrical service size per the table below:

Electrical Load Type	Electrical Services </= 50KVA	Electrical Services > 50KVA and </= 250KVA	Electrical Services > 250KVA and </= 1000KVA	Electrical Services > 1000KVA
Lighting including exit and egress lighting and exterior lighting	Not Required	All lighting in aggregate	All lighting disaggregated by floor, type, or area	All lighting disaggregated by floor, type, or area
HVAC systems and components including chillers, fans, heaters, furnaces, package units, cooling towers, and circulation pumps associated with HVAC	Not Required	All HVAC in aggregate	All HVAC in aggregate and each HVAC load rated at least 50 kVA	All HVAC in aggregate and each HVAC load rated at least 50 kVA
Domestic and service water system pumps and related systems and components	Not Required	All loads in aggregate	All loads in aggregate	All loads in aggregate
Lighting including exit and egress lighting and exterior lighting	Not Required	All lighting in aggregate	All lighting disaggregated by floor, type, or area	All lighting disaggregated by floor, type, or area
Plug load including appliances rated less than 25 kVA	Not Required	All plug load in aggregate Groups of plug loads exceeding 25 kVA connected load in an area less than 5000 sf	All plug load in aggregate Groups of plug loads exceeding 25 kVA connected load in an area less than 5000 sf	All plug load in aggregate Groups of plug loads exceeding 25 kVA connected load in an area less than 5000 sf
Elevators, escalators, moving walks, and transit systems	Not Required	All loads in aggregate	All loads in aggregate	All loads in aggregate
Other individual non-HVAC loads or appliances rated 25kVA or greater (IT or telecommunications equipment, etc.)	Not Required	All loads in aggregate	All loads in aggregate	All loads in aggregate
Industrial and commercial load centers 25 kVA or greater including theatrical lighting installations and commercial kitchens	Not Required	All loads in aggregate	All loads in aggregate	All loads in aggregate
Renewable power source (net or total)	Each Group	Each Group	Each Group	Each Group
Loads associated with renewable power source	Not Required	All loads in aggregate	All loads in aggregate	All loads in aggregate
Charging stations	All Loads in	All loads in	All loads in	All loads in

~~for electric vehicles~~	~~Aggregate~~	~~aggregate~~	~~aggregate~~	~~aggregate~~

~~Smart breakers may be used to control and meter each load group.~~

~~o.~~g. In office areas, the ceiling space shall typically be used for the distribution of power, data, and communication systems. The distribution drops shall be contained in columns and walls to offices and workstation spines. Power, voice, and data poles may be used on a case-by-case basis if approved by the Judicial Council.

~~p.~~r. Fire-rated poke-through floor outlets may be used only where ceilings below are accessible and the occupancies below are not compromised by the installation of conduit in the ceiling space. Where poke-through outlets are used, minimize conduits and cables in the ceiling space below by using the nearest partition to return the conduits and cables to the ceiling of the floor supplied. In-slab floor boxes may be used for limited areas where interior layouts are not subject to change, such as main lobbies, courtrooms, weapons-screening areas, large training rooms, or other similar locations.

s. The electrical equipment and systems shall be specified to include startup, testing, training, and adjusting per the applicable codes, recognized industry standards, and equipment system manufacturer requirements.

~~q.~~t. The bus ducts shall be installed in the building interior and not outside, with or without a weather-~~p~~proof enclosure. To prevent bus duct failure, torque testing shall be performed to verify that the installation was done correctly. If on Judicial Council approval, an exterior bus duct is ~~utiliz~~sed, it shall be National Electrical Manufacturers Association (NEMA)~~NEMA~~ Type 3 Rainproof/Rain-resistant (3R) from utility service point to main switchboard.

~~r.~~u. Switchboards, distribution panels, transformers, disconnects, and branch circuit

panelboards throughout the building shall be of commercial grade and manufactured by one manufacturer.

s.v. All panelboards shall include door-in-door trim and copper bus. All equipment enclosures shall be a National Electrical Manufacturers Association (NEMA) type suitable for their environment they are located in.

t.w. All electric motors above 1/2 horsepower shall be three -phase, where available. This requirement shall be coordinated across the project with other disciplines.

u.x. Regarding wiring devices, all power receptacles and switches for general-purpose circuits shall be NEMA specification grade, manufactured by one manufacturer, and rated for a specific environment and application. Outlets served from an emergency or standby power system shall be red.

v.y. All floor- or pad-mounted equipment such as motor control centers and transformers shall be provided with aluminum bus. Indoor equipment shall be installed on a minimum 4″ high concrete housekeeping pad; outdoor locations shall be installed on a minimum 6″ housekeeping pad. Confirm pad requirements with serving utility company.

w.z. The design shall include equal distribution of load on each phase for the feeders, balanced within 15 percent between phases, documented with submission of 100 100 percent of the construction documents.

x. The criteria for the systems named below appear in the following chapters of the *Facilities Standards*:

are specified in those chapters.

- Chapter 4, Courthouse Security
- Chapter 13, Mechanical Criteria
- Chapter 16, Lighting Criteria
- Chapter 17, Network and Communication Systems
- Chapter 18, Audiovisual Systems
- Chapter 20, Fire Protection Criteria

2. Harmonics

The engineer shall provide a study to determine the level of harmonics and account for the harmonics in the design of transformers, feeders, and branch circuits. Consideration shall be given to computer and/or digital equipment, variable-frequency drives, and elevators.

3. Conductors

The following types of conductors shall be specified based on each one's application.

a. All wire, cable, and equipment shall be new.

b. All wire #8 AWG (American Wire Gauge (AWG) and larger shall be stranded copper or aluminum.

c. All wire #10 AWG and smaller shall be solid copper.

d. All wire and cable for secondary power distribution shall be 600-volt insulated THHN (thermoplastic high -heat- -resistant nylon- -coated (THHN) or THWN (thermoplastic heat- and water-resistant nylon-coated (THWN) for #8 and smaller. THWN, THHN, and XHHW (cross- linked polyethylene, high -heat- -resistanceresistant, water water-resistanceresistant (XHHW) should be used for #6 and larger and for wet, underground, and exterior locations. RHH (rRubber-insulated, high-

DIVISION TWO
TECHNICAL CRITERIA

11 Architectural Criteria
12 Structural Criteria
13 Mechanical Criteria
14 Building Management System Criteria
15 ELECTRICAL CRITERIA
15.A Objectives
15.C Emergency and Standby Power Systems
16 Lighting Criteria
17 Network and Communication Systems
18 Audiovisual Systems
19 Acoustical Criteria
20 Fire Protection Criteria

Commented [DP7]: Gensler: delete this bullet.

Commented [SW8]: We would suggest removing the requirement for a harmonic study. Office equipment power supplies have come a long way and are not nearly as harmonic prone as they once were. Likely substantial cost savings for transformers and neutral feeders.

Commented [DP8R2]: I am not comfortable with removing this section. Perhaps we can revisit in the 2029 edition.

~~heat~~ heat~~–~~resistant (RHH) or THHN 90 degrees Celsius standard should be used for fixture wire and circuit runs within fixtures.

e. Multiwire branch circuits shall be provided with a means to simultaneously disconnect all ungrounded conductors at the point where the branch circuit originates~~,~~ (i.e., handle ties or multipole circuit breakers).

f. All wire shall be color~~–~~coded throughout. The system conductors shall be identified as to phase connections by means of color-impregnated insulation.

g. Power and lighting branch circuits shall be specified not less than #12 AWG.

h. Signal and control circuits shall be specified not less than #14 AWG.

i. The cabling for fire alarm, security, telecommunications, and audiovisual (AV) systems shall be specified in accordance with the respective section requirements.

j. ~~Specify that the c~~Cable ducts for power ~~are~~ shall not be shared with data and communication systems.

k. All bus ducts shall be aluminum.

4. Conduits

The following shall be specified as a minimum requirement for conduits.

a. Minimum acceptable EMT conduit size shall be 3/4″ diameter, except for short runs to a single outlet and for single fixtures, which may be 1/2″.

b. For indoor locations subject to physical damage, ~~use~~ rigid steel or intermediate metal conduit with zinc coating inside and out, with hot-dipped galvanizing, and conforming to American National Standards Institute's (ANSI) C80.1 and Underwriters Laboratories (UL) standards shall be used. Couplings and unions shall be electroplated steel, threaded type.

c. For interior spaces in dry locations, ~~use~~ cold-rolled steel EMT tubing with enamel coating inside, ~~and~~ zinc coating outside, and galvanized steel fittings shall be used. Steel-armored metal-clad (MC) cable shall be permitted for distribution of branch circuits where routed in concealed locations and installed with hangers and supports specifically approved for MC cable systems. MC cable shall be independently supported and ~~shall~~ not rely on ceiling or wall framing for support. MC cable shall not be used in exposed locations. MC cable is not permitted for circuit home runs.

d. Underground electrical service and underground feeder distribution shall be polyvinyl chloride (PVC~~).)~~ ~~–~~coated galvanized rigid steel, concrete encased, or schedule 40 PVC, concrete encased. Elbows shall be PVC-coated rigid steel. All underground feeders shall be installed with spacers for proper support. Where installed under building slabs, concrete slurry shall be permitted in lieu of concrete duct banks.

Commented [SW9]: Clarified to allow branch circuit conduits with no concrete encasement.

e. In wet and outdoor locations, ~~specify~~ cadmium-plated, cast malleable iron liquid-tight fittings with insulated throat shall be specified.

f. Flexible metallic conduits of limited lengths may be used at power terminations to equipment in indoor and dry locations. For outdoor and wet locations, they shall be liquid-tight with plastic jacket extruded over the outer zinc coating.

g. Conduits in slabs on metal decks are not permitted.

5. Quality Assurance

a. All materials, devices, and equipment shall be commercial grade, new, and UL listed.

b. The electrical system design shall ~~be in~~ conform~~ance with~~ to the applicable codes and standards and the requirements of these criteria.
c. Certain material, equipment, apparatus, or other products may be specified by manufacturer's brand name, type, or catalog number. In such cases, the designated product shall meet the established standards for quality, style, utility, and performance.
d. The main switchboard, distribution panels, transformers, disconnects, and branch circuit panelboards shall be manufactured to commercial-grade specifications by a manufacturer with a minimum of 10 years' experience in the manufacture of such equipment.

6. Electric Distribution Studies

In addition to the electrical load and ~~short~~ short-circuit studies required by the codes, each project shall include electrical coordination and arc flash risk analysis studies to confirm compliance with codes and building operational requirements. Coordinate with other trade disciplines to verify that all equipment short-circuit current ratings exceed the available fault current identified in the short-circuit study. The engineer of record shall review and approve the study before ~~t~~the contractor may place the order for manufacturing of the equipment.

7. Identification

The electrical system shall be specified to include identification and signage in accordance with ANSI standards and NFPA 70 and 70E requirements. Specify identification at all power service switchboards, power distribution panels, transformers, conduits, branch circuits, pull boxes, outlet covers, and junction boxes using industry- standard materials and methods.

Electrical light fixtures and convenience outlets on emergency power circuits shall be identified with a system of unique identification. The identification tags shall be applied on location and be easily identifiable and uniformly applied throughout the building. Receptacles shall be labeled with panel and circuit number.

Conduits and boxes shall be ~~color~~ color-coded for specialty systems. Emergency power conduits shall have a circumferential red mark every 10′, and boxes shall be marked with a diagonal red stripe on the cover. Fire alarm systems shall be ~~color~~ color-coded red; building management system (BMS) shall be blue. Other systems shall have similarly designated colors.

8. Coordination

The electrical work shall be coordinated with the work of all other divisions to interface power and control requirements to equipment, devices, lighting, control systems, and other systems specified under the respective divisions.

9. Power Distribution System

a. For new facilities, a three-phase, four-wire power service shall be delivered to the building via utility transformers that are located in a vault or pad mounted. The service voltage shall be 277/480 volts (V) ~~3-phase, 4-wire~~ or 120/208V ~~3~~three-phase (3 PH), ~~4~~four-wire (4W), depending on square footage and equipment needs. The location of the transformer shall be properly coordinated with the local utility company. The designer shall coordinate with the utility company on proper sizing of the service based on load calculations and including 15 percent spare capacity for future growth. Any other service voltage or configuration ~~must~~shall be reviewed for approval ~~approved~~ by the J~~C~~Cudicial Council.
b. Branch circuit panelboards will be located throughout the facility. The panels will be fed from breakers in the main switchboard or from distribution panelboards. Dry-type step-down transformers will be provided where required, which will in turn feed 120/208V 3 PH 4W distribution-type panelboards or distribution panels. Provide K-rated transformers as required. The 120/208V branch panelboards located throughout

DIVISION TWO
TECHNICAL CRITERIA
11 Architectural Criteria
12 Structural Criteria
13 Mechanical Criteria
14 Building Management
15 ELECTRICAL CRITERIA
15.A Objectives
15.C Emergency and Standby Power Systems
16 Lighting Criteria
17 Network and Communication Systems
18 Audiovisual Systems
19 Acoustical Criteria
20 Fire Protection Criteria

Commented [DP10]: Scott: Spell out SCCR/AIC

Commented [AG11]: Lesson Learned from Stockton Courthouse: The main 12KV switchgear failed, necessitating a building-wide emergency shutdown and repair.
A 480V drop into the building lands outside the building. This causes the higher voltage electrical equipment to be JCC's maintenance responsibility rather than PGE's responsibility. Design the main power control system with a standard integrated power feed with the main input power dropping into the building at a standard voltage.i

Commented [DP11R2]: Scott: Please incorporate this lesson learned in the appropriate section. Also double check 3-phase, 4-wire statements, if you agree with those additions.

Commented [SW11R3]: This all looks good. But, there may be buildings that are large enough to warrant a higher voltage (ie 12kV). This may be required by the utility company based on the service size. I would guess this would happen on a very small percentage of the JCC projects. I added a statement at the end. You can keep or delete.

the facility will be fed from breakers in these distribution panels. Large air-conditioning and motor loads will be supplied at 480V or 208V 3 PH from the new main switchboards and distribution boards. ~~The breakers through which the large air-conditioning and motor loads connect to the main switchboards and distribution boards may be smart breakers that allow metering and on/off control of those loads.~~

c. Voltage drop for installed feeder conductors and branch circuit conductors shall not exceed 5 ~~%~~percent to the farthest connected load.

~~c.~~d. Lighting fixtures will be connected to ~~20~~ 20-amp, single-pole circuit breakers in lighting branch circuit panelboards. ~~These circuit breakers may be smart breakers that allow metering and control of the load.~~

~~d.~~e. Convenience and special power receptacles will be provided as required throughout the facility. Convenience receptacles and miscellaneous loads will be connected to 120/208V 3 PH 4W branch circuit panelboards. ~~The circuit breakers connecting these loads to the branch circuit panel boards may be smart breakers that allow metering and control of the load.~~

~~e.~~f. Provide controlled receptacles in office areas, lobbies, conference rooms, kitchenettes, and copy rooms as required by the California Energy Code (Cal. Code Regs., tit. 24, pt. 6). In general, this includes one controlled receptacle within 6′ ~~feet~~ of each non-controlled receptacle provided. Alternatively, use of split-wired receptacles with one controlled and the other no~~t~~ controlled is acceptable. ~~The circuit breakers connecting controlled receptacles may be smart breakers that allow metering and control of the load.~~

~~f.~~g. Where a centralized UPS is not provided, computer and other sensitive electronic loads will be fed through point-of-use, localized UPS units as required to meet the standards.

~~g.~~h. For equipment supplied by K-rated transformers, neutral bu~~s~~sing and conductors for distribution equipment feeding panelboards will be sized to accommodate harmonic currents generated by electronic power supplies.

~~h.~~i. ~~Surge~~ Surge-protective devices (SPD's) shall be provided for overvoltage protection per California Electrical Code (CEC) articles 242 and ~~article~~ 700.

10. Grounding System

a. A complete grounding system shall be provided per the California Electrical Code. The electrical system shall be grounded to a common building grounding electrode system~~, which~~ that uses grounding to building steel, building cold-water pipes, and concrete-encased electrodes. Grounding to cold-water pipes shall be only to continuous metallic main pipe. Where the cold-water pipe has insulated joints or plastic pipe connectors, properly sized jumper cables shall be specified to maintain the continuity of the pipe grounding.

b. The grounding system for utility service transformers shall be provided per the local utility company criteria. The building emergency generator shall be grounded per code.

c. ~~Provide a~~A copper main ground bus shall be provided in the main switchboard room and connected to the building grounding electrode system. Provide a grounding riser in the building with a ground bus located at each electrical room. Transformers and other separately derived systems shall be bonded to this ground bus system in addition to bonding to other code-required connections.

d. Telecommunications equipment rooms shall be grounded per the requirements of chapter 17, Network and Communication Systems. The telecommunications grounding system shall be connected to the main ground bus.

Commented [DP12]: Scott: Please review all these additions to the chapter and confirm your concurrence with these suggestions.

Commented [DP12R2]: References to meters and smart breakers deleted by TEE.

e. For existing buildings, the grounding shall tie back to the nearest building grounding electrode system, including the building steel and building cold-water pipes.

f. ~~Specify~~ A grounding grid shall be specified for raised-floor computer rooms. Within the room, bond all metallic pipes, conduits, and steel equipment housings to the grounding grid.

g. Each project shall be evaluated for the requirements of a lightning protection system. The risk assessment shall follow NFPA 780, Annex L.

~~**Power Monitoring System/Demand Management**~~

~~The energy system must be capable of lowering costs by minimizing the amount of high-priced electricity purchased.~~

- ~~The system must be a fully automated and communicate with the BMS and triggers control sequences.~~
- ~~The system must be Ccapable of peak load "shaving" and minimizing both long-term and short-term financial costs by shifting load to periods of lower demand.~~

~~The power monitoring system must track and trend actual energy usage and production, and compare them to trend goals, and provide updates to facility managers on a weekly basis.~~

11. Photovoltaic ~~(PV)~~ and Battery Energy Storage System ~~(BESS)~~

The inclusion of energy generation and storage ~~such as photovoltaic panels and battery storage~~(PV ~~&~~and BESS) is ~~encouraged~~required ~~as~~if they are part of the scope of the project. The system shall be designed to exceed ~~beyond and if incorporated,~~ the minimum requirements of the California Code of Regulations ~~code requirements~~ if included in the project ~~must be met~~. ~~If energy generation, such as photovoltaic panels, and battery storage are part of the scope of the project, minimum California Code of Regulations code requirements shall be met.~~

a. PV Requirements:

- The PV system shall be configured for full integration into the building electrical distribution and must be connected to the utility grid through a grid-interactive inverter. The system shall ~~and~~ meet the requirements of the local utility company.
- The size of PV and BESS shall be determined based on title 24 minimum requirements and as identified in the project-specific criteria documents.
- If a project is funded to be a net zero building, approximately 90~~%~~ percent of the building's annual energy consumption will be during daylight hours and ~~shall be~~ served directly from the PV system. The remaining ~~~~approximately 10 ~~%~~percent of the annual energy consumption will be during morning and evening hours when the PV system is not generating energy~~,~~; therefore, a BESS shall be provided and sized to account for the remaining daily energy consumption ~~to be served by the BESS~~. The PV system shall be sized to serve the ~~~~approximately 90~~%~~ percent of energy consumption during the PV~~–~~producing times plus the additional ~~~~approximately 10 ~~%~~percent of energy production required to charge the BESS to serve the energy consumption during the times when the PV system is not generating. The 90 ~~%~~percent and 10 ~~%~~percent figures are provided only as a baseline for early design planning. Final sizing of the PV and BESS shall be based on the results of energy and PV models of hourly load and generation profiles, respectively, commonly referred to as "8760 data."~~.The system shall be designed to offset 90 % of the building's annual energy consumption, with the remaining 10 % to be served via the BESS. Provide an energy model to validate the design and system sizing.~~
- The system ~~must~~shall be designed and installed in such a way that it is capable of future expansion and improvement.
- ~~It is preferable for~~T ~~t~~he PV system ~~to~~shall be capable of islanding ~~ing~~
- The PV ~~'~~system shall be mounted as a covered parking structure installation (roof-mounted is not permissible). Identify the minimum panel count and supporting structure area required to achieve the target

Commented [LW13]: Revisiting this addition from 2023

Commented [SW14]: Just a note, this is in excess of code. Also, it seems to mandate meters/monitoring, while the sections above do not.

Commented [DP14R2]: Scott: Please delete the suggestions that are above code minimum. If there is duplicative language, provide reference to code and delete redundant verbiage.

Commented [SN15]: Pointing out that "must be capable of" is not requiring the energy system definitively do so.

Commented [DP15R2]: This section was deleted due to being above code.

Commented [SN16]: Pointing out that this indicates capability and not requird minimums.

Commented [DP16R2]: This section was deleted due to being above code.

Commented [LW17]: Revisiting this addition from 2023. Some modifications have been made to simplify the narrative.

Commented [SW18]: Edits made to this section based on direction from Tamer and Jagan (Via Rafat)

Commented [DP19]: Added this bullet to address CFAC-WG concern about 90% PV requirement.

Commented [DP20]: Changes made to this bullet based on consultant recommendation. Added clarity for the 90% requirement meant for a zero net energy building.

PV percentage offset. Should the required area of parking to support the minimum panel count and supporting structure area exceed the area available in parking, maximize the system size to the available area and document the shortfall to achieving the ~~90 %~~ target percentage. The installation shall meet all applicable code~~,~~ and structural, electrical, and mounting standards for car-port photovoltaic systems and ~~shall~~ be designed for long-term performance and maintainability.

- The clearance height of carports shall be 13'-6" clear along the fire access lane.

b. ~~Battery Storage~~BESS Requirements:

- The ~~battery storage~~BESS ~~shall~~could be ~~integrated~~connected to and monitored by ~~with~~ the BMS system as described in Chapter 14 and should be evaluated for use as an emergency and standby power system~~s~~. If providing services as emergency backup, care should be taken to ensure adequate capacity and listing. Emergency power shall be distributed through a critical load panel that is sized to accommodate critical loads throughout the building as detailed in section 15.C.2.1 below.
- The ~~battery storage system~~BESS must provide both monitoring and control capability. The battery management system must also be capable of interfacing to a building management system (BMS) and the power monitoring system.
- The BESS ~~system~~ shall be listed for use in the proposed space. Consider exterior installations as the primary option.

~~Construction Document Requirements:~~

~~Within 90 days after the date of system acceptance, record documents shall be provided to the building owner. Record documents shall include, as a minimum, the location of pathways for routing of raceways or cable from the renewable energy system to the electrical service panel and electrical energy storage system area, location and layout of a designated area for electrical energy storage system, and location of designated *EVSE spaces*, *EV Ready spaces* and *EV Capable spaces* in parking facilities.~~

~~Provide details for dedicated roof area, structural design for roof dead and live load, and routing of conduit or pre-wiring from *solar ready zone* to electrical service panel or plumbing from *solar ready zone* to *service water-heating system*. Where a *solar ready zone* is provided, the certificate shall indicate the location, dimensions, and capacity reserved on the electrical service panel.~~

~~Provide the location of pathways for routing of raceways or cable from the electrical service panel and energy storage system area and the location and layout of a designated area for electrical energy storage system. Inspections at electrical rough-in shall verify compliance as required by the code and the approved plans and specifications as to the locations, distribution, and capacity of the electrical system. Where the solar-ready zone is installed for electricity generation, inspections shall verify conduit or pre-wiring from solar-ready zone to electrical panel. Where the energy storage system area is not in the same space as the electrical panel, inspections shall verify conduit or pre-wiring from the energy storage ready zone to the electrical panel.~~

Commented [DP21]: Lesson learned from solar projects due to OSFM requirement.

Commented [DP22]: Gensler: change this verbiage.

Commented [LD23]: Of chapter 14? Or this chapter? Which subheading?

Commented [DP23R2]: clarified.

Commented [DP24]: This should be part of the contract, not in CTCFS.

15.C EMERGENCY AND STANDBY POWER SYSTEMS

1. General Requirements

a. The need for and capacity of the emergency and standby power system shall be carefully evaluated~~,~~ based on the code requirements, project size, and location. The purpose of an emergency and standby power system is to provide safe evacuation of the court building and ~~to~~ allow for the orderly shutdown of building systems as required by the California Building Code (CBC). Emergency and standby power will not be provided for any other purpose without prior approval of the Judicial Council. In remote project areas with limited accessibility, or if the court building will also serve as an emergency operations center, the generator size and fuel storage capacity may be designed to meet local requirements, but only with prior approval of the Judicial Council.

b. Unless approved otherwise, emergency generators shall include only the systems outlined in California Code of Regulations, title 24, and this section, 15.C. For loads that are not required to be connected to the generator either by CBC or *Facilities Standards*, a study shall be completed for the project~~,~~ to support~~ing~~ the need for additional loads. The study shall require formal approval by the Judicial Council before its findings are incorporated into the design. Before procurement of materials early in the construction phase, a construction submittal shall be sent for formal approval to both the Judicial Council and the Office of the State Fire Marshal verifying the loads connected to the generator.

c. Each project shall undergo an evaluation to document the specific need for emergency and standby power. The evaluation shall include the following:

- A site utility reliability review documenting the power sources available, redundancy inherent in the utility supply, and outage history.
- Code analysis.
- Fuel storage capacity to meet code requirements and site accessibility for refueling.
- Statement of the impacts of utility power loss.
- Identification of the specific systems and loads for support~~,~~ and categorization by requirements (code, function, etc.). Include backup time required for fuel/battery design.
- Review of appropriate generator or battery systems that best meet code and local air quality district requirements.
- Confirmation of generator exhaust and after-treatment requirements by the local air quality district.

d. Electrical generators to supply emergency power and standby power are to be provided only where the electrical loads can be demonstrated to be best accommodated by a generator set or battery and as required by code. Factors to be considered include locations with a history of significant outage occurrences or sustained periods of power interruptions. The duration of emergency power supply shall be determined by the building and fire codes. Additional consideration may be made based on the time necessary to prudently shut down critical systems and ~~to~~ safely evacuate and close the building, whichever time is greater.

DIVISION TWO
TECHNICAL CRITERIA
11 Architectural Criteria
12 Structural Criteria
13 Mechanical Criteria
14 Building Management System Criteria
15 ELECTRICAL CRITERIA
15.A Objectives
16 Lighting Criteria
17 Network and Communication Systems
18 Audiovisual Systems
19 Acoustical Criteria
20 Fire Protection Criteria

2. Emergency Generators

2.1 Requirements Based on California Electrical Code

a. The following requirements shall be considered as minimum criteria. In all cases, the requirements of the code and the authority having jurisdiction, including but not limited to the Office of the State Fire Marshal, shall govern the system provisions.

b. On projects where it is determined that an emergency generator is required to serve the courthouse buildings, the loads identified in items 1 and 2 below and any other code requirements will be designed to be supported by that generator. Per the CEC, the emergency/standby system includes three branches: code-required emergency loads, legally required standby, and optional standby (noncode emergency loads). Provide a minimum of three automatic transfer switches, one for each branch. The breakers serving the automatic transfer switches on the emergency and/or standby side shall be in separate vertical sections, per the CEC. The distribution for these branches shall be separate as well. Loads shall be segregated as follows.

Emergency Systems: Systems that are legally required for automatic illumination or power for safe exiting and panic control in buildings essential for safety to human life (as defined by CEC, article art. 700, CBC, chapter ch. 27, California Fire Code (CFC), chapter ch. 12, and NFPA 110 and NFPA 111), such as:

- Fire pumps, including jockey pumps;
- Egress path lighting and exit signs;
- Generator fuel transfer pumps, if applicable; and
- Doors and locks for cells.

Legally Required Standby Systems: Systems that are required to avoid interruptions to fire-fighting operations (as defined by CEC, article art. 701, CFC, chapter ch. 12, and NFPA 110 and NFPA 111) or other systems that ensure safety or facilitate rescue, such as:

- Elevator systems (only if elevators are required to be on the generator), including:
  - Elevators;
  - Elevator machine room ventilation;
  - Elevator cab lighting;
  - Elevator hoistway lighting;
  - Elevator recall power; and
  - Elevator control/status panels;
- Fire alarm and life-safety systems (including emergency voice alarms);
- Fire and life safety in MDFs or IDFs that are on the converged network (network switches);
- Horizontal sliding doors, if part of egress path;
- Turnstiles, if part of egress path; and
- The smoke control system (if it is required on the project), including:
  - All fans and motors associated with the system;
  - Fire smoke dampers;

- Smoke curtains; and
- Pressurization fans for paths of egress.

Optional Standby Systems: Systems intended to supply power where life and safety do~~es~~ not depend on the performance of the system (as defined by CEC, ~~article~~ art. 702), provided only with prior approval by the Judicial Council.

Emergency Responder ~~Radio~~ Communication Enhancement System (~~ERRCS~~ERCES): ~~ERRCS~~ ERCES shall not be connected to the generator but be on its own UPS system that provides no less than 12 hours of power.

2.2 General Requirements for Emergency Generators

Early in the project, the design team shall define what building systems have emergency and standby power and monitor any changes that would increase the size of the emergency and standby power system. Other important considerations and directives include the following.

a. Check generator fuel storage amounts and occupancy classifications against California Fire Code, California Building Code, and NFPA 30, ~~NFPA~~ 37, and ~~NFPA~~ 110.

b. Identify the minimum and maximum size of the fuel tank. Include the setback requirements per NFPA 30.

c. Do not install ~~No~~ foreign systems ~~should be installed~~ in the generator room per NFPA 110.

d. Do not install ~~Combustion~~ combustion air ~~and~~ or cooling intakes ~~should not be installed~~ through rated partitions.

e. Address temperature exhaust running through the load bank. Address general cooling—and heating, if required—of the generator room.

f. Confirm that the flue is installed in a rated shaft. Confirm three ~~-~~hour ~~–~~rated enclosure, including deck, per NFPA 37.

g. Confirm access for installation and maintenance. Confirm that the ~~Emergency~~ emergency ~~Power~~ power ~~Off~~ off switch is located outside the generator room.

h. Recommend placing the generator in an acoustically designed exterior enclosure.

i. Provide connection from the generator to the fire alarm system for monitoring.

j. Provide connection from the generator to the BMS for monitoring, per ~~chapter~~section 15.C.4, Building Management System Interface.

2.3 Detailed Requirements for Emergency Generators

For projects where an emergency generator is provided, the following requirements shall be met.

a. The automatic emergency power system shall consist of a 120/208V or 277/480V 3 PH 4W generator set, water-cooled radiator type. The engine generator set shall be located indoors~~,~~ or at grade. Exterior generator sets shall be provided with a lock-secured, alarmed, weatherproof, sound-attenuating enclosure to meet the acoustical requirements of the site.

b. Fuel vent calculations shall be provided per NFPA 30 and exhaust vent calculations per the California Mechanical Code (CMC).

c. Exterior enclosures shall be secure under lock and have emergency power

DIVISION TWO TECHNICAL CRITERIA
11 Architectural Criteria
12 Structural Criteria
13 Mechanical Criteria
14 Building Management System Criteria
15 ELECTRICAL CRITERIA
15.A Objectives
15.B Electrical Criteria
16 Lighting Criteria
17 Network and Communication Systems
18 Audiovisual Systems
19 Acoustical Criteria
20 Fire Protection Criteria

Commented [DP25]: Gensler: change chapter to section.

service and emergency lighting. Provide excess buffer space around main electrical gear from building components to allow a flexible installation, and provide adequate space for future replacements and maintenance. Provide phone data lines for remote metering and a status panel for remote locations.

d. Automatic transfer switches shall be provided. Provide an open transition between normal and emergency positions, or as directed by the local utility provider.

e. Fuel sources shall be evaluated based on all pertinent criteria. If a diesel engine is selected, it shall be provided with an integral base-mounted day tank. The following other possible fuel sources shall be considered:

- Dual fuel with a natural gas connection and a local liquid propane gas tank.;
- Bi-fuel generator using diesel for starting and then running on natural gas.; and
- Electrical battery energy storage system.

f. Other sources of emergency and standby power as defined by CEC article 700.12 shall be considered. These include, but are not limited to:

- UPS; and
- Direct-current microgrid systems.

g. Engine-mounted critical-type exhaust muffler and double double-contained integral- type fuel oil day tank with fuel-leak detection system shall be specified.

h. Diesel generator exhaust shall be carefully located to prevent entry of fumes into building HVAC system and building openings, per CMC.

i. The system shall be provided with an exterior connection point for a load bank. This connection point shall be capable of providing test load for the generator and UPS (if UPS is centralized). It is assumed that testing will be done with building load and/or a rental load bank. A load bank shall be provided for the generator, sized for 30 percent of generator capacity. The load bank may be shared with a centralized UPS, provided that the load bank is stationary (not generator mounted).

j. Fuel oil storage tank shall be above grade, with proper filling and monitoring systems. The day tank shall be of the manufacturer's standard size, based on the generator capacity. Installation of a fuel- leak detection system is required.

k. Emergency generator shall be located a minimum of 50′ away from the primary electrical source.

l. The following areas in the building shall have emergency and/or standby lighting on the emergency and/or standby power source, as a minimum (refer to the CBC, CEC, and CFC):

- Detention areas, custody areas, and sally port;
- Exit signage;
- Exit corridors and stairwells;
- Assembly rooms, such as courtrooms;
- IT/AV equipment rooms (MDF, IDF, etc.);
- Generator, electrical, mechanical, and elevator equipment rooms, and exterior generator enclosures; and
- Security and detention control equipment locations (security operations center, detention control room).

Commented [SW26]: Modified to just refer to the code section as it is much more complicated and extensive in the new code version.

Commented [SW27]: Consider doing testing with building loads or a rental load bank. Tests can be planned for times when the building is unoccupied. This would be a cost and space savings.

Commented [DP27R2]: Scott: Provide suggested verbiage in-line with the bullets.

Commented [SW27R3]: Revised

m. Emergency and/or standby power shall be provided for holding areas in accordance with the California Building Code.

2.4 Spare Capacity

All electrical panels fed from emergency and/or standby sources shall be adequately sized to power the building emergency and standby loads, in addition to providing the spare capacity listed in table 15.1.

2.5 Temporary Emergency Generator

~~Per the California Electrical Code, w~~When a building is provided with a permanently installed emergency generator, a connection for a temporary generator with capacity to support emergency loads is required. This requirement allows permanent emergency generators to be taken offline for maintenance without disruption to the power supply.

3. Uninterruptible Power Supply

Systems where an outage of 10 seconds (to transfer from normal to emergency power) could damage essential equipment or impair safety shall be on UPS power. The areas served by the UPS shall include~~,~~ but are not limited to:

- Security operations center, main and secondary equipment locations, including cameras and communication systems;
- Computer servers (MDF, IDF, BMS); and
- Telephone switches.

UPS shall not be connected to generator power. Following are the detailed requirements for UPS, when provided.

a. Any UPSs shall be provided per NFPA 111.

b. UPSs shall be small, localized, rack-mounted units to serve individual racks or equipment. In a larger facility, one or more centralized UPSs may be appropriate. During the project's schematic design phase, a review shall be provided of the projected UPS loads along with their locations and supporting functions to determine the optimal UPS system solution for the facility. In the study, the required battery backup time shall be confirmed, taking into consideration outage scenarios and the availability of onsite generators.

c. The design team shall define early in the project what is included in the UPS and control the scope creep; identify amperage, voltage, and run time of the UPS; and confirm who is responsible for design and construction of the UPS in the contract.

d. UPS for the data ~~–~~ processing equipment shall include rectifier/battery charger, solid-state inverter, static bypass transfer switch, maintenance-free batteries sized for 90 minutes, and synchronized circuitry. External maintenance bypass switches shall be provided.

e. The full complement of technology-related systems housed inside communications spaces (MDF/IDF rooms) shall have adequate UPS power backup to support electrical interruptions for 90 minutes for non-life-safety equipment.

~~f.~~ ~~Coordination shall be included for the UPS and generator systems (if applicable) to address capacity, compatibility, and code requirements.~~

f. Coordination shall be included for fire protection, suppression, ventilation, and if applicable, system separation ~~(if applicable)~~ requirements for the rooms where UPS systems are located.

DIVISION TWO
TECHNICAL CRITERIA

11 Architectural Criteria
12 Structural Criteria
13 Mechanical Criteria
14 Building Management System Criteria

15 ELECTRICAL CRITERIA
15.A Objectives
15.B Electrical Criteria

16 Lighting Criteria
17 Network and Communication Systems
18 Audiovisual Systems
19 Acoustical Criteria
20 Fire Protection Criteria

Commented [SW28]: A court building meets the exception requirement in the code as the building has times when it is not occupied. Suggest removing this requirement.

Commented [DP28R2]: We have faced this issue when the building was occupied, that's why it needs to be kept. Some of our buildings have a permanent generator installed even though it is not required by code.

Commented [SW28R3]: That works. But, the statement says per code you must have a connection for temp generator if you have a permanent generator. I was just stating that this building is not occupied 24/7, so you could meet the code exception. This code section is meant to allow for maintenance of the generator. I left it as is.

Commented [DP28R4]: Got it.
Gensler: remove reference to code.

g. If ~~uti~~lizsed, ~~c~~Centralized UPS systems shall include a load bank for testing, and the load banks may be shared with the generator systems, provided the load bank is not generator mounted. ~~(Following is note from Ukiah lessons learned at each location instead of centralized for bldgs. Over 6 stories. Smaller not as important. Localized is better and also per IDF room this is preferred by JCC. Central ups serves the building but sometimes the are putting the ups back ups per courtroom. so a bit contentious issue so at times we JCC are installing localized UPS. The UPS needs and IT needs to be vetted better floor to floor to IDF. Need to confirm what we want in the standards)~~

~~g.~~

Commented [SW29]: Agreed. We would suggest we tell them whether we want centralized or localized UPS. Also, consider removing the load bank requirement. This would be a cost savings and the load bank can be rented if the testing cannot be done with bldg load.

Commented [DP29R2]: Scott: the entire statement added there is incoherent. Please delete the inserted verbiage and provide the text that needs to be added in-line.

Commented [SW29R3]: Deleted and edited a bit. The info that was being added is really already in above (section b).

4. Building Management System Interface

a. Coordinate with the BMS to control, monitor, alarm, and data log the following electrical power information, at a minimum:

- Building normal and emergency power consumption and demand.; and
- Load types by system.

b. Coordinate with the BMS to provide system monitoring for the following electrical systems:

- Emergency generator alarms, including but not limited to engine trouble, low fuel, fuel leak, low voltage, and loss of phase alarms.
- Photovoltaic systems, including but not limited to energy generation and flow of energy to the building loads, energy storage, or to the grid.
- Battery eEnergy storage systems, including but not limited to state of charge and flow of energy to the building loads or to the grid.
- UPS alarms, including but not limited to load on battery, load on bypass, high temperature, and UPS emergency power off alarms. Provide a full list of possible alarms to the Judicial Council during design. The Judicial Council shall determine what it would like annunciated as an alarm.
- Fire alarms, including supervisory and trouble signals.

c. Coordinate with the BMS to provide an interface for lighting controls, including interior and exterior lighting.

System shall be capable of receiving a demand response signal.

Commented [DP30]: Removing this since it contradicts the deletion of demand management above.

15.D ELECTRIC VEHICLE SUPPLY EQUIPMENT

Provide EV chargers and infrastructure per California Green Building Standards Code, Section 5.106.5.

1. General Requirements

a. Applicability: EV chargers shall be installed for any project involving significant modification or installation of parking lots or garages, including resurfacing, per mandatory CalGreen requirements. The designer shall coordinate EVSE requirements early in schematic design to ensure adequate electrical service capacity.

b. Installation Priority: EVSE installation locations shall be prioritized as follows:

- Outside surface parking areas (preferred)
- Roof level of parking structures
- All other parking structure locations
- Court-funded requests for judicial officers in secure lots (where feasible)

c. Compliance: All EVSE installations shall comply with:

- NFPA 70 National Electrical Code, Article 625
- UL 2202 Standard for Electric Vehicle Charging System Equipment
- UL 2594 Standard for Electric Vehicle Supply Equipment
- California Building Code accessibility requirements
- California Code of Regulations Title 13, Section 2360.2 (payment methods)

d. Spare Capacity: Main electrical service and distribution equipment serving parking areas shall include 25 percent spare capacity for future EVSE expansion, in addition to the spare capacity requirements in Table 15.1.

2. Technical Requirements

2.1 Charging Station Specifications

a. Power Levels:

- Level 1: 110/120 VAC, 1.5-2.4 kW (not recommended for new installations)
- Level 2: 208/240 VAC, 7.2-19.2 kW (standard for most applications)
- DC Fast Charge: 480 VAC input, 24-350 kW output (special applications only)

b. Equipment Requirements:

- Commercial grade, UL-listed equipment
- Network-capable chargers with Open Charge Point Protocol (OCPP) compatibility
- Ground-fault circuit-interrupter protection on all circuits
- Manual disconnecting means in accessible location
- Automatic fault detection and disconnect
- NEMA 3R minimum enclosure rating
- Cut-resistant charging cables with internal alarm wires for public/semi-public installations
- Secure cable retraction or management systems to prevent cable theft
- Tamper-resistant hardware and vandal-resistant enclosures

c. Court Fleet Requirements:

- Minimum 6.6 kW at 208V or 7.2 kW at 240V per charging port
- One charging port per fleet vehicle minimum
- Power sharing capability where appropriate
- Charge management systems to limit demand charges

Commented [YR31]: New section per working track with Facility Operations (@Navarro, Andre) and Sustainability.

Commented [SW32]: The new code requires a decent amount of capacity for EV chargers. 25% spare is significant on top of that and may lead to a decent cost due to increases in service size. It is important to understand that all building inherently have 20% - 40% spare capacity on day one due to the code required sizing of equipment.

Commented [DP32R2]: Scott: Please review this entire section for redundant information with code. If it is duplicative, provide reference to code and delete the remaining.

Commented [SW32R3]: Done. Not sure if you want some of the deleted info (ie theft proof units).

Commented [YR33]: Goes into more detail about what was added per Troy's recommendation in Chapter 3.

Commented [DP33R2]: No need to repeat info chapter to chapter.

2.2 Infrastructure Requirements

a. Power Infrastructure:

- Dedicated conduit from electrical room to each charger location
- Minimum 2-1/2 inch conduit for runs up to 100 feet, 3 inch for longer runs
- K-rated transformers for EVSE loads
- Separate metering for EVSE loads

b. Communication Infrastructure:

- 1 inch minimum communication conduit where cellular communication not used
- Connection to building network per Chapter 17 requirements
- Traffic-rated handhole enclosures at charging locations

3. Accessibility Requirements

a. Accessible Charging Stations (ACS): Facilities shall provide ACS per U.S. Access Board and California DSA requirements:

- Standard ACS: 11 feet × 20 feet space with 5 foot access aisle
- Hands-free ACS: 9 feet × 18 feet space with 5 foot access aisle
- Accessible reach ranges per ABAAS Chapter 3
- Maximum 5-10 lbs force for cord handling

b. Quantity: Follow California Building Code requirements for minimum ACS quantities.

4. Safety and Protection Requirements

4.1 Fire Protection

a. Parking Structures: Automatic sprinkler protection required throughout structures with EVSE. Class 1 standpipe required at accessible location near EVSE.

b. Separation Distances (outdoor surface parking):

- 25 feet minimum from building exterior walls
- 30 feet from combustible construction or unprotected openings
- Alternative approaches subject to Judicial Council Quality Compliance Unit approval

c. Clearances: Maintain 10 feet minimum clear space from vegetation and combustible materials around EVSE and parking spaces.

4.2 Physical Protection

a. Vehicle impact protection per IBC requirements using bollards, wheel stops, or equipment setbacks

b. Wall-mounted units on non-combustible construction only

c. Adequate lighting for safety and equipment operation

d. Signage at parking structure entrances indicating EVSE presence and locations

e. For public and semi-public installations, enhanced security measures including surveillance camera coverage and emergency communication devices

5. Emergency and Standby Power

a. EVSE loads shall not be connected to the emergency generator except where:

- Required by Court policy for essential fleet vehicles
- Spare generator capacity is available
- Formal approval is obtained from the Judicial Council

b. Where generator connection is not feasible but backup power is required, standalone battery energy storage systems (BESS) may be considered, subject to:

Commented [SW34]: This seems excessive.

Commented [SW35]: Have facilities experienced high harmonics? We have not seen harmonic problems with EV chargers. We would suggest eliminating this requirement.

- Compliance with NFPA 855 for systems greater than 20 kWh
- UL 9540 listing requirements
- Review by Quality Compliance Unit (Fire Protection)

6. Building Management System Interface

The BMS shall monitor and control EVSE systems including:

- Real-time power consumption and demand
- Load management and demand response
- Equipment status and fault alarms
- Usage data by location and time
- Integration with utility time-of-use rates
- Cable theft or vandalism alerts for installations with alarm-equipped cables

7. Coordination Requirements

a. Early Design Phase:

- Evaluate utility service capacity and rate structures
- Coordinate with site civil for conduit routing
- Assess parking layout for optimal charger placement
- Review security requirements and surveillance coverage

b. Construction Documents:

- Single-line diagrams showing EVSE loads and protection
- Load calculations demonstrating adequate capacity
- Panel schedules with dedicated EVSE circuits identified
- Security and anti-theft measures clearly specified

c. Commissioning:

- Testing of all safety features
- Network connectivity verification
- BMS integration testing
- Anti-theft alarm system testing
- User training for Court personnel

15.E: E-Mobility Charging Infrastructure

15.E.1 General Electrical Requirements

This section provides guidance for electrical systems serving e-bike and e-scooter charging facilities. This infrastructure differs significantly from automotive Electric Vehicle Supply Equipment (EVSE) due to lower power requirements, higher fire risk from lithium-ion batteries, and diverse user patterns.

While automotive EVSE (covered in Section 15.D) addresses electric vehicle charging for automobiles, this section provides requirements for lower-power e-mobility devices. These facilities have distinct requirements due to differences in power levels, fire safety concerns related to battery storage, diverse user populations, and operational considerations.

15.E.2 Scope and Application

E-mobility charging infrastructure shall be evaluated on a project-by-project basis considering:

Commented [YR36]: New section per requests and inquiries from the Courts to Chris Magnusson, Jagan Singh, and me.

Commented [YR36R2]: @Petrushka, Michelle

Commented [DP37]: Scott: Please review this entire section for redundant information with code. If it is duplicative, provide reference to code and delete the remaining.

Commented [SW37R2]: Bicycle charging is not required by code. Do you want to require it?

Commented [DP37R3]: We are not going to repeat code requirements, nor exceed them for charging requirements.

- Electrical capacity availability
- Fire safety system integration
- Operations and maintenance capabilities
- User payment system requirements (if grid-powered)

Refer to Chapter 3, Section 3B.2 for space planning and project evaluation criteria.

15.E.3 Power Requirements

15.E.3.1 Typical Power Specifications

E-mobility charging typically requires:

E-Bikes:

- Charging Power: 100-200 watts per bike (standard)
- Higher power e-bikes: 200-600 watts
- Voltage: 120V AC standard outlets or 208-240V dedicated circuits
- Charging Time: 2-6 hours for standard capacity batteries

E-Scooters:

- Charging Power: 100-300 watts per scooter
- Voltage: 120V AC standard outlets
- Charging Time: 3-5 hours typical

15.E.3.2 Circuit Design

Charging circuits shall be designed considering:

- **Diversity Factor**: Not all spaces will charge simultaneously
  - Apply 0.7 diversity factor for 5-10 spaces
  - Apply 0.6 diversity factor for more than 10 spaces
- **Circuit Loading**: Maximum 80% of continuous circuit capacity
- **Dedicated Circuits**: Charging equipment shall be on dedicated circuits separate from other building loads
- **Circuit Protection**: Each charging location or group shall have appropriate overcurrent protection and ground fault protection

15.E.4 Electrical Distribution Options

15.E.4.1 Grid-Powered Systems

Grid-powered charging systems shall include:

- **Service Capacity**: Verify adequate electrical service capacity for anticipated load
- **Metering**: Dedicated metering for public charging to track energy consumption
- Distribution:
  - Panel board dedicated to e-mobility charging loads preferred
  - Minimum 20-amp, 120V circuits for standard outlets
  - Consider 240V circuits for higher-power e-bike charging
- Payment Infrastructure:
  - Networked smart outlets with payment processing capability, OR
  - Charging stations with integrated payment systems
  - WiFi or cellular connectivity for payment processing

15.E.4.2 Solar-Powered Systems

Off-grid solar-powered charging systems shall include:

- Photovoltaic Array: Sized for:
  - Daily energy demand (kWh)
  - Local solar resource (insolation data)
  - System losses (typically 20-25%)

- Seasonal variation
- Battery Energy Storage System (BESS):
  - Capacity to provide charging during low/no solar production
  - Minimum 1-2 days of storage autonomy recommended
  - Battery management system (BMS) for safe operation
  - Separate fire-rated enclosure from e-mobility charging area
- **Charge Controllers**: MPPT (Maximum Power Point Tracking) controllers for efficiency
- **Inverters**: Pure sine wave inverters appropriately sized for load
- **System Monitoring**: Remote monitoring of system performance and battery health

15.E.4.3 Hybrid Systems

Hybrid grid-tied solar systems may combine grid backup with solar generation:

- Solar generation with battery storage for daytime charging
- Grid power for nighttime or high-demand periods
- Requires utility interconnection agreement
- Net metering considerations per utility requirements

Commented [SW38]: Are these systems to be separate from the bldg PV system and only for the chargers?

Commented [DP38R2]: Not applicable, excessive requirements.

15.E.5 Outlet and Receptacle Specifications

15.E.5.1 Standard Charging Outlets

Charging outlets shall meet the following specifications:

- Outlet Type:
  - NEMA 5-15R or 5-20R (120V) standard for most applications
  - NEMA 6-20R (240V) for higher-power e-bike charging stations
  - Weather-resistant (WR) rated if in outdoor or semi-outdoor locations
- **GFCI Protection**: All outlets shall have ground-fault circuit interrupter protection
- Outlet Mounting:
  - Height: 18-24 inches above finished floor for accessibility
  - Weather-protected enclosures if exposed to elements
  - Tamper-resistant outlets in public areas
- **Smart Outlets** (for grid-powered public charging):
  - Network-connected for payment processing
  - Remote monitoring and control capability
  - Energy metering per outlet
  - Automatic shutoff after charging complete or time limit

Commented [SW39]: Are these an option or required?

Commented [DP39R2]: Not applicable, excessive requirements.

15.E.5.2 Charging Station Equipment

Purpose-built e-mobility charging stations may include:

- Multiple charging ports per unit (typically 2-6)
- Integrated payment processing (credit card/mobile payment)
- User interface display (instructions, pricing, charging status)
- Automatic power cutoff when charging complete
- Overcurrent and ground fault protection
- Weatherproof enclosure for outdoor installation

15.E.6 Fire Safety Integration

15.E.6.1 Electrical Shutoff Systems

E-mobility charging areas shall include:

- Emergency Power Shutoff (EPO):
  - Clearly marked red emergency shutoff button
  - Located at facility entrance and accessible to emergency responders

- Shuts off all charging circuit power
- Labeled: "E-MOBILITY CHARGING EMERGENCY SHUTOFF"

- Automatic Shutoff Integration:
  - Interface with fire alarm system
  - Automatic power shutoff upon fire alarm activation
  - Manual reset required after emergency shutoff

15.E.6.2 Fire Detection and Suppression Integration

Electrical systems shall coordinate with fire protection systems:

- **Smoke Detection**: Early warning detection with notification to fire alarm panel
- **Heat Detection**: High-temperature detection for thermal runaway warning
- **Suppression System**: Power coordination with automatic suppression systems
- **Emergency Lighting**: Emergency egress lighting on emergency power
- **Notification Systems**: Visual and audible alarms

15.E.7 Electrical Safety Requirements

15.E.7.1 Code Compliance

All e-mobility charging electrical systems shall comply with:

- California Electrical Code (CEC), latest edition
- National Electrical Code (NEC) Article 625 (Electric Vehicle Charging)
- UL 2849 (Electrical Systems for E-Bikes)
- UL 2271 (Batteries for Light Electric Vehicles)
- UL 2272 (Electrical Systems for Personal E-Mobility Devices)
- IEC 60038 (Standard voltage values)
- IEC 60664 (Insulation coordination)

15.E.7.2 Grounding and Bonding

All charging equipment shall be properly grounded:

- Equipment grounding conductor per NEC requirements
- Bonding of all metal enclosures
- Ground fault protection for all circuits
- Grounding electrode system connection

15.E.7.3 Environmental Protection

Electrical equipment in e-mobility facilities shall be rated for environment:

- **Indoor Facilities**: NEMA 1 enclosures minimum
- **Outdoor or Semi-Outdoor**: NEMA 3R or NEMA 4 enclosures
- **Corrosion Resistance**: Appropriate for coastal or harsh environments
- **Temperature Rating**: Equipment rated for ambient temperature range

15.E.8 Installation and Labeling Requirements

15.E.8.1 Electrical Labeling

All electrical equipment shall be labeled with:

- Circuit Identification:
  - Panel name and circuit number
  - Voltage rating
  - "E-MOBILITY CHARGING CIRCUIT"
- Shutdown Devices:
  - Emergency shutoff buttons clearly marked
  - Disconnect switches labeled
- Warning Labels:

- Arc flash hazard labels per NFPA 70E
- "LITHIUM-ION BATTERY CHARGING" warning

15.E.8.2 As-Built Documentation

Electrical contractor shall provide:

- Complete as-built drawings showing:
  - Circuit routing and equipment locations
  - Panel schedules with circuit loading
  - Equipment specifications and model numbers
- O&M manuals including:
  - Equipment operation instructions
  - Maintenance requirements and schedules
  - Troubleshooting procedures
  - Manufacturer contact information
- For solar-powered systems:
  - System design calculations
  - Expected performance data
  - Monitoring system access information
  - Battery maintenance and replacement schedule

15.E.9 Operations and Maintenance Considerations

15.E.9.1 Ease of Maintenance

E-mobility charging systems shall be designed for:

- **Accessibility**: All equipment accessible to maintenance staff without special tools
- **Modularity**: Components easily replaceable without system-wide shutdown
- **Monitoring**: Remote monitoring capability to identify issues before failure
- **Spare Parts**: Common, readily available components specified where possible

15.E.9.2 Maintenance Requirements

Facilities Management shall establish procedures for:

Regular Inspection:

- Monthly visual inspection of outlets and equipment
- Quarterly testing of GFCI protection
- Annual thermal imaging of electrical connections
- Testing of emergency shutoff systems per fire alarm testing schedule

Solar System Maintenance (if applicable):

- PV panel cleaning and inspection
- Battery system health monitoring
- Inverter and charge controller performance verification
- Connection integrity inspection

User Support:

- Response procedures for charging equipment issues
- Payment system troubleshooting
- User education materials maintenance

15.E.9.3 Safety Procedures

Maintenance staff shall be trained on:

- Lithium-ion battery fire hazards
- Emergency shutoff procedures
- Safe working practices around charging equipment

- Coordination with emergency responders

15.E.10 Commissioning Requirements

Prior to facility operation, e-mobility charging systems shall be commissioned including:

Electrical Testing:

- Voltage verification at all outlets
- Current capacity testing
- GFCI function testing
- Ground continuity verification
- Insulation resistance testing

System Integration Testing:

- Emergency shutoff function
- Fire alarm integration
- Payment system operation (if applicable)
- Monitoring system connectivity

Load Testing:

- Simultaneous charging of multiple devices
- Peak demand verification
- Thermal performance under load

Solar System Performance (if applicable):

- PV array output verification
- Battery charging and discharging cycles
- Inverter performance
- System efficiency measurement

Documentation Verification:

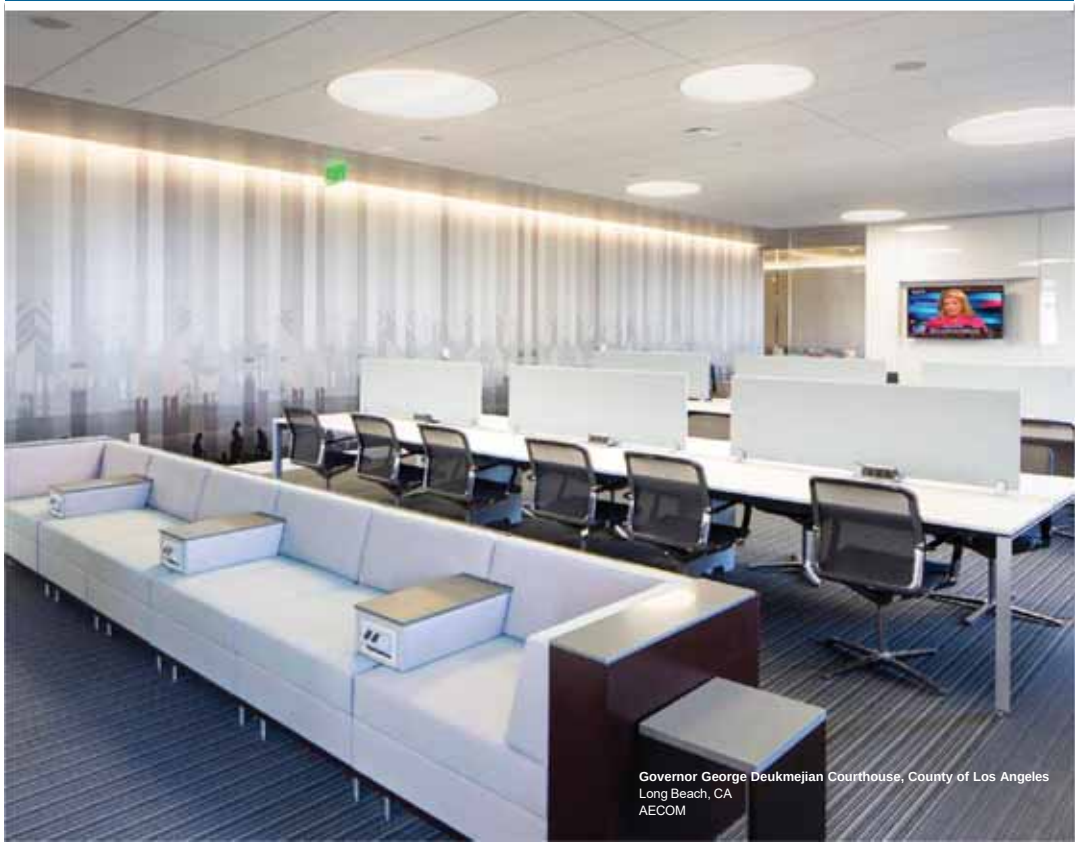
- As-built drawings accuracy
- O&M manuals completeness
- Training completion for facilities staff
- Emergency responder notification

e.

DIVISION TWO: TECHNICAL CRITERIA

16 LIGHTING CRITERIA

SECTION	TOPIC	PAGE
16.A	Objectives	16.2
16.B	Lighting Criteria	16.2
16.C	Lighting Strategies	16.6
16.D	Lighting Controls	16.9
16.E	Lighting Commissioning	16.11



Governor George Deukmejian Courthouse, County of Los Angeles
Long Beach, CA
AECOM

Designers are encouraged to minimize types of luminaires and ~~replacement drivers~~lamps.

This chapter defines the general and technical criteria for lighting systems and encompasses recommendations for best practices, energy efficiency, sustainability, and creation of productive work environments that emphasize the dignity and importance of activities conducted in the facility.

16.A OBJECTIVES

Lighting design in the court facility shall be functional, appropriate for users, energy-efficient, and easy to maintain and shall maximize use of modern and appropriate technology. Daylight in occupied spaces is desirable but must be carefully controlled to avoid glare and minimize heat gain. In security-sensitive spaces, minimize views into the space from outside the building. Direct sunlight penetration into functional court spaces shall be avoided to prevent high light and shadow contrast and glare.

16.B LIGHTING CRITERIA

1. General

a. ~~Refer to t~~Tables 16.1 and 16.2 ~~for~~ provide recommended illuminance levels.

b. Lighting designs shall meet the power density requirements of the current California Energy Code (Cal. Code Regs., tit. 24, pt. 6).

c. Lighting-level calculations (for normal and emergency settings) shall be provided by the designer at the end of the design development phase. Calculations shall include all interior spaces and all exterior areas within the project boundaries.

2. Reflectance Values

Indirect or direct ~~and /~~-indirect lighting systems shall be the preferred system. The reflectance of surrounding surfaces greatly affects the quality of the lighting system and energy ~~-~~efficiency levels. Surrounding surface reflectance values shall comply with criteria noted in table 16.3.

3. Light Engine Performance Requirements

Refer to table 16.4 for performance requirements for ~~lighting systems~~ light-emitting diode (LED) lighting systems~~performance requirements~~.

4. Light Engine Selection

a. Lighting systems shall be primarily solid-state lighting, such as LED lamps, to maximize energy efficiency and minimize maintenance.

b. Preference shall~~ould~~ be given to LED luminaires with replaceable drivers~~.~~ to aid long-term maintenance and serviceability.

c. Maintenance of such systems shall be discussed during the design process to ensure longevity of the installed system.

d. Renovated facilities shall develop a plan to phase out ~~and upgrade~~ current mercury-~~-~~containing fluorescent lamps and upgrade to LED technology.

~~e. Fluorescent, incandescent, halogen, induction, and high- and low-pressure sodium sources shall not be used unless required by local or city ordinances. Mercury vapor sources shall not be used.~~

~~f.~~e. ~~Design l~~Lighting and controls shall be designed to accommodate videoconferencing where programmed in courtrooms, conference rooms, chambers, or mediation areas.

~~g.~~f. Illuminated exit signs shall ~~utilize~~ use LED lamp technology and ~~shall use~~ less than ~~5~~ five watts of power.

Commented [DP1]: Gensler: remove space before and after / so it reads “direct/indirect”.

Commented [DP2]: Scott: please clarify the difference between indirect lighting system and direct/indirect lighting system. This sentence is not clear.

Commented [DP2R2]: Scott: Direct lighting is a source that directs 100% of the light straight to the surface.

Indirect lighting directs 100% of the light to another surface (typically the ceiling). That light bounces off the other surface (ceiling) and illuminates the space. There are also light fixtures that utilize the interior surfaces of the housing to create the indirect lighting. The source is concealed and not seen by the people under the light.

Direct/indirect lighting has both direct and indirect sources. This could be 60% indirect / 40% direct, or 50%/50%, etc.

I do not feel we need to revise the standards to define this as anyone designing the lighting should understand this statement.

Commented [SN3]: Shall? (This question about whether some words should be "shall" throughout the chapter is really asking if there is a minimum.)

Commented [DP3R2]: Gensler: change to shall.

Commented [LW4]: Is this still relevant with AB 2208?

Commented [DP4R2]: Scott: please advise.

Commented [SW4R3]: AB2208 bans the sale of fluorescent lamps as of 01/2025. Since the lamps can’t be purchased, recommend deleting this as non-relevant.

Table 16.1 ~~Recommended~~ Required Interior Illuminance Levels

SPACE DESCRIPTION	REQUIRED~~COMMENDED~~ AVERAGE HORIZONTAL ILLUMINATION LEVEL (FC)	REQUIRED~~COMMENDED~~ AVERAGE VERTICAL ILLUMINATION LEVEL (FC)	OTHER CONSIDERATIONS
Courtrooms			
Judge's ~~Bench~~bench	45–55	19	Additional task lighting ~~may be desirable~~to be provided from ceiling.
Clerk's ~~Desk~~desk	45–55	19	Additional task lighting ~~may be desirable~~to be provided from ceiling.
Spectator ~~Seating~~seating	15–25	5	
Litigant's ~~Table~~table	45–55	19	Additional task lighting ~~may be desirable~~to be provided from ceiling.
Podium	45–55	19	Additional adjustable task lighting ~~is recommended~~to be provided.
Witness ~~Chair~~chair	30–40	14	
Offices			
Intensive VDT ~~Use~~ use ~~Offices~~offices	30–40	—	Additional task lighting ~~may be desirable~~to be provided.
Intermittent VDT ~~Use~~ use ~~Offices~~offices	45–55	—	Additional task lighting ~~may be desirable~~to be provided.
Other Areas			
Conference ~~Rooms~~rooms	30–40	7–28	
Jury ~~Assembly~~ assembly ~~Areas~~areas	10–30	5–19	Provide multiple levels of light for various room functions.
Waiting ~~Areas~~ areas,~~/ Lounges~~lounges~~/~~, ~~Cafés~~cafés	10	—	
High-~~Density~~ density ~~Files~~files	—	7–19	Provide vertical illumination to within 30" of the floor.
Public and ~~Private~~ private ~~Circulation~~circulation	15–20	—	
Staff ~~Circulation~~circulation	5–10	—	
Public ~~Lobbies~~lobbies	15–20	—	
Holding ~~Areas~~areas	25–35	5–9	
Restrooms	10–20	3–19	
Mechanical/~~Plumbing~~ plumbing ~~Rooms~~rooms	10	—	
Electrical/AV/~~Telecom~~ telecom ~~Rooms~~rooms~~/~~, MDF~~/~~, ~~Mailroom~~mail room	50	—	

DIVISION TWO: TECHNICAL CRITERIA

- 11 Architectural Criteria
- 12 ~~Structural Criteria~~
- 13 Mechanical Criteria
- 14 Building Management System Criteria
- 15 Electrical Criteria
- 16 LIGHTING CRITERIA
  - 16.A Objectives
  - 16.B Lighting Criteria
  - 16.C Lighting Strategies
  - 16.D Lighting Controls
  - 16.E Lighting Commissioning
- 17 Network and Communication Systems
- 18 Audiovisual Systems
- 19 Acoustical Criteria
- 20 Fire Protection Criteria

Commented [SN5]: For Tables 16.1, 16.2, and 16.3: it is entitled "Recommended" and contains a column for "Recommended minimums" and "Other Considerations" that contain language indicating additional task lighting "may be desirable" or "is recommended." How will this work for a DB project to ensure JC gets at minimum the lighting types and levels that they want in the design? Are there minimums JC wants?

Commented [DP5R2]: Good point. I will make the necessary changes.

Notes: Value ranges are for average general illumination at work-plane height, unless noted otherwise. Task illumination requirements are higher.

* For areas not listed, refer to the ~~online~~ Illuminating Engineering Society (IES) Lighting Library ~~(ies.org)~~ for illumination guidelines. If the light level recommendations stated in the IES Lighting Library differ from these standards, project designers shall notify the Judicial Council for review and approval of proposed target light levels.

~~† FC = foot-candles. Value ranges are for average general illumination at work-plane height, unless noted otherwise. Task illumination requirements are higher.~~

~~‡ Value ranges are for average illumination at facial height, unless otherwise noted.~~

AV = audiovisual; FC = foot-candles; MDF = main distribution frame; VDT = visual display terminal.

Table 16.2 Exterior Illuminance Levels

SPACE DESCRIPTION*	~~RECOMMENDED~~ REQUIRED MINIMUM HORIZONTAL ILLUMINATION LEVEL (FC)†	~~RECOMMENDED~~ REQUIRED MINIMUM VERTICAL ILLUMINATION LEVEL (FC)‡	OTHER CONSIDERATIONS
Parking Areas			
Parking ~~Garage~~garage—~~General~~general	1.0	0.5	
Parking ~~Garage~~garage—~~Ramps~~ramps	1.0	0.5	Daytime minimum horizontal shall be~~is~~ 2.0 FC. Daytime minimum vertical shall be~~is~~ 1.0 FC.
Parking ~~Garage~~garage—~~Entrance~~entrance	1.0	0.5	Daytime minimum horizontal shall be~~is~~ 50 FC. Daytime minimum vertical shall be~~is~~ 25 FC. Daytime light level may include daylight.
Parking ~~Garage~~garage—~~Stairways~~stairways	~~2~~5.0	~~1.0~~2.5	
Open ~~Parking~~ parking ~~Lots~~lots	0.~~2~~5 (asphalt) ~~1.0 (concrete)~~	0.~~2~~51	Provide ~~15~~4:1 maximum-to-~~minimum~~ average uniformity ratio.
Other Exterior Areas			
Active ~~Building~~ building ~~Entries~~entries	5.0 ~~Average~~average	3.0	
Inactive ~~Building~~ building ~~Entries~~entries	3.0 ~~Average~~average	3.0	
Pedestrian ~~Pathways~~pathways	1.0	0.3–0.65	
Stairways	1.0	0.3–0.60	

N

otes: Value ranges are for average general illumination at work-plane height, unless noted otherwise. All exterior target light levels are to be determined per project based on security equipment, local ordinances (if any), and emergency egress requirements.

* For areas not listed, refer to the online Illuminating Engineering Society (IES) Lighting Library ~~(ies.org)~~ for illumination guidelines. If the light level recommendations stated in the IES Lighting Library differ from these standards, project designers shall notify the Judicial Council for review and approval of proposed target light levels.

~~† Value ranges are for average general illumination at work-plane height, unless noted otherwise. All exterior target light levels are to be determined per project based on security equipment, local ordinances (if any), and emergency egress requirements.~~

~~‡ Value ranges are for average illumination at facial height, unless otherwise noted.~~

Commented [DP6]: Scott: what is the reason for these changes?

Commented [SW6R2]: The IES recommendations have changed, including deletion of different recommendations for concrete and asphalt parking lots.

Table 16.3 ~~Recommended~~ Required Reflectance Levels

ROOM SURFACE	~~RECOMMENDED~~ REQUIRED REFLECTANCE
Ceilings	Minimum reflectance shall not be below 85%.
Walls, ~~Systems~~ system ~~Furniture~~ furniture ~~Partitions~~partitions	Generally, walls ~~should~~ shall not be below 60% reflective, but occasional accent walls that are between 40% and 60% reflective will be acceptable on Judicial Council approval. The interior finish schedule shall have a column indicating light reflectance of any materials used in courtrooms or offices.
Floors	Reflectance shall be approximately 20%.

Table 16.4 Lighting Systems LED Performance Requirements

	INTERIOR	EXTERIOR
Fidelity ~~Index~~ index (R_f)	>~~78~~90 (P1F2)	>70 (P3)
Gamut ~~Index~~ index (R_g)	~~92 > R$_g$ >~~ 11095	~~80 > R$_g$ >~~ 12088
Minimum ~~Fidelity~~ fidelity ~~Red~~ red (R9) ~~Value~~value	~~30~~50	20
Minimum ~~Efficacy~~efficacy	75 lumens per watt	100 lumens per watt
Minimum L70 ~~Lifetime~~ lifetime (extrapolated)	80,000 hours	100,000 hours
MacAdam ~~Ellipse~~ellipse	Maximum three-step MacAdam ellipse variation throughout listed life (L70)	Maximum four-step MacAdam ellipse variation throughout listed life (L70)
Legacy ~~Color~~ color ~~Rendering~~ rendering ~~Index~~ index (CRI); ~~Minimum~~ minimum ~~Average~~ average CRI ~~Value~~ value (R_a)	~~80~~90	70

DIVISION TWO: TECHNICAL CRITERIA
11 Architectural Criteria
12 Structural Criteria
13 Mechanical Criteria
14 Building Management System Criteria
15 Electrical Criteria
16 LIGHTING CRITERIA
16.A Objectives
16.B Lighting Criteria
16.C Lighting Strategies
16.D Lighting Controls
16.E Lighting Commissioning
17 Network and Communication Systems
18 Audiovisual Systems
19 Acoustical Criteria
20 Fire Protection Criteria

Commented [DP7]: Gensler: change to required.

Commented [SN8]: Shall? Also, the sentence continues that occasionally less reflective walls will be acceptable. Does this need to say "upon approval" or something similar to indicate when less reflective walls will be acceptable?

Commented [DP8R2]: Made changes.

Commented [DP9]: Scott: what is the reason for these changes?

Commented [SW9R2]: Alignment with IES TM-30 language for color fidelity. For any WELL or LEED buildings, interior fidelity needs to be increased to 90+. LED technology has improved to provide these values as standard product offerings.

Each project design team shall develop a luminaire specification that uses the least number of types required to satisfy the design in an effort to simplify maintenance.

As design teams endeavor to reduce exterior lighting energy consumption during inactive periods at night, the exterior lighting design should strive to maintain the uniformity of light during the reduced-light-level scenario, which can help contribute to the sense of safety in pedestrian areas and parking lots at night.

5. Luminaire Selection

Custom-designed luminaires are not permitted. Avoid trendy luminaires or materials; instead, use durable, readily available, off-the-shelf luminaires. Luminaires shall be selected on the basis of maintaining a 25-year life cycle with the facility. Luminaires shall be evaluated on the basis of effectiveness and long-term life cycle costs, especially for characteristics and components that ensure longevity and quality, not just lowest first costs.

6. Visual Criteria

Luminaires shall be selected and located to minimize direct or reflected glare. When multiple luminaires are specified, the specifier shall ensure that the luminaires meet equivalent performance standards.

7. Energy-Efficiency Criteria

The most efficient luminaires that provide visual comfort necessary for the activity shall be used.

8. Maintenance Criteria

Lighting maintenance (including but not limited to component replacement) is a significant portion of the ongoing court building operating cost; the limited resources available for operation and maintenance must be conserved. Therefore, lighting designs shall, at a minimum, provide:

- Readily apparent access to all luminaire assemblies for driver and array replacement (do not use or locate luminaires such that they require special lifts or overly specialized equipment to access them);
- Removable shielding devices with cables or chains to hold the device to the luminaire during relamping; and
- LED luminaires that have a replaceable driver, when that option is available.

16.C LIGHTING STRATEGIES

The following requirements address various spaces in and around the facility.

1. Exterior Lighting

The primary purpose of exterior lighting is to provide safety and security for those entering and exiting the building outside of daylight hours.

a. Exterior lighting shall be compatible with security cameras used on the site. Typically, an ~~average~~ average ~~to~~ to minimum uniformity ratio of 4:1 shall be achieved, with well-shielded luminaires out of view of cameras. ~~Lighting~~ Illumination levels do not need to be high if the light source is of good color quality, uniformity is high, and glare is minimized.

b. Illumination ~~Lighting~~ levels shall be determined for each project based on camera technology and local site requirements~~.~~ (~~See~~ refer to table 16.2, Recommended Exterior Illuminance Levels~~.~~).

c. Exterior lighting shall not contribute to light pollution or trespass by emitting light beyond the property. Minimize glare and unwanted light for neighbors. The U.S. Green Building Council's Leadership in Energy and Environmental Design (LEED) for Building Design and Construction (Sustainable Sites credit category: Light Pollution Reduction) shall be used as a guideline for developing the exterior lighting plan, as shall the code-required light pollution reduction measures in the California Green Building Standards Code (CALGreen; Cal. Code Regs., tit. 24, pt. 11). Designers shall~~ould~~ consider

Commented [SN10]: Shall?

specifying LED luminaires compliant with DarkSky ~~the~~ International ~~Dark Sky Association~~ requirements—specifically, a correlated color temperature of 3,000 kelvin or less.

d. Outdoor lighting shall have photo-sensors or an astronomical time clock for control. Exterior luminaires shall~~ould~~ be specified to minimize the opportunity for vandalism. For example, in-grade landscape lighting with vandal-resistant hardware is preferred over above-grade adjustable landscape accent lights.
e. Light bollards are discouraged because of potential damage and maintenance issues.
f. Luminaires shall be provided for all flagpoles.
g. Designers shall use LED sources with integrated occupancy/motion controls in parking lot luminaires. Emergency lighting shall be exempt from this requirement.
h. Exterior lighting levels shall be reduced rather than turned off during nighttime hours of inactive periods in compliance with ~~CALGreen~~California Energy Code ~~Part 6~~. Lighting required for emergency lighting or nighttime security shall be exempt.

2. Security Lighting

a. Determine security lighting requirements at entries, screening stations, or wherever programmed, and coordinate with the security equipment specifications. Faces appearing in cameras must be lit. Color rendition for security needs shall be improved by specifying LED luminaires that have been successfully evaluated to have a minimum fidelity index ~~and skin fidelity index~~ of at least 78, as tested by the methodology defined in American National Standards Institute (ANSI) and Illuminating Engineering Society~~'s ANSI~~ (IES) TM-30-~~18~~, *IES Method for Evaluating Light Source Color Rendition*.
b. In larger facilities with a centralized lighting control system, provide means within the security operations center to manually override the reduced level of exterior lighting for security purposes.
c. Provide a comprehensive nighttime security lighting scheme—to be discussed with the Judicial Council's Emergency Planning and Security Coordination unit and coordinated with the architectural design team—to satisfy both security needs and the architectural design intent establishing the nighttime civic presence of the facility.
~~c.~~d. Comply with California Department of Industrial Relations~~'~~ ~~Elevator Inspector~~ requirements ~~if applicable~~. Comply with ~~ASME (~~American National Standards Institute (ASME) A17.1, Safety Code for Elevators and Escalators, for illumination at thresholds, pits, and equipment rooms.

3. Emergency Lighting

a. To maximize energy savings, ~~designers may~~ consider providing means to turn off emergency lighting after hours via Underwriters Laboratories' (UL) 924–listed bypass relay or similar means, while still allowing the emergency lighting to activate during loss of normal power. Coordinate after-hours switching with Judicial Council security requirements.
b. Provide integral battery packs or connection to an uninterruptible power source for select lights in the vicinity of the generator, within the generator enclosure. Provide emergency lighting as required in chapter 15, Electrical Criteria.
c. Coordinate all emergency egress lighting with current State Fire Marshal requirements. Comply with ~~NFPA (~~National Fire Protection Association (NFPA) 101, Life Safety Code, for illumination in stairwells.
d. Comply with Federal Aviation Administration (FAA) requirements, if applicable. Locate the FAA lighting controls status panel in an area that is staffed 24 hours a day, 7 days a week~~, 24/7 area~~. Plan for temporary FAA lighting and permitting when the building tops out. Confirm grounding and lightning protection. Confirm that FAA lighting is on emergency power.

DIVISION TWO: TECHNICAL CRITERIA
11 Architectural Criteria
12 Structural Criteria
13 Mechanical Criteria
14 Building Management System Criteria
15 Electrical Criteria
16 LIGHTING CRITERIA
16.A Objectives
16.B Lighting Criteria
16.C Lighting Strategies
16.D Lighting Controls
16.E Lighting Commissioning
17 Network and Communication Systems
18 Audiovisual Systems
19 ~~Acoustical~~ Criteria
20 Fire Protection Criteria

Commented [SN11]: Shall? I believe other parts of the CTCFS have stated, such as regarding signage, vandalism minimization shall be considered / done in design.

Commented [DP12]: Scott: what is the difference in fidelity index and skin fidelity index? Why do we need to list only fidelity index?

Commented [SW12R2]: We are not familiar with "skin fidelity index" and cannot find definitions on any platform, internet search, or AI inquiry.
Since it is not in IES or other lighting standards we deleted.

Commented [SN13]: Shall?

Commented [DP13R2]: rephrased

Commented [LD14]: Explain or reword? "an area that is staffed 24 hours a day, 7 days a week"?

4. Courtroom Lighting

a. Facial feature clarity is very important in the courtroom, except in the spectator area. Therefore:

- Use a combination of direct and indirect lighting;
- Avoid harsh shadows, whether from electric light or daylight; and
- Minimize direct and reflected glare.

b. Audiovisual (AV) presentations are common in courtrooms. Lighting must be flexible enough to allow for dimmed ambient light levels, with sufficient light for note taking. Lighting directly in front of a projection or video display shall be capable of being switched off for evidence display. For courtrooms with flat-screen monitors, ensure that light sources do not obscure the screen image. Provide multiple levels of switched and continuous dimming in all courtrooms. Do not combine lighting scene controls with AV system controls. The same principle of lighting control shall be applied in conference and training rooms equipped with projectors and flat-screen monitors.

c. Diffused daylight (without direct sunlight penetration) is desirable but may not be possible in all spaces. Where daylight is available, provide mechanical shading devices capable of darkening but not blacking out the room. Because a direct view into the courtroom is a security concern, provide daylight by clerestories or skylights only, or provide fixed louvers or baffles that prevent unwanted angles of view from exterior locations. Do not use diffusing glass below 8′ above finished floor for any glazing that can receive direct sunlight during any hours of courtroom occupancy. All exterior glazing into a courtroom is generally required to be ~~bullet~~ bullet-resistant for security, so daylight into courtrooms sh~~ould~~all be carefully evaluated against project budget constraints. Where daylight is unavailable, supplement general illumination with other wall lighting such as wall washers or sconces.

5. Lighting for General Open Areas and Private Offices

Office ceilings shall be suitable for indirect lighting or both direct and indirect lighting. As with other spaces, minimizing glare and maximizing luminaire efficiency are key considerations. Where the California Energy Code requires additional controls for daylight zones, dimming is preferred to multilevel switching or stepped dimming.

6. Lighting of Judges' Chambers

Judges' chambers have the same general illumination requirements as other offices. The chambers typically have several task areas. Provide supplementary dimmable overhead task lighting at the conference table.

7. Lobby Lighting

Lobby shape, size, and finishes vary at each facility. Select the most efficient source with good shielding to reduce glare. Luminaires shall be located at a reasonable height for easy maintenance~~,~~ without the need to use scissor lifts.

8. Circulation Lighting

Circulation areas shall have even, diffuse illumination for wayfinding. Luminaire selection and location shall be coordinated with directional signage. Limited accent lighting may be used to assist in wayfinding.

Commented [SN15]: Shall?

Commented [SN16]: On the next page, 16.D.1.a., a deletion is made. The sentence states, "In courtrooms with four or fewer zones of control, where lighting can be controlled from one primary location with one or two additional three-way controls, standard wall box ~~switches or~~ dimmers shall be used . . . ." Does the language here saying that "dimming is preferred to multilevel switching or stepped dimming" align with what is now in 16.D.1.a?

Exit ~~-~~stair lighting shall incorporate the use of luminaires with integral ultrasonic occupancy sensors for energy savings. Each project shall verify with the ~~California~~ California State Fire Marshal the specific control scheme acceptable with regard to egress illumination.

9. Holding Area Lighting

For holding areas, select security-rated luminaires resistant to penetration, distortion, and contraband concealment. Characteristics may include but are not limited to continuously seam-welded and smooth corners, completely concealed hinges, hardened security screws, and inner and outer lenses rated for the level of security required per space~~.~~ (~~See~~ refer to ~~chapter~~ chapter 8, In-Custody Defendant Receiving, Holding, and Transport~~.~~).

10. High-Density File Lighting

Each row of file stacks shall have illumination from luminaires designed to provide high levels of uniform vertical illumination in a narrow space.

11. Transaction Counter Lighting

A glass or acrylic security barrier typically separates the public from staff in areas where public transactions occur. This barrier can create reflections~~,~~ from luminaires~~, reflections~~ that can reduce visibility and the ability to view facial expressions and intent. Minimize reflections by limiting light output to horizontal work surfaces and using luminaires with a low surface brightness. A glass or acrylic barrier that is intersected by an 18″ or greater soffit at the ceiling will help reduce reflections. Lighting layouts that are identical on both sides of the glazed material can also minimize reflections. Indirect or direct and indirect lighting shall be avoided under these conditions because the bright ceiling will be a source of reflected glare in the clear security barrier.

12. Restroom Lighting

Lighting at mirrors shall be sufficient to see without creating facial shadows. Select lighting positions in front of the user, such as cove lighting, sconces, or over-mirror lighting. Lighting shall be evenly distributed within the stall areas. Light-color-value wall surfaces are preferred over darker values~~.~~ (r~~R~~efer to table 16.3, Recommended Reflectance Levels~~.~~).

13. Service Area Lighting

Lighting for electrical and mechanical rooms, main distribution frame rooms, intermediate distribution frame rooms, janitor closets, and related areas shall consist of LED striplights with drop lenses, providing at least 5 percent up-light. Bare diode striplights shall not be used.

14. Below-Grade Vehicle Area Lighting

At judges' parking, loading, receiving, and central holding areas, uniform lighting without shadows shall provide visibility and coverage if security cameras are used.

16.D LIGHTING CONTROLS

1. General

a. Lighting controls shall meet the requirements of the California Energy Code (Cal. Code Regs., tit. 24, pt. 6). Lighting control systems ~~shall~~are ~~to be~~ non~~-~~proprietary. ~~Replacing the lighting control system shall not require lighting replacement or other work requiring replacement of existing lighting system.~~ Courtrooms typically have multiple zones of control. Use the least complex, most intuitive system that will provide the required functions. These control stations shall be button style, not touch screen, and shall provide local control capability in all cases. In courtrooms with four or fewer zones of control, where lighting can be controlled from one primary location with one or two additional three-way controls, standard wall box ~~switches or~~ dimmers shall be used at a minimum. In courtrooms with more than four zones of

DIVISION TWO: TECHNICAL CRITERIA

11 Architectural Criteria
12 Structural Criteria
13 Mechanical Criteria
14 Building Management System Criteria
15 Electrical Criteria

16 LIGHTING CRITERIA
16.A Objectives
16.B Lighting Criteria
16.C Lighting Strategies
16.D Lighting Controls
16.E Lighting Commissioning

17 Network and Communication Systems
18 Audiovisual Systems
19 Acoustical Criteria
20 Fire Protection Criteria

Commented [DP17]: We need to keep California to avoid confusion.

Commented [PS18]: If the design includes a central lighting control, it needs to have manual override as the central control software needs upgrades or becomes obsolete quickly and we are replacing the systems. Jagan's recommendation is to have wall control systems and not a Crestron type system

Commented [DP18R2]: Scott: Scott: please review this section and change the verbiage per this lesson learned.

Commented [SW18R3]: Due to the size and use of the buildings, code requires that these are to be networked systems. Item b does state they shall not be integrated with the AV system. I have added additional language to emphasize the requirement for simplicity.

Commented [AG19]: Lessons Learned from Stockton Courthouse: The lighting control system is overly complicated to operate and maintain. The combination of LED and fluorescent fixtures, their lack of compatibility with the lighting control system and a mixture of dimmable ballasts adds to the complexity of the lighting system. System should meet code requirements but be kept basic.

Commented [DP19R2]: Scott: please review this section and change the verbiage per this lesson learned.

Commented [SW20]: I feel we should define what this means. Most of the systems are complete systems by one manufacturer. Are we looking for something different?

Commented [SW21]: This may prove to be very limiting. Most systems are currently being designed with luminaires containing integrated sensors, which provides the most cost effective and functional system. This requirement seems to eliminate this as an option.

Commented [DP22]: Scott: this sentence is incoherent. Please rephrase it if you understand the writer's point. Otherwise delete it.

control or multiple control location requirements, or if a room can be subdivided into smaller rooms with movable partitions, provide a preset dimming system. Controls shall be located to be convenient to court staff but not accessible to the public.

b. Integrated AV/lighting touch screen controls shall not be used. Wall-mounted lighting control modules shall be provided. AV and lighting controls shall be designed to function independently. Where provided, a graphical user interface (GUI) shall be dedicated to the audiovisual system only. The GUI shall not be used to control any other system, such as the lighting system or the building management system (BMS).

c. Courtrooms, jury assembly rooms, large training rooms, and the security operations center shall have dimmable lighting. Other spaces shall be provided with dimmable lighting as required by code.

d. Occupancy controls that provide vacancy sensing are required in most spaces such that lights within a space are turned on manually and then turned off automatically when the room is vacant. Time delay ~~setting~~ shall comply with ~~S~~section 130.1-(-c) of the ~~the~~ California Energy Code ~~Part 6~~ and ~~shall~~ be coordinated with the ~~Owner~~Judicial Council.

e. Demand response lighting systems, if ~~considered or required~~ for a project, shall be determined early in the design phase to coordinate required lighting specifications and lighting control systems.

f. Interface between the centralized lighting control system and the BMS is required. See chapter 14, Building Management System Criteria, for more information.

~~f~~g. Preference shall~~uld~~ be given to control systems with features for scalability for long-term maintenance and serviceability.

2. Daylighting

a. Daylight-responsive (daylight-harvesting) controls shall meet the minimum criteria established by the California Energy Code (Cal. Code Regs., tit. 24, pt. 6).

b. In spaces with daylight, luminaires located in the primary and secondary daylighted areas shall be zoned separately from other luminaires.

c. Unless it can be demonstrated that daylight illumination is insufficient between the vernal equinox (typically March 20) and the autumnal equinox (typically September 22 or 23), provide ~~daylight~~ daylight-harvesting controls. All luminaires connected to the ~~daylight~~ daylight-harvesting system shall use continuous dimming drivers.

d. Low-end trim for dimming shall be between 1 and 10 percent; daylighting systems shall not turn luminaires completely off~~,~~ except in parking areas, where they shall dim to off per the California Energy Code.~~.~~

e. Photosensors shall be filtered or calibrated to respond only to light in the visual range (no ultraviolet or infrared light) and adjusted for the human sensitivity spectral curve. Continuous dimming controls shall ~~utilize~~ use a sliding set point algorithm. The design set point for daylight dimming shall be 1.5 times the nighttime measured light level. For example, if the electric lights alone provide 30 foot-candles (FC), the luminaires shall not start to dim until the combined daylight and electric light reach or exceed 45 FC (30 × 1.5).

3. Quality Control

Provide a written lighting control intent narrative that explains the lighting control systems in common language~~,~~ for client review and response during each design phase, and revise it~~d~~ for submittal as part of the contract documents. Selected control manufacturers shall be required to verify that their products, as submitted during the shop drawing phase, meet the control intent~~,~~ or ~~to~~ indicate any exceptions and describe how they intend to satisfy the desired performance of their products. At minimum, the lighting designer shall provide a narrative about lighting control design intent for each type of space. This narrative shall include the sequence of operations.

Commented [SW23]: Do we want to define timeouts for specific space types?

Commented [DP23R2]: Scott: If code provides guidance on it, lets add that reference. Otherwise, you can add your recommendation.

Commented [SW23R3]: Added reference to code.

Commented [SW24]: Do we want to define this?

Commented [DP24R2]: Scott: I think it is the majority of the occupied spaces of the building. Please go ahead and list them if you think it will be beneficial.

Commented [SW24R3]: It is defined by code, so probably not needed

16.E LIGHTING COMMISSIONING

Specifications shall include commissioning services to ensure that the building delivered at the end of construction has fully operational occupancy sensors, photocells, photosensors, and dimming systems that provide proper controls. Basic services shall include staff training for systems operation and troubleshooting. ~~Commissioning~~ ~~At a minimum, the e~~Commissioning shall comply with California Energy Code (Cal. Code Regs., tit. 24, pt. 6).

DIVISION TWO: TECHNICAL CRITERIA

11 Architectural Criteria
12 Structural Criteria
13 Mechanical Criteria
14 Building Management System Criteria
15 Electrical Criteria

16 LIGHTING CRITERIA
16.A Objectives
16.B Lighting Criteria
16.C Lighting Strategies
16.D Lighting Controls
16.E Lighting Commissioning

17 Network and Communication Systems
18 Audiovisual Systems
19 Acoustical Criteria
20 Fire Protection Criteria

Commented [DP25]: Scott: Why do we need to add “at a minimum”?

Commented [SW25R2]: Because a system/building might need more depending on the complexity, and no other commissioning criteria is detailed in this document.

We can remove if you would like.

Commented [DP25R3]: Commissioning is addressed in several chapters. So we don’t need to say at minimum.

DIVISION TWO: TECHNICAL CRITERIA

17 NETWORK AND COMMUNICATION SYSTEMS

SECTION	TOPIC	PAGE
17.A	General Overview	17.2
17.B	Minimum Point of Entry (MPOE)	17.4
17.C	Distribution Pathways	17.11
17.D	Backbone Connectivity	17.14
17.E	Horizontal Connectivity	17.15
17.F	Administration and Verification	17.19
17.G	Network Architecture	17.20
17.H	Distributed Antenna System	17.24



Superior Court of California, County of Yolo
Woodland, CA
Fentress and Dreyfuss-Blackford

Effective technology systems are essential for daily courthouse operations. A technology program is required to be developed along with the architectural program. The designers, Judicial Council, and court advisory team shall determine what is to be provided throughout the court building.

17.A GENERAL OVERVIEW

1. Introduction

This chapter covers the requirements for network ~~communication system~~ and other communication systems within courthouse buildings. Simply defined, a network communication system is the convergence of building technologies over a network architecture and shared physical layer that support the transport of Internet Protocol (IP)~~-~~ based communications signals. This best practice has been made possible by ever-increasing bandwidth~~s~~ and numerous refinements in networking transmission techniques, allowing information to be transported using Ethernet interfaces and IP-based technologies.

The purpose of the network communications technology design is to provide a basis for the development of a structured cabling infrastructure that supports a physically converged, logically segregated IP network solution. Implementing a converged network solution offers several identifiable benefits. Commercial benefits include a lower capital expenditure and a reduction in the cost for maintenance and support. Considering the network, convergence provides increased network availability, scalability, and functionality. In addition, environmental benefits result from the reduction in materials and the need for building utility support, such as power and cooling.

A technology program ~~is required to~~mustshall be developed along with the architectural program. The technology program shall be predicated on the extent and complexity of the technology embedded in a new court building. These factors will be the basis for decisions related to the implementation of a unified communication system, a converged IP network, and the structured cabling system.

This chapter contains standards, criteria, and recommendations related to the following:

- Communications rooms, including architectural, electrical, mechanical, grounding, and bonding guidelines required to support infrastructure and equipment deployment~~.~~;
- Distribution pathways to support the intrabuilding infrastructure~~.~~;
- Communications backbone and horizontal connectivity distribution and the performance rating of the cable used to support the building utility services throughout the facility~~.~~; and
- Administration and verification with identification and testing of the communications infrastructure and system components.

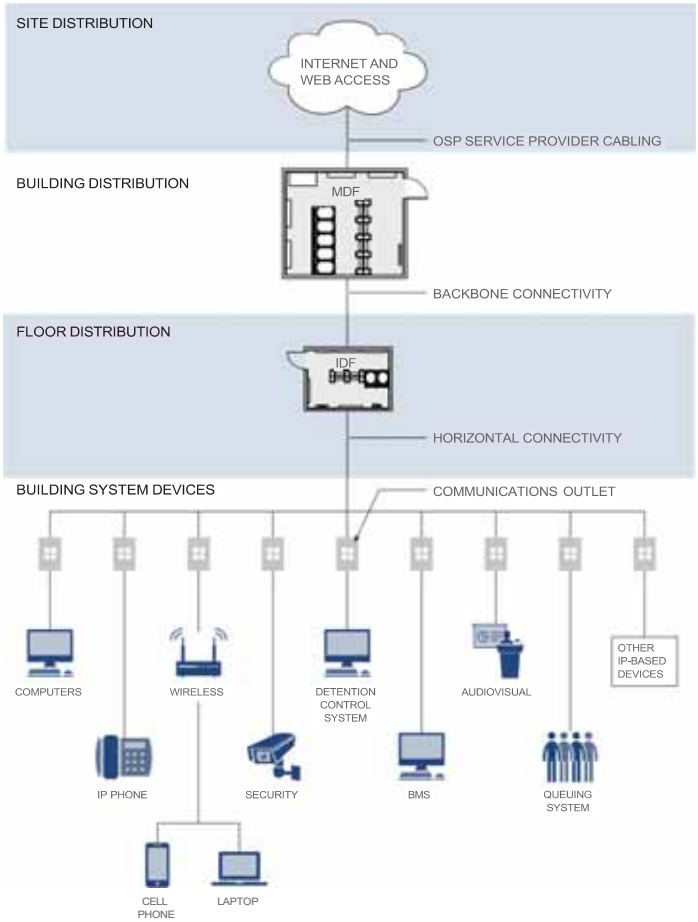
2. Structured Cabling

The structured cabling goal is to provide a robust physical layer that supports high reliability, bandwidth capacity, and future flexibility to extend current and future technology services to each courthouse facility.

3. Network Architecture

The Judicial Council standard is for all IP traffic to traverse a single integrated physical network that is segmented into multiple subnetworks. Network segmentation can be accomplished in various ways; the specific design for each courthouse shall be predicated on the extent and complexity of the technology embedded in a new court building. Figure 17.1 provides a high-level view of the physical architecture of a typical courthouse network, including telecommunications rooms, backbone and horizontal structured cabling, and end-point devices. Though not intended to convey each component or the logical network design, this illustration should give the reader a visual reference of the components and how they interconnect.

See tool 3, Integrated Network Architecture, for the integrated network architecture diagram that illustrates the expected intelligent building systems under the unified communication system.



~~MDF = main distribution frame.~~
BMS = building management system.
IDF = intermediate distribution frame.
~~BMS = building management system.~~
IP = Internet Protocol.
MDF = main distribution frame.
OSP = outside plant.

Figure 17.1 Layout Diagram of Structured Cabling Topology That Includes Building Systems

DIVISION TWO: TECHNICAL CRITERIA

11 Architectural Criteria
12 Structural Criteria
13 Mechanical Criteria
14 Building Management Systems Criteria
15 Electrical Criteria
16 Lighting Criteria
17 NETWORK AND COMMUNICATION SYSTEMS
17.B Minimum Point of Entry (MPOE)
17.C Distribution Pathways
17.D Backbone Connectivity
17.E Horizontal Connectivity
17.F Administration and Verification
17.G Network Architecture
17.H Distributed Antenna System
18 Audiovisual Systems
19 Acoustical Criteria
20 Fire Protection Criteria

17.B MINIMUM POINT OF ENTRY (MPOE)

1. Telecommunications and Server Equipment Room

The telecommunications and server equipment room (main distribution frame (MDF) room) must have a minimum of one-hour resistive construction. All walls (four sides) shall terminate at the structure above so a sealed enclosure is created. No intermediate ceiling is required. Adjoining rooms should not be restrooms or electrical, uninterruptible power supply (UPS), fire pump, switch gear, transformer, generator, or other high-combustible or high-fire-risk rooms.

2. Service Entrance Facilities

2.1 General Guidelines

a. An independent space, described as the service entrance facility, will be required within each court building to house service provider termination components and equipment or to serve as a splice point for incoming services.

b. The placement of the entrance facility should be evaluated on a case-by-case basis considering location of service provider networks "in the street," overall building size, and location of other building communications rooms. Whenever possible, colocate the entrance facility within the main distribution frame. Doing so minimizes the need to develop a separate, dedicated space.

c. The entrance facility size and type should be developed considering overall building design, square footage of the facility, quantity of incoming conduits, and types of services required. A dedicated space within the entrance facility should be allocated to "stub out" conduit pathways. At a minimum, a 48″ wide × 12″ deep floor-to-ceiling space should be allocated on one accessible wall to support up to six conduits.

2.2 Design Criteria

a. To simplify incoming conduit pathways, consideration should be given to locating the entrance facility on the basement level (if applicable) or the ground level and close to a load-bearing wall.

b. Provide adequate overhead space for conduit pathways that either enter the room from outside the building or extend connections to the main communications space within the building.

c. To accommodate cable pulling and apparatus, provide adequate clearance shall be provided in front of the wall where the conduits terminate.

d. Use Vertical vertical cable runway sections shall be used to route cables from the floor and ceiling conduit penetrations to the overhead cable runway.

3. Main Distribution Frame

This section refers to the MDF as a single space for space planning only. In practice, the MDF will be subdivided between various operational units allocating space for termination fields, active components, equipment cabinets, and relay racks required to house building communication system control devices. In simple terms, the MDF room will function as the main hub, or headend, within each courthouse facility. The MDF room size is determined by the amount of headend equipment in a particular court building. See Refer to table 17.1, for MDF space Space considerationsConsiderations.

Alternative Considerations

Colocating an IDF inside the MDF is an acceptable design practice.

For larger buildings that contain data centers, dual- dual-service entrance facilities shall be included to house multiple service provider termination components and equipment. All service entrance facilities should adhere to the requirements set out by the service providers. The physical entrance doors to these spaces shall be from within the building, with no doors opening directly to the exterior.

Related Reading

Chapter 20, Fire Protection Criteria, for fire suppression requirements

Table 17.1 MDF Space Considerations

BUILDING TECHNOLOGY SYSTEM	TYPICAL MOUNTING LOCATION
Service provider fiber	2-~~post~~ post relay rack
Service provider copper	Wall
~~Osp~~OSP/~~isp~~ ISP building fiber	2-~~post~~ post relay rack
~~Osp~~OSP/~~isp~~ ISP building fiber	2-~~post~~ post relay rack
~~Osp~~OSP/~~isp~~ ISP building copper	Wall
Vertical cable management	Sides of each relay rack
~~Ip~~ IP network hardware	2-~~p~~post relay rack
Court information technology servers	Equipment cabinet*
Audiovisual systems	Equipment cabinet
Security access control panels	Wall
Security servers	Equipment cabinet
~~Das~~ DAS connectivity	Wall
~~das~~ DAS radio and cellular components	Equipment ~~Cabinet~~cabinet
~~Bms~~ BMS servers	Equipment cabinet
~~Bms~~ BMS control panels	Wall
Detention system servers	Equipment cabinet
Technician desk	Floor (min. 4′ wide × 5′ deep)
Electrical distribution panel	Wall
Entrance facility conduits	Floor and wall
Expansion capability	25% future rack space

*May be adjusted due to technological advancements.
BMS = building maintenance system
DAS = distributed antenna system.
IP = Internet Protocol
OSP/ISP = outside ~~plant~~ plant / inside plant.
~~DAS = distributed antenna system.~~
~~*May be adjusted due to technological advancements.~~

3.1 General Guidelines

a. Each courthouse building ~~must~~shall have~~Provide~~ a minimum of one MDF room ~~per courthouse building~~, located on a lower floor, with an accessible pathway to the loading dock or freight elevator. The MDF shall not be located on any building exterior walls or below the flood level.

~~b.~~ A well-designed MDF is imperative to the overall success of the IP network and the technology systems that function within a courthouse facility. Figure

b. 17.2 presents, for a smaller courthouse facility, a typical MDF layout that provides space for five equipment cabinets and four relay racks. The cold aisle is lined with the front sides of the server racks housing the cold air intakes, and hot aisles are where the hot air exhausts are located. The cold aisle should face the air-conditioning supply ducts, and hot aisles should face air-conditioning return ducts. Minimum clearances are indicated because they are critical to the functionality of all unified communications rooms and should be factored into the layout.

3.2 Design Criteria

a. Use ~~Cabinets~~ cabinets and relay racks ~~shall be~~that are EIA/ECA-310, ANSI/TIA-569, or IEC 60297-3-100 compliant with a standard height of 42~~U (~~ rack units (U).

b. ~~No~~ Do not locate restrooms, janitor closets, or piping with running water ~~shall be located~~ immediately above, next to, or in the MDF.

DIVISION TWO: TECHNICAL CRITERIA
11 Architectural Criteria
12 Structural Criteria
13 Mechanical Criteria
14 Building Management Systems Criteria
15 Electrical Criteria
16 Lighting Criteria
17 NETWORK AND COMMUNICATION SYSTEMS
17.A General Overview
17.C Distribution Pathways
17.D Backbone Connectivity
17.E Horizontal Connectivity
17.F Administration and Verification
17.G Network Architecture
17.H Distributed Antenna System
18 Audiovisual Systems
19 Acoustical Criteria
20 Fire Protection Criteria

Commented [DP1]: Modification made by CFAC-WG.

Commented [DP2]: Modification made by CFAC-WG.

Important References

An example of "active electronics" would be an information technology (IT) network switch used to connect local area network (LAN) segments.

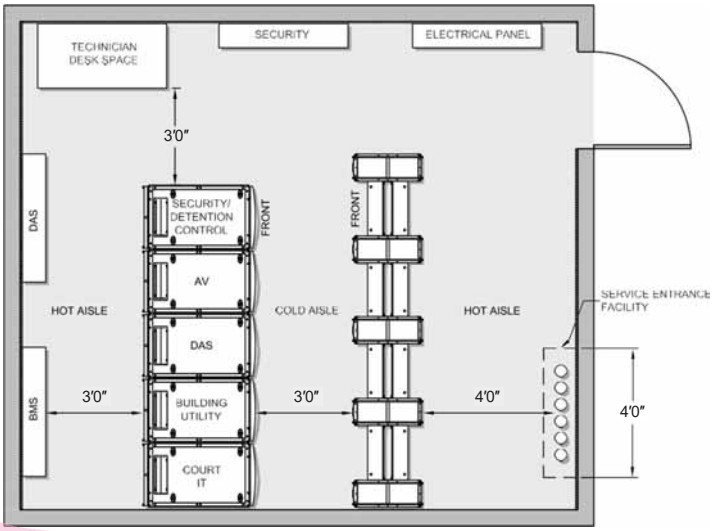
Multiple courtrooms may be served from a single IDF; however, close coordination of the various technology systems' space requirements is imperative when developing the overall size of an IDF supporting a courtroom space.

EIA/ECA = Electronic Industries Alliance Standards

ANSI = American National Standards Institute

TIA = Telecommunications Industry Association

IEC = International Electrotechnical Commission



AV = audiovisual
BMS = building management system.
DAS = distributed antenna system
IDF = intermediate distribution frame.
IT = information technology.
MDF = main distribution frame.

Figure 17.2 Typical Smaller Courthouse MDF Layout

c. Cover ~~Internal~~ internal wall surfaces ~~should be covered~~ with 3/4″ fire-rated plywood. Sealed concrete is an acceptable finish on floors.

~~d.~~ Use ~~Vertical~~ vertical cable runway sections ~~should be used~~ to route cables from the floor

d. and ceiling conduit penetrations to the overhead cable runway.

e. Provide ~~Outward~~outward ~~-~~swinging doors ~~shall be provided and~~ fitted with both a key and a card lock; the minimum door size should be 42″ wide × 90″ high.

~~f.~~ Factor ~~Floor~~ floor loading ~~should be factored~~ at 200 pounds per square foot, ~~and~~ confirmed

f. on a case-by-case basis.

g. Reserve ~~A~~ a minimum of one relay rack ~~should be reserved~~ for the consolidation of service provider, county, and ~~court~~ court wide area network (WAN) edge active equipment devices.

h. At a minimum, use 10″ × 17-1/2″ double-sided vertical cable management between racks.

~~i.~~ For ~~Relay~~ relay racks used for the termination of structured cabling, ~~should~~ reserve 50

i. percent of the available rack unit space for active electronics.

~~j.~~ Install ~~All~~ all equipment racks and cabinets ~~shall be installed~~ in compliance with

j. California Building Code (CBC) seismic standards.

k. Obtain typical power draw and National Electrical Manufacturers Association (NEMA) plug type for switches and UPS units. Include 208-volt outlets in the MDF/IDF ~~(intermediate distribution frame)~~ with 30-amp receptacles. Coordinate with site network requirements for additional power requirements.

l. Develop the port count matrix early. Early involvement of the applicable provider is recommended.

Commented [DP3]: Gensler: delete the spell out.

m. Calculate the estimated heat load of IDF/MDF for heating, ventilation, and air-conditioning (HVAC). If evaporative cooler is used, coordinate the air supply locations with equipment locations in electrical, MDF, and IDF rooms to ensure the air supply is not above sensitive equipment.

n. Ensure the court data racks are next to the provider's data racks in an appropriately sized IT room.

o. Provide a room-ready checklist in contract documents.

p. See chapter 20, Fire Protection Criteria, for fire protection requirements for IDF/MDF rooms.

4. Intermediate Distribution Frame

An IDF is typically an enclosed architectural space for housing communications equipment, cabling terminations, and any cross-connect cabling required to distribute communications signals throughout a localized area.

4.1 General Guidelines

a. IDF spaces should be dedicated to communication systems and audiovisual (AV) equipment use, centrally located on every floor, and stacked vertically through the building to enable efficient pathway and cabling distribution within each serving zone.

b. IDF serving zones must allow for each individual twisted pair copper cabling segment to fall within the Ethernet distance limitations of 295′. Additional IDF spaces should be considered when the serving area is greater than 10,000 ~~SF~~ sf or the interior building space plan restricts the size of a single IDF, limiting the available space for equipment.

c. Typically, IDF room size recommendations are derived from the square footages of the area served, factoring one outlet per typical 100 ~~SF~~ sf of work area. However, these general guidelines do not take into account the quantity of technology systems that courtroom IDF rooms are required to support; therefore, the general industry rule-of-thumb numbers should not apply. IDF rooms should be sized on a case-by-case basis considering the minimum clearances to accommodate the active electronics and termination components that each room houses.

d. Table 17.2 outlines the systems and typical mounting locations that should be considered when developing the IDF size and interior design.

e. Figure 17.3 presents a typical IDF layout for a courthouse facility where two courtrooms are served from a single IDF. This IDF provides two audiovisual cabinets (one per courtroom) and two relay racks for housing active electronics and structured cabling termination components. Minimum clearances are critical to the room design and are indicated for reference.

4.2 Design Criteria

a. Cabinets and relay racks shall be EIA/ECA-310 or IEC 60297-3-100 compliant with a standard height of 42U.

b. No restrooms, janitor closets, or piping with running water shall be located immediately above, next to, or in the IDF.

c. Internal wall surfaces should be covered with 3/4″ fire-rated plywood.

d. Sealed concrete is an acceptable finish on floors, and a finished ceiling should not be provided.

DIVISION TWO: TECHNICAL CRITERIA
11 Architectural Criteria
12 Structural Criteria
13 Mechanical Criteria
14 Building Management Systems Criteria
15 Electrical Criteria
16 Lighting Criteria
17 NETWORK AND COMMUNICATION SYSTEMS
17.A General Overview
17.C Distribution Pathways
17.D Backbone Connectivity
17.E Horizontal Connectivity
17.F Administration and Verification
17.G Network Architecture
17.H Distributed Antenna System
20 Fire Protection Criteria

Commented [AG4]: Lesson Learned from Stockton Courthouse: Condensate from the evaporative cooler can drip on the electrical equipment, causing damage. Coordinate the location of evaporative cooler air supply locations with equipment locations in electrical/MDF/IDF rooms during design to ensure the air supply is not above sensitive equipment.

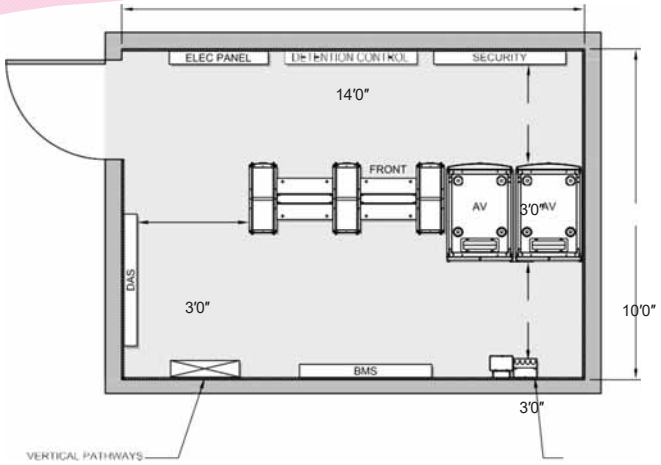
Commented [DP4R2]: Incorporated.

Table 17.2 IDF Space Considerations

BUILDING TECHNOLOGY SYSTEM	TYPICAL MOUNTING LOCATION
Intrabuilding fiber	2-post relay rack
Intrabuilding copper	Wall
Horizontal cabling	2-post relay rack
Vertical cable management	Sides of each relay rack
~~Ip~~ IP network hardware	2-post relay rack
Audiovisual systems	Equipment cabinet
Security access control panels	Wall
Security servers	Equipment cabinet
~~Das~~ DAS connectivity	Wall
~~Bms~~ BMS control panels	Wall
Detention system servers	Equipment cabinet
Detention system control panels	Wall
Electrical distribution panel	Wall
Vertical conduit pathways	Floor and wall

BMS = building management system.
DAS = distributed antenna system.
IDF = intermediate distribution frame.
IP = Internet Protocol.
MDF = main distribution frame.
OSP = outside plant.

Commented [DP5]: Gensler: abbreviations for table should stay under the table and those for the figure under the figure. Don't combine the list.



AV = audiovisual.
DAS = distributed antenna system.

Figure 17.3 IDF Serving Two Courtrooms

e. Vertical cable runway sections shall be used to route cables from the floor and ceiling penetrations to the overhead cable runway grid.

f. A single outward-swinging door should be provided and fitted with both a key and a card lock; minimum door size is 42″ wide × 90″ high.

g. Adequate space and clearance should be provided for vertical conduit pathways.

h. At a minimum, 10″ double-sided vertical cable management between racks should be used.

i. Relay racks used for the termination of structured cabling shall reserve 50 percent of the available rack unit space for active electronics.

j. Equipment racks shall reserve 25 percent of the available space for additional equipment.

k. All equipment racks and cabinets shall be installed in compliance with CBC seismic standards.

5. Electrical Systems

Although the main focus of this chapter is not the electrical system criteria, the technology systems located within MDF and IDF rooms have specific power requirements. Therefore, this section provides an overview of the specific MDF and IDF electrical needs that should be considered in the building-wide electrical design. Refer to chapter 15 for the full list of systems requiring backup generator power and independent UPS systems.

5.1 General Guidelines

a. The full complement of technology-related systems housed inside MDF and IDF spaces should have adequate UPS ~~power~~ backup to support electrical interruptions for 90 minutes for non-life-safety equipment. The UPS shall not be connected to an emergency power system. A centralized UPS system is the preferred methodology for the distribution of short-term power when the main input power source fails. Among other things, this best practice provides benefits with increased space savings within the MDF and IDF rooms and reduces maintenance costs.

b. All systems requiring generator power or dedicated UPS systems are defined in chapter 15. Refer to chapter 15 for details pertaining to fire-life-safety systems and non-life-safety systems and the specific requirements for each.

c. During preliminary building design, load estimates are required to begin the electrical system design and for space planning. Although the actual electrical equipment loads are calculated once the final systems equipment is defined, general load estimates are provided as a basis for design. For detailed requirements of emergency and standby power systems, refer to chapter 15, Electrical Criteria.

5.2 Design Criteria

a. Provide an overhead busway electrical distribution system within communications rooms. An electrical busway provides a more flexible power solution that accommodates a variety of receptacles and is more cost-effective over the life of the building.

b. Provide a grounding circuit for communications equipment. Grounding and bonding shall be provided for all equipment and racks. A grounding bus bar shall be provided.

DIVISION TWO: TECHNICAL CRITERIA

11 Architectural Criteria
12 Structural Criteria
13 Mechanical Criteria
14 Building Management Systems Criteria
15 Electrical Criteria
16 Lighting Criteria
17 NETWORK AND COMMUNICATION SYSTEMS
17.A General Overview
17.C Distribution Pathways
17.D Backbone Connectivity
17.E Horizontal Connectivity
17.F Administration and Verification
17.G Network Architecture
17.H Distributed Antenna System
18 Audiovisual Systems
19 Acoustical Criteria
20 Fire Protection Criteria

Coordinate with local service providers to determine specific pathway requirements or best practices.

Satellite pathways should be designed considering each courthouse facility's specific requirements.

Important References

ASHRAE Environmental Guidelines for Datacom Equipment

BICSI *Telecommunications Distribution Methods Manual* (latest edition) for separation information from electromagnetic interference sources and for pull-box sizing guidelines

Related Readings

Chapter 13, Mechanical Criteria

Chapter 15, Electrical Criteria

Chapter 16, Lighting Criteria

Chapter 20, Fire Protection Criteria

c. Provide, in aisleways parallel to rows of racks and cabinets, lighting that does not conflict with the cable management infrastructure inside the rooms.

d. ~~Provide~~ Ensure that lighting fixtures are not powered from the same distribution panel as ~~are~~ the room's power outlets.

e. Provide ~~I~~nin-rack power distribution units (PDUs) ~~shall be provided~~ with power sources provided through the UPS system. Specific requirements for PDU sizes and load requirements shall be coordinated based on equipment requirements for each site.

6. Mechanical Systems

Although the main focus of this chapter is not the mechanical system criteria, the technology systems located within MDF and IDF rooms have specific mechanical requirements. Therefore, this section provides an overview of the specific MDF and IDF mechanical needs that should be considered in the building-wide mechanical design. Refer to chapter 13 for the building-wide mechanical systems design criteria.

6.1 General Guidelines

a. Mechanical system cooling units shall be dedicated to the operation of the MDF and IDF rooms they serve and ~~be~~ located inside the room. Multiple floors shall have discrete service—that is, not ~~be~~ ganged together—and be capable of providing 24/7/365 operation, independent of the "base building" system. System selection shall be either packaged heat pumps (condenser water) or fan coils (chilled water), based on case-by-case project analysis. Supply and return ducting shall be directed at the respective cold and hot aisle layout within each MDF and IDF room requiring cooling. Hot and cold aisles shall be fully contained such that hot aisle air does not interact with cold aisle air.

b. At a minimum, the mechanical systems shall be designed to meet the current American Society of Heating, Refrigerating and Air-Conditioning Engineers Technical Committee's (ASHRAE TC) 9.9 thermal guidelines for allowable temperature and humidity parameters. For reference, the ASHRAE TC 9.9 ~~ASHRAE~~ standard provides the following system parameters:

- Low-end temperature: 64.4°F (~~Fahrenheit;~~ supply air to equipment)
- High-end temperature: 80.6°F (supply air to equipment)
- Low-end moisture: 41.9°F dew point
- High-end moisture: 60 percent relative humidity and 59°F dew point

Note: These recommended temperatures and conditions are for inlet air measurement entering the equipment and not necessarily room temperature.

c. During preliminary building design, the estimated MDF room cooling load ~~Btu/hr (~~British thermal units per hour (Btu/hr) should be based on a minimum electrical load of 75 watts per square foot. In each IDF, the estimated cooling load (Btu/hr) should be based on a minimum electrical load of 65 watts per square foot. These load estimates should be developed further as the building design moves forward. The load shall be confirmed as equipment is determined and must meet or exceed the equipment manufacturer's requirements.

6.2 Design Criteria

a. Consideration of air-side free cooling should be made based on climatic conditions.

b. The mechanical systems shall report to the building management system (BMS), building engineers, and IT support personnel, triggering alarms when set parameters are exceeded.

c. In general, ~~avoid~~ routing plumbing or HVAC pipes (pressurized or unpressurized) to go through any communications space should be avoided. Water-filled pipes shall route around communications rooms rather than through them, unless they serve components within the room, such as fire suppression systems.

d. When water-filled pipes travel within a communications room, pipe isolation and drain pans shall be provided.

e. Roof drains or other sources of water shall not be located above any communications rooms.

7. Grounding and Bonding

a. A uniform telecommunications grounding and bonding system shall be provided between all communications rooms in accordance with American National Standards Institute / Telecommunications Industry Association (~~TIA/EIA-607-D~~ANSI/TIA)-607-E telecommunications grounding and bonding standards and Building Industry Consulting Services International (BICSI) guidelines. The building-wide grounding system that provides each communications space with a dedicated grounding bus bar shall comply with California Electrical Code (CEC).

b. Extended from the grounding bus bar within each communications space, a common bonding network consisting of a series of insulated stranded conductors, no less than ~~6-~~6 ~~AWG (~~American Wire Gauge (AWG), should bond all communications components requiring a ground connection to the grounding bus bar. Components typically bonded to the grounding bus bar include~~,~~ but are not limited to~~,~~ equipment cabinets, relay racks, communications equipment, protector blocks, cable runways, and communications conduits.

17.C DISTRIBUTION PATHWAYS

To meet the overall goal of physical convergence, communications pathways should be designed to support the distribution needs of all unified communication systems. Combining low-voltage cabling infrastructure in shared pathways provides a well-organized, functional approach to the distribution of connectivity, whether outside or inside a courthouse building. In turn, a unified pathway design that takes into consideration the cable needs of each IP-based building technology enhances the flexibility of the distribution system over time, allowing for simplified changes or upgrades.

1. Outside Plant Pathways

In addition to the entrance conduits required for service provider connectivity, outside plant (OSP) pathways provide a means to route communications cabling outside the building. For a courthouse facility, this may include media connections to a television network pedestal, security entry control and camera devices, and landscaping control equipment. The OSP pathway system needs to be carefully coordinated with all site utilities. Industry standard components such as conduits, maintenance holes, pull boxes, or handholes should be used to distribute connectivity in the OSP.

1.1 Dedicated MPOE Conduits

Pathways and pulling points shall be dedicated to incoming service provider networks and not shared with other technologies or utilities. Diverse paths into the building should be considered and coordinated with the service providers.

DIVISION TWO: TECHNICAL CRITERIA
11 Architectural Criteria
12 Structural Criteria
13 Mechanical Criteria
14 Building Management Systems Criteria
15 Electrical Criteria
16 Lighting Criteria
17 NETWORK AND COMMUNICATION SYSTEMS
17.A General Overview
17.D Backbone Connectivity
17.E Horizontal Connectivity
17.F Administration and Verification
17.G Network Architecture
17.H Distributed Antenna System
19 Acoustical Criteria
20 Fire Protection Criteria

Alternative Considerations

Large multifloor facilities may be better served using second-level backbone cabling distribution—that is, a central IDF serving as a termination point for backbone connectivity from other IDF spaces.

For each project, the designer shall consider all building utility systems and verify the need for horizontal optical fiber media.

1.2 Service Entrance Conduit Quantities

The quantity of service entrance conduits should be based on the size of the facility, with a minimum of four 4″ conduits, the service provider circuits, and the level of redundancy required. ANSI/California Energy Commission (CEC) codes shall be used to determine quantities. Table 17.3 shall be used for general guidance. Entrance conduit routing should be developed with site utilities and local service providers to ensure that the property-line conduit termination points have been successfully coordinated.

Table 17.3 Guidelines for Service Entrance Conduit Quantities

NUMBER OF COURTROOMS	CONDUIT QUANTITY
1–6	4
7–19	6
20+	8

2. Inside Plant ~~(ISP)~~ Pathways

A well-designed inside plant (ISP) distribution system must allow for day-one capacity as well as the high likelihood of future modifications to provide numerous efficiencies over the life cycle of a building. The ISP pathways provide a means to successfully route and support all IP and non-IP low-voltage connectivity, including larger conduit pathways for backbone connectivity between communications rooms, smaller conduit pathways for horizontal connectivity extended to wall and floor communications outlets, and connectivity for devices using Power over Ethernet.

2.1 Backbone Distribution System

a. From the MPOE, dedicated ISP conduit pathways shall extend to the MDF. When the service entrance facility is colocated within the MDF, conduit pathways shall extend directly from the OSP to the entrance facility space. An OSP-to-MDF conduit pathway system should be designed considering standard practices of the various service providers delivering connections to the building.

b. The design of backbone pathways between communications rooms should factor together the many variables associated with connecting technology spaces. The standard practice is to provide conduit pathways between the main communications rooms. In cases where IDF rooms are stacked, locating pathways in the same place within each IDF is the preferred vertical distribution methodology. Provide a functional and flexible backbone pathway design—including access and clearance, appropriate bend radii, and pull boxes—to allow for the successful distribution of communications backbone cabling.

c. The number of conduits per pathway varies depending on the number of communications cables. Provide a minimum 25 percent for future growth when considering the total quantity of conduits required. Backbone conduit segments that are greater than 50′ should have fabric duct separators installed for the length of the conduit run. A maximum fill rate of 40 percent should be factored for day-one conduit capacity.

2.2 Rooftop Communications Systems

To facilitate future installation of rooftop communication systems, provide an electrical subpanel and submeter on the rooftop. Provide conduit pathways to the rooftop from the electrical room with pull rope (not pull string) to allow for cable runs to be added for future installations.

2.3 Horizontal Distribution System

a. Horizontal distribution pathways designed to accommodate low-voltage cabling systems can be grouped into two preferred methodologies: the primary conveyance system, which is a cable tray that extends above the main corridors from the serving communications room, and the secondary conveyance system~~,~~ consisting of conduit pathways from the cable tray to the communications outlet location. Coordination of each communications outlet location throughout the facility is critical, especially within the courtroom.

b. Basket or solid-rail ~~style~~ cable trays are required for courtroom buildings because of their elevated capacities, increased robustness, and accessory components used for separation of the non-IP cable bundles such as BMS, AV, and security cabling. Accessibility and clearance requirements should be coordinated so that the overall functionality of the conveyance system is enhanced. At a minimum, cable tray clearances of 12″ above, 24″ to one side, and 3″ clear vertical space above ceiling tiles and supports should be provided.

c. Conduit pathways used for horizontal distribution shall be designed to accommodate the quantity of cables they are required to support. Coordinating final outlet locations and pathway design factoring millwork and other interior architectural parameters is critical within every courtroom. The current minimum conduit size for a standard communications outlet is 1-1/4″. Wall-mounted electrical back boxes should have manufactured 1-1/4″ knockouts to accommodate the conduit.

d. To minimize the overall number of floor penetrations, combined power and communications floor boxes and poke-through devices are acceptable for floor-mounted outlets. Size floor boxes and poke-through devices according to the number of low-voltage communications and electrical outlets at each outlet location. Specific attention should be given to floor depths and fire ratings when specifying floor boxes and poke-through devices.

e. In addition to the conveyance systems, reenterable UL ~~(Underwriters Laboratories)~~-rated fire-stop assemblies are required for through penetrations in all rated walls and floors. At a minimum, size the assembly considering UL and the manufacturer's allowable fill rate. Provide a minimum 25 percent for future growth when considering the total quantity of assemblies required.

2.4 Design Criteria

a. Install conduit runs in lieu of cable trays where access to the cable tray is restricted for more than 10′.

b. Locate conduit pull boxes in easily accessible locations.

c. Install ground distribution pathways according to telecommunications industry standards.

d. Insert conduit pull cords within the pathway to allow for future expansion.

e. Include the cable tray size, location, and mounting methods in the building information modeling.

f. Consider acoustical transfer of hard wall connection.

g. Coordinate rated wall penetrations.

h. Do not install cable trays above hard lids when ~~possible~~avoidable.

i. Use basket ~~type~~ trays in lieu of rail ~~type~~trays.

DIVISION TWO: TECHNICAL CRITERIA

11 Architectural Criteria
12 Structural Criteria
13 Mechanical Criteria
14 Building Management Systems Criteria
15 Electrical Criteria
16 Lighting Criteria
17 NETWORK AND COMMUNICATION SYSTEMS
17.A General Overview
17.B Minimum Point of Entry (MPOE)
17.D Backbone Connectivity
17.E Horizontal Connectivity
17.F Administration and Verification
17.G Network Architecture
17.H Distributed Antenna System
18 Audiovisual Systems
19 Acoustical Criteria
20 Fire Protection Criteria

Important Reference

The communication system should comply with ANSI/TIA-606-DANSI/TIA/EIA 606-A, Administration Standard for Commercial Telecommunications Infrastructure.

j. Include seismic support for weight.

k. Include expansion percentage in specifications.

17.D BACKBONE CONNECTIVITY

As technology systems converge onto the IP network, efficiencies increase when a common backbone is used to distribute communications signals. Optical fiber cables shall be used as the primary backbone medium because they provide higher bandwidth and can extend greater distances than their copper counterpart. Multipair copper cabling has become the auxiliary backbone medium used to extend analog or non-IP signal technology.

Coordinate the backbone and horizontal connectivity needs for community antenna television (CATV) distribution on a case-by-case basis.

1. Optical Fiber

The current design base for first-level backbone connectivity, from the MDF to each IDF, is to deploy single-mode fiber (SMF) and 50/125 micron, laser-optimized multimode fiber (LOMMF). The fiber cable performance characteristics described below are provided considering these two fiber types. As network design evolves to meet growing bandwidth needs, the strand quantities and types of optical fiber provided in the backbone segment should meet current project requirements, industry standards, and projected bandwidth benchmarks. Reference ANSI/TIA-568.3-D E for fiber installation standards and the National Electrical Contractors Association and Fiber Optic Association's (NECA/FOA)-301.

1.1 Single Mode

For single-mode fiber, OS2 fiber is the recommended cable type. Backbone SMF cable should be capable of 40-gigabit Ethernet signal transmission to 10,000 meters in the 1,310 nanometer (nm) operating window. Maximum attenuation for an SMF cable shall be no greater than 0.7 decibel (dB) per kilometer (km) using 1,310 nm and 0.5 dB/km using 1,550 nm wavelengths, respectively. Fusion-spliced, factory-connectorized pigtails are the required termination practice for SMF cable. SMF cable between the MDF and each IDF shall have a minimum of 24 strands.

1.2 Laser-Optimized Multimode

For multimode fiber, OM4 is the recommended cable type. Laser-optimized multimode cables should be capable of 40-gigabit Ethernet signal transmission to 300 meters at 2,000 megahertzMHz/km effective modal bandwidth. Maximum attenuation for LOMMF cable shall be no greater than 3.0 dB/km using 850 nm and 1.0 dB/km using 1,300 nm wavelengths, respectively. LOMMF cable between the MDF and each IDF shall have a minimum of 24 strands.

1.3 Cabling Criteria

a. Provide a flexible, spirally wrapped interlocking armor over an individual jacketed and tight buffered cable.

b. Terminate fiber cabling in fully enclosed fiber panels.

c. Provide 25 percent spare termination capacity in the panel.

d. Provide fiber connectors to be small-form-factor latched connector (LC) duplex.

e. Provide connectivity to be rated per the installation environment.

2. Multipair Copper

2.1 General Requirements

Multipair copper cable should extend from the MDF to each IDF room. Select a voice-grade Category 5e unshielded twisted pair (UTP) ~~ARMM (~~abrasion resistant millimeters (ARMM) cable. Use a minimum of 25 pairs.

2.2 Cabling Criteria

a. Terminate cabling onto a 110-type wall field.

b. Provide 25 percent spare termination capacity.

c. Connectivity shall be rated per the installation environment.

17.E HORIZONTAL CONNECTIVITY

Horizontal connectivity, from the floor serving IDF space to each communications outlet location, is required to extend service to various building system end devices that use the IP network. The transport medium most widely used in the "horizontal" is a twisted pair copper cable. Optical fiber cabling should be considered for outlet locations that are determined to be over distance.

Supplementing the hard-wired connections throughout the facility, a wireless local area network (WLAN) shall be included (when developing the technology program) to provide additional connectivity to court staff or court building users. An understanding of the connectivity requirements for each system should be realized at the earliest phases in the design process and include a site survey with heat maps to plan placement of WLAN access points to ensure even signal coverage and eliminate dead spots. WLAN connectivity shall be provided for all areas with computerized maintenance equipment, such as utility rooms in the basement and penthouse.

1. Four-Pair Copper

1.1 General Requirements

Provide an end-to-end solution based on ANSI/TIA-568.0-~~D~~ E or the highest performance standard ratified by ANSI/TIA/~~EIA~~ for topologies, distances, installation, performance, and testing requirements for telecommunications structured cabling. The minimum standard for the horizontal permanent link cabling is 6A foiled, unshielded twisted pair (F/UTP) cable, otherwise known as augmented Category 6. A foil applied over unshielded twisted pairs shall be the minimum standard for jacketing of four-pair copper cables. As network bandwidth increases, the category performance rating of four-pair copper cable should be revised to meet current industry standards.

1.2. Cabling Criteria

a. Each four-pair copper cable permanent link shall fall within the Ethernet distance limitation of 295′.

b. The complete cable plant shall meet ANSI/TIA-1152-A, Level IIIe performance requirements for Category 6A cabling.

c. In communications rooms, cabling ~~must~~shall be terminated ~~the cabling~~ in angled patch panels.

d. The end-to-end, four-pair copper connectivity solution shall use shielded components, including faceplates, wall jacks, and patch cables.

e. Connectivity shall be rated for the installation environment.

DIVISION TWO: TECHNICAL CRITERIA
11 Architectural Criteria
12 Structural Criteria
13 Mechanical Criteria
14 Building Management Systems Criteria
15 Electrical Criteria
16 Lighting Criteria
17 NETWORK AND COMMUNICATION SYSTEMS
17.A General Overview
17.B Minimum Point of Entry (MPOE)
17.F Administration and Verification
17.G Network Architecture
17.H Distributed Antenna System
18 Audiovisual Systems
19 Acoustical Criteria
20 Fire Protection Criteria

Related Requirements

Tool 3, Integrated Network Architecture: LAN/WAN Diagram (Integrated Architecture Network Diagram)

~~Judicial Council LAN/WAN Architecture and Standards Document for IP network design principles and specific hardware elements~~

2. Wireless Local Area Network

Although the term "wireless" lends itself to the concept that hard-wired connections are not needed, a grid-type network of connection points dedicated to the wireless system is preferred, subject to confirmation by the technology program. To achieve seamless ~~100~~ 100 percent coverage, communications outlets are placed in accessible locations, typically above suspended ceilings. These dedicated wireless outlets are considered part of the structured cabling system and are passive wiring-only locations, intended for use by active wireless devices, known as wireless access points (WAPs). WAP placement shall be determined through independent analysis via specialized testing and survey techniques (such as heat map or site survey) and shall be developed alongside the active systems network architecture design.

3. Typical Outlet Configurations

Typical configurations can be applied to the quantity of cables per outlet and the location of outlets per room or device. This practice is ~~utilized~~ used early in design, so ~~that~~ the designer can begin validating architectural space planning efforts and develop device outlet layouts that are consistent with previous court projects.

~~Shown in t~~Table 17.4 is a matrix of typical communications outlets expected in a courthouse facility. The matrix illustrates the typical quantity of horizontal four-pair copper cables for each communications outlet adjacent to the IP port activation strategy. The quantity of IP port activations is provided factoring the various building system devices that may be deployed.

The standard outlet housing or faceplate shall have a minimum of four ports. All unused ports shall have a blank insert. A wall-mount phone faceplate is an exception.

Figures 17.4 and ~~figure~~ 17.5 identify the typical wall, floor, and future outlet locations within a typical courtroom.

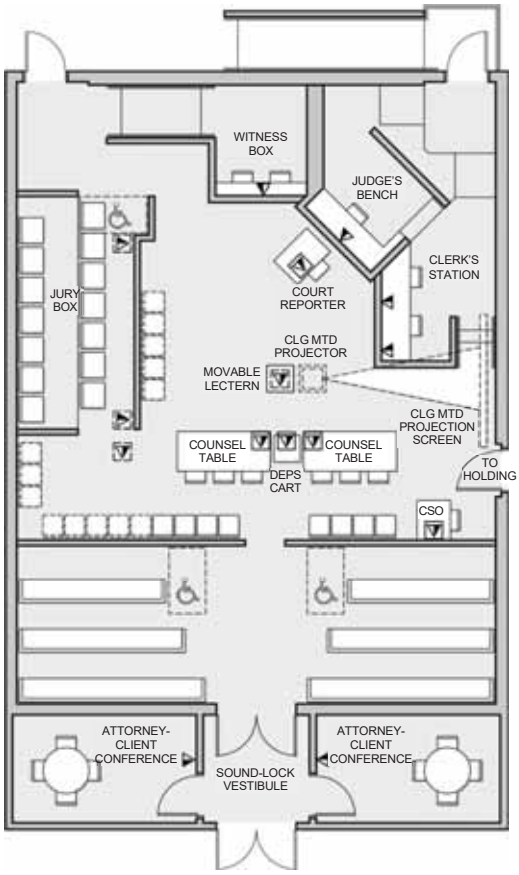
Table 17.4 Communications Outlet Matrix

OUTLET TYPE	FOUR-PAIR CABLES	ACTIVE IP PORTS
Typical office	3	2
Typical systems furniture	3	2
Typical copier/printer/fax	2	2
Wireless local area network access point	2	2
Digital display	2	1
Audiovisual projector	2	2
Elevator control	1 (per elevator)	0
Wall phone	1	0
Audiovisual control panel	1	0
Security control panel	2	2
Security camera	1	1
~~Bms~~ BMS control panel	2	1
Intercom	1	1
Lighting control panel	2	1
Judge position	3	3
Clerk	3	2
Court reporter position	2	2
Witness position	2	2
Counsel table	2	2
Lectern	4	4
Interpreters	2	2

Commented [LD6]: Judicial Council LAN/WAN Architecture and Standards Document (in sidebar): Is this the correct title of this document? If not, use sentence case. If so, italic.

Commented [DP6R2]: There is no such document that Facilities Services uses, so I am taking this reference out.

Commented [DP7]: Gensler: reference to table 17.4 and these two figures needs to come before them. So rearrange so the table and figures come after these paragraphs. It is ok if you roll into 17.F before the figures.



CLG MTD = ceiling-mounted.
CSO = court security officer.
DEPS CART = digital evidence presentation system cart.

Figure 17.4 Multipurpose Courtroom With Corner Bench Showing Outlets

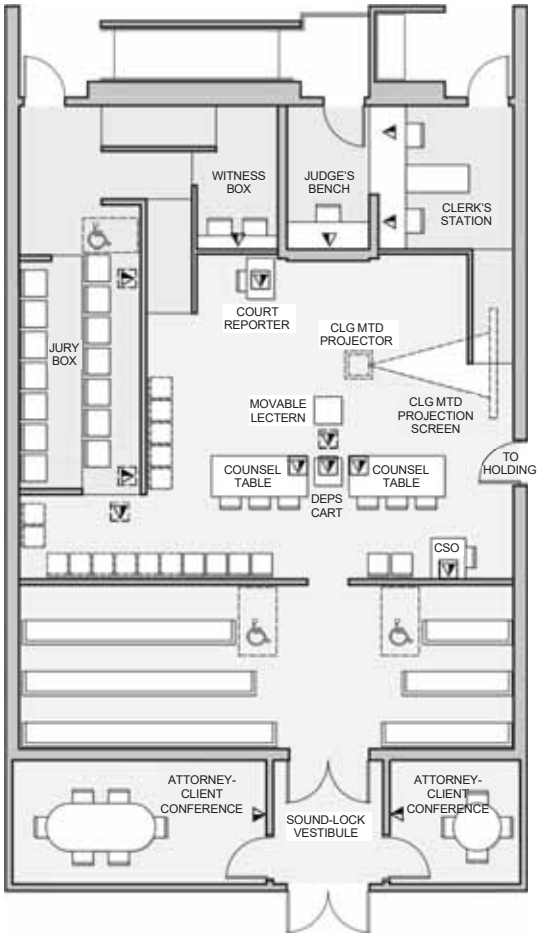
DIVISION TWO: TECHNICAL CRITERIA

11 Architectural Criteria
12 Structural Criteria
13 Mechanical Criteria
14 Building Management Systems Criteria
15 Electrical Criteria
16 Lighting Criteria

17 NETWORK AND COMMUNICATION SYSTEMS
17.A General Overview
17.B Minimum Point of Entry (MPOE)
17.C Distribution Pathways
17.D Backbone Connectivity

17.F Administration and Verification
17.G Network Architecture
17.H Distributed Antenna System

18 Audiovisual Systems
19 Acoustical Criteria
20 Fire Protection Criteria



CLG MTD = ceiling-mounted.
CSO = court security officer.
DEPS CART = digital evidence presentation system cart.

Figure 17.5 Multipurpose Courtroom With Center Bench Showing Outlets

17.F ADMINISTRATION AND VERIFICATION

Administration and verification of the structured cabling system are critical to the efficient functioning of a new courthouse facility through the design phase, construction build-out, and technology systems implementation ~~either~~ on day ~~-~~one ~~or~~ and during the lifespan of the building.

Well-documented design processes—where detailed product information, shop drawings, and as-built drawings are submitted by the installing contractor—are project requirements and shall be strictly enforced. Project documentation of this type shall be reviewed in detail for accuracy and completeness.

The structured cabling connectivity solution shall be certified by the component manufacturers and provided with an extended minimum warranty period of 25 years.

1. Identification and Labeling

An identification system that complies with ANSI/TIA-606-~~C~~ D shall be implemented to uniquely identify the network infrastructure, including devices and cabling, installed in the facility. Provide a unique and consistent alphanumeric identification system to form the basis for the development of a communications administration system database to be approved before final design.

2. Connectivity Testing

A complete set of test results verifying the installed link and channel performance parameter results for all cable types shall be provided. Testing for copper cabling should be performed using, at a minimum, a level 4 testing device. For LOMMF cable, testing should be performed using fiber modules incorporating 850 nm vertical-cavity, surface-emitting laser and 1,310 nm laser sources combined into a single output port. All testing should be performed in accordance with ANSI/TIA-1152-A for copper ~~testing~~ and ANSI/TIA-~~-~~568.3-~~-~~E-~~-~~C.0 ~~and NECA/FOA-301~~ for fiber ~~testing~~.

The test result documentation shall, at a minimum, contain testing, verification, and documentation of all performance specification parameters for the installed optical fiber and copper media. The documentation should be in both paper and electronic formats.

3. As-Built Documentation

As-built submittals should be developed in electronic format. At a minimum, the following documents should be provided (in addition to overall building as-built requirements):

- Project site plan of all OSP infrastructure with labeling and identification of each c~~E~~lement;
- Matrix of the communications cabling indicating type, location, splicing, physical routing, and quantities of all communications cabling;
- Communications OSP cable plant test results;
- Single-line diagrams showing connectivity throughout the OSP, including all splice and termination locations inside and outside the building;
- Building floor plans showing communications outlet locations with identifiers for each c~~C~~able;
- Building floor plans showing communications outlet locations that indicate the quantity of active IP ports per location;
- IP port activation matrix with per switch port to cable, to IP address, to virtual local area network (VLAN) identification;

DIVISION TWO: TECHNICAL CRITERIA
11 Architectural Criteria
12 Structural Criteria
13 Mechanical Criteria
14 Building Management Systems Criteria
15 Electrical Criteria
16 Lighting Criteria
17 NETWORK AND COMMUNICATION SYSTEMS
17.A General Overview
17.B Minimum Point of Entry (MPOE)
17.C Distribution Pathways
17.D Backbone Connectivity
17.G Network Architecture
17.H Distributed Antenna System
18 Audiovisual Systems
19 Acoustical Criteria
20 Fire Protection Criteria

Commented [DP8]: Gensler: correct this.

- Building floor plans showing distributed antenna system (DAS) locations;
- Enlarged plans of the communications rooms;
- Heat maps for WLAN placement, with access point locations;
- Building floor plans showing routing of communications pathways and pull box locations;
- Building floor plans showing locations and types of UL fire-stop systems;
- Communications interior cable plant test results for copper and fiber; and
- Single-line diagrams of all components of the DAS, including infrastructure, connectivity, operating and safety devices, control panels, instrumentation, and annunciators.

17.G NETWORK ARCHITECTURE

1. Design Principles

The converged IP network design's goal is to develop an intelligent, converged network that provides a responsive, effective, and supportive environment so the courts can achieve their communications network objectives.

A converged IP-based network provides an intelligent communications transport facility that is effective in increasing building performance, functionality, and environmental sustainability. Network convergence should allow the integration, automation, and optimization of all courthouse systems and equipment required to serve the building and its occupants.

Design principles that the integrated IP network should factor in include but are not limited to:

- Maximizing Maximum efficiency for occupants;
- Allowing eEffective resource management;
- Being rResponsiveity to user needs;
- The ability to adapt, integrate, and enhance new technologies;
- The ability to accommodate and react to organizational changes; and
- Ease of operation and maintenance.

2. Systems on the IP Network

The building systems communications goal is to employ IP devices so that they can be transported over the IP network. A converged IP network provides a single, logical transmission platform for all the IP devices within a facility.

Building systems connected to the IP network may require a temporary network for commissioning and testing purposes. Typically, the building IP network is one of the last systems to come online. For systems requiring commissioning and testing before network availability, the contractor shall provide a temporary network. Once the building IP network is live, a transfer to the permanent IP network can be made.

The following courthouse technology systems are typically supported by the facility's converged IP network:

- Data for office applications
- Judicial-specific applications
- Case management systems
- Internet/~~Web~~ web access
- IP telephony system
- WLAN communications (Wi-Fi)
- Network management and network control traffic
- Security and access control systems
- Security video media
- Building management system
- Lighting control system
- Digital signage system
- Video and streaming media
- Audiovisual system
- Queuing system
- HVAC system
- Landscaping irrigation system
- Public address system
- Electrical metering
- Solar controllers and~~/~~ inverters
- Intercoms

Accurate estimation of the number of IP ports required for facilities-related devices is essential for the design and implementation of a properly ~~-~~sized, robust, and scalable network infrastructure. The technology program, which examines individual project needs and requirements, will determine which of the courthouse technology systems are needed and to what extent they will use the converged IP network.

3. IP Network Segregation

Table 17.5 documents the baseline network usage groups expected on the converged IP network that should be taken into account when designing IP network segregation (e.g., IP addressing and VLAN schemes).

4. Network Availability

a. The primary design considerations of a high-availability network begin with the accumulation of information related to strategic business and system functionality requirements. After the primary information has been gathered, recommendations to achieve the required availability should be developed considering the latest communications technologies and converged network design principles.

b. The following design parameters shall guide the design process through implementation, commissioning, and testing:

- Scalability: Include switch port density in the LAN access and core/distribution layer, incoming service interface ports for WAN routers, and voice gateways.
- ~~Resiliency~~Resilience: Design the network with fault tolerance and/or fail-over capabiliti prevent system downtime resulting from a single point of failure.

Table 17.5 Network Segregation

SYSTEMS	SUBNET SEGREGATION	DEVICES
Data	Data (general user data traffic)	
	Data (printer)	
	Data (application server traffic)	
Voice	~~Voice over Internet Protocol (~~VoIP~~)~~	
	VoIP ~~End~~ end ~~Devices~~ devices (handsets, etc.)	
	VoIP ~~Call~~ call ~~Management~~management	
BMS	BMS IP ~~Controller~~controller	
	BMS ~~Servers~~servers	
	BMS ~~Monitor~~ monitor ~~Workstations~~workstations	
Security—SMS	~~Security Management System (~~SMS~~)~~	Security IP ~~End~~ end ~~Devices~~devices
	SMS	Monitoring and~~&~~ ~~Badge~~ badge ~~Workstations~~workstations
	SMS	Access ~~Control~~ control ~~Servers~~servers
Security—DLCS	~~Detention Lock Control System (~~DLCS~~)~~	Intercom ~~&~~ and ~~Programmable~~ programmable ~~Logic~~logic ~~Controller~~controller
	DLCS	Monitoring ~~Terminals~~terminals
	DLCS	Detention ~~Control~~ control ~~&~~ and ~~Intercom~~ intercom ~~Servers~~servers
Security	Video ~~Media~~media	Security IP ~~Cameras~~cameras
	Video ~~Media~~media	Monitoring ~~Workstations~~workstations
	Video ~~Media~~media	Media ~~Video~~ video ~~Recording~~ recording ~~Servers~~servers
Security—~~Duress~~duress	Duress ~~Alarm~~ alarm ~~System~~system	Duress ~~Alarm~~ alarm ~~Controller~~controller
Audiovisual	AV ~~Control~~ control ~~&~~ and ~~Monitoring~~monitoring	AV IP ~~End~~ end ~~Devices~~devices
	AV ~~Control~~ control ~~&~~ and ~~Monitoring~~monitoring	AV ~~Matrix~~matrix
	Digital ~~Signage~~signage, ~~Queuing~~ queuing, ~~&~~ and ~~Internet Protocol Television (~~IPTV~~)~~	Display p~~P~~anels
	Digital ~~Signage~~signage, ~~Queuing~~ queuing, ~~&~~ and IPTV	Media ~~Servers~~servers
Wireless LAN	WLAN ~~Trusted~~trusted	
	WLAN ~~Guest~~guest	
	WLAN ~~Controller~~controller	
LAN to LAN	Routing LAN ~~Core~~ core to LAN ~~Core~~core	
WAN ~~Edge~~edge	Routing ~~Edge~~ edge ~~Public~~ public ~~Subnets~~subnets	
Extranet	Extranet ~~Clients~~clients	
Intrusion ~~Detection~~ detection ~~System~~system	Intrusion ~~Prevention~~ prevention ~~System~~ system ~~Monitoring~~monitoring	

DMZ	~~Demilitarized Zone (~~DMZ~~)~~ ~~Subnets~~subnets
Firewall~~W~~ to ~~Core~~ core LAN	Routing ~~Firewall~~ firewall ~~(FW)~~ to ~~Core~~ core LAN
Network ~~Management~~management	Network ~~Management~~management

AV = audiovisual.
BMS – building management system.
DLCS = detention lock control system.
DMZ = demilitarized zone.
IP = Internet Protocol.
IPTV = Internet Protocol television.
LAN = local area network.
SMS = security management system.
VoIP = Voice over Internet Protocol.
WAN = wide area network.
WLAN = wireless local area network.

- Redundancy: "Hot standby" redundancy (secondary paths) provides system resilience by delivering the capability to handle all the traffic and services of the primary system with minimal or no effect on the user base.
- Security: The relationship between network security and network availability is important. A network that has been compromised may not be available to its regular user base or may not achieve the expected performance or availability levels. Careful consideration is required when designing an environment where access to resources is restricted to users based on access lists, filtering, and passwords.
- Performance: Design criteria shall ensure the delivery of client -server- based applications, including interfaces and link data rates, quality of services (queuing, loss, latency, and jitter), and application characteristics.
- Manageability: System design shall allow administrators to be proactive when dealing with day-to-day operations. Management areas include device activity, bandwidth management, and software and system upgrades.
- Wireless: ~~Design a~~The converged network system shall~~ould~~ be designed to provide the user base with logical connectivity without being physically connected to the LAN infrastructure.
- Technology: A design consideration should be the adoption of open architecture standards-based communications and networking models to allow interoperability between existing systems and future system enhancements.
- Environmental: With the implementation of a converged network system providing business-critical availability, the need to protect the physical equipment environment becomes increasingly important. Environmental considerations typically include power, air-conditioning, and secure access.

5. IP Network Hardware Design Elements

a. At the baseline level, the IP network hardware elements in table 17.6 shall be included in the design and integration of the converged IP network and WAN.

b. Determine the type and capacity of IP network hardware elements needed on a per- project basis because the size of facility and number of active IP ports will vary significantly between projects. At a minimum, provide 25 percent IP port and switching throughput expansion capability for all LAN core and LAN access switches.

c. The IP network hardware elements must be capable of accommodating the IP packet data traffic and IP device port needs of all the project-relevant building systems.

Table 17.6 IP Network Hardware Elements

WIDE AREA NETWORK	LOCAL AREA NETWORK
WAN ~~Edge~~ edge ~~Routers~~ routers or ~~Switches~~switches	LAN ~~Core~~ core ~~Switches~~switches
Public zone	~~Lan~~ LAN access switches
Firewalls	
Extranet security zone	
Demilitarized zone	

DIVISION TWO: TECHNICAL CRITERIA
11 Architectural Criteria
12 Structural Criteria
13 Mechanical Criteria
14 Building Management Systems Criteria
15 Electrical Criteria
16 Lighting Criteria
17 NETWORK AND COMMUNICATION SYSTEMS
17.A General Overview
17.B Minimum Point of Entry (MPOE)
17.C Distribution Pathways
17.D Backbone Connectivity
17.E Horizontal Connectivity
17.F Administration and Verification
17.H Distributed Antenna System
18 Audiovisual Systems
19 Acoustical Criteria
20 Fire Protection Criteria

Early determination and coordination of DAS requirements are required for MDF space planning and layout.

17.H DISTRIBUTED ANTENNA SYSTEM

1. Objectives

A distributed antenna system (DAS) is a network of spatially separated antenna nodes~~,~~ connected via a transport medium~~,~~ that provides radio and cellular wireless service throughout the facility. Because of the complexity of design factors related to developing an effective DAS, the extent of this system must be defined in the overall technology program.

The provision of cellular DAS shall be determined on a project-by-project basis. A detailed court-by-court analysis is required for each facility to understand which service providers should be supported by the cellular DAS. In addition, coordination by the design and construction team with the cellular vendors for the approval of interconnection to all the required service provider macro networks is ~~necessary~~required. This coordination effort will also need to be extended to public safety entities to accommodate the various frequencies that the emergency responder ~~radio~~ communication enhancement system (ER~~R~~CES) will support for emergency services and first responders.

2. General Requirements

Provide ~~ERRCS~~ ERCES per California Fire Code (CFC) chapter 510; National Fire Protection Association (NFPA) 72, chapter 24; and NFPA ~~1221, section 9.6~~1225, Chapter 18. ~~The contractor shall coordinate the ERCES frequency list with the local county's agency that owns the frequencies, and incorporate all the approved frequencies. The contractor shall coordinate with the court's security team (sheriff, bailiff, third party security provider, etc.) who will be working in the building and incorporate the radio frequency for their two-way in-building radio communication. This frequency shall also be used for the duress alarm notification system.~~ The ERC~~E~~ES frequency shall be coordinated with the local county's agency that owns the frequencies~~,~~ and incorporated in the project. The frequency for the two-way in-building radio communication shall be coordinated with the court's security team (sheriff, bailiff, third party security provider, etc.) that will be working in the building. This frequency shall also be used for the duress alarm notification system.

3. Public Safety

At a minimum, the public safety entities that should be considered during the design phase are the sheriff or marshal, fire and rescue department, emergency medical services, and any other first responders. A list of all entities and their associated frequencies must be captured under the primary public safety requirements of the ~~DAS~~ERCE~~E~~S. The ERCE~~E~~S~~DAS~~ sh~~all~~~~ould~~ be flexible enough to allow for jurisdiction changes and for additional system frequencies. The radio frequencies for the court security provider personnel shall be included for in-building two-way radio communication.

4. Coverage Areas

Radio coverage is the primary concern, followed by cellular coverage for a courthouse building. Detention areas shall be provided with 100 percent radio coverage. Spaces including the fire command center, security operations center, fire pump room, judicial chambers, exit stairs, exit passageways, elevator lobbies, standpipe cabinets, sprinkler section valve locations, and all mechanical ~~r~~room and communications spaces should have a minimum of 99 percent radio coverage.

Other general building area coverage should be within the allowable tolerance set by the Judicial Council and in compliance with CFC chapter 510; NFPA 72, chapter 24; and ~~NFPA~~ NFPA ~~1221, section 9.6~~1225, ~~C~~chapter 18 for ERCE~~E~~S~~ERRCS~~. It shall not fall below a minimum of 95 percent floor area radio coverage with a delivered audio quality (DAQ) of 3.0.

5. Space Requirements and Connectivity

If required, the DAS headend equipment, the base station, and other main components

Commented [RR9]: This responsibility to coordinate with the Cellular vendors needs to be assigned to the Design or Construction team.

Commented [DP9R2]: Incorporated.

Commented [SN10]: The direction to the contractor seems better suited for the contract with the contractor than in these standeards.

Commented [DP10R2]: I will rephrase, but the requirement belongs here as well.

Commented [SN11]: The direction to the contractor seems better suited for the contract with the contractor than in these standeards.

Commented [DP11R2]: I will rephrase, but the requirement belongs here as well.

Commented [RR12]: Need to expand.
1.The contractor is required to coordinate with the local County agency that owns the ERRCS frequency list and incorporate all approved frequency's.
2.The contractor is required to coordinate with the Court security team(i.e. Sheriff, Bailiff, PD, 3rd part security provider, etc.) who will be working in the building and incorporate their radio frequency for their two-way in-building radio communication. This frequency will also be used for the duress alarm notification system.

Commented [DP12R2]: Incorporated.

Commented [RR13]: Refer to public safety system as: ERRCS or Emergency Responder Radio Communications System

Commented [DP13R2]: The name is changed from ERRCS to ERCES. Incorporated.

should be located within the MDF. If the MDF is used, then the space is required to be two-hour rated. There should be provisions within the MDF to support these components and space allocated for service provider cabinets. Wall space should be dedicated within the MDF for DAS equipment panels and distribution equipment. All DAS equipment shall be placed in a NEMA 4 enclosure. Additionally, wall space in each IDF may need to be reserved to support DAS equipment and connectivity.

The DAS will use the building ISP fiber backbone. Any coaxial cable, splitters, or other DAS distribution media will need to be incorporated into the overall pathway and connectivity requirements. Where radio frequency–based technology requires the use of coaxial cable for horizontal connectivity, provide an RG-6 quad-shielded cable.

The ERCE~~ES~~ERRCS cabling shall meet code mandated survivability requirements.

6. Power

The power requirements for the DAS shall follow the CBC and CFC requirements. The DAS radio and cellular base station and other headend equipment must remain operational during a power outage. The source of uninterrupted power is project dependent and should be determined considering the independent needs of each courthouse facility. The ERCE~~ES~~ERRCS shall be provided with standby power per CFC 510.4.2.3 and 1203.2.3. Refer to chapter 15, Electrical Criteria, for detailed power requirements.

DIVISION TWO: TECHNICAL CRITERIA

11 Architectural Criteria
12 Structural Criteria
13 Mechanical Criteria
14 Building Management Systems Criteria
15 Electrical Criteria
16 Lighting Criteria

17 NETWORK AND COMMUNICATION SYSTEMS
17.A General Overview
17.B Minimum Point of Entry (MPOE)
17.C Distribution Pathways
17.D Backbone Connectivity
17.E Horizontal Connectivity
17.F Administration and Verification
17.G Network Architecture

DIVISION TWO: TECHNICAL CRITERIA

18 AUDIOVISUAL SYSTEMS

SECTION	TOPIC	PAGE
18.A	Audiovisual Design	18.2
18.B	Audiovisual Criteria	18.2
18.C	Technical Infrastructure	18.3
18.D	Audiovisual Systems Descriptions	18.3
18.E	Description of Courthouse Spaces	18.9
18.F		



Superior Court of California, County of Madera
Madera, CA
AC Martin

Coordinate with network and communication systems, mechanical, and electrical disciplines to ensure that adequate power, cooling, and network bandwidth are provided for all audiovisual systems components to run concurrently and at peak performance.

For further information, see chapter 13, Mechanical Criteria; chapter 15, Electrical Criteria; and chapter 16, Lighting Criteria.

Various configurations in the layout of courtrooms are driven by the function or functions assigned to their operation. Refer to chapter 5, Court Set, for layout descriptions.

18.A AUDIOVISUAL DESIGN

Audiovisual (AV) systems are part of the technology program to be implemented in the planning of the courthouse as described in chapter 17, Network and Communication Systems.

The design shall provide an integrated, reliable, scalable, and sustainable audiovisual system to assist the court with judicial proceedings and day-to-day administrative and training needs. Systems shall be easy to use and maintain, regardless of the size and location of the facility or the number of staff employed. Courtrooms that will hear remote proceedings shall comply with the SB133, ~~Minimum Technical Standards for Remote Proceedings Minimum T~~technology ~~Standards~~ standards described ~~by~~ in Code of Civil Procedure section 367.76(o).

18.B AUDIOVISUAL CRITERIA

The following criteria shall be followed when designing the audiovisual systems.

1. **Reliability and Serviceability**
   Systems with a high level of reliability and ease of maintenance shall be chosen by implementing industry standard technologies and installation practices~~,~~ as well as using readily available components and materials. All equipment specified must be available from at least two vendors.

2. **Integration**

   a. System components and infrastructure shall be fully integrated within the design of the courthouse. Equipment and cable management systems that allow for incorporation into the architectural elements, millwork, and furniture shall be selected. An effort shall be made to conceal equipment from plain sight.

   b. Audiovisual systems shall be integrated with the telecommunications and information technology (IT) systems to gain efficiency within the building design. Whenever possible, AV and network spaces, pathways, components, and cabling shall be shared. Where applicable, the AV system shall also use the IT systems for the delivery and transmission of audio, video, and control signals. Audiovisual systems shall identify specific IT protocol (i.e. Donte, Audio Video Bridging (AVB), etc.) that will be needed to integrate into network switches.

   c. All non–user- interface AV equipment shall be installed in dedicated equipment cabinets located in the facility's main distribution frame (MDF) and intermediate distribution frame (IDF) locations. Only user-essential equipment shall be installed in individual rooms. See chapter 17, Network and Communication Systems, for specific equipment criteria.

3. **Scalability**
   A system that is nonproprietary, standards based, and scalable to allow for the future addition of components and functionality shall be chosen. The system components and technical infrastructure shall provide for a minimum of 15 percent expansion capability. Expandability shall include additional inputs and outputs on the digital signal processor (DSP), matrix switcher, and control system.

   Do not use the AVB ~~(Audio Video Bridging)~~ protocol, as it requires AVB-compliant switches, which prevents leveraging the primary building network switches—, limiting design flexibility and increasing infrastructure costs.

4. **Sustainability**
   The designer shall provide a system designed to use environmentally conscious technologies, installation approaches, and power management strategies to reduce the impact on the building's electrical and mechanical systems and to promote overall facility efficiency. Whenever possible, the designer shall specify Energy Star–compliant components.

Commented [LD1]: 18.F missing from TOC above.

Commented [DP1R2]: Gensler: Add 18.F on cover page.

Commented [DP2]: Modification made by CFAC-WG.

Commented [KC3]: Courtrooms that will hear remote proceedings must comply with SB133, Minimum Technical Standards for Remote Proceedings. https://courts.ca.gov/system/files/file/minimum-technology-standards-20240401.pdf

Commented [DP3R2]: Incorporated.

Commented [DP4]: Legal: replace the citation with the government code section that pertains.

Commented [SN4R2]: The Judicial Council is required to adopt Minimum Technology Standards by Code of Civil Procedure 367.76(o). But the standards are created by the Judicial Council. Thus, the citation would be to the standards themselves:

Minimum Technology Standards (Judicial Council of California, Apr. 1, 2024), https://courts.ca.gov/system/files/file/minimum-technology-standards-20240401.pdf

Please note, remote proceedings are presently set to expire January 1, 2027. It is unclear right now if they will be extended as in the past. If they do expire, the way the sentence is written still works because there will be no courtrooms that will hear remote proceedings who need to comply to the standards referenced.

Commented [DP4R3]: CFAC-WG would like to cite the government code, not the technology standard. I am going to change the citation. We will know prior to the year end if the remote proceedings are going to expire. We can then change the sentence before JC adoption end of the year.

Commented [RR5]: Add: Audiovisual systems need to identify specific IT protocol(i.e. Donte, AVB, etc.) that will be needed to integrate into network switches.

Commented [DP5R2]: Incorporated.

Commented [RR6]: Expandability needs to include additional inputs and outputs on the DSP, Matrix Switcher and Control system.

Commented [DP6R2]: Incorporated.

18.C TECHNICAL INFRASTRUCTURE

Figures 18.1 and 18.2 illustrate the distribution of technology elements in the courtroom. Wherever possible, colocate audiovisual services with the network infrastructure. See chapter 17, Network and Communication Systems, for coordination information.

1. Equipment Cabinets

Unless otherwise noted, all non-user-interface AV components shall be installed in dedicated equipment cabinets located in the facility's MDF and IDF locations. If AV equipment is located in rooms other than IDF or MDF rooms (e.g., conference room credenzas), provisions must be made to supply adequate cooling air to keep the temperature below the manufacturer's rating, even when the building-wide air-conditioning system is in unoccupied mode during nights and weekends. Equipment racks must include all cable management, electrical power distribution, blanks panels, vent panels, and the like. See chapter 17, Network and Communication Systems, for specific equipment cabinet size criteria.

2. Cable Pathways

Where industry best practice allows, the audiovisual cabling shall use the telecommunications pathway infrastructure. Careful planning and design shall be observed to avoid signal cross-contamination. Where Ethernet cable is used, no horizontal AV pathway initiated at the MDF or IDF shall exceed the distance limitation of 295′.

18.D AUDIOVISUAL SYSTEMS DESCRIPTIONS

1. Speech and Audio Reinforcement System

a. Wired microphones shall use shock and vibration isolation mounts, mute switches, and illuminated mute lights. Radio frequency (RF)-based wireless microphones shall use digital encryption.
b. When RF-based microphones are used, the designer shall conduct radio frequency sweep tests to ensure that correct allocation and sufficient bandwidth are available.
c. Provide 8Eight- to 12 channels of digital audio recording output shall be provided via Universal Serial Bus (USB) output for PC personal computer (PC) connection.
d. Audio reinforcement shall consist of four designated speaker zones (Judge judge and witness, jury, courtroom well, and audience seating) utilizing using the mix-minus audio functionality.
e. Sound masking using pink noise shall be provided for side-bar conversations with the control from the judge's bench push button control and the touch panel.
f. Stereo headphone audio outputs (3.5 mm) shall be provided at the court reporter and clerk locations.
g. Speech and audio reinforcement systems design and final commissioning shall follow the current release of the design standards established by Audiovisual and Integrated Experience Association (AVIXA) A102.01:2017, Audio Coverage Uniformity in Listener Area.

2. Assistive Listening

An assistive listening system (ALS) shall provide secure transmission of both speech and program audio to participants or members of the public. When evaluating the types of assistive listening systems in the design as well as the quantities of headsets, refer to sections sections 11B-219 and 11B-706 of title 24 of the California Code of Regulations to ensure adequate provisioning. Infra-red ALS shall be provided.

ALS shall be required to support multi-channel functionality. ALS shall operate on the standard functionality on the primary channel. On the secondary channel, the system shall be used for language interpretation. The control of the functionality shall be at the touch panel. ALS is required in different types of rooms, e.g. such as standard courtrooms, high-volume courtrooms, conference rooms, and jury deliberation rooms, etc. The specific number of devices required per room type shall be determined during the project design.

DIVISION TWO: TECHNICAL CRITERIA
11 Architectural Criteria
12 Structural Criteria
13 Mechanical Criteria
14 Building Management System Criteria
15 Electrical Criteria
16 Lighting Criteria
17 Network and Communication Systems
18 AUDIOVISUAL SYSTEMS
18.E Description of Courthouse Spaces
19 Acoustical Criteria
20 Fire Protection Criteria

Commented [RR7]: Assistive Listening System shall be required to support multi-channel functionality. In Sec. 3 below it goes into the use of the system for language interpretation as a dual purpose.
ALS will operate standard functionality on one channel. On the secondary channel the system will be used for language interpretation. The control of the functionality will be at the Touch Panel.

Commented [DP7R2]: Incorporated.

Commented [AG8]: Lesson Learned from Sacramento Courthouse: ALS are required in different types of rooms e.g. Standard Courtroom, High Volume Courtroom, Conference Room, Jury Deliberation Room. Provide the specific number of devices required per room type.

Commented [DP8R2]: Incorporated.

Commented [LTB9]: Include instructions to use infra-red and not RF assistive listening systems here?

Commented [RR9R2]: IR is preferred.

Commented [LTB10]: Are these layouts duplicating the information in Chapter 5? What is the effort to maintain the consistency of duplicate data? Should these be removed and replaced by repeating the reference to Ch 5?

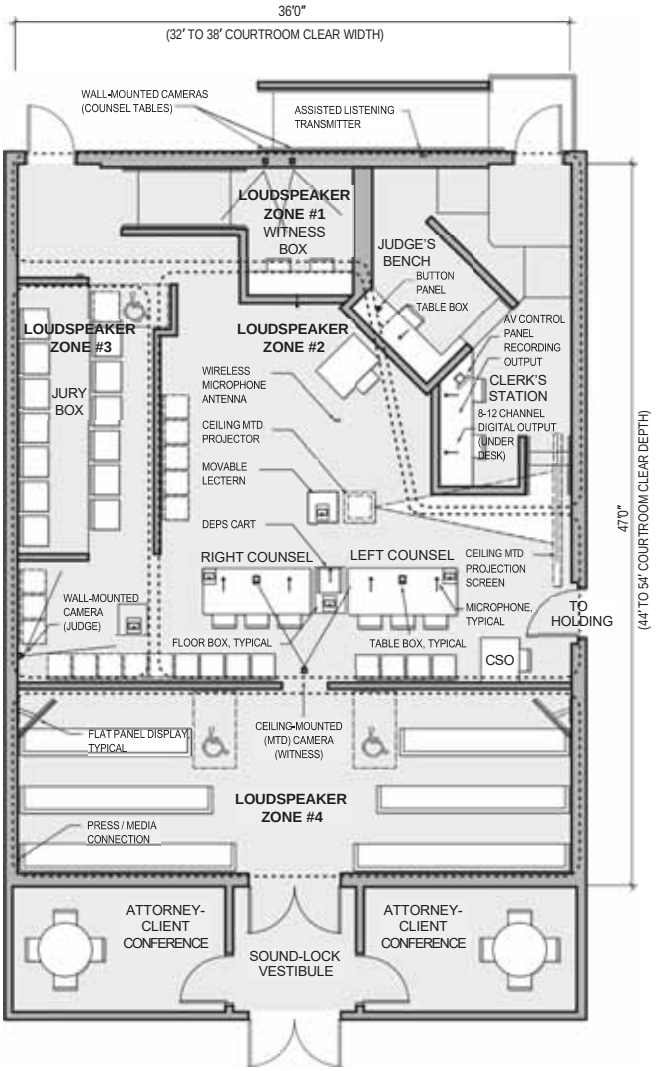
Commented [KC10R2]: These drawings contain AV details that are not present in Chapter 5, but are useful in this chapter.

Commented [DP11]: EGG: CFAC-WG suggested that this portion from e.g. to etc. should be in parentheses. Do you agree?

Refer to chapter 10, Building Support Services, for additional information.

MDFs and IDFs are integral parts of the audiovisual system's backbone. Close coordination with the network, mechanical, and electrical infrastructure systems is necessary to ensure successful audiovisual technology deployment. Refer to the corresponding chapters for more information.

Network pathways play a key role in the routing and distribution of cables for many of the building technology systems. The sharing of these pathways with audiovisual systems is encouraged. Refer to chapter 17, Network and Communication Systems, and chapter 15, Electrical Criteria, for standards and procedures.



CSO = court security officer.
DEPS cart = digital evidence presentation system cart.

Figure 18.1 Typical Courtroom, Corner Bench—AV Requirement

Commented [LD12]: Figures need to be referenced in text.

Commented [DP12R2]: They are referenced in 18.C.

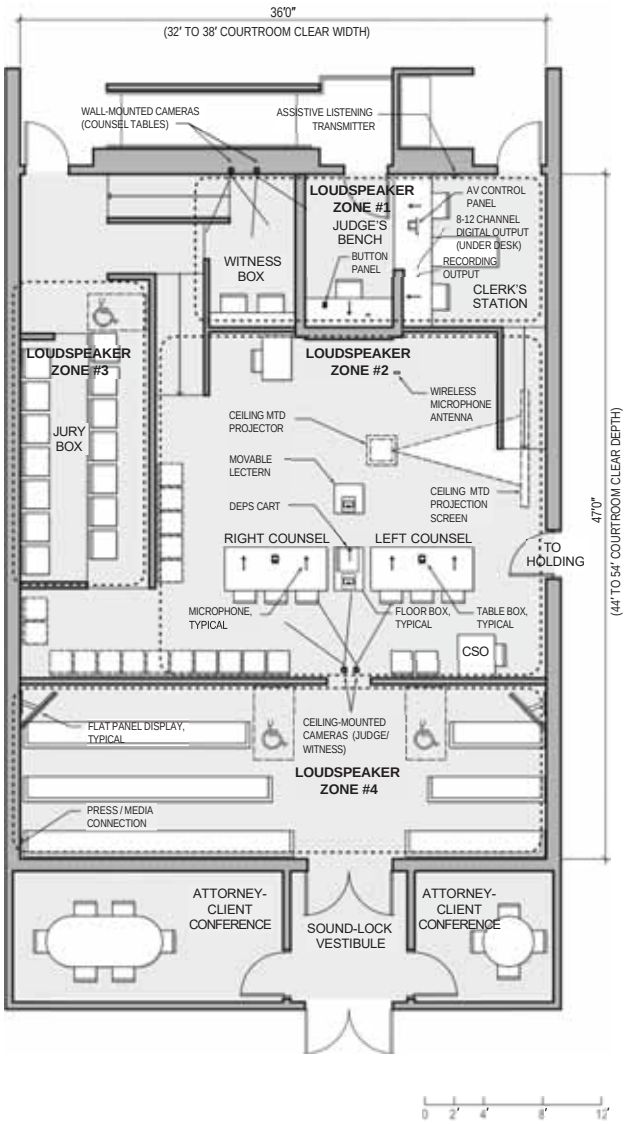


Figure 18.2 Typical Courtroom, Center Bench—AV Requirement

DIVISION TWO: TECHNICAL CRITERIA

11 Architectural Criteria
12 Structural Criteria
13 Mechanical Criteria
14 Building Management System Criteria
15 Electrical Criteria
16 Lighting Criteria
17 Network and Communication Systems
18 AUDIOVISUAL SYSTEMS
18.A Audiovisual Design
18.B Audiovisual Criteria
18.C Technical Infrastructure
18.E Description of Courthouse Spaces
19 Acoustical Criteria
20 Fire Protection Criteria

Speech and audio reinforcement systems shall amplify program audio and enhance the voice of the speaker to ensure that all participants can adequately hear the material being presented.

Speech reinforcement loudspeakers shall be ceiling mounted and zoned appropriately for the application. Loudspeakers shall be distributed to provide even coverage throughout the space.

Pink noise is the sound-masking criterion.

3. Language Access

The language access system shall work in conjunction with alternate channels of the assistive listening system to provide for live interpretation to participants and audience members in courtrooms. Language access may be provided in other spaces as required on a per ~~-~~project basis.

4. Video Display

Video display systems that will ensure that all participants can adequately view presented material on a common display shall be provided. The display can be either a projector with a motorized screen or a flat panel.

5. Digital Evidence Presentation System ~~(DEPS)~~

The digital evidence presentation system (DEPS) is an additional input to the courtroom video display. It is located between or in front of the attorney's tables, or in front or to the side of the courtroom clerk's desk. It is a neutral location for the display of evidence, which can be used by either attorney. Source content may include audio and video playback devices, laptops, and document cameras.

Annotation of digital evidence capability is required. The document camera shall support annotation of digital evidence with the functionality of saving digital formats ~~of the annotated evidence and~~as well as sharing the annotated evidence through the videoconferencing system. The system may be portable or dedicated, depending on courthouse needs. A DEPS cart shall be provided for each ~~Courtroom~~courtroom.

6. Videoconferencing and Remote Appearances

The videoconferencing systems in the courthouse enable real-time two-way communication between two or more locations, including locations of remote interpreters, conference rooms, training rooms, remote holding facilities, and remote locations.

In hybrid courtroom applications, the design shall include the use of a rack-mounted computer or small-scale personal computer to operate a videoconferencing platform. Audio and video signals to~~,~~ and from~~,~~ the videoconferencing computer shall be managed through the touch panel. Audio and video shall be connected to the videoconferencing computer via digital connections.

The ~~Videoconferencing~~ videoconferencing system shall integrate with the control and touch panel system, when applicable. ~~-~~If ~~it~~ this is not possible, ~~then~~ the use of a rack-mounted computer may be considered. The use of an integrated PC platform (~~i.e.~~such as Unified Communications ~~Engine~~ for Teams ~~room, or~~ Zoom Rooms~~, etc.~~) capable of integrating with the ~~Control~~ control and ~~Touch~~ touch ~~Panel~~ panel system is preferred. ~~-~~Coordinati~~on~~e with the court to confirm the conferencing platform for specific locations ~~is required~~.

Audio from the courtroom shall be routed through the DSP to the videoconferencing computer via USB and any corresponding converting equipment required. Audio from the videoconferencing computer shall be routed through the ~~digital signal processing (~~DSP~~)~~ cable to the courtroom house speaker system.

The video feed shall be transmitted through the video control switcher to the videoconferencing computer via digital connection and any required conversation equipment. Four views shall provide a clear image of the judge, witness, litigants, and their attorneys~~,~~ but not of the members of the jury. Camera control shall be on the touch panel with pre~~-~~set views for convenience, not to exclude manual zoom controls ~~of the camera~~. In systems with multiple cameras, camera selection shall also reside on the touch panel. ~~In addition, multiple split camera views, either multiple 2:1 or 4:1 single camera views, will be needed to feed a single video feed with all camera views into the videoconferencing platform.~~ Camera views

Commented [RR13]: Videoconferencing system should integrate with the control and touch panel system when applicable. If not possible then use of rack mounted computer should be used. The use of a integrated UC engine platform capable of integrating with the Control and Touch Panel system is preferred. Coordination between the Court to confirm conferencing platform for specific locations will be required.

Commented [DP13R2]: Incorporated.

Commented [LD14]: "laptop"?

Commented [DP14R2]: Could be laptop or tablet or all-in-one PC. Best to leave it as is.

Commented [LTB15]: Consider...
Depending on the courtroom configuration, the system shall provide clear views of the judge, witness, litigants and their attorneys, jury, and the dock.

Commented [DP15R2]: There are safety concerns with showing the jury. Others are included.

Commented [RZ16]: Should dock view be added here or listing the need for a dock view in section 18.E.4.f sufficient?

shall feed into a multi-viewer to provide various output configurations. In addition to the cameras, presentation view for PC connection and a document camera in the courtroom shall be included as selectable views.

~~Control of the multi-viewer shall be operated from the touch panel.~~ The multi-viewer shall be controlled through the touch panel. View options and preset multi-view layouts shall be selectable from the touch panel. ~~Options for which view and quantity of views with preset selections shall be available at the touch panel.~~ The video feed to the videoconferencing platform will be a composite view from one or more cameras. A variety of predefined layouts will be available for selection.

The desktop view from the videoconferencing computer shall be transmitted to the display(s) in the courtroom (or multiple locations). A keyboard and mouse shall be provided to control the videoconferencing computer. Extenders may be needed depending on the distance of the courtroom to the rack AV equipment (IDF room). Routing of the

Commented [DP17]: Modified by CFAC-WG.

Commented [SN18]: Suggested language for clarity: "The multi-viewer shall be controlled through the touch panel."

Commented [DP18R2]: Incorporated.

Commented [SN19]: Suggested language for clarity: "View options and preset multi-view layouts shall be selectable from the touch panel."

Commented [DP19R2]: Incorporated.

videoconferencing computer video to the courtroom display(s) shall be controlled at the touch panel.

Easily accessible mute controls shall be on the touch panel. These include mute control for all video and audio into the courtroom~~,~~ and ~~mute control~~ for audio till the back of the courtroom~~out to the far end~~. Content from digital evidence and annotation devices such as the document camera shall be shared through the videoconferencing system for remote viewers.

7. Control System

a. ~~Provide a~~A control system for the management, monitoring, operation, and notification of local and facility-wide audiovisual equipment shall~~will~~ be provided.

b. The control system shall be designed to use the network infrastructure for the distribution of commands and data.

c. Control systems provide simplified means of managing the functions of the audiovisual operations of the facility. All control system user ~~-~~interface devices shall meet the requirements as stated in the Division of the State Architect (DSA) access compliance requirements of the California Building Code.

8. Control System Requirements

a. Before starting the design of the touch panel graphical user interface (GUI), obtain the template for a typical courtroom design from the Judicial Council.

b. Conduct a GUI coordination meeting with the court and the Judicial Council to determine if the court has a preferred approach, and select an approach.

c. Based on the selected approach, customize the design to conform to the requirements of this project, and submit a set of screen shots for the most complex courtroom design. Explain if a single button performs multiple functions (e.g., partition sensors, teleconference in progress, fire alarm signal, shared resources being used).

d. Once comments on the courtroom GUI have been incorporated, revise and resubmit the GUI to include the remaining spaces within the courthouse that use AV control systems.

e. Once the comments on the complete GUI design have been approved, write processor code to operate the GUI (but not the actual controlled devices). Load it into a processor on the internet, and submit the appropriate files necessary to simulate the actual operation of the touch panel on a computer using a mouse.

f. If the functioning GUI has been approved, proceed with the installation.

9. Touch Panel Design

a. ~~See t~~Tool 4, Graphical User Interface Template, ~~for~~ provides the touch panel template.

b. All panels are to have the time and date displayed in the same position on every page.

c. All pages are to have a title~~,~~ indicating the piece of equipment and/or functionality being controlled.

d. Each individual room type shall be given the same user ~~-~~interface design and layout throughout the project~~,~~ to the greatest extent practicable.

e. User interface design shall be as consistent as possible, taking into account the variations in system functionality from room type to room type~~,~~ throughout the project.

DIVISION TWO: TECHNICAL CRITERIA
11 Architectural Criteria
12 Structural Criteria
13 Mechanical Criteria
14 Building Management System Criteria
15 Electrical Criteria
16 Lighting Criteria
17 Network and Communication Systems
18 AUDIOVISUAL SYSTEMS
18.A Audiovisual Design
18.B Audiovisual Criteria
18.C Technical Infrastructure
18.E Description of Courthouse Spaces
19 Acoustical Criteria
20 Fire Protection Criteria

Commented [LD20]: Does this need to be defined?

Commented [DP20R2]: It is video+audio, or just audio. I have clarified.

An MDF is a space in which the core technology of the facility is concentrated. An MDF serves as a central point for the distribution of various subsystems that are part of the overall technology of the facility. Refer to chapter 17, Network and Communication Systems, for additional information.

See chapter 11, Architectural Criteria, for rooftop equipment information.

f. Whenever the same button appears on more than one page, it must be in the same position on each page. This includes buttons that cause page-to-page flips.

g. Functions used during a general presentation shall be accessible with a minimal amount of button presses or page flips.

h. The sidebar and mute buttons from the judge's button panel shall also appear on every touch panel page.

i. Individual microphone volume controls should not be on the main control page but should be on a setup page~~,~~ to reduce clutter.

j. ~~Include t~~The capability for automatically powering down all nonessential equipment supporting each individual room at a preset time (e.g., 6 p.m.) each day shall~~must~~ be included. ~~Provide that~~Allow the time ~~can~~ to be set by the user on the room page, with an override valid for one day and the automatic power down restarting the next day. Play an audible sound from the touch panel one minute before automatic power down occurs, and allow the operator to override this function.

10. Television ~~(TV)~~

Infrastructure to feed television (TV) signals to desired spaces within the courthouse shall be provided. TV is usually viewed in the jury assembly room, employee break rooms, and some conference rooms. If the court has a contract with cable or satellite TV companies, provide the cabling and infrastructure to support this service. If the court wishes to view free, over-the-air TV, provide a roof-mounted antenna and tuners at the desired locations.

11. Provisions for Video Remote Interpreting

Provide the infrastructure to support video remote interpreting (VRI) in courtrooms either through the court's videoconferencing system or through the use of third-party videoconferencing software platforms (e.g., Zoom, Cisco Webex) that can be hosted on the videoconferencing system. When conducting VRI, the equipment and technology must provide high-quality communications, regardless of the physical location of the participants, so that all participants can be seen and heard whenever possible. See *Recommended Guidelines and Minimum Specifications for Video Remote Interpreting (VRI) for Spoken Language–Interpreted Events* ~~(https://www.courts.ca.gov/documents/vri-guidelines.pdf)~~ and *Recommended Guidelines for Video Remote Interpreting (VRI) for ASL-Interpreted Events* ~~(https://www.courts.ca.gov/documents/CIP-ASL-VRI-Guidelines.pdf)~~. VRI is generally preferred over telephonic interpreting, which does not provide visual cues. Several third-party videoconferencing platforms provide options for confidential conversations with the litigant, attorney, and interpreter. ~~Also, t~~These platforms may also provide options for simultaneous interpretation, consecutive interpretation, and sight translation of documents. Some platforms, like Zoom and Webex, have a built-in simultaneous interpretation feature (i.e., separate audio channel).

Commented [DP21]: Gensler here is the new link: chrome-extension://efaidnbmnnnibpcajpcglclefindmkaj/https://languageaccess.courts.ca.gov/sites/default/files/partners/default/2023-07/cip-asl-vri-guidelines.pdf

12. Digital Signage and Customer Flow Management

The digital signage system consists of video displays and signal transport methods capable of accepting and displaying information from local or remotely generated video content sources and software. Digital signage is used for wayfinding, display of the court calendar, and other visual messaging as required by the facility.

Customer flow management (CFM) systems direct the flow of customers in waiting areas for a service provided at the facility. The system consists of customer intake, printing of queue tickets, sending of ~~SMS (~~short message service (SMS) texts to court users' personal devices, and visual and audible announcements of the queuing process.

a. In the waiting area, provide a minimum of one video display and speaker that are visually accessible to the public. Signal transport and system requirements shall be coordinated during the design phase.

b. Video displays shall be integrated with the architecture of the building to allow for adequate technical infrastructure, cooling, ventilation, and future display hardware upgrades. See chapter 11, Architectural Criteria, for signage information. Digital signage systems may be interconnected to the court case management system and the CFM system to provide additional layers of information to the public specific to court proceedings, directories, and individual courtrooms.

18.E DESCRIPTION OF COURTHOUSE SPACES

1. Overview

Provide a turnkey audiovisual system—to include equipment and material, with associated labor, whether specifically mentioned herein or not—to ensure a complete working system that meets the needs of the court.

2. Typical Courtrooms

a. Provide a sound reinforcement system with 15″–18″ gooseneck microphones at the following locations.

- Judge's bench (one), clerk's workstation (zero to two, at the discretion of the court), and attorney's tables (two on each table) on movable bases with a mute button and a mute light. At the attorney's tables, cabling shall be through separate grommets, not through the cable box used for power, video, and data.
- Court reporter (zero to one, at the discretion of the court) and bailiff (zero to one, at the discretion of the court).
- Witness station on a fixed threaded mount.

b. If a floor box is provided for a lectern or DEPS cart, provide a microphone on a fixed threaded mount. If the lectern does not have a dedicated location, provide a clip for a handheld microphone

c. Install a videoconferencing system based on the design criteria of ~~section~~ section 18.D.6.

d. At the discretion of the court, provide a boundary microphone at the judge's location for use during a sidebar to record the sidebar and/or feed the court reporter's headphone jack.

e. Provide a minimum of two handheld wireless microphones for use by the jury and for general use by litigants and during voir dire. Provide a 4four-channel wireless microphone receiver so that additional microphones can be used from other courtrooms if needed. The antennas can be either remotely located in the courtroom or mounted on a receiver within the courtroom.

f. Provide a source of pink noise, enabled in all zones except the bench when the judge calls a sidebar. The court shall be able to set the volume as needed from the touch panel.

g. Provide ceiling loudspeakers configured as a mix-minus system. In a mix-minus system, audio from microphones in a zone is not reproduced through loudspeakers within that zone. The ceiling loudspeakers shall be zoned as follows:

- Jury (if the individual courtroom has a jury box)
- Gallery

DIVISION TWO: TECHNICAL CRITERIA

11 Architectural Criteria
12 Structural Criteria
13 Mechanical Criteria
14 Building Management System Criteria
15 Electrical Criteria
16 Lighting Criteria
17 Network and Communication Systems
18 AUDIOVISUAL SYSTEMS
18.A Audiovisual Design
18.B Audiovisual Criteria
18.C Technical Infrastructure
19 Acoustical Criteria
20 Fire Protection Criteria

Commented [RZ22]: Accurate?

Commented [RR22R2]: The idea is to allow for wireless microphones to be sharable between courtroom. When more than two wireless(which is included in each courtroom) is needed.

- Bench
- Well

h. At the discretion of the court, provide loudspeakers in the holding cells with on-/off control from the touch panel. If holding cells are shared between ~~adjourning~~ adjoining courtrooms, provide a system to select and route audio from either courtroom.

i. Provide an 8- to 12-channel audio feed for digital recording court proceedings. The actual recording equipment shall be provided by the court. At the discretion of the court, the feeds shall terminate at the equipment rack or be brought to the clerk's station within the courtroom. Provide audio input to allow recordings to be played back within the courtroom. At the discretion of the court, the channels shall be assigned to the following:

- Judge and clerk (with optional sidebar)
- Witness
- Plaintiff/prosecution, wireless microphone, telephone receive, videoconference receive
- Defense, lectern
- Videoconferencing

j. Provide line-level monitor outputs for the clerk and court reporter.

k. Provide a two-channel ~~ADA/CBC (~~Americans with Disabilities Act / California Building Code (ADA/CBC) ~~)~~ compliant infrared assistive listening system ~~used~~ to meet ADA/CBC requirements (channel 1) and language translation (channel 2). At the discretion of the court, more than two channels may be specified if the court has a need for multiple languages translated simultaneously.

l. Provide a single-line teleconference system for making telephone calls using microphones (wired and wireless) and ceiling loudspeakers, with acoustic echo canceling on every microphone input. The output shall be selectable either to feed the ceiling speakers (default) or channel 2 of the assistive listening system for use when the language translator is remote. Depending on the courthouse system, the telephone system may be either analog or Voice over Internet Protocol (VoIP).

m. Provide a display for attorneys to ~~display~~ present evidence and for judges to ~~display~~ present jury instructions. All displays shall be placed so that the bottom of the image is a minimum of 48″ above the finished floor. They may be either video projectors (approx. ~~–~~6,000–8,~~000~~ 000 lumens) or flat panel displays (98″ or larger). Display equipment shall have a minimum resolution of either 1,920 ~~×~~ x 1,080 or 1,920 x~~×~~ 1,200 pixels. The projector shall be on a fixed mount on the courtroom ceiling with a lens selected to fill the projection screen. The screen shall be located opposite the jury. Provide appropriate power and data behind the screen for future installation of a flat panel display.

n. If a projector is used, provide an electrically operated projection screen with a contact closure interface, concealed in the ceiling when not in use, sized so that the height is one-sixth the distance to the back row of the jury. Match the aspect ratio to the projector.

o. Provide a multiformat routing switcher or network switch for source selection. In either case, the clerk or judge shall control access to the display.

p. Provide an additional display for the judge and/or clerk, if sightlines prevent the judge and/or clerk from seeing the display directly. It can be connected to a dedicated monitor

or a spare ~~HDMI (Hh~~igh-~~Definition~~ definition ~~Multimedia~~ multimedia ~~Interface~~interface (HDMI) or ~~DVI (D~~digital ~~Visual~~visual ~~Interface~~interface (DVI) ~~(~~not DisplayPort~~)~~ input on a computer monitor supplied by the court.

q. Provide access to the display from a computer on each counsel table and at the judge's and clerk's location. At the discretion of the court, provide access at the DEPS location.

r. Provide a table box at each attorney's table to accommodate the computer inputs, along with power and data. Cutouts in the millwork shall be coordinated with the furniture provider.

s. Provide only infrastructure to support a real-time transcription system between the court reporter and the judge, compatible with the systems used by the court.

t. Provide document cameras for deployment in each courtroom. They may be mounted on carts~~,~~ for mobility.

u. Provide an AV control system with one 7″ desk-mounted wired touch panel (Power over Ethernet (PoE)) that can be connected via a network cable at either the judge's, clerk's, or (optionally) bailiff's location.

v. Provide a button panel with a minimum of two buttons, permanently mounted at the judge's bench, to control, at a minimum, the sidebar function and audio/video mute.

w. Provide infrastructure for two gallery monitors~~,~~ consisting of power and data connections plus empty conduits for future signal connections. If not used on day one, wall boxes shall be behind the wall coverings, if possible.

3. High-Profile Courtroom

a. Provide all the capabilities of ~~the~~ a typical courtroom.

b. Provide two flat ~~-~~panel gallery monitors on articulated mounts.

c. Provide the capability for the judge to face forward during a videoconference rather than looking sideways at the projection screen, allowing the camera at the rear of the courtroom to pick up a full-face view of the judge~~,~~ rather than a profile. It can be connected to a dedicated monitor or a spare HDMI or DVI (not DisplayPort) input on a computer monitor supplied by the court.

d. Provide an installed videoconference system based on the design criteria of ~~section~~ section 18.D.6.

e. At the discretion of the court, provide audio and video feeds from the cameras or multimedia sources~~,~~ plus a mix of the audio from within the courtroom to an alternative location within the courthouse for overflow capabilities. This signal shall use the Internet Protocol network for data transport. This feed must be separately enabled both in the courtroom and at the alternative location for security reasons.

f. Provide a wall plate in the gallery on the same wall as ~~is~~ the jury area for TV or radio stations feeding balanced analog audio (ξ 2) and 3G~~-~~ ~~SDI (~~serial digital interface (SDI) video (ξ 2) to a weatherproof media pedestal external to the building. Also include a balanced analog feed from the courtroom audio system and one 20-amp power circuit.

4. Courtrooms With Arraignment Dock

a. Provide all capabilities of a typical or high-profile courtroom but without any accommodation for a jury.

b. If the dock has floor-to-ceiling windows, provide a wall-mounted (not ceiling-mounted) tamper-resistant microphone~~,~~ adjacent to or attached to the window overlooking the

DIVISION TWO: TECHNICAL CRITERIA
11 Architectural Criteria
12 Structural Criteria
13 Mechanical Criteria
14 Building Management System Criteria
15 Electrical Criteria
16 Lighting Criteria
17 Network and Communication Systems
18 AUDIOVISUAL SYSTEMS
18.A Audiovisual Design
18.B Audiovisual Criteria
18.C Technical Infrastructure
18.D Audiovisual Systems Descriptions
18.E Description of Courthouse Spaces
19 Acoustical Criteria
20 Fire Protection Criteria

Commented [LD23]: This symbol didn't translate correctly, and I have no idea what it is. +/-?

Commented [DP23R2]: It is an X. It looks fine in the PDF file.

Commented [RR24]: With the use of video conferencing audio will need to be transmittable to video conference system.

Commented [DP24R2]: Incorporated.

courtroom. If the dock does not have a full glass wall, no microphone may be needed, unless the voices of those in custody need to be recorded. However, if video conferencing is included, audio shall be transmittable to video conference system.

c. Provide ceiling loudspeakers with appropriate security hardware within the dock area.

d. Provide touch panel controls of the speakers and microphones in the dock area.

e. Discuss with the court in detail the exact expected use of the dock, and provide equipment to meet those needs.

f. In ~~Camera~~ camera views of arraignments, ~~courtroom shall~~ include the judge, attorney's tables, and arraignment dock. Video feed of the dock shall input into videoconferencing system.

Commented [RR25]: Camera views of Arraignments Courtroom: Judge, Attorney tables, Arraignment Dock.

Commented [DP25R2]: Incorporated.

5. Jury Deliberation Rooms

On a per ~~-~~project basis, the court may choose to use these spaces as conference or meeting rooms, and if they do, the minimum infrastructure requirements for these types of spaces shall also be included.

a. Provide a 75″ flat panel for displaying evidence.
b. Provide a floor box under the table for laptop inputs and a line-level output for the assistive listening system. This input will be used for connecting a laptop for displaying evidence saved electronically or for connecting a portable document camera.
c. Provide a table box to accommodate the computer input, along with power, data, and audio output to feed the assistive listening system. Cutouts in the millwork shall be provided by the furniture ~~providers~~vendors.
d. Provide a wall-mounted button panel for control of the AV system located at the video display.
e. Provide a portable, ADA-compliant, encrypted RF assistive listening system with a microphone for voice pickup and input for multimedia audio at the table surface.

6. Jury Assembly Rooms

The jury assembly area consists of a single public space or multiple spaces that can be combined or separated to accommodate various functions and group sizes. The audiovisual systems in these spaces shall provide for speech reinforcement, paging, and the presentation of audiovisual materials to a group or groups of potential jurors. The public address system for emergency communication throughout the courthouse shall also serve the jury assembly areas. These areas may also be used by the court as multipurpose spaces for meetings, training, or multimedia presentations or for public events.

a. Provide a sound system with overhead loudspeakers for voice amplification, television viewing, multimedia presentations, and juror orientation.

~~a.~~b. Provide a 1080p resolution video projector ~~(~~ (approx. 5,000–8,000 lumens) on a fixed mount with a lens selected to fill the projection and/or television screens.

~~b.~~c. Provide an electrically operated projection screen, concealed in the ceiling when not in use, sized as large as possible, taking into consideration ceiling height and the requirement that the bottom of the image shall be 48″ above the floor. Match the aspect ratio to the projector.

~~c.~~d. Provide a wireless handheld or clip-on microphone for ad hoc presentations.

~~d.~~c. Provide a wired push-to-talk microphone for announcements.

~~e.~~f. Provide a media playback connection for juror orientation.

Commented [DP26]: Modified by CFAC-WG.

~~f.~~g. Provide a television tuner to entertain prospective jurors while they wait to be called.

Depending on the data source of TV and desires of the individual court, this tuner may be owner furnished.

~~g.~~h. Provide an audio-only miniplug input for a background music source.

~~h.~~i. Provide a single-channel, ADA-compliant assistive listening system used to meet ADA requirements.

~~i.~~j. Provide a computer input at the staff counter.

~~j.~~k. Provide a multiformat routing switcher or network switch for source selection.

~~k.~~*l.* At the discretion of the court, provide an input for the audio and video feed from the high-profile courtroom. This feed must be enabled separately in both the courtroom and the jury assembly room.

~~l.~~m. At the discretion of the court, provide a floor box for a lectern with laptop inputs, along with a wired microphone input.

~~m.~~n. Provide an AV control system with one 7″ wired touch panel (PoE) that can be connected via a network cable at the staff counter to control all aspects of the audiovisual system.

~~n.~~o. At the discretion of the court, install a videoconferencing system.

7. Training Room

a. Provide a sound reinforcement system with overhead loudspeakers for voice amplification and multimedia presentations.

b. Provide one or more large, flat panel displays, appropriately sized for the room.

c. Provide a single-channel, ADA/CBC-compliant, RF or infrared assistive listening system for use to meet ~~these~~ ADA requirements.

d. Provide a floor box for a lectern or desk with laptop input.

e. At the discretion of the court, provide a wireless handheld or clip-on microphone system.

f. Provide a multiformat routing switcher or network switch for source selection. If feasible, combine this device with the audiovisual control system.

g. Provide one 7″ wall-mounted wired touch panel (PoE) to control all aspects of the audiovisual system.

h. At the discretion of the court, install a videoconferencing system.

8. Judicial Conference Room

a. Provide one or more large, flat panel wall-mounted displays appropriately sized to the room, with separate side-mounted loudspeakers.

b. Provide a portable or fixed ADA/CBC-compliant, encrypted RF assistive listening system with a microphone for voice pickup and input for multimedia audio at the desk surface.

c. Provide a floor box under the table with laptop inputs and a line-level output for the assistive listening system.

d. Provide a table box to accommodate the computer input, along with power, data, and audio output to feed the assistive listening system. Cutouts in the millwork shall be provided by the furniture ~~provider~~vendor.

DIVISION TWO: TECHNICAL CRITERIA

11 Architectural Criteria
12 Structural Criteria
13 Mechanical Criteria
14 Building Management System Criteria
15 Electrical Criteria
16 Lighting Criteria
17 Network and Communication Systems
18 AUDIOVISUAL SYSTEMS
18.A Audiovisual Design
18.B Audiovisual Criteria
18.C Technical Infrastructure
18.D Audiovisual Systems Descriptions
19 Acoustical Criteria
20 Fire Protection Criteria

e. Provide recording capabilities through the in-room AV system.

f. Provide one 7″ desk-mounted wired touch panel (PoE) to control all aspects of the audiovisual system.

g. Provide a videoconferencing system with acoustic echo canceling on every input using microphones installed in the table and ceiling loudspeakers. Depending on court usage, provide a system that operates with multiple platforms, such as Zoom and Teams..

9. Executive Conference Room

a. Provide a sound reinforcement system with overhead loudspeakers for voice amplification (depending on the size of the room) and multimedia presentations.

b. Provide one or more large, flat panel wall-mounted displays with separate side-mounted loudspeakers, soundbar, or integrated ceiling speakers.

c. Provide a portable or fixed ADA/CBC-compliant, encrypted RF assistive listening system with a microphone for voice pickup and input for multimedia audio at the desk surface.

d. Provide a table box to accommodate input from a laptop, along with power and data. Cutouts in the millwork shall be provided by furniture ~~providers~~vendors.

e. Provide a multiformat routing switcher or network switch for source selection and image processing. If feasible, combine this device with the audiovisual control system.

f. Provide one 7″ desk-mounted wired touch panel (PoE) to control all aspects of the audiovisual system.

g. Install a videoconferencing system with one or more cameras integrated into the room AV system.

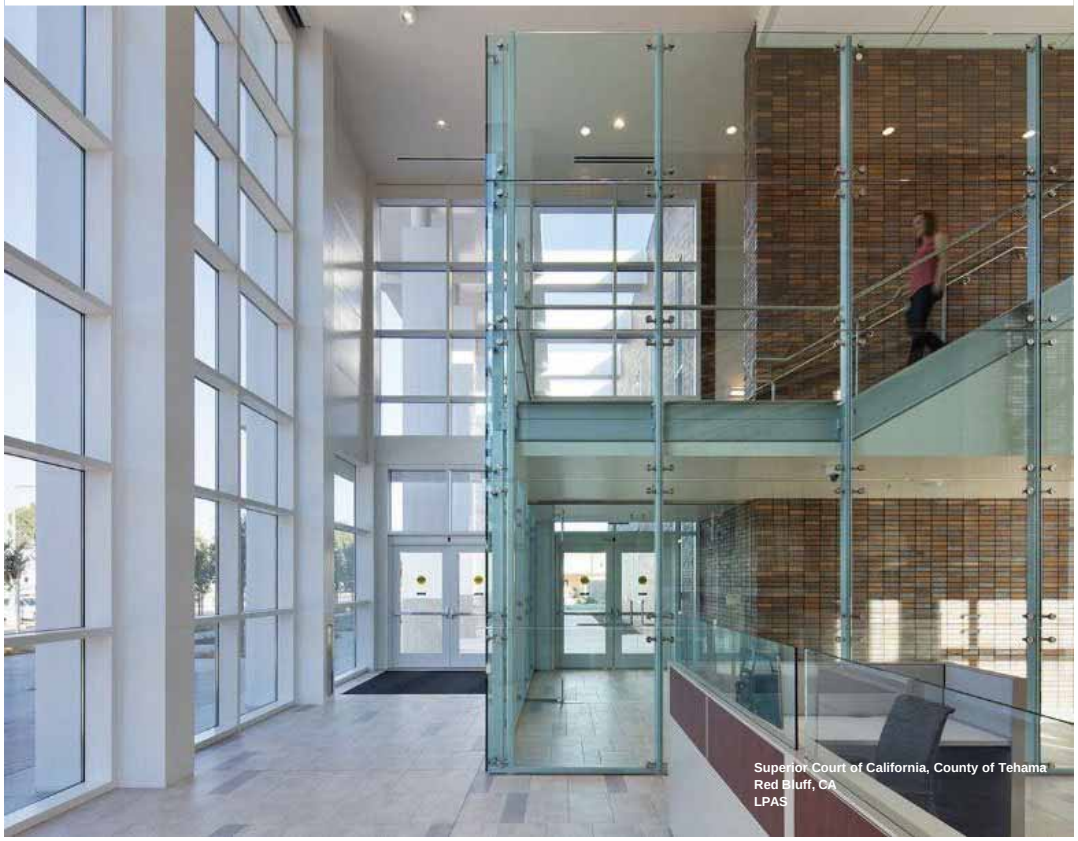
18.F AUDIOVISUAL SYSTEM~~S~~ COMMISSIONING

Specifications shall include commissioning services to ensure that the building delivered at the end of construction has fully operational audiovisual systems, with all devices and hardware fully integrated into user controls as reflected in tool 4, Graphical User Interface Template. Basic services shall include staff training for systems operation and troubleshooting. Commissioning shall comply with AVIXA D402.02:2013 (R2024).

DIVISION TWO: TECHNICAL CRITERIA

19 ACOUSTICAL CRITERIA

SECTION	TOPIC	PAGE
19.A	Objectives	19.2
19.B	Acoustical Criteria	19.2
19.C	Best Practices	19.8



Superior Court of California, County of Tehama
Red Bluff, CA
LPAS

Factors to be considered in the acoustical design of the court facility include background noise levels, sound isolation, and room finishes. Courtrooms shall be quiet~~,~~ and ~~be~~ free of detectable echoes~~,~~ and naturally enhance voice levels with strategic placement of sound-reflecting surfaces.

19.A OBJECTIVES

The goal of this chapter is to address acoustical criteria and best practices for room acoustics (reverberation and echo control)~~,~~ environmental noise reduction~~,~~ sound isolation~~,~~ speech privacy~~,~~ and noise and vibration control of mechanical, electrical, plumbing, and vertical transportation equipment and systems. Each courtroom, except for very large courtrooms, shall be designed for effective spoken communication with minimum sound reinforcement. In the standard-sized trial courtroom, all participants should be able to hear and be understood at normal speech volumes.

19.B ACOUSTICAL CRITERIA

1. Background Noise Levels

The acoustical design goal for heating, ventilation, and air-conditioning (HVAC) systems is the achievement of a level of background noise that is unobtrusive and low enough that it does not interfere with the function of the space being served. Background noise sh~~ould~~all exhibit no tonal characteristics or noticeable time-varying levels resulting from aerodynamic instability or turbulence. To achieve these goals, the Noise Criteria (NC) family of curves is used as a design tool. These curves define the recommended octave band limits of an acceptable background noise spectrum for a particular space use.

The "Noise and Vibration Control" chapter of the American Society of Heating, Refrigerating and Air-Conditioning Engineers' *ASHRAE Handbook—HVAC Applications* lists acceptable NC ratings for various spaces. Refer to table 19.1 for the recommended HVAC NC ratings for select spaces within the court facility. Using Room Criteria and reverberation time for setting design goals is the preferred method for courtrooms, conference rooms, and other high-occupancy spaces. Office areas and other lower-occupancy spaces may be designed by specifying the noise reduction coefficient (NRC) rating of finishes.

Table 19.1 Background Noise Criteria

NOISE CRITERIA	SPACE TYPE—ROOM(S)
NC 30	Courtrooms
	Conference rRooms
	Meeting rRooms
	Training Spacesspaces
	Interview Roomsrooms
NC 35	Judicial cChambers
	Enclosed Officesoffices
	Jury Deliberation deliberation Roomsrooms
	Clerk's Officeoffice
	Lactation Roomsrooms
NC 40	Reception Areasareas
	Lobbies
	Open Office office Areasareas
	Corridors
	Dining Areasareas
NC 50	Warehouses
	Parking Garagesgarages

2. Room Acoustics

Room acoustics, including reverberation and echo control, define~~s~~ the quality of sound within a space. Room acoustics ~~is~~ are affected by room size, shape, proportions, geometry, and finishes. The standard metric for determining how "live" or "dead" a room acts is reverberation time (RT60). Hard surfaces—such as untreated gypsum board, concrete, glass, and wood paneling—will promote sound reflections and reverberation in a space. Soft-surfaced materials—such as acoustical tile, carpet, and fabric-wrapped fiberglass panels—~~—~~ will result in less reverberation.

Reverberation is the effect of sound reflecting and steadily decaying in a room. Conversely, echoes are distinct, late-arriving reflections from discrete wall surfaces. Absorptive materials, as well as proper room shaping or the addition of

Commented [SN1]: General comment for entirety of this chapter: Confirming that all of the locations "should" or "may" are used are not mandatory performance requirements (because there are other areas where "shall" are used).

Commented [DP1R2]: Gensler: change all instances of "should" to "shall". The word "may" depends on the context, so leave that alone.

diffusive panels, also help control any unwanted echoes.

Flutter echo is a resonant echo that occurs when sound reflects back and forth between two parallel~~,~~ reflective surfaces.

Refer to table 19.2 for room acoustics considerations for select court facility spaces.

Table 19.2 Room Acoustics Requirements

SPACE TYPE	ROOM ACOUSTICS CONSIDERATIONS
Courtrooms	Reverberation time criteria should be between 0.6 and 1.0 second~~s~~.
	The majority of the ceiling surface should be ~~sound~~ sound-absorptive to help meet the reverberation time criteria.
	The wall behind the judge's bench, witness station, and clerk's workstation should be ~~hard~~ hard-surfaced to provide good projection of voice to the jury.
	The walls and ceiling at the rear of the courtroom (around the spectator seating area) should be finished with an efficient sound-absorptive material to prevent sound from reflecting back to the well and the bench. This treatment is especially important for the back wall~~,~~ to alleviate the reflection of sound between the judge's bench and the far end of the courtroom.
	A hard-surfaced ceiling over the judge's bench, slightly inclined outward, will have the effect of projecting a voice into the room without creating a flutter echo with the bench counter.
	The courtroom shall not be a long or narrow rectangle finished totally with sound-reflective materials. Such conditions can cause excessive flutter echo. Reducing the room length and using appropriately selected absorptive finishes can alleviate potential issues.
Conference ~~Rooms~~rooms, ~~Training~~ training ~~Spaces~~spaces	Reverberation time criteria should be between 0.6 and 1.0 second~~s~~.
	The majority of the ceiling surface should be ~~sound~~ sound-absorptive to help meet the reverberation time criteria.
	A minimum of two perpendicular walls should feature sound-absorptive material to reduce overall reverberation and flutter echo.
	Carpet and upholstered furniture should be considered for conference and training rooms.
Enclosed ~~Offices~~offices, ~~Judicial~~ judicial ~~Chambers~~chambers, ~~Jury~~ jury ~~Deliberation~~ deliberation ~~Rooms~~rooms, ~~Clerk's~~ clerk's ~~Office~~office	The ceilings of these spaces should be a sound-absorptive material with a minimum noise reduction coefficient of 0.70.
Interview ~~Rooms~~rooms	The ceilings of the attorney side of interview rooms should be a sound-absorptive material with a minimum NRC of 0.70, and floors should be carpeted. The ceilings of the in-custody side of interview rooms should be detention-grade perforated metal and backed with a 1″ thick sound-absorbing material with a minimum NRC of 0.70.
Open ~~Office~~ office ~~Areas~~areas	The ceilings of open office spaces should be a sound-absorptive material with a minimum NRC of 0.85. Reverberation time criterion should be less than 1.5 seconds. ~~Reverberation time criterion should be less than 1.5 seconds.~~
Lobbies	If lobbies will function as more than just circulation and security checkpoints (for receptions, speeches, gatherings, etc.), the reverberation

DIVISION TWO: TECHNICAL CRITERIA
11 Architectural Criteria
12 Structural Criteria
13 Mechanical Criteria
14 Building Management System Criteria
15 Electrical Criteria
16 Lighting Criteria
17 Network and Communication Systems
18 Audiovisual Systems
19 ACOUSTICAL CRITERIA
19.C Best Practices
20 Fire Protection Criteria

NIC: A field-measured noise reduction from a building design element

STC: Sound isolation performance as measured in a controlled laboratory

STC and NIC are one-number rating systems that allow for an easy comparison of the acoustical performance between different constructions. The higher the STC or NIC rating of an assembly, the less sound is transmitted through it.

3. Sound Isolation and Speech Privacy

Sound isolation is the capacity of a structure to prevent sound from being transmitted from one space to another. Sound isolation is quantified by two numerical ratings, noise isolation class (NIC) and sound transmission class (STC).

Refer to table 19.3 for sound-isolating performance requirements for court facility spaces. Where more than one STC rating can be applied to a specific adjacency, the higher STC rating shall be used for the assembly. Refer to the acoustic guidelines established by the Office of Noise Control in the California Department of Health Services and other similar requirements for rated assembly types.

Speech privacy within a space depends on the sound insulation performance of its partitions and doors, the background sound level, the loudness of speech, and the room finish treatment. *Confidential speech privacy* is speech that is detectable but with individual words that are indiscernible.

To achieve a normal speech privacy level, the sum of both numbers shall equal 70 or more. *Normal speech privacy* is when a few words may be understandable, but complete sentences cannot be comprehended.

For normal to raised speech levels, confidential speech privacy should be achieved when the STC rating of the construction separating two spaces plus the background NC level is greater than 80. A raised voice might result during lively conversation or the use of a speakerphone. For example, if the room adjoining the space under consideration has a background noise level of NC 30, the intervening partition must have an STC rating of 50 to achieve confidential speech privacy. Unless a reliable source of background noise, such as a sound-masking system, is provided in the adjoining space, an STC 50 construction assembly is generally required to achieve greater levels of speech privacy.

A higher STC rating or higher background noise levels would be required to achieve confidential privacy for raised or loud voice levels. The limit of the speech range would be a loud voice, which occurs when the speaker is exerting maximum speech effort or when the speaker is amplified electronically.

Details and specifications shall be provided by the design firm to appropriately construct sound-rated partitions in the field. Seal the perimeter of sound-rated walls, penetrating elements, outlets, junction boxes, and low-voltage receptacles to maintain sound isolation.

4. Doors

Doors to noise-sensitive areas should have sufficient sound transmission loss performance so that the partition sound isolation is not unduly compromised. Doors in partitions of noise-sensitive rooms represent the acoustic weak link in the system. Refer to table 19.4 for door requirements for select spaces within the court facility. Sound isolation requirements for doors to mechanical rooms should be reviewed on a case-by-case basis.

5. Interview Room Windows

An unamplified passive solution for communication through the window to both sides of an interview room shall be provided; an amplification system shall be avoided. The glazed opening between the attorney and in-custody interview rooms must provide a sufficient free (open) area to support unamplified conversation between the two rooms. (refer to See tool 5, In- Custody Interview Room Guidelines).

Table 19.3 Sound Isolation Requirements

STC OF PARTITION*	SPACE TYPE AND ADJACENCY
STC 65	Courtroom to holding cell
	Electrical rooms containing transformers to NC 30 spaces†
	Elevator shafts to NC 30 spaces†
	Hydraulic elevator equipment room to NC 30 spaces†
	Mechanical rooms to NC 30 spaces†
STC 55	Large or special proceedings courtrooms to adjoining areas
	Jury deliberation room to adjoining areas
	Large conference rooms and training rooms to adjoining areas
	Judicial conference rooms to adjoining areas
	Toilet rooms to adjoining areas—with plumbing†
	Computer and server rooms containing fans and cooling equipment to adjoining areas†
STC 50	Courtrooms to adjoining areas
	Judicial chambers to adjoining areas
	Small conference rooms to adjoining areas
	Family law mediator office to adjoining areas
	Private offices requiring confidential speech privacy
	Toilet room to adjoining areas—no plumbing
	Telecommunications and audiovisual rooms with cooling equipment to adjoining areas
	Attorney interview rooms to adjoining areas (unless otherwise noted)
STC 45	Electrical rooms with no transformers to adjoining areas
	Workroom to adjoining areas
	Jury assembly area to adjoining areas
	Orientation room to adjoining areas
	Private offices requiring normal speech privacy
	Office equipment rooms to adjoining areas
	Waiting rooms to adjoining areas
	Lactation rooms—partition to enclosed space
	Telecommunications and AV rooms with minimal equipment to adjoining areas
	Attorney interview room to public corridor or vestibule
STC 40	General office space to general office space
	In-custody interview rooms to adjacent spaces
STC 35	Lactation rooms—partition to corridor

* Partitions with doors need only be 10 points greater than the STC rating of the door.

† The partitions between shared restrooms and between restrooms or mechanical equipment rooms and occupied areas, especially where the partition contains piping, should feature two independent stud rows with a nominal 1″ air space in between. The studs should not be bridged by any bracing. The two separate stud rows should provide enough room to prevent the piping contained within from directly contacting any part of the partition. Where the restroom or mechanical equipment room is adjacent to occupied space, both stud cavities should be filled with batt insulation, and a minimum of two layers of 5/8″ gypsum board should be installed on the occupied side of the partition.

STC = sound transmission class.

DIVISION TWO: TECHNICAL CRITERIA

11 Architectural Criteria
12 Structural Criteria
13 Mechanical Criteria
14 Building Management System Criteria
15 Electrical Criteria
16 Lighting Criteria
17 Network and Communication Systems
18 Audiovisual Systems
19 ACOUSTICAL CRITERIA
19.A Objectives
19.C Best Practices
20 Fire Protection Criteria

AHUs = air-handling units

ANSI = American National Standards Institute

dB or dBA = decibel

IIC = impact insulation class

NEMA = National Electrical Manufacturers Association

OITC = outdoor-indoor transmission class

VAV = variable air volume

Table 19.4 Door Requirements

SPACE TYPE	DOOR REQUIREMENTS
Courtroom to cCourtroom	Interconnecting doors are not recommended; use vestibules, if possible. If not possible, use only a laboratory-rated STC 53 door (or two fully gasketed doors in tandem).
Courtroom to Jury jury Deliberation deliberation Roomroom	
Jury Deliberation deliberation Roomroom	Laboratory-rated STC 43 (an electronic sound-masking system) is recommended in the corridor outside all nonequipment rooms.
Judge's Chamberschambers	
Judicial Conference conference Roomroom	
Attorney Conference conference and Interview interview Room room (to public corridor)	
Computer and Server server Rooms rooms Containing containing Fans fans and Cooling cooling Equipment equipment (to occupied areas)	
Conference Rooms rooms and Training training Roomsrooms	A minimum 1-3/4" solid-core wood door or hollow metal steel door with a full set of acoustical seals—including perimeter gasketing, an automatic door bottom, and a removable center post or overlapping astragal between double doors—is recommended.
Telecommunications and AV Roomsrooms	
Courtroom Public public Vestibule vestibule (both door sets)	
Courtroom and Attorney attorney Interview interview Room room to Secure secure Vestibulevestibule/Hallwayhallway	
Court Reporters' reporters' Work work Areaarea	
Small Electrical electrical Rooms rooms (to occupied areas)	
Mediation Roomsrooms	
Investigator's Officeoffice	
Private Offices offices Requiring requiring Speech speech Privacyprivacy	
In-Custody custody Interview interview Roomsrooms	
Lactation Roomsrooms	

AV = audiovisual; STC = sound transmission class.

6. Operable Partitions

The recommendations below should be considered if operable partitions will be included within the court facility:

a. The operable partition should be chosen with minimum ratings of STC 50 and NIC 42.

b. If the operable partition is separating a conference room, training room, or jury assembly space, an operable partition with a sound-absorptive finish with a minimum rating of NRC 0.65 would be beneficial.

c. Perimeter conditions must be properly detailed to reduce the effect of flanking and to maintain the transmission loss performance of the operable partition. Following are important conditions to consider:

- ~~Provide a~~An overhead barrier above the ceiling shall~~ould~~ be provided. The gypsum board barrier should be constructed without gaps and sealed airtight.
- Sidewall construction should be able to ~~accept and~~ withstand the pressure of the end partition panel. The sidewall finish must meet the end panel of the operable partition continuously. There should be no voids or reveals at baseboards, ceilings, ~~and~~ or the like.
- The deployed horizontal operable partition should span ~~entirely across~~ the storage room through the closet to the farthest sidewalls. The panels should not end at the storage room doors. The design should be carefully coordinated with the operable partition manufacturer.

7. Impact Insulation

Impact noise, or footfall noise, is created when an object strikes a floor/ceiling assembly or when a person walks across a floor. The noise from the impact is transmitted through the assembly and into the space below. The ability of floor and ceiling construction to insulate impact sounds can be determined by the IIC rating. As with the STC rating, the higher the IIC value of the assembly, the better the construction is at reducing impact noises.

a. Typical floor/ceiling assemblies between occupied spaces within the court facility should achieve a minimum IIC rating of 50 to help reduce footfall noise between vertically adjacent areas.

b. Rooms with carpet on a concrete slab should meet a minimum IIC 50 rating.

c. Wood-framed construction presents special impact-insulation problems and should receive careful attention.

d. Spaces with hard-surfaced flooring materials such as ceramic tile or wood most likely will not meet IIC 50. For all spaces with hard-surfaced floor materials, consider installing a resilient underlayment material within the floor/ceiling assembly to help meet the minimum IIC rating requirement.

8. Environmental Criteria

To identify noise levels in decibels (dB~~,~~ or dBA) at a potential site under consideration, conduct an environmental noise study that tests for average and single-event noise. Perform this study for all potential project sites, especially near roadways, highways, trains, busy urban areas, and flight paths. The duration of the noise study should range from one to four days, depending on the conditions at the site. The primary hours of measurement should coincide with the typical hours of courtroom use.

DIVISION TWO: TECHNICAL CRITERIA

11 Architectural Criteria
12 Structural Criteria
13 Mechanical Criteria
14 Building Management System Criteria
15 Electrical Criteria
16 Lighting Criteria
17 Network and Communication Systems
18 Audiovisual Systems
19 ACOUSTICAL CRITERIA
19.A Objectives
19.C Best Practices
20 Fire Protection Criteria

Based on the results of the environmental noise study, calculate minimum exterior façade outdoor-indoor transmission class (OITC) and STC ratings required to achieve an interior maximum single-event noise level of 50 dBA. For intrusive noise from exterior sources, such as traffic, calculation of the interior maximum single-event noise level using L10 (the measured noise level that is exceeded for 10 percent of the measurement period) is recommended. The L10 is known as the *intrusive noise level*, ~~and is~~ the level that may be noticed when engaging in activities requiring lesser degrees of concentration.

Commented [LD2]: Word missing? "for"?

19.C BEST PRACTICES

The following general recommendations address noise reduction from mechanical, electrical, plumbing, and vertical transportation systems and equipment; sound isolation and speech privacy; and room acoustics.

1. Mechanical, Electrical, Plumbing, and Vertical Transportation Systems and Equipment Noise Control

a. Locating air-handling units (AHUs) and other noisy equipment above courtrooms or other noise-sensitive spaces may require expensive and complicated mitigation measures~~,~~ such as sound-attenuating ceilings, thickened slabs, or floating floors.

b. ~~Do not use r~~Rooftop down-discharge AHUs ~~should be avoided, if possible~~shall not be used. Instead, use side-discharge units, maximizing the length of ductwork between the unit and the roof penetration point. Noise mitigation of down-discharge units may be prohibitively complicated and expensive.

c. Provisioning space for sound attenuators is advisable early in the HVAC system design. Typical attenuators would be 5′ in length and should be planned for the intake and discharge side of each main air-moving system. Ductwork before and following each attenuator should be straight and at least two duct diameters in length.

d. ~~Do not locate v~~Variable air volume (VAV) units shall~~ould~~ not be located above courtrooms, chambers, conference rooms, or other rooms with a Noise Criteria level of NC 35 or less. Instead, locate VAV boxes in corridors or unoccupied spaces. If not possible, a gypsum board ceiling or an enclosure around the VAV box may be required.

e. Locating fan-powered VAV boxes above spaces with a noise criterion of NC 45 or less may require expensive and complicated sound-attenuating ceilings.

f. ~~Do not exceed 1-1/4″ of s~~Static pressure at VAV box inlets shall~~ould~~ not exceed 1-1/4″.

g. ~~Select a~~Air diffusers shall be at least five points below the NC rating of the room they serve.

h. ~~Locate v~~Volume dampers shall be located at least 10′ upstream from air diffusers in rooms with an NC rating of 35 or less. Do not use opposed-blade dampers in the face of outlet devices.

i. ~~Provide a~~A minimum 3′ of insulated-type flexible duct shall be provided upstream of all supply diffusers and return grilles. The flexible duct should be free of kinks or deformities.

j. Maximum duct velocities shall be designed to meet the requirements listed in the "Noise and Vibration Control" chapter of *ASHRAE Handbook—HVAC Applications*.

k. ~~Vibration-isolate a~~All mechanical and plumbing equipment shall be isolated from vibration per the requirements listed in the "Noise and Vibration Control" chapter of *ASHRAE Handbook—HVAC Applications*.

l. All mechanical water, domestic water, and steam piping shall be resiliently supported as described in the "Noise and Vibration Control" chapter of *ASHRAE Handbook—HVAC Applications*.

m. Independent seismic restraints are preferred to vibration isolators with integral seismic restraints.

n. Ductwork attached to the fan discharge is to be connected with a flexible connection.

o. Pipe and conduit penetrations through full-height partitions and floors shall be slightly oversized and sealed airtight with resilient sealant. A neoprene pad should be installed between all pipe clamps and the structure. There shall be no direct contact between the penetrating element and the structure.

p. Non–fire–rated ducts penetrating full-height partitions shall have a clear distance of at least 1/2″ around the perimeter. The perimeter void must be packed with glass-fiber batts at both ends and caulked airtight with a nonshrinking, nonhardening, flexible acoustical sealant and a backer rod, if required.

q. All water pipes should be sized for a maximum velocity of 4 feet per second (fps) for pipe 2″ and smaller and 10 fps for larger pipe sizes.

r. To vibration-isolate transformers, inverters, rectifiers, and an uninterruptible power supply, use flexible conduit and resilient neoprene mounts with a minimum static deflection of 1/4″ shall be used.

s. Avoid locating tTransformer rooms shall not be located near sensitive locations. If not possible, consider double-stud partition construction.

t. Penetrations of cable trays through full-height partitions shall be packed tightly with heavy-density putty once the cables are pulled.

u. Emergency generators will often require acoustical provisions such as exhaust mufflers, spring vibration isolators. and low-pressure drop attenuators at the discharge and intake louvers. Locate the emergency generator within the building, away from any noise-sensitive areas, when possible.

v. Provide tTransformers with sound levels that do not exceed the following maximums in accordance with National Electrical Manufacturers Association (NEMA) and American National Standards Institute (ANSI) standards shall be provided. The manufacturer is to verify that the actual sound levels comply by conducting sound tests before shipping to the project site.

   - 25–50 kilovolt-amps (kVA): 45 dB
   - 51–150 kVA: 50 dB
   - 151–300 kVA: 55 dB
   - 301–500 kVA: 60 dB

w. Resilient piping attachments are recommended to isolate the plumbing piping and fixtures from the structure when the plumbing runs adjacent to occupied noise-sensitive areas. There shall be no direct contact of plumbing piping to studs or the back of drywall.

x. Limit pPressure at fixtures shall be limited to 70 pounds per square inch or less to minimize generation.

y. Pipes and conduits should not pass through sensitive spaces to service other areas.

z. Toilet rooms should be located away from noise-sensitive spaces. Do not put plumbing in walls next to or common with these spaces.

aa. Holding cell toilet fixtures should not be installed on partitions adjacent to occupied noise-sensitive spaces.

DIVISION TWO: TECHNICAL CRITERIA
11 Architectural Criteria
12 Structural Criteria
13 Mechanical Criteria
14 Building Management System Criteria
15 Electrical Criteria
16 Lighting Criteria
17 Network and Communication Systems
18 Audiovisual Systems
19 ACOUSTICAL CRITERIA
19.A Objectives
20 Fire Protection Criteria

bb. ~~Specify q~~Quiet devices such as quiet-type flush valves and taps with full-ported nozzles and nonsplash aerators are re~~commended~~quired. If toilet rooms are unavoidably next to sensitive spaces, use siphon-jet, tank-type water closets with adjustable-flow valves.

cc. Install~~ing~~ air chambers or shock-absorbing devices ~~to~~ prevent~~s~~ water hammer in lines subject to abrupt shutoff.

dd. All vertical transportation systems—such as hydraulic elevators, traction elevators, or escalators—should incorporate the most effective vibration isolation system available from the elevator manufacturer to limit the amount of structure-borne noise introduced into the building. Elements to consider include~~,~~ but are not limited to~~,~~ pumps, motors, hydraulic lines, equipment rooms, hoists, sheaves, control units, roller wheels, and guide rails.

2. Sound Isolation and Speech Privacy

a. Mass and airspace are effective means to increase the sound isolation performance of partitions. Flanking paths, such as above-ceiling ducts or window mullions at partitions, degrade sound isolation performance.

b. The recommendation is to use the lightest-gauge studs possible. The stud depth and stud spacing of the partition should also be considered. The greater the stud depth and stud spacing, the better the partition should perform acoustically.

c. Higher levels of sound isolation are required for incompatible adjacencies or when acoustically sensitive spaces are located near sound-generating equipment.

d. Sound-rated partitions shall be sealed with nonhardening acoustical sealant around the entire perimeter and at partition intersections.

e. Full-height partitions should be used between adjacent rooms where confidential speech privacy or high levels of sound isolation are required.

f. For partitions requiring normal speech privacy, ~~use~~ a foam seal tape shall~~ould~~ be installed between the top of the partition and the lay-in ceiling, or ~~extend~~ the partition shall~~ould~~ be extended 6″ above the ceiling.

Commented [DP3]: Gensler: change to shall.

g. ~~Consider providing a~~A sound-masking system may be considered~~,~~ where the partition construction does not allow adequate speech privacy ~~and/~~or where the background noise level is expected to be lower than desired.

h. For adjacent spaces along the exterior window façade where speech privacy is required, the joint detail between the partition and the mullion will need to be carefully reviewed and coordinated. It may be necessary to treat the window mullion with a layer of wood or gypsum board on each side of the partition where the partition intersects the exterior window.

i. Doors with cam-lift hinges and thresholds are preferable to standard hinges. Use a threshold with integral gasketing. Doors with drop-bottom gasketing will require periodic maintenance to align seals. Do not use noisy panic hardware.

j. ~~Use h~~Heavy-duty adjustable or dual gaskets, such as compression sound gaskets and smoke gaskets, in tandem, shall be used for sound-isolating doors.

k. ~~Use a~~Acoustically rated doors shall be provided where an exceptional degree of sound isolation is required.

l. ~~Avoid d~~Duct paths that will create crosstalk between spaces shall be avoided.

m. The return-air path for rooms requiring confidential speech privacy should use a fully ducted return system. If not possible, install acoustically lined sound boots with at least one 90-degree turn on the return grilles. Aim the air opening away from the corridor.

n. Recessed junction boxes of all types must be offset at least 16″ on opposing sides of sound-rated construction.

o. Recessed junction boxes 4-gang and smaller are to have the back and sides sealed airtight using sheet caulking. Junction boxes larger than 4-gang require gypsum board backing.

p. Conduit must not bridge independently framed sound-rated partitions or resilient ceilings by rigidly connecting to the framing. Flexible conduit connections are required.

q. ~~Use p~~Plastic tape, fiberglass, or neoprene wrapping shall be used to avoid all metal-to-metal ~~-~~contact.

3. Room Acoustics

Excessive reverberation can adversely affect speech intelligibility. However, a room with too much sound absorption on its wall surfaces can be perceived as acoustically dead. To achieve the proper balance of sound-reflecting versus sound-absorbing surfaces, alternating "hard" and "soft" surfaces can be installed on the sidewalls. The panels should be arranged such that a hard-surfaced panel directly faces a soft panel on the opposing wall.

a. Typical fabric-wrapped sound-absorbing panels shall be at least 1″ thick with a minimum NRC of 0.70 or 2″ thick with a minimum NRC of 0.85 (preferred).

b. Fabric for acoustical panels must be porous. Do not use fabric with acrylic or other impervious backings.

c. Acoustically absorptive materials installed on walls and ceilings should be as uniformly distributed as possible to achieve the target reverberation time as well as good speech intelligibility throughout the space.

d. ~~Avoid c~~Concave or domed surfaces~~, which~~ focus sound energy and ~~are to~~shall be avoided. If these surfaces cannot be avoided, they must be acoustically treated. Convex surfaces, which scatter sound energy, are preferred.

e. An efficient (i.e., NRC of 0.80~~+~~) or greater) sound-absorbing ceiling is the most effective initial treatment to control reverberation and loudness in most occupied rooms.

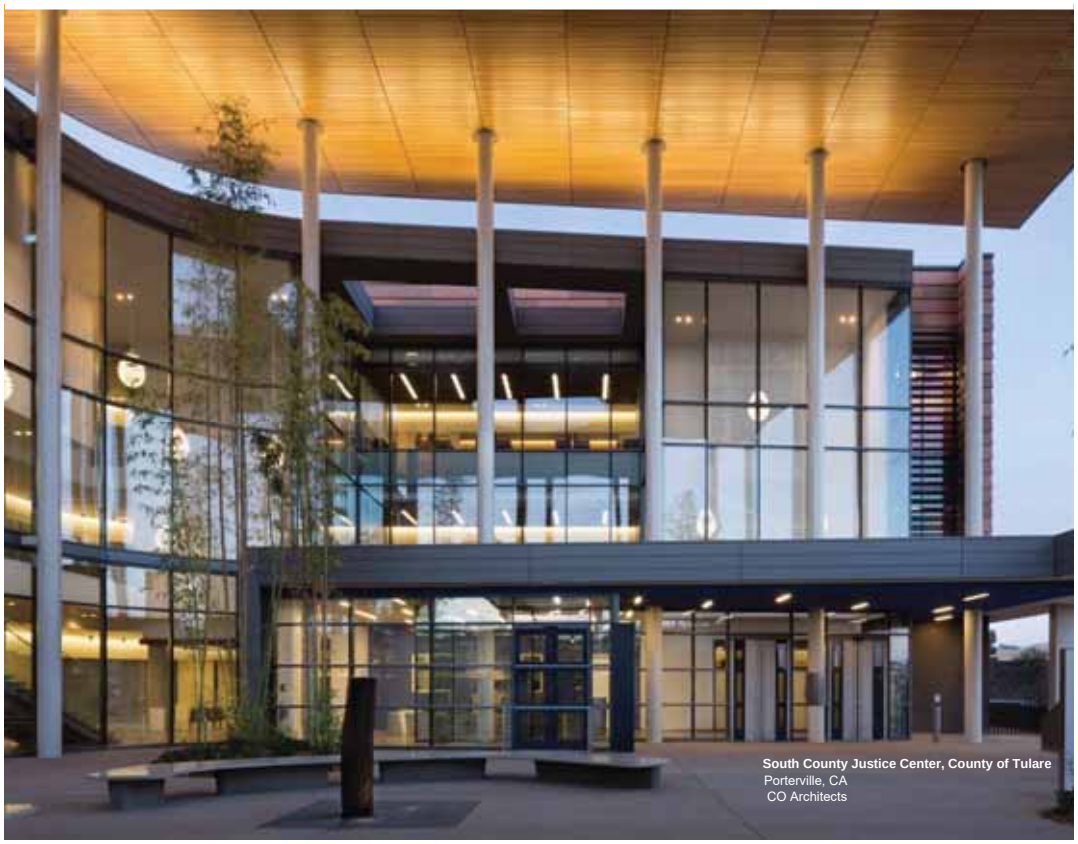
DIVISION TWO: TECHNICAL CRITERIA

11 Architectural Criteria
12 Structural Criteria
13 Mechanical Criteria
14 Building Management System Criteria
15 Electrical Criteria
16 Lighting Criteria
17 Network and Communication Systems
18 Audiovisual Systems
19 ACOUSTICAL CRITERIA
19.A Objectives
19.B Acoustical Criteria
19.C Best Practices
20 Fire Protection Criteria

DIVISION TWO: TECHNICAL CRITERIA

20 FIRE PROTECTION CRITERIA

SECTION	TOPIC	PAGE
20.A	Objectives	20.2
20.B	Fire Protection Criteria	20.2
20.C	Fire Alarm System Objectives	20.8
20.D	Fire Alarm System Criteria	20.8



South County Justice Center, County of Tulare
Porterville, CA
CO Architects

This chapter defines the general and technical criteria for fire protection systems, including recommendations and minimum acceptable performance criteria.

AHJ = authority having jurisdiction

AWWA = American Water Works Association

DPDT = double pole, double throw switch

NFPA = National Fire Protection Association

20.A OBJECTIVES

Fire protection systems protect life and property from fire through standardization of design, installation, and testing requirements for sprinkler systems based on sound engineering principles, applicable state fire code, and field experience. The following criteria set minimum acceptable standards for design and installation of fire protection systems. New technology and alternative arrangements may be applied in accordance with section 104.2.311 of the California Building Code (CBC) upon written Judicial Council approval, but they shall not reduce safety levels prescribed by these criteria or by state fire and building codes.

Designers shall use the following criteria to develop fire protection systems for new buildings, automatic sprinkler system retrofits of existing ~~unsprinklered~~ buildings without sprinkler systems, or interior renovation of existing buildings. When the criteria are applied to interior renovations of existing structures, designers shall provide systems that meet design parameters of either the existing fire protection system or the criteria that satisfy applicable codes.

~~For Fire Alarm systems with audible directions prior to close out provide STIPA testing. Systems voice sound levels as well as annunciation are to be tested and adjusted to meet minimum requirements.~~

20.B FIRE PROTECTION CRITERIA

1. Interior Finishes

Wood required to be ~~fire~~ fire-retardant shall, during ~~the~~ manufacture ~~process~~, be treated with fire-retardant chemicals by a pressure impregnation process that treats the materials throughout (as opposed to on the surface only).

All interior finish materials shall have flame spread index and smoke-developed index as outlined in California Code of Regulations, title 24, based on the occupancy classification of various spaces in the courthouse.

2. Automatic Sprinkler Systems

a. All fire suppression systems shall be designed by a California registered fire protection engineer. Deferred-approval construction shop drawings may be prepared by a Class C-16 fire protection contractor (Cal. Code Regs., tit. 16, § 832.16).

b. For areas subject to freezing, automatic sprinkler systems shall be dry-pipe sprinkler systems.

c. Active fire protection, including an automatic sprinkler system, shall be required during construction, alteration, and demolition operations in accordance with the California Building Code and California Fire Code.

d. Automatic sprinkler system zones shall be established by the installation of accessible floor control assemblies for all floors in multistory buildings, including basements.

e. Automatic sprinkler system designs (wet pipe) shall achieve the minimum design criteria listed in table 20.1.

f. The maximum working pressure for sprinkler systems shall be limited to 175 pounds per square inch (psi).

g. ~~For a~~Automatic sprinkler systems in mechanical rooms~~,~~ shall be installed ~~the sprinkler system~~ per NFPA requirements using corrosion-resistant, standard-response sprinklers.

h. ~~Provide h~~High ~~-~~temperature~~–~~grade sprinkler heads shall be provided in the generator room, ~~the~~ boiler room, and other high-temperature areas.

i. ~~Coordinate t~~The location of each sprinkler head shall be coordinated with the various systems shown in the reflected ceiling plan, including lighting, diffuser, and grille layout. Sprinklers shall be

Commented [JH1]: In the 2025 California Building Code (CBC), Section 104.11 (Alternative materials, design and methods) from the 2022 code has been renumbered to **Section 104.2.3**, still covering the approval process for alternative construction methods, but now with clarifications and specific guidelines from the California Department of General Services (DGS)

Commented [DP1R2]: Incorporated.

Commented [DP2]: Duplicate insertion from later in the chapter.

Table 20.1 Minimum Design Criteria for Automatic Sprinkler System Designs (Wet Pipe)

OCCUPANCY CLASSIFICATION	DESIGN DENSITY (GPM/FT²)	DESIGN AREA (FT²)	HOSE STREAM ALLOWANCE (GPM)*	DURATION OF SUPPLY (MINUTES)
Light Hazard	0.10	1,500	100	30
Ordinary Hazard Group 1	0.15	1,500	250	60
Ordinary Hazard Group 2	0.20	1,500	250	60
Extra Hazard Group 1	0.30	2,500	500	90
Extra Hazard Group 2	0.40	2,500	500	90

* Combined inside/outside.
gpm/ft² = gallons per minute per square foot.

installed in center-of-tile locations for suspended ceilings~~,~~ based on the dimension of the ceiling tiles.

j. ~~Specify s~~Sprinkler head guards ~~to~~ shall be installed on any heads subject to possible mechanical injury. Sprinkler head guards shall be listed by Underwriters Laboratories (UL) ~~listed~~ for the specific sprinkler the guard is protecting.

k. ~~Provide s~~Sprinkler guards shall be installed on sprinklers ~~installed~~ in the following locations:

- Within elevator machine rooms and elevator pits~~.~~;
- Within electrical closets~~.~~;
- Within electrical equipment rooms~~.~~;
- Less than 7′6″ above the floor~~.~~; and
- In main distribution frame (MDF) rooms, unless concealed-type sprinklers are installed.

l. On retrofit projects, ~~replace~~ existing standard-response sprinklers shall be replaced in light-hazard areas, with quick-response sprinklers throughout the areas being retrofitted.

m. ~~Provide a~~A framed, printed sheet (protected by transparent plastic, safety glass, or a plexiglass cover) with brief instructions regarding all necessary aspects of sprinkler controls and emergency procedure shall be provided next to sprinkler main risers.

n. ~~Install t~~The main drain shall be installed at riser and auxiliary drains at all low points in the system on each floor. Install inspector's test drains on the sprinkler system at the main riser assembly. Five or fewer trapped heads may be drained through a plugged fitting. Route the drainpipes for each sprinkler riser, and test connections to the building sanitary sewer system. The sewer system shall be designed to accommodate full flow for the main drain.

o. ~~Coordinate s~~Sprinkler drain locations shall be coordinated with plumbing drawings.

p. ~~Coordinate t~~The location of and access to fire pump rooms and the location of signage, keying, and fire sprinkler shutoff and zone valve access shall be coordinated with local fire authorities. Access and signage shall be obvious. Visibility shall not be blocked by equipment.

3. Fire Water Tanks

a. Onsite water storage, where required, shall be designed and installed per NFPA 22.

b. Fire water tanks shall be installed as part of the building, at the exterior, or in a separate

Commented [DP3]: Changes made to this section based on lessons learned from Redding and after discussions with CFAC-WG.

Commented [SN4]: For the text "as part of the building, at the exterior or in a separate structure to prevent flooding . . .", should there be a comma between "exterior" and "or"? Adding the comma would eliminate ambiguity by clarifying that there are three distinct location options, rather than suggesting a single combined option (as part of the building at either the exterior or in a separate structure). This also makes the follow-on sentence read logically, since one valid option is to place the water tank inside the building.

structure to prevent flooding of the main building interior in the event of a leak. If installed within the building, it shall be located in the basement or on the lowest level in the absence of a basement. If underground, it shall be installed outside the building foundation.

c. Approval from the ~~authorit~~authority having jurisdiction shall be obtained for ~~buried~~underground fire water tanks, ~~and~~which shall be installed in accordance with NFPA 22.22.

d. Fire water tanks shall be designed as ~~a~~ suction tanks and ~~shall be~~ protected from freezing.

~~c.~~e. Fire water tanks shall be protected from exposure to fires as required in accordance with NFPA 22.

~~d. An underground fire tank, if applicable, shall be installed outside the building foundation.~~

~~e. Approval from the authority having jurisdiction shall be obtained for buried fire water tanks and installed in accordance with NFPA 22.~~

f. Fire water tank ~~material~~s shall be made of steel or ~~double-layer fiberglass~~concrete. ~~Fire water tanks shall not be constructed of concrete~~Any other material shall require approval by the AHJ.

g. A single fire water tank shall be specified for the required fire water demand. The tank shall provide the minimum required volume of water for the full design duration~~Fiberglass-reinforced plastic tanks shall be permitted for storage of water at atmospheric pressure only. If located inside a building, they shall be protected by automatic fire sprinklers in accordance with NFPA 22~~.

h. ~~Provide a~~Adequate access to the fire water tank, valves, and pipe shall be provided, and ~~prevent~~ confined space entry conditions shall be avoided. The service entry shall be from a top hatch. If the entry is from the side, it shall be large enough for feet-first rather than head-first entry and is subject to approval of the Judicial Council and the ~~California~~ Office of the State Fire Marshal (OSFM). Design shall allow for access in an emergency situation.

i. Fire water tanks shall be periodically inspected, tested, and maintained in accordance with NFPA 25.

4. Hydrants

Design and installation shall comply with NFPA 24 and meet requirements of the ~~California~~ Office of the State Fire Marshal and the local fire department, except as follows.

a. Contact the responding fire department for hydrant and water pressure requirements.

b. Locate ~~Fire~~ fire hydrants ~~shall be located~~ as required by section 507.5 and Appendix C of the California Fire Code (Cal. Code Regs., tit. 24, pt. 9). The approximate distance between a fire hydrant and the building fire department connection shall be 50′.

c. Install ~~Wet~~ wet barrel hydrants ~~are preferred~~ where piping is not subject to freezing.

d. Locate hydrants adjacent to paved areas, no closer than 3′ and no farther than 7′ from roadway shoulder or curb line, accessible to fire department apparatus. Barrels shall be long enough to permit at least 18″ clearance between center of pumper connection and grade. Pumper connection shall be perpendicular to the street to allow straight-line connection to the pumper.

e. Design site grading for surface drainage away from the hydrant.

Commented [SN5]: Confirming the deletion of "If located inside a building, they shall be protected by automatic fire sprinklers in accordance with NFPA 22" is not inadvertent and is picked up in the requirement that they be installed in accordance with NFPA 22 or elsewhere.

Commented [DP5R2]: The verbiage is fine as written here.

Commented [SN6]: The sentence is missing some word/words because it now reads, "Approval from the having jurisdiction shall be obtained . . . ."

Commented [DP6R2]: It says authority having jurisdiction.

5. Fire Pump Requirements

Evaluate fire pump requirements based on building size, number of floors, occupancy, and available city water pressure. Specify fire pump, jockey pump, and associated control system in accordance with NFPA 20 requirements~~.~~ and NFPA 70 (NEC) Article 695 for electrical requirements.

a. Specify that a single vendor shall furnish pumps, motors, transfer switches, and all controls. All equipment shall be UL listed.

b. Protect ~~Fire~~ fire pump buildings or rooms enclosing diesel engine pump drivers and day~~s~~ tanks ~~shall be protected~~ with an automatic sprinkler system in accordance with NFPA 13 as an ~~-~~Extra Hazard Group 2 occupancy.

Commented [JH7]: Recommend including a reference to **NFPA 70 (NEC):** Article 695 for electrical requirements as well.

c. Protect ~~Fire~~ fire pump buildings or rooms with electric fire pump drivers ~~shall be protected~~ with an automatic sprinkler system in accordance with NFPA 13 as an Ordinary Hazard Group 1 occupancy.

d. Require the pump manufacturer or representative to provide the services of a qualified ~~Fire~~ fire ~~Protection~~ protection ~~Engineer~~ engineer for startup and acceptance testing~~,~~ in the presence of the authority having jurisdiction (AHJ).

e. ~~A~~ Ensure fire pump~~s must~~ start automatically at 10 psi below pressure maintenance pump (jockey pump) start pressure. The fire pump must be manually shut down; incorporate~~, except that~~ operation by automatic periodic exercise timers used for the required maintenance run times ~~is to be incorporated~~. The fire pump installation must include a test header and a flow meter.

f. Where an emergency generator is required or provided, and the emergency generator is intended to provide secondary or backup power to the fire pump, coordinate the electric fire pump starter type and loads with the generator for adequate starting capacity.

g. Provide emergency lighting in ~~Fire~~ fire pump rooms ~~shall be provided with emergency lighting~~.

6. Piping Requirements

a. All above~~-~~ground automatic sprinkler system piping shall comply with the provisions of NFPA 13. Only black steel piping shall be allowed for above~~-~~ground piping.

b. ~~For a~~Above~~-~~ground piping~~,~~ ~~provide~~ shall include a single air vent at a high point in the system in accordance with NFPA 13.

c. All underground fire protection piping shall comply with NFPA 24.

d. For corrosive soil areas, the underground piping shall be encased in polyethylene encasement in accordance with ~~AWWA (~~American Water Works Association (AWWA) C105 and ~~shall be~~ provided with cathodic protection.

e. ~~Specify c~~Corrosion protection for buried ductile iron pressure piping and supports shall be specified. All wrapping shall be ~~site~~ installed onsite. Specify cathodic protection as necessary for local conditions.

f. Local water purveyor, fire, or building department requirements for corrosion protection shall be incorporated into the project requirements.

g. Continuous detectable warning tape shall be installed directly above all underground fire service line piping, approximately 1′ below the finished grade surface.

h. When backflow preventers are installed in fixed fire protection systems for new buildings, a test connection shall be provided downstream of all backflow prevention valves for flow tests at system demand.

i. ~~Provide v~~Valves in underground water distribution lines shall be provided to isolate leaks and ~~to~~ allow water to supply the remainder of the loop. Locate isolation valves so that no more than five fire appurtenances are affected by shutdown of any single portion of the fire service main. Each fire hydrant, fire sprinkler system riser, and standpipe riser shall be considered a separate fire appurtenance.

j. Steel piping having a corrosion-resistant ratio less than 1 is not permitted to be installed.

k. Plain-end fittings shall not be permitted.

~~l.~~ *l.* Pressure seal-type fittings or methods of joining pipes shall not be permitted.

m. The automatic sprinkler system drainage piping shall be specified as galvanized steel

DIVISION TWO: TECHNICAL CRITERIA

11 Architectural Criteria
12 Structural Criteria
13 Mechanical Criteria
14 Building Management System Criteria
15 Electrical Criteria
16 Lighting Criteria
17 Network and Communication Systems
18 Audiovisual Systems
19 Acoustical Criteria
20 FIRE PROTECTION CRITERIA
20.A Objectives
20.C Fire Alarm System Objectives
20.D Fire Alarm System Criteria

pipe with galvanized threaded malleable iron fittings.

n. ~~Install a~~Above-ground pipe, fittings, and hangers shall be installed in accordance with NFPA 13 and local code requirements, including seismic sway and uplift bracing.

o. ~~Make reductions in pipe sizes with o~~One-piece reducing fittings shall be used to make reductions in pipe sizes. Bushings will not be acceptable~~,~~ except when standard fittings of proper size are not manufactured.

p. Earthquake protection and bracing shall be in accordance with NFPA 13. Other methods of bracing shall be permitted if certified by a California registered professional structural engineer.

q. Exposed piping supplying chrome-plated hose valves or fire department connections shall be painted (color to be approved by architect). Chrome-plated wall or floor escutcheons shall be provided at point of concealment.

r. ~~Install a~~A hinged chrome-plated escutcheon shall be installed at all visible wall, floor, and ceiling pipe penetrations in finished areas.

s. ~~Do not run p~~Piping through elevator hoistways, machine rooms, machinery spaces, or enclosures is not permitted unless piping is serving these spaces. Branch sprinkler piping serving those spaces shall be provided with a supervised branch shutoff valve located at an accessible location outside these spaces. Furnish a supervisory switch at these valves.

t. ~~Do not run p~~Piping through electrical rooms is not permitted unless piping is serving these spaces. Coordinate piping layouts to prevent installation directly over electrical equipment. If pipe routing over equipment is unavoidable, provide drain pans under piping to prevent leaking pipe drips from damaging equipment while maintaining sprinkler coverage.

7. Piping Specialties

a. Specify piping specialties that are UL listed and made by a single manufacturer.

b. Specify pressure gauges to be 3-1/2″ dial with a dial range of twice the system working pressure, 1/4″ bottom connection, and shutoff valve.

c. Specify UL-listed flow switches with adjustable time delays~~, UL listed~~. Each must have two contacts for local and remote alarms, double pole, double throw (DPDT).

d. Specify inspector's test and drain valve assembly in accordance with NFPA 13.

e. Specify valve supervisory switches to be UL listed, 120~~VAC (~~ volts of alternating current (VAC)/30 ~~VDC (~~volts of direct current (VDC), with DPDT.

f. Specify ~~Other~~ other specialty items ~~shall be specified as by~~following NFPA 13 or local conditions and codes.

g. Specify the sprinkler heads to be UL-listed automatic sprinklers in accordance with the following:

- ~~Specify a~~A temperature rating of 155~~ degrees Fahrenheit (~~°F)~~ ~~165°F, except when the application requires a higher rating.
- ~~Specify a~~A 200°F temperature rating for sprinkler heads in all switchgear rooms, electrical rooms, elevator machine rooms, mechanical rooms, and skylights, and where required by NFPA.
- ~~Provide d~~Detention-grade, ceiling-mounted sprinkler heads in all ~~inmate-accessible~~ areas accessible to in-custodies. Sprinkler heads must meet Compliance Services and Assessments (CSA) standards for suicide prevention and be located a minimum of 8′ above the finish floor. The sprinkler heads come with a factory finish. Tyco sprinkler heads shall be the basis of design and pricing, with smooth underside and no protruding elements.

- ~~Specify s~~Standard response–type sprinkler heads—upright, sidewall, or pendant—in open ceiling areas and ~~in~~ switchgear rooms, electrical rooms, elevator machine rooms, mechanical rooms, and other service areas.

8. Fire Department Connections

a. Specify the fire department connections (FDC) to be provided in accordance with NFPA, California Fire Code, and local fire department requirements. Hose threads shall conform to the standards of the responding fire departments.

b. ~~The FDCs shall be~~Use cast brass or ductile iron body FDCs with drop clappers. Provide chrome-~~-~~plated brass plate with lettering as required by the local fire authorities. Provide chrome-~~-~~plated brass female snoots with hose thread swivels, of a style to meet local fire department requirements, with threaded caps and chains. All hose inlets and threads ~~–~~ shall meet National Standard Thread requirements and conform to local fire department requirements.

9. Valve Requirements

a. Valves shall be UL listed, all with supervisory switches.

b. Automatic sprinkler system control valves shall be located in accessible spaces; they are not permitted in above-ceiling spaces. Valves shall be accessible and ~~shall~~ not require special equipment to operate the control valves.

c. ~~Specify v~~Valves ~~that are~~shall be UL listed for the application and pressure classification and ~~that are~~ manufactured by companies with a full line of fire protection system components.

10. Post Indicator Valve ~~(PIV)~~ Assembly

When required by the local authorities, specify UL-listed post indicator valve (PIV) assembly. PIVs shall be monitored by the building fire alarm system.

11. Main Distribution Frame / Server Equipment Room Protection

Sprinkler heads shall be provided with sprinkler guards. A double interlock pre-action sprinkler system is required. The dedicated pre-action panel shall be connected to the building fire alarm system.

A pre-action fire sprinkler system shall be provided for MDF and IDF rooms. The fire sprinkler system shall have a separate, dedicated, manually operated isolation valve with a supervisory switch and a separate flow switch located outside the protected area in an accessible location. Both the supervisory switch and the flow switch shall be connected to the building fire alarm system.

If approved by the Judicial Council, an automatic clean agent fire suppression system compliant with NFPA-2001 in high-value critical facilities rooms may be allowed. The detection system shall use cross-zone or counting-zone photoelectric detectors.

Activation of a minimum of two detectors is required before the agent discharge countdown sequence can begin. The quantity of detectors shall be determined by airflow within the hazard area, but the area protected shall not exceed 250 square feet per detector. Minimum detection to be provided for each clean ~~agent~~ agent–protected room shall be two counting-zone detectors or two cross-zone detectors.

12. Coordination

a. Coordinate ~~Fire~~ fire protection systems ~~shall be coordinated~~ with other specification sections~~,~~ such as

DIVISION TWO: TECHNICAL CRITERIA

11 Architectural Criteria
12 Structural Criteria
13 Mechanical Criteria
14 Building Management System Criteria
15 Electrical Criteria
16 Lighting Criteria
17 Network and Communication Systems
18 Audiovisual Systems
19 Acoustical Criteria
20 FIRE PROTECTION CRITERIA
20.A Objectives
20.C Fire Alarm System Objectives
20.D Fire Alarm System Criteria

Commented [AG8]: Lesson Learned: from Sacramento Courthouse: On projects in excess of five stories, when installing wood paneling or backing into the building, CSFM requires a full temporary fire protection plan. The fire protection plan includes water and fire hose with full design pressure to the floors receiving wood. This required a temporary fire pump with a temporary generator if power wasn't available.

Commented [DP8R2]: Incorporated.

The fire alarm system shall be coordinated with other specification sections~~,~~ such as architectural, site utilities, plumbing, fire sprinkler, electrical, telephone, data, security, intelligent building, and mechanical systems.

earthwork, architectural, site utilities, concrete, plumbing, structural, electrical, sheet metal, and mechanical sections.

b. Specify wiring diagrams for interfacing with electrical work ~~All~~ for all electrical equipment provided under fire protection systems ~~shall be specified with wiring diagrams for interfacing with electrical work~~.

c. Coordinate automatic sprinkler systems with the building fire alarm system for transmitting all flow and tamper alarms.

d. Design ~~The~~ the edge-of-slab UL-fire-rated ~~UL~~ system ~~shall~~ to address general requirements for protection of steel per the Office of the State Fire Marshal. Specify how ratings are to be maintained where walls abut exterior window walls ~~and/~~or columns.

e. Specify that the OSFM may require sequential inspection of each component of the rated walls.

f. Clearly define fire and temperature rating requirements and products for mechanical, electrical, and plumbing systems (e.g., piping and conduit)~~,~~ and ~~for~~ large banks of pipes, conduits, and bus ducts.

~~f~~g. In projects greater than five stories tall, when installing wood paneling or backing into the building during construction, provide a temporary fire protection plan. ~~-~~The fire protection plan shall include water and fire hose with full design pressure to the floors receiving wood. If power is not available, a temporary fire pump with a temporary generator shall be required.

Commented [DP9]: Clarified based on CFAC-WG feedback.

13. Guarantee

The fire protection work shall be free from defects of workmanship and materials for two years after filing notice of completion, and the general contractor shall remedy any defects developing during this period~~,~~ free of charge. Manufacturers ~~whose equipment has~~that provide a longer guarantee period for their equipment shall provide a written guarantee.

14. Installation Contractor Certification

Specify that the fire protection system shall require the installation contractor to submit all certificates in triplicate indicating approval of work, approval or performance of tests, and final inspection issued by the OSFM before final acceptance of the fire protection system.

15. Cleaning

Specify that the sprinkler heads placed before painting be covered with paper or plastic bags, which shall be removed only after painting is completed.

20.C FIRE ALARM SYSTEM OBJECTIVES

Fire alarm system design shall provide safe installation and operations through standardization, installation, and testing requirements based on sound engineering principles, applicable state and local codes, and field experience. These criteria set minimum acceptable requirements for design and installation of the building fire alarm system.

Designers shall use these criteria to develop fire alarm systems for construction of new buildings, retrofit of existing buildings, and interior renovation of existing buildings. When the criteria are applied to the design of interior renovations of existing structures, the designer shall provide systems that meet either the design parameters of the existing building fire alarm system or these criteria, whichever result in a system that satisfies applicable codes.

20.D FIRE ALARM SYSTEM CRITERIA

1. General Requirements

Commented [AP10]: Need to organize some requirements into specific sections: “Initiation Devices” and “Notification Devices” which follows NFPA 72 methodology

Commented [DP10R2]: Incorporated in following pages.

a. The fire alarm and notification system shall be UL listed, State Fire Marshal listed and approved, and manufactured by firms regularly engaged in manufacturing fire detection, alarm, and communication systems; be of types, sizes, and electrical

characteristics required; and use products that have been in satisfactory use in similar service for not less than five years. The fire alarm system shall be a fully addressable and nonproprietary system. Class B wiring shall be acceptable except for connections (signaling circuits) between the main fire alarm control panel and any networked remote fire alarm panels, where Class A wiring shall be provided. Minimum conduit size throughout the installation shall be 3/4″.

b. All fire alarm systems shall be designed by a California registered fire protection engineer; deferred-approval construction shop drawings may be prepared by a ~~Class~~ Class C-10 fire protection contractor.

c. The fire alarm system shall ~~be specified with~~have the following specifications:

- For non-high-rise buildings, the fire alarm control panel shall be located in the security operations center unless another location is mandated by code. Provide a fire alarm remote annunciator inside the building in a location adjacent to the main entrance.

  For high-rise buildings, the fire alarm panel and other equipment and documentation, as required by the California Fire Code, shall be located in the fire command center. It shall be shown in plans and elevations with all systems included. The layout shall be coordinated with the local fire department, and access shall be from within the building.

- ~~Provide CADD drawn graphic showing~~ The plans shall show each fire alarm zone.

d. Fire alarm systems shall include an emergency communication system (voice notification system) when any one of the following conditions exists:

- The building is two or more stories in height above the level of exit discharge.
- The total calculated occupant load of the building is 300 or more ~~occupants~~.
- The building is subject to 100 or more occupants above or below the level of exit discharge.

e. The emergency communication system must provide an automatic voice message in response to the receipt of a signal indicative of a fire emergency. Manual control with the capability of making live voice announcements must also be furnished to provide occupants notification on either a selective or an all-call basis. ~~Voice~~The system ~~to~~shall be (Speech Transmission Index for Public Address) STIPA tested and approved by OSFM.

f. All fire alarm signals (i.e., alarm, supervisory, and trouble signals) must be automatically transmitted to a UL-listed central station service using one or more of the methods allowed by NFPA 72~~,~~ section 26.6. Operation of a duct smoke detector is permitted to initiate a supervisory signal.

g. Manual fire alarm boxes must be installed in accordance with the requirements in ~~NFPA~~ NFPA 72 and the California Fire Code.

h. Fire alarm control units and annunciators shall be semirecessed in finished areas.

i. All wiring entering or exiting a fire alarm control panel must be clearly labeled marking destination or source and purpose (e.g., “Fan #22 Shutdown”).

j. In the event of primary power failure, all fire alarm systems shall be provided with battery backup power to accommodate a 24-hour standby load plus 15 minutes of alarm condition load.

k. If a building is classified as a non-separated building in accordance with the California

DIVISION TWO: TECHNICAL CRITERIA

11 Architectural Criteria
12 Structural Criteria
13 Mechanical Criteria
14 Building Management System Criteria
15 Electrical Criteria
16 Lighting Criteria
17 Network and Communication Systems
18 Audiovisual Systems
19 Acoustical Criteria

20 FIRE PROTECTION CRITERIA
20.A Objectives

Commented [DP11]: Gensler: This line should be part of the second bullet. Don’t make another bullet.

Commented [LD12]: Not in abbreviation appendix or defined previously.

Commented [DP12R2]: I have written the full form in parentheses since the abbreviation is known in the industry, not the full form.

Building Code Nonseparated Occupancies in ~~C~~chapter 5, the building fire alarm system ~~is required to~~shall meet the most restrictive occupancy requirements of ~~C~~chapter 9 of the California Building Code. In courthouse buildings with an I-3 temporary holding area, the most restrictive I-3 occupancy requirements shall apply to the building.

l. If a building is classified as a separated building in accordance with the California Building Code Separated Occupancies in ~~C~~chapter 5, the building fire alarm system is ~~only~~ required to meet the requirements within each separated occupancy.

~~j.~~

~~Section 2.~~ ~~Initiating Devices – Add this section~~

Group I-3 occupancies shall be equipped with a manual fire alarm system and automatic smoke detection.

a. Automatic smoke detection is required within I-3 temporary holding cells. Unless a smoke detector with guard is approved by BSCC and OSFM, smoke detectors with guards are not permitted ~~to be located~~ within holding cells.

b. An alternative method of smoke detection within the holding cells shall be coordinated with the J~~C~~Cudicial Council, BSCC, and ~~AHJ~~OSFM during the design phase.

c. HVAC duct smoke detection ~~or in duct smoke detection~~ is permitted and the preferred method to provide automatic smoke detection within the holding cells. If the duct automatic smoke detection is designed to serve the I-3 holding cells, then the minimum airflow requirement does not have to meet the 2,000 CFM requirement.

d. The HVAC duct system serving the I-3 holding cells shall not communicate with other areas and shall be isolated to serve the I-3 area only.

e. VESDA (Very Early Smoke Detection Apparatus) smoke detection is permitted as a worst-case scenario smoke detection system. If used, the system shall be fully equipped with ~~fully~~ anti-ligature and tamper-resistant sampling points in each holding cell and associated day room and ~~/~~ante-room areas. Sampling holes in holding cells shall be flush ~~-~~mounted~~,~~ and drilled into an approved anti-ligature stainless ~~-~~steel flush plate or directly into an approved anti-ligature sampling pipe end cap. No exposed pipe, fittings, or labels~~,~~ shall be permitted inside the cell volume.

f. Smoke detectors ~~must~~shall be installed in accordance with the requirements in NFPA 72 and the California Fire Code. Provide individually addressable smoke detectors appropriate for the application in these ~~following~~ locations: all elevator lobbies, uninterrupt~~ible~~ed power supply rooms, electrical switch~~-~~gear rooms, transformer vaults, telephone exchanges,

Commented [SN13]: The word "only" minimizes. Is it necessary in the sentence?

Commented [DP13R2]: deleted

Commented [LD14]: Also not defined or listed in appendix.

Commented [DP14R2]: I have written the full form in parentheses since the abbreviation is known in the industry, not the full form.

Commented [SN15]: Is HVAC duct detection the standard smoke detection method in the holding cells and VESDA smoke detection is the alternative method that must be coordinated? Right now I read this as that alternatives are allowed, HVAC duct smoke detection is permitted and preferred, and VESDA is permitted as an alternate, but it's unclear if there are other alternatives.

Commented [DP15R2]: Yes, that's exactly right. There are no other alternatives available.

20

and elevator machine rooms. When smoke detection is installed in rooms having medium-voltage equipment, the smoke detection ~~must~~shall not be installed directly above the medium-voltage equipment. MDF rooms containing server or mainframe computer equipment shall be provided with smoke detection connected to the fire alarm system~~,~~ unless a separate smoke detection provision (e.g., dedicated to clean agent systems detection or actuation) already exists.~~Smoke detectors must be installed in accordance with the requirements in NFPA 72 and the California Fire Code. Provide individually addressable smoke detectors appropriate for the application in the following locations: all elevator lobbies, uninterruptible power supply rooms, electrical switch gear rooms, transformer vaults, telephone~~

~~ms. When smoke detection is installed in rooms having medium-voltage equipment, the smoke talled directly above the medium-voltage equipment. MDF rooms containing server or mainframe l be provided with smoke detection connected to the fire alarm system, unless separate smoke dedicated to clean agent systems detection or actuation) already exists~~.

~~Section~~ 3. ~~Notification Devices – add this section~~

~~k~~a. The requirement and placement of audible and visible notification devices within exit enclosures (stairways) and restrooms shall be reviewed by the Judicial Council and the OSFM on a case-by-case basis and ~~is~~ dependent on room size, use, furniture, and floor and ceiling finishes. The OSFM may approve elimination of audible devices ~~may be approved to be eliminated by the OSFM~~ because of the potential of exceeding the allowable 110 dBA (A-weighted decibel). The OSFM may approve elimination of visible notification devices ~~may be approved to be eliminated by the OSFM~~ because of the potential confusion that could occur within the exit enclosures. See CFC sections 907.5.2.1.2 and 907.5.2.3 and NFPA 72~~,~~ section 18.4.4.2~~,~~ for detailed requirements.

~~l~~b. All non-high-rise fire alarm systems must have an annunciator located near the primary fire department entrance to the building, except when the fire alarm control panel is already present in this location.

c. Fire alarm system signaling line circuits shall be installed with isolation modules in sufficient number and location to limit the potential number of impaired devices from a single circuit failure to a maximum of eight ~~devices~~.

~~Section 34~~. ~~Emergency~~ Control Functions

a. Phase I Emergency Recall Operation shall be coordinated with the Judicial Council~~CC~~ during the design phase.

b. System ~~I~~inputs of the fire alarm sequence of operation shall ~~have~~include the following:

- Identify which initiation devices will actuate elevator recall.
- Provide the type of initiation devices (e.g., smoke detector, heat detector, water flow switch) and the floor level they are located on in the System Input section of the sequence of operation.

c. System ~~O~~outputs of the fire alarm sequence of operation shall ~~have~~include the following:

- For each type of initiation device that actuates elevator recall, provide a system output to show recall to the primary level of recall.
- For each type of initiation device that actuates elevator recall on the primary level, provide a system output to show recall to the secondary level of recall (if applicable). Refer to table 20.2.

SYSTEM INPUTS	SYSTEM OUTPUTS	
	RECALL TO PRIMARY LEVEL	RECALL TO ALTERNATE LEVEL
SMOKE DETECTOR - ELEVATOR LOBBY, PRIMARY LEVEL		X
SMOKE DETECTOR - ELEVATOR LOBBY, OTHER LEVEL	X	

Table 20.2

~~m.~~

~~2.~~5. Rational Analysis ~~– revise numbering~~

a. A rational analysis shall be performed and a report prepared to establish minimum requirements for the design, installation, and acceptance testing of smoke control

Commented [AP16]: Need to add this section to start outlining elevator recall requirements to ensure consistent coordination during the design phase

Commented [LD17]: Add table title and reference?

Replace hyphens with em dashes, "alternate" with "alternative."

Commented [DP17R2]: Gensler: add table reference and make these changes.

Commented [AP18]: An example figure should be provided for clarification on the approach

Commented [DP18R2]: Tony: In the figure elevator lobby is listed in both rows. So it is not clear which level the recall is directed. Please revise.

Commented [AP18R3]: The key words are "Primary Level" and "Other Level". If a fire were to occur on the primary level and initiate the smoke detector, the elevator cannot recall to the primary level elevator lobby, as a result it recalls to an "alternate level". If the smoke detector initiated on an "other level", then it recalls to the "primary level".

There are no issues here and the "elevator lobby" wording should remain as is.

Commented [DP18R4]: Ok, in place of "comma" it should be "on" so it reads "Elevator lobby on primary level" and "Elevator lobby on other level".

Commented [DP19]: Gensler: In the table left column, in place of "comma" it should be "on" so it reads "Elevator lobby on primary level" and "Elevator lobby on other level".

Commented [AP20]: Section numbering to be revised

systems that are intended to provide a tenable environment for the evacuation or relocation of occupants. The report and associated design, in ~~complying~~ compliance with the California Building Code, shall be submitted with the construction documents.

b. ~~Provide a~~A smoke control system shall be provided where required by code. Roll-down doors provided as part of smoke control in high-volume spaces shall have smoke control fire alarm position switches for the smoke control panel.

c. Specifications shall describe the intent, scope, responsibilities, weekly testing, ~~-~~ referenced specifications, and the like for the smoke control system. Include testing requirements for systems that use ductwork for both smoke exhaust and normal return. The smoke control ductwork pressure class shall be noted on supply, exhaust, and return systems. Define the testing requirements of the electric resettable link (ERL).

~~3.~~6. Quality Assurance

a. All materials specified shall be the best available, new, and approved by UL and the ~~California~~ Office of the State Fire Marshal.

b. All panels and peripheral devices shall be the standard product of a single fire alarm system manufacturer~~,~~ under the appropriate UL category.

c. Installer shall be qualified with at least five years of successful installation experience on projects with fire detection, alarm, and communication systems installation work similar to that required for the project.

d. ~~Comply with the California Energy Code, as applicable for c~~Construction and installation of fire detection, alarm, and communication system components and accessories shall comply with the California Energy Code, as applicable.

e. The fire detection, alarm, and communication system components and accessories shall comply with all federal and state standards.

~~4.~~7. Identification

Specify that the proper identification and signage be provided at each fire alarm panel, conduit, branch circuit, pull box, and junction box using industry ~~-~~standard materials and methods.

~~5.~~8. Guarantee

The fire alarm work shall be free from defects of workmanship and materials for two years after filing notice of completion, and the general contractor shall remedy any defects that develop~~ing~~ during this period~~,~~ free of charge. Manufacturers whose equipment has a longer guarantee period shall provide a written guarantee. Specifications shall include requirements for the fire alarm contractor to provide a minimum two-year warranty for all fire alarm systems. The fire alarm contractor shall provide required inspection, testing, and maintenance services at least every six months throughout the warranty period.

~~6.~~9. Tests and Adjustments

Specify that after installation has been completed, the entire system is to be tested in accordance with NFPA 72 by the contractor in the presence of the AHJ.

~~7.~~10. Installation Contractor Certification

Specify that the fire alarm system installation contractor shall submit all certificates in triplicate indicating approval of work, approval or performance of tests, and final inspection issued by local authorities.

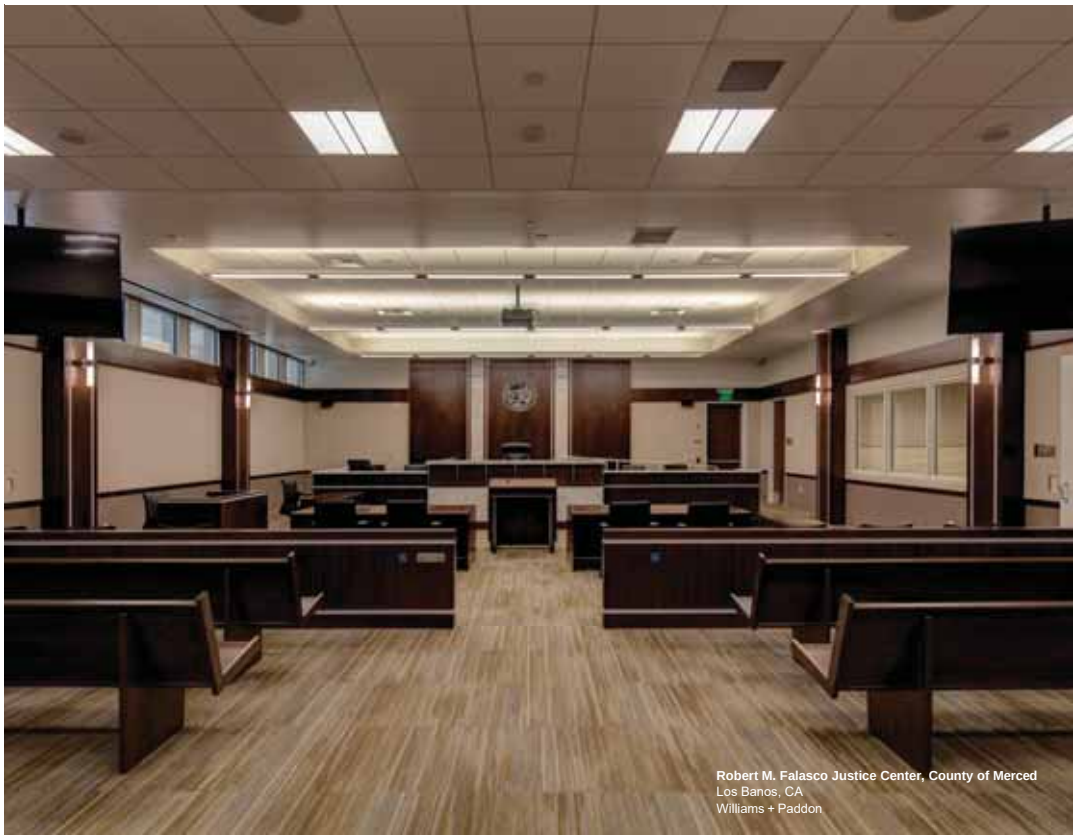
DIVISION TWO: TECHNICAL CRITERIA

11 Architectural Criteria
12 Structural Criteria
13 Mechanical Criteria
14 Building Management System Criteria
15 Electrical Criteria
16 Lighting Criteria
17 Network and Communication Systems
18 Audiovisual Systems
19 Acoustical Criteria
20 FIRE PROTECTION CRITERIA
20.A Objectives
20.B Fire Protection Criteria
20.C Fire Alarm System Objectives

REQUIRED TOOLS

T1 LIFE CYCLE COST ANALYSIS

SECTION	TOPIC	PAGE
T1.A	Purpose	T1.2
T1.B	Principles	T1.3
T1.C	Performing LCCA	T1.11



Robert M. Falasco Justice Center, County of Merced
Los Banos, CA
Williams + Paddon

T1.A PURPOSE

~~The life cycle cost analysis (LCCA) procedure~~This tool documents the standardized process for conducting a life cycle cost analysis. LCCA is an economic assessment of an item, system, or facility considering all significant costs of ownership over an economic life, expressed in terms of equivalent costs. To ensure that costs are compared on an equivalent basis, the baselines used for initial cost must be the same as those used for all other costs associated with each option, including maintenance, operating cost, and replacement. LCCA is especially useful when comparing project alternatives that differ with respect to initial costs and operating costs ~~in order~~ to select the option that maximizes net savings.

LCCA is used to compare various options by identifying and assessing economic impacts over the whole life of each alternative. Future costs over the life of a facility—including operations, maintenance, and replacement—typically will match or exceed the initial cost of facility procurement. If staffing and other use costs are factored into the analysis, the initial procurement may be less than 20 percent of the total cost of ownership. Nearly every decision made during design and construction affects project costs. Some decisions are straightforward because they affect building performance or respond to codes and standards and their cost ramifications are apparent. Others are more subtle in their effect on cost and can profoundly affect disciplines and building systems beyond the prime ~~decision~~ decision-maker, such as insulation or glazing choices, which affect building heating and cooling. Most design choices have a major effect on life cycle costs.

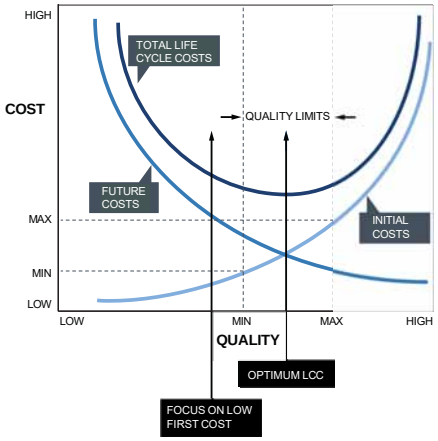
The Judicial Council expects designers to control future facility expenditures~~,~~ while avoiding ~~placing~~ an undue burden on initial costs. The move toward sustainable design has highlighted the need for sensitivity to future cost. LCCA is an important tool in making more effective design decisions—ultimately for managing costs throughout the life of a facility, seeking optimum life cycle cost, and balancing functional needs with economic limitations. Figure T1.1 shows the comparison between low first cost versus optimum life cycle cost.

There will always be questions on how best to prioritize design choices. The overriding requirement is to optimize life cycle costs while maintaining cost management responsibility for the construction cost limitation.

This to~~olpic~~ discusses methods for defining, estimating, and managing life cycle costs.

Commented [LD1]: "tool"?

Commented [DP1R2]: Corrected.



LCC = life cycle cost.

Figure T1.1 Life Cycle Cost Curve

T1.B PRINCIPLES

In making decisions, both present and future costs need to be taken into account and related to one another. A dollar today is not equal to a dollar tomorrow. Money invested in any form has the capacity to earn interest. A current dollar is always worth more than the prospect of a dollar at some future time. The exact amount depends on the investment rate (interest or the cost of money) and the length of time. This relationship—that money has the power to earn more money—is fundamental to economic analysis and LCCA.

The terms *interest rate* and *discount rate* are generally used synonymously. *Interest* is more commonly used in financial analyses, whereas *discount* is more often used in economic studies. Both terms refer to the annual growth rate for the time value of money.

At a 5 percent discount rate, a dollar will grow in value by a factor of approximately 3.5 over a 25-year period; at a 15 percent discount rate, the factor is nearly 35. Even though the discount rates differ by a factor of 3, the resulting relationship in value differs by a factor of nearly 10. The selection of a discount rate is important to an LCCA.

What does the term *real discount rate* mean? Inflation can affect an economic analysis because over time, it reduces the purchasing power of currency. This effect means that in the future, more currency ~~in the future~~ will be required to purchase the same goods.

General inflation does not directly affect the actual time value of money because, under all circumstances, money must have a time value. Inflation, however, does affect how the time value is calculated and must be accommodated in the calculation. So, if the real time value of money is 5 percent and inflation is predicted to be 3 percent, then any discounting analysis would need to use 8 percent as an interest rate and inflate all future costs by 3 percent. This is called a *current dollars analysis*.

As a simplification, especially in comparative analyses not used for cash flow calculations, constant dollars may be used. In this case, a 5 percent discount rate would be used, and all future costs would be held at the base date relative cost and not inflated.

For all Judicial Council analyses, a real discount rate (exclusive of inflation) of 3.25 percent will be used unless otherwise directed.

The one exception for an adjustment to a real discount rate would be for any future costs expected not to follow inflation. For example, energy costs have tended to increase at 1 to ~~2~~ 2 percent above inflation over the last 10 years. In this case, future energy costs would be inflated differentially (above the general inflation rate) by 1 to 2 percent. This effect is referred to in economic analyses as *escalation*.

1. Economic Analysis Period

The economic or study period used when comparing alternatives is an important consideration. Predicting future costs for 25 to 40 years is usually long enough to capture the most significant costs for economic purposes. Nearly 90 percent of the total present value equivalent cost is consumed in the first 25 years at a 5 percent discount rate. For this reason, periods longer than 40 years generally add little benefit to an LCCA unless very low (below 2 percent) interest rates are used.

The Judicial Council requires a 30-year economic analysis period unless there is a specific reason to deviate.

REQUIRED TOOLS

T1 LIFE CYCLE COST ANALYSIS
T1.A Purpose
T1.B Principles
T1.C Performing LCCA

T2 Catalog of Courtroom Layouts for California Trial Courts
T3 Integrated Network Architecture
T4 Graphical User Interface Template
T5 In-Custody Interview Room Guidelines
T6 Building Management System Guidelines

2. Life of an Element

A time frame must also be identified for each system or component under analysis relative to the overall study period. The *technological life* of an item is the estimated number of years until technology causes the item to become obsolete. The *useful life* of an item is the estimated number of years during which it will perform its function according to some established performance standard. The *economic life* of an item is the estimated number of years until that item no longer represents the least expensive method of performing its function.

The economic life of an item is the most important of the three, from the viewpoint of cost optimization. It is also generally the shortest, with the exception of consequential technological changes that bring in new solutions at much lower cost. However, the technological and useful lives of an item should still be considered when its economic life is estimated.

Extending the life of an item beyond its economic life in an LCCA is generally economically neutral or negative. For example, a rooftop heating, ventilation, and air-conditioning (HVAC) component can operate past its 20-year economic life but will require above-normal maintenance, is more likely to fail, and will use more energy. The result in terms of total life cycle cost will be similar to simply allowing for replacement at the 20th year.

For all Judicial Council analyses, the economic life of systems or components will be used unless otherwise directed.

Table T1.1 provides guidelines for the economic life of building components in UniFormat. Various sources were used for the table, including *Life Cycle Costing for Facilities* by Alphonse J. Dell'Isola and Steven J. Kirk (RSMeans, 2003). Table T1.3 shows the relationship between UniFormat and MasterFormat. Table T1.8 shall be used as a reference for economic life of building components in MasterFormat.

Commented [LD2]: Tables and figures must be referenced in order, preferably as close as possible to their location in the document.

Commented [DP2R2]: We will tackle this formatting issue in the next edition.

3. Categories of Cost

Over the life of a facility, costs will be expended on a broad range of components and for numerous purposes. A life cycle cost analysis is a comparative analysis; therefore, it is important that costs be properly identified and categorized ***so that common items can be eliminated from the analysis and effort can be focused on the difference between critical items.***

The costs of owning a facility can be subdivided as follows:

- Initial costs
  - Construction
  - Fees
  - Environmental review and mitigation
  - Other initial costs
- Future facility one-time costs
  - Replacements
  - Alterations
  - Salvage
  - Other one-time costs
- Future facility annual costs
  - Operations including utilities

~~Table T1.1 Economic Life of Building Components~~
Table T1.1 Economic Life of Building Components in UniFormat

COMPONENT	ECONOMIC LIFE (YEARS)
General Construction (Divs. 2–14)	
Foundations	30(+)
Substructure	30(+)
Superstructure	
Steel	30(+)
Masonry	30(+)
Cast-in-~~Place~~ place ~~Concrete~~concrete	30(+)
Pre-cast ~~Concrete~~concrete	50–100
Exterior ~~Closure~~closure	
Masonry	30
Wood	20
Precast	25
Steel/~~Aluminum~~ aluminum ~~Curtain~~ curtain ~~Wall~~wall	30
Glazing ~~Systems~~systems	25
Sun ~~Control~~ control ~~Devices~~devices	15
Roofing	
Built-up	17
EPDM ~~Single~~single-ply	20
Interior ~~Construction~~construction	
Drywall ~~Partitions~~ partitions on ~~Metal~~ metal ~~Studs~~studs	20
Masonry ~~Interior~~ interior ~~Walls~~walls	30
Interior ~~Finishes~~finishes	10–20
Conveying ~~Systems~~systems	

EPDM = ethylene propylene diene monomer.
VAV = variable air volume.

COMPONENT	ECONOMIC LIFE (YEARS)
Mech./Elect. Construction (Divs. 21–28)	
Plumbing	
Piping	30
Fixtures	20–30
Hot ~~Water~~ water ~~Heater~~heater	25
Roof ~~Drainage~~drainage	30
Air ~~Conditioners~~conditioners	
Water-cooled ~~Package~~package	15
Computer ~~Room~~room	15
Rooftop ~~Multizone~~multizone	20
Boilers	
Steel/ ~~Cast~~ cast ~~Iron~~iron	25
Electric	15
Furnaces: ~~Gas~~ gas or ~~Oil~~oil-fired	18
Unit ~~Heaters~~heaters	
Gas or ~~Electric~~electric	12
Hot ~~Water~~ water or ~~Steam~~steam	20
Air ~~Terminals~~terminals	
Diffusers, ~~Grilles~~grilles, and ~~Registers~~registers	25
Fan ~~Coil~~ coil ~~Units~~units	20
VAV ~~Boxes~~boxes	20
Duct ~~Work~~work	30
Fans	20–25
Chillers	20–25
Cooling ~~Towers~~towers	20–25
Pumps	15–20
Controls	15–20
Electric ~~Motors~~motors	15
Motor ~~Starters~~starters	17
Branch ~~Circuits~~ circuits and ~~Wiring~~ wiring ~~Devices~~devices	20
Switchgear	20
Liquid-filled ~~Transformers~~transformers	30
Dry-type ~~Transformers~~transformers	25
Interior ~~Lighting~~ lighting ~~Systems~~systems	20

- Maintenance
- Financing
- Taxes
- Insurance
- Security
- Utility rate escalation
- Other annual costs

- Functional -use costs
  - Staffing
  - Materials
  - Denial of use
  - Other functional -use costs
- Environmental costs
  - Water scarcity
  - Ongoing environmental mitigation
  - Other environmental costs

Initial costs include construction, fees, and costs such as land acquisition and moving. These represent up-front costs associated with facility development. Future one-time costs represent major expenditures that are not annual (although they may be periodic) and include replacement, elective alterations, and salvage.

Facility annual costs include all costs to run the facility itself, such as operations, maintenance, and other built environment costs.

Functional -use costs are costs associated with using a facility, including staffing, materials, and any other non-facility costs. Items such as denial-of-use costs may be necessary during construction and ~~may~~ include temporary space, operations, and added security.

Additionally, environmental costs shall be considered when doing the LCCA. Future site water scarcity, ongoing environmental mitigation, and other environmental costs shall be considered in conjunction with initial environmental review and mitigation costs to determine the appropriate building parameters.

~~Table T1.1 Economic Life of Building Components~~

4. Life Cycle Costing Procedures

Life cycle costing focuses on comparing competing alternatives. To compare alternatives, both present and future costs for each alternative must be brought to a common point in time using one of two methods: ~~costs~~ Costs may be converted into today's costs by the *present-worth method*, or they may be converted to an annual series of payments by the *annualized method*. Either method will properly allow comparison between alternatives.

4.1 Present-Worth Method

The present-worth method requires conversion of all present and future expenditures to a baseline of today's cost. Initial (present) costs are already expressed in present worth. Future costs are converted to present value by applying the factors presented previously.

Commented [YR3]: Recommending expanding this table to be a more comprehensive and detailed section.

Including for consideration based on the Master Format Divisions.

Commented [DP3R2]: Rafat/Aaron: please review and respond.

Commented [AG3R3]:
1. The added material has applicability, but I believe is too detailed for the main document's intended use. It would be a useful reference as attached..

2. The challenge for LCC analysis is that it almost always starts at a system or subsystem level (Uniformat) and doesn't get into specific materials (Masterformat) until downstream.

3. Organizing the process by MasterFormat we believe would be difficult.

4. Perhaps adding the attached Uniformat Level 3 chart (or possibly a compressed Level 2 version) after current Table A.2, would graphically explain the relationship.

5. After that, a reference can be made to Table T1 as a separate attachment. It does have a lot of good references, especially on useful life.

Commented [DP3R4]: We have absorbed the information at the end of the tool.

4.2 Annualized Method

The annualized method converts initial, recurring, and nonrecurring costs to an annual series of payments and may be used to express all life cycle costs as an annual expenditure.

Mortgage payments are an example of this procedure.

4.3 Other Economic Analysis Methods

Other methods of economic analysis can be used in a life cycle study~~,~~ depending on the client's requirements and special needs. It is possible to determine the payback period, ~~to~~ establish a break-even point between alternatives, ~~to~~ determine the rate of return on total investment and extra investment, ~~to~~ determine rate-of-return alternatives, ~~to~~ perform a cash flow analysis, and ~~to~~ review the benefits and costs. All methods, correctly applied, will yield results pointing to the same conclusion.

The Judicial Council requires the present-worth analysis to be used for LCCA.

5. Accuracy Requirements for LCCA

To perform a life cycle cost analysis, certain assumptions must be made. These assumptions concern significant economic variables, including discount rate, study duration, and escalation, as well as data defining the cost and performance of competing alternatives. Seldom are clear-cut, obvious, and easy choices available. Invariably, good judgment, experience, and common sense need to be used in making decisions. The following guidelines should be considered:

- Issues common to all alternatives can be ignored. The objective of LCCA is to select between competing alternatives. Therefore, assumptions need to be made, and data that ~~are~~ is sufficient to distinguish performance need<u>s</u> to be gathered only for issues that differ between the alternatives.
- In general, because of likely margins of error in estimating costs, alternatives would have to exhibit a life cycle cost (LCC) differential greater than 10 percent to be judged conclusive. Numeric accuracy should be balanced between the need to differentiate the alternatives and the dependability of input information. Much of the LCC data available has~~ve~~ been gathered from observation and is~~are~~ inherently highly variable.
- A sensitivity analysis should be considered whenever assumptions may be deemed questionable. Even when differentials exceed 10 percent, confidence in major variables in the analysis may limit confidence in the overall conclusions. In these instances, a sensitivity analysis may be required. It involves conducting multiple LCCAs using extremes of the cost parameters in question and evaluating the resulting sensitivity of the analysis to the assumptions. To reach the same overall conclusion even when assumptions are significantly varied is not uncommon.

6. Typical Areas of Study

The areas of study for an LCCA will vary among facilities and, to some degree, by geographic location. Table T1.2 lists components that are typically selected for study and provides some general areas for consideration.

REQUIRED TOOLS

T1 LIFE CYCLE COST ANALYSIS
T1.A Purpose
T1.C Performing LCCA
T2 Catalog of Courtroom Layouts for California Trial Courts
T3 Integrated Network Architecture
T4 Graphical User Interface Template
T5 In-Custody Interview Room Guidelines
T6 Building Management System Guidelines

Table T1.2 Typical Components to Be Considered in a Life Cycle Cost Analysis

COMPONENT	TYPICAL ALTERNATIVES TO BE ANALYZED
Predesign	
	Impacts of new acquisition, leasing, and/or public-private partnerships
	Renovation, upgrade, or revitalization of an existing facility
	Use of other state facilities
General Life Cycle Cost Issues for All Components	
	Element/component service and replacement life
	Maintenance and maintainability
	Direct and indirect energy impacts
Site and Program	
	Building shape and orientation on the planned site (including impact on adjacent buildings)
	Alternative sites
	Seismic, environmental, and community issues
Architecture	
Substructure	
	Foundations—~~Water~~ water infiltration, special seismic features
	Slab on grade—~~Special~~ special loads, vibration isolation
	Basement excavation—~~Use~~ use of import~~/~~ or export materials
	Basement and retaining walls—~~Water~~ water infiltration
Superstructure	
	Floor construction—~~Seismic~~ seismic impacts, floor displacement, noise isolation, security
	Roof construction—~~Seismic~~ seismic impacts
	Stair construction—~~Long~~long-term maintainability, safety
Wall construction	
	Increased insulation levels, insulation placement, etc.
	Mass (passive solar thermal storage)
	Daylighting
	Building envelope (exterior closure) type
Fenestration	
	Type, amount, and location/orientation of glass
	Indoor/outdoor shading devices
	Daylighting
Interior space plan	
	Space arrangement and circulation
	Demising walls and partitions
	Finishes and colors
	Ceiling and plenum heights

Table T1.2 continues on next page

Table T1.2 Typical Components to Be Considered in a Life Cycle Cost Analysis *continued*

COMPONENT	TYPICAL ALTERNATIVES TO BE ANALYZED
Architecture *(continued)*	
Roof construction	
	Increased insulation levels, type of insulation
	Roof membrane type and color
	Daylighting
Conveyances	
	Selection of elevators and dumbwaiters
	Escalators
Secondary HVAC systems	
	System types and zoning
	Operating plans, economizer cycle(s), and optimization
	Heat recovery (exhaust air, internal source, etc.)
	Controls
Primary HVAC systems	
	System types and energy sources
	Pumping/piping configuration
	Heat recovery (waterside economizer cycle, etc.)
	Thermal storage (electrical demand shifting)
	Controls
Plumbing	
	Domestic hot water generation (method and energy source)
	Water source—~~Municipal~~municipal, well, or harvested
Electrical	
Lighting and communications	
	System selection
	Artificial lighting levels, methods, and control
	Daylighting
	Photovoltaic sources
	Communications and data management
Power	
	Voltage selection (building and large equipment)
	Transformers (quantity, locations, efficiencies)
	Emergency power

REQUIRED TOOLS

T1 LIFE CYCLE COST ANALYSIS
T1.A Purpose
T1.C Performing LCCA
T2 Catalog of Courtroom Layouts for California Trial Courts
T3 Integrated Network Architecture
T4 Graphical User Interface Template
T5 In-Custody Interview Room Guidelines
T6 Building Management System Guidelines

HVAC = heating, ventilation, and air-conditioning.

Table T1.~~32A~~ Relationship Between Uni~~F~~format and MasterFormat

Level 1	Level 2	Level 3
A Substructure	A10 Foundations	A1010 Standard Foundations
		A1020 Special Foundations
		A1030 Slab on Grade
	A20 Basement Construction	A2010 Basement Excavation
		A2020 Basement Walls
B Shell	B10 Superstructure	B1010 Floor Construction
		B1020 Roof Construction
	B20 Exterior Enclosure	B2010 Exterior Walls
		B2020 Exterior Windows
		B2030 Exterior Doors
	B30 Roofing	B3010 Roof Coverings
		B3020 Roof Openings
C Interiors	C10 Interior Construction	C1010 Partitions
		C1020 Interior Doors
		C1030 Fittings
	C20 Stairs	C2010 Stair Construction
		C2020 Stair Finishes
	C30 Interior Finishes	C3010 Wall Finishes
		C3020 Floor Finishes
		C3030 Ceiling Finishes
D Services	D10 Conveying	D1010 Elevators & Lifts
		D1020 Escalators & Moving Walks
		D1090 Other Conveying Systems
	D20 Plumbing	D2010 Plumbing Fixtures
		D2020 Domestic Water Distribution
		D2030 Sanitary Waste
		D2040 Rain Water Drainage
		D2090 Other Plumbing Systems
	D30 HVAC	D3010 Energy Supply
		D3020 Heat Generating Systems
		D3030 Cooling Generating Systems
		D3040 Distribution Systems
		D3050 Terminal & Package Units
		D3060 Controls and Instrumentation
		D3070 Systems Testing & Balancing
		D3090 Other HVAC Systems & Equip.
	D40 Fire Protection	D4010 Sprinklers
		D4020 Standpipes
		D4030 Fire Protection Specialties
		D4090 Other Fire Protection Systems
	D50 Electrical	D5010 Elect. Service & Distribution
		D5020 Lighting & Branch Wiring
		D5030 Comm. & Security Sys.
		D5090 Other Electrical Systems
E Equipment & Furnishings	E10 Equipment	E1010 Commercial Equipment
		E1020 Institutional Equipment
		E1030 Vehicular Equipment
		E1090 Other Equipment
	E20 Furnishings	E2010 Fixed Furnishings
		E2020 Moveable Furnishings
F Special Construction	F10 Special Construction	F1010 Special Structures
		F1020 Integrated Construction
		F1030 Special Construction Systems
		F1040 Special Facilities
		F1050 Special Controls & Instrument.
& Demolition	F20 Selective Bldg. Demolition	F2010 Building Elements Demolition
		F2020 Hazardous Components Abate.
G Building Site Work	G10 Site Preparation	G1010 Site Clearing
		G1020 Site Demolition & Relocations
		G1030 Site Earthwork
		G1040 Hazardous Waste Remediation
	G20 Site Improvements	G2010 Roadways
		G2020 Parking Lots
		G2030 Pedestrian Paving
		G2040 Site Development
		G2050 Landscaping
	G30 Site Mechanical Utilities	G3010 Water Supply
		G3020 Sanitary Sewer
		G3030 Storm Sewer
		G3040 Heating Distribution
		G3050 Cooling Distribution
		G3060 Fuel Distribution
		G3090 Other Site Mechanical Utilities
	G40 Site Electrical Utilities	G4010 Electrical Distribution
		G4020 Site Lighting
		G4030 Site Communication & Security
		G4090 Other Site Electrical Utilities
	G90 Other Site Construction	G9010 Service & Pedestrian Tunnels
		G9090 Other Site Construction
Overhead & Profit	X20 Office Overhead & Profit	

Facility Construction: 01 General Requirements; 02 Existing Conditions; 03 Concrete; 04 Masonry; 05 Metals; 06 Wood, Plastics, & Composites; 07 Thermal & Moisture Protection; 08 Openings; 09 Finishes; 10 Specialties; 11 Equipment; 12 Furnishings; 13 Special Construction; 14 Conveying Equipment

Facility Services: 21 Fire Suppression; 22 Plumbing; 23 HVAC; 25 Integrated Automation; 26 Electrical; 27 Communications; 28 Electronic Safety & Security

Site & Infrastructure: 31 Earthwork; 32 Exterior Improvements; 33 Utilities; 34 Transportation; 35 Waterway & Marine

~~*(Refer to the Reference Table at the end of the Chapter for information on the Economic Life of Building Components)*~~

7. Sources of Life Cycle Cost Data

Commented [LD4]: Vertical text is very difficult to read, especially in a digital format. If there's any way to redesign this, consider it.

"Wood, Plastics & Composites" no second comma

Add table note to define HVAC.

Obtaining life cycle cost data is a challenge. Even when data ~~are~~ is available, ~~their~~ its applicability to a specific project may be questionable. That said, several sources of LCC data are available, including *Cost Planning and Estimating for Facilities Maintenance*, an annual publication of RSMeans; *Life Cycle Costing for Facilities*, an RSMeans publication; and CBRE's CostLab system.

8. Design and Analysis Tools

The use of computer tools can considerably reduce the time and effort spent on formulating the LCCA, performing the computations, and documenting the study. The Judicial Council will provide an Excel spreadsheet for use with LCCA efforts.

As an alternative, the Building Life Cycle Cost Program—an economic analysis tool developed by the National Institute of Standards and Technology for the U.S. Department of Energy's Federal Energy Management Program—can be used.

9. LCCA Study Requirements

LCCA studies are required for the major systems and components of court facilities that are energy and maintenance sensitive. Refer to table T1.~~4~~3 for general guidance on the number of studies to be conducted based on the size of the courthouse. The number of studies required is determined on a project-by-project basis with direction from the Judicial Council. Typically, these studies would include the following systems, and each system ~~alternate whole building integrated design~~ shall be individually counted as a study.

- HVAC systems;
- Impact on overall building from seismic structural systems;
- Electrical lighting;
- Electrical power distribution;
- Flooring systems;
- Exterior closure;
- Fenestration;
- Solar panels; and
- Water distribution.

Table T1.~~4~~3 Number of LCCA Studies by Size of Courthouse

Number of Courtrooms	≤4	5–7	8–14	>14
Number of LCCA Studies Expected	1–2	2–3	2–4	3–5

10. Conducting an LCCA

An important aspect in LCCA is identifying appropriate alternatives and establishing good cost data.

Step 1: Identify alternatives.
The types of alternatives considered depend on the creativity of the design and management teams. The baseline and alternatives should represent a wide range of solutions to the identified objectives. It is often helpful to use an interdisciplinary team during this stage to draw from a wide range of backgrounds, perspectives, and past experiences. Developing specific criteria to measure the effectiveness of the proposed alternatives is also helpful. ~~Implementation of CALGreen Tier 1 Nonresidential Voluntary Measures should be evaluated as design options against a baseline code-compliant design.~~

Step 2: Define parameters.
The discount rate (3.25 percent) and analysis period (30 years) are defined by the Judicial Council. Any variations must be approved before an LCCA may be conducted.

Life expectancies for individual elements or components being studied are expected to be defined by the design or design-build team.

Differential escalation rates for energy are built into the LCCA Excel spreadsheet form (and the Building Life Cycle Cost (BLCC) program) and are a function of the fuel type being consumed. Escalation rates for all other components of the analysis are up to the design or design-build team.

Step 3: Identify costs and savings.
Typically, two types of costs—nonrecurring and recurring—must be estimated. A nonrecurring cost appears as a lump sum cost in the present or at a fixed point in the future. An example of a nonrecurring cost is the capital expenditure for a new high-efficiency chiller unit.

Recurring costs are paid out periodically over the lifetime of the facility. An example of a recurring cost is a capital cost that is expected to occur in the future. Repair or maintenance costs that occur on a regular basis are also considered to be recurring costs.

Step 4: Document baseline and alternatives.
Assumptions and cost information should be documented, along with eventual recommendations. The evaluation form shown in table T1.54 provides an approach. Most efforts can be defined on a single page.

Step 5: Perform the LCCA.
Use the Excel spreadsheet provided by the Judicial Council to prepare an analysis for the system being evaluated. Alternatively, the BLCC program can be used. See table T1.65 for instructions, followed by table T1.67 and figure T1.2 for an example project.

Step 6: Provide documentation for review and acceptance.
Provide forms; exhibits, as necessary; and the Excel spreadsheet—all in PDF form.

REQUIRED TOOLS

T1 LIFE CYCLE COST ANALYSIS
T1.A Purpose

~~T2 Catalog of Courtroom Layouts for California Trial Courts~~
T3 Integrated Network Architecture
T4 Graphical User Interface Template
T5 In-Custody Interview Room Guidelines
T6 Building Management System Guidelines

Commented [YR5]: Reiterating per Chapter 1 as an expectation.

Commented [DP5R2]: Please don't reiterate. Also, see the edits in chapter 1.

T1.C PERFORMING LCCA

1. Overview

The life cycle cost analysis worksheet is a simple spreadsheet for use in comparing up to three options against a baseline design case to determine financial performance and life cycle cost. This spreadsheet is useful for identifying options for further study. It is not intended to provide a complete and detailed study, especially one representing cash flow.

2. Limitations

The spreadsheet does not consider effects of depreciation, tax alternatives, variable escalation of interest rates over a period of time, or other factors that may change the valuation or payback of an asset. It is suggested that studies be limited to a maximum 40-year cycle and whole percentage escalation rates from 5 to~~up to 5 to~~ 7 percent.

Commented [LD6]: Or "from 5 to 7 percent."

Commented [DP6R2]: Edited per intent.

3. Reporting

Reports are formatted for printing and presentation on 8.5″ × 11″ paper in landscape format. Two pages total are provided for presentation. Normally, only the results from the template pages are presented for use.

The output is provided in a format that meets most Judicial Council, General Services Administration, and other federal requirements for analysis.

4. Basics

Macros must be enabled for the spreadsheet to function properly. If some of the cells indicate *?NAME#*, macros have not been activated in the spreadsheet. Also, some cells may display *#DIV/0!* before key data ~~are~~ is entered. These codes will disappear when data ~~are~~ is entered.

A baseline design condition or scope of work must be entered for comparison and evaluation. Payback ~~Period~~period, ~~Net~~ net ~~Savings~~savings, and other items are calculated relative to the value of the baseline condition. All worksheets are protected, and data ~~are~~ is to be entered in the pale blue cells. Results are provided as tabular comparisons and graphical representations of total cost of ownership.

5. Contents

Table T1.6~~5~~ provides instructions for completing the life cycle cost analysis worksheet. An example project worksheet is provided after the instructions.

~~Table T1.4 Life Cycle Cost Analysis Evaluation Form~~

Table T1.5 Life Cycle Cost Analysis Evaluation Form

LCCA EVALUATION FORM
System Evaluated:
Describe baseline system as currently considered:
Define Alternative 1:
Define Alternative 2:
Define Alternative 3:
RECOMMENDATION & RATIONALE SUMMARY
Identify recommended approach:
Define key advantages:
Assess any disadvantages:
ATTACH APPROPRIATE EXHIBITS AND LCCA SPREADSHEET RESULTS

Table T1.~~5~~6 LCC General Purpose Worksheet Instructions

Contents		
Worksheets include:		
READ FIRST—An introduction and summary of features and instructions for use		
Present Value (PV) Annuity—Calculation table of PV factors for an escalated equal annuity series used in support of main sheet		
LCC-Form Template—Blank template for use		
Sample Analysis—Completed spreadsheet sample for reference		
LCC-Form Template HIDE—Hidden version of template sheet for recovery, if main sheet is accidentally deleted or corrupted		
For Further Study		
Architect's Essentials of Cost Management by Michael D. Dell'Isola, ISBN 0-471-44359-X		
Life Cycle Costing for Facilities by Alphonse J. Dell'Isola and Stephen J. Kirk, ISBN 0-87629-702-5		
Instructions		
Instructions for use are presented by specific worksheet as listed below starting with Read First.		
General Economic Notes		
It is suggested that the user conduct the study using *constant dollars*, where the purchasing power of the dollar is held constant as of the date of the study, and *discount rates* are "real," excluding general inflation. Thus, an item costing $1,000 today would be replaced in the future at $1,000. Any real escalation or de-escalation is handled separately. If the user wishes to operate in *current* dollars, then future expenditures must be inflated individually, and the discount rate must be increased to include general inflation. The results are nearly identical unless inflation rates are extreme—over 15 percent.		
Worksheet	**Cell Reference**	**Required Information**
General		Cells with a light ~~grey~~ gray background are for entry of information for the analysis. The background color of the cells may be removed or changed following data entry.
		DO NOT ADD ANY ROWS ABOVE ROW 6
Worksheet Protection		The worksheets are protected against accidental overwriting or deletion of ~~formulae~~formulas. There is no password for the protection; it may be turned off (via Tools > Protection > Unprotect Sheet) to allow changes in formatting, if desired.
READ FIRST		No specific entry required.
PV Annuity	M2	Input Discount Rate. This sheet does not affect the calculations on the template or sample workbooks. These sheets are provided purely for reference~~,~~ to show in tabular form the PV factors and effects.
PV Single	M2	Input Discount Rate. This sheet does not affect the calculations on the template or sample workbooks. These sheets are provided purely for reference~~,~~ to show in tabular form the PV factors and effects.
LCC-Form Template		Copies of the template can be made for various alternatives and added as new worksheets to the file.

Table T1.5 continues on next page

~~**Table T1.5 LCC General Purpose Worksheet Instructions** *continued*~~

Table T1.6~~5~~ LCC General Purpose Worksheet Instructions *continued*

Worksheet	Cell Reference	Required Information
Option Names	K1, M1, O1, Q1	Input Option Names and Titles. Names of the Base Design and Options will be presented on the graphs and printed reports.
Project	C2	Input Project.
Title	D3	Input title of study and report.
Discount Rate	D4	Input Discount Rate for the study. This rate is 3.~~25~~ 25 percent, as required by the Judicial Council. Alternative rates must be approved before the study. Note: This requirement assumes a "real" discount rate exclusive of inflation.
Date	G4	Input date of study.
Study Period	D5	Input period of analysis in years as a whole number—40 years maximum. Note that the Judicial Council requires a study period of 30 years. Alternative periods must be approved before the study.
Energy Location	G5	Dropdown menu for energy location for the study. Choose "West Commercial" as required by the Judicial Council. Energy escalation will be calculated from Federal Energy Management Program (FEMP)~~FEMP~~ data. Alternative rates must be approved before the study.
Initial Costs	Rows 7–16	Input description of cost items and first costs for various options considered. Costs are entered in columns K, M, O, and Q for the various items. Multiple cost items may be added to reach the total first cost of the various options. Since these items are first cost and not subject to the financial analysis and discounting procedure, they should sum to the value of the work being estimated. Use the Escalation Factor for initial costs only when directed.
Replacement Costs	Rows 21–30	Input description of cost items and current costs for various options considered. These items are generally SINGLE (not annual) expenditures during the life of the study. Enter either year of replacement for single-cost item *OR* number of years between replacement or upgrades to equipment and materials being provided in columns G or H. Only one of these values can be provided for each cost item. Enter assumed escalation or inflation rate for the study period in column I. This is to be an approximate value that will be applied for the entire period of the study. Costs for work items are entered in columns K, M, O, and Q for the various items. Multiple-cost items may be added to reach the total first cost of the various options. These values are entered as current market value and will be escalated to account for inflation and discounted based on the provided Discount Rate. Assumed salvage or residual value may be included here as a negative number. If the value results in a negative PV cost in this category, the graph will show

Table T1.5 continues on next page

Table T1.~~6~~5 LCC General Purpose Worksheet Instructions *continued*

Worksheet	Cell Reference	Required Information
Annual Costs	Rows 34–45	Input description of cost items and current costs for various options considered. These items are generally recurring annual costs. Examples include annual energy usage costs, annual recurring maintenance costs, filter changes, and other costs that are incurred over the life of the asset. Escalation Rates: Energy costs can be escalated using ~~the Federal Energy Management Program (~~FEMP~~)~~. Select from the dropdown menu in column F. Other Annual Costs such as maintenance or special energy costs separate from FEMP can have escalation entered as a numeric percentage in column I. For any annual cost, differing start/stop years can be used. This approach is most appropriate for maintenance costs, which can vary from year to year. Costs for work items are entered in columns K, M, O, and Q for the various items. Multiple-cost items may be added to reach the total first cost of the various options. These values are entered as current market value and will be escalated to account for inflation and discounted based on the provided Discount Rate.
Building Metrics	Rows 56–58	Input building information relative to size and number of seats or occupants.
Operation Cost Sensitivity	Row 64	Normally self-calculating. In cases where fewer than three options are being presented, the ~~formula~~formulas in these cells will need to be manually adjusted. These cells calculate an average of the operations expenditures and compare each of the alternatives to one another. A factor higher than 1 means that the present value will be affected by a change in annual (or energy) costs more than other options. A value below 1 means that the option will be less affected by a change in annual (or energy) costs. *One or more of these values should ALWAYS be less than 1. If this is not the case, the formula reference to the "0" value cell must be removed to avoid incorrectly lowering the average.*
Summary and Recommendations	H97	Enter a brief description of summary conclusions from the analysis.

~~Table T1.6 Example Project~~
Table T1.7 Example Project

LCCA EVALUATION FORM
System Evaluated: Evaluate different mechanical systems to determine the best system for the facility, including initial cost, maintenance cost, and efficiency.
Describe baseline system as currently considered: VAV with current central plant efficiency Variable air volume (VAV) air handlers use an energy recovery wheel to precondition outside air. Variable volume terminal units use 140°F to 180°F hot water for reheat. The existing chiller plant capacity will be increased with no efficiency changes.
Define Alternative 1: Decoupled with current central plant efficiency Dedicated outside air units will provide the code minimum of fresh air or makeup air to spaces. Dedicated outside air will be at lower temperatures to help offset some of the cooling loads. Multiple 4four-pipe fan coil units will provide individual space conditioning for both heating and cooling.
Define Alternative 2: Decoupled + displacement ventilation with current central plant efficiency In addition to Alternative 1, displacement ventilation systems would be used for air distribution in tall spaces and concourses. Ventilation systems will be routed under the floor to air devices in double-height ~~spaces~~ or taller spaces. Assume most air devices from the displacement ventilation systems will be custom style integrated into architectural design.
Define Alternative 3: Decoupled + displacement ventilation with current central plant efficiency and wider comfort definition See Alternatives 1 and 2 above for descriptions that would use 75°F cooling and 72°F heating space temperatures. Alternative 3 would evaluate cooling temperatures up to 76°F and heating temperatures down to 68°F. Alternative 3 would use spot fans to provide localized air movement.
RECOMMENDATION & RATIONALE SUMMARY
Identify recommended approach: Recommend that the new facility heating, ventilation, and air-conditioning (HVAC) systems use Alternative 2 with a combination of decoupled + displacement ventilation with current central plant efficiency.
Define key advantages: • Lowest energy costs and life cycle costs
Assess any disadvantages: • Slightly higher installation costs
ATTACH APPROPRIATE EXHIBITS AND LCCA SPREADSHEET RESULTS

REQUIRED TOOLS

T1 LIFE CYCLE COST ANALYSIS
T1.A Purpose
T1.B Principles

T2 Catalog of Courtroom Layouts for California Trial Courts
T3 Integrated Network Architecture
T4 Graphical User Interface Template
T5 In-Custody Interview Room Guidelines
T6 Building Management System Guidelines

Figure T1.2 Life Cycle Study Template

Life Cycle Cost Analysis - General Purpose Worksheet

						Base Design		Option 1		Option 2		Option 3	
						VAV with current central plant efficiency		Decoupled with current central plant (CP) efficiency		Decoupled + displacement ventilation with current CP efficiency		Decoupled + displacement ventilation with current CP efficiency and wider comfort definition	
Project:	Large Scale Facility Example												
Study Title:	Evaluate different mechanical systems												
Discount Rate :	3.25%	Date:	May 1, 2020			Estimated Costs	Present Value	Estimated Costs	Present Value	Estimated Costs	Present Value	Estimated Costs	Present Value
Study Period (Yrs.)	30	Energy Loc:	West Commercial										
Capital Expenditures (CAPEX)	Initial / First / Collateral Costs			Year	Inf/Esc Rate	PV Fact.							
A.	VAV current eff. initial costs						10,136,400	10,136,400					
B.	Decoupled w/ current initial costs								10,773,000	10,773,000			
C.	Dec+Disp initial costs										11,211,800	11,211,800	
D.	Dec+Disp, comfort initial costs												11,237,800	11,237,800
E.														
F.														
G.														
H.														
I.														
J.														
Total Initial/Collateral Costs							$10,136,400	$10,136,400	$10,773,000	$10,773,000	$11,211,800	$11,211,800	$11,237,800	$11,237,800
Difference										($636,600		($1,075,400)		($1,101,400)
Operations Expenditures (OPEX)	Replacement / Salvage (Single Expenditures)			Occurrence Year -or- Cycle	Inflation/ Escal. Rate	PV Factor								
A.	Misc Repairs			5		3.174	400,000	1,269,768	425,000	1,349,128				
B.	Misc Repairs			10		1.254					500,000	626,872	520,000	651,947
C.	Misc Replacements			15		0.619			14,000	8,665	21,000	12,998	23,000	14,236
D.	Misc Replacements			20		0.527								
E.	Misc Replacements			25		0.450								
F.														
G.														
H.														
I.														
J.														
Total Replacement/Salvage Costs								$1,269,768		$1,357,794		$639,869		$666,182
	Annual Costs	Energy Type		Years Start	Years Stop	Inflation/ Escal. Rate	PV Factor							
	Energy (Using FEMP Escalation):													
A.	Annual Energy	Electricity		1	30	-0.02%	18.933	452,800	8,572,715	382,900	7,249,321	215,800	4,085,671	210,000	3,975,862
B.														
C.														
D.														
E.														
	Other Annual Costs (Enter Escalation Rate):													
F.	Annual Maintenance / Service			1	30	0.5%	20.286	112,000	2,272,001	144,000	2,921,144	144,000	2,921,144	144,000	2,921,144
G.														
H.														
I.														
J.														
K.														
Total Annual Costs								$564,800	$10,844,716	$526,900	$10,170,465	$359,800	$7,006,815	$354,000	$6,897,005
Sub-Total Replacement/Salvage + Annual Costs (Present Value)									$12,114,484		$11,528,258		$7,646,684		$7,563,188
Difference - Compared to Base Design											$586,225		$4,467,799		$4,551,296
Life Cycle Cost	**Total Life Cycle Costs (Present Value)**								$22,250,884		$22,301,258		$18,858,484		$18,800,988
	Difference - Life Cycle Cost PV Compared to Base Design														
	Payback - Simple Discounted (Added Cost / Annualized Savings)										NA		4.6 Yrs.		4.6 Yrs.
	Payback - Fully Discounted (Added Cost+Interest / Annualized Savings)										NA		5.0 Yrs.		5.1 Yrs.
	Total Life Cycle Costs — Annualized							Per Year		Per Year		Per Year		Per Year	

Commented [LD7]: Are the dashes in this and the two cells above minus signs? If not, change to em dashes.

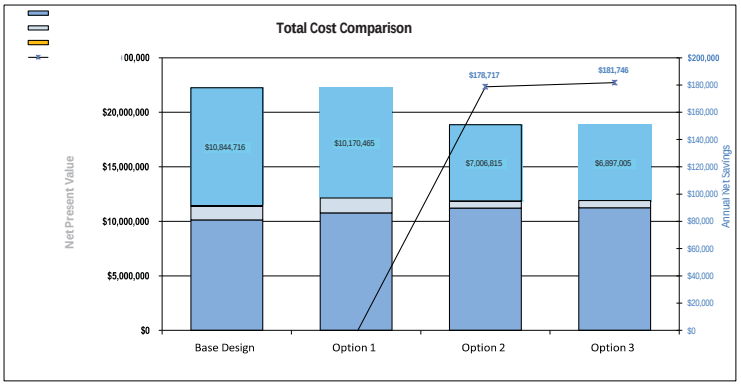
Commented [DP7R2]: They are not minus signs. Gensler: change to em dashes.

Life Cycle Cost Analysis - General Purpose Worksheet

Project:	Large Scale Facility Example
Study Title:	Evaluate different mechanical systems

	Base Design	*Option 1*	*Option 2*	*Option 3*
	VAV with current central plant efficiency	*Decoupled with current central plant efficiency*	*Decoupled + displacement ventilation with current CP efficiency*	*Decoupled + displacement ventilation with current CP efficiency and wider comfort definition*
Other Comparison Metrics				
Total Building Gross Square Footage	70,000			
Total Building Net Usable Footage	50,000			
Total Seats or Occupants	400			
PV per GSF	$ 317.87	$ 318.59	$ 269.41	$ 268.59
PV per NSF	$ 445.02	$ 446.03	$ 377.17	$ 376.02
PV per Seat	$ 55,627.21	$ 55,753.15	$ 47,146.21	$ 47,002.47
Annual Cost per Seat	$2,930.54	$2,937.17	$2,483.74	$2,476.17
First Cost (CAPEX) per GSF	$ 144.81	$ 153.90	$ 160.17	$ 160.54
Present Value Operations Expense (OPEX) per NSF	$ 242.29	$ 230.57	$ 152.93	$ 151.26
Ratio OPEX to CAPEX	1.67	1.50	0.95	0.94
Operation Cost Sensitivity		1.17	0.80	0.79

Definition: Ratio of annual operations costs to average of all options. Factor higher than 1 means present value will be affected by a change in annual (or energy) costs more than other options. Value below 1 means option will be less affected by a change.



Summary and Recommendations:

Recommend the new ~~Facility~~ facility HVAC systems use Alternative 2 with a combination of decoupled + displacement ventilation with current central plant
efficiency. Although it has a slightly higher installation cost, it has the lowest energy costs and life cycle costs.

~~Reference~~ Table T1.8: Economic Life of Building Components in MasterFormat

Source Reference Key

Ref	Source	Abbreviation
[1]	CPUC Database for Energy Efficiency Resources	DEER
[2]	ASHRAE Public Service Life Database	ASHRAE
[3]	BOMA via University of Illinois PDF	BOMA
[4]	Marshall Swift Life Expectancy Guidelines	MS
[5]	National Renewable Energy Laboratory Reports	NREL
[6]	California Counties Property Insurance Authority	CCPIA
[7]	Engineering Judgment (Professional Practice)	EJ

PROCUREMENT & CONTRACTING (Divs. 00—01)

MasterFormat	Division Title	EUL (Years)	Notes	Source
00	Procurement & Contracting	N/A	Not applicable for EUL	N/A
01	General Requirements	N/A	Not applicable for EUL	N/A

FACILITY CONSTRUCTION (Divs. 02—14)

Division 02—~~-~~—Existing Conditions

MasterFormat	Division Title	EUL (Years)	Notes	Source
02 41	Demolition	N/A	One-time activity	N/A
02 82—83	Hazardous Material Remediation	N/A	One-time activity	N/A

Division 03—~~-~~—Concrete

MasterFormat	Division Title	EUL (Years)	Notes	Source
03 30	Cast-in-Place Concrete	30—50+	Structural elements	[3]
03 35	Concrete Finishing	30+	Polished concrete	[3]
03 38	Post-Tensioned Concrete	30+	Based on CIP concrete	[3,7]
03 40	Precast Concrete	50—100	Panels and structural	[3]
03 53	Concrete Topping	20—30		[3,4]

Division 04—~~-~~—Masonry

MasterFormat	Division Title	EUL (Years)	Notes	Source
04 20	Unit Masonry	30+	CMU, brick	[3]
04 21	Clay Brick	30—100	Veneer systems	[3]
04 40	Stone Assemblies	30—50+	Natural stone	[3]
04 71	Manufactured Masonry	30+		[3]

Division 05—~~-~~—Metals

MasterFormat	Division Title	EUL (Years)	Notes	Source

05 12	Structural Steel	30+	Framing	[3]
05 21	Steel Joists	30+		[3]
05 30	Metal Decking	30+		[3,4]
05 40	Cold-Formed Metal	25–30	Light gauge framing	[3]
05 50	Metal Fabrications	20–30	Stairs, railings	[3]
05 52	Railings	20–25		[3]

Division 06—Wood, Plastics, Composites

MasterFormat	Division Title	EUL (Years)	Notes	Source
06 10	Rough Carpentry	20–30	Framing	[3]
06 13	Heavy Timber	30–75+	Mass timber/CLT	[3,7]
06 20	Finish Carpentry	15–30	Trim, millwork	[3]
06 40	Architectural Woodwork	20–30	Casework	[3]

Division 07—Thermal & Moisture Protection

MasterFormat	Division Title	EUL (Years)	Notes	Source
07 10	Dampproofing/Waterproofing	10–25		[3]
07 21	Insulation	20–30	Standard types	[3]
07 21 29	Spray Foam	30+		[3,7]
07 26-27	Air/Vapor Barriers	30		[3,7]
07 31-33	Shingles & Tiles	15–50	Varies by material	[3]
07 41	Metal Roofing	30–50	Standing seam	[3]
07 51	Built-Up Roofing	17–20	BUR systems	[3]
07 52	Modified Bitumen	15–20		[3]
07 53-54	Single-Ply	15–25	EPDM, TPO, PVC	[3]
07 55	Green Roofs	30–40	Vegetated systems	[6,7]
07 60	Flashing & Sheet Metal	20–30		[3]
07 71	Roof Accessories	20–25	Gutters, downspouts	[3]
07 92	Joint Sealants	5–20	Caulking	[3]

Division 08—Openings

MasterFormat	Division Title	EUL (Years)	Notes	Source
08 11	Metal Doors/Frames	25–30	Hollow metal	[3]
08 14	Wood Doors	20–30	Interior/exterior	[3]
08 31-36	Access/Overhead Doors	15–20		[3]
08 41-44	Entrances/Storefronts	25–30	Aluminum systems	[3]
08 51-56	Windows	20–30	By material	[3]
08 71	Door Hardware	15–20	Locksets, closers	[3]
08 80	Glazing	20–30	Standard glass	[3]
08 88	Special Glazing	20–30	Electrochromic	[1,7]

Division 09—Finishes

MasterFormat	Division Title	EUL (Years)	Notes	Source
09 21	Plaster/Gypsum	20—30	Drywall systems	[3]
09 30	Tile	20—75	Ceramic, porcelain	[3]
09 51	Acoustical Ceilings	10—30		[3]
09 64	Wood Flooring	20—100		[3]
09 65	Resilient Flooring	10—20	VCT, LVT, rubber	[3]
09 68	Carpet	5—10	Tile or broadloom	[3]
09 72	Wall Coverings	7—15	Vinyl, fabric	[3]
09 91	Paint	5—10	Interior/exterior	[3]

Division 10—Specialties

MasterFormat	Division Title	EUL (Years)	Notes	Source
10 11—14	Visual Display	10—20	Boards, directories	[3,7]
10 21	Compartments/Cubicles	15—20	Toilet partitions	[3]
10 22	Partitions	15—20	Operable, demountable	[3,7]
10 28	Toilet Accessories	15—20		[3]
10 44	Fire Protection	10—20	Extinguishers/cabinets	[3]
10 51—57	Lockers/Storage	20—25		[3]

Division 11—Equipment

MasterFormat	Division Title	EUL (Years)	Notes	Source
11 12—14	Parking/Loading	10—20	Gates, equipment	[3,7]
11 30	Commercial Equipment	10—20		[3]
11 40	Food Service	10—15	Kitchen equipment	[1,3]
11 53	Laboratory	10—15		[3,7]
11 57	Vocational/EV	10—15	EV chargers	[1,5]

Division 12—Furnishings

MasterFormat	Division Title	EUL (Years)	Notes	Source
12 21	Window Treatments	10—15	Blinds, shades	[3]
12 30	Casework	20—25	Fixed casework	[3]
12 50	Furniture	15—20	Systems furniture	[3,7]
12 60	Multiple Seating	10—20	Fixed seating	[3]

Division 13—Special Construction

MasterFormat	Division Title	EUL (Years)	Notes	Source
13 11	Swimming Pools	20—30		[3]
13 21	Controlled Environments	15—20	Clean rooms	[3,7]
13 34	Fabricated Structures	20—30	Pre-engineered	[4,7]
13 36	Solar Structures	30—40	Carports/canopies	[1,5]

Division 14—Conveying Equipment

MasterFormat	Division Title	EUL (Years)	Notes	Source
14 20	Elevators	20–35	By type	[3]
14 24	Dumbwaiters	20–25		[3,7]
14 31	Escalators	30–35		[3]
14 32	Moving Walks	25–30		[3,7]
14 42	Wheelchair Lifts	15–20		[3,7]
14 91	Facility Chutes	20–30	Trash, linen	[3,7]

FACILITY SERVICES (Divs. 21—29)

Division 21—Fire Suppression

MasterFormat	Division Title	EUL (Years)	Notes	Source
21 10	Water-Based Systems	25–30+	Sprinklers	[3]
21 20	Fire Pumps	20–25		[3]
21 22	Clean Agent	20	Special suppression	[3,7]
21 30	Fire Extinguishers	10–20		[3]

Division 22—Plumbing

MasterFormat	Division Title	EUL (Years)	Notes	Source
22 05	Common Work Results	15–30	Valves, supports	[3]
22 11—13	Facility Water	20–50	Piping by material	[3]
22 14	Storm Drainage	30+		[3]
22 30	Water Treatment	10–20		[1,3]
22 33—34	Water Heaters	10–20	By type	[1,2]
22 40	Fixtures	20–25		[3]

Division 23—HVAC

MasterFormat	Division Title	EUL (Years)	Notes	Source
23 00	HVAC General	N/A	Primary sources	[1,2]
23 05	Common Work	20–30	Piping, insulation	[2,3]
23 07	Insulation	20		[2,3]
23 09	Controls	10-15	BMS, DDC	[1,2]
23 09 23	Smart HVAC Controls	10–12	IoT, AI-based	[1,7]
23 21–23	Hydronic/Refrigerant	25–30	Piping systems	[2,3]
23 31—38	Air Distribution	15–30+	Ducts, fans	[2,3]
23 34 23	Variable-Speed Fans	20–25	EC motors, VFD	[1,2]
23 40	Air Treatment	10–20	Filters, UV	[1,2]
23 52	Heating Boilers	25–35	Cast iron, steel	[1,2]
23 52 16	Condensing Boilers	20–25	High efficiency >90%	[1,2]
23 54	Furnaces	15–20	Standard efficiency	[1,2]
23 54 16	High-Efficiency Furnaces	18–22	>95% AFUE	[1,2]
23 56	Solar Heating	20–25	Thermal collectors	[1,5]

23 57	Heat Exchangers	20–25	Plate, shell & tube	[1,2]
23 61	Refrigerant Compressors	20–25	Chillers	[1,2]
23 62	Packaged Compressor/Condenser	15–20	Standard efficiency	[1,2]
23 62 23	High-Efficiency Chillers	20–23	Magnetic bearing, VFD	[1,2]
23 64	Packaged Water Chillers	20–23	Water-cooled	[1,2]
23 65	Cooling Towers	20–25		[1,2]
23 70	Central HVAC Equipment	20–30	AHUs, RTUs	[1,2]
23 72	Air-to-Air Energy Recovery	15–20	ERV, HRV	[1,2]
23 81	Decentralized HVAC	12–20	Split systems, VRF	[1,2]
23 81 13	Packaged Terminal Units	12–15	PTAC, PTHP	[1,2]
23 81 16	Air-Source Heat Pumps	15–18	Standard efficiency	[1,2]
23 81 19	High-Efficiency Heat Pumps	18–20	Cold-climate, >HSPF 10	[1,2]
23 82	Convection Heating/Cooling	15–25	Fan coils, radiators	[1,2]
23 83	Radiant Heating/Cooling	25–40	In-floor, panel	[1,2]
23 84	Ground-Source Heat Pumps	20–25	Geothermal, loops 50+ yrs	[1,5]

Division 24 – Reserved

MasterFormat	Division Title	EUL (Years)	Notes	Source
24	Reserved	N/A		N/A

Division 25 – Integrated Automation

MasterFormat	Division Title	EUL (Years)	Notes	Source
25 00	Building Automation	10–15	BAS, BMS	[1,3]
25 30	Detection Devices	7–15	Sensors	[1,3]
25 50	Integrated Controls	10–15		[1,7]

Division 26 – Electrical

MasterFormat	Division Title	EUL (Years)	Notes	Source
26 01	Operation/Maintenance	N/A		N/A
26 05	Common Work	30+	Conduit, wiring	[3]
26 09	Lighting Controls	10–15	Occupancy, daylight	[1,3]
26 09 23	Lighting Networked Controls	10–12	Smart, IoT-based	[1,7]
26 10	Grounding	30+		[3]
26 20	Low-Voltage Distribution	25–35		[3]
26 22	Transformers	30–35	Dry-type, liquid	[3]
26 22 13	High-Efficiency Transformers	30–35	>98% efficiency	[1,3]
26 24	Switchboards/Panelboards	25–35		[3]
26 27	Wiring Devices	20–30	Receptacles, switches	[3]
26 28	Motor Starters	15–20	Standard across-line	[1,3]
26 29	Variable Frequency Drives	10–15	VFDs for motors	[1,2]
26 31	Photovoltaic Collectors	25–30	PV panels/modules	[1,5]
26 32	PV Inverters	10–15	String, micro, central	[1,5]

26 32 23	Central PV Inverters	12–15	Utility -scale	[1,5]
26 33	Battery Energy Storage	10–15	Li -ion, flow battery	[1,5]
26 33 53	Static UPS	10–15	Uninterruptible power	[1,3]
26 35	Generators	20–30	Diesel, natural gas	[3]
26 36	Transfer Switches	25–30	Automatic	[3]
26 37	Alternative Energy	20	Wind turbines	[1,5]
26 41	Lightning Protection	20–30		[3]
26 43	Surge Protection	10–15	SPDs	[1,3]
26 51	Interior Lighting	15–20	Fixtures	[1,3]
26 51 13	LED Interior Lighting	15–20	High efficiency	[1,3]
26 51 19	LED Linear Lighting	18–22	Industrial, commercial	[1,3]
26 52	Emergency Lighting	10–15	Battery backup	[1,3]
26 55	Special Purpose Lighting	10–20	Task, accent	[1,3]
26 56	Exterior Lighting	15–20	Site, parking	[1,3]
26 56 13	LED Site Lighting	15–20	Area, roadway	[1,3]

Division 27—Communications

MasterFormat	Division Title	EUL (Years)	Notes	Source
27 00	Communications General	5–15		[3,7]
27 10	Structured Cabling	10–15	Cat 6, fiber	[3]
27 20	Data Networks	5–10	Active equipment	[3,7]
27 30	Voice Systems	7–10		[3,7]
27 40	A/V Systems	5–10		[3,7]
27 50	Sound Systems	10–15	Mass notification	[3,7]

Division 28—Electronic Safety & Security

MasterFormat	Division Title	EUL (Years)	Notes	Source
28 10	Access Control	10–15		[3,7]
28 13	Intrusion Detection	10–15		[3,7]
28 16	Video Surveillance	5–10	Cameras, NVR	[3,7]
28 31	Fire Alarm	15–20	Panels, devices	[3]

Division 29—Reserved

MasterFormat	Division Title	EUL (Years)	Notes	Source
29	Reserved	N/A		N/A

SITE & INFRASTRUCTURE (Divs. 31–35)

Division 31—Earthwork

MasterFormat	Division Title	EUL (Years)	Notes	Source
31 10	Site Clearing	N/A	One-time	N/A

31 20	Earth Moving	50+	Grading	[4,7]
31 31-32	Soil Treatment	20–30	Stabilization	[4,7]
31 60	Foundations	30–50+	Piles, caissons	[3]

Division 32—Exterior Improvements

MasterFormat	Division Title	EUL (Years)	Notes	Source
32 10	Bases/Paving	15–40	Asphalt, concrete	[3]
32 14	Unit Paving	20–50	Pavers, permeable	[3]
32 16	Curbs/Gutters	25–40		[3]
32 17	Recreational Surfaces	10–25		[3]
32 31	Fences/Gates	15–25	By material	[3]
32 32	Retaining Walls	30–40		[3]
32 33	Site Furnishings	10–20		[3,7]
32 80	Irrigation	15–20		[3]
32 90	Planting	10–15	Landscaping	[3]

Division 33—Utilities

MasterFormat	Division Title	EUL (Years)	Notes	Source
33 10	Water Utilities	30–80	Service lines	[3]
33 20	Wells	20–30		[3,7]
33 30	Sanitary Sewer	30–80		[3]
33 32	Lift Stations	15–20		[3,7]
33 40	Storm Drainage	30–75		[3]
33 46	Stormwater Treatment	20–25		[4,7]
33 50	Fuel Distribution	30–50	Natural gas	[3]
33 60	Hydronic/Steam	30–40	District energy	[3,7]
33 70	Electrical Utilities	30+	Underground	[3]
33 80	Communications	15–25	Site cabling	[3,7]

Division 34—Transportation

MasterFormat	Division Title	EUL (Years)	Notes	Source
34 10	Rails	N/A	Not typical	N/A
34 20	Traction Power	N/A	Not typical	N/A
34 40	Signals	10–15	Traffic signals	[3,7]
34 70	Vehicle Barriers	15–20		[3,7]

Division 35—Waterway & Marine

MasterFormat	Division Title	EUL (Years)	Notes	Source
35 20	Dredging	N/A	Not typical	N/A
35 50	Marine Construction	N/A	Not typical	N/A

Condition & Quality Multipliers

Environmental Conditions

Condition	Multiplier	MasterFormat Application
Coastal/Marine (<1 mile)	0.80	Div. 05 (Metals), 07 (Roofing/Enclosure), 08 (Openings), 22–23 (Plumbing/HVAC), 26 (Electrical), 31–35 (Site)
High Humidity (>70%)	0.85	Div. 26 (Electrical), 27 (Communications), 28 (Security)
Extreme Heat (>100°F)	0.90	Div. 07 (Roofing), 23 (HVAC), 26 51–56 (Lighting)
Extreme Cold (<0°F)	0.90	Div. 22 (Plumbing), 23 (HVAC), 33 (Site Utilities)
High UV Exposure	0.85	Div. 07 (Roofing/Waterproofing), 08 (Windows/Doors), 32 (Site Improvements)
Seismic Zone 4	0.95	Div. 03 (Concrete), 04 (Masonry), 05 (Metals), 14 (Conveying), 22–23 (Plumbing/HVAC), 26 (Electrical)

Usage Intensity

Condition	Multiplier	MasterFormat Application
24/7 OPERATION	0.85	Div. 22–28 (All MEP ~~s~~Systems)
Heavy Public Use	0.85	Div. 09 (Finishes), 14 (Elevators), 22, 40 (Fixtures)
Light Use (<40 hrs/week)	1.15	All ~~s~~Systems

Maintenance Program

Condition	Multiplier	MasterFormat Application
Predictive/CBM	1.20	Div. 23 (HVAC), 26 (Electrical)
Preventive	1.10	All ~~S~~systems
Reactive Only	0.85	All ~~S~~systems
Deferred	0.70	All ~~S~~systems

Quality Level

Condition	Multiplier	MasterFormat Application
Premium/Institutional	1.15	All ~~S~~systems
Commercial Standard	1.00	All ~~S~~systems
Economy	0.85	All ~~S~~systems

Technology Maturity

Condition	Multiplier	MasterFormat Application
Mature (>10 years)	1.10	Standard ~~S~~systems (~~A~~all ~~D~~divisions)
Proven (5–10 years)	1.00	Most ~~S~~systems (~~A~~all ~~D~~divisions)
Emerging (<5 years)	0.85	Div. 23–56 (Solar Thermal), 23, 70–83 (Advanced HVAC), 26, 33 (Battery Storage), 26 51–56 (LED/Smart Lighting)

Integration Level

Condition	Multiplier	MasterFormat Application
Fully Integrated BAS	1.15	Div. 23 (HVAC), 25 (Integrated Automation), 26 (Electrical)

Partial Integration	1.05	Div. 22–28 (MEP systems)
Stand-alone	1.00	All systems

California Specific

Condition	Multiplier	MasterFormat Application
Title 24 Compliant	1.05	Div. 23 (HVAC), 26 (Electrical)
LEED Gold+	1.10	All systems
Net Zero Energy	1.15	Div. 23, 56 (Solar Thermal), 26, 33 (Energy Storage), 26, 51–56 (Efficient Lighting)
Historic Building	0.90	All retrofit applications

How to Apply Multipliers

Step 1: Identify Base EUL

Look up the component in the main crosswalk table to find the base Expected Useful Life range.

Step 2: Identify Applicable Conditions

Review the project conditions and identify which multipliers apply from the tables above. Check the MasterFormat Application column to confirm the multiplier applies to your specific division.

Step 3: Calculate Adjusted EUL

Multiply the base EUL by all applicable multipliers:

Adjusted EUL = Base EUL × Multiplier_1 × Multiplier_2 × Multiplier_3...

Example:

- Component: Water-Cooled Centrifugal Chiller (MasterFormat 23 61)
- Base EUL: 20–23 years [1, 2]
- Conditions:
  - Coastal location (within 1 mile): 0.80
  - Preventive maintenance program: 1.10
  - Title 24 compliant: 1.05
- Calculation: 20 × 0.80 × 1.10 × 1.05 = **18.5 years**

Step 4: Document Assumptions

Record all multipliers applied and their justification in the facility condition assessment.

Multiplier Application Matrix by Division

Division	Typical Multipliers to Consider
03–06	Seismic, Quality Level, Maintenance
07	Coastal, UV, Extreme Temps, Quality Level
08	Coastal, UV, Usage, Quality Level
09	Usage, Quality Level, Maintenance
14	Seismic, Usage, Maintenance
22	Coastal, Extreme Cold, Usage, Maintenance, Quality
23	Coastal, Extreme Temps, 24/7 Operation, Maintenance, Integration, Title 24
25–26	High Humidity, Maintenance, Integration, Title 24, Technology Maturity

27—28	High Humidity, Technology Maturity, Maintenance
32—33	Coastal, UV, Extreme Temps, Quality Level

References

1. DEER database~~: https://cedars.cpuc.ca.gov/deer-resources/~~
2. ASHRAE public database~~: https://weblegacy.ashrae.org/publicdatabase/~~
3. BOMA (via University of Illinois)~~:~~ ~~https://icap.sustainability.illinois.edu/files/projectupdate/2289/Project%20Lifespan%20Estimates.pdf~~
4. Marshall Swift~~: https://www.reservedataanalyst.com/mt-content/uploads/2018/09/marshall-swift-life-expectacy-guidelines.pdf~~
1. ~~NREL Reports: https://www.nrel.gov/docs/~~
5. ~~CCPIA: https://ccpia.org/estimated-life-expectancy-chart-for-commercial-building-systems-and-components/~~
6.

Application Notes

- Use **DEER** [1] as primary source for all energy-related systems in California.
- Use **ASHRAE** [2] as primary source for all HVAC equipment.
- Use **BOMA** [3] as primary source for commercial building components.
- Use **Marshall Swift** [4] for cost estimating and general building components.
- Apply condition and quality multipliers from tables above based on actual facility conditions.
- Multipliers are cumulative—multiply all applicable factors together.
- Where published data does not exist or is insufficient, apply **Engineering Judgment (EJ)** [7] based on professional practice, manufacturer specifications, and comparable component analysis.

Citation Format

Component Name: XX–YY years [~~{~~Source1, Source2~~}~~]

Example:
Centrifugal Chiller (23 61): 20–23 years [1,2]
Adjusted: 18.5 years (Coastal 0.80, Preventive Mx 1.10, Title 24 1.05)

Commented [LD8]: Define abbreviations in this table?

Commented [DP8R2]: They are generally known and prevalent in the industry.

Commented [DP9]: Gensler: update link to this: https://www.energy.gov/ea/national-renewable-energy-laboratory

REQUIRED TOOLS

T2 CATALOG OF COURTROOM LAYOUTS FOR CALIFORNIA TRIAL COURTS

SECTION	TOPIC	PAGE
T2.A	Courtroom Layout Overview	T2.2
T2.B	Multipurpose Courtroom Templates	T2.4
T2.C	Courtroom Design Examples	T2.29
T2.D	Holding Core Templates	T2.45



Central Courthouse, County of San Diego
San Diego, CA
Skidmore, Owings & Merrill LLP

T2.A COURTROOM LAYOUT OVERVIEW

MULTIPURPOSE COURTROOM TEMPLATES

GROUP 1—CENTER BENCH

TEMPLATE NAME	TOTAL SQUARE FEET*	SPECTATOR SEATING CAPACITY†	PAGE
Typical Trial Courtroom—Center Bench A	1,850	48	T2.4
Typical Large Trial Courtroom—Center Bench A	2,050	71	T2.6
Typical Trial Courtroom—Center Bench B	1,950	51	T2.8
Typical Large Trial Courtroom—Center Bench B	2,250	74	T2.10
Center Bench A ~~with~~ With Holding Door Flipped	1,850	48	T2.12

Group 1 ~~A~~ Courtrooms A ~~A~~ use identical working areas, as do ~~B~~ Courtrooms B ~~B~~. They vary from one another in that either a smaller gallery and two adjoining attorney-client conference rooms can be provided in the footprint or a larger gallery without the conference rooms can be selected.

Commented [DP1]: Don't flip the order since we are using A and B at the end of the nomenclature.

GROUP 2—CORNER BENCH

TEMPLATE NAME	TOTAL SQUARE FEET*	SPECTATOR SEATING CAPACITY†	PAGE
Typical Trial Courtroom—Corner Bench A	1,796	48	T2.14
Typical Large Trial Courtroom—Corner Bench A	2,008	65	T2.16
Typical Trial Courtroom—Corner Bench B	2,056	48	T2.18
Typical Large Trial Courtroom—Corner Bench B	2,285	73	T2.20
Corner Bench ~~A~~ A W~~w~~ith Holding Door Flipped	1,796	48	T2.22

As with the center bench designs, Group 2 designs vary based on trade-offs between more gallery space and adjoining conference rooms. Corner bench designs are used in a number of California courthouses, and although they somewhat compromise ~~somewhat~~ the efficient ~~utilization~~ use of space in comparison with the center bench configuration, they are approved for use.

GROUP 3—CENTER BENCH, WIDE

TEMPLATE NAME	TOTAL SQUARE FEET*	SPECTATOR SEATING CAPACITY†	PAGE
Typical Large Trial Courtroom—Center Bench C	2,200	52	T2.24
Typical Large Trial Courtroom—Center Bench D	2,445	85	T2.26

These floor plans are significantly wider— but otherwise similar to the other center bench template designs— and can be considered when cases of unusual scale are routinely ~~routinely~~ encoun–tered in a specific jurisdiction.

COURTROOM DESIGN EXAMPLES

COURTROOM EXAMPLE	TOTAL SQUARE FEET*	SPECTATOR SEATING CAPACITY†	PAGE
San Diego Central Courthouse, Trial Courtroom, Center Bench	1,700	46	T2.30
San Bernardino Justice Center, Trial Courtroom, Corner Bench	1,700	50	T2.32
San Diego Central Courthouse, Large Trial Courtroom, Center Bench	2,100	98	T2.34
San Diego Central Courthouse, Double Jury Courtroom, Center Bench	2,100	64	T2.36
San Bernardino Justice Center, Double Jury Courtroom, Corner Bench	2,400	92	T2.38
San Diego Central Courthouse, Arraignment Courtroom, Center Bench	1,800	98	T2.40
San Diego Central Courthouse, Family Courtroom, Center Bench	1,700	46	T2.42

The Courtroom Design Examples are included as references from constructed projects. The layouts in these courtrooms are shown for illustrative purposes only.

HOLDING CORE TEMPLATES

	TOTAL SQUARE FEET*	TOTAL RATED CAPACITY	PAGE
Typical Holding Core—8″ CMU Walls	709	7	T2.46
Typical Holding Core—6″ CMU Walls	690	7	T2.47
Typical Holding Core—6″ CMU Walls and 2″ Metal Panel Walls at Holding	672	7	T2.48

* Includes ramp in corridor where applicable.

† Wheelchair spaces added to total spectator seating capacity.

CMU = concrete masonry unit.

REQUIRED TOOLS

T1 Life Cycle Cost Analysis

T2 CATALOG OF COURTROOM LAYOUTS FOR CALIFORNIA TRIAL COURTS

T2.B Multipurpose Courtroom Templates

T2.C Courtroom Design Examples

T2.D Holding Core Templates

T3 Integrated Network Architecture

T4 Graphical User Interface Template

T5 In-Custody Interview Room Guidelines

T6 Building Management System Guidelines

Commented [DP3]: Gensler: add this note.

T2.B MULTIPURPOSE COURTROOM TEMPLATES

Group 1—Center Bench
Typical Trial Courtroom—Center Bench A
Courtroom Component Information

COURTROOM TYPE	SQUARE FEET	SPECTATOR SEATING AT 18″	VOIR DIRE
Multipurpose Trial	1,850	46+2 WC	74

ELEMENT OR WORKSTATION	FURNITURE/ WIDTH	CASEWORK DEPTH	HEIGHT ABOVE FLOOR	NO. OF OCCUPANTS
Judge	6′6″/6′4″	2′0″/1′6″	+16″	1
Courtroom Clerk	12′0″	2′3″	+12″	2
Court Security Officer ~~(CSO)~~	4′0″	2′6″	+0″	1
Court Reporter	4′0″	2′0″	+0″	1
Witness Stand	5′0″	1′7″	+6″	2
Jury Box	N~~/~~A	N~~/~~A	(~~1st~~ Row 1) +0″ (R~~2nd~~ row 2) +6″	14
Counsel Tables	7′0″	3′0″	+0″	3 ea.
DEPS Cart	2′0″	2′0″	N~~/~~A	0
Lectern	2′6″	2′0″	N~~/~~A	0

DEPS = digital evidence presentation system.
NA = not applicable.
WC = wheelchairs.
~~DEPS = Digital Evidence Presentation System.~~

Key Attributes of Courtroom Layout

- Seventy-four seats for voir dire to provide maximum flexibility for trial use.
- Increase of judge's bench work surface from 6′ to 12′10″ long.
- Increase of work surface return at judge's bench from 10″ to 18″ deep.
- Access ramps outside courtroom.
- Judge's bench elevated 16″ to minimize need for ramping.
- Optimal sightlines for all participants.
- Multidefendant capable because of movable well components.
- Multiple locations for sidebar conferences (indicated with ✳ on schematic, next page).
- Exhibit storage table adjacent to clerk's workstation.
- Stairs to clerk's workstation area~~, which~~ that reduce width of courtroom.
- Efficient ~~Jury~~ jury box dimensions ~~are efficient and~~that control courtroom width.
- Adjustable-height work surfaces for judge and clerk.

Options provided:

- Alternative court security officer desk and evidence table locations.
- Movable lectern and court reporter's station that facilitate options for adding counsel tables.

Note:

- A court may adjust the combined ramp pitches from floor level to the bench to retain the bench height of 16″ while lowering the clerk floor height~~,~~ so long as the maximum pitch ~~utilized~~ used does not exceed a 1:12 ratio.

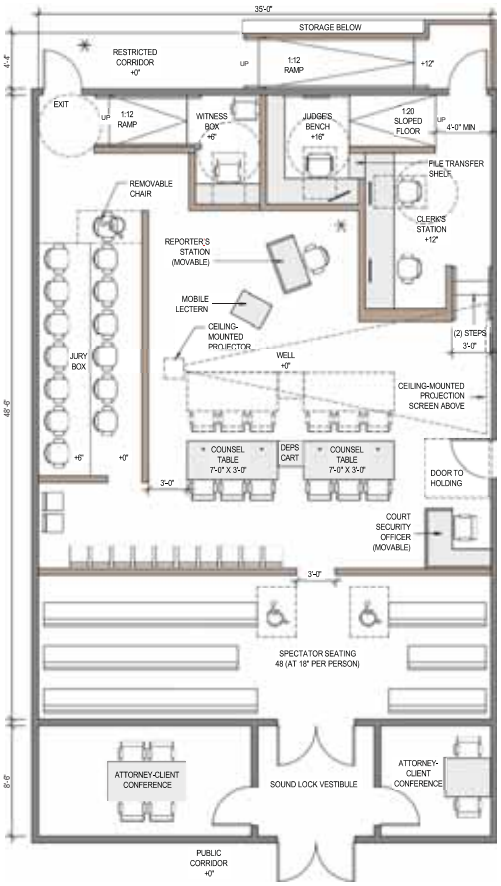


Figure T2.1 Typical Trial Courtroom—Center Bench A

REQUIRED TOOLS

T1 Life Cycle Cost Analysis

T2 CATALOG OF COURTROOM LAYOUTS FOR CALIFORNIA TRIAL COURTS

- T2.A Courtroom Layout Overview
- T2.B Multipurpose Courtroom Templates
- T2.C Courtroom Design Examples
- T2.D Holding Core Templates

T3 Integrated Network Architecture

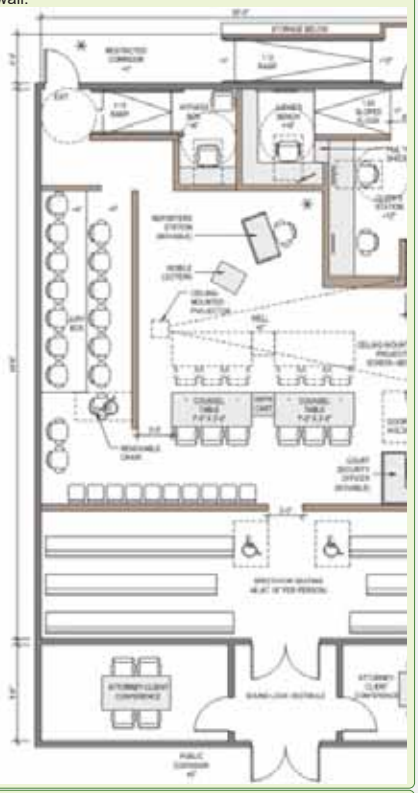
T4 Graphical User Interface Template

T5 In-Custody Interview Room Guidelines

T6 Building Management System Guidelines

Commented [DP4]: Gensler: vertically flip the jury box so that the wall is at the top and the wheel chair and opening are at the bottom. Do this to all the templates.

Commented [DP4R2]: Make the jury boxes look like this in the template plans of Group 1, Group 2, Group 3. The two extra chairs below the jury box should look like the movable attorney chairs on counsel table, not like the jury box chair or the chairs along the gallery wall.



Commented [DP5]: Gensler: the two chairs next to the jury box on the south need to look like the movable attorney table chairs. Change these chairs on all the templates.

Typical Large Trial Courtroom—Center Bench A
Courtroom Component Information

COURTROOM TYPE	SQUARE FEET	SPECTATOR SEATING (18")	VOIR DIRE
Multipurpose Large Trial	2,050	67+4 WC	97

ELEMENT OR WORKSTATION	FURNITURE/ WIDTH	CASEWORK DEPTH	HEIGHT ABOVE FLOOR	NO. OF OCCUPANTS
Judge	6′6″/6′4″	2′0″/1′6″	+16″	1
Courtroom Clerk	12′0″	2′3″	+12″	2
Court Security Officer	4′0″	2′6″	+0″	1
Court Reporter	4′0″	2′0″	+0″	1
Witness Stand	5′0″	1′7″	+6″	2
Jury Box	N~~/~~A	N~~/~~A	(R~~1st r~~ow 1) +0″ (~~2nd~~ R~~r~~ow 2) +6″	14
Counsel Tables	7′0″	3′0″	+0″	3 ea.
DEPS Cart	2′0″	2′0″	N~~/~~A	0
Lectern	2′6″	2′0″	N~~/~~A	0

DEPS = digital evidence presentation system.
NA = not applicable.
WC = wheelchairs.

Key Attributes of Courtroom Layout

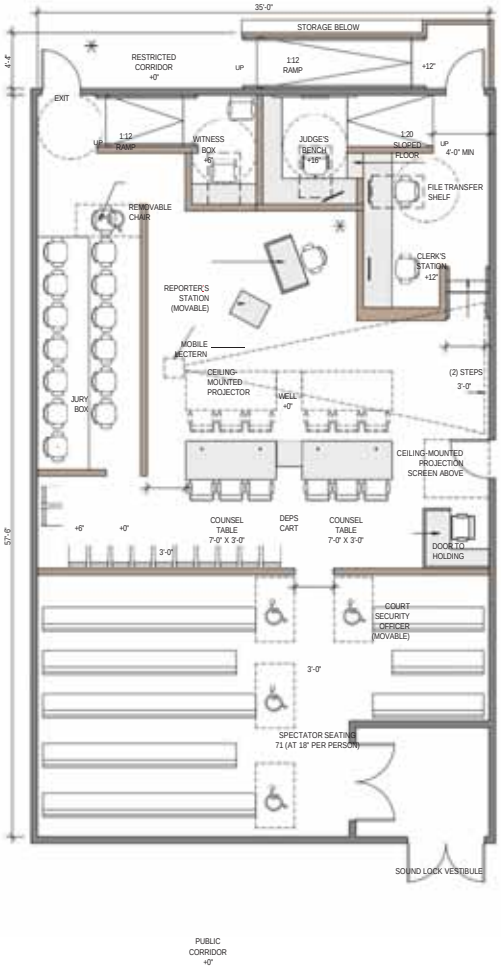
- Ninety-seven seats for voir dire to provide maximum flexibility for trial use.
- Multidefendant capable.
- Increase of judge's bench work surface from 6′ to 12′10″ long.
- Increase of work surface return at judge's bench from 10″ to 18″ deep.
- Judge's bench elevated 16″ to minimize need for ramping.
- Multiple locations for sidebar conferences (indicated with ✳ on schematic, next page).
- Optimal sightlines for all participants.
- Exhibit storage table adjacent to clerk's workstation.
- Adjustable-height work surfaces for judge and clerk.
- Increase of clerk's work surface from 10′ to 12′ long (two clerks).
- Jury box dimensions that are efficient and control courtroom width.
- Spectator seating increased by eliminating attorney-client conference rooms.

Options provided:

- Alternative court security officer desk and evidence table locations.
- Movable lectern and court reporter's station that facilitate options for adding counsel tables.

Note:

- A court may adjust the combined ramp pitches from floor level to the bench to retain the bench height of 16″ while lowering the clerk floor height~~,~~ so long as the maximum pitch ~~utilized~~ used does not exceed a 1:12 ratio.



DEPS = digital evidence presentation system.

Figure T2.2 Typical Large Trial Courtroom—Center Bench A

REQUIRED TOOLS

T1 Life Cycle Cost Analysis

T2 CATALOG OF COURTROOM LAYOUTS FOR CALIFORNIA TRIAL COURTS

T2.A Courtroom Layout Overview

T2.B Multipurpose Courtroom Templates

T2.C Courtroom Design Examples

T2.D Holding Core Templates

T3 Integrated Network Architecture

T4 Graphical User Interface Template

T5 In-Custody Interview Room Guidelines

T6 Building Management System Guidelines

Typical Trial Courtroom—Center Bench B
Courtroom Component Information

COURTROOM TYPE	SQUARE FEET	SPECTATOR SEATING (18")	VOIR DIRE
Multipurpose Trial	1,950	49+2 WC	747

ELEMENT OR WORKSTATION	FURNITURE/ WIDTH	CASEWORK DEPTH	HEIGHT ABOVE FLOOR	NO. OF OCCUPANTS
Judge	7'9"/6'4"	2'0"/1'6"	+16"	1
Courtroom Clerk	12'0"	2'3"	+12"	2
Court Security Officer	4'0"	2'6"	+0"	1
Court Reporter	4'0"	2'0"	+0"	1
Witness Stand	5'6"	1'7"	+6"	2
Jury Box	N/A	N/A	(R1st row 1) +0" (2nd Rrow 2) +6"	14
Counsel Tables	7'6"	3'0"	+0"	3 ea.
DEPS Cart	2'0"	2'0"	N/A	0
Lectern	2'6"	2'0"	N/A	0

DEPS = digital evidence presentation system.
NA = not applicable.
WC = wheelchairs.

Key Attributes of Courtroom Layout

- Seventy-four seats for voir dire to provide maximum flexibility for trial use.
- Multidefendant capable because of movable well components and increased courtroom width.
- Increase of judge's bench work surface from 6' to 14'1" long.
- Increase of work surface return at judge's bench from 10" to 18" deep.
- Judge's bench elevated 16" to minimize need for ramping.
- Multiple locations for sidebar conferences (indicated with * on schematic, next page).
- Optimal sightlines for all participants.
- Exhibit storage table adjacent to clerk's workstation.
- Increase of clerk's work surface from 10' to 12' long (two clerks).
- Stairs to clerk's workstation area, which reduce width of courtroom.
- Adjustable-height work surfaces for judge and clerk.
- Counsel tables providing for four seats at each table.
- Jury box dimensions that are efficient and control courtroom width.

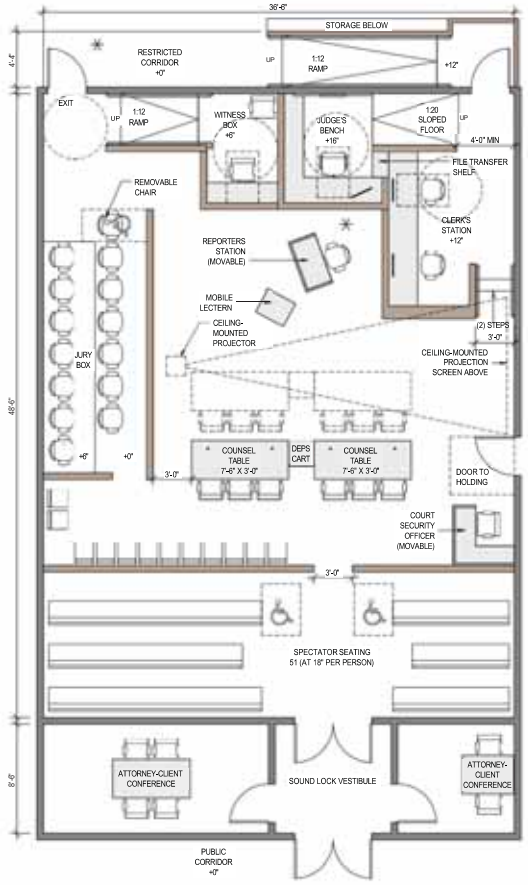
Options provided:

- Alternative court security officer desk and evidence table locations.
- Movable lectern and court reporter's station to facilitate options for adding counsel tables.

Note:

- A court may adjust the combined ramp pitches from floor level to the bench to retain the bench height of 16" while lowering the clerk floor height, so long as the maximum pitch utilized used does not exceed a 1:12 ratio.

Commented [LD6]: 74 below.
Commented [DP6R2]: Addressed the inconsistency.
Commented [LD7]: 77 in table.



DEPS = digital evidence presentation system.

Figure T2.3 Typical Trial Courtroom—Center Bench B

REQUIRED TOOLS

T1 Life Cycle Cost Analysis

T2 CATALOG OF COURTROOM LAYOUTS FOR CALIFORNIA TRIAL COURTS

T2.A Courtroom Layout Overview

T2.C Courtroom Design Examples

T2.D Holding Core Templates

T3 Integrated Network Architecture

T4 Graphical User Interface Template

T5 In-Custody Interview Room Guidelines

T6 Building Management System Guidelines

Commented [LD8]: "Reporter's" in figure.

Commented [DP8R2]: Gensler: change it to REPORTER'S STATION in all figures.

Typical Large Trial Courtroom—Center Bench B

Courtroom Component Information

COURTROOM TYPE	SQUARE FEET	SPECTATOR SEATING (18")	VOIR DIRE
Multipurpose Large Trial	2,250	70+4 WC	100

ELEMENT OR WORKSTATION	FURNITURE/ WIDTH	CASEWORK DEPTH	HEIGHT ABOVE FLOOR	NO. OF OCCUPANTS
Judge	7'9"/6'4"	2'0"/1'6"	+16"	1
Courtroom Clerk	12'0"	2'3"	+12"	2
Court Security Officer	4'0"	2'6"	+0"	1
Court Reporter	4'0"	2'0"	+0"	1
Witness Stand	5'6"	1'7"	+6"	2
Jury Box	N/A	N/A	(R1st row 1) +0" (R2nd row 2) +6"	14
Counsel Tables	7'6"	3'0"	+0"	3 ea.
DEPS Cart	2'0"	2'0"	N/A	0
Lectern	2'6"	2'0"	N/A	0

DEPS = digital evidence presentation system.

NA = not applicable.

WC = wheelchairs.

Key Attributes of Courtroom Layout

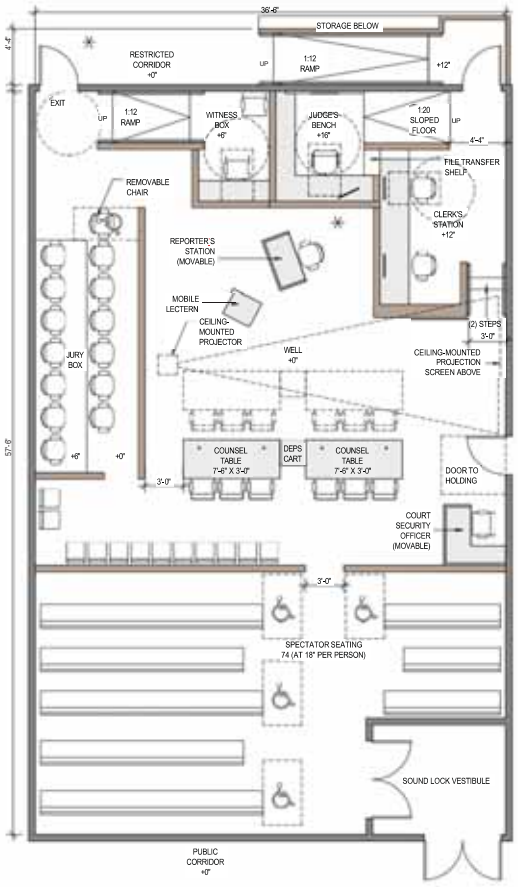
- One hundred seats for voir dire to provide maximum flexibility for trial use.
- Multidefendant capable because of movable well components and increased courtroom width.
- Increase of judge's bench work surface from 6' to 14'1" long.
- Increase of work surface return at judge's bench from 10" to 18" deep.
- Judge's bench elevated 16" to minimize need for ramping.
- Multiple locations for sidebar conferences (indicated with ✳ on schematic, next page).
- Optimal sightlines for all participants.
- Exhibit storage table adjacent to clerk's workstation.
- Adjustable-height work surfaces for judge and clerk.
- Increase of clerk's work surface from 10' to 12' long (two clerks).
- Clerk's storage in workstation area.
- Ramp provided to clerk's workstation area.
- Counsel tables to provide for four seats at each table.
- Jury box dimensions that are efficient and control courtroom width.
- Spectator seating increased by eliminating attorney-client conference rooms.

Options provided:

- Alternative court security officer desk and evidence table locations.
- Movable lectern and court reporter's station that facilitate options for adding counsel tables.

Note:

- A court may adjust the combined ramp pitches from floor level to the bench to retain the bench height of 16" while lowering the clerk floor height, so long as the maximum pitch utilized used does not exceed a 1:12 ratio.



DEPS = digital evidence presentation system.

Figure T2.4 Typical Large Trial Courtroom—Center Bench B

REQUIRED TOOLS

T1 Life Cycle Cost Analysis

T2 CATALOG OF COURTROOM LAYOUTS FOR CALIFORNIA TRIAL COURTS

T2.A Courtroom Layout Overview

T2.C Courtroom Design Examples

T2.D Holding Core Templates

T3 Integrated Network Architecture

T4 Graphical User Interface Template

T5 In-Custody Interview Room Guidelines

T6 Building Management System Guidelines

Center Bench A ~~with~~ With Holding Door Flipped

Courtroom Component Information

COURTROOM TYPE	SQUARE FEET	SPECTATOR SEATING AT 18″	VOIR DIRE
Multipurpose Trial	1,850	46+2 WC	72

ELEMENT OR WORKSTATION	FURNITURE/ WIDTH	CASEWORK DEPTH	HEIGHT ABOVE FLOOR	NO. OF OCCUPANTS
Judge	6′6″/6′4″	2′0″/1′6″	+16″	1
Courtroom Clerk	12′0″	2′3″	+12″	2
Court Security Officer ~~(CSO)~~	4′0″	2′6″	+0″	1
Court Reporter	4′0″	2′0″	+0″	1
Witness Stand	5′0″	1′7″	+6″	2
Jury Box	N~~/~~A	N~~/~~A	(R~~1st r~~ow 1) +0″ (R~~2nd r~~ow 2) +6″	14
Counsel Tables	7′0″	3′0″	+0″	3 ea.
DEPS Cart	2′0″	2′0″	N~~/~~A	0
Lectern	2′6″	2′0″	N~~/~~A	0

DEPS = digital evidence presentation system.
NA = not applicable.
WC = wheelchairs.

Key Attributes of Courtroom Layout

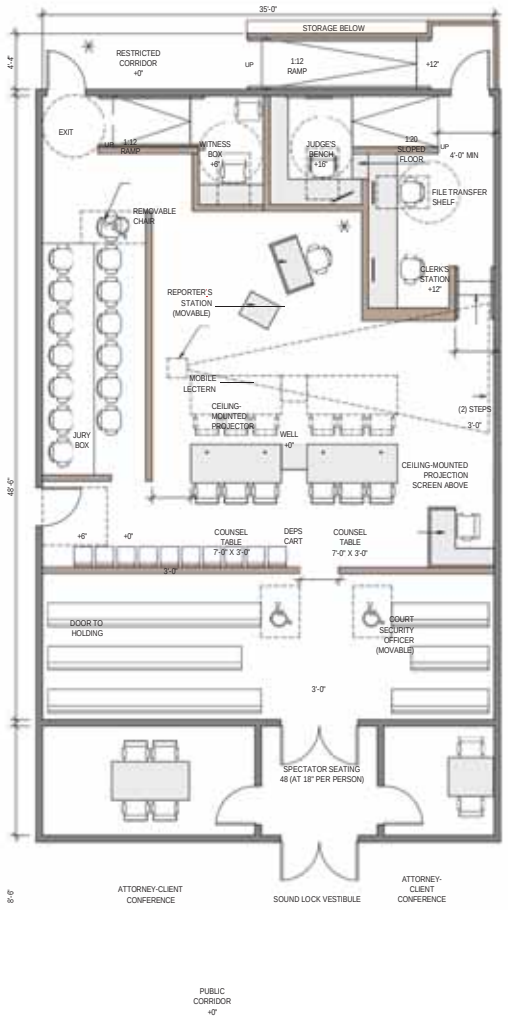
- Seventy-two seats for voir dire to provide maximum flexibility for trial use.
- Increase of judge's bench work surface from 6′ to 12′10″ long.
- Increase of work surface return at judge's bench from 10″ to 18″ deep.
- Access ramps outside courtroom.
- Judge's bench elevated 16″ to minimize need for ramping.
- Optimal sightlines for all participants.
- Multidefendant capable because of movable well components.
- Multiple locations for sidebar conferences (indicated with ✳ on schematic, next page).
- Exhibit storage table adjacent to clerk's workstation.
- Stairs to clerk's workstation area, which reduce width of courtroom.
- Jury box dimensions that are efficient and control courtroom width.
- Adjustable-height work surfaces for judge and clerk.

Options provided:

- Alternative court security officer desk and evidence table locations.
- Movable lectern and court reporter's station that facilitate options for adding counsel tables.

Note:

- A court may adjust the combined ramp pitches from floor level to the bench to retain the bench height of 16″ while lowering the clerk floor height~~,~~ so long as the maximum pitch ~~utilized~~ used does not exceed a 1:12 ratio.



DEPS = digital evidence presentation system.

Figure T2.5 Center Bench A ~~with~~ With Holding Door Flipped

Group 2—Corner Bench
Typical Trial Courtroom—Corner Bench A
Courtroom Component Information

COURTROOM TYPE	TOTAL SQUARE FEET (INCLUDES RAMP IN CORRIDOR)	SPECTATOR SEATING AT 18″	VOIR DIRE
Typical Trial	1,796	46+2 WC	72

ELEMENT OR WORKSTATION	FURNITURE/ WIDTH	CASEWORK DEPTH	HEIGHT ABOVE FLOOR	NO. OF OCCUPANTS
Judge	6′6″/6′9″	2′0″/1′6″	+16″	1
Courtroom Clerk	9′3″	2′3″	+12″	2
Court Security Officer	4′6″	2′0″	+0″	1
Court Reporter	4′0″	2′0″	+0″	1
Witness Stand	6′0″	1′7″	+6″	2
Jury Box	N/A	N/A	(R1st row 1) +0″ (R2nd row 2) +6″	14
Counsel Tables	7′0″	3′0″	+0″	3 ea.
DEPS Cart	2′0″	2′0″	N/A	0
Lectern	2′6″	2′0″	N/A	0

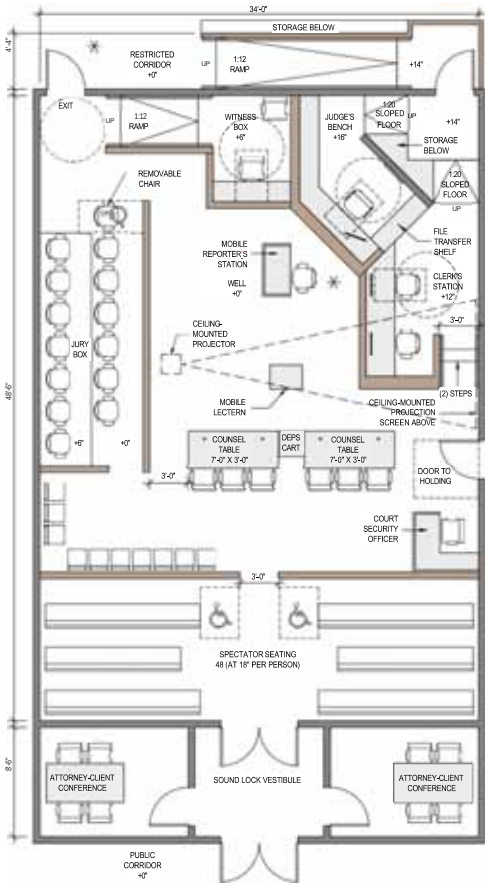
DEPS = digital evidence presentation system.
NA = not applicable.
WC = wheelchairs.

Key Attributes of Courtroom Layout

- Seventy-two seats for voir dire to provide maximum flexibility for trial use.
- Increase of judge's bench work surface from 6′ to 13′3″ long.
- Increase of work surface return at judge's bench from 10″ to 18″ deep.
- Judge's bench elevated 16″ to minimize need for ramping.
- Multiple locations for sidebar conferences (indicated with * on schematic, next page).
- Optimal sightlines for all participants.
- Exhibit storage table adjacent to clerk's workstation.
- Stairs to clerk's workstation area, which reduce width of courtroom.
- Adjustable-height work surfaces for judge and clerk.
- Jury box dimensions that are efficient and control courtroom width.

Note:

- A court may adjust the combined ramp pitches from floor level to the bench to retain the bench height of 16″ while lowering the clerk floor height, so long as the maximum pitch utilized used does not exceed a 1:12 ratio.



DEPS = digital evidence presentation system.

Figure T2.6 Typical Trial Courtroom—Corner Bench A

REQUIRED TOOLS

T1 Life Cycle Cost Analysis

T2 CATALOG OF COURTROOM LAYOUTS FOR CALIFORNIA TRIAL COURTS

T2.A Courtroom Layout Overview

T2.B Multipurpose Courtroom Templates

T2.C Courtroom Design Examples

T2.D Holding Core Templates

T3 Integrated Network Architecture

T4 Graphical User Interface Template

T5 In-Custody Interview Room Guidelines

T6 Building Management System Guidelines

Typical Large Trial Courtroom—Corner Bench A
Courtroom Component Information

COURTROOM TYPE	SQUARE FEET	SPECTATOR SEATING (18")	VOIR DIRE
Multipurpose Large Trial	2,008	61+4 WC	90

ELEMENT OR WORKSTATION	FURNITURE/ WIDTH	CASEWORK DEPTH	HEIGHT ABOVE FLOOR	NO. OF OCCUPANTS
Judge	6'6"/6'9"	2'0"/1'6"	+16"	1
Courtroom Clerk	9'3"	2'3"	+12"	2
Court Security Officer	4'0"	2'0"	+0"	1
Court Reporter	4'0"	2'0"	+0"	1
Witness Stand	5'6"	1'7"	+6"	2
Jury Box	N/A	N/A	(R1st row 1) +0" (R2nd row 2) +6"	14
Counsel Tables	7'0"	3'0"	+0"	3 ea.
DEPS Cart	2'0"	2'0"	N/A	0
Lectern	2'6"	2'0"	N/A	0

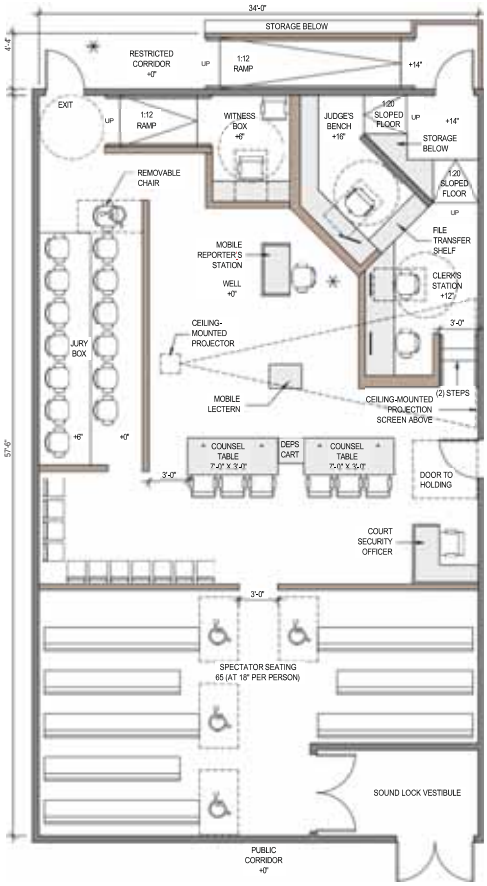
DEPS = digital evidence presentation system.
NA = not applicable.
WC = wheelchairs.

Key Attributes of Courtroom Layout

- Ninety seats for voir dire to provide maximum flexibility for trial use.
- Increase of judge's bench work surface from 6' to 13'3" long.
- Increase of work surface return at judge's bench from 10" to 18" deep.
- Judge's bench elevated 16" to minimize need for ramping.
- Multiple locations for sidebar conferences (indicated with ✳ on schematic, next page).
- Optimal sightlines for all participants.
- Exhibit storage table adjacent to clerk's workstation.
- Adjustable-height work surfaces for judge and clerk.
- Jury box dimensions that are efficient and control courtroom width.
- Spectator seating increased by eliminating attorney-client conference rooms.

Note:

- A court may adjust the combined ramp pitches from floor level to the bench to retain the bench height of 16" while lowering the clerk floor height, so long as the maximum pitch utilized used does not exceed a 1:12 ratio.



DEPS = digital evidence presentation system.

Figure T2.7 Typical Large Trial Courtroom—Corner Bench A

REQUIRED TOOLS

T1 Life Cycle Cost Analysis

T2 CATALOG OF COURTROOM LAYOUTS FOR CALIFORNIA TRIAL COURTS

T2.A Courtroom Layout Overview

T2.C Courtroom Design Examples

T2.D Holding Core Templates

T3 Integrated Network Architecture

T4 Graphical User Interface Template

T5 In-Custody Interview Room Guidelines

T6 Building Management System Guidelines

Typical Trial Courtroom—Corner Bench B
Courtroom Component Information

COURTROOM TYPE	TOTAL SQUARE FEET (INCLUDES RAMP IN CORRIDOR)	SPECTATOR SEATING AT 18″	VOIR DIRE
Typical Trial	2,056	46+2 WC	73

ELEMENT OR WORKSTATION	FURNITURE/ WIDTH	CASEWORK DEPTH	HEIGHT ABOVE FLOOR	NO. OF OCCUPANTS
Judge	8′0″/6′9″	2′0″/1′6″	+16″	1
Courtroom Clerk	9′3″	2′3″	+12″	2
Court Security Officer	4′6″	2′0″	+0″	1
Court Reporter	4′0″	2′0″	+0″	1
Witness Stand	6′0″	1′7″	+6″	2
Jury Box	N/A	N/A	(R1st row 1) +0″ (R2nd row 2) +6″	14
Counsel Tables	7′6″	3′0″	+0″	3 ea.
DEPS Cart	2′0″	2′0″	N/A	0
Lectern	2′6″	2′0″	N/A	0

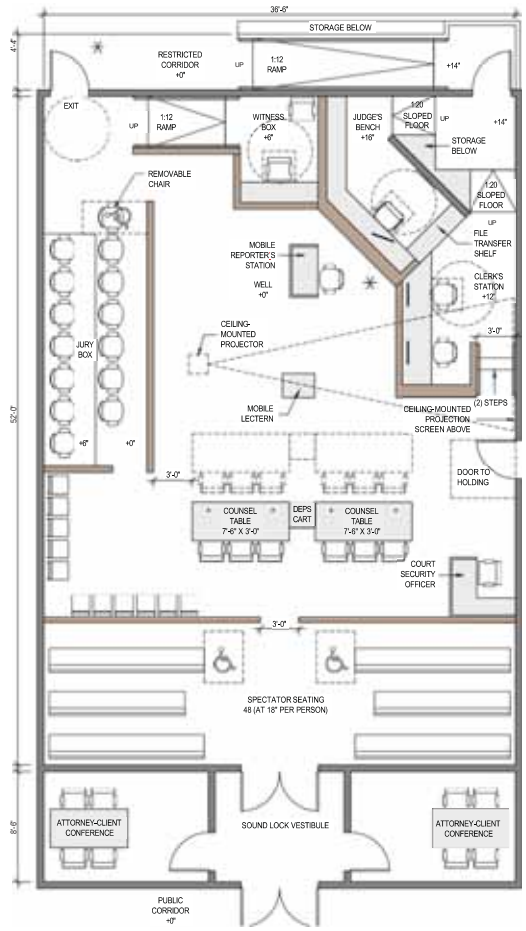
DEPS = digital evidence presentation system.
NA = not applicable.
WC = wheelchairs.

Key Attributes of Courtroom Layout

- Seventy-three seats for voir dire to provide maximum flexibility for trial use.
- Increase of judge's bench work surface from 6′ to 14′9″ long.
- Increase of work surface return at judge's bench from 10″ to 18″ deep.
- Judge's bench elevated 16″ to minimize need for ramping.
- Multiple locations for sidebar conferences (indicated with ✱ on schematic, next page).
- Optimal sightlines for all participants.
- Multidefendant capable because of movable well components.
- Exhibit storage table adjacent to clerk's workstation.
- Stairs to clerk's workstation area, which reduce width of courtroom.
- Adjustable-height work surfaces for judge and clerk.
- Jury box dimensions that are efficient and control courtroom width.

Note:

- A court may adjust the combined ramp pitches from floor level to the bench to retain the bench height of 16″ while lowering the clerk floor height, so long as the maximum pitch utilized used does not exceed a 1:12 ratio.



DEPS = digital evidence presentation system.

Figure T2.8 Typical Trial Courtroom—Corner Bench B

REQUIRED TOOLS

T1 Life Cycle Cost Analysis

T2 CATALOG OF COURTROOM LAYOUTS FOR CALIFORNIA TRIAL COURTS

T2.A Courtroom Layout Overview

T2.C Courtroom Design Examples

T2.D Holding Core Templates

T3 Integrated Network Architecture

T4 Graphical User Interface Template

T5 In-Custody Interview Room Guidelines

T6 Building Management System Guidelines

Typical Large Trial Courtroom—Corner Bench B
Courtroom Component Information

COURTROOM TYPE	SQUARE FEET	SPECTATOR SEATING (18")	VOIR DIRE
Multipurpose Large Trial	2,285	69+4 WC	100

ELEMENT OR WORKSTATION	FURNITURE/ WIDTH	CASEWORK DEPTH	HEIGHT ABOVE FLOOR	NO. OF OCCUPANTS
Judge	8′0″/6′9″	2′0″/1′6″	+16″	1
Courtroom Clerk	9′3″	2′3″	+12″	2
Court Security Officer	4′0″	2′0″	+0″	1
Court Reporter	4′0″	2′0″	+0″	1
Witness Stand	5′6″	1′7″	+6″	2
Jury Box	N/A	N/A	(R1st row 1) +0″ (2nd Rrow 2) +6″	14
Counsel Tables	7′6″	3′0″	+0″	3 ea.
DEPS Cart	2′0″	2′0″	N/A	0
Lectern	2′6″	2′0″	N/A	0

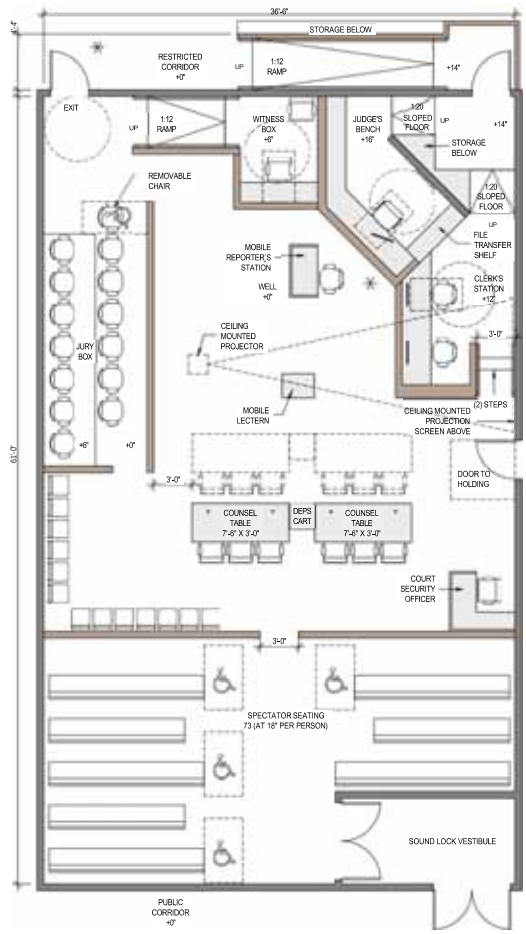
DEPS = digital evidence presentation system.
NA = not applicable.
WC = wheelchairs.

Key Attributes of Courtroom Layout

- One hundred seats for voir dire to provide maximum flexibility for trial use.
- Multidefendant capable.
- Increase of judge's bench work surface from 6′ to 14′9″ long.
- Increase of work surface return at judge's bench from 10″ to 18″ deep.
- Judge's bench elevated 16″ to minimize need for ramping.
- Multiple locations for sidebar conferences (indicated with ✳ on schematic, next page).
- Optimal sightlines for all participants.
- Exhibit storage table adjacent to clerk's workstation.
- Adjustable-height work surfaces for judge and clerk.
- Jury box dimensions that are efficient and control courtroom width.
- Additional counsel tables accommodated by eliminating attorney-client conference rooms.

Note:

- A court may adjust the combined ramp pitches from floor level to the bench to retain the bench height of 16″ while lowering the clerk floor height, so long as the maximum pitch utilized used does not exceed a 1:12 ratio.



DEPS = digital evidence presentation system.

Figure T2.9 Typical Large Trial Courtroom—Corner Bench B

REQUIRED TOOLS

T1 Life Cycle Cost Analysis

T2 CATALOG OF COURTROOM LAYOUTS FOR CALIFORNIA TRIAL COURTS

T2.A Courtroom Layout Overview

T2.C Courtroom Design Examples

T2.D Holding Core Templates

T3 Integrated Network Architecture

T4 Graphical User Interface Template

T5 In-Custody Interview Room Guidelines

T6 Building Management System Guidelines

Corner Bench A ~~with~~ With Holding Door Flipped
Courtroom Component Information

COURTROOM TYPE	TOTAL SQUARE FEET (INCLUDES RAMP IN CORRIDOR)	SPECTATOR SEATING AT 18″	VOIR DIRE
Typical Trial	1,796	46+2 WC	69

ELEMENT OR WORKSTATION	FURNITURE/ WIDTH	CASEWORK DEPTH	HEIGHT ABOVE FLOOR	NO. OF OCCUPANTS
Judge	6′6″/6′9″	2′0″/1′6″	+16″	1
Courtroom Clerk	9′3″	2′3″	+12″	2
Court Security Officer	4′6″	2′0″	+0″	1
Court Reporter	4′0″	2′0″	+0″	1
Witness Stand	6′0″	1′7″	+6″	2
Jury Box	N~~/~~A	N~~/~~A	(R~~1st r~~ow 1) +0″ (R~~2nd r~~ow 2) +6″	14
Counsel Tables	7′0″	3′0″	+0″	3 ea.
DEPS Cart	2′0″	2′0″	N~~/~~A	0
Lectern	2′6″	2′0″	N~~/~~A	0

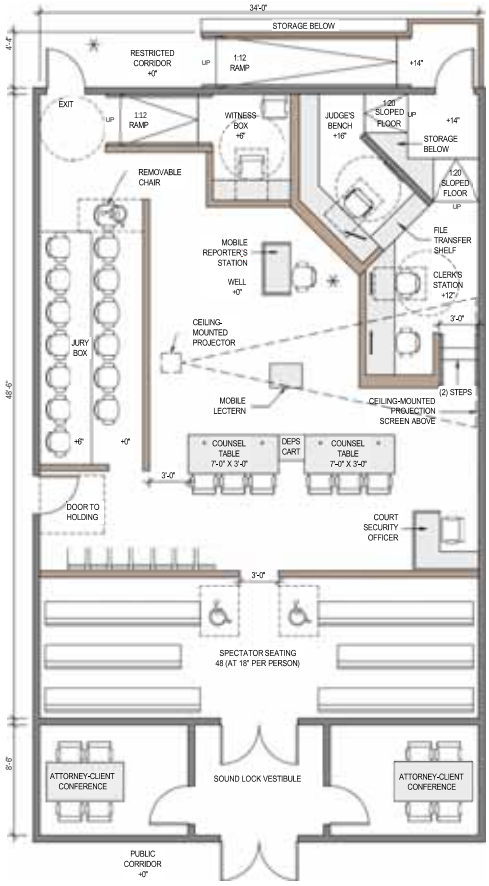
DEPS = digital evidence presentation system.
NA = not applicable.
WC = wheelchairs.

Key Attributes of Courtroom Layout

- Sixty-nine seats for voir dire to provide maximum flexibility for trial use.
- Increase of judge's bench work surface from 6′ to 13′3″ long.
- Increase of work surface return at judge's bench from 10″ to 18″ deep.
- Judge's bench elevated 16″ to minimize need for ramping.
- Multiple locations for sidebar conferences (indicated with ✳ on schematic, next page).
- Optimal sightlines for all participants.
- Exhibit storage table adjacent to clerk's workstation.
- Stairs to clerk's workstation area, which reduce width of courtroom.
- Adjustable-height work surfaces for judge and clerk.
- Jury box dimensions that are efficient and control courtroom width.

Note:

- A court may adjust the combined ramp pitches from floor level to the bench to retain the bench height of 16″ while lowering the clerk floor height~~,~~ so long as the maximum pitch ~~utilized~~ used does not exceed a 1:12 ratio.



DEPS = digital evidence presentation system.

Figure T2.10 Corner Bench A ~~with~~ With Holding Door Flipped

REQUIRED TOOLS

T1 Life Cycle Cost Analysis

T2 CATALOG OF COURTROOM LAYOUTS FOR CALIFORNIA TRIAL COURTS

T2.A Courtroom Layout Overview

T2.C Courtroom Design Examples

T2.D Holding Core Templates

T3 Integrated Network Architecture

T4 Graphical User Interface Template

T5 In-Custody Interview Room Guidelines

T6 Building Management System Guidelines

Group 3—Center Bench, Wide
Typical Large Trial Courtroom—Center Bench C
Courtroom Component Information

COURTROOM TYPE	SQUARE FEET	SPECTATOR SEATING (18")	VOIR DIRE
Multipurpose Large Trial	2,200	50+2 WC	78

ELEMENT OR WORKSTATION	FURNITURE/ WIDTH	CASEWORK DEPTH	HEIGHT ABOVE FLOOR	NO. OF OCCUPANTS
Judge	7'9"/6'10"	2'0"/1'6"	+16"	1
Courtroom Clerk	12'0"	2'3"	+10"	2
Court Security Officer	4'0"	2'6"	+0"	1
Court Reporter	4'0"	2'0"	+0"	1
Witness Stand	5'6"	1'7"	+6"	2
Jury Box	N~~/~~A	N~~/~~A	(R~~1st r~~ow 1) +0" (~~2nd R~~row 2) +6"	14
Counsel Tables	8'6"	3'0"	+0"	4 ea.
DEPS Cart	2'0"	2'0"	N~~/~~A	0
Lectern	2'6"	2'0"	N~~/~~A	0

DEPS = digital evidence presentation system.
NA = not applicable.
WC = wheelchairs.

Key Attributes of Courtroom Layout

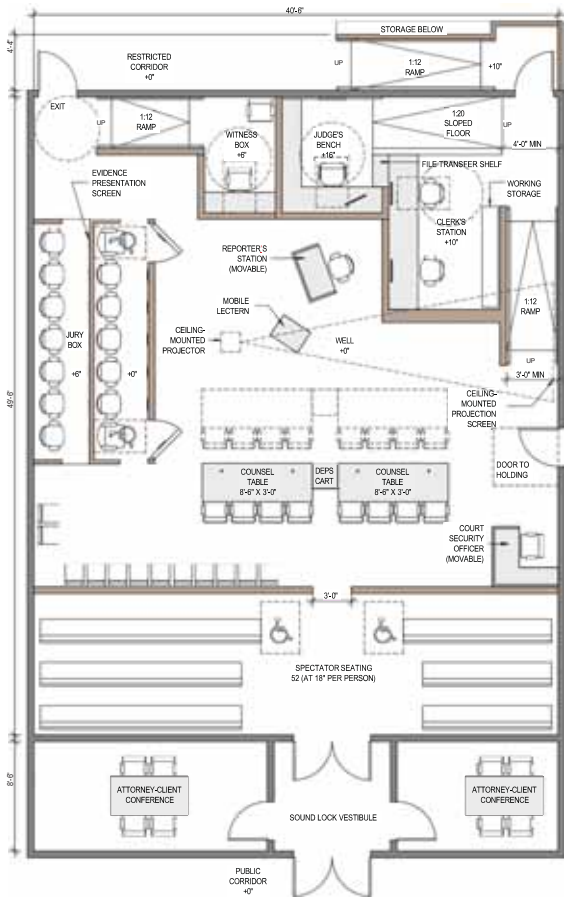
- Seventy-eight seats for voir dire to provide maximum flexibility for trial use.
- Multidefendant capable because of movable well components and increased courtroom width.
- Increase of judge's bench work surface from 6' to 14'7" long.
- Increase of work surface return at judge's bench from 10" to 18" deep.
- Judge's bench elevated 16" to minimize need for ramping.
- Multiple locations for sidebar conferences (indicated with * on schematic, next page).
- Optimal sightlines for all participants.
- Exhibit storage table adjacent to clerk's workstation.
- Adjustable-height work surfaces for judge and clerk.
- Clerk's work surface increased from 10' to 12' long (two clerks).
- Clerk's storage in workstation area.
- Ramp provided to clerk's workstation area.
- Counsel tables providing ~~for~~ four seats at each table.
- Jury box that provides increased room to accommodate individual flat~~,~~ screen displays, room for jurors when exiting, and two alternative locations for wheelchair locations.

Options provided:

- Alternative court security officer desk and evidence table locations.
- Movable lectern and court reporter's station that facilitate options for adding counsel tables.

Note:

- A court may adjust the combined ramp pitches from floor level to the bench to retain the bench height of 16" while lowering the clerk floor height~~,~~ so long as the maximum pitch ~~utilized~~ used does not exceed a 1:12 ratio.



DEPS = digital evidence presentation system.

Figure T2.11 Typical Large Trial Courtroom—Center Bench C

REQUIRED TOOLS

T1 Life Cycle Cost Analysis

T2 CATALOG OF COURTROOM LAYOUTS FOR CALIFORNIA TRIAL COURTS

T2.A Courtroom Layout Overview

T2.C Courtroom Design Examples

T2.D Holding Core Templates

T3 Integrated Network Architecture

T4 Graphical User Interface Template

T5 In-Custody Interview Room Guidelines

T6 Building Management System Guidelines

Commented [DP9]: Gensler: remove the second wheelchair and make the jury box the same as other templates. No need to show evidence presentation screen here since designers need to refer to chapter 18 for AV requirements.

Typical Large Trial Courtroom—Center Bench D

Courtroom Component Information

COURTROOM TYPE	SQUARE FEET	SPECTATOR SEATING (18")	VOIR DIRE
Multipurpose Large Trial	2,445	81+4 WC	110

ELEMENT OR WORKSTATION	FURNITURE/ WIDTH	CASEWORK DEPTH	HEIGHT ABOVE FLOOR	NO. OF OCCUPANTS
Judge	7′9″/6′10″	2′0″/1′6″	+16″	1
Courtroom Clerk	12′0″	2′3″	+10″	2
Court Security Officer	4′0″	2′6″	+0″	1
Court Reporter	4′0″	2′0″	+0″	1
Witness Stand	5′6″	1′7″	+6″	2
Jury Box	N/A	N/A	(R1st row 1) +0″ (2nd Row 2) +6″	14
Counsel Tables	8′6″	3′0″	+0″	4 ea.
DEPS Cart	2′0″	2′0″	N/A	0
Lectern	2′6″	2′0″	N/A	0

DEPS = digital evidence presentation system.

NA = not applicable.

WC = wheelchairs.

Key Attributes of Courtroom Layout

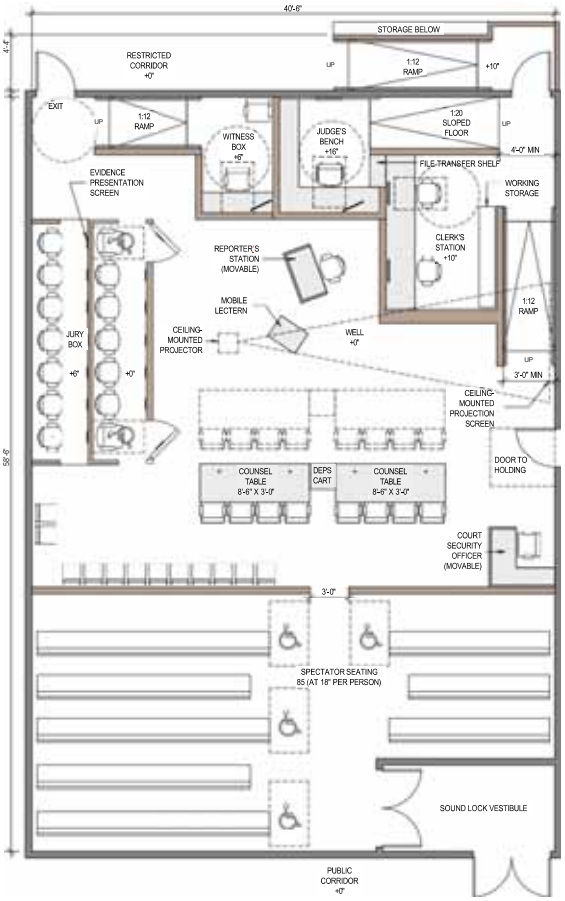
- One hundred ten seats for voir dire to provide maximum flexibility for trial use.
- Multidefendant capable because of movable well components and increased courtroom width.
- Increase of judge's bench work surface from 6′ to 14′7″ long.
- Increase of work surface return at judge's bench from 10″ to 18″ deep.
- Judge's bench elevated 16″ to minimize need for ramping.
- Multiple locations for sidebar conferences (indicated with * on schematic, next page).
- Optimal sightlines for all participants.
- Exhibit storage table adjacent to clerk's workstation.
- Adjustable-height work surfaces for judge and clerk.
- Clerk's work surface increased from 10′ to 12′ long (two clerks).
- Clerk's storage in workstation area.
- Ramp provided to clerk's workstation area.
- Counsel tables providing ~~for~~ four seats at each table.
- Jury box that provides increased room to accommodate individual ~~flat~~ flat-screen displays, room for jurors when exiting, and two alternative locations for wheelchair locations.
- Spectator seating increased by eliminating attorney-client conference rooms.

Options provided:

- Alternative court security officer desk and evidence table locations.
- Movable lectern and court reporter's station that facilitate options for adding counsel tables.

Note:

- A court may adjust the combined ramp pitches from floor level to the bench to retain the bench height of 16″ while lowering the clerk floor height~~,~~ so long as the maximum pitch ~~utilized~~ used does not exceed a 1:12 ratio.



DEPS = digital evidence presentation system.

Figure T2.12 Typical Large Trial Courtroom—Center Bench D

REQUIRED TOOLS

T1 Life Cycle Cost Analysis

T2 CATALOG OF COURTROOM LAYOUTS FOR CALIFORNIA TRIAL COURTS

T2.A Courtroom Layout Overview

T2.C Courtroom Design Examples

T2.D Holding Core Templates

T3 Integrated Network Architecture

T4 Graphical User Interface Template

T5 In-Custody Interview Room Guidelines

T6 Building Management System Guidelines

Commented [DP10]: Gensler: remove the second wheelchair and make the jury box the same as other templates. No need to show evidence presentation screen here since designers need to refer to chapter 18 for AV requirements.

Page intentionally left blank

T2.C COURTROOM DESIGN EXAMPLES

	TOTAL SQUARE FEET*	TOTAL RATED CAPACITY†	PAGE
San Diego Central Courthouse, Trial Courtroom—Center Bench	1,700	46	T2.30
San Bernardino Justice Center, Trial Courtroom—Corner Bench	1,700	50	T2.32
San Diego Central Courthouse, Large Trial Courtroom—Center Bench	2,100	98	T2.34
San Diego Central Courthouse, Double Jury Courtroom—Center Bench	2,100	64	T2.36
San Bernardino Justice Center, Double Jury Courtroom—Corner Bench	2,400	92	T2.38
San Diego Central Courthouse, Arraignment Courtroom—Center Bench	1,800	98	T2.40
San Diego Central Courthouse, Family Courtroom—Center Bench	1,700	46	T2.42

* Includes ramp in corridor where applicable.

† Wheelchair spaces added to total spectator seating capacity.

REQUIRED TOOLS

T1 Life Cycle Cost Analysis

T2 CATALOG OF COURTROOM LAYOUTS FOR CALIFORNIA TRIAL COURTS

T2.A Courtroom Layout Overview

T2.B Multipurpose Courtroom Templates

T2.D Holding Core Templates

T3 Integrated Network Architecture

T4 Graphical User Interface Template

T5 In-Custody Interview Room Guidelines

T6 Building Management System Guidelines

San Diego Central Courthouse
Trial Courtroom—Center Bench
Courtroom Component Information

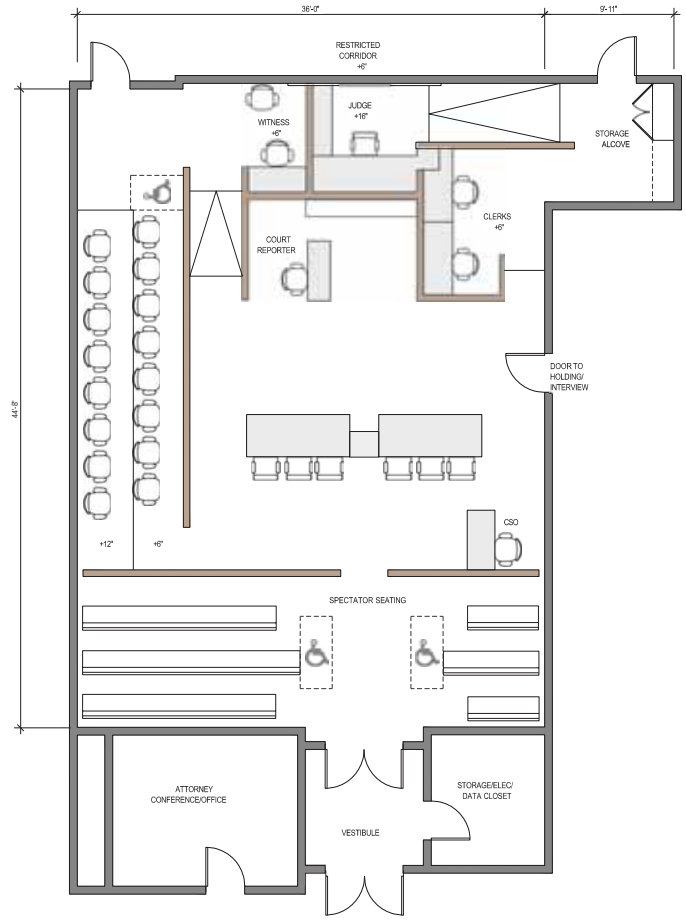
COURTROOM TYPE	TOTAL SQUARE FEET (INCLUDES RAMP IN CORRIDOR)	SPECTATOR SEATING AT 18″	
Trial	1700	44+2 WC	

ELEMENT OR WORKSTATION	FURNITURE/ WIDTH	CASEWORK DEPTH	HEIGHT ABOVE FLOOR	NO. OF OCCUPANTS
Judge	8′0″/5′0″	2′6″/1′6″	+16″	1
Courtroom Clerk	10′0″	2′2″	-	2
Court Security Officer	4′2″	2′2″	-	1
Court Reporter	4′2″	1′9″	-	1
Witness Stand	4′6″	1′8″	+6″	2
Jury Box	N/A	N/A	(R1st row 1) +6″ (2nd Row 2) +12″	16
Counsel Tables	8′0″	3′6″	-	3 ea.
Lectern	2′0″	2′0″	-	-

NA = not applicable.
WC = wheelchairs.

Notes for Future Applications

- Avoid jagged outline to the footprint of the courtroom. Simplify the shape to a rectangular room.
- Avoid jury seats in the jury box located behind counsel tables. All jury seats should be forward of counsel tables.
- Plan for additional chairs to be located forward of the spectator seating gallery.



CSO = court security officer.

Figure T2.13 San Diego Central Courthouse, Trial Courtroom—Center Bench

REQUIRED TOOLS

T1 Life Cycle Cost Analysis

T2 CATALOG OF COURTROOM LAYOUTS FOR CALIFORNIA TRIAL COURTS

T2.A Courtroom Layout Overview

T2.B Multipurpose Courtroom Templates

T2.D Holding Core Templates

T3 Integrated Network Architecture

T4 Graphical User Interface Template

T5 In-Custody Interview Room Guidelines

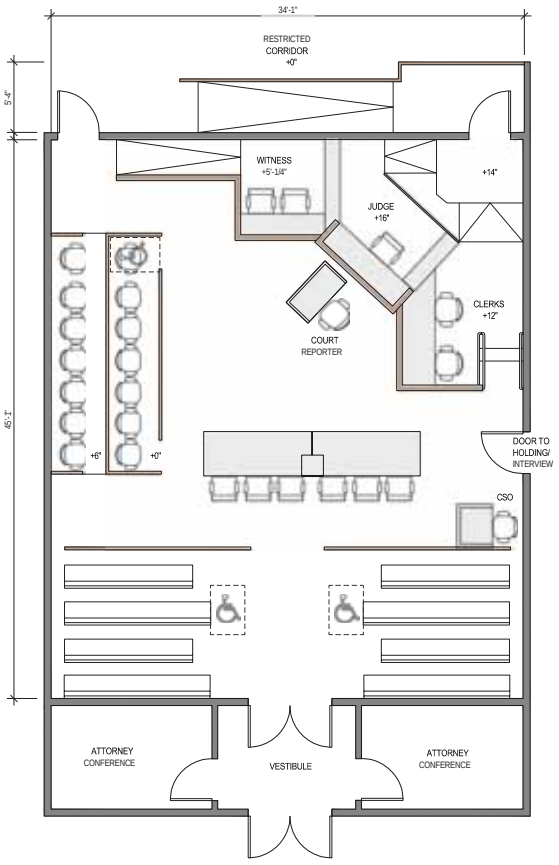
T6 Building Management System Guidelines

San Bernardino Justice Center
Trial Courtroom—Corner Bench
Courtroom Component Information

COURTROOM TYPE	TOTAL SQUARE FEET (INCLUDES RAMP IN CORRIDOR)	SPECTATOR SEATING AT 18″	
Trial	1,700	48+2 WC	

ELEMENT OR WORKSTATION	FURNITURE/ WIDTH	CASEWORK DEPTH	HEIGHT ABOVE FLOOR	NO. OF OCCUPANTS
Judge	7′0″/4′9″	2′0″/1′2″	+16″	1
Courtroom Clerk	9′0″	2′2″	+12″	2
Court Security Officer	3′0″	2′4″	-	1
Court Reporter	3′9″	2′0″	-	1
Witness Stand	6′4″	1′7″	+5-1/4″	2
Jury Box	N/A	N/A	(R1st row 1) +0″ (2nd Rrow 2) +6″	14
Counsel Tables	7′10″	3′6″	-	3 ea.
Lectern	-	-	-	-

NA = not applicable.
WC = wheelchairs.



CSO = court security officer.

Figure T2.14 San Bernardino Justice Center, Trial Courtroom—Corner Bench

REQUIRED TOOLS

T1 Life Cycle Cost Analysis

T2 CATALOG OF COURTROOM LAYOUTS FOR CALIFORNIA TRIAL COURTS

T2.A Courtroom Layout Overview

T2.B Multipurpose Courtroom Templates

T2.D Holding Core Templates

T3 Integrated Network Architecture

T4 Graphical User Interface Template

T5 In-Custody Interview Room Guidelines

T6 Building Management System Guidelines

San Diego Central Courthouse
Large Trial Courtroom—Center Bench
Courtroom Component Information

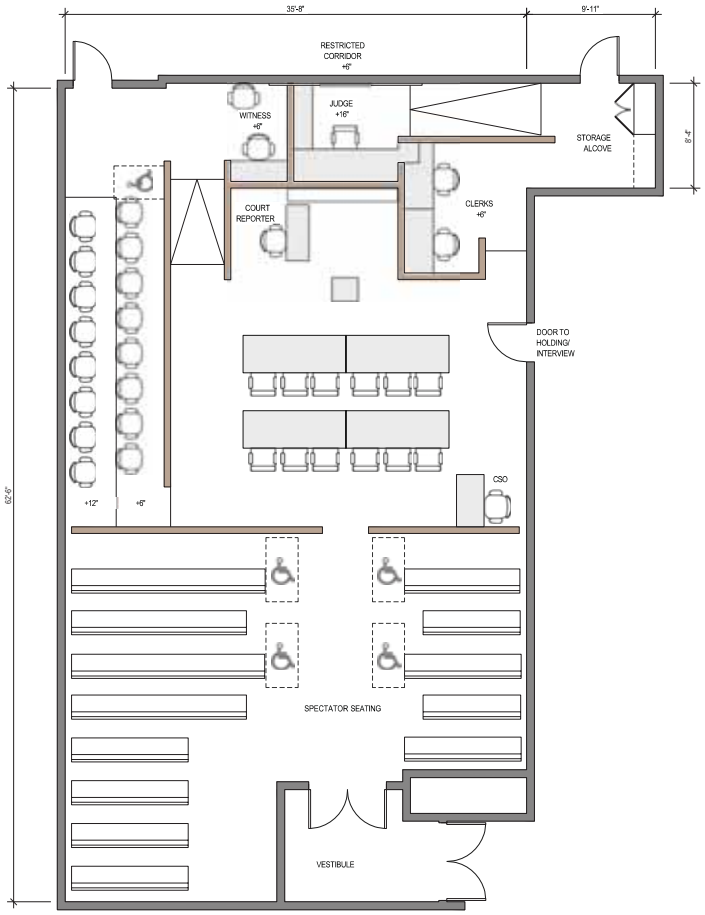
COURTROOM TYPE	TOTAL SQUARE FEET (INCLUDES RAMP IN CORRIDOR)	SPECTATOR SEATING AT 18″	
Large Trial	2,100	94+4 WC	

ELEMENT OR WORKSTATION	FURNITURE/ WIDTH	CASEWORK DEPTH	HEIGHT ABOVE FLOOR	NO. OF OCCUPANTS
Judge	8′0″/5′0″	2′6″/1′6″	+16″	1
Courtroom Clerk	10′0″	2′2″	+6″	2
Court Security Officer	3′10″	2′2″	-	1
Court Reporter	4′2″	1′9″	-	1
Witness Stand	4′6″	1′8″	+6″	2
Jury Box	N/A	N/A	(R1st row 1) +6″ (2nd Rrow 2) +12″	16
Counsel Tables	8′0″	3′6″	-	3 ea.
Lectern	2′0″	2′0″	-	-

NA = not applicable.
WC = wheelchairs.

Notes for Future Applications

- Avoid jagged outline to the footprint of the courtroom. Simplify the shape to a rectangular room.
- Avoid jury seats in the jury box located behind counsel tables. All jury seats should be forward of counsel tables.
- Plan for additional chairs to be located forward of the spectator seating gallery.
- Maintain clear circulation space next to court security officer desk so that obstructions don't impede quick response to disturbance in the courtroom.



CSO = court security officer.

Figure T2.15 San Diego Central Courthouse, Large Trial Courtroom—Center Bench

REQUIRED TOOLS

T1 Life Cycle Cost Analysis

T2 CATALOG OF COURTROOM LAYOUTS FOR CALIFORNIA TRIAL COURTS

T2.A Courtroom Layout Overview

T2.B Multipurpose Courtroom Templates

T2.D Holding Core Templates

T3 Integrated Network Architecture

T4 Graphical User Interface Template

T5 In-Custody Interview Room Guidelines

T6 Building Management System Guidelines

San Diego Central Courthouse
Double Jury Courtroom—Center Bench
Courtroom Component Information

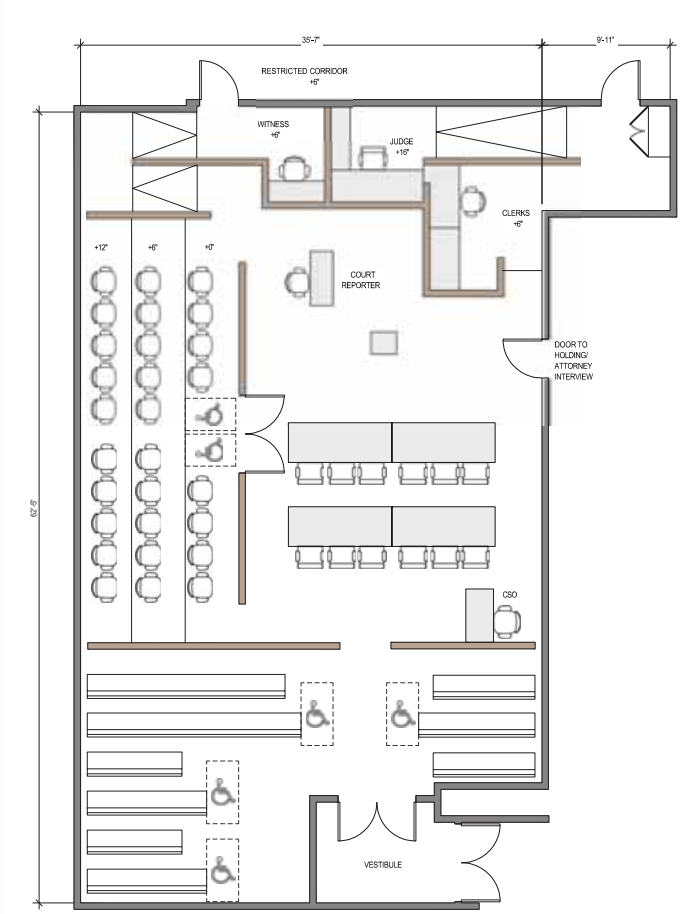
COURTROOM TYPE	TOTAL SQUARE FEET (INCLUDES RAMP IN CORRIDOR)	SPECTATOR SEATING AT 18″
Double Jury	2,100	60+4 WC

ELEMENT OR WORKSTATION	FURNITURE/ WIDTH	CASEWORK DEPTH	HEIGHT ABOVE FLOOR	NO. OF OCCUPANTS
Judge	7′0″/5′0″	2′6″/1′4″	+16″	1
Courtroom Clerk	9′0″	2′2″	+6″	2
Court Security Officer	4′2″	2′2″	-	1
Court Reporter	4′2″	1′9″	-	1
Witness Stand	6′4″	1′8″	+6″	2
Jury Box	N/A	N/A	(R1st row 1) +0″ (2nd Rrow 2) +6″ (3rd Rrow 3) +12″	28
Counsel Tables	7′0″	3′0″	-	3 ea.
Lectern	-	-	-	-

NA = not applicable.
WC = wheelchairs.

Notes for Future Applications

- Avoid jagged outline to the footprint of the courtroom. Simplify the shape to a rectangular room.
- Avoid jury seats in the jury box located behind counsel tables. All jury seats should be forward of counsel tables.
- Plan for additional chairs to be located forward of the spectator seating gallery.
- Avoid jury box seats that may obstruct sightlines from the bench to spectator seating.
- Provide clear space forward of accessible seats in the jury box.



CSO = court security officer.

Figure T2.16 San Diego Central Courthouse, Double Jury Courtroom—Center Bench

REQUIRED TOOLS

T1 Life Cycle Cost Analysis

T2 CATALOG OF COURTROOM LAYOUTS FOR CALIFORNIA TRIAL COURTS

T2.A Courtroom Layout Overview

T2.B Multipurpose Courtroom Templates

T2.D Holding Core Templates

T3 Integrated Network Architecture

T4 Graphical User Interface Template

T5 In-Custody Interview Room Guidelines

T6 Building Management System Guidelines

San Bernardino Justice Center
Double Jury Courtroom—Corner Bench
Courtroom Component Information

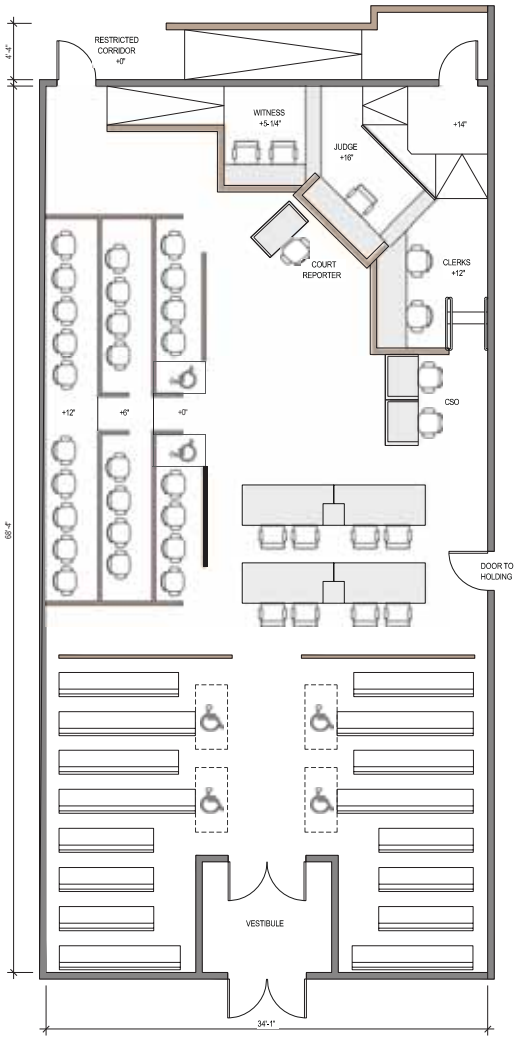
COURTROOM TYPE	TOTAL SQUARE FEET (INCLUDES RAMP IN CORRIDOR)	SPECTATOR SEATING AT 18″
Double Jury	2,400	88+4 WC

ELEMENT OR WORKSTATION	FURNITURE/ WIDTH	CASEWORK DEPTH	HEIGHT ABOVE FLOOR	NO. OF OCCUPANTS
Judge	7′0″/4′9″	2′0″/1′2″	+16″	1
Courtroom Clerk	9′0″	2′2″	+12″	2
Court Security Officer	7′0″	2′4″	-	2
Court Reporter	4′3″	2′0″	-	1
Witness Stand	6′4″	1′7″	+5-1/4″	2
Jury Box	N/A	N/A	(Row 1st row) +0″ (Row 2nd row) +6″ (Row 3rd row) +12″	26
Counsel Tables	7′0″	3′0″	-	2 ea.
Lectern	-	-	-	-

NA = not applicable.
WC = wheelchairs.

Notes for Future Applications

- Avoid long, narrow courtroom.
- Avoid jury seats in the jury box located behind counsel tables. All jury seats should be forward of counsel tables.
- Plan for additional chairs to be located forward of the spectator seating gallery.
- Avoid jury box seats that may obstruct sightlines from the bench to spectator seating.
- Provide sightlines from the bench to all the seats in the spectator gallery.
- Locate court security officer closer to the gallery.



CSO = court security officer.

Figure T2.17 San Bernardino Justice Center, Double Jury Courtroom—Corner Bench

REQUIRED TOOLS

T1 Life Cycle Cost Analysis

T2 CATALOG OF COURTROOM LAYOUTS FOR CALIFORNIA TRIAL COURTS

T2.A Courtroom Layout Overview

T2.B Multipurpose Courtroom Templates

T2.D Holding Core Templates

T3 Integrated Network Architecture

T4 Graphical User Interface Template

T5 In-Custody Interview Room Guidelines

T6 Building Management System Guidelines

San Diego Central Courthouse
Arraignment Courtroom—Center Bench
Courtroom Component Information

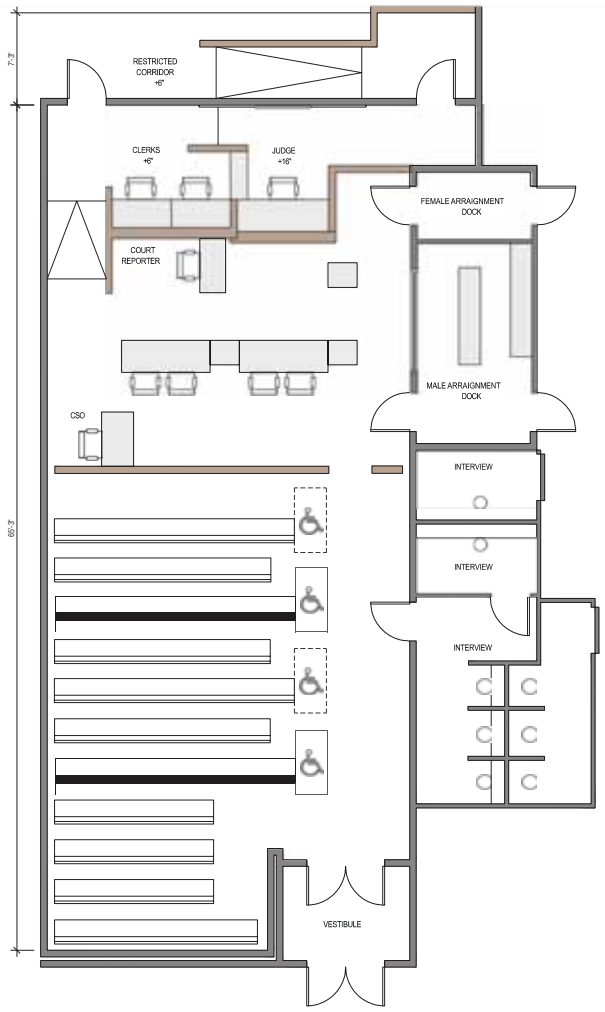
COURTROOM TYPE	TOTAL SQUARE FEET (INCLUDES RAMP IN CORRIDOR)	SPECTATOR SEATING AT 18″	
Arraignment Courtroom	1,800	94+4 WC	

ELEMENT OR WORKSTATION	FURNITURE/ WIDTH	CASEWORK DEPTH	HEIGHT ABOVE FLOOR	NO. OF OCCUPANTS
Judge	6′0″/3′8″	2′6″/1′3″	+16″	1
Courtroom Clerk	8′2″	2′6″	+6″	2
Court Security Officer	4′2″	2′2″	-	1
Court Reporter	4′2″	1′9″	-	1
Witness Stand	N/A		N/A	
Jury Box	N/A	N/A	N/A	N/A
Counsel Tables	6′0″	3′0″	-	2 ea.
Lectern	2′6″	2′0″	-	-

NA = not applicable.
WC = wheelchairs.

Notes for Future Applications

- Avoid jagged outline to the footprint of the courtroom. Simplify the shape to a rectangular room.
- Use the layout requirements for attorney-client interview rooms provided in chapter 25, Attorney-Client Interview Room Guidelines.
- Avoid long, narrow courtroom.
- Plan for additional chairs to be located forward of the spectator seating gallery.
- Locate door to arraignment dock forward of counsel table.
- Provide sightlines from the bench to all the seats in the spectator gallery.



CSO = court security officer.

Figure T2.18 San Diego Central Courthouse, Arraignment Courtroom—Center Bench

REQUIRED TOOLS

T1 Life Cycle Cost Analysis

T2 CATALOG OF COURTROOM LAYOUTS FOR CALIFORNIA TRIAL COURTS

T2.A Courtroom Layout Overview

T2.B Multipurpose Courtroom Templates

T2.D Holding Core Templates

T3 Integrated Network Architecture

T4 Graphical User Interface Template

T5 In-Custody Interview Room Guidelines

T6 Building Management System Guidelines

San Diego Central Courthouse
Family Courtroom—Center Bench
Courtroom Component Information

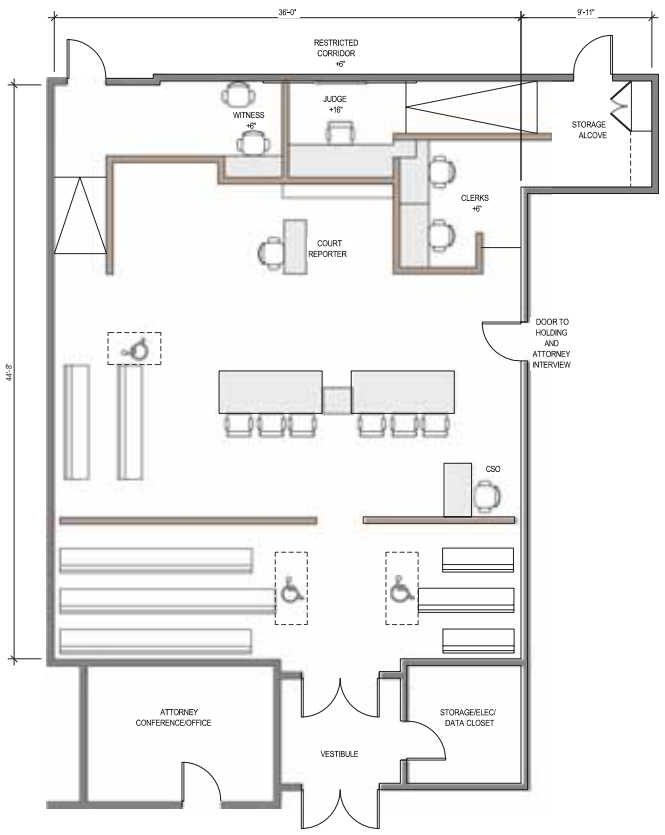
COURTROOM TYPE	TOTAL SQUARE FEET (INCLUDES RAMP IN CORRIDOR)	SPECTATOR SEATING AT 18″
Family	1,700	44+2 WC

ELEMENT OR WORKSTATION	FURNITURE/ WIDTH	CASEWORK DEPTH	HEIGHT ABOVE FLOOR	NO. OF OCCUPANTS
Judge	8′0″	2′6″	+16″	1
Courtroom Clerk	10′0″	2′2″	+6″	2
Court Security Officer	4′2″	2′2″	-	1
Court Reporter	4′2″	1′9″	-	1
Witness Stand	4′6″	1′8″	+6″	2
Jury Box	N/A	N/A	N/A	N/A
Counsel Tables	8′0″	3′0″	-	3 ea.
Lectern	2′0″	2′0″	-	-

NA = not applicable.
WC = wheelchairs.

Notes for Future Applications

- Avoid jagged outline to the footprint of the courtroom. Simplify the shape to a rectangular room.
- Plan for additional chairs to be located forward of the spectator seating gallery.



CSO = court security officer.

Figure T2.19 San Diego Central Courthouse, Family Courtroom—Center Bench

REQUIRED TOOLS

T1 Life Cycle Cost Analysis

T2 CATALOG OF COURTROOM LAYOUTS FOR CALIFORNIA TRIAL COURTS

T2.A Courtroom Layout Overview

T2.B Multipurpose Courtroom Templates

T2.D Holding Core Templates

T3 Integrated Network Architecture

T4 Graphical User Interface Template

T5 In-Custody Interview Room Guidelines

T6 Building Management System Guidelines

Page intentionally left blank

T2.D HOLDING CORE TEMPLATES

	TOTAL SQUARE FEET	TOTAL RATED CAPACITY	PAGE
Typical Holding Core—8″ CMU Walls	709	7	T2.46
Typical Holding Core—6″ CMU Walls	690	7	T2.47
Typical Holding Core—6″ CMU Walls and 2″ Metal Panel Walls at Holding	672	7	T2.48

CMU = concrete masonry unit.

REQUIRED TOOLS

T1 Life Cycle Cost Analysis

T2 CATALOG OF COURTROOM LAYOUTS FOR CALIFORNIA TRIAL COURTS

T2.A Courtroom Layout Overview

T2.B Multipurpose Courtroom Templates

T2.C Courtroom Design Examples

T3 Integrated Network Architecture

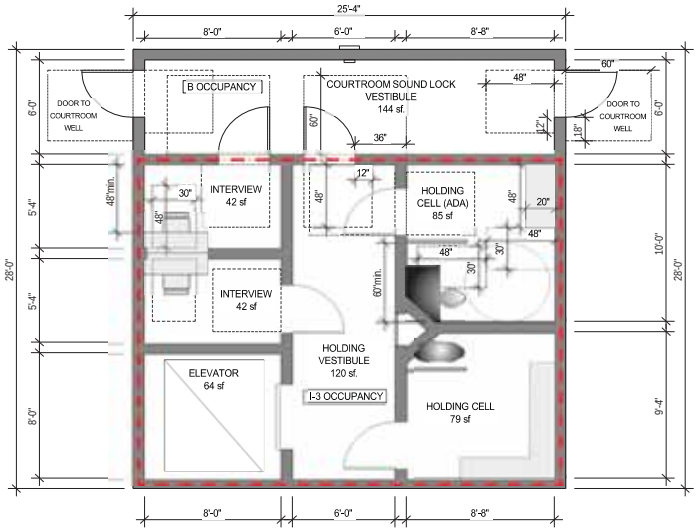
T4 Graphical User Interface Template

T5 In-Custody Interview Room Guidelines

T6 Building Management System Guidelines

Typical Holding Core—8″ CMU Walls
Holding Core Information

TOTAL SQUARE FEET	TOTAL RATED CAPACITY	TOTAL CELL COUNT
709	7	2

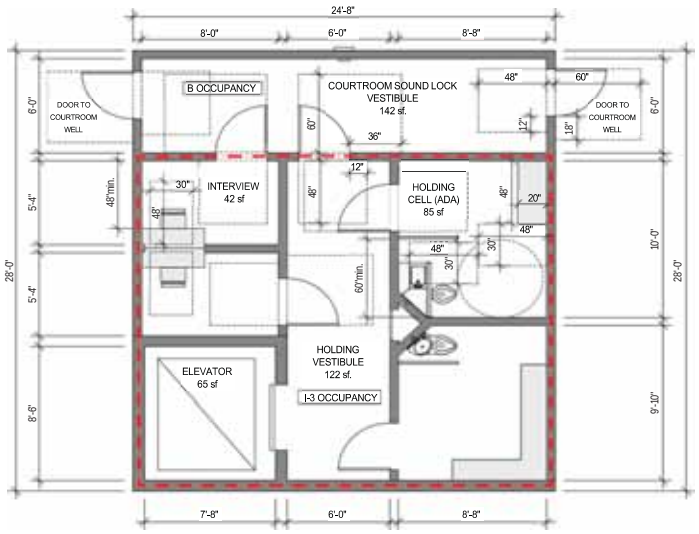


Note: The red line indicates rated wall boundary for institutional -occupancy separation.
ADA = Americans with Disabilities Act.
CMU = concrete masonry unit.
sf = square feet.

Figure T2.20 Typical Holding Core—8″ CMU Walls

Typical Holding Core—6″ CMU Walls
Holding Core Information

TOTAL SQUARE FEET	TOTAL RATED CAPACITY	TOTAL CELL COUNT
690	7	2



Note: The red line indicates rated wall boundary for institutional occupancy separation.
ADA = Americans with Disabilities Act.
CMU = concrete masonry unit.
sf = square feet.

Figure T2.21 Typical Holding Core—6″ CMU Walls

REQUIRED TOOLS

T1 Life Cycle Cost Analysis

T2 CATALOG OF COURTROOM LAYOUTS FOR CALIFORNIA TRIAL COURTS
- T2.A Courtroom Layout Overview
- T2.B Multipurpose Courtroom Templates
- T2.C Courtroom Design Examples

T3 Integrated Network Architecture

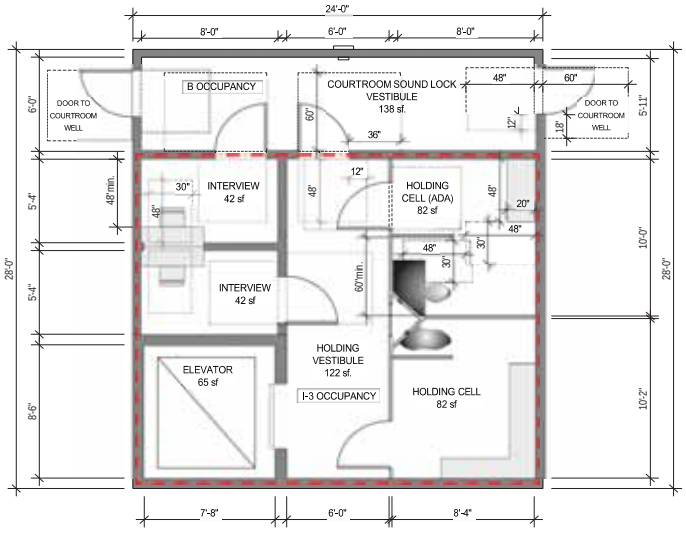
T4 Graphical User Interface Template

T5 In-Custody Interview Room Guidelines

T6 Building Management System Guidelines

Typical Holding Core—6″ CMU Walls and 2″ Metal Panel Walls at Holding
Holding Core Information

TOTAL SQUARE FEET	TOTAL RATED CAPACITY	TOTAL CELL COUNT
672	7	2



Note: The red line indicates rated wall boundary for institutional–occupancy separation.
ADA = Americans with Disabilities Act.
CMU = concrete masonry unit.
sf = square feet.

Figure T2.22 Typical Holding Core—6″ CMU Walls and 2″ Metal Panel Walls at Holding

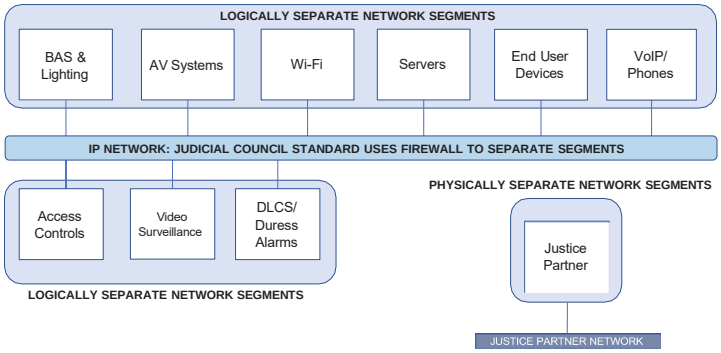
REQUIRED TOOLS

T3 INTEGRATED NETWORK ARCHITECTURE



South County Justice Center, Tulare County
Porterville, CA
CO Architects

Page intentionally left blank



Boxes above are representational; exact logical segmentation will vary by court.

AV = audiovisual.

BAS = building automation system.

~~AV = audiovisual.~~

DLCS = detention lock control system.

VoIP = Voice over Internet Protocol.

~~DLCS = detention lock control system.~~

Figure T3.1 Overview of Integrated Network Architecture

REQUIRED TOOLS

T1 Life Cycle Cost Analysis

T2 Catalog of Courtroom Layouts for California Trial Courts

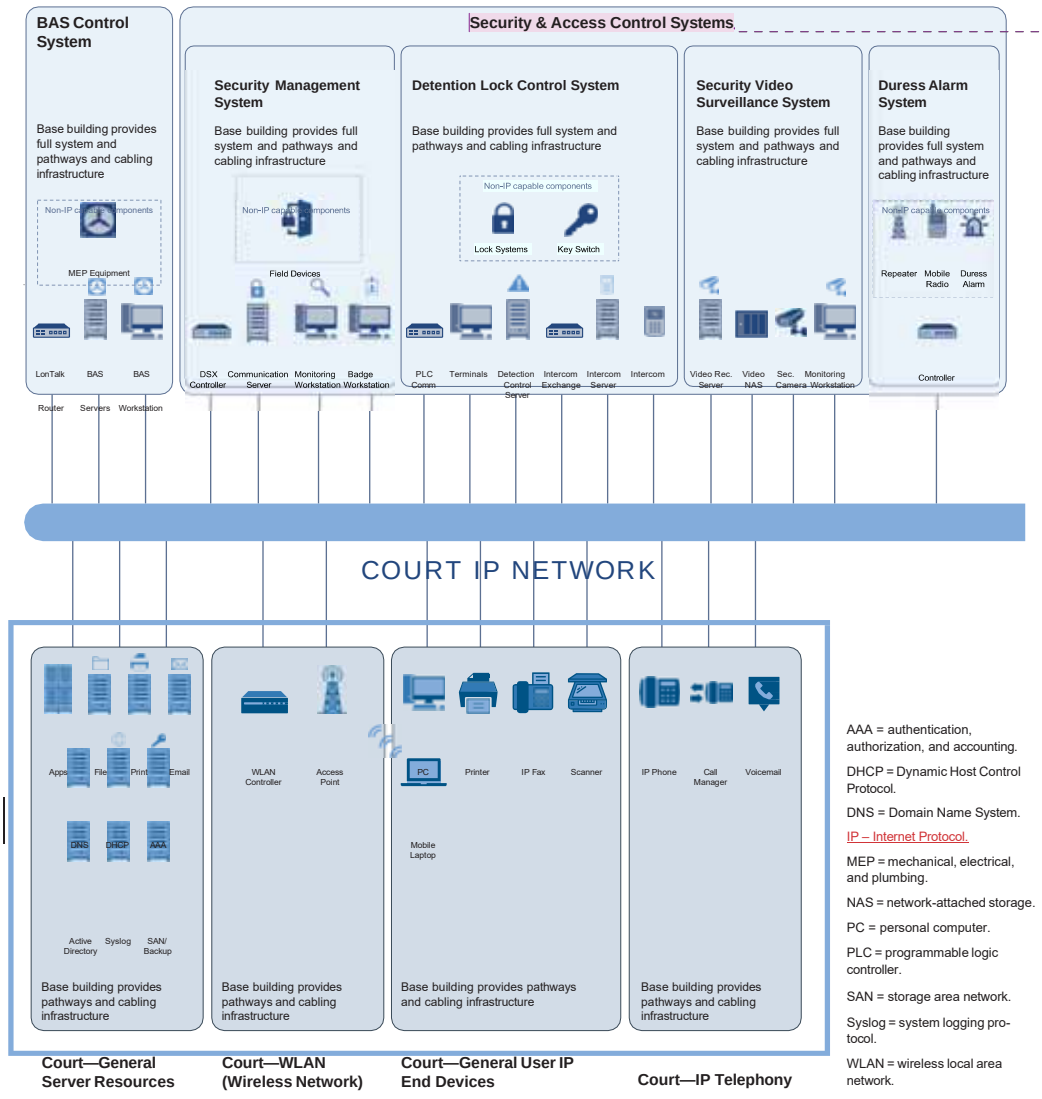
T3 INTEGRATED NETWORK ARCHITECTURE

T4 Graphical User Interface Template

T5 Attorney-Client Interview Room Guidelines

T6 Building Management System Guidelines

T3 INTEGRATED NETWORK ARCHITECTURE



AAA = authentication, authorization, and accounting.

DHCP = Dynamic Host Control Protocol.

DNS = Domain Name System.

IP – Internet Protocol.

MEP = mechanical, electrical, and plumbing.

NAS = network-attached storage.

PC = personal computer.

PLC = programmable logic controller.

SAN = storage area network.

Syslog = system logging protocol.

WLAN = wireless local area network.

Commented [RR1]: Other systems with potential to require network integration.
Lighting Controls (BMS)
Utility and Energy Management (New Box or BMS)
-Smart meters/Solor systems
Landscaping (New Box or BMS)
-monitoring/control
EV Charging (New Box or BMS)
-monitoring/control
Elevators (Duress Alarm System)

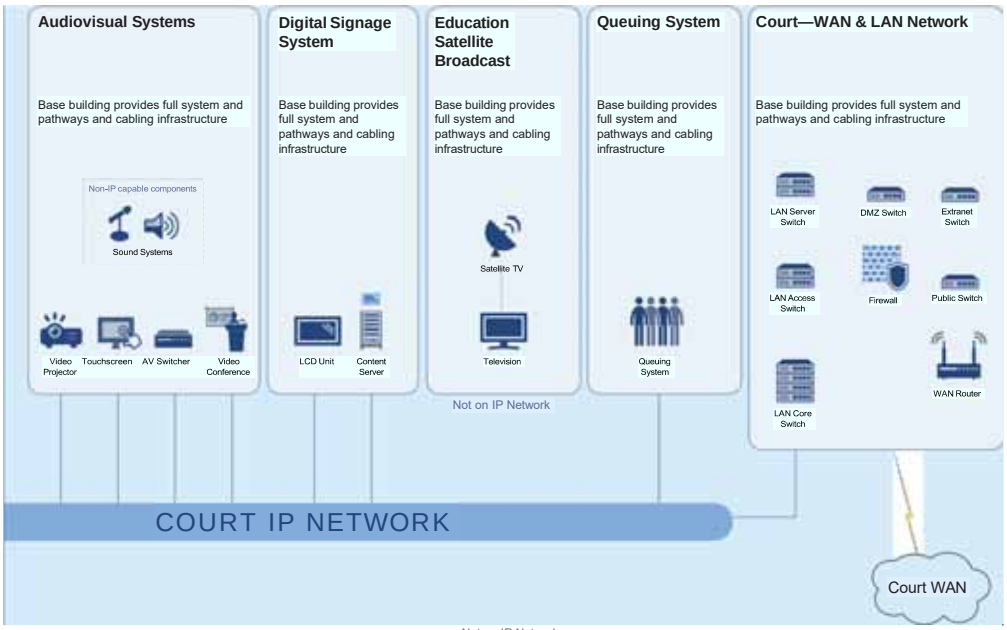
Commented [DP1R2]: Gensler: Add these words within the boxes noted in parentheses and come up with corresponding icons.

Commented [RR2]: CBC now require 24/7 video monitoring of elevators cabs for emergency services. Code adoption of ASME A17.1/CSA B44-2019 and IBC 2021 into the California Building Code and Title 8, Section 3041. This system will need to operate through the network and will require battery back up for emergency. It should be added to the network diagram and elevator chapter.

Commented [DP2R2]: I will add this to chapter 11.

Figure T3.2 Integrated Network Architecture by Systems

Figure T3.2 continues on next page



Commented [KC3]: Update to include Internet as well as WAN.

Commented [DP3R2]: Gensler: In the cloud on the right where it says Court WAN, add the word “Internet” below it within the cloud.

Not on IP Network



Equipment as shown is for illustrative purposes only.

This diagram does not indicate exact type and number of devices needed for each system.

This diagram does not show exact interconnections between system devices.

DMZ = demilitarized zone.

LCD = liquid crystal display.

WAN = wide area network.

Figure T3.2 Integrated Network Architecture by Systems *continued*

T4

REQUIRED TOOLS

GRAPHICAL USER INTERFACE TEMPLATE

SECTION	TOPIC	PAGE
T4.A	Introduction	T4.2
T4.B	Page Descriptions	T4.2



Superior Court of California, County of Sutter
Yuba City, CA

T4.A INTRODUCTION

The GUI (graphical user interface) template is provided as a starting point for the design of the courtroom touchscreen control panel located at either the judge, clerk, or bailiff's desk. It must be customized based on the specific capabilities and layout of each courtroom. Control panels for ancillary spaces should follow the same general layout, as much as possible. The following pages describe the step-by-step instructions to design and use the template.

T4.B PAGE DESCRIPTIONS

Startup Page

If the page in figure T4.1 is visible, then the audiovisual (AV) system is off. Tap the seal to start the system.

Commented [RR1]: While this is correct, tapping anywhere on the screen should activate the system not just the seal.

Commented [DP1R2]: Gensler: Change from "seal" to "screen".

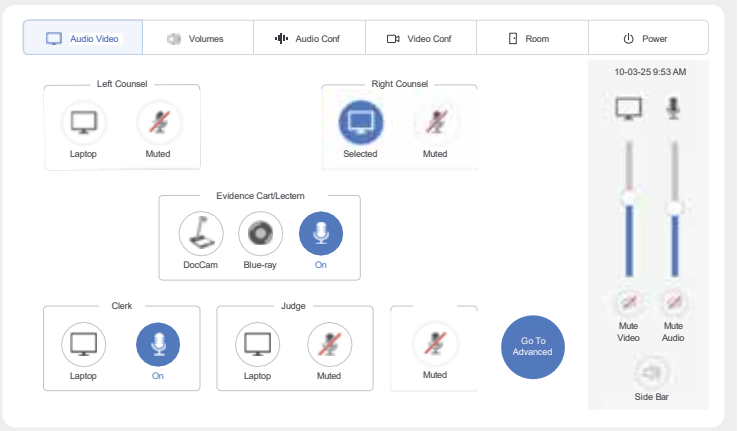
Figure T4.1 Audiovisual System Startup Page



Audio Video Page

At the top of the resulting page—the simplified Audio Video page (figure T4.2)—is a ribbon of all the page views. On the ribbon, tap the tab of the page you wish to view.

Figure T4.2 Simplified Audio Video

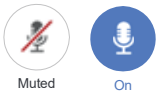


On the Audio Video page, tap the applicable Laptop, DocCam, or Blu-ray button to connect the device at the indicated location to the display system. For example, figure T4.2 shows the laptop in the Right Counsel group as Selected, which means it is connected to the display system. To switch to the judge's laptop, tap the Laptop button in the Judge group.

Tapping any display button (see icons below) also turns on the courtroom projector and lowers the projection screen.



The Audio Video page also shows whether a microphone is on or off. The microphone button toggles between On and Muted. For example, figure T4.2 shows that the microphones at the lectern and clerk's desk are on. Tap the Muted button to turn a microphone on and the On button to turn it off. On this simplified page, the microphone buttons in the Left Counsel or Right Counsel group, when tapped, mute and unmute both of the two microphones in those areas. To control them separately, see figure T4.3.



REQUIRED TOOLS
T1 Life Cycle Cost Analysis
T2 Catalog of Courtroom Layouts for California Trial Courts
T3 Integrated Network Architecture
T4 GRAPHICAL USER INTERFACE TEMPLATE
T4.A Introduction
T4.B Page Descriptions
T5 In-Custody Interview Room Guidelines
T6 Building Management System Guidelines

Commented [DP2]: Gensler: These figures are looking very washed out. The fading gray that you have along the edges of the screen is barely visible. Please make it more prominent so the screen stands out more from the page. Also, the buttons should have a slightly gray tint inside the circle, otherwise everything is white with no contrast.

Commented [RR3]: Identification missing for Witness Mic.

Tapping the Go to Advanced button toggles from the simplified page to the advanced page.



The next set of buttons appears on every page of the AV system.

- The two volume sliders control either the laptop volume or the master microphone volume.
- The Mute Video button mutes all video and Mute Audio mutes all audio.
- The Side Bar button turns on pink noise, mutes all microphones, and optionally sends audio from the sidebar to the court reporter. A pop-up window volume control allows the volume of the pink noise to be adjusted.

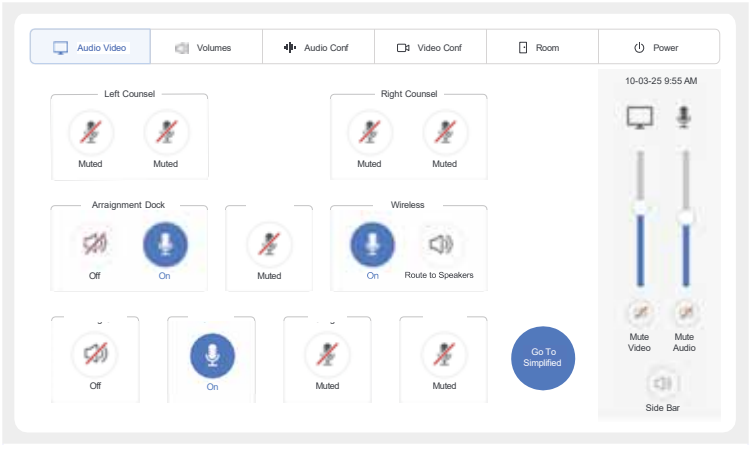
Commented [RR4]: Remove optional. This should happen regardless when sidebar is activated.



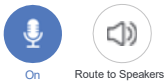
The advanced Audio Video page (figure T4.3) differs, in part, from the simplified page in that it has buttons for each of the two counsel microphones on each table (rather than one button for both), along with buttons that control arraignment dock and holding cell speakers, if available.

Figure T4.3 Advanced Audio Video Page

Commented [RR5]: Identification missing for Lectern, Holding cell, Clerk, Judge and Witness.



Another feature of the advanced page is the Wireless group, with buttons that control the wireless microphone. The default is to have the wireless microphone routed to the ceiling speakers. If the Route to Speakers button is tapped, the wireless microphone is routed to the infrared (IR) headsets in the courtroom. If a language interpreter is in the room, the interpreter can use the wireless microphone to translate what is being said in the courtroom directly to anyone wearing a wireless headset.



Tapping the Go to Simplified button toggles the page back from the advanced to the simplified Audio Video page.



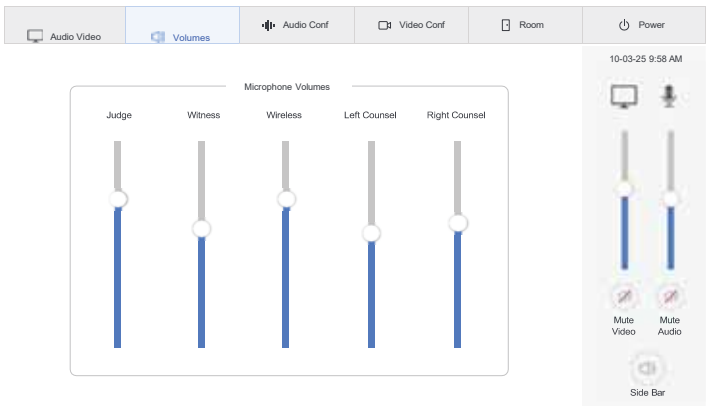
REQUIRED TOOLS

T1 Life Cycle Cost Analysis
T2 Catalog of Courtroom Layouts for California Trial Courts
T3 Integrated Network Architecture
T4 GRAPHICAL USER INTERFACE TEMPLATE
T4.A Introduction
T5 In-Custody Interview Room Guidelines
T6 Building Management System Guidelines

Commented [RR6]: Provide outline box with Wireless Mic identification to maintain consistency.

Volumes Page

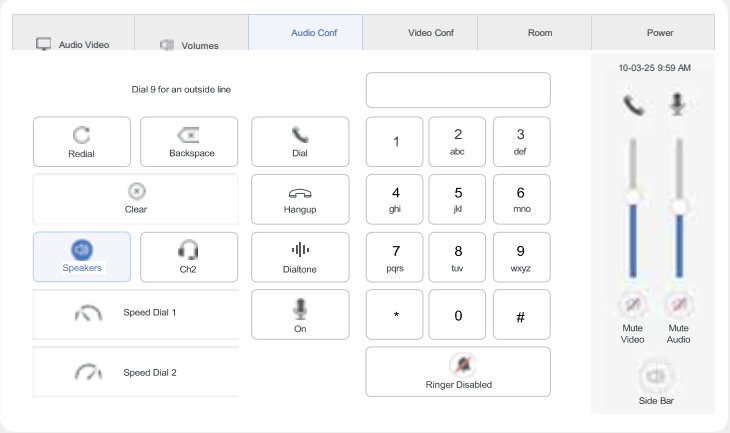
Figure T4.4 Volumes Page



The Volumes page has slider volume controls for each courtroom microphone.

Audio Conf Page

Figure T4.5 Audio Conf Page

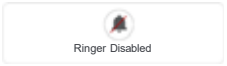


The Audio Conf page allows audio telephone calls with the microphones and speakers already used for amplification within the courtroom. Calls can be placed either by tapping the Dialtone button first or by entering the number and then tapping the Dial button. The volume control then adjusts the volume of the received telephone audio. The page can display the court's phone number and a message indicating to "Dial 9 for an outside line."

The Speakers button and Ch 2 button control the routing of the telephone audio feed. The default is to the ceiling speakers. If the language translator has been called on the telephone, the translator can hear what is being said in the courtroom and translate it for anyone who is wearing a wireless IR headset. If the Speakers button is blue, the system is set to the default, routing the telephone audio feed to the ceiling speakers. If the Ch 2 button is tapped, the blue Speakers button toggles to black and the Ch 2 button turns blue, changing the feed to channel 2 on the headsets.



The Ringer Disabled button indicates that the telephone ringer is disabled, so the courtroom will not be disturbed if someone calls the phone number of the courtroom. The ringer is disabled by default. If the button is tapped, the ringer is activated.



The On microphone button acts as a privacy button, either enabling or disabling the sending of audio from the courtroom over the telephone.

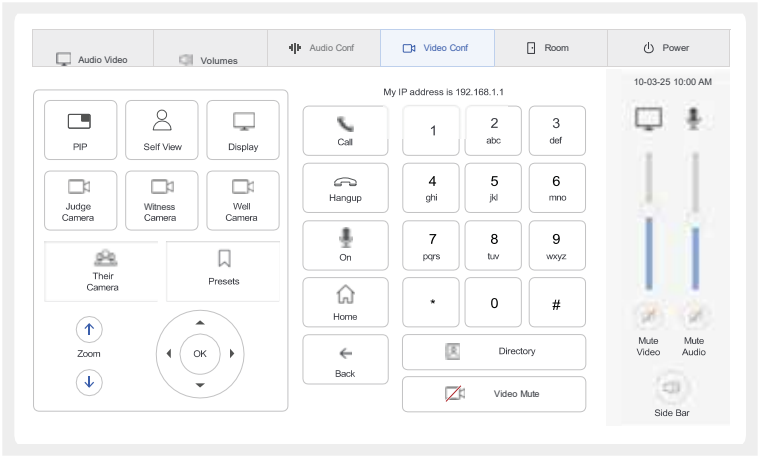


REQUIRED TOOLS

T1 Life Cycle Cost Analysis
T2 Catalog of Courtroom Layouts for California Trial Courts
T3 Integrated Network Architecture
T4 GRAPHICAL USER INTERFACE TEMPLATE
T4.A Introduction
T5 In-Custody Interview Room Guidelines
T6 Building Management System Guidelines

Video Conf Page

Figure T4.6 Video Conf Page



The Video Conf page allows the making of videoconference calls with the cameras, microphones, and speakers installed in the courtroom. This page shall include mute functions for audio and video. Both a dial pad and a keyboard icon shall be included. Camera controls shall include manual zoom capabilities along with preset views. If multiple cameras are provided, the ability to toggle between views and controls shall be included. Routing of the video conference to the Courtroom display is required. This page shall be customized based on the specific videoconference system installed.

Commented [RR7]: Remove: Directory and Their Camera.

Change: Hang up - Leave Call

This page need to mimic a Zoom or Teams interface rather than a older Polycom layout.

Commented [DP7R2]: Gensler: please connect with Radha Reddy if you have questions about his comments. <Radha.Reddy@jud.ca.gov>
415-865-4592

Commented [RR8]: Camera Choices should be Judge, Witness, Right Attorney Table, Left Attorney Table and Document Camera. Each Courtroom is now fitted with 4 total cameras plus doc cam.

Commented [RR9]: This can be removed as video conference platform are used rather then old poly dial out video conferencing.

Commented [RR10]: This line needs to altered.

Multiple camera will be provided for each Courtroom(4 total). The Touch will require the capability to send multiple camera views to the remote participants via a Multiviewer capable of sending 4 video feed in a single video output. The user shall be able to select between 1 camera to 4 camera views including the doc camera as video outputs to the remote attendee.

PIP should be removed or changed to Multiview. Preset should be associated with the number of cameras being sent to the remote end vs actual camera view settings(as there are 4 cameras in the Courtroom now there is no need for preset camera zoom presets).

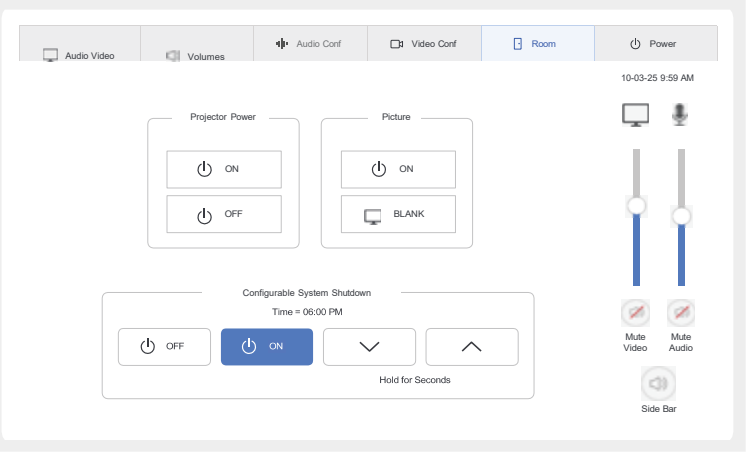
Preset should open a separate page to identify which cameras and the numbers of camera shots be sent (i.e. Preset 1 - Judge/Witness/Both Attorney cameras. Preset 2 - Judge/Witness. Preset 3 - Judge/Witness/Document Camera.) Or language added to say that 1 to 4 cameras views including doc cam can be selected at any time. Those camera that are selected and being sent to the far end are highlighted on the page to identify which cameras are being sent out.

Commented [RR11]: This language needs updating:

The video conf page allows the making of video conferencing calls with the cameras, microphones and speakers installed in the Courtroom. This page shall include mute functions for both audio and video as well as an all mute button for emergency scenarios. Page should mimic the visual layout of the video conferencing platform the system will use (i.e. Zoom, Teams, Webex, etc.). Camera controls shall allow for manual zoom features and a way to view those camera through the display system independently. Multiview functionality controls shall be available on this page or a pop-up page to select which cameras will be sent to the far end with the capability to send up to 4 camera views at once. Preset will be used to have preset selectable camera combination configuration readily available i.e. Judge/Witness/Both Attorney Tables or Judge/Witness or Judge/Witness/Doc Cam. Camera views are as followed; Judge, Witness, Right Attorney Table, Left Attorney Table and Document camera. Routing of the video conference system to the Courtroom displays is require ... [1]

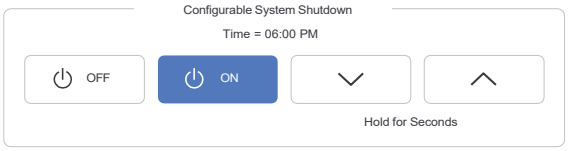
Room Page

Figure T4.7 Room Page



The Room page contains seldom-used controls and backup controls. It allows the user to turn projector power on and off and to momentarily "blank" the picture image.

The Configurable System Shutdown group controls the end-of-day auto shutdown. To set the time, tap the up or down arrows, holding for a few seconds as the time changes. The auto shutdown can be temporarily disabled by tapping the Off button, but it is automatically enabled the next day.



REQUIRED TOOLS

T1 Life Cycle Cost Analysis
T2 Catalog of Courtroom Layouts for California Trial Courts
T3 Integrated Network Architecture
T4 GRAPHICAL USER INTERFACE TEMPLATE
T4.A Introduction
T5 In-Custody Interview Room Guidelines
T6 Building Management System Guidelines

REQUIRED TOOLS

T5 IN-CUSTODY INTERVIEW ROOM GUIDELINES

SECTION	TOPIC	PAGE
T5.A	Acoustic Study	T5.2
T5.B	Observations and Measurement Results	T5.3
T5.C	Requirements	T5.3
T5.D	Speech Privacy	T5.5
T5.E	Sound Isolation	T5.5
T5.F	As-Built Dimensioned Drawing	T5.6
T5.G	Selective Performance Requirements for Interview Rooms Specification	T5.6



Superior Court of California, County of Tuolumne
Sonora, CA
Lionakis

ABBREVIATIONS

ASHRAE = American Society of Heating, Refrigerating and Air-Conditioning Engineers

ASTM = An international standards organization that develops and publishes voluntary consensus technical standards

NC = Noise Criteria: A single-number rating defined by ASHRAE that quantifies a steady-state noise

NIC = noise isolation class: A single-number rating defined in ASTM E336 that quantifies the ability of a partition to reduce airborne noise between adjacent enclosed spaces under field conditions

NRC = noise reduction coefficient: A number between 0 and 1 that represents how much an object hinders sound passing through it (with a higher number representing a greater sound barrier)

STC = sound transmission class: An integer rating used to indicate how well a building partition attenuates sound (with a higher rating indicating a greater sound barrier)

T5.A ACOUSTIC STUDY

To ensure confidentiality, care must be taken in the construction of in-custody interview rooms, also referred to as attorney-client interview rooms, to prevent sound transmission to outside those rooms. The in-custody interview rooms are composed of an attorney side and an in-custody side, separated by a partition and a transaction window~~,~~ as described below. The Judicial Council Facilities Services office has noted that in-custody interview rooms in the Superior Court of Santa Clara County's Family Justice Center Courthouse in San Jose, California, have kept conversations between attorneys and their clients sufficiently contained within the constructed interview rooms. The following report has been put together to characterize the existing space and to recommend acoustic standards based on these rooms to inform the construction of future in-custody interview rooms.

1. Findings

The following is a summary of the findings of the existing conditions and the sound isolation assessment of a selected pair of in-custody interview rooms in the Family Justice Center Courthouse. Observations and measurements were focused on a fourth-floor pair of in-custody interview rooms. Architectural working drawings suggest similar construction at similar pairs of interview rooms on the second and third floors.

a. In-custody interview room separation walls include windows with frame spacers to support unamplified conversation.

b. The entry door at the attorney side of the interview room is fully gasketed, whereas the in-custody side of the room has head and jamb seals only; corresponding sound isolation between interview rooms and adjacent circulation spaces was measured as noise isolation class (NIC) 34 and NIC 21, respectively.

c. Measured airborne sound isolation through the typical gypsum board wall on the attorney side of the interview rooms and the security wall on the in-custody side of the rooms was NIC 46 and NIC 34, respectively.

d. Because of the column layout on the fourth floor, interview rooms are separated from adjacent attorney-client conference rooms and a courtroom by double-wall assemblies; measured airborne sound isolation was NIC 52 to NIC 62 through these assemblies.

e. Heating, ventilation, and air-conditioning (HVAC ~~(heating, ventilation, and air-conditioning~~) systems serving interview rooms consist of the following:

- A supply duct path served by variable air volume (VAV) boxes that also serve adjacent spaces.
- No ducted return air paths. Therefore, return air from the attorney side of the interview room appears to pass through the window frame to the in-custody side of the interview room, and return air then travels through the undercut door to the holding vestibule.

f. Background noise levels, because of HVAC systems, were ~~NC (~~Noise Criteria (NC) 38 in the attorney side of the interview room and NC 27 in the in-custody side of the interview room.

2. Guidelines

Following is a summary of guidelines for future in-custody interview rooms:

a. The transaction window between the attorney side and the in-custody side of interview rooms shall allow unamplified speech communication at normal conversational levels.

b. Room acoustical treatments shall support speech intelligibility.

c. Sound isolation and minimum background sound levels shall provide confidential speech privacy between interview rooms and adjacent spaces.

d. HVAC systems shall support the intended use and maintain sound isolation.

T5.B OBSERVATIONS AND MEASUREMENT RESULTS

The Family Justice Center Courthouse has three pairs of in-custody interview rooms, one on the second, third, and fourth floors. Each pair of rooms is separated by a concrete masonry unit (CMU) wall that breaks the ceiling plane and extends to within 6″ of the deck above. These walls include windows with frame spacers to support unamplified conversation.

The attorney side of the interview rooms is accessed from public circulation areas with fully gasketed doors and is separated from adjacent rooms by full-height metal stud walls. The in-custody side of the interview rooms is accessed from holding vestibules with partially gasketed doors and is separated from adjacent rooms by security walls constructed of mortar and steel. Table T5.1 summarizes additional design features.

Conditioned air serving the interview rooms is provided by ducted air-handling units with zoned VAV systems. Although the attorney and in-custody sides of the interview rooms are served by separate VAV boxes, the boxes are shared with other adjacent attorney and in-custody spaces. Each room includes one ducted supply air diffuser. Mechanical drawings indicate that neither room has a ducted return air path. Therefore, it appears that return air from the attorney side of the interview room travels through the conversation window to the in-custody side of the interview room; return air from both rooms travels through the undercut room door on the in-custody side to the holding vestibule.

When measurements were taken, the building was partially occupied and HVAC systems were operating as normal. Measurements quantified airborne sound isolation in terms of Noise Isolation Class between the in-custody interview rooms and adjacent spaces, as well as background noise levels caused by HVAC systems. Sound levels measured in the in-custody interview room were not adjusted to account for the effects of the room volume and furnishings. Figure T5.1 summarizes measured airborne sound isolation. Background HVAC noise was NC 38 in the attorney side of the interview room and NC 27 in the in-custody side of the interview room.

T5.C REQUIREMENTS

The requirements for interview rooms are based on observations and measurements of existing interview rooms at the Family Justice Center Courthouse and industry standard knowledge.

Requirements are also included in chapter 5, Court Set; chapter 8, In-Custody Defendant Receiving, Holding, and Transport; and chapter 19, Acoustical Criteria. Following is a summary of the requirements.

1. HVAC Noise

- Interview rooms: Background noise level of NC 30 or less so that it does not interfere with speech communication between interview rooms.
- Ducted supply and return air paths: Lined return air boots to support fully gasketed interview room doors. Undercutting the door for air return is not permitted. Note that this requirement is not followed in the application at the Family Justice Center Courthouse in that the in-custody interview room door is undercut to provide a return

REQUIRED TOOLS

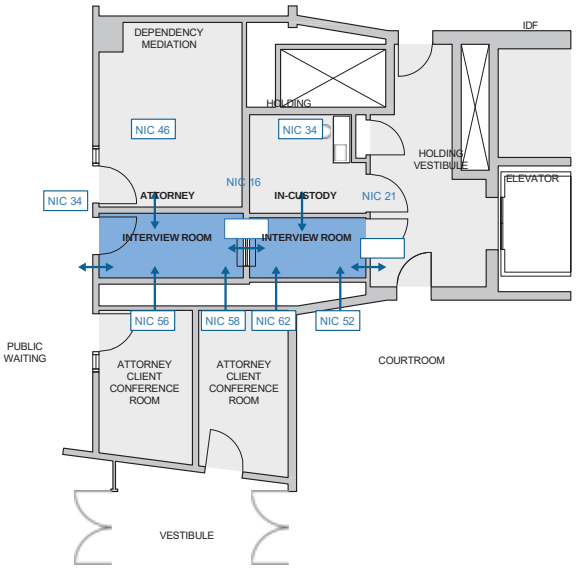
T1 Life Cycle Cost Analysis
T2 Catalog of Courtroom Layouts for California Trial Courts
T3 Integrated Network Architecture
T4 Graphical User Interface Template

T5 IN-CUSTODY INTERVIEW ROOM GUIDELINES
T5.A Acoustic Study
T5.B Observations and Measurement Results
T5.C Requirements
T5.D Speech Privacy
T5.E Sound Isolation
T5.F As-Built Dimensioned Drawing
T5.G Selective Performance Requirements for Interview Rooms Specification

T6 Building Management System Guidelines

Table T5.1 Construction Elements and Finishes of In-Custody Interview Rooms

ROOM	FLOOR	CEILING	DOOR	WALLS
Attorney side of Interview Room 4C (427)	Carpet	Acoustical ceiling tile (USG Mars mineral fiber or equivalent product, NRC 0.75)	Metal door with head and jamb bulb gaskets; automatic drop bottom with threshold	Typical: Full-height single metal-stud assemblies sealed to the underside of the deck above Corridor/circulation walls with three total layers of gypsum board and surrounding rooms with four Additional furred walls where structural columns exist, including on the fourth floor
In-cGustody side of Interview Room 4-IC (428)	Polished concrete	Detention-grade perforated metal	Metal door with full perimeter bulb seal and approximately 1″ gap at the bottom	Typical: Steel-covered walls with mortar-filled corrugated metal interior composition



NIC = Noise Isolation Class.

Figure T5.1 Airborne Sound Isolation Measurement

air path at that facility. Speech privacy is required at in-custody interview rooms, and the undercut may impede the privacy requirements. Hence, this variation will not be permitted in future projects.

2. Room Acoustics

- Attorney side of the interview rooms: Carpeted floor and sound-absorbing ceiling with minimum noise reduction coefficient (NRC) of 0.70 to support clear speech communication.
- In-custody side of the interview rooms: Hard-finish floor, and ceilings that are detention-grade perforated metal with a 1″ thick sound-absorbing material above (minimum NRC 0.70).

T5.D SPEECH PRIVACY

Speech privacy is a function of the acoustic separation between two spaces, quantified in terms of sound transmission class (STC), and the background noise level in the receiving space, measured in terms of Noise Criteria (NC). For normal conversational levels, speech privacy is generally considered to be normal when the composite STC and NC is 70, and confidential when the composite is 80. For reference, normal speech privacy generally means the ability to comprehend an occasional word but not complete sentences, and confidential speech privacy generally implies that an occupant in the adjacent space may be aware that a conversation is taking place but would be unable to understand individual words.

Following are the requirements for sound isolation in in-custody interview rooms. The design team shall review adjacencies on a project-by-project basis to confirm that confidential speech privacy is achieved and upgrade wall and door assemblies, and/or background noise levels, as needed. If HVAC systems operate at varying fan speeds, electronic sound masking may be needed to maintain a constant background noise level in adjacent spaces.

T5.E SOUND ISOLATION

1. Wall Assemblies

- Attorney side of interview room to adjoining areas (unless otherwise noted): STC 50, using, for instance, a single metal stud with two layers of gypsum board on each side and batt insulation in stud cavities.
- Attorney side of interview room to public corridor or vestibule: STC 45, using, for instance, a single metal stud with two layers of gypsum board on one side and one layer on the opposite side and batt insulation in stud cavities.
- In-custody side of interview rooms to adjacent spaces: STC 40, using, for instance, grout-filled metal security wall assembly.

2. Doors

- Attorney side of interview room to public corridor: Laboratory-rated STC 43.
- Attorney side of interview room to secure vestibule or hallway: A minimum 3/4″ solid-core wood door or hollow metal steel door with a full set of acoustical seals, including perimeter gasketing and an automatic door bottom.
- In-custody side of interview room: A minimum 3/4″ solid-core wood door or hollow metal steel door with a full set of acoustical seals, including perimeter gasketing and an automatic door bottom. MegaMet Industries' MegaSCIF doors rated up to STC 52 and

REQUIRED TOOLS

T1 Life Cycle Cost Analysis
T2 Catalog of Courtroom Layouts for California Trial Courts
T3 Integrated Network Architecture
T4 Graphical User Interface Template
T5 IN-CUSTODY INTERVIEW ROOM GUIDELINES
T5.A Acoustic Study
T5.B Observations and Measurement Results
T5.C Requirements
T5.D Speech Privacy
T5.E Sound Isolation
T5.F As-Built Dimensioned Drawing
T5.G Selective Performance Requirements for Interview Rooms Specification
T6 Building Management System Guidelines

made of military-grade~~,~~ 14-gauge stainless steel are available. If removal of the typical seals the manufacturer uses are a self-harm concern for the in-custody person, manufacturers offer custom doors that could minimize the chances of the seals being removed for this purpose.

3. Floors

- Attorney side of interview rooms: Carpeted floor and sound-absorbing ceiling to reduce unwanted echoes and increase speech intelligibility, with a minimum NRC of 0.70.
- In-custody side of interview rooms: Hard finish, with perforated metal ceilings with a 1″–″ thick absorbing material above (minimum NRC 0.70).

4. Windows

The wall separating attorney and in-custody sides of the interview room is typically CMU or grout filled for security purposes. The design and construction shall allow for unamplified speech communication. Provide voice-around transaction windows that allow for natural voice transmission through the frame, as consistent with security requirements. Appropriate products shall be equivalent to Aluminum Voice Around Transaction Windows by Total Security Solutions. More specific requirements for windows in these interview rooms are listed below: ~~(no transaction window but a paper slot to be able to pass a sheet of paper back and forth this is typically a custom item)~~

Commented [DP1]: This is already covered in T5.F below.

- Interview room windows: A glazed opening between the attorney and in-custody sides of the interview room that provides sufficient open areas in the frame to support unamplified conversation between the two sides, as consistent with security requirements.
- Attorney-side door windows: Integrated door windows provided by the manufacturer to meet the desired sound rating.
- In-custody—side door windows: Security windows as required.
- Sound-rated construction: Sealed perimeter walls, penetrating elements, outlet boxes, junction boxes, and low-voltage receptacles to maintain sound isolation.

T5.F AS-BUILT DIMENSIONED DRAWING

The as-built drawing of the Family Justice Center Courthouse may be used as a template for future in-custody interview rooms. The airborne sound isolation measurement drawing is shown in figure T5.2. Upon court request and Judicial Council approval, a paper pass-through opening may be added below or on the side of the transaction window, as shown in figure T5.3.

T5.G SELECTIVE PERFORMANCE REQUIREMENTS FOR INTERVIEW ROOMS SPECIFICATION

1. General

1.1 Related Documents

a. Drawings and general provisions of the construction contract, including General and Supplementary Conditions and other Division 01 Specification sections, apply to this section.

b. The construction or renovation of in-custody interview rooms shall comply with the *California Trial Court Facilities Standards*, including but not limited to chapter 5, Court Set; chapter 8, In-Custody Defendant Receiving, Holding, and Transport; and chapter 19, Acoustical Criteria.

1.2 Summary

a. This section includes general requirements and procedures for compliance with sound containment for in-custody interview rooms, as indicated in the drawings.

b. This section also includes the Noise Criteria requirements for the in-custody interview room to ensure speech communication without noise interference.

1.3 Definitions

The definitions that follow explain the difference between several sound ratings used in the performance requirements outlined in this specification. They measure noise reduction, noise criteria, noise buildup within a space, and sound transmission between spaces. These factors are combined to achieve the desired sound performance of the space.

a. Noise Isolation Class—A single-number rating, defined in ASTM E336, that quantifies the ability of a partition to reduce airborne noise between adjacent enclosed spaces under field conditions. The sound levels measured in the receive room are not adjusted to account for the effects of the room volume and furnishing. Higher NIC ratings correspond to improved airborne sound isolation.

b. Noise Criteria—A single-number rating, defined by ASHRAE, that quantifies a steady-state noise. It is based on a family of curves that includes noise from 63 to 8,000 hertz (Hz). NC is typically used to rate the loudness of HVAC system noise in a room.

c. Sound Transmission Class—The STC measures the sound transmission between spaces. A single-number rating is used to measure the assembly's barrier effect. A higher STC rating blocks more noise from transmitting through a partition. Loud speech can be understood through an STC 30 wall but should not be audible through an STC 60 wall. For instance, Fiberlite Technologies' cellulose insulation products have an STC rating of 44 to 68 depending on the wall construction. STC ratings do not assess the low-frequency sound transfer. They are based on performance with frequencies from 125 to 4,000 Hz (speech frequencies). The STC rating is a lab test that does not take into consideration weak points, penetrations, or flanking paths.

d. Noise Reduction Coefficient—The NRC measures the buildup of noise within a space. A single-number index rating is used to measure the sound absorption of a material. Fiberlite's cellulose insulation products have an NRC rating from 0.75 to 0.82 depending on wall design, materials, and applied density of the product. Fiberlite's cellulose insulation products will absorb 75 to 82 percent of the sound that they come in contact with and will reflect 18 to 25 percent of the sound back into the space. However, NRC does not address a material's barrier effect. ~~N~~ nor does it give information as to how absorptive a material is in the low and high frequencies. NRC is only the average of the midfrequency sound absorption coefficients (250, 500, 1,000, and 2,000 Hz) rounded to the nearest 5 percent.

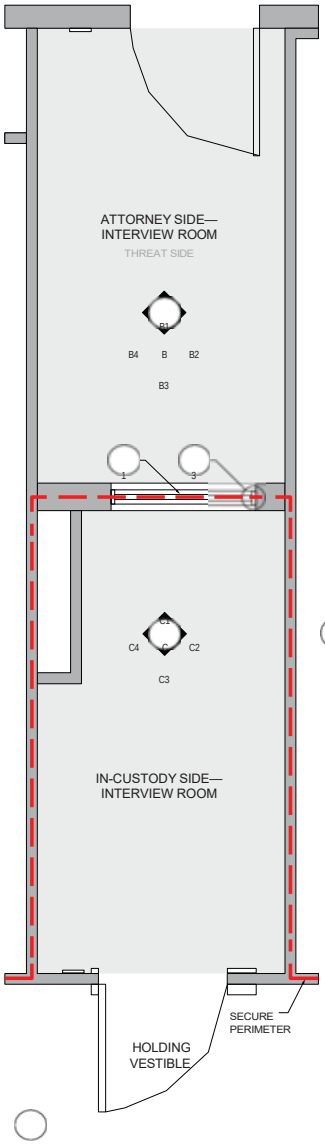
1.4 Interview Room Performance Requirements

a. HVAC noise: All in-custody interview rooms shall have a background of NC 30 or less so that noise does not interfere with speech communications.

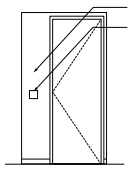
b. Room acoustics: In-custody interview rooms shall include sound-absorbing elements with a minimum NRC of 0.70.

REQUIRED TOOLS

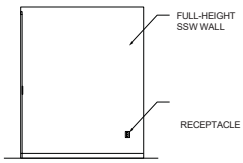
T1 Life Cycle Cost Analysis
T2 Catalog of Courtroom Layouts for California Trial Courts
T3 Integrated Network Architecture
T4 Graphical User Interface Template
T5 IN-CUSTODY INTERVIEW ROOM GUIDELINES
T5.A Acoustic Study
T5.B Observations and Measurement Results
T5.C Requirements
T5.D Speech Privacy
T5.E Sound Isolation
T5.F As-Built Dimensioned Drawing
T5.G Selective Performance Requirements for Interview Rooms Specification
T6 Building Management System Guidelines



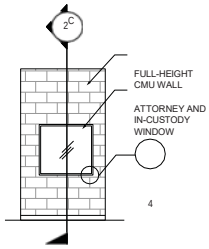
A ENLARGED FLOOR PLAN
SCALE: N.T.S.



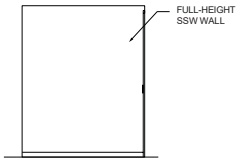
B1 ELEVATION



B2 ELEVATION

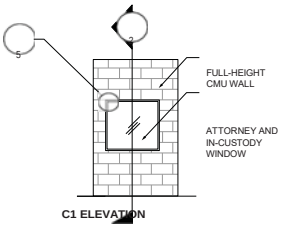


B3 ELEVATION

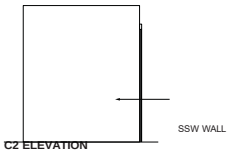


B4 ELEVATION

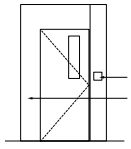
B ELEVATION: ATTORNEY SIDE—INTERVIEW ROOM



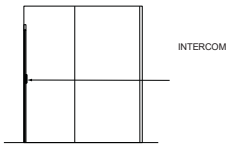
C1 ELEVATION



C2 ELEVATION



C3 ELEVATION



C4 ELEVATION

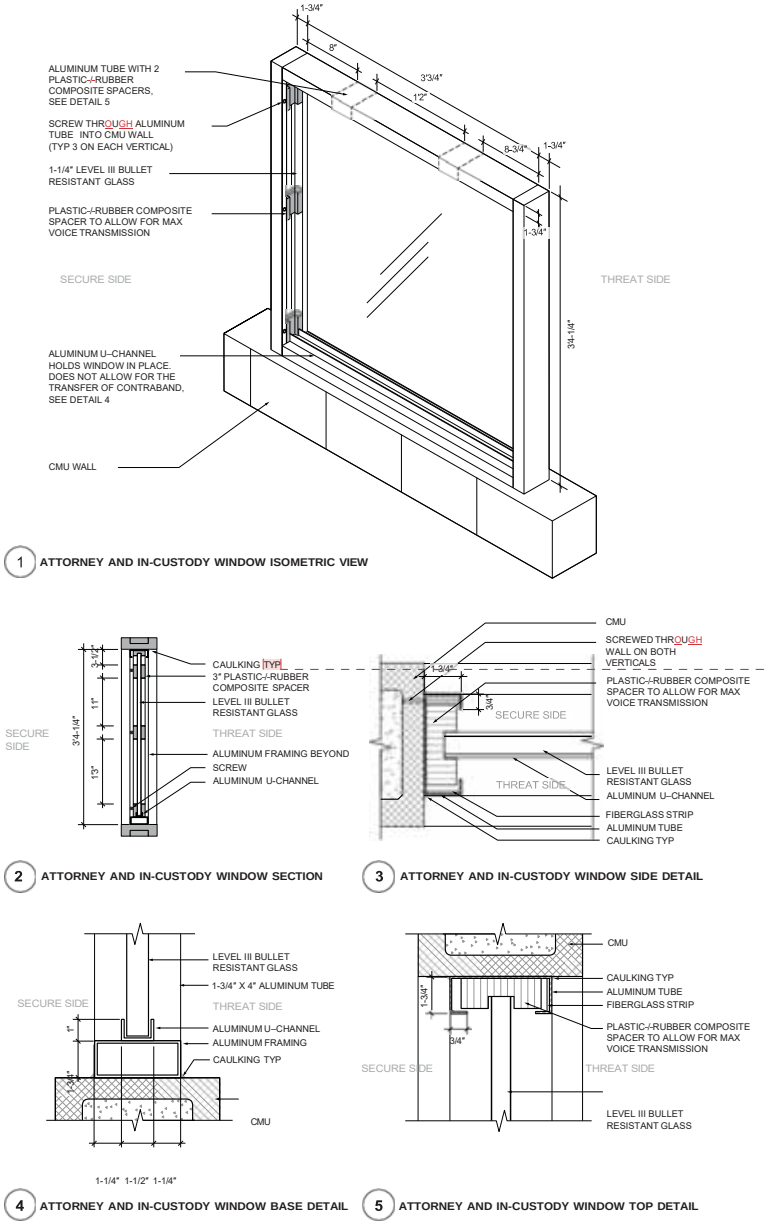
ELEVATION: IN-CUSTODY SIDE—INTERVIEW ROOM

C

CMU = concrete masonry unit.
GYP = gypsum.
SSW = Steel Strong-Wall.

TYP = typical.

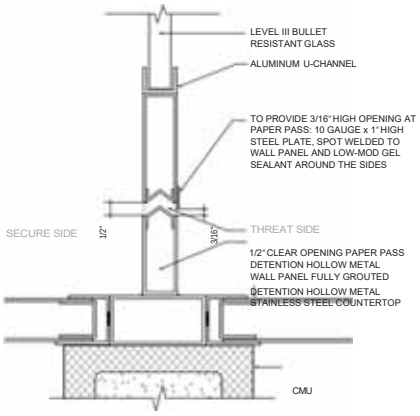
Figure T5.2 As-Built Drawing (not to scale)



Commented [LD2]: Define?

Commented [DP2R2]: Don't need to define anything here, these are technical details.

Figure T5.2 As-Built Drawing (not to scale) *continued*





Picture from attorney side



Picture from in-custody side

Figure T5.3 Paper ~~pass~~Pass ~~through~~ Through (not to scale)

c. Sound isolation: Transmission class will vary depending on adjacent spaces and room occupancy as follows:

   1. Attorney side of interview rooms to adjacent areas shall have an STC 50 rating.
   2. Attorney side of interview rooms to secure vestibule or hallway shall have an STC 45 rating.
   3. In-custody side of interview room to adjacent spaces shall have an STC 40 rating.

d. Door~~s~~ transmission: Doors shall be laboratory tested and rated for STC 43.

e. Window speech passage: Window sound ratings and open area to support unamplified conversation between two rooms shall be certified by manufacturer and tested after installation to ensure that room will meet the sound criteria.

   1. Through the design, manufacturing techniques, and material application, the Total Security Solutions (TSS) Natural Voice Rail transaction window shall be of the "non-ricochet" type. This design is intended to permit the capture and retention of an attacking projectile, lessening the potential of a random injury or lateral penetration. This design shall employ a spacer within the frame to allow for natural sound transmission. ~~Each transaction position may have a stainless steel dip tray at the court's request.~~ No dip tray shall be included. Components must be manufactured in strict accordance with the specifications, design, and details. All vision panels shall be cut to size, with all exposed edges polished. Necessary holes shall be predrilled and tapped where required. Stainless steel assembly screws and acrylic spacers shall be provided. Frame and channel shall be provided. Anchor screws shall be provided by the installer.

Commented [BO3]: REMOVE?
Per communication on Lakeport 05/15; understand this option is not longer available

Commented [DP3R2]: This was a discrepancy. Corrected.

No field alterations to the construction of the units fabricated under the acceptable standards shall be allowed unless approved by the manufacturer and the architect. Standard manufacturing tolerances shall be ±1/16″.

2. Materials shall meet or exceed ~~Underwriters Laboratories'~~ UL 752 requirements.

1.5 Design Meetings

a. Predesign conference: Conduct conference at the project site to review in-custody interview room requirements and action plans for compliance with these requirements.

b. After preparation of proposed sound performance measures, conduct a review meeting.

1.6 Administrative Requirements

a. Respond to questions and requests from the Judicial Council about proposed sound compliance measures.

b. Submit documentation to the Judicial Council project manager.

1.7 Action Submittals

a. Provide sound performance calculations for each compliance measure listed in ~~paragraph~~ T5.G.1.4.

b. Provide shop drawings of the proposed assemblies included in the compliance measures—including HVAC ductwork, wall and ceiling assemblies, floor attenuation, door types and proposed seals and gaskets, window types, and sound rating—to provide unamplified conversation.

c. Provide detail of sound-rated construction—including seals around perimeter walls and treatment of penetrating elements, including air terminal devices, outlet boxes, junction boxes, and receptacles, as required—to maintain sound isolation.

2. Products and Materials

2.1 General

a. Provide materials per approved shop drawings, product data submittals, and proposed room assemblies for ceilings, walls, and floor.

b. Provide all ~~All~~ new materials ~~shall be new and shall~~that meet ~~the~~ Judicial Council req

c. Use ~~Materials~~ materials ~~shall~~ that form a passive system with spacers, sound insulation, gaskets, and seals to meet the sound performance requirements.

2.2 Wall Assemblies

a. In the attorney side of interview rooms, build walls with metal studs with sound-absorbing fiberglass insulation in cavity and faced with two layers of drywall on each side. QuietRock or an equivalent product may be used on one layer facing the interview room side, if necessary, to meet the required sound rating.

b. Construct ~~The~~ walls for the in-custody side of interview rooms ~~shall be constructed~~ of grout-filled, metal security wall assembly ~~and shall~~that meet the Sound Transmission Class specified.

REQUIRED TOOLS

T1 Life Cycle Cost Analysis
T2 Catalog of Courtroom Layouts for California Trial Courts
T3 Integrated Network Architecture
T4 Graphical User Interface Template
T5 IN-CUSTODY INTERVIEW ROOM GUIDELINES
T5.A Acoustic Study
T5.B Observations and Measurement Results
T5.C Requirements
T5.D Speech Privacy
T5.E Sound Isolation
T5.F As-Built Dimensioned Drawing
T5.G Selective Performance Requirements for Interview Rooms Specification
T6 Building Management System Guidelines

Commented [DP4]: Gensler: the changes in this bullet were missed.

2.3 Floor Assemblies

a. Carpet or rubber sound-absorbing materials may be used in the attorney side of interview rooms to meet the required Sound Transmission Class.

b. A hard-finished floor is required for the in-custody side of the interview rooms. Other measures shall be applied to wall assembly and ceiling to meet the required Sound Transmission Class.

2.4 Ceilings

a. Drywall or acoustical ceiling with sound control measures for all penetrating elements shall be used in the attorney side of the interview rooms.

b. The in-custody side of the interview rooms shall include detention-grade perforated metal ceiling lined above with 1″ minimum of sound-absorbing material as required to meet STC requirements.

2.5 Doors

a. Doors shall be a minimum 3/4″ solid wood core or hollow metal steel.

b. Doors shall have a full set of acoustical seals, including a perimeter gasket.

c. Doors shall have an automatic seal door bottom.

2.6 Windows

a. General Requirements

1. All windows shall meet the Judicial Council security requirements.
2. In-custody ~~–~~side door windows shall be high-security rated to prevent breakage.
3. All windows shall meet the room-specified sound rating.
4. The glazed opening between the attorney and in-custody sides of interview rooms must provide sufficient free (open) area to support unamplified conversation between the two rooms without compromising the security requirements.
5. Integrated door windows shall be certified by the manufacturer to provide the desired sound rating.

b. Window Products

1. Product shall be a TSS Natural Voice Rails transaction window or approved ~~equal~~equivalent.
2. Window system shall consist of a custom prefabricated bullet-resistant glazing section with secure air passage through frames, with black foam and wood spacers as required for natural voice transmission.
3. It shall include ~~a frame with optional plastic laminate~~an optional shelf with or without an ~~and optional recessed transaction tray. The shelf and transaction tray may be provided~~optional paper pass-through, if requested by the court and approved by the Judicial Council.
4. All accessories for installation shall be included.
5. Available frame selections are aluminum, steel, or stainless steel, but see item ~~f~~e below.

Commented [BO5]: REMOVE?
Per communication on Lakeport 05/15; understand this option is not longer available

Commented [DP5R2]: Corrected the discrepancy.

Commented [SN6]: Appears the word "optional" may be erroneously repeated. Consider rephrasing.

Commented [DP6R2]: Both are optional, one can be added without the other. I have rephrased.

6. Product size of TSS Natural Voice Rail transaction window shall be a recommended width not to exceed 36″ and height not to exceed 48″.

c. Bullet-~~Resisting~~ Resistant Glazing Material Options

1. Bullet Resistant Level 1: 3/4″ LP 750 laminated, 1/4″ uncoated acrylic, and ~~GCP (~~glass-clad polycarbonate (GCP) 750
2. Bullet Resistant Level 2: 1″ LP 1000 laminated, 3/8″ uncoated acrylic, and TSS 002 L/S
3. Bullet Resistant Level 3: 1/4″ LP 1250 laminated and TSS 003 L/S
4. Bullet Resistant Levels ~~4~~–8: TSS 004 L/S through TSS 008 L/S

~~d. Optional Transaction Tray~~

~~1. Brushed stainless steel counter, mounted or recessed, is optional.~~

~~2. Transaction tray shall be 18-gauge stainless steel, #4 finish, 16″ × 10″ from the outside edge of flanges with a clear opening.~~

~~c.~~d. Optional Shelf

~~1.~~ Provide a 1-1/2″ thick shelf ~~with an optional recessed transaction tray, if requested by the court.~~

~~2.~~ ~~The shelf shall be~~ the full width of the window, 18″ deep, centered under the glazing, and covered with a black high-pressure laminate, with an optional stainless steel 18-gauge #4 finish.

~~f.~~e. Recommended Frame Material: Aluminum

1. Frame shall be anodized aluminum (optional 18-gauge primed or stainless steel, as specified). The bottom of the glazing shall be capped with corresponding material on the frame (i.e., stainless steel on stainless steel).
2. Aluminum sections shall be manufactured in accordance with ~~ASTM~~ ASTM B209, extruded aluminum alloy 6063 T5 anodized or powder-coated finish to match the existing décor, and ~~be~~ free of sharp edges or burrs when in place.
3. Glazing channel shall be a U-channel specifically designed for securing transparencies tightly in place. Angles and stops are acceptable only for top attachment.

2.7 HVAC

a. The HVAC system shall include ducted supply air and return air ducts.

b. Supply air shall be ducted to a VAV box and/or ~~to~~ main air distribution duct. It shall not be connected to another room distribution branch where sound transmission between rooms could occur.

c. Return air ducts shall include a lined return air box before connecting to the return air fan.

d. Undercutting the door for air return is not permitted. Interview room doors shall include an automatic basket.

REQUIRED TOOLS

T1 Life Cycle Cost Analysis
T2 Catalog of Courtroom Layouts for California Trial Courts
T3 Integrated Network Architecture
T4 Graphical User Interface Template
T5 IN-CUSTODY INTERVIEW ROOM GUIDELINES
T5.A Acoustic Study
T5.B Observations and Measurement Results
T5.C Requirements
T5.D Speech Privacy
T5.E Sound Isolation
T5.F As-Built Dimensioned Drawing
T5.G Selective Performance Requirements for Interview Rooms Specification
T6 Building Management System Guidelines

Commented [BO7]: REMOVE?
Per communication on Lakeport 05/15; understand this option is not longer available

Commented [DP7R2]: Removed.

Commented [BO8]: REMOVE?
Per communication on Lakeport 05/15; understand this option is not longer available

Commented [DP8R2]: Removed.

REQUIRED TOOLS

T6 BUILDING MANAGEMENT SYSTEM GUIDELINES

SECTION	TOPIC	PAGE
T6.A	General Requirements	T6.2
T6.B	General Pneumatic Control Requirements	T6.5
T6.C	General Design Requirements	T6.6
T6.D	System Requirements	T6.8



Superior Court of California, County of Siskiyou
Yreka, CA
EHDD

This section provides building management system (BMS) guidelines for Judicial Council projects.

ABBREVIATIONS

ANSI = American National Standards Institute

ASC = application-specific controller

ASHRAE = American Society of Heating, Refrigerating and Air-Conditioning Engineers

BMS = building management system

BACnet = Building Automation and Control Network (ANSI/ASHRAE Standard 135)

BMA = BACnet Manufacturer's Association

BTL = BACnet Testing Laboratories (recognized, independent third-party laboratory certified to test products for compliance to BACnet standards)

BTL Mark = seal affixed to product certifying that it has been tested by a recognized BTL and found to conform to BACnet standards

DCP = distributed control panel

REST API = representational state transfer application programming interface

HTML = hypertext markup language

LAN = local area network

NEMA = National Electric Manufacturers Association

OIW = operator interface workstation

T6.A GENERAL REQUIREMENTS

a. All BMS designs shall incorporate and conform to these requirements.

b. The BMS shall consist of the Tridium Niagara 4 platform to create smart-device applications. The system shall support an encrypted REST API, which allows for secure third-party custom applications and interfaces. The system shall be compliant with and support the HTML5 framework.

c. Submittal requirements include the following:

- Riser diagram;
- Standard for naming components;
- Design drawings for control panels, including wiring design diagram;
- Sequence of operation (to be developed in a collaborative effort with the Judicial Council);
- Detailed network architecture diagram showing internet and/or active port connections;
- Detailed drawings showing cable pathways; and
- Drawings showing all fire-rated walls and required fire-rated assemblies through rated ~~Walls~~walls.

d. All BACnet equipment and software supplied for Judicial Council projects shall be supported by a manufacturer-supplied protocol implementation conformance statement (PICS) certifying that the device complies with the specified BACnet requirements.

- At a minimum, each BACnet PICS shall convey the following ~~information~~:
  - Basic information identifying the vendor and describing the BACnet device~~.~~;
  - The BACnet Interoperability Building Blocks supported by the field device~~.~~;
  - The standardized BACnet device profile to which the device conforms~~.~~;
  - All nonstandard application services that are supported, along with an indication for each service of whether the device can initiate ~~the~~ a service request, respond to a service request, or both~~.~~;
  - A list of all standard and proprietary object types that are supported~~.~~;
  - For each object type supported:
    i. Any optional properties that are supported;
    ii. Which properties can be written~~.~~ to use BACnet services;
    iii. Whether the objects can be dynamically created or deleted using BACnet services; and
    iv. Any restrictions on the range of data values for properties.
  - The data link layer options supported, both real and virtual~~.~~;
  - Whether segmented requests are supported~~.~~; and
  - Whether segmented responses are supported~~.~~.

- All products shall have a BTL Mark certifying that the product was independently tested by a third-party testing facility and complies with BACnet conformance requirements.; and
- All BACnet products shall come with a full warranty for a minimum period of two years after system acceptance.

e. Design specifications for BMS installations shall provide detailed specifications for all components of the BMS including equipment, field devices, wire/cable, conduit, pneumatic tubing, mounts, terminations, and the like.

f. The BMS designer shall fully coordinate BMS design requirements with the other project design team parties (where applicable). The BMS designer shall coordinate field panel mounting locations, intended DCP/ASC locations, power supply requirements, communications outlet requirements, and the like.

g. All new BMS installations shall be integrated and include all associated graphics. No without exceptions.

h. The following are general installation guidelines for BMS installations:

- All equipment and materials furnished shall be new.
- All equipment and materials shall be UL listed. All temperature control panels (TCPs) shall be a UL-listed enclosure and built by a UL-listed panel shop. Equipment and components shall be labeled accordingly.
- All similar components (e.g., temperature sensors, differential pressure transducers, current transformer/relay combinations, signal transmitters) in a BMS installation shall be provided by the same manufacturer.
- Components shall be provided that are suitable for the intended application. Components shall be capable of maintained operation in the applicable environmental conditions and shall be capable of operation in contact with the controlled/monitored medium.
- Except for field-mounted instrumentation and devices, all BMS components shall be installed in field panels (TCPs). Panels and enclosures shall meet, at a minimum, the following requirements:
  - Painted steel panels with hinged locking door. All panels shall be keyed to a standard key.
  - Ventilated to prevent excessive heat buildup, where excessive heat buildup is expected.
  - Field cabling terminated on terminal stripes. Cable within enclosures shall be installed in cable trays with snap-on covers.
  - Internal components installed to allow easy access for diagnostics, maintenance, removal, or replacement.
  - Panel or enclosure suitably rated for the environment in which it is to be installed. Exterior enclosures shall be, at a minimum, NEMA 4 rated.
  - UL listed and registered.
- Panels and enclosures shall only be located within mechanical rooms or at approved locations. Panel locations shall be coordinated during design with a Judicial Council representative and shall be identified on project design drawings. For new construction

REQUIRED TOOLS

T1 Life Cycle Cost Analysis
T2 Catalog of Courtroom Layouts for California Trial Courts
T3 Integrated Network Architecture
T4 Graphical User Interface Template
T5 In-Custody Interview Room Guidelines
T6 BUILDING MANAGEMENT SYSTEM GUIDELINES
T6.A General Requirements
T6.B General Pneumatic Control Requirements
T6.C General Design Requirements
T6.D System Requirements

projects, the BMS panel locations shall be identified in the project mechanical design drawings. For retrofit applications, the BMS panel locations shall be identified on building floor plan drawings, to be included in the project documents.

- All components of the BMS shall be tagged for identification ~~tagged~~. Identification tags shall be plastic, laminated ~~"~~luggage-style~~"~~ tags securely fastened to the end device. Tags shall be of a minimum size of 3.15″ × 1″ and engraved with 0.5″ bold lettering. Identification tags shall be provided for, at a minimum, the following:
  - ~~Sensors~~
  - ~~Transmitters~~
  - ~~BMS controlled valve and damper actuators~~
  - ~~End devices~~
  - Distributed control panels (DCPs);
  - BACnet Advanced Application Controllers (B-AACs);
  - BACnet Application Specific Controllers (B-ASCs); and
  - Field panels.
- All BMS wire, cable, and pneumatic- control tubing shall be ~~identification~~ tagged for identification. Wire/cable shall be ~~identification~~ tagged at every termination location. Wire/cable and tubing terminating at DCPs or ASCs shall be tagged with the DCP/ASC controller termination number. Wire/cable and tubing terminating at field devices shall be tagged with both the DCP/ASC number and ~~the DCP/ASC~~ termination number. At any splices or terminal strips between the field device and DCP/ASC, the wiring shall be tagged on both sides of the termination point the same as for a field device termination.
- All BMS field panel and DCP mounting locations shall be provided with 120 VAC power supply sources. The selection of normal ~~power supply~~ or standby power supply facilities shall be based on project- and application-specific requirements. (~~For~~ for power requirements, see chapter 15, Electrical Criteria.~~)~~. In general, however, BMS DCPs/ASCs (and associated network interface equipment) monitoring designated building-critical alarm points shall be provided with standby power supplies. The
- DCP/ASC at which the building-critical alarms are terminated shall be designated at the tie-in panel for the building. Where no standby power is available in the building, the tie-in panel shall be provided with uninterruptible power supply equipment. The BMS
  tie-in panel is required to remain operational in the event of loss of normal power supply to the building. In the event of a power supply failure, the tie-in panel shall continue to operate for 30 minutes and ~~shall~~ provide alarm annunciation, monitoring, and control of connected systems/devices from the ASC. The electrical power supply circuit shall be clearly labeled at the electrical distribution panel and at the BMS field panel location. As-built documentation shall detail power supply circuit source panels and termination locations.
- All installations shall ~~be provided to~~ readily allow access for maintenance.
- Submittals shall be provided on a memory key (USB flash drive) to the Judicial Council upon project completion.
- Room sensors in public spaces shall be supplied without displays or keypads. BMS designers shall coordinate with the Judicial Council for specific project requirements.

ABBREVIATIONS (CONT.)

PICS = protocol implementation conformance statement: All devices conforming to the BACnet protocol shall have a documented statement (PICS) that identifies all the portions of BACnet that are implemented in the device

TCP/IP = Transmission Control Protocol / Internet Protocol

UC = unitary controller

VPN = virtual private network

Commented [PB1]: [FMB] These typically do not include a "tag" by industry standard of care

- Software requirements include the following:
  - Trending logs
  - Schedules
  - Storage requirements
  - Event logging
  - Alarm generation and processing
  - Programming
  - Report creation

T6.B GENERAL PNEUMATIC CONTROL REQUIREMENTS

The following are minimum requirements related to BMS pneumatic control~~s~~ installations. Note that this section is only applicable to existing ~~installations~~, not new, installations.

a. All installations shall be in accordance with applicable codes, statutes, and ordinances. All pneumatic ~~-~~control air tubing shall be specified to comply with minimum operating temperatures and pressures.

b. Pneumatic ~~-~~control air lines installed within mechanical rooms may be copper tubing and/or polyethylene-type tubing, ~~shall be~~ rated for the installation application, ~~;~~ and ~~shall be~~ suitably labeled.

c. Pneumatic ~~-~~control air tubing may be installed in ceiling spaces without conduit where code permits. Tubing installed in ceiling spaces without conduit shall be suitably rated and labeled. Tubing shall be securely supported and installed in a neat and workmanlike manner following building lines. Sleeves shall be provided for all tubing that penetrates wall partitions, concrete slabs, or rated partitions.

d. In retrofit applications, three-way switch~~-~~over valves shall be provided on existing pneumatic~~-~~ control air lines to controlled devices for switching between new BMS control and existing pneumatic ~~-~~control facilities. Existing pneumatic ~~-~~control facilities shall remain installed and operational until the work on the BMS is complete and demonstrated to the Judicial Council. The BMS designer shall specify the requirement for the removal of redundant pneumatic~~-~~ ~~-~~control components.

e. BMS pneumatic ~~-~~control air facilities shall meet the following minimum requirements:
   - Tubing shall be installed with suitable support using standard fittings and conditions and ~~shall~~ run parallel to building lines.
   - Tubing shall be installed with protection from ambient and outdoor temperature effects. Where required, tubing shall be installed with stand~~-~~offs, insulation, and the like.
   - Multiple tubing runs shall be installed in parallel runs, ~~and shall be~~ suitably supported, and tie-wrapped in tube bundles.
   - Pneumatic ~~-~~control air tubing shall be terminated with standard fittings at panel-mounted devices or at pneumatic bulkhead fittings within panels. Field device connections may be run in steel protective spring or BX conduit (armored cable).
   - Rubber grommets shall be provided wherever control tubing passes through ducts or plenum walls.

REQUIRED TOOLS

T1 Life Cycle Cost Analysis
T2 Catalog of Courtroom Layouts for California Trial Courts
T3 Integrated Network Architecture
T4 Graphical User Interface Template
T5 In-Custody Interview Room Guidelines
T6 BUILDING MANAGEMENT SYSTEM GUIDELINES
T6.A General Requirements
T6.B General Pneumatic Control Requirements
T6.C General Design Requirements
T6.D System Requirements

- A pressure gauge shall be provided at each tapping off of the main air line. If a pressure-reducing valve is required, then the gauge shall be positioned after the valve.
- BMS pneumatic ~~-~~control output lines to each controlled device shall be provided with two pressure gauges. The gauges shall be mounted at the DCP/ASC control output location and at the input to the control actuator.

f. Pilot positioners shall be provided for all BMS-controlled pneumatic actuators that are controlled in sequence (e.g., mixed air dampers, 1/3–2/3 steam valves).

g. In-line desiccant filters shall be provided on all main pneumatic ~~-~~control air lines supplying DCPs and ASCs with BMS pneumatic ~~-~~control outputs. The in-line desiccant filters shall be provided in addition to the building main's pneumatic ~~-~~control air dryer/filter facilities.

h. In a BMS retrofit application, the existing building pneumatic ~~-~~control air facilities shall be inspected during the design phase to ensure that air dryer and filter equipment are installed and operational. If the building is not equipped with satisfactory pneumatic ~~-~~control air filtration and dryer equipment, this equipment shall be installed as part of the BMS installation project. The following are minimum pneumatic ~~-~~control air dryer and filtration equipment requirements:

- Two refrigerant-type air dryers shall be provided in a duty/standby configuration~~.~~;
- Installation shall be in a discharge ~~-~~air line from the controls air ~~-~~compressor set and storage tank~~.~~; and
- Installation shall include:
  - Air inlet and outlet pressure gauges and automatic moisture removal trap~~:~~.
  - Three-way valve manifold ~~and~~ piped in a duty/standby configuration to allow the operation of one dryer at a time, with the second (standby) dryer valve switched off~~; and~~.
  - Dual air filtration to remove moisture, oil, and particulate matter from the controls air supply~~, and shall~~ includ~~e~~ing a BMS-monitored low-pressure alarm indication device. The low-pressure alarm condition shall be annunciated at the BMS front end.

T6.C GENERAL DESIGN REQUIREMENTS

a. The BMS shall incorporate hardware and software resources sufficient to meet the functional requirements of the specifications. The facility local area network and device-level network shall be based on industry ~~-~~standard open platforms and protocols and ~~utilize~~ use commonly available operation, management, and application software. Systems shall ~~utilize~~ use BACnet IP via ~~Category~~ Category 6A cable. All software packages and databases shall be licensed to the Judicial Council of California to allow unrestricted maintenance and operation of the BMS. The contractor shall include all items not specifically itemized in these requirements and guidelines that are necessary to implement, maintain, and operate the system in compliance with the functional intent of the specifications.

b. All BMSs shall conform to the most recent revision of ~~the~~ ANSI/ASHRAE Standard 135, including all issued addenda, at a minimum at the management data communication network level as defined within these guidelines. All BMSs shall also be native BACnet compliant at the automation data communication network level.

c. When applicable, the BMS designer shall use sequences of operation in compliance with the most recent version of ASHRAE Guideline 36 (High-Performance Sequences of Operation for HVAC Systems).

d. BMS installations shall allow for centralized operator interface for monitoring and supervisory control of the individual building BMS.

e. BMS installations shall use standardized iconography as part of the graphical user interface. The icons shall be based on the type of equipment and must be approved by the Judicial Council at the time of system design.

f. All BMS installations shall have a network data server computer, where specified, with associated BMS manufacturer application software installed onsite and running. The network data server computer shall be provided by the associated BMS contractor to the Judicial Council, complete with all manufacturer-specific BMS operator interface software for programming, database development, data archiving and storage, and controller program backup.

g. BMS installations shall be provided that incorporate BMS equipment and network facilities in compliance with the requirements identified in these guidelines. The BMS network segments shall be dedicated to the BMS. The BMS designer shall specify detailed BMS equipment requirements and BMS network architecture requirements in the BMS design specifications. BMS equipment and data communication network specifications shall incorporate good BMS engineering, design, and application practices and ~~shall incorporate~~ these BMS design guideline requirements. Network latencies must match or respond faster than the fastest controller device node on the BMS network.

h. The DCPs shall be designed around open and secure communication~~s~~ standards using HTML5 (or the current major version of the HTML standard) web technology. DCPs shall have the capability to communicate via multiple industry open protocols running over building network infrastructures and computer networks. At a minimum, the DCP shall be able to communicate directly with BACnet, LonWorks, and Modbus devices and controllers~~,~~ using TCP/IP.

i. It shall be possible to access the BMS remotely. With a proper username and password, a remote operator shall be able to monitor or control BMS functions via a graphical user interface. The remote access shall be through a standard internet browser. The system shall be capable of supporting an unlimited number of remote clients. A VPN gateway shall be provided for security protection.

j. Browser-based access: A remote/local user, with a proper username and password, shall have access to monitor or control the BMS functions via a graphical user interface. Native internet browser~~–~~based user interfaces must be HTML5 compliant and not require plug-ins (thin clients). The system shall be capable of supporting an unlimited number of clients using a standard ~~Web~~ web browser.

k. BMS online editing is necessary for all controllers that serve critical equipment (as determined by the project team) that cannot be shut down without a maintenance shutdown notice.

l. BMS installations in Judicial Council buildings shall incorporate the following minimum requirements:

- Equipment shall be approved components as manufactured by one of the Judicial Council–approved BMS manufacturers and ~~shall~~ follow these BMS ~~Design~~ design ~~Guidelines~~guidelines~~.~~; and
- Management- and automation-level communication LANs shall be provided to ensure the following:
  - The failure of a DCP shall not affect the operation of other operating DCPs. Unitary controllers (UCs) supervised by the failed DCP shall continue to function and ~~shall~~ control associated equipment according to specified failure routines. Where information in the failed DCP is used by other DCPs, UCs, buildings, routines, and

REQUIRED TOOLS

T1 Life Cycle Cost Analysis
T2 Catalog of Courtroom Layouts for California Trial Courts
T3 Integrated Network Architecture
T4 Graphical User Interface Template
T5 In-Custody Interview Room Guidelines
T6 BUILDING MANAGEMENT SYSTEM GUIDELINES
T6.A General Requirements
T6.D System Requirements

REFERENCES

Johnson Controls
~~www.johnsoncontrols.com/buildings/building-management~~

Honeywell
~~https://buildings.honeywell.com/us/en/brands/our-brands/bms~~

Schneider Electric
~~www.se.com/us/en/product-category/1200-building-management~~

Distech Controls
~~www.distech-controls.com/products/family/building-automation-system-na~~

the like, the nonavailability of the information shall be alarmed, and alternative control strategies shall be automatically initiated.

- The failure of a UC shall not affect the operation of another operating UC or DCP.
- All BMS monitored and controlled points associated with an individual HVAC system or equipment shall be terminated in the same UC or DCP. It is not acceptable for BMS monitored and controlled points associated with an individual system to be terminated at separate distributed DCPs or UCs.
- All required logic programming and point database facilities associated with an individual building system shall reside in the same UC or DCP to which the system input/output points are terminated. It is unacceptable for logic programming and database facilities required for BMS monitoring and control of a building system to reside in a DCP or UC other than the one in which the system input/output points are terminated.
- UCs controlling space terminal units (e.g., variable-air-volume terminal units, fan-powered terminal units) shall reside on the same automation LAN as the UC that is controlling the associated air-handling unit. If an air-handling unit is controlled directly by a DCP, the UC's controlling space terminal units shall be supervised by that DCP.
- All BMS designs and installations shall incorporate and interface with lighting control systems, as applicable.
- The sequence of operations shall be provided by the system designer to the Judicial Council before installation~~,~~ as part of the submittal process.
- Hardware, firmware, and client software upgrades shall be performed only if they enhance specific features applicable to the existing BMS environment, security, or system architecture.

m. In existing facilities with stand-alone internet connections, the following shall apply:

- The BMS installation shall include software, firmware, and a firewall to ensure network protection.
- The installer shall be responsible for generating the required IP addresses for all BMS devices. This information will be provided as part of the closeout documentation.

n. In existing facilities connected to the court's network, the following shall apply:

- Coordination with court IT staff shall be facilitated through the Judicial Council~~'s Lowlow-Voltage voltage Engineering engineering Specialist specialist on the Quality Assurance team.~~;
- The installer shall identify the active port connections needed for the system;
- The ~~Engineering engineering Specialist specialist (Quality Assurance)~~Judicial Council shall ~~request~~ ask the court to create a virtual local area network (VLAN) for the BMS~~.~~; and
- The installer shall generate a series of IP addresses based ~~off~~ on the VLAN information provided by the court.

T6.D SYSTEM REQUIREMENTS

a. Acceptable manufacturers include the following:
- Johnson Controls~~,~~ Inc.
- Honeywell

Commented [LD2]: Sidebar: Links for Schneider and Distech were broken; please check that the new URLs are correct.

Commented [DP2R2]: Confirmed that the new links are correct.

Commented [SN3]: I am not sure if this was covered in prior years/versions: although listing specific manufacturers is permissible when accompanied by an "approved equal" provision and a fair, documented, and transparent review process (and where performance criteria are also provided) there remains a potential argument that the performance criteria themselves may be unduly restrictive. The counter-argument would be that these criteria are objectively necessary and applied consistently across projects. No changes to the current text are needed, but I wanted to note the potential risk for awareness.

Commented [DP3R2]: We need to maintain the text as is to provide information to bidders, and appreciate the concern.

- Schneider Electric
- Distech Controls
- Siemens
- Automated Logic
- An approved equal

b. BMS installations shall be provided by BMS contractors who meet the following requirements:
   - Have been in operation in the BMS industry for a minimum of 10 years.;
   - Employ qualified staff in the state of California capable of undertaking a complete BMS installation project and of providing routine and emergency maintenance on all elements of the BMS.;
   - Have successful project experience on similar projects for a minimum period of five years.;
   - Have service and support available 24 hours per day, seven days per week (suppliers only).); and
   - Have access to local suppliers of BMS components with a maximum delivery period of 24 hours.

c. All BMS DCPs, UCs, OIWs, (where applicable), and other BMS manufacturer-specific equipment within a building shall be manufactured by the same manufacturer. All HVAC and building services monitoring and controls shall be provided by BMS facilities from one of the approved BMS manufacturers. In applications where HVAC system controls within an existing building are being retrofitted and BMS facilities of any of the approved BMS manufacturers exist within the building, BMS facilities shall be provided by the manufacturer of the BMS equipment already installed. The retrofitted BMS installation shall be provided to interconnect the new renovation work into the existing building and campus BMS facilities.

d. BMS direct digital controllers shall be products manufactured by a company that is an active corporate member of BACnet International.

e. All BMS systems shall be fully demonstrated and operational, satisfy the Judicial Council, and be approved by Judicial Council Facilities Services before being considered an approved product or equal.

f. The maximum allowed distance from the local field office of the system provider to the project site shall be no more than 75 miles.

T6.E CONTROL GUIDELINES FOR SINGLE-ZONE RTUSOOFTOP UNITS

a. Applicability:
   - These Ccontrol Gguidelines apply to HVAC control upgrades in buildings conditioned by single-zone packaged rooftop HVAC units (RTUs) controlled by 24V thermostats, unless such RTUs are controlled by a control system that complies with the Judicial Council Bbuilding Mmanagement Ssystem (BMS) Gguidelines.
   - This standard does not supersede any applicable building codes andor the Judicial Council CA Trial Courts Ffacility Sstandards.

b. Functionality requirements of building controls:
   - Where applicable, aAll requirements of the Judicial Council BMS Guidelines Cchapter 14, Building Management System Criteria, I, Section H shall apply.

REQUIRED TOOLS

T1 Life Cycle Cost Analysis
T2 Catalog of Courtroom Layouts for California Trial Courts
T3 Integrated Network Architecture
T4 Graphical User Interface Template
T5 In-Custody Interview Room Guidelines
T6 BUILDING MANAGEMENT SYSTEM GUIDELINES
T6.A General Requirements
T6.B General Pneumatic Control Requirements
T6.C General Design Requirements
T6.D System Requirements

Commented [PB4]: [FMB] Recommended mfgrs that meet the intent.

- ~~HVAC controls shall be remotely accessible through the internet~~
- ~~As applicable, thermostats shall be able to control and be integrated with devices and systems implementing a common non-proprietary protocol.~~
- ~~All thermostat data collected and/or trended shall be made available for download in a commonly used format (e.g., csv).~~
- ~~Control software and its interface shall have the following capabilities:~~
    - ~~Continuous monitoring of connected equipment operation and automatic alarming upon fault / failure~~
    - ~~Ability to send critical alarms by SMS and / or email~~
    - ~~Where installed hardware has the ability to enact such control strategies, the building controls shall have these capabilities:~~
        - ~~Variable speed fan control~~
        - ~~Economizer control~~
        - ~~Demand-controlled ventilation (i.e., automatic adjustment of outside air damper to maintain an adjustable CO2 setpoint in the space)~~
        - ~~Optimal start/ and stop~~
    - ~~Building users shall be able to make temporary setpoint adjustments at the local thermostats or zone sensing device, within boundaries that shall be adjustable through the web-based control interface; setpoints shall return to default after a specified time period.~~
    - ~~The control interface shall allow building technicians to remotely 'lock' individual thermostat interfaces.~~
        - ~~Thermostats installed in public spaces or other areas where user adjustments are not desired shall conform to Judicial Council BMS Guidelines Chapter I, Section H: 12chapter 14, BMS Criteria. Thermostats shall not have operable controls in public spaces. Examples of how this can be achieved include [1] Using a standard thermostat with non-functioning interface/ or buttons; [2] Using a thermostat with no interface/ or buttons; and [3] Using a functional thermostat located in a locked enclosure.~~
    - ~~Control system provides compatibility to enable buildings to participate in the [California Emergency Load Reduction (ELRP) demand response] program.~~

- ~~Technical requirements for building controls~~
    - ~~Control system shall include web-enabled, 24VAC thermostats, or temperature sensors inside the spaces served by the applicable RTUs. In cases where controllers are being added to the RTU (e.g., economizer controller), such controllers shall be web-enabled and/or controllable via the installed 24VAC thermostats.~~
        - ~~Controller enclosure shall conform to chapter 14, BMS CriteriaJudicial Council BMS Guidelines Chapter I, Section H: 5.~~
- ~~Desirable capabilities~~
    - ~~Communication is preferred through a web-based interface compatible with mobile devices.~~
    - ~~Where feasible, BACnet IP protocol is preferred. If BACnet IP is not available, BACnet MSTP is considered the next best option.~~
    - ~~Remote access via mobile device for configuration/calibration of thermostat sensors is desirable. Having the ability to remotely configure or /calibrate thermostat sensors via computer browser is the next best option.~~
    - ~~Economizer controllers, if being installed, shall provide fault detection and diagnostic capabilities that comply with Title 24, Part 6, Section 120.2(i).~~
    - ~~Monitoring of zone temperatures, setpoints, schedules, equipment status, and critical alarms, across multiple RTUs in multiple buildings. Monitoring shall be performed through pre-built screens showing equipment operational data.~~

Commented [RR5]: This is duplicate to Title 24 and ASHRAE Guideline 36.

Commented [DP5R2]: Deleted duplicative language from codes and standards and added references at the end.

- ~~Ability to import custom floor plans~~
- ~~Ability to import custom schedule and setpoints via single upload or to create a custom schedule for one device and easily copy it to many other devices.~~
- ~~Centralized adjustment of setpoints, setbacks/setups, and schedules.~~
- ~~Data collection, trending, and visualization (multi-building and multi-site) for primary operating parameters:~~
    - ~~Space temperature~~
    - ~~Fan status~~
    - ~~Status of heating/cooling stages~~
    - ~~CO2 level in space (if measured by thermostat or related sensors)~~
    - ~~Outside air temperature and supply air temperature (if those sensors are installed)~~
    - ~~Economizer damper position (if an economizer is installed)~~
    - ~~Fan speed (if variable)~~

c. Network connections:

- Where applicable, chapter 14, Building Management System Criteria,~~BMS Guidelines Chapter III, Section G~~ shall take precedence. In existing facilities with stand-alone internet connections, the following shall apply:
    - The building control installation shall include software, firmware, and a firewall to ensure network protection; and
    - The installer shall be responsible for generating the required IP addresses for all control devices.
- ~~Where applicable, Judicial Council BMS Guidelines Chapter III, Section G shall take precedence.~~ In existing facilities connected to the c~~C~~ourt's network, the following shall apply:
    - Court IT coordination shall be facilitated through the ~~Quality Assurance Low Voltage Engineering Specialist~~Judicial Council~~.~~;
    - The installer shall identify the active port connections needed for the system~~.~~;
    - ~~Quality Assurance will request t~~The ~~C~~court to~~shall~~ create a ~~V~~virtual ~~L~~local ~~A~~area ~~N~~network (VLAN) for the control system~~.~~; and
    - The installer ~~wi~~shall generate a series of IP addresses based o~~ff~~n the VLAN information provided by the ~~C~~court.
- In all cases, the following shall apply:
    - The number of direct connections to the ~~C~~court's network or the internet shall be minimized, for example via the use of a gateway~~.~~; and
    - Firmware updates shall be part of an annual ~~PM's~~preventative maintenance program or if needed in the event of critical or security updates.

d. Installation and commissioning:

- Where applicable, California building code requirements for commissioning and/or acceptance testing for the installed devices shall be satisfied.
- Upon installation of control~~s~~ hardware, the following Judicial Council requirements shall apply~~. and~~The satisfaction of these requirements shall be documented in a project closeout binder that shall also includes hardware user guides:
    - Ensure that devices are connected to the correct network, IP addresses are logged in closeout documentation, and identification tags on hardware match software-based identifiers.
    - Installer and facility staff sha~~wi~~ll agree ~~up~~on default schedules and set points ~~which~~that ~~wi~~shall be documented in the closeout binder and ~~archived within CAFM~~provided to the Judicial Council. Schedules and set points shall cover occupied periods, unoccupied periods, holiday periods, other periods as needed, and ~~cover~~ parameters for user ~~-~~adjustment (e.g., allowable temperature band for user adjustment~~,~~ and time period before settings revert to default).

Commented [RR6]: This is duplicate to ASHRAE 90.1

Commented [DP6R2]: Deleted duplicative language from codes and standards and added references at the end.

Commented [SN7]: Suggest adding "an" before "annual" if one preventative maintenance program, or make "program" plural.

- All controls hardware shall have temperatures readings within ±2°F of calibrated handheld device upon closeout of installation.
- As applicable, weather station data used in control logic and/or displayed in control-related software shall be checked at closeout to ensure the weather station location is appropriate for the building location.
- Installer shall ensure that firmware (and software, if applicable) is up to date.
- Installer shall collect and store monitored data, and software screenshots where applicable, that confirms that set points, schedules, and control sequences meet Judicial Council requirements. On at least a sample of devices, installer shallould verify, with data:
  i. Ability for users to adjust thermostat settings temporarily and have settings revert to default after a specified time period.;
  ii. Where appropriate, the lack of inability to make adjustments to settings at the device (e.g., for devices- installed in public spaces).; and
  iii. Existing operations & maintenance (O&M) manuals shall behave been reviewed, and updated if necessarywhen the work is part of a major renovation project.

T6.F DATA NORMALIZATION REQUIREMENTS

This section establishes mandatory standardized requirements for BAS point–naming conventions, metadata tagging implementation, and statewide CAFM asset integration. These requirements shall apply to all new construction and major renovation projects to ensure consistency, interoperability, and efficient data management across the Judicial Council portfolio.

1. General Requirements

a. a. All BAS installations shall implement standardized naming conventions, tagging protocols, and data access methods as specified in this section.

b. b. Contractors shall submit all proposed object names and tags to the Judicial Council Facilities Services for review and approval prior to implementation.

c. c. Any system objects implemented prior to approval shall be corrected by the vendor at no additional cost to the Judicial Council.

d. Control objects, tags, or points not represented in these standards must be submitted via RFI for approval.

Commented [DP8]: Deleting this suggested bullet since RFIs are standard part of project management process.

2. BAS Object Naming Standard

a. a. Naming Cconvention Sstructure:

All BAS objects shall follow this mandatory naming convention:

Format: BuildingID_Equipment_ObjectName

Components:

- Building ID: Designated by Judicial Council (format: ##-XXX)
- Equipment ~~D~~designation: Maximum ~~6~~six characters~~.~~ derived from mechanical drawings
- Object ~~N~~name: 16~~–~~31 characters using standardized camel-case abbreviations
- Delimiter: Underscore (_) between all components
- Maximum ~~L~~length: 45 characters total (critical requirement)

Example: 19-AX1_AHU01_SATmpSp
(Building: Van Nuys East~~-~~; Equipment: Air Handler 01~~-~~; Object: ~~S~~supply ~~A~~air ~~T~~temperature ~~S~~setpoint)

b. ~~b.~~ Required ~~O~~object ~~N~~name ~~S~~suffixes

The ~~following~~ standardized suffixes from table T6.1 shall be used for all applicable objects:

Suffix	Description ~~/~~ Usage
Cmd	Command point ~~–~~ initiates action (starts motor, modulates valve, etc.)
Sts	Status point ~~–~~ actual state of commanded equipment
Sp	Set point ~~–~~ target value for control variable
Ena	Enable ~~–~~ indicates conditions met for device operation
Pos	Position ~~–~~ feedback from valve, damper, or VFD
Alm	Alarm ~~–~~ only for objects with event notification capability
Td	Trend ~~–~~ historical data ~~–~~ logging object
Sched	Schedule ~~–~~ time-based control object

Table T6.1

c. ~~c.~~ Engineering ~~U~~unit~~s~~ ~~S~~standards

- Analog outputs: Percent (% or pct)
- Valves and dampers: %open (0% = fully closed, 100% = fully open)
- Binary outputs: Off/On or position-specific labels (e.g., Closed/Open)
- Temperature: Degrees Fahrenheit (°F)
- Pressure: ~~PSI~~psi or inches of water column (in ~~w.c.~~WC)

~~3. BAS Server Level Data Requirements~~

~~To enable statewide integration and monitoring, specific data points must be accessible at the BAS server level through open protocols.~~

~~a. Network Architecture Requirements~~

~~All high-level control applications (scheduling, overrides, etc.) shall reside at the global network controller level~~
~~Long-term trend data shall be maintained at the server level~~
~~I/O points shall be mapped to the server for GUI display~~
~~Open protocol access shall be configured for statewide integration~~

Commented [DP9]: Gensler: correct the table number in your edited file above the table.

Commented [LD10]: Add table number and title?

b. Open Protocol Implementation

Platform-specific requirements:

- **Niagara-based systems:** Import required data points to Niagara Supervisor for 1:1 connection access
- **Other BAS platforms:** Enable BACnet Server feature or configure export to Judicial Council-provided SQL database

c. Minimum Required Point Categories

The following critical points shall be available at the server level:

Air Handling Units:
- Supply air temperature and setpoint
- Fan status and speed
- Mixed air temperature
- Outside air damper position
- Static pressure and setpoint

Chillers:
- Supply and return water temperatures
- Equipment status
- Differential pressure
- Pump status

Terminal Units:
- Zone temperature and setpoint
- Heating/cooling mode
- Damper position
- Occupancy status

Energy and Water Meters:
- Energy consumption reading
- Peak demand
- Power factor
- Water consumption reading

Commented [RR11]: This is duplicate to ASHRAE 135.

Commented [DP11R2]: Deleted duplicative language from codes and standards and added references at the end.

4. Metadata Tagging Requirements

Where BAS platform capabilities allow, all objects shall be tagged with standardized metadata to enable advanced analytics and cross-system integration.

a. Tagging Standard

The Judicial Council adopts Project Haystack as the standard tagging model. This open-source initiative provides:

Standardized semantic data models
Consistent metadata structure across systems
Support for analytics and optimization applications
Vendor-neutral implementation

b. Implementation Requirements

Niagara Framework systems: Utilize NHAYSTACK module tag dictionary
Custom tags: When required tags don't exist, create new dictionary named with building ID
Documentation: All custom tags must be documented and submitted for approval

Commented [RR12]: This is pulled from Haystack Standard.

Commented [DP12R2]: Deleted duplicative language from codes and standards and added references at the end.

5. CAFMJudicial Council Web Platform Integration Requirements

Proper integration between BAS and the statewideJudicial Council CAFMweb system shall be achieved by requires specific configuring ation of two critical and required parameters, as specified.

a. -Asset Ttype Ffield

- Definesd equipment category and capacity.
- Must uUsc pPre-defined CAFM system values only.
- Cannot acceptNo custom entries.
- Examples:
  - ——AHU-01: Air- Hhandling Uunit, 3- 24 tons
  - — - CHL-CW1: Chiller, Ccentrifugal, water-cooled, up to 100 tons

b. b. Asset Ttag Ffield

- Contains unique equipment identifier as displayed in BAS.
- Alpha-numeric field supportings full equipment descriptions.
- Must matches BAS equipment naming exactly.
- Example: AHU-01-LBY (Llobby Aair- Hhandling Uunit)

6. Implementation Process

Commented [DP13]: This belongs to the contract, not standards. Deleting this suggested section.

a. Design Phase Requirements

1. Engineer automation system to identify all required objects
2. Apply standardized naming conventions to all objects
3. Document proposed names and tags in Point Summary Table
4. Submit documentation to Judicial Council Facilities Services
5. Revise based on review comments
6. Obtain written approval before proceeding

b. Construction Phase Requirements

1. Implement approved names and tags in BAS programming
2. Configure server-level data access via open protocols
3. Set up CAFM asset records with proper Type and Tag fields
4. Maintain Point Summary Table throughout construction
5. Test all integrations and data accessibility

c. Commissioning Requirements

1. Verify all object names match approved documentation
2. Confirm metadata tags are properly applied
3. Test open protocol data access from server level
4. Validate CAFM integration and asset matching
5. Document any deviations with approved justification

d. Documentation Deliverables

Point Summary Table – complete listing of all I/O points
Naming convention documentation with all custom abbreviations
Tagging dictionary including any custom tags
CAFM asset mapping documentation
Commissioning test results for all integration points
As-built documentation reflecting actual implementation

7. Scope and Applicability

a. Systems Covered

These requirements apply to all BACnet-discoverabyale devices and objects including:

Point types: AI, AO, AV, BI, BO, BV, MO, MV
System objects: Calendar, Schedule, Trend Log, Event Enrollment, Notification Class, File, Command
Third-party integrations: Modbus registers, proprietary protocols mapped via drivers
Virtual points created in integration platforms (e.g., Niagara Framework)

Commented [RR14]: This is duplicate to ASHRAE 135.

Commented [DP14R2]: Deleted duplicative language from codes and standards and added references at the end.

b. Project Applicability

New Construction: Full compliance with all requirements mandatory

Major Renovations: Full compliance required for all replaced or upgraded systems

Partial Renovations: Compliance required only for equipment within project scope; existing programming for unchanged equipment need not be modified

Service/Maintenance: Not required unless specifically included in scope of work

8. Compliance and Enforcement

Mandatory approval: All naming and tagging must be approved before implementation

Correction requirements: Non-compliant implementations shall be corrected at contractor expense

Acceptance criteria: System acceptance contingent upon full compliance verification

Documentation: Complete documentation required for project closeout

9. References and Standards

Refer to all the applicable standards for functionality requirements of building controls, BAS server level data requirements, metadata tagging requirements, and scope and applicability, including but not limited to:

- ASHRAE Standard 135 – BACnet
- ASHRAE Guideline 36 – High-Performance Sequences of Operation
- ASHRAE Standard 90.1 – Energy Standard for Buildings
- Project Haystack – Open Source Data Tagging Standard

California Trial Court Facilities Standards
Judicial Council Building Management System Guidelines (Tool 6)

Commented [SN15]: Caution only: if a reference or standard is not listed here but the contractor should/has to follow it and/or it is appliable, contractor may later argued this was an exhaustive list and nothing else applied.

Commented [DP15R2]: Good point. Added clarification.

T7

REQUIRED TOOLS

SMALL COURTHOUSE GUIDELINES

SECTION	TOPIC	PAGE
T7.A	Purpose and Intent	T7.2
T7.B	Context	T7.3
T7.C	Programming Principles	T7.4
T7.D	Design Principles	T7.6
T7.E	Courthouse Prototypes	T7.9
T7.F	Construction and Delivery	T7.14



Superior Court of California, County of Siskiyou
Yreka, CA
EHDD

T7.A PURPOSE AND INTENT

1. Purpose

The small courthouses are the low-rise facilities consisting of one to four courtrooms, as described in chapter 1, section 1.C.2. The ~~*facilities*~~ *Facilities* ~~*standards*~~ *Standards* are applicable to all courthouses regardless of their size. This tool provides additional comprehensive guidance for the planning, design, and delivery specifically for small courthouse projects. It establishes principles for achieving affordability, operational efficiency, and civic integrity in facilities that serve limited jurisdictions or rural communities. The goal is to ensure that smaller projects uphold the same standards of dignity, safety, and functionality as larger justice centers~~,~~ while adapting scale, cost, and complexity to local conditions.

2. Intent

Projects shall use this tool to integrate courthouse planning with community needs and statewide judicial priorities. Small courthouse facilities shall provide the same fundamental level of public access to justice, operational integrity, judicial dignity, and safety and security as larger courthouse facilities~~,~~ while optimizing total building area, use of space ~~utilization~~, and construction cost and delivery time.

The intent of this tool is to define a right-sized courthouse model that reflects:

- ~~lower~~ Lower daily population volumes~~.~~;
- ~~reduced~~ Reduced staffing structures~~.~~;
- ~~increased~~ Increased reliance on shared and flexible-use spaces~~,~~ ; and
- ~~growing~~ Growing use of remote and hybrid proceedings.

This tool supports development of courthouse facilities that are functionally complete but not programmatically ~~excessive~~complex, ensuring that limited public resources are used efficiently.

Commented [DP1]: Modified by CFAC-WG.

The tool also promotes standardized planning modules and delivery processes so that smaller facilities can be replicated efficiently without sacrificing architectural quality or performance.

Commented [DP2]: Modified by CFAC-WG.

3. Application

These guidelines apply to small courthouses developed as stand-alone facilities or as annexes to larger regional courts. They may also inform satellite courthouses, hearing centers, or adaptive reuse projects that supplement existing court capacity. For guidance on part-time satellite court facilities and part-time specialty court facilities, ~~also~~ refer to chapter 2, sections 2.C.7 and 2.C.8.

4. Objectives

The primary objectives of tool 7 are to:

- Reduce overall building area through shared-use strategies and elimination of redundant spaces~~.~~;
- Simplify building systems to reduce construction and maintenance costs~~.~~;
- Support flexible operations, including hybrid and remote proceedings~~.~~;
- Enable standardization and replication across multiple courthouse projects~~.~~; and
- Maintain appropriate civic presence while avoiding unnecessary monumentality.

T7.B CONTEXT

1. Role in the Judicial System

Small courthouses play a critical role in ~~extending~~ providing access to justice in rural, remote, and lower-density communities. As with all the courthouse facilities, economy of design is prudent to match resources provided to the volume of public services needed. In some instances, ~~These S~~small, part-time facilities provide localized access for court users who would otherwise need to travel significant distances to larger regional courthouses. Small courthouses that are not a county's main or only facility~~,~~ tend to ~~include operations typically that support limited jurisdiction case types,~~ operate on reduced or part-time schedules~~,~~ and rely on regional systems for specialized services. In larger, highly populated communities, small courthouses may also provide service countywide as specialty facilities offering specialty case types such as juvenile justice, collaborative, or mental health cases.

Facilities shall be designed to function independently while maintaining connectivity to broader judicial infrastructure through:

- ~~digital~~ Digital systems~~,~~;
- ~~remote~~ Remote participation capabilities~~,~~; and
- ~~coordinated~~ Coordinated administrative processes.

2. Community Integration

Each project shall respond to its community's physical and cultural context. Courthouses in smaller towns may be located adjacent to or share civic campuses with city halls, libraries, or county offices, leading to site efficiencies as well as seamless integration in the community's fabric. Architecture shall align with local development patterns and building scale ~~(typically one to three stories),~~ and reinforce public visibility without imposing excessive monumentality. Exterior design shall emphasize durability, clarity of public entry, and appropriate civic expression.

3. Site Considerations

Small courthouse sites are often constrained by limited parcel size, shared-use conditions, and infill development requirements.

Design shall:

- ~~optimize~~ Optimize building footprint and site ~~utilization~~use~~.~~;
- ~~minimize~~ Minimize site disturbance and infrastructure cost~~,~~; and
- ~~provide~~ Provide clearly defined zones for public, staff, and secure access.

Where necessary, vertical building configurations are permitted to reduce site footprint and maintain required functional separation.

4. Affordability and Life-Cycle Value

Projects shall prioritize long-term value over initial construction cost. Design decisions shall consider:

- ~~total~~ Total building area reduction~~.~~;
- ~~simplified~~ Simplified structural systems~~.~~;
- ~~reduced~~ Reduced complexity of mechanical and electrical systems~~,~~; and
- ~~durability~~ Durability of materials and finishes.

Design shall demonstrate measurable reductions in construction cost per courtroom and long-term operational costs. See tool 1, Life Cycle Cost Analysis, for additional requirements.

REQUIRED TOOLS

- T1 Life Cycle Cost Analysis
- T2 Catalog of Courtroom Layouts for California Trial Courts
- T3 Integrated Network Architecture
- T4 ~~Graphical User Interface~~ Template
- T5 In-Custody Interview Room Guidelines
- T6 Building Management System Guidelines
- **T7 Small Courthouse Guidelines**
  - T7.A Purpose and Intent
  - T7.B Context
  - T7.C Programming Principles
  - T7.D Design Principles
  - T7.E Courthouse Prototypes
  - T7.F Construction and Delivery
- T8 Security Systems Guidelines

Commented [JS3]: This is not universally true. For facilities in small counties, this one courthouse might be the only facility in the whole county. Case in point - Quincy Courthouse.

Commented [CM3R2]: I had the same thought. I've proposed revised language in this paragraph.

Commented [DP4]: Modified by CFAC-WG.

T7.C PROGRAMMING PRINCIPLES

1. General Approach

Programming for small courthouses shall be based on projected caseload, staffing levels, operational schedules, and community needs. The program shall emphasize consolidation of functions, flexibility of use, and elimination of redundant spaces. Programs shall be scaled appropriately and, in the case of a courthouse ~~which~~that is not the court's main courthouse, shall not replicate typical full-service courthouse models.

2. Modifications to Base Programming Requirements

The following programmatic adjustments are encouraged:

- Shared jury assembly, staff training, jury deliberation, and hearing rooms: ~~spaces~~ Spaces may serve ~~dual~~ multiple functions depending on court schedule.
- ~~Reduced number of jury deliberation rooms: one deliberation room may serve more than two courtrooms.~~
- Multi-use courtrooms and hearing rooms: ~~spaces~~ Spaces may be designed to support multiple case types or operational modes.
- Combined administrative functions: Clerk, administrative, and support functions may be co-located where operationally appropriate.
- Shared support spaces: ~~conference~~ Conference rooms, and staff support areas may be shared across functions.

3. Functional Relationships

Space adjacency diagrams shall illustrate the required separation and connection among public, private, and detention zones. Courtrooms must connect efficiently to clerk counters, jury areas, and judicial chambers, minimizing travel distances while maintaining circulation separation, as described in chapter 2, section 2.A, Program Stacking and Zoning.

4. Public Zone

The public zone shall provide clear, welcoming access from the main entry through screening to the lobby and counter services. Circulation paths must be intuitive, allowing first-time users to orient themselves without extensive signage. Waiting areas shall accommodate varying occupancy and allow observation by security personnel.

5. Private Zone

Private areas support judges and staff. These spaces require controlled access from the public circulation and direct connections to chambers, conference rooms, and staff work areas. Design shall promote collaboration through open offices and shared support spaces rather than multiple isolated suites. Privacy and acoustic separation must still be maintained where confidentiality is required, such as for judicial chambers.

6. Detention Zone

The detention zone connects the sally port, holding, and courtroom detention areas. This path shall be continuous, restricted, and visually supervised. Layouts shall minimize escort distances and ~~to the extent possible~~ avoid cross-traffic with public ~~or staff~~ circulation. Interlocks with secure circulation are permissible as illustrated in figures T7.6, T7.7, and T7.8. Mechanical, electrical, and fire-protection systems within this zone must be tamper-resistant and easy to maintain. Refer to chapters 4 and 8 for additional requirements.

Commented [CM5]: I've added the word "typical" as many full-service courthouses are within the 1-4 courtrooms range.

Commented [DP6]: Modified by CFAC-WG.

Commented [CM7]: I've added the words "to the extent possible", since both the two-courtroom and four-courtroom prototypes (Figures T7.7 and T7.8) allow the interlock where separate paths of circulation are crossing.

Commented [DP7R2]: The interlock is allowed between the secure and detention circulation. Public should not have interlocks. I have clarified this.

Commented [DP8]: Modified by CFAC-WG.

Commented [LD9]: Figures need to be referenced in order.

Commented [DP10]: Gensler: update the figure numbers once you revise the numbers.

7. Shared and Flexible Use

Small courthouse facilities shall maximize the use of flexible, multi-purpose spaces. Spaces shall be designed to accommodate multiple functions without major reconfiguration, and integrate technology and infrastructure to enable flexibility. Movable partitions, modular furniture systems, and distributed technology shall support multiple use scenarios. Avail Provide opportunities for multi-use spaces, such as shared jury assembly and hearing rooms, and combined conference and jury deliberation rooms. See figure T7.1 for an illustration of flexible spaces.

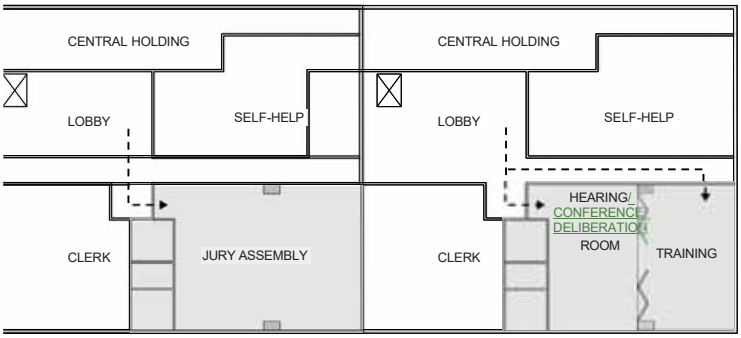


Figure T7.1 Shared-Use and Multif-Function Space Concept

8. Scalability and Replication

Design modules—courtroom clusters, office pods, and service cores—shall be utilized used so that they can be replicated for projects of varying sizes. A two-courtroom facility shall expand to three or four courtrooms using the same planning logic, structural grid, and building systems. Standardization shall enable rapid design, predictable cost, and simplified maintenance.

9. Operational Efficiency

Small courthouses often operate with limited staff who perform multiple roles. Programming shall accommodate this operational reality through counters positioned for visual control of lobby and corridors, file and storage rooms placed centrally, and direct sight-lines that allow security staff to monitor activity without additional cameras or personnel. Workflow analysis shall confirm that spatial layouts minimize travel and duplication.

10. Technology Integration

All programs shall accommodate current and emerging technology. Infrastructure for hybrid in-person and remote hearings, digital evidence display, and remote interpretation, participation, and electronic filing shall be provided. Shared spaces shall include data and power access points for mobile equipment, allowing flexible use.

REQUIRED TOOLS

T1 Life Cycle Cost Analysis
T2 Catalog of Courtroom Layouts for California Trial Courts
T3 Integrated Network Architecture
T4 Graphical User Interface Template
T5 In-Custody Interview Room Guidelines
T6 Building Management System Guidelines
T7 Small Courthouse Guidelines
T7.A Purpose and Intent
T7.B Context
T7.D Design Principles
T7.E Courthouse Prototypes
T7.F Construction and Delivery
T8 Security Systems Guidelines

T7.D DESIGN PRINCIPLES

1. **General**
   Design shall implement program requirements while minimizing overall building size, construction complexity, and operational inefficiencies. Buildings shall achieve a balance between functionality, cost efficiency, and civic presence.

2. **Circulation**

   Circulation systems shall comply with the base facilities standards requirements. The following efficiencies shall be achieved for small courthouse facilities:

   - ~~reduced~~ Reduced travel distances through compact layouts;
   - ~~consolidated vertical circulation systems;~~ and
   - ~~built with c~~Clarity and separation of movement types.

3. **Courtroom Planning**

   Courtrooms are the functional core of the courthouse. Their layout shall provide visual clarity, safety, and acoustical quality while integrating technology and accessibility. Courtroom design shall maintain clear sightlines, appropriate acoustics, accessibility for all users, and integrated technology systems.

   Courtrooms shall meet base facilities standard requirements~~,~~ with ~~the following allowances:~~

   ~~- reduced overall size where appropriate;~~
   ~~- hybrid courtroom configurations; and~~
   - flexible layouts supporting multiple case types.

   Courtroom furnishings, audiovisual systems, and data infrastructure shall accommodate hybrid proceedings and remote appearances. An effort shall be made to reduce the number of courtrooms in the facility through shared courtrooms and multi-use flexible spaces. The courtroom size ~~may be reduced from the template courtroom plans to make use of audiovisual technology that permits remote appearances~~shall be maintained per the courtroom templates~~.~~; however, the conference rooms outside the courtroom may be eliminated in lieu of a multi-use shared conference room in the public corridor. The courtroom entry vestibule shall remain in place. The gallery benches can be placed on the sides of the vestibule~~,~~ while maintaining the required sight-lines and courtroom square footage. ~~For instance, f~~Figure T7.2 illustrates ~~a reduced size hybrid courtroom achieving~~ square footage savings through elimination of ~~public gallery and~~ conference rooms outside the courtroom. ~~Similarly, figure T7.3 illustrates a reduced size courtroom for a civil court facility by elimination of courtroom holding and jury seats.~~

   ~~Other alternatives to reducing the size of a courtroom and making use of the available technology is to provide technology-oriented hybrid courtrooms and adjudication conference rooms that replace a typical multi-purpose courtroom. See figure T7.4 for an example of a reduced scale hybrid courtroom and figure T7.5 for adjudication conference room.~~

4. **Public Space Design**
   Public spaces shall clearly define entry and circulation paths, support efficient queuing and movement, and ~~utilize~~ use durable and maintainable materials. Design shall avoid oversized or ~~underutilized~~ underused public areas.

5. **Staff and Judicial Support**
   Staff spaces shall promote collaboration and flexibility. Instead of multiple enclosed offices, provide open-plan workrooms with shared resources where confidentiality allows. Private lockable offices shall be limited to ~~E~~executive and ~~M~~management or ~~S~~supervisory staff whose functions require security or privacy.~~Private offices shall be limited to functions requiring security or privacy.~~ Judicial support spaces shall be efficient and appropriately scaled.

Commented [DP11]: Modified by CFAC-WG.

Commented [DP12]: Modified per CFAC-WG direction.

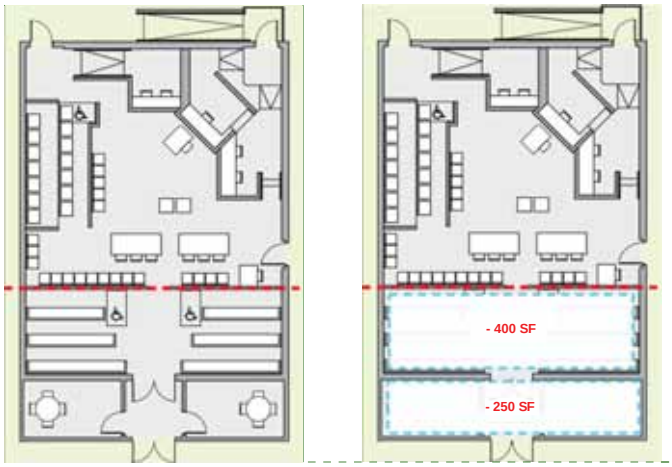
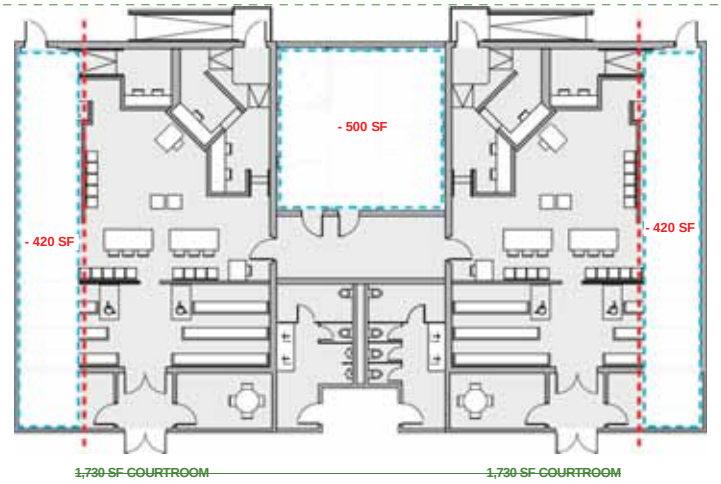


Figure T7.2 ~~Reduced Size Hybrid Courtroom~~Plan Without ~~Ce~~Conference ~~r~~Rooms ~~may be eliminated, see section T7.D.3~~



~~**Figure T7.3** Reduced Size Civil Courtroom Set~~

Commented [DP13]: Delete the left plan.

Commented [DP14]: Gensler: change the template plan to center bench instead of corner bench. Show the reduction of 250 SF, but not the reduction of 400 SF. The vestibule should still be shown but in the gallery.

Commented [DP15]: Gensler, in the new plan you still need to show the entry vestibule. Recess it for the depth of the last row of bench seating into the courtroom.

Commented [DP16]: Modified by CFAC-WG: Delete this figure.

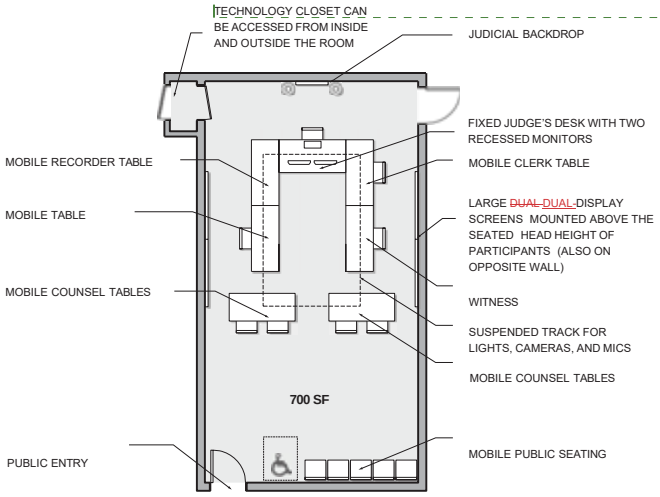


Figure T7.4 Hybrid Courtroom

Commented [DP17]: Modified by CFAC-WG: Delete this figure.

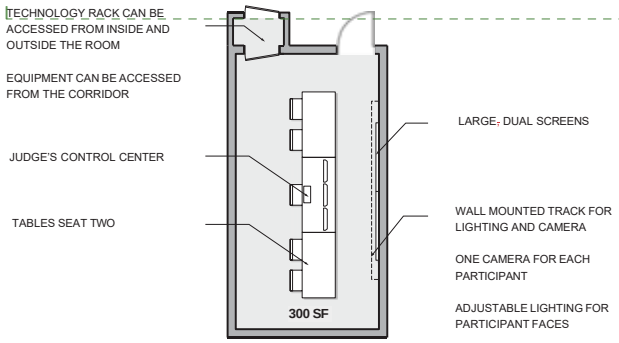


Figure T7.5 Adjudication Conference Room

Commented [DP18]: Modified by CFAC-WG: Delete this figure.

6. **Security and Supervision**

Security design shall comply with applicable facilities standards. Design shall emphasize visibility and passive supervision, controlled access points, and reduced reliance on redundant physical barriers.

7. **Building Systems**

Building systems shall be simplified and standardized, align with reduced building scale, and minimize maintenance complexity. Systems shall be zoned appropriately to support different occupancy patterns and varied operational schedules.

8. **Environmental Quality**

Instead of heavily relying on building systems for occupant comfort, design shall prioritize access to daylight, indoor environmental quality, and energy-efficient systems. Envelope design shall balance performance and cost. ~~Punched~~ Punched-hole windows are preferred over glazed curtain walls.

9. **Accessibility and Universal Design**

Accessibility shall be integral to circulation and space planning. All accessibility requirements shall comply fully with title 24 and ~~*facilities*~~ *Facilities* ~~*standards*~~*Standards*~~.~~. ~~See~~ Refer to chapter 1, section 1.B for additional guidance.

10. **Wayfinding**

Wayfinding shall rely on logical spatial organization, clear sightlines, and minimal but effective signage.

T7.E COURTHOUSE PROTOTYPES

Prototypical courthouse layouts provide consistent planning logic and efficiencies that can be adapted to a variety of local conditions. Prototypes illustrate scalable planning strategies that support efficient circulation, shared-use principles, and standardized modules.

The prototypes that follow are not prescriptive but illustrate repeatable design strategies suitable for small courthouse facilities that may be adapted to specific site and program requirements.

REQUIRED TOOLS

T1 Life Cycle Cost Analysis
T2 Catalog of Courtroom Layouts for California Trial Courts
T3 Integrated Network Architecture
T4 Graphical User Interface Template
T5 In-Custody Interview Room Guidelines
T6 Building Management System Guidelines

T7 Small Courthouse Guidelines
T7.A Purpose and Intent
T7.B Context
T7.C Programming Principles

T7.F Construction and Delivery

Commented [DP19]: Gensler: chapter 1, section 1.B

1. One-Courtroom ~~Single-Story~~ Prototype (Figure T7.6)

- Design Intent

  The one-courtroom prototype represents the smallest independent facility providing full judicial function. It prioritizes simplicity, shared use, and compact circulation.

- Key Characteristics
  - One public entry and screening zone serving one courtroom.
  - Lobby immediately adjacent to clerk counter and public waiting.
  - One courtroom with a private corridor and compact detention holding.
  - Shared jury assembly and staff support areas.
- Design Guidance

  Circulation shall minimize walking distances while maintaining security separation. The lobby shall allow direct supervision of public entry.



Figure T7.6 One-Courtroom ~~Single-Story~~ Prototype

Commented [DP20]: Gensler: Adjust all figure numbers based on deletion of the previous figures.

Commented [LD21]: Add legend?

Commented [DP21R2]: Yes, add legend of abbreviations at the bottom similar to other chapters and tools.

Commented [DP22]: Gensler: add legend of abbreviations at the bottom similar to other chapters and tools.

2. Two-Courtroom ~~Single-Story~~ Prototype (Figure T7.7)

- Design Intent

  The two-courtroom prototype represents a slightly larger facility than a one-courtroom prototype.

- Key Characteristics
  - ~~Creates t~~The simplest module of one court set with holding core in the middle of two courtrooms.
  - Two courtrooms accessed from a shared private corridor.
  - ~~The p~~Private and detention circulations intersecting to ~~creating~~ create an interlock to be controlled from the detention control room.

- Design Guidance

  The plan is rectangular to accommodate the court set while maintaining to the fullest extent possible three separate circulation zones.

Commented [CM23]: Added similar language based on Comment above.

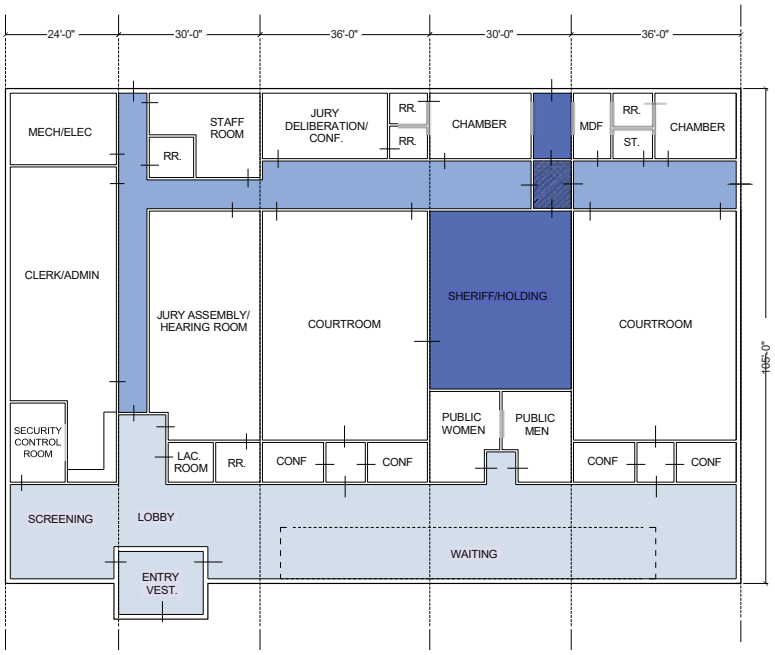


Figure T7.7 Two-Courtroom Single-Story Prototype

Commented [LD24]: Legend?

Commented [DP24R2]: yes

Commented [DP25]: Gensler: add legend of abbreviations at the bottom similar to other chapters and tools.

3. Four-Courtroom ~~Single-Story~~ Prototype (Figure T7.8)

- Design Intent

  This prototype demonstrates scalability through paired courtrooms with shared support. It introduces economies of scale without compromising clarity.

- Key Characteristics
  - Two court sets sharing back-of-house functions.
  - Consolidated holding and jury facilities serving all four courtrooms.
  - Two interlocks due to intersection of private and detention circulations.

- Design Guidance

  Layouts shall maintain a consistent structural grid for future expansion. Shared spaces shall be centrally located. Staff work areas shall be designed for flexibility.

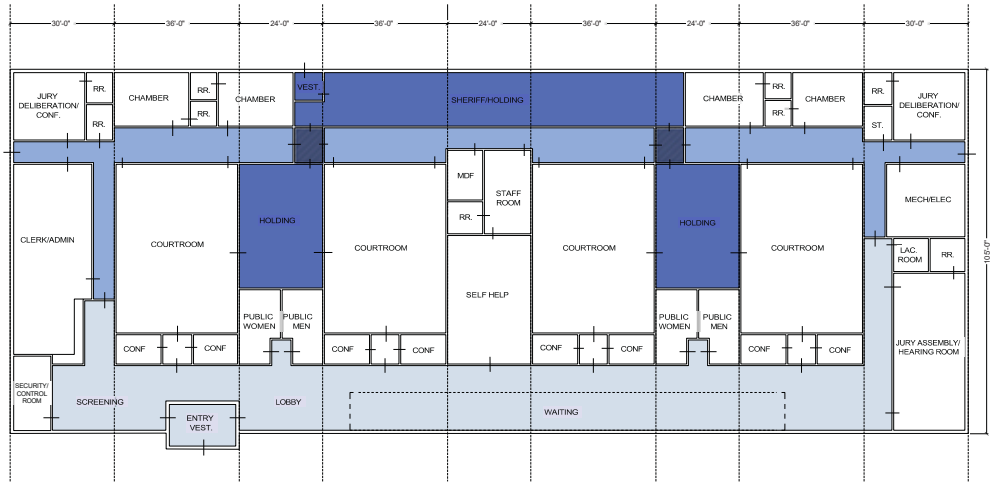


Figure T7.8 Four-Courtroom ~~Single-Story~~ Prototype

Commented [DP26]: Gensler: add legend of abbreviations at the bottom similar to other chapters and tools.

T7.F CONSTRUCTION AND DELIVERY

1. Delivery Method

Construction and delivery methods shall reinforce the same objectives as those guiding design—: affordability, quality, and efficiency. The selected delivery method shall suit project complexity, site conditions, and funding structure. Coordination among the Judicial Council, architects, engineers, and contractors shall begin at the earliest phase.

Design-build is preferred for most courthouse projects because it integrates cost control and design quality from the outset. The design-build team shall collaborate closely with the Judicial Council to verify that design intent and cost parameters remain aligned throughout development.

Construction efficiency is best achieved through simplification of form, reduction of redundant systems, and consistent detailing. Each design choice shall reflect the project's total life -cycle value rather than initial cost alone.

2. Building Systems Integration

The California Office of the State Fire ~~Marshal~~ Marshal–approved UL ~~L.~~ listed details shall be used as a starting point for architectural design. Mechanical, electrical, plumbing, and structural systems shall be coordinated early and integrated into the architectural design. Structural grids shall correspond to planning modules and allow standardized bay spacing. MEP routing shall minimize penetrations through fire-rated walls and ceilings while providing access for maintenance.

Ceiling spaces shall allow future conduit or ductwork installation without major demolition. Systems shall include clear labeling and controls accessible to maintenance personnel.

3. Prefabrication and Modular Construction

Prefabricated or modular construction is encouraged to reduce cost and improve consistency. Components such as wall assemblies, detention partition systems, and mechanical skids may be fabricated off-site. Prefabricated assemblies shall meet all applicable building codes and achieve the same standards of performance as traditional construction. Use of prefabrication shall reduce construction time, improve quality control, and reduce cost variability.

Designers shall consider transportation limits, structural connections, and joint detailing in early planning. Modular construction shall preserve functional integration rather than appear as an add-on. (See see figure T7.9,11 for Modular and Scalable Construction Approaches).

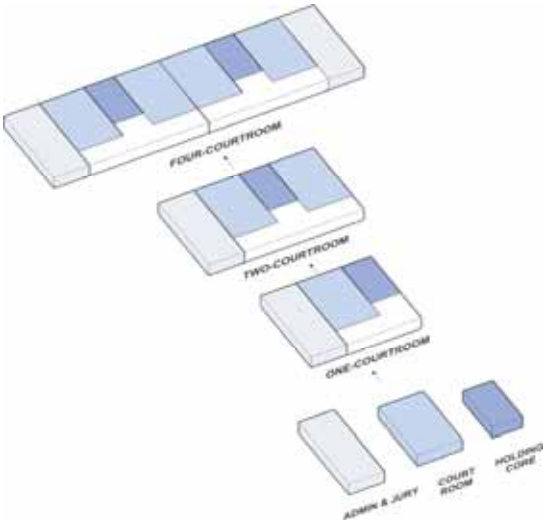


Figure T7.911 Modular and Scalable Construction Approaches

4. Materials and Finishes

Materials shall prioritize durability and longevity, minimize maintenance requirements, and reflect appropriate civic character. See chapter 11, section 11.C for guidance on exterior construction, and section 11.D for guidance on interior construction.

5. Life -Cycle Considerations

Systems and materials shall be selected for durability and low maintenance. Designs shall permit straightforward access for repairs and replacement. Control systems shall be user-friendly for small facilities teams with limited technical staff. All life -cycle cost analyses shall compare maintenance, energy, and replacement costs, not just first cost. See tool 1, Life Cycle Cost Analysis, for detailed requirements.

REQUIRED TOOLS

T1 Life Cycle Cost Analysis
T2 Catalog of Courtroom Layouts for California Trial Courts
T3 Integrated Network Architecture
T4 Graphical User Interface Template
T5 In-Custody Interview Room Guidelines
T6 Building Management System Guidelines
T7 Small Courthouse Guidelines
T7.A Purpose and Intent
T7.B Context
T7.C Programming Principles
T7.D Design Principles
T7.E Courthouse Prototypes
T7.F Construction and Delivery
T8 Security Systems Guidelines

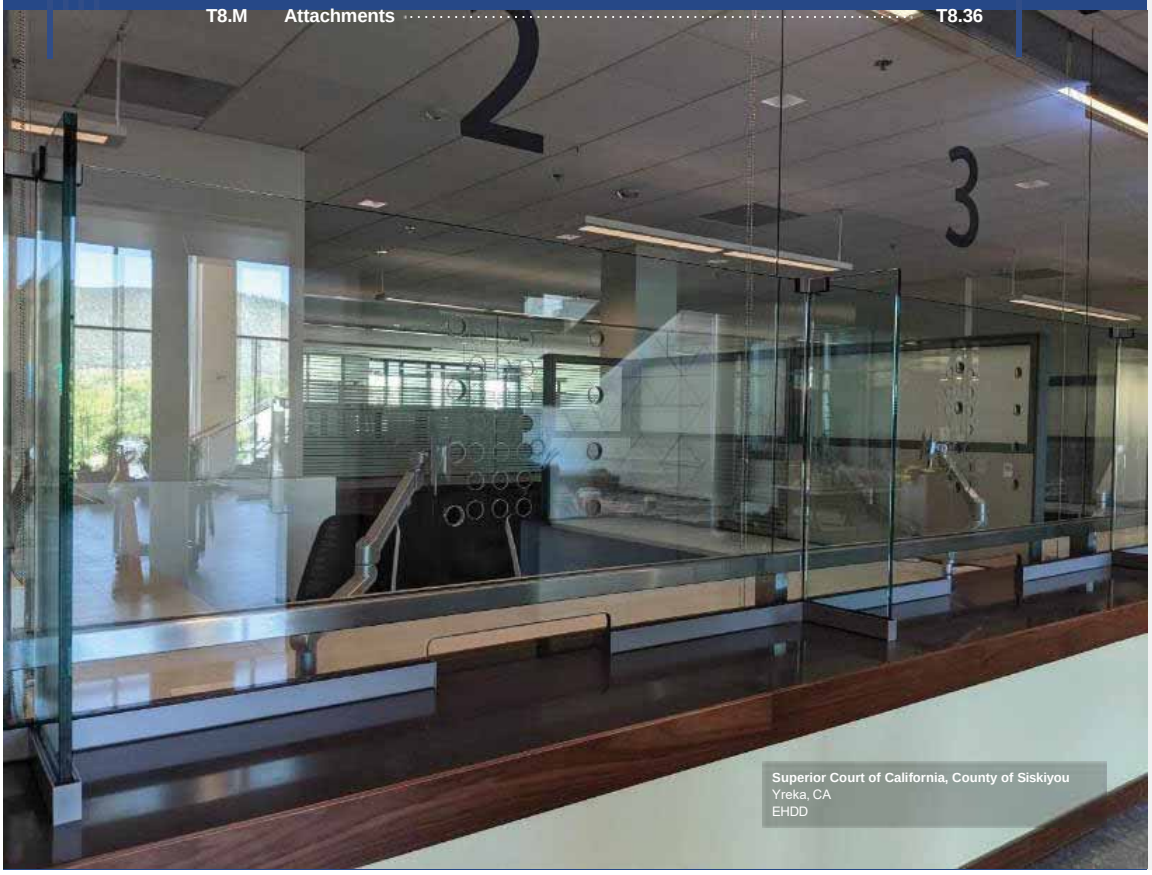
Commented [DP27]: Modified by CFAC-WG.

T8

REQUIRED TOOLS

SECURITY SYSTEM GUIDELINES

SECTION	TOPIC	PAGE
T8.A	General	T8.2
T8.B	Access Control System	T8.11
T8.C	Duress System	T8.17
T8.D	Alarm System	T8.19
T8.E	Video	T8.19
T8.F	Intercom	T8.24
T8.G	Detention	T8.24
T8.H	Licensing	T8.29
T8.I	Cable, Conduit, and Termination	T8.29
T8.J	Servers and Workstations	T8.30
T8.K	Coordination	T8.30
T8.L	Acceptance Testing	T8.33
T8.M	Attachments	T8.36



Superior Court of California, County of Siskiyou
Yreka, CA
EHDD

T8.A GENERAL

1. Design for Security

Security design is covered in chapter 4, Courthouse Security~~,~~ ; chapter 8, In-Custody Defendant Receiving, Holding, and Transport~~,~~ ; and chapter 9, Public Spaces, which should be referred to for overall security planning. The Security System Guidelines tool provides additional details about current equipment standards and other specific information.

Guidance on site-specific security is provided in the facility risk assessment per chapter 4, section 4.D~~,~~ and by the Judicial Council~~'s~~ security coordinator assigned to the project.

2. Circulation

Chapter 4, s~~S~~ection~~Concentric circles of protection (described in chapter 4, section~~ 4.E.2~~)~~ explains concentric circles of protection, or the separation of "intervention zones." These zones must be separated by access control systems (see chapter 4, section 4.I, Electronic Security Systems).

3. Space Allocation

In addition to the security equipment space allocation described in chapter 4, section 4.H, Electronic Security Planning Criteria, at least 45 s~~quare feet~~ must be allocated to security equipment and access to that equipment in main distribution frame (MDF) and intermediate distribution frame (IDF) rooms. Larger facilities may also require closet space on individual floors.

4. Security Operations Center

Specific information on the security operations center (SOC; also referred to as the security control center), particularly as related to the detention control rooms, is provided in chapter 4, section 4.H. ~~4.H.~~ Generally, the ~~security operations center (~~SOC~~)~~ shall be located at or near the main courthouse entrance screening stations. However, this may be adjusted depending on the operations of the security providers. Every opportunity to minimize space and staffing and ~~to~~ utilize redundant security systems shall be explored. The SOC must be a minimum of 144 s~~quare feet~~.

Chapter 4, f~~F~~igure 4.4 provides an SOC plan suitable for small~~-~~ to medium-size courthouses. An ~~alternate~~alternative design suitable for large or multi~~-~~agency courthouses is shown in figure T8.1.

Design elements for SOC:

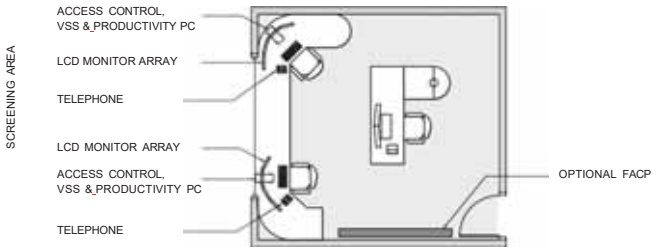
- SOC operator's workstation shall have a view through the glass window to entrance screening.
- This window and the wall below shall be ballistic rated. The minimum protective level shall be UL 752 Level 3.
- The quantity and size of displays shall be based on ergonomic needs and system requirements.
- ~~Designate a~~A wall intended for building systems and a fire alarm control panel (FACP) shall be designated, as needed.
- A ~~Supervisor's~~ supervisor's desk may not be required.
- ~~Limit e~~Equipment in the control room ~~must~~shall be limited to user interface devices. Locate servers, control panels, and other equipment in an IDF or a utility closet.

Commented [SN1]: 1. "after hours," "after-hours," and "afterhours" appear inconsistently throughout.
2. Throughout, specific mfgs are called out. Confirming that the JCC is directing to use only a limited number of mfgs for certain product. Are those mfgs still producing an acceptable product? Are there others who should be added to the list?

Commented [DP1R2]: EGG: please advise on the correct terminology for after hours and mark where we need it to change.

Commented [DP1R3]: Yes, JCC is limited to those manufacturers for security applications. The products listed here are current. We will revisit in the next edition if anything needs updating.

Commented [DP2]: Change must to shall.



FACP = fire alarm control panel.
LCD = liquid crystal display.
~~VSS = video surveillance system.~~
PC = personal computer.
~~LCD = liquid crystal display~~VSS = video surveillance system.
~~FACP = fire alarm control panel~~

Figure T8.1 Security Operations Center for Large or Multi-agency Courthouses

5. Rack Space in MDF/IDF Rooms

In general, a full rack is needed in data centers or MDF rooms and a half rack in IDF rooms. Typical installation and space requirements are shown in ~~the~~ T8.E, Video ~~section of this tool~~. For additional information, see chapter 4, section 4.H.15, Security Equipment Location.

6. Wall Space in MDF/IDF Rooms

The wall space needed in either the MDF or IDF room~~s~~ for the duress, alarm, access control system, and network jacks is typically 48″ ~~inches~~ wide and 96″ ~~inches~~ high, with 36″ inches of clearance. A second, similar-sized space is required in the IDF room for detention control. A typical installation and its space requirements are shown in ~~the~~ figure T8.2.

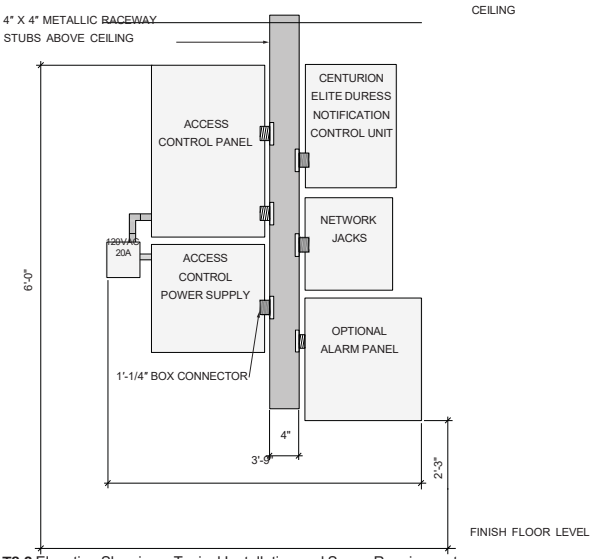


Figure T8.2 Elevation Showing a Typical Installation and Space Requirements

REQUIRED TOOLS

T1 Life Cycle Cost Analysis
T2 Catalog of Courtroom Layouts for California Trial Courts
T3 Integrated Network Architecture
T4 Graphical User Interface Template
T5 In-Custody Interview Room Guidelines
T6 Building Management System Guidelines
T7 Small Courthouse Guidelines
T8 Security System Guidelines
T8.A General
T8.B Access Control System
T8.C Duress System
T8.D Alarm System
T8.E Video
T8.F Intercom
T8.G Detention
T8.H Licensing
T8.I Cable, Conduit, and Termination
T8.J Servers and Workstations
T8.K Coordination
T8.L Acceptance Testing
T8.M Attachments

The access control panels may be combined with power supply boards in a single enclosure if the ~~Underwriters Laboratories (~~UL~~)~~ listing is maintained. Products such as FlexPower from LSP, Trove from Altronix, or a Judicial Council~~ ~~-approved ~~equal~~ equivalent are acceptable for a combined enclosure design. Power supplies must include ~~low~~ low-power disconnect to protect connected devices. Power supply may be combined into a single enclosure with the access control panel~~(s)~~ if it maintains UL listings.

7. Screening System

Refer to chapter 9, section 9.C.2, Security Screening Station. Entrance screening must be incorporated into the design with thought given to throughput, the operator's position as it relates to the current equipment's operating mode, and security observation positions. The number of screening stations should be based on a study of the current number of people screened during peak hours at the courthouse being replaced. Peak hours account for approximately three total hours during the day. These consist of the first two hours after opening and the hour after lunch. Ideally, each screening station can process five individuals per minute. Physical barriers must be used to prevent easy bypass of screening. Entrance screening suites include magnetometers and ~~X~~X-ray machines. The magnetometer standard width for the ~~Council~~ council is 32″ ~~inches~~ to accommodate the Americans with Disabilities Act (ADA) requirements. The ~~Council~~ council has master agreements with ~~a~~ magnetometer ~~vendor~~ and ~~X~~X-ray machine vendors. Information and cut sheets are in T8.M, Attachments.

Full-size ~~X~~X-ray machines are the standard for all courthouse designs. The compact or portable ~~X~~X-ray machines listed in ~~the~~ attachment 1 may be considered with the full agreement of the court and Judicial ~~Council~~Council. Roller tables for the full-size ~~X~~X-ray machines come in ~~two-foot~~2′ sections. Generally, a project requires a total of ~~eight feet~~8′ (~~four~~ 4′ feet for the entrance table and ~~four feet~~4′ for the exit table).

Design consideration must be given to allow court attendees to bypass screening equipment in case of medical concerns, such as pacemakers. Although the equipment used in screening has proven to be safe, some visitors may still request ~~and require~~ individual hand screening. A method to bypass the screening equipment through a controlled door or ~~through~~ exit passageways, under escort, must be included in the design.

8. Entrance Screening Equipment Physical Placement and Clearance Requirements

The ~~Screening~~ screening station shall be designed as outlined in chapter 9, section 9.C.2. Figure T8.3 depicts additional alternative layouts for the screening equipment.

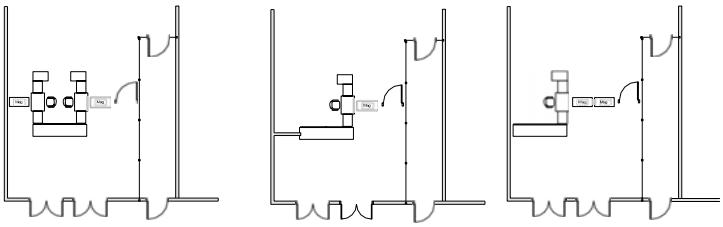


Figure T8.3 Examples of Screening Equipment Layouts

Where space between two sets of screening equipment is limited, it may make sense to stagger the equipment so that operators are not sitting or standing back-to-back. Figure T8.4 reflects staggered equipment.

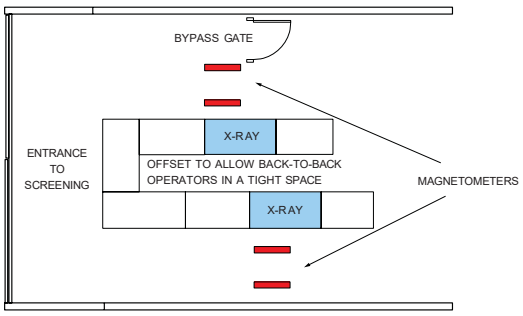


Figure T8.4 Staggered Screening Equipment

- Critical Physical Design and Spacing Requirements for Screening Equipment
  - Standard ~~X~~X-ray machines include one input and one output roller table. The roller tables are available in lengths of either 0.5 ~~meter~~ or 1.0 meter ~~length~~.
  - Customization and built-in cabinetry are discouraged.
  - The best physical position of the magnetometer (metal detector) in relation to the ~~X~~X-ray imaging system is in the middle of the main body of the ~~X~~X-ray machine.
  - Do not position the magnetometer close to the entry and exit conveyor/roller tables. These roller tables can be a tremendous source of mechanical interference from moving metal and objects on the roller table/conveyor.
  - The transmitter (TX) antenna of the magnetometer must be positioned toward~~s~~ the ~~X~~X-ray unit. The receiver (RX) antenna must be on the side near the ~~X~~X-ray machine.
  - Distance between the magnetometer and the ~~X~~X-ray unit should be a minimum of 16".
  - Distance between the magnetometer and the monitor of the ~~X~~X-ray unit must be a minimum of 39.5".
  - ~~Provide~~ There must be a minimum of 16" clearance between walls or windows that coul potentially cause any vibration interference.
  - Each device requires a 110 AC outlet with a minimum of 15 amps.

9. Single Point for Public Entry

There should be a single point for public entry leading to screening. It is required that employees also enter through this point. See chapter 9, sections 9.B and 9.C.

10. Main Exit and Emergency Exits

The main exit must be designed to prevent people from entering ~~through the exit~~. This is often best achieved by using a pedestrian sally port or vestibule with two sets of doors. These doors must have door monitoring and door-held-open local alarms. It is also good practice for the exit doors to be easily observable by security officers in screening.

One alternative to pedestrian sally ports ~~are~~ is a barrier gate exit lane turnstile~~s~~. These differ from traditional "tripod" turnstiles. Refer to ~~section~~ T8.B.8, Turnstiles. The barriers shall be clear, flat material and slide open and close automatically instead of swinging or rotating. The exit lanes shall be ADA compliant. For people passing from the screened area to the unscreened area, the barrier shall automatically open and close. For people attempting to

REQUIRED TOOLS
T1 Life Cycle Cost Analysis
T2 Catalog of Courtroom Layouts for California Trial Courts
T3 Integrated Network Architecture
T4 Graphical User Interface Template
T5 In-Custody Interview Room Guidelines
T6 Building Management System Guidelines
T7 Small Courthouse Guidelines
T8 Security System Guidelines
T8.A General
T8.B Access Control System
T8.C Duress System
T8.D Alarm System
T8.E Video
T8.F Intercom
T8.G Detention
T8.H Licensing
T8.I Cable, Conduit, and Termination
T8.J Servers and Workstations
T8.K Coordination
T8.L Acceptance Testing
T8.M Attachments

Commented [DP3]: We need to say chapter numbers, otherwise reader may be confused about the section being in the same chapter or tool they are reading.

pass from the unscreened area to the screened area, the barrier shall either remain closed or immediately close—then a local alarm should sound, triggering an exit violation to be recorded in the security management system transaction log, and prompting the associated camera.

The emergency exit doors are a serious security vulnerability. The requirement for multiple exit paths makes access control and screening difficult to assureensure. To reduce the risk, a pedestrian sally port or vestibule is helpful. At a minimum, the exit door shall have a local door alarm and camera. Emergency exit doors shall be devoid of all external hardware such as locks or handles. Wireless alarm sensors tied through the duress alarm system may be considered for use in monitoring these exits. Automatic camera call-up shall be tied to alarms from these doors.

As an option, video analytics can be used to monitor the direction of pedestrian traffic through the pedestrian sally port or secure vestibules. This can be accomplished by properly positioning a high-quality camera with built-in directional tracking analytics, in the monitored area. The analytic algorithms that filter and manage the real-time video shall alert operators and show an alarm on the video workstation when a violation of the direction of pedestrian traffic occurs.

11. Locks and Keys

Locks and keys are the basis of good access control. Recommended lock functions, master keying, and key control are detailed in the table T8.1. Table T8.2 identifies the type of key required per for each space type.

12. Electrified Locking Hardware

It is important to use quality electric locks for security and long service life. As shown in the following tables, mortise locks are the optimum choice for standard applications. For exit hardware, Von Duprin is the preferred manufacturer. An alternative choice for standard applications is cylindrical locks. Electric strikes are not recommended. All doors utilizing using electrified locks require a mechanical backup. Refer to chapter 4, table 4.4 for security electronic devices at court building elements.

Table T8.1 Minimum Required Lock Functions, Master Keying, and Key Control by Space

Room	Lock*	Function	Description	Card accessAccess	Closer	Holder
Main lobby	Von Duprin 98/99 series exit hardware	Store-room	Latch bolt retracted by 24 24VDC or by key outside. Inside push bar always free for immediate exit. Push bar cannot be dogged down to keep latch bolt retracted.	Yes	Yes	
Emergency exit	Von Duprin 98/99 series exit hardware	Store-room	Latch bolt retracted by key outside. Exit-only doors have outside trim removed. Inside push bar always free for immediate exit. Push bar cannot be dogged down to keep latch bolt retracted.		Yes	

Room	Lock*	Function	Description	Card ~~access~~Access	Closer	Holder
Exit	Schlage L9080 Mortise	Store-room	Latch bolt retracted by key outside or by lever inside. Outside lever always inoperative. Auxiliary latch deadlocks latch bolt when door is closed. Inside lever is always free for immediate exit.		Yes	
Inner lobby	Schlage L9080PEU Mortise	Store-room	Outside lever unlocked by ~~24~~ 24VDC. Latch bolt retracted by key outside or lever inside. Auxiliary latch deadlocks latch bolt when door is closed. Inside lever always free for immediate exit.	Yes	Yes	
Courtroom front	Von Duprin 98/99 series exit hardware	Store-room	Latch bolt retracted by ~~24~~ 24VDC or by key outside. Inside push bar always free for immediate exit. Push bar cannot be dogged down to keep latch bolt retracted.	Yes	Yes	Yes
Courtroom rear†	Von Duprin 98/99 series 99L-BE exit hardware	Passage	Card reader turns off local alarm when exiting. Request-to-exit motion detector turns off local alarm when entering. Exiting door without card read sounds local alarm. Latch bolt retracted by lever from outside at all times. Inside push bar always free for immediate exit. Push bar cannot be dogged down to keep latch bolt retracted.	Yes	Yes	
Bench exit	Schlage L9010 Mortise	Passage	Card reader turns off local alarm when exiting. Request-to-exit motion detector turns off local alarm when entering. Exiting door without card read sounds local alarm. Opening door without card read sounds local alarm. Latch bolt retracted by lever from either side at all times. Inside lever is always free for immediate exit.	Yes	Yes	

REQUIRED TOOLS

T1 Life Cycle Cost Analysis
T2 Catalog of Courtroom Layouts for California Trial Courts
T3 Integrated Network Architecture
T4 Graphical User Interface Template
T5 In-Custody Interview Room Guidelines
T6 Building Management System Guidelines
T7 Small Courthouse Guidelines
T8 Security System Guidelines
T8.A General
T8.B Access Control System
T8.C Duress System
T8.D Alarm System
T8.E Video
T8.F Intercom
T8.G Detention
T8.H Licensing
T8.I Cable, Conduit, and Termination
T8.J Servers and Workstations
T8.K Coordination
T8.L Acceptance Testing
T8.M Attachments

Room	Lock*	Function	Description	Card access	Closer	Holder
Chambers	Schlage L9080PEU Mortise	Office	Outside lever unlocked by ~~24~~ 24VDC. Latch bolt retracted by key outside or lever inside. Auxiliary latch deadlocks latch bolt when door is closed. Inside lever always free for immediate exit.	Yes	Yes	Yes
Evidence storage	Schlage L9080PEU Mortise	Store-room	Outside lever unlocked by ~~24~~ 24VDC. Latch bolt retracted by key outside or lever inside. Auxiliary latch deadlocks latch bolt when door is closed. Inside lever always free for immediate exit.	Yes	Yes	
Exhibit storage	Schlage L9080 Mortise	Store-room	Latch bolt retracted by key outside or by lever inside. Outside lever always inoperative. Auxiliary latch deadlocks latch bolt when door is closed. Inside lever is always free for immediate exit.		Yes	
Mediation	Schlage L9010 Mortise	Passage	Latch bolt retracted by lever from either side at all times. Inside lever is always free for immediate exit.			
Conference	Schlage L9010 Mortise	Passage	Latch bolt retracted by lever from either side at all times. Inside lever is always free for immediate exit.			
Office	Schlage L9050 Mortise	Office	Latch bolt retracted by lever from either side unless outside is made inoperative by key outside or by turning inside thumb turn. When outside is locked, latch bolt is retracted by key outside or by lever inside. Outside lever remains locked until thumb turn is returned to vertical or unlocked by key. Auxiliary latch deadlocks latch bolt when door is closed. Inside lever is always free for immediate exit.			

Room	Lock*	Function	Description	Card access	Closer	Holder
Lactation room	Schlage L9496 Mortise	Privacy with occupied indicator	Lever retracts latch bolt from either side. Deadbolt thrown or retracted by key outside (retraction by key required in an emergency) or inside thumb turn. Throwing deadbolt locks outside lever and displays *OCCUPIED* plate. Rotating inside lever simultaneously retracts both deadbolt and latch bolt and unlocks outside lever. Inside lever is always free for immediate exit.			
Storage/ file	Schlage L9080 Mortise	Store-room	Latch bolt retracted by key outside or by lever inside. Outside lever always inoperative. Auxiliary latch deadlocks latch bolt when door is closed. Inside lever is always free for immediate exit.		Yes	
Janitors' closet	Schlage L9465 Mortise	Closet	Latch bolt retracted by knob/ lever from either side. Deadbolt thrown or retracted by key outside.		Yes	
Electrical/ mechanical	Schlage L9080 Mortise	Store-room	Latch bolt retracted by key outside or by lever inside. Outside lever always inoperative. Auxiliary latch deadlocks latch bolt when door is closed. Inside lever is always free for immediate exit.		Yes	
Telecom/ data	Schlage L9080PEU Mortise	Store-room	Outside lever unlocked by 24-24VDC. Latch bolt retracted by key outside or lever inside. Auxiliary latch deadlocks latch bolt when door is closed. Inside lever always free for immediate exit.	Yes	Yes	

* The manufacturers and part numbers are shown as examples of quality and function that should be met or exceeded. Equivalent quality and function may be found using different manufacturers.

† If included in project design.

VDC = volts of direct current.

REQUIRED TOOLS

T1 Life Cycle Cost Analysis
T2 Catalog of Courtroom Layouts for California Trial Courts
T3 Integrated Network Architecture
T4 Graphical User Interface Template
T5 In-Custody Interview Room Guidelines
T6 Building Management System Guidelines
T7 Small Courthouse Guidelines
T8 Security System Guidelines
T8.A General
T8.B Access Control System
T8.C Duress System
T8.D Alarm System
T8.E Video
T8.F Intercom
T8.G Detention
T8.H Licensing
T8.I Cable, Conduit, and Termination
T8.J Servers and Workstations
T8.K Coordination
T8.L Acceptance Testing
T8.M Attachments

Table T8.2 Key Plan

	Primus secure keyway*	Card access†	Grand master	Janitor master	Keyed alike card reader	Keyed alike perimeter	Keyed alike electrical mechanical	Keyed alike exhibit storage	Change key office
Indicating letter on key			**GM**	**J**	**CR**	**P**	**EM**	**EV**	**O1-On**
Main lobby	x	x	x		x				
Perimeter emergency exit	x		x			x			
Inner lobby‡		x	x		x				
Courtroom		x	x		x				
Courtroom side entrance		x	x		x				
Bench		x	x		x				
Chambers		x	x		x				
Evidence storage	x	x	x					x	
Exhibit storage	x		x					x	
Office			x	x					x
Janitor~~s~~ closet			x	x					
Electrical/mechanical			x				x		
Telecom/data		x	x		x				

* Primus is the brand name of the Schlage secured and controlled keyway. Similar products are offered by other manufacturers such as Medeco.

† This column indicates doors with card access control.

‡ Inner lobby doors separate private from public circulation.

13. Cylinders

Interchangeable cylinders shall be used.

14. Everest Primus and Primus Classic Controlled Keyways

The Judicial Council must retain control of the keyway in such a way as to prevent dealer lock-in. The designer shall specify Everest Level 9 and Primus Classic Level 3 or 4~~,~~ end-user exclusive keyway for the owner to retain control.

15. Key Control

By using a secure keyway from Schlage or Medeco on the perimeter, an extra level of control is built in, as these keyways control the blanks and are not easy to duplicate. Keys must be stamped with a letter and number indicating where they fit. For example, the first office key must be stamped O1, the second office O2, etc. Also, each duplicate key can be stamped with a number. The first office's first key duplicate should be stamped O1 1, the second key for the first office stamped O1 2, etc. The second office keys are similarly stamped O2 1, O2 2, etc.

Records must be kept of keys issued. Regularly scheduled audits and reconciliations must be conducted. Record which key is issued, to whom the key is issued, by whom, the date of issuance, and the date of return. Spare or unassigned keys should be kept in a locked key cabinet.

The top-most grand master key is irreplaceable. If it is lost, the entire building should be rekeyed. Similarly, if the perimeter key is lost, the perimeter will be rekeyed—and likewise with the custodial master key, although in this case, the master key is limited to lower-value rooms (e.g., it does not open the perimeter or the data closets). Refer toSee figure T8.5, for kKey plan Plan chartChart.

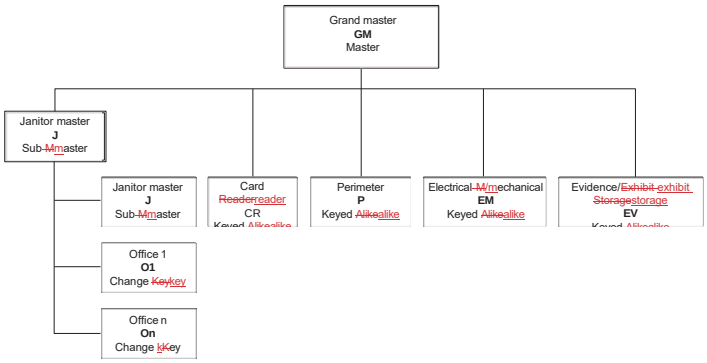


Figure T8.5 Key Plan Chart

16. Knoxbox Fire Department Access

A Knoxbox key keeper is required for emergency access to the building. The box must be large enough to contain a master key and a proximity card. The box must also include a switch that is wired to the security system and sounds an alarm if the box is opened.

T8.B ACCESS CONTROL SYSTEM

The design team shall provide details on the proposed access control system. The system shall incorporate easily maintained and supported hardware. The system shall not require any ongoing licensing costs to remain functional (i.e., software service agreement, software maintenance agreement, etc.). and shall include five years of support and updates from the date of project acceptance at no additional cost to the Judicial Council.

Acceptable manufacturers include DSX and Avigilon. Any deviation will need to be approved by the Councilcouncil. The selected product and design needs to incorporate interconnecting the video management system (VMS) platform and programmable logic controller (PLC) system with the access control system in such a way that will avoid losing interoperability if one system is updated. Determining the location of card access doors must be done while referencing the specific building design. The separation of the three types of circulation (see chapter 2, section 2.A, Program Stacking and Zoning) will help determine the locations. Additionally, any high-value areas such as evidence storage shall have access control. Doors shall be factory prepared to receive electric mortise locks, electric hinges, and door contact sensors (see chapter 4, section 4.I, Electronic Security Systems).

REQUIRED TOOLS

T1 Life Cycle Cost Analysis
T2 Catalog of Courtroom Layouts for California Trial Courts
T3 Integrated Network Architecture
T4 Graphical User Interface Template
T5 In-Custody Interview Room Guidelines
T6 Building Management System Guidelines
T7 Small Courthouse Guidelines
T8 Security System Guidelines
T8.A General
T8.B Access Control System
T8.C Duress System
T8.D Alarm System
T8.E Video
T8.F Intercom
T8.G Detention
T8.H Licensing
T8.I Cable, Conduit, and Termination
T8.J Servers and Workstations
T8.K Coordination
T8.L Acceptance Testing
T8.M Attachments

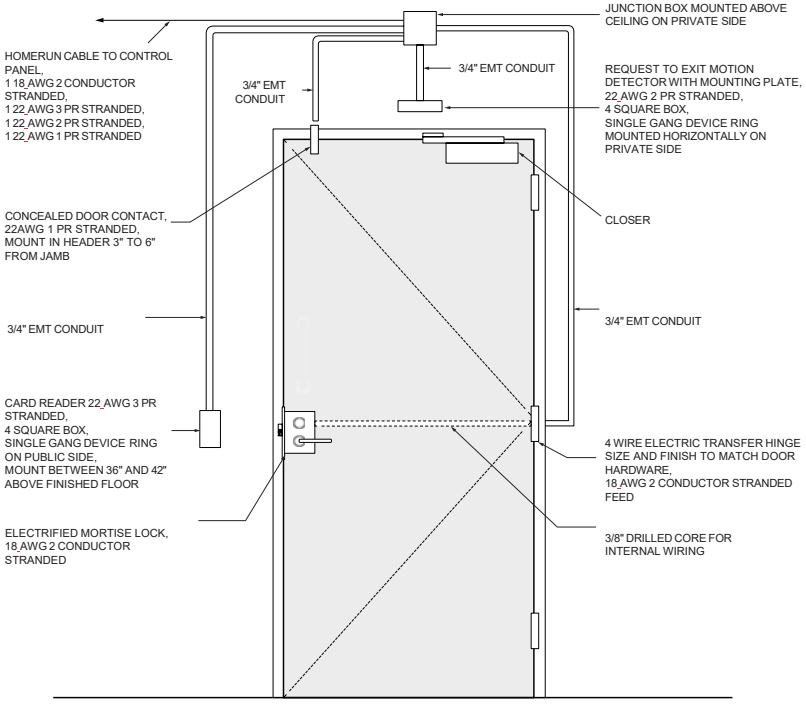
1. Access Cards and Readers

The Judicial Council desires to provide our courts with the most current and secure card reader technology. All access readers require credentials to be presented before granting access. Cards and readers should meet federal information process standards (FIPS). Card and reader technology are to be reviewed with the ~~Council~~ council security coordinator. Card design should be determined by the courts.

Note: The Judicial Council may not provide badge printers for the new projects. While many courts add identification information to access cards, making them essentially identification cards, this secondary process is a court expense. The ~~Council~~ council can assist with technical information if a court decides to add this feature at their expense.

2. Access Control Door

A typical access-controlled door is shown in figure T8.6 and serves as a guide for conduit, cable, and door requirements.

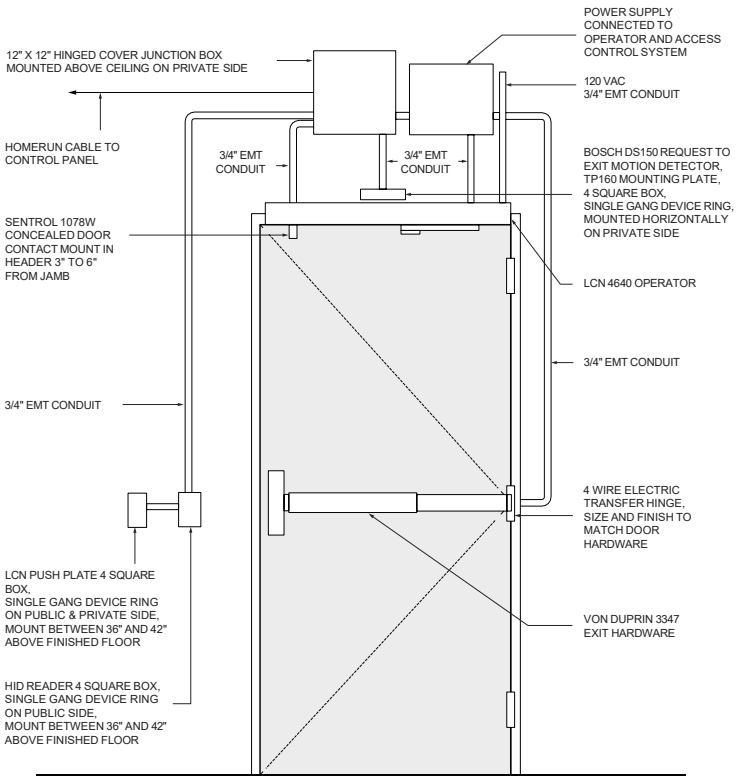


AWG = American Wire Gauge.
EMT = electrical metallic tubing.

Figure T8.6 Access Control Door in Elevation

3. Doors ~~with~~ With Power Openers

ADA-compliant doors with operators require special consideration. During business hours, the lobby door~~s~~ operation is that the door is unlocked; pressing either the enter or the exit ADA push plate operates the door. ~~After~~ After hours, entering requires a valid card read first, then pressing the push plate operates the door. Exiting is either by pushing the exit hardware bar or the push plate. A typical door is shown in figure T8.7.



EMT = electrical metallic tubing.
VAC = volts alternating current.

Figure T8.7 Door W~~w~~ith Power Opener in Elevation

REQUIRED TOOLS

T1 Life Cycle Cost Analysis
T2 Catalog of Courtroom Layouts for California Trial Courts
T3 Integrated Network Architecture
T4 Graphical User Interface Template
T5 In-Custody Interview Room Guidelines
T6 Building Management System Guidelines
T7 Small Courthouse Guidelines
T8 Security System Guidelines
T8.A General
T8.C Duress System
T8.D Alarm System
T8.E Video
T8.F Intercom
T8.G Detention
T8.H Licensing
T8.I Cable, Conduit, and Termination
T8.J Servers and Workstations
T8.K Coordination
T8.L Acceptance Testing
T8.M Attachments

Theories of Operation

Door 100:

a. Valid card read unlocks door, relocks on time or opening. For general use.

b. Valid read plus PIN unlocks door. Valid read plus PIN relocks. To open doors for court session by bailiff.

Door 102:

Non-detention sound-lock door leading to vestibule.

4. Courtroom Door

The outermost door leading into the courtroom from the public corridor is card access controlled. The card reader includes a PIN pad. When court is not in session, users with access rights may enter the courtroom by presenting their card to the reader. To unlock the door for a session, bailiffs present their card and enter a PIN. The door is unlocked and remains so until bailiffs present their card and enter a PIN a second time. The logic for the operation is configured through the access control system software.

If attorney-client conference rooms are designed in conjunction with a courtroom entrance, and the conference doors are located in the vestibule of the courtroom entrance, then the keypad/reader and locking hardware may be installed on the conference rooms' doors. This design will allow the conference rooms to be used at all times, and not only while court is in session. Courts will make this final determination. See figure T8.8.

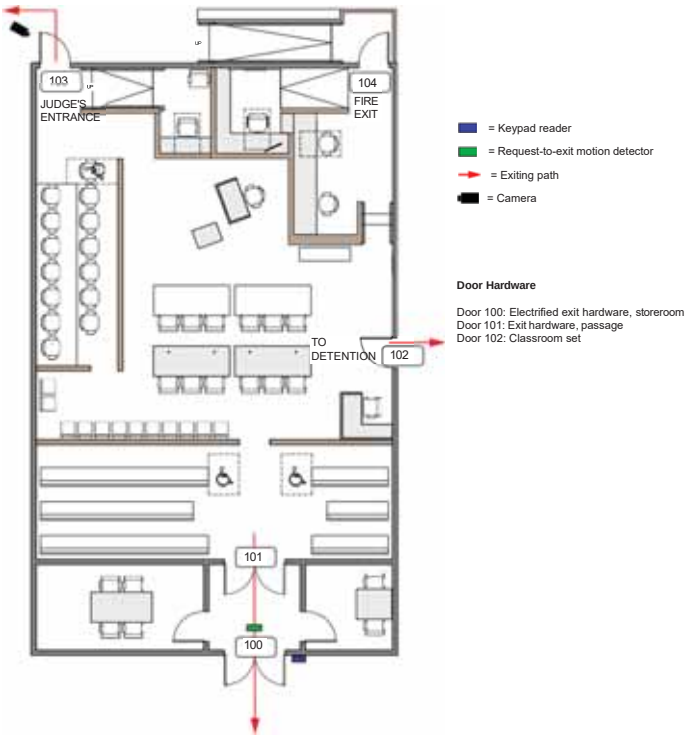
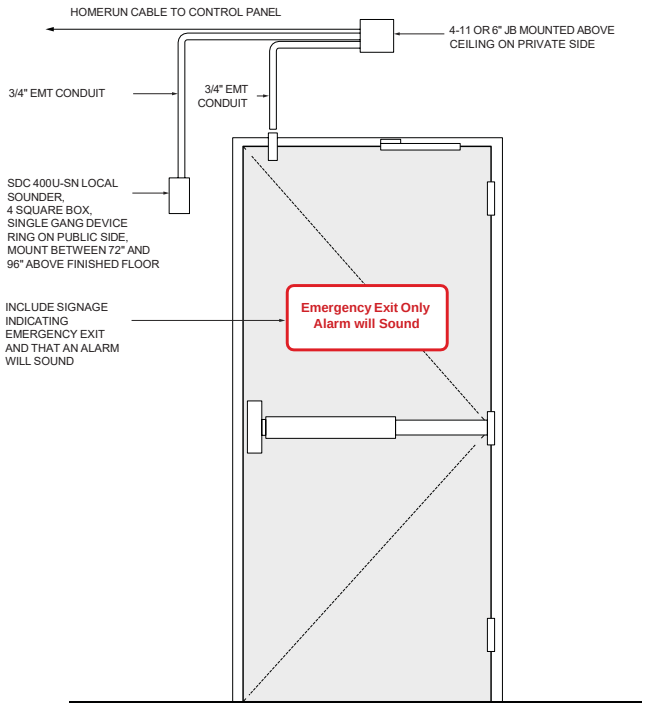


Figure T8.8 Courtroom Floor Plan

5. Exterior Emergency Exits

Emergency exits leading to the exterior need special consideration. Entrance screening divides the building envelope into two areas, sometimes referred to as sterile and nonsterile. Emergency exits located in the sterile area pose a security vulnerability. The doors can easily be opened to let unscreened people or contraband in. Courthouses need to have several security devices, including door position monitoring, local audible door alarm, a camera, and signage. If the door is opened, the door alarm sounds locally, sends a forced-door signal to the access control system, and calls up the camera. These doors must be devoid of all hardware on the exterior. An emergency exit elevation is shown in figure T8.9.



EMT = electrical metallic tubing.
JB = junction box.

Figure T8.9 Emergency Exit Elevation

6. Stairwell Access

Ideally, doors leading from stairwells to floors should be locked and require a card for access to each level. Public access to stairwells should be for exiting purposes only and should not allow access between floors, except when they are specifically designed as communicating stairs for public use.

REQUIRED TOOLS

T1 Life Cycle Cost Analysis
T2 Catalog of Courtroom Layouts for California Trial Courts
T3 Integrated Network Architecture
T4 Graphical User Interface Template
T5 In-Custody Interview Room Guidelines
T6 Building Management System Guidelines
T7 Small Courthouse Guidelines
T8 Security System Guidelines
T8.A General
T8.C Duress System
T8.D Alarm System
T8.E Video
T8.F Intercom
T8.G Detention
T8.H Licensing
T8.I Cable, Conduit, and Termination
T8.J Servers and Workstations
T8.K Coordination
T8.L Acceptance Testing
T8.M Attachments

7. Turnstiles

There is no set standard as to a specific turnstile to be used in courthouses. Provided here are the minimum features and performance requirements that any proposed turnstile should be measured against. Also included is the theory of operation that the turnstile, once installed, should be able to meet.

Turnstile features and performance requirements include:

- Small footprint for minimal space;
- ~~Must allow a~~At least one lane of ADA travel ~~allowed~~;
- Access card reader compatible with building access system;
- High flow rate (30–50 people per minute);
- Glass panel barriers that are retractable (check with state fire marshal);
- Infrared barriers;
- Audible and visual card reader signals for security staff;
- Anti-tailgating device (1/4" ~~inch~~ sensor);
- Bi-directional travel;
- Variable modes (in/out, barrier/beam);
- Tamper-resistant construction;
- ~~Must c~~Compl~~y~~iance with fire codes / ~~allow~~ egress ~~allowed~~; and
- Preferably powered by plug rather than hard-wiring (for ease of servicing).

Theory of Oo~~-~~peration

Turnstiles are generally used to control the path of travel from the building's public exit. As a person enters the turnstile to exit the building, the glass partition will open, allowing free egress and then closing behind the person. A person trying to enter through the exit side would trip the infrared barriers, sounding an alarm both locally and in security control. When used as a controlled entry for staff, building access credentials will be presented by authorized court users to the access control reader mounted to the front of the turnstile unit. If the access credential is valid, the turnstile will show both a positive visual indicator and an audible signal that access is granted, and the glass barrier will retract. The authorized user may enter the facility, and the infrared beam will ensure the user is not followed by unauthorized persons. Attempts to enter the turnstile by unauthorized persons will trigger visual and audible alarms and will send a signal to the security control room.

8. Parking and Gate Control System

Entrance to secure parking is controlled using a proximity booster or similar technology. When paired with an authorized access card, the booster does long-range authentication so that the gate and overhead door can be opened by pushing a button. Overhead doors are high speed. Safety measures are required on all gate arms and overhead doors and include safety loops, reversing edges, and beam detectors. A typical gate and overhead door system is shown in figure T8.10.

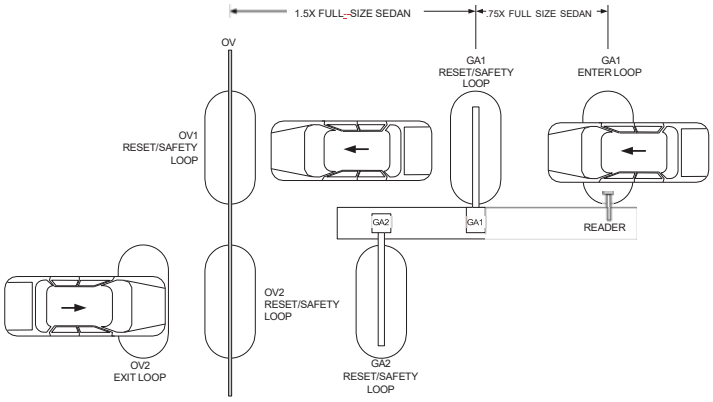


Figure T8.10 Plan for a Typical Gate and Overhead Door System

T8.C DURESS SYSTEM

The standard duress system is the Centurion Elite emergency notification system made by Response Technologies. The Centurion Elite's architecture transmits voice and text notifications to phone, two-way radio, email, pagers, and computer monitoring stations. It is capable of using a variety of wireless and network-driven sensors. A triggered alarm can be announced on the court mobile radios using a recorded message. For example, the message from any duress button in Courtroom A may say, "Duress alarm in Courtroom A." This system has proven to be efficient, easy to install, and cost-effective to maintain. This wireless solution is approximately one-third of the initial cost of a hard-wired system. Another advantage is the ease with which individual buttons can be relocated to other sites at little or no cost to the court. Hard-wired systems are expensive to maintain as they age and often fall into disrepair.

Determining the location of duress buttons is done while referencing the specific building design. In general, wireless duress buttons are provided at all locations where judicial officers or court staff interact with the public, in detention areas along in-custody travel paths, in sally ports, and in judicial parking areas. Refer to Attachment 2 and chapter 4, table 4.4 for details on specific locations and button types. Repeaters are distributed as the site requires to ensure a good signal. Power supplies for repeaters need to be in locations that will secure them from being easily disconnected. The contractor shall use Response Technologies for the design and installation of the system. Electrical outlets need to be provided at each repeater location.

The duress system is connected to the network to provide email and/or text notification and is also used for system maintenance. The American Standard Code for Information Interchange (ASCII) or other connection will provide transaction reporting and alarm integration to the PLC, access control, and ultimately the video systems. The Centurion Elite may also be connected to a telephone line as an additional notification option.

See figure T8.11.

REQUIRED TOOLS

T1 Life Cycle Cost Analysis
T2 Catalog of Courtroom Layouts for California Trial Courts
T3 Integrated Network Architecture
T4 Graphical User Interface Template
T5 In-Custody Interview Room Guidelines
T6 Building Management System Guidelines
T7 Small Courthouse Guidelines
T8 Security System Guidelines
T8.A General
T8.D Alarm System
T8.E Video
T8.F Intercom
T8.G Detention
T8.H Licensing
T8.I Cable, Conduit, and Termination
T8.J Servers and Workstations
T8.K Coordination
T8.L Acceptance Testing
T8.M Attachments

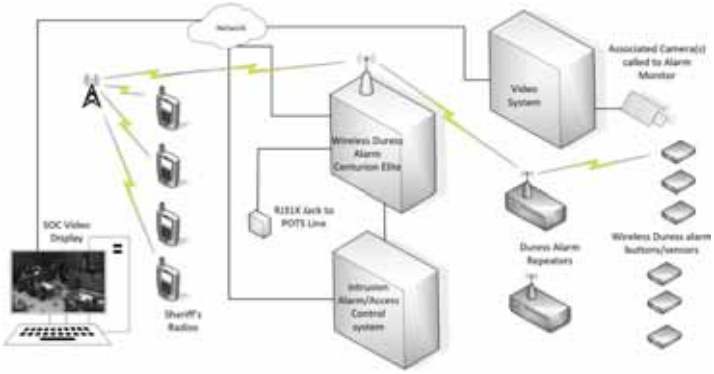


Figure T8.11 Standard Duress System

1. Centurion Elite Wireless Duress Alarm System

The details about the Centurion Elite Wireless Duress Alarm System are included in Attachment 2. This system is a completely wireless system, which allows simple recording of duress alarm messages to specifically identify the origination of an alarm. The signal is transmitted to officers' two-way radios, pagers, and/or cell phones for immediate response. The system requires a court- -supplied radio to transmit alerts to officers' radios.

Generally, this is the only cost to the court. The court will also be expected to conduct minor as-needed maintenance on the system, such as re-recording messages, replacing batteries, and moving buttons.

2. Approved Duress Alarm Locations

The duress alarm program will include payment for duress alarm buttons in the following non-public locations. If the court believes buttons are essential in locations not listed below, they may be brought to the attention of the Judicial Council's security coordinator for review.

- Any courtroom that is used at any time for court functions. Buttons are to be installed at the bench.;
- Bailiff's station inside the courtroom.;
- Clerk's workstation inside the courtroom.;
- Judge's chambers.;
- Clerk's or ~~secretaries~~ secretary's desks adjacent to chambers (those not inside the courtroom).;
- Clerk's area supervisor and/or manager (one only per public clerk's area~~);~~).
- Public counter positions in the clerk's office regardless of other screening material or shields~~;~~.
- In-custody holding areas~~;~~.
- Court ~~Executive~~ executive ~~Officer's~~ officer's (CEO) office~~;~~.
- Mediator's offices~~;~~.

- Entrance screening station area~~;~~.
- Jury assembly public counter~~;~~.
- Secure parking area~~;~~.
- Family law office areas where contact with the public is routine~~; and~~.
- Five ~~(5)~~ additional buttons and five ~~(5)~~ additional messages to be placed at the court's discretion.
- If courts choose to add additional buttons or messages beyond the Judicial ~~Council~~ Council funded locations, they can arrange for these with the Response Technologies installation representative~~,~~ at the state negotiated price.

T8.D ALARM SYSTEM

A supplementary intrusion detection alarm system may be considered for after-hours monitoring of the court by a third-party central station. See the project risk assessment and chapter 4, sections 4.D and 4.I for more information. Glass break detectors may be installed where appropriate. A recommended method of arming and disarming is by access card instead of PIN~~s~~. A card access reader is installed next to the keypad. A valid card read at the keypad will start the exit delay or stop the entry delay. The arming station is located at the judges' entrance and the staff entrance. The ~~Council~~ council security coordinator can assist the design team and the court with alarm systems and their requirements. Alarm systems and their monitoring become the court's responsibility after the project is finished. This includes after-hours response, service, monitoring charges, and any local penalties for false alarm activation. These costs can be significant. The majority of alarm responses to courthouses are due to human error. Designers shall discuss this with court management before final design decisions are made.

T8.E VIDEO

Video equipment must be compliant with the National Defense Authorization Act (~~2023~~ NDAA, 2023). Premium camera products from Axis, Hanwha, Avigilon, Illustra, or Bosch that meet this standard are acceptable. Camera manufacturers' native drivers must be fully supported by the selected video management system (VMS). Any deviation will need to be approved by the Judicial Council.

1. Video System

Video systems are installed to address specific security concerns. They are not intended for the monitoring and tracking of employees. Depending on the courthouse, video systems must be Internet Protocol (IP) based (see chapter 4, section 4.I).

The basis of design for the IP-based video management systems is to be nonproprietary and open platform. These include Avigilon, exacqVision, and Hanwha Wave/Network Optix. Systems must include professional or enterprise licenses as appropriate. Any deviation will need to be approved by the Judicial Council. The initial channel license and storage configuration of the system will be based on the size of the installation and include a minimum of 10 percent expansion of storage. A minimum three-year warranty is required on all cameras and recording hardware.

~~The~~ A system that ~~utilizes~~ uses redundant array of independent disks (RAID) storage and dual servers with fail-over capability ~~are~~ is recommended. Resolution of recorded active scenes should be at a minimum of 1080p, at a high-quality setting. All cameras are to be recording continuously at a minimum of 15 images per second, with events flagged in the recording. A minimum of 30 days of recorded

REQUIRED TOOLS

T1 Life Cycle Cost Analysis
T2 Catalog of Courtroom Layouts for California Trial Courts
T3 Integrated Network Architecture
T4 Graphical User Interface Template
T5 In-Custody Interview Room Guidelines
T6 Building Management System Guidelines
T7 Small Courthouse Guidelines
T8 Security System Guidelines
T8.A General
T8.B Access Control System
T8.F Intercom
T8.G Detention
T8.H Licensing
T8.I Cable, Conduit, and Termination
T8.J Servers and Workstations
T8.K Coordination
T8.L Acceptance Testing
T8.M Attachments

video is required. Storage calculation should be made based on continuous recording ~~utilizing~~ using H.264 or less efficient video compression. Outdoor cameras are to record continuously at the highest resolution available ~~on the cameras~~.

Client management and viewing software must be loaded on workstation computers, and the video systems should not incur recurring camera licensing or support fees. If licensing is required, the VMS must include five years of support and software updates. This period is to commence with the occupancy of the building by the courts. The number of clients, viewing locations, and monitors should be determined during the design process.

2. **Hardware Specification Minimums for Recorders, Servers, and Viewing Stations**
Recorders must include video-grade hard drives designed for continuous operation. Servers must be sized to easily provide required processing based on selected VMS, camera counts, resolution, and frame rates. The viewing stations must have the capability of providing multiple displays with processing capacity and video cards to support decoding live ~~-~~streams of a minimum of 16 two-megapixel (MP) images displayed on each monitor connected to the viewing station in real time. Manufacturers include Seneca, BCDVideo, or approved ~~equal~~equivalent. Servers from the VMS manufacturer may also be appropriate as long as they ~~utilize~~ use industrial components designed for continuous use and have a minimum three-year warranty. Consumer-grade components are not acceptable.

An uninterruptible power supply (UPS) with clean filtered power is required for all server and recording equipment. This is especially important when the building generator system is providing backup power. A local rack-mounted UPS is required to mitigate power surges and brownouts when power transfers to the facility backup system. When backup power is not provided by the facility, the video components must have a minimum of 20 minutes' runtime upon power outage and ability to safely shut down components. Ideally, all client workstation computers and servers will be mounted in locations that will remain clean and cooled, such as in IDF or MDF rooms and not under the operator's desk. All equipment must be clearly marked for identification.

3. **Camera Types and Mounts**
Video cameras must be high resolution (minimum 1080p) and include quality optics with low distortion. Indoor cameras require the flexibility to be configured in "hallway" view and have a minimum 120 dB wide dynamic range (WDR) for difficult back lighting situations; 360-degree single-sensor "fisheye" cameras may be used indoors but should be used sparingly. When used, they must provide a minimum of 9 MP recording resolution.

Multi-head cameras may be used indoors and outdoors where appropriate. Outdoor cameras and cameras in vulnerable accessible areas must be encased in vandal-resistant housings and be equipped with vandal-resistant, detention-grade hardware. Cameras in holding cells, if approved to be provided by Judicial Council, shall ~~must~~ be in detention-grade enclosures. The use of domes, mounting locations, and mounting styles that discourage vandalism or tampering is imperative. Avoid recess-mounted cameras due to future replacement challenges. In outdoor locations, wall arms with sun shrouds should be used to avoid sun damage.

Standard fixed-dome cameras should be capable of 1080p resolution ~~utilizing~~ using varifocal lenses with remote positioning zoom and focus (RPTZ). (RPTZ motors designed for setup positioning of the cameras may be appropriate.) Dual-head cameras with appropriate lensing may also be ~~utilized~~used. In all applications where backlight will be an issue, wide dynamic range will be enabled to provide optimum exposure of both dark and light areas within the scene. All cameras must be configured to minimize or eliminate blur on motion when reviewing an event frame by frame.

In courthouses with elevators transporting in-custody defendants, cameras will be mounted inside the elevator. Cameras, converters, or any other associated parts are to be mounted

inside the elevator cab to minimize maintenance costs. Cameras must have detention-grade enclosures and ~~be~~ low-profile dome or corner mounts with a minimum 105-degree horizontal field of view.

In public areas, standard domes and mounts may be used. In areas where cameras can be easily reached, a tamper-resistant dome should be specified. In detention circulation areas, tamper-resistant domes must be used. In holding cells with adequate ceiling height, vandal-resistant dome cameras may be used. Lower ceilings will require detention-grade, ligature-resistant, corner-mount enclosures. In either case, Board of State and Community Corrections guidelines must be followed.

Pan-tilt-zoom (PTZ) cameras are installed only in specific warranted circumstances. (A single exterior PTZ camera mounted in a strategic location may be appropriate, based on court input.) PTZ cameras require personnel to operate the unit, and often, when incidents occur, the camera is not facing in the right direction, or an operator is not present. In lieu of PTZ cameras for outdoor coverage, high-resolution and/or multi-head cameras providing a 270-degree or a 180-degree field of view are recommended. The primary area of coverage should be immediately around the building, secured parking, entrances, and exits. Public parking does not require camera coverage.

Generally, cameras will be mounted on the buildings. Expansive outdoor areas may require higher resolution; 180-~~degree~~ degree-view cameras must provide a stitched view with a minimum of four 1080p imagers. In most instances, multi-head cameras can be installed for the same price and will ~~not~~ ~~occur~~incur far ~~less~~ lower maintenance costs over time. PTZ cameras should never be used in courtrooms; they take the bailiffs' attention away from their specific duties and can be unintentionally set to view the wrong locations. A single wide-angle-view security camera mounted above the judge's bench is usually adequate. Ceiling lights, finishes, and undulations should be considered when identifying the camera location in the courtroom.

All cameras must be labeled with a number for identification, ideally matching numbering associated with the VMS. Labels must be machine printed and firmly affixed to the device.

4. Monitors

Monitor size should be based on the available space, with a display as large as practicable for the location without blocking physical views of critical locations. Mounting hardware should be sized to support the dimension and weight of the monitors. Articulating arms should provide adjustment allowing the displays to provide minimal blockage of any viewing windows in the control areas. Touchscreen displays for the VMS, in addition to the detention control system, may also be considered to provide ease of use.

5. Camera Installations

Camera installations serve the following purposes:

1. Transmit real-time information to a full-time monitoring station or record specific activities after hours for future review.

~~1.~~2. Provide a record for court use on recent activities in a courtroom or other specific location.

~~2.~~3. Operate controlled access or egress points such as sally ports or judicial parking entrances.

~~3.~~4. Act as a direct crime deterrent.

~~4.~~5. Enhance the safety of security staff in holding areas through coverage of high-profile and at-risk inmates. Video is not required in all holding cells and is not a replacement for required inspection viewing by security staff.

REQUIRED TOOLS

T1 Life Cycle Cost Analysis
T2 Catalog of Courtroom Layouts for California Trial Courts
T3 Integrated Network Architecture
T4 Graphical User Interface Template
T5 In-Custody Interview Room Guidelines
T6 Building Management System Guidelines
T7 Small Courthouse Guidelines
T8 Security System Guidelines
T8.A General
T8.B Access Control System
T8.C Duress System
T8.D Alarm System
T8.F Intercom
T8.G Detention
T8.H Licensing
T8.I Cable, Conduit, and Termination
T8.J Servers and Workstations
T8.K Coordination
T8.L Acceptance Testing
T8.M Attachments

Commented [DP4]: Change to incur

~~5.~~6. Provide perimeter security through coverage of high-risk emergency exits, screening areas, and limited parking and driveway areas.

The Judicial Council requires installations to provide 30 days of recording history. Courts are encouraged to create a video ~~-~~use policy and protect recorded information.

The specification for the final bid documents should include professional services provided by the equipment manufacturer to review programming best practices and verify performance. The services are to take place at the completion of the installation and ~~be done~~ in conjunction with the integrator who installed the system. These services are intended to confirm that the system is set up appropriately for the court from the first day of operation.

~~6.~~7. Camera Locations

The locations of cameras should be determined while referencing the specific building design (~~see chapter~~refer to chapter 4, table 4.4). In general, cameras are placed at screening, perimeter entrances, emergency exits, transaction windows, evidence storage, public corridors, and behind the bench facing the well. On the site, cameras are placed at secure parking areas and on the perimeter of the building. The security coordinator will assist the security provider and security consultant with placement of cameras during the design development phase.

Ease of maintenance shall~~ould~~ be considered when determining mounting locations. Indoor cameras shall~~ould~~ be accessible with an ~~eight-foot~~8′ ladder. Ease of maintenance shall be balanced with the need to prevent vandalism; therefore, the height of installation shall be carefully coordinated in consultation with the Judicial Council. Signage, light fixtures, and other objects that could obstruct the view must be taken into consideration in camera placement and mounting height. Outdoor cameras typically would not be mounted higher than 12′ ~~feet~~ above ground. Roof-mounted cameras using parapet adapters attached to the inside of the parapet for service and accessibility are also acceptable. Tie-off points may be required for maintenance per OSHA standards. Camera locations requiring a lift for maintenance are to be avoided.

Commented [SN5]: How does this align with previous comments in other chapters about needing the cameras to be above vandalism height.

Commented [DP5R2]: Added a statement to balance the two needs.

Duress button alarms and local door alarms should be integrated such that the video system must provide automatic call-up of the associated camera nearby, allowing security officers to verify the alarm. The video called up in the event of an alarm must be on the video system client, not the access control client.

In holding areas, cameras are placed in sally ports, in detention elevators, in corridors, and in a few select cells. Placement will be decided by the Judicial Council design team and the court security provider and ~~are~~ is normally associated with large holding areas and specific cells for high-profile inmates or suicide watches. Particular attention must be given to dead-end corridors, ~~and~~ hidden doors, and elevators~~, etc~~. These areas must have video coverage. All cameras within holding cells must include detention-grade enclosures. Cameras are not installed in attorney-client interview rooms.

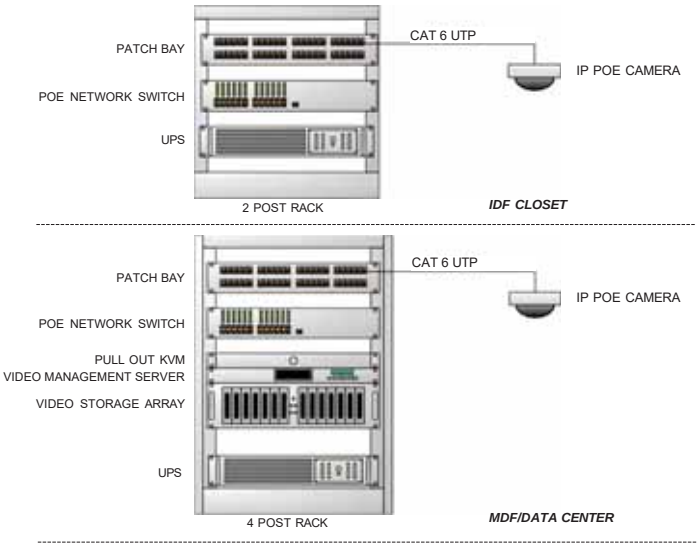
The normal path of travel for judicial parking and judicial entry into the building by stairs and/or elevator will be covered by video.
Prior to installation of any conduit, back boxes, cameras, or other video appliances, the contractor must perform, in the field, a camera-obstruction survey to ~~assure~~ ensure that the field of view of each camera to be installed is clear and unobstructed in accordance with the logically intended view indicated on the drawings and as called out in the schedules (if schedules are included in the construction documents). The contractor must report any discrepancies and suggested or required changes to the project manager, the architect, security consultant, and Judicial Council security coordinator. If the contractor is installing conduit and back boxes for security systems, then they must be advised of potential changes to device locations to prevent any inappropriately located devices. The design team and the contractor will advise and confirm all final positions.

~~7.~~8. Video Monitoring at Screening

If the design includes video monitoring at the screening station, as may be the case at small courthouses that do not have a full-time SOC, care must be taken with the location and design of the video monitoring station to prevent access and the ability of the general public to view the cameras. In situations where there is no control room and there will be no access control workstation located at the screening area, alarm control will be through the video system. This prevents the need for additional logins or access to the access control system. In courthouses where there will be a separate SOC, an access control workstation can be located with the video system workstation. Primary video and alarm monitoring must be through the video system. Control of the access system will be decided by court administration~~,~~ but may include security personnel, court administration, and other court functions.

~~8.~~9. Typical IP/NVR-Based Video System

The typical IP-based video system uses Power over Ethernet (PoE) switches, the IP backbone, and a data center–based network video recorder (NVR). See figure T8.12.



CAT 6 UTP = Category 6 untwisted pair.
IP POE = Internet Protocol Power over Ethernet.
MDF = main distribution frame.

Figure T8.12 Typical IP/NVR-~~based~~ Based Video System

REQUIRED TOOLS

T1 Life Cycle Cost Analysis
T2 Catalog of Courtroom Layouts for California Trial Courts
T3 Integrated Network Architecture
T4 Graphical User Interface Template
T5 In-Custody Interview Room Guidelines
T6 Building Management System Guidelines
T7 Small Courthouse Guidelines
T8 Security System Guidelines
T8.A General
T8.B Access Control System
T8.C Duress System
T8.D Alarm System
T8.F Intercom
T8.G Detention
T8.H Licensing
T8.I Cable, Conduit, and Termination
T8.J Servers and Workstations
T8.K Coordination
T8.L Acceptance Testing
T8.M Attachments

T8.F INTERCOM

Intercom systems need to have minimal or no license costs or ongoing software maintenance requirements. Stations may be IP based, but often two-wire or four-wire intercom substations are more cost-effective and practical to maintain. Products such as those from Harding Instruments or an approved ~~equal~~ equivalent are preferred for detention spaces and integration to the PLC systems. Aiphone or similar audio and audio/video intercoms can be used for simple door control applications.

Flush-mount intercom stations must incorporate standard electrical mounting such as four-square or two-gang enclosures. Custom flush-mount back boxes are not acceptable.

T8.G DETENTION

These are the requirements pertaining to detention design ~~follow~~. See chapter 8, In-Custody Defendant Receiving, Holding, and Transport, for more information.

1. Conform to Code

Conform to the appropriate codes for detention facilities, including California Code of Regulations~~,~~ titles 15 and 24.

2. In-Custody Transportation Sally Port

The site design must include a sally port that will accommodate the types of vehicles normally used by the sheriff's department for ~~prisoner~~ defendant delivery to the courthouse. Space should be considered for all agency vehicles using the delivery method (probation, sheriff, California Department of Corrections and Rehabilitation, etc.) to have secured parking. If internal parking space is not available, then secure parking adjacent to the sally port should be considered. Ideally, the vehicle sally port is a drive-through design. Sally port gates or overhead doors are interlocked. Control of the sally port is by staff in detention control.

3. In-Custody Holding and Circulation

Control of the holding cells and circulation is done from a detention control room (DCR) that has visibility to the cells. Entering in-custody holding must be done through interlocked sally ports.

4. Detention Control Workstation

The detention control workstation should be in a secure, clean environment and use modular or systems furniture. An ergonomic layout is very important. Only electronic devices related to the user interface layout are allowed at the workstation. All servers and supporting equipment must be located in the MDF or nearby technology closet. A detention-specific systems closet is not required. Monitors for video, productivity applications, and detention control must be uniform and mounted on articulating arms. Articulating arms should provide a minimum height adjustment of 12″ ~~inches~~ and provide adjustability with up to 180-degree tilt and 180-degree rotation of the monitors, allowing the displays to be adjusted to provide minimal blockage of any viewing windows in the control areas. Where the detention control workstation is of open or a pedestal-type design, control in the center of holding (which is not recommended by the Judicial Council) and not secured, detention-grade furniture must be used. Equipment and desk accessories must be kept to a minimum and firmly attached to the furniture.

5. Detention Control System

A detention control system is required to operate holding cell doors, sally ports, and holding elevators. A programmable logic controller controls the interconnected locks, door and latch

position monitors, elevators, intercom, and video monitoring. Sally ports are interlocked wherein only one door in a sally port door set may be unlocked and opened at a time. The system is operated through a touchscreen user interface. The operator and user interface are in a secured room. If detention control is open to the detention area, control of the elevators and sally ports must be moved outside of detention to the security operations center.

Detention-grade electrified locking hardware is required. Locks are maintained holdback, half-cycle motor locks. Locks are operated electrically or with a key. Cylinders are paracentric. Locking hardware includes a latch -position sensor. Detention doors include a door -position sensor.

Detention devices such as intercoms may be mounted in the door-frame along with the lock. This allows for a single chase.

The PLC equipment is housed in a wall-mounted cabinet in the MDF or nearby IDF. Refer to the cabinet requirements in section T8.1, Terminal Cabinets. The cabinet is mounted at a height allowing ease of service. All cable entering the cabinet is fully contained in either metallic raceway or conduit. No cable is exposed or contained in plastic.

All detention cabling must be contained in conduit or fully enclosed metallic wireway from source point to destination.

6. Programmable Logic Controllers

Programmable logic controllers are the only acceptable controller for detention control systems. Card access control systems are not an appropriate substitution. PLCs ~~used must~~ shall be from major manufacturers such as Allen-Bradley, Omron, OSSI, or an approved ~~equal~~equivalent. The associated mapping software controlling the PLC should be provided by a company with adequate local service personnel to handle issues for the local court. All remark statements with annotated program listings of all custom scripts, macros, and subroutines must be provided to the court. This is to include any documentation required for future troubleshooting or service by third-party vendors, including custom programming detail. All licenses to all installed software and passwords, including service and programming-level passwords, are to be included with documentation provided to the court.

7. Detention Elevators

Detention elevators are controlled by the detention control system. The elevator cabs include an intercom and camera. Camera type and mounting is described in T8.E, Video. Control of the elevators will be decided by the design team subject to the operations of the security provider. Internal elevator controls may or may not be installed.

8. Courtroom Holding and Sally Port

Holding rooms near courtrooms are built to the same standards as the main detention area. The sally port leading into the courtroom must have split control. The inner door, closest to the elevator, must be operated by detention control. The outer door opening into the courtroom must be operated by the bailiff. This method is ideal and recommended, but the court and sheriff must be consulted for final decisions, including manual operation of all courtroom holding cell locks.

9. Opening and Closing Detention

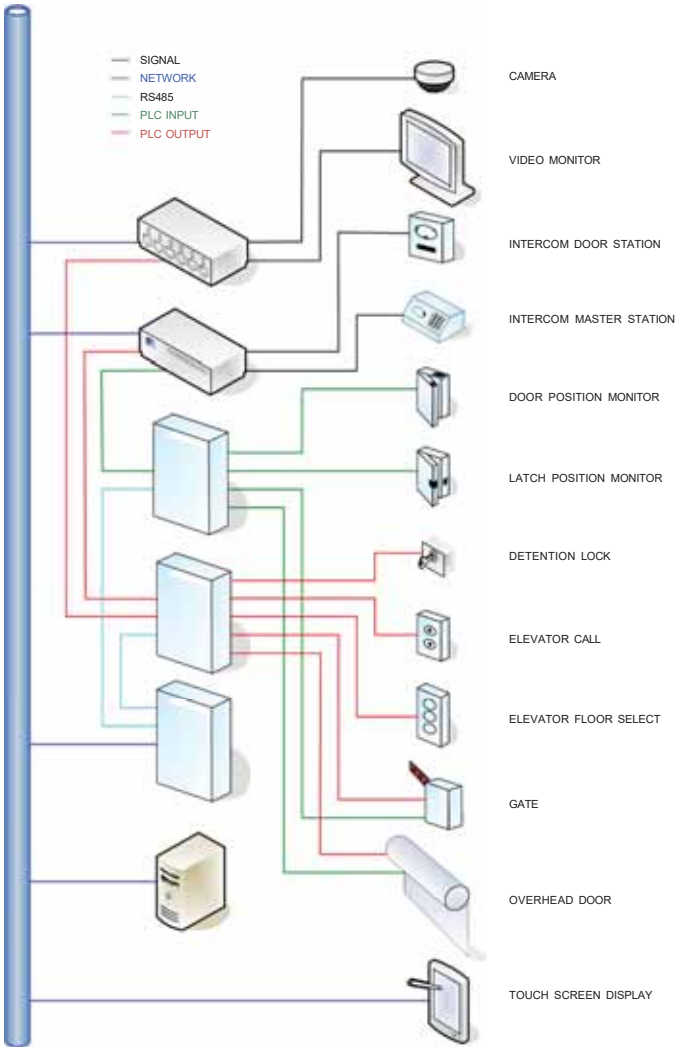
Means to open and close detention must be included in the design. Ideally, at the end of the day, all the cells are opened, and locks are latched open. This prevents cleaners from accidentally getting locked in. At the beginning of the day, the sheriff must check the cells and close the cells, latching them locked. This is subject to court operations and may be

REQUIRED TOOLS

T1 Life Cycle Cost Analysis
T2 Catalog of Courtroom Layouts for California Trial Courts
T3 Integrated Network Architecture
T4 Graphical User Interface Template
T5 In-Custody Interview Room Guidelines
T6 Building Management System Guidelines
T7 Small Courthouse Guidelines
T8 Security System Guidelines
T8.A General
T8.B Access Control System
T8.C Duress System
T8.D Alarm System
T8.E Video
T8.H Licensing
T8.I Cable, Conduit, and Termination
T8.J Servers and Workstations
T8.K Coordination
T8.L Acceptance Testing
T8.M Attachments

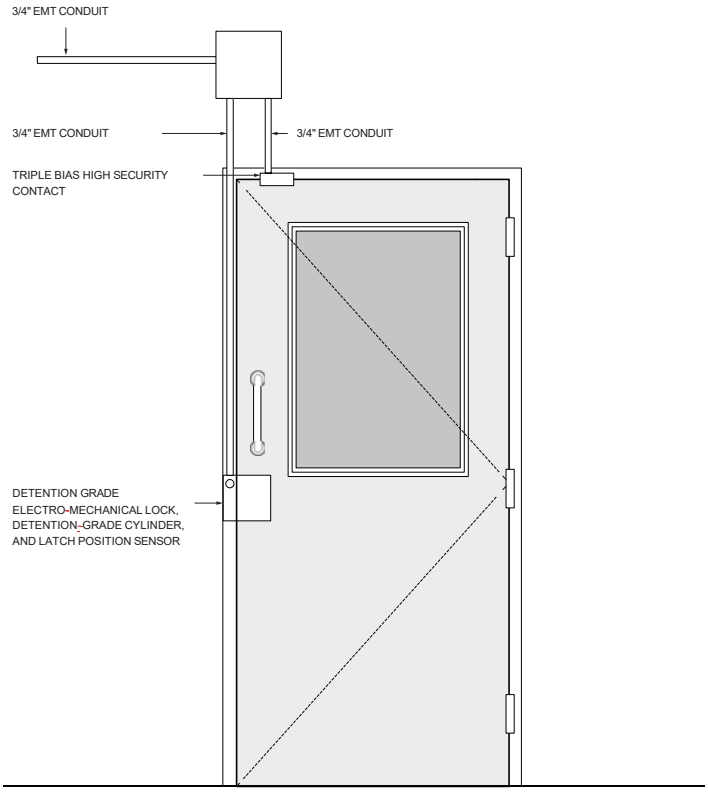
Commented [DP6]: Change must to shall.

adjusted accordingly. See figure T8.13 for a typical detention control system, shown schematically. See figure T8.14 for a detention door elevation showing the locking mechanism.



PLC = programmable logic controller.

Figure T8.13 Detention Control System Diagram



EMT = electrical metallic tubing.

Figure T8.14 Typical Detention Door

10. Detention Lock, Power Source, and PLC

The detention control system must be designed for safety, ease of service, and fault tolerance. When designing a control system using 120-VAC, each lock circuit must be fused and have a disconnect. This serves two purposes: ~~the~~ The lock is isolated from other locks by the fuse, and the system is then ~~is~~ more fault tolerant. This disconnect makes it safer to service as the lock can be de-energized.

The PLC will be interfaced to the video system. Commands or actions through the PLC controller will call up associated video from a camera in the area. Additionally, an audio channel will be opened through an intercom system for two-way communications. This must be accomplished through either PLC control or ~~through~~ an application programming interface (API) or other integration to the video system.

REQUIRED TOOLS

T1 Life Cycle Cost Analysis
T2 Catalog of Courtroom Layouts for California Trial Courts
T3 Integrated Network Architecture
T4 Graphical User Interface Template
T5 In-Custody Interview Room Guidelines
T6 Building Management System Guidelines
T7 Small Courthouse Guidelines
T8 Security System Guidelines
T8.A General
T8.B Access Control System
T8.C Duress System
T8.D Alarm System
T8.E Video
T8.F Intercom
T8.H Licensing
T8.I Cable, Conduit, and Termination
T8.J Servers and Workstations
T8.K Coordination
T8.L Acceptance Testing
T8.M Attachments

11. Integration

Integration is a critical piece of all new security systems for courthouse projects. The video management, access control, intercom, and duress systems will be integrated to work with and use information from each other. The following are the required level of integration and the accessibility of functions within the touchscreen display.

- ~~Integration Features~~
  - Create alarms based on access control events.
  - Associate access events to cameras for simultaneous display of events and live video.
  - Associate duress alarm events to call up appropriate cameras to monitors.
  - Associate video call-up from intercom activation.

12. Functions Within the System

The touchscreen display controlling the integrated security system should require as few steps as possible to perform functions. During the design process, the court's security provider should detail higher security areas that may require a secondary confirmation to process a request (e.g., opening a sally port door). Whenever possible, each floor should be displayed as a single map. The following are the details of the functionality to be represented within the touchscreen for each of the security systems.

- Access Control System
  - Monitor access points and door position switches on non-access-controlled doors.
  - Trigger visual and audible alarms for access events such as door-forced-open and held-open.
  - Display door status on the representative icons.
  - Display ~~Associated~~ associated video ~~should pop up~~ with any access alarm.
  - Lock and unlock door using icons on the touchscreen map.
  - Acknowledge access control alarms.
- Video System
  - Pull live cameras using icons on the touchscreen map.
  - Display loss of video signal on the representative icons.
- Duress Alarm System
  - Duress alarm activation should trigger both an audible and visual alarm.
  - Visual alarm should indicate the location of the duress button that was activated and show live video from the nearest camera covering that location.
- Detention Control
  - Control all doors in the detention area, including cell movement and sally port doors through icons on the touchscreen map.
  - Control detention movement elevators, including movement between floors as well as door open and close.
  - Answer intercoms using icons.

- Intercom activations should bring up associated video.
- Turn off cell water using associated icon if cells equipped with electronic water control are shut. (This may not be necessary if the water shutoff function is provided through another building control system.)
- Transfer function to security operations center (if applicable) in the event of in-custody take-over.

T8.H LICENSING

Initial installation of all systems should include five years of necessary licensing—software service agreement (SSA), software maintenance agreement (SMA), etc. The cost of licensing shall be included in the project deliverables. After the five-year period, the cost responsibility will shift to the individual courts.

T8.I CABLE, CONDUIT, AND TERMINATION

1. Terminal Cabinets

Terminal cabinets are hinged and lockable. Cable leading into the cabinet is contained in conduit or metallic raceway. Equipment inside the cabinet is mounted on a perforated metal backboard on standoffs. Cable routing inside the cabinet is managed by finger duct. Terminals, fuses, and relays are modular and mount on DIN rail. Cables must be supported to minimize stress at connection and termination points.

2. Lightning Protection

All security device cabling entering the building from the exterior must have lightning arrestors and proper grounding or be fiber optic cable. This is particularly important for cameras mounted on poles and at high elevation on the building and gate controls.

Cameras mounted to the building face or roof should use lightning arrestors. Arrestors must be properly grounded. Pole-mounted cameras may use fiber optic cable.

3. Termination

All network cable terminations must conform to network standards. Structured cabling terminates at a patch panel at its source and a jack at its destination. Equipment is then patched into the patch panel or jack using a patch cord. No other splicing or termination technique is allowed for a network circuit. Cabling must be properly supported ~~utilizing~~ using proper rack and enclosure cable management and cable support to minimize stress on cable connectors and equipment connection points.

All terminations within an equipment cabinet or within a terminal cabinet use either the equipment's terminal or DIN rail modular terminals. No other termination technique or splice is allowed.

Field hardware with leads in lieu of terminals may be spliced using a crimp; solder is not required, and wire nuts are not allowed. Telephone crimp splices, commonly known as beans, are a suitable termination method. No underground splices will be allowed.

If coaxial cable is used for elevator cameras, BNC connectors are the only accepted method of terminating coaxial cable. F-type connectors are not allowed. Screw-on BNCs are not allowed. Compression or two- or three-piece crimp BNC connectors, correctly sized for the cable type and jacket type, are required. A full-cycle ratcheting crimper~~,~~ matching the size of the cable and connectors~~,~~ must be used.

REQUIRED TOOLS

T1 Life Cycle Cost Analysis
T2 Catalog of Courtroom Layouts for California Trial Courts
T3 Integrated Network Architecture
T4 Graphical User Interface Template
T5 In-Custody Interview Room Guidelines
T6 Building Management System Guidelines
T7 Small Courthouse Guidelines
T8 Security System Guidelines
T8.A General
T8.B Access Control System
T8.C Duress System
T8.D Alarm System
T8.E Video
T8.F Intercom
T8.J Servers and Workstations
T8.K Coordination
T8.L Acceptance Testing
T8.M Attachments

Any low voltage or communication cable in outdoor locations or in underground conduit (outside the footprint of the building) is to have a ~~water~~ water-blocking compound, and the jacket is to be outdoor rated for the environment (wet locations).

4. Identification and Labeling

Security cables shall be easily identifiable by a unique jacket color. Labels must be machine printed and firmly affixed to the device. The architectural numbering scheme is the basis for both the data labels in the security system databases and physical devices. It should be a simple task to correlate a device label with a device point in a database with an architectural plan.

All cable runs require labels at the source and destination ends. Each duress button must include a label identifying its address in the duress system. All card readers must have a label affixed unobtrusively on the bottom edge. All cameras must have a label affixed to the body in an unobtrusive way.

Equipment, especially cabinets, must not be marked up either inside or outside by hand with markers, pens, or paint. Any identifying marks needed in or on cabinets must be machine printed.

T8.J SERVERS AND WORKSTATIONS

1. Servers

If a security subsystem requires a server, it must be easily supported, fault tolerant, and include a minimum three-year warranty. It should be ~~rack~~ rack mounted in the MDF/data center. The operating system image must be installed on mirrored drives. Data disks should be mounted on separate mirrored drives. Servers must be sized to provide adequate throughput for optimum performance of the camera system with a minimum of 10 percent headroom for expansion or the use of ~~higher~~ higher-resolution cameras or higher frame rates.

2. Workstation Computers

User workstation computers must be high-powered, multi-display workstation class and ~~—~~ sized for the application. Security-specific report printers are not required; users must access general-use printers available on the network. Front panel access to a USB port is important. Include a minimum three-year warranty on hardware.

T8.K COORDINATION

1. Sheriff or Marshal Radio System

The duress system will ~~utilize~~ use a radio compatible with and programmed to operate on the existing sheriff's or marshal's radio frequency. The radio may be provided by the sheriff or marshal~~,~~ or may need to be purchased, then programmed to the correct frequency.

Frequency selection and Federal Communications Commission licensing are the sheriff's responsibility. Any deviation from this will require Judicial Council approval. Additionally, ~~see~~ refer to table T8.3 for electrical requirements.

Table T8.3 Electrical Requirements

System	Location	Requirement
Screening	Front entry	Dedicated 20A 120-VAC outlet
Duress controller	MDF or IDF	Shared 20A 120-VAC circuit with access and alarm; wall outlet
Duress repeaters	Repeater locations and quantity are site specific depending on size and construction	120-VAC outlet in close proximity to repeater
Alarm	MDF or IDF	Shared 20A 120-VAC circuit with access and duress; wall outlet
Video	MDF or IDF	120-VAC power strip in rack
Video	PTZ cameras	When POoE is not sufficient, a dedicated 20A 120-VAC outlet in close proximity to PTZ is required. If PTZ is outdoors, the power outlet is to be located on the inside wall.
Access controller	MDF or IDF	Shared 20A 120-VAC circuit with duress and alarm; hard–wired to power supply
Access doors	Access doors	Concealed conduit for door devices

IDF = intermediate distribution frame.
MDF = main distribution frame.
POE = Power over Ethernet.
PTZ = pan-tilt-zoom.
VAC = volts alternating current.

Commented [DP7]: Change back to PoE since that's how it is written.

Commented [DP8]: PoE

2. Security Virtual Local Area Network

It is recommended that a security virtual local area network (VLAN) is created for the security systems. Because of streaming video bandwidth requirements, careful consideration of the network topology is needed. See table T8.4 for network requirements.

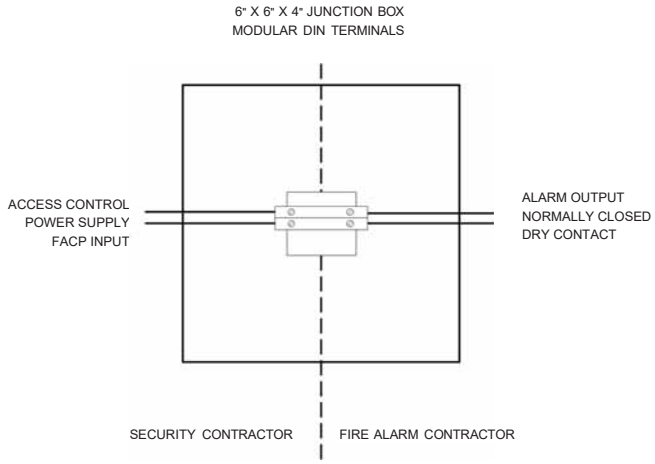
Table T8.4 Network Requirements

System	Location	Requirement
Duress controller	MDF or IDF	POTS 31x jack shared with alarm; 1 Ethernet drop for email notification
Alarm	MDF or IDF	POTS 31x jack shared with duress; alarm seizes line
Video	MDF or IDF	1 Ethernet drop per NVR and 1 per camera or encoder
Access	MDF or IDF	1 Ethernet drop per controller location

IDF = intermediate distribution frame.
MDF = main distribution frame.
NVR = network video recorder.
POTS = plain old telephone service.

3. Fire Alarm Control Panel Demarcation

The lock standards allow for mechanically free egress. This must comply in most instances with requirements of the ~~State~~ state ~~Fire~~ fire ~~Marshal~~marshal. If there is a requirement to connect the fire alarm control panel (FACP) to the access control system, a demarcation box must be mounted in close proximity to the access controller in the MDF or IDF. The demarcation box separates responsibility between the FACP contractor and the security contractor at a terminal point. See figure T8.15.

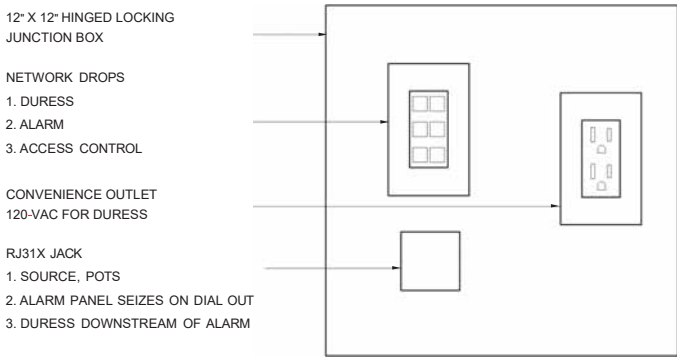


DIN = Deutsche Institut für Normung (the German Institute of Standards).
FACP = fire alarm control panel.

Figure T8.15 Fire Alarm Control Panel Demarcation

4. Network Jack Box

A hinged and lockable junction box is required for the wall-mounted equipment. It houses network jacks, a phone jack, and a convenience outlet. Figure T8.16 shows a typical layout.

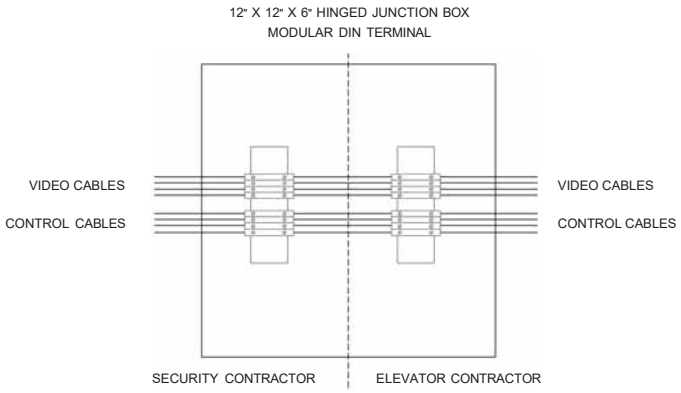


POTS = plain old telephone service.
VAC = volts alternating current.

Figure T8.16 Typical Layout of Network Jack Box

5. Elevator Demarcation

If cameras or access control are used on elevators, there must be a demarcation terminal point separating the elevator contractor's and security contractor's responsibility. Work inside cabs, in elevator penthouses, and on call buttons are the responsibility of the elevator contractor. Any security devices in these areas are cross-connected at the elevator demarcation box. IP devices such as cameras in elevator cabs may require IP over coax, or IP over twisted-pair converters. A high-definition analog camera with an analog-to-IP encoder after the demarcation point could also be considered. See figure T8.17.



DIN = Deutsche Institut für Normung (the German Institute of Standards).

Figure T8.17 Elevator Demarcation Box

T8.L ACCEPTANCE TESTING

A thorough test of the security system and all its component subsystems is required for acceptance by the Judicial Council. Test criteria include:

1. Access Control System

1. Valid card is read.
    a. Reader beeps.
    b. LED changes state.
    c. Door unlocks.
    d. Door relocks on time when door is not open.
    e. Door relocks immediately when door is opened.
2. Invalid card is read.
    a. Reader beeps.
    b. LED changes state and times out.
3. Operator unlocks.
    a. Momentary unlock by time occurs.
    b. Unlock/lock is toggled.

4. Scheduled unlock by calendar/time of day occurs.
5. Forced-open alarm sounds.
    a. No alarm sounds when exiting.
    b. Alarm sounds when entering without valid card read.
6. Door-held alarm sounds.
7. Emergency exit alarms with local sounder sounds on door forced/held.
8. Transaction log records all above events.
9. Above events display on activity monitor.
10. Data labels are correct in transaction log on activity monitor.
11. User permissions are set and assigned (view only, user, super user).
12. Contractor user permissions are removed.

2. Video System

1. Cameras are back focused, iris is wide open, and image is sharp.
2. Cameras are focused.
3. Color is balanced.
4. Light level is adjusted.
5. View is unobstructed and covers scene.
6. PTZ limits are set.
7. PTZ presets are set.
8. PTZ home/park is set.
9. Data labels are correct.
10. Video motion detection is configured; unnecessary triggers are minimized.
11. Pre- and post-roll speed change is set.
12. Camera call-up is set, manually and on alarm, including forced door, door prop, and for cameras associated with all duress alarms.
13. Video ~~recorded~~ records and plays back.
14. Analytics alarm functionality is verified (if used).
15. User permissions are set and assigned (view only, user, super user).
16. Contractor user permissions are removed.

3. Duress System

1. Alarm trigger initiates radio message.
2. Alarm trigger records transaction log.
3. Alarm trigger sends a command to the video and/or access system for alarm record and call-up to the video workstation.
4. Alarm trigger picks output relay.
5. Trigger matches message/transaction log.

4. Intrusion Alarm System (~~i~~f Installed)

1. System arms/disarms at keypads,~~;~~ starts entry/exit delays.
2. Door-forced-open alarm sounds.
    a. Dials central station.

b. Alphanumeric keypad shows alarm.

c. Data labels match.

d. No alarm sounds when disarmed.

3. Glass–break alarm sounds.

a. Dials central station, alerts on-site staff, or communicates via text or email to designated court employees.

b. Alphanumeric keypad shows alarm.

c. Data labels match.

d. Alarm sounds when disarmed.

4. Motion detection occurs.

a. Dials central station.

b. Alphanumeric keypad shows alarm.

c. Data labels match.

d. No alarm sounds when disarmed.

5. Detention Control System

1. Intercom

a. Intelligible bidirectional voice communication

b. Function of button and speaker

2. Doors

a. Locks function.

b. Door position switches are functioning properly.

c. Lock position switches are functioning properly.

d. Lock fires properly.

3. Functionality of programming

a. Testing of door interlocks.

b. Show "door forced" when door is keyed.

c. Show "door held" when door is held open.

d. Test for group functions such as lockdown.

e. Test all elevator functionality when present.

f. Verify Camera camera call-up from intercom.

g. Verify All all touchscreen functions operate properly.

6. Milestones

During the architectural and engineering milestones of programming, schematic, design development, and construction documents, security system design shall not be ignored. Work should keep pace with the overall project design. The Judicial Council expects that at two milestones, 100 percent design development and 50 percent working drawings, the following minimum requirements are reflected in the documents in addition to the standard deliverables for architectural and engineering drawings and specifications:

REQUIRED TOOLS

T1 Life Cycle Cost Analysis
T2 Catalog of Courtroom Layouts for California Trial Courts
T3 Integrated Network Architecture
T4 Graphical User Interface Template
T5 In-Custody Interview Room Guidelines
T6 Building Management System Guidelines
T7 Small Courthouse Guidelines
T8 Security System Guidelines
T8.A General
T8.B Access Control System
T8.C Duress System
T8.D Alarm System
T8.E Video
T8.F Intercom
T8.G Detention
T8.H Licensing
T8.I Cable, Conduit, and Termination
T8.J Servers and Workstations
T8.K Coordination
T8.M Attachments

100 percent design development milestone

- Screening and queuing
- MDF/IDF elevations
- Detention floor plan
- Integrated detention single-line diagram
- Detention door elevation
- Detention control room plan
- Detention control room axonometric or isometric projection

50 percent working drawings milestone

- Cabinet layouts
- Device details
- Schedules
- Load calculations
- Detention device details
- Detention schedules

T8.M ATTACHMENTS

	ATTACHMENT NAME	PAGE
1	Magnetometer and ~~X~~X-ray machine information	T8.38
2	Duress alarm information	T8.49

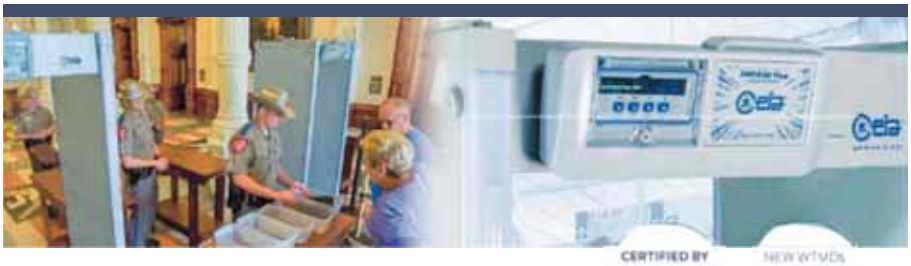
Page intentionally left blank

REQUIRED TOOLS

T1 Life Cycle Cost Analysis
T2 Catalog of Courtroom Layouts for California Trial Courts
T3 Integrated Network Architecture
T4 Graphical User Interface Template
T5 In-Custody Interview Room Guidelines
T6 Building Management System Guidelines
T7 Small Courthouse Guidelines
T8 Security System Guidelines
T8.A General
T8.B Access Control System
T8.C Duress System
T8.D Alarm System
T8.E Video
T8.F Intercom
T8.G Detention
T8.H Licensing
T8.I Cable, Conduit, and Termination
T8.J Servers and Workstations
T8.K Coordination
T8.L Acceptance Testing
T8.M Attachments

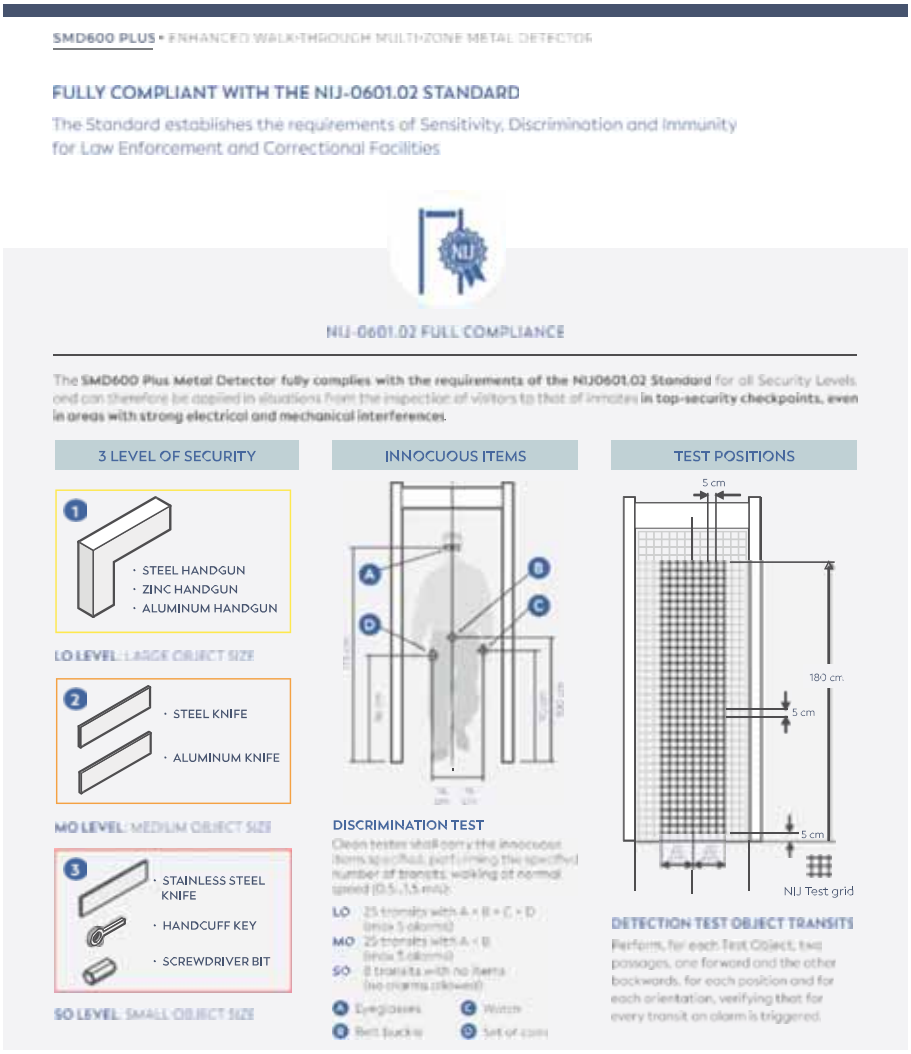
Attachment 1—Magnetometer and X-~~ray~~ Ray Machine Information

The Judicial Council~~C~~ uses the "Panel" version of this product and not the "Elliptic" version ~~in order~~ to reduce the footprint width.





Attachment 1—Magnetometer and X-~~ray~~ Ray Machine Information



Attachment 1—Magnetometer and X-~~ray~~ Ray Machine Information (c~~C~~ont.)

SMD600 PLUS • ENHANCED WALK-THROUGH MULTI-ZONE METAL DETECTOR

TWO-IN-ONE ENHANCED METAL DETECTOR

The SMD600 Plus is a very high sensitivity Metal Detector that also offers characteristics of high discrimination and high detection uniformity.

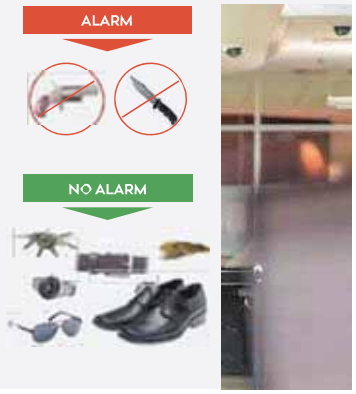
HIGH SENSITIVITY

- Quick, accurate analysis of all parts of the body of people in transit, from the shoe level to the crossbar
- Built-in programs to screen visitors and staff for weapons and contraband
- Met-Identity technology for Identification of Threat Composition
- Accurate pinpointing of individual and multiple metal targets

HIGH THROUGHPUT

- Cutting-edge discrimination technology allows personal effects to be ignored, creating rapid transit flow
- No need to remove items such as belts, coins, keys, jewelry, watches, wallets, etc.
- Very low nuisance alarm rate even at the strictest Security Levels
- High transit flow rates and the minimum need for intervention by inspection personnel





CEIA USA reserves the right to make changes, at any moment and without notice, to the models (including programming), their accessories and options, to the prices and conditions of sale.

www.ceia-usa.com 3

Attachment 1—Magnetometer and X-~~ray~~ Ray Machine Information



SMD600 PLUS • ENHANCED WALK-THROUGH MULTI-ZONE METAL DETECTOR

UNIFIED CONSTRUCTION FOR **INDOOR** AND **OUTDOOR** USE

NEW WTMDs IP66 CONTROL UNIT

- New integrated design
- Total mechanical compatibility with IP20 (plastic) and IP65 (stainless steel) control units:
  - Dimensions ▸ Installation ▸ Wiring ▸ Chip card
- Robust structure through the use of high-performance polymers for the construction of housing
- Waterproof / Dustproof: IP rating IP66 compliant
- Exceptional impact resistance at low and high temperatures and resistance to corrosion from atmospheric agents
- Display made with specific polymer to improve the visibility of the LEDs by increasing the definition and clarity

UNIQUE ALARM SIGNALING

- High visibility of the control unit and the zone indicator independent from the operator position and the installation environment
- Flexible Acoustic Alarm Signaling System
  - 10 Continuous and Pulsed Tones ▸ 34 Special Sounds
- 10 Alarm Volume Levels
- Very High Precision Transit Counter

DUAL SIDE 20 x 2 LOCALIZATION ZONES

Light bars indicate metal position vertically and can also show pacing lights.

MOST POWERFUL AND VERSATILE SECURITY FEATURES

- Up to 50 built-in Security Programs
  - Up to 30 International Standards
  - Up to 20 Customizable Levels
- Chip Card system for fast, simple and secure parameter changes (i.e. alarm volume and tone, counter reading, etc.) and security level selection.
- Any security standard can be enhanced with selectable random alarm probability

CHIP CARD SYSTEM

4 www.ceia-usa.com

CEIA USA reserves the right to make changes, at any moment and without notice, to the models (including programming), their accessories and options, to the prices and conditions of sale.

Attachment 1—Magnetometer and X-ray Machine Information (Cont.)

SMD600 PLUS •

SMD600 Plus/PZ MODEL CONFIGURATION

STANDARD CONFIGURATION

Fully compliant with, and surpassing, the NIJ-0601.02 Standard	•
4 Complete User-Interface programmable as visual indicators and/or passing lights	•
Dual Side 30 x 2 Detection Zones	•
Anti-vandalic and Anti-tampering IP68 construction	•
High precision manual counter (3-digit photocells)	•
Chip Card Reader	•
RS-232/485 and RS-232 communication	•
Programmable Tension Alarm capability	•
3-Level Password and Hardware key access protection	•
Anti-Metal by-pass technology (separate Ferrous and Non-Ferrous alarm signaling)	•
One touch Automatic Self-Monitoring (SFM)	•
Automatic Sensitivity Functional Verification (SFV)	•
Automatic Variation Compensation (AVC, TVA)	•
Automatic Dynamic Search (DS)	•
Automatic Pulse Gain Adjustment (PGA)	•
Automatic Electrical Functional Verification (EFV)	•
Automatic Environmental Noise Compensation (ENA)	•
Powered by 120 Vac voltage DC	•
Anti-tamper on/off switch	•

COMMUNICATION CAPABILITIES

TYPE OF OPERATION	ETHERNET	USB	INFRARED	BT	RS-232
MAINTENANCE	○	○		•	•
REMOTE CONTROL	○		•	•	•
REMOTE DATA COLLECTION	○				

STANDARD • OPTION ○

DIMENSIONS

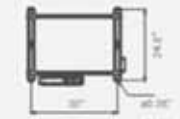
FRONT



LATERAL



TOP



CDA USA reserves the right to make changes, at any moment and without notice, to the models (including programming), their accessories and options, to the prices and conditions of sale.

Attachment 1—Magnetometer and X-~~ray~~ Ray Machine Information

SMD600 PLUS • ENHANCED WALK-THROUGH MULTI-ZONE METAL DETECTOR

SMD600 Plus can be upgraded anytime either with MI2 Sensor for superior smartphone and cellphone detection, **or with TDU** including advanced IR processing for fully automatic, highly selective and precise detection of maximum facial temperature measurements even in harshest environmental conditions.

METAL DETECTOR

CELL PHONE DETECTOR

MI2 SENSOR

The **SMD600 Plus with integrated MI2 sensor** provides unmatched versatility in its ability to screen people in applications that require simultaneous detection of all metal (magnetic and non-magnetic) firearms and cellphone/smartphone devices, including the most miniaturized, low-metal content versions.

In this configuration both panels of the archway are equipped with dual color light bars (red and yellow colors) and 4-beam photocells modules.

Code: 93530





TDU THERMAL DETECTION UNIT

ANTI-COVID

The **TDU** (Thermal Detection Unit) is an **upgrade sensing kit for covid screening compliance:**

- Simultaneous threat and fever detection on all screened persons
- Accurate person measurement using an infrared camera with automatic determination of the highest temperature
- Embedded upgrade: no additional installation checkpoint space required
  1. Thermal Camera Arm
  2. Dual Reference Calibration Unit

Code: TDU/P





4 www.ceia-usa.com

CEIA USA reserves the right to make changes, at any moment and without notice, to the models (including programming), their accessories and options, to the prices and conditions of sale.

Attachment 1—Magnetometer and X-Rray Machine Information (Contcont.)



SMD600 PLUS - ENHANCED WALK-THROUGH MULTI-ZONE METAL DETECTOR

CEIA USA Ltd - 6336 Hudson Crossing Parkway, Hudson OH 44236
P 330-463 3190 • F 330.405.3196 • E security@ceia-usa.com • CALL (855) 224-2342 (CEIA)

www.ceia-usa.com

ASTROPHYSICS®

XIS-6545™



PRODUCT HIGHLIGHTS

- Artificial Intelligence (AI)
- 8-Color Imaging
- Enhanced Imaging™ (EI)
- Optimum Tunnel Size for Efficient Bag Scanning
- Proven Field Reliability

ENAC CERTIFIED

DESIGNED IN THE USA MADE IN NORTH AMERICA

PRODUCT DESCRIPTION

The XIS-6545™ is a field proven X-Ray Inspection System (XIS) designed with a wide tunnel to accommodate a larger variety of screened objects while minimizing floor space. Ideal for high-volume screening sites, the XIS-6545™ provides high-resolution images enabling operators to identify materials and isolate threats with speed and accuracy. The #1 global manufacturer of critical infrastructure products, Astrophysics is the clear choice.

ABOUT ASTROPHYSICS

Since 2002, Astrophysics has led the industry in research and development, creating integrated solutions to advance the critical security missions of our customers and partners. Headquartered outside of Los Angeles, CA in the USA, Astrophysics has over 35,000 systems deployed in more than 150 countries, safeguarding critical infrastructure, aviation, and ports and border sites worldwide.

TOMORROW'S TECHNOLOGY FOR TODAY'S SECURITY™

Attachment 1—Magnetometer and X-~~ray~~ Ray Machine Information (c~~C~~ont.)

XIS-6545™

GENERAL SPECIFICATIONS

Tunnel Size: (WxH)	65.0 cm x 45.1 cm 25.6" x 17.8"
Dimensions:[1] (LxWxH)	153.4 cm x 87.7 cm x 130.5 cm 60.4" x 34.5" x 51.4"
Shipping Dimensions:[1] (LxWxH)	165.1 cm x 96.5 cm x 160.0 cm 65.0" x 38.0" x 63.0"
Net Weight:[1]	476 kg (1050 lbs)
Shipping Weight:[1]	522 kg (1150 lbs)
Conveyor Speed:	23 cm/s (45 ft/min) Forward or Reverse
Conveyor Height:	71.9 cm (28.3") from Floor
Conveyor Capacity:	165 kg (364 lbs) Evenly Distributed Load

X-RAY GENERATOR & IMAGE PERFORMANCE

Voltage:	160kV, Operating at 150kV
Tube Current:	0.7 mA
Wire Resolution:	40 AWG Typical, 38 AWG Standard
Steel Penetration:[2]	39 mm Typical, 37 mm Standard
Cooling:	Sealed Di-Electric Oil Bath with Forced Air
Duty Cycle:	100%, No Warm-Up Procedure Required
Beam Direction:	Diagonally Upward

COMPUTER & VIDEO

Platform:	Windows® 10 OS
Memory:	8 GB RAM
Storage Capacity:	256 GB SSD
Display Type:	21.5" Flat Panel Monitor
Display Resolution:	1920 x 1080

ENVIRONMENTAL

Operating Temperature:	0°C to 40°C / 32°F to 104°F
Storage Temperature:	-20°C to 60°C / -4°F to 140°F
Humidity:	Up To 95% Non-Condensing

ELECTRICAL

System Power:	110 VAC +/- 10% 50/60Hz, 15 Amp Max 220VAC +/- 10% 50/60Hz, 10 Amp Max
Power Conditioner:	Automatic Voltage Regulator (AVR), 600VA

HEALTH & SAFETY

Compliant with USFDA Center for Devices and Radiation Health Standards for Cabinet X-Ray Systems (21-CFR 1020.40)
Typical radiation leakage is less than 0.1 mR/hr
(Leakage less than 0.5 mR/hr permitted by U.S. Federal Standards)

180KV GENERATOR UPGRADE

Penetration[2]: 41 mm Steel Typical, 39 mm Standard

FEATURES

STANDARD

3 & 6 Color Imaging
Black & White Imaging
Enhanced Imaging™ (EI)
High Penetration Function
Organic/Inorganic Imaging
Pseudo Color
Reverse Monochrome

Atomic Z-Number Measurement
Material Discrimination
Geometric Image Distortion Correction
Real-Time Image Manipulation

Auto Image Archiving
Image Review
Save Image (RGB)

Baggage Counter

Image Annotation
JPEG Conversion
Print Image Capable

Multi-Tier Accessibility
Network Ready
Real-Time Self Diagnostics

9 Quadrant Zoom
Continuous Scanning
Continuous Zoom Up to 64x
Vertical Zoom Panning

OPTIONAL

Artificial Intelligence (AI)
Barcode Scanning
Density Alert
Local Language
Safe Passage® Computer Based Training
Screener Assist Software
Test Case
Threat Image Projection (TIP) Software

24" Flat Panel Monitor
Custom Paint
Environmental Kit
Entry/Exit Roller Tables
Footmat Operator Interlock
Internal/External UPS
Mobility Kit
Roller Bed
Radiation Meter
Remote Workstation Configuration
Sloped Conveyor

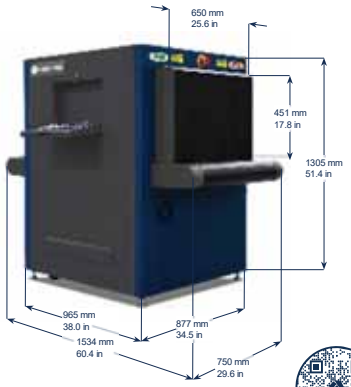
Conveyor Capacity Load Increase
External USB Ports
Variable Conveyor Speed

Long Conveyor
8-Color Imaging

CHECKPOINT

XIS-6545N™

Dimensions[1]	153.4 cm x 83.7 cm x 130.5 cm (LxWxH)
Shipping Dimensions[1]	165.1 cm x 96.5 cm x 160.0 cm (LxWxH)
Net Weight[1]	476 kg (1050 lbs)



ISO 9001 & ISO 14001 CERTIFIED

[1]Weight and dimensions of the system may vary depending on customization.
[2]As tested on Astrophysics Inc. Test Piece.
[3]Optional Features may affect lead time, price, and weight of product. Please contact your Astrophysics Sales Representative for more information.

Due to continued product development, Astrophysics Inc. reserves the right to amend all technical specifications without prior notice.
Contact sales@astrophysicsinc.com for the most updated brochures.

DCOM2560 P/N 50-00-PB07-00 Rev. L

Astrophysics HQ +1.909.598.5488 | Astrophysics - EMEA +961.9.832.500 | Astrophysics - INDIA +91.11.41709990 | Astrophysics - ASIA +63.2.812.0033

sales@astrophysicsinc.com | www.astrophysicsinc.com | service@astrophysicsinc.com

Attachment 1—Magnetometer and X-~~ray~~ Ray Machine Information

ORION 920 CX

Rapiscan systems

DATASHEET



The new 920CX is a High Performance 620mm by 420mm tunnel checkpoint screening system with best in class image quality and excellent threat detection alert capabilities.

- INDUSTRY BEST PENETRATION, WIRE & SPATIAL RESOLUTION
- EXPLOSIVES & NARCOTICS DETECTION
- LOW DENSITY IMAGE ENHANCEMENT
- MATRIXING, NETWORKING & REMOTE VIEWING

UK DfT APPROVED

EC 300/2008 AVIATION COMPLIANT

SPECTRUM 4-COLOR IMAGING

920CX can present images to the operator in the Classic 4-color and the new proprietary Spectrum 4-color (SP4) option providing superior image, allowing improved security by quick and accurate identification of threats and increase in throughput.

EXPLOSIVES AND NARCOTICS DETECTION

Target and NARCScan are designed to detect a wide range of explosives and narcotics respectively in real time during the scanning process by marking a potential threat on the X-ray image. Rapiscan® Systems detection algorithms are based on regulatory approved material analysis techniques.

DUAL MODE AUTO Z_{EFF}

This feature aids the operator in quick identification of organic materials, either in Range Mode which highlights areas based on operator selected Z-effective values of 7, 8 or 9, or in Interactive Mode which gives the operator the option to display the Z-effective number of a selected pixel.

EUROPEAN AVIATION COMPLIANCE

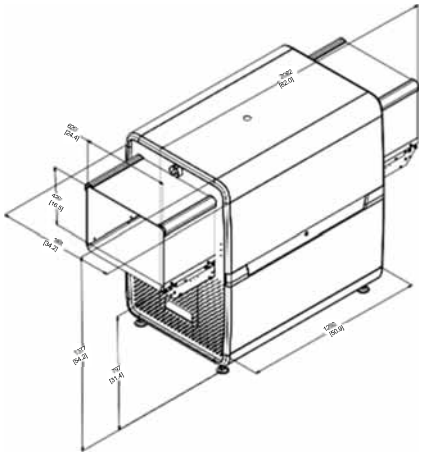
920CX performance is in full compliance with the mandatory regulations (EC) No. 300/2008, (EC) Implementing Regulation 1998/2015 and update 815/2017, EC Implementing Decision 8005/2015 and update 3030/2017 for aviation security in the European Union.

info@rapiscansystems.com www.rapiscansystems.com

ONE COMPANY, TOTAL SECURITY

Attachment 1—Magnetometer and X-~~ray~~ Ray Machine Information (c~~C~~ont.)

Dimensions are in mm[in]



PHYSICAL SPECIFICATIONS [1]

DIMENSIONS	L	2,082 mm (82.0 in)
	W	869 mm (34.2 in)
	H	1,377 mm (54.2 in)
TUNNEL SIZE	W	620 mm (24.4 in)
	H	420 mm (16.5 in)
CONVEYOR HEIGHT		797 mm (31.4 in)
WEIGHT (NET)		537 Kg (1184 lbs)

ENVIRONMENT & POWER

STORAGE TEMPERATURE	-20°C to 50°C
OPERATING TEMPERATURE	0°C to 40°C
RELATIVE HUMIDITY	5 to 95% non-condensing
SYSTEM POWER	100/110/120/200/208 /220/230/240 VAC ±10%

ScanOS
64-bit Operating System

PERFORMANCE [2]

CONVEYOR SPEED[1]	0.20 m/sec (39.4 ft/min)
CONVEYOR LOAD[1]	165 Kg (364 lbs)
STEEL PENETRATION	44 mm typical, 42 mm standard
WIRE RESOLUTION	44 AWG typical, 42 AWG standard
SPATIAL RESOLUTION	0.8 mm vertical & horizontal

HIGH SPEED OPTION

CONVEYOR SPEED[1]	0.35 m/sec (68.9 ft/min)
STEEL PENETRATION	35 mm typical, 34 mm standard
WIRE RESOLUTION	40 AWG typical, 38 AWG standard
SPATIAL RESOLUTION	0.8 mm vertical & horizontal

X-RAY GENERATOR

ANODE VOLTAGE	160kV
ORIENTATION	Diagonally Upward

KEY FEATURES AND OPTIONS

- Explosive threats, narcotics & density alerts
- Spectrum 4
- 17 Image processing functions
- SINERGY low density enhancement
- Dual Mode Z-effective
- CrystalClear™
- Automatic, Enhanced Image Archiving
- E.U. Approved Threat Image Projection
- Remote Status Monitoring
- Remote Archive Review
- Multi-System Alarm Resolution Network
- Multiplexing and Matrixing
- Tray Return System Compatible
- 13 Languages
- 64-bit Operating System

Rapiscan systems
An OSI Systems Company

info@rapiscansystems.com www.rapiscansystems.com □ □ □ □ □

1. Approximate Values 2. Stated performance as measured by Rapiscan® Imaging Validation Test Kit

Rapiscan® Systems is ISO 9001:2015 Certified

Rapiscan® Systems' cabinet X-ray products comply with all applicable U.S. FDA and equivalent international regulatory agency requirements, contained in the cabinet X-ray radiation safety performance standard [21 CFR 1020.40] and the general performance standard [21 CFR Part 1010] as well as IEC standard 61010-2-091. Rapiscan® baggage and parcel inspection systems radiation emission leakages are well below the required regulatory limits with less than 1µSv/hr at 10 cm from all surfaces of cabinet X-ray.

With continual development of our products Rapiscan® Systems reserves the right to amend specifications without notice. Product pictures are for general reference. Please note that due to US laws and regulations, not all Rapiscan® products are available for sale in all countries without restriction. Please contact your Rapiscan® Systems sales representative for more information.

DS-920CX-003

Product Specifications

CENTURION ELITE®

Operating System	Linux/EOS (Proprietary Elite Operating System)
Sensor Capacity	No Practical Limit
Connectivity	Ethernet (2 Ports), WiFi, Bluetooth®, USB
Notification Limit	No Practical Limit
Outputs	Phone, Email/Text, Two-Way Radio (Customer Provided), Relays, and Speaker
Modular Expansion USBs	6
Wireless Sensor Frequency	900 MHz
Dimensions	18"Hx13.8"Wx8.4"D
Weight	12.5lbs
Power Requirement	120V AC
Battery Back Up	12VDC 7000MA/h



ELITE CONNECT™ WEB PORTAL

Browser Compatibility	Internet Explorer, Google Chrome, Safari, Firefox
Network Connection	WiFi or Ethernet



ELITE CONTROL™ SOFTWARE

Compatible Operating Systems	Windows® XP, Windows® 7, Windows® 8, Windows® 10
Software Size	20MB
Hardware Requirements	Operating computer must have a built in, or add on microphone



PCDURESS®

Network Requirements	• Centurion® with a static IP Address • Centurion® must be accessible from the PC clients via UDP on port 8916 • Less than 15 second network latency preferred • Applications installed on the client PC must be able to talk via TCP on 8917 • WiFi or Ethernet access to network
Supported Operating Systems	Windows® XP, Windows® 7, Windows® 8, Windows® 10,
PC Requirements	Computer must satisfy OS Minimum requirements
PCDuress® Resource Usage	100B every 30 seconds per seat license



Windows XP, Windows 7, Windows 8 and Windows 10 are either registered trademarks or trademarks of Microsoft Corporation in the United States and/or other countries.

ResponseTechnologies LTD.

800-537-0102 | Response-Technologies.com

Attachment 2—Duress Alarm Information (cCont.)

Centurion Elite Specs



Feature Specs:

- The Centurion Elite® is a self-contained unit capable of receiving alarm transmission and intelligently routing the alarms to proper personnel over communication methods including Phone, email, text message, two way radio, computer software, and video boards concurrently.
- The Centurion Elite® is built in a modular structure to allow for easy replacement of components, as well as "hot swapping" of modules in the event of malfunction to ensure maximum uptime.
- The Centurion Elite® can house up to 2 or more radios in a RF shielded enclosure to prevent the possibility of outside RF interference of radio transmissions.
- The Centurion Elite® utilizes Elite Connect® for web based system management, accessible from any authorized device within the same network as the system.
- Access to Elite Connect® utilizes SSL encryption for information security
- The Centurion Elite® offers assignable user permission levels for limiting access to system components based on the assigned category of a user.
- The Centurion Elite® possess the ability to create individual user login credentials requiring industry best practices for user password strength.
- The Centurion Elite® is built on a Linux operating system.
- For security reasons, The Centurion Elite® is does not possess an integrated display in order to limit capability of unauthorized users to interact with system.
- The Centurion Elite® utilizes a 900 MHz wireless architecture for delivering alarms between sensor and receiver.
- The Centurion Elite® is capable of integration into other equipment via relay, TCP/IP, or serial connection
- The Centurion Elite® allows for deployment of wireless panic buttons in multiple building over a large geographic area to be linked under a single unit through Centurion® Gateway.
- The Centurion Elite® possess an onboard Wi-Fi access point for "off network" servicing.

ResponseTechnologies

When seconds count, response is everything

800-537-0102 | Response-Technologies.com

Attachment 2—Duress Alarm Information

- The Centurion Elite® allows the user to record alarm notification audio via Elite Control® computer software.
- Notifications are capable of being routed to specifically assigned groups allowing for customization of output types based on the sensor activated.
- The Centurion Elite® has no practical limit to the predefined recording time of alarm messages. This includes individual messages, as well as total record time allowed by system for all messages.
- The Centurion Elite® allows the user to assign predefined templates to notifications. The templates include the name as well as visual icons capable of being displayed in all text based notifications.
- The Centurion Elite® offers three forms of back-ups including onboard, onsite and cloud based backups to be used at the discretion of the customer.
- The Centurion Elite® allows for scheduling of inactive times and alternative responders for individual sensors.
- The Centurion Elite® is capable of automatically escalating alarms to higher responder levels when alarms are left unchanged for a period of time based on a user selectable time frame.
- The Centurion Elite® possess the capability to alert the system administrator via phone, email, radio, text message, computer software or video board when a sensor enters or leaves an alarm able supervisory state. Alarm able supervisory states include low battery, low signal strength, and sensor missing.
- The Centurion Elite® is capable of sending sensor and system health reports to pre-defined users via email.
- The Centurion Elite® is capable of driving pre-defined, and free form, notifications directly from the Elite Connect® web face to select groups.
- The Centurion Elite® has the ability to trigger alarms using PCDuress®, software that can run on any windows PC.
- The Centurion Elite® has the ability to display alarms on a computer screen using PCAlert®, software that can run on any windows PC.
- PCAlert® displays both a visual warning as well as text based alarm. PCAlert® has an audible alert tone with an optional text to voice reading of the notification.
- PCDuress® has multiple alarming methods including icon click, in application alarming function, as well as user definable hot key combination.

Physical Specs:

- Dimensions- 18” H x 13.8” W x 8.4” D
- Weight- 12.5 lbs
- Power Requirement- 120 AC
- Battery Backup- 12VDC 700MA/h
- Wireless Frequency- 900MHz
- Connectivity- Ethernet, WiFi, Bluetooh®, USB

ResponseTechnologies

When seconds count, response is everything

800-537-0102 | Response-Technologies.com

Attachment 2—Duress Alarm Information (cCont.)

Duress Button- Single Button

Part Number: E4005

To be used in court staff and under desk applications.



FEATURES

- Single button activation
- LED flashes with all transmissions
- Can easily be mounted for fixed position
- White color
- Supervised
  - Battery Condition
  - Signal Strength

SPECIFICATIONS

- Size: 3" x 1.6" x 0.72" (7.6cm x 4.1cm x 1.8cm)
- Weight: 1.7oz (48g)
- Battery: 3.0V Lithium (supplied)
- Battery Life: 3 to 5 years

ResponseTechnologies LTD.

When seconds count, response is everything

800-537-0102 | Response-Technologies.com

Duress Button- Industrial Red

Part Number: E4018

To be used in detention, garage, and outdoor applications.



FEATURES

- Large 1.5” (3.8cm) red mushroom button
- Suitable for mounting on various wall surfaces
- Suitable for indoor and outdoor use
- Supervised
  - Battery Condition
  - Signal Strength

SPECIFICATIONS

- 4” x 4” x 2” (10.2cm x 10.2cm x 5.1cm) PVC box containing Wireless Universal Transmitter
- Battery: 3.0V Lithium (supplied)
- Battery Life: 4 to 5 years
- Weight: 13oz (.37kg)

ResponseTechnologies LTD.

When seconds count, response is everything

800-537-0102 | Response-Technologies.com

APPENDIXES

CODES AND STANDARDS

~~Commentaries~~

The construction and modification of buildings using the *Facilities Standards* shall comply with the following codes, standards, and guidelines~~,~~ and any other applicable nationally recognized code, standard, or guideline. The latest adopted code edition, standard, or guideline (including applicable addend~~ums~~a) shall be used, regardless of dates shown in this document. See California Building Code ~~C~~chapter 35 for applicable standards beyond those listed in this ~~A~~appendix. If a triennial update of a code is due to occur after beginning of schematic design and before submission for plan check, the applicable code edition shall be determined after discussions with the authorities having jurisdiction. This list is not intended to limit the use of other reference documents.

Commented [PB1]: [FMB Added for clarity

Commented [BR2]: BPR: Recommend adding to ensure all applicable standards are covered. Consider removing any standards listed below that are already listed under CBC Chapter 35 to minimize conflicts

A

Air-Conditioning, Heating, and Refrigeration Institute (AHRI)

AHRI Standard 880: Performance Rating of Air Terminals

ANSI/AHRI Standard 260: Sound Rating of Ducted Air Moving and Conditioning Equipment

Commented [LD3]: "Standard 260"?

ANSI/AHRI Standard 350: Sound Rating of Non-ducted Indoor Air-Conditioning Equipment

Air Movement and Control Association Inc. (AMCA)

AMCA 300: Reverberant Room Method for Sound Testing of Fans

AMCA 301: Methods for Calculating Fan Sound Ratings ~~from~~ From Laboratory Test Data

ANSI/AMCA 330: Laboratory Method of Testing to Determine the Sound Power in a Duct

ANSI/AMCA 500-L: Laboratory Methods of Testing Louvers for Rating

AMCA Certified Ratings Program

American Concrete Institute (ACI)

ACI 318: Building Code Requirements for Structural Concrete and Commentary

~~ACI 530: Building Code Requirements for Masonry Structures and Related~~

Commented [BR4]: ACI 530 is now under TMS ("The Masonry Society") TMS 402, Building Code Requirements for Masonry Structures; and TMS 602, Specification for Masonry Structures

American Institute of Steel Construction (AISC)

AISC 303: Code of Standard Practice for Steel Buildings and Bridges

AISC 341-~~16~~: Seismic Provisions for Structural Steel Buildings

AISC 358-~~16~~: Prequalified Connections for Special and Intermediate Steel Moment Frames for Seismic Applications

AISC 360: Specification for Structural Steel Buildings

AISC Design Guide 11: Vibrations of Steel-Framed Structural Systems Due to Human Activity

American Iron and Steel Institute (AISI)

AISI S100: North American Specification for the Design of Cold-Formed Steel Structural Members

American National Standards Institute (ANSI)

ANSI C80.1: Electrical Rigid Steel Conduit

American Society of Civil Engineers (ASCE)

ASCE/SEI 7-~~:~~ ~~16~~: Minimum Design Loads and Associated Criteria for Buildings and Other Structures

ASCE 25-~~:0616~~: Earthquake-Actuated Gas Shutoff Devices

ASCE 41-~~17~~: Seismic Evaluation and Retrofit of Existing Buildings

American Society of Heating, Refrigerating and Air-Conditioning Engineers (ASHRAE)

ASHRAE Standard 15: Safety Code for Mechanical Refrigeration

ASHRAE Standard 34: Safety Classification of Refrigerants

ASHRAE Standard 52.2: Method of Testing General Ventilation ~~Air~~ Air-Cleaning Devices for Removal Efficiency by Particle Size

ASHRAE Standard 55: Thermal

Commented [BR5]: BPR: Recommend removing year from standard. CBC Chapter 35 specifies applicable years

Commented [BR6]: Recommend removing year from standard

Commented [BR7]: BPR: Recommend removing year, relying on CBC Chapter 35 instead

Commented [BR8]: BPR: 2016 version is the latest

Commented [DP8R2]: Since we are removing the years, I will remove this year as well.

Commented [BR9]: BPR: Recommend removing year, relying on CBC Chapter 35 instead

Environmental Conditions for Human Occupancy

ASHRAE Standard 62.1: Ventilation for Acceptable Indoor Air Quality

ASHRAE Standard 90.1: Energy Standard for Buildings Except Low-Rise Residential Buildings

ASHRAE Standard 100: Energy Efficiency in Existing Buildings

ASHRAE Standard 105: Standard Methods of Determining, Expressing, and Comparing Building Energy Performance and Greenhouse Gas Emissions

ASHRAE Standard 111: Measurement, Testing, Adjusting, and Balancing of Building HVAC Systems

ASHRAE Standard 135: BACnet: A Data Communication Protocol for Building Automation and Control Networks

~~ASHRAE Standard 135, Addendum bj: BACnet SC Secure Connect and the NIST Cybersecurity Framework~~

~~ASHRAE Standard 189.1: Standard for the Design of High-Performance Green Buildings Except Low-Rise Residential Buildings~~

~~ASHRAE Standard 223P: Designation and Classification of Semantic Tags for Building Data (proposed at the time of writing)~~

ASHRAE Handbooks and Guidelines

ASHRAE Handbook—Fundamentals

ASHRAE Handbook—HVAC Systems and Equipment

HVAC System Duct Design

Practical Guide to Seismic Restraint

ASHRAE Handbook—HVAC Applications

ASHRAE Guideline 4: Preparation of Operating and Maintenance Documentation for HVAC&R Systems

ASHRAE Guideline 36: High-Performance Sequences of Operation for HVAC Systems

ASHRAE TC9.9: Data Center Power Equipment Thermal Guidelines and Best Practices

American Society of Mechanical Engineers (ASME)

ASME A17.5/CSA-B44.1: Elevator and Escalator Electrical Equipment

ASME A17.1: Safety Code for Elevators and Escalators, and all supplements as modified and adopted by the AHJ

ASME A17.1S: Safety Code for Elevators and Escalators, supplement to A17.1 as modified and adopted by the AHJ for ~~Machine~~ machine ~~Room~~ room ~~Less~~ less (MRL) installations

ASME A17.2: Guide for Inspection of Elevators, Escalators, and Moving Walks

ASME A17.3: Safety Code for Existing Elevators and Escalators, as modified and adopted by the AHJ

ASME A17.4: Guide for Emergency Personnel (including emergency evacuation of passengers from elevators)

American Society of Plumbing Engineers (ASPE)

ASPE Data Books

American Society for Testing and Materials (ASTM)

ASTM C423: Method for Measuring Sound Absorption

ASTM C1071: Standard Specification for Fibrous Glass Duct Lining Insulation (Thermal and Sound Absorbing Material)

ASTM D6754: Standard Specification for Ketone Ethylene Ester Based Sheet Roofing

ASTM E84: Standard Test Method for Surface Burning Characteristics of Building Materials

ASTM E90: Method for Measuring Sound Transmission Loss

APPENDIXES

CODES AND STANDARDS

List of Abbreviations

Index

Acknowledgments

Commented [PB10]: CA T-24 (and minimum LEED requirements) should take precedence in CA

Commented [DP10R2]: We do reference these ASHRAE standards in a couple of places in the book, so we will need to maintain these.

Commented [PB11]: [FMB Standards include addendums in place by default

Commented [PB12]: CA T-24 (and minimum LEED requirements) should take precedence in CA

Commented [PB13]: N/A (No longer applicable)

ASTM E96: Standard Test Methods for Water Vapor Transmission of Materials

ASTM E413: Determination of Sound Transmission Class

ASTM E477: Test for Duct Lining and Silencer Performance

ASTM E492: Standard Test Method for Laboratory Measurement of Impact Sound Transmission Through Floor-Ceiling Assemblies Using the Tapping Machine

ASTM E779: Standard Test Method for Determining Air Leakage Rate by Fan Pressurization

ASTM G21: Standard Practice for Determining Resistance of Synthetic Polymeric Materials to Fungi

ASTM E1332: Standard Classification for Determination of Outdoor-Indoor Transmission Class

ASTM E2813: Standard Practice for Building Enclosure Commissioning

ASTM E3158: Standard Test Method for Measuring the Air Leakage Rate of a Large or Multizone Building

ASTM F476: Standard Test Methods for Security of Swinging Door Assemblies

ASTM F588: Standard Test Methods for Measuring the Forced Entry Resistance of Window Assemblies, Excluding Glazing Impact

ASTM F710: Standard Practice for Preparing Concrete Floors to Receive Resilient Flooring

ASTM F842: Standard Test Methods for Measuring the Forced Entry Resistance of Sliding Door Assemblies, Excluding Glazing Impact

ASTM F1642: Standard Test Method for Glazing and Glazing Systems Subject to Airblast Loadings

ASTM F1915: Standard Test Methods for Glazing for Detention Facilities

ASTM F2170: Standard Test Method for Determining Relative Humidity in Concrete Floor Slabs Using in situ Probes

ASTM F2656: Standard Test Method for Vehicle Crash Testing of Perimeter Barriers

ASTM F3010: Standard Practice for Two-Component Resin Based Membrane-Forming Moisture Mitigation Systems for Use Under Resilient Floor Coverings

American Water Works Association (AWWA)

AWWA C105: Polyethylene Encasement for Ductile-Iron Pipe Systems

American Welding Society (AWS)

Americans with Disabilities Act (ADA)

Americans with Disabilities Act Accessibility Guidelines (ADAAG) (Section 11)

Applied Technology Council (ATC)

ATC-40: Seismic Evaluation and Retrofit of Concrete Buildings

ATC-58: PACT Program Software

Architectural Woodwork Institute (AWI)

Audiovisual and Integrated Experience Association (AVIXA)

AVIXA A102.01:2017: Audio Coverage Uniformity in Listener Area

B

Board of State and Community Corrections (BSCC)

Building Industry Consulting Services International (BICSI)

BICSI Information Transport Systems Installation Manual (ITSIM)

BICSI Telecommunications Distribution Methods Manual (TDMM)

BICSI Outside Plant Design Reference

Manual (OSPDRM)

BICSI Wireless Design Reference Manual (WDRM)

Building Owners & Managers Association (BOMA)
Gross Areas of a Building: Standard Methods of Measurement

C

California Air Resources Board
Regulation for the Management of High Global Warming Potential Refrigerants for Stationary Sources

California Code of Regulations (CCR)
Title 8: Division 1, Chapter 4, ~~Subchapter~~ Subchapter 7, General Industrial Safety Orders

Title 15: Division 1, Chapter 1, ~~Subchapter~~ Subchapter 4, Minimum Standards for Local Detention Facilities

Title 16: Professional and Vocational Regulations

Title 17: Public Health, Section 95380 et seq. (Air Resources Board, ~~Subarticle~~ Subarticle 5.1, Management of High Global Warming Potential Refrigerants for Stationary Sources)

Title 19: Public Safety, Division 1, State Fire Marshal

Title 22~~,~~: Social Security, Division 4.5~~:~~, Environmental Health Standards for the Management of Hazardous Waste

Title 24, Part 1, California Administrative Code (CAC)

Title 24, Part 2, California Building Code (CBC)

Title 24, Part 3, California Electrical Code (CEC)

Title 24, Part 4, California Mechanical Code (CMC)

Title 24, Part 5, California Plumbing Code (CPC)

Title 24, Part 6, California Energy Code (CE~~n~~C)

Title 24, Part 7, California Wildland-~~0~~Urban Interface Code

Title 24, Part 9, California Fire Code (CFC)

Title 24, Part 10, California Existing Building Code (CEBC)

Title 24, Part 11, California Green Building Standards Code (CALGreen)

Title 24, Part 12, California Referenced Standards Code

California Department of Health Services

California Disabled Accessibility Guidebook (CALDAG)

California Energy Commission
Nonresidential Alternative Calculation Method Reference Manual

California Rules of Court
Rule 5.215, Domestic Violence Protocol for Family Court Services

Rule 10.180, Court Facilities Standards

Rule 10.181, Court Facilities Policies, Procedures, and Standards

California Standards of Judicial Administration
Standard 10.24

Canadian Standards Association (CSA)

Cast Iron Soil Pipe Institute (CISPI)
CISPI Standards

Center for Universal Design

Code of Federal Regulations (CFR)
Title 40, Part 761: Polychlorinated Biphenyls (PCBs) Manufacturing, Processing, Distribution in Commerce, and Use Prohibitions

Compliance Services and Assessments~~,~~ LLC (CSA)

Concrete Reinforcing Steel Institute (CRSI)

Consumer Electronics Association (CEA)
ANSI/CEA-709.1-B-2000: Control Network Protocol Standards

Crime Prevention Through Environmental Design (CPTED)

Commented [BR14]: BPR: New code for construction in wildland-urban interface

Commented [BR15]: BPR: CEBC was missing

D

Division of the State Architect (DSA)
Access Checklist

Interpretation of Regulations (IR) 25-2, ~~13~~ ~~IR~~ IR 25-3 ~~13~~
Structural Safety (SS)

E

Electronic Industries Alliance (EIA/ECA)
EIA/ECA-310-D: Cabinets, Racks, Panels and Associated Equipment

Energy Efficiency Policy

Energy Independence and Security Act of 2007 (EISA)

Energy Star Portfolio Manager Technical Reference: Source Energy

F

Factory Mutual Global Standards

Family Code
Division 8, Custody of Children, ~~Section~~ Section 3113

Division 8, Custody of Children, ~~Section~~ Section 3180

Division 10, Prevention of Domestic Violence, Section 6218

Federal Communications Commission (FCC)
C.F.R. Title 47, Part 15: Radio Frequency Devices

Federal Emergency Management Agency (FEMA)
FEMA 74: Reducing the Risks of Nonstructural Earthquake Damage: A Practical Guide

FEMA 412: Installing Seismic Restraints for Mechanical Equipment

FEMA 413: Installing Seismic Restraints for Electrical Equipment

FEMA 460: Seismic Considerations for Steel Storage Racks Located in Areas Accessible to the Public

FEMA: HAZUS Program Software

Federal Energy Management Program (FEMP)

Fiber Optic Testing Procedures

G–H

Green Building Action Plan

Government Code
Section 70391

Guiding Principles for Sustainable Federal Buildings

I

Illuminating Engineering Society (IES)
ANSI/IES TM-30-18 IES: Method for Evaluating Light Source Color Rendition

Lighting Handbook

InfoComm International
ANSI/INFOCOMM 2M: Standard Guide for Audiovisual Systems Design and Coordination Processes

AV Design Reference Manual

AV Installation Handbook

Dashboard for Controls Design Reference

Institute of Electrical and Electronics Engineers (IEEE)
IEEE C2: National Electrical Safety Code

IEEE 241: IEEE Recommended Practice for Electric Power Systems in Commercial Buildings (IEEE Gray Book)

IEEE 493: IEEE Recommended Practice for Design of Reliable Industrial and Commercial Power Systems (IEEE Gold Book)

IEEE 802.3ae: 10Gb/s Ethernet Standard

IEEE 802.3af & at: Power over Ethernet Standards

IEEE 802.11: Wireless Ethernet Standards, ~~I~~including 802.11a, 802.11b, 802.11g, and 802.11n

Commented [BR16]: BPR: Recommend removing year

Commented [BR17]: BPR: Recommend removing year

Commented [DP18]: Gensler: this change was missed.

IEEE 1100: IEEE Recommended Practice for Powering and Grounding Electronic Equipment (IEEE Emerald Book)

Instrument Society of America (ISA)
Instrument Data Sheets

International Association of Plumbing and Mechanical Officials (IAPMO)

International Building Code (IBC)

International Electrotechnical Commission (IEC)
IEC 60297-3-100: Mechanical Structures for Electronic Equipment—Dimensions of Mechanical Structures of the 482,6 mm (19 in) Series—~~Part~~ Part 3-100: Basic Dimensions of Front Panels, Subracks, Chassis, Racks and Cabinets

International Organization for Standardization (ISO)
ISO 14044: Environmental management—Life cycle assessment—Requirements and guidelines

International Risk Insurance (IRI)

J–K

Judicial Council of California
Courthouse Naming Policy

Project Procedure A-14: Quality Management Plan

Statewide Action Plan for Serving Self-Represented Litigants

Justice for All: Designing Accessible Courthouses

L

LEED (Leadership in Energy and Environmental Design) Green Building Rating System, U.S. Green Building Council (USGBC)

M

Model Water Efficient Landscape Ordinance (MWELO)

Montreal Protocol

N

National Design Specifications (NDS)
Manual for Engineered Wood Construction

NDS for Wood Construction

NDS Supplement: Design Values for Wood Construction

Special Design Provisions for Wind and Seismic

National Electrical Contractors Association (NECA)
NECA/FOA 301: Standard for Installing and Testing Fiber Optics

ANSI/NECA/BICSI-568: Standard for Installing Commercial Building Telecommunication Cabling

National Electrical Manufacturers Association (NEMA)

National Fire Protection Association (NFPA)
NFPA 10: Portable Fire Extinguishers

NFPA 13: Standard for the Installation of Sprinkler Systems

NFPA 14: Standard for the Installation of Standpipe and Hose Systems

NFPA 17: Standard for Dry Chemical Extinguishing Systems

NFPA 20: Standard for the Installation of Stationary Pumps for Fire Protection

NFPA 22: Standard for Water Tanks for Private Fire Protection

NFPA 24: Installation of Private Fire Service Mains and Their Appurtenances

NFPA 25: Water-Based Fire Protection Systems

NFPA 30: Flammable and Combustible Liquids Code

NFPA 37: Standard for the Installation and Use of Stationary Combustion Engines and Gas Turbines

NFPA 54/ANSI Z223.1: National Fuel Gas Code

NFPA 70: National Electrical Code (NEC)

NFPA 72: National Fire Alarm and Signaling Code

NFPA 80: Standard for Fire Doors and Other Opening Protectives

NFPA 90A: Standard for Installation of Air-Conditioning and Ventilation Systems

NFPA 96: Standard for Ventilation Control and Fire Protection of Commercial Cooking Spaces

NFPA 101: Life Safety Code

NFPA 110: Standard for Emergency and Standby Power Systems

NFPA 111: Stored Electrical Energy Emergency and Standby Power Systems

NFPA 780: Standard for the Installation of Lightning Protection Systems, Annex L

NFPA 2001: Clean Agent Fire Suppression System

National Floor Safety Institute (NFSI)

B101.1: Test Method for Measuring Wet SCOF of Common Hard-Surface Floor Materials

B101.6: Standard Guide for Commercial Entrance Matting in Reducing Slips, Trips and Falls

National Institute for Occupational Safety and Health (NIOSH)

Guidance for Protecting Building Environments from Airborne Chemical, Biological, or Radiological Attacks

National Institute of Standards and Technology (NIST)

Cybersecurity Framework

O

Office of Statewide Health Planning and Development (OSHPD)

OSHPD Preapproved Details (OPD)

P–QR

Principles of Universal Design

R

~~**Research Council on Structural Connections (RCSC)**~~

S

Savings By Design

Sheet Metal and Air Conditioning Contractors' National Association~~,~~ Inc. (SMACNA)

SMACNA HVAC Duct Construction Standards: Metal and Flexible

SMACNA HVAC Air Duct Leakage Test Manual

SMACNA Fire, Smoke, and Radiation Damper Installation Guide for HVAC Systems

State Administrative Manual (SAM)

State Executive Order (EO)

B-18-12

B-30-15

State of California Green Buildings ~~website, www.green.ca.gov/Buildings/~~

T

Telecommunications Industry Association (TIA)

ANSI/TIA-492.AAAD: Detail Specification for 850-nm Laser-Optimized, 50-µm Core Diameter/125-µm Cladding Diameter Class Ia Graded-Index Multimode Optical Fibers Suitable for Manufacturing OM4 Cabled Optical Fiber

ANSI/TIA-492.CAAB: Detail Specification for Class IVa Dispersion-Unshifted Single-Mode Optical Fibers with Low Water Peak

ANSI/TIA/EIA-526-7: Measurement of Optical Power Loss of Installed Single-Mode Fiber Cable Plant

Commented [BR19]: BPR: RCSC is covered by AISC 360. Likely no need to replicate here...

Commented [DP20]: Gensler: these changes were missed.

Commented [LD21]: Updated broken link.

Commented [DP22]: Gensler: the link is not working in your file.

ANSI/TIA/EIA-526-14A: Measurement of Optical Power Loss of Installed Multimode Fiber Cable Plant

ANSI/TIA/EIA-568-C.0: Generic Telecommunications Cabling for Customer Premises

ANSI/TIA/EIA-568-C.1: Commercial Building Telecommunications Cabling Standard Part 1: General Requirements

ANSI/TIA/EIA-568-C.2: Commercial Building Telecommunications Cabling Standard Part 2: Balanced Twisted-Pair Cabling Components

ANSI/TIA/EIA-568-C.3: Commercial Building Telecommunications Cabling Standard Part 3: Optical Fiber Cabling Components

ANSI/TIA/EIA-568-C.3-1: Addendum 1, Addition of OM4 Cabled Optical Fiber and Array Connectivity

ANSI/TIA-568.0-D: Generic Telecommunications Cabling for Customer Premises

ANSI/TIA/EIA-568.3-D: Optical Fiber Cabling Components

ANSI/TIA/EIA-569-D: Commercial Building Standard for Telecommunications Pathways and Spaces

ANSI/TIA/EIA-598-C: Optical Fiber

ANSI/TIA/EIA 606A/B/C: Administration Standard for Commercial Telecommunications Infrastructure

ANSI/TIA/EIA-607-C: Commercial Building Grounding (Earthing) and Bonding Requirements for Telecommunications

ANSI/TIA/EIA-758-B: Customer-owned Outside Plant Telecommunications Infrastructure Standard

ANSI/TIA 862: Building Automation Systems Cabling Standards for Commercial Buildings

ANSI/TIA-942: Telecommunications Infrastructure for Data Centers

ANSI/TIA-1152: Requirements for Field Test Instruments and Measurements for Balanced Twisted-Pair Cabling

U–Z

Underwriters Laboratories (UL)

UL 181: Standard for Factory-Made Air Ducts and Air Connectors

UL 300: Standard for Fire Testing of Fire Extinguishing Systems for Protection of Commercial Cooking Equipment

UL 464: Audible Signaling Devices for Fire Alarm and Signaling Systems, Including Accessories

UL 521: Standard for Heat Detectors for Fire Protective Signaling Systems

UL 752: Standard for Bullet-Resisting Equipment

UL 916: Standard for Energy Management Equipment

UL 924: Standard for Emergency Lighting and Power Equipment

UL 1449: Standard for Surge Protective Devices

UL 1971: Standard for Signaling Devices for the Hearing- Impaired ~~Standards~~

Unified Facilities Criteria (UFC)

UFC 4-023: Design of Buildings to Resist Progressive Collapse

Uniform Federal Accessibility Standards (UFAS)

U.S. Army Corps of Engineers

PDC-TR 06-02, Rev. 1, Protective Design Center Technical Report

PDC-TR 06-08, Rev. 1, Single Degree of Freedom Structural Response Limits for Antiterrorism Design

U.S. Court Design Guide

U.S. General Services Administration

Facilities Standards for the Public Buildings Service

Commented [DP23]: Gensler: this change was missed.

U.S. Green Building Council (USGBC)

Welfare and Institutions Code

Section 300 et seq.

Section 325 et seq.

APPENDIXES

LIST OF ABBREVIATIONS

°C degrees Celsius

°F degrees Fahrenheit

% percent

4W four wire

A

A or Amp ampere

ABB ASEA (Allmänna Svenska Elektriska Aktiebolaget) Brown Boveri

ACI American Concrete Institute

ACU Audio Coverage Uniformity

ADA Americans with Disabilities Act of 1990

ADAAG Americans with Disabilities Act Accessibility Guidelines *or* ADA Accessibility Guidelines

ADR alternative dispute resolution

AFF above finished floor

AHJ authority/authorities having jurisdiction

AHRI Air-Conditioning, Heating, and Refrigeration Institute

AHU air-handling unit

AISC American Institute of Steel Construction

AISI American Iron and Steel Institute

ALS assistive listening system

AMCA Air Movement and Control Association

ANSI American National Standards Institute

a_o acceleration

a_p peak acceleration

Arch. architecture

ARMM abrasion resistant millimeters

ASCE American Society of Civil Engineers

ASHRAE American Society of Heating, Refrigerating and Air-Conditioning Engineers

ASME American Society of Mechanical Engineers

ASPE American Society of Plumbing Engineers

ASTM American Society for Testing and Materials

ATC Applied Technology Council

ATTY attorney

AV audiovisual

AVIXA Audiovisual and Integrated Experience Association

AWG American Wire Gauge

AWI Architectural Woodwork Institute

AWS American Welding Society

AWWA American Water Works Association

B

BACnet Building Automation and Control Network

BAS building automation system

BECx Building Enclosure Commissioning

BGSF building gross square feet

BICSI Building Industry Consulting Services International

BMS building management system

BOMA Building Owners and Managers Association

BSCC Board of State and Community Corrections

BTL BACnet Testing Laboratories

Btu British thermal unit

C

CA California

CAC California Administrative Code

CAL California

CALDAG *California Disabled Accessibility Guidebook*

CALGreen California Green Building Standards Code

Cal/OSHA California Occupational Safety and Health Administration

CATV community antenna television (cable television)

Cal. Code Regs. California Code of Regulations

CBC California Building Code

CEA Consumer Electronics Association

CEC California Electrical Code

CEO court executive officer

CFAC Court Facilities Advisory Committee

CFC California Fire Code

CFCs chlorofluorocarbons

cfm cubic feet per minute

CFM customer flow management

C.F.R. Code of Federal Regulations

CGSF component gross square feet

CISPI Cast Iron Soil Pipe Institute

CLG. MTD. ceiling mounted

CMC California Mechanical Code

CMU concrete masonry unit

CO_2 carbon dioxide

CONF conference

CPC California Plumbing Code

CPTED Crime Prevention Through Environmental Design

CPUC California Public Utilities Commission

CRI color rendering index

CRSI Concrete Reinforcing Steel Institute

CSA Canadian Standards Association

CSA Compliance Services and Assessments, LLC

CSO court security officer

CxA certified commissioning authority/agent *or* commissioning authority/agent

D

DAS distributed antenna system

dB decibels

dBA decibels, A-weighted

DCR detention control room

DCS detention control system

DDC direct digital control

Delta T temperature difference

DEPS digital evidence presentation system

DLCS detention lock control system

DMZ demilitarized zone

DNA deoxyribonucleic acid

DPDT double pole, double throw

DSA Division of the State Architect

DSA-SS Division of the State Architect—Structural Safety

DVD digital versatile disc

DVI Digital Visual Interface

DX direct expansion

E

e.g. exempli gratia; for example

EIA/ECA Electronic Industries Alliance standards

EISA Energy Independence and Security Act of 2007

EL elevation

ELEC electric/electrical

EMT electrical metallic tubing

EO executive order

EPDM ethylene propylene diene monomer

ERL electronic resettable link

et seq. et sequens; and the following

etc. et cetera; and the others

exp exponential

F

FAA Federal Aviation Administration

FAIA Fellow of the American Institute of Architects

FC foot-candle

FCC Federal Communications Commission

FCS Family Court Services

FDC fire department connections

FEMA Federal Emergency Management Agency

FEMP Federal Energy Management Program

f_n natural frequency

FOA Fiber Optic Association

fpm feet per minute

fps feet per second

ft. feet

ft^2 square foot/feet

FW firewall

G

g gravity

Gb gigabyte

gpm gallons per minute

GSF gross square feet

GUI graphical user interface

H

h hour

HDMI High-Definition Multimedia Interface

Hg mercury

HP horsepower

hr hour

HTML hypertext markup language

HVAC heating, ventilation, and air-conditioning

I

IAPMO International Association of Plumbing and Mechanical Officials

IBC International Building Code

I.D. identification

ID inside diameter

IDF intermediate distribution frame

IEC International Electrotechnical Commission

IEEE Institute of Electrical and Electronics Engineers

IES Illuminating Engineering Society

IIC impact insulation class

incl. including

IP Internet Protocol

IPTV Internet Protocol Television

IR infrared.; Interpretation of Regulations

IRI International Risk Insurance

IS Information Systems

ISA Instrument Society of America

ISO International Organization for Standardization

ISP inside plant

IT information technology

ITSIM *Information Transport Systems Installation Manual*

K

km kilometer

kVA kilovolt-amps

kVAR kilovolt-ampere reactive

kVARh kilovolt-ampere reactive hour

kW kilowatt

kWh kilowatt-hour

L

L10 measured noise level that is exceeded for ~~10~~ 10 percent of the measurement period

L70 70% of the ~~Initial~~ initial ~~Lumens~~lumens

LAN local area network

lb. pound/pounds

LC latched connector

LCC life cycle cost

LCCA life cycle cost analysis

LCD liquid crystal display

LED light-emitting diode

LEED Leadership in Energy and Environmental Design

LEP limited English proficient

LJS latex joint sealants

LOMMF laser-optimized multimode fiber

M

MAX maximum

MC metal clad

MDF main distribution frame

Mech. mechanical

MEP mechanical, electrical, and plumbing

MERV minimum efficiency reporting value

min. minimum

misc. miscellaneous

MPOE minimum point of entry

MRL machine room less

msec. millisecond

MSF modular systems furniture

MWELO Model Water Efficient Landscape Ordinance

N

N~~/~~A not applicable

NAS network-attached storage

NC Noise Criteria

NDS National Design Specifications

NEC National Electrical Code

NECA National Electrical Contractors Association

NEMA National Electrical Manufacturers Association

NFPA National Fire Protection Association

NFSI National Floor Safety Institute

NIC noise isolation class

NIOSH National Institute for Occupational Safety and Health

NIST National Institute of Standards and Technology

nm nanometer

NPLV nonstandard part load values

NRC noise reduction coefficient

NSC nonstructural seismic coordinator

NSF net square feet

O

OITC outdoor-indoor transmission class

OPEX operating/operations expense/ expenditure

OSHA Occupational Safety and Health Administration

OSHPD Office of Statewide Health Planning and Development

OSP outside plant

OSPDRM *Outside Plant Design Reference Manual*

P

PACT Performance Assessment Calculation Tool

PC personal computer

PDC Protective Design Center

PECI Portland Energy Conservation~~,~~ Inc.

perm unit of permeation

PEX cross-linked polyethylene

PH phase

pH potential of hydrogen

PIN personal identification number

PIV post indicator valve

PLC programmable logic controller

P_o constant force representing the excitation, pounds

PoE Power over Ethernet

psf pounds per square foot

psi pounds per square inch

pt. part

PTZ pan-tilt-zoom

PV present value

PVB polyvinyl butyral

PVC polyvinyl chloride

R

R9 fidelity red

R_a average color rendering index value

RA risk assessment

RC Room Criteria

RCSC Research Council on Structural Connections

Regs. regulations

REX request-to-exit

R_f fidelity index

RF radio frequency

~~**R_f** fidelity Index~~

R_g ~~gamut~~ gamut ~~Index~~index

RH relative humidity

RHH rubber-insulated~~,~~ high ~~-~~heat~~—~~resistant

rpm revolution~~/~~s per minute

RT reverberation time

S

SC Secure Connect

SDI serial digital interface

SEI Structural Engineering Institute

SF/ft² square foot/feet

SGF security epoxy resin gap filler

SJS security joint sealant

SMACNA Sheet Metal and Air Conditioning Contractors' National Association

SMF single-mode fiber

SMS security management system

~~**SMS**~~**,** short message service

SOC security operations center

SR strongly recommended

SS ~~Security~~ security ~~System~~system

~~**SS**~~ **,** ~~Structural~~ structural ~~Safety~~safety

STC sound transmission class

Syslog system logging protocol

T

TARR Texture Appearance Retention Rating

TBD to be determined

TC Technical Committee

TCP temperature control panel/field panel**,**

~~**TCP**~~ Transmission Control Protocol

TDD telecommunications device for the deaf

TDM transportation demand management

TDMM *Telecommunications Distribution Methods Manual*

TEFC totally enclosed~~,~~ fan cooled

THHN thermoplastic high ~~-~~heat~~-~~ resistant nylon-coated

THWN thermoplastic heat- and water-resistant nylon-coated

TIA Telecommunications Industry Association

tit. title

TM Technical Memorandum

TNT trinitrotoluene

TR Technical Report

TSS Total Security Solutions

TV television

TVSS transient voltage surge suppressor

U

UFAS Uniform Federal Accessibility Standards

UFC Unified Facilities Criteria

UL Underwriters Laboratories

UPS uninterruptible power supply/source

U.S. United States

USGBC U.S. Green Building Council

UTP unshielded twisted pair

V

V volt

VA volt-amperes

VAC volts of alternating current

VAV variable air volume

VCT vinyl composition tile

VDC volts of direct current

VDT video/visual display terminal

VFD variable-frequency drive

VLAN virtual local area network

VOC volatile organic compound

VoIP Voice over Internet Protocol

VSD variable-speed drive

VSS video surveillance system

W

W Effective Weight

~~**W**~~**,** wire

~~**WC** water column; wheelchair~~

WAN wide area network

WAP wireless access point

WC water column, wheelchair

WDRM *Wireless Design Reference Manual*

WLAN wireless local area network

WRB weather-resistive barrier

X

XHHW cross-linked polyethylene~~,~~ high ~~-~~heat~~-~~ ~~resistance~~ and~~,~~ water-~~resistance~~resistant

APPENDIXES

INDEX

A

access control, 4.4–4.5, 4.19–4.20

access panels, 8.20, 13.13

accessibility
- of courtrooms, 5.5–5.6
- importance of, 1.3–1.4
- parking and, 3.4
- Universal Design principles and, 1.3–1.4

acoustical design
- background noise levels, 19.2
- best practices for, 19.8–19.11
- criteria for, 19.2–19.8
- environmental noise study, 19.7–19.8
- impact insulation, 19.7
- objectives of, 19.2
- room acoustics, 19.2–19.4, 19.11
- sound isolation, 13.10, 19.2, 19.4–19.5, 19.6, 19.10–19.11
- speech privacy, 19.2, 19.4, 19.10–19.11

airflow measuring devices, 13.18

air-handling units, 13.3, 13.19–13.24

alarm systems
- duress, 4.20, 6.5
- fire protection, 20.8–20.10

alternative dispute resolution, 2.9, 4.31, 7.6–7.7

architectural elements. *See also* individual elements
- exterior, 11.2–11.9
- interior, 11.9–11.17
- signage, 11.17–11.20

area and volume definitions, 2.6–2.7

armory, 8.12, 8.33

arraignment
- courtrooms, 2.8, 5.3, 5.22–5.23
- videoconferencing, 18.6

assistive listening systems, 18.3, 18.6, 18.9–18.13

attorney-client interview rooms. *See* interview rooms

attorney convenience centers, 4.31, 7.7

audiovisual systems
- assistive listening, 18.3
- cabinets for, 18.3
- cabling infrastructure for, 18.3
- control systems for, 18.6
- criteria for, 18.2
- digital evidence presentation, 18.6
- digital signage / customer flow management, 18.8
- integration of, 18.2
- reliability of, 18.2
- scalability of, 18.2
- speech and audio reinforcement, 18.3
- sustainability and, 18.2
- videoconferencing/arraignment, 18.6
- video display, 18.6

B

background noise levels, 19.2

barrier walls, 11.3–11.4

benches. *See* detention benches; judge's bench

bird roosting and nesting control, 11.9

blast
- building envelope and, 4.11–4.12
- evacuation after, 4.12–4.14
- setback distance and, 4.5–4.8, 4.23

blood draw rooms, 7.8

break rooms, 6.11, 8.13, 11.16, 13.4

building automation system (BAS). *See* building management system

building directory, 11.19

building gross square feet (BGSF), 2.6–2.7

building management system (BMS)
- components of, 14.2–14.4
- energy conservation design and, 14.4–14.5
- level of integration of, 14.4

building orientation, 1.4–1.5, 3.5

building support services
- fire alarm and emergency communication system control room, 10.4
- janitor closets, 10.2
- lighting and, 16.9
- loading dock, 10.2
- mail room, 10.3
- maintenance shops, 10.3
- news media functions, 10.3
- security and, 4.32
- space standards for, 2.9
- storage, 10.3

bullet-resistant glazing, 4.21–4.22

Commented [DP1]: EGG: Please confirm the page number references after the complete draft is finished.

C

cabinets, 11.17, 18.3

cabling
- for audiovisual systems, 18.3
- for network and communication systems and, 17.2, 17.3, 17.11–17.16
- security, 4.21, 8.32

calendar postings, 11.19

California, state seal of, 11.15

cameras, 8.32, 8.33. *See also* video

card access control, 4.19

carpets, 11.14

casework, 11.17

ceilings
- finishes for, 11.16
- heights of, 2.5
- impact insulation and, 19.7
- in in-custody areas, 8.15
- planning and design of, 11.10
- recommended reflectance for, 16.5

cellular service, 17.25–17.26

cement plaster cladding, 11.4–11.5

children's waiting rooms
- finishes for, 11.16
- planning and design of, 7.5, 7.6
- security and, 4.17, 4.24, 4.31

chilled water systems, 13.7–13.8

circulation areas
- lighting for, 16.3, 16.9
- security and, 4.16, 4.29, 8.10

circulation zones, 2.2–2.5

clerk's office
- background noise criteria for, 19.2
- ceiling height of, 2.5
- room acoustics requirements for, 19.3
- security and, 4.24

clerk's station
- audiovisual system requirements for, 18.3, 18.4, 18.5
- communications outlets for, 17.17
- lighting for, 16.3
- planning and design of, 5.5, 5.8–5.9
- security and, 4.23, 4.29

CO_2 demand control, 14.6

collapse, resistance to, 4.12–4.13

communications. *See* network and communication systems

component gross square feet (CGSF), 2.4, 2.6, 2.7

conductors, 15.5–15.6

conduits, 15.6

conference rooms
- allocating space for, 6.10
- audiovisual system requirements for, 18.13
- background noise criteria for, 19.2
- for Family Court Services, 7.4–7.5
- finishes for, 11.16
- lighting for, 16.3
- occupant density of, 13.4
- power requirements for, 13.4, 15.3
- room acoustics requirements for, 19.3
- size of, 2.8, 2.12, 6.10
- temperature of, 13.4

copy rooms, 2.8, 5.16, 11.16, 13.4, 13.13

cornerstones, 11.7

corridors
- background noise criteria for, 19.2
- ceiling height of, 2.5
- finishes for, 11.16
- floor vibration acceptance criteria for, 12.3
- in in-custody areas, 8.33
- as public waiting areas, 9.5
- width of, 2.5–2.6

counsel tables
- audiovisual system requirements for, 18.10
- communications outlets for, 17.17
- lighting for, 16.3
- planning and design of, 5.5, 5.12

counters
- finishes for, 11.16
- lighting for, 16.9
- planning and design of, 6.5–6.7
- security and, 4.9, 4.17, 4.22, 4.24, 4.29, 4.30

court administration spaces
- conference and training rooms, 6.10
- court executive officer's area, 6.7–6.11
- equipment storage, 6.11
- human resources, 6.9
- mail center, 6.10
- offices and workstations, 6.8
- other support areas, 6.11
- public service counters, 6.5–6.7
- purchasing, 6.8
- records storage, 6.9
- revenue and collections, 6.7
- security and, 4.30, 6.5
- size of, 2.8

court executive officer's area, 6.7–6.11
courthouses. *See also individual spaces, systems, and services*
  circulation zones for, 2.2–2.5
  entrances to, 3.6, 9.2
  landscape design and, 3.7–3.8
  life cycle cost analysis for, 1.2–1.3, 1.4, 1.6
  naming of, 11.20
  orientation of, 1.4–1.5, 3.5
  pedestrian access to, 1.4, 3.6
  relative building volume ratio for, 2.7
  signage for, 11.17–11.20
  site design for, 3.2–3.8
  size of, 2.5–2.8, 3.5–3.6
  space standards for, 2.5, 2.8–2.12
court reporter's area/station
  communications outlets for, 17.17
  planning and design of, 5.5, 5.10, 5.16
  size of, 2.8
court reporter's room
  planning and design of, 5.16
  security and, 4.30
courtroom holding, 8.11–8.12
courtrooms. *See also individual components*
  accessibility and, 5.5–5.6
  adjacencies for, 5.4
  arraignment, 2.8, 5.3, 5.22–5.23
  audiovisual system requirements for, 18.3–18.5, 18.8–18.11
  background noise criteria for, 19.2
  bench configuration for, 5.4–5.5
  BGSF per, 2.6–2.7
  ceiling height of, 2.5
  components of, 5.5, 5.6–5.15
  entries to, 2.8, 5.4, 5.15
  finishes for, 11.15, 11.16, 11.17
  floor organization of, 5.2
  floor vibration acceptance criteria for, 12.3
  large, 2.8
  lighting for, 16.3, 16.8, 16.10
  mockups of, 5.4, 5.6
  multipurpose, 2.8, 5.3–5.4, 5.20–5.21, 17.18–17.19
  occupant density of, 13.4
  planning and design of, 5.2–5.3
  platforms in, 11.14
  power requirements for, 13.4, 15.3
  room acoustics requirements for, 19.3
  security and, 4.9, 4.16, 4.23, 4.29
  signage for, 11.17–11.20
  size of, 2.8
  support spaces for, 5.15–5.19
  temperature of, 13.4
  types of, 5.3
court security officer (CSO) station, 5.5, 5.13
court set. *See also individual components*
  definition of, 5.2
  security and, 4.29
  space standards for, 2.8
Crime Prevention Through Environmental Design (CPTED), 4.4–4.5
customer flow management (CFM), 18.8

D

dampproofing, 11.3
daylighting, 11.9, 16.10–16.11
dedication plaques, 11.7
defendants. *See* in-custody areas
demand base reset control, 14.6
design excellence principles, 1.5–1.6
detention benches, 8.16, 8.20
detention circulation system, 2.5, 8.10, 8.28
detention control rooms, 2.9, 8.7–8.8
detention control systems, 8.24–8.33
diffusers, 13.3
digital evidence presentation system (DEPS), 18.6
digital signage system, 18.8
dining areas, 15.3, 19.2
direct evaporative coolers, 13.10–13.11
direct expansion systems, 13.8
directories, 11.19
distributed antenna system (DAS), 17.25–17.26
DNA swab rooms, 7.8
doorframes, 8.16, 8.19–8.20, 11.12–11.13
doors
  drainage plane walls, 11.3–11.4
  exterior, 11.6
  in in-custody areas, 8.16, 8.17–8.19, 8.21, 8.24, 8.26–8.27, 8.33
  security and, 4.12, 4.25, 4.26, 4.28, 4.29
  sound isolation requirements for, 19.4, 19.6
drains, 13.15
driveways, 4.21, 4.28, 8.24–8.25, 8.33
drop boxes, 6.7

drug testing suites, 7.7
ductwork
  acoustical isolation and, 13.10
  insulation of, 13.17
  planning and design of, 13.5
duress alarm system, 4.20, 6.5

E

earthquakes, 12.4
electrical systems
  conductors, 15.5–15.6
  conduits, 15.6
  coordination of, 15.7
  criteria for, 15.2–15.8
  distribution studies for, 15.7
  emergency and standby power systems, 15.9–15.13
  equipment enclosures for, 10.4
  grounding, 15.8
  identification of, 15.7
  minimum load power requirements, 15.3
  planning and design of, 15.2
  power distribution, 15.7–15.8
  quality assurance of, 15.7
  security and, 4.14–4.15, 4.26, 4.32
  space for, 2.7
  spare capacity requirements, 15.3, 15.12
electronic security systems
  location of, 4.18–4.19
  planning, 4.19–4.21
  standards for, 4.28–4.32
  types of, 4.19–4.21
elevators
  detention circulation and, 8.10, 8.28, 8.33
  mechanical requirements for, 13.12
  noise reduction and, 19.10
  planning and design of, 11.11–11.12
emergency lighting, 16.7–16.8
emergency power systems, 15.9–15.13
energy conservation
  mechanical systems and, 13.2
entrances
  lighting for, 16.4
  orienting, 3.5
  primary building, 3.5, 9.2
  security and, 4.28
  separate, for judges and bench officers, 3.6
  service, 17.4–17.5, 17.12
  signage for, 11.18
  weather exposure and, 11.6
environmental noise study, 19.7–19.8
equipment insulation, 13.17
escalators
  noise reduction and, 19.10
evacuation, 4.12–4.13
evidence
  presentation system for, 18.6
  storage for, 2.8, 4.10, 4.17, 4.25, 4.30, 5.15
exhibits
  display area for, 5.12
  storage for, 2.8, 4.9, 4.17, 4.25, 4.30, 5.15
exit signs, 16.6
expansion joints, 11.5
exterior construction, 11.2–11.9
exterior lighting, 16.6–16.7

F

façade access equipment, 11.8–11.9
Family Court Services, 4.17, 7.3–7.6
family law facilitators, 2.9, 4.31, 7.2–7.3
fasteners, tamper-proof, 8.23
Federal Energy Management Program (FEMP), 1.3
files. *See also* records
  lighting for, 16.3, 16.9
  planning and design of, 11.15
  power requirements for, 15.3
  security and, 4.17, 4.25
  service loads for, 12.3
fingerprinting, 7.8
finishes, interior, 11.15, 11.16, 11.17, 20.2
fin-tube heating systems, 13.9
fire department connections (FDC), 20.6
fire protection systems
  alarm systems, 10.4, 20.8–20.10
  automatic sprinkler systems, 20.2–20.3
  cleaning, 20.7
  control room, 4.18, 10.4
  coordination, 20.7
  criteria for, 20.2–20.7
  fire department connections (FDC), 20.6
  fire pump requirements, 20.4
  guarantee, 20.7, 20.10
  hydrants, 20.3–20.4
  installation contractor certification, 20.7, 20.10

interior finishes, 20.2
for MDF/ server equipment room, 20.6–20.7
objectives for, 20.2
piping requirements, 20.4–20.5
piping specialties, 20.5–20.6
post indicator valve (PIV) assembly, 20.6
security and, 4.14–4.15, 4.26
sprinkler control valves, 20.6
valve requirements, 20.5

flagpoles, 3.6, 11.7, 11.15

flashing, 11.4–11.5

flexibility, planning for, 1.5

floods, 12.5

floor drains, 13.15

flooring materials, 11.14, 11.16

floors
impact insulation and, 19.7
in in-custody areas, 8.13–8.14
recommended reflectance for, 16.5
vibration of, 12.3

floor-to-floor heights, 11.9

fluorescent lamps, 16.2

flutter echo, 19.3, 19.4

footbridges, 12.3

footfall noise, 19.7

four-pair copper cable, 17.16

fuel piping, 13.16

G

generators, emergency, 4.8, 4.14, 13.12, 15.9–15.13

glare control, 11.6

glazing
blast load and, 4.12
bullet-resistant, 4.21–4.22
in in-custody areas, 8.16, 8.21

gravity loads, 12.2–2.3

grilles
mechanical, 8.22
walk-off, 11.6–11.7

grounding system, 15.8, 17.11

growth, planning for, 1.5

gun lockers, 8.16, 8.20

H

heat gains, internal, 13.6

heating systems, 13.8–13.9. *See also* HVAC

holding areas
ceiling height of, 2.5
central, 8.8–8.10
courtroom, 8.11–8.12
electronic detention control requirements for, 8.33
lighting for, 16.3, 16.9
mechanical requirements for, 13.12
occupant density of, 13.4
power requirements for, 15.3
size of, 2.9
support areas for, 8.12–8.13
temperature of, 13.4

housekeeping pads, 13.13

human comfort performance levels, 12.3

human resources, 6.9

humidifiers, 13.10–13.11

HVAC
background noise from, 19.2, 19.8–19.9
criteria for, 13.3–13.10
equipment enclosures for, 10.4
planning and design of, 13.2

hydrants, 20.3

I

illuminance levels, recommended, 16.3–16.4

impact insulation, 19.7

incandescent lamps, 16.2

in-custody areas. *See also individual components*
benches in, 8.16, 8.20
components of, 8.5–8.13
construction/finishes in, 8.13–8.15
detention equipment in, 8.16, 8.20
door signage in, 8.24
doors in, 8.16, 8.17–8.19, 8.21, 8.24, 8.26–8.27, 8.33
electronic detention control system in, 8.24–8.33
fasteners in, 8.23
frames in, 8.16, 8.19–8.20, 8.23
functional overview of, 8.3–8.5
glazing in, 8.16, 8.21
light fixtures in, 8.21
mechanical grilles in, 8.22
mechanical requirements for, 13.12

planning and design of, 8.2–8.3
plumbing fixtures in, 8.22
sealants in, 8.23
space standards for, 2.9
sprinkler heads, 8.22
technical criteria for, 8.13–8.24
toilet accessories in, 8.24
information kiosks/counters, 2.9, 4.29, 9.4–9.5
information systems
security and, 4.32
space standards for, 2.8
inside plant (ISP) pathways, 17.12–17.14
insulation, 13.17
intercom system, 8.31–8.32, 17.17
interior construction
fire protection and, 20.2
planning and design of, 11.9–11.17
intermediate distribution frame (IDF) rooms
definition of, 17.7
electronic security systems and, 4.18–4.19
occupant density of, 13.4
planning and design of, 17.7–17.9
power requirements for, 13.4, 15.3
security and, 4.32
space considerations for, 17.8
temperature of, 13.4
interpreters
communications outlets for, 17.17
convenience centers for, 7.8
interview rooms, 2.8, 5.18, 8.10–8.11, 8.27
intrusion detection, 4.20
IP network, 17.21–17.24

J

janitor closets
finishes for, 11.16
in holding areas, 8.13
lighting for, 16.9
mechanical requirements for, 13.12
occupant density of, 13.4
planning and design of, 10.2
size of, 2.9
temperature of, 13.4
judge's bench
communications outlets for, 17.17
corner vs. center, 5.4–5.5
lighting for, 16.3
planning and design of, 5.4, 5.5, 5.6–5.7
security and, 4.22, 4.29
judge's/judicial chambers
background noise criteria for, 19.2
ceiling height of, 2.5
lighting for, 16.8
occupant density of, 13.4
planning and design of, 5.15–5.16
power requirements for, 13.4, 15.3
room acoustics requirements for, 19.3
security and, 4.9, 4.16, 4.24, 4.30
size of, 2.8
temperature of, 13.4
jury assembly rooms
audiovisual system requirements for, 18.12
ceiling height of, 2.5
finishes for, 11.16
floor vibration acceptance criteria for, 12.3
lighting for, 16.3, 16.10
planning and design of, 6.3
security and, 4.30
size of, 2.8
jury boxes
planning and design of, 5.10–5.12
security and, 5.12
jury deliberation rooms
background noise criteria for, 19.2
ceiling height of, 2.5
finishes for, 11.16
occupant density of, 13.4
planning and design of, 5.17
power requirements for, 13.4, 15.3
room acoustics requirements for, 19.3
security and, 4.9, 4.17, 4.24, 4.30
size of, 2.8
temperature of, 13.4
jury support staff, 6.4

K

kitchens, 13.4, 15.3

L

lactation rooms, 2.8, 6.11
landscape design, 3.7–3.8
laser-optimized multimode (LOMMF) cable, 17.14–17.15
law enforcement waiting rooms, 2.8, 7.7–7.8
law library, 5.16
lecterns, 5.5, 5.12, 17.17

LED, 16.2

LEED Silver rating, 1.6

life cycle cost analysis (LCCA), 1.2–1.3, 12.4, 12.6

lifts, 5.6

lighting. *See also* lighting fixtures
- commissioning, 16.11
- controls for, 16.10–16.11
- criteria for, 16.2–16.6
- day-, 11.9, 16.10–16.11
- emergency, 16.7–16.8
- energy efficiency and, 16.2, 16.6
- exterior, 16.6–16.7
- maintenance, 16.6
- planning and design of, 16.2
- recommended illuminance levels, 16.3–16.4
- reflectance values, 16.2, 16.5
- security, 16.7
- strategies for, 16.6–16.10

lighting fixtures (luminaires)
- energy efficiency of, 16.6
- in in-custody areas, 8.21
- selection of, 16.6

litigation area
- components of, 5.12
- separation of, from spectator area, 5.14

loading docks
- finishes for, 11.16
- mechanical requirements for, 13.12
- planning and design of, 10.2
- power requirements for, 15.3
- security and, 4.7, 4.10, 4.18, 4.25, 4.28, 4.32

loading zones, 3.4

lobbies
- background noise criteria for, 19.2
- ceiling height of, 2.5
- design of, 9.2–9.5
- finishes for, 11.16
- lighting for, 16.3, 16.9
- occupant density of, 13.4
- power requirements for, 13.4
- room acoustics requirements for, 19.3
- security and, 4.8, 4.9, 4.16, 4.21, 4.24–4.25 9.3–9.4
- temperature of, 13.4

local area network (LAN), 17.24

loudspeakers, 18.4–18.5, 18.6, 18.9, 18.11, 18.12, 18.13

M

mail centers
- for court administration, 6.10
- for jury assembly, 6.4

mail room
- location of, 4.8
- mechanical requirements for, 13.12
- planning and design of, 10.3
- security and, 4.18, 4.25, 4.32
- size of, 2.9

main distribution frame (MDF)
- definition of, 17.5
- electronic security systems and, 4.18–4.19
- fire protection systems for, 20.6–20.7
- occupant density of, 13.4
- planning and design of, 17.5–17.7
- power requirements for, 13.4, 15.3, 17.7
- security and, 4.32
- space considerations for, 17.4
- temperature of, 13.4

maintenance shops, 4.32, 10.3

massing, 3.5–3.6

mats, 11.6–11.7

mechanical systems
- access to, 13.12
- criteria for, 13.3–13.10
- energy conservation and, 13.2
- equipment enclosures for, 10.4
- flexibility of, for change, 13.2
- insulation, 13.17
- isolation of, 13.10, 13.14
- maintenance of, 13.2
- performance of, 13.2
- planning and design of, 13.2
- reliability of, 13.2
- requirements for specific spaces, 13.12–13.13
- security and, 4.14–4.15, 4.26
- space for, 2.7
- standby capacity of, 13.2
- sustainability and, 13.2
- thermometers and gauges, 13.17–13.18

media area
- exterior, 10.3
- interior, 10.3
- security and, 4.32

mediation rooms, 7.5

metal finishes, 11.16

microphones, 18.3, 18.7, 18.8–18.9, 18.11–18.13

mockups, 5.2, 5.4
multipair copper cable, 17.15
multipurpose rooms
  jury assembly rooms as, 6.3
  planning and design of, 7.7–7.8
  security and, 4.31
  uses for, 7.7–7.8

N

natural gas systems, 13.16
net square feet (NSF), 2.6
network and communication systems
  administration and verification, 17.20–17.21
  backbone connectivity, 17.14–17.15
  cabling, 17.2, 17.3
  definition of, 17.2
  distributed antenna systems, 17.25–17.26
  distribution pathways, 17.11–17.14
  horizontal connectivity, 17.15–17.19
  network architecture, 17.2–17.4, 17.21–17.24
  overview of, 17.2–17.4
network architecture, 17.2–17.4, 17.21–17.24
noise. *See also* acoustical design
  background, 19.2
  environmental, 19.7–19.8
  footfall, 19.7
noise isolation class (NIC), 19.4
nonstructural seismic coordinator (NSC), 12.4, 12.5
"No Smoking" signs, 11.20
notice boards, 11.19

O

occupant density, suggested, 13.4
offices
  background noise criteria for, 19.2
  ceiling height of, 2.5
  communications outlets for, 17.14
  for court administration, 6.8
  for court executive officer, 6.7–6.11
  finishes for, 11.16
  floor vibration acceptance criteria for, 12.3
  lighting for, 16.3, 16.8
  occupant density of, 13.4
  open, 19.2, 19.3
  power requirements for, 13.4, 15.3
  room acoustics requirements for, 19.3
  security and, 4.24, 4.31
  size of, 2.8, 2.11
  temperature of, 13.4
optical fiber, 17.14–17.15
outdoor-indoor transmission class (OITC), 19.6, 19.8
outlets, 17.13, 17.16, 17.17
outside air control methods, 14.6
outside plant (OSP) pathways, 17.12

P

paper pass, 8.16, 8.20
parking
  accessible, 3.4
  background noise criteria for, 19.2
  landscape design for, 3.7–3.8
  lighting for, 16.4, 16.10
  planning and design of, 3.2–3.4
  power requirements for, 15.3
  public, 3.2–3.3, 4.7
  secure, 3.3–3.4, 4.7, 4.15, 4.21
  security and, 4.7, 4.21, 4.23
partitions
  interior, 11.10
  operable, 19.7
pedestrian access, 1.4, 3.6
pedestrian pathways, 16.4
pedestrian sally ports, 8.6–8.7, 8.26
perimeter, secure, 8.5
pink noise, 18.3, 18.6, 18.9
piping
  fuel, 13.16
  hangers, 13.10
  identification of, 13.14
  insulation, 13.17
  isolation of, 13.10, 13.14
  planning and design of, 13.13–13.17
pistol lockers, 8.16, 8.20
platforms, 11.14
plenum spaces, 11.9–11.10, 13.5
plumbing systems
  criteria for, 13.13–13.16
  fixtures, 8.22, 13.15–13.16
  insulation, 13.17
  noise reduction and, 19.8–19.10
post indicator valve (PIV) assembly, 20.6

power requirements
minimum load, 15.3
by room type, 13.4
spare capacity, 15.3
power systems
for detention control system, 8.33
emergency and standby, 15.9–15.13
new, 15.7–15.8
press access. *See* media area
pressure gauges, 13.17–13.18
pressurization, 13.6
programmable logic controllers (PLCs), 8.30
propane gas systems, 13.16
protection, concentric circles of, 4.5
public spaces
information kiosk or counter, 9.4–9.5
lobby, 9.2–9.5
planning and design of, 9.2
primary building entrance, 9.2
space standards for, 2.9
waiting areas, 9.5
pump systems, 13.13
purchasing, 6.8

R

radiant heating systems, 13.9
rainwater drainage system, 13.15
ramps, 5.5–5.6, 11.6
rare loads, criteria for, 12.4–12.5
receiving, 4.18, 4.28
reception areas
for alternative dispute resolution, 7.7
background noise criteria for, 19.2
for courtroom support, 2.8, 5.16
for Family Court Services, 7.4–7.5
for jury assembly areas, 6.2
for self-help centers, 7.2–7.3
records. *See also* files
security and, 4.30
storage, 2.8, 4.30, 6.9–6.10
viewing, 4.30, 6.7
reflectance values, 16.2, 16.5
relative humidity, 13.11
research attorney work area, 2.8, 5.17
restroom facilities
for court administration staff, 6.11
finishes for, 11.16
in in-custody areas, 8.22, 8.24
for jury assembly rooms, 6.3
lighting for, 16.3, 16.9
mechanical requirements for, 13.12
occupant density of, 13.4
power requirements for, 13.4, 15.3
size of, 2.8, 2.9
temperature of, 13.4
revenue and collections office, 6.8
reverberation time, 19.2, 19.3
risk assessment procedures, 4.4
roofs, 11.7–11.8
room acoustics, 19.2–19.4, 19.11

S

safety equipment storage, 8.12–8.13
sally ports
definition of, 8.4
electronic detention control requirements for, 8.33
mechanical requirements for, 13.12
pedestrian, 8.6–8.7, 8.26, 8.33
vehicle, 8.5–8.6, 8.25–8.26, 8.33
sanitary waste systems, 13.15–13.16
Savings By Design program, 1.8
screening stations, 2.9, 4.21, 4.29, 9.3–9.4
sealants, 8.23
seal of the State of California, 11.15
security. *See also individual areas*
building envelope and, 4.11–4.12, 4.25 4.26
building layout and, 4.8–4.9, 4.23
cable routing, 4.21
capability for increasing, 4.4
card access control, 4.19
challenges to, 4.2
duress alarm, 4.20
electrical systems and, 4.14–4.15, 4.26
electronic security systems, 4.19–4.21, 4.27, 4.28–4.32
factors affecting levels of, 4.3–4.4
fire protection systems and, 4.14–4.15, 4.26
intrusion detection, 4.20
lighting, 16.7
mechanical systems and, 4.14–4.15, 4.26
physical planning criteria, 4.4–4.12
planning and design of, 4.2–4.3

protective structural design, 4.10, 4.12–4.13, 4.26
risk assessment procedures, 4.4
screening stations, 2.9, 4.21, 4.29, 9.3–9.4
site design and, 4.5–4.7, 4.23
standards for, 4.23–4.32
turnstiles, 4.21
video surveillance, 4.19–4.20
security operations center
combined with detention control room, 8.6, 8.7
lighting for, 16.7, 16.10
location of, 4.10
power requirements for, 15.3
size of, 2.9
standards for, 4.25, 4.32
self-help centers, 2.9, 4.31, 7.2–7.3, 11.16
self-represented litigants, 7.2–7.3
service entrance facilities, 17.4–17.5, 17.12
service loads, criteria for, 12.2–12.3
setback distance, 4.6–4.8
sewage ejectors, 13.15
shredding, 10.2
signage
digital, 18.8
exit, 16.6
in in-custody areas, 8.24
for jury assembly rooms, 6.2
planning and design of, 11.17–11.20
single-mode fiber (SMF) cable, 17.14–17.15
site design
security and, 4.5–4.7, 4.23
snow, 12.2, 12.5
sound isolation, 13.10, 19.2, 19.4–19.5, 19.6, 19.10–19.11
sound masking, 18.3, 18.6
sound transmission class (STC), 19.4–19.5
space standards, 2.5–2.6, 2.8–2.12
special services
alternative dispute resolution, 7.6–7.7
children's waiting room, 7.6
Family Court Services, 7.3–7.6
family law facilitators, 7.2–7.3
multipurpose rooms and offices, 7.7–7.8
offices for related justice agencies, 7.7
self-help centers, 7.2–7.3
spectator area
lighting for, 16.3
planning and design of, 5.14–5.15
security and, 4.29
separation of, from litigation area, 5.14
speech and reinforcement systems, 18.3, 18.6
speech privacy, 19.4, 19.10–19.11
sprinkler systems
cleaning, 20.7
coordination of, 20.7
criteria for, 20.2–20.7
in in-custody areas, 8.22
for MDF/ server equipment room, 20.6–20.7
piping requirements, 20.4–20.5
sprinkler control valves, 20.6
sprinkler head guards, 20.3
sprinkler head requirements, 20.6
valve requirements, 20.5
stairs
exterior, 11.6
finishes for, 11.16
floor vibration acceptance criteria for, 12.3
for in-custody areas, 8.33
lighting for, 16.4, 16.8
planning and design of, 11.12
for private circulation system, 2.4–2.5
standby power systems, 15.9–15.13
state seal, 11.15
storage
for building support services, 10.3
for court administration, 6.9–6.10, 6.11
for evidence and exhibits, 2.8, 4.10, 4.17, 4.25, 4.30, 5.15
for Family Court Services, 7.4, 7.6
finishes for, 11.16
in holding areas, 8.12–8.13
occupant density of, 13.4
power requirements for, 15.3
for records, 2.8, 4.17, 4.25, 4.30, 6.9–6.10
for safety equipment, 8.12–8.13
security and, 4.32
size of, 2.8, 2.9
striplights, 16.9
structural design
adaptability and, 12.2
criteria for, 12.2–12.5
goals for, 12.2
life cycle cost analysis and, 12.4, 12.6
rare events and, 12.2
serviceability and, 12.2

surge protective devices, 15.8

surveillance
  natural, 4.4, 4.5, 4.8
  video, 4.19–4.20, 8.31

sustainability
  audiovisual systems and, 18.2
  design criteria and performance goals for, 1.6–1.8
  energy savings programs, 1.8
  landscape design and, 3.7–3.8
  life cycle cost analysis and, 1.6
  mechanical systems and, 13.2
  objectives for, 1.6

T

telecommunications
  finishes for, 11.16
  security and, 4.32
  space standards for, 2.9

temperature control, 13.3

territoriality, 4.4, 4.5

thermometers, 13.17–13.18

toilets. *See* restroom facilities

training rooms
  allocating space for, 6.10
  audiovisual system requirements for, 18.12–18.13
  background noise criteria for, 19.2
  for Family Court Services, 7.5
  jury assembly rooms as, 6.3
  lighting for, 16.10
  room acoustics requirements for, 19.3
  security and, 4.30
  size of, 2.8, 6.10
  standards for, 6.10

transcription, real-time, 18.10

transient voltage surge suppressor (TVSS) units, 15.8

trash and recycling area, 2.9, 4.32

turnstiles, 4.21

TV, 18.7. *See also* media area

U

Universal Design principles, 1.3–1.4

UPS (uninterruptible power supply), 15.12–15.13, 17.4

utilities
  location and visibility of, 3.6–3.7
  security and, 4.14

V

vehicle sally ports, 8.5–8.6, 8.25–8.26, 8.33

veneer panels, 11.17

ventilation, 13.3, 13.6. *See also* HVAC

vibration, 13.10

victim waiting areas, 7.8

video
  display systems, 18.6
  surveillance, 4.19–4.20, 8.31

volunteer convenience centers, 7.7

W

waiting areas/rooms
  for alternative dispute resolution, 7.7
  children's, 4.17, 4.24, 4.31, 7.6, 11.16
  for interpreters, 7.8
  for law enforcement, 2.8, 7.7–7.8
  lighting for, 16.3
  occupant density of, 13.4
  power requirements for, 13.4
  public, 9.5
  security and, 4.9–4.10, 4.16, 4.24–4.25, 4.29–4.31
  for self-help centers, 7.2–7.3
  size of, 2.8, 2.9
  temperature of, 13.4
  for victims, 7.8
  for witnesses, 5.18

walk-off mats and grilles, 11.6–11.7

wall coverings, 11.16

walls
  barrier, 11.3–11.4
  drainage plane, 11.3–11.4
  exterior, 11.3–11.7
  in in-custody areas, 8.14–8.15
  recommended reflectance for, 16.5
  security and, 4.12

waste systems, 13.15–13.16

water
  cold, 13.14
  conservation, 1.7
  flow measuring devices, 13.18
  hammer arresters, 13.14
  hot, 13.9, 13.14
  treatment, 13.10–13.11

wayfinding, 1.4–1.5, 18.8
weapons
  lockers for, 8.16, 8.20
  screening for, 4.21, 4.29
wide area network (WAN), 17.24
wind, 11.2–11.3,12.5
window coverings, 11.14
windows
  planning and design of, 11.5–11.6
  security and, 4.11, 4.12, 4.21, 4.28
  washing, 11.8–11.9
wireless access point (WAP), 17.16
wireless local area network (WLAN), 17.16
witness boxes
  communications outlets for, 17.17
  lighting for, 16.3
  planning and design of, 5.9–5.10
witness waiting areas, 5.18
workplace environment, enhancing, 11.9
workshop rooms, 7.3
workstations
  DCS, 8.28
  design and planning of, 6.5–6.7
  size of, 2.8–2.10

APPENDIXES

ACKNOWLEDGMENTS

JUDICIAL COUNCIL OF CALIFORNIA

Commented [LD1]: Should every name have a link?

Commented [DP1R2]: no

Chair

Hon. Patricia Guerrero
Chief Justice of California and Chair of the Judicial Council of California

Supreme Court

Hon. Carol A. Corrigan
Associate Justice of the Supreme Court of California

Courts of Appeal

Hon. Stacy Boulware Eurie
Associate Justice of the Court of Appeal, Third Appellate District

Hon. Brad R. Hill
Administrative Presiding Justice of the Court of Appeal, Fifth Appellate District

Trial Courts

Hon. Maria Lucy Armendariz
Judge of the Superior Court of California, County of Los Angeles

Hon. Bunmi O. Awoniyi
Judge of the Superior Court of California, County of Sacramento

Hon. Charles ~~S.~~ Crompton
Judge of the Superior Court of California, County of San Francisco

Hon. Judith K. Dulcich
Judge of the Superior Court of California, County of Kern

Hon. Maureen F. Hallahan
Judge of the Superior Court of California, County of San Diego

Hon. Maria D. Hernandez
Judge of the Superior Court of California, County of Orange

Hon. Ann C. Moorman
Judge of the Superior Court of California, County of Mendocino

Hon. Ricardo R. Ocampo
Assistant Presiding Judge of the Superior Court of California, County of Los Angeles

Hon. Michael Rhoads
Judge of the Superior Court of California, County of San Francisco

Hon. Tamara L. Wood
Presiding Judge of the Superior Court of California, County of Shasta

~~Hon. Carin T. Fujisaki~~
~~*Associate Justice of the Court of Appeal, First Appellate District, Division Three*~~

~~Hon. Marla O. Anderson~~
~~*Judge of the Superior Court of California, County of Monterey*~~

~~Hon. Maria Lucy Armendariz~~
~~*Judge of the Superior Court of California, County of Los Angeles*~~

~~Hon. C. Todd Bottke~~
~~*Judge of the Superior Court of California, County of Tehama*~~

~~Hon. Kyle S. Brodie~~
~~*Judge of the Superior Court of California, County of San Bernardino*~~

~~Hon. Jonathan B. Conklin~~
~~*Judge of the Superior Court of California, County of Fresno*~~

~~Hon. Michelle Williams Court~~
~~*Judge of the Superior Court of California, County of Los Angeles*~~

Advisory Members

~~Hon. Charles S. Crompton~~
~~*Judge of the Superior Court of California, County of San Francisco*~~

~~Hon. Samuel K. Feng~~
~~*Judge of the Superior Court of California, County of San Francisco*~~

~~Hon. Maureen F. Hallahan~~
~~*Assistant Presiding Judge of the Superior Court of California, County of San Diego*~~

~~Hon. Ann C. Moorman~~
~~*Judge of the Superior Court of California, County of Mendocino*~~

Legislature

Hon. Ash Kalra ~~*Hon. Brian Maienschein*~~

Member of the California State Assembly

Hon. Thomas J. Umberg
Member of the California State Senate

State Bar

~~Mr. David D. Fu~~
~~*Attorney at Law*~~

Ms. Rachel W. Hill
Attorney at Law

Ms. Gretchen Nelson
Attorney at Law

~~Craig M. Peters~~Mr. Craig M. Peters

Attorney at Law

~~Dena Stone~~Ms. Dena Stone

Attorney at Law

~~Mr. Maxwell V. Pritt~~
~~*Attorney at Law*~~

Advisory Members

Ms. Kate Bieker
Court Executive Officer, Superior Court of California, County of Ventura~~Contra Costa~~

Hon. Ryan Davis
Commissioner of the Superior Court of California, County of Sacramento

~~Hon. Judith K. Dulcich~~
~~*Judge of the Superior Court of California, County of Kern*~~

~~Hon. Maria D. Hernandez~~
~~*Presiding Judge of the Superior Court of California, County of Orange*~~

Mr. Charles Johnson
Clerk/Executive Officer, Court of Appeal, First Appellate District

Hon. Jeffrey C. Kauffman
Judge of the Superior Court of California, County of Solano

Hon. Patricia L. Kelly
Presiding Judge of the Superior Court of California, County of Santa Barbara

~~David Slayton~~Mr. David Slayton
Court Executive Officer, Superior Court of California, County of Los Angeles

~~Mr. Darrel E. Parker~~
~~*Court Executive Officer, Superior Court of California, County of Santa Barbara*~~

~~Mr. David H. Yamasaki~~
~~*Court Executive Officer, Superior Court of California, County of Orange*~~

~~Hon. Erica R. Yew~~
~~*Judge of the Superior Court of California, County of Santa Clara*~~

Secretary

~~Ms. Michelle Curran~~Ms. Michelle Curran~~Millicent Tidwell~~
~~*Acting* Administrative Director~~

COURT FACILITIES ADVISORY COMMITTEE (CFAC)

Hon. Brad R. Hill, Chair, Administrative Presiding Justice of the Court of Appeal, Fifth Appellate District

Hon. Eric J. Wersching, Vice-Chair, Judge of the Superior Court of California, County of Orange

Hon. JoAnn M. Bicego, Judge of the Superior Court of California, County of Siskiyou

Hon. Donald Cole Byrd, Presiding Judge of the Superior Court of California, County of Glenn

Mr. Anthony P. Capozzi, Attorney at Law

Ms. Melissa Fowler-Bradley, Former Court Executive Officer, Superior Court of California, County of Shasta

Hon. William F. Highberger, Judge of the Superior Court of California, County of Los Angeles

Hon. Harry E. Hull, Jr., Associate Justice of the Court of Appeal, Third Appellate District

Hon. Steven E. Jahr (Ret.), Judge of the Superior Court of California, County of Shasta

Hon. Patricia L. Kelly, Presiding Judge of the Superior Court of California, County of Santa Barbara

Ms. Krista LeVier, Court Executive Officer, Superior Court of California, County of Lake

Hon. Elaine Lu, Judge of the Superior Court of California, County of Los Angeles

Ms. Kyria Martinez, County Administrative Officer, County of Kings

Hon. Gary R. Orozco, Judge of the Superior Court of California, County of Fresno

APPENDIXES

Codes and Standards
List of Abbreviations
Index
ACKNOWLEDGMENTS

Commented [DP2]: Gensler: maintain the same formatting as before, but update the names in this order.

Advisory Members

Hon. David Edwin Power (Ret.), Judge of the Superior Court of California, County of Solano

Hon. Lisa M. Rogan, Judge of the Superior Court of California, County of San Bernardino

Hon. Sergio C. Tapia II, Presiding Judge of the Superior Court of California, County of Los Angeles

Mr. Thomas J. Warwick, Jr., Attorney at Law

~~Hon. Brad R. Hill, Chair~~
~~*Administrative Presiding Justice of the Court of Appeal, Fifth Appellate District*~~

~~Hon. Patricia M. Lucas (Ret.), Vice-Chair~~
~~*Judge of the Superior Court of California, County of Santa Clara*~~

~~Hon. JoAnn M. Bicego~~
~~*Presiding Judge of the Superior Court of California, County of Siskiyou*~~

~~Hon. Donald Cole Byrd~~
~~*Presiding Judge of the Superior Court of California, County of Glenn*~~

~~Mr. Anthony P. Capozzi~~
~~*Attorney at Law*~~

~~Hon. Robert D. Foiles~~
~~*Judge of the Superior Court of California, County of San Mateo*~~

~~Ms. Melissa Fowler-Bradley~~
~~*Court Executive Officer, Superior Court of California, County of Shasta*~~

~~Hon. William F. Highberger~~
~~*Judge of the Superior Court of California, County of Los Angeles*~~

~~Hon. Steven E. Jahr (Ret.)~~
~~*Judge of the Superior Court of California, County of Shasta*~~

~~Hon. Patricia L. Kelly~~
~~*Assistant Presiding Judge of the Superior Court of California, County of Santa Barbara*~~

~~Ms. Krista LeVier~~
~~*Court Executive Officer, Superior Court of California, County of Lake*~~

~~Hon. Gary R. Orozco~~
~~*Judge of the Superior Court of California, County of Fresno*~~

~~Hon. David Edwin Power (Ret.)~~
~~*Judge of the Superior Court of California, County of Solano*~~

~~Mr. Lee Seale~~
~~*Court Executive Officer, Superior Court of California, County of Sacramento*~~

~~Mr. Larry Spikes~~
~~*Former County Administrative Officer, County of Kings*~~

~~Hon. Robert J. Trentacosta~~
~~*Judge of the Superior Court of California, County of San Diego*~~

~~Mr. Thomas J. Warwick, Jr.~~
~~*Attorney at Law*~~

The Judicial Council acknowledges the contributions of the following committee members, staff, and consultant firms for their input and guidance during the creation of the ~~2023~~ 2026 edition of the *California Trial Court Facilities Standards.*

CFAC STANDARDS WORKING GROUP

Hon. Eric J. Wersching, Chair
Judge of the Superior Court of California, County of Orange

~~Hon. Patricia M. Lucas (Ret.), Chair~~
~~*Judge of the Superior Court of California, County of Santa Clara*~~

Ms. Melissa Fowler-Bradley
Court Executive Officer, Superior Court of California, County of Shasta

Hon. William F. Highberger
Judge of the Superior Court of California, County of Los Angeles

Hon. Steven E. Jahr (Ret.)
Judge of the Superior Court of California, County of Shasta

JUDICIAL COUNCIL STAFF

Mr. Tamer Ahmed

~~Ms. Pella McCormick~~
Director, Facilities Services

Mr. ~~Tamer Ahmed~~Jagandeep Singh
Deputy Director, Facilities Services

Ms. Deepika Padam
~~*Manager, Quality Compliance*~~*Building Official, Facilities Services*

Ms. Nirlip Syan~~Maggie W. Stern~~
Attorney, Real Estate, Legal Services

Ms. Denise Logsdon~~Karen Gernand~~
Communications Editor, Editing and Graphics, Leadership Support Services

~~Ms. Patricia Valentine~~
~~*Communications Editor, Editing and Graphics, Leadership Support Services*~~

Facilities Services staff at large

CONSULTANT FIRMS

BPR Consulting Group
Architecture, Fire Protection, and Structural Engineering

Frank M. Booth~~,~~ Inc.
Mechanical Engineering

Gensler
Graphic Design

~~Nacht & Lewis~~
~~*Occupancy and Exiting Study*~~

The Engineering Enterprise
Electrical Engineering

Vanir Construction Management~~,~~ Inc.
~~*Engineering and*~~ *Knowledge Sharing*

APPENDIXES

Codes and Standards
List of Abbreviations
Index

ACKNOWLEDGMENTS